



7/2/3



SIR THOMAS MARYON WILSON BART



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2018 with funding from
Wellcome Library

https://archive.org/details/b30524465_0003

62568

Atlas GEOGRAPHUS:
OR, A COMPLEAT
System of Geography,

ANCIENT and MODERN.

CONTAINING

What is of most Use in *Bleau, Varenius, Cellarius, Cluverius, Baudrand, Brietius, Sanson, &c.*

WITH THE

Discoveries and Improvements of the best Modern
AUTHORS to this Time. Illustrated with
about 100 New MAPS, done from the
latest Observations, by *Herman Moll*, Geogra-
pher; and many other CUTS, by the best
Artists.

ASIA is One VOLUME, with Thirty one
MAPS, *Sanson's TABLES, &c.* as may be
seen in the Catalogue thereof annex'd to the
Preface.

In the SAVOY:

Printed by *John Nutt*; and Sold by *Benjamin Barker* and *Charles King*
in *Westminster-Hall*; *Benjamin Tooke* at the *Middle-Temple Gate*; *William*
Taylor at the *Ship* in *Pater-Noster-Row*; *Henry Clements* at the *Half-Moon*
in *St. Paul's Church-yard*; *Richard Parker* and *Ralph Smith* under the
Piazza of the *Royal-Exchange*; and *John Morphem* near *Stationers-*
Hall. MDCCXII.

ADVERTISEMENT.

EUROPE being finish'd in Two Volumes, with above 70 new Maps, and now *ASIA* in One Vol. we shall next proceed to *AFRICA*, which shall be contain'd in 10 Months, with the best Maps yet extant of that Country, viz. 1. *Africa Antiqua*; 2. *Modern Africk*; 3. The West Part of *Barbary*, containing *Fez*, *Morocco*, *Algiers*, *Taffilet*, *Ludages*, *Canary Isles*, &c. 4. The East Part of *Barbary* and *Bilulgarid*, containing *Tunis*, *Tripoli*, *Barca*, *Egypt*, *Nubia*, &c. 5. *Zara*, *Negroland*, *Cape Verde Islands*, &c. 6. A new Map of *Guinea*; 7. Of *Abyssina*, *Anian*, &c. 8. A Map of the S. W. Part of *Africa*, containing the Dominions of *Barca*, *Loango*, *Congo*, *Angola*, *Benguela*, *Mataman*, *Cassers*, and Part of *Monoemugi*, *Monamatapa*, and of the Isle of *St. Helena*. 9. A Map of the S. E. Part of *Africa*, containing the Territories of *Zangubar*, *Sofala*, *Terra de Natal*, the Isle of *Madagascar*, *Comora*, &c. Note, *Great Britain* and *Ireland* is now preparing for the Press; and as Informations and Accounts of Places come in, they are inserted in their County, &c. It is entituled, *Britannia & Hibernia Antiqua & Nova*; in which will be a new and accurate Map of each County, with the Wapentacks, Laths, Hundreds, &c. and all the Roads exactly mark'd. In the Whole will be about 100 Maps; and many Cuts. We have received Accounts from above 200 Persons, each giving an Account of some or more considerable Places, and many more are doing. In about Three Months we shall begin to print, and shall do the Counties in Alphabetical Order, as *Bedfordshire*, *Berkshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Cambridgeshire*, *Cheshire*, *Cornwal*, &c. Gentlemen are desired to send in what Accounts they think proper for this Design to the Rev. Mr. *Anthony Hall*, Fellow of *Queen's College*, *Oxon*, who lately published *Leland in Latin*; or to *John Nutt*, Printer, in the *Savoy*, paying Postage, and they will be faithfully inserted.



THE PREFACE.

SINCE the Two Volumes of Europe found such good Acceptance with the Publick, 'tis hoped this one of Asia will fare no worse. Common Readers, 'tis true, are most desirous to know what's nearest Home; but those of a more refin'd Taste are as willing to be inform'd of what's most Remote, and particularly of Asia, the Knowledge of which is the Concern of all Mankind. None can doubt this who consider that it was honour'd to be the Theatre of our Creation and Redemption, and the Mother of all Orthodox Religion, as well as of Arts and Sciences. 'Twas also the Seat of the Two first Monarchies which assum'd the Title of Universal, and upon that Account has been from Age to Age a Field of great Actions, and continues to this Day to be the Seat of mighty Empires and Kingdoms; so that its Geography and History has always been much valued by the Learned and Thinking Part of Mankind.

It is also well known, that Asia alone has the Honour of Divinely inspir'd Historians, whose Writings we have in the Books of the Old and New Testament. And Asia having been the principal Scene on which the Things there recorded have been acted, the History and Geography of that Country concerns us most, as Christians, of any other Part of the World.

This Consideration oblig'd us to be at extraordinary Pains to consult the best Authors upon the ancient Geography and History of Asia, especially relating to the Holy Land and other Parts of it mention'd in the Scripture, and particularly the Seats of the Two first Monarchies, the History of the Princes that were at the Head of them, and of their Successors after these Monarchies fell, as far as we could trace them with any Degree of Certainty. 'Tis hop'd our Endeavours in that Matter will be acceptable to the Learned and Curious, tho' to more ordinary Readers that Part of it may seem too dry and crabbed. We have been rather more large than the Nature of our Design would allow upon the Holy Land and the Countries adjoining, and likewise in the Description of Jerusalem and of Solomon's Temple, with a Computation of the Charge of its Building, and of the Difference betwixt that and Herod's Temple, in order to make Things as clear as we could, especially such as have been the Subject of Controversy among the Learned, particularly as to the Seat of Paradise, the Place where Noah's Ark rested, &c.

Since it is also known, that as Asia was the Mother of true Religion, she gave Birth to that grand Impostor Mahomet, we have given a particular Account of him from the best Authors, of Arabia the Place of his Nativity, and of the several Sects into which his Followers are divided. We have been also very particular in the Encampments of the Israelites in the Wilderness, and consulted our modern Travellers as to the Monuments of those Encampments, &c. still remaining, which is a great Confirmation to the Truth of the sacred History.

The Reader will also find very instructive Accounts of the Christians of several Denominations still left in Asia, as the Armenians, the Disciples of St. Thomas, the Maronites who inhabit Mount Lebanon, &c. and likewise of the chief Founders of the Pagan Sects, and their Principles in other Parts of Asia.

The Afratick Scythia being a Country of vast Extent, and not well known, we have consulted what the ablest Writers, ancient and modern, have said on that Head, and likewise on the Tartars their Successors, with their Subdivisions, and the vast Tracts of Land they possess, wherein we have clear'd up that gross, but common Mistake, as if there were still a Great Cham of Tartary, who is no other than the Emperor of China.

We have also been very particular in the Origine, History, Courts, and Forces, of the Turks, Persians, Moguls Chinese, and other Asian Princes, and make bold to say, that the Reader will find a much better Account of the Great Tamerlane, and of the History of the Moguls, than ever yet appeared in English; for we have inserted the Substance of what was writ by Alhacent his own Historian, who attended him in all his Expeditions; and of the Mogul Chronicle from Signior Manouchi, a Venetian, who lived at that Court many Years, and had the Perusal of it.

We took a great deal of Pains to consult the most curious Travellers about the Ruins of Nineveh, Babylon, Tyre, Sidon, Damascus, Tadmor, Persepolis, and the Seven Asiatick Churches, &c. nor have we omitted the Palaces, Sepulchres, and other modern Structures of most Note, when we treat of the Courts of the several Emperors and Monarchs of this vast Region.

As to Natural History, we have taken a particular Care of it where we met with any thing curious, as Gold Mines, Diamond Mines, the Oil call'd Naphta, with Drugs, Spices, extraordinary Plants, Trees, or Animals, and many wonderful Phenomena of Nature, as the dangerous Wind Samiel, subterranean Fires without Flame, &c.

The Customs, Religion, Laws, &c. of the several People, we have insisted upon as particularly as our Bounds would allow, and likewise on all Subjects of Trade, and the European Factories of Note in the Continent and Islands of Asia; so that we may venture to say without Vanity, that no such Account of this Country has yet appear'd in any Language, which we hope is a sufficient Apology to such of our Subscribers as complain'd that we drew it out to too great a Length, which certainly they would not have done, had they consider'd the Extensiveness of our Plan, and the great Number of Volumes we have been obliged to consult.

The P R E F A C E.

v

'Tis needless to enumerate the Authors we have made use of, since they are quoted in the Body of the Work, by which it will appear that they were the best of their Kind on the several Subjects necessary for such an Undertaking: For besides the best Geographers and Historians, we have consulted all our modern Travellers, and have had the Use of Manuscripts, and other curious and scarce Pieces, by the Favour of those learned Gentlemen Dr. Hans Sloane and Dr. Tancred Robinson, and several others who formerly honour'd us with the like Helps towards the Description of Europe, for which we take this Opportunity to return them our hearty Thanks.

None of our Subscribers or other Gentlemen have favour'd us with their Observations of any Mistakes in this Volume of Asia, excepting one who was pleas'd to take Notice of some Difference in our Account relating to the Time of the Dutch Expeditions against the Portuguese in Malacca, and of the Seasons of the Year in Cochinchina: To which we answer for that Gentleman's Satisfaction, That where Authors differ, as they frequently do, we quote their several Opinions, and therefore hope that no Body will charge their Contradictions upon us.

N. B. That when the Work is finished, all the Books made use of for it, except such as have been borrow'd from Gentlemen, will be sold by Auction.

The

*The Names of such of the Subscribers
to the Atlas for Asia, omitted in
that for Europe, who sent them
in Time enough to be printed.*

A.

TH E Honourable Sir Hugh Ackland, of
Devon, Bar.
Sir John Armitage, of Kirkley, Bar.
Mr William Athburner, Schoolmaster of the
Grammar School of Wigan in Lancashire.
Mr. Henry Atkins of Exon.
Mr. Stephen Aldhouse, M.D. of Aldborough in
Norfolk.
Mr. Thomas Agnes, of Colchester, Gardiner.
Mr. John Allen of Bridgenorth
Mr. Daniel Adamson, of Worwell in Shropshire.

B.

The Rev. Mr. Ballon, A. M. Rector of La-
vant near Chichester.
Mr. William Bartlet of Biddesford, Devon.
Mr. Thomas Anger of Colchester.
Mr. William Beaumont of East-Bergholt, Suffolk.
The Rev. Mr. Robert Bailly, Minister of In-
verness.
Mr. Booth of Falkirk.
Mr. Blith, Bookseller in Colchester.

C.

The Rev. Mr. William Carstairs, Principal of
the University of Edinburgh.
Robert Corker, of Falmouth in Devon.
shire, Esq;
William Chamber Esq;
The Rev. Mr. Philip Collier, Rector of St. Co-
lumbe, Cornwall.
The Rev. Mr. John Chirricholme, Rector of
Bishop's-Stoke.

The Rev. Mr. Cockshutt of Caiothorne.
Mr. Richard Corns of Bridgenorth.

D.

The Rev. Mr. Denison of Great Weyborough,
Essex.
The Rev. Mr. Deffray of Old Romney in Kent.
Mr. Jonas Davis at Mount Serrell in Leicesters-
shire.
Mr. Isaac Davis.
Mr. Arthur Dobbins of Gosport.
Mr. Dummer.

E.

The Rev. Mr. Seth Ellis, A. M. of St. John's
College, Cambridge, and Curate of Hart-
Hill in Yorkshire.

F.

Mr. Thomas Fry of Collumpton, Devon.

G.

The Rev. Mr. John Gane, Prebendary of Sa-
rum.
The Rev. Mr. Richard Graves, at the Manor-
House in Mickleton near Campden, Gloucester-
shire.
The Rev. Mr. Goodwin, Rector of Medley.
Thomas Green, of East-Thorp, Esq;
Mr. Green of Midlewood.
Mr. Thomas Glover, Clerk at Her Majesty's
Dock-Yard, Portsmouth.

H.

Mr. John Hartwell.

K.

Samuel Kemp, of Cornwall, Esq;
Mr. John Kent.

L.

The Rev. Mr. Lassells of Pontefract.
The Rev. Mr. Charles Leaver, A. M. Vicar
of Chichester.
Mr. Caleb Loudham, of Exon, Surgeon.

M.

Mr. Cha. Martland, Professor of the Oriental
Languages in the University of Glas-
cow.
Mr. Thomas Morrice of Exon, Druggist.
Mr. Nathaniel Meazy.

N.

Mr. John Neale of Doncaster, Physician.
Mr. John Norman of Bideford, Devon.
Mr. John Noyes of Exon.
Mr. Henry Norbone of Chate in Wiltshire.

P.

The Rev. Mr. John Pemeck, Chancellor of
St. Peter's, Exon.
The Rev. Mr. Simon Paget, Rector of St. Ma-
bin, Cornwall.
The Rev. Mr. Prety of Little Cornward, suf-
folk.
The Rev. Mr. Jeremiah Pebworth, Vicar of
Hound.
The Rev. Mr. John Pinborne, Vicar of Eling.
The Rev. Mr. Pinnell, Prebendary of Chi-
chester.
Mr. Thomas Papihan.

S.

The Rev. Mr. John Stirling, Principal of the
University of Glasgow. —
The Rev. Mr. John Spooner of Aldham in suf-
folk.
The Rev. Mr. Staniland of Wasborough.
Mr. Simson, Professor of the Mathematicks
in the University of Glasgow.
Mr. Bartholomew Shorthose, Apothecary in the
Strand.
Mr. John Sing of Bridgenorth.

T.

... Thorogood, of Samson's Hall, Suffolk,
Esq;
The Rev. Dr. Hugh Tood, Prebendary of the
Cathedral Church of Carlisle.
Mr. John Thernton, Jun. at Hempsted, Hertford-
shire.

U.

Mr. Lewis Vasset, Master of the French School
at Hampstead.

W.

The Rev. Mr. Whitzar, A. M. Prebendary
of Chichester.
The Rev. Mr. Francis Webber, Prebendary of
Exon.
The Rev. Mr. Edward Wilkins, Prebendary
of the Cathedral Church of York, and
Rector of Kirby-Shour, Cumberland.
The Rev. Mr. John Wilcocks, Rector of En-
burne, Devon.
Mr. John Withers of Exon.
Mr. Waight of London, Pewterer.
Samuel Walters, of the East India House,
Gent.
William Walter, of Chatham, Gent.

An Account of the Maps, &c. contain'd in Asia, with Directions to the Binder how to place them.

1. *Sanfon's General Table of Turkey in Asia.*
2. *Asia Antiqua & Nova.* p. 1
3. *Asia according to the newest Discovery, by Herman Moll.* p. 2
4. *The N. Part of Turkey in Asia, containing Asia Minor, Armenia, Syria, Diarbeck, Irac-Arabick, &c.* p. 4
5. *Natolia.* p. 5
6. *Syria sive Soria Descriptio.* p. 66
7. *A new Map of the Holy Land.* p. 94
8. *The Temple of Solomon, by Dr. Walton, Publisher of the Polyglot Bible.* p. 138
9. *Herbinus's Account and Map of the Situation and Chorography of Paradise.* ib.
10. *A Cut of Noah's Ark.* ibid.
11. *Arabia according to the newest Observations, by Herm. Moll Geographer.* p. 182
12. *Persia sive Sophorum Regum, cum Armenia, Assyria, Mesopotamia, Babylonia, &c.* p. 218
13. *Sanfon's Table of Persia.* p. 289
14. *Persia, according to the newest Observations, by Herman Moll.* p. 290
15. *The Sepulchres of Abas, Sesi, and several Kings of Persia.* p. 370
16. *The Bridges and Pillar of Heads in Is-pahan.* ibid.
17. *A Persian Lord and a Persian Lady.* ibid.
18. *Scythia & Tartaria Asiatica.* p. 407
19. *A Map of Independant Tartary, containing the Territories of Usbeck, Gasgar, Tibet, Lassu, &c. by Herm. Moll.* p. 420
20. *Sanfon and Luyts's Tables of Tartary.* p. 421
21. *Sanfon and Luyts's General Table of the Indies.* p. 451
22. *The W. Part of India, or the Empire of the Great Mogul, by Herm. Moll.* p. 454
23. *Sanfon and Luyts's Table of the Division of the Empire of the Great Mogul.* p. 501
24. *The East Part of India, or India beyond the River Ganges.* p. 653
25. *Sansons and Luyts's Tables of Ceylon and the Maldivy Islands.* p. 641
26. *Sanfon's Table of China.* p. 713
27. *Mr. Moll's newest Map of China* p. 714
28. *A Catalogue of the Families, Fighting Men, Annual Tribute, &c. of the several Provinces of China, from the Chinese Register.* p. 749
29. *A Table of all the Words that form the Chinese Tongue.* p. 764
30. *A Map of the principal Islands in the East-Indies, by Herm. Moll.* p. 792
31. *—of Japan, Nippon, &c. by the same.* 818

★ I

The General and Particular **T A B L E S** of
*Turkey in Asia; with Two extraordinary Ones relating
 to Ancient Judæa, according to those composed by Sanson,
 the Father and Son, Geographers to the French King,
 and improved by Mr. Luyts, Professor of Philosophy in
 the University of Utrecht.*

A General Table of **T U R K E Y** *in* **A S I A.**

TURKEY in
ASIA is divi-
 ded into Two
 Parts, viz.

The Western, in which are,	I. NATOLIA, in which are	Natolia, or Anatolia properly so call'd. Caramania Aladulia, Amasia
	II. The Islands over against Natolia, viz.	Tenedos, or Tenedo Lesbos, or Metelino Chios or Sio, Samos or Samo Icaria, or Nicaria Pathmos, Palmosa, or Patina Leros, or Lero Coos, Lango, or Isola Longa Astypalæa, or Stampalia Carpathus, or Scarpanto Rhodus or Rhodes, Cyprus.
	III. SYRIA, containing	Proper Syria Phœnicia Judæa, or the Holy Land
The Eastern, containing	I. DIARBECK, in which are	Proper Diarbeck Yerack, Yrach, or Hyerak-Arabi. Curdistan, or Arzerun
	II. TURCOMANIA.	

The particular Tables of **Western Turkey in Asia.**

I. NATOLIA, in which are	On the West Natolia strictly taken, where are these chief Cities, viz.	Pessinus, Chiangare, Ancyra, or Angourl Pompejopolis, Amisus, or Simiso Sinopoli, Sinope or Sinopi, Amastris or Samastro Heraclea Ponti, or Penderachi Claudiopolis, or Castromena, Scutari, Chalcedon, or Chalcedona Nicomedia, or Comidia

NATOLIA
continued.

On the West
NATOLIA
still.

Nicæa, Nice, or Isnich
Libyssa, Lebussa, or Gebise Prusa
Cyzicus or Cizico, Spiga or Spinga
Marmodo Parium, Pario, or Paradiso
Lampfacus, Lampfaco, or Lasipio
Abydus, Avido, or Aveo, the Dardanelles Castle
Dardanus, or Dardanello, Antandros, or St Dimitri
Trajanopolis, Adramyttum, Andramiti, or Landimitti
Pergamus or Pergamo, Troja or New Troy
Alexandria Troadis
Cotyæum, or Chiutaye
Midaium, or Midelli Gordium
Synnada or Sinnada, Apamia, Apami, or Apamiz
Cibotus, Hierapolis or Heraclea, Colossæ or Chonos
Laodicea or Laudichia, Philadelphia, Sardis or Sardo
Thyatira, Elea, Myrina, Cumæ or Cuma
Phocæa Fochia, or Foia Vecchia
Phocæa Nova, or Fochia Nova, Smyrna
Clazomenæ, Clazomane, Urta or Vourta, Erythræ or Eris-
three
Teos, Lebedus, Colophon
Ephesus or Efeso, Priene
Miletus, Milet, or Palatschia, Cnidus or Gnido
Ceramus, Halicarnassus, or Halicarnasse
Myndus or Mentese, Mylasa or Melasso, Mangresia
Antiochia or Antioch, Tachiali or Antioche
Aphrodisias, Aphrodisia, Apodofia or Apodisia
Stratonia or Stratonica, Caunus or La Rossa
Telmessus or Telmesse
Xanthus, Xante, Santo, or Sirbi, Patera
Andriacæ, or Gorante
Myra, or Strumita
Limyra, Olympus, Olympe, or Levillè
Phæelis, or Fionda

On the East
CARAMA-
NIA.

Attalia or Satalia, Sida or Side
Selgæ, Termesus or Termes
Aspendus, Perga or Pirgi
Seleucia, and Antiochia Pisidiæ
Lystra or Lystre, Isaura or Saura
Iconium or Cogni
Derbe or Dervase
Islenos, Selenus, Antiochia ad Tragum, or Antiochettæ
Anemurium, Anemora, or Stalemura
Seleucia Aspera or Seleschia, Corycus or Churco
Soli, or Soloe Palefoli

ALADU-
LIA.

Tarsus, Tarso, Teraffa, or Tersis
Mallus or Mallo
Issus, Lajazzo or Jajazzo, Adana or Adena
Metira, Marasch or Maraz
Melitene, or Malutiah

AMASIA.

Sebastopolis, or Suvas
Tochata, Tocat or Tocado
Cæsaria, Caifar, or Tifaria
Amasia, Trapezus, Trebifonda or Trebifonde

The principal Rivers of Natolia are,

Iris, or Casalmach
Halis, Otmigiceth, or Aly
Sangarius, Sangari, or Zagari
Cydnus, or Carusu
Xanthus, Sirbis or Sirbi
Mæander, or Mæandrus Madre
Granicus
Cayster or Caystrus, Carafou
Hermus or Sarabat, receiving the Pactolus
Caicus Girmastri, or Castri
Scamander, or Scamandro

} The Euxine or Black Sea
} The Mediterranean Sea.
} The Ægean Sea or Archipelago.
Which run into

II. The Islands over against Natolia are,

In the Ægean Sea or Archipelago,
Tenedos or Tenedo, Lesbos or Metelino
Chios or Scio, Samos or Samo
Icaria or Nicaria
Pathmos, Palmosa, and Patina
Leros or Lero
Coos, Lango, or Isola Longa
Astypatæa, or Stampalia
Carpathus, or Scarpanto
Rhodus or Rhodes.
Lindus or Lindo
Camirus or Ferachio
Rhodus or Rhodes
Paphos or Baffo
Amathus, Limisso, or Linisso
Leucosia or Nicosia
Cyprus.
Ceraunia or Cerines
Famagusta, Famagosta, or Famagouste
Salamis Constantia
Il-Porto Costanzo
Metelino.
Scio, Samo.
Lango.
Scarpanto.

PROPER SYRIA, in which are

On the North,
Samosata, or Schempsat
Aleppum or Aleppo
Alexandriola, Alessandretta, Alexandrette
Antiochia, Antioche, or Antioch
Laodicea, or Laudichia
On the South,
Apemia, Hama, Hamaz
Emessa, Hemz, Hams
Palmyra, Frayd, or Tamoze
Laodicea Scabiosa, or Laudiesfa.

III. SYRIA, containing

PHOENICIA, in which are

Inland Country,
Raalbeck
Damascus, or Scham
Tripolis or Tripoli of Syria
On the Coasts,
Berytus, Beyrut, Bayruth, Baruti, and Bern
Sidon or Sayd
Ptolemais, Sor or Tyr, Acre, Acri

JUDEA, in which are

In the Inland Country,
Nazareth or Nasra, Tiberias or Tabariyah
Bethsan, or Elbeyfan
Neapolis, Naplosa, or Naplouse
Jerusalem, Hebron, or Elkahil
On the Sea-Coasts,
Joppe, or Jaffa
Azotus, Alzete, or Alzote
Ascalon, or Scalona
Gaza, or Gazara

The General and Particular Tables of

The First Table of Ancient J U D Æ A.

I. J U D Æ A divided into Two Parts.

I. The Country beyond J O R D A N, in which were Two Tribes and a half.

I. The Tribe of REUBEN.

II. The Tribe of G A D.

The Half-Tribe of MANAS-SEH.

II. The Country on the other Side of J O R D A N, in which were Nine Tribes and a half.

I. The Tribe of NAPHTALI.

II. The Tribe of ASHER.

Lafah, Lafa, or Calliroe
 Kademoth, Cedemoth, or Jethson
 Mephaath or Mephaat, Baal-Meon or Beon
 Medabah, Medaba
 Efebona Heshbon, or Hesebon Eleale
 Jahasa and Jafa, Kirjath-Thaim, or Cariathaim
 Bamoth-Baal, Bethphog, or Phogor Mount
 Ashdoth-Pisgah, or Aledoth-Phaiga
 Pisgah, or Phafga Mount
 Nebo or Nabo Mount, Machærus or Macherus
 Livias and Libias, Bosor, Sethim
 Bethabara, Abilah or Abila, Bethjerimoth
 Sarathasar, Helon
 Dibon, Arder and Arnon, and Rabbath Moab
 Nabbatha or Nabata, Mennith
 Jazer or Jaser, Arnon, Mageth, Rogelin
 Mizpeth or Maspha, Rabbath or Rabba
 Ramoth-Gilead, or Ramoth-Galaad
 Casbon or Casphar, Thesba or Theba
 Dabir, Beth-Aron or Beth Aran, Succoth or Socoth
 Penuel or Phaniel, Mahanaim
 Ephron, Hippos, Gadara, Jabesh-Gilead, or Jabes Galaad
 Pella Gilead, or Galead Casphor
 Casphor, Kamon or Camon, Kedar or Cedar
 Jair, Edrai, Gamala, Gergefa or Gerafa
 Magdala or Magedan, Dalmanutha
 Julias, Corosaim, Corozaim, or Chorazin
 Sueta and Suetia, Gaulon, Adrach or Edrai
 Astaroth and Bazar, Theman, Bozra
 Antiochi, or the Valley of Antiochus
 Pharanx, Sogane, Argob, Nahamath or Naamath
 Selcha, Gessur, Seleucia, Aram, Gerson, Machati
 Abela, Marah, or Mara Auran
 Lais or Leshem, and Dau, and Paners, and Cæsarea Philippi
 Heleph, Reccath, Abela, and Abelmacha, or Abelmam
 Reblatha or Reblata, Asoreth Gentium
 Adami or Neceb, Jebnael, Lecum
 Capharnaum, or Capernaum
 Kadesh-Nephtalim, or Cerdes-Neptalim
 Arbells Magdalet, or Magdalet Horem
 Carthan, Sephet, Nephtalim, or Nephtalim
 Naafon, Bethshemeshor, Bethsemes
 Asor and Hasor, Kirjath-Thaim, or Cariathaim
 Hamon-Amothdor, or Hamoth-Dor
 Emath or Amath, Affedim Sez or Affedim
 Elkath or Elkah, Cana-Major
 Roob, Gabala, Cabul, Abdon and Abran
 Betheme h or Beth-Emer, Beth-Dagon
 Labanath, Sihor, Messal
 Acc and Acon, Ptolemais and Asaph

The Country on
the other Side
of Jordan con-
tinued.

III. The Tribe
of ZABU-
LON.

Zabulon, Cana-Minor, or Cana of Gallilee
Anathon or Hanathon
Kethron, Cetron, and Cheseleth Thabor
Bersabee or Bersabe, Semera or Semeron
Damna and Remon, Amtar, Noa
Dothaim, Dotaim, or Dothan
Bethulia, and Bethlehem of Zabulon
Amathar, Remmon or Remnon, which passes for Damna
Bethfaida, Magdalum Castle
Jotapata, Jotapatha, and Gethepher
Tiberias, and Genesareth
Japhie, Cartha, Legio
Cheseleth Thabor, Tabor, Saffa, and Saffra
Sephoris, Buria, Nazareth, Sarid
Naalol, and Cateth Nasalot
Gaba Sciaminum, and Ephra or Elpha
Mount Carmel, Mount Gilboa or Gelboe
Bethhemesh or Bethsemes

IV. The Tribe
of ISSA-
CHAR.

Aphraim or Hapharaim, Naym, Naïm, or Nain
Seon, Endor, Anaarath or Anaharath
Raboth, Dabereth or Dabbereth, Cesion or Cedess
Issachar or Isachar, Abez or Abes
Engannim, Ramoth or Jerimoth, Enhadda
Bethpheses, Cedess, Jezrael, Jaramoth
Shunem, Suna, and Sunen, Aphez or Aphek
Esdrelon, Casaloth
Nopheth, or Nophet Dor.
The Tower of Straton, or Cæsarea of Palestina
Capharnaum, Mageddo, Teblaan, Adadremmon
Gaber or Gaver, Geth-Remmon, and Balea and Jehlaam
Tanac and Thenach, and Thanac Aner

The Half-Tribe
of MANAS-
SEH.

Acrabata or Arabata
Bethseca or Besec
Bethsan or Scythopolis, Salem or Salim
Ennon, Besech or Bezek, Bethbera, Ephra
Alexandrium Castle, Abelmaula or Abelmehula
Thersa, Thebes, Nais
Machmeth, Machmetad, or Afer Machmad
Narbatha, Manath, Endor
Capharsalama, and Antipatris Galgal
Sarona, Gophna, Bethoron Upper
Hyrcaum Castle, Adarsa, Addus, Phanuel
Pharaton Samaria, the Royal Seat of the Kings of Israel, called
also Sebastii, and Sebastopolis
Bethelo or Sichem, and Sichar or Neapolis

V. The Tribe of
EPHRAIM.

Ebal, or Hebal Mount, Garizem Mount
Luza, Benith, Ennon, Thanathsele or Thanathsele
Jechmaan, Bethaven, Taphua, Ataroth, Addar
Janoe, Ataroth, Naaratha, Ephrem and Ephraim
Archiataroth or Arciataroth, Doch and Dagon
Mello, Geethremmon, Najoth, Ephron, Machmas
Silo, Ruma, Jephleti, Thamnat-Sara, or Thamnat-Sara
Gazer, Lydda or Lidda, Ramatha

The Country on
the other Side
of Judæa con-
tinued.

VI. The Tribe
of BENJA-
MIN.

Nebo, Helam, Masphat, Maspha, and Masphe
Nobe or Nob, and Anathoth, Amosa
Bethoron Lower, Gibeon or Gabaon
Gibeah or Gabaa, Rama, Anathoth, Gabaath
Beroth, Bethel, or Luza, Ai or Hay, Bethaven
Gilgal or Galgala, Lod, Hadid, Samaraim
Almon, Betharab or Betharaba, Jericho, Ophora
Sela, Heleph, Ophni, Jarephet, Bahurim, Recem
Bethera, Jerusalem, the Metropolis of Judæa, and the King-
dom of Judah
Gethsemani, Bethphage, Bethany or Bethanie.
Soco or Socoth, Emaus and Nicopolis, Bethsur and Bethsora
Mareth, Bethanath, Eglon, Ethan or Etham
Bezec or Bezeck, Bethlehem of Judah, and Ephrata
Thecua, Debera, Netophati
Segor or Zoar, and Tzohar, Adama, Seboim
Gomorrah or Gomorrah, Sodom, or Sodoma
Engaddi, the City of Salt, the Hill of Achilles
Cabseel, Eder, Jagur, Cina, Cerdes, Charmet
Carmel Mount, Maon, Ziph, Jota and Jura
Nebfan, Gabaa, Accain, Zanoë, Jucadan or Jucadem

VII. The Tribe
of JUDAH.

Hebron, the Royal Seat of King David for Seven Years
Jezrael, Gilo, Holon and Olon, Gosen, Anim
Hefron or Ezron, and Asor, Adar, Asemona
Asor-Nova or Asor-Noba, Samur, Jether
Jerimoth or Jarmuth, Keila, Ceila, or Cehila
Odollam or Adullam, Leemas, Naama
Beth-Dagon, Kirjath-Jearim, Cariathaim, and Cariathbaal
Aazar, Aasar, Asecha, Libnah or Lebna
Makkeedah or Maceda, Chesson
Lachis or Lachish, Bethshemesh or Bethshemes
Sacron, Sachron, and Sichron, Azotus, Asdod, and Ashdod
Accaron or Hecron, Gath or Geth
Joppe, Jaffa or Japha, Jamnia and Jabnia
Casphin, Mejajarcum or Mejajarcon
Arechon, Gethremmon or Getremmon

VIII. The Tribe
of DAN.

Bane, Thamna, Baalath or Balaath
Helon, Ajalon, Jud, Adjada, Modin
Ebrecon or Ebrece, Gedor, Nehel-Eschol
Saraa or Zara, Heirfemes, Jethela, Esthaol
Gabbathon, Gabathon, and Gibbethon
Bethlebaath, Sefenna
Ziklag, Siceleg, or Kiklag, Medemena, Selima
Ain and Aen, Remmon, Horma or Harma
Bethberai, Aserfual or Haserfual

IX. The Tribe
of SIMEON.

Assemon, Assergadda, Molada
Dabir, or Cariatsepher, Gerara
Bethull and Bathuel, and Cesil
Beersheba, Bersabee, and Sabee, and Basiothia
Anthedon, the San y Desert
Majuma and Majoma, Raphia
Rhinocorura, or Rhinocolura

The Second Table of Ancient JUDÆA.

III JUDÆA under the Romans divided into Six Parts.

On the hither Side of Jordan,	{	I. JUDÆA.	{ The Tribes of Benjamin, Judah, and Simeon The greater Part of the Tribe of Dan
		II. SAMARIA.	{ The Tribe of Ephraim, and the Half-Tribe of Manasseh
		III. GALILEE,	{ The Tribes of Issachar and Zabulon Part of the Tribe of Naphtali on the Sea of Galilee
Beyond Jordan,	{	Lower.	{ The most Part of the Tribe of Naphtali
		Upper.	{ The Tribes of Dan and Asher
On the South of Judæa,	{	IV. TRACHONITIS.	{ The Northern Part of the Half-Tribe of Manasseh
		V. PERÆA.	{ The Tribes of Gad and Reuben
	{	VI. IDUMÆA.	

The principal Rivers of Syria run into	The Dead Sea	Jordanis, Jordan or Jordain, receiving the Jabbok, Jabboc, or Jeboc
		Arnon, or Adramelech
		Kedron, or Cedron
	The Mediter-ranean Sea.	Kifon, Cifon, or Hahar-Afcalb
		Adonis
		Eleutherus, or Valania
		Orontes, or Almeimas

A particular Table of Eastern Turkey in Asia.

EASTERN TURKEY in ASIA divided into Two Parts.	{	I. DIAR- BECK, in which are	{	Diarbeck.	{	Orfa and Ourfa, Bit or Berygeon
						Rika and Raga, Karkise, Harran or Arran
						Diarbeckir or Diarbekir
						Asanchif and Asanchiuf
						Merdin, Gezere or Gezire, Mosul
						Nisibin and Nesbin, Tekrit
						Zab, Felougia or Feloguia, Cufa
						Balsara and Balsora, or Basra and Bosra
						Gorno, Vafet, and Wafith
						Bagdat and Bagdet
	{		{		{	Ninive
						Cherafoul, and Schehresul, or Schiahrazur
						Amadia or Amadie, Bitlis
						Salmastra Van Tadian
						Manuscut, Majafarickin, Sumischach
						Erzerum, Nacklivan, Karasbag
						Erivan, or Irvan Kars
	{		{		{	

A TABLE of the Countries lying between the Euxine and the Caspian Seas.

Between the Euxine and the Caspian Seas are	PROPER	Zachet	Zagan.
	GEORGIA,	Gaguetia or Gagheti,	
	in which are the Kingdoms of	and	
	MENGRELIA,	Carduelia or Carduel	Tephlis, the Capital of Georgia.
	in which are the Kingdoms of	Imereti or Imeretia	Cotatis.
		Guria or Guriel,	Varetri or Vartki, Azack, Bassachuch.
		and	
		Mengrelia—	Phasis or Fassa, Sebastopolis or Sebastopoli, S. Sophia.
	CIRCASSIA,	where there are only Villages.	
	COMANIA,	in which are the Towns of Tarku and Terki.	

Chief Towns.

ARABIA may be divided into Three Parts.	ARABIA FÆLIX, containing 7 Provinces,	Oman.	Calajata or Mascator.
			Calajare, Mascate, Sohar or Sochra.
			Orfacan or Orfacan, Corscan, Iquir.
			Nablan or Nablan Tabla, Femene or Femena.
			Mascalat, Sochar, Masfa.
			Mirabat, Syr or Sur.
			Calhat and Quelhat.
			Amanzerifdin.
		Sejer.	Alibinali, Guebelhaman.
			Pecher or Pechar.
		Hadramut.	Dofar, Fartach, Almacharan.
			Laghi, Aden, Zibit.
			Moua and Mocha, Marib.
		Tehama.	Dkafar or Jacseb, Sanaa.
			Saada, Hans Jacseb.
			Ziden and Giocda.
		Hagiaz.	Mecca, or La Mecque, Metropolis of Arabia.
			Baisat, Tajef, Giadila.
			Chaibar, Medina, Taref.
			Barn Nackel.
		Jamama.	Salamia, Jamama.
			Tima, Hadrama or Hadrama.
		Bahraim.	Bahraim, Asa or Ashsa, Chetta.
			Lassach and Labsa, Biscia.
			El Catif, Bahrein or Bahr, Hadanija.
			Anna Tangia.
		On the South,	Tsamma, Sukana, Anab.
		On the North,	Dalia, Rahabat, Sumiscakac.
		Far within	
		Land from the Red Sea,	Bufferet, Herat or Herac.
	ARABIA PETRÆA, in which lie	Upon or near the Red Sea,	Madia or Madran, El-Tor, Elian or Eilan.
			Faran.

ASIA

Antiqua et
NOVA



ATLAS GEOGRAPHUS:
OR, A COMPLEAT
System of Geography.
ANCIENT and MODERN.

CHAP. I.

ASIA in General.

LUYTS says, the Continent of *Asia*, from the *Egean* Sea on the W. to the Sea of *Eson* or *Jesso* on the E. reaches from Deg. 55 to 182 of Long. which agrees with *Sanfon's* Map. *Moll* begins it on the W. at the 46th Deg. of Long. *Luyts* says, That from S. to N. i. e. from *Ilhor* or *Ihor*, the most Southerly Town of *Chersonesus Aurea*, to the furthestmost Part of *Tartary*, it reaches from the 1st to the 72d, or, according to others, to the 74th Deg. of Northern Lat. wherein he agrees with *Moll*; but *Sanfon* carries it no further N. than 71. *Luyts* says, That its Islands which lie in the *Indian* Sea against *India* and *China*, reach to about the 11th Deg. of Southern Lat. wherein he agrees with *Moll*, and differs not much from *Sanfon*. *Cluverius* makes the Length of it from the *Hellespont* to *Malacca*, the further-

most Trading Town in *India*, 1300 German Leagues, and the Breadth betwixt the Mouth of the *Arabian* Gulph and the Promontory *Tabin* on the Streights of *Anian* 1220; so that he makes *Asia* but 5200 Italian Miles long; whereas *Moll* makes it 7920. According to the Jesuits of *Siam*, it lies betwixt the 47th and 160th Deg. of Long. so that Authors differ mightily in that Matter. The greatest Part of the Islands, and some Parts of the Continent, lie within the Torrid Zone; but the far greatest Part of the Continent lies within the Temperate Northern Zone, and the least Part of it in the Northern Frigid Zone, according to *Luyts*, who says, that *Asia* exceeds *Europe* and *Africa* in Extent.

Authors differ about the Etymology of the Name: Some of the *Greeks* derive it from *Asia* the Nymph, Daughter to *Oceanus* and

and *Tethys*, the Wife of *Japhet*: Others from *Asius*, Son to *Maneus* the *Lydian*; but *Bochart* and *Spanheim* derive it more probably from the *Phœnician* Word *Asi*, which signifies Middle, because *Asia* properly so called, or the great Peninsula, lies in the middle betwixt *Africa* and *Europe*. *Cællarius* observes, that the Name has not always been of the same Extent; for *Dionysius* in his *Periegesis*, understands by it the Third Part of the habitable World, and others meant only that now called *Lesser Asia*, which at last gave Name to the whole. The Ancients distinguish'd it into *Citerior* and *Uterior*, but differ'd in their Boundaries. *Strabo* calls the Peninsula *Asia Citerior*, but excludes from it *Cappadocia* and *Cilicia Campestris*. *Varro* includes *Ionis* and the Roman *Cilicia*. The Romans did afterwards bound *Asia Citerior* with Mount *Taurus*, which they sometimes called *Cis Taurum*, and *Intra Taurum*; and therefore *Scipio* told the Ambassadors of *Antiochus*, That they must quit all that Part of *Asia* on this Side *Taurus*; but what with respect to *Antiochus* and the Syrians was called *Intra Taurum*, was, with respect to the Romans, called *Ultra Taurum*.

Asia intra Taurum had that Mountain and the River *Halys* for its Boundary, was possessed by *Cresus*, and (according to *Herodotus*) inhabited by the *Lydi*, *Myſi*, *Maryandini*, *Chalybes*, *Paphlagonis*, *Bithyni*, *Iones*, *Cares*, *Dores*, *Æoles*, and *Pamphylii*. *Strabo* confirms this, and adds the *Phryges*, *Lycaones*, *Lyci*, *Epiſtetis*, *Troas*, and *Helleſpontia*.

The Romans call'd Part of this Country *Asia Propria*, without mentioning Mount *Taurus*; but Authors do not agree in the Description of it. *Pliny*, *Lib. 5. Cap. 27.* begins it at *Telmessus*. *Agrippa* divides it into Two Parts, one of 'em bounded by *Phrygia* and *Lycaonia* on the E. by the *Ægean* Sea on the W. *Egypt* on the S. and *Paphlagonia* on the N. He makes the Length of it 470, and the Breadth 320 Miles. The other Part he bounded on the E. by *Armenia Minor*; on the W. by *Phrygia*, *Lycaonia*, and *Pamphylia*; on the N. by *Pontica*; on the S. by the *Pamphylian* Sea, and made it 575 Miles long, and 325 broad; but this Division grew afterwards obsolete, and following Authors call'd the former Part *Asia Propria*, without taking Notice of the latter, *Tully* calls it simply *Asia*, *Lib. 11. Epist. 15.*

and seems to confine it to *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Caria*, and *Lydia*.

Archbishop *Usher*, in his *Asia Proconsularis*, confines the Name still within narrower Bounds by the Authority of the Scripture, where he thinks that *Lydia* only is meant by that Name. For this, he quotes *Acts 16. 6, 7.*, where 'tis said of *St. Paul* and his Companions, "When they had gone thro' *Phrygia*, " and the Region of *Galatia*, they were " forbidden by the Holy Ghost to preach " the Word in *Asia*. After they were " come to *Myſia*, they essayed to go into " *Bithynia*, but the Spirit suffered them " not; and passing by *Myſia*, they came " down to *Troas*:" From whence he says, *P. 38.* it may be observ'd, that *Greater Phrygia*, by which they went into *Galatia*, and *Myſia Olympea*, which join'd to *Bithynia* and *Helleſpontia*, in which was *Troas*, tho' they were each of 'em a Part of what the Romans called *Asia Propria*; yet they are expressly distinguished from *Asia* peculiarly so called, as perhaps was *Caria*, in which lay *Miletus*, *Acts 20. 16, 17.* The Author of the Book *De Locis Hebraicis in Apostolorum Actis*, adds immediately to the foregoing Words, but especially that Part where the City of *Ephesus* lies is called *Asia*. 'Tis doubted whether *Asia* mentioned in the *Apocalypse* be contain'd within the same Boundaries; yet the Archbishop thinks it is, because all those 7 Cities of *Asia* are by one Author or another reckon'd in *Lydia*, as *Pergamus* by *Xenophon*, *Lib. 7. Exped. Cyri.* *Sardes Philadelphia*, and *Thyatira* by *Ptolomy*, *Smyrna* and *Ephesus* by *Scylax Caryandensis*, and *Laodicea* by *Stephen of Byzantium*. But whether all those Writers did understand it of one and the same *Lydia* properly so called, is equally doubtful; for since *Lydia* is also taken for the Kingdom of the *Lydi*, which was of a larger Extent, 'tis more probable that it relates to the Roman Province, whose 7 Cities are enumerated, not that it had not several other considerable Towns, but because Christianity principally flourish'd in them.

There was another lesser Tract of Ground called by the Name of *Asia* about the River *Cayſtrus* and Mount *Tmolus*, where there's Mention of a Lake and a Town call'd *Asia*, as appears by *Homer, Iliad. B. Verse 461.*



Ἀσία ἐν Λευκῶνι, καὶ ὅτι ἀμφοὶ πρέσβη.
By Euripides Bacchis, Vers. 64.

Ἀσίας ἀπὸ γᾶς ἱερὸν Τιμῶλον.
By Virgil. Georg. Lib. i. Vers. 383.

Quæ Asia circum

Dulcibus in Stagnis rimantur prata Caystri.

Aeneid. 7. Vers. 700. de Cygnis.

Quam sese & pastu referunt, & longa canoros,
Dant per colla Modos, sonat Amnis & Asia longe,
Pulsa Palus. ———

Suidas in *Asia* says, the Three-string'd Harp was invented in *Asia*, a Town on *Imolus* in *Lydia*: But Authors are not agreed whether that great Tract of the World receiv'd its Name from this Town.

Strabo divides *Asia* into Five Parts: The First is betwixt the River *Tanais*, *Pontus* and the Ocean: The Second above the *Caspian* Sea as far as the *Scythians*, who border'd upon the *Indians*: The Third was *Media Armenia*, *Cappadocia*, and the Countries which lay betwixt them. The Fourth was that which lay on this Side the River *Halys*, and on this Side and beyond Mount *Taurus*, and lay in that Peninsula which is otherwise call'd *Asia intra Taurum*. The Fifth Part contain'd *India*, *Ariana*, and as far as the People that lay on the *Persian* Sea, the *Arabian* Gulph, the Sea of *Egypt*, and *Jesso*: But *Strabo* was not follow'd in this by others.

Herodotus divides *Asia* into Upper and Lower; the Upper was the Kingdom of the *Affyrians* about the River *Tigris*, and in *Media*, and the Lower about *Babylon*.

After Ages divided it into *Asia Minor* and *Major*. *Cellarius* says, this happen'd about the middle Ages, and that it was called *Anatolia*, now *Natolia*, because it lay Eastward from *Constantinople*.

Modern Authors bound *Asia* as follows; On the N. it has the *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Sea; on the E. the *Mare Eoum*, now call'd the Sea of *Jesso*, *Kaimachites*, or the Sea of *China*; on the S. with the Sea of *India*, properly so call'd, the *Arabian* Sea, and the Streights of *Babelmandel*; on the W. with the *Arabian* Gulph or the *Red Sea*, and the Isthmus which separates *Asia* and *Africa*, and lies betwixt the *Red Sea* and the *Mediterranean*, which, with the *Archipelago*, the *Hellepont* *Propontis*, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, the *Euxine* Sea, the *Bosphorus Cmimerius*, *Palus*

Maotis, and the lower Part of the River *Tanais*, with a Line from thence to the Mouth of the *Volga*, and from thence to the lower Part of the River *Oby*, divide it from *Europe*.

Asia has the Preference of the rest of the World, because Man was first created here, God made it the Seat of his peculiar People the *Jews*: It was the Place where our Saviour was incarnate, and compleated the Work of Redemption. Besides which, the first Foundations of Society, Government, Arts and Sciences of all Sorts, were laid here, and the rest of the World was peopled from hence. It was famous for the ancient Monarchies of the *Affyrians*, *Medes*, *Babylonians*, and *Persians*.

Some compare the Form of it to the Doge of *Venice's* Cap; some resemble it to a Saddle; and others, by cutting off the Peninsula's of the S. compare it to an Egg. The Climate varies much according to the Latitude. It abounds particularly with Rice, excellent Wine and Fruits, and even under the Torrid-Zone produces such noble and curious Fruits, as are not to be met with elsewhere. It affords likewise noble Spices, in such Quantity as furnishes most of the other Parts of the World, besides Plants, Simples, Drugs, Gold, Silver, Pearls, Precious Stones, Porcellane, Varnishes, Tapestries, Silk-Stuffs, Sables, other Furs, Cedar, Coffee, Incense, &c. of which in their proper Countries. We shall treat of their famous Mountains, Seas, Lakes, Rivers, Forrests, &c. as we come to them.

The People in general, the *Tartars* and those who live in the Mountains excepted, have always been accounted effeminate, given to Pleasure, Idleness, and Dissimulation, but are otherwise capable of Arts and Sciences, and of a good Complexion. They have always been noted for a servile Temper, and Fondness of Despotical Government; whence *Tacitus* took Occasion to say, *Suetus Regibus Oriens*.

For Religion, the greatest Part are *Mahometans* and *Pagans*. There are abundance of *Jews* among 'em, and the Christians are *Greeks*, *Papists*, and *Protestants*. Most of the latter are in the Dominions of the *Dutch*, who are the most powerful there of any *Europeans*. The *Papists* are in the Empire of *China*, the *Turkish* Dominions, and those of *Popish* Princes.

The general Languages are, *Arabian*, *Tartarian*, and *Chinese*. The *Japonefe* and *Armenian* are not of such a large Extent, tho' the latter be much us'd for Commerce in *Persia*, *Turkey*, &c.

Modern Authors differ very much in their Division of *Asia*. *Cluverius* divides it into 5 principal Parts; 1. *Tartary*. 2. *China*. 3. The *Indies*, and the adjacent Islands. 4. The Empire of the *Persians* or *Sophi's*, under which they include the particular Kingdom of *Armuzia* or *Ormus*. 5. The *Turkish* Empire.

Luyts takes Notice, that some divide it into the Continent and Islands. The Isles lie either in the *Mediterranean* and *Ægean* Sea on the Coast of *Asia Minor*, or in the *Indian* Ocean on the Coast of *China* and *India*. The Continent is divided into the S. and N. In the N. Part, betwixt the *Black* and the *Caspian* Sea, lie *Georgia*, *Comania* and *Circassia*, and likewise *Tartary* upon the Sea of the same Name. In the S. Part, as we go from E. to W. there lies on the *Indian* Ocean *China*, *India*, *Persia*, and *Arabia*; and on the *Mediterranean*, *Ægean*, and *Black* Seas, lie *Turkey* in *Asia*. Others again divide it into 5 vast Empires, viz. the *Turkish*, *Tartarian*, *Indian*, *Persian*, and *Chinese*. *Luyts* himself divides it into *Turkey* in *Asia*, the Coun-

try betwixt the *Black* and *Caspian* Seas, *Tartary*, *China*, the Islands on the Coast of *China* and *India*, *India* it self, *Persia*, and *Arabia*.

Reiskius, in his Notes on *Cluverius*, divides it, 1. Into the *Turkish* Empire, which is very large. 2. Into the *Moscovite* Empire, which reaches thro' the *Tartars* and the Northern Parts of *Asia* *Lucomoria* *Tingæsa*, and many other Places. 3. Into the *Tartar Chinese* Empire, which, if we believe *Kircher*, is the largest of all. 4. The *Indian* Empire of the Great Mogul descended from the *Tartars*. 5. The *Persian*. Besides these, there are many *Indian* Kingdoms in the Islands and Continent, such as *Kunkam*, *Narchsinga*, *Malabar*, *Pegusia*, *Japan* *Zeitom*, *Sumatra*, *Bantam*, &c. besides Kingdoms subject to the *Portuguese* and *Spaniards*, with the *Philippine* Islands, and a large Tract of Land subject to the *Dutch* and their *East-India* Company. He reckons also the following remarkable Principalities; 1. Of the *Georgians*; 2. of the *Arabian* Clans or Tribes; 3. of the *Drusi*; 4. of the *Christians* in Mount *Lebanon*; 5. of *Sidon*; besides other People who have preserv'd their Liberty under the *Turkish* and *Indian* Empire.

C H A P. II.

T U R K E Y in A S I A.

WE begin with this because it lies next to *Europe*, and continues the Account of the far greatest Part of the Gr. Seignior's Dominions which we began there. *Luyts* bounds it on the N. with the *Euxine* Sea and *Georgia*, on the E. by *Persia*, on the S. by *Arabia*, on the W. by *Egypt*, Part of the *Mediterranean*, the *Ægean* Sea or *Archipelago*, *Hellespont* or the Streights of *Gallipoli*, *Propontis* and the *Bosphorus* *Thracius*, or Streights of *Constantinople*. He places it betwixt the 30th or 31st and the 45th Deg.

of Northern Lat. But if we take in the *Arabia's*, as *Cluverius* does *Turkey* in *Asia*, it reaches from 14 Deg. 48 Min. to 45 N. Latitude, and betwixt 46 and 82 Long.

The Soil produces whatever is necessary for Life, and abounds with Corn, Fruits, the best sort of Wine, Saffron, Cotton, Silver, Copper, Iron, Chrystal and Allum; but a great Part of it lies uncultivated, because of the Severity of the *Turkish* Government; so that this Country, which was formerly so beautiful, rich, fruitful, and populous, is in many Places desert, having



The North Part of
TURKEY in ASIA
Containing ASIA MINOR,
ARMENIA, SYRIA, DIAR-
BECK, IRAC-ARABICK &c.
By H. Moll, Geographer.



suffer'd much by Earthquakes and Plagues, as well as by the Tyranny of their Sovereigns; yet there are still a great Number of Cities and rich People in the Country. The most considerable Part of it is that which lies along the Coast, where there are many Trading Towns; of which we shall give an Account in the respective Divisions of the Country.

The People of *Turkey* in *Asia*, says *M. Du Plessis*, are much given to Sensuality and Idleness, are for the most Part *Mahometans*,

with a considerable Mixture of *Jews*, but more of *Greeks*; and in the Trading-Towns there are *Papists* and *Protestants*.

Luyts divides *Turkey* in *Asia* into W. and E. The W. lies betwixt the River *Euphrates* and the *Mediterranean* and *Ægean* Sea. The E. lies betwixt the same River and *Persia*. In the W. Part of this Division lies *Natolia*, with the Islands on its Coast and *Syria*; and in the E. Part lie those Countries now called *Diarbeck* and *Turcomania*.

CHAPTER III.

N A T O L I A,

IS by some call'd *Anatolia* and *Anatole*, and by the *Turks* *Nadula*; all which signify its Eastern Situation from *Europe*, altho' it lies the farthest W. of any Part of *Asia*, and is that formerly known by the Name of *Asia Minor*. It lies in Form of a Peninsula, bounded by the *Mediterranean* on the S. on the W. by the *Ægean* Sea, *Hellepont*, *Propontis*, and *Bosphorus Thracius*; on the N. by the *Euxine* Sea; on the E. by *Armenia* or *Turcomania*, where the upper Part of the River *Euphrates* is its Boundary for a great Way. Then 'tis bounded by Mount *Amanus* in *Syria*, by some called the Watery Mountain, because of the Fountains and Rivulets it abounds with, and by others the Mountain of *Scanderoon*, because that City stands at the Foot of it. The Isthmus by which this Peninsula is join'd to the Continent is, according to *Sanfon*, from *L' Ajazzo* at the Bottom of the *Mediterranean*, to *Trebizond* on the *Black Sea*, above 400 Miles broad; and the greatest Length from the *Dardanelles* to the River *Euphrates* is about 720 Miles. He places it betwixt the 35th and 34th Deg 24 Min. N. Lat. and betwixt Long. 55 and 71; but *Cluverius*, according to his Map, makes the Isthmus only 360 Miles broad. He says, it contain'd formerly the Countries of *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Pontus*, *Bi-*

thynia, *Asia Minor*, *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, and *Cilicia*.

Luyts says, that Modern *Natolia* is divided into *Natolia*, *Caramania*, *Aladulia*, and *Amasia*; the first to the W. and the rest to the E. *Natolia* properly so called, which lies next to *Europe*, contains about the Half of *Natolia*, and extends from the *Euxine* to the *Mediterranean*, as *Caramania* and *Amasia* on the E. the *Archipelago*, the *Hellepont*, *Propontis*, and *Bosphorus Thracius*; on the W. and is divided into 14 Jurisdictions, govern'd by *Sangiaes*: *Natolia Proper* was formerly divided into *Galatia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, with *Asia Minor* properly so call'd, which lay to the S. and the rest to the N. but we chuse rather to follow *Cluverius*, because his Map shows the Situation of those Countries.

C A P P A D O C I A,

He says, lay in the N. E. Corner of the Peninsula, having the *Euxine* Sea on the N. Part of *Armenia Minor* on the E. *Galatia* on the W. and *Cilicia* on the S. It contains at present the Districts of *Genecb*, *Suvas*, *Anadole*, and *Amasia*.

Its remarkable Rivers are, 1. *Iris*, now *Irio*, which flows from Mount *Argæus*, and runs by the Town *Amasia* into that Part of the

the *Euxine*, which is call'd the *Cappadocian Sea*. 2. *Thermodon*, or *Thermodoon*, which falls into the *Euxine Sea* betwixt *Themiscyra* on the W. and *Polemonius* on the E. *Cellarius* divides *Cappadocia* into *Pontica* and *Cappadocia Propria* or *Magna*, by others call'd *Cappadocia ad Taurum*. *Cluverius* says, *Cappadocia* contain'd the following Countries or Districts, viz. *Lycaonia*, *Themiscyrene*, *Zelitica*, *Carmanene*, *Gargaraufene*, *Gargauritis*, *Antiochene*, *Tyanis*, and the *Heniochi*, a great People, subdivided into many lesser Denominations. *Cellarius* says, it was divided into 10 Jurisdictions, 5 of which lay near Mount *Taurus*, viz. *Melitene*, *Cataonia*, *Cilicia*, *Tyanitis*, *Isauritis*; and the other 5 lay more remote from that Mountain under obscure Names, for which we refer to him.

The noted Towns in this Country, according to *Cluverius*, were, 1. *Comana Pontica*, distinguished from *Comana* in *Armenia*. It lies on the River *Iris*, about 82 Miles E. from *Neo-Cæsarea*, is commonly called *Com*, and by the Inhabitants *Tabackzan*.

2. *Neo-Cæsarea*, on the River *Lycus*, which falls into the *Iris* a little below it, about 30 Miles S. W. from *Amasia*, at the Conflux of those two Rivers. Buno on *Cluverius* says, some think it to be the Town now call'd *Tocato*; but there being a Town on the *Lycus* call'd *Niesara*, which retains Part of the ancient Name, he rather thinks that to be the Place which was famous for the Birth of *Georgius Neo-Cæsariensis*, who, for his great Learning, was call'd *Trismegestus*. *Luyts* says, 'tis a large and neat Town, with a Castle, and gives Name to the District.

3. *Sebastia*, call'd also *Sebaste*, and by the Vulgar *Saustia*, near Mount *Argæus*, about 80 Miles W. from the Frontiers of *Armenia Minor*, Lat. 40. 20. 'Tis suppos'd to be that now called *Suvas*, a large and neat Town, the Seat of a Sangiac, and Capital of a District.

4. *Dio Cæsarea*, now *Tisaria*, which lies in the Inland Part of the Country, about 160 Miles S. W. from *Sebastia*, and 95 S. from *Neo-Cæsarea*.

5. *Maza*, now *Cæsarea*, call'd the Metropolis of *Cappadocia*, and is by the present Inhabitants called *Tisaria* and *Gaisar*. It lies on the River *Mela* or *Gansui*, at the Foot of Mount *Argæus*, about 93 Miles S. E. from

Neo-Cæsarea. *Basilus Magnus* was formerly Bishop of this Place. *Pausanias* was likewise a Native of *Cæsarea*, who was the Author of Ten Books still extant, describing the State of ancient and flourishing *Greece*; wherein he has comprehended the Situation of Towns and Places, together with many *Greek Antiquities*, and whatever else was remarkable in *Greece*, to the great Advantage of those who study *Philology* and *History*; but since, by declaiming after the Manner of the *Cappadocians*, he made long Syllables short, and short long: He was compared to a Cook who dress'd good Meat with bad Sauce.

6. *Iconium*, now *Cogni* or *Gogni*, the Capital of *Lycaonia*. It is a large well-inhabited Town, and the Seat of a *Turkish Governor*. It lies about 82 Miles S. W. from *Dio-Cæsarea*. In this Country lay also *Derbe* and *Lystra* mention'd in the *Acts*, where a great Number of *Jews* and *Gentiles* were converted by *St. Paul*, and at the latter he healed a lame Man. *Derbe* lies 20 Miles S. from *Iconium*, and *Lystra* about 50 Miles W. from it.

7. *Laranda*, still of the same Name, lies near Mount *Taurus*, about 32 Miles E. from *Derbe*, near *Tyana*, now *Tiana* or *Tiagna*, betwixt *Sassena* and *Faustinopolis*, about 77 Miles E. from *Iconium*, is noted for the Birth of *Apollonius Tyanæus* the Philosopher and great Impostor, whose Life is wrote by *Philostratus*.

8. *Trapezus*, now *Trabifonde*, *Trebisonia*, or *Tarabosan*, was reckon'd the chief Town of *Cappadocia*, on the Sea, in the N. E. Corner of the Country, at the Bottom of a Bay, about 170 Miles E. from the Mouth of the River *Iris*, and 250 N. E. of *Neo-Cæsarea*. It lies at the Foot of a Mountain, has a capacious Harbour, and was the Seat of the Emperors of *Trebisonda* when the *Greek Empire* was subdivided, as we mention'd before. It was taken by the Sultan *Mahomet* the 2d about 1460 or 1461. It is now the Seat of a *Turkish Governor*, and Capital of its District.

9. *Amasia*, on the River *Iris*, about 30 Miles N. E. from *Neo-Cæsarea*, at the Conflux of the *Lyens* and *Iris*. It is noted for being the Birth-Place of *Strabo* the Geographer. The *Turks* call it *Amnasen*. *Luyts* says it is a large Town, the Capital of its District,

District, and the Seat of a Governor. Buno on Cluverius says, the *Amazons* lay in this Part of the Country, whose Queen *Penthesilea* came to see *Alexander the Great*; some think they possessed all *Cappadocia Magna* which lay about Mount *Taurus*; and the other which was called *Cappadocia Pontica*, or *Pontus*, was, according to *Onkelos*, the *Gaphthorim* of the *Hebrews*. This Country also bred good Horses; from whence *Dionysius* the *African* terms the *Cappadocians*, *Ἀντιπαραίπποισιν*, good Horsemen. *Strabo* says, the *Cappadocians* accounted the Honour of Priesthood next to the Royal Dignity. They are reckoned Lyers and Deceivers by Writers, as the *Cilicians* and People of *Crete*, from whence came the Proverb, *Τεία καὶ πτα καί τιςα*. It is also remarkable concerning their Genius and Nature; that when they were in a State of Freedom they begged it off from the *Romans*, asserting, That they had rather live under Kings than bear Liberty any longer.

10. *Nazianzum* lay also in this Country, about 27 Miles S. W. from *Cæsarea*, famous for the Birth of *Gregory Nazianzen*, who, for his great Skill in Divinity, was by Way of Eminence call'd the Divine.

11. *Nisa*, *Nissa*, or *Nyssa*, now *Nisi*, lies in the Confines of *Armenia* and *Cappadocia*, noted for the Birth of *Gregory Nissene*, Brother to *Basilus*, both of them great Divines.

12. *Issus*, now *L' Ajazzo*, lies on the S. E. Corner of this Country, at the Bottom of the Gulph call'd *Issicus Sinus*, in the Confines of *Syria*, near Mount *Amanus*. *Luyts* says, 'tis a well inhabited Town with a good Harbour; and is noted for the Defeat of *Darius* in its Neighbourhood by *Alexander the Great*.

13. *Anadole*, a Division of this Country, from whence the Whole was call'd *Anatolia*, lies on the E. Side of Mount *Ægeus*.

14. *Antiochene*, another Division of the Country, lies on the W. Side of the River *Gansui*, or *Molas*. The District call'd *Tyanis*, lies S. from *Antiochene*, and *Catonia* S. from that. The District call'd *Gargarausene*, lies N. from *Anadole*; and Mount *Argæus*, and *Carmanens*, and *Gargauretis*, lie W. from that. *Zelitica* lies N. E. from *Gargarausene*, on the Frontiers of *Armenia Minor*. *Sivas* and *Genech* lie N. from that, *Amasia* lies W. from

them, and *Pontica* lies N. from all of 'em, upon the *Mare Ponticum*. *Themiscyrene*, a Sub-division of *Pontica*, lies on the Coast of the *Mare Ponticum*; and the Town *Themiscyra*, now *Onitrio*, lies near the Coast, 140 Miles W. from *Trebisond*. *Luyts* says, that most of the N. Part of *Cappadocia* is now call'd *Amasia*.

G A L A T I A,

Lies W. from *Cappadocia*, has the *Mare Ponticum* on the N. *Pamphylia* on the S. *Asia Minor*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, on the W. It had its Name from the *Gauls* (says *Cluverius*) who came hither from *Italy* after the Burning of *Rome*. It was also call'd *Gallia Græcia* and *Græco Gallia*, because the *Greeks* mix'd with the *Gauls*. 'Twas before their Time inhabited by the *Phrygians* and *Paphlagonians*, from whence the Northern Part of the Country still retains the Name of *Paphlagonia*. In this Part, especially towards the Coast, lived the *Heneti*, from whence came the *Veneti* in *Italy*. The S. Part was call'd *Isauria*, where lay the Town *Isaure*, afterwards called *Claudiopolis* and *Isauropolis*, about 27 Miles S. W. from *Lysra*. Part of *Pisidia* did also lie here, and the other Part in *Pamphylia*. The ancient Inhabitants of *Galatia*, according to their Subdivisions, were, 1. The *Chalybes*, who lay E. from the *Heneti*. 2. The *Troemi*, who lay S. from the *Heneti*. 3. The *Tectosagæ*, or *Gauls*, who lay S. from the *Troemi*. 4. The *Tolistobogii*, who lay S. from the *Tectosagæ*. 5. The *Voturi*, who lay S. E. from the *Tolistobogii*. 6. The *Ambiani*, who lay S. from the *Voturi*. 7. The *Proserlimitæ*, who lay S. W. from the *Ambiani*. 8. The *Byceni*, who lay W. from the *Proserlimitæ*. 9. The *Orondici*, who lay S. from the *Byceni* and *Proserlimitæ*. The Country is now divided into *Roni* which lies on the N. and *Chiancare* which lies on the S. *Cellarius* says, that the *Greeks* call'd this Country sometimes *Gallia Parva*, to distinguish it from *Gaul* in *Europe*. He says, the *Voturi* and *Ambiui*, whom *Cluverius* calls *Ambiani*, and the *Tolistobogii* whom *Livy* calls *Tolistoboi*, and the *Trocani* whom *Cluverius* calls *Troemi*, and the *Proserlimitæ*, or *Proserleminitæ*, and *Bezæni*, might be Divisions of the *Gauls*.

Their

Their chief Towns were, 1. *Ancyra*, a noble City in *Livy's* Time, which was repair'd by *Augustus*, as appears by several Medals in *Gruterus* and others. 'Tis now call'd *Anguri* and *Angara*, is the chief Town of the Country, stands on a high Ground, was formerly an Archbishop's See, and famous for a Council. It is now the Seat of the *Turkish* Governor. It is still a Place of good Note, famous for the Victory of *Pompey* over *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and for that of *Tamerlane* the *Tartar* over *Bajazet* the *Turk*. It lies on the River *Chaseliranach*, about 150 Miles W. from *Neocæsarea*, and 100 S. from the Coast of the *Mare Ponticum*. The *Romans* had their Quarters here, as appears by *Livy*; and being deluded in a Conference by the *Gauls*, march'd from hence against them, fought them on Mount *Magaba*, killed 8000 of 'em in the Flight, and forced the rest beyond the River *Halys*.

2. *Teuthrania*, near the Promontory *Carambis*, on the Coast of the *Black Sea*. *Cluverius* places it about 50 Miles E. from *Carambis*. Some think it to be that now call'd *Tripoli*, or *Tribicelli*.

3. *Sinope*, formerly the Residence of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and noted for the Birth of *Diogenes* the *Cynick* Philosopher. It lies near the Coast of the *Black Sea*, 76 Miles E. from *Teuthrania*. *Strabo* places it in the Entrance of a *Peninsula*, and says, it had a good Harbour on both Sides of it: He thinks it was built by the *Argonauts*, but it was afterwards enlarged by the *Milesians*, from whence its Original is ascribed to them. It grew so powerful, that it was reckon'd the chief Town of *Pontica*; and *Cerasus*, now *Cherifonda*, and *Trapezus*, or *Trebisond*, were Colonies rais'd from it. Being afterwards taken by *Pharnaces* King of *Pontus*, it became the Royal Seat of his Successors; and when *Mithridates* was defeated by the *Romans*, they established a Colony here. The *Greeks* now call it *Simizos*, and the *Turks*, *Amid* or *Hemid*. *Ptolomy* call'd it *Amisus*, and *Pliny*, *Amisum*; but *Tully*, *pro Lege Manilia*, cap. 8. makes *Sinopi* and *Amisum* Two Towns. 'Tis the See of a *Greek* Bishop, and has Copper Mines in the Neighbourhood, which is a great Rarity in *Asia*. *Mithridates Evergetes* was killed here by his own Subjects; and

Eupatra, the last *Mithridates*, was born and buried here.

4. *Amisus Therma* was a principal Town in the Country of the *Chalybes*, and lay betwixt the two Mouths of the River *Halys*, about 50 Miles S. E. from *Sinope*, but that rather belongs to *Cappadocia Pontica*. It was formerly call'd *Amisum Liberum*, but when subdued by the Kings of *Pontus* they built a Palace there, and made it one of their Places of Residence. When 'twas taken by *Lucullus*, he restored it to its Liberty. *Cellarius* places it a pretty Way E. from the Mouth of *Halys*.

5. *Pessinus*. *Cluverius* says, it was likewise call'd *Dindymene* and *Cybele*, because the Image of the latter was worshipped here. It lay 30 Miles N. from Mount *Dindymus*, and 37 S. from *Ancyra*. *Strabo* says, it was one of the greatest Emporiums in that Country, and call'd *Dindymene*, because it lay near the Foot of that Mountain, according to *Strabo*, tho' it be now otherwise represented in the Map.

The most remarkable Mountains in this Country were, 1. *Oglasis*. *Ptolomy* calls it *Olyssa*, and says, it was of difficult Access. *Strabo* calls Part of it *Sandaracurgium*, and says, Part of it was hollow by the continual digging of Mines from it. The River *Parthenius* has its Rise from hence. 2. *Dindymus*, or *Dindyma*, so call'd because of its two Tops. It was consecrated to *Cybele*, the Mother of the Gods. The River *Sangarius* takes its Rise here. It is also called *Dindymi* and *Dindyma* in the Plural, because there were more of them than one; and tho' there were but two properly so call'd, that Name was given to other Mountains and Hills where *Cybele* was worship'd, which perhaps may explain to us why *Pessinus* was said to be near the Foot of Mount *Dindymus*, tho' it be at a considerable Distance from the Mountain properly so called. *Cluverius* thinks it to be also call'd *Celanorum Tumulus*, tho' in his Map that lies nearer *Lystra*, 70 Miles S. from Mount *Dindymus*.

3. *Carambis*, a great Promontory, with a Town of the same Name. It lies on the N. Coast, and runs a considerable Way, according to *Strabo* and *Cellarius*, into the *Mare Ponticum*; but it is otherwise represented in *Cluverius's* Map.

Halys is the most considerable River of this Country, rises near the Foot of Mount *Taurus*, runs by *Cataonia* and *Cappadocia*, according to *Pliny*, falls into the *Mare Ponticum* by two Mouths, and is famous for a dubious Answer given by an Oracle to *Cræsus*, who was told, That if he passed that River, he should consume a great deal of Wealth, which he took to be meant of that of his Enemies; but the Event prov'd it to be his own. According to *Cellarius's* Map, *Halys* rises near *Nazianzum*, a great Way N. from Mount *Taurus* and *Cataonia*.

Cellarius takes Notice, that *Pompeiopolis* was once a considerable Town in this Country; that *Ptolomy* mistakes when he places it in the S. Part near *Ancyra* in *Galatia*, and that it lay betwixt the Towns *Gangra* and *Sinope*, within 27 Miles of the latter, and was afterwards a Bishop's See.

PONTUS and BITHYNIA.

Cluverius says, they were formerly two Countries, but afterwards became one Province. *Pontus* lies to the E. and *Bithynia* to the W. They are bounded on the N. by the *Mare Ponticum*, on the S. by *Asia Minor*, on the W. by the *Propontis*, and on the E. by *Galatia*. *Cellarius* says, That *Pontus*, or *Regio Pontica*, was a very large Country, reach'd from the River *Halys* as far as *Colchis*, and receiv'd its Name from the *Pontus Euxinus*, along which it lay. *Pliny* and *Ptolomy* join it with *Cappadocia*, but *Strabo* more rightly divides them; for *Pontus* possess'd by *Mithridates*, and *Pontus* enjoy'd in *Cappadocia* by *Ariarthes*, were separated by vast Mountains that run parallel to *Taurus*. It was by these Mountains that *Cicero Pro Archia*, Cap. 9. says, *Pontus* was encompassed. Betwixt them lay the Kingdom of *Mithridates*, which was small at first, but he enlarg'd it by degrees. *Ptolomy* divides this Coast into Three Parts, as it was under the Roman Empire; the W. Part of which he calls *Pontus Galaticus*, the E. *Pontus Cappadocius*, and the Middle *Pontus Polemoniacus*. 'Tis the W. Part which we now describe. *Cluverius* divides it into the Countries of *Bogdomanis* and *Timonitis*. *Bogdomanis* lay on the S. towards *Phrygia Major*, and *Timonitis* on the N. He says, the ancient People were the *Chalcedonii*, who lay on the W.

Part; the *Mariandyni*, who lay on the E. the *Caucones*, who lay in the Middle; and the *Zygiani*, who lay on the S.

Their chief Towns were, 1. *Chalcedon*, a very ancient City, suppos'd to have been built about 148 Years after *Rome*. It lies near the *Bosphorus Thracius*, almost over against *Constantinople*. *Pliny* says, it was formerly call'd *Procerastis*, afterwards *Colbusa*, and then the Town of the Blind, because the *Megarenses*, when they first came into those Parts, built a Town here, and had not Judgment enough to perceive that the Place where *Byzantium* stands was a much nobler Situation; and hence it came to pass, say *Strabo* and *Tacitus*, that when the Founders of *Byzantium* consulted the Oracle of *Apollo* to know where they should fix, it bid them chuse their Seat over against that of the Blind Men. 'Twas here that *Cotta*, Governor of *Bithynia*, hid himself during the War with *Mithridates*; and *Nudus*, Admiral of the Roman Navy, retir'd hither after the same Prince had defeated him by Land. This City is famous for the 4th General Council against the *Eutychians* in 451, at which Time it was dignify'd to be a Metropolis, as appears by the Summary added to the 2d Book of the Transactions of that Synod: Therefore *Heracles* gives it the Precedency of all the Towns in *Bithynia*. The Name is writ *Χαλκηδών*; in Medals, *ΚΑΛΧΗΔΟΝΙΩΝ*, or *ΚΑΛΧΑΔΟΝΙΩΝ*. — *Spanheim de Usu Numismatum* thinks the true Name to be *Καλκιδών*. *Thevenot* says, 'tis now a Village of 1000 or 1200 ruinous Houses. The Greeks have their Worship here in the Remains of the Church of *St. Euphemia*; and there are still some fine Buildings and strong Fortifications left. It had formerly Temples for *Venus* and *Apollo*, and afterwards many Christian Churches. From this Town the Streights are called *Fretum Chalcedonium*, as well as *Bosphorus Chalcedonicus*. Some confound it by Mistake with *Scutari*, from which it lies at a small Distance.

2. *Nicomedia*, or *Comidia*, now *Nicor*, near the S. E. Branch of the *Propontis*, about 70 Miles S. E. from *Chalcedon*, remarkable for the Baptism of *Constantine the Great*. *Thevenot* says, That, next to *Constantinople*, it has the pleasantest Situation of any City in the World. It stands at the Bottom of a Bay,

and runs up the Side of a Hill, which abounds with Fountains, Fruit-Trees, Vineyards, and Corn. Their Garden-Fruits are extraordinary, and their Melons as good as any in the World. Here are many Remains of Antiquity, and it was named from *Nicomedes* K. of *Bithynia*, who enlarg'd it. It is famous for the Death of *Hannibal*, and great Numbers of Martyrs. The *Turks* call it *Ismit*. It contains about 30000 Inhabitants, says *Thevenot*, viz. *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Jews* and *Turks*; tho' *Buno* says, it is now almost desart. Their Trade is Silks, Cotton, Wool, Linen-Cloth, Fruits, Earthen and Glass Ware, which makes it a Place of considerable Trade. It has many *Greek Churches*, and fine *Mosques*, neat Inns, and Market-Places. Most of the Ships which belong to *Constantinople* are built here; but they are sorry Artists at it. *Cellarius* says, it was the Metropolis of *Bithynia*, and that it was anciently call'd *Astacus* by some, and the neighbouring Bay *Astacenus Sinus*. Others say, it was call'd *Olbia*, which *Cellarius* thinks lies betwixt the Ruins of both; and hence the Bay was also call'd *Olbianus*. *Dioclesian* liv'd here, as did *Constantine the Great* while *Constantinople* was building. On the Right Side of the Bay there's a Medicinal Fountain, much frequented by the *Greeks* and *Turks* for all Diseases.

3. *Apamea*, vulgo *Apami*, now *Myrlea*. It was anciently a Roman Colony, and lies on the S. Side of the Bay, which *Cluverius* calls *Astacenus Sinus*, about 60 Miles S. W. from *Nicomedia*.

4. *Heraclea*, a Town of the *Mariandyni*, built, says *Mela*, by *Hercules*, on the Shore of the *Black Sea*, in that Place where *Panderafchi* now stands, about 92 Miles N. E. from *Nicomedia*. It was a Colony of the *Megarinses*, near the Peninsula or Promontory *Acherusia*, where the Poets say *Hercules* descended into Hell to fetch up *Cerberus*. It was anciently under Tyrants, but recover'd its Liberty, was afterwards subdu'd by *Mithridates*, and then by the *Romans*, who made it a Colony. *Mela* speaks of the *Acherusian Cave* near this City, which the Poets fancy'd to be a Passage to Hell. There are several other Towns of this Name elsewhere

5. *Nicea*, *Nichor*, *Nichea*, *Nice*, now *Isnik*, near the *Ascania Palus*, according to

Strabo; but *Thevenot* makes it a Bay. *Cluverius* gives it a Communication with the *Astacenus Sinus* by the River *Ascanius*. It lies at the E. Side of that Bay or Lake, about 37 Miles S. E. from *Nicomedia*. It was anciently call'd *Antigonia*, founded by *Antigonius*, finish'd by *Lysimachus*, and call'd *Nicea* from his Wife. Medals were coin'd here in Honour of *Domitian*, by which it appears this Town had the Precedency of the rest of the Province. It was famous for the first General Council held against *Arius* in 325. *Thevenot* says, 'tis almost square, stands at the Extremity of a Bay in a fine Plain, and on the N. E. has a Ridge of Hills, which abound with Wood, Wines, Fruit, and Fountains. 'Tis encompassed with Walls full of round Towers, and had a Cover'd-way that ran by them, which is now ruin'd. It is pretty large, contains about 10000 Inhabitants, *Greeks*, *Jews*, and *Turks*, and its Streets are neat. They trade to *Constantinople* with Corn, Fruit, Cotton, fine Cloth, &c. Here are many Remains of Pagan and Christian Antiquities, but much defac'd by the *Turks*. *Philistion* the Comedian is said to have died here with immoderate Laughter.

6. *Prusias*, or *Prusa*, now *Bursia*, at the Foot of Mount *Olympus*, about 65 Miles S. W. from *Nicomedia*. *Buno* says, it was built by King *Prusia*, whose Son, instead of Teeth, had Semi-Circles of solid Bone in his Gums. It was the Seat of the Kings of *Bithynia*. *Dion*, Son to K. *Prusia*, was for his Eloquence called *Chrysostomus*. There is extant of his an Oration, wherein he says, *Ilium* or *Troy* was never taken by the *Greeks*. 'Twas noted for the Residence of *Asclepiades* the Physician. *Cellarius* says, this *Prusia* near Mount *Olympus* was built by a King of that Name, who made War with *Cræsus* or *Cyprus*, and not by *Prusia*, Son to K. *Zela*, who liv'd a great while after, according to *Strabo*. He says, That *Pliny* confounds this *Prusa* with *Prusias*, when he says, *Lib. 5. Cap. ult.* that *Prusa* was built by *Hannibal*, at the Foot of Mount *Olympus*; since it appears by *Strabo*, as above quoted, that this Town was built in the Time of *Cræsus*, with whom *Stephanus* agrees. The *Prusias*, towards the Building of which *Hannibal* contributed, lay, according to *Cellarius*, near the Sea, on the Bay call'd *Gion*, about

about 40 Miles N. W. from *Prusa*, near Mount *Olympus*, at the Mouth of the River *Ascanius*. The other Town of that Name lies on the River *Hippius*, which falls into the *Euxine* Sea, and is about 50 Miles N. E. from *Nicomedia*, and 43 from *Nicea*. The Ottoman Emperors usually kept their Court at *Bursa* before they settled in *Europe*. 'Tis still one of the best Towns in those Parts, and defended by a Castle on a Hill. *Spon* and *Wheeler* give the following Account of it, That the Avenues to the Town are very pleasant, being shaded with Nut-Trees, Chesnut-Trees, Mulberry-Trees; and the great Road, which is very large, is embellish'd with Gardens on both Sides, and ascends gradually till we come to the Town. 'Twas taken from the Emperors of the East by Sultan *Orchan* in 1300. It has still the same Walls that the Christians built round it, the *Turks* not having demolished them, as they did those of most other Places, because it was a Royal Town. It is about 6 Miles round, and contain'd in their Time 40000 *Turks*, and about 12000 *Jews*, besides the *Greeks* and *Armenians* who live in the Suburbs, but are not numerous. The Grand Seignior has a Seraglio here, but not very stately. The Town is well supplied with Fountains, and has 6 or 7 Mosques, the chief of which is that of *Aladine*, a square Structure, with 25 small Domes on the Roof of an equal Size. Their *Bazestan* or Exchange is very fine, and the Town has a considerable Trade in making fine Silks, besides what they have by the Passage of the Caravans betwixt *Aleppo*, *Smyrna*, and *Constantinople*. It has many Baths or Stoves according to the *Turkish* Manner, and convenient Inns. The Castle or Fortrefs is encompassed by a Wall, which separates it from the City, and has 4 Gates. The *Mausoleum* of Sultan *Orchan* and his Lady, and the Tomb of *Bajazet's* Children, are in a Church here which they took from the *Greeks*. 'Tis built in Form of a *Greek* Cross, with a Dome in the Middle, and the Choir all of Marble. The Ruins of the ancient City were made use of to build the Walls, in which there are many Columns and Pieces of Marble mix'd with other Stones. Mount *Olympus*, which lies near this City, is one of the highest in *Asia Minor*, and seen from *Constantinople*, tho' 100 Miles

distant. The Top of it is cover'd with Snow all the Year; but Half-way up 'tis cover'd with Woods of Fir, Pine, and Cedar; and among those Woods there are many Streamsthat abound with fine red speckled Trouts, the largest of which are sent to the Grand Seignior.

Two Leagues from *Bursa* lies the Town of *Philadar*, inhabited by Christians, who are double-tax'd by the *Turks*, and more severely treated than any others in those Parts, because they made a noble Resistance before they submitted. They bear this Treatment the more patiently, because it is a lasting Monument of the Courage of their Ancestors. Within a Mile of *Bursa* there are hot Baths much frequented.

7. *Montagna*, or *Nicopolis*. *Thevenot* says, it stands on the Bay anciently call'd *Cianus Sinus*, and tho' but a small Town, yet by Means of the Bay drives a great Trade with *Constantinople*; for its Nearness to *Bursa* brings all the Trade of *Bithynia* to it. The Inhabitants are *Greeks*, *Jews*, and *Turks*, about 6000 in Number, and all Merchants.

8. *Libyssa*, at the W. End of the *Ascania Palus*, 23 Miles S. W. from *Nicomedia*, and 20 E. from *Prusias*, noted for the Death and Tomb of *Hannibal*, who poison'd himself here when he knew that he was to be deliver'd up to the *Romans*. 'Tis by some call'd *Lebussa*, by others *Gebise*, and now only an inconsiderable Village.

9. *Loupadi*, the ancient *Loupadium*, or (as some think) *Apollonia*, lies, says *Wheeler* and *Spon*, 3 Miles below the *Ascania Palus*, on the Side of the River which comes out of the Lake, and falls into the *Granicus*, that discharges it self into the *Propontis*. It is a very ancient Town, as may be seen by the Columns and Marbles mix'd with the Stones of the Walls built by the *Greek* Emperors, with round and pentagon Towers at the Distance of 20 Paces from one another. The Entrance into the Town is by a Wooden Bridge, built on the Ruins of one of Stone. The Town is now ruinous, most of the Houses of Earth, and the Inhabitants scarce 1000. *Cellarius* places it about 15 Miles N. W. from *Bursa*, and represents in his Map the River *Cyzicus-Rhyndacus* running by it, and emptying it self into the *Propontis* without any Communication with the *Granicus*: But *Spon* and *Wheeler* having

having been on the Place, are more to be credited than our Maps, which they say misplace this Town and the *Palus Ascania*; and put it too near the Sea, from which 'tis at least a Day's Journey.

ASIA MINOR,

PROPERLY so call'd, has *Bithynia* and *Pontus* on the N. *Galatia*, *Pamphylia*, and *Lycia*, on the E. Part of *Lycia* and the Sea of *Rhodes* on the S. the *Ægean* Sea and the *Hellepont* on the W. 'Tis divided into the Countries of *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Lydia*, and *Caria*, which the *Greeks* on the *Ægean* Sea did formerly inhabit, with *Æolis*, *Ionis*, and *Doris*. The *Turks* divide it at present into *Sareum*, which is the Western Part of the Country, that lies upon the *Hellepont*; *Chiontalem*, which is the Middle Part; and *Germian*, which is the Eastern Part.

Phrygia is divided into *Major* and *Minor*. The ancient Inhabitants of *Phrygia-Major*, now call'd *Germian*, were, 1. The *Olympeni*, who lay S. of Mount *Olympus*. 2. The *Mocadelii*, who lay S. from the *Olympeni*. 3. The *Cydisses*, S. from them. 4. The *Gipetini*, S. E. from them. 5. The *Moxiani* lay E. from the *Gipetini*.

Reiskius on *Cluverius* says, *Phrygia* was first inhabited by the Descendants of *Gomer*, the Son of *Japhet*, and that the Name came from the black Colour of Part of the Country, which looks as if it were burnt, and not from the *Bryges*, an ancient People of *Macedonia*, as the *Greeks* and others imagine, who say, that *Mysia*, *Phrygia*, and *Bithynia*, had their Names from the *Bryges* or *Phrygæ*, *Myfi*, and *Thyni*, who transported themselves hither from *Europe*. *Buno* says, some derive the Name from the River *Phrygius*, call'd also *Hylis*, which divides it from *Caria*.

Cellarius says, the *Phrygians* were a very ancient and great Nation, that lay betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the River *Halys*, and extended their Dominions as far as the *Hellepont*. He takes Notice of other Divisions of *Phrygia*, for which we refer to him; but he insists principally on those call'd *Phrygia Epictetus*, and *Phrygia Magna*, according to *Strabo*. His *Phrygia Epictetus* takes in that which the Moderns call *Phrygia Minor*, which he distinguishes from *Epictetus Propria*.

Bochart, in his *Letters of Enquiry* whether *Æneas* was ever in *Italy*, which he denies, gives an Account of the *Phrygian* Gods and Goddesses, their Dances, Songs, Language, and what of it still remains, for which we refer the Reader to himself: And for the ancient Geography and History of this Country, the Curious may consult Archbishop *Usher's Asia-Proconsularis*.

The most remarkable Mountain of *Phrygia Major* is *Cadmus*, which separates it from *Lycia*, from whence the River *Lycus* takes its Rise, S. of *Laodicea*. Its most remarkable Rivers are *Mæander* and *Marsyas*. The *Mæander* is noted for its numerous Turnings and Windings, and is now called *Madra* or *Madri*. It takes its Rise from the *Celenarum* or *Calenorum Tumulus*, which being very high, the River runs so obliquely, with above 600 Turnings and Windings, that it seems to run back into it self; from whence the *Gyri Mæandri* became a Proverb. It falls into the Sea call'd *Mare Myrtoum*, a Part of the *Archipelago*, near the Town *Miletus*. The Curious may find more of this River in *Cellarius*, who says, it falls into the Sea betwixt *Priene* and *Myus*. The River *Marsyas* rises not far from the Head of the *Mæander*, and falls into it, after many Turnings and Windings, near *Apamia*. The Poets say, it had its Name from *Marsyas* a Piper, who, for his Arrogance, was flea'd alive, and thrown into it by *Apollo*. There is another River of this Name in *Syria*.

The remarkable Towns in *Phrygia Major* are, 1. *Synnada*, us'd in both Numbers, noted anciently for its curious Marble, but now in Ruins, formerly a considerable Town, and a Place of Jurisdiction. It is also call'd *Synadi*, *Synnadis*, and *Synnas*. It lay on the River *Gacario*, 97 Miles N. W. from *Lystra*, and about 33 S. W. from Mount *Didymus*.

2. *Apamia Cibotus*, formerly call'd *Celena*. It lies near the Conflux of the Rivers *Marsyas* and *Mæander*, about 75 Miles S. W. from *Synnada*, and 30 E. from *Laodicea*. It was built by *K. Seleucus* from the Ruins of *Celena*, formerly the Capital of the Country, according to *Livy*, and call'd *Apamia*, after *Seleucus's* Sister.

3. *Gordium*, the Seat of *K. Midas*, so famous for the *Gordian Knot*, which *Alexander the Great* cut with his Sword, lay upon the

the same River, call'd anciently *Sangarius*, about 33 Miles N. W. from *Synnada*.

Luyts says, That *Cotiacum* or *Cotyæum*, now *Chiutaie*, is the Metropolis of *Natolia* properly so call'd, and the Seat of the Beglerberg or Turkish Governor of that Country. It was some Time the Seat of the Grand Seignior before the taking of *Constantinople*, and is still a considerable Town. It lies on the River *Ayala*, 30 Leagues S. from *Bursa*; but *Cellarius* places it in *Phrygia Epietetus*. It was formerly a Bishop's See.

PHRYGIA MINOR, or TROAS.

Cluverius says, the latter was its ancient Name, and that the former was given it by the *Phrygians* when they seiz'd it. 'Tis now call'd *Sarcum*. *Sanfon* says, That *Mysia* Major and Minor are comprehended in this Country, and he makes *Troas* and *Hellepont* Part of the latter. *Luyts* says, others make *Troas* a Part of *Lesser Phrygia*, and exclude both the *Mysia's*. The most remarkable River in this Country is *Scamandrus*, which rises from Mount *Ida*, and falls into the *Aegean* Sea at the Promontory *Sigæum*. *Bunno* justly observes, that this River, with *Xanthus* and *Simois*, are greater by Fame than by Nature. *Xerxes's* Army is said to have drunk up *Scamandrus*, as they did *Melas* and *Lissus*. Betwixt the *Simois* and *Scamander* lies that called *Campus Scamandrius*. *Pliny* says, *Scamander* was navigable, and *Homer* makes it the same with *Xanthus*.

The remarkable Towns in this Country were, 1. *Ilium*, or *Troja*, now *Troy*, famous for holding out a 10 Years Siege against the *Greeks*, who took it by Stratagem, and destroy'd it at last. It lay near the Mouth of the River *Scamander*, below the Conflux of the *Simois*, not far from the Mouth of the *Hellepont*, about 30 Miles S. from the *Dardanelles*. *Homer* and *Virgil* give us a large Account of that Siege. The Ruins of it are still to be seen under Mount *Ida*, and are sufficient to testify its ancient Magnificence. 'Twas reckon'd the most flourishing Town of *Asia*; but its famous Harbour is now almost choak'd up by Sand. *Belonius*, Lib. 2. Cap 6. says, it lay on the Front of a Hill, and that he spent 4 Hours in going round the Ruins of its Walls,

which he observ'd to have been built of hard black square Stones, and discover'd the Remains of several Towers, two Castles, and many Marble Sepulchres. The proper Name of the Town was *Ilium*, and *Troy* was that of the Country; but it grew customary afterwards to express both by the Name of *Troja*. *Cellarius* observes, that *Troas* was distinct from the *Trojan* Kingdom possess'd by *Priamus*, &c. and, according to *Homer*, most Part of both *Mysia's* were under the Dominion of the *Trojans*.

2. *Ilium Novum*, which was about 30 Furlongs from the Old *Ilium*, and nearer the Sea. *Cellarius* says, from the Authority of *Strabo*, that New *Ilium* was a Village and Temple consecrated to *Minerva*; and when *Alexander* came thither to sacrifice after the Battle of *Granicus*, he gave large Gifts to the Place, call'd it *Πόλις*, or a Town, and order'd it to be enlarged. *Lysimachus* augmented it after his Death, and encompass'd it with Walls of 40 Stadia in Circuit; but in the Time of the *Romans* it had decreas'd so much, as to be no more than a Village again, and now is in Ruins. The *Trojans* were noted for so much Luxury in their Banquets, that *Porcus Trojanus* became a Proverb, to signify a luxurious Man, as *Equus Trojanus* did, to signify a deceitful Stratagem. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, the adjacent Country is uncultivated, excepting a few Places where Cotton grows. The rest is fill'd with Shrubs and Holms, among which Hares, Quails and Partridges, shelter themselves in great Numbers. They observ'd abundance of Columns, but not one that was entire; yet they appear'd to have been of *Egyptian* Marble. There are the Remains of many such Pillars about the Harbour, the Basin of which seems to have been about 1500 Paces round. The Road serv'd also for a Harbour, as appears by the Columns and Pillars which are left in it. In one Place there are Marble Stairs, and near them several Tombs, which seem to be of *Roman* Workmanship in the Time of *Augustus*, who sent a Colony thither, as appears by the Reverse of several Medals, which have this Inscription, *Colonia Augusta Troas*. The Grand Seignior order'd abundance of those Columns to be brought from *Troy* to build the new Mosque of the *Sultane's-Mother* at *Constantinople*. The best inhabi-

inhabited Part of the Town seems to have been on the Top of a Hill, to which there's a moderate Ascent for two Miles from the Bank of the Sea. There are abundance of Ruins of Temples, Vaults, and of a Theatre, in that Part, and likewise of a stately Structure, which appears to have been the chief Palace in the City. Some think it to have been that of King *Priamus*; but *Spon* says, it is of Roman Workmanship, has been for most part of Marble, and the Walls 12 Foot thick; and by the Remains of the Arches, &c. it seems to have been wonderful magnificent.

3. *Alexandri Troas*, which is also call'd *Alexandria*. It lay, according to *Buno*, betwixt the Promontories *Sigæum* and *Leçtum*, about 30 Miles S. from *Troy*, about 25 S. from the Mouth of *Scamander*, and 20 from the *Portus Achaëorum*. It was built by *Alexander the Great*, and the *Turks* call its Ruins *Iski Stamboul*. Not far from hence lay the Town *Sigæum*, upon the Promontory of the same Name, where the Greek Ships lay at Anchor while they attack'd *Troy*. It is also noted for the Sepulchre of *Achilles*, and is now called *Janitzari* by the *Turks*. *Buno* observes of the *Phrygians* in general, that they were of a slavish Temper, and easily kept in Obedience by Blows, from whence came the Proverbs, *Phryx verberatus melior*, and *sero sapiunt Phryges*; i. e. *A Phrygian is like a Spaniel, the more you beat him, the more he loves you*; and, *They are wise behind-hand*. Yet the Country was noted for producing many ingenious Men, among whom were *Æsop* and *Epicætetus*.

M Y S I A M A J O R,

LIES E. from *Troas*. Its ancient Inhabitants were the *Olympeni*, *Trimenothuritæ*, and *Myso-Macedones*. The *Olympeni* lay on the W. of Mount *Olympus*, the *Trimenothuritæ* S. W. from them, and the *Myso-Macedones* E. from them. The remarkable Mountains are *Olympus* and *Cimon*. The former must not be confounded with those of the same Name in *Cyprus*, *Galatia*, and *Lyfia*. *Cimon* is also call'd *Cimæus*. The chief River of this Country is *Rhyndacus*, which falls into the *Propontis*. *Mela* says, it bred Serpents, which devour'd the Birds that flew over it.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Antandros*. *Strabo* places it within Land, and so does *Stephanus* under Mount *Ida*; but *Pliny* says, it was on the Shore, and firnamed *Alexandrea*, because *Alexander Paris* judg'd the Goddesses there. *Byzantius* places it also under Mount *Ida*, and says, it had its Name from *Antander*, the General of the *Æolians*. *Cluverius* places it above 60 Miles E. from the Streight betwixt the Island *Tenedos* and the Continent, and *Cellarius* places it at the Bottom of a Bay over against the Isle of *Lesbos*. Some say, it had its Name from the People of the Isle of *Andros*, who came hither and built it; so that *Cellarius* is more probably in the right, except there were two Towns of that Name in this Country. *Luytz* and *Buno* agree with him.

2. *Adramittium*, now *Endromit*, *Andramiti*, and *Landimitri*, lies on the same Coast on the other Side of the Bay, about 20 Miles S. from *Antandros*. *Strabo* and other Geographers speak of it as a noble Town, with a fine Harbour, and possess'd by an *Athenian* Colony. By them also it appears, that it lay near *Antandros*, and was taken by *Antiochus*.

3. *Pergamus*, on the River *Caycus*, about 40 Miles N. E. from the Mouth of it, according to *Cluverius*; but *Moll* places it about 18 Miles E. from the Sea, noted for being the Birth-place of the Physician *Galen*, who mentions a Library in it of 200000 Books. Writing Parchment is said to have been invented here, and to have had its Name from hence. It stands in a fruitful and pleasant Plain, is inhabited by *Turks*, and a few Christians, who get their Livelihood chiefly by Husbandry. 'Tis now called *Pergamo*, and was chiefly famous for being the third of the 7 Churches of *Asia*. *Dr. Smith*, in his *Septem Asiæ Ecclesiarum Notitia*, says, there can be no where seen a more pleasant Plain than that wherein this City stands. It is about 26 Miles long before there appears any Rising in it, and then it runs a great Way further to the S. E. but 'tis of an unequal Breadth, not being above 5 where broadest. He says, Nature seems to have prepar'd every Thing here for Luxury. Part of it is cover'd with Olives, Part of it cultivated, and the rest is left for Pasturage to numerous Herds of Cattle. He says, the Town lies a Mile from the

the River *Caycus*, which in the Winter overflows its Banks, and makes the Access to the Town difficult. *Pergamus* was formerly the Metropolis of *Mysia Olympica*, and lies about 64 Miles N. from *Smyrna*, at the Foot of a very high steep Hill, which covers it from the N. Winds. 'Twas defended by a Castle on the Top of the Mountain *Pindarus*, which is now neglected by the *Turks*. He saw an old Greek Inscription upon a Marble there, which had been erected in Honour of *Gaius Antius*, Pro-Consul of *Asia*, and Pro-Prætor for the Emperors *Nero*, *Trajan*, *Cæsar Augustus*, *Germanicus*, *Dacius*, &c. The Doctor adds, That there are many fine Buildings here of square Stone, and that it has escap'd the Fury of the *Turks* better than any of the other Six *Asian* Churches. The Ruins of the Cathedral, formerly dedicated to *St. John*, and of other sumptuous Structures, with fine Marble Pillars, are still to be seen here: But the *Turks* are so sluggish and ignorant, that when they remove those Pillars to any other Place, they break them instead of digging them up entire. The chief Use they make of them is, to set them up at both Ends of their Graves; but if they see any Figure of Men upon them, or any other Monument, they are sure to deface it. By the Ruins, it appears to have been a Place of great Strength and Magnificence. In the Area of a publick Bath, the Dr. found an Inscription on a Pillar that's sunk in the Earth, which appears to have been a Monument of *Marcus Æmilius*, a Roman Proconsul. The Metropolitane of *Smyrna* sends a Priest hither to the *Greeks*, who are allow'd one small Church, dedicated to *St. Theodorus*. They are very poor, live by cultivating Land and Gardens, and think themselves very happy if they can get but Bread and Money enough to pay their Tribute. Sir *Paul Ricaut*, in his *Present State of the Greek Church*, says, it was once the Royal Seat of the Kings who reign'd over *Mysia*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*, and *Caria*; and that *Attalus* the last King bequeathed it to the *Romans* by Will. The *Turkish* Inhabitants are so very idle, that rather than cultivate the rich neighbouring Soil, they chuse to live by robbing those who travel thro' the Plain. A little before Sir *Paul* was there, 53 Streets of the Town were

inhabited, but then only 22. There are vast Ruins without the City of arch'd Work, and some Remains of a Theatre. The River *Selimus* or *Selinus* runs thro' the upper Part of the Town, over which there are many magnificent Arches in Form of a Bridge. We refer the Curious to those two Authors for a more particular Account of the Ruins of this great City. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, there were about 2 or 3000 *Turks*, and only 15 Christian Families, in the Town when they travelled that Way.

4. *Trajanopolis* and *Alyda* are mentioned by *Cluverius* as considerable Towns in this Country; but we find no Description of them.

M Y S I A M I N O R,

HAS the *Hellespont* on the W. and the *Propontis* on the N. and is by some call'd *Mysia Hellespontica*, and *Olympica*. Its noted Rivers are *Æsepus*, *Granicus*, and *Simois*. *Æsepus* or *Æsësus* rises in Mount *Ida*, and falls into the *Propontis* or a Bay of it W. from the Town of *Cyzicus*. *Granicus* rises in the same Mountain, runs thro' the *Campi Adrastei* with a swift Course, and falls into the *Propontis* betwixt *Parius* and *Lampsacus*. It was in these Fields, not far from *Cyzicus*, where *Alexander the Great* defeated the *Persians*. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, they pass'd this River on a Wooden Bridge, supported by Stone Pillars; that it is almost dry in the Summer, but swells mightily in the Winter; and that tho' it be very large towards the Mouth, the *Turks*, by Carelessness, have suffer'd it to be choak'd up with Sand; so that it is not navigable, nor otherwise remarkable, but for *Alexander's* passing it when he went to fight *Darius*, which makes it famous in History. *Simois* rises from the same Mountain, forms a Lake near *Sigæum*, and falls into the *Hellespont* near the Ruins of Old *Troy*. It is fam'd by the Poets, who in their Fables say, *Anchises* begot *Æneas* with *Venus*, on the Banks of it. Mount *Ida* is noted for the Judgment of *Paris* between the Goddesses, say the same Poets. The Top of it is call'd *Gargarus*, from whence spring the Rivers above-mentioned; and hence the Bay of *Troas* is also call'd *Sinus Idæus*.

The

The noted Towns of this Country were,

1. *Cyzicus*, at the Mouth of the River *Æsepus*, on the Bank of the *Propontis*, about 33 Miles N. W. from *Bursa*. It is now called *Chizico*, and by some *Spiga*, *Spinga*, and *Palormi*. 'Twas built 70 Years after *Rome*, and lies in an Island so close to the Continent, that the Maps take little Notice of the Division. It was remarkable for its fine Quarries of Marble; *Alexander the Great* join'd this Island to the Continent by two Bridges, and the Town had two Harbours capable of 200 Gallies. A little W. from hence lies the Island *Proconnesus*, now *Marmora*, in the *Propontis*. It derives its present Name from the great Marble Quarries it abounds with, is about 20 Miles in Circuit, well inhabited, and has two Towns in it of some Note, call'd *Gallioni* and *Craftio*. The Greek Monks have several Hermitages and Convents in this Island, where they live in a very austere Manner. The Islands of *Avesia*, *Contalli*, and *Gadaro*, lie near this Island, and are call'd by the same Name. They abound with Cattle, Corn, Wine, Fruits, and Fish, says *Thevenot*, and have likewise some Hermitages among them. *Thevenot* says, there's another Knot of Islands that lie nearer *Constantinople*, call'd the *Pope's Isles*, because inhabited by Monks and Priests. He says, were *Constantinople* in the Hands of Christians, these Islands would be like so many Paradises; but the *Turks* do so rifle them when drunk, that no body cares to live in them but a few Greek Monks, who plant no more than what serves for their own Use.

2. *Parus*, or *Parium*, now *Pario*, lies betwixt *Cyzicus* and *Lampsacus*. 'Twas formerly a noble Town, with a good Harbour, and a Roman Colony.

3. *Lampsacus*, on the *Hellespont*, at the Mouth of the River *Granicus*, betwixt *Parus* and *Abydus*. *Xerxes K.* of *Persia* gave this Town to *Themistocles* when in Exile, that it might furnish him with Wine, *Magnesia* to furnish him with Bread, and *Myuns* to furnish him with Meat. The Inhabitants of this City were noted for their peaceable Temper. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, 'tis now a small Town, inhabited by a few *Turks* and *Greeks*. It had an excellent Port, and was anciently called *Pityusa*, says *Strabo*. *Priapus* being a Native of this Place,

was worship'd here. There are excellent Vines in the Neighbourhood, of which the *Turks* make Brandy, and use it liberally, tho' Wine be forbidden them. There are several Inscriptions and ancient Monuments here.

4. *Abydus*, now *Avido*, on the same Coast, about 30 Miles S. W. from *Lampsacus*, and 30 N. E. from the Ruins of *Troy*, lies over against *Sestos* in *Thracia*. The Inhabitants were anciently effeminate Sycophants, whence came the Proverb, *Ne temere Abydum*. It is noted for the Amours of *Hero* and *Leander*, and for the Bridge which *Xerxes* built here over the *Hellespont*.

5. *Dardanum*. *Buns* thinks it lay where the Castle *Dardanello* now stands, at the Mouth of the *Hellespont*, about 17 Miles S. W. from *Avido*, and gave Name to the District of *Dardania*.

L Y D I A,

IS by some called Part of *Mæonia*, and lies S. from *Mysia*. It is now called *Carasia*. The chief Rivers in both are *Caicus*, *Hermus*, *Pactolus*, and *Caystrus*, which separates *Lydia* from *Caria*. *Caicus* is now called *Girmasti*. It falls into the Sea near *Elea*, over against the Isle of *Lesbos*. *Hermus* is now call'd *Sarabat*. It rises in *Phrygia Major*, and falls into the Gulph of *Smyrna* near *Phocæa*. *Pactolus* rises in Mount *Timolus*, and runs by *Sardis*; after which it falls into *Hermus*. This River is noted for its Golden Sand, from whence came the Proverb, *Pactolo & Tago sibi polliceri*; To denote those who promise themselves great Riches. *Caystrus* rises in *Greater Phrygia*, and falls into the Sea betwixt *Ephesus* and *Colophon*. The chief Mountains were, 1. *Sipilus*, now *Cusimas*. There was also a Town of this Name call'd likewise *Tantalus*, which was swallow'd up by an Earthquake. 2. *Timolus*, now *Tomalize*, which lay in the Country of the *Trales* and *Sardis*, and was noted for producing Vines and Saffron. The other Mountains were *Mesagys* and *Mimas*. The latter is now called *Cape Stellari*, and lies near *Colophon*.

The most remarkable Towns were, 1. *Thyatira*, now *Akhisar*, and by some call'd *Tire* or *Tiria*. Authors differ as to its Situation.

Clave-

Cluverius places it 30 Miles S. E. from *Pergamus*, *Cellarius* on the River *Hermus*, above 60 Miles S. E. from *Pergamus*, and *Moll* on the River *Sarabat*, above 60 Miles S. E. also from *Pergamus*. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, the modern Name *Akhisar* signifies a White Castle. The Town lies in a fine Plain of above 20 Miles large, Part of it sow'd with Cotton and Corn, and the rest uncultivated, or cover'd with Tamarisk. They say, That *Sir Paul Ricaut*, when English Consul at *Smyrna*, was the first who discover'd the true Situation of *Thyatira* by some Inscriptions, and a View of its Ruins; whereas before that Time, *Tiria* within a Day's Journey of *Ephesus*, was taken for it. They saw in this Place an Inscription in Greek, which begun with these Words, Η ΚΡΑΤΙΣΤΗ ΘΥΑΤΕΙΡΗΝΟΝ ΒΟΥΛΗ; i. e. The most potent Senate of *Thyatira*. They saw many other Monuments of its Antiquity and Grandeur, for which we refer to them. The present Houses are for the most Part of Turf, or Mud-Wall, and the Inhabitants are about 4 or 5000, all *Mahometans*, without one Christian among them, the Remains of the Christian Churches being turn'd into Mosques, and the noble Marble Columns made Use of for their Inns and Market-Houses. *Dr. Smith* takes Notice of several Monuments in Greek Letters erected for Roman Governors here; and that by others, he discover'd the ancient Inhabitants to have been Worshipers of the Idol *Diana*. The chief Trade of the Place is in Cotton, and 'tis now and then frequented by *Armenian* Merchants. *Sir Paul Ricaut* gives much the same Account with several Inscriptions at large, which prove it beyond all Question to be *Thyatira*. It lies near the River that *Pliny* call'd *Lycus*, and the Town it self is water'd by a Stream from a neighbouring Hill, which the Inhabitants say divides it self into 3700 Rivu- lers; so that every House is well furnish'd with excellent Water, cool and sweet to the Taste, and light on the Stomach. The Air is wholesome, and the adjacent Coun- try rich and pleasant.

2. *Sardis*, another of the 7 *Asian* Churches, now call'd *Sardo*, on the River *Pactolus*, about 72 Miles S. E. from *Thyatira*, near 100 from *Pergamus*, and about 120 E. from *Smyrna*, according to *Cluverius*. *Moll* makes

it but 30 Miles E. from *Smyrna*, about 30 S. from *Thyatira*, and about 80 S. E. from *Pergamus*. *Cellarius* makes it above 90 E. from *Smyrna*, and about 40 S. E. from *Thya- tira*. So much do Geographers differ in the Situation of those Places. *Bano* says, it lies near Mount *Tmolus*, was the Residence of *K. Cræsus*, who is said to have got most of his Riches out of the Golden Sand of the River *Pactolus*. The *Iones* took it with the Help of the *Athenians*, and cut off the *Per- sian* Garrison, which brought on the War betwixt them, *Darius* and *Xerxes*. *Polyæus*, the Author of the Book of *Stratagems*, and *Euapius*, who wrote the Lives of some Phi- losophers and Sophists, were born here. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, it lies at the Foot of Mount *Tmolus*, and has on the N. a great Plain, water'd with abundance of Streams. At present 'tis a poor Village, consisting of mean Huts; but has a great Kan or Inn, commodious enough for Passengers, because it is the Road of the Caravans betwixt *Smyrna*, *Aleppo*, and *Perfia*. Most of the In- habitants are Shepherds, who feed their Flocks on the neighbouring Plains. The Ruins of an old Castle, a great Church, and some ancient Palaces, are still to be seen. One of the Christian Churches is made a *Turkish* Mosque; at the Gate of which there are several Pillars of polish'd Marble. The few Christians here live for most part by Gardening. *Dr. Smith* says, That in the great Inn here the Men and Cattle lodge together; and that the barbarous Inhabitants will admit no Stranger to lodge in their Houses. He saw several Marble Columns of above 30 Foot high, which testify the ancient Magnificence of the Place. The Castle stood on an high steep Hill, and was impregnable before the Invention of Gunpowder. The Town suf- fer'd much by Earthquakes, and was re- pair'd by *Tiberius*, to whose Honour there's an Inscription still left on a Pillar in the Ca- stle. The Ruins of the great Church, and a sumptuous Structure near it, are still to be seen. He saw also a Decree of the Em- peror *Trajan*, for Wrestling-Games to be so- lemnized once in 5 Years. The *Turks* have one Mosque here, formerly a Christian Church, whose Portico is sustain'd by Pil- lars of polish'd Marble. There are a few Christians in this Place, so inur'd to Sla- very,

very, that they are become insensible of it, and have neither Minister nor Church. Sir *Paul* says much the same, and adds, That from the Top of Mount *Tmolus* there's a delightful Prospect over the neighbouring Country; that there is no Gold found now in the Sand of *Pactolus*; that from the Top of the Castle, there's one of the most delightful Prospects of the Turnings and Windings of that River thro' the neighbouring Plains that Eyes can behold. *Tavernier* says, this City was destroy'd by *Tamerlane*, against whom it held out for 6 Years; and is of Opinion, that a neighbouring Village of the same Name was the City mentioned in the *Revelations*.

3. *Philadelphia*, another of the 7 Churches. *Bano* says, 'tis now called *Filadelfia*, and lies at the Foot of Mount *Tmolus*, on the River *Caystrus*, about 20 Miles S. from *Sardis*, according to *Cluverius*. *Moll* makes it 20 N. E. Dr. *Smith* says, the neighbouring Plains are made fruitful by Streams which run from Mount *Tmolus*; that it lies 27 Miles N. E. from *Sardis*, upon the Front of a Hill. The *Turks* call it *Alah Shahr*; i. e. the Beautiful City, because of its fine and magnificent Situation. It had formerly a treble Wall on the Side of the Plain, the innermost of which remains still with Towers upon it, but ruinous in many Places. On the other Side, the Mountain was its Defence. It held out by its Strength, and the Courage of its Citizens against *Orcham* and *Aumrath*, the Emperors of the *Turks*, after they had subdued all *Asia Minor*. At last *Bajazet* besieg'd it with a numerous Army, took it after an obstinate Defence, and barbarously reveng'd its having stood out so long against his Father and Grandfather upon the noble Citizens; a Monument of which is still to be seen by a thick Wall about a Mile and a half S. from the Town, which is made up of Men's Bones, mix'd with the Stone and Lime. He destroy'd it so, that very few of its ancient Monuments are left. Their great Church is now turn'd to a Dunghil, and the rest demolish'd and us'd by the *Turks* for Mosques, except 4, which are still possess'd by the *Greeks*, of whom there were about 200 Families in the Town. 'Tis inhabited by many *Turks*, is the Passage for the Caravans to *Persia*, and, next to *Smyrna*, is the most considerable

Town in those Parts. Sir *Paul* says, there are 12 Christian Churches in it; and that the Priests pretend to have very ancient Manuscripts of the Gospel; tho' he doubts whether they be so ancient as they alledge. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, there were about 7 or 8000 Inhabitants in the Town, of whom about 2000 were Christians.

C A R I A,

HAS *Ionia* on the N. *Mysia* on the E. the *Mare Myrtoum* on the W. and the Sea of *Rhodes* on the S. The principal Rivers in this Country are the *Meander* and *Lycus*. The former we have already described in *Phrygia Major*. The *Lycus* falls into the *Meander* under *Laodicea*; and at the Conflux of those two Rivers stood the Town *Colosse*, now *Chonina*, famous for St. *Paul's* Epistle to its Inhabitants the *Colossians*. *Herodotus* and *Xenophon* say, it was a great and famous City. *Chrysostome* and *Theophylact* say, it was in the Neighbourhood of *Laodicea* and *Hierapolis*; and *Orosius* says, they were all three ruin'd by an Earthquake.

The noted Mountains in this Country were, 1. *Phenix*, which lay on the Coast over against the Isle of *Rhodes*. 2. *Mycole*, a Promontory over against *Samos*. There was also a Town of this Name in *Cyprus*, near which *Cimon* the *Athenian* defeated the *Phrygians* in a Sea-Battle. 3. *Latmus*, at the Mouth of the River *Meander*, noted for the Poetical Fable of the Amours betwixt *Endymion* and the Moon.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Tripolis*, on the River *Caystrus*, according to *Bano*, 37 Miles S. W. from *Philadelphia*; but *Pliny*, *Cellarius*, and *Spanheim*, place it on the *Meander*. It was formerly a Bishop's See.

2. *Laodicea*, now *Laudichia*, one of the 7 Churches of *Asia*. It was call'd the Metropolis of *Phrygia Pacatiana* by Writers towards the Declension of the *Roman Empire*. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, 'tis now call'd *Eski-Hissar*; i. e. the Old Castle. They say, it is entirely destroy'd, and there is nothing remaining but a Mill and 4 Marble Theatres, which in their Time were entire, and near one of them a *Greek* Inscription in Honour of the Emperor *Titus Vespasian*. They add, that

the River *Lycus* above-mentioned lies N. E. from it; and therefore, to distinguish it from other Towns of the same Name, it was call'd *Laodicea*, near the *Lycus*. This River rises in the Top of a Mountain, falls from a Rock with great Noise, and waters the neighbouring Plains with its pleasant and clear Streams. 'Tis the same which *Livy* calls *Marfyas*; and the Poets say, the Nymphs were so much in Love with it, that they chose their Habitation in the above-mention'd Rock. *Spon* corrects *Ferrari's* Mistake, who will have it to be what the *Turks* call *Laudiehia*, or *Nove-Lefche*, and that it is still the See of an Archbishop: For if it were so, it must have been since destroy'd, and lost its Name. He adds, That others took *Laotik*, a Town near *Angoura*, for it, because of the Similitude of the Name. *Sir Paul Ricaut* says, That the *Greeks* at *Dingizlee*, who were about 40 in Number, and had a little Church, took that to be *Laodicea*, because of the pleasant Situation of the Place, which is planted with all Sorts of Fruit-Trees, well water'd with pleasant Streams, and abounds with all Provisions; so that for Air and Fruitfulness, the *Turks* compare it to *Damascus*. There are several Christian Churches in it, now turn'd into Mosques, and they have a good Trade in Bogasines. *Sir Paul* adds, That not being satisfied that this was the ancient *Laodicea*, and being informed by *Turks* of certain Ruins at 4 Miles distance, he went thither, and found it had been a City of vast Circumference, situated on 3 or 4 Hills; and this he found to agree with *Pliny's* Description of *Laodicea*, which he calls a most famous Town on the *Lycus*, and that its Walls were also wash'd by the *Asopus* and *Caper*. This, he says, is certainly the old *Laodicea*, which ancient Geographers call'd *Diospolis*. He likewise mentions, besides the Ruins of other mighty Fabricks, those of 3 large Amphitheatres, and a *Circus*, which by an Inscription appear'd to have been *Vespasian's*. It had suffer'd much by *Mithridates Eupator*, but quickly recover'd it self by the Wealth of the Citizens, and the Excellency of the Soil, which are the richest and most delicious Plains of all *Phrygia*. It lies about 10 Miles N. from Mount *Cadmus*, in which the *Lycus* rises, and waters the neighbouring Pastures,

which, in the Time of *Augustus*, fed numerous Flocks of black Sheep, whose Wool exceeded that of the *Milesians*. It was destroy'd by an Earthquake in the Time of *Nero*, but recover'd it self again by the Riches of the Inhabitants, says *Tacitus*, without any Help from the *Romans*; but being destroy'd that same Way afterwards, the People deserted it, and so it was irrecoverably lost.

3. *Hierapolis*, lay in the Neighbourhood of *Laodicea*, about 30 Miles N. W. according to *Cellarius*. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, it is now-desart, and its Ruins call'd by the *Turks* *Bambouk-Kale*, i. e. the Cotton-Tower, because of the white Rocks which encompass it. There are the Ruins of abundance of ancient Temples, and so many Fountains of Mineral Waters in this Place, that the Name, which signifies a Holy City, seems to have been deriv'd from hence. Among other Ruins, there's a Bath of white Marble, into which the Pillars that stood round it are now fallen, and the Water which runs from hence in divers Channels forms a Crust of whitish Earth, whose Surface is of the Colour of a Topaz. These Waters were famous for Dying, as well as for their Medicinal Vertue; and near this Place are the Ruins of a great Marble Theatre, upon which is an Inscription to *Apollo Archegetes*. *Sir Paul Ricaut* says, there are abundance of magnificent Tombs of entire Stone on the Top of the neighbouring Hill, with Covers of the same, in a Cubical Form; many of them filled with the Bones of Men. He adds, that the Ruins of the vast Fabricks are numerous, and the Walls and Pillars the greatest and strongest that he has seen; and the Coverings or Roofs differ from all he had met with, being Stones of an incredible Size and Weight, rais'd by the Force of Engines, and close cemented without the Help of Timber. They are of arch'd Work, and join'd so artificially, that neither Time nor Earthquakes have been able to remove them. He takes Notice likewise of the Grotto mention'd by *Strabo*, from whence issue Pestilential Vapours, which infect the Air. The *Turks* fancy it to be haunted by Evil Spirits, because those who have had the Curiosity to enter it have either dy'd, or fallen desperately sick. *Sir Paul* says,

says, it was formerly a Metropolis, but now quite desert.

4. *Antiochia*, lies N. from *Laodicea*; but there are several other Towns of that Name. *Cellarius* says, it was formerly a Bishop's See, and lay on the *Meander*.

5. *Magnesia*, now *Mangresia*, on the River *Meander*, according to *Buno*; but *Cluverius's* Map places it on the *Pactolus*, 40 Miles N. W. from *Sardis*. *Cellarius* places it at the Foot of Mount *Sipylus*, betwixt the *Pactolus* and *Hermus*, about 20 Miles S. E. from *Thyatira*, and 45 N. E. from *Sardis*. It was given by *Xerxes* to *Themistocles*, who died here; and it is also noted for the Defeat of *Antiochus* in the Neighbourhood by *Scipio Asiaticus*.

6. *Priene*, now *Palatio*, the Birth-place of *Bias*, one of the 7 Sages, on the R. *Meander*, over against *Miletus*, about 20 Miles N. E. from the Mouth of the River by *Cluverius's* Map; but *Cellarius* places it just at its Mouth, above 40 Miles N. W. from *Miletus*, and reckons it in *Ionis*. *Scylax* says, it had two Harbours.

7. *Alabanda*, now *Eclabanda*, was anciently so fortunate as to become a Proverb for a happy City. *Juvenal* says, the Inhabitants were drown'd in Luxury. It was built by *Alabandus*, Son to the Founder of the *Carian* Nation, whom the Citizens worship'd as a God. 'Tis noted for *Apollonius*, whom *Cicero* calls a great Doctor and Master of Oratory, who, tho' he taught for Hire, yet when he perceiv'd any of his Scholars to be unfit for Oratory, he would not take their Mony, but advis'd them to follow other Business.

8. *Stratonice*, or *Stratonicea*, was a Colony of the *Syrian Macedonians*, and much adorn'd by their Kings of the Race of *Seleucus*. It lay about 60 Miles S. W. from *Alabanda*, but is now in Ruins. It was also call'd *Hadrianople*, because restor'd by the Emperor *Adrian*. There is another Town of this Name about Mount *Taurus*.

9. *Miletus*, anciently call'd *Anactoria*. It lies near the Mouth of the *Meander*, about 60 Miles S. E. from *Ephesus*; according to *Cluverius*, about 32 S. from it according to *Moll*, and almost 60 according to *Cellarius*, who places it above 30 Miles S. from the Mouth of the *Meander*, near a Bay in the *Egean* Sea. It was the Birth-place of

Thales the Astrologer, one of the 7 Sages of Greece, and of *Cadmus*, the first Author of Orations in Prose, who wrote the History of the *Milestians*; but is different from *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, who first brought Letters into Greece. *Timotheus* the Physician, *Anaxander* the Musician, and *Anaximander* the Natural Philosopher, were also born here. It was famous for Wool and Coverlets, which were highly valued. The Townsmen were so addicted to Luxury, that *Aristides* the Philosopher wrote a Book against them on that Account. This was the Place whither *St. Paul* sent for the Elders of *Ephesus*. *Sir Paul Ricaut* says, the *Turks* call it *Melus*, and that it lies 10 Miles from the Mouth of the *Meander*, which the *Turks* call *Boiuch*, or the Great *Meander*, in Opposition to *Cayster*, which they call the Little *Meander*; and here he corrects *Heylin's* Mistake, who took the *Cayster* for the true *Meander*, because it has many Windings, as well as that River. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, this Town was almost as famous as *Ephesus*, and had likewise a Share in its Fate; for now it is nothing but a confus'd Heap of noble Ruins, intermix'd with Shepherds Huts; and that its modern Name is *Palatschia*, because of the Ruins of the Palaces. They add, That modern Geographers have mistaken *Melasso* for this Town, because of the Resemblance of the Name, tho' it lies two Days Journey from it. They say, That the true *Miletus* was first discover'd by the English at *Smyrna*, who found a curious Inscription here, which is still to be seen, wherein the Words ΠΟΛΙΣ ΜΙΛΗΣΙΩΝ, i. e. the City of the *Milestians*, are repeated 5 times. They say, it lies within a Day's Journey and half of *Ephesus*, near the *Meander*, and within a few Miles of the Sea, and was once very powerful in Shipping while possessed by the *Greeks*. Some place it in *Caria*, and others in *Ionis*, because, according to *Strabo*, the River *Meander* divided those Provinces. According to *Suidas*, *Thales* the *Milestian* was the first of the Pagans who held the Immortality of the Soul. *Mela* says, it was the principal Town of *Ionis*, and famous for Arts and Arms. *Strabo* says, it peopled the Coasts of the *Euxine* Sea and *Propontis* with Colonies, besides many other Places; and *Arrianus* gives us an Account, that it was almost

almost the only Town of *Ionia* which withstood *Alexander*, who took it with great Difficulty. The Oracle of the *Branchidae*, consecrated to *Apollo*, stood in the Neighbourhood; and when *Xerxes* burnt its Temple, the *Milesians*, says *Strabo*, rebuilt it so large, that it resembled a Village. There were several Coins of *Augustus* stamp'd with the Image of *Apollo* and his Harp; upon which that Idol was call'd *Milesiorum Didymus*. *Posideum Milesiorum* was a Town and Cape in the Neighbourhood.

Melasso, which some have mistaken for *Miletum*, was *Strabo's* *Mylasa*, and lay two Day's Journey further S. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, there was a Temple of *Jupiter* about 60 Stadia from the Town, which is still to be seen, being a small Structure, with 4 Columns in the Front. There's another much more sumptuous and large, with 6 Pillars in the Front, dedicated to *Augustus*. There is likewise a Pillar erected in Honour of *Menander* Son to *Euthydemus*, who was one of the chief Citizens, vastly rich, and not only respected there, but throughout all *Asia*, till he was rivall'd by one *Hybreas*, at first a Mule-Driver, but afterwards studying under *Diotrephes*, became so great an Orator, that he vy'd with *Euthydemus* for Authority, who being somewhat tyrannical, tho' otherwise very useful to the City, *Hybreas* told him one Day in an Harangue, That he was a necessary Evil, for they could neither live with him nor without him.

10. *Myndus*, now *Mentesé*, according to *Buno*, is a Maritime Town, and the Seat of a Turkish Governor. It lies about 20 Miles S. W. from *Melasso*, according to *Moll*, and above 40 S. from *Ephesus*. The same Author says of the *Carians* in general, That they were formerly reckon'd good Soldiers, but despis'd for their mercenary Temper, because they would expose themselves to any Danger for Money.

Æ O L I A

LAY betwixt the *Ægean* Sea and *Troas* on the N. and *Ionia* on the S. It was formerly Part of *Mysia*, but call'd *Æolia* af-

ter the *Æoles* took Possession of it upon their coming from Greece. They built Twelve Towns here, according to *Herodotus*. The Province is now small, but formerly its Name extended to all the Coast of the *Hellespont* and *Propontis*, where the *Æolians* had settled many Colonies. We refer the Reader to *Cellarius* for a full Account of its ancient Towns, most of which are now destroy'd. We shall only take Notice of the following, which were most remarkable.

1. *Myrina*, so call'd from its Founder *Myrinus*. It was the oldest Town in this Country, and garrison'd by *Philip*, who was order'd to withdraw his Garrison from thence by the Romans when they granted him Peace. It lay near *Grynium*, at the Bottom of a Bay, about 40 Miles N. E. from *Smyrna* according to *Cellarius*, and about 30 N. according to *Cluverius*. It was noted for its pleasant Fields, and having suffer'd much by an Earthquake in the Time of *Tiberius*, he remitted their Tribute.

2. *Cuma*, or *Cyme*, about 10 Miles S. from *Myrina*, near the Coast. Its Inhabitants the *Cumani* were accounted dull and stupid. It likewise suffer'd much by an Earthquake in the Time of *Tiberius*. *Luyts* says, the *Sibylla Cumana* had her Name from hence.

3. *Phocæa*, now *Froja-Recchia*, at the Mouth of the River *Thermus*, betwixt *Cuma* and *Smyrna*. *Buno* says, That it was a Colony of the *Athenians*, and gave Rise to *Marseilles* in *Provence*, by planting a Colony there. *Luyts* says, it is now an inconsiderable Village. It was by some reckon'd to be in *Ionia*; of which Opinion are most ancient Authors. 'Twas a considerable Town in *Livy's* Time, when its Walls were two Miles and a half in Circuit. The Inhabitants were called *Phocæenses*.

4. *Elea*, was the Harbour of *Pergamus*, says *Buno*, at the Mouth of the River *Gaycus*, betwixt *Myrina* and *Pitane*, noted for the Birth of *Zeno*, who invented *Logick*, and was famous for suffering patiently the Torture he was put to by the Tyrant *Nearchus*. It had a Harbour capable of receiving a Fleet, and lay about 120 Furlongs from *Pergamus*. *Moll* makes it about 10 Miles S. from it.

I O N I A.

BUno says, the *Turks* call it *Quiscon*, and that it lies betwixt *Æolia*, *Caria*, and the *Ægean* Sea. *Peucerus* thinks, that both the People and Country derive their Name from *Javan*. The *Athenians* boasted that they were originally *Ionians*, says *Buno*, called themselves *Indigenæ*, and the rest of the *Greeks*, *Colonies*; and hence it is suppos'd, that *Attica* was also call'd *Ionia*. *Cellarius* says, it was the 2d Colony which the *Greeks* sent into *Asia* after the *Æoles*, and that the *Iones* built 12 Towns here. The most remarkable of them were,

1. *Smyrna*, now *Ismir*, which lies in the Peninsula of *Ionta*, and still retains its ancient Name. *Buno* says, it was built by *Theſeus* or *Tantalus*, at first called *Naulochos*, and afterwards *Smyrna*, from *Smyrne* an *Amazon*. *Moll* places it on a Bay at the Mouth of the River *Sarabat*, about 20 Miles N. from *Ephesus*. *Cluverius* makes it 56 N. and above 18 S. from the Mouth of the *Sarabat*. *Cellarius* makes it 40 Miles N. W. from *Ephesus*. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, it is a Day and half's Journey from *Ephesus*. *Dr Smith* makes it 46 Miles from thence. *Sir Paul Ricaut* says, it was anciently situated on the Hills now call'd the *Windmill-Hills*, over *Santa-Veneranda*; but having suffer'd by Earthquakes, was afterwards, for the Conveniency of Trade, rebuilt for most part in a Bottom, where it now stands. *Philostratus* says, it was the most beautiful Town in the World. The ancient Inhabitants were so brave, tho' much given to Luxury, that *Mores Smyrnæi* was proverbially applied to those, says *Buno*, who were both luxurious and valiant together. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, That in ancient Medals, *Smyrna* the *Amazon* was represented with a double Ax and a little Buckler, and that there's such a Bust of her in Marble at the Entrance of the Fortrefs, which *M. Monconys* took for *Apollo*. The ignorant Inhabitants take it for a Queen of *Smyrna* that liv'd in the Time of *Alexander*, and others suppose it to be a Bust of *Semiramis*; but the *Turks* have very much defac'd it. The Antiquities they saw here were, 1. The Ruins of an ancient Theatre, built on the Front of a Hill,

which has been very magnificent, and look'd towards the Sea. 2. A Pot of Medals of *Gallienus* and his Family, and of the Tyrants who reign'd at the same Time. 3. The Basis of a Statue of the Emperor *Claudius*. 4. The Ruins of a Citadel that had been built by the Greek Emperors. 5. The Ruins of a Metropolitcal Church dedicated to *S. John*, but now a Mosque. At the Porch there are two beautiful Marble Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order, and near it the Ruins of a great Cistern supported by Pillars. 6. Without the Walls there are the Ruins of a Chappel dedicated to *St. Polycarp*, with the Remains of his Tomb, and near it the Ruins of a noble and large Circus. 7. In the lower Part of the Town are the Ruins of the Temple of *Cylebe*. 8. About a Mile from the Town, among Olive-Trees, there are the Ruins of a Temple of *Janus*, as some think, built of large Stones without Lime. On the Portal, according to *Strabo*, stood the Image of *Homer*, who is said to have been a Native of this Place, tho' *Rhodes*, *Colophon*, *Salamina*, *Chios*, *Argos*, and *Athens*, did likewise claim him as theirs; but *Strabo* thinks *Smyrna* was in the Right. A Statue of *Janus* with two Faces has been since dug up near the Ruins of that Place. The Ruins of Old *Smyrna* lie at the Entrance of the Gulph, near a Castle, about two Miles and half from the Town. There are several Inscriptions in the Burying-place of the *Armenians* upon ancient Marbles, which they had brought thither, and set up at the Ends of their Graves. And in the Gardens of an Aga, there was found a Stone-Coffin of an ancient *Roman*, with his Arms of Brass in it. They likewise saw here a Medal which gave an Account of the Origine of the Name of the Town *Phocæa*, being a Representation of a *Phocæe* or Sea-Calf, which are taken in great Numbers on that Coast. There is a Dog represented fighting with it on the Reverse, with the Word $\Phi \Omega \text{KAEI} \Omega \text{N}$ round it, which shews it to be a Medal of the *Phocæans*, and was struck in the Time of the Emperor *Philip*. *Spon* says, he bought a great Number of Medals there, of which he afterwards made much Profit. *Sir Paul Ricaut* supposes the Medals of the Emperor *Gallienus*, mention'd by *Spon*, were lodg'd in the Theatre to preserve the Memory of his having

having repair'd it. He adds from *Strabo*, That the Founders of this City were *Ephesians*, who dispossest the *Leleges* that inhabited this Country. The *Lydians* demolish'd it afterwards; so that for 400 Years, it was more like a Village than a City, till *Antigonus* and *Lyfimachus* rebuilt it. *Velleius Paterculus* says, it was built by the *Æolians*. *Herodotus* confirms it, and says, it was afterwards destroy'd by the *Ionians*, and the Inhabitants liv'd with the *Ephesians*. The *Ionians* repair'd it again, and made it an Emporium for Corn, &c. It appears by Medals in the Time of the Roman Emperors, that it was reckon'd the Metropolis of *Asia*; and particularly by one of the *Arundel* Marbles publish'd by Mr. *Prideaux*, it appears to have been the largest and most splendid City of *Asia*. The River *Melas* runs by its Walls, and is fam'd for a Cave near the Head of it, where *Homer* is said to have compos'd his Verses; and hence he was call'd *Melissigenes*. It is now only a small Brook, the Water of it being carried off in several Channels for the Use of their Mills and Gardens. It has suffer'd much by 6 Earthquakes, and the *Greeks* apprehend it will be ruin'd by a 7th. That which increases its Fame most, was its being one of the 7 Churches of *Asia*, and the Place where *Polycarp* preach'd, and was martyr'd. Sir *Paul* gives this Account of the present State of it; That it stands among Bogs and Fens, which in the Autumn send forth Vapours that occasion malignant Fevers, which are very fatal to the *English*: But of late, the lower Parts being inhabited, the Ditches drein'd, the Bogs turn'd into Gardens, and the Air purified by numerous Fires, it is as healthful as any other Maritime City of the *Levant*. 'Tis the most flourishing of all its Sister-Churches, and has not only the Honour to be still a Metropolis, but to rule over those which were formerly its Equals. The Convenience of its Port and Harbour, in one of the finest Bays in the World, made the Christian Merchants chuse it for the chief Scale of the *Turkish* Empire. Their Trade increasing, and by consequence the Grand Seignior's Revenues by Customs, his Ministers thought fit to encourage it, so that it is now more renowned than all the Cities of *Asia Minor*. The famous Vizier

Achmet, the Son of *Kuperlee*, considering how much it was neglected, its ancient Royal Structures destroy'd, its Aqueducts decay'd, and that it had no publick Edifice agreeable to the State of such an Emporium, he erected at his own Charge a noble *Bezaftin* or Exchange, and a sumptuous Inn, with a Bagnio and Stables, all built of Free-stone, and cover'd with Lead, except the Stables. He likewise built a noble Custom-House on Piles of Wood within the Sea, and a stately Aqueduct, by which he join'd so many Streams into one Current, as supplied all the new Buildings. He also added 73 new Fountains to the 10 old ones, so that it is as well supplied with Water as most Cities in *Asia*. All this he finished in 1677. *Spon* says, there's as good Entertainment and Company here as any where in the *Levant*. There is good Hunting and Fowling in the Neighbourhood, particularly of *Francolines*, which are better than *Partridges*. He says, the Town contain'd then about 30000 *Turks*, 12 or 15000 *Jews*, and 9 or 10000 *Greeks*, who had only two Churches. The *English*, *Dutch*, *Venetians* and *French*, have their Consuls here. They have a great Trade in *Persian* Silks, Thread, Cotton of *Magnesia*, Camblets of *Angoura*, Tobacco, and Scammony, the Juice of a certain Plant which grows in the Neighbourhood. The Harbour is 8 Leagues round, and has every where good Anchorage. There is a lesser Harbour within the great one for the *Turkish* Gallies. The Customs demanded here are from 3 to 8 per Cent. according to the Difference of Nations. The *English* are most favour'd, and the *Armenians* least; and if any offer to defraud the Custom-House, they do not confiscate their Goods, but make them pay double. All Sorts of Commodities are transported from hence out of *Asia* into *Europe*, and from *Europe* to *Asia*. *Tavernier* says, the Inhabitants are about 90000 in all, of which 60000 are *Turks*, 15000 *Greeks*, 8000 *Armenians*, and 7000 *Jews*. The *European* Christians are but few. The *Turks* have 15 Mosques, the *Jews* 7 Synagogues, the *Armenians* one Church, the *Greeks* two, and the *Latins* three. The adjacent Country abounds with Oil and Wine, and the Sea with Fish and Fowl. About half a League from the City there are Salt-Pits. The

The Heat is excessive in the Summer, and it would be insupportable were it not for Breezes from the Sea. He adds to the Commodities above-mention'd, Goats-Hair from *Angouri*, Cordovans of several Colours, Callicoës white and blue, great Quantities of Wool for Mattresses, Tapestries, Quilted Coverlets, Soap, Rhubarb, Galls, Valanede, and Opium. The Caravans come hither in February, June, and October, and return the same Months. He says, it lies in Long. 50. Lat. 38. 45. *Moll* places it in Long. 47. Lat. 37 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Cicinius*, who wrote the *Paralipomena Homeri* in a delicate Style, and *Nicetes* the famous Sophist, whom the Emperor *Adrian* made Governor of *Egypt*, were Natives of this Place.

2. *Clazomenæ*, or *Clazomena*, was a Maritime Town of *Ionia*, betwixt *Smyrna* and *Eryphras*, in the Peninsula, about 28 Miles S. W. from *Smyrna*. It is now call'd *Urla*, or *Vourla*, and gave Birth to the famous Natural Philosopher *Anaxagoras*, who studied so hard, that he neglected all other Affairs, and was so great a Pedant, that he undertook to prove Snow to be black by the following Argument: *Snow is Water, but Water is black, therefore Snow is black.* *Alexander the Great* order'd a Rampart to be cast up from the Island on which *Clazomenæ* was built, that join'd it to the Peninsula. The Romans honour'd this City with several Immunities, and gave them the Isle of *Erymusæ*. There are ancient Medals of this City with *Augustus* in the Front, and that of his Wife *Livia* on the Reverse.

3. *Teos*, lay near *Clazomenæ*, on the other Side of the Peninsula. 'Twas the Birth-place of the Poet *Anacreon*, and noted for a good Harbour; but the Inhabitants abandon'd it, and went to *Abdera*, a Town in *Thracia*, rather than they would submit to the Persian Yoke. The Town was afterwards inhabited, as appears by *Livy*. It submitted to the Romans, and was adorn'd by *Augustus*.

4. *Lebedus*, or *Lebedos*, a Sea-Town near the Neck of the Peninsula, about 20 Miles E. from *Teos*, noted for the Annual Plays celebrated in Honour of *Bacchus*, to which all the People of *Ionia* resorted. It was destroy'd by *Lyfimachus*, who carried the Inhabitants to *Ephesus*.

5. *Colophon*, on the River *Caystrus*, about

27 Miles S. E. from *Lebedus*, on the other Side the Bay, at the Foot of Mount *Minus*, noted for the Death of the Prophet *Calchas*. The ancient Town of this Name was destroy'd by *Antigonus*, to enlarge *Ephesus*, and the new one is built near its Ruins. It was noted because of the Proverb *Colophonem rei alicui addere*, occasion'd by the Excellency of their Horsemen, who were so much us'd in Battles, that it was thought none could exceed them.

6. *Clarum*, which by *Eustathius* is reckon'd the Sea-Port of *Colophon*, near which it lay. The Temple and Grove of *Apollo*, where his Oracle was pronounced, was in or near this Town. Some alledge that *Homer* was born here.

7. *Ephesus*. *Moll* places it about 20 Miles S. from *Smyrna*. *Tavernier* says, 'tis a Day and half's Journey from thence. *Sir Paul Ricaut* makes it 45 English Miles S. E. from *Smyrna*, and 5 Miles from the Sea. It was anciently accounted a Maritime Town, because it had a Communication with the Sea by the R. *Cayster*. *Strabo* says, it was walled in by *Lyfimachus*, who call'd it *Arsmoa*, after his Wife, but it soon return'd to its ancient Name. It was govern'd by a Senate, and in Matters of Consequence all the People were consulted. *Herodotus* reckons it in *Lydia*, that being the ancient Name of the Country before it was possessed by the *Ionians*; but Proper *Lydia* lies within Land. *Pliny* calls this City the Eye of *Asia*, and a Work of the *Amazons*. It was most fam'd for the Temple of *Diana*, the noblest of its kind in the World. *Strabo* and *Herodotus* place it betwixt the Town and the Harbour. *Pliny* says, it was admirably magnificent, and 220 (some say 400) Years a building, at the Charge of all *Asia*. *Livy* says, That all the Cities of that Country contributed towards it. *Sir Paul* says, the first Temple was built by *Chersiphron*, and spar'd by *Xerxes* when he burnt all the other Temples of *Asia*. It was burnt by *Erostratus*, on purpose to perpetuate his Name by this Villany, the same Day that *Alexander the Great* was born at *Pella*. 'Twas rebuilt more magnificent than before by the Citizens, and chiefly by the Contributions of the Female Sex; but not being completed, *Alexander the Great* offer'd to finish it at his own Charge, provided that his Name

Name should be put upon it as the Builder of the whole Fabrick ; but this was refus'd, and *Alexander* complimented thus by a witty *Ephesian* ; *It was not proper for one God to contribute to the Temple of another.* Sir *Paul* says, all the Priests of this Temple were Eunuchs, call'd *Megalobizi*, who were in great Honour, and assisted by Virgins. This City was very powerful in Shipping, and the chief Emporium of *Asia* on this Side *Taurus*. *Lysander* the *Lacedemonian* did very much increase its Trade, and demolish'd *Lebedus* on purpose to augment *Ephesus*. There are several ancient Medals of this Town extant, and particularly one of *Vespasian*, with an Inscription in Greek, importing that it was the chief Town of *Asia Sacra*, and govern'd by its own Laws. *Buno* says, That one of the most remarkable Things in *Diana's* Temple was a Marble Statue of *Hecate*, so finely polish'd, that it darted Beams into ones Eyes ; and therefore the Sexton, says *Pliny*, warn'd the On-lookers to take Care of their Eyes when they beheld it. Sir *Paul* says, nothing appears more stately at one's Approach to this City than the Castle on the Hill, and the lofty Fabrick of *St. John's* Church, now a *Turkish* Mosque, (the biggest Pillar of which is above 4 *English* Yards in Compass) which seem to promise a Traveller the View of that magnificent Structure of *Diana's* Temple, so famous in History. At the Entrance of the Town there are Pillars of Porphyry, and an uneasy Passage over ruinous Temples and Palaces, the Memory of which is not preserved by Tradition, and there are few Inscriptions left to direct us to the Knowledge of them. Sir *Paul* thinks *Diana's* Temple stood without the City, where there are Ruins to be seen of a more ample and stately Building than any of the rest. Under these Ruins he and his Company descended about 30 Steps with Lights in their Hands, from whence they enter'd into several narrow Passages, with so many Turnings and Windings, that they were forc'd to use a Clew of Thread for their Guide. Some call it the *Labyrinth* ; but he supposes it was only the Foundation of the Temple which was laid in this Manner, according to the best Rules of Architecture for Fabricks of that Weight and Magnificence. The Air below was moist, and of

a suffocating Heat, which nourished Bats of a prodigious Bigness, that struck several times at their Torches. Near this Place there's a stately Lavatory of Porphyry, call'd *St. John's* Font, about 6 Yards diameter, wherein they pretend he baptiz'd great Multitudes. Not far from hence is the Cave of the 7 Sleepers, who retir'd thither in *Dioclesian's* Time, and slept 200 Years. In Remembrance of this Story, whether true or false, the ancient Christians of *Ephesus* erected a Chappel, Part of which is still remaining, and the Painting not wholly defaced. *Spon* and *Wheeler* give this Description of the Temple, viz. That it stood at the Foot of the Mountain, on the Left Hand as we come from *Smirna* to *Ephesus*, in a moist and marshy Soil, which occasion'd their being at more Charge in laying the Foundations than all the rest of the Temple ; for according to *Pliny*, in his Natural History, they mix'd Coals and Wool with other Materials. They likewise view'd the Vaults Sir *Paul* speaks of, and think they were made use of for Cisterns and Aqueducts, there being Water still running in some of them. They suppose the Temple to have been a sort of a Square, twice as long as broad, which comes near to *Pliny's* Description, who says it was 425 Foot long, and 220 broad. The Front lay towards the Town and Castle : The Walls were of great Stones, mix'd with Brick in some Places. The many Holes which lie in a strait Line makes them suppose the Temple to have been fac'd with Plates of Brass, or other Metal fix'd in the Stones. Among the Ruins they perceived 6 Marble Pillars, of one Piece each, 40 Foot high, and 7 in diameter, which looks like the Proportions of the *Dorick* Order ; but *Pliny* says, they were 60 Foot high, and 127 in Number. Sir *Paul* gives an Account of several Inscriptions on the Ruins of the Theatre, Castle, and Temple, which seem to have been of *Roman* Workmanship : For an Account of which, we refer to him. Over a Gate about the middle of the City, there is a Representation of *Hector* drag'd round the Walls of *Troy* by *Achilles*, which some took to be a Description of the first Christian Persecutions. The Aqueduct on the E. Side of the Town has some Stones revers'd in the Walls, with Inscriptions upon

on them, which mention the Name of *Marcus Aurelius*. Sir *Paul* takes this to be a Proof of its having been repair'd by the *Turks* after they took Possession of it, for it continued a flourishing City till the *Ottoman* Family remov'd to *Constantinople*. *Spon* and *Wheeler* say, there is no City in the World which has so many great and melancholy Remains of its ancient Magnificence; for every where one meets with Marbles, Pillars, Statues, and Walls, the Ruins of which are heap'd upon one another. The Fortrefs which stands on an Hill seems to be the Work of the *Greek* Emperors. There are several *Basso-Relievo's* upon it, one of them the Representation of *Hector* dragg'd by *Achilles*, above-mentioned, and another has a Head with a Serpent on one Side, and a Bow on the other. The Pagans represented *Proserpina* in Hell by the Serpent, the Moon by the Head, and *Diana* by the Bow. These 3 Divinities, which, according to their Theology, made but one, they call'd *Hecate Triformis*; by which some are of Opinion, that they had an obscure Knowledge of the Trinity. Their Aqueducts were brought from a great distance. There are several Arches of them 6 Miles from *Ephesus*, with Inscriptions to *Diana* of *Ephesus*, and the Emperors *Augustus* and *Tiberius*, on the Road to *Scala-Nova*. On the Top of a neighbouring Hill there's a square Tower, which they call *St. Paul's Prison*. From hence there's a pleasant Prospect of the Turnings of the *Cayster*. There is nothing in the Place now but a few Earthen Cottages among the Ruins inhabited by Shepherds and Farmers, and not one Christian left in this once so famous Church, over which it is said *St. John the Evangelist* presided till the 101st Year of Christ. *Hippocritus* the Poet, and *Artemidorus* the Philosopher, were Natives of this City. It appears by the Compass of the Ruins, that the City was very large. Many of the Pillars and Marbles have been carried to *Constantinople*, to adorn the Mosques, &c. in that City. 'Twas famous for the 3d General Council held here. During the *Trojan* War, 'twas call'd *Aopes*, then *Ortygia*, and next *Morgas*. The *Turks* call it *Ayasaluck*. *Hekelius* says, the *Ephesians* had certain Letters or Magical Figures, by the Use of which they came off successfully in every Thing they under-

took; from whence came the Proverb *Ephesia Littera*, to signify those who were successful in their Undertakings.

D O R I S,

L A Y on the S. W. Corner of *Natolia*, S. W. from *Caria*, and W. from *Lycia*, most of it in a Peninsula. The Inhabitants, call'd *Dores*, deriv'd their Origine from a *Grecian* People of the same Name. It was anciently reckon'd Part of *Caria*; but the Name was confin'd afterwards to a certain People, who communicated together in Sacred Rites. *Ptolomy* begins it at *Halicarnassus*, and concludes it at *Caunus*; and *Herodotus* calls it *Dorica*, *Pentapolis*, and *Hexapolis*.

The chief Towns of this Country were, 1. *Halicarnassus*, which lay on the *Sinus Ceramicus*. *Moll* places it about 65 Miles S. E. from *Ephesus*. *Cellarius* makes it about 90, and *Cluverius* 100. It was the Palace of the Kings of *Caria*, and the Metropolis of that Country, noted for the Mausoleum of King *Mausolus*, erected to the Honour of his Memory by his Queen *Artemisia*, and reckon'd one of the Seven Wonders of the World. *Luyts* says, it is now so much ruin'd, that Geographers are not agreed as to its Situation, some placing it over against the Island *Cois*. *Cellarius* says, 'twas founded by the *Argives*, and was noted for a Harbour, strong Castles, and great Riches, and held out a long Siege against *Alexander the Great*. *Pliny* says, it lay betwixt the *Sinus Ceramicus* and *Jasius*. *Strabo* says, its Castle, call'd *Salmacides*, lay in an Island, and had its Name from *Salmacis*, a Fountain, which some alledge gave those who drank of it the Venerial Disease, and made them effeminate. Others ascribe this Distemper not to the Fountain, but to the lewd Converse of the People who resorted to it. *Vitruvius* gives a more favourable Account of the Matter, and says, That this Calumny had its Original, because the barbarous People who frequented this Fountain were civiliz'd by the Company which they found there; but he owns, there was a Temple of *Mercury* and *Venus* near this Fountain, from whence *Ovid* in his *Metam.* calls it *Obscena Salmacis Unda*; i. e. The Lecherous Water of *Salmacis*; and *Strabo* says, That the Debauchery

was not owing to the Water, but to the Riches and Intemperance of the Inhabitants. This Place was noted for the Birth of *Herodotus*, the Father of the Greek Historians; and also for that of *Dionysius*, the Son of *Alexander*, call'd *Halicarnassensis* and *Halicarnasseus*, who wrote the Roman History. There is another *Dionysius* called *Junior*, who was likewise a Native of this Place, liv'd in the Time of the Emperor *Adrian*, and wrote 36 Books of the History of Musick.

2. *Cnidus*, lay, according to *Buno*, on the furthest Part of the Peninsula, where it runs out into the Sea. *Cellarius* agrees with him, and places it about 58 Miles S. W. from *Halicarnassus*. Some think it stood where *Stundia* now lies, and others on the Promontory now call'd *Cape Crio*. *Ovid* calls it a Fishing-Town. It was noted for the Worship of *Venus*, and a curious Statue of her made by *Praxiteles*. *Luyts* says, 'tis now called *Gnido*, and lies in the most Western Part of the Peninsula, was formerly reckon'd among the chief Towns of the Country, but now in Ruins, and the Cape of the same Name is now *Crio*. *Ctesias* the Physician was a Native of this Place, and noted for curing *Artaxerxes*, who was wounded in the Battle when he defeated his Brother *Cyrus*. *Ctesias* was taken Prisoner here, stay'd 17 Years with *Artaxerxes*, follow'd his Profession in *Persia*, and wrote the *Assyrian* and *Persian* History in 23 Books. *Diodorus Siculus* owns, that he took what he wrote of the *Assyrians* from *Ctesias*'s 6 first Books; tho' by some he be accounted a fabulous Author. *Bleau* says, that this Town is now call'd *Cacavo*.

3. *Ceramus*, lay on the N. Side of the Peninsula, betwixt *Halicarnassus* and *Cnidus*, from whence the Bay was call'd *Sinus Ceramicus*.

LYCIA, CILICIA, and PAMPHYLIA.

LYCIA, now call'd *Aldinelli*, or *Menteseli*, has *Asia Minor* on the W. and N. *Pamphylia* on the E. and on the S. that Part of the *Mediterranean* call'd *Mare Lycium*. Some derive the Name from *Lycus* the Son of *Pandion*: Others from the River *Lycus*. Some join *Pamphylia* and *Cilicia* with it; and ac-

cording to *Pomponius* and *Stephanus*, *Lycia* did lie contiguous to *Cilicia*, and did not reach to the Sea, the Coast being then called *Pamphylia*. After this, *Lycia* was divided into *Exterior* and *Interior*. The first was a *Præsidial* Province, and afterwards *Consular*; and *Pamphylia* being the farthest Part of the *Roman Asia*, comprehended *Pisidia*, *Isauria*, and *Lycaonia*. *Cilicia* was divided into *Campestris* and *Aspera*, the latter being so call'd according to *Bochart*, because it was stony, from the *Punick* Word *Chalek*, from whence came the Greek Name *Kéling*, and the Roman Name *Cilicia*. *Luyts* says, these Countries were anciently call'd *Carmania*, and had famous Princes before it fell under the *Turks*, who have now divided it into 7 Governments, under so many *Sangiacks*.

The chief Mountain of *Lycia* was the famous *Chimæra*, that sends forth Fire and Smoak by Night; from whence came the vulgar Fable of its being a Monster of 3 Shapes, according to that of *Ovid*;

*Quoque Chimæra juga mediis in Partibus hircum,
Pectus & Ora Leo, caudam Serpentis habebat.*

Because Lions had their Dens in the Top. The Middle, which abounded with Pasturage, was stock'd with Goats, and it was haunted by Dragons at the Foot. *Cellarius* places this Mountain in the Midland Part of *Lycia*, and takes Notice of the different Opinions of Authors, some of whom join it to Mount *Cragus* in *Hither Cilicia*, and others in *Phaselis* in *Further Cilicia*; but *Salmasius* thinks *Pliny* was mistaken who plac'd *Chimæra* in *Phaselis*, and *Hephæstion* at *Cragus*; whereas *Strabo* joins *Chimæra* with *Cragus*.

The chief Rivers here were, 1. *Xanthus*, which rose from Mount *Cadmus*, ran by the Town of *Xanthus*, and falls into the *Lycian* Sea. *Strabo* calls it *Sirbes*. 2. *Limyrus*, which runs by the Town *Limyra*, and falls into the same Sea.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Patara*, anciently call'd *Arfinoe*. It lies on the Coast, about 80 Miles S. E. from *Halicarnassus*, and about 90 from the Isle of *Rhodes*, according to *Moll*. It had a Temple and Oracle of *Apollo*, (who from hence was called *Pataraeus*) like that of *Delphi*. *Livy* calls it the Metropolis of the Country. *Virgil* says, *Apollo* pronounc'd his Oracle here in the

Winter, and at *Delos* in the Summer. From hence came also the *Lycia Sortes*, mention'd by *Virgil*. This Town had formerly a noble Harbour, and lay in that call'd the Peninsula of *Lycia*. *Ptolomy Philadelphus* enlarged it, and call'd it by the Name of his Wife *Arfinoe*; but its old Name prevailed over that.

2. *Andriacæ* lay on the same Coast, about 25 Miles E. from *Patara*.

3. *Telmessus*, or *Telmisus*, lay beyond the River *Xanthus*, on the Borders of *Lycia*, about 70 Miles N. W. from *Patara*. From hence the neighbouring Bay was called *Telmessus Sinus*. *Buno* says, *Proclus* the Philosopher was a *Lycian*, and wrote some Greek Hymns and Commentaries on some of *Plato's* Dialogues, which are still extant. This Town had a Harbour and Promontory of the same Name. It submitted to the Consul *Q. Fabius Labeo*, and enter'd before that into a League with *Alexander*. There were other Towns of this Name in *Caria* and *Pisidia*.

4. *Xanthus*, stood near the Mouth of that River, about 27 Miles S. E. from *Telmessus*.

5. *Limyra*, now *Mari*, or *Meira*, lay on the River *Limyra*, about 22 Miles N. E. from *Andriacæ*.

Cellarius mentions also the following Towns in this Country; 1. *Olympus*, which (according to *Strabo*) was a great Town, near the Mountain of the same Name, which was also call'd *Phœnicus*. He reckon'd it one of the greatest Towns in *Cilicia*. *Cicero* is *Veres* says, it was taken by *Servilius Isauricus*, and that it was an ancient and fine Town when he destroy'd it. It had a Castle upon Mount *Olympus*, separated from the Town, and lay near the Sea, about 30 Miles E. from *Andriacæ*, over against the *Chelidonia Insula*, according to *Cellarius*.

2. *Phaselis*, on the Borders of *Pamphylia*, by *Pliny* and others reckon'd in that Country, 32 Miles S. E. from *Andriacæ*. It was first inhabited by Pirates, and at length grew to be a considerable Town. 'Twas taken by *P. Servilius* in order to destroy those Pirates, and not much inhabited since that Time. 'Tis the first Land discover'd by those who sail from *Rhodes* to *Cilicia*. Near this Place lay Mount *Climax*, on

the *Pamphylian* Sea, where it formed a straight Passage. Thro' this Place, *Alexander* marched his Army in the Winter up to the Navel in Water, because the Tide flows into it at that Season, as we are told by *Strabo*. There's such another Passage form'd by two Mountains near *Selge*, about 100 Miles farther up the Country to the N. E. mention'd by *Polybius*. Near *Phaselis* lay also a great fortified Rock inhabited by the *Marmarenses*, who having annoy'd the *Macedonians* in their March, *Alexander* laid Siege to it, tho' 'twas thought impregnable. The Inhabitants fearing to be taken by Storm, set Fire to their Houses, and escap'd thro' his Camp by Night to the neighbouring Mountains.

Cellarius mentions several other Towns of the Inland Part of *Lycia*. We refer the Reader to him for an Account of them, because none of them appear considerable by his Description. Mount *Cragus* in this Country consists of a Chain of large Woody Mountains, among which there are 8 more remarkable than the others for their Height. Mount *Chimera* joins to this Ridge of Hills, according to *Strabo*. He mentions likewise another Range of Mountains call'd *Antieragum*, which run opposite to these, and lie nearer *Caria*. *Ptolomy* mentions two other Districts of this Country, call'd *Milyas* and *Cabalia*, the former in the W. and the latter in the E Side of the Country; but these Distinctions are now diffus'd.

P A M P H Y L I A.

Cluverius says, it is now call'd *Menteseli*. *Luyts* says, 'tis the Western Part of *Caramania*. It has *Galatia* on the N. *Cilicia* and *Cappadocia* on the E. the Sea call'd by its own Name on the S. and *Lycia* and *Phrygia Major* on the W. The Subdivisions of it were *Carbalia*, and Part of *Pisidia*, the other belonging to *Galatia*. *Pliny* says, 'twas anciently call'd *Mopsopia*; and according to others, this Country and *Cilicia* is now call'd *Caramania*. The Inhabitants of *Pisidia* were anciently nam'd *Solymi*, says *Stephanus*, from *Solymus* the Son of *Jupiter*; and *Pisidia* by the *Turks* is now called *Versacili*, from *Versacus* its chief Town, and Seat of the Governor, which by the Ancients was

was called *Antiochia Pisidia*. Some derive the Name from $\epsilon\kappa\tau\alpha\ \pi\alpha\rho\phi\upsilon\lambda\alpha\varsigma$, because it was inhabited by different Sorts of People. *Cellarius* says, it is the first Country beyond Mount *Taurus*, or (according to others) it lies on both Sides of that Mountain; but the greater Part beyond it. 'Tis also writ *Pamphilia* and *Pamphilius*, and the Inhabitants are call'd *Pamphylii*, and *Pamphyli*. Authors are not agreed as to its Boundaries. We refer to *Cellarius* for their different Opinions. The chief Mountain here, and indeed the noblest in the whole World, is Mount *Taurus*. *Cluverius* says, it begins to rise at the *Pamphylian* Sea, near the *Insula Chelidonia*, runs through innumerable People by different Names from W. to E. to the utmost Borders of *Scythia* and the *Indies*, being almost of equal Length with *Asia* itself, which it divides into two Parts; that which lies towards the N. being called *Asia intra Taurum*; or *Asia* on this Side *Taurus*; and that which looks towards the S. is called *Extra Taurum*, or beyond *Taurus*. *Luyts* says, That it rises on the Coast, betwixt the ancient Boundaries of *Lycia* and *Pamphylia*, wherein he agrees with *Cluverius*. Then it stretches towards the N. and afterwards runs E. thro' *Caramania* and *Aladulia*, and all the rest of *Asia* as far as the *Mare Eoum*; but that which is properly call'd *Taurus* lies in *Natolia*, and goes by different Names. Mount *Amanus*, call'd by the Inhabitants *Montagna Neros*, is a Branch of the *Taurus*, and separates *Natolia* from *Syria*. The greater Branch, called *Antritaurus*, now *Roham Thaura*, separates *Caramania* from *Aladulia*, as he does the latter from *Amasia*, and anciently divided *Armenia Minor* into two Parts. *Cellarius* agrees as to the Beginning of this Mountain near the *Chelidonian* Islands, for which he quotes *Strabo*, and the first remarkable Part of it is that called the *Sacrum Promonterium*. *Mela* agrees with him, and says, it reaches from thence to the *Mare Eoum*; tho' some begin it at the Mountains of *Caria* and *Peræa*, which lie over against the Isle of *Rhodes*; but think those Hills not high enough to deserve the Name of *Taurus*, till they come over against the *Chelidonian* Islands.

The most remarkable Towns in *Pamphylia* were, 1. *Side*, or *Syda*, which lay upon the Shore, near the Borders of *Cilicia*, about

92 Miles E. from *Andriacæ*, on the other Side the Bay, according to *Cluverius*, and about 85 E. from *Phaselis* according to *Cellarius*. It is now a Sea-Port, and by some called *Candalor*. It was formerly a Colony of the *Cumæans*, had a Temple of *Minerva*, and was afterwards a Metropolitan Church, and a very considerable Town, as appears by several Medals of *Gallienus* and *Gordianus*.

2. *Seleucia Pisidia*, now *Calestria*, on the River *Calycadnus*, about 38 Miles N. from *Side*. *Cellarius* says, it is likewise called *Seleucia ad Taurum*, and was a Bishop's See. It is also surnamed *Farrea*, from Mines of Iron suppos'd to be in its Neighbourhood; tho' some will have these to be two Towns, because the Bishops of both sign'd the Council of *Nice*, and that one of them lay in *Pamphylia*, properly so call'd, almost 80 Miles N. from *Andriacæ*. Here a Council was held according to *Epiphanius*; so that *Theodoret* is mistaken when he places it near the Sea.

3. *Antiochia Pisidia*, about 25 Miles N. E. from *Seleucia*. It is said to be a Metropolis in the *Notitia Episcopatum*, and mention'd in the *Acts of the Apostles*, ch. 13. v. 14. 'Twas a Roman Colony, and call'd *Colonia Cesarea*.

4. *Termessus*, which lay betwixt *Perga* and *Antiochia*, on the River *Cestrus*, about 20 Miles S. E. from the latter. 'Tis also call'd *Telmessus*, and enter'd into Friendship with the Romans.

5. *Perga*, or *Perge*, now *Pergi*, betwixt the River *Cestrus* and *Cataracte*, about 36 Miles S. from *Termessus*, and 20 N. from the Shore. It was noted for a Temple of *Diana*, who from hence was call'd *Pergæa*. *Strabo* says, it had a Communication with the Sea by the River. It was a Garrison in the Time of the Romans, and afterwards the See of a Metropolitan.

6. *Attalia*, now *Satalia*, at the Mouth of the River *Cataracte*, 30 Miles S. W. from *Perga*. It had its Name from *K. Attalus*, who founded it, and is mention'd in the *Acts of the Apostles*. It stands on a fair Bay, commodious for Trade; therefore the *Turks* have preserved its Fortifications and Castle, says *Dr. Wells*, in his *Historical Geography* of the New Testament. It gives Name to the neighbouring Gulph call'd *Sinus Attalius*, which is very dangerous to Mariners.

Some

Some reckon *Phaselis* in this Country; but having described it before, we shall only add, that it gave Name to that sort of Boats call'd *Phaselus*, made use of by the Pirates which dwelt in the Place. The Inhabitants were so poor, that they us'd to sacrifice Salt-Fish to their Idols, from whence came the Proverb *Sacrificium Phaselitarum*, to denote a sordid Gift or Entertainment.

6. *Aspendus*, or *Aspendum*, on a Hill near the River *Eurymedon*, about 57 Miles S. E. from *Perga*. It was built by the *Argives*, and became a populous Town. It was noted for Wrestlers and Harpers, who play'd so low, that they were only heard by themselves, or them that sat next them; whence came the Greek Proverb, *To sing to ones self*, to denote those who entertain stolen Goods, or only consulted their own Advantage. The River *Eurymedon*, which runs by this Town, was fam'd for a Sea-Fight at the Mouth of it, where *Cimon* the *Athenian* defeated *Xerxes* as he fled from *Greece* with the *Phanician* and *Persian* Fleets.

C I L I C I A,

Which *Cluverius* says is now called *Caramania*, is a long Tract of Land betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Cilician* Sea. *Buno* says, it has *Pamphylia* on the W. *Capadocia* and *Lesser Armenia* on the N. Mount *Amanus* on the E. and the *Cilician* Sea on the S. *Luyts* says, That *Caramania* includes only Part of *Cilicia*, and that the latter was divided into *Cilicia Trachiotis*, i. e. Mountainous; and *Campestris*, or the plain Country; the former toward the W. and the latter to the E. *Cellarius* says, 'tis a very large Country, lies betwixt *Pamphylia* and *Syria*, and is encompassed with Mountains, having *Taurus* on one Side, and *Amanus* on the other towards *Armenia*. The streight Passes thro' those Mountains are call'd *Pylæ*. The *Mediterranean* lies S. of it. The chief Rivers are, 1. *Calycadnus*, now *Saleso*, which runs thro' *Seleucia*, and falls into the Sea betwixt *Sarpedon* and Cape *Zephyrius*. 2. *Cydus*, which (according to some) rises in Mount *Taurus*, but others say from the Channel of *Choaspis*, and runs thro' *Tarsus*. It has a rapid Stream, its Water is very cold, and good against Diseases in the Nerves. *Strabo*

commends it for the Gout. It was in this River where *Alexander* going to swim, was almost benumm'd with Cold. *Curtius* says, it is the greatest River in *Cilicia*. *Lamus*, *Sarus*, and *Pyramus*, are the other Rivers of this Country.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Selinus*, or *Se-lenus*, which is likewise the Name of a River. It lies on the Coast, near the Mouth of *Calydnus*, 40 Miles S. from *Seleucia Pisdia*; and because *Trajan* died here, was by the Romans called *Trajanopolis*. Near this Place lay Cape *Crago*, famous for the League of the *Athenians* and the *Rhodians* with the King of *Syria*, by which he was obliged not to come beyond this Promontory with his Forces.

2. *Pompejopolis*, now *Palesoli*, anciently called *Soli*, or *Soloe*. It was said to have been built by *Solon*, after he was dismissed by *Cræsus*. It was afterwards inhabited by the *Athenians*, who forgetting their Native Tongue, because of their Converse with Barbarians, were said to *Solocize*, from whence came the Word *Solecism*. It was likewise the Birth-place of *Chrysippus*, and near it lay the Tomb of the Poet *Aratus*. It was afterwards possessed by the *Rhodians*, *Argives*, and Pirates, who being destroy'd by *Pompey*, it was call'd *Pompejopolis*. It was a considerable Town, and paid a Mule of 200 Talents to *Alexander*, who put a Garrison into their Castle.

Not far from hence lay the Town *Coricus*, upon a Neck of Land surrounded almost with the Sea, which formed a good Harbour there. Near this Place lay the Den called *Specus Corycius*, of which *Strabo* tells many Wonders. He says, it was round, rocky on all Sides, and within full of ever-green Twigs, which bore Saffron. *Pomponius Mela* says, it was a great Den in a Mountain near the Shore, that was 10 Furlongs high, open'd on the Top, and the farther one went down, the Den was the broader, and the Sides of it adorned with hanging Groves, so mighty beautiful, that it astonished the Beholders, who could never be satisfied with looking at it. There was one Descent to it by a strait and rugged Passage of 1500 Paces, thro' pleasant Shades and murmuring Streams on all Sides. Below that was another Den; and the further one went, it was the darker.

In this Part there rose a great River, which, after running a little Way, sunk again into the Earth. *Salmasius* thinks, that by the other Den which open'd within, *Strabo* means the Valley into which one enters by the narrow Passage. *Buno* says, the further Den was called *Typhoneum*, said to have been *Typho's* Chamber, into which any living Creature let down immediately died.

3. *Mallus*, a Town built on a high Ground by *Amphilochus*, and *Mopsus* Son to *Apollo*, from whence *Dio Cassius* call'd the Oracle's pronounc'd in this Place by Dreams *Amphilochi Oracula*. The Town was inhabited by Pirates, but at first by a Colony of *Argives*. It lay near the Mouth of the River *Pyramus*, now *Casulinach*, 120 Miles E. from *Pompeiopolis*, and 48 W. from *Iffus*, now *Ajazzo*.

4. *Iffus*, 48 Miles E. from *Mallus*, lies at the Bottom of that Bay call'd *Ifficus Sinus*, about 30 Miles N. W. from *Alexandretta*, on the Confines of *Syria*. 'Twas anciently a great Town, but in *Strabo's* Time a small one with a Harbour. 'Twas near this Place where *Alexander* defeated *Darius*. *Stephanus* says, the Town was afterwards call'd *Nicopolis* on the Account of this Victory; but *Ptolomy* thinks it a different Town. *Darius*, when he enter'd *Cilicia* after his Defeat, retook this Town, and put the *Macdonian* Garrison to the Sword. It was remarkable afterwards for *Cicero's* encamping here with his Army. Near this Place lie the *Pylæ*; which are the Boundary betwixt *Cilicia* and *Syria*. The narrowest Place of this Passage is about 5 *Parasangæ* or *German Leagues* from hence, and are different from those which lie higher up in the Country near *Mount Amanus*.

5. *Alexandria*, *Alexandretta*, or *Alexandria-la*, lies about 30 Miles S. E. from *Iffus*, upon a River which falls into the same Bay. It is now called *Alexandrona*, and was rebuilt or repair'd by *Alexander*. It is noted for a good Harbour and Market. Some place it in *Syria*; but *Cellarius* says it is in *Cilicia*, and lies near the Mouth of the narrow Streights; and to distinguish it from others of the same Name, is call'd *Alexandria ad Iffum*.

6. *Tarsus*, the Capital of *Cilicia*, upon the River *Cydus*, about 28 Miles E. from *Salemus*, 42 S. E. from *Seleucia*, 53 W. from

Pompeiopolis, and about 12 N. from the Mouth of the *Cydus*, according to *Cluverius*. Some say, 'twas built by *Perseus*, Son to *Jupiter* and *Danae*: Others by a rich *Æthiopian* called *Sandan*. *Solinus* calls it the Mother of Towns. It was famous for Schools of Learning, the Birth-place of *Athenodorus* the Philosopher, and of *Hermogenes* the Sophist, who at 18 Years of Age writ the Art of Rhetorick; but when an old Man, forgot all his Learning. *Cellarius* says, some derive the Name from the Fable of *Pegasus* having lost his Hoof here, because *Tarōd*, signifies a Hoof. Some ascribe the Original of it to *Sardanapalus*; but others, with more Probability, to a Colony of *Argives*. The Difference of Authors, and the many Fables about its Origine, prove its Antiquity. *Strabo* says, it exceeded *Athens*, *Alexandria*, and all other Places, for the Study of Philosophy and other Liberal Sciences among the *Greeks*, and particularly of the *Greek Tongue*. Therefore we are not to wonder at *St. Paul's* being so well instructed in the Language and Philosophy of the *Greeks*, since he was a Native of this Place, and studied here before he went to *Judea* to compleat his Education under *Gammaliel*. It was a Town of such Note, so populous and mighty, that *Strabo* says it was a Metropolis. *Pliny* calls it a Free Town in his Time; but in the Reign of *Caracalla* or *Heliogabalus*, it became a Roman Colony, as appears by several Medals, in which it is called KOA ANTON, because it took Part with the *Triumvirate*, for which it was ill treated by *Cassius*, but rewarded afterward by the *Triumvirs*. It was so much addicted to *Cæsar*, that the Citizens chose to call it *Julio-polis*. *Cellarius* thinks it had the Privileges of the City of *Rome* from the Time of *Cæsar*, or at least the *Triumvirs*, and that many, if not all the Citizens, had this Privilege, and particularly *St. Paul's* Father; therefore he pleaded that he was a Roman born according to the *Porcian Law*, *Acts* 16. 37. and 22. 25, and 28. Authors differ about its Situation: *Ptolomy* makes it an Inland Town; *Pliny* says, it lay far from the Sea; *Strabo* places it only 5 *Stadia* from the Mouth of the *Cydus*; but *Cellarius* thinks it should be read 50, because modern Writers make it but 6 Miles from the Sea, and particularly *Albertus Aquensis*, who says,

says, That the *French* from the Walls of *Tarsus* saw the *Netherland Ships* at 3 Miles distance, which, if meant of *French Leagues*, agrees with *Strabo* as corrected, and differs not much from *Pliny* and *Ptolomy*. *Cellarius* places it accordingly in his Map.

That learned Author mentions several other Towns in this Country; but most of them being now destroyed, and tending only to illustrate the ancient Geographers and Historians, we shall content our selves with mentioning the chief of them, which are,

1. *Nagidus*, a Colony of the *Samians*, the chief Town of the *Anemuri*, which lay betwixt *Cilicia* and *Pamphylia*.

2. *Arsinoe*, noted for its Harbour. There are 4 others of this Name in *Cilicia*. It lay on the Coast, about 30 Miles S. W. from *Seleucia*, and 30 E. from *Selinus*.

3. *Celenderis*, another Sea-Port and Colony of the *Samians*, about 15 Miles E. from *Arsinoe*. 'Tis mention'd by *Josephus de Bello Judaico*, and by *Tacitus*, as a very well fortified Town.

4. *Aphrodisias*, different from that in the Isle of *Cyprus*, lay near a Cape of the same Name, and had a Temple of *Venus*. *Livy* mentions its being taken, with others, by *Antiochus*.

5. *Sarpedon*, a Town and Promontory near the Mouth of the *Calycadnus*, famous for the Treaty betwixt the *Romans* and *Antiochus*, by which he was not to come with his Ships on this Side that Cape. It was noted for the Temples and Oracles of *Apollo* and *Diana*.

6. *Sebaste*, which *Cellarius* says was a Town in the Island *Eleusa*, over against the Mouth of the *Lamus*, and the Residence of *Archelaus* the *Cappadocian*, when *Cilicia Trachea* was given him by *Augustus*. Some by Mistake place this Town in the Continent.

7. *Irenopolis*, on the River *Calycadnus*, was formerly call'd *Neronias*, and a Bishop's See. *Cellarius* places it on the River *Pydnus*, about 58 Miles N. W. from *Tarsus*.

8 *Augusta*, which lay further to the E. near the River *Pyramus*, was also call'd *Cæsarea*, and *Augustopolis*. The *Cilicians* in this Part of the Country subject to *Archelaus* the *Cappadocian* were, according to *Tacitus*, a clownish and rebellious Nation, and

named *Clitæ*. They were very troublesome by their Incurfions, Robberies, and Piracies, to those who submitted to the *Romans*.

9. *Anchiale*, an ancient Town, built (as some say) by *Sardanapalus*, or (as others) by *Anchiales* the Son of *Japhet*. 'Twas a large and strong Town, and lay near the Sea, about 18 Miles S. E. from *Tarsus*, according to *Cluverius*; but *Cellarius* makes it 15 Miles W. East from this Town lay the River *Sarus*, noted for the Rocks at its Mouth, which are dangerous to Sailors. *Livy* calls them *Capita Sari*.

10. *Megartus*, or *Megarsus*, at the Mouth of the River *Pyramus*, noted for the Worship of *Minerva*, where *Alexander the Great* offer'd Sacrifice to her.

11. *Ægæa*, or *Ægææ*, a Sea-Port about 46 Miles S. E. from *Tarsus*, noted for being a Free Town, and for the *Pylæ Amanides*, one of the Streights which gave Entrance into *Cilicia*, and began here; but those call'd the *Pylæ Amanides*, or *Portæ Amani*, lay higher up in the Mountain *Amanus*, by which *Darius* enter'd *Cilicia*.

12. *Amanus*, on the Mountains of that Name, which *Cicero* mentions to be near the Streights where *Alexander* defeated *Darius*; and he himself having encamp'd there some Days, pillag'd *Amanus* and the neighbouring Castles before he went off.

13. *Adana*, on the W. Side of the *Sarus*, not far from *Tarsus*, with which the Inhabitants had War. *Cellarius* places it about 30 Miles N. E. from it. In Medals it is called *ΑΔΑΝΕΩΝ*, with an Effigies of *Venus* coming out of the Sea. 'Tis also furnam'd *Hadriana*, and *Julia Domna*. 'Twas afterwards the See of a Bishop.

14. *Cæsarea ad Anazarbum*, a neighbouring Mountain, but more frequently called *Anazarbus*. It was the Birth-place of *Dioscorides*, who was therefore called *Anazarbenfis Medicus*. It was the See of a Bishop Metropolitan of *Cilicia Secunda*, and ruin'd by an Earthquake in the Time of *Justinus*. It lay on the River *Pyramus*, about 36 Miles N. E. from *Tarsus*. The *Campi Aleii*, thro' which *Philotas* march'd *Alexander's* Horse, lay S. of this Town.

15. *Mopsuestia*, lay near the same River, about 20 Miles S. from *Anazarbus*, and 30 E. from *Tarsus*. 'Twas a Free Town of great Note, adorn'd by *Adrian*, and therefore

fore on a Coin of *Antoninus Pius* the Inhabitants are called *Hadriani Mopseatae*. The Romans made a League with them, and suffer'd them to enjoy their own Laws. In the *Notitia Episcopatum* 'tis reckon'd the 2d Town of *Cilicia Secunda*. *Theodorus*, one of their Bishops, was a great Historian.

16. *Castabala*, or *Castabalum*, about 30 Miles S. E. from *Mopsuestia*, near the Mouth of the *Pinnarus*, and about 15 Miles W. from *Iffus*, different from a Town of that Name in *Cappadocia*, which *Stephanus* not observing, confounded 'em.

17. *Nicopolis*, about 25 Miles N. E. from *Iffus*, and about 18 N. W. from *Alexandria*, near Mount *Amanus*. *Strabo* supposes it to have been built by *Alexander*, in Memory of his Victory over *Darius*; but *Ptolomy* and he differ as to the Situation, for the former places it under Mount *Taurus*, in Lat. 37.

18. *Epiphania*, lies about 40 Miles N. E. from *Alexandria*. *Cicero* encamp'd near this Place before he invaded the People who dwelt about *Amanus*. 'Twas afterwards a Bishop's See. Betwixt this Town and *Nicopolis* lay *Erana*, the chief Town of the *Amari*, tho' not a City, which was taken by *Cicero*, with other Places in the Neighbourhood.

19. *Pindenissus*, lay near Mount *Amanus*, about 50 Miles S. E. from *Alexandria*. It was the chief Town of the *Eleuthero-Cilices*, who never submitted to any King, and therefore call'd themselves a Free People, as appears by their Name. This Town lay very high, and was well fortified, so that *Cicero* could not take it till after 57 Days Siege. Near to them lay the *Tibareni* or *Tibbarani*, suppos'd to be descended from the People of the same Name in *Cappadocia*. They were likewise Enemies to the Romans, but submitted upon their taking *Pindenissus*. *Curtius* mentions three strait Passes betwixt *Cappadocia* and *Cilicia* thro' Mount *Taurus*, called *Pylæ*. He says, they were natural Fortifications, which look'd like those made by Art: That when *Alexander* enter'd one of them, and view'd the Situation of the Place, he admir'd his own good Fortune that he met with no Opposition, for his Troops might easily have been overwhelm'd with Stones from both Sides. *Cellarius* doubts that there were three such Passes

thro' Mount *Taurus*; and supposes if there were, that one of them was more noted than the rest; and that *Cicero* pass'd thro' Mount *Taurus* the same Way as *Alexander*, because both of them directed their March to *Tarsus*. The other two Streights, call'd *Pylæ Amanæ* and *Syræ*, lay next to the Sea, as has been already mentioned.

The ISLANDS of Natolia.

They lie in the *Ægean* and *Mediterranean* Sea. *Cluverius* reckons *SAMOTHRACE* to be the first of them; but others assign it to *Europe*, and there we describ'd it by its modern Name of *Samandrachi*; but shall add, that *Perseus*, the last King of *Macedonia*, fled hither after he was defeated by the Romans under *Æmilius Paulus*. It was anciently an Asylum to all Criminals except Murderers; and here *St. Paul* touch'd in his Journey from *Troas*.

2. TENEDOS, now TENEDO,

A small Island which lies over against *Troas*, with a Village and a Castle. It was very rich in the Time of *Priamus*, and is mention'd by *Virgil* and *Homer*. It had a considerable Town of its own Name, as appears by some Medals. Some derive the Name from *Tennes* or *Tenes*, who was King of it, and afterwards worship'd as a God. The ancient Name of this Island was *Leucophris*. *Verres* the Proconsul brought the Image of *Tenes* from thence. *Heylin* says, *Tenes* was the Son of *Cygnus* or *Cycnus*, a petty King in *Little Phrygia*, who being falsely accused by his Step-Mother of tempting her to Incest, because he refus'd her, was by his Father put in a Chest, and committed to the Mercy of the Waves. Being cast upon this Island, he was made King of it, and famous for his Justice. *Bochart* rejects this as a Fable, and derives the Name of the Island from *Tinedum*, a *Phœnician* Word, which signifies Red Clay. The Town of this Name had a Temple consecrated to *Apollo Smintheus*, and another call'd *Asterion*, near a small River stor'd with Crab-Fish, whose Shells were in Form of a Hatchet. From hence the Inhabitants were called *Asterii*, and had the Stamp of a

Hatchet on their Coin. They had a Custom, for a Man to stand with an Ax at the Back of their Judge, to terrify him from giving false Sentence, or the Witnesses from giving false Evidence; whence came the Proverb *Tenedia Securis*. 'Twas hither the *Greeks* retir'd from the Siege of *Troy*, and from hence they surpris'd the Town when the *Trojans* thought they were quite gone off. 'Twas taken by the *Venetians* in the War of *Candy*; and being fortified, was a Curb on the Trade of *Constantinople*, but retaken by the *Turks* in 1657. There are some small Islands about this which are not worth describing.

3. LESBOS, or LESBUS,

Anciently inhabited by the *Æoles*. It was also call'd *Lasia*, *Pelasgia*, *Ægira*, *Æthiope*, and *Macaria*. *Strabo* says, it was 560 Stadia in Length, and 1500 in Compass. 'Tis now called *Mitylene*, or *Mityleno*, from its principal Town. *Cluverius* says, it was famous for generous Wine and beautiful Women, and likewise for Singers, some of whom being sent for to *Lacedemon* when the People were in a Tumult, they appeas'd them with the Sweetness of their Voices; whence came the Proverb, *Post Lesbium Canorem*, to signify one who was a good Singer, but not of the first Rate. The *Lesbia Regula*, denoting a Rule that is applicable to any Thing, had also its Rise from this Island. *Heylin* says, 'tis 168 Miles in Compass, and the 7th for Bigness in the *Mediterranean*. Towards the W. and S. 'tis mountainous and barren, but in other Parts level and fruitful. It abounds with good Corn, and their Wine is compar'd by *Athenians* to *Ambrosia*. They have Plenty of Sheep, and Horse strong and courageous, but low. *Sappho* the Poetess, who invented the *Sapphic Verse*, and was therefore called the 10th Muse; *Pittacus*, one of the 7 Sages of *Greece*; *Theophrastus*, the Physician and Philosopher; *Alcaeus*, the Successor of *Orpheus* in *Lyrick Poessie*; *Arion* the Musician and Poet, the Inventor of *Tragedies* and *Dithyrambick Verse*, were all Natives of this Island. It was formerly subject to the *Athenians*, and revolted when the rest of *Greece* leagu'd against them; but was reduced by *Paches* an *Athenian* General, who sent to *Athens* to know what he should do with the

Citizens of *Mitylene*, their chief Town. The Senate order'd them to be put to the Sword; but repenting of this Decree, they sent contrary Orders next Day. The Messengers arrived just as *Paches* was reading the former Order, which prevented the Execution of it. The Island was afterwards subdued by the *Romans*, and came from them to the Eastern Emperors, from whom the *Venetians* took it in 1124, with several others. 'Twas recover'd again by the Emperor *John Ducas*, and in 1335 given by the Emperor *Kalo Johannes* to *Francis Catalusius*, a Nobleman of *Genoa*, with one of his Sisters. 'Twas enjoyed by his Posterity till 1462, that *Mahomet the Great* invaded it for harbouring the Pyrates of *Spain* and *Italy*, and because the then Lord of it, *Dominicus Catalusius*, had murder'd his elder Brother, who was the Sultan's Tributary, and paid him 4000 Ducats per Annum. *Mahomet* took *Mitylene* after 27 Days Siege, removed the chief Families to *Constantinople*; and since that Time, the Island has been subject to the *Turks*. It had anciently 5 (some say 9) Towns; 1. *Lesbos*; 2. *Antissa*; 3. *Pyrrha*; 4. *Eressos*; 5. *Arisba*; 6. *Mitylene*; 7. *Hiera*; 8. *Agamede*; 9. *Sigrium*; all of them destroy'd by War and Earthquakes, except *Eressos* and *Mitylene*, anciently call'd *Mithymna*, which lies on the S. E. Corner of the Island. About this Place there's abundance of generous Wine produced, anciently call'd the *Lesbian Wine*. This Town was very much noted in the Time of *Horace* for Learning, and all Conveniencies of Life. *Plutarch* says, they appointed their Poets to try their Wits at stated Times. It was likewise famous for the Study of Philosophy and Eloquence, on which Account *Marcellus* chose it for the Place of his Exile, where *Seneca* says he liv'd very happily. It suffer'd much by the *Romans*, because it was the only Town in *Asia* that held out after *Mithridates* was subdued, and therefore in a great Part demolished; but was restored to its Liberty by *Pompey* for the Sake of *Theophanes*. That Liberty was confirmed by the *Cæsars*, and 'twas adorned particularly by *Trajan*, who added his own Name to it. 'Tis mentioned by *Pliny* as a Free Town, and one that had been considerable for 1500 Years.

There

There is also a Place in this Island call'd *Hyperdexios*. *Stephanus* says, the District was call'd *Hyperdexium*, from whence *Jupiter* was call'd *Hyperdexius*, and *Minerva* *Hyperdexia*. There lie many small Islands betwixt *Lesbos* and *Asia*, called *Hecatonnessi*, from *Apollo*, call'd *Hecatos*, to whom they were consecrated. Near to them lay *Pordoselene*, which, out of Modesty, was afterwards called *Pordoselene*. Near to *Lesbos* lay also the three Islands call'd *Arginusæ*, famous for the Victory of the *Athenians* during the War of *Peloponnesus*.

4. CHIOS, now SCIO,

Which lies betwixt *Lesbos* and *Samus*, over against the Peninsula, in which lie *Smyrna*, *Lebedos*, &c. It was formerly call'd *Macris* and *Pityusa*. *Pliny* makes it 125 Miles in Compass, *Strabo* 112, and says, it had a Town of its own Name of 40 Stadia in Circuit. 'Twas noted for a high Mountain call'd *Pelinæus* or *Pelenæus*, and Quarries of Marble. *Jupiter* was worship'd in this Mountain, and therefore was call'd *Pelinæus*. *Stephanus* mistakes when he says there was a Town and Mountain of the same Name in *Caria*, which proceeded from his not observing that the *Cares* possessed this Island before the *Iones*, who drove them out. This Island was also noted for generous Wine and Mastick. *Buno* says, the Proverb *Chius Risus* was made use of to denote Lascivious Laughter. Some derive the Name from the *Syrian* Word *Chion*, which signifies Mastick, wherein it abounds more than any other Place in the World. It is a Gum that proceeds from the *Lentisk* Tree, in which the Inhabitants make Incisions in *July* and *August*, from whence the Juice drops, and growing hard like Gum, is gather'd in *September*. The Inhabitants make great Profit of it, and the Grand Seignior has a considerable Revenue from it. *Thevenot* says, there are 22 Villages that have about 100000 of those Mastick Trees, which are crooked like Vines, and creep on the Ground. The Gum falls upon the Earth in flat Pieces, which the Inhabitants gather, lay in the Sun to dry, and shake in a Sieve, to separate them from the Dust, which sticks so to the Faces of the Workmen, that they must rub them with Oil before

they can get it off. It produces above 1000 Chests, of a Hundred Weight each, *per Annum*, of which they pay 300 Chests to the Grand Seignior, and they are oblig'd to sell the rest at a certain Rate to the Farmer of the Customs. *Dioscorides* says, it is the best Mastick in the World. 'Tis us'd in the Composition of Ointments. The *Greeks* chew it, because it makes them spit much, whitens their Teeth, and sweetens their Breath. They mix it likewise with their Bread, to which it gives a delicate Flavour. *Thevenot* says, this Island is reckon'd the Paradise of *Greece*, and govern'd by Christians, tho' under the Authority of the *Turks*. They chuse their own Consuls, one half *Greeks*, and the other *Latins*. They obtain'd this Privilege from *Mahomet II.* because they voluntarily submitted when he conquer'd *Greece*. It was since taken by the *Venetians*, but retaken in the late War by the *Turks*, and confirmed to them by the Treaty of *Carlowitz*. The *Latins* have about 301 Churches in it, and the *Greeks* 500, and both of them the free Exercise of their Religion, without Disturbance from the *Turks*, who have their Mosques here, as the *Jews* have their Synagogues.

Their Towns are, 1. *Scio* or *Saches*, at the Bottom of a Bay on the E. Side of the Island. *Thevenot* says, it is not large, but well Peopled, the Houses good, and the Streets wide. Most of the Inhabitants are *Greek* and *Latin* Christians, who have each a Bishop, and several Churches, but the *Greeks* most. They have many Convents of Nuns, who are not very chaste. They are skilful at Embroidery in Gold and Silver, which is their chief Employment, and may leave their Convents when they please. The *Latins* have 5 Churches, one of them a large and fair Cathedral, which the *French* King got Leave for them to build. The *Capuchins* have a large Church, a neat Convent, and a good Garden. They teach *Latin* and Religion to such Children as are sent them. The *Jesuits* have a Church and College, and are of 3 Congregations. The *Jacobins* and *Cordeliers* have also fair Churches. The *Turks* have Mosques, and the *Jews* Synagogues here. The Town is not strong, but has 8 Gates, and a good Castle. There are generally 800 *Turks* in it, besides *Jews*, who are allow'd to dwell in it on paying a

Tribute, but not in the Town, where they are hateful to the Christians, who are not allow'd to live in the Castle. 'Twas built by the *Genoese* when they were Masters of the Island. Four Miles from the City, near the Sea, there's a vast Stone cut out of a Rock, with Seats in it, which some think was *Homer's School*; but *Du Mont* supposes it to have been an Heathen Altar, and says, there are Figures of an Ox, a Wolf, Sheep, and a Rabbit, upon it in *Basso Relievo*.

Within some Miles of the Town, there is a Convent of *Greek Monks* among Woods and Rocks, built by *Constantine Monomachus* in 1050. The Church is adorned with 32 Marble Pillars, and many other Pieces of Marble and Porphyry. The Dome is full of Mosaick Pictures. The Convent is very large, built in Form of a Castle, and has generally 200 Monks, under an Abbot; but they must not exceed that Number. No Woman is allow'd to come into it. When Places are vacant, they are purchas'd for 100 Piasters, on Condition that the Monks bring what further Estate they have, which they enjoy during Life, but must leave it to the Convent at Death, except they have a Kinsman who is willing to succeed them, and then they may leave them One Third. Their Commons is black Bread, with sorry Wine and Cheese, except they be able to purchase better. They eat all together on *Sundays* and Festivals, and those that have Estates are allow'd to keep Horses, and ride abroad for the Air. Two Thirds of the Island belong to them; so that they have an Annual Revenue of 60000 Piasters, and a Million of Gold in their Treasury. They have two Bells, and every Village is allow'd a little one, a Privilege which the *Turks* grant no where else. There are 60 other Towns and Villages in this Island, which *Thevenot* makes 80 Miles in Compass, and says, most of the Inhabitants are Christians. The chief of them are, 1. *Callimacha*, which is their principal Mastick Town, very populous, has 6 *Greek Churches*, and a Nunnery, two Gates, and 30 *Greek Churches* in the Neighbourhood.

2. *Cardomolo*, which has 500 Inhabitants. The adjacent Country produces about 170 Tun of Wine *per Annum*. Several Pieces of Gold, Silver and Copper, coin'd by the

Emperor *Constantine*, were dug up some Years ago, says *Thevenot*, in the Neighbourhood. Five Miles from hence there's a pleasant Valley of half a Mile long, with a curious Spring, to which there's a Descent by 25 Marble Steps; and near it are the Ruins of a Temple of fine Ash-colour'd Marble.

3. *Vichi*, which contains 300 People, and a Church dedicated to the Virgin.

4. *Cambia*, noted for Woods of Wild Pines, with which they build their Gallies. Near this Place is a Castle on a Rock, almost inaccessible. Over against this Castle lies Mount *S. Elias*, with a Church dedicated to that Saint. 'Tis the highest Mountain in the Island, and seen at *Tenedo*, tho' 100 Miles distant. There is a large Spring in this Mountain, whose Stream waters the neighbouring Fields, and makes them very fruitful. The Top of the Mountain is generally cover'd with Mist and Snow. Between *Calandre* and *Coronia* there's a Bath of Sulphur call'd Holy Water. It cures many Diseases when drank, but works so violently, that several have been killed by it.

5. *St. Helena*, built on a Rock, has 200 Inhabitants, two Churches and a Chappel. The People are so ignorant, that if a dead Body does not corrupt in 40 Days, they think it turns to a Hobgoblin.

6. *Volisto*, has 300 Houses, and 1500 Inhabitants. It lies on a Hill, and has a Castle built by *Belisarius*, the Emperor *Justinian's* General. The neighbouring Country is pleasant and fruitful, and produces 5000 Weight of Silk *per Annum*, with which they pay their Tribute. The Inhabitants are vicious, and thought to be under a Curse, because, tho' the Country be fruitful, they generally want Bread. Near this Place is *Varvarisco*, with a Church dedicated to *St. Marcella*, to whom they sing Praises all Night on their Festival call'd *Panagirio*.

7. *Armolia*, lies in a Plain full of Mastick Trees, has 500 Inhabitants, and several Churches. They have a strong Castle in the Neighbourhood, which shelters them from the Corsairs.

8. *Mesta*, is a strong little Town, well built, has about 300 Inhabitants, and several Churches, with two Harbours.

9. *Pergi*,

9. *Pergi*, has 2000 Inhabitants, and 30 Churches, with a strong Tower. *Thevenot* says, there are many other Towns equally populous, and most of them have Castles and Towers, besides others built round the Island at 4 Miles distance from each other, to secure them from the Ravages of the *Turks* of *Natolia*, who frequently invade them, and carry off the People and Goods. The Island is subject to Earthquakes, is very stony, and ill water'd in general, so that every Spring the *Turks*, *Jews*, and *Christians*, make Processions to obtain Rain. They have Plenty of Corn and Wine; but the latter is thick. All Provisions are cheap here, and they keep great Flocks of tame Partridges, which they drive out to the Fields in the Morning, and call them home at Night by a Whistle. They are the only People who have preserv'd their Liberty under the *Turks*, and live as they please on paying their Tribute. They are apparell'd like the *Genoese*, and have much of their Humour. The Men are generally ugly, tho' well shap'd; but the Women handsome and fair, very neat in their Dress, wear fine white Linen on their Heads, and are prodigal enough in their Clothes. They formerly loaded themselves with Rings and Jewels, but now are forbid them on Pain of Excommunication, since the Captain *Bashaw* fin'd them in 50000 Piasters on that Account. The Women are brisk, merry, and witty, and allow'd great Liberty, because their Husbands are not jealous. Both Men and Women are much given to Dancing promiscuously on *Sundays* and *Holidays*. They are generally proud and ignorant, love the *Spaniards* better than the *French*, but say they had rather be under the *Turks* than *Christians*. They are much given to Pleasure, and drink hard. Their chief Manufactures are Damasks, Sattins, Taffetas, other Silk Stuffs, and Fustians. Their chief Trade is with *Grand Cairo*, and the Maritime Towns of *Natolia* and *Barbary*. They likewise sell Corn, Oil, Wine, Honey, Cotton, and a certain green Earth which resembles the Rust of Brass. Their best Wine grows on Mount *Arvis*, now *Amista*, which is mightily extolled by *Plutarch* and *Pliny*. Their Language is a Mixture of *Greek* and *Italian*. *Heylin* says, there's scarce a House in *Chio* but has Orchards or Gar-

dens with excellent Fruits, as Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranates, Citrons, and Figs, much esteemed by the *Romans* for their sharp Taft. They were once able to fit out a Navy of 80 Sail, which made them the Lords of those Seas, till eclipsed by the *Rhodians*. *Solyman the Magnificent* picking a Quarrel with them on Suspicion of a Correspondence with the Knights of *Maltha* in 1566, sent his Fleet to attack the Town; upon which they immediately submitted, and came entirely under his Dominion; whereas they were but Tributaries before.

S A M O, or S A M O S,

Lies about 42 Miles S. E. from *Seio*, very near the Coast of *Ionia*. 'Twas formerly call'd *Dryusa*, *Anathemusa*, *Parthenia*, *Melanphylus*, and *Cyparissa*. *Juno* is said to have been born here, as was *Samia* the Sybil, and *Pythagoras* the Philosopher. 'Twas once a Commonwealth of Esteem, and its Laws are mention'd by *Heraclides*. It fell afterwards under the Tyranny of *Polycrates*, who was so fortunate for a long Time, that he dreaded the Consequence, and therefore 'tis said he drop'd a Ring of great Value into the Sea, that it might be said he had some Misfortunes; but finding it again accidentally in the Belly of a Fish that was brought to his Table, he took it for an ill Omen, and was soon after overcome by *Orantes* a *Persian*, who put him to a miserable Death. It came afterwards under the *Greeks*, *Romans*, and *Venetians*, and is now subject to the *Turks*. *Pliny* says, 'tis 87 Miles in Compass: *Isidorus* says 100. It had anciently a Temple of *Juno* on the River *Imbrasus*, from whence *Juno* and *Diana* were surnamed *Imbrasia*. *Cluverius* says, it was call'd *Cephalenia*, and had the Name of *Samos* from the Town. The Inhabitants follow'd *Ulysses* in his Expedition against *Troy*. *Aelian* says, the Goats here do not drink for 6 Months in the Year. *Anthony*, *Cicero's* Fellow Consul, was banish'd hither. It is for the most Part encompassed with inaccessible Rocks, but has a fair and capacious Harbour on the S. Side, where the Town of *Samos* stands. The Soil abounds with most kinds of Fruit, especially with Olives; but they have no Vines, which is the more remarkable, because all the neighbouring Islands,

Islands, and Parts of the Continent, abound with them. It was formerly populous, but now ill inhabited, because much infested by Pirates, who come hither for Timber to build their Ships. It produces a Medicinal Earth, useful in Surgery and Physick, of which the Romans made the so much esteem'd *Samian Vessels*. *Buno* says, That *Charilus* the Poet, who wrote the *Athenian* Victory against *Xerxes* in Verse, for each of which he receiv'd a Golden Stater, (which is 16 s. 4 d.) was born here. The *Samii Literati* were so call'd by way of Reproach, because the *Samians* being in want of People, were forced to admit their Slaves, who were marked with a *Stigma*, into a Share of the Government.

N I C A R I A,

Lies about 9 Miles S. W. from *Samos*, and was anciently call'd *Icaria*, from *Icarus* the Son of *Dædalus*, whom the fabulous Poets relate to have made himself Wings; and that the Wax which fasten'd them being melted by the Sun, he fell into the Sea and was drown'd. *Pliny* assign'd this Island to *Europe*, and said it was 17 Miles long. *Strabo* makes it 300 Stadia in Compass, *Heylin* 37 Miles, and others 70. It had anciently two little Towns, called *Oenoe* and *Dracorum*, and *Diana* had a Temple here. *Thevenot* says, 'tis of a long Figure. The Land is barren and full of Rocks. The Inhabitants were about 3000, but poor. They are excellent Swimmers, and employ themselves chiefly in fishing of Sponges and Wrecks. They pay the Grand Seignior's Tribute in the former. The richest Men give their Daughters to the best Swimmers, whose Abilities are try'd before the Father and the Daughter, and he that carries longest under Water carries her. They have a fort of White Wine as clear as Water, which passes by Urine as soon almost as it is drank. Their chief Commodities are Sponges, Wine, Wax, and Honey, with which they trade to *Scio*. The Women are Mistresses here; and as soon as their Husbands land, they go and take the Oars from the Boats, and carry them home; after which their Husbands can dispose of nothing without their Leave. The Inhabitants are well shap'd and strong. The Em-

perors of *Constantinople* us'd to banish People of Quality hither. They have Plenty of Corn and Pasture, have no Harbours, but commodious Roads. It was anciently call'd *Doliche*, *Macris*, and *Ischea*; but chang'd its Name when *Dædalus* and *Icarus* fled out of *Crete*, for having been Pandars to King *Minos's* Wife. *Dædalus* being the first that us'd Sails in those Seas, for his Escape gave Occasion to the Fable of his putting Wings on *Icarus's* Shoulders, who clapping up too much Sail as he follow'd his Father's Boat, was overturn'd and drown'd.

P A T H M O S,

Now *Palmosa*, lies about 20 Miles S. W. from *Nicaria*. *Heylin* says, it is about 30 Miles in Compass. *Thevenot* makes it but 18. He says, it is also call'd *Patino*, and *Patoria*. It is mountainous, yet produces Plenty of Wheat and Pulse. It has but one well built Town, with a Monastery in Form of a Castle in the middle of it, where there are 200 Greek Monks. They have a Harbour and some Ships, which bring them such Provisions as the Island does not afford. The Soil about the Town is so barren, that nothing grows on it, except upon such Earth as is brought thither from other Places. The Roman Emperors us'd to banish Offenders hither. It was to this Place *Damitian* sent *St. John* the Apostle, who wrote the *Revelations* here. The Inhabitants shew a House on the N. Side of the Town where they say he wrote it, and a Cave not far from it where they suppose it was reveal'd. These Places are much honour'd by the Greeks and Latins. They shew a dead Man's Hand, which they pretend to be *St. John's*, and alledge, that the Nails grow again on its Fingers as often as they are cut. *Maginus* says, the *Turks* claim it to be the Hand of one of their Prophets. The *Venetian* Fleet us'd to winter here during the War of *Candie*, because it has many good Harbours. This enriched the Inhabitants; but they are now poor, and much infested by Pirates since they came under the *Turks*. *Thevenot* says, they were about 3000; all Christians, and Tributaries to the Grand Seignior. *Simonides*, the *Iambick* Poet, who had so great a Dexterity at moving

ving People's Affections, and making them weep, was born in this Island.

C L A R O S,

Now *Calamo*, lies near *Pathmos*. *Heylin* says, it is 40 Miles in Compass, and mountainous, but well provided with Harbours. Some of the Hills are so high, that *Ephesus* is seen from them, tho' 80 Miles distant. 'Twas formerly consecrated to *Apollo*, as appears by his Brags to *Daphne*, where he says,

——— *Mihi Delphica Tellus,
Et Claros & Tenedos Pataraeque Regio servit.*

From hence he was called *Clarus*.

I L E R O N,

Now *Lero* or *Leria*, lies near *Claros*. The ancient Inhabitants were noted for Wickedness. *Heylin* makes it 18 Miles in Compass. He says, it is populous, inhabited by Greeks and Turks, and furnishes the neighbouring Countries with Aloes.

C O O S, C O S, C O U S, or C A R I S,

Now *Lange*, or *Lango*. *Cellarius* says, it was also call'd *Gea Meropis*, and *Nymphæa*. *Pliny* says, it is 100 Miles in Compass, and 15 from *Halicarnassus*. It had a Town of its own Name, fam'd for the Temple of *Æsculapius*, which was very rich by the numerous Presents brought to it. *Hippocrates* the Physician, and *Apelles* the Painter, were born here. The Inhabitants were eloquent, and the *Chiuts* talkative; whence came the Proverb, *Chius Coum loqui non sinit*. It lies in the *Mare Mirtoum*, and gives a pleasant Prospect to those who sail by it, for it rises towards the E. with graceful Mountains; from whence flow many pleasant Streams, that make the Island very fruitful. *Heylin* and *Thevenot* make it but 70 Miles in Compass. The latter says, it is now call'd *Stanchio*, or *Ifola Longa*. It lies about 78 Miles S. from *Samos*, and is famous for excellent Wine, which was highly valued by the ancient Romans. It abounds with Cyprus and Turpentine Trees, with others both delightful and Medicinal. The Town of

the same Name is large, defended by a Castle near the Harbour, which is secur'd by a good Mole, and well kept in Repair by the Turks, who have Gallies there to guard it from Pirates, it being the Place where all Ships that pass betwixt *Constantinople* and *Egypt* usually touch. The Turks will not suffer the Woods of Cypress here to be cut down. *Thevenot* says, there is a Tree here of such vast Extent, that 2000 Men may stand under it. The Branches are supported by Wooden Pillars, and there are several Barbers-Shops, Coffee-Houses, and such like Places, besides Benches to sit upon under it. This Isle was possess'd by the Knights of *Malta* while they held *Rhodes*. *Sincus* the Physician, *Ariston* the Peripaterick Philosopher, *Philetus* the Orator and Poet, and *Nicias* the Tyrant, were also born here. *Apelles's* Picture of *Venus* rising naked out of the Sea, was hung up in the Temple of *Stomalimne* in this Island. When he drew it, he assembled all the beautiful Women of the Island, and united their best Features and other Perfections in this one Piece. *Augustus* afterwards brought it to *Rome*, and dedicated it to *Cæsar*, as the Mother of the *Julian* Family. In Consideration of this Picture, he eas'd the Inhabitants of great Part of their Annual Tribute. *Coos* was also famous for those fine thin Stuffs call'd *Vestimenta Coa*, which *Heylin* supposes were like our Tiffanies. *Thevenot* mentions the Castle of *Bodron*, which lies over against *Stanchio* or *Coos*, at 12 Miles distance. He says, there is a good Harbour here, but so choak'd up with Sand, that great Ships can't enter it. There are 7 Gates as one enters the Castle, over which are 300 Coats of Arms, that belong'd to the Knights of *Rhodes* when they commanded there. Beyond the 6th Gate there is a Platform with 6 Cannon pointed towards the Sea. The last Gate is of Iron, and there is a continual Guard kept at it. The Castle is strong, and the Walls high, both built of a sort of Stone that no great Guns can hurt. The Sea encompasses one Side, where it's mounted with Guns, which hinder the Approach of Ships. 'Tis very strong on the Land-Side, and can't be approach'd by Horse, yet may easily be taken by cutting off the Water that is brought into it by an Aqueduct. The Houses are ruinous, and there are many

ny Pieces of ancient Pillars among them. The adjacent Country abounds with Vines, Fig-Trees, and other Sorts of Fruit. *Bleau* says, That at the Town of *Atangea* or *Haranges* in this Island, there are many ancient Marble Houses, and not far from thence the Ruins of *Hippocrates's* stately House.

Bleau mentions *Pfara* or *Psyra*, a small Island W. of *Scio*, which has great Herds of Asses, that die as soon as they are transported any where else.

2. The Island of *Myrto*, not far from *Icaria*, from whence the *Mare Myrtoum* had its Name. 'Tis now call'd *Mandria*, and the Sea *Mare Mandrianum*.

3. Further to the S. lies the Island *Pharmaco*, anciently *Pharmacusa*. Here it was that *Cesar*, when he was going to *Rhodes* to hear the famous *Molon*, fell into the Hands of Pirates. 'Tis now desert.

Thevenot mentions several Islands in these Parts, without distinguishing whether they belong to *Asia* or *Europe*. We shall take Notice of such of them as have not been already described in *Europe*, and (by the Way) give a further Account from him of the Island of *Nixia* or *Naxos*, tho' we have already describ'd it among the Islands of *Greece*. He says, 'tis 120 Miles in Compass; that there are several Noble Families in it, descended from the Dukes of *Venice*, who formerly possess'd it; that it is very fruitful, has great Herds of Cattle, and exports great store of Wine and Cheese; that near the Town of the same Name there are Salt-Pits; that their Woods are full of Rocks and solitary Dens, which harbour large Stags. The Peasants catch Partridges, which are numerous here, by stalking with Asses bred up to it. There are many Monasteries in this Island, but the Monks extremely ignorant and vicious. On the Top of a steep and rugged Mountain, there are the Ruins of the Castle of *Apollo*, and 4 little Towns near it well inhabited. The Goats feed here on an Herb call'd *Ledum*, which leaves a viscous Dew upon their Beards, that turns into a Gum of a very good Smell, call'd *Landanum*, which is gather'd by cutting off their Beards. Near the Town, upon the Rock *Strongyle*, are the Ruins of the Palace of *Bacchus*, of white Marble. The Inhabitants have such Feuds, that many of them refuse to speak to one

another as long as they live. The Women are more obstinate than the Men, and great Meddlers in other People's Business. They wear so many Coats, that they can scarcely walk with them; and their Shoes are so extraordinary streight, that they can scarce put their Feet in them.

N I O,

Anciently *Oliarius*, lies about 40 Miles S. from *Naxia*, was formerly inhabited by *Albanians*, a barbarous and warlike People, who us'd to go arm'd all Night by the Sea-side. The Island is fruitful, abounds with Woods of Oak and other Trees, which they cut down and sell.

S A N T O R I N I,

Formerly *Therasia*. *Thevenot* places it 60 Miles N. from *Candia*; *Sansen* but 35. 'Tis about 30 Miles in Circuit, contains 4 Villages and Castles, and near 3000 People. The first Village is *St. Nicholas*, whose Houses are built on a frightful black Rock. 'Tis the Residence of a Greek Bishop, and contains about 500 Inhabitants, most of whom live in Caves of Pumice-stone in the Rock. 2. *Scaro*, on a frightful steep Mountain, which the Inhabitants climb on their Hands and Feet. It contains about 150 Houses, and is the Seat of a Latin Bishop. The Greeks have a Church here, with two Images of massy Silver, one of our Lady, and the other of *St. Michael*. 3. *Pirgo*, which has a Chappel, with many large Caves, and about 200 Inhabitants in them. Betwixt this Place and the Castle of *St. Nicholas* there's a Hill from which the whole Island may be seen, and in the Neighbourhood there are about 1000 People, abundance of Vines, Fig-Trees, and white Mulberries. They sell their Wine to *Chios*, *Smyrna*, &c. and make several Sorts of Stuffs, with the Product of which they pay their Tribute. 4. *Crotiri*, which has about 150 Inhabitants, and 7 other Villages in the Neighbourhood thinly Peopled. This Island at a Distance looks frightful and black. The Rocks on the Coast were scorch'd by two Eruptions of Flames, which broke out with an incredible Noise, was heard at a great Distance, forc'd vast Numbers

bers of Pumice-stones up from the Sea, did so infect the Air, that many of the Inhabitants died, and others grew blind. *Seneca* says, this Island stands upon Mines of Sulphur, from whence no doubt those Eruptions proceeded. The People in general live very meanly, have a sorry black Bread of Wheat and Barley, which they bake but twice a Year, because they have no Firing but Wood, which they buy by the Pound from *Nio*. They have no Fish or Flesh, so that their chief Food is Beans, Pease, and Eggs. They have no Physicians or Apothecaries, nor Business, but making their Wine and Stuffs; yet the Inhabitants are stout, and defend their Island by Stones, which they throw from the Rocks.

S T A M P A L I A,

Formerly call'd *Astypalæa*, with a Town of the same Name, about 33 Miles S. W. from the Coast of *Natolia*, and 90 W. from *Rhodes*. It had a Temple of *Apollo*, which was mightily reverenc'd by all the *Greeks*. There's a ruinous Castle near the Town of *Stampalia*, upon the Gate of which are the Arms of *Venice*, *France*, and *Tuscany*. Their chief Church is that of *St. George*. They are subject in Spirituals to the Bishop of *Siphanto*, who lives here one Part of the Year, They follow the *Greek Church*; but their Priests are very ignorant. The Island is barren, and wants fresh Water, so that there is no Place inhabited but this one. There are several Islands and Rocks about it, which don't merit a Description.

S C A R P A N T O,

Midway betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*, anciently call'd *Carpathos*, from whence that Part of the *Mediterranean* had the Name of *Carpathium Mare*. *Heylin* says, 'tis about 60 Miles in Circuit. The Soil is rugged, mountainous, and unpleasant, but abounds with Quarries of excellent Marble. It had formerly 4 Cities, but 3 of them are perished, and only that of *Scarpanto* remains, which gives it the present Name. It has some other small Towns along the Shore, but has no Harbour of any Note except that near *Scarpanto*. *Randolph* says, it is 80 Miles in Compass, but ill inhabited, because

much infested by Pirates. 'Twas a long Time possess'd by the *Venetians*, but now under the *Turks*. Most of the Inhabitants are of the *Greek Church*, but very poor. *Homer* calls it *Crathus*. It was formerly considerable because of its Situation, and and well fortified by the Knights of *Rhodes*, who made Use of it as a Curb upon the Trade of *Egypt* and *Constantinople*. There are several lesser Islands about it, which don't merit a Description.

R H O D E S,

Formerly call'd *Ophiusa*, *Asteria*, *Ethraea*, *Trinachia*, *Pæssa*, *Corymbia*, *Atabyria*, *Macaria*, and *Oloessa*, lies S and N. at the Mouth of a Bay on the Coast of *Natolia*, from which it is about 20 M. distant. *Heylin* says, the present Name signifies a Rose, of which the Island produces great Plenty. Others derive it from *Rhoda*, the Daughter of *Apollo* and *Venus*. *Pliny* makes it 125 Miles in Compass, *Isidorus* 103, *Heylin* 140. *Sanson* makes it 50 Miles from S. to N. and about 23 where broadest from E. to W. *Cluverius* makes it 30 German Leagues in Circuit, says it was call'd *Telchinis*; and *Pindar* calls it the Daughter of *Venus*, and Spouse of the Sun. *Solinus* commends its Climate, and says, the Air is never so cloudy as to hinder the Sight of the Sun; upon which Account the *Romans* delighted much in it. *Thevenot* makes it 100 Miles in Circuit. *Heylin* says, the Soil is pleasant and fruitful, abounds with excellent Pastures and Trees, which are always green. 'Tis so much bless'd with the Gifts of Nature, as gave Occasion for the Poets to say, That Golden Showers rain'd upon it. Their Wine is so rich, and of so excellent a Taste, that the *Romans* made Use of it in their Sacrifices, and thought it too good for other Mortals, tho' they drank it themselves at 2d Courses.

'Tis pretended, that this Island was first Peopled by *Dodanim*, Son to *Javan*, and Grandson to *Japhet*, whom the *Greeks* call *Rhodanim*, mistaking the Hebrew D. for R. and from hence they say, he Peopled the Country about *Epirus*. The Inhabitants improving their natural Situation, became so expert and considerable in Maritime Affairs, that *Florus* calls them *Populus Nauticus*. They

were not only remarkable for their Trade, but for their Power and Government; so that for many Years they commanded those Seas, and made such Regulations for Navigation, that the *Rhodian* Laws were us'd to determine Marine Causes, till they were succeeded by those of *Oleron*.

Their chief Towns were *Camirus*, *Lindus*, and *Jalyssus*. The first lay on the W. Side of the Island, the 2d on the E. and the 3d on the N. about 80 Furlongs from the Place where *New Rhodes* was built, which exhausted the rest, and became so considerable, that it was one of the most flourishing Towns of *Asia*. *Strabo* says, it was built about the Time of the *Peloponnesian* War; and that the other Towns, which were separate Republicks, did all center in this. *Lindus* is still in being, tho' now but a small Town, with a good Fort, says *Thevenot*. It was the Birth place of *Cleobulus*, one of the 7 Sages, and had a Temple of *Minerva*, from hence surnamed *Lindia*. 'Twas also noted for the Worship of *Hercules*, which consisted in Execrations and Curses. *Jupiter* had a Temple in Mount *Atabyrium* here, from whence he was surnamed *Atabyrius*. *Lindus* was also the Birth place of *Chares*, who made the huge *Colossus*; of which in its Place.

The City of *Rhodes* was famous for Arts, Learning, and Arms, gave a great deal of Trouble to the *Romans* and *Greeks* in their Conquests, but at last became Associates to the latter, who gave them great Rewards, and particularly large Possessions in *Asia* during their Wars with *Antiochus*. *Tully* commends this Place for the Study of Eloquence, and *Vitruvius* for Philosophy and Mathematicks; so that it was one of the principal Universities of the *Roman* Empire, and vy'd with *Marseilles*, *Tarsus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*. *Cæsar* and *Tiberius* did both study here. There are many ancient Medals of this City, one of which is mention'd by *Spanheim* with this *Greek* Inscription, ΕΛΕΥΘΕΡΙΟΝ, denoting their Liberty, and it was stamped with an Image of the Sun, to which this Town was consecrated. Their Liberty was afterwards enlarged or diminished, according as they behav'd themselves to the Satisfaction of the *Romans*, to whom they applied for Protection against the *Macedonians*. The former after-

wards became their Masters, and fix'd a Governor here, who presided over that which was call'd, *The Province of the Asian Isles*, in the Time of *Vespasian*; and from hence the Bishop of *Rhodes* had the Title of Metropolitan. They continued under the Empire of the *East* and *West* till 1124, when it was taken by the *Venetians*, but recover'd by the *Greek* Emperor *John Ducas* in 1227. The *Turks* took it from the *Greeks* in 1283; and in 1308, the Knights of *St. John* of *Jerusalem* being driven out of *Asia*, possessed themselves of this Island, by the Help of *Emanuel* Emperor of the *East*. They defended it gallantly against the *Turks*, whom they frequently invaded, and repuls'd *Mahomet the Great* with Shame and Loss in 1480; but in 1522, *Solyman the Magnificent* attack'd them with 200000 Men, and 300 Ships, and oblig'd them to surrender the 1st of *January*, 1523, after the then Great Master, *Mr. Villars of Lisle-Adam*, a *Frenchman*, had done all that was possible for a brave and skilful Commander to defend it; but was at last perswaded to surrender, by the Importunity of the Garrison and Townsmen, who lost 90000 Men in the Siege. The *Turks* do so much Honour to the Valour of those Knights, who were 600, that they preserve their Houses, Arms, Statues, and Inscriptions, in the same State as they left them. The rest of the Garrison was at first but 5400. It has continu'd under the Dominion of the *Turks* ever since, and is now inhabited by *Turks*, *Jews*, and *Christians*; but the latter, tho' allow'd to keep Shops there by Day, are not permitted to stay in it by Night.

Thevenot says, it was taken at last more by the Treachery of *Andrea d' Amaral*, Great Chancellor of the Order, than by Force. Being angry because not chosen Great Master, he fasten'd a Letter to an Arrow which he shot out of the Town, gave the *Turks* an Account of their Weakness, and where it was most proper to attack them, so that they carried it after 6 Months Siege. *Du Mont* says, That a *Greek* Lady, who passionately loved one of the chief Knights, and had two Children by him, understanding that he was slain as he bravely defended his Post, she ran to his House, embraced the two Children with Tears, and telling them, That rather than they should live to be polluted

luted by the Sodomitical *Turks*, it were better they should follow their Father to the other World, and that she would quickly come after them; upon which she immediately cut the Throats of the two Infants; and going to the Breach where her Lover was slain, she embrac'd his Corps with great Tenderneſs; after which she took up his Arms, fell in with great Fury among the *Turks*, and killed many of them before she was ſlain her ſelf.

Thevenot gives the following Account of the Town, viz. That it hath two Harbours. The great one, tho' large, is not very ſafe when the Wind blows hard from E. N. E. or S. E. On the Right Hand, at the Entry of the Harbour, the *Turks* have built a new Tower, where that of *St Nicholas* formerly ſtood. 'Tis well furniſh'd with Cannon, has a Baſtion behind, and a Curtain that reaches to the Walls of the Town. Over againſt this Tower ſtands the Caſtle of *St Angelo*, but ruinous. This Caſtle and Tower were built in the Place where ſtood the Feet of the great *Coloſſus*, erected by *Charès*. *Pliny* ſays, it was of Braſs, 70 Cubits high; and that after it had ſtood 56 Years, it was overturn'd by an Earthquake. It was reckon'd one of the 7 Wonders of the World, and of ſuch a monſtrous Size, that few Men were able to fathom its Thumb in both their Arms. It carried a Light-Houſe in one Hand: Its Head reſembled the Image of the Sun: In the other Hand it had a Scepter, and there was 50 Fathom betwixt one Foot and t'other, ſo that Ships eaſily paſſ'd betwixt its Legs. The *Saracens* are ſaid to have broke it in Pieces, and *Moravias*, General to *Oſman* the *Mahometan* Caliph, ſold the Metal to a Jew, who loaded 900 Camels with it, and ſold it at *Alexandria* in *Egypt*. 'Tis ſaid to have been 12 Years a making, and coſt K. *Demetrius* 300 Talents. But after all that is ſaid of it, M. *du Mont* makes it very probable that the whole is a Fable; yet others ſay, there were 100 leſſer *Coloſſi* here. *Thevenot* adds, That the Port of the Gallies is a good Harbour, capable of a great many Veſſels, and defended by the Caſtle of *St Erme*; but the Mouth of it is ſo narrow, that only one Galley can enter at a Time. 'Tis ſhut up every Night with a Chain. *Du Mont* thinks, if there was any *Coloſſus*, it ſtood at the En-

trance of this Harbour. A little above it lies the Burying-place of the Beys, and other great People that happen to be kill'd in War. On the Side of the Harbour there's a Piazza, with ſome Trees, and a Fountain. At the Bottom of it lies the Arſenal, where the Gallies and Saicks are built. The Town is now but ſmall, yet ſtrong, and well fortified with good high Walls, planted with Falcons on the Top, and in the lower Part there are Port-holes for great Cannon. Over the Water-Gate there's ſet up the Head of a Dragon, which was 33 Foot long, that waſted all the Country, till 'twas ſlain by *Deodate de Gozon*, one of the Knights of *St. John*. *Du Mont* ſays, he thought it to have been a Fable, 'till he was aſſured of the contrary on the Spot, and ſaw its Head, which reſembles that of a Hog, but much larger, and without Ears. He was told they look'd like thoſe of a Mule, but were cut off. The Teeth were extraordinary ſharp and long, like thoſe of Fiſh; the Throat wide; its Eyes hollow, and burning like two Coals. It had two little Wings on its Back like thoſe of a Dolphin; its Legs and Tail like thoſe of a Lizard, but ſtrong, and armed with ſharp and venomous Talons. The Knights attack'd it frequently; but its Scales being Proof againſt all their Arms, he deſtroy'd ſo many of them, that the Grand Maſter forbade them to engage it any more. *Gozon* being the only Man who had eſcap'd in thoſe Attacks, was charg'd by his Neighbours with Cowardice, which made him reſolve to venture his Life, or to kill it. Perceiving that it was no where vulnerable but in the Eyes or Belly, and having occaſion to go afterwards to *Paris*, being a Frenchman by Birth, he got a Reſemblance of it made in Paſtboard, and by Springs made it leap like a true Dragon, he train'd up a Couple of fierce Dogs to attack it by the Belly, and returning to *Rhodes*, carry'd them with him. He communicated his Deſign to ſome of his truſty Friends, who kept the Secret, becauſe of the Grand Maſter's Prohibition. He went privately one Morning well arm'd on a manag'd Horſe, and taking his Friends and Dogs with him, order'd the former to ſtand at a Diſtance, but to come and aſſiſt him if they ſaw it practicable; and if otherwiſe, to retire to the

the Town and say nothing. He rode up to the Den, from whence the Dragon leap'd fiercely at him. He charg'd him with his Lance, which broke in Pieces without wounding the Monster. His Horse being well manag'd, avoided the Dragon's 2d Attack, when the Dogs catching hold of its Belly, forc'd it to lie down; upon which the Knight alighting, thrust his Sword several Times into its Throat, and kill'd it. The Dragon tumbling on one Side, threw down the Knight; but his Friends came timely to his Rescue, cut off the Dragon's Head, and carried it to the Town in Triumph. He was degraded for Sake of Form, because he had broke the Grand Master's Order; but immediately restor'd, and soon after chosen Grand Master himself. He died in 1335, and on his Tomb was engraven these Words, *Draconis Extinctor*; i. e. The Killer of the Dragon; which *Du Mont* says he read. The Streets are broad, well pav'd with little Stones, and cover'd with Pent-houses on each Side to shelter the Inhabitants from the Sun. There are several fair Buildings still remaining, and among others the great Church of *St. John*, a noble Structure, now a Mosque. The Middle of the great Street, call'd that of the Knights of *St. John*, is pav'd with white Marble. On both Sides of it are the Houses of the Knights, and here stands also the Palace of the Great Master, which is kept in good Repair; but no body dwells in it. This City had treble Walls, fortified with Towers at convenient Distances. *Du Mont* says, 'tis very strong, tho' small, lies on a Rock, and the Works command one another. The *Turks* have always a Squadron here, commanded by a Bey, who cruizes upon the Christian Privateers, or Ships of *Malta*. *M. Manesson Mallet*, in his Description of the Universe, says, the Island abounds with Honey, Wax, Soap, Camblets, Tapellry, Olives, Citrons, and Oranges; that there are few good Harbours on the Coast, but many Roads; and near the Shore there are abundance of Rocks. *Bleau* says, they have Figs, Mines of Iron and Copper, and some Wheat. Most of the Inhabitants are *Greeks*, but in a very miserable Condition; and the *Jews* who inhabit there came from *Spain*. *Apolonius*, who wrote the *Argonautica*, was a

Native of this Island. *Aristippus* the Philosopher being cast on Shore here by a Storm, and seeing some Geometrical Schemes drawn upon the Sand, cry'd out to his Companions to be of good Cheer, for here he perceiv'd the Footsteps of Men. *Diagoras*, a *Rhodian*, seeing three of his Sons crown'd in one Day as Conquerors in the Games of Wrestling, died for Joy. The Proverb *Hic Rhodus, hic Salta*, which signifies a Braggadocio, came from this, That a certain Person who had been at *Rhodes* bragged that he had out-leap'd all the *Rhodians*; one of whom being present, challeng'd him at Leaping, and told him, *En Rhodus, en Saltus*; which the Fellow not accepting, it became a Proverb.

C Y P R U S,

Lies near the Bottom of the *Mediterranean*, about 290 Miles E. from *Rhodes*, according to *Sanfon*, and about 55 S. from the Coast of *Natolia*. *Moll* makes it about 60, and 30 W. from the Coast of *Syria*. *Luyts* reckons it 130 Miles in Compass; *Heylin* 550, the Length from E. to W. 200, and the Breadth 60. *Strabo* makes it 3420 Stadia in Compass, taking in all the Bays; and *Isidorus* reckons it 375 Miles without them. *Thevenot* makes it no bigger than *Rhodes*: *Bleau* 220 Miles in Length, and 60 in Breadth: *Cluverius* 40 German Leagues long, and 15 broad. *M. Bouffingault*, in his *Nouveau Theatre du Monde*, makes it 150 French Leagues in Circuit, 80 long, and about 80 broad. *Tavernier* makes it 500 Miles in Circuit. So much do Geographers differ about the Extent of it. *Moll* makes it 130 Miles from S. W. to N. E. in his Map, and about 70 where broadest. *Sanfon*, the Father and Son, make it the greatest Island that belongs to *Natolia*; so that we must leave the Readers to their own Judgment; but are inclinable to think, that *M. Thevenot*, *Cluverius*, and *Moll*, come nearest the Truth, because they differ not much from the Map of *Asia* by the French Royal Academy of Sciences, which makes it about 30 German Leagues long, and 16 where broadest; and *Witsen's* Map makes it 130 Miles long, and 100 where broadest. Some think it join'd formerly to the Continent of *Syria*, but was separated by an Earthquake. Its ancient Names were many; 1. *Cethin*, and afterwards

wards *Cethinia*, from *Ketis* the Son of *Javan*, who is said to have first possess'd it. 2. *Cerastis*, because of the many Promontories it thrusts into the Sea like Horns. 3. *Macaria*, because of the Fruitfulness of the Soil, and Happiness of the Climate. 4. *Asperia*, from the Roughness of the Soil. 5. *Collinia*, from its numerous Hills. 6. *Ærofa*, because of the Mines of Copper or Brass which were first said to be found there. 7. *Amathusia*; 8. *Paphia*; 9. *Salaminia*; 10. *Lapithia*, from the Towns of *Amathus*, *Papho*, *Salamine*, and *Lapithus*. 'Twas likewise call'd *Sphecea*, and *Satrachus*, but at last *Cyprus*, (which it still retains.) Some derive it from *Cyrrus*, but without Ground: Others from *Cyprus*, Daughter to one of its Kings: Some from the Copper found in it; but the most probable Etymology is from the Cypress Trees which abound there, and were in a manner peculiar to it. *Heylin* places it under the 4th Climate, so that their longest Day in Summer is but 14 Hours and an half. The Air is very hot and sultry, and frequently dries up their Brooks, which proceed for the most Part from Rain-Water. Historians say, That in the Time of *Constantine the Great*, they had no Rain for 36 Years, and 'twas deserted on that Account by its Inhabitants. It abounds however with Wine, Oil, Corn, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wool, Turpentine, Allum, Verdigrease, Metals of all Sorts, and Salt. They are able to build and rig out Ships with their own Product for Trade or War. The Inhabitants have in all Times been noted for Lasciviousness; therefore 'twas anciently consecrated to *Venus*, who was from hence surnamed *Cypria*, and *Dea Cypri*. By the lewd Worship of this Idol, the Women became so impudent as to prostitute themselves to any body; and *Volateranus* says, those who attended *Qu. Charlotte* to *Rome*, when she came to solicit Help against *James* the Bastard, who dispossest her, behav'd themselves in as lewd a Manner almost as those ancient *Cypriots*. The Inhabitants are in general warlike, strong, and nimble, hospitable to their Neighbours, and civil to all Strangers except the *Jews*, whom they hate mortally, suffer none of them to enter the Island; and if any of them be cast ashore by Shipwreck, they immediately put them to Death, because in

the Reign of *Trajan*, the *Jews* from *Egypt* and other Countries enter'd this Island under one *Alexander*, their Captain, killed 240000 of the Inhabitants, and were not drove out without great Bloodshed by *Zacchus*, that Emperor's Lieutenant.

Æsclepiades, the Author of the Verse so call'd; *Xenophon* an ancient Poet, *Zeno* and *Apollonius* the Philosophers, *Barnabas*, *S. Paul's* Associate, and *Epiphanius* the learned Bishop of *Salamis*, who wrote a Book against 80 Heresies, were Natives of this Island. Christianity was first planted here by *Paul* and *Barnabas*, as appears by *Acts* 13. 4. upon which Account the Bishop of *Cyprus* was afterwards allow'd to be an independant Primate, and consecrated by his own Suffragans, without Subjection to the See of *Antioch*. They continu'd however in the Communion of the *Greek Church*, till the *Venetians*, when Lords of it, brought in Popery. They had 14 Bishops and Archbishops, till Pope *Innocent III.* reduc'd them to 4 Sees, in each of which he allow'd a *Greek* and a *Latin* Bishop; but the latter had all the Lands and Revenues, and the other only Contributions from the Clergy. *Ptolomy* divid'd it into the 4 Districts of *Salamina*, *Paphia*, *Amathusia*, and *Lapithia*, from the 4 Towns so called. It was afterwards divided into 12 Counties after it fell to the Family of *Lusignan*. The whole, besides the Cities and great Towns, containing about 805 Villages, one half belonging to the Crown, and the other divided betwixt the Gentry and Clergy. The latter had 80000 Crowns *per Annum*, besides Casualties and Presents. 'Twas govern'd by Kings before the *Romans* invaded it. *Ptolomy*, the last of them, when he heard the *Romans* were coming against him, poison'd himself. *Porcius Cato* subdu'd it, and carried off their Riches, by which he brought more Money into the *Roman Treasury* than had been done by any Triumph before his Time. After the Division of the Empire, it continued under the Emperors of the *East* till 1181, that *Richard King of England*, in his Way to the *Holy Land*, was drove ashore here by a Tempest, and being ill treated by the Inhabitants, reduc'd them by Arms, and gave the Kingdom to *Guy of Lusignan*, Titular K. of *Jerusalem*. *Heylin* says, this was in 1191. It continu'd

in his Posterity (says he) for 16 Descents. *Janus*, the 13th from *Guy*, was made Tributary to the King of *Egypt*. His Grand-daughter *Charlotte*, who was first married to *John* Prince of *Portugal*, and then to *Lewis* Prince of *Savoy*, was outed by her Bastard Brother *James II.* who by the Help of the *Venetians* kept it during Life. His Son *James* did not long survive his Father; upon which the *Venetians* excluded the *Genoese*, and seiz'd the Island, by the Resignation of his Mother *Katharine Cornaro*, whom the Senate had adopted for their Daughter, on Condition that she should resign to them if her own Issue fail'd. This happen'd in 1473. The *Venetians* possess'd it till 1570, paying Annually 40000 Crowns for it to the *Turkish* Sultans; but at that Time *Mustapha*, General of the *Turks*, claim'd it for his Master *Solyman II.* who pretended a Right to it as Lord of *Egypt*. The *Venetian* Governor *Bragadino* made a brave Defence, and held out *Famagousta*, their strongest Town, with incredible Valour, till he lost all Hopes of Relief, after 4 Months Siege, and standing out 140000 Cannon-shot. Then he surrender'd upon honourable Terms; but *Mustapha* barbarously murder'd the chief Men of the Town at an Entertainment in his Tent, caus'd *Bragadino* to be flea'd alive, stuffed his Skin with Straw, and hang'd it at the main Yard of his Galley. He sent the chief Prisoners and Spoils in two large Vessels, attended by a Galleon, to the Grand Seignior; but a *Cyprian* Lady of great Beauty, who was design'd for the Sultan's Lust, chose rather than submit to it to set Fire to the Powder-Room, which destroy'd her self, with the two Ships, and all that were in them. *Luyts* says, it was formerly divided into 9 Kingdoms; and that the Duke of *Savoy*, who claims the Title ever since *Qu. Charlotte* was married to one of his Ancestors, is upon that Account allow'd the next Place to Crown'd Heads in the Pope's Chappel, immediately after the State of *Venice*.

We shall proceed to the Geography of the Island according to *Ptolomy's* 4 Divisions, which are follow'd by *Cluverius*, *Heylin*, and *Luyts*.

1. *Salamina* was so call'd from *Salamis*, a Sea-Town on the E. Side. It was anciently call'd *Selamis*, and *Coronia*, and lay in or

near that Place where *Famagousta* now stands. 'Tis said to have been built by *Teucer*, Brother to *Ajax*, in his Exile. It was the chief Town in the Island, says *Mela*, was taken by *Demetrius Poliorceta*, and afterwards call'd *Constantia*. 'Twas anciently the See of a Metropolitan, and had a Temple of *Jupiter*, hence call'd *Salaminius*. It was destroy'd by the *Jews* in *Trajan's* Reign, rebuilt afterwards, but destroy'd again by the *Saracens* in 656, when the See was removed to *Nicosia*.

In this Part are likewise the following Towns; 1. *Famagousta*, built from the Ruins of *Nicosia*. It lies in a plain low Ground betwixt two Capes, is about two Miles in Compass, and of a square Form; but the Side towards the E. is longest. 'Tis encompassed by the Sea on two Sides. The others are defended with a Ditch, a Stone-Wall, and Bulwarks. The Haven lies over against *Tripoli* in *Syria*, opens to the S. E. is defended by two great Rocks, betwixt which there's a Passage for Ships of 40 Paces broad into the Harbour, which is safe, but not large, and is shut up with a Chain. The Town was ill fortified when the *Turks* came before it, there being nothing but one Bastion of modern Structure. It was then very rich, and had been a great Check to the Power of the *Turks* both by Sea and Land. *Tavernier* says, 'tis the chief Bulwark of the Island, kept in good Repair, and has a Castle in Form of a Citadel. The *Turks* have turn'd the Churches into Mosques, and allow Christians to keep Shops in the Town, but oblige them to go to the neighbouring Villages in the Night. The Governor is independant of the *Bassaw* of the Island, and maintains a Galley at his own Expence. 2. *Aphrodisium*, so call'd from *Aphrodite*, a Name of *Venus*, who had a Temple here. It lay over against *Salamis*, at 70 Stadia distance. 3. *Arfione*, or *Arfinoe*, built by a Queen of *Egypt* of that Name. 'Twas formerly noted for *Jupiter's* Groves, and a Harbour, and is now call'd *Lescare*. 4. *Tamassus*, noted for rich Mines of Brass, and store of Verdigrease and Vitriol in the adjoining Fields, which were reckon'd the best in *Cyprus*. Its Brass Mines are now lost. 5. *Idalium*, near a Mount of the same Name, founded by *Chalcenor*. 'Twas noted for the Groves of *Venus*, where, on Pretence

of worshipping that Idol, the Inhabitants committed all Sorts of Lewdness.

2. *Paphia*, so call'd from *Paphus*, Son to *Pygmalion* King of *Phœnicia* and *Cyprus*. *Venus* had a Temple here, where the People sacrificed to her naked, and encourag'd themselves in their Lewdness. The Town and Temple were afterwards ruin'd by an Earthquake, which some ascrib'd to the Prayers of *St. Barnabas*. The Town of this Name lay by the Sea, on the W. Side of the Island, and *Venus* was from hence call'd *Paphia*.

The other Towns in this District are, 1. *Paphos Nova*, built about 5 Miles from the old one by *Agapenor*, Nephew to *Lycurgus* the *Spartan* Legislator, consecrated to the same impure Idol, and defil'd with the like vile Practices. 2. Another *Arfinoe*, betwixt Old and New *Paphos*, built in Honour of *Ptolomy's* Daughter, King of *Egypt*, and Lord of *Cyprus*. 3. *Drepsum*, now *Trepano*, under a Promontory of the same Name. 'Twas formerly a Place of good Trade, but almost ruin'd by the *Turks* when they took the Island. 4. *Connellia*, one of the richest Towns in *Cyprus*, because of the store of Sugar and Cotton-Wool which grows about it. It's supposed to stand in the Place of *Cythera*, formerly dedicated to *Venus*.

3. *Amathusia*, so call'd from its chief Town *Amathus*, upon the Southern Coast of the Island. Some say, 'twas built by *Amasis* King of *Egypt* when he conquer'd *Cyprus*: Others by the Descendants of *Anath*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*. It was noted for Brass Mines, and the Annual Sacrifices made to *Adonis*, the Darling of *Venus*, who had likewise a Temple here, now in Ruins.

The other Towns in this District are, 1. *Cetium*, or *Citium*, which lay about 200 Stadia from *Salamis*. Some think it had its Name from *Cittin* the Son of *Javan*. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Zeno* the Stoick, and the Death of *Cimon* the *Athenian* General, after he had subdu'd most of the Island. 2. *Malum*, which lay betwixt *Citium* and *Amathus*. It was also taken by *Cimon* and *Ptolomy Lagus*, who destroy'd it, and carried the Inhabitants to *Paphos*. 3. *Curias*, near a Cape of the same Name, built by the *Argives*, and noted for a Grove and Temple of *Apollo*, whose Altars were held so sacred, that whoever touch'd them were

thrown from the Promontory into the Sea. Out of the Ruins of this Place *Episcopio*, now one of the chief Towns of the Island, was built.

4. *Lapithia*. This District was so call'd from *Lapithus*, a Town on the Northern Coast of the Island. Some call it *Laperhus*, and *Lapathus*, and there's a River of the same Name which runs by it. 'Twas noted for a Harbour.

The other Towns in this District are, 1. *Nicosia*, formerly the Seat of their Kings and Archbishops. 'Twas anciently call'd *Ledronsis* and *Lentainis*. It lies in the middle of the Island, in a plain and fruitful Country, and is encompassed with a Wall exactly round. *Heylin* says, 'tis 5 Miles in Circuit, and for Situation, Magnificence, and Number of People, was compared to *Florence*. The *Venetians* fortified it with new Walls, deep Ditches, 11 strong Bulwarks, and 3 great Outworks, after the modern Fashion, upon which they had 250 Cannon; yet it was taken by the *Turks* in 1570, at the 2d or 3d Assault. *Tavernier* says, it was anciently 9 Miles round, and now but 3. The *Venetians* adorn'd it with noble Palaces, which the *Turks* have pulled down, in Hopes of finding Treasure in them, and sell the Materials to build new Houses. Their Cathedral is a noble Structure, now turn'd to a Mosque, as are some of their former Monasteries. The *Greeks* have four Churches, the *Latins* two, and the *Armenians* one here; but the Tribute on the Christians is so heavy, that many of them turn *Mahometans* to avoid paying it. The Air is temperate, and the neighbouring Soil fruitful, but its noble and regular Fortifications much neglected at present. 2. *Cerines*, a Town near the Sea, which is strong by Art and Nature, but surrender'd to the *Turks* by the cowardly Governor before they attack'd it, he was so terrified with the Slaughter they made at *Nicosia*. It's supposed to be the *Ceurania* of the Ancients, and to have been built by *Cyrus the Great*, King of *Persia*, when he subdued the 9 Kings of the Island. The Air is reckon'd more wholesome and temperate here than in any other Part of the Country. *Tavernier* says, it is now without Walls, and defended only by a small Fortrefs. The *Greeks* have a handsome Monastery here, so near the Sea,

Sea, that they can fish out of their Windows. Their chief Revenue proceeds from Cotton. 3. *Tremitus*, or *Trimethus*, noted for the Birth of *Spiridion*, one of their Bishops, to whom *Sozomen* ascribes many Miracles. 'Tis now wholly decay'd, and *Nicosia* was adorn'd from its Ruins.

The chief Mountain of this Island is *Olympus*, on the Borders of *Amathusia*. 'Tis the highest in the Island, 54 Miles in Compass, says *Heylin*, and has at the End of every League a Monastery of Greek Monks, with a Fountain of fresh Water. On this Mountain there grows Trees and Fruit of all Sorts. *St. Helena*, in her Return from *Jerusalem*, built a Church on this Mountain, and left them a Piece of what they pretend to be the true Cross. It had formerly a Temple to *Venus Acræa*, which no Woman was allow'd to see or approach.

The chief Rivers of this Island are, 1. *Lycus*, which runs towards the S. from Mount *Olympus*. 2. *Lapithus*, which runs to the N. 3. *Bodæus*. 4. *Tolius*. All 4 of them frequently dried up in the Summer.

We shall add concerning this Island in general from several Authors what follows;

Heylin says, the first Inhabitants were the Posterity of *Cittim*, the Son of *Javan*, whose Memory, as has been already observ'd, is suppos'd to have been preserv'd in the Town of *Cittim*. With this *Josephus* concurs. From hence they say *Cittim* peopled *Macedon*. The Island was afterwards reduc'd by *Amasis* K. of *Egypt*, then by the *Phœnicians*. *Teucer*, the Son of *Telamon*, brought afterwards abundance of People hither from *Salamis*, *Athens*, and *Arcadia*; and built the City of *Salamis*; yet the *Phœnicians* still kept Possession. When *Teucer* first came, the Island was so overgrown with Wood, that every Man had Liberty to cut it down, and take in what Ground he could, by which it was at last brought to be a Champain Country. *Coppin*, in his *Bouchier de l'Europe*, says, it was also possessed by the *Assyrians*, or rather the *Persians* under *Cyrus*, who subdu'd their 9 Kings, but allow'd them to retain their Titles and Possessions, on paying him Tribute. It continu'd under the like Government long after, for *Isocrates* inscribes two of his Orations to two of their Kings; and

in the Time of *Alexander the Great*, the King of *Cittim* presented him with an admirable Sword, which he us'd afterwards during his Life. After his Death, 'twas seiz'd by *Ptolomy* K. of *Egypt*. It continued in his Posterity till the *Romans*, out of meer Covetousness, as is own'd by *Ammianus Marcellinus* and *Sextus Rufus*, sent *Porcius Cato* to subdue it; upon which *Ptolomy*, their last King, poison'd himself. *Cato* brought from hence a Booty valu'd at 7000 Talents, (which *Heylin* computes at Two Millions and One Hundred Thousand Crowns.) *Cato* divided it into several Boxes, to each of which he fasten'd a long Rope, with a Cork at the End of it, that the Money might not be lost in case of Shipwreck. It came afterwards under the Emperors of *Constantinople*, as has been mention'd already, from whom it was taken by the *Saracens*, but recover'd again, and was govern'd by a Succession of Dukes till 1184, when *Isaac Comnenus*, one of the Blood Royal of *Constantinople*, banish'd by the Usurper *Andronicus Comnenus*, seiz'd this Island by Means of counterfeit Letters from *Andronicus*, and kept it till 1191, that *Richard* K. of *England* subdu'd it, as was said before, took their King, and bound him in Silver Chains. *Richard* mortgaged it to the Knights Templars for Money to carry on the War, and gave it afterwards to *Guy* of *Lusignan*, as we have said already. *M. Du Mount* makes it but 150 M. long, and 70 broad. *M. Coppin* makes it 200 M. long, and 60 broad. The former says, That in ancient Times *Jupiter* had a Temple at *Salamis*, where they sacrific'd Men the first Day of the Year. He adds, That there's the best Hunting here in the World; and that their Gardens are so full of Flowers at all Times, that they resemble a perpetual Spring. *Thevenot* says, the Island is very fruitful, and abounds with Provisions, but ill inhabited. Their chief Trade is in Cotton-Wool, the best in the East; but their Silk is neither good nor plentiful. They made formerly great store of Sugar, till one of the *Bashaws* burnt up all the Sugar-Canes. The Country-People catch vast Numbers of Birds among the Hills in September and October. They are of the Size of Larks, pickled up with Vinegar and Salt, and about 1000 Barrels of them sent Annually to *Venice*, where they

are

are much esteemed, and yield the poor Inhabitants most of the Money they live on. The Villagers are *Greeks*, who retain their old Customs, tho' clad after the *Italian* Manner. They have now one Archbishop and three Suffragans. There are 7 or 8 Villages of *Maronites* here, that came from Mount *Lebanon*. They speak *Arabick* at home, but *Greek* among the Islanders, are *Papists*, and have Churches of their own. *Coppin* says, there are likewise *Armenians*, *Georgites*, *Cophites*, and *Nestorians*, among them, who have all the Freedom of their Religion; but the young Women dare scarce go to their Churches for fear of the *Turks*, says *Thevenot*. He adds, they are much infested with Locusts, which sometimes destroy all their Corn and Fruit. They hover in the Air during the Heats, and darken it like a Cloud till a N. Wind drives them into the Sea. There are three Sorts of Earth in this Island, made Use of by Painters. *Heylin* says, while they had Kings of their own, they bestowed the Titles of Prince of *Antioch*, Prince of *Galilee*, Count of *Tripoly*, Lord of *Casarea*, Lord of Mount *Tabor*, Seneschal, Constable, and Marshal of *Jerusalem*, upon the Chief of their Subjects; and their Revenues were about a Million and half of Crowns per Annum. Their Arms were Quarterly;
 1. *Argent*, a Cross Potent between 4 Crosses Or;
 2. Bar-wise of 8 Pieces *Argent* and *Azure*, supporting a Lion Passant *Azure*, crown'd Or;
 3. a Lion *Gules*; and, 4. *Argent*, a Lion *Gules*. When the *Turks* took the Island, they murther'd and carried off all the People of Quality, lest they should endanger their Conquest, but left the meaner People. The Christians were guilty of a great Neglect in not attempting to retake it when they defeated the *Turks* the Year after at the famous Battle of *Lepanto*. The *Venetians*, to put the best Face they could on their Loss, did boast that this Victory was a Compensation for it; which was ridicul'd by an ingenious *Turk*, who told 'em, The Loss of this Battle was like the cutting off of one's Beard, which would grow again; but the Loss of *Cyprus* like the cutting off of an Arm, which could never be recover'd.

There's a small Knot of Islands E. of *Cyprus* call'd *Chides*, and another W. of it na-

med *Carpasia*; but they have nothing remarkable.

Additions to the Description of N A T O L I A.

HAVING received a great many Books since we finished the above Description of *Natolia*, we think it proper, in order to make the Account more perfect, to add what follows.

N A T O L I A in General.

Coppin, in his *Bouchier de l'Europe*, says, *Asia Minor* was at first subject to many Princes, afterwards to the *Persians*, then to the *Macedonians*, and next to the *Romans*, whose Empire being divided, it fell to the Emperors of the *East*, and continued under them till subdued by the *Turks*. It was anciently one of the pleasantest, most fruitful, and best inhabited, Places of the World, but has now quite chang'd its Face. Four hundred of its Towns, according to some Authors, have been destroy'd by War and Earthquakes, and above half of their Lands are uncultivated. *Coppin* adds, That the People of this Country were always reckon'd effeminate; so that *Cyrus*, at first but a small Prince of *Persia*, easily subdued all their Provinces. *Alexander the Great*, with a Handful of Troops, defeated them by 5 or 600000 at a time. *Lucullus*, *Pempey*, and *Cesar*, conquered them with very small Armies; so that their Numbers serv'd only to make their Defeats memorable, but not difficult. The *Turks* are so sensible of this, that tho' they mix them with their Armies to make a Shew, they don't rely upon 'em, and very seldom enroll their Children in the Number of Janizaries. Yet the ancient Inhabitants of *Greek* Original, who dwell about the *Euxine* Sea, are excepted from this Character, they having been a warlike and industrious People. The greatest Part of the Inhabitants are of the *Greek* Church, and their Liturgies are in that Language, tho' not so well understood by them as formerly, when the *Greek* Colonies here spoke the *Dorick*, *Ionian*, and *Eolick* Dialects. The *Greek*, tho' generally understood in this

Country, was never the vulgar Tongue, or able to extinguish any of their different Tongues; from whence it came to pass, that *Mithridates* K. of *Pontus* understood 22 Languages without any Interpreter, there being so many several People subject to himself. The chief Languages here are the *Turkish* and *Sclavonick*; and all the *Greeks*, except those of *Isauria* and *Cilicia*, are subject to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*.

The Air of *Asia Minor* is good, the Soil generally fruitful, abounds with good Pastures, and breeds excellent Horse for War; from whence the *Turks* say, that the Horses of *Asia* and the Horsemen of *Europe* are the best.

C A P P A D O C I A.

To what we said of this Country, P. 5, &c. we add, That it abounds with Wine, and most Sorts of Fruit, has Mines of Silver, Brass, Iron, and Allum. It has likewise Alabaster, Chrystal, Jasper, and Onyx Stones; but their chief Wealth is from their numerous Breed of fine Horses. 'Tis barren about the Branches of the *Antitaurus*. From the Mountain *Argæus* in this Country, 'tis said a Man may see both the *Euxine* and *Mediterranean* Seas. The Inhabitants were so vicious in the Time of the *Romans*, that a *Cappadocian* and a Monster were reckoned Synonyma's. They were so much reformed by Christianity, that they had abundance of good Christians and glorious Martyrs. Among the latter is reckoned our *St. George*, a *Cappadocian* Colonel under *Dioclesian*, who became so famous both in the *Eastern* and *Western* Churches, that *Edward III.* chose him to be Patron of the Order of the *Garter*; yet several Authors call him an *Arrian*, and a lewd Man. The Curious, who would know more concerning him, may find the Matter argued *pro* and *con* in *Selden's Titles of Honour*, Part II. Chap. V. where that learned Person tells us, he was honour'd in *England* in the Time of the *Saxons* long before *Edward III.* and tho' he owns there are many fabulous Things said of him, he takes him to be different from *George the Arrian*. He supposes, the Reason of his being so much honour'd in *England* as to be made Patron of the Order of the *Garter*, was the frequent Voyages of

our Kings to the *Holy Land*, where they had heard so much of his Fame, that they thought his Protection might be useful. The Emperors of the *East* having long before that Time made Knights of his Order, it went current in that Country, that he was a Count when he suffer'd Martyrdom. But whatever may be said of *St. George*, 'tis certain that *Gregory of Alexandria*, *Auxentius*, *Asterius*, and *Eustathius*, the great Patrons of the *Arrian* Heresy, were *Cappadocians*; as was the Arch-Heretick *Eunomius*. Doctor *Wells*, in his Geography of the Old Testament, derives the *Cappadocians* from *Togarmah*, the Son of *Gomer*; but others from *Caphthorim*. When *Asia Minor* was conquer'd by *Cyrus*, he gave this Country to *Pharnaces*, a Noble *Persian*, who had married his Sister. It was continued by the Name of a Kingdom in his Posterity till after the Time of *Alexander the Great*, but paid Homage to the K of *Persia*. After *Alexander's* Death, *Perdiccas* expell'd that Family; but they were soon restored, and continued till subdued by *Mithridates*, but restored again by the *Romans*. When *Archelaus*, their last King, was cited to *Rome* by *Tiberius*, on Pretence of plotting against the Empire, *Archelaus* being ancient, and spent with the Gout and other Diseases, so that he could hardly stir, was acquitted because of the ridiculous Evidence of one of the Witnesses against him, that he should have said, If ever *Tiberius* came to *Cappadocia*, he should find *Quales Nervi sibi essent*; which, because of his Age and Distemper, set the Senate laughing, and they order'd him to return home. For this, by Way of Gratitude, he left them his Kingdom at his Death. It continued under the *Eastern* Empire till swallowed up by the *Turks*.

To the Description of *Comana*, P. 6. we shall add, That it was memorable for a Temple of *Bellona*, whose Priests, and other Officers of both Sexes, in *Strabo's* Time were above 6000. They had the Revenues of the neighbouring Country for their Maintenance, and the Priests were next in Honour to the King.

To *Sebastia*, P. 6. we shall add, That some place it in *Pontus*. 'Twas called so in Honour of *Augustus*, and one of the chief and strongest Towns in *Lesser Asia*. It made a noble Resistance against *Tamerlane*, who is said

said in Revenge to have buried 12000 of the Inhabitants alive when he took it. Near this City lies Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal Overthrow. Here likewise *Tamerlane*, with 800000 *Tartars*, defeated *Bajazet* the Turk when he came to relieve *Sebastia* with 500000 Men, of whom *Tamerlane* killed 200000, took *Bajazet* Prisoner, and put him in an Iron Cage, against the Bars of which he beat out his Brains afterwards. 'Tis now the Seat of a Beglerbeg, who has 6 Sangiacks under him.

To *Maza*, P. 6. we shall add, That it was enlarged by *Tiberius*, and by him called *Cæsarea*, in Honour of *Augustus*. 'Twas the See of the renowned St. *Basil*, and is now called *Tocat* by the *Turks*, which Name they communicate to the whole Province. *Tavernier* says, in his Time it was a fair City, built round a large Rock, on the Top of which was a Castle and a Garrison. The Inhabitants were *Turks*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Jews*. The Christians had 12 Churches, with an Archbishop, and two Monasteries of each Sex. There's a fair River, with a beautiful Stone-Bridge near the Town, and on the N. Side a large Plain of two or three Days Journey, fruitful and full of Villages, where the Caravans from the E. meet, and disperse themselves afterwards into their several Countries. The *Turkish* Sangiack resides in this Town.

Lycaonia, one of the Districts of *Cappadocia*, lay in the S. W. Corner of it, S. from *Caramania* and *Cilicia*. The People call'd *Lycaones* had their Name from *Lycia*, whence some derive them, from *Lycaonia*, a Town in *Phrygia Major*, or from *Lycaon* K. of *Arcadia*, dispossess'd by *Jupiter*. 'Twas during the *Roman* Empire made a distinct Province, and afterwards the Title of a Metropolitan.

To *Iconium*, P. 6. add, 'Twas the Metropolis of *Lycaonia*, a Place of Strength, and the Seat of the *Turkish* Kings in *Asia Minor*. The Christians under the Emp. *Conrade* besieg'd it in vain, and rais'd the Siege with great Loss. 'Twas afterwards the Seat of the *Aladine* Kings, when the former were destroyed by the *Tartars*, and then the Residence of the Kings of the House of *Carama*, whose Kingdom named *Caramania* comprehended the S. Part of *Lesser Asia*. Modern Travellers say, 'tis still a great

and populous City, the Capital of *Caramania*, and the See of an Archbishop. 'Tis noted for the Defeat of a *Turkish* Bashaw in the Neighbourhood when he rebelled against the *Port* in 1658. We shall give an Account of their Sultans when we come to the History.

To *Amasia*, P. 6. we shall add, That it was formerly the Residence of the eldest Sons of the Grand Seignior, who were sent hither as soon as circumcised, and kept here till the Death of their Father. *Bunbequius* says, it lies on both Sides the River *Iriss*, and is so flank'd by Hills, that it appears like a Theatre divided by a River. It has a Harbour and strong Castle, and tho' formerly the Seat of the *Cappadocian* Kings, is now become very mean in its Buildings. The *Turks* reckon it unfortunate, because *Mustapha* was put to Death here by his Father's Order in 1553. 'Tis also noted for the Martyrdom of St. *Theodorus*. The Inhabitants are more inclinable to the *Persians* than the *Turks*. The *Amazons*, who lived in and about this Place, are said to derive their Name from the Greek Word *Ἀμῶνας*, either because they used to cut off their Right Breasts, that they might not hinder their shooting with their Bows, or from *α* and *μῶνα*, because they did not use to eat Bread, or from *Ἀμῶν*, because they liv'd together. They were originally *Scythians*, who accompanied their Husbands into this Country in the Time of *Sesostris* King of *Egypt*. The Men being all murther'd by Treachery, the Women fell upon their Enemies with so much Courage, under the Conduct of *Lampedo* and *Marpesia*, two Noble Ladies, that they totally routed 'em, enlarged their Dominions, and continued for some Time in great Reputation. These two Ladies were their first Queens. The others mentioned in History are, 1. *Antiope*, whose Sisters *Hippolyte* and *Menalippe* fought *Hercules* and *Theseus* in Duels, and were scarce overcome by them. 2. *Penthesilea*, who assisted *Priamus* in Defence of *Troy*, invented the Battle Ax, and was slain by *Pyrrhus*, Son to *Achilles*. 3. *Thalestris* is the last of them we find mention'd; and *Curtius* says, it was she who came to see *Alexander the Great* in *Hyrcania*, and told him, she was worthy to be Mother to the Heir of his Empire. 'Tis said of them, that they

us'd three times a Year to meet the Men of the neighbouring Countries on their Frontiers, and if they brought forth Males, sent them to their Fathers; but if Females, kept them at home. At last this Nation of Virago's was quite worn out, if there was any such, for some modern Travellers look upon the whole as a Fable, particularly *Du Mont* in his Travels to *Smyrna*, who does not deny that there might be warlike Women in this Country; but thinks there was never a distinct Nation of them.

Erzurum is a great Town in this Country, on the Borders of *Armenia Major*. It lies on the *Euphrates*, 10 German Leagues S. E. from *Trebisond*, and is made use of by the *Turks* for a Magazine and Place of Arms, when they have War with the *Persians*. 'Tis encompassed with Mountains. The Houses are of Timber; but it has a large Castle of Stone, where the *Turkish* Bashaw resides. 'Tis a great Thoroughfare for the Eastern Caravans.

Pterium, another Town in this Country beyond the River *Halys*, memorable for the great Battle in its Neighbourhood, where *Græsus* K. of *Lydia* was defeated by *Cyrus* of *Persia*.

G A L A T I A.

To what we said of this Province, P. 7. we shall add, That it abounds with all manner of Fruits, and other Necessaries; so that the Inhabitants were noted for being swallowed up in Pleasures, and particularly to be much given to Drink. They made Use of the Stone call'd Amethyst, of which they have great Plenty, as Amulets to preserve them from Drunkenness. They exceeded all other Nations in the Frequency and Greatness of their Sacrifices, at which Time they gave themselves up to Gluttony; so that *Athenæus* tells us of one *Arcaïnes*, a rich *Galatian*, who feasted the whole Country for a Year together with Sacrifices of Bulls, Sheep, Swine, and other Provisions, boiled in great Cauldrons, and distributed among the People who lived about them in Tents for that Purpose. 'Twas their Custom to burn their Dead, and to throw Letters fairly writ into their Funeral Piles, upon a foolish Conceit that the Deceased would read them in the other

World. The principal Inhabitants were *Gauls*, who came from *Europe*, as has been observ'd already; so that their Language prevailed over all the rest, and continued so till the Days of *St. Jerome*, who, in the Preface to his Commentary on *St. Paul's Epistle to the Galatians*, tells us, their Language resembled that of the People of *Treves* in *Europe*. They subdued most of the Country on this Side *Taurus*, and were employed by all the neighbouring Princes in their Wars; but growing too insolent where they had Dominion, according to what has been always the Temper of their Country, they became so hateful at last, that *Attalus* K. of *Pergamus*, who had been their great Friend, took Arms against them, defeated them in several Battles, and confin'd them to their own Province of *Galatia*, where they preserv'd their Reputation and Courage for a Time, but soon grew effeminate, like the other *Asiatics*. *Manlius* the Roman made War upon them, because they assisted K. *Antiochus*, and soon subdued them. At this Time *Chiomena*, their King's Wife, being taken and ravish'd by a Roman Captain, she murder'd him as he was telling the Money agreed on for her Ransom, cut off his Head, and presented it to her Husband. The Romans suffer'd them to have Kings, on Condition of paying them Tribute, till the Time of *Augustus*, when they were made a Roman Province. They continued under the Empire of the East till it was seized by the *Turks*, who now call this Country *Chiangar*, and govern it by a Sangiack, who is one of the 14 under the Beglerbeg of *Anatolia*.

To *Ancyra*, P. 8. we shall add, That 'twas reckon'd the Metropolis of the Country, and is now noted for making of Camblets.

To *Sinope*, P. 8. That *Heylin* places it in *Pontus*; that it is now called *Sinabe* by the *Turks*; that it was miserably wasted by the *Cossacks* in 1616, but is still a Place of considerable Traffick for Fish, and the Seat of a *Turkish* Bashaw, who has 14 Castles under him, and receives Annually 734850 Aspers from the Customs of the Fish, &c.

To *Pessinus*, P. 8. we shall add, That some place it in *Phrygia Major*; and that the Romans being told by an Oracle, That they should be Lords of the World if they could get the Goddess *Cybele* from hence; they sent

sent for her to the *Phrygians*, who looking upon the *Romans* as their Countrymen, because descended from *Aeneas* and his *Trojans*, they granted their Request; but when the Ship and the Idol came to the *Tyber*, they made a stand, and could not be advanced forward by Art or Force, till *Glaudia*, a Vestal Virgin, suspected of Unchastity, pray'd *Cybele*, as a Testimony of her Innocence, to let her draw the Ship forward with her Girdle, which was granted, say the Heathenish Legendaries.

PONTUS and BITHYNIA.

To what we have said of this Country, P. 9. we shall add, That *Pontus* was divided into *Meta Pontus*, and *Pontus Galaticus*, the former to the W. and the latter to the E. 'Twas called *Galaticus*, because added to *Galatia* in the Time of the *Romans*; and *Meta Pontus* is now called *Bithynia*. This Part of the Country is naturally rich, and when possessed by the Christians, was reckon'd equal to *Tempe* in *Greece*; but since it came under the *Turks*, 'tis miserably poor.

To the Description of *Heraclea*, P. 10. we shall add, That it was the Seat of a Branch of the Imperial Family of *Comnenus*, who fled hither when *Constantinople* was taken by the *Latins*. *David Comnenus* fixing here, commanded over Part of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*, while *Alexius Comnenus* fixed at *Trebizond*, and commanded over *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*. We have given an Account of the Fate of those two Empires in *Europe*.

To the Description of *Prusias* or *Bursa*, P. 10. we shall add, That it was the ancient Capital of the *Turks* in this Country, and that after they took the Town, the Castle held out; and the Sultan perceiving it was not to be taken by Force, ordered his People to give out that he was dead, and to send a Letter, which he prepared during a Truce he had made with the Garrison, wherein giving them an Account that he could not live, he requested of the *Greek Monks* in the Castle, in the Name of God, to allow his Corps a Burying-place in their Convent, and about 40 People to attend the Interment; upon which Condition his Army should retire. This Request being granted by the silly Monks, a Coffin was

filled with Arms, and he himself attending it in Disguise, with 39 more, seiz'd the Gate, let in more Troops, and made himself Master of the Castle. *M. Lucas* gives this Account in his Travels to the *Levant*, and describes the Place, with its Monuments of Antiquity, numerous Baths, Sepulchres of the *Turkish* Sultans, and the Ruins of ancient Palaces, &c. by which it appears to have been a very considerable City. The Baths there flow thro' Mines of Vitriol; and there is a great deal of Copperas or Sulphur about the Fountains. Their Baths are very fine, and curiously pav'd with white Marble. The City resembles *Lions* in *France*, is above a League in Length, and has a River with 3 Bridges that runs by its Walls. Provisions are very cheap here, and they have a considerable Trade in Stuffs of Silk, Silver and Gold, and fine Wool, which are made Use of by the *Seraglio* of *Constantinople*. He would fain have bought some Patterns of their Stuffs, and brought them to *France*; but they would sell him none. The Tombs of the Sultans resemble Chappels, are all lin'd with Marble and Jasper, and their Domes painted with Azure, and fine Ornaments in Gold and Red. Their Floors are cover'd with Tapestry, upon which lie the Coffins of the Sultans, with their Turbants and Arms about them. The *Armenians* have a Church and a Bishop here, and there are many Inns for the Merchants, with each of them a Mosque and a Fountain. There are many other Baths of admirable Workmanship within a League of this Place. People come hither above 100 Miles to bath in them. The Waters of some of them are so hot as to boil an Egg. *Thevenot* says, there are 200 Mosques and many stately Hans in this Town. No Christians are allow'd to go into the Castle.

PHRYGIA MAJOR,

To the Description of this Country, P. 12. we shall add, That the Inhabitants were reckon'd more superstitious than other *Asians*, as appear'd by their Worship of *Cybele* and other Idols. The Invention of Augury and other Divinations is also ascribed to them. They were noted for Effeminacy and Wantonness, and accommod-

dating their Musick, which consisted mostly in short Notes or Tribrachies, to their lascivious Temper.

Midaum, the Seat of King *Midas*, is reckoned in this Country. He was the Son of *Gordius*, who from a Husbandman being made King, did, in Remembrance of it, tie up his Yoaks and the other Furniture of his Wain and Oxen in a Knot, and hung it in the Temple of *Apollo*, where, by the Oracle, the Government of the World was promis'd to him that could untie it; which *Alexander* not being able to do, cut it, as above-mentioned. *Midas* inheriting more of his Father's covetous and clownish than Royal Qualities, was so greedy, that he petition'd *Bacchus* to turn every Thing into Gold that he touched; which being granted, and his very Victuals transformed into Gold, he was forced to petition *Bacchus* again to revoke his Grant. His clownish Temper is noted for preferring *Pan's* Pipe to *Apollo's* Harp, for which he was adorn'd with a Pair of Asses Ears.

PHRYGIA MINOR.

To the Description of this Country, P. 13. we shall add, That some derive the Inhabitants from *Askenaz*, the eldest Son of *Gomer*, who first planted it; and hence they bring the Name *Ascanius* and *Ascania*. They pretended to be the ancientest People in the World, from an Experiment made by *Psammiticus* K. of *Egypt*, who order'd two Children to be kept in a Fold, and suckled with Goats. He forbid any body to go near them on severe Penalties, till it was time for them to speak, and then went to them himself to hear their Language. The Children, in Imitation of the Goats, cry'd *Bec, Bec*, which in the *Phrygian* Language signifies Bread; but having no Meaning in any other Language then known to him, he determin'd for the Antiquity of the *Phrygians*. From this fabulous Experiment, *Geropes Becanus* alledg'd the *High German* to be the ancientest Language, because *Becker* in that Tongue, as in ours, signifies a *Maker of Bread*. Some derive the Name of the Country from *Phryx*, a River there, and others from *Phryxus*, the Son of *Alhamas* King of *Thebes*, who flying from the Snares of his Step-Mother, seated himself here. It was

also call'd *Phrygia Hellepontica*, because it lies on the *Hellepont*; and *Troas*, from its chief City. *Niobe*, whom the Poets feign to have been turned into a Stone, and to have had all her Children slain by unknown Ways, because she prefer'd her self to *Latoxa*, the Mother of *Phæbus* and *Diana*, was Qu. of this Country. *Tantalus* also reign'd here, who being rich, and not having Wisdom to make Use of it, was feign'd to stand up to his Chin in Water, which retir'd from him as he offer'd to drink it; and under a Tree with Apples, which touched his Lips, but withdrew from him as he offer'd to take them. This Country was afterwards successively subject to the *Lydians*, *Persians*, *Græcians*, *Romans*, and the Emperors of the *East*, till it fell under the *Turks*.

The River *Scamander* in this Country is by *Hesiod* call'd *Divine*, because 'twas customary for Virgins a little before they were married to bath here, and offer their Virginity to *Scamander*, the suppos'd God of it. *Cimon* the *Athenian* observing this, put a Garland of Reeds on his Head, and feigning himself to be that Idol, deflour'd a noble Virgin, which put an End to that foolish Custom.

To the Description of *Troy*, the chief City of this Country, P. 13. we add, That its Kings mention'd in History are, 1. *Dardanus*, Son to *Corinthus* K. of *Corinth*, who flying hither for the Murther of his Brother *A. M.* 2487, built this City, and was its first King. 2. His Son *Erichthonius* succeeded in 2518, but did nothing memorable. 3. *Tros*, the Son of *Erichthonius*, succeeded in 2593, and enlarged this City, from whence it was called *Troy*, and the People *Troes*. He took Part with *Saturn* against *Jupiter*, in which he lost his Son *Ganymedes*. He was taken by *Jupiter*, who had an Eagle for his Ensign, which gave Occasion to the Poets to say he was snatched up to Heaven by an Eagle. 4. *Ilus*, Son to *Tros*, succeeded in 2653. He built the Palace call'd *Ilium*, enlarged this City, and beautified their Walls with Turrets. From him the Town was called *Ilium*, and the People *Iliaci*; and from the Turrets which the *Greeks* called *Πύργαι*, the City was called *Pergamus*. 5. *Laomedon* succeeded *Ilus* in 2707; but being guilty of Treachery

chery to the *Greeks*, they took the Town twice under the Conduct of *Hercules*, and kill'd *Laomedon*. 6. *Priamus* succeeded in 2743. His Son *Paris* having ravish'd *Hele- na*, Wife to *Menelaus* K. of *Sparta*, it occasion'd the 10 Years Siege and Destruction of the Town in 2783, the *Greeks* having lost 860000 Men before it, and the *Trojans*, with their Associates, 666000 in Defence of it, if we may believe *Homer* and other old Authors. Some are of Opinion, that the Story of the Wooden-Horse was contriv'd on purpose to cover the Treachery of *Antenor* and *Aeneas*, who betray'd the Town because they had not the chief Management of the War. *Homer* and others reckon there were 43 Generals who commanded 113400 Men of the *Græcians* and their Allies, brought out of 62 Countries and Districts, with 1132 Vessels, in this Siege; and that the *Trojans* had 27 Generals, and Troops from 24 Countries and Districts, to assist them in the Defence of it. *M. Du Mont* says, he found some of the Ruins of this City at 20 Miles Distance from one another, which proves it to have been of vast Extent.

After the Destruction of this City, the Remainder of the *Trojans* built another, which they likewise call'd *Ilium*; but Authors are not agreed as to its Distance from the former. It was but a sorry Village till *Alexander* began to enlarge it. *Lyfimachus* finish'd it, and call'd it *Alexandri Troas*. It continued a Free City till the War of *Mithridates* with the *Romans*; during which, *Fimbria*, a Roman Quæstor, having treacherously slain the Consul *Valerius Flaccus* in *Bithynia*, and seiz'd the Government of the Army, he besieg'd and took this New Troy in 11 Days, because they refus'd him Entrance; and boasting that he had taken it in as few Days as the *Greeks* spent Years about it, he was answer'd by one of the *Trojans*, That 'twas because they wanted a *Hector* to defend them. *Julius Caesar* restor'd them to their Liberty, enlarg'd their Territories, and planted a Roman Colony and University here.

The other remarkable Towns in this Country, besides those already mention'd, were, 1. *Affos*, spoke of *Acts* 20. 13. *Pliny* calls it *Apollonia*, and says, the Earth about it consumes dead Bodies in 40 Days.

2. *Lyrnessus*, on the Shore, over against the Isle of *Lebos*. It was destroy'd by the *Greeks* in the Beginning of the Trojan War. Here *Achilles* took the fair Captive *Briseis*, of whom being depriv'd by *Agamemnon*, he would not take the Field till she was restored. 3. *Scamandria*, a strong Town, which was surpris'd by Ottoman King of the *Turks* during a Funeral.

MYSIA MAJOR.

To the Description of this Country, *P. 14.* we shall add, That some derive the Name from *Myse*, in their Language a Birch-Tree, with which they abound. The ancient Inhabitants were so mean and contemptible, that *Mysiorum postremus* became a Proverb to signify a Fellow of no worth. It was anciently call'd *Mysia Olympena*.

To the Description of *Pergamus* in this Country, *P. 14.* we shall add, That it boasts of the Invention of Tapestry. *Galen* the Physician is said to have liv'd here 140 Years; that he prolonged his Life chiefly by eating and drinking temperately, by never eating any Thing raw, and by carrying always some sweet Perfumes about him. There are 7 Kings of this Place mention'd in History. The first was *Philetærus*, an Eunuch to *Lyfimachus* K. of *Thrace*, who entrusting him with his Money, he seiz'd the Castle of *Pergamus*, with his Treasure; and upon *Lyfimachus's* Death, made himself King of that Place *A. M.* 3668. He died soon after, and was succeeded by, 2. *Eumenes*, his Brother, or (as some say) his Nephew, at first a Carman. He hir'd *Gauls* to serve him, and by their Means defeated *Antiochus Hierax* K. of *Syria* near *Sardis*, and kept *Seleucus Callinichus* his Successor in awe. 3. *Attalus*, Brother to *Eumenes*, succeeded him in 3710. He made a League with the *Romans*, was much courted by them, restored *Ariathes* the *Cappadocian* to his Kingdom, defeated the *Gauls*, and confin'd them to the Boundaries of *Galatia*. 4. His Son *Eumenes II.* succeeded in 3754. He took Part with the *Romans* against the *Macedonians* and *Syrians*, for which they rewarded him with the Spoils of *Antiochus*, the great King of *Syria*, and gave him the Provinces of *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Troas*, and both the *Mysias*. He assisted them likewise
in

in destroying the Kingdom of *Macedon*, but at last fell out with them. 5. His Brother *Attalus II.* succeeded in 3782. The *Romans* offer'd him the Kingdom during his Brother's Life, which he generously refus'd, to the great Indignation of the Senate of *Rome*. 6. His Brother *Eumenes III.* succeeded in 3792, as Guardian to his Nephew *Attalus*. 7. *Attalus III.* succeeded upon his Uncle's Death in 3813, and dying without Issue in the 5th Year of his Reign, he bequeathed his Kingdom to the *Romans*. *Aristonicus*, a Bastard Son of *Eumenes III.* seiz'd Part of the Kingdom before the *Romans* could take Possession. The other *Asian* Kings imprudently assisted the *Romans* against him, by which they had an Opportunity to subdue the Country, where having learned the Vices of the *Asiatics*, and growing luxurious with their Riches, it laid the Foundation of their own Ruin. This Kingdom, in its largest Extent, was afterwards call'd *Asia Propria*. It continu'd under the Empires of the *West* and *East* till the whole was swallowed up by the *Turks*.

To the Description of *Cyzicus*, P. 16. we shall add, That it was the Metropolis of the Country of *Hellspont*, and afterwards an Archbishop's See. 'Tis mention'd by *Florus* as the *Rome* of *Asia*. He calls it a noble City, and takes Notice of its Castle, Walls, Harbour, and Marble Towers. It had a magnificent Temple of polish'd Marble, every Stone of which is said to have been joined to another by a Line of Gold. *Mithridates* besieg'd it in vain, and lost 300000 Men before it by Sword, Famine, and Pestilence. 'Twas afterwards ruin'd by an Earthquake, and its Marble was transported to embellish *Constantinople*.

To *Lampsacus* in the same Page we add, That the Inhabitants grew so vicious by their beastly Worship of *Priapus*, suppos'd to be the same with *Baal*, so frequently mention'd in Scripture, that they became universally hated; so that *Alexander the Great* resolv'd its Destruction. They sent *Anaximenes* as Ambassador to him to prevent it. When he came, *Alexander* swore to him, That he would deny whatever he requested; upon which he cunningly petition'd him to destroy the City, by which it escaped at that Time.

To *Abydos* in the same Page we shall add,

That when it was besieg'd by *Philip*, Father to *Perseus K.* of *Macedon*, and despair'd of Relief, the young Men of the Town, who had bound themselves by Oath rather to die than fall into his Hands, set Fire to the City, and killed all the Inhabitants they met with, and then murder'd themselves. When the News of this Resolve was brought to *Philip*, he was so far from preventing it, tho' the Gates were set open to him, that he barbarously said he would give them three Days Time to die, and would let none of the Soldiers enter the Town till that Time was over. It was betray'd to the *Turks* in the Reign of *Orchanes*, the Son of *Ottoman*, by the Governor's Daughter, who falling in Love with *Abderachmen*, a young *Turkish* Gallant, the Proofs of whose Valour she had seen from the Castle, she threw a Letter to him over the Walls, expressing her Love to him, and promising if he would persuade his General to raise the Siege, and come himself with a Party in the Night, she would let him into the Castle. 'Twas accordingly done, and the Town has since continued in the Hands of the *Turks*.

L Y D I A

To the Description of this Country, P. 16. we shall add, That some derive the Name from *Lud* the Son of *Sem*, whose Posterity first peopled it. It became afterwards a mighty Kingdom, and rul'd over many of the neighbouring Provinces. *Manes*, *Cotis*, *Atis*, and *Asias*, from whom some derive the Name of *Asia*, are said to have been its first Kings. *Athenæus* mentions *Cambletes*, one of their Kings, infamous for his Gluttony; and *Andramytes*, another of them, was as infamous for Lewdness. The Race of those Kings ended in *Omphale*, the Mistress of *Hercules*, who conceal'd her Gallant a long while by making him spin among her Maids in Woman's Habit. Her Posterity, by him called *Heraclide*, succeeded; but we have no distinct Account of their Succession till the Time of *Ardisius*, the 19th of that Line, who succeeded A. M. 3190. *Meto*, the 2d from him, succeeded in 3240, and subdued *Sardis*. *Candaules* succeeded him in 3252. His Wife was so great a Beauty, that, out of Vanity, he would needs shew her naked to *Gyges*, one

one of his chief Countries, tho' he earnestly dissuaded him from it. The Queen was so much offended at it, that she sent privately for Gyges next Day, and holding a Ponyard to his Breast, gave him his Choice either to kill the King and marry her, or to die himself. He chose the former, was successful in his Government, and added *Ionia* to his Dominions. He was so wise a Prince, that he pry'd into all the Secrets of his Neighbours, but conceal'd his own; from whence came the Fable of his Ring, which made him invisible. *Howel* says, he govern'd 38 Years. His Son *Ardis* succeeded in 3305, took *Priene*, and besieg'd *Miletus*. In his Time the *Scythians* expell'd the *Cimmerians* their Country, invaded *Asia*, and took *Sardis*. In 3342, *Sardiattes*, Son to *Ardis*, succeeded, and reign'd (some say) 12 (others 14) Years. *Halyattes II.* his Son, succeeded. He had War with *Cyaxares* the *Mede*, expell'd the *Cimmerians* out of *Asia*, and laid Siege to *Miletus*. The Inhabitants, reduc'd to Want, deceiv'd him by bringing what Corn they had out of their Stores, and ordering it to be sold in the publick Market; upon which *Halyattes* despairing of Success, rais'd the Siege, and made Peace with them. In his Time *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Myfia*, *Caria*, *Æolis*, *Doris*, and *Ionia*, were all subject to his Crown; so that he was reckon'd equal in Wealth and Power to the *Egyptian*, *Babylonian*, or *Median* Kingdoms, till *Nebuchadnezzar*, by conquering *Syria* and *Egypt*, became more powerful. *Cræsus*, Son to *Halyattes*, succeeded in 3406. *Howel* says, he subdued all *Asia* on this Side *Halys*, and rais'd his Fame by his great Actions and Riches. Among the other wise Men of *Greece* who came to see him, *Solon* was one. The King receiv'd him well at first, but turn'd him off at last, because in a Conference upon Happiness he would not own the King to be happy, nor any other Man to be so till the Day of his Death, because all Things on this Side of Time are uncertain. *Cræsus* thinking himself the happiest of Men, was mortified soon after, by the Death of his eldest Son, which afflicted him so much the more, because the second was dumb. *Cræsus* afterwards envying the Prosperity of *Cyrus* of *Persia*, made War upon him, and being deceiv'd by his Ora-

cles, invaded *Cappadocia*. *Cyrus* fought him there, and the Battle ended with equal Success, tho' *Cræsus* was much inferior in Number. *Cyrus* retiring with his Troops, *Cræsus* return'd to *Sardis*, where thinking himself secure, he dismissed his Mercenaries. *Cyrus*, upon Advice of this, marched in great Hast to surprize him, routed him near *Sardis*, and afterwards besieg'd and took him in the Town. He was in Hazard of being killed by the Soldier who took him, but did not know him; upon which his dumb Son, who never spoke before, cry'd out, 'Tis the King, don't kill him. *Cræsus* was carried to *Cyrus*, who sentenc'd him to be burn'd; and as he mounted the Pile, he cry'd out thrice, *Solon*. *Cyrus* demanding the Reason, he told him his Discourse with *Solon*; upon which *Cyrus* reflecting on the Vicissitude of Humane Affairs, pardon'd *Cræsus*, and us'd him as his Friend and Kinsman. *Howel* says, this happen'd in 3460; after which *Lydia* became subject to *Persia*. The *Lydians* rebell'd; but *Cyrus* reduc'd and disarm'd them, and bred up their Youth of Quality in all sort of Luxury, which made them effeminate. They continued under the *Persians* till *Asia* was subdued by the *Macedonians*; after whom they were subject to the Kings of *Syria*, then to the *Romans*, and on the Fall of the *Eastern* Empire came under the *Turks*.

C A R I A.

To the Description of this Country, P 18. we shall add, That *Bochart* derives the Name of both Country and People from *Car*, which in the *Phœnician* Tongue signifies a Sheep or a Ram, of which they had numerous Flocks. *Mela* says, they were a very warlike People, and had Kings of their own. *Mausolus*, one of them, reign'd a little before the Time of *Xerxes*, and is fam'd for the noble Monument his Wife *Artemisia* built him, which was reckon'd one of the Seven Wonders of the World. This Queen, after her Husband's Death, assisted *Xerxes* against *Greece*. In the Time of *Alexander the Great*, *Ada Qu.* of this Country assisted him against the *Persians*, and adopted him for her Son and Successor. It had the Fate of the rest of *Natolia* afterwards.

To *Magnesia* in this Country, P. 20. we shall add, That it differs from the Town of that Name near Mount *Sipylus*, and (according to *Wheeler*) is a large wall'd Town, well built, has several Mosques, handsome Gates, and a good Trade in Cotton-Yarn. It has several Pillars, and other Monuments of its Antiquity and Grandeur, and lies about 12 Miles S. E. from *Ephesus*.

To *Alabanda* in the same Page we add, That it lies on the other Side of the *Meander*, opposite to *Magnesia*. After the Defeat of *Antiochus*, they sent Ambassadors to *Rome* to congratulate the Victory of the *Romans*, built a Temple in Honour of *Rome*, worship'd that City as a Goddess, and appointed Anniversary Games to her Honour.

Trallis, on the Banks of the *Caystus*, is also reckon'd in this Country, and by others in *Lydia*. 'Tis noted for the Epistle of *Ignatius* to its Inhabitants the *Trallenses*.

To *Mindus*, P. 21. we shall add, That, tho' but a small Town, it had such large Gates, that *Diogenes* the *Cynick* bid the Inhabitants beware their City did not run out at them.

Æ O L I S.

To this Country, P. 21. we shall add, That *Josephus* derives the Name of the Country and Inhabitants from *Elisba* the Son of *Javan*. It likewise gave Name to *Elis* in *Greece*, which was peopled from this Country.

Besides the Towns already mention'd, the following are reckon'd in this District, viz.

1. *Acarnea*, the Residence of *Hermias* the Tyrant, who was one of *Aristotle's* Scholars, but so far from observing his Master's Precepts, that he became a Monster of Cruelty, which provok'd his Subjects so much, that they sew'd him in an Ox's Hide, and baited him to Death. 2. *Pitane*, on a little River which falls into the *Caycus*, where they pretended to the Art of making Bricks that would swim upon the Water.

I O N I A.

To the Description of this Country, P. 22. we add, That in regard the *Ionians* were of the same Original with the *Athenians*, the latter assisted them against the *Persians*, which laid the Foundation of the War betwixt

them and the *Greeks*. *Thevenot* says, That Cameleons are found in this Country, which he describes thus; 'Tis a small Animal, and has no Intrails, but its Belly is full of little Eggs. Its Tongue is as long as its Body, and at the End of it there's a viscuous Humour, by which they catch Flies. Their Eyes are black as Jet, and they can look upwards with one and downwards with another at the same time. Their Skin is thin and transparent, and they don't live above 5 or 6 Months. They change Colours three or four times in half an Hour. Their ordinary Colour is a Mouse-grey: Those which they usually change into are a fine Green, something mixed with Yellow, and at other times with brown Spots. They appear sometimes of a brown Colour like Moles; and if they lie on a white Cloth, they are scarce to be discern'd from it. They are never seen to drink, nor to eat any thing but Flies.

To *Smyrna* in the same Page we add, That it had a Temple dedicated to *Homer*. In 1344, it was taken from the *Turks* by the *Venetians*, who possess'd it till 1428. *Tavernier* says, it was one of the most celebrated Cities of the *Levant* for its Trade and Wealth, and built on the Descent of an Hill, in Form of an Amphitheatre, opening to the S. W. with a Castle, which commands the Gulph two Leagues from the City to the N. W. He adds, That on the 30th of June, 1688. at Noon-Day, the expected 7th Earthquake happen'd, which in a Minute threw down most of the Buildings, and shatter'd all the rest. Within a few Hours after a Fire broke out of the Ruins, which consum'd all that was left standing but a few scatter'd Houses. Near 5000 Persons lost their Lives in this dreadful Convulsion of Nature, and the Castle was swallowed up. This occasion'd Foreigners to abandon the Town, and retire to the Island of *Scio*.

To *Clazomena*, P. 24. we add, That the *Romans* esteem'd it very much on Account of its Wines, and the *Asians* for a Temple of *Apollo*, which was situated in its Neighbourhood.

To *Ephesus* also in the same Page we add, 'Twas both the Metropolis of *Roman Asia*, and the Seat of the Primate of the *Asian* Diocese, and had a fine Harbour. 'Tis also said to have been the Episcopal See of *Timothy*.

Timothy the Evangelist. The ancient Inhabitants were honour'd with one of *S. Paul's* Epistles, and the Apostle *S. John* is thought to have been interr'd here, of whom some of the Ancients asserted he went alive to his Tomb, and that he is not dead, but sleepeth, according to the Saying that went abroad among the Brethren in *Joh. 21. 23.* *That that Disciple should not die.* To the Description of *Diana's* Temple it may be added, That it had been fired 6 times before *Erostratus* burnt it, who setting it on Fire the Night that *Alexander* was born, gave Occasion to the Jest, That *Diana* (one of the reputed Goddesses of Midwifery) was so taken up at the Birth of that great Prince, that she could not attend the Preservation of her own Temple.

To the Towns of *Ionia* we may add,
1. *Myas*, noted for the Retreat of *Themistocles* when banish'd from *Athens*, where he met with greater Civility, tho' amongst his Enemies, than he found amongst his own Countrymen the *Athenians*; upon which he was wont to say, *Periissem nisi periissem.* This Place, together with *Lampsacus* and *Magnesia*, were assign'd to him by *Artaxerxes*, who was so rejoiced at his coming over to him, that frequently in his Sleep he was heard to clap his Hands and say, *Habeo Themistoclem Atheniensem*; i. e. I have *Themistocles* the *Athenian*. 2. *Erythra*, noted for the Residence of one of the Sibyls, hence named *Sibylla Erythraea*. 3. *Ipsus*, noted for the Battle betwixt *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, two of *Alexander's* chief Generals.

L Y C I A.

To the Description of Mount *Chimara* in this Country, *P. 27.* it may not be altogether improper to add the Story of *Bellerophon*, who is said to be the first that render'd it habitable, and was therefore fancy'd by the Poets to have killed the Monster *Chimera*. He was employed upon it by *Jobares* K. of this Country, to whom he was sent by *Pratus* K. of *Argos*, who being jealous of him, sent him to *Jobares* with Letters, requiring that King to put him to Death, which gave Birth to the Phrase, *Bellerophonis Literas portare*, to denote such as are unknowingly commission'd with Orders for their own Ruin.

It may be added to the Description of the Country, That the *Lycians* were formerly a powerful Nation, and (according to some Authors) extended their Dominion upon the Coasts as far as *Italy*. They were at length subdued by the *Persians*, but with great Difficulty, as appears by this Instance of their Courage: Some of them being besieg'd by one of *K. Cyrus's* Lieutenants, they first burnt their Domesticks and all their Wealth, and then sallied out upon the *Persians*, who put 'em all to the Sword. They made no Resistance to *Alexander* as he marched thro' their Country to the *Persians*. Upon his Death they fell to *Seleucus*. After the Battle of *Magnesia*, this Country was given to the *Rhodians*, for assisting the *Romans*, but govern'd by 14 Senators chose out of their chief Cities, over whom there was a President called *Lyciarchus*; but when brought totally under the *Romans*, the supreme Power was lodged in the Senate of *Rome*. This Country was anciently so populous as to have 60 Cities in it, of which 36 remained in the Time of *St. Paul*, but now ruined.

To *Telmessus*, *P. 28.* we add, That its ancient Inhabitants were noted for Soothsaying, and interpreting of Dreams.

To *Limyra* or *Myra* in the same Page we add, That it was the Metropolis of this Country, and the See of an Archbishop. *St. Nicholas*, whose Festival is Yearly celebrated by the Roman Catholics on the 6th of *December*, was one of the Bishops hereof; and we read of this City *Acts 27. 5.*

P A M P H Y L I A.

To the Description of Mount *Taurus* in this Country, *P. 29.* we add, That on its Branches are fed a multitude of Goats, whose Hair are made Camblets and Gro-grains as fine as Silks.

The *Pamphylians* were subject first to the *Syrian*, and then to the *Persian* Kings, and, with the rest of the *Asian* Provinces, were at length brought under *Seleucus* the great K. of *Syria*, whose Line being extinct, *Mithridates* tamper'd with them so far, that he brought them over to his Party; upon which they infested the Seas, prov'd notable Pirates, and were the first Inventors of the Gallies, which the *Italians* from hence

called *Pamphyli*, a sort of Vessels which were row'd by above 140 Oars. In Process of Time they were compelled by the *Romans* to drop their Trade of Piracy; and afterwards, being made a Province of the *Asian* Diocese, underwent the same Fortune with the rest, till subdued by the *Turks*; and upon the Death of *Aladine*, 'twas added to the Kingdom of *Caraman*.

C I L I C I A.

To the Description of this Country, P. 30. we shall add, That *Isauria* was anciently reckon'd a Part of it. 'Tis a mountainous Province, lies on both Sides of Mount *Taurus*, has the rest of *Cilicia* on the E. and S. *Pisidia* on the N. and *Pamphylia* on the W. According to some Authors, it had its Name from *Isaurus*, its chief City. *Ammianus Marcellinus* says, it was taken by *Servilius* the Proconsul, employ'd by *Pompey* in that Expedition, who was therefore surnamed *Isauricus*. *Isaurus* was destroy'd, because it serv'd for a Retreat to Rebels and Freebooters. He adds, That this Province abounded with Vines and other Fruit-Trees. The same Author says of *Cilicia* in general, That it is a rich Soil, and abounds with all Necessaries, which is chiefly to be understood of the Eastern Parts named *Campestris*. The Sea-Coasts of this Country are reckon'd by some to extend above 300 Miles in Length. They have great Flocks of Goats and Sheep, and a good Breed of Horses, out of which 600 are taken Annually for the Grand Seignior's own Use. They have a sort of Animal in this Country called *Squilachi*, which is a Mongrel betwixt a Dog and a Wolf. They go in Troops, and are so bold as to attack Men; and if they find any asleep, carry off their Hats, Cloaks, or any Thing else that is loose about 'em.

To the *Pyle* or Streights of this Country we shall add, That *Arsenes*, who was entrusted with the Defence of them by *Darius* against *Alexander*, lost the Empire of *Persia* by not defending them, as he might easily have done: That *Piscennius Niger* defended them bravely against the Troops of the Emperor *Severus*, but was forced to abandon them by a Tempest of Rain and Thunder, which darted on the Faces of his Men after he had lost 20000 in defending

it; so that the Fate of the Universal Empire was determin'd here a second time.

To the Description of the River *Cydus* in the same Page we shall add, That as it had like to have proved fatal to *Alexander the Great* when he bathed in it, the German Emperor *Frederic I.* was drown'd in it, the Violence of the Stream having carried him down as he went to bath himself.

To *Pompejopolis* in the same Page we shall add, That *Curtius* not knowing the Reason of its being called *Soli*, nam'd it *Helieopolis*, as if it had been consecrated to the Sun: That *Pompey* rebuilt it after he dislodg'd the Pirates, and punish'd their Ringleaders: And that the new Inhabitants with which he peopled it might not be under the same Temptation to rob and plunder, he gave them Lands in the Neighbourhood sufficient to maintain them. The Cause of *Pompey's* making War in this Country was their committing fresh Piracies, even on the Coast of *Italy*, after *Servilius* had quell'd 'em. They had such a Number of Vessels and Men employed in those Piracies, that he armed 500 Ships of all sorts against them, and attack'd them with 130000 Land-men; so that in one Month he made an End of that War, and brought them to live in an orderly Manner. They were very serviceable to him afterwards in his Wars against *Caesar*; and when *Cicero* was made Proconsul of this Province, he found it so orderly, that he wrote merrily to one of his Friends, who desired him to send some *Panthers* from thence to adorn his Triumph, That he found all Things quiet in his Province except the *Panthers*, who had fled to *Cilicia* for fear of him.

To *Iffus*, P. 31. we shall add, That *Curtius* in his Account of the Victory obtain'd by *Alexander* near this Place over *Darius*, says, the *Persian* Army consisted of 600000 Men, of whom 200000 were killed and 400000 taken, among whom were the Wives and Daughters of *Darius*; whereas *Alexander*, if we may believe this Writer, did not lose above 100 Men. The Cause of this is ascribed to the Effeminacy of the *Persians*, and the Unskilfulness of their Commanders, who fought on such a disadvantageous Ground, that they could not make Use of their Numbers. The Town is now call'd *Ajazzo*.

To *Alexandria* in the same Page we shall add, That 'tis now called *Scanderona*, but is inconsiderable, because of its Situation among Marshes and Fens, which make the Air unwholesome; so that it would have been deserted long ago, were it not that some Christian Factors chuse it for their Place of Residence, because it is the next Port to *Aleppo* on that Side.

Some derive the ancient Inhabitants of this Country from *Tarshish* the Son of *Javan*, who they suppose to have built *Tarsus*. They were augmented by new Colonies from *Syria*, the Fate of which Country they followed. They begun to set up as independant when the Family of *Seleucus K.* of *Syria* declin'd, and might have continu'd so longer, had they not taken Part with *Mithridates* against the *Romans*, who finally subdued them; and they continued under the Empire of the *East* till it was swallow'd up by the *Turks*.

We must refer the General History of the *Turks* to its proper Place, where we shall give an Account of their Origine, and in the mean time shall exhibit a brief History of such of their Kings as have reign'd in *Asia Minor*, from *Du Fresne's Historia Bizantina*, and others.

The *Turks* began their Incursions into that Part of *Asia* which borders on *Cappadocia* and *Lycaonia* in the Reign of *Romanus Diogenes*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, about the Year 1072, when that Emperor was involved in dangerous Civil Wars. This happen'd in the Time of *Axan*, Son to *Tangrolipix*, who was the first General Sultan of the *Turks*. *Diogenes* marched against him, but was betray'd by *Andronicus*, the Son of *John Ducas*, late Emperor of *Constantinople*; upon which he was defeated and taken. *Axan* treated him honourably, concluded a Peace with him, and a Match betwixt their Children; and dismissed him favourably; but *John Ducas*, who had usurped the Empire, defeated and took *Diogenes*, forced him to resign, and put out his Eyes. Upon this began the Turkish Kingdom of *Iconium*.

The Turkish Sultans of Iconium, from Du Fresne's Historia Bizantina.

1. THE first Sultan was *Cutlumefes*, Uncle to *Tangrolipix*, who having possess'd himself of *Iconium* about 1072, he thought to subdue the *Græcian Asiatick Provinces*, which had been conquer'd by his Nephew; but the Caliph interposing, *Axan* retain'd the Upper Provinces, and *Cutlumefes* was to have whatsoever he could win in *Asia Minor*. He had Issue two Sons, nam'd *Solyman* and *Mazourius*.

2. *Solyman*, who was the eldest, succeeded his Father, to whose Conquests he added almost all *Bithynia*, with *Nice*; which City was always honour'd with the Royal Seat of his Kingdom. Not long after this he took *Antioch*, and Anno 1084 defeated *Serd* fold Sultan of *Aleppo*; but was routed not many Months after, and slain by the succeeding Sultan.

3. *Apelchafem*, whom *Solyman* constituted his Generalissimo, immediately after his Decease enter'd by Force upon his Dominions; but his Usurpation was of very short Continuance, for he was soon made Prisoner, and put to Death.

4. The next that succeeded was *Solyman's* eldest Son, who was called *Clitziafthlan*, *Clitziafthlan*, or *Ker-Aflan*. He began his Reign at a Time when *Iconium* was at War with the *Greeks*; but in the End he compos'd it; after which he defeated and slew *Tzachia* a *Turk*, who had taken *Smyrna* and *Phocæa* during the Reign of *Alexius Comnenus*; whereupon *Nice* was restored to the Sultan in 1105, the Christians having surpriz'd it in the Year 1097, in their Passage to the *Holy Land*. But *Clitziafthlan* resigning *Nice* and *Lycaonia* to his Brother, transferred the Royal Seat from the former to *Iconium*.

5. He was succeeded by *Clitziafthlan II.* his Son, who likewise made *Iconium* his Royal Seat. He came to an untimely End, by the Hands of *Masur* his Bastard Brother.

6. In

6. In the Year 1116, *Masuat* afore-mention'd, by the Assistance of *Grazi* Prince of *Turcomania*, was advanc'd to be Sultan of *Iconium*. He fought and defeated *Tanisman* Sultan of *Cappadocia*, *Noradin* of *Syria*, and *John* and *Emanuel Comneni*.

7. The next that succeeded to the Sultany was *Clitziafthlan* III. the Son of *Masuat*. 'Tis recorded, That in the Year 1176, he gave *Emanuel Comnenus* such a total Defeat, that the latter never thought himself happy after it. There are some Authors, and particularly *Matthew Paris*, who relate, that this *Clitziafthlan* some Time before his Death embraced Christianity.

8. *Chaichofroes*, who was his eldest Son, succeeded him in the Year 1182. In the Years 1188 and 1189, he was driven out of his Dominions by *Frederic I.* of *Germany*, who, as he passed to the *Holy Land*, was bless'd with 3 Victories in that Passage. This Sultan afterwards was made a Visit by *Alexius Angelus*, Emperor of *Constantinople*. He was born of the Daughter of the Count de *Tholouse*, who was a Christian, and had one Son named *Kutepez* or *Melec*.

9. In 1200, *Racratin*, or *Rucnodin* his Brother, confederating with *Alexius*, invaded his Territories. In order to break his Friendship with the *Greeks*, he pretended they had plotted to assassinate him; but he ended his Reign and Life together in the Year 1204.

10. In 1204, *Chaichofroes* above-mention'd took the Opportunity of *Rucratin's* Death to regain his Dominions. He also retook *Nice* and *Attalia* from the Emperor *Theodorus*, who afterwards slew him in Battle with his own Hands.

11. He was succeeded A. D. 1207 by *Kutepez*, or *Melec* his Son, who was also call'd *Euzodinus Caicaw*. His Father-in-Law *Selasdin* incited him to a War with the Christians, to whom he is said to have been a well-wisher. He departed this Life at the Siege of *Damietta* A. D. 1219.

12. *Melec's* Children being all too young for the Administration, he was succeeded by *Azatinus* or *Alatinus* his Brother, otherwise call'd *Aladin Caicobadus*. He was a valiant Prince, and rais'd the declining State of the *Turks*, which was sunk very low in 1219, the Year of his Accession to the su-

preme Power. He had once a Mind to embrace Christianity, as appears by a Letter which he sent in 1235 to Pope *Gregory IX.* He ended his Days at the Siege of *Satalia* in *Armenia* (as some say) in the Year 1338, and others in 1235.

13. The next was *Gaiasadinus*, *Azalin's* only Son, who was otherwise written *Japhatinus*, *Jalhatinus*, *Azatinus*, or *Giathodin Caicoscaw*. He attain'd to the Sultany by the Aid of the *Franks*, his Mercenaries, who perswaded him to murder his Mother-in-Law and his two Brothers, to make Way for himself. The chief *Frank* that gave this Counsel design'd to have murder'd *Gaiasadin* after the same Manner; but he was prevented from putting it in Execution, and cut off with the rest of the *Franks*. In 1292 and 1293, this Country was overrun and spoiled by the *Tartars*, who were no sooner retired, but *Coteina*, a certain *Turk*, sought to advance himself to the Throne, but was killed by the Lord of *Lambren*. *Gaiasadin* died in 1245 at *Attalia* or *Sattalia*, and had Issue 3 Sons, viz. *Azadin*, *Raconad*, and *Altadin*.

14. His Successor was *Raconad* or *Racnadin*, his second Son, who was advanc'd to that Dignity in 1245, at 11 Years of Age, by *Selasadin*, a Person who bore a great Sway in the State. He met with Opposition from *Zosyn*, his Father's General, who also slew the said *Selasadin*; yet *Raconad* kept his Throne, and made a Peace with the *Tartars*, till the Year 1255, when they took him Prisoner, a fresh Rupture having broke out with them the Year before.

15. In 1255, after *Raconad* was carried away Prisoner by the *Tartars*, his Brother *Azadin*, or (according to the *Turkish Annals*) *Aladin*, the eldest Son of *Gaiasadin*, succeeded. At the End of 5 Years his Dominions were invaded by the *Tartars*, and himself, with his Family, forced to fly to the Emperor *Michael Palaeologus* at *Constantinople*, who kept his Wife and Children Prisoners, after he himself lost his Life in a fruitless Attempt to recover his Dominions.

16. In 1261, *Melec*, his eldest Son, attempted to recover his Father's Kingdom, but in vain, and was driven into Exile by *Amur*, the chief of the Noblemen, at the Head of a great Army. His Exile gave

Rise to an Anarchy, which made Way for the Ottoman Line. History is not express as to the Time of this Prince's Death. *Du Fresne* tells us, he was proclaimed Sultan, but had a very uneasy Reign, and was soon dispossessed by *Haly*, *Amur's* Son.

The Turkish Kings in *Asia Minor* of the *Selzuccian* Line were,

1. *Cultu-Moses* in 1075. He was Nephew to *Tangrolip*, the first Persian Sultan of the Turks, and conquer'd *Media*, Part of *Armenia Major*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*.

2. *Solyman*, his Son. The Western Christians in 1097, in their first Passage to the Holy Land, took Possession of the best Part of his Territories, the N. Parts whereof they reannexed to the *Græcian* Empire, which the Kings of this Family were never able to recover.

3. *Mahomet*, *Solyman's* Son, who regain'd a small Part of his Dominions in *Asia Minor*, but was obliged by *Musat* (of whom we shall speak next) to abandon them.

4. *Musat*. He was also of the *Selzuccian* Race, and deputed to the Sultany by the Kings of *Damascus*, and was Master of all the Turkish Provinces in *Asia Minor*.

5. *Calisastlan*, the Son of *Musat*. Not content with *Iconium* and the neighbouring Provinces, which his Father had left him by Will, he invaded his Brothers *Jagupasan* and *Dodunc*, took *Amasia* and *Ancyra* from the former, and *Sebastia* and *Cæsaria* from the latter. Then he vanquish'd *Emanuel Comnenus* the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and added *Phrygia* to his Dominions. *Reucratine*, his 3d Son, imitated him in his Injustice to his Brethren; for,

6. *Reucratine* had three Brothers, *Musat*, *Cappatine*, and *Caicosrobes*, whom having depriv'd of their Patrimony, he possess'd himself of all the Turkish Provinces in *Asia Minor*. Towards the Close of his Reign, the Turks having been driven out of *Persia* by *Occata*, the Cham of *Tartary*, a Party of them, headed by *Aladine*, a Prince of the *Selzuccian* Family, united with those of their own Countrymen here, and by their Assistance recover'd *Cilicia* from the Greek Emperors; who had not long before taken

the Opportunity of the Broils between the Turks and the Christians to regain it.

The Turkish Kings in *Asia Minor* of the Race of *Aladine* were,

7. *Aladine*, with several of his Countrymen, being settled in *Cilicia*, was, upon the Death of *Reucratine*, advanc'd to the Sultany, when he transferred the Royal Seat from *Sebastia*, a City of *Cilicia*, to *Iconium*, which had been formerly the chief Residence of the Sultans his Ancestors. He was descended in a direct Line from *Cassanes*, the last of the Turkish Sultans in *Persia*.

8. He was succeeded by *Azalide* or *Azaline*, his eldest Son. His Reign was one continued Series of War with his Brother *Jathatine*, whom he obliged at length to retire into Exile.

9. *Jathatine*, tho' forced for a while to abandon his Country, yet upon his Brother *Azalide's* Death succeeded him. He was afterwards killed in a Duel with *Lascarius* Emperor of the Greeks at *Nice*.

10. *Jathatine II.* his Son, was driven out of his Kingdom by the *Tartars*; upon which the Turks were obliged to become their Tributaries and Vassals.

11. *Musat* and *Cei-Cubades* succeeded in his stead as Tributaries to the *Tartars*. They were of the *Selzuccian* Line, but whether the Sons of *Jathatine II.* before mention'd, is uncertain.

12. *Aladine II.* succeeded his Father *Cei-Cubades* in his Kingdom and Vassalage to the *Tartars*. He died without Issue; upon which the surviving Princes of his Family divided his Kingdom amongst themselves. *Sarachan*, one of them, had *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and Part of *Lydia*, from him called *Sarchan*, *Sarachan*, or *Saracha Illi*. *Aidin*, another of them, had the rest of *Lydia*, *Phrygia Major*, and the greatest Part of *Mysia Major*, from whom it was named *Aidinia*, or *Aidin Illi*. *Carasus* had for his Share *Phrygia Minor*, and the rest of *Mysia*, which from him was called *Carasan*, or *Carasa Illi*; and the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, and that Side of *Pontus* next to *Bithynia*, fell to the Family of the *Isfendiars*. These were also subdivided into several Principalities, so that we read of the Princes of *Smyrna*, *Amasia*, *Amisus*,

Amisus, Scandoloro, &c. But to be short, *Caraman* had the best Share of his Estate, for he took Possession of *Lycia, Lycaonia, Pisidia, Pamphylia, Isauria, and Cilicia*, with the City of *Iconium*, all *Caria*, except a small Part belonging to the Prince of *Mentesia*, Part of *Cappadocia* and the *Lesser Armenia*, together with some Towns in *Phrygia*. All this devolved to his Posterity, who maintain'd it with great Glory thro' several Generations, under

The *Turkish Kings in Asia Minor* of the Family of *Caraman*.

13. *Caraman*, who was the first Promoter of his Family to the Throne. *Ottoman*, the first King of that Race, was his Contemporary.

14. He was succeeded by *Aladine* his Son, who was likewise Son-in-Law to *Amurath*, the first of the *Ottoman* Family. The latter dethron'd him, but was prevail'd upon, by the earnest Intreaties of his Wife, to pardon and restore him.

15. *Aladine II.* Son to the former, was his Successor. *Bajazet I.* overthrew him, and *Tertumases*, one of *Bajazet's* Generals, hanged him.

16. Upon the Death of *Bajazet*, who was led Captive by the Great *Tamerlane*, *Mahomet* regain'd his Father *Aladine's* Kingdom; but was afterwards obliged to deliver up several of his best Towns to put an End to a War, wherein he was worsted by *Mahomet*, Son to the said *Bajazet*. He was afterwards killed in the Siege of *Attalia*.

17. *Ibrahim I.* his Son, succeeded; but rashly proclaiming a War against *Amurath II.* his Father-in-Law, he was conquer'd, and forced to pay him Tribute. Yet rebelling after *Amurath's* Death against his Successor *Mahomet the Great*, he was by him also vanquish'd, and a Peace ensued betwixt them.

18. His Son *Ibrahim II.* whom some call *Pyramus*, succeeding, aided *Zemes* in his War against his Brother *Bajazet II.* for which the latter having compos'd his Affairs, fell upon his Dominions, and killed this unhappy Prince in a Battle; after which he united the Kingdom of *Caramania* to the State of the *Ottomans* in 1396.

An Additional Account of Natolia, from Du Mont's Travels to Smyrna.

A *Natolia* produces Wines, Rice, Cotton-Wool, and Skins of Bufflers, and would also bear Corn, did the Inhabitants till the Ground. It affords almost every where good Pasture for Cattle; but the Peasants not having the Advantage of selling them to Foreigners, Flesh is so extremely cheap here, that the best Beef is sold for One Penny per Pound, and that which the *Jews* refuse to eat at a Halfpenny; for if the Intrails stick to the Ribs, or if there be any other small Mark of Disorder in the Beast, about which the *Jews* are very scrupulous, they will not eat it. The Flesh of Bufflers is not above a Halfpenny per Pound, and dear enough too, because 'tis extraordinary hard and unfavoury. Mutton is also very cheap here, the Skin of the Sheep being more valued than the Flesh, because the Countrymen sell the Wool at a good Price to the Merchants; and of the Skins they make red and yellow Leather, which they import into *Europe*. The Sheep of this Country are very large, their Tails being generally as broad as a Platter, and some of 'em weigh 12 Pounds when their Wool is off.

The Rivers of the Territory of *Smyrna* are full of Fish, but not good. Amongst the rest, there are Carps of an extraordinary Size, as large as Salmon, but of so flat a Taste, that they are not to be eat. There are very excellent Sea-Fish along the Coasts of many kinds, particularly the Sole, the Turbot, Rets, Roach, and Pilcher, in great Quantities, and eat very delicately. They have very good Oysters, and a very tender sort of Herrings, which are delicious when dry'd. Cuttle-Fish are in greater Numbers here than any where else. 'Tis not much esteemed, for it only consists of Gristles, and its Blood is as black as Ink; yet 'tis very good if well season'd. There are also Sea-Knives, a sort of Fish so call'd, because they resemble Hafts of Knives made of Horn. *Pliny, Lib. 9. Chap. 61.* says, they shine by Night wherever they are put,
and

and even in the Mouths of those who eat them; but however that be, they are very unwholesome. This Fish is different from the Sea-Chestnuts, which are a sort of Fish very common in the Sea of *Smyrna*, and of an exquisite Taste. When they are cut in two, there appears a kind of a Rose, which contains in each of its Leaves certain Eggs of a yellowish Purple Colour, that are very delicious, but not satisfying. There is also a long kind of Fishes, which the *French* call Hornbacks or Sword-Fish. They are as big as an ordinary Eel, have a long Snout, like the Bill of a Sea-Pye; and when dressed, turn of a greenish Colour, which makes them not so agreeable to a nice Palate. Amongst the chief Fish of this Sea is the Tunny, which is look'd upon as the King of Fish. *M. Fournier* gives a very curious Description of it in his Hydrography. The Tunny-Fishing is the most profitable in this Sea, Thousands of 'em being catch'd at a time; and one with another, they are not worth less than 3 Crowns apiece; but every one has not the Permission to catch them, it being a Royal Fishery, the Grant of which is sold Yearly for a great Sum of ready Money. The Pulp is another kind of Fish, as noxious to the Body as the others are wholesome. It swims most commonly upon the Surface of the Water. To see it floating, one would take it for a Calf's Belly, or a Scum of the Sea, being slimy; and without any Form; but when turn'd up, appears to be an Animal with many long Legs, like those of a Spider, and several little Bladders at each Leg, full of a Liquor as clear as Water. This Fish is generally white, sometimes reddish, and at other times turning black, according to the Season and the Nature of the Soil. 'Tis rarely perceived to move either when it swims or eats; but if any Animal comes near it, it presently seizes 'em so hard with its Legs, that 'tis no easy Matter to get free from it. After this Manner it surprises its Prey, and frequently drowns Men, who in washing themselves have the Misfortune to meet with it; for besides that it pesters them with its long Legs, it diffuses upon them the pernicious Moisture contained in its innumerable Bladders; and this venomous Liquor presently deprives them of Motion, by the Inflam-

mation which it causes in the Parts it seizes.

There are also Tortoises in this Sea. *Pliny* reckons 4 kinds of Tortoises, one sort that lives in the Sea, another on Land, a 3d in Rivers, and a 4th in Marshes. They are catch'd by turning them over when they lie asleep upon the Water, (which they usually do in fine Weather) for then they cannot stir, nor turn themselves again but with great Difficulty. They are so lascivious, that the Male couples 20 times a Day with the Female. When the Male courts her, he opens his Mouth, stretches out his Neck, and discovers his Passion by other Motions; but the Female being of a colder Nature, he does not always find her disposed: However, he follows her from Place to Place. Of these Animals some are bigger, and others less; but the largest are not above 8 or 9 Inches broad, and 12 or 14 long. The Land-Tortoises live in Ditches and Marshes: They are small, flat, and of a dark-brown Colour, in such Numbers about *Smyrna*, that sometimes 20 or 30 of them are seen at a time.

In the Territory of *Smyrna* there are abundance of Flowers, because the *Turks* love them, and their Wives dress with them; yet they have no such curious Florists as in *Europe*. The most common Trees of this Country are Orange, Citron, Lemon, Myrtle, Rosemary, and Apricock Trees, which are in as great Plenty here as Apple and Pear Trees in other Places. They have entire Woods of Pomegranate-Trees; but the Oranges and Apricocks are not very good, the former being for most Part either sower or bitter, and the latter a sort of small unfavoury clammy Fruit, which the People of the Country call *Musse Franki*. They have very good Grapes, of which they make Wine and Tarts. Their Pears, Cherries, Goosberries and Peaches, are not good. They have abundance of Olives; but their Oil is not near so good nor clear as that of *Spain* or *Provence*: It is browner, and full of a certain thick Substance, which sinking to the Bottom, makes such a Quantity of Dregs as fills up a Quarter of the Vessel. The Olives which they reserve for eating are not tempting, being very large, but as black and soft as Medlars, so that they al-

ways seem rotten. The *European* Merchants eat neither the Olives nor the Oil of this Country, but send for both from *Marseilles*. For Butter, none but the *English* and *Dutch* Merchants have any.

The *Turks* in this Country have a very convenient Method to warm themselves, which serves them instead of a Chimney. They put upon the *Sofa* a kind of square or polygon Table of 3 or 4 Foot diameter, and 15 or 18 Inches high. This sort of Table, or rather Moveable, has Boards at Top and Bottom, so that it may be set indifferently upon either End. They place a little Pan of Fire exactly in the Middle between those Boards, in a certain Place made on purpose to hold it, like a Warming-Pan. Then they cover the whole with a large Carpet of embroider'd Silk like a Coverlet, and lin'd with Cloth, which is stitch'd to it, and lin'd again handsomely all round with a Border, just as their Bed-Coverlets; for, by the Way, they don't let their Sheets lie loose as we do, but fasten them to the

Coverlet and the Quilts. The Carpet hangs down above a Foot all round, so that scarce any Air can come in, and consequently 'tis hot enough under this Machine. When 'tis cold Weather, the Company place themselves around it as high as their Wastes, and take Care at the same Time so to order the Carpet, that as little Air may get in as possible. This has the same Effect with the Stoves of the *Dutch* Women, but with this Difference, that several Persons may enjoy the same Conveniency at once; and all the Company, at the same Time they are warming themselves, may be merry, write, work, or eat, upon this kind of Table.

M. Du Mont observes, That the *Turks* have no Posts in their Dominions, which they omit on purpose, that bad News may not be conveyed quickly thro' the Country, lest the People should be encourag'd to rebel; but for good News, they have Ways enough to spread it.

CHAP. IV.

S Y R I A.

LUTTS and Reiskius on Cluverius say, this is the third and largest Part of *Turkey* in *Asia*, call'd by the *Greeks* *Suria*, from its Metropolis *Tyre*, anciently call'd *Sar* or *Tsire*. In the Scripture it is call'd *Aram*, because first peopled by *Aram* the Son of *Sem*. Some of the Heathen Writers call'd it by the same Name. *Strabo* says, the *Syrians* in his Time were call'd *Arami*, and quotes *Possidonius*, a more ancient Author, to prove, that the *Ἀραμαιοὶ* which *Homer* mentions must be those *Syrians*. He adds, That the *Syrians* call'd themselves *Aramai*, or plainly *Aramites*. *Josephus* says the same. *Reiskius* adds, That there were 4 *Arams*; viz. *Aram-Dammesek*, i. e. *Damascena*; *Aram-Soba*, i. e. *Cava*, or *Calo-Syria*;

Aram-Naharaim, i. e. *Mesopotamia*; and lastly, *Aram-Padan*, i. e. *Jugata*, which is only a Part of the former, whither *Jacob* fled. He leaves out the other Divisions made by different Authors, and says, the *Arabians* call it *Schamach*, because it lies on their Left. *Buno* on *Cluverius* says, *Syria* is call'd *Schamre* in the Map of *Olearius*, and thinks that Appellation might come from *Scham*, by which Name *Leunclavius* says the *Turks* call *Damascus*. *Buno* adds, That the *Turks* call this Country *Sciam*; but *Postellus* says, they call it *Suristan*, the *Spaniards* and *Italians* *Soria*, and the *French* *Sourie*. Some think, that it being a Part of the *Affyrian* Empire when the *Greeks* first knew it, it was call'd *Syria* for *Affyria*; as afterwards, *Affyria* had the Name of *Syria*.

Accor-





According to *Cluverius*, it was anciently a very large and potent Country, especially in the Time of *Semiramis*; for *Affyria*, *Mesopotamia*, *Babylonia*, *Phœnicia*, and *Palæstine*, were Parts of it. But in Process of Time, the three first being taken out of it, it was bounded on the N. by Mount *Amanus*, by which 'twas separated formerly from *Cappadocia* and *Armenia*, and at this Day, says *Luyts*, from *Aladulia*, a Part of *Natolia*; on the E. by the River *Euphrates*, which divides it from *Mesopotamia* or *Diarbeck* as far as the Town of *Thapsacum*, and afterwards *Arabia Deserta*; on the S. by *Arabia Petraea*; and on the W. by Part of the same, and the *Syrian* or *Phœnician* Sea, the E. Part of the *Mediterranean*, and by Mount *Amanus*, which parts it from *Cilicia*. The Length of it betwixt the Lake of *Sirbo* on the Borders of *Egypt*, and Mount *Taurus*, where 'tis divided by the River *Euphrates*, was 140 German Leagues, or 560 Miles, and its Breadth betwixt the Sea and *Arabia Deserta* about 50 German Leagues, or 200 Miles. *Heylin* having given it the same Bounds, says, the Length of it from Mount *Taurus* to the Edge of *Arabia* is said to be 525 Miles, and its Breadth from the *Mediterranean* to the River *Euphrates* about 470; so that he makes it almost a square Figure. *Luyts* says, its greatest Breadth is but the third Part of its Length. 'Tis widest in the N. and narrowest betwixt the *Syrian* Sea and *Arabia Deserta*. *Maimonides* bounded it thus; From the Land of *Israel* to *Mesopotamia* and *Aram-Zoba*, and all along the *Euphrates* to *Babylon*, by *Damascus*, *Achleb*, *Charan*, *Mambehg*, &c. as far as *Sinabar* and *Zohar*, which are Towns of *Syria*. Neither have the *Arabian* Geographers bounded it otherwise. *Luyts* divides it into *Proper Syria*, *Phœnicia*, and *Judæa*; *Cluverius* into the Countries of *Palæstine*, *Phœnicia*, *Antiochena*, *Comagena*, and *Cælo-Syria*; and *Heylin* into *Phœnicia*, *Palæstine*, *Proper Syria*, *Comagena*, *Palmyrene*, and *Cælo-Syria*. But the latter observes, that tho' *Syria*, while it constituted a Part of the *Roman* Empire, was bounded as afore-said, yet both the *Aram* of the *Hebrews*, and the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, was of a far larger Extent; for, says he, *Aram*, if taken in the largest Sense, reaches from the Coast of *Cilicia* on the N. to *Idumæa* on the S. and from the River *Tigris* on the

E. to the *Mediterranean* Sea on the W. containing, besides the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, *Arabia Deserta* and *Petraea*, *Chaldæa*, *Babylonia*, and all those Countries which are mentioned in Scripture with the Name *Aram*, as *Aram-Naharaim*, *Aram-Sobah*, *Padan-Aram*, *Aram-Maachab*, *Sede-Aram*, *Aram-Beth-Rehob*. Some extend it still further, and not only take in *Armenia*, which they derive from *Aram-Minni*, the Borders of *Syria*, but also that Part of *Cappadocia* lying on the *Euxine* Sea, whose Inhabitants were in old Times call'd *Leuco Syri*, or *White Syrians*. However that be, 'tis universally agreed amongst the Learned, that *Aram-Naharaim* is the same with *Mesopotamia*. And as for *Padan-Aram*, which is call'd *Sede-Aram* by *Hosea*, that is only a Part of the other, the whole Country of *Aram-Naharaim* or *Mesopotamia* being divided into two Parts; the one Northward, call'd *Padan-Aram*, or *Sede-Aram*, to whose Inhabitants *Xenophon* gave the Name of *Syrians*; the other lying S. and by the same Author is called *Arabia*. As for *Aram-Maachab*, 'tis suppos'd to be that Part of *Syria* afterwards named *Comagena*; and *Aram-Sobah* was a Province on the N. E. of *Damascus*, along the River *Euphrates*, and afterwards call'd *Palmyrena*; on the S. W. of which lay the Kingdom of *Aram-Beth-Rehob*. The *Grecians* likewise extended *Syria* as far, if not farther than the *Hebrews* did *Aram*. 'Tis without Dispute that *Strabo* must needs mean the *Affyrians* when he says, That the *Medes* over-rul'd all *Asia* when the Empire of the *Affyrians* was overthrown. And *Herodotus* says, That those whom the *Barbarians* call'd *Affyrians*, the *Greeks* call'd *Syrians*. *Justin's* Testimony is to the same purpose, where he affirms, The *Affyrians*, who were afterwards call'd *Syrians*, held the Empire 1300 Years.

Luyts says, That anciently, when it comprehended *Palæstina*, *Phœnicia*, *Proper Syria*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Babylonia*, it constituted the first of the 4 great Monarchies of the Earth, begun by *Nimrod* according to *Diodorus Siculus*, or by *Ninus* according to *Herodotus*, which continued in a Succession of 1300 Years. Afterwards, *A. M.* 3148, *Sardanapalus* being conquer'd, the Monarchy was divided into the *Babylonian* and *Median*, till *Belsbazzar* being overcome by *Cyaxares*

or *Darius the Mede*, it became again united; and at his Death, *Cyrus* his Nephew added *Persia*, which began the 2d or *Persian* Monarchy. This lasted 200 Years, till overthrown by *Alexander the Great*; after whose Death, his Captains sharing his Conquests, *Seleucus Nicanor* and his Posterity, for 250 Years, were Kings of *Syria*; after which, *Pompey* made it a Roman Province: But at the Fall of the Roman Empire, it was overrun by the *Saracens*, and is now subject to the *Turks*. *Babylonia*, *Assyria*, and *Mesopotamia*, being separated from it, *Proper Syria*, *Phœnicia*, and *Palestina*, do now only retain the general Name of *Syria*.

Luyts adds, That the Air of this Country is healthful, and very temperate, and the Soil deep, level, and pleasant, affording Pasture to numerous Herds of Cattle. 'Tis also fertile, except towards *Arabia*, in Corn, Grapes, Figs, Oranges, Lemons, Melons, a sort of Honey-Canes, Dates, Spices, and Medicinal Herbs: And where any Tract of it lies waste, it is not so much to be imputed to the Sterility of the Soil, as to the destructive Wars occasion'd by the frequent Incurfions of the *Arabians*, the Revolt of the Inhabitants, and the Tyranny of the *Turks*. The latter have divided it into three general Governments or *Beglerbeglicks*, viz. those of *Aleppo*, *Tripoli*, and *Damascus*. The first, according to *Luyts*, takes up N. *Syria*, in which are 9 *Sangiackates* or lesser Governments. The second lies next to *Aleppo* on the S. and borrows the Name from *Tripoli*, its chief Town, where the *Ottoman* Governor keeps his Court, and has under his Jurisdiction 4 *Sangiacks*. The third and last, to which the S. and W. of *Syria* is subject, is so called from *Damascus*, the usual Seat of the *Beglerbeg*, who has 10 *Sangiacks* under him.

Heylin gives an Account of 4 kinds of Religion in *Syria*, viz. *Mahometan*, *Christian*, *Pagan*, and that of the *Drusians*, which is a Compound of the rest; but the *Mahometan* is most universal and encourag'd, tho' the others are tolerated. The *Curdi* or *Curdenes*, suppos'd to be descended from the *Parthians*, by reason of their Expertness in Bows and Arrows, are the only Pagans in this Country. They inhabit those mountainous Tracts that border on *Armenia*.

They worship both God and the Devil; the former that they may receive Benefits from him, and the latter that he may not hurt them; but their principal Devotions are to the Devil; for, say they, God is a good Man, and will do no body any Harm; but the Devil is a mischievous Fellow, and must be pleas'd with Sacrifices, that he may not hurt them. The *Drusians* are suppos'd to be the Remainder of those *Franks* (by which Name the *Turks* call all the Western Christians) who were forced to fly to the Mountains when driven from the *Holy Land*, and defending themselves by the Advantage of their Situation, could never be wholly subdued by the *Turks*, who at length allow'd them Peace, and the Liberty of their Religion. But they have so far lost their Principles, that they retain only Baptism, and that but in some Places. They count it lawful to marry their own Daughters, Sisters, or Mothers. They imitate the *Turks* in their Habits, but abhor Circumcision, and freely drink Wine.

The Christian Faith was first preach'd here by some of the persecuted Brethren in *Phœnicia* and *Antiochia*; the chief of whom, say the Fathers, was *St. Peter*; but the Church was more fully planted here by *Barnabas* first, and afterwards by *Paul* and *Barnabas*, who having join'd their Labours for a whole Year, gain'd so many Profelytes, that having thought proper to impose some distinguishing Title upon the Body of the Faithful, they first sought Divine Direction, and then gave them the Appellation of *Christians*, as some collect from *Acts* 11. 26. which says, That here the Disciples were first called *Christians*. Yet *Suidas* says, That *Euodius*, the 2d Bishop of *Antioch*, call'd them to a solemn Assembly, and first impos'd this new Name upon 'em. However that be, we have the concurrent Testimony of *Origen*, *Eusebius*, *St. Jerome*, *St. Chrysostome*, *Theodoret*, *St. Gregory*, &c. that *St. Peter* was the first Bishop of *Antioch*, or at least of the Jewish Church there. This City having been always reckon'd the best in the E. Parts of the Roman Empire, the Bishops of it, in the first Ages of Christianity, are said to have presid'd over all the Eastern Churches as far as the Bounds of the Empire reach'd that Way; to which *Constantine the Great* added *Cilicia* and *Isauria*,

ria, with *Mesopotamia* and *Osroene*, containing 15 *Roman* Provinces, or the whole Diocese of the *East*; so that in 1130, there were reckon'd 13 Archiepiscopal, 21 Metropolitans, and 127 Episcopal Sees, all yielding Obedience to the See of *Antioch*. But by the Conquests of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, and by the dismembring of the Churches of *Palæstine*, this Number is very much diminished, and Christianity for a great Part thrust out by *Mahometism*; so that the former is divided into Sects and Factions, of which the three following are the chief, viz. the *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, and *Melchites*. The two last have Patriarchs of their own; but the first are subject to him of *Antioch*. The *Melchites* are the most considerable Body of Christians in the *East*, and nam'd Schismatics in Contempt by the *Jacobites* and *Maronites*. Their proper Name is deriv'd from *Melchi*, which in *Syriac* signifies a King or Emperor, because adhering to their Primate, they conform'd to the Canons of the Councils ratified by the Authority of the Emperor *Leo*, by whom Subscription was requir'd to them; so that in this Respect they were of the King's Religion. In the main Points of Doctrine, they follow the Church of *Greece*, only they perform Divine Service as well on *Saturday* as *Sunday*. Since the Decay of *Antioch*, their Patriarch has resided at *Damascus*, and they entirely disclaim the Papal Authority.

'Tis probable, the *Maronites* are deriv'd from the Monastery of *St. Maron*, mention'd in the Council of *Constantinople*, whose Monks, call'd *Maronites*, were the Head of their Sect. They hold, 1. That the Holy Ghost proceeds from the Father only, without Relation to the Son. 2. That Humane Souls were created all together at first. 3. That Male Children ought only to be baptiz'd at several Times one by one. 4. That Hereticks returning to the Church, ought to be re-baptiz'd. 5. That the Infant is made unclean by the Touch of its Mother till her Purification, and therefore ought not to be baptized till that Time be past, which must be 40 Days after the Birth of a Male, and 80 of a Female. 6. That the Eucharist is to be administred to Children immediately after Baptism. 7. That the 4th Marriage is utterly unlaw-

ful. 8. That the Father may dissolve the Marriage of his Son or Daughter. 9. That young Men are not to be ordain'd Priests or Deacons except married. 10. That Christians ought not to eat any Thing bloody or strangled. 11. That Women in the Time of their Monthly Purgations are not to be admitted to the Eucharist, nor to come to Church. 12. That there was but one Will and Action in Christ. 13. That the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper is to be administred in both Kinds. 14. And in Leaven'd Bread. 15. That the Bread is to be broken to the Communicants. 16. That the Sacrament is not to be reserv'd. 17. Nor any Part of the consecrated Elements carried to sick Persons like to die. 18. That Marriage is nothing inferior to a single Life. 19. That no Man entreth the Kingdom of Heaven till the Day of Judgment. 20. That the *Saturday*, or old Sabbath, is not to be observ'd as a Day of Fasting. 21. That upon Fast-Days, the Administration of the Sacrament be deferred till the Evening. These *Maronites* lie dispers'd about Mount *Libanus*, and their Patriarch chiefly resides at *Tripolis*. When the Western Christians were possessed of these Parts, they submitted to the See of *Rome*, till the *Turks* and *Saracens* drove them out, when they return'd again to their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever since depended, by the Name of *Peter*, as thinking them the true Successors of that Apostle. However, in the Time of Pope Gregory XIII. a Jesuit nam'd *John Baptist* sending them a Catechism from *Rome*, printed in *Arabick*, their vulgar Tongue, won them again to the Papal See, yet so as their Patriarch still retains his former Power, and their Priests continue to officiate by their old Liturgies in the *Syriack* Language. We refer the further Account of 'em to Mount *Lebanon*, the chief Place of their Abode. The *Jacobites*, tho' many of them are dispersed in this Country, yet being more entirely settled in *Mesopotamia*, we refer the particular Account of them to that Place.

Dr. *Heylin* says, the ancient Languages of this Country were the *Syrian* and *Phœnician*; the first, with great Probability, suppos'd to have been the same with the *Chaldean*, either originally so, or else receiv'd by them when first conquer'd by the *Babylonians*: In which

which Respect, the Jews, when they return'd home from their Captivity, call'd the Language they brought with them *Syriack*, being a Compound of *Hebrew* and *Chaldaean*; of the latter as to the Substance of the Words, and of the former as to the Points, Conjugations, Affixes, and other Properties of their Original Speech: But 'tis now so overtop'd by the *Arabick* since the *Saracens* subdued these Parts, that 'tis only spoken in 4 Villages of the *Maronites*.

The chief Rivers of this Country are, 1. *Chorsetus*, called by the *Hebrews* *Chison*, or *Kison*. *Luyts* says, it flows from the Sea of *Galilee* between the Territories of the Tribes of *Issachar* and *Zebulon*, and falls into the *Mediterranean* Sea near *Mount Carmel* in *Phœnicia*. But *Adrichomius* says, it rises out of *Mount Tabor*, and divides it self into two Streams, the least of which runs to the Sea of *Galilee*, and the greater to the *Mediterranean*. 2. *Orontes*, at first called *Tiphon*. It had this Name from one *Orontes*, who, says *Strabo*, first built a Bridge over it. 'Tis now called *Saldino*, and by some *Jordan Minor*. It rises out of the Hills of *Pieria* near *Mount Libanus*, and running under Ground, breaks forth again near *Apamia*; and passing along by *Antioch*, falls into the Ocean at a little Distance from that City. 3. *Eleutherus*, now called *Casmer*, noted for the Death of *Frederick Barbarossa*, who, as he was pursuing the Infidels, fell into this River and was drown'd. It rises out of some Part of *Mount Libanus*, and runs into the *Mediterranean* Sea between *Tyre* and *Sarepta*. 4. *Singas*, by some call'd *Marsias*. It rises in the mountainous Parts of *Comagena*, and passing along by *Aleppo*, discharges it self into the *Euphrates*. 5. *Euphrates*, the most noted River of the East; of which more in another Place.

The chief Mountains here are, 1. *Carmel*, of which we shall say more in the Description of *Phœnicia*. 2. *Pieria*, in which the River *Orontes* now mention'd has its Fountain. 3. *Casius*, a Mountain near *Antioch*, said to be 4 Miles high. 4. *Libanus*, or *Lebanon*. 5. *Hermen*; of which more in their proper Places.

Having thus gone through the general Description of the Country, we come to its Subdivisions, and begin with,

S Y R I A properly so call'd,

IS the largest Part, lies chiefly towards the N. and E. and (according to *Luyts*) has Part of *Natolia* and *Armenia Minor* on the N. *Palæstine* and some Part of *Arabia* on the S. the River *Euphrates* and Part of *Arabia Deserta* on the E. which likewise agrees with *Cluverius's* Map. In the Scriptures it is spoke of as a separate Country from *Affur* or *Affyria* and *Canaan*, which makes it plain that the Name of *Syria* was extended after that Time. *Heylin* supposes this Country to be the *Hamath* of the Scripture, and that it was so called from *Hamath*, who was one of the Sons of *Canaan*, and built many Cities of that Name in *Syria* and *Palæstina*. His Reasons are, 1. From its Neighbourhood to *Arpad* or *Arphad*, which are join'd together in many Places of Scripture, as, *Where are the Gods of Hamath and Arphad?* 2 *Kings*, 18. 34. *The Kings of Hamath, and the Kings of Arphad*, *Isa.* 37. 13. 2. That *Arphad* was an Island over against the Mouth of *Eleutherus*, a River of this Country, which rises in *Mount Lebanon*, and falls into the Sea a little S. of *Tripoli*. This Island had its Name from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, to whom the *Greeks* and *Romans* alluded by the Name of *Aradus*. *Strabo* says, this Island is 7 *Stadia* in Compass, surrounded by the Sea, and was nobly built in his Time, and the Head of a considerable Kingdom, or (as some say) a distinct one by it self, but now utterly destroy'd. 3. From the Neighbourhood of this *Syria* to *Palmyrene*, the *Aram-Sobab* of the Ancients, with whom its Kings were frequently in War. 4. From the Authority of *St. Jerome*, who takes *Hamath the Great*, mention'd by the Prophet *Amos*, to be *Antiochia*, the chief City of *Syria*. 5. Because *Josephus* says, That *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*, whither *Zedekiah* was brought Prisoner to *Nebuchadnezzar*, was a City of *Syria*. The Country in general is very fruitful, and produces abundance of Figs. Their Sheep are large and fat. *Pliny* says, in his Time their Tails were a Cubit long; and modern Travelers say, they weigh from 25 to 30 Pound.

Heylin

Heylin supposes this to be the Reason why the Rumps and Tails of Sheep, and of no other Beasts, were offer'd in Sacrifice. They have also abundance of Cotton, which they sow as we do Corn. The Stalk is no bigger than that of Wheat, but rough, and bears a round Head, of the Size and Shape of a Medlar, as hard as a Stone, until it grows ripe and opens. In this are contain'd the Seeds and the Cotton. The ancient *Syrians* were much addicted to Gardening, whence the Proverb *Multa Syrorum Olera*. They were gluttonous, merry and crafty, as were their Neighbours the *Phœnicians*, whence the Proverb *Syra contra Phœnices*, to denote a Contest between crafty Knaves. They were likewise superstitious and effeminate, and much given to Pleasure and Innovations. We refer the Curious to *Cellarius* for a larger Account of the ancient Divisions of this Country and their Boundaries, and shall give the following Abstract of them.

I. COMMAGENE,

Is the most Northerly Part of the Country, betwixt the Ridge of Mountains called *Amanus* and the River *Euphrates*, and has Mount *Taurus* on the N. and *Cyrhestica* on the S. 'Twas formerly call'd *Euphraten-sis Provincia*, and Heylin supposes it to be the *Syria Maaca* of the Scriptures.

The Towns in this Country were, 1. *Germanicia*, at the Foot of Mount *Amanus*, about 40 Miles N. E. from *Alexandria*, near the Bay of *Ajazzo*. It was called *Germanicia* in Honour of *Germanicus*; and is noted in Church History for the Birth of *Nestorius*, and being the See of *Eudoxius*, both Hereticks. *Pescennius* was proclaim'd Emperor here, from whence it had the Name of *Cæsarea*. It was then a considerable Town, but now of small Note.

2. *Antiochia ad Taurum*, about 30 Miles further N. E. towards the Foot of Mount *Taurus*. This Town is mention'd by none but *Ptolomy* and *Pliny*, who places it on the River *Euphrates*; so that one of them is mistaken.

3. *Samosata*, near the *Euphrates*, about 100 Miles N. E. from *Antiochia*, says *Cluverius*; but *Cellarius* makes it little above 40.

It was the principal Town of *Commagene*, well fortified, and the Seat of their Kings, till the Country was made a Roman Province. There are several Medals of it with the Name of *Flavia* upon them. It is noted for the Birth of *Paulus*, the Heretical Bishop of *Antioch*, from hence called *Samosatensis*. It was likewise the Birth-place of *Lucian* the Atheist. 'Tis now inconsiderable, and call'd *Sempsat*, says *Luyts*.

4. *Doliche*, about 40 Miles S. W. from *Samosata*, formerly a considerable Town, the See of a Bishop, and the 4th City of this Province.

5. *Zeugma*, on the *Euphrates*. *Cluverius* places it almost 80 Mile S. E. from *Samosata*. *Cellarius* makes it about 30 S. W. It had its Name from the Bridge which *Alexander* is said to have built, fasten'd with Iron Chains, as some write. It was frequently made Use of by the *Romans* when they marched their Troops to the East. *Pliny* makes it 72 Miles from *Samosata*. This City is now in Ruins; but the Remains of a Bridge built by the *Romans* are still to be seen.

6. *Hierapolis*, about 65 Miles W. from *Zeugma*. Heylin says, the *Syrians* call'd it *Magog*, from the Son of *Japhet*, and the *Greeks* call'd it *Callenice*. It was noted for the Worship of the Idol which the *Syrians* call their Goddess, from whence it had the Name, which signifies a Holy City. She had Offerings brought her from all the neighbouring Countries. *Nero*, who scoffed at all other Religions, was once a great Admirer of this Goddess; but at last grew weary of her, and defil'd her with Urine. *Stratonice*, the Wife of *Seleucus*, built a Temple in the middle of this City, encompassed with a double Wall 300 Fathoms high, the Roof of it inlaid with Gold, and it was ciel'd with a sweet-smelling Wood. Without the Temple there was a Place inclosed for keeping the Beasts of Sacrifice, and a Lake in the Neighbourhood 200 Fathom deep, where they kept their sacred Fishes. There were 300 Priests, besides others who belong'd to this Temple, whose Cheats are described by *Apulejus* in his *Metamorphosis*.

7. *Imma*, or *Immae*, about 15 Miles S. E. from *Germanicia*, is by some reckon'd in *Cyrhestica*, and noted for the Defeat of *Zenobia*.

bia Queen of *Palmyrene* by *Aurelianus* in the Neighbourhood.

SELEUCIS cum PIERA, or AN- TIOCHENE,

Lies on the Coast of that Part of the *Mediterranean* call'd the *Syrian Sea*. The Towns of Note in it are, 1. *Myriandrus*, on the Bay of *Ajazzo*, about 9 Miles S. from *Alexandria*. It was built by the *Phœnicians*, and noted for Trade by Sea.

2. *Rhosus*, or *Rossus*, on the same Coast, about 6 Miles S.W. from *Myriandrus*. It was formerly a Town of Note, and the See of a Bishop.

Mount *Pierius* lies betwixt this Town and *Seleucia*, and gives the Name of *Pieria* to the Country. This Ridge of Mountains runs Northward, and joins Mount *Amanus* with an oblique Line.

3. *Seleucia Pieriæ*, to distinguish it from other Towns of that Name, lies on the same Coast, about 14 Miles S.W. from *Rhosus*. It was beautified and enlarged by *Seleucus Nicanor*. *Strabo* says, it was an impregnable Town, and made free by *Pompey*, as appears from several Medals by different Emperors. It gave the Name of *Seleucia* to this Part of *Syria*. *Jupiter* was worship'd on *Casius*, a neighbouring Mountain, and was therefore called *Jupiter Fulminans Seleucensium*. *Seleucus* gave the same Name to 9 other Towns, of which this City and that on the River *Tigris* were the most remarkable. This Part of the Country was likewise call'd *Tetrapolis*, because of 4 great Cities in it, viz. *Antiochia* on the *Daphne*, this City, *Apamea*, and *Laodicea*, which were called 4 Sisters. *Heylin* says, the Founder was the first *Eastern Monarch* of this Race, and the greatest Builder in the World at that Time, having founded 9 Cities of his own Name, 16 in Honour of his Father *Antiochus*, 6 by the Name of *Laodice* his Mother, and 3 in Honour of *Apamea* his first Wife, besides many others of great Note in *Greece* and *Asia*, which he either new built or repaired.

About 8 Miles S.W. from this City, the River *Orontes* discharges it self into the Sea; and at the Mouth of it lies the Island called *Melibæa*. The Poets fancy'd it to be a Nymph, and made *Orontes* her Lover. This

Island was famous for a Purple Dye which was found in Shell Fish about it, and is by Mistake ascribed to *Melibæa* in *Thessaly*.

4. *Posidonium*, and, 5. *Heraclea*, lie on this Coast, about 6 Miles from one another, S. of the River *Orontes*. *Heylin* says, *Minerva* had a Temple in the latter, in which, as in that of *Laodicea*, they sacrific'd a Virgin Annually, till they were convinc'd of the Barbarity of this Practice, and sacrific'd a Hart instead of the Virgin.

6. *Laodicea*, lies on the same Coast, about 9 Miles S.E. from *Heraclea*. It was built by *Seleucus* in Honour of his Mother, where the City *Rhamantus* formerly stood. It was first a Village called *Leusa Aête*, because of the white Cliffs in the adjoining Sea, and then called *Rhamantus*, which signifies God on High, because a certain Shepherd cry'd out so when struck with a sudden Flash of Lightning. The adjacent Country is call'd *Laodicene*, and noted for excellent Fruits, and choice Vines. *Strabo* says, it was a well built Town, with a commodious Harbour. *Dolabella* retir'd to it, and was besieg'd there by *Cassius*, who destroy'd Part of the Town. *Polinaris* was Bishop of this Place, and translated most of the Bible into Greek Heroick Verse. The Island *Arvad* or *Aradus* before-mention'd was a distinct Kingdom, lay at the Mouth of the River *Eleutherus* in this Country, about 30 Miles S.W. from *Laodicea*. Near this Town lay Mount *Casius*, and *Anti-Casius*, which were long Tracts of Hills. 'Tis noted by the Roman Historians for a Fable, That the Sun was seen to rise from it at the 2d Watch of the Night, which proceeded from their Ignorance in Geography and the Mathematics, the Thing being impossible in Nature, tho' we allow the Mountain to be 4 Miles high, in a perpendicular Line, according to *Pliny*.

SELEUCIS MEDITERRANEA.

The greatest Part of which was called *Casiotis*, lay E. from the Coast. Its chief Towns were, 1. *Antiochia*, which gave the Name of *Antiochene* to the Country. It was the Capital of *Syria*, and the Seat of their Kings. Some call it *Antiochia Epidaphnes*, others *Antiochia Magna*. 'Tis supposed to be the *Riblah* of the Scripture.

Strabo

Strabo says, it consisted of 4 Towns with separate Walls. *Seleucus Nicanor* is said to be its Founder. Others add, That *Antigonius* built a Town call'd *Antigonia* near it, whose Inhabitants were removed hither by *Seleucus*: But this is contradicted by *Diodorus*, who says, he removed them to *Cilicia*, and that *Antigonia* was but of small Duration, tho' *Antigonius* was at great Charge in building it on the River *Orontes*, and made it 60 Stadia in Compass, designing to make it a Curb on *Babylonia* and the other Provinces; but it was destroy'd by *Seleucus*. *Antiochia* lies on the River *Orontes*, about 25 Miles from its Mouth, and 20 S. E. from *Seleucia*. In *Pliny's* Time it was divided by the River. *Cicero* commends it for having been once a noble and large City, and famous for all sorts of Learning. Its greatest Glory proceeded from its being the first Place where Christians had that sacred Name given them: Upon which Account *Justinian*, when he repair'd it after it had been burnt in War, call'd it *Theopolis*, or the City of God. It appears by Medals to have been a free Town. It was called *Epidaphnes* because *Daphne* lay near it, and was reckon'd one of its Suburbs, tho' 5 Miles distant at first; but when the City increased, they lay almost contiguous. The Romans, when Masters of this Country, made it the Seat of their Governor of the Eastern Provinces, and afterwards of the *Præfectus Prætorii Orientis*, whose Jurisdiction extended over *Egypt*, all *Asia* and *Thracia*. It was likewise honour'd to be the Seat of several Roman Emperors, and of a Patriarch, till *Constantinople* became the Imperial City. He was reckon'd next to the Patriarch of *Rome*, and there are now 4 great Prelates who contend for this Title. The first calls himself the true Patriarch, and presides over the *Melchites* and *Syrian* Christians. The 2d is the Patriarch of the *Jacobites*, the 3d of the *Maronites*, and the 4th is a Titular Patriarch nam'd by the Pope. It was admirably fortified by Art and Nature, encompassed with a double Wall, the first of Stone, and the second of Brick, with 460 Towers upon them, and an impregnable Castle at the E. End. On one Side it was defended by steep Mountains, and a deep Lake. It had many sumptuous Palaces and magnificent Temples, and suffer'd much afterwards

when taken by the *Saracens*, *Turks*, and *Mamelucks*. The Western Christians recover'd it after a 7 Months Siege in 1098, and a few Days after defeated the *Persian* Army in the Neighbourhood, of whom they killed 100000, and lost about 5000 of their own. The Town was chiefly taken by *Bohemund*, a *Norman* Prince of *Tarentum*, who corrupted the Commander of one of the chief Towers. *Bohemund* was afterwards made Prince or (as some say) King of *Antioch*, and was succeeded by several of his Posterity, among whom *Tancred* and *Roger* were particularly famous during the Holy War. The latter was killed by the *Turks* near *Aleppo* in 1120. *Baldwin II.* King of *Jerusalem*, reveng'd his Death by a signal Victory over the Infidels, and join'd *Antioch* to his own Dominions. In 1188, it was betray'd to *Saladine* the Sultan of *Egypt*, with *Damascus*, and 25 other Cities that depended upon it. *M. Boussingault*, in his *Nouveau Theatre du Monde*, says, this Place was honour'd with the Vocation of *Barnabas*, the Preaching of *St. Paul*, the first See of *St. Peter*, the Birth of *St. Luke*; and that *St. Ignatius*, Scholar to *St. John the Evangelist*, was Bilhop here. He adds, that it was formerly 7 Miles in Compass, had 360 Christian Churches, and that its Walls are of large Free-stone, adorn'd with 47 square Towers of a great Height at an exact Distance from one another, with large and deep Ditches. The Walls (he says) continue entire, tho' the Inside is all a Heap of Ruins. *M. Montconys* says, there is a Plain near this City which lies from N. to S. and is surrounded on all Sides with Hills, of which the highest are on the W. call'd the Hills of *Beira*, and separate it from the Sea. At the Foot of this Plain there is a great Lake formed by two large Rivers which meet there, the one called *el Bahara*, and the other *el Haffy*. The Town lies in the Southern Bottom of this Plain, where it becomes very narrow, and runs along by the Foot of a spacious and very high Mountain, which has 5 or 6 several Tops. The Walls take in all the Length of those Peaks, and descend far into the Plain; but within, the Ground is planted with Fig and Almond Trees like a Forrest, except at the Bottom of the S. Side, where there are a few modern Buildings cover'd with Bulrushes; so that

that there remains nothing of its Antiquity but the Walls, and the Cupola of a round Temple of Brick, supported by 6 very high Arches of Free-stone. *Luyt* says, the *Turks* call'd it *Antachia*, and the *Arabians* *Anthakia*.

2. *Daphne*, according to *Cellarius* about 40 Stadia from *Antiochia*, with a Grove about 10 Miles in Circuit, and a Temple in the midst of it dedicated to *Apollo*, who had an Oracle here more sumptuous than that of *Delphos*. Here the *Greek* Poets fabled, that *Daphne*, the Daughter of *Ladon*, shunning her Lover *Apollo*, was turn'd into a Tree of the same Name. This was chiefly a Grove of Laurels, tho' there were abundance of other Trees, and particularly *Cypresses*. By the daily Increase of *Antioch*, it became in Time as it were a Part of it; and *Sozomenus* says, *Daphne*, the famous Suburbs of *Antiochia*, was a very pleasant Place on Account of its numerous Fountains, the Temperateness of its Climate, and the gentle Breezes of its Air. *Ammianus* says, the Temple was built by *Antiochus Epiphanes*. *M. Manesson Mallet* says, here was a Fountain said to arise from the *Castalian* Springs near *Delphos* in *Beotia*, which inspired those who drank of it with the Skill of Divination. Tho' this seem'd to be a Place wholly design'd for the Pleasures of Love, yet it was fortify'd and garrison'd by the Emperor *Alexander Severus*, who finding the Soldiers grow lazy and effeminate, put some of their Officers to Death for not preventing it. 'Tis said, *Pompey the Great* was so charm'd with the Beauty of this Village, that he gave the Inhabitants new Lands, to render it more spacious and agreeable. *M. Mallet* says, That *Constantine the Great* caus'd a Pleasure-House to be built here for the Empress *Helena* his Mother; and that the Churches of *St. Euphemius* and *St. Michael* were founded here by succeeding Christian Emperors. But the most stately Pile of all was the Temple of *Apollo Daphneus*, whose Statue equall'd that of *Jupiter Olympius* in Bigness, and was of Wood, cover'd with Plates of Gold. Here was also a Temple of *Diana*, with a Sanctuary. But that which chiefly contributed to the Fame of this Place, was the Oracles which *Apollo* pronounced in his Temple, and lasted till the Time of the Emperor *Julian*. The Le-

gendaries say, when the Body of *St. Babylas*, who suffer'd Martyrdom under the Emperor *Numerian*, was brought hither, the Idol was silenc'd; so that the Emperor *Julian* made the Christians translate the Bones of this Martyr to some other Place; but not long after, the Temple and Idol were destroyed by Fire from Heaven; so that in the Time of *St. Chrysostome*, there was but one Pillar remaining of all that noble Edifice, and now there is no Sign left of it.

3. *Apamea*, according to *Cellarius* lies about 52 Miles S. E. of *Antioch*, near the Conflux of the Rivers *Orontes* and *Marfyas*. *Strabo* says, it was well fortified, situate in a Peninsula, and almost encompassed with the Waters of *Orontes* and a Lake, in so fruitful a Soil, that *Seleucus* kept 500 Elephants there. He is also said to have founded this City, which he nam'd so from his Wife *Apama*, from whence the adjacent Country was called *Apamena*; and *Strabo* reckons this as one of the four famous Towns of *Syria* built by *Seleucus*. *Sozomenus* relates, That the Heathens fought with the Christians here for their Temples. In the Civil War of the Romans, *Cacilius Bassus* laid Siege to this City; but it was rais'd by *C. Cassius*. *Cellarius* takes Notice of a certain Coin current here, stamp'd with the Effigies of an Elephant, and this Inscription, *APIAMENIAC THC IEPAKAI ACTAOT*, which illustrates what was said before concerning the Elephants of *Seleucus*, and the Temple of *Apamea*, defended by the Pagans against the Christians.

4. *Emesa*, or *Emissa*, now called *Hamsa*, in the Country of *Apamene*. *Cellarius* in his Map places it on the River *Orontes*, about 54 Miles S. of *Apamea*, and 95 S. of *Antioch*. It has been mention'd by many ancient Writers; some of whom said it was the Seat of the Emperor *Heliogabalus*, and that it had a Temple dedicated to the Sun. *M. Thevenot* gives the following Description of this Place; 'Tis a pretty Town, wall'd with black and white Stones half a Pike high, fortified with 26 round Towers. It hath 6 Gates, and 5 Churches, the principal of which was built by *St. Hellen*, the Mother of *Constantine the Great*, and is supported by 34 Pillars, for the most Part Jasper. It is 70 Paces long, and 18 broad. They have a small Stone Chest, wherein they

they say is *John the Baptist's* Head, and a Lamp is commonly kept burning before it. In the Walls there are many Pieces of Marble with Greek Characters, and artificially engraven with Roses and other Figures. This Church continued in the Christians Hands till about 160 Years before *Thevenot's* Time; but 'tis now a Mosque: Yet Christians are permitted to go into it. There's a Pond near it which the *Turks* make Use of for their Ablutions. The *Moors* have another Church here call'd *St. George's*, and the Christians may worship in it, allowing for Half of the Oil consumed in the Lamps. The 3d is dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*, and still enjoyed by Christians. The 4th, called *Araibne Chouade*, i. e. 40 Martyrs, is a neat Church held by the *Greeks*, with 4 Marble Pillars, and one of *Porphyry*, in Form of a Screw. The 5th is called *St. Merlian*, or *St. Julian*, because the Natives say he lies buried there in a Marble Sepulchre made like a Coffin, with 12 Crosses about it in *Demi-Relief*. There is a Pyramid near that called the *Jews Gate*, under which the Natives think *Julius Caesar* was buried. There was also a Castle on a neighbouring Hill, but now in Ruins. *Dr. Heylin* says, That in the Time of *Constantine's* Son, this City was the Episcopal See of *Eusebius*, the Author of certain Homilies, still extant. He adds, that 'tis water'd with many curious Brooks; that its Walls are still perfect and entire; and that 'tis now the only Town in this Part of *Syria* that is honour'd by a *Sangiack*, under the *Bashaw* of *Tripoly*.

5. *Epiphania*, according to the Itinerary of *Antonin* lies between *Larissa* and *Arethusa*, at an equal Distance from both. *Cellarius* places it about 8 Miles S. from the former, 15 N. of the latter, 30 S. of *Apamea*, and about 69 S. E. of *Antioch*. 'Tis wash'd by the River *Orontes*; and *Cellarius* says, the learned *Evagrius* was not only one of its Citizens, but also educated here. It was an Episcopal See, and its Bishops subscribed to the Councils of *Nice* and *Constantinople*. *Heylin* places this City in the Subdivision of *Casotis*, and says, it was first called *Hamath*, from *Hamath* a Son of *Canaan*, who founded it. He adds, that it was rebuilt upon the Ruins of the old Town by *Antiochus Epiphanes* K. of *Syria*, who thereupon gave

it the Name of *Epiphania*; and *Josephus* says, it was so called by the *Macedonians*, tho' the *Syrians* still call'd it *Amatha*.

6. *Larissa*, now *Laris*, lies (according to *Cellarius*) between *Apamea* and *Epiphanea*, about 13 Miles N. of the latter, 23 S. of the former, and about 77 S. of *Antioch*. 'Tis frequently mention'd in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and noted for the Death of *Baldwin I.* Brother to *Godfrey of Bouillon*, and second K. of *Jerusalem*.

7. *Antaradus*, so called because opposite to the Island *Aradas*, lay (according to *Cellarius*) about 62 Miles W. of *Apamea*, and 43 S. of *Antioch*. In the latter Ages it was called *Tortosa*. In the Holy Wars the *Western* Christians besieg'd it for 3 Months with a numerous Army, but were obliged at length to retire with no other Prize than the Spoils of the neighbouring Country. *Thevenot* says, 'tis now a ruin'd Town, yet has a fine Castle, and the Remains of a great Church, with a very high Roof, supported by Two Rows of Pillars.

CYRRHESTICA,

Is an Inland Country of *Syria*, extended by *Ptolomy* from *Seleucia* to *Commagene* and *Euphrates*. The Name is of *Macedonian* Original, from the City *Cyrrhus*, and the People *Cyrrhestæ* of that Country.

Its chief Town was *Cyrrhus* or *Cyrus*, which *Cellarius* in his Map places in the middle, betwixt Mount *Amanus* and the River *Singas*, not 30 Miles from either. He observes, that *Avidius Cassius*, who rebell'd against *Mark Anthony*, was a Native of this Country. *Luyts* places the Town on the River *Marsyas*, and says, it was advanced from the See of a Bishop to a Metropolitan under the Patriarch of *Antioch*. *Heylin* says, it not only gave Name to the Country, but was formerly the chief City in these Parts.

CHALCIDENE or CHALCIDICA,

Is a Country of *Syria*, whose chief Town is *Chalcis*. 'Tis an Inland Country, and is parted from the River *Euphrates* by the Territory of *Chalybonitis*. *Cellarius* says, 'tis bounded on the W. by *Antiochia*, or the Country of *Seleucia*; on the N. by

by *Cyrrhestica*; and on the S. by *Apamene* and *Cælo-Syria*. *Ptolomy* call'd it *Chalcidia*. Its only Town was *Chalcis*, the Metropolis of this Territory, according to *Pliny* and *Josephus*, who likewise make it the Seat of the Roman Governors. *Strabo* places it among the Hills near the River *Marfyas*. *Stephanus* says, it was built by *Monicus* an *Ara-bian*. *Luyts* says, it was a Bishop's See.

P A L M Y R E N E,

Is bounded on the W. by *Proper Syria*, on the N. with *Comagene*, on the S. with *Mount Libanus*, and on the E. by the River *Euphrates*. It was so called from *Palmyra* its chief City. When the Romans made it a distinct Province, it had the Names of *Syria Secunda*, and *Salutaris Secunda*, to distinguish it from *Syria* specially so called, which they named *Syria Prima*, and *Salutaris*, because of its many hot Medicinal Springs. It has no navigable River, except where it borders on the *Euphrates*.

This Country was a distinct Kingdom of it self, by the Name of *Sobah*, or *Aram-Sobah*. *Bechart* takes Notice of *Josephus's* Mistake, who says, *Aram-Sobah* was *Sophene*, for that lay in *Armenia*, beyond the *Taurus* and *Euphrates*. The first King of this Country mention'd in Scripture was *Rehob*, Contemporary with *Saul* King of *Israel*, who defeated him, 1 *Sam.* 14. 47. compared with 2 *Sam.* 8. 3. His Son *Hadad-ezer* was a Prince of much greater Power and Valour, and had many of the neighbouring Kings under him, as appears by 2 *Sam.* 10. 19. He made War against *David*, and oppos'd him as he went to recover his Border at the River *Euphrates*; but was defeated, lost 1000 Chariots, 700 Horsemen, and 20000 Foot, besides 22000 of the *Syrians* of *Damascus* who came to assist him: After which, *David* garrison'd *Syria* of *Damascus*, made the *Syrians* his Tributaries, and brought home the Shields of Gold worn by the Servants of *Hadad-ezer*, with a great deal of Brass which he found in *Betah* and *Berothai*, two of *Hadad-ezer's* Towns; all which *David* dedicated to the Lord, as appears by 2 *Sam.* 8. *Hadad-ezer* renew'd the War by the Help of his Confederates the *Ammonites*, &c. as in 2 *Sam.* 10. when they were first defeated by *Joab*, and afterwards

by *David*, who kill'd *Shobah*, *Hadad-ezer's* General, the Men of 700 Chariots, and 40000 Horsemen. After which, all *Hadad-ezer's* Tributary Kings became *David's* Vassals, and the Kingdom of *Sobah* was brought under the Kings of *Damascus*, till the City of *Damascus* fell into the Hands of the Kings of *Assyria*. But there are some who think, and not without Reason, that the *Hamath* which *Jeroboam II* is said to have subdued to the Crown of *Israel*, in 2 *Kings*, 14. 28. was this *Hamath-Zobah*. After this, the Affairs of this Country produced nothing worthy of Note till the Time of *Gallienus* the Roman Emperor, when *Odenatus*, who had signalized himself by the Command of this Part of *Syria* and *Mesopotamia*, and the Conquests he had won from *Sapores K.* of *Persia*, was made Partner with *Gallienus* in the Empire. He was soon after murder'd by *Mænius* his Cousin-German, who hop'd to obtain *Palmyrene* upon his Death; but he was shrewdly deceiv'd by *Zenobia* his Widow, a brave Virago, who not only secur'd it for her Children, but took upon her both the Purple Habit, and the Command of his Army, which she manag'd with great Valour and Bravery during the Reigns of *Gallienus* and *Claudius*, and *Quintilius*, who succeeded him, till she was taken Captive by *Aurelianus*, and led in Triumph thro' *Rome*. In fine, this was the only Province that held out against the Western Christians when they had subdued all the rest of *Syria*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Palmyra*, of which *Pliny* gives this concise Description: 'Tis (says he) of a noble Situation, rich Soil, water'd with pleasant Streams, encompassed with large Fields of Land, and (according to the Nature of Things) as it were exempt from the rest of the Country, having been the Cause of long Contention betwixt the *Parthians* and the *Romans*, as situate on the Borders of their Empires, but caressed by both, and permitted to continue a free State. 'Tis 337 Miles from that which the *Parthians* call'd *Seleucia* on the *Tigris*, 203 from the nearest Shore of *Syria*, and 176 from *Damascus*. *Cellarius* places it 78 Miles S. E. of *Chalcis*, and about 18 M. S. W. from *Sura* on the *Euphrates*. *Cluverius* places it 50 Miles W. from the nearest Place on the *Euphrates*, almost 140 N. W. from

from the Frontiers of *Arabia Deserta*, and 160 E. from *Laodicea*, on the Coast of that Part of the *Mediterranean* call'd the *Syrian Sea*. *Josephus* takes it to be the same with *Tadmor*, one of the Towns mentioned to be built by *Solomon* in the Wilderness, as in 1 *Kings* 9. 17, 18. which are said to be situate in *Hamath-Sobah*, 2 *Chron.* 8. 3, 4. He says, that Prince fortified it with strong Walls; that the *Syrians* still call'd it *Tadmor*, and the *Greeks* *Palmyra*: But *Cellarius* says, that by Inscriptions on ancient Marbles found in *Syria*, the Name seems to have been *Palmyrenus*. *Ptolomy* places it in Long. 71 $\frac{1}{2}$. and Lat. 34. *Cluverius* in Long. 65. 40. Lat. 36. 45. *Cellarius* says, this City was in its most flourishing State in the Time of *Zenobia* before-mentioned. It was well fortified by *Solomon*, or some other Prince, and therefore was called by *Stephanus* $\Phi\rho\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\iota\omicron\nu$, not as a little Fort, but as a Town, and one entire Piece of regular Fortification; and *Flavius Josephus* call'd it a very large City. 'Tis said to have been either adorned, repaired, or augmented, by the Emp. *Adrian*, from whom it was called for a Time *Hadriana*, till the old Name revived again. This City was preserv'd by *Aurelianus* after *Zenobia* was taken Prisoner; but rebelling when *Antiochus* assum'd the Purple, he took it without Opposition, and destroyed it. *Aurelianus* willing to restore it, it began to thrive again, but so indifferently, that in the Time of *Justinian* it was for the greatest Part desert. It had a Temple of the Sun, which *Aurelianus* order'd to be repair'd with the utmost Diligence. In fine, it appears to have been formerly a very large and magnificent City, from the Ruins lately discover'd, which *Thevenot* describes thus: He says, there's a Castle a Mile from the Town which commanded the Passes into the Hills and City. 'Tis of difficult Access, and so ancient a Building, that there are no Marks to be seen of any nice Workmanship about it. From the Top of the Hill a fine Prospect may be taken of all the City, and Parts adjacent. The Town is inclos'd on three Sides with long Ridges of Mountains, and on the S. there is a very long Plain, which contains the Valley of Salt, where *David* smote the *Syrians*, and slew 18000 Men, as in 2 *Sam.* 8. 13. The Air is good, but the Soil so barren, that

there is no green Thing to be seen except a few Palm-Trees; from whence some think the City is called *Tadmor*, a Hebrew Word for a Palm-Tree; in *Latin*, *Palmyra*, and the Country *Syria Palmyrena*; but Mr. *Halley* derives it rather from $\Pi\alpha\lambda\mu\upsilon\delta\epsilon\varsigma$, which is interpreted *Royal Father*, or *Palmetis* an *Egyptian* God. There are no Footsteps of the Walls, nor of its Figure. The present Inhabitants consist only (says he) of 30 or 40 poor Families, who dwell in little Huts of Durt within the Walls of a spacious Court, which inclos'd a magnificent Heathen Temple. They are govern'd by a Skeick, and the Building is thought to have been the Temple of *Jupiter Belus*. The Court is 220 Yards square, and was encompassed with a high Wall, built of large square Stones, adorn'd with Pilasters and Cornishes, but now demolished by the *Turks*. The Gate hath something of its Stateliness still remaining, having two Stones which support the Sides still entire, 35 Foot high, and carved with Vines and Clusters of Grapes; but the Gate is walled up to a narrow Door. The Court seems to have had a Piazza quite round it, and there are the Remains of two Rows of Pillars 37 Foot high, with their Capitals and Cornishes of most exquisite Work. The Temple in the middle seems to have extended 33 Yards in Length, and 13 or 14 in Breadth, and appears by the Remains of it to have been one of the most glorious Structures in the World. It has Vines, Grapes, Eagles, Angels or Cupids, cut to the Life upon it. The Windows are narrower at Bottom than at Top, and adorned with excellent Carvings. The *Turks* have converted Part of it into a Mosque, and added some Ornaments of their own; but the N. End, which is shut out, is much more beautiful, and set off with curious Fretworks and Carvings. Towards the N. stands a very tall Obelisk or Pillar, consisting of 7 large Stones, besides its Capital, which has wreath'd Work about it, and very fine Carvings. 'Tis 50 Foot high, and the Pedestal 12 Foot and a half round. On each Side are two other Pillars at a quarter of a Mile's Distance, which seem to answer one another, as if there had been a whole Row of them. There is also a multitude of these Marble Pillars scatter'd up and down for
above

above a Mile together, upon which there are several Inscriptions both in *Greek* and the Native Language, which in general discover that the People were a free State under the *Parthians* and *Romans*, till *Aurelian* demolish'd it, and carried *Qu. Zenobia* to *Rome*. Here is also a Piazza above half a Mile long, and 40 Foot broad, inclos'd with two Rows of stately Marble Pillars, 26 Foot high, and 8 or 9 about. There are (says *Thevenot*) 129 remaining, and 'tis probable there were 560 at first. At the upper End of this Piazza the Pillars stand closer than they do on each Side, and there are the Ruins of a Building of better Marble, and finer Work than the rest, which seems to have been a Banqueting-House. There are some *Latin* Inscriptions, but not perfect. On the W. Side of the Piazza are the Openings of two Gates into the Palace, which were doubtless most glorious. Each Gate had 4 Pillars, tho' there are but two remaining: They are of *Porphyry*, 30 Foot high, and 9 in Circumference. The Palace it self is so decay'd, that no Judgment can be made of its ancient Splendour, either for Figure or Workmanship. Some Pieces of Walls and Pillars, some plain, and others wrought and channel'd, are still remaining. On the E. Side of the Piazza, there is as it were a Wood of Marble Pillars, some perfect, others wanting their Capitals, and all so confus'd, that none can tell what to make of them. A little farther stand the Ruins of a small Temple, which seems to have been of curious Workmanship; but the Roof is wholly gone, and the Walls much defaced. Their Sepulchres in particular were very curious, being square Towers 4 or 5 Stories high, standing on both Sides of an hollow Way, and stretching a Mile long. They are all of the same Form, but of different Splendour and Greatness, according to the Circumstances of the Founders; some of Marble with Statues, and others of common Stone, but Marble within. Many have Inscriptions, but not legible, unless in two or three, which only discover the Names of the Interr'd.

The Curious, who would know more of this City, may find large Accounts of it in *Seller's Antiquities of Palmyra*, publish'd by the Printers to our Royal Society in 1696,

and in the Collections of curious Travels by the said Royal Society, with Mr. *Halley's* Account of this City, and his Remarks upon the Inscriptions found there. We shall only add from *Seller's Antiquities*, That from the Time of *Solomon* till that of *Augustus*, we have little of it; but in *Pliny's* Time, it was govern'd by its own Laws; and when the Emperor *Aurelian* summon'd *Zenobia* to surrender, he promis'd the Inhabitants the same Privileges. This Lady was of the Blood Royal of *Egypt*, descended from the *Ptolomies* and *Cleopatra*. She was a Princess of great Beauty, Learning, and Courage, a *Jewess* by Religion, yet favourable to the Christians, and might, as 'tis suppos'd, have been easily converted, had she fallen into better Hands than those of *Paul of Samosata* the Heretick, who looking upon our Saviour to be a meer Man, did thereby harden her in her Prejudices against Christianity. Her Husband *Odenathus* was a Man of Quality, a Native of *Palmyra*, and (as some think) originally Prince of it, tho' Tributary to the *Persians*. He sav'd the *Roman* Empire in the *East*, and therefore was made joint Emperor with *Gallienus*, and made *Palmyra* famous because of his great Actions. After his Murder, his Widow *Zenobia*, who is by some unjustly charged with it, in order to promote her own Sons against *Herod*, Son to *Odenathus* by a former Marriage, govern'd the Empire with great Magnanimity and Conduct; for having assisted her Husband in his Military Expeditions, who, according to the Custom of the *East*, carried her with him to the Camp, she was very well vers'd in the Art of War. Therefore when *Aurelian* took her, and brought her to *Rome* in Triumph, he answer'd those who objected to him, that it was no great Glory to triumph over a Woman, That they did not know her, for it was by her Conduct her Husband overcame the *Persians*; That she made all the *East* and *Egypt* to tremble; therefore he gave her her Life, upon the Prospect that such an extraordinary Heroine, who could preserve and manage the vast Empire of the *East* for her self and Children, would be a great Advantage to the Commonwealth, and teach the *Romans* the Rules of Conduct and Government, as *Trebellius Pollio* informs us. She was of such an aspiring Temper, that she told

told the Emperor, she designed, if she had succeeded, to have divided the Empire of the World betwixt her self and *Victoria*, the Wife of *Victorinus*, another brave Lady, who had made several Emperors, assum'd the Title of *Augusta*, and is by Medals and Historians call'd *Mater Castrorum*. *Zenobia* defeated *Heraclian*, *Gallienus's* General, and was so terrible to the *Romans*, that the Senate frequently solicited the Emperor *Claudius* to rescue them from *Zenobia* and *Victorina*; and by her General *Zabdas* she subdued *Egypt*. *Aurelian* defeated her near *Antioch*, more by Stratagem than Valour, and afterwards besieg'd her in *Palmyra*, and took her as she was making her Escape over the *Euphrates*. He sav'd her Life against the Mind of his Army, who would have had her put to Death, as the Cause of all their Misfortunes; but he pacified them by cutting off those who engaged her in the War; among the rest, her Minister and Favourite *Longinus*, who was the most learned Critick of his Time. *Vopiscus* and *Onuphrius* give a large Account of *Aurelian's* Triumph upon subduing of *Zenobia*, of the mighty Figure she made in that Cavalcade, being loaden with her Jewels; and that she was afterwards married to a *Roman* Senator, by whom she had Issue, and the Place of her Residence in *Tioli* call'd *Conchæ* was afterwards from her call'd *Zenobia*. What became of her Sons by *Odenathus*, is not very certain. Cardinal *Baronius* supposes, that *Zenobius* Bishop of *Florence*, *St. Ambrose's* Cotemporary, was one of her Descendants by the *Roman* Senator. *Palmyra* continued to be a *Roman* Colony and Garrison for a long Time after, and was repair'd by *Justinian*. It fell afterwards in the Power of the *Mahometans* and *Mamluks*, and became a Receptacle to the *Eastern Jews*; and is now govern'd by a Prince of its own, whom they call an Emir, under the Jurisdiction of the Grand Seignior. These Princes govern the *Arabs* in the Neighbourhood, as appears by the Accounts publish'd in the Books above-mention'd. They rob Strangers who pass that Way, as they did some *English* Merchants who travell'd thither out of Curiosity in 1692.

We think it proper here to insert the most considerable of what our *English* Merchants observ'd in their two Journies betwixt *Aleppo* and this Place in 1678, and

1691. The first Thing they met in their Way in the Desert was a Fountain of purging Water; and near this Place they found some *Arabs* making Ashes for Soap, which they sell at *Tripoly*, &c. The best Ashes are made of a Weed called *Shinon*, which grows like Broom, and in Shape resembles Coral. The *Arabs* in these Parts feed on Antelopes, which they shoot with Stone Bullets cas'd with Lead; and for that End creep behind their Asses, which they use for Stalking-Horses. In the 3d Day's Journey they came to *Andrene*, where they found the Ruins of several Churches, and of a great Town in a large Plain. They found several *Greek* Inscriptions on the Ruins, which shew it to have been inhabited by Christians. After 4 Hours Journey, they came to a large Aqueduct cut thro' the Rocks, and at the End of it a Garden with Melons, Cucumbers, Porcellane, &c. Near this Place they found a Grotto inhabited by an *Arab* and his Family, with Buffaloes, which they use to plough the Ground for Wheat and Barley; and at this Place the *Arabians* divide their Spoil when they plunder Travellers. The 4th Day they came to the Ruins of a Town called *Briadin*, where they perceived some *Greek* Inscriptions, so defaced, that they could make little of 'em. They were much incommoded by Rat-holes like Coney-burrows, into which the Feet of their Horses frequently sunk as they travelled thro' the Desert. These Rats have a Bush of Hair at the End of their Tails, and are eat all but one Part by the *Arabs*. In this Place they found Pistacho-Trees, the Nuts of which are pickled by the *Arabs*, and are good to quench Thirst when eaten green. The 6th Day they came to a large Plain, where they met an *Arab* sent by the Prince or Emir of *Tadmor* to spy them. As they marched forward, they found an Aqueduct of 5 Miles long, about a Yard broad, and $\frac{3}{4}$ of a Yard deep, with Paths on both Sides for two Persons to walk a-breast; and at every 20 Yards Distance there is a Ventiduct for the Air, with small Mounts of Earth raised to keep the Sand from falling into them. In this Desert they met the Emir with another *Arabian* Prince, who obliged them to give him in Money and Goods to the Value of 1500 Dollars to let them pass. He treated them

in his Tent under a Palm-Tree with Coffee, Camels Flesh, and Dates, and told them, if they had not submitted, he would have fought them; and in order to this, he had 50 Camels loaden with Sand-Bags, with small Holes for the Sand to drop out, that it might blow in the Eyes of the Travellers when he came up to them. This Violence was resented by the Bashaw of *Aleppo*, who put the Emir to Death, having first prevailed with him to come near *Aleppo*, on Pretence of making him King of the *Arabs*. The Merchants say, That *Tadmor* lies 130 Miles S. S. E. or rather more Southerly from *Aleppo*; and that the Compass varies about half a Point Westward in those Parts.

The Merchants who made the second Journey from *Aleppo* to *Tadmor* in 1691, had a Passport and a Guide from *Affyne*, the then King of the *Arabs*. What they discover'd in their Way, was, 1. A large open Plain called *Emghir*, famous for producing the best Wheat that is brought to *Aleppo*; and the neighbouring Country abounds with Antelopes. 2. *Andrene*, before mentioned, or *Londreen*, the Ruins of an ancient City. The 2d Day's Journey they came to *Esfree*, where they saw the Ruins of another spacious City and Castle, which seemed to have been of good Architecture. Near this Place are the Ruins of an Heathen Temple, with many *Arabian* Graves and Inscriptions. The 3d Day they came to two Wells of above 18 Fathom deep; but the Water had such a noisome Stench, that their Horses would not touch it, tho' the *Arabs* and their Kings drink heartily of it. Near this Place they saw the true Plant of which the *Arabs* make Soap-Ashes. It has no Leaves, but a juicy Stalk with several Branches, and looks somewhat like Camphire, but more round. When burnt, it runs into Cakes like the Cinders of a Forge, but more heavy, and not so porous and hard. The 4th Day they came to a Mountain cover'd with Turpentine Trees, that bear abundance of small round Nuts, which the *Arabians* eat, and make Oil of. Their Kernel in Colour and Relish resembles Pistachoes. Here they were obliged to catch Rain for themselves and their Camels in their Vessels, tho' they might have spar'd their Pains, for it fell in such Plenty

as set their Camp afloat, and made the hollow Ways run down like Rivers: But next Morning it was all so dry'd up, that none of it was to be seen. The 5th Day they came to a Gut or Aqueduct, which had been begun with vast Labour, but not finish'd; and in their Way met Quarries of fine Stone, which they suppos'd to have been made Use of to build *Tadmor*, towards which they descended a rocky steep Precipice into the Valley. Having stay'd some Time there to visit the Ruins, on the 9th Day they proceeded towards *Damascus*, and in their Way saw a long Ridge of Hills about half a League from the Road, which the Inhabitants say contain rich Minerals, and afforded the Marble made Use of for building of *Tadmor*. The 9th Day they came to *Turecca*, so call'd from a Victory obtained here by the *Turks* over the *Mamalucks*. 'Tis a miserable Village, and yet is obliged to pay 300 Dollars *per Annum* to the King of the *Arabs* for his Protection. The 10th Day they came to a Village call'd *Soukney*, so call'd from its hot Waters where the People bathe. The People flock'd about their Tents in Multitudes, Men, Women, and Children, and most of the latter stark naked. They are govern'd by a Deputy from the King of the *Arabs*, who entertain'd the Merchants in his Hut with Pillaw and Rice, which he thought a splendid Treat. He likewise gave them Barley for their Horses, and receiv'd some Presents from them. His Cottage was built of Stone and Earth, and cover'd with Faggots, but not so as to keep out Rain; yet he is reckon'd a Prince of a great Family among the *Arabs*. He demanded a Tribute of the Merchants; but understanding they were his King's Friends, desisted from it, and begged their Pardon. This Village pays 1500 Dollars *per Annum* to the King. The 11th Day they came to the Village *Tiebe*, where they saw the Ruins of a considerable Town, and a *Turkish* Mosque, that appears to have been formerly a Christian Church. It lies on the Road from *Aleppo* to *Bagdat*, and pays the King of the *Arabs* 1000 Dollars *per Annum*. The 12th Day they came to *Assoffs Emir*, the Ruins of a Monastery built of *Gypsine* Stone or Rock-Alabaster, which reflects Beams, when the Sun shines upon it, that dazzles ones Eyes.

There

There are several Quarries of this Stone in the Neighbourhood. They perceived some Greek Inscriptions on the Stones, read from the Right Hand to the Left, according to the Oriental Manner. This Day they came to the Banks of the *Euphrates*, where it was about half a Musket-shot over, and the Water of it very refreshing after their travelling thro' sandy Deserts. The 13th Day they travelled along the River, with Hills of Marble and other fine Stone on one Hand, and delightful Groves of Tamarisk, Mulberry Trees, &c. thro' which they marched, and had a delightful Prospect of *Mesopotamia* on the other. They saw nothing but Ruins and inconsiderable Villages on the Sides of the River. The 14th Day they came to the Ruins of a City called *Baulas*, formerly the Seat of a Turkish Governor. Here they saw the Ruins of an Octogonal Tower 107 Steps high, with *Arabick* Inscriptions and Flourishes. This Day they came to the Emir's Tents, where they were nobly received and entertained. The 15th Day he invited them to a Feast, where one of his Grandees had killed two young Camels for him. The King was placed on a large Tent, about which there were 300 Guests of all Ranks. The King sat higher than the rest, in a leaning Posture, on a Place rais'd with Cushions, Quilts and Carpets, and others sat cross-legg'd. The *English* Merchants were brought in on the Left Hand, which they reckon the Post of Honour, and Dinner was brought up in large Wooden Bowls enough for two Men to carry. There were about 60 of these, with a great many lesser ones, as much as one Man could carry, set round them. In the middle was a great Dish with the Camels Bones in a thin Broth. The other great Dishes were filled with Plumb-Broth made of Rice, mixed with Currans and Spices, and the Flesh of Camels. The lesser Dishes were filled with Rice, dressed after several Manners, and the chief of them with Leaven or thick sower Milk, which they esteem mightily. The King sat down to the Dish that was next him, and the rest the like, without any Ceremony; and thrusting their Hands into the Dishes, eat by Handfuls. They have no Knives, Forks, Spoons, nor Trenchers; but the *English* had large Wooden Spoons

set before them. An Officer stood in an empty Space in the middle of the Dishes, and with a long Wooden Ladle in both Hands reach'd any one what they desir'd. When the King had eat what he thought fit, he rose up and washed, and retir'd to his Seat, and the rest did the like to make Room for others. They had no Drink, but Coffee and sower Milk supply'd the Place of other Liquor. They have no such Thing as Learning, yet the Prince seemed to be a Man of extraordinary Capacity and Judgment. His Father, who had been depos'd, liv'd with him as a private Man; and tho' he seemed to shew him a great deal of Respect, he kept a watchful Eye over him.

2. *Sura*, lies (according to *Cellarius*) 18 Miles N. E. of *Palmyra*, and about 23 N. W. of *Thapsacus*. It seems to have been a Town of Note in the Time of *Ptolomy*, who places it on the Banks of the *Euphrates*. 'Tis called in the *Notitia*, *Flavia Firma Sura*, which intimates, that it was repaired or else peopled by the Emperor *Flavius Vespasian*. The Acts of the Council of *Constantinople* shew that it was formerly a Bishop's See.

3. *Thapsacus*, which *Ptolomy* joins to the Confines of *Arabia Deserta*; but *Pliny* and *Stephanus* place it rather in *Syria*; which if so, must be comprehended under *Palmyrene*, the only Country that extends that Way. *Cellarius* places it on the River *Euphrates*, 23 Miles S. E. of *Sura*, and 35 E. of *Palmyra*. *Stephanus* says, it was built by *Seleucus*, call'd *Amphipolis*, and by the *Syrians* *Turmeda*: But *Cellarius* rejects the latter, as a Corruption of the true Name. He says, the *Macedonians* call'd it *Amphipolis*, and thinks *Seleucus* only repair'd, and perhaps adorn'd it, because it was a noted Town long before his Time. *Xenophon* mentions it as a great and wealthy City. Here it was that *Cyrus* and his Army waded thro' the *Euphrates*, which the Inhabitants say none ever effected so easily before, the Water being then but Breast-high. Here also *Darius* passed over a Bridge to *Cilicia* against *Alexander*, and (according to *Arrianus*) fled back the same Way when he was routed. *Strabo* places it 2000 Stadia from *Zeugma*. The Scripture seems to make Mention of it, 1 Kings 4. 24. where Solo-

mon's Dominion is said to be over all the Region on this Side the River, from Tiphfah (in the Vulgar Thaphfa) even to Azzah, &c. which Azzah, if compar'd with Gen. 10. 19. must be understood of Gaza; and the Chaldee Paraphrase, as well as Bonfrerius and Grotius, interpret the River to be meant of Euphrates: All which is very probable, because David extended his Empire to Euphrates, where Thapsacus lay; so that Part of the River might be its Boundary on the E. as Gaza on the Confines of Egypt was on the W.

C O E L E - S Y R I A

Some write it *Cœlesyria*, and Pliny *Cœle*. Authors differ in settling its Boundaries, and frequently call all Inland Syria by this Name. Pliny makes it to comprehend the Countries of *Apamene*, *Chalcidene*, and *Cyrrhestica*, which Ptolomy excludes; but he extends his *Cœle-Syria* too far to the S. when he adds many Towns of *Peræa* and *Scythopolis* below the Lake of *Genesareth* on this Side *Jordan*, together with all *Decapolis*. Strabo extends it beyond *Selucis* as far as *Egypt* and *Arabia*; but more properly confines it betwixt the Mountains *Libanus* and *Antilibanus*, from whence it was called *Syria-Cava*, because it lay in the hollow Vallies betwixt those two Mountains. 'Tis bounded (according to Heylin) on the E. with *Palmyrene* and *Arabia-Deserta*, on the W. with *Palæstine*, on the N. with Part of *Palmyrene* and *Proper Syria*; from which 'tis separated by Mount *Libanus*, and on the S. with *Ituræa* and Part of *Arabia-Deserta*. Cluverius extends it from *Judæa Peræa* to the *Euphrates*, and divides it into *Decapolis*, the *Tetrarchies*, and *Palmyrene*. The latter we have accounted for already. *Decapolis* was so called because of the 10. remarkable Towns in it; viz. *Damascus* the Metropolis, *Opton*, *Philadelphia*, *Raphana*, *Scythopolis*, formerly *Myfa*, *Gadara*, *Hippos*, *Dios*, *Pella*, *Gerasa*, and *Canatha*. Above this Country lay the *Tetrarchies*, 17 in Number, and sometimes accounted Kingdoms. The chief of them were *Trachonitis* and *Paneus*, in which were the Fountains of *Jordan* and *Cæsarea*, surnamed *Panea* or *Philippi*. He likewise includes *Chalcidene*, *Cyrrhestica*, and *Laodicene*, in this Country; the two first of which we have described already.

This is the Syria so frequently mention'd in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*. It was called by the Hebrews, *Aram-Damasek*; by the Latins, *Syria Damascena*, from *Damascus* City; *Syro-Phœnicia* from the *Phœnicians*, who mixed with its Inhabitants; and when a Roman Province, *Phœnice-Libani*, or *Phœnicia-Libanensis*, to distinguish it from the other *Phœnicia*, which they called *Maritima*.

Its chief Rivers are *Abana* and *Pharfar*, called in 2 *Kings* 5. *The Rivers of Damascus*. They rise in Mount *Hermon*, and passing by *Damascus*, run together into the *Mediterranean*.

The noted Mountains here are, 1. *Alfadamus*, called *Syrion* by the *Phœnicians*, and *Samir* by the *Amorites*, which begins from the E. Point of *Antilibanus*, and inclining Southward, shuts up the Land of *Israel* on that Side. 2. *Hippus*, a Range of Hills on the Borders of *Arabia-Deserta*.

The most considerable Towns are, 1. *Helopolis*, so call'd from an Image of the Sun worship'd here. 'Tis now called *Bellebec* or *Balbec*, which is much the same; for *Baal*, tho' it may signify Idols of either Sex, is commonly appropriated to the Sun, the chief Idol of this Country. *Cellarius* places it 34 Miles N. of *Damascus*, 62 S. E. of *Tripoly*, and about 117 S. W. of *Palmyra*. *Luyt* says, 'tis surrounded with high Hills, was once a Bishop's See, and afterwards erected into a Metropolitan under the Patriarchate of *Antioch*. Mr. *Maundrel* gives us the following Description of it: 'Tis (says he) pleasantly situated on the E. Side of the Valley of *Bocat*, of a square Figure, and compassed with a good Wall, but the Houses mean. There are the Ruins of an ancient Heathen Temple, which consist chiefly of a round Marble Pile of Building, encircled with Columns of the *Corinthian* Order, which support a very fine Cornish, that goes round the Structure. The old Wall which encompassed this City was made of such vast Stones, that the Natives ascribe the Building of it to the Devil. Three of those Stones being measur'd, were found to extend 61 Yards in Length, of which one was 21, and the other two 20 Yards long. M. *Lucas*, in his Travels to the *Levant*, says, 'tis encompassed with fine Gardens, and several Brooks, which

water

water it all round. There are here and there several Houses cut out of the Rocks, with particular Apartments. The Walls of the Town are still standing, very fair and well built, with great square Towers upon them at exact Distances. In the Castle there's a great and magnificent Church: The Entrance to it leads thro' an Arch above 150 Paces long, built with prodigious great Stones, where are the Busts of the ancient *Syrian* Kings and Emperors represented at convenient Distances. There are several Passages on the Right and Left which lead to Places under Ground. At the End of the Arch there's a Gallery, supported on both Sides with fine high Pillars, that leads directly to the Church-Gate, which consists of three great Stones. On the middle Stone there's carv'd a *Roman* Eagle with his Wings spread, grasping a Caduceus with one Foot, and a Garland of Flowers and Fruits with the other. On the two Stones on each Side are two flying Cupids, holding a Garland of Flowers and Fruits. The Front is fac'd with Marble, and adorn'd with Flowers in *Relievo*. This Gate opens to the main Body of the Church, whose Roof is fallen; but there appears a great Nich of Marble, carv'd with Flourishes, Fruits and Birds, thought to have been that of the chief Idol, because there are smaller ones round it. The Cornishes are of Marble curiously wrought. After a Descent of 30 Steps under Ground, are several curious Apartments, particularly 6 large Halls all of a Floor, built with Stones resembling fine grey Marble. They are betwixt 30 and 40 Foot long, and 7 broad each. Some of the Chambers are round, others oval and octogonal, some triangular and square, but all well built, and many of 'em lin'd with Marble. Here are also several Marble Tombs, from whence an Ascent goes up thro' a winding Stair-Case of white Marble, on the Top whereof are several ruinous Apartments of Marble. Here are so many remarkable Ruins, that it would take up above a Week's Time to view them. 'Tis inhabited by about 30 Christian Families, some *Jews*, and 7 or 8000 *Turks*. *Montconys* says, the Entrance into the Castle is towards the E. and on both Sides of its Front there's a square Tower, and one Chamber each, wonderfully adorn'd

with Niches, Frizes, Columns and Gates, curiously carved. The middle Building in the Inside is of an Hexagonal Form, and open in the Center like a Theatre. At the End there's a great Court, which, with the preceding Hexagone, is encompassed with Apartments of sundry Figures, set off with nice Architecture. On the Left of the great Court there is a Temple 40 Paces long, viz. the Nave 30, and the rest, which is separated in Form of a Choir by two Pillars, 10, and about 25 Paces wide. The Nave is compos'd of 7 chamfer'd Pillars, 7 Paces in Diameter, round on each Side, and between them large Spaces, wherein are Niches which reach to the Bottom, with their Capitals, that serve for a Base to another of fine Architecture in a Triangle which is above. In the Choir there are two other lesser Spaces, and two Pillars of the same Form with those of the Nave. The Outside is encompassed with a Gallery of Pillars of the same Height with the Temple, and 17 Foot and a half in Circumference. There are 14 on each Side, 6 behind, and 4 chamfer'd ones in the Front. In the Roof are very many Busts in *Demi-Relief* of the ancient Gods and Goddesses, but so defac'd that they can't be distinguish'd. The Base of those Pillars is 3 large Paces in Front. The Key-Stone of the Arch of the Temple-Gate is a singular Piece of Workmanship: There is an Eagle which had two Angels on each Side; but they are now broke off, as well as the Head of the Eagle. At the Bottom of the Wall before the Temple there is a Sacrifice in *Basso-Relievo*, with Men, Bulls, Sheep, and other Fancies of excellent Carving. On the Sides of the Castle, along the Court, there are two Apartments vaulted with Arches 160 Paces long, and 6 in Breadth; but that which crosses the Breadth of the Structure is 120 Paces long. In the arch'd Roof of that on the Left are 4 Busts in *Basso-Relievo*, and an Inscription upon one of them, wherein nothing appears plain but these two Words, *Diviso Mosci*. About 20 Paces from the Castle, which is encompassed with Ditches, there's a little round Church, surrounded with an Hexagonal Frize of 8 Arches, supported by 6 Pillars, amongst which are as many Niches, with a Pedestal of the same Figures as in the Inside; and on the

Top, which is built in Fashion of a Shell, there are Eagles with their Wings display'd. The Pillars are all of a Piece. The Pedestals upon which they stand are arch'd in the same Form as the Frize which they sustain. The Inside is plaister'd; but the Greeks have defac'd it, and spoil'd the Beauty of the Architecture. On the upper Side of this Place, against the Walls, there is another very high Pillar, with a Pedestal, designed for some Figure. All these Buildings seem to have been of Roman Workmanship, not only from the aforesaid Latin Words *Divisio Mœci*, but from another Inscription in the Castle, where are these Letters and Words, M. V. M. DIIS HELIUPOL PROSUL; and underneath, EX VOTO. M. Monconys adds, That having measur'd Part of the Castle, he found the Front to be about 80 Paces, of which the Towers are each 13, and 17 in Length. Then there is the Hexagonal Apartment, which is equal to the Front, but not so high by one third. The two Galleries which run along on each Side are about 18 or 20 Paces in Front, and 160 in Length. The Temple seems to stand without the Plan, and stretches out further than the Galleries or Wings of the other Buildings. *Cellarius* makes Mention of *Aphaca*, which lies (according to *Zosimus*) between this Place and *Byblus*. Here was an admirable Temple of *Venus*, from thence called *Aphacitides*; and near it a Lake noted for fiery Eruptions on its Banks, and because whatsoever Oblations were accepted by the Goddess, tho' light Things, as Silks, &c. would sink; and if heavy as Gold and Silver, would swim upon the Top, say the Pagan Legendaries; but *Seneca* in his *Natur. Quæst.* proves this to be nothing in the main but Superstition; for he takes no Notice of the Acceptance or Refusal of the Idol, but that Bricks swim in this Lake, and that Things of Weight cannot sink in it. The Reason is ascribed to the greater Gravity of the Water into which the Things are cast; tho' this may seem equally strange to the unlearned. *Venus's* Temple here was a School of Wickedness, and therefore *Constantine* caus'd it to be pull'd down.

2. *Abila*, once a fine Town, in the Tract from hence called *Avilena*, plac'd by *Ptolemy* between *Heliopolis* and *Damascus*, and

known in his Time by the Name of *Abila Lysana*, so call'd from *Lysanius*, who was Tetrarch of it, as in *Luke 3. 1.* *Cellarius* places it about 22 Miles S. of *Heliopolis*, and 21 N. of *Damascus*. *Heylin* says, it lay at the Bottom of Mount *Libanus*, betwixt *Heliopolis* and *Chalcis*.

3. *Damascus*, now *Schan*, a City celebrated both in the Sacred and Prophane Histories of the Ancients. It lies in a Plain environ'd with Hills, and was called by the Hebrews, *Dammasek*; and by the 70, and all other Greek Writers, *Δαμασκος*, *Damascus*. *Strabo* places it over against the Persian Empire, and reckons it the most famous City in this Country. *Cluverius* places it 120 Miles E. from *Tyre*. 'Tis (according to *Cellarius*) about 33 Miles S. from *Heliopolis*, 77 E. of *Tyre*, 74 from *Sidon*, and 92 S. E. of *Tripoly*. The Heathen Emperor *Julian*, in his Epistle to *Serapio*, call'd it the City of *Jupiter*, and the Eye of all the East, and says, it excelled all others in the Beauty of its holy Things, the Magnificence of its Temples, the Temperateness of the Seasons, the Excellency of its Fountains, the Multitude of its Streams, and the Fruitfulness of its Soil. The principal River here is the *Pharpar* of the Scripture, which is *Ptolemy's* *Chrysorrhoas*, or Golden River. It runs down with a great Noise from the Mountains, and so well supplies the City, that almost every House has a Fountain, of which some are of Marble, and contain Fish. Besides, its Streams are turned off thro' their Streets to the Gardens and Orchards. The adjacent Country yields good Store of Wheat, and abounds with Vines, which bear Grapes all the Year long. M. *Lucas* says, there are some Bunches that weigh above 40 Pound. They have Variety of choice Fruits, &c. in their Orchards and Gardens, from whence are deriv'd our *Damascens*, called in Latin *Pruna Damascena*, and *Damask-Roses*; and they sell *Rose-Water* in Bottles and other Vessels like Wine. 'Tis so delightful a Place, that 'tis said *Mahomet* forbore coming into it, lest being ravished with its Pleasures, he should forget his proper Business, and make it his Paradise. However, *Muhammad*, one of his Successors, made it the Royal Seat, which before his Time had been at *Mecca*, or some other great Town in *Arabia Felix*. The principal Structures, before

before destroyed by the *Tartars*, were a Castle, accounted impregnable, and with great Difficulty taken by *Tamerlane*. It had also a stately Church, with 40 noble Portico's, and 9000 Lanterns of Gold and Silver, which was burnt by *Tamerlane*, with 30000 Persons who fled thither for Sanctuary, but repair'd by the *Egyptian Mamalucks* when Lords of *Syria*; since which Time it has flourish'd in Trade, the People being celebrated for industrious and ingenious Artizans, and in particular for the making of Arms, and the branching of Sattins, &c. which we call Damasks. This City is next in Rank to *Aleppo*, and was renown'd in the Scriptures for its several Kings, the Birth of *Eliezer*, *Abraham's* Steward, and the Conversion of *St. Paul*, who first preach'd the Gospel here. 'Tis the Seat of a *Turkish* Beglerberg, who commands 10 Sangiacks, and of a *Greek* Patriarch, whose See was translated from *Antioch*. Its chief Commodities are Wines, Prunes, Raw and Wrought Silks. Several Sects of Christians have Churches here, and the Papists two or three Colleges. *Thevenot* says, it has 8 Gates, one of 'em called the *Paradise Gate*. 'Tis not above $1\frac{1}{2}$ League in Compass, the Suburbs being as big again as the Town. The Walls are double, (*Lucas* says treble) well built, having fair Battlements, flank'd at several Distances with round and square Towers. The inner Walls are about 4 Fathom, and the outer 3 Fathom and a half high, with about 5 Foot of Ground betwixt them fill'd with Earth. Before these Walls there is a Ditch about 5 Fathom broad, and two Fathom and a half deep. The Things most remarkable are, 1. A fine *Bezeftan* or Exchange, with 3 Gates. 2. The Castle, built with Stones of a Diamond-Cut, where there's a Court of Guard, with Arms hanging on the Wall, and two large Pieces of Ordnance; a Mint, where the *Jews* work above 3 Fathom round; a large arch'd Hall, which leads to the Divan, where the Council is held, painted with Gold and Azure, after the Mosaick Way, and in it 3 Basins of excellent Water. The Ditches without the Castle are half a Pike's Depth, and 20 Paces over, and there's a Stream that runs thro' the Castle, with which they can fill the Ditches on Occasion. On the Walls of this Castle hang two

Chains of Stone, one of which contains 16 Links, the other 14, very artificially cut one within another out of one entire Stone, each Link being about two Fathom long, and one and a half wide. Near the Castle there's a fair Mosque 20 Paces square, painted with Mosaick Work in Gold and Azure, with a Sepulchre in the middle of *Melec-Daer* Sultan of *Egypt*. 3. The House of the *Tefterdar*, in which there's a small Marble Mosque of fine Architecture. There are also several delicate Rooms in it of the same Fashion, with a little Fountain of clear Water at every Window, brought thither in Pipes. This House looks into the great Mosque, which 'tis Death for a Christian to enter. 'Tis 300 Paces long, and 60 wide. The Court is pav'd with transparent Stones resembling Looking-Glasses, and round it are several Pillars of Marble, Jasper and Porphyry, incomparably wrought, which support an Arch painted with several Pieces in Mosaick. The Porch which faces the Court has 12 large Copper Doors, embossed with Figures, and several Pillars of Porphyry with gilt Capitals. The Walls are painted with lovely Figures in Gold and Azure. This is one of the most stately Mosques in all the *Turkish* Empire. The *Mahometans* pay so great a Veneration to it, that they pull off their Shooes when they pass thro' the Court. It was a Christian Church, built by the Emperor *Heraclius* in Honour of *Zachary*, Father to *John the Baptist*, who they say is buried here. Others think it was formerly the Church of *St. John* of *Damascus*. 4. The Fountain where they say *St. Paul* recover'd his Sight, and was baptized by *Ananias*, near which is the House where *St. Paul* was instructed by *Ananias* in the Christian Religion, and the Chamber where he fasted and prayed for 3 Days and 3 Nights. 5. *Ananias's* House, now inhabited by an *Arabian Shaick*, who for a few Aspers shews it to Travellers. After a Descent of 14 Stairs under Ground, there's a Mosque now, which they say was the Chamber where *Ananias* lodg'd when commanded by God to go to *Saul*. 'Twas formerly a Church, and well ciel'd and pav'd with Mosaick Work, of which there are still some Remains in the Pavements. Here is also *Ananias's* Tomb, which the *Turks* respect much.

6. The

6. The East Gate, at which begins the Street call'd *Streight*, mention'd in the *Acts of the Apostles*. It was also call'd *St. Paul's Gate*, because formerly there was a great Church near it built to his Honour. The *Turks* have made it a Can; but the Steeple remains, and is very old Work. Near this Gate is the House whence that Apostle was let down by the Walls in a Basket to avoid the persecuting *Jews*. A few Paces from this Gate lies a square Tower on the City Walls, with two Free-stones, in which are two Flower-de-Luces very well cut, and on the 3d an Inscription in the *Lingua Franca*; but the Characters are not legible. On two other Stones, at the Side of each Flower-de-Luce, there are two Lions cut, and near each of them a great Thistle. This was probably in Honour of some *Scottish* Princes, who went with the *French* to the *Holy Land*. From hence some think the *French* built the Tower, or else some Sultan descended from them; but we rather believe the *Turks* brought the Stones from some other Place possessed by the *French*; for 'tis certain, the Christians have never been Masters of the Town since the *Messemains* took it from the *Greeks* in the Time of the Emperor *Heraclius*. 7. Not far off are the Burying-places of the Christians and *Jews*, for every Religion has a separate Burial-place in the Fields. Overagainst the West Gate is the Sepulchre of *St. George* the Porter, who was beheaded here on Pretence that he was a Christian, and had sav'd *St. Paul*. His Tomb stands in the middle of a Court: 'Tis built with Free-stone, and cover'd with a little Pavilion, in Form of a Pyramid. The Christians here reckon him a Saint, have commonly a Lamp burning at his Tomb, wherein they are imitated by the *Turks*, who affirm, that Miracles are daily wrought by it; and that several Sick having spent the Night there, have returned in the Morning in perfect Health. On this Saint's Day both *Turks* and Christians repair to his Tomb. In the Court on the Left Hand is a Burial-place for such Christians as died for their Faith; and when any Christian departs, his Body is first brought to that Place, where, after the Office for the Dead, 'tis carried to the Burying-place. 8. In the *Streight* Street there's a large fair Bazar, cover'd with an high-ridg'd Timber Roof,

and full of Shops on both Sides, where they sell nothing but Stuffs, as they do in another Bazar hard by. The greatest Bazar is call'd *Sinanie*, because built by *Sinan* a Bashaw of *Damascus*, consists of 18 Arches, and two Rows of Shops on each Side. 9. The Green Mosque, so call'd because its Steeple is fac'd and the Top cover'd with green glaz'd Bricks. It has a large Court pav'd with delicate Stones, and a Fountain in the middle. At the End of the Court is a Portico, supported by 8 Marble Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order, which bear up as many little Domes, all leaded over. It was built in this Place, because they say *Mahomet* ventur'd so far, and no farther, and cover'd with Green, because they hold that for their Prophet's Colour. 10. The Mosque of *Hasan*, who being Bashaw of this City, left Money to build it and a Tomb. The Mosque stands at the End of a Court, and the Entrance is thro' a Portico, supported by 6 Pillars, and cover'd with one very large Dome, betwixt two little ones on each Side. 11. The Bashaw's Seraglio, which is very pretty, and has over the Gate an Earthen Pavilion in Form of a Pyramid. 12. Two Mosques, formerly Christian Churches, in which are the Sepulchres of some Kings of *Damascus*. One of them is round, and cover'd with a fine Dome. 'Tis lin'd on the Inside with Marble of various Colour, 3 Fathom high from the Pavement; and from thence to the Windows there are several Draughts of Churches and Trees after the Mosaick Way. In the Middle are two Tombs 4 or 5 Foot high, upon a Pavement rais'd above a Foot from the Floor. They are of Cedar, well wrought, and contain the Bodies of two Kings, one of whom was King *Daer*, who from a Christian became a *Turk*, and persecuted the Christians severely. The *Turks* say, no Candle or Lamp will burn near his Tomb. Hard by are several Alcorans chain'd on Desks, to read for the Souls of those Kings, according to the Custom of the *Mahometan* Princes and great Lords, who commonly at their Deaths leave great Estates for such Uses. 13. The great Mosque, whose Doors are Brass, 4 Fathom high, and well wrought with odd Figures. 'Tis about 18 Fathom wide, and has two Ranges of 36 large Pillars of grey Marble of the *Corinthian*

ionian Order, which divide it into three Isles. The Pavement is of fine transparent Stones. 'Tis cover'd with a sharp ridg'd Wooden Roof, and has a large Dome in the middle, with little arch'd Windows on the N. Side, and is fac'd above them with green Stone. On each Side is a square Steeple with Windows like our Churches, and one of these Steeples is call'd the *Messiah's*, because the *Turks* hold, that Jesus shall return into the World by that Steeple. There are many Lamps continually burning in it, and in the Keblay there's a Hole, grated over with gilt Iron Bars, where they say the Head of St. *Zachary* is kept. On the W. Side are 3 Brazen Gates, embellish'd with several Figures, and before the Gate a Portico, divided into two Alleys by 8 great Pillars, which lead into a large Court pav'd with great shining Marble Stones; towards the End of which stands a little Chappel, cover'd with a Dome. On the S. E. and N. Sides are also fine Brazen Gates. 14. The Church of St. *Thomas*, near the Gate so called. 'Tis shut up, because ruinous; yet there remain a Portal and 3 Ceintures, supported by three Marble Pillars chamfer'd. 15. The Mosque, which the *Turks* say was the Temple of *Serapis*. They pretend, that *Simeon Stylites* was brought from *Antioch* and interr'd here, and have inclos'd his Tomb with Iron Grates, since a *Venetian* attempted to steal it. They have a great Veneration for this Mosque, and say, no Muslim can call to Prayers there, because his Voice presently fails him. 16. The Spittle of Lepers, built (they say) by *Naaman*, the Syrian Lieutenant to the K. of *Damascus*, for *Gehazi*, *Elisba's* Servant. There are 3 Rivers, continues *Thevenot*, that run thro' *Damascus*, and meet at the Town's-end. Amongst many curious Fountains there's one cover'd with a flat Dome. 'Tis a round Basin, two Fathom in Diameter; and in the middle there's a Pipe that throws up a great deal of Water to a considerable Heighth. The Houses of this City are for the most Part built of Brick and Earth, and look mean, yet are beautiful within; but the Mosques, Bagnio's, and Coffee-houses, are generally very lofty, and neatly built. On the other Side of the City was formerly a large Church dedicated to St. *Nicholas*, with a fine Court and Cloyster, supported by

great Marble Pillars, but now turn'd into a Mosque, with Trees planted about it, and the River *Banias* brought into the Court, which makes it very pleasant. A little further is the Green of *Damascus*, a large Grass-Plat, which the *Turks* call a *Meidan*, encompassed with Gardens, and the River *Banias* running thro' them. Near the middle is a Pillar in the Ground 4 Foot high, which they say shews the Place where God made the first Man. On one of the Sides of this Field is the *Morestan* or Hospital for Pilgrims. 'Tis a great Cloyster, cover'd with little Domes, and has many Chambers for receiving Pilgrims of all Religions, who are maintain'd there for 3 Days at the Sultan's Charge. It has a Mosque and fair Gardens, and was built by *Soliman II.* who took *Rhodes*. It has likewise a Cloyster for poor Scholars, and a Stable for the Pilgrims Horses. At *Damascus* is a great House where they make the Bisket for *Meccha*, which the Grand Seignior gives to the Pilgrims at his own Charge, viz. 200 Camels-load, and as much Water.

The Capuchins and Monks of the *Holy Land* live together in the Quarter of the *Maronites*. The Jesuits dwell in the Quarter of the *Greeks*, and worship in their own Houses. The Inhabitants will suffer nobody to ride with both Legs on one Side of the Horse, because they say *Gog* and *Mages*, who rebelled against God, rode in that Posture. On the Top of their Tombs they leave a Column of Earth, to which the Women go every Week to pour Water to cool the Dead, and stick a large Bunch of Box at the End of the Grave. Widows go to their Husbands Graves to consult them, and make their Complaints, and the next Night fancy they have an Answer according to their Desires. The Christian Women here, when they mourn for the Death of their Relations, make a great deal of Noise, some singing, others crying and smiting their Breasts with folded Hands. They sometimes cast themselves into a Ring, and snap their Fingers against one another's Noses, keeping Time to their Songs, while others howl and cry.

At *Damascus*, and all over *Turkey*, they do not thresh their Corn, but cut the Straw with Iron Pinsons fasten'd on Wood-Rowlers, which they draw over the Corn with

an Horse. The Corn slips thro' the Teeth whole, and then they separate it from the Straw and Chaff by throwing it up into the Air. The Straw and Chaff they give to their Horses with Barley twice a Day, and that's all they have. They drink much *Yogourt* or Butter-Milk, which they separate partly from the Butter, or make of Milk, by putting Rennet into it, and sometimes of Water, by mixing a kind of Curd which comes from the *Yogourt* with it. Their Wines are very heady, and *Smirnum Creticum* grows commonly on their House-Tops. *Lucas* observes, that the Sheep here are wonderful large, insomuch that their Tails are drawn in Wheelbarrows; and he says, that he saw one which weighed 60 Pound.

M. Bouffingault, in his *Nouveau Theatre du Monde*, says, *Damascus* is 6 Days Journey from *Jerusalem*, and about 6 Miles in Compass. They have great Numbers of Merchants and Artizans, and separate Places for every Trade and Calling, several of which are shut in by Day with great Iron Chains, to keep off Horses and Beasts of Burden, and at Night by Gates; and the Number of Artificers is so great, that 20000 are employed only in making Sword-Blades, which are worth about 15 *French* Crowns apiece. Here are also made Saddles, Bridles, Scymiters, Maces, Knives, Needles, and all Sorts of fine Work of Iron and Steel, because their Water is very good for tempering hard Metal. They have a great many Cooks, because the Inhabitants dress no Meat at home; and in one of the Streets where Meat is thus sold by Retail, there's a Gate of Metal, which they say was taken out of *Solomon's* Temple when the *Tartars* conquer'd *Jerusalem*. 'Tis famous for the finest Alabaster; and in the Plain of *Damascus* there's a red, soft, sort of Earth, which is a sovereign Remedy for the biting of venomous Beasts, and the Fracture of Bones. Most of the Streets of the Town are cover'd and arch'd over against the Sun and Rain. The Suburbs are large, and full of fine Houses, Gardens, and stately Mosques. Almost in the middle of the Town there's an high Castle of an oval Form, built for the most Part of Free-stone, Table-cut, with 14 great square Towers round it, of which one is bigger than the rest. The Ditches are full of se-

veral Trees, especially white Mulberries and Vines. The Castle has but one Gate on the E. Side, with a Draw-Bridge kept up by Stone Chains of a marvellous Contrivance, and 14 great Rings, which surprise all Spectators, because they are of one solid Mass, but very artificially cut. The Wall is 14 Foot thick, as are also the Towers.

Monconys says, That near *St. Thomas's* Church there is a small Tower of square Stones of an exact Size, with as many empty square Spaces as Stones. The *Bashaw* filled many of these Holes with the Heads of the *Druses*, which he caus'd to be cut off when their Emir *Feore Elain* was taken. There is also a fine Fountain, with several Spouts, that play into a great square Basin. There are Benches about it cover'd with Tapestry, and Stages with Singers and Players on Musical Instruments to entertain the Drinkers. There are 1500 *Janizaries* here, viz. 500 for the Guard of the City, who never stir out of it, 500 to convoy the Caravan which comes every Year from *Meccah*, and the remaining 500 to accompany the Grand Seignior to the War of *Bagdat*. They have a Privilege beyond all others in the Empire, because they may fight on Horseback, and their Pay is 5 *Aspers* per Day. At the Village call'd *Salaie*, at the Foot of the Hills, about a quarter of a League from *Damascus*, the chief Inhabitants have their Pleasure-Houses. They are built of Earth, with Domes of the same, in Form of Sugar-Loaves. The Tomb of *Saladine* or Sultan *Selin*, who took the Town, is in the middle of a Mosque or square Chappel, inclos'd with Joiners-Work. The Walls and Pavements are of Marble, with a Frize round it of Mosaick Workmanship. All the Mosques and Tombs are built of a Range of white Stone and another of black, with several Domes.

Mr. Maundrel, in his Journey from *Aleppo* to *Jerusalem*, says, the Garden-Walls of *Damascus* are made of great Pieces of Earth fashion'd like Bricks, and harden'd in the Sun, being two Yards long, one broad, and half a Yard thick. When they scower their Channels, they put a great Bough of a Tree into the Water, and fasten it to a Yoke of Oxen; then a Fellow sits upon it to drive the Oxen, and press it down; and thus

thus the Bough is dragged all along the Channel, and serves both to cleanse the Bottom, and to fatten the Water. The Houses in the Out-Parts are built either with Sun-dry'd Brick or *Flemish* Wall, very coarsly dawb'd over; so that when a violent Rain falls, the City becomes like a Quagmire. But the Gates are adorn'd with Marble Portals, curiously carv'd and inlaid. On the Inside there is generally a large square Court, beautified with fragrant Trees, Marble Fountains, and Divans floor'd with Marble, richly gilded, and furnish'd with Carpets and Cushions. He makes the City about 2 Miles long, and says, 'tis encompassed with Gardens that extend to 30 Miles round. He saw a Coffee-house there that would hold 4 or 500 People, having two Quarters for Guests, one for the Summer, the other for the Winter. That for Summer was a small Island, wash'd round with a large Brook, shaded over Head with Trees, and with Mats when the Leaves fall. Here the *Turks* regale themselves with Greens and Water, which (they say) with a beautiful Face are a perfect Antidote against Melancholy. He observ'd a little without the City a small Timber Structure, with an Altar in it, where they say *St. Paul* rested in his Way to the City after the Vision. He adds, That there were about 1200 of the *Greek* Communion here.

Half a League from the Town there's a barren Hill or Rock, where some *Dervicks* or *Mahometan* Priests live like Hermits in little Cells. Near this Place lies the Cave whither the 7 Sleepers are said to have retired during the Persecution, and a Hole where 40 Martyrs were buried, who attempted to rescue some of their Brethren accus'd for defiling a Mosque with Excrements, which were left in it by a *Jewish* Child; and the Grotto where the Prophet *Elijah* was fed by a Raven when he fled from *Jezabel's* Fury. The *Jews* have a Synagogue here.

Three Leagues from the City is the Place call'd *Baal Bel*, where they pretend *Cain* and *Abel* sacrific'd, and that the latter was murder'd; and a League further is the Place where *Abraham* defeated the 5 Kings that carried away *Lot*.

Within two Leagues of the Town are the Ruins of a Church, said to have been built on the Spot where *St. Paul* fell from

his Horse, and heard the Voice from Heaven, saying, *Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me.*

4. *Opton*, a Town on the River *Chrysorrhoas* or *Pharphar*, about 58 Miles N. W. from *Damascus*.

5. *Philadelphia*. *Buno* says, it was anciently call'd *Animana*, and *Astarte*, the same with the *Rabath* or *Rabba* of the *Hebrews*. It was a great City belonging to the *Ammonites*, who dispossest the Giants call'd *Rephaim*, that formerly dwelt in it. *Og* King of *Bashan* liv'd here, and *Joab* took it for *David*, who destroy'd it. It was in the Attack on this City where *Uriah* was killed. The Town and neighbouring Country was afterwards subdued by *Ptolomy Philadelphia*, from whom it was called *Philadelphia*. *Stephanus* says, it was an illustrious Town of *Syria*, tho' some place it in *Arabia*. It lay E. from *Palastine*, in the Confines of *Arabia* and *Peræa*, about 67 Miles N. E. from *Jerusalem*, and 100 S. E. from *Tyre*.

6. *Raphana*, lay on the Confines of *Arabia*; but we have nothing remarkable of it.

7. *Scythopolis*. *Buno* says, 'twas the same with the *Bethsan* of the *Hebrews* on the River *Jordan*, as it comes out of the Sea of *Tiberias*. In the *Maccabees* it is placed 600 Furlongs from *Jerusalem*. The *Greek* Interpreters call it the Town of the *Scythians*. The *Jews* could never drive the *Canaanites* out of it. It was upon the Walls of this Town that the *Philistines* hung the Bodies of *Saul* and his Sons. *Cellarius* quotes several Authors to prove, that it was called *Scythopolis* from a Remainder of the *Scythians* who seated themselves here in the Time of the *Medes*. *Pliny* and *Josephus* make it the greatest Town in *Decapolis*; but Authors differ as to the Country to which it belongs. *Ptolomy* places it in *Cælo-Syria*, others in *Galilee*, *Stephanus* and *Jerome* in *Palastina*, and *Cellarius* in the District of *Samaria*. However that is, the Inhabitants were always irreconcilable to the *Jews*, and continued their Enemies (says *Josephus*) in the Time of the *Romans*, being as cruel to them then as their Ancestors were in the Time of *Saul*. 'Tis now a desolate Village; but the Ruins shew that it was formerly considerable.

8. *Gadara*, lay on a Mountain, a little further from the Sea of *Galilee* than *Scythopolis*, says *Buno*, and was reckon'd almost impregnable. *Josephus* makes it the Metropolis of *Peræa*. *Polybius* says, it was the strongest Town in those Parts. *Stephanus* says, there were two of them, one in *Cælo-Syria*, and the other in *Palæstine*. We refer to *Cellarius* for the different Opinion of Authors about it. *Josephus* places it 60 Stadia from *Tiberias*, and 13 from *Hippos*. *Pliny* says, it stands upon the River *Hieromare* in *Manasses*. *Alexander Jannæus*, King of the Jews, ruin'd it; but *Pompey* restor'd it on Account of his Favourite *Demetrius*, one of its Natives, and *Gabinus* made it the 2d in Honour to *Jerusalem*. The *Gadarenes* stamp'd Medals in Remembrance of this Kindness, with the Images of *Heliogabalus* and *Gordianus*, and on the Reverse ΠΟΜΠ. ΓΑΔΑΡΕΩΝ. It is noted for hot Baths in the Neighbourhood, at a Village call'd *Amatha*. *Lightfoot* takes it to be the *Jarmoch* of the *Talmud*. The *Gadarenes* mentioned *Luke* 8. 26. and 37. who prefer'd their Swine to our Saviour, were the Inhabitants of this City and Country. *Philodemus* the Epicurean, *Meleager*, *Theodorus Rhetor*, and *Menippus Serio-Comicus*, were born here.

9. *Hippos* is join'd by *Josephus* to *Gadara*, from which it lay about 30 Furlongs, near the Bank of *Jordan*, where it came out of the Lake of *Tiberias*. The Inhabitants of this Country were a Mixture of Jews and Gentiles. *Justus Tiberiensis* burnt the Country of the *Gadarenes* and *Hippeni*, for which the Nobles accus'd him to *Pompey*, who was their Friend.

10. *Dios*, *Dion*, or *Hippo Dion*, lay in the Neighbourhood. Some confound it with *Pella*. It was destroyed by *Justus Tiberiensis*, but restored by *Pompey*.

11. *Pella*, lay in the same Neighbourhood, E. from *Gadara*. It was built (as some say) by *Seleucus K.* of *Syria*, and so call'd from *Pella* in *Greece*, the Birth-place of *Philip*, and his Son *Alexander the Great*. Others say, it was built by the *Macedonians* when they were Lords of *Syria*, and that most of the Inhabitants were *Greeks*. It was anciently called *Camus* and *Jephrus*, and *Stephanus* says *Butis*. *Alexander Jannæus*, K. of the Jews, destroy'd it, because they would not submit to the Jewish Rites; but *Pompey* re-

stor'd it. It was to this Place the Christians retir'd when *Jerusalem* was besieged; on which Account it was made the 2d Bishop's See in *Palæstine*, and their Bishops subscribed to the Council of *Chalcedon*. *Cellarius* places it about 12 Miles N. E. from *Philadelphia*, and about 75 N. E. from *Jerusalem*. It was noted for being well water'd.

12. *Gerasa*, lay on a Mountain near the Sea of *Galilee*, about 35 Miles W. from *Pella*. It was taken by *Alexander K.* of the Jews, because *Theodorus* the Tyrant lodg'd his Treasures there. It was anciently inhabited by the *Girgesites*, descended from *Girgash*, the 5th Son of *Canaan*. The Inhabitants join'd with the *Gadarenes* in desiring our Saviour to leave the Country, because of their Swine, those Cities being near Neighbours, and having Fields in common, as *Heylin* supposes. *Pliny* by Mistake calls it *Galasa*; and *Cellarius* is of Opinion, that the *Gergesenes* were subject to *Gadara*, as their Metropolis, which reconciles the seeming Difference between the Evangelists. *St. Jerome* thinks, that *Gargasis* and *Gadara* were the same. Others place *Gerasa* or *Gargasa* on the Borders of *Arabia*, as a distinct Town.

13. *Canatha*, lay E. from *Philadelphia*, on the furthest Part of the Tribe of *Manasses*, and was afterwards assigned to *Arabia*. *Josephus* places it in *Cælo-Syria*. 'Tis mention'd *Numb.* 32. 42. where 'tis said *Nobah* took *Canath* and its Villages, and call'd it *Nobah*, after his own Name.

The 17 Tetrarchies which lay higher in the Country than *Decapolis*, according to *Cluverius*, were Divisions made by the Romans during the Reign of the *Herods*, which *Cellarius* observes very justly are so uncertain in their Boundaries and Form of Government, that they perplex Geographers. Therefore he omits them, and describes the 3 greater Divisions of *Galilee*, *Samaria*, and *Judæa*. The chief of those Tetrarchies taken Notice of by *Cluverius* are *Trachonitis* and *Paneas*. *Trachonitis* (he says) was also call'd the Land of Giants, reach'd as far as the Fountains of *Jordan*, and here lay *Jeshur*, a Royal City, whither *Abshalom* fled after he kill'd his Brother *Ammon*. Here lay also the Town call'd *Cæsarea Philippi*. *Buno* says, 'twas anciently call'd *Lais*, and was taken
and

and destroyed by 600 of the Tribe of *Dan*, who call'd it by the Name of their Father. When taken by the *Romans*, it was called *Paneus*, from a neighbouring Fountain, and reckon'd the Metropolis of *Iturea* and *Trachonitis*. It was adorned and enlarged by *Philip*, Son to *Herod the Great*, who call'd it *Cæsarea Philippi*. It was afterwards named *Neronia*, and at present *Velenas*. It was here where our Saviour ask'd his Disciples, Whom Men said he was? Upon which *Peter* made that noble Confession in the Name of the rest, That he was the Son of the living God.

Cluverius reckons *Zengma* on the *Euphrates*, *Chalcis*, *Cyrrhus*, and *Thapsacus*, in this Country, which we have already described in another District. He likewise assigns to it *Bambyce*, call'd also *Hierapolis*, *Magog*, *Chalybon*, and *Aleppo*. He puts *Beroe*, which lay betwixt *Antiochia* and *Hierapolis*, likewise in this District; but *Cellarius* is of Opinion, that 'tis the same with *Aleppo*, which we shall describe, after taking Notice, that there remains only *Laodicea* to give an Account of, which, to distinguish it from others of that Name, is call'd *Laodicea ad Libanum*, because of its Situation near Mount *Lebanon*, and likewise *Scabiosa*, or rather *Cabiosa*. It gives the Name of *Laodicene* to the neighbouring Country. 'Tis mention'd in the Medals of *Antonin*, *Caracalla*, and *Severus*. It was a Metropolis in the Time of the latter, made a *Roman* Colony, and honour'd with the Liberty of *Italy*, because they adher'd to him in the Civil War. *Cluverius* places it 100 Miles S. W. from the *Euphrates*, and about 40 from *Palmyra*. *Cellarius* places it about 50 Miles N. E. from *Damascus*.

Authors differ much about the Situation of *Aleppo*; some place it in *Chalybonitis*, some in *Chalcydene*, and others in *Cælo-Syria*. And since 'tis now impossible to determine to which of those ancient Divisions of *Syria* it belongs, the learned *Cluverius* thought fit to describe it under the General Head of the famous Towns in *Turkish Asia*. Therefore all we can do in that Matter, is to give an Account of its Distance from other Towns of Note, according to the Opinions of modern Geographers.

Aleppo, according to *Cluverius*, is 48 Miles E. of *Alexandretta*, on the Bay of *l'A-*

jazzo, and 48 N. E. of *Antiochia*. The *Sanfons* make it about 40 Miles from *Alexandretta*, and 90 from *Antiochia*. Moll places it 60 from the former, and 70 from the latter. *Cellarius* agrees with *Cluverius*. So much do our modern Geographers vary about the Situation of an Emporium daily frequented by *Europeans*. Some will have it to be the ancient *Berrhæa*, *Beroa*, or *Beroe*, others *Hierapolis*, and others *Chalybon*; both which we have already described. 'Tis now called *Alepum* or *Aleppo* by the *English*, and *Italians*, and *Alep* by the *French*. Some take it to be the *Sepharvaim* we read of 2 *Kings* 17. 24. and derive the Name from *Chalep* and *Halep*, that in the *Phœnician* Language signifies Milk, of which they have great Store, because of their rich Pastures: Others from *Aleph*, the first Letter of the *Hebrew* Alphabet, because this was esteemed the first City in *Syria*. *Heylin* derives it from *Alepius*, Lieutenant to *Julian* the Apostate, who did many notable Exploits here, and enlarged this City near the Ruins of an old Town. *Thevenot* supposes it to be the ancient *Beroa*, and gives us the following Account of it: He says, 'tis one of the best Cities for Trade in *Turkish Asia*, and lies about 29 Leagues W. from the River *Euphrates*. The Air is so hot, that about the Beginning of *June* the Thermometer usually rises to the 30th Degree; yet is so thin and wholesome, that the Inhabitants lie in the Night-time upon their Terrasses without Danger from *May* till the middle of *September*, during which Time there is no Dew; and they say, that from *May* to *July*, scarce a Cloud is to be seen. The Walls are not strong, but stand upon a Rock, and there are Suburbs newly built. The Christians lodge in that Quarter mix'd with *Turks*, and have a Burying-place near it. The City has 10 Gates. Without that call'd the *Prison* Gate, are several fair wide Caves cut in the Rock above an 100 Paces. They make Ropes in the Mouths of them, and lay Grapes to dry there for Brandy. There is a stately Convent of *Dervices* or *Turkish* Monks, with a noble Fountain, a fair large Hall cover'd with a great Dome, pav'd with beautiful grey Marble, and a Mosque cover'd with a Dome. They have a Fish-Pond in a Court, and a Canal fac'd with Marble. There is Plenty of Fish in it.

it. The *Turks* permit none to be taken, and say, if any eat of them, they fall sick, tho' the Water be very clear. This Place is shut in with a very thick Stone Gate, whose Hinges are of one Piece with the Gate. The Castle is of an oval Figure, as well as the Town, of which there's a fair Prospect from Mount *Angeletti*, a quarter of a League W. The Houses are better built than in most other Places of *Turkish Asia*. It has many fair Mosques, particularly the great one, which has a large Court pav'd with black and white Marble, and a great Basin in the middle cover'd with a Dome, supported by 6 Marble Pillars; and on the S. Side a Fountain cover'd also with a Dome, and supported by 6 Marble Pillars. Round this Court there's a Gallery with 17 Arches on a Side, and 11 at each End, under which those who have performed their Purifications say their Prayers. On the N. Side, and in the middle of the Front, is the Stone-Chair or Pulpit of *John of Damascus*, cover'd with a Dome of the same. Before it there's a Stone Balcony, and over it a Penthouse to keep the Preacher from the Rain. This Mosque was formerly his Church. There's another Mosque near the great Can cover'd with a fine Leaden Dome, and is of a great Circumference; but its Tower is beat down by Thunder. There's another fair Mosque near the great Can, with a lovely Court, and two Ranges of Pillars, which support two very good Portico's. This Mosque has a high fair Dome cover'd with Lead, as are all the other Domes of this City. There are many fair Cans here, particularly the great one, where the *English* and *French* Consuls, and several Merchants, lodge. The Portal is very fine, and has Roses nicely cut upon it. It has two great Iron Gates, studded all over with Nails, and half a Foot thick. They open into a large Court, in the middle of which is a little Mosque in Form of a Dome, cover'd with Lead. *Thevenot* supposes the Building of Domes had its Origine here, for the Inhabitants generally have Domes in their Houses, and even in their Earthen Cottages. They build Stone Minarets or Towers very high and slender, which shews they understand Architecture. They are in general very industrious and ingenious.

There are very fair Bazars and noble Houses here, with lovely Halls and Fountains in the middle, and three Divans cross-ways, all of Mosaick Work to the Top, or built of white Freestone and black Stones found near the City, which they lay Checker-wise. There are other Divans, encompassed with very high Marble Pillars, and most of them have large Windows, before which there are Mats to sit on for the Convenience of Prospect and Air. At *Aleppo* and *Damascus* they anoint the Roots of the Vines with a kind of *Asphaltum*, which prevents the Grapes from being destroy'd by Worms. Every Family makes their own Wine. They press the Grapes in a large Wooden Fat with their Feet. The Wine runs thro' a Strainer at the Bottom into a Pale; then they put it with the Lees into large Jars cover'd with a Board and a Cloth, where it works for 30 Days or more; but they steer it every Day. When it ceases working, they draw it off, and then put it again with the Lees into the Fat, where they strain it a second time: Then they put the Lees into a Bag, and press them again; then they spread the Stalks of the Grapes, and pour the Wine upon them, and strain it a 3d time. When 'tis clear enough for drinking, they barrel it up: 'Tis a strong White Wine, for there are no red nor black Grapes in all these Parts. The Christians here make good Brandy, but not strong enough for the *Turks*, unless they put 5 or 6 Drams of Allum into a Bucket full of Brandy. They have good Water, brought by Aqueducts from a River which comes from *Antab*, two Days Journey from the Town; and some think it comes from *Euphrates* under Ground, and rises there. To clarify this Water, which is muddy, they put it into great Jars of unburnt Clay, from whence it distils into Receivers underneath. They have Trouts, Eels, and Crabs. The latter crawl up the Mulberry-Trees to eat the Fruit, and are easily taken. They have good Cucumbers, which they eat green, Skin and all. Their Salt is brought on Mules from a Place a Day and half's Journey distant to the N. E. where 'tis made of Rain-Water, which falls into a spacious low Place like a Pond, where the Salt being extracted out of the Ground, it covers the Water, congeals, and is formed into

into Cubes like Sea-Salt, but not so good. They make good *Turkey Leather* here, but permit no Stranger to see them prepare it. They drive a considerable Trade in *Cabrons Hair*, a sort of Goats, which is us'd for making of Hats. They prepare also a very good blue Dye.

Thevenot gives an Account of their *Zinehs*, or publick Rejoycing on solemn Occasions, during which their Shops are hung with the finest Stuffs within and without, the Floors cover'd with rich Carpets and Cushions, and their Houses lighted with a great many Lamps and Wax-Candles. The Bazzars are hung with Velvet, and Cloth of Gold and Silver, according to the Trade and Wealth of the Tradefmen. The Gates of great Men are adorned with rich Stuffs, fine Arms, and all Sorts of Lamps, with which the Streets are adorned in the Night. They all make merry with their Friends on such Occasions. The Magnificence of these *Zinehs* may be guessed at in general from one M. *Thevenot* saw for the Birth of the Grand Seignior's eldest Son, which lasted 7 Days. The *Zineh* was proclaimed all over the Town, and the Guns fired. Every Man was obliged to rejoyce and adorn his House, on Pain of being fin'd; and if subject to the Grand Seignior, bastinado'd. There was a Comedy acted by *Jews*, which consisted for most Part of Dancing, lascivious Gestures, and obscene Expressions, with which the *Turks* are hugely delighted. The several Traders made their Processions with Pageants, which they call'd Divans, in which there were Boys working at their several Trades. The Pageants were attended by the young Men of the Trade in Arms, with Coats of Mail, or of Tygers Skins, having each a Sword and Target by their Sides, and a Wax Taper in their Hands. The old Men followed without Arms, bless'd the Grand Seignior as they went along, and tossed their Heads in a ridiculous Manner. They were follow'd by a Quire of Musicians, and all of them stop at the great Can, where they call to the *Scheick Bandar*, or Judge of the Merchants, to pray for the Grand Seignior. Every Trade has particular Songs, which are sung by the Boys in the Pageant, while the rest roar out like Devils, dance, and make ridi-

culous Gestures like Fools. Their Bakers were all dawb'd with Flower, and their Pageants stuck round with Ears of Corn. The Dyers had Boys before them with Horns on their Heads. The Confectioners carried a Castle of Sweetmeats, and the Grocers had Baskets of Fruit in the Pageant, which the Boys threw out to the Mob. The Carriers of *Turkey Leather* were preceded by Boys with Goats Horns on their Heads; and the Cap-makers by Boys with Horns of Velvet and Cloth of Gold; and from their Caps, resembling those of Fools, hung long Sleeves of the same Stuff. Some of the elder Sort had Caps of the same, resembling Mitres. The Butchers Pageant was adorned with green Boughs, and hung with Pieces of Meat, and a Boy in the middle whetting his Knives.

Thevenot says, they make Use of Pigeons here, which in less than 6 Hours bring Letters from *Alexandretta* to *Aleppo*, tho' it be 22 Leagues distant. *Tavernier* says, *Aleppo* lies in Long. 71 Deg. 41 Min. and Lat. 36 Deg. 15 Min. The *Arabians* call'd it *Aleb* when they took it in 637. The City is built on 4 Hills, about 3 Miles in Circuit. Under one of the Gates there's a Place which the *Turks* hold in great Veneration, and burn Lamps there continually, because they think *Elisha* liv'd there. *Mallet* reckons about 100 Mosques, *Tavernier* but 26, in the City and Suburbs, 3 Colleges for Students, about 40 Inns, 50 publick Baths, 15 or 16000 *Greeks*, who have an Archbishop, and a Church here dedicated to St. George; about 12000 *Armenians*, who have a Bishop and Church dedicated to the Virgin; 10000 *Jacobites*, with their Bishop and Church; and 1200 *Maronites*, who depend upon the Pope, and their Church is dedicated to St. Elias. The *Roman Catholics* have 3 Churches, serv'd by *Capuchins*, *Carmelites*, and *Jesuits*; and 'tis reckon'd, that in the City and Suburbs there are 250000 Souls. They trade in Silks, Camblets, Nut, Galls, Valanede, Soap, &c. with the *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Persians*, *Indians*, *English*, *Italians*, *French*, *Hollanders*, &c. who have each a Consul here. The City is govern'd by a *Bashaw*, who has a Guard of 300 Men, commands the whole Country from

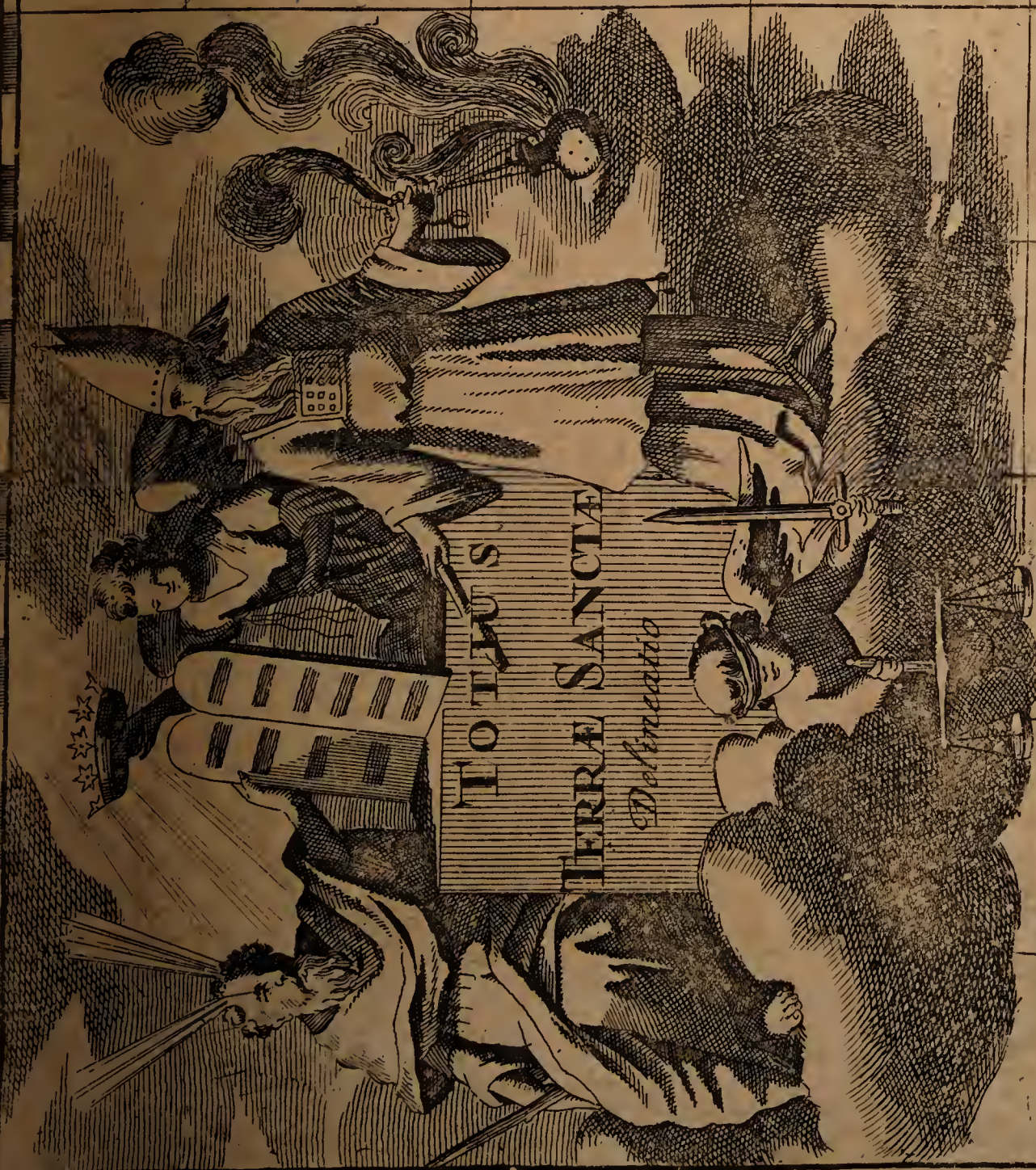
Alexand

Alexandretta to *Euphrates*, has 9 Sangiacks under him, and 5 Castles, says *Heylin*. There is also an Aga who commands 400 Men, and has Power as well without as within the City. Here is also an Aga of the Janizaries, to whom the Keys of the City Gates are carried every Night. There is a Commander of the Castle sent from *Constantinople*, who has 200 Musketiers under him, and takes Charge of the Cannon, which are about 30 Pieces, 8 great, and the rest small. There is likewise an Aga or Captain of the City, who commands 300 Harquebusses, besides a Sub-Bashaw, who is a kind of Provost of the Merchants, and Captain of the Watch. He goes round the City and Suburbs every Night with the Officers, and executes the Bashaw's Sentences upon Criminals. The Cadi is sole Judge in Civil Matters. He makes and dissolves all Marriage-Contracts, confirms all Acts of Purchase and Sales, and creates Masters of every Trade, who are to see there be no Fraud in the Work. *Tavernier*, speaking of the Devices before-mentioned, adds, that some will turn two Hours together, till they dazzle the Spectators Eyes. *M. Bouffingault* says, there are in all about 26000 Houses; that 'tis 80 Miles from the *Mediterranean*, 6 Miles in Circuit, and the Towers 60 Paces from one another; that it has 12 Gates, and three great Suburbs, is as big as *Orleans* in *France*; and that 'tis divided into 45 Quarters, of which 20 are in the Town, and 25 in the Suburbs. *Heylin* says, 'tis situate on the River *Singas*, which ends in a Morass about 10 Miles below the Town, as our Merchants say; but the Maps of *Syria* make it to fall into the *Euphrates*. Our Merchants have 3 Houses in it for the Stowage of their Commodities. The Houses here are but one Story, and flat on the Top. Near one of the Gates they shew a Sepulchre, which they say is *St. George's*, before which they keep a Lamp continually burning. It was destroy'd by *Haalon* King of the *Tartars*, when the *Western* Christians were possessed of the *Holy Land*; but by reason of its commodious Situation for Trade, soon repair'd and repeopled: Yet *Heylin* says, it drove a better Trade than now, before the *Western* Voyagers found out a Way by Sea to those Parts of the World.

P H O E N I C I A,

Was anciently (says *Cluverius*) all that Tract along the *Mediterranean* Sea betwixt the River *Eleutherus* and *Pelusium* in *Egypt*. 'Twas afterwards reckon'd to extend betwixt the Rivers *Chersesus* on the S. and *Eleutherus* on the N. and is by the Scriptures divided into *Upper Galilee*, or *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*, which lies from the Mouth of the *Chersesus* to Mount *Antilibanus* and *Syro-Phœnicia*, betwixt the latter and Mount *Libanus*. *Cellarius* places it betwixt the *Seleucis* of *Strabo* and *Proper Palestine*. *Heylin* bounds it on the W. with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the N. with *Proper Syria*, and on the E. and S. with *Palestine*. The *Grecians* call'd it *Phœnicia*, from *Φοινίξ*, a Palm-Tree, which Trees are so numerous here, that the Palm was anciently their Ensign; and in a Medal struck by the Emperor *Vespasian* for his Conquest of *Judæa*, a desolate Woman is represented sitting by a Palm-Tree, because *Phœnicia* lies N. of *Judæa*. But tho' they were thus call'd by the *Grecians* and *Latins*, yet by themselves and the *Israelites* they were called *Canaanites*, because *Harki*, *Chamathi*, *Senari*, *Sidon*, and *Arvadi*, 5 of *Canaan's* Sons, were planted in these Parts. This will further appear, 1. By comparing *Matt.* 15. and *Mark* 7. where the same Woman is call'd by the former a *Canaanite*, and by the latter a *Syro-Phœnician*. 2. From the Version of the *Septuagint*, who have render'd the Kings of *Canaan* mention'd in *Joshua* Kings of *Syro-Phœnicia*. 3. From their Language, which was anciently the old *Hebrew*, or the Language of *Canaan*. *Bochart* learnedly proves, that the *Phœnicians* deriv'd both their Being and Name from *Anak*, and will have them call'd by the two *Hebrew* Terms *Bene Anak*, i. e. the Sons of *Anak*. *Reiskius* divides *Phœnicia* into Two Parts, viz. *Maritime Phœnicia*, and *Phœnicia* within Land, adjoining to *Damascus* and Mount *Libanus*, and call'd in the Scriptures *Aram-Dammesek*. The former was reckon'd in the Time of the *Romans* a Consular Province, and the latter a Presidial. This Country is of a very narrow Situation, but extends in Length from Mount *Carmel*, where it joins to *Palestine*, to the River *Volanus*,

40 50 63 10 20 30 40 50 64 10 20 30 40 50 65 10 20 30 40 50 66 10 20 30 40 50 67 10 20 30 40



TO TUS
TERRA SANCTE
Dominatio

MARE MAGNUM

et

OCCIDENTALE

Alias

MEDITERRA

NFUM



40 50 63 10 20 30 40 50 64 10 20 30 40 50 65 10 20 30 40 50 66 10 20 30 40 50 67 10 20

lanus, which parts it from *Syria*. It abounds in Oil, Wheat, and the best Sorts of Balm and Honey, and 'tis probable was intended by *Moses* for the Seat of *Asber*, when he prophesied, *That he should dip his Foot in Oil.* Deut. 33. 24. The Country in general is very populous, and full of good Towns, Its ancient Inhabitants traded almost into all the then known Parts of the World, and sent more Colonies abroad than any other Nation. Their Ingenuity and Industry was as eminent, since they were the first Inventors of Navigation, Building of Ships, of Letters, Arithmetick, Astronomy, and the Art of making Glafs; but they were gross Idolaters, and worship'd *Astaroth*, the Goddess of the *Sidonians*, that *Solomon* worship'd when he fell from God. *Eusebius* says, they Annually sacrific'd some of their Sons to *Saturn*, whom they called *Moloch*; and that they had a Temple amongst the Hills of *Libanus* dedicated to *Venus*, where they practis'd Whoredom and Sodomy, till *Constantine* destroy'd their Temples and Idols.

The only River proper to this Maritime Country is *Adonis*, now *Canus*, deriv'd from *Adonis* the Darling of *Venus*, whose Rites were performed here with great Solemnity. His Obsequies were celebrated every June with great Lamentations. To give the more Authority to their Superstitions, *Lucian* feign'd that the River usually stream'd Blood, as if *Adonis* had been newly wounded in the Mountains of *Libanus*; whereas the Redness of the Water is occasion'd by the Winds, which blowing very strong in that Season, drives a considerable Quantity of Minium or Red Lead from the Hills, which discolours the Water. *Luyts* says, this River is now called *Habar Ascalb*, i. e. the Dog River; that it rises in Mount *Libanus*, and falls into the *Mediterranean* betwixt *Berytus* and *Byblus*.

The principal Towns are, 1. *Orthosia*, which *Cellarius* places on the *Mediterranean*, 20 Miles N. of *Tripoly*. *Buno* makes it but 12, and says, 'tis now called *Laraca*. *Luyts* says, 'tis an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Tyre*. *Heylin* says, it was called *Antaradus*, because opposite to *Aradus*, another old City of this Tract, but known by the Name of *Tortosa* in the Holy Wars, when it resisted the united Force of the Western Christians, who besieg'd it for three

Months in vain. *Cluverius* places *Tortosa* at the Mouth of the *Pharphar*, 55 Miles N. from *Tripoly*. Mr. *Maundrel* says, the Ruins of it are a Castle, with the Sea on one Side, and a double Wall on the other, with a Ditch between them, and another on the Outside. 'Tis enter'd by an old Drawbridge, which leads to a spacious Room, with a Dove, an holy Lamb, and other sacred Emblems. On one Side 'tis like a Church, and on the other has Port-holes instead of Windows, like a Castle. On the S. and E. Sides of it stood anciently the City, encompassed with a good Wall and a Ditch, of which there are some Remains. There are also the Ruins of a Church 130 Foot long, 93 broad, and 61 high, now made a Stall for Cattle.

2. *Tripoly*, on the Side of a Bay, 55 Miles S. from *Tortosa*, says *Cluverius*, but not 20 according to *Cellarius*. *Diodorus Siculus* says, it deriv'd its Name from 3 Towns a Furlong distant from each other, surnamed the *Aradian*, *Sidonian*, and *Tyrian* Towns, because built by those 3 Cities. Each of them had their own Walls. There were several ancient Medals of this Town, with the Names of *Anthony* and *Cleopatra*, *Augustus*, *Nero*, *Trajan*, *Severus*, and *Heliogabalus*, upon them. *Buno* says, it lay near the *Macras Campus*, in which *Strabo* tells us there was found a dead Serpent of an Acre in Length, and so thick, that two Men on Horseback on each Side could not see one another. His Mouth was so wide, that a Man on Horseback might enter it, and his Scales were as large as any Buckler. The Truth of this we leave to the Judgment of the Reader.

Thevenot says, it is a pretty Town, with a neat Castle, lies about a M. from the Sea, is encompass'd with Gardens of Orange and white Mulberry Trees, and has several Towers on the Coast planted with Cannon to defend it. *Mallet* says, 'tis called *Tripoly* of *Syria*, to distinguish it from that in *Barbary*. The Turks call it *Tarabolosham*; that 'tis the usual Place where Pilgrims arrive from *Europe* to visit the *Holy Land*; and that a *Bashaw* resides there, who commands 4 *Sangiacks*. *Bouffingault* says, 'tis the Capital of *Phœnicia*, a large Town, more long than broad, and lies on the Front of a Hill, divided by a River, which runs thro' the Town. On the Top of this Hill is a Castle built by the

the *French*, which commands the City, and is strongly guarded by the *Turks*. The Houses are built after the *Turkish* Manner, two or three Stories high, with Platforms. Most of the Streets are strait, except that which leads to the Bridge of *Aleppo*, which is cover'd and arch'd over, as are their Markets, where they sell all Sorts of Commodities. They have abundance of fine Mosques, where they say their Prayers 5 times a Day, and are call'd to them by their Santons or Priests from the Steeples, for they have no Bells. Their Harbour is formed by a Point of the Plain, which runs forward into the Sea. 'Tis the most trading Town in this Country. The Inhabitants are skilful in Manufacture of Silks, and dying Purple. They have two large vaulted Bagnio's fac'd with Marble. There are several Fresh-Water Fountains near it within the Sea-Mark; and half a League from the Town there's a Bridge of antick Workmanship, built by *Rodomont*, and consists of 5 Arches. Their Gardens, which lie on the Declension of Mount *Lebanon*, are the greatest Beauty of the Town. *M. Monconys* says, there are many Palm-Trees on the Coast, and at every House a Fountain. Great Ships can't come into the Harbour, but lie off a League or two at Sea near some small Islands. The Staple was transported from hence to *Aleppo*, because their Emir or Prince drown'd the Crew of some *French* Ships in a neighbouring Well. *Mr. Maundrel* says, in the Fields near the Shore there are many Heaps of Ruins and Pillars of Granite. *Theravenot* adds, that the Dog River near this Town was so call'd because on a Rock there is a great Dog carved in a Chain, which they alledge did bark by Incantments, and a little above it there's this Inscription; IMP. CÆS. M. AURELIUS ANTONINUS PIUS FÆLIX. AUGUSTUS PART. MARI BRITANNIUS. *Heylin* says, there grows a Fruit in the neighbouring Plains call'd *Ammaxza-Franchi*, or *Kill-Frank*, because the *Western* Christians died in great Numbers by eating too many of 'em. This Valley yielded Annually 200000 Crowns to the Counts of *Tripoly*, the Successors of *Raymond* E. of *Thoulouse*, whom the *Western* Christians made the first Count when they conquer'd this Town. The Inhabitants keep many Silk-Worms, and sell their Silk to

the *Italians*. It was formerly a Bishop's See, under the Archbishop of *Tyre*, and the Patriarch of the *Maronites* frequently resides in it. Their Trade increas'd by removing the Staple from *Alexandretta*, which lay more open to Pirates. The Town was encompassed with a Wall, defended by 7 Towers, one of them call'd the *Tower of Love*, because built by an *Italian* Merchant, to redeem his Life for debauching a *Turkish* Woman. *M. Dandini* says, its chief Traffick is Silk, Ashes, Cotton, Yarn, Raisins, Soap, and the best Tallow-Candles. Here were 500 *Jews*, for the most Part *Spaniards* and *Portuguese*, but few *Italian* Merchants, since the *Venetians* remov'd to *Alexandretta*. There are many *Greeks* and *Maronites*: The former live in the Town, but the latter in an adjacent Village. The *Turks* are most numerous, and wear a white Turban. The *Jews* wear generally a red Cap half a Foot high, flat and round at the Top: The *Italian* and *Greek* Christians a Hat or black Cap: The *Maronites* a strip'd Cap of a different Fashion from the *Jews*. They all formerly wore Turbans, with this Difference, that the *Turks* wore a white one, the *Jews* a yellow one, and the Christians strip'd ones; but the *Jews* enlarging theirs, as if they had a Mind to equal the *Ottoman* Nobility, it was order'd, that none but the *Turks* should wear a Turban.

Betwixt *Tripoly* and *Botrys* lies the Cape called the *Face of God* by *Ptolomy* and others. 'Tis reckon'd the End of Mount *Lebanon*, and had formerly a Castle upon it, and a Town in the Neighbourhood call'd formerly *Trieres*, or *Triremis*.

3. *Botrys*, or *Boteron*, lay on the Coast, about 25 Miles S. W. from *Tripoly*. It is now called *Vadro*, and still shews the Remains of a Church and Monastery, says *Maundrel*.

4. *Byblus*, lay on the same Coast, about 10 Miles S. W. from *Botrys*. It was (according to *Strabo*) the Royal Seat of *Cinyra*, and oppress'd by a Tyrant in *Pompey's* Time, who put him to Death. It is mention'd in a Coin of *Augustus*. There was another Town in the Neighbourhood call'd *Pala-Byblus*. 'Tis now called *Gibeletto*. *Maundrel* says, it was famous for the Birth and Temple of *Adonis*. It was encompassed with a dry Ditch and a Wall, with square Towers

Towers at 40 Yards Distance, and an old Castle on the S. Side. There is nothing remaining now but Heaps of Ruins, and the fine Pillars in the Gardens near the Town. He supposes it to be the Country of the *Giblites*, mention'd *Joshua* 13. 5. whom *K. Hiram* made Use of in preparing Materials for *Solomon's Temple*, founding his Conjecture upon 1 *Kings* 5. 18. where the Word render'd *Stone-Squarers* in the Hebrew is *Gyblim*, and in the Version of the Seventy *Byblii*, or the Men of *Byblus*; and observes, that in *Ezek.* 27. 4. where our Translation has it the Ancients of *Gebel*, the Seventy make it the Elders of *Byblus*.

5. *Berytus*, call'd *Bayrut* by the Inhabitants, is said to be built by *Saturn*, destroy'd by *Tryphon*, and restor'd by the *Romans*, who made it a Colony, plac'd two Legions in it, and in a Medal of *Augustus* is call'd *COL. Jul. Aug. Trel. BER.* It has the same Title in a Medal of *Trajan*, and was famous for *Greek Learning* and the *Civil Law*. *Appian* the Martyr, and *Gregory of Neo-Cæsarea*, studied here. It lay about 25 Miles S. from *Palæo-Byblus*. *Mr. Maundrel* supposes the Idol *Baal-Berith* had its Name from hence, and says, 'tis seated in a fruitful Soil on the Coast, which abounds with fresh Springs. The Emir *Faccardine* of this Place, not content to be penn'd up in the Mountains, enlarg'd his Dominions along the Coast as far as *Acra*, but was drove to the Mountains again by the Grand Seignior. Near the Emir's Palace there was a curious Orange-Garden of a large Quadrangular Plat, divided into 16 lesser Squares, 4 in a Row, with Walks between them, shaded with Orange-Trees. Every Square was border'd with Stone, and had Channels contriv'd so as to convey the Water all over the Garden to every Tree; but the *Turks* have now made it a Sheep-Fold. There's another Garden with several Pedestals for Statues, and a Tower 60 Foot high at one Corner, whose Walls are 12 Foot thick; and from hence there's a good Prospect of the whole City. The Church of *St. John the Evangelist* is now a Mosque. There's a mean Church in the Hands of the *Greeks*, adorn'd with many old Pictures, and amongst others one with a *Greek Inscription*, signifying it, to be that of *Conartus*, the first Archbishop of *Berytus*, and near it the Fi-

gure of *Nestorius* the Herefiarch, and of *St. Nicephorus* with a monstrous Beard, which the Legendaries say was miraculously given him. At the End of the Town are to be seen several Pillars of Granite, and Pieces of Marble with *Greek* and *Latin Inscriptions*, Fragments of Statues, &c. *M. Bouffingault* says, 'tis 50 Miles from *Tripoly*, of a pleasant Situation, very well fortified, and has a Castle upon a Hill. Not far from thence a River runs into the Sea between two Hills, over which there's a very high Arch, said to have been built by *Adam*; and a little more within Land is the Place where they say *St. George* kill'd the Dragon, to rescue the K. of *Baruth's* Daughter, and the Den where that Monster lay. 'Tis at present one of the best Trading Towns in the East. King *Agrippa*, of the Race of *Herod*, built a Theatre and Amphitheatre here, with Portico's and publick Bagnio's. The Sea beats against the Town-Walls. Its Customs were farm'd at 400000 Ducats per Annum, It exports Silks, Tapestries, Ginger, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Pepper, Cassia, Rhubarb, Cochineal, Camblets, &c. 'Tis noted for having the first Picture of our Saviour, and for several pretended Miracles, particularly for the Holy Crucifix, which being pierc'd by the *Jews*, dropp'd a great Quantity of Blood. *M. Monconys* says, the Sea Banks abound with Gourds, fine Mulberry, Lime, and Pine-Trees, of which the late Emir *Fecre Eldin* planted an entire Forrest. He adds, that in the Neighbouring Hills of *Castraban* grow Olives of Stone, call'd *Jews Stone*, and that there are other Stones here, which in the Inside perfectly represent the natural Parts of Men and Women.

6. *Sidon*. *Cellarius* places it 56 Miles S. of *Tripoly*, and 28 N. of *Tyre*. *Cluverius* 70 Miles S. of *Tripoly*, and about 35 N. of *Tyre*. 'Twas a very large and potent City, noted for its Patriarchs, and is called *Great Zidon*, in *Joshua* 11. 8. 'Tis said to have been founded by *Sidon* the eldest Son of *Canaan*, from whom *Bano* and *Josephus* derive the Name. Others derive it from a Hebrew Word which signifies Fishing, because there are abundance of Fish on the Coast. *Diodorus Siculus* and *Pomponius* say, it was a wealthy City, and the best Maritime Town in this Country, before it

was taken by the *Persians*. *Strabo* says, 'twas famous for the Invention of Arithmetick and Astronomy, by which the Inhabitants brought their Trade to Perfection. There were Medals struck by *Augustus*, inscribed ΣΙΔΩΝΟΣ. *Luyts* says, it was dignified with the Title of a Metropolitan See, but is a little Town at present at the Foot of a Hill, with a large but not very safe Harbour. *M. Bouffingault* says, 'tis the chief City of *Phœnicia*, has 3 Gates and good Walls, half a League in Compass, defended by 2 Castles, one on the Coast for the Security of the Harbour, and the other commands the Town. 'Twas very populous, drives a great Trade with the *Holy Land*, and was then the finest City next to *Jerusalem*, in these Parts. Its Harbour was generally full of *French*, *Venetian*, *English*, and *Dutch* Ships, who come for Silk, Cotton, Buffers Skins, *Turkey* Leather, Sena, Raisins of *Damascus*, Soap, Pistachoes, &c. The Papists have a Church here, the *Maronites* a Chappel, the *Greeks* a Church, the *Jews* a Synagogue, and the *Turks* 14 Mosques. 'Tis the Residence of a *French* Consul, and they make abundance of Silk. The Suburbs are full of pleasant Gardens. *M. Monconys* says, there are several Pillars in the neighbouring Fields with *Latin* Inscriptions, and that in a Garden about a Mile from the Town there's a Mosque, where some say *Sidon* the Son of *Canaan* was interred, others *Zabulon*, but there is no Sign of a Tomb or Sepulchre remaining. He saw a Pillar about half a League from the Town, in the High Way to *Tyre*, with this Inscription: IMPER. CÆSAR. L. SEPTIMUS SEVERUS PIUS PERTINAX AUG. ARABICUS ADIABINICUS PARTHICUS TRIBUNICI POTES SEXTI IMP. ET M. AURELIUS ANTONINUS AUGUSTUS FILIUS EN EX VIA ET MILIARIUM PER Q. VENIDIUM RU. TEG. UCG. PR. PRÆSIDEM PROVINC. SYR. RHICENIC REN. VIV. II. He adds, there are found certain Stones in the Hill of *Chouf*, about half a Day's Journey from the Town, which resemble a Fish in the Head, Fins, and Colour. He observed a very regular Flux and Reflux of the Sea here, but 'tis so small, he says, and so frequently disordered by the Change of the Wind and the Heat, that 'tis scarce discernable. There is a very fine

Market for Cotton built of Freestone, square, and on every Side 7 great Arches, under which are the Warehouses, and over them a Gallery 5 Paces broad, behind which are the Chambers of the Merchants, all round like a Cloyster. There is a Terras Walk on the Top which gives a Prospect of the Sea on one Side, and of the Fields on the other. The Terrasses are almost 80 Paces long, and the finest in the City. *M. Coppin* says, 'tis now call'd *Seyde* or *Saïde*, that the Wall is about 6 Foot thick, and ready to fall in several Places. There is a Tower on one Side of the Port which is in a good Condition, and inhabited by a *Capigi*, and some Slaves: One of the Castles is almost ruined, and the other which is in a better Condition, stands about 100 Paces in the Sea, and has a Causeway to it supported by little Arches: The Front is flat, and has Galleries on the Town Side. There is a Gate at the End of the Causeway which leads into the outer Court; and on the other Side next the Harbour there is a Platform divided into 2 Parts, on which there are 5 or 6 Pieces of Cannon. He adds, that it formerly extended 3 Miles along the Coasts, but is not now above a quarter of that Space, nor has above 6000 Inhabitants. The Town is govern'd by an Aga, who has about 300 Soldiers in the Town and Castles. There are 2 Cans for Merchants, with Courts in the Middle, and Galleries all round, with abundance of Chambers. They have but one Gate each, which is kept by a *Turk*. They lie near the Sea: The largest is only for *French*, the other is inhabited by a Mixture of *Mahometans* and *Christians* of different Nations. The Aga has a Piafter per Month for every Chamber; but those who design to stay there any Time generally buy 'em, and have Leave to sell 'em again. This prevents their being turn'd out to make Room for others, as often happens when they are not Proprietors. In the 1st of these Cans there's a Society of *Jesuits*, with Surgeons and an Apothecary, because the Plague is very frequent here. The *French*, as soon as it breaks out, shut themselves up in their Can, and appoint Commissioners of Health who inspect every one that enters, and cause him to be perfumed: For this they are derided by the *Turks*, who don't fear the

the Plague more than another Distemper, because they hold Predestination. About a quarter of a League from the Town stands the Hill call'd Mount *Helias*, formerly the Boundary of the Town on that Side. There is now a little Village here of 30 Houses, with some Remains of Chappels, and on the Top of the Hill the *French* are interred. The Suburbs are full of Gardens, planted with Olive, Mulberry, Tamarins, and Sycomore-Trees, which they call *Pharaoh's* Fig-Trees. One of the chief Commodities is *Damascus* Raisins, which the *Bashaw* farms at a certain Rate to a Man who keeps a Warehouse, and none must sell them to any other, and every one buys of him: He gets as much as he can, yet is obliged to be moderate, lest the Merchants should leave 'em upon his Hands. Foreigners load here with Oil, Ashes, *Egyptian* Soap, Rice, Glue, and Silks: The Silk-Worms are preserv'd in little Huts made under the Mulberry-Trees, in which they thrive very well, unless violent Claps of Thunder happen. Every Hundred of Mulberry-Trees is charged Yearly with Seven Piasters Duty, and if any are cut down, the same Duty is continued on the Stump, unless it be proved that the Tree was dead. The Western Nations import here Sattins, Damasks of *Genoa* and *Lucques*, Scarlet, Cloths of light Colours, and Paper. Provisions are very cheap here, and their Bread is white. The Temperateness of the Air attracts Wild Beasts and Birds in great Numbers. Partridges are so plentiful, that 32 have been bought for less than a Crown. They have also Multitudes of Thrushes and Beccafigos, which is owing to the Laziness of the *Turks*, who delight not in Fowling or Hunting, but keep much at Home. This Town was formerly in the Hands of the *French*, was beautified and fortified by *St. Lewis*, but in the last Age it was subdued by *Emir Faccardin* Prince of the adjacent Country of *Chouf*, during the Troubles occasion'd by the Change of the *Bashaw*, and the Death of *Osman*. He held it many Years by his Courage, and the great Presents which he made to the prime Ministers of the Port. He chose it for the Capital of his Territories, because of its pleasant Situation and great Trade, and fix'd his Residence in the Castle which runs

out into the Sea; but fearing that the Gallies which came for the Grand Seignior's Money might serve him a Trick, he caus'd the Entry of the Harbour on the Side of the Town to be stop'd up, that the Incommodiousness of the Port next the Castle might oblige them to hasten their Departure. As he was about putting the Town in a better Condition, the Grand Seignior sent the *Bassa Giaphar* against him, who took him, put him to Death in the Castle, and caus'd him to be thrown out at a Window. After this the Grand Seignior settled an Aga here, (whose Jurisdiction extended also over *Baruth*) with express Orders to hinder the Oppression of Foreigners, which would ruin their Commerce; yet the Agas being generally greedy, find Ways to get Money, by sharing the Gain with the *Bassa* of *Damascus*, on whom they depend. *M. Thevenot* says, it was formerly govern'd by a *Vaivode*, till the *Sangiackate* of *Bfet* being annex'd to *Saïde*, they both were erected into one *Bassaship*. *Mr. Maundrel* says, that since *Faccardine* stop't up the Harbour, Ships are forced to ride at Anchor under a small Ledge of Rocks about a Mile from the Shore, and that the Town appears to have lost the greatest Part of its Extent and Splendor, from several beautiful Pillars that lie in the Gardens without the Walls. On the S. Side stands an old Castle, said to be built by *Lewis IX.* of *France*, and near it an old Palace of *Faccardine's*, which is now the *Bassa's* Seraglio. Near this Place begin the Precincts of the *Holy Land*, and particularly that Part which was allotted to *Asher*: But the People on the Coasts were never wholly master'd by the *Israelites*, as appears by *Judges* 2. 1, 2, 3. The *French* Consul here has the Title of Consul of *Jerusalem*, and is obliged to make a Pilgrimage every *Easter* to that City. The Inhabitants of *Sidon*, says *Heylin*, were the first Makers of Chrystal Glass, the Materials being brought from the Sands of a River not far from *Ptolemais*, and only made fusible in this City. From hence *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* had their chief Workmen, both in Stone and Timber, for the Building of the Temple. They are call'd the wise *Zidonians*, by *Zechariah* 9. 2. A Colony was sent hence to *Tyre*, yet *Sidon* own'd the Church of *Tyre* for its Metropolis. The *Saracens*

took it in 636, the *Western* Christians under *Baldwin* in 1103; *St. Lewis* K. of *France* rebuilt it in 1250, and the *Saracens* took it again in 1289. While the *Western* Christians possess'd it, the Castle on the N. Side was kept by the *Teutonic* Knights, and that on the S. Side by the *Templers*. *Heylin* adds, that the present *Sidon* stands somewhat W. of the old City.

Mount *Lebanon*, says *Cluverius*, begins near *Sidon*, and extends as far as *Cæle-Syria*. *Antilibanus* lies over against it, with a Valley between them, which is *Strabo's* *Cæle-Syria*, and those two Mountains were formerly join'd by a Wall. *Buno* begins *Lebanon* at the Hill call'd the *Face of God* near *Tripoly*, and *Antilibanus* near the Coast of *Sidon*. He ends them at the Mountains of *Arabia* beyond *Damascus*; and at those call'd *Trachonitæ*, where they are join'd by other round Mountains and fruitful Hills. The Breadth of the Valley near the Sea he makes 200 Stadia, or 25 Miles, and the Length of it 50. *Lebanon* was the most famous Mountain in *Phœnicia*, and formerly well planted with Cedars and other Trees, besides Medicinal and fragrant Herbs. It abounds with Quarries of white Marble, and furnish'd Timber and Stones for *Solomon's* Temple. Most of the Beasts us'd in Sacrifice were fatted in its Vallies; and it produced such Store of Frankincense, that *Libanus* and *Thus* became synonymous. The Rivers *Jordan*, *Pharphar* or *Chrysorrhœas*, *Euphrates*, *Lycus*, and *Adonis*, rise in this Mountain. *Dandini* says, 'tis a Ridge of high rocky Mountains, which lie N. and S. 'Tis a good Day's Journey in Breadth, 4 or 5 in Length, and about 6 or 700 Miles in Circuit. By the Industry of the Inhabitants, who have filled up many of the lesser Vallies with Stones or Earth, and continue still to do so, most of it now resembles a fruitful and pleasant Plain, and might easily be cultivated. It abounds with Corn and excellent Wine, Olives, Cotton, Silk, Honey, Wax, Wood, wild and tame Beasts, especially Goats; but there are not many small Beasts, because the Air is very sharp, and it continually snows there during Winter; but they have abundance of fat large Sheep, Boars, Bears, Tygers, Eagles, Pigeons, Turtles, Black-Birds, Partridges, Beccafiques, and all other Sorts of Fowl.

They plough their Vineyards, set their Vines in Ranks at a considerable Distance, and don't support, but suffer them to creep on the Ground. Their Grapes are as large as Plumbs, and of a delicate Taste; so that he does not wonder the *Israelites* were charm'd with the Sight of the Bunches that *Joshua* brought from the *Promis'd Land*. He says, there are rich Mines in those Mountains, particularly of Iron and Silver. There are but few Cedars now left on a rough high Mountain, which they call *Holly* as well as the Trees, that are not above 23 in Number, and never cut down by the Inhabitants, who say, that some *Turks* who attempted it, lost all the Cattle they fed there, by Way of Judgment. There are Trees enough on the neighbouring Mountains for common Use. *Bochart* derives the Name *Lebanon* from the *Hebrew* לבן, that signifies White, because its Tops are always cover'd with Snow. *Venus* had a Temple at *Aphaca* before-mention'd in these Mountains, inhabited by beautiful, but lewd Women, who made it a Brothel-House; and the Devil, to abuse the Credulity of the People, made something like a Star fall down into the neighbouring River or Lake once a Year, which they fancy'd to be *Venus* in quest of *Adonis*. *Cellarius* says, there were fiery Eruptions about this Lake, which might give Occasion to the Fable. *Heylin* says, the *Maronites* who inhabited this Mountain consisted of about 12000 Families: That besides Frankincense, it produces Manna, which the Inhabitants call *Sactar*, and abounds with Cypress, Pines, Olives, Box-Trees, and Furz. *Janson* makes it the highest Mountain in the Country, says 'tis seen at 40 Miles Distance, and is the Northern Boundary of *Palæstine*. *Libanus* and *Antilibanus* are both call'd *Lebanon* in Scripture, and join together at the End of the Valley in Form of an Amphitheatre. These Mountains were so full of Honey which drop'd from the Boughs of the Trees, that the Husbandmen us'd to say, according to *Galen*, that God rain'd Honey from Heaven, and fill'd their Vessels with it every Year. 'Tis probable this might proceed from Multitudes of Bees which hiv'd in the Woods, and fed on the Aromatick Herbs. *Heylin* makes it 150 Miles long, and 700 in Compass. *Bouffingault* alledges, the

the 23 old Cedar-Trees left there have continued since *Solomon's* Time, and perhaps from the Creation. He says, they are as high as a Man can throw a Stone, and so thick, that 6 Men can scarce fathom one of them. They are always green, and preserv'd from Putrefaction by their Gum, Rosin, or thick Oil, which is of a fragrant Smell. They are straight like Fir-Trees, but their Leaves smaller, and Fruit fairer. There's an Altar under each where the *Maronites* say Mass, especially on *Assumption-Day*. They grow upon that Part of the Mountain betwixt *Damascus* and *Tripoly*, and stand in Form of a Cross, at such a Distance from one another, that they take up half a League of Ground. *Monconys* says, the Fruit grows upwards on the Top of them, is like a Pine-Apple, but more beautiful and resinous. The Trees are kept in good Order, and clipped in Form of Umbrello's, with several Stages. He does not think them incorruptible, as some have affirmed; because he found Worms in their Fruit. *Coppin* says, this Mountain produces Alocs, Cotton, and the best Silk in the *Levant*, because of the Purity of its Air. Many of their Villages have pleasant Avenues of Olives and Mulberry Trees, with small Canals form'd by the Streams that run down from the numerous Fountains on the Hills. At the Foot of the Mountain, where the Cedars grow, there's a Cave with a Tomb, suppos'd to be *Joshua's*.

The Jesuit *Dandini*, who was sent to the *Maronites* as Nuncio from Pope *Clement VIII.* in 1599, in the Account of his Mission, which was printed in 1656, gives the following Account of the *Maronites*; That they derive their Name from their Abbot *Maron*, who liv'd in the 5th Century, and was sent by them to *Rome* when the rest of the *Eastern Churches* separated from it; but the Author of the Remarks upon this Relation, printed at *Paris* in 1685, doubts the Truth of this, and thinks *Maronite* to be the Name of a Sect. *Dandini* says, they suffer no *Turks* among them, and have two Deacons chosen on purpose, who venture their Lives and Estates to prevent their mixing with them. They dwell in sorry Villages and mean Houses in and about *Mount Lebanon*; and tho' there be Persons

of Wealth and Quality among them, they affect to seem poor, to avoid the Tyranny of the *Turks*. Their Habit consists of a Turban and Vest, like the other People of the *Levant*, and most of them go barelegg'd, tho' some wear Shooes and Hose like the *Turks*. Their Weapons are Bows and Arrows, Harquebusses, Scymiters, and Daggers. They are of a good Stature, and mild Temper, yet inclinable enough to War, and very much resemble the *Italians*. They use no Tables or Chairs, but sit cross-legged upon Mats or Carpets spread on the Ground; and in this Manner they eat and sleep. Instead of Linen, they use a round Skin, set Bread about the Edges of it, and put their other Victuals in the Middle. They have no Napkins, Knives or Forks, but Wooden Spoons; and when they drink, they send the Glass round; and when they entertain one another, the Master of the House has Work enough to fill their Glasses. The more they drink, the better they are thought of by their Landlord; and they reckon themselves affronted if any Stranger come in and don't eat and drink with them without any Ceremony. When they sleep, they cover themselves with Cotton Clothes. In Contracts, they trust one another's Words, or Witnesses, and sometimes make Use of a plain Writing, for they have no Notaries nor Scriveners. They make great Lamentations for their deceas'd Friends, and dress no Victuals for some Time in the afflicted Family, but are supplied by their Kindred, who condole with them. They shave their Heads, which they never uncover, but let their Beards grow. When they meet a Priest, they kiss his Hand, and receive his Blessing with the Sign of the Cross. The Priests drink first and last at Table, and after he gives Thanks no body drinks more. They make use of Incense when they say Grace before and after Meat; and if any Person of Quality or Dignitary of the Church comes to see them, they always meet them with Incense. When they make any Journey, they constantly go to the Priest for his Prayers and Blessing. Their Women are modest in their Apparel and Behaviour, cover their Faces with a Veil when they meet any Stranger, and avoid him as much as they can. Their Habit is much like that of the

Italians

Italian Women. Some of them wear Bracelets upon their Arms and Legs as the *Turkish Women*. At Church they sit apart from the Men, so as they are not seen by them, and no Man offers to rise from his Seat till all the Women be first come out; so that Uncleaness is very uncommon among them.

Their Priests are very ignorant, and content themselves if they can read and write, and understand a little *Chaldee*, which is to them as *Latin* with us, their own Language being *Arabick*. None of them understand the School Philosophy or Divinity, but such as are bred in their College at *Rome*. They know nothing of Printing, but write with Canes instead of Pens, read from the Right to the Left, as do the *Jews*, and write from the Top to the Bottom of the Page. The *Turks* lay heavy Taxes upon them, and continually extort Money from them, besides their ordinary Tribute, frequently deprive them of their Estates, and make the Heirs of the Deceased redeem them with great Sums. They are govern'd by an Emir under the Grand Seignior, who generally oppresses them so much, that many of the People have abandon'd the Country. Their Church is govern'd by a Patriarch subject to the Pope, says *Dandini*, and under them there are Bishops, who govern the Priests. Their Patriarch and Bishops are chosen out of the Monks, and never marry. Some of their Bishops are only Abbots, have no Cure of Souls, and are only distinguished from the other Monks by a Mitre and Cross when they sing Mass. The other Bishops govern great Churches, and over their Vest have a Purple Robe as low as the Ground, and a large blue Turban upon their Head. The Patriarch wears the same, and extends his particular Jurisdiction over all Mount *Lebanon*; and because it is very large, and in many Places of difficult Access, he has two or three more to assist him. One of them gathers in his Revenues, which are betwixt 3 and 4000 Crowns per Annum. They have three other Bishops at *Damascus*, *Aleppo*, and in the Isle of *Cyprus*, who take Care of the *Maronites* in those Places. The Priests, Deacons, and Subdeacons, are all obliged to marry, except they be Monks; for otherwise they are very jealous of them,

especially if they be young. The Priests are distinguish'd from the others only by a blue Turban, less than that of the Bishops; but the Deacons and Subdeacons go like Laymen.

Their Monks are all of one Order, seem to be the Remains of the ancient Hermits that were so numerous in *Syria* and *Palestine*, and live for the most Part in Caves under great Rocks, wear nothing but a Coat of coarse Cloth ill made, and a black Hood on their Heads. They live on the Product of the Earth, never eat Flesh, and seldom drink Wine. They make no Vows of Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience, but receive Admonitions upon those Subjects when admitted; and tho' they walk about where they please, and stay for several Days together out of their Monasteries, they are seldom or never guilty of Scandal. They are allow'd a Property in their Money and Possessions, and may dispose of them as they please at Death. They likewise change Monasteries when they will, without Permission from their Superior. They exercise no Ecclesiastical Function, but live retiredly by themselves, and are by *Dandini* supposed to have been originally of the Order of *St. Anthony*. They cultivate their own Ground. The chief of them oversee the Labour, and they name their own Abbots. They are very hospitable, and particularly in the Monastery of *Canubin*, where they entertain all Comers, *Turks* as well as others. In their Masses they communicate in both Kinds, and don't use so many Epistles, Gospels, and Collects, as the Papists. They pronounce the Words of Consecration with a loud Voice: They don't kneel at the Elevation, nor at other Times, but only bow their Heads a little, and distribute the Species in a Copper Spoon. At their Canonical Hours, the People as well as the Priests sing altogether. They observe no Popish Fasts but *Lent*, when they don't eat till two Hours before Sun set. They abstain from Flesh, Eggs, and Milk, *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*. They fast 20 Days before *Christmas*, and 15 before the Feast of *St. Peter*, *St. Paul*, and the Assumption of the Virgin. The Bishops confer Orders at all Festivals, and sometimes confer all of 'em upon one Person in two or three Hours Time, and observe

serve particular Ceremonies in ordaining their Arch-Priests. They keep no Holy Water for Baptism, but consecrate it as they have occasion, and either dip or sprinkle the Person three times, the Water being warm'd a little before. They repeat the Words but once when they name the Person. They use no Salt, but anoint the Infant all over. The Godfathers do not hold the Child, but the Priest takes it from 'em. The Priests are all equal in Jurisdiction in Matters of Penance and Absolution, there being no Cases reserv'd to the Bishops or Patriarch. Their Priests must not marry a 2d time, and they work on all their Festivals except the *Lord's-Day*, *Christmas*, *Easter*, the *Ascension* of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*, and the *Assumption*; nor have they the Festivals of the *Trinity* and the *Sacrament*. Their Women, when brought to Bed, abstain 40 Days from coming to Church, according to the Custom of the *Jews*. *Dandini* vindicates them from many Errors they were formerly charged with having imbib'd from the *Greeks*, *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, &c. but the Remarker on his Travels says, they were actually guilty of 'em, till they were brought to renounce 'em by Missionaries from *Rome*; and it appears by his Account, that they have since embraced many of the Popish Errors they knew nothing of before, which are still kept up among 'em by those who are bred in the *Maronite* College at *Rome*.

7. *Sarepta*. *Cellarius* places it between *Sidon* and *Tyre*, about 10 Miles S. of the former, and 16 N. of the latter. *Cluverius* makes it 25 Miles S. from *Tyre*, and 12 N. from *Sidon*. The *Hebrews* call it *Zarephath*, *1 Kings* 17. 9, 10. It was anciently noted for generous Wine, and for the Entertainment of *Elijah* by the Widow, whose Son he restored to Life. *Coppin* says, the *Turks* call it *Sarphen*: 'Tis pleasantly situated on the Side of a Hill about half a League from the Sea, but for most Part ruinous. It lay formerly nearer the Sea; but the Inhabitants removed to this Eminency, to avoid the Ravages of Pyrates. This is said to be the Place from whence the Woman of *Canaan* went, whose great Faith was prais'd by our Saviour. The ancient Christians built a fine Church dedicated to *St. Elias* in the Place where she was cur'd, which was de-

stroy'd by the *Saracens*, and the *Turks* have now built a little Mosque in its Place.

8. *Tyre*, 24 Miles S. of *Sidon*, and 66 W. of *Damascus*, according to *Cellarius*. *Cluverius* makes it 32 S. from *Sidon*, and 95 W. from *Damascus*. *Justin* says, 'twas built by *Sidon*, *Canaan's* Son, after the City of that Name. *Curtius* supposes them both to have been founded by *Agenor*, the Father of *Cadmus*; yet all allow *Sidon* to have been the ancientest; and in *Isaiah* 23. 12. *Tyre* is called the *Daughter of Sidon*; and v. 8. the Merchants of *Tyre* are called Princes, and her Traffickers the Honourable of the Earth. They were powerful in Shipping, and famous for sending Colonies to the remotest Parts of the Earth. It was celebrated by the Poets for the dying of the best Purple. *Cellarius* says, the Heathen Inhabitants sacrificed to *Hercules*, whom *Diodorus* therefore calls *Tyrinus*, and the City was thence call'd *TYRUS ERACLIA* in the Coins of *Caracalla* and *Otacilia*. 'Twas a Roman Colony in the Time of *Severus*, and call'd the Seventh in the Coins of *Geta* and *Caracalla*. 'Tis called in *Hebrew*, *Zor* or *Sor*, from its rocky Situation, as *Heylin* and *Bochart* suppose, and *Syr* or *Sar* according to the *Aramites*, by changing the S into T, *Tor*, *Tur*, or *Tyr*. *Servius*, in his Notes on *Virgil*, says, it was anciently call'd *Sarra*, from a certain Fish call'd *Sar*, which abounds in that Coast. The Inhabitants being skill'd in Arms, could never be expelled by the Tribe of *Asser*. *Bochart* says, there were four Towns of this Name in *Phœnicia*, two in the Continent, and two in Islands. The most famous was that in an Island near *Palætyrus*; but the latter was the most ancient, as appears by the Name: 'Tis that called in *Joshua* 19. 29. a Strong City, lay on the Coast near *Sidon* and *Tyre* in the Island, and was not built till 200 Years after; *Heylin* says *A. M.* 2698, in the Time of *Gideon*. *Homer*, tho' he mentions *Sidon*, says nothing of *Tyre*; and *Bochart* says, 'tis not mention'd in Scripture till the Time of *David*. *Trogus*, *Lib.* 18. says, the *Sidonians* being forc'd out of their City by the K. of *Ascalon*, built *Tyre* the Year before the Ruin of *Troy*, which *Josephus* says was 240 Years before *Solomon* laid the Foundation of his Temple. *Strabo* says, in his Time 'twas equal to *Sidon*. *Curtius*

thus prefers it, and makes it the largest and most famous City of Syria and Phœnicia. When besieg'd by Alexander, 'twas 19 Miles round including Palætyrus, and the Town it self 22 Stadia. Pliny says the same. Hiram, who assisted Solomon with Materials for his Temple, built Temples to Agenor, Jupiter Olympius, Astartes, and Hercules. They had Pillars of Gold, and Monuments of Emeralds, presented by several Kings. The Walls of the Town were 150 Foot high, and they had two Harbours, one that looked towards Egypt, and the other towards Sidon. The Town was so strong, that it could never be subdued by the Tribe of Asser. Bochart rejects the Story of their having 300 Towns upon the Coast subject to them as a Fable. It was the Birth-place of Porphyrius the Philosopher, of Maximus the Platonick, and of Ulpian the Lawyer. Buno says, Palætyrus was 30 Stadia E. from Tyre. Luyts says, this once mighty Emporium is now so decay'd, that there is only an old Castle and about 15 Houses left in it. M. Bouffingault says, it stands 7 or 800 Paces in the Sea, and that there is a Causeway or Mole about 50 Paces broad from the Land to the Town, which is now a confus'd Heap of Ruins, has neither Church nor Christians, but only a Turkish Mosque. He adds, that it was formerly 6 Leagues in Circuit. It has at present two Gates, and 10 Marble Pillars. Without the E. Gate there's a ruin'd Church, pretended to be the Place where our Saviour teaching the People, a Woman cry'd out with Admiration, *Blessed is the Womb that bore thee*. About a quarter of a League from the Town Northward there's a Sepulchre, thought to be the Tomb of Origen. The Soil of Tyre is sandy, barren, and unpleasant. Coppin says, the least of the Harbours lies in the Bosom of the Town, and is shut up with Iron Chains. It formerly serv'd for the Gallies, but at present for small Boats, since the Emir Faccardine stop'd it up for the same Reason he did that of Sidon. The largest is on the N. Side of the Town, which defends it from the S. Winds. About three quarters of a League from the Town are the Wells of living Water, mention'd by Solomon in the Canticles. They are great Fountains retain'd in large Basins; and tho' they are call'd Wells, yet they are

neither deep in the Ground, nor made like ordinary Wells. They are three in Number, at a little Distance from one another. Their Walls are solid, cemented with good Mortar, and rais'd about 20 Foot high. One of these Conservatories is greater by half than the two others, about 30 Foot in Diameter, and filled with Water within two Foot and half of the Edge, where it runs out by an Opening on the Side of Tyre about the Breadth of two Men, but notwithstanding is always brim-full. The two others, which are less, discharge themselves after the same Manner, and every one of 'em drives a Mill at some Paces Distance. Here are also the Remains of an Aqueduct, which carried these Streams into a great Basin near Tyre; but now, after a little Winding in the Plain, they run into the Sea. These Springs rise in the neighbouring Hills of Antilibanus. M. Thevenot says, there are abundance of broken Pillars, and some entire ones. The Mariners rub their Backs against one which stands near a Chappel of the Greeks, because they say it cures all Pains in the Back and Reins. The chief Ruins are a Temple, which is almost entire on one Side, with a fair Stair-Case not much defaced. Mr. Sandys says, the Purple Dye, for which this Town was so famous, proceeded from a Shell-Fish, in whose Jaws there was a Vein which contain'd that precious Liquor. They had a gaping Oyster call'd *Bout*, which they kept for that Purpose long out of Water, into which, when the Purple Shell-Fish puts his Tongue, he was caught by the sudden closing of the Oyster, and drawn out: But the Purple-Fish is no more to be had, either because they are extinct, or that the Places they frequented are possess'd by the barbarous Mahometans. Julius Pollux says, this Dye was found out by a Dog, whose Lips, by eating the Fish call'd *Conchilis* or *Purpura*, were died of that Colour. Heylin says, the Town was of a circular Form, and first subdued by Nebuchadnezzar King of the Chaldeans, who join'd it to the Continent; but by the Fury of the Sea, and the Labour of the Tyrians at the End of 70 Years, it was again divided, and recover'd its former Grandeur about 200 Years after. Alexander the Great having filled the Channel with the Stones and Rubbish of Old Tyre, and rammed them

in with Beams brought from *Lebanon*, made a Passage for his Army, and so overtop'd the Walls with Towers and Frames of Timber, that at last he took the Town, put all to the Sword that resisted, and caus'd 2000 to be hang'd in cold Blood along the Shore for a Terror to others. *M. Coppin* says, it was so wealthy when *Alexander* took it, that there were 1000 Families whose Servants fetch'd Water from the Wells in Vessels of Gold. *Heylin* says, this was foretold by the Soothsayers who follow'd *Alexander's* Camp, from a Dream which he had not long before, wherein he fancy'd he was sporting with Satyrs; for the Diviners making two Words of one, alledg'd that *Σαλὺς* was *Σα Τύς*, i. e. *Tua Tyrus*, Your Tyre. Recovering her former Glory afterwards, she became a Confederate of the Romans, and was endow'd with the Privileges of their City. In the Times of Christianity it was the Metropolitan See of the Province, their Archbishop dependant on the Patriarch of *Antioch*, and had under him 14 Suffragan Bishops. The *Saracens* took it A. C. 636; but 'twas retaken in 1124 by *Guarimund* Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, in the Reign of *Baldwin II.* with the Help of the *Venetians*. In 1187, it was in vain attempted by the victorious *Saladine*. The *Tyrians* defended Christianity with wonderful Constancy till about the Year 1290, when they were subdued by the *Turks*. 'Tis now subject to the Emir or Prince of *Sidon*, and is still one of the best Havens in the *Levant*.

9. *Ptolemais*, lies (according to *Cellarius*) about 32 Miles S. of *Tyre*, and 62 N. of *Jerusalem*. *Claverius* places it above 5 German Leagues S. of the former, and 25 N. of the latter. The *Sansons* make it 28 Miles S. of *Tyre*, and 80 N. of *Jerusalem*. *M. de l'Isle* places it 12 German Leagues from the latter, *Moll* 24 Miles S. of *Tyre*, and 93 N. of *Jerusalem*. 'Tis called *Accho* in *Judges* 1. 31. From hence *Cellarius* thinks came the Name of *Ace* in Prophane Story, where 'tis fabled, that *Hercules* was heal'd of the Wounds he receiv'd from the *Lernaean* Hydra, the Greek Word *Ἀκέραι* signifying to heal. It was afterwards call'd *Ptolemais* from *Ptolomy* King of *Egypt*, and at length made a Roman Colony by *Claudius*. which is prov'd, says *Cellarius*, from a Coin of *Caracalla*, stamp'd

with the Image of *Serapis*, who was worship'd here, and inscrib'd *COL. PTOL.* This Town was assign'd to the Tribe of *Asher*; but because the City was well fortified, and the Inhabitants skill'd in War, the *Israelites* could never get Possession. *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas Maccabeus*, was treacherously invited into this Town, and slain by *Tryphon*. *Monconys* says, it was formerly the Seat of the Knights of *Malta*, but now ruin'd. The Haven is still good. Its chief Traffick consists in Ashes and Cotton. *Maundrel* says, since the *Turks* possess'd it, it has recover'd something of the old Hebrew Name, and is call'd *Acca* or *Acra*. 'Tis very advantagiously situated betwixt a fertile Plain on the N. and E. and on the S. has the *Mediterranean*, and a Bay which extends from the City as far as Mount *Carmel*. There are now nothing but Ruins, except a large Can for the *French* Factors, a Mosque, and a few Cottages. 'Twas formerly encompass'd on the Land-side by a double Wall, defended with Towers at small Distances; and without the Walls were Ditches, Ramparts, and Bastions, faced with hewn Stone. The chief Ruins within the Walls are, 1. A Cathedral Church dedicated to *St. Andrew*. 2. That of *St. John*, the Tutelar Saint of this City. 3. The Convent of the Knights Hospitallers, and near it the Palace of the Grand Master of that Order. There is a large Stair-Case and Part of a Church still to be seen. 4. The Remains of another Church, formerly belonging to a Nunnery, the Abbess and Nuns of which, when the *Turks* took the Town, cut and slash'd their own Faces in a frightful Manner, to prevent the Lust of those Infidels, who in Revenge put them all to the Sword. There are the Ruins of many other Churches, Palaces, Monasteries, Forts, &c. for above half a Mile together, which look as if every Building in the City had been contrived for War and Defence. *Mr. Coppin* says, 'tis the Residence of a *Turkish* Aga, who commands over *Tyre*, and has 100 Men to attend him. They wear red Caps pointed, without a Turban, adorned with Cocks Feathers, and some of them wear a Tyger's Skin over their Shoulders. There's a Ditch in the middle of the Town, which formerly divided it into the Town and City. The Haven is very

dangerous, because 'tis open to the Southerly Winds. *Heylin* says, it was a Refuge for the Kings of *Persia* in their Wars against *Egypt*. It was in the Form of a triangular Shield, and had anciently a strong Tower, that had been the Temple of *Beelzebub*, and was therefore call'd the Castle of Flies. It had a Light always burning on the Top to direct Mariners. The *Saracens* took it from the Christians in the Time of *Omer*, but yielded it afterwards with the rest of *Syria* to the *Turks*. The Christians, *Anno* 1004, in the Reign of *Baldwin I.* Brother to *Godfrey of Bullon*, retook it with the Assistance of the *Genoese*, who had the third Part of the City for a Reward. The *Turks* under *Saladin* recover'd it in 1187; but were forc'd to yield it 4 Years after to the Western Christians under *Philip of France*, and *Richard I. of England*. 'Twas afterwards defended by the Knights of *Malta* till 1291, when besieged by 150000 *Turks*, it was forced to yield; and the latter fearing the Christians might again attempt it, raz'd it to the Ground.

Mount *Carmel* lies in that Part of *Phœnicia*, says *Cluverius*, call'd *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*. It was here the Prophet *Elias* convinced the Worshipers of *Baal* by a Miracle, and at the Brook *Chisbon* just by he slew the 450 false Prophets. *Monconys* says, this Mountain is very much infested by Robbers. At one End of it there's a Convent built in a Grotto, almost at the Top of the Mountain, from whence there's a delightful Prospect of the Sea and adjacent Country. Within two Leagues of this Convent is the Place where they say *Jesabel* was thrown down headlong, and eaten by Dogs. About 8 or 10 Leagues further in this Mountain, is the Place where *Elias* caus'd Fire to descend from Heaven upon his Sacrifice. At the Foot of the Mountain, beginning at the Gulph which is over against *Acre*, lies the Village *Caifas*, about a Musket-shot from the Sea, where the Whale is said to have cast out *Jonah* upon the Land. There was formerly a fine Church there, now in Ruins, as is also a Convent on the Top of the Mountain. Near this Place is the Cave where *Elias* hid himself for fear of *Jesabel*, and from whence he saw the small Cloud arising out of the Sea when he

pray'd for Rain. On the Side of the Mountain near *Acre* there's a fine Grotto 20 Paces in Length, and 12 in Breadth, with a flat Roof, where 'tis supposed *Elias* received *K. Ahab* when he came to consult him. *Thevenot* says, the *Turks* have now a little Mosque here. The Convent above-mentioned is held by bare-footed *Carmelites*, who observe a very severe Rule; for besides their being removed from all Conversation, they neither eat Flesh, nor drink Wine; and if they need it, must go to another Place. They suffer no Pilgrims to eat Flesh in their Convent, but allow 'em to drink Wine. This Convent is so small, that 3 Monks may fill it; nor could they subsist without Alms from the *French Merchants* of *Acre*. They had possessed this Place 30 Years (when *Thevenot* was there) after they had been driven out of it when the Christians lost the *Holy Land*. They pretend, that the Fountain which *Elias* made to spring out of the Ground about a League from the Convent yielded no Water during their Banishment. Close by this Fountain are the stately Ruins of the Convent of *St. Brocard*, sent thither by *St. Albert* Patriarch of *Jerusalem* to reform the Hermits, who liv'd there without Rule; and near it lies a Garden with Stones resembling Melons, which they say *Elias* turned into Stones, because the Gard'ner refus'd him a Melon. *Thevenot* adds, that Mount *Carmel* and the adjacent Country is commanded by a Prince called *Emir Tharabee*, who gives 12 Horses Annually to the Grand Seignior. *Mr. Sandys* says, the Habitation of *Elias* in this Mountain was after his Death converted into a Synagogue, from whence they have a Tradition, that Oracles were given by God. *Suetonius* says, That *Vespasian* consulting the God of *Carmel*, was assur'd by him, that he should be successful in all his Undertakings. From hence they say proceeded the Order of the *Carmelites*, as Successors to the Sons of the Prophets left there by *Elias*. *Luyts* distinguishes this Mountain from another of the same Name in *Judah*, where *Nabal* dwelt, and says, it lay in the Western Parts of the Tribe of *Issachar*, (tho' some comprehend it within the Bounds of *Zebulon*) and runs out a pretty Way into the *Mediterranean* like a Promontory. He says, 'tis a high Moun-

Mountain full of Groves, cover'd with Olive-Trees, Vines, several Sorts of Fruit-Trees, and fragrant Herbs.

The History of the Kings of Syria, from Howel, Cluverius, Heylin, Helvicus, Isaacson, &c.

HISTORY is silent of the Kings of *Damascus* or *Syria*, who are suppos'd to have been Tributaries to the Kings of *Sobah*, till they assisted *Adadexer* against *David*, who totally routed them, garrison'd their chief Towns, and made them his Servants, as *2 Sam.* 8. 5, 6. Neither do the Scriptures discover who was then their King; but *Josephus* says, it was *Adad*, who constantly adhering to *Adadexer* in his Wars, was at last slain with him in the Battle mentioned *2 Sam.* 10. 18. and tho' the Text is silent as to their Deaths, yet *Josephus* supplies us out of the Records. But we have the concurrent Testimony of the Scriptures, that *Rezin*, one of *Adadexer's* chief Commanders, usurp'd his Master's Kingdom, and reign'd in *Damascus*, (*1 Kings* 11. 23, 24) which then came to be the Royal City of *Syria*. Nevertheless the Scriptures mention no other Kings of *Syria* after this, except those that reign'd in *Damascus*, who soon swallowed up the petty Kingdoms of *Gessur*, *Ish-Tek*, *Rehob*, and *Sobah*.

The Kings of Syria or Damascus.

1. **A D A D** I. an Ally of King *Sobah*, in whose Quarrel he was defeated and killed by *David*, *A. M.* 2903.

2. **R E Z I N** I. of whom see *1 Kings* 11. 23, 24.

3. **A D A D** II. a Native of *Idumæa*, descended (as some think) from *Adadexer*, and others from *Adad*. He fled for fear of *David* to *Egypt*, where he married *Taphnes* the Queen's Sister; but returned to his own Country as soon as he heard that *David* and *Joab* were dead. After this, he obliged *Rezin* to fly from *Damascus*, and reign'd there himself.

4. **H E Z I O N**.

5. **T A B R I M O N**, *Hezion's* Son, *2 Kings* 15. 18.

6. **B E N H A D A D** I. the Son of *Tabrimon*. He

assisted *Asa* King of *Judah* against *Baasha* K. of *Israel*.

7. **B E N H A D A D** II. Son of the former. He was unfortunate in two Attacks upon the *Israelites* under K. *Ahab*, once by a Salley at the Siege of *Samaria*, and another Time at *Aphec*, where he was routed and taken.

8. **B E N H A D A D** was succeeded by his Captain-General *Hazael*, whom *Elisha*, by the Divine Appointment, anointed K. of *Syria*, that he might be an Instrument of God's Vengeance upon *Benhadad*, whom *Hazael* afterwards slew. He prov'd a Thorn in the Sides of the *Israelites* as well as his Predecessors, and made an Attempt upon *Judah* in the Reign of *Joash*, till the Treasures of the Temple bribed him to desist.

9. **B E N H A D A D** III. *Hazael's* Son, whom *Joash* King of *Israel* defeated in three pitch'd Battles.

10. **B E N H A D A D** IV. his Son.

11. **B E N H A D A D** V. Son of the former.

12. **B E N H A D A D** VI. his Son. In the Reign of one of these three Kings, but 'tis not certain in which, *Jeroboam* conquer'd *Chamath* and *Damascus*, *2 Kings* 14. 28.

13. **R E Z I N** II. Son of the last *Benhadad*, and the last King of *Damascus*. He sided with *Pekah* K. of *Israel*, and obliged *Ahaz* K. of *Judah* to call to his Assistance *Tiglath Pileser* K. of *Assyria*, who took and beheaded *Rezin*, and won *Damascus*, whereby the Kingdom of *Syria* became united to the *Assyrian* Empire *A. M.* 3210.

Thus the *Syrians* were made subject to the Kings of *Babylon* and *Assyria*; and when the *Medes* and *Persians* overturn'd that Empire, were annex'd to their Dominions, till the Battle near *Issus* in *Cilicia* betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, when the former winning the Victory, after he had made himself Master of *Tyre*, took Possession of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, which afterwards devolved to his Successors.

The *Macedonian* Kings of *Syria* were,

1. **S E L E N C U S**, for his Victories surnamed *Nicanor*, the first King of this House. Some say, he begun his Reign *A. M.* 3654, but *Helvicus* in 3638. He was at first Governor of *Chaldæa*; but fearing the Power of *Antigonus*, then Lord of *Asia*, who was Competitor with the *Egyptian*, *Ptolomy* after
O 2 *Alexan-*

Alexander's Death for the Kingdom of *Syria*, he fled from *Babylon* to *Egypt*, where he was made Admiral to *Ptolomy*; by whose Assistance, and the Esteem of the People, he again made himself Master of *Chaldea*, and of all the *Persian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*. He ventur'd a Battle with *Antigonius* at *Ipsus* in *Ionia*, wherein the latter was slain, and his Army defeated. Then being Lord of all *Asia*, he passed into *Europe*, where he routed the Army of *Lysimachus*, who fell likewise in Battle. Seven Months after this he was treacherously murder'd going to *Macedonia*, which he had chose for his Residence, by *Ptolomy Ceraunus*, to whom he had formerly been a good Friend. 'Tis was about 40 Years after the Death of *Alexander*, and the 30th of *Seleucus*, according to some; but others say in the 23d of his Reign, and the 73d of his Age. He had two Wives, *Apamea* and *Stratonice*: The last he afterwards gave in Marriage to his Son *Antiochus*, because a Physician told him, his Son was incurably sick of a Fever for Love of his Mother-in-Law, and he then made him likewise King, reserving to himself only that Part of *Asia* which lay between *Euphrates* and the *Mediterranean*. 'Tis said, he had an Anchor marked upon his Thigh, and that his Posterity had the same.

2. *Antiochus*, Son of *Seleucus Nicanor*. Some say, he begun his Reign *A. M.* 3685, *Helvicius* in 3668. He was surnamed *Soter*, i. e. Saviour, for repulling the *Gauls*, who over-run a great Part of *Asia*, when they were called in by *Mithridates K.* of *Bithynia*. He married his Daughter *Apamea* to *Maga* King of *Cyrene*, and Brother to *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, upon whose Sollicitation he broke his Treaty with the *K. of Egypt*; but was prevented from invading him by the Forces which *Ptolomy* sent to *Asia*. He likewise waged War with *Eumenes K.* of *Pergamus*, but with little Success. He built two Cities called *Apamea*, from his Mother and Wife. He murder'd one of his Sons, and left the other to succeed him. He died in the 19th Year of his Reign, the 2d of the 129th Olympiad, *A. M.* 3742.

3. *Antiochus Soter* was succeeded by his Son *Antiochus II.* whom the *Milesians* impiously surnamed *God*, because he rescued them from the Tyranny of *Timarchus*. *Hel-*

vicius says, he began to reign *A. M.* 3689, others in 3704. In his Time the *Persians*, who had been obedient to *Seleucus* and his Successors, rebelled under the Conduct of *Arfaces*, and having slain *Agathocles* the Governor of these Countries, he expelled the *Macedonians*. About the same Time *Theodotus*, Governor of 1000 *Bactrian* Cities, likewise revolted, and, in Imitation of them, the People of the *East* withdrew themselves from the *Macedonian* Yoke. He wag'd War with *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, whose Daughter *Berenice* he had married, having divorc'd his Wife *Laodice*, by whom he had two Sons, viz. *Seleucus* and *Antiochus*. 'Tis thought this Marriage was pointed at by the Prophecy of *Daniel*, *Cap. II.* where he says, *That the Daughter of a Southern King should come to a King of the North for Peace, but should not retain the Strength of her Arm, neither should the first or his Arm stand.* For when *Philadelphus* died, *Antiochus* took *Laodice* again, who fearing her Husband's Inconstancy, poison'd him in the 15th Year of his Reign.

4. *Seleucus II.* surnamed *Callinichus* from his Victories, and *Pogon* from his Beard, succeeded his Father *Antiochus II.* *A. M.* 3719, as some say, but others in 3704. In his Reign the Cities of *Asia*, abhorring the Barbarity of his Mother *Laodice*, who had not only besieg'd, but also put to Death Queen *Berenice* and her Son, revolted and sided with *Ptolomy*, who marching into *Syria*, killed *Laodice*, took *Cælo-Syria*, *Syria*, and *Seleucia*, and over-run almost all *Asia* as far as *Bactra*. *Seleucus* fitted out a Fleet to recover his Towns, but it was destroyed in a Tempest. By this Misfortune his Cities were so moved with Pity, that they voluntarily return'd to his Obedience: Upon which he declar'd War against *Ptolomy*, but was obliged to flee to *Antioch*, where he call'd *Antiochus* his Brother to assist him. He was glad of the Opportunity to possess himself of the Kingdom; and from his invading of Countries, and taking of Places, was surnamed *Hierax*, i. e. the Hawk. *Ptolomy* having no Mind to engage both at once, made Peace with *Seleucus* for 10 Years: Upon which *Antiochus* marched with the *Gauls* against his Brother, and conquer'd him. The *Gauls* supposing *Seleucus* had been slain, were resolved to extinguish his whole

whole Race; upon which they rose against *Antiochus*, but were at length gained by his Gold. *Arfaces*, upon the News of *Seleucus's* Misfortune, compleated the Revolt of the *Parthians*, and after a few Years routed *Seleucus*, and settled himself in the Government, from whence rose the *Parthian* Kingdom. *Seleucus* being thus outed of his Dominions, died by a Fall from his Horse, having reign'd about 10 Years, as some say, and others 20, in the 98th Year after the Death of *Alexander*, the 3d Year of the 138th Olympiad, A. M. 3779, according to some; but *Helvicius* and others say about 3704.

5. *Seleucus III.* was the eldest Son of *Calinicus*, and called *Ceraunus*, or *Thunderer*. During his Father's Troubles, *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus* had possessed himself of *Asia* on this Side *Taurus*. This *Ceraunus* succeeding his Father in the 7th Year of *Antigonus Dofon*, A. M. 3739 say some, but *Helvicius* says in 3724. He set about recovering that Part of *Asia*, but was poison'd by *Apaturus* of *Galatia* and *Nicanor* before he had govern'd 3 Years. *Achæus* his General, Nephew to Queen *Laodice*, punished the *Parricides*, and managed Affairs so well, that he reduced all *Asia*, and was so well beloved, that he might have easily mounted the Throne; but he would not wrong *Antiochus Seleucus* his Brother, whom he invested with the Royal Character, tho' but a Stripling.

6. *Antiochus III.* for his Victories surnamed *Magnus*. While his Brother *Seleucus Ceraunus* liv'd, he resided in the Upper Provinces; but in the 15th Year of his Age, A. M. 3742 according to some, and in 3726 say others, he went to *Babylon* to take the Administration upon him, and made *Achæus* Governor of the Country he had lately recover'd, *Molon* Governor of *Media*, and *Alexander* of *Persia*. But the overgrown Power of *Hermias*, a Court-Favourite, which was owing to *Antiochus's* Marriage with the Daughter of *Mithridates* K. of *Cappadocia*, was so resented by *Molon* and *Alexander*, that they rebelled, but were easily quashed by *Antiochus*, who also put *Hermias* to Death for conspiring to poison him. At the same Time *Antiochus* had begun War with *Ptolomy Philopater*, because the *Egyptians* had possessed *Cælo-Syria* ever since *Evergetes* rescu'd

his Sister *Berenice*. *Achæus* usurp'd the Regal Diadem and Title at this Juncture; but *Antiochus* renew'd the War with more Vigour than ever, took *Seleucia*, and several other Places, till the Progress of *Achæus* oblig'd him to make a Truce with *Ptolomy*, in order to a Peace, which could not be effected; so that the War broke out again, when *Antiochus* reduc'd other Cities. About a Year after *Ptolomy* advanc'd to *Gaza* with 70000 Foot, 5000 Horse, and 73 Elephants. *Antiochus*, with 62000 Foot, 6000 Horse, and 102 Elephants, met and defeated him; but pursuing him too far, his own Army was routed, and he himself forced to fly. *Cælo-Syria* immediately surrender'd to *Ptolomy*, and *Antiochus* sued for Peace; which *Ptolomy*, notwithstanding the fair Opportunity he then had of turning out *Antiochus*, did readily agree to. Then *Antiochus* had more Leisure to mind *Achæus*; and making a League with *Attalus*, block'd him up in *Sardis*, where he was taken and put to Death. He afterwards reduc'd several Countries in the Upper Provinces and on this Side *Taurus*, and admitted *Arfaces* the *Parthian* into his Friendship. After the Death of *Ptolomy*, *Antiochus* and *Philip* of *Macedonia* conspired against the young King, and took *Judea*, but soon lost it again. He also invaded the Territories of *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*; but in Obedience to the *Romans*, desisted. He afterwards attacked the *Græcian* Cities in *Asia*, tho' the *Romans* order'd him to forbear. To fortify himself by Alliances, he married his Daughters to *Ptolomy*, *Antiochus* and *Ariathres* K. of the *Cappadocians*. The *Romans* solicited for a Peace, but in vain, for he join'd with the *Ætolians*, who, after the Conquest of *Philip*, fell from the Alliance of the *Romans*, and became their Enemies. When he passed into *Greece*, he married a Woman of a mean Birth, where he suffer'd his Army to be enervated by Luxury. At the Streights of *Thermopylae*, he was routed by *Glabrio* the Roman Consul, who forced him to fly to *Ephesus*, and took *Phocis*, *Beotia*, and *Eubæa*. *Antiochus* after this was frequently beaten at Sea, forc'd to raise the Siege of *Pergamus*, and upon the Approach of *Scipio* abandon'd *Lyfsmachia*, and by that Means gave the Consul a free Passage into *Asia*. The Battle of *Magnesia* in *Lydia* follow'd, to which

Antio-

Antiochus brought 300000 Foot, and as many arm'd Chariots, besides store of Elephants, if we may credit the *Roman* Historians; but rejecting *Hannibal's* Advice, and listening to evil Counsellors, he was vanquish'd by 4 Legions of the Enemy, and for Peace compelled to quit all *Asia* on this Side *Taurus*, and to pay 15000 Talents for the Charge of the War; but they continued him in the Possession of his other Dominions. After this Disaster, *Cicero* tells us, he used to say, That he was obliged to the *Romans* for freeing him of too great a Charge, and leaving him the moderate Compass of his own Kingdom. Two Years after he made a Progress into the Upper Provinces, and sack'd the Temple of *Jupiter Belus* in *Elymais*; upon which the Inhabitants slew him and his whole Army. Some say, that after he crossed the *Taurus*, he was killed by his own Companions for beating them in his Drink. He died about the 36th Year of his Reign, the 2d of the 148th Olympiad, 185 Years before Christ, *A.M.* 3818, in the Consulship of *M. Æmilius Lepidus*, and *C. Flaminius*.

7. *Seleucus* IV. surnamed *Soter*, and *Philopater*, succeeded his Father *Antiochus Magnus* in the 35th Year of *Philip* K. of *Macedonia*, *A.M.* 3778 say some, but according to *Helvicus* in 3763. He kept at Home for fear of the *Romans*, and after 12 Years was treacherously murder'd by *Heliodorus*. He left one Son, an Infant, call'd *Demetrius*, whom he sent to *Rome* as an Hostage instead of his Brother *Antiochus*.

8. *Antiochus* IV. being returned from *Rome*, was placed upon the Throne of his Father, *Attalus* and *Eumenes* having first obliged *Heliodorus* to resign his Pretensions: Upon which the *Syrians* stiled him *Epiphanes*, i. e. *Illustrious*; and others *Epimanes*, i. e. *Mad*, in Allusion to his frantick Gestures. Some say, he began his Reign *A.M.* 3790, but *Helvicus* in 3775. He declar'd himself Guardian to his Nephew *Ptolomæus Philometor*, who had lately succeeded his deceas'd Father, and made 4 Journies into *Egypt* to get the Administration into his own Hands, in which he was prevented by the *Romans*, who requir'd him to depart from *Alexandria* as he was going to block it up; and when he demanded Time to consider of the Proposal, *Lenas*, one of the *Roman* Ambassa-

dors, made a Circle of Sprigs round him, and told him, he must give his Answer before he step'd out of it, which frighted him to a Compliance. After this he took *Jerusalem*, put 80000 *Jews* to Death, and sold as many, because they expressed a great deal of Joy upon a false Report of his being dead. The rest of his Story, with Relation to the *Jews*, is in the first Book of the *Maccabees*. He died of a horrid Distemper; his Body rotted and crawled with Worms, so that no body could endure the Stench of it. This happen'd the 12th Year of his Reign, about *A.M.* 3775, or (as some say) 3841.

9. His Son *Antiochus* V. surnamed *Eupater* by the *Syrians*, because of his Father's Virtues, succeeded in the 9th Year of his Age. The unsuccessful Wars of his Lieutenant *Lysias* and of himself against the *Jews* are recorded in the History of the *Maccabees*. He was dethron'd about 3804, and slain by the Soldiers.

10. *Demetrius*, Son to *Seleucus Philopater*, succeeded about 3804, but *Helvicus* says in 3788. He was surnamed *Soter*, and endeavour'd to get the Favour of the *Romans*, from whom he had fled to seize the Kingdom. He was very cruel to the *Jews*, as appears by the last Book of the *Maccabees*, blasphem'd in the Temple, and was killed in Battle by his Successor, whom he had formerly defeated; at which the *Jews* were so much rejoiced, that they order'd the Day of his Death to be kept in perpetual Remembrance.

11. *Alexander Bala*, by some called *Epiphanes*, because he pretended to be the Son of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, succeeded after he had routed *Demetrius*, *A.M.* 3814, says *Heylin*. *Howel* makes it 3854, *Helvicus* 3798. He married *Cleopatra*, Daughter to *Ptolomy Philometor*, who assisted him with Troops. He became very dissolute, and quarrelled with his Father-in-Law, who invaded him, took his Daughter from him, and, as some say, made himself K. of *Syria*; but others, that he gave his Daughter to *Demetrius*, who succeeded *Alexander*; and being Son to *Demetrius* I. establish'd him on the Throne of his Father. After he had been defeated by *Jonathan*, the High-Priest of the *Jews*, he took Part with *Alexander*, who after his Rout fled to *Aba*, where his Head was cut off,

off, and sent to *Ptolomy*, who receiv'd it with great Joy, but died about 3 Days after of a Wound he had received in his Head.

12. *Demetrius II.* succeeded *Alexander* in 3819; *Helvicus* says 3804, and *Foy Vaillant* 3803. He was surnamed *Nicanor* or *Nicator*, agreed with *Jonathan* the High-Priest, and confirmed him in his Dignity. *Demetrius* being cruel to his own Subjects, *Tryphon*, one of *Bala's* Generals, brought his old Master's Son *Antiochus* from *Arabia*, and declar'd him King about 3821, *Helvicus* says 3809; so that he is reckon'd the 13th King. *Tryphon* routed *Demetrius*, and oblig'd him to retire to *Seleucia*. After this, *Tryphon* usurp'd the Crown for himself, is reckon'd the 14th King, cut off all that oppos'd him, and among others *Jonathan* the High-Priest. He made away with his young Master *Antiochus* by the Help of his Physicians; but in the mean time *Simon*, Brother to *Jonathan* the High-Priest, took *Jerusalem* by Storm, made an Alliance with the *Romans*, who confirm'd him in his Dignity of High-Priest, and invested him with Royal Power, *Demetrius*, who fled to *Seleucia*, made War with the *Parthians*, by whom he was taken. *Cleopatra*, Wife to *Tryphon*, being disgusted with her Husband, because she was inform'd, that he was married to the *Parthian* King's Daughter, made his Army rebel against him, so that he was dethroned.

15. *Antiochus VII.* Brother to *Demetrius II.* being offer'd the Crown by *Cleopatra*, on Condition of marrying her, accepted it about 3827; *Helvicus* says 3811, *Vaillant* 3831. He was surnamed *Sedetes*, expelled *Tryphon*, and made him fly to *Apamea* his own Country, where he was murder'd. *Antiochus* made War with the *Jews*, who defeated one of his Generals; but *Simon* the High-Priest being traiterously murder'd by *Ptolomy* the Son of *Abub*, his own Son-in-Law, *Antiochus* besieg'd *Jerusalem*, which he took and dismantled, and laid the *Jews* under a heavy Tribute. *Antiochus* obtained several Victories over the *Parthians*, and reduced some Provinces which had revolted. *Arsaces* the *Parthian*, to give *Antiochus* a Diversion, set *Demetrius* at Liberty, and killed *Antiochus* in Battle. *Arsaces*, after his Victory, thought to have recall'd *Demetrius*; but he was too quick for 'em in making the

best of his Way to *Syria*, and soon repossessed himself of the Kingdom; but the *Antiochians* being his Enemies, solicited *Ptolomy Physcon* to send them another Prince.

16. *Alexander II.* succeeded in 3843; *Isaacson* says 3824, *Vaillant* 3821. He was suborned by *Ptolomy Physcon*, some say *Evergetes*, to call himself the Son of *Alexander Balas* above-mentioned; whereas he was Son to an *Egyptian* Merchant, and called *Zebenna*. With *Ptolomy's* Troops he defeated *Demetrius* near *Damascus*, who being rejected by his Wife *Cleopatra* and her Sons, fled to *Tyre*, and taking Sanctuary in the Temple, was killed there by her Intrigues, A. M. 3881, according to *Howel*. *Cleopatra* had two Sons by *Demetrius*; the eldest, *Seleucus*, she put to Death for aspiring to the Crown without her Leave. In the meantime the counterfeit *Alexander* behav'd himself so well towards his Subjects, that he gained their Esteem: But *Ptolomy* accusing him of Ingratitude, he set up *Antiochus*, the younger Son of his Sister *Cleopatra*, against him, gave him his own Daughter *Tryphena* to Wife, and assisted him with Troops, by which Means he routed and killed *Alexander*.

17. *Antiochus VIII.* succeeded in 3845, *Helvicus* says 3826. He was surnamed *Gryphus*, because of his crooked Nose. His Mother *Cleopatra*, who design'd to keep the Government in her own Hand, offer'd him a poison'd Draught, which he having discover'd, made her drink it up, by which she died. He reign'd peaceably for 8 Years, till *Antiochus Cyzicenus*, Son to his Mother by *Antiochus Sedetes*, turn'd him out of *Syria*; but he returned next Year, possessed himself of half the Kingdom, and was at continual War with his Brother till the 26th (some say the 29th) of his Reign, when he was killed by Means of one *Heraclion*.

18. *Seleucus V.* Son to *Gryphus*, succeeded about 3874, cut off his Uncle *Cyzicenus*, after he had reign'd 18 Years; but was worsted by *Antiochus Pius*, Son to *Cyzicenus*, who turn'd him out of *Syria*, and oblig'd him to retire to *Cilicia*, where he was burnt alive by the *Mopsatae* for demanding Money of them. His two Sons, *Antiochus* and *Philip*, reveng'd his Death by destroying *Mopsuestia*; but were defeated by *Antiochus Pius*. *Antiochus* was drown'd in his Flight, and

and *Philip* put in for the Crown; but *Ptolemy* gave it to *Demetrius*, the 4th Son of *Gryphus*, which occasioned a bloody War betwixt the two Brothers; but *Philip* prevail'd, and forced *Demetrius* to fly into *Parthia*. The *Arabians* and *Jews* taking Advantage of those Divisions, subdued a great Part of *Syria*: Upon which the *Syrians* chose *Tigranes* for King, he being the greatest Prince of his Time in those Parts, and having conquer'd *Media*. *Antiochus Pius* being expelled, lurk'd in *Cilicia*, and *Selene* his Wife and two Sons are said to have reign'd in *Phœnicia* and Part of *Lower Syria*, till she was taken and put to Death by *Tigranes*, who govern'd *Syria* 14 Years. He marry'd the Daughter of *Mithridates*, with whom he engaged against the *Romans*; but was twice defeated by *Lucullus*, and yielded to *Pompey*, who succeeded him, retaining only *Armenia* to himself, and left *Syria* to the *Romans*, which put an End to that Kingdom, some say in 3881, others in 3887, and some in 3890. After the Defeat of *Tigranes*, *Antiochus Asiaticus* or *Comagenus*, Son to *Antiochus Pius*, was by universal Consent invested with the Government of *Syria* for 4 Years, and petition'd *Pompey* that he might be restored to the Throne of his Ancestors, but was refus'd it; *Pompey* having told him, That he could not entrust that Country in the Hands of such as were not able to defend it, and so it was reduced into the Form of a *Roman Province*.

The Government of this Country, after it came under the *Romans*, was reckon'd one of the greatest Honours in the Empire, their *Præfect* or Governor having almost a Royal Jurisdiction over all the Provinces on this Side *Euphrates*, and a Superintendency over *Egypt*. This embolden'd *Niger*, Competitor to *Severus*, and *Præfect* of *Syria*, to dispute the Empire with him. And afterward *Cassius Syrus*, a Native of this Country, being made *Præfect* of it, was almost too hard for *Mark Anthony*. This occasion'd the Senate to enact, That no Man should afterwards have any Civil or Military Command in the Province where he was born, lest by the Affection of the People he should be enabled to set up for himself, and throw off the *Roman Yoke*. The Fear of this made *Adrian* propose to make *Phœnicia* a separate Province from *Syria*, and

obliged *Constantine* not only to separate *Phœnicia*, but to divide *Syria* it self into 4 distinct Provinces, but all subject to the *Præfectus Prætorii Orientis*, or Governor of the *East*. To keep this wavering People in awe, the *Romans* constantly maintain'd 4 Legions here, besides other Auxiliaries, which enabled the Governor of the *East* to cast the Ballance when any Competition happen'd for the Imperial Purple. The Governor of the *East* continued for most Part in the same Power, during the Empire of *Constantinople*. When that declined, this Country was first subdued by *Haumer*, the 3d Caliph of the *Saracens*, about 636, and afterwards by *Tangrolipix* the *Turk*, who gave *Aleppo* and *Damascus* to *Melech* and *Ducat*, two of his Kinsmen of the *Selzuccian* Family, with the adjacent Countries, and whatever they could conquer from the Caliph of *Egypt*, but on Condition that they should still be Homagers to the Crown of *Persia*, and this laid the Foundation of the *Turkish Kingdom of Damascus*.

The Turkish Kings of Damascus.

1. **T**HE first of those Kings were *Melech* and *Ducat*, who subdued all *Syria*, Part of *Cilicia*, and some neighbouring Provinces, about 1075.

2. To him succeeded him that was Sultan of *Damascus* when the Christians conquer'd the *Holy Land*. We have no certain Account of his Name, but he bravely defended his City and Territories, and discomfited and slew in Battle *Roger* the *Norman Prince* of *Antioch*.

3. *Noradine*, Son-in-Law to this Sultan, succeeded about 1146. He was a great and brave Prince, and so generous, that when his Officers advis'd him to attack *Jerusalem* during the Funeral of *Baldwin III* he answered, That he ought to have a just Regard and Compassion to the Sorrow of the Christians, who had lost such a King as was not to be equalled in the World.

4. *Melechfala* his Son succeeded about 1175, when very young, and was dispossessed by

5. *Saladine* Sultan of *Egypt*, who succeeded about 1176. This Prince defeated the *Parthians*, who under their Prince *Cacobed*,
Uncle

Uncle to *Melechfala*, came to assist him, and afterwards recover'd *Jerusalem* and all the *Holy Land* from the Christians.

6. *Eladel* or *El-Aphzel*, *Saladine's* eldest Son, succeeded about 1199, and exchang'd his Dominions with his Brother *Elaziz* of *Egypt*, who was therefore reckon'd their 7th King.

8. *Saphradine*, Brother to *Saladine*, who murder'd *Elaziz*, with 7 other of his Nephews, and usurp'd the Kingdom.

9. *Corradine*, Son or Nephew to *Saphradine*, succeeded, and at his Death left the Kingdom to *Saphradine*, the only Son of *Saladine*, that had escaped being murdered by his Uncle. Soon after this *Haalon* the *Tartar*, about 1262, took the K. of *Damascus* Prisoner, and put him to Death before their Walls, because they would not surrender. He afterwards storm'd the City, and put an End to the Reign of that Family in *Syria*, as the *Mamelucks* had done 17 Years before in *Egypt*, by murdering their Princes. They likewise subdued the Kingdom of *Damascus*, and held that City till it was taken by *Tamerlane* in 1400 with a prodigious Army. He put all the *Mamelucks* and their Adherents to Death, and is said to have built 3 Towers with their Skulls. After *Tamerlane's* Decease, the *Mamelucks* recovered *Syria* and *Egypt*, and kept *Damascus* till 1516, when *Selimus I.* defeated the Sultan of *Egypt* in the Neighbourhood of *Aleppo*: Upon which *Damascus* surrender'd, to avoid being plundered, for it was then very rich, and drove a great Trade. Since that Time, *Syria* and *Egypt* have continued under the Power of the *Turks*.

An Account of the Kings of Tyre.

THIS City having been long the Seat of a distinct Kingdom, we shall give a brief Account of their Kings as follows:

1. *Abibalus*, according to *Josephus*, Contemporary with the Prophet *Samuel*, and supposed to be the Son of *Syrach*, the Author of *Ecclesiasticus*, the best of the Apocryphal Books.

2. *Saron* his Son, who was compelled to pay Tribute by *David*, says *Eusebius*, and

is supposed to be the Person complained of by that Royal Prophet, *Pf. 83. 7.* where he mentions the Inhabitants of *Tyre*.

3. *Hiram*, who succeeded about 2837, was Confederate with *David* and *Solomon*, and assisted them with Materials for Building.

4. *Baleastartus*, who succeeded about A.M. 2955.

5. *Abdustartus* his Son about 2962. He was slain by the 4 Sons of his Nurse, the eldest of whom usurped the Crown for 12 Years.

6. *Astartus*, Brother to *Abdustartus*, recovered the Crown about 2983, and reigned 12 Years.

7. His Brother *Astorinus* or *Athorinus*, says *Theophilus* of *Antioch*, succeeded about 2995.

8. *Phelles* his Brother succeeded in 3004, and was slain in his 8th Month.

9. *Ithobolus*, supposed to be *Ethbaal* mentioned 1 *Kings* 16. 31. the Father of *Jezebel*. He was Son to *Asterinus*, and Uncle to *Phelles*, whom he murder'd and succeeded, being at that Time High-Priest to the Idol *Ashtaroth*, a Dignity next to that of King.

10. *Badexar* or *Bazar*, Son to *Ethbaal*, succeeded about 3037, and reign'd Six Years.

11. *Mettimus* or *Matginus* his Son succeeded about 3043, and is supposed to be Father to *Elisa*, whom *Virgil* calls *Dido*.

12. *Pygmalion* his Son succeeded about 3052. He slew *Sicheus*, his Sister *Elisa's* Husband, to get his Riches; but his Sister, and her Brother *Barca*, escap'd with 'em to *Africk*, where she founded *Carthage*. From this *Barca* came the noble *Barcine* Family, of whom *Hannibal* was descended. We have no Account of *Pygmalion's* Successors till *Eleuleus* descended from one of his Sons. He defeated the Fleet of *Salmanassar* the *Assyrian* in the Port of *Tyre*.

13. *Ithobalus* or *Ethbaal II.* succeeded. 'Tis supposed to be he who is mentioned *Ezekiel* 28. and boasted that he was wiser than *Daniel*, and valued himself on his Riches. In his Time *Nebuchadnezzar* took *Tyre* after a Siege of 13 Years, and subjected it to his Empire, according to *Ezekiel's* Prophecy. *Baal*, Son to *Ethbaal*, succeeded but as a Vassal to the *Babylonians*.

P

After

After his Death, the *Tyrians* had no more Kings, but Judges or Titular Princes sent them from *Babylon*. After the Fall of that Empire, *Tyre* and *Sidon* recover'd Breath; but joining with the *Persians*, were subdu'd by *Alexander*. They came under the House of *Seleucus* till that Family was routed by the *Romans*, and *Tyre* continued under the Eastern Empire, till over-run by the *Saracens*, *Mamelucks* and *Turks*. They were governed a considerable while by Tributary Princes, call'd *Emirs* of *Sidon*, one of whom, *Man-Ogli*, was very rich, made a brave Resistance to *Ibrahim* Basha in 1585, and obtained Peace by his great Presents. One of those *Emirs*, since the Year 1600, reduced 5 neighbouring *Emirs*, and kept his Seat at *Tiberias*. Another of them was expelled by the *Turks*, and fled to *Italy*, from whence he return'd, recover'd *Damascus*, and threaten'd to make the *Christians* once more Masters of *Jerusalem*. This happen'd about 1623; but since that Time, we have heard little of his Successors.

We must refer the curious Reader, who would know more of the Antiquity, Language and Colonies, of the *Phœnicians*, to the 2d Part of *Bochart's Geographia Sacra*, entitul'd, *Canaan*, where he will find that learned Man's Arguments to prove, that the *Phœnician* Tongue was a Dialect of the *Hebrew*; and that after the *Phœnicians* were dispossessed of most of their Country by the *Israelites*, they planted Colonies in most Part of the then known World, particularly in the Islands of the *Archipelago*, *Egypt*, many Places of *Asia Minor*, *Greece*, and the neighbouring Islands, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Italy*, *Spain*, the *Baleares Isles*, *Africa*, *Gaul*, *Britain*, *Thule*, which *Bochart* supposes to be *Schotland*, *Syria*, *Arabia*, and on the *Persian Gulph*: That the *Greeks* had the Use of Letters from them, and likewise many of the Arts; of which, because the *Greeks* improved them, they were reckon'd the Inventors. There are also many Things in *Bochart's Canaan* which help to the better understanding of the *Hebrew*, of the Holy Scriptures, and of the Fables made use of by the ancient *Greek* and *Latin* Writers, which we cannot insist upon.

P A L Æ S T I N E,

IS bounded on the N. by *Antilibanus*, which divides it from *Syria* and Part of *Phœnicia*; on the E. by Mount *Hermion*, which parts it from *Cælo-Syria* and *Arabia Deserta*; on the S. by Part of *Arabia Petraea*; and on the W. by the *Mediterranean* and Part of *Phœnicia*, says *Sir W. Raleigh*. *Cellarius* makes *Palestine*, *Chanaan* and the *Holy Land* synonymous. *Ptolomy* makes it the same with *Judea* in a large Sense; and *Tacitus* says, it lay over against *Egypt* on the S. The Reader may find more of the Opinions of the Ancients about its Extent in *Cellarius*. 'Twas first called the *Land of Chanaan*, from *Chanaan* the Grandson of *Noah* by his Son *Cham*, who inhabited it with his 11 Sons. It was called the *Land of Promise*, because God promised it to *Abraham* and his Seed; and the *Land of the Hebrews* or *Israelites*, when conquer'd by the Sons of *Jacob* or *Israel*; and *Judea* and *Jewry*, from the Tribe of *Judah*. *Palestina* is deriv'd from the celebrated Nation of the *Palestini* or *Philistines* who dwelt on the Coasts, from the Frontiers of *Egypt* to *Cæsarea*, *Stratonis* or *Dor*. After the Death of our Saviour, it was called the *Holy Land* by the *Christians*, because 'twas the Theatre of the greatest Part of the Scripture History, and the Place where the glorious Work of Man's Redemption was accomplished.

The *Jews* or *Israelites*, its principal Inhabitants, were generally of a middle Stature, and strong of Body, but very fickle both to God and Man. They were idolatrous to Excess till after the Captivity of *Babylon*, and as superstitious afterwards with Respect to their Sabbath. They were at last divided into *Jews*, *Hellenists*, *Proselytes*, and *Samaritans*, all pretending a Right to this Country, tho' they did not all dwell in it.

1. The *Jews* were the Native *Israelites*, who liv'd for most Part in their own Country, adher'd to the Law of *Moses*, and the whole Canon of the Old Testament from *Genesis* to *Malachi*, and perform'd their Worship in *Hebrew*, so called from *Heber* the Son of *Selah*, one of the Ancestors of *Abraham*, from

from whom both the Language and the People descended.

2. The *Hellenists* were *Jews* by Birth, but dispersed thro' the Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, and call'd *Hellenists*, because they read the Scriptures in the *Greek* Translation of the *Seventy*, and performed their Worship in the same Language. They were as exact in the Observation of their Sabbath, and all other Ceremonies of the *Mosaic* Law, as those of *Palæstine*.

3. The *Proselytes* were not *Jews* by Birth, but conformed to their Customs, and embraced their Religion. They were of two Sorts, one called the *Proselyti Portæ*, or of the Gate; and the other *Proselyti Fœderis*, or of the Covenant. The first were instructed by the *Jews* in the Hopes of a future Life; but without conforming to the Law of *Moses*, were only ty'd to what the *Hebrew* Doctors call'd the Precepts of the Sons of *Noah*, because supposed to be given by that Patriarch to his Sons when they came out of the Ark. These Precepts enjoin'd them to live uprightly, to praise the Name of the Lord, to abstain from Idolatry, Lust, Robbery, Murder, and from eating the Flesh of any Beast dismembred while alive. Tho' these were permitted to come to the Temple for Worship, yet being reckon'd unclean because not circumcis'd, they had only the outermost Court assigned them, which was called the Court of the *Gentiles*, or Unclean; nor would the ordinary *Jews* converse with them. They are called in the *Acts of the Apostles* *ἑθνημαῖοι*, or Worshipping *Gentiles*. The *Proselytes* of the Covenant entirely conformed to the *Jewish* Ceremonies, were looked upon as adopted *Jews*, enjoy'd the same Privileges, and were bound by the same Obligations in Things Humane or Divine. These are call'd in the New Testament simply *Proselytes* without any Addition.

4. The *Samaritans* inhabited a great Part of this Country, yet were not so much *Jews* as the *Proselytes*. We shall give a larger Account of them in the Description of *Samaria*.

The natural *Jews* were also divided into the Sects of the *Esseni*, *Sadducees*, *Scribes*, *Pharisees*, *Herodians*, and *Ganlonites* or *Gallileans*.

1. The *Esseni* or *Essenes* were so call'd, as some think, from *Asca*, which signifies to do, because they labour'd with their Hands. Others say from *Asa*, which signifies to cure Diseases, because they studied Physick. Authors are not positive about their Origine. The first time they are mention'd is about 150 Years before Christ, according to *Josephus*. They differed little from the old *Pythagorean* Philosophers, for they profess'd a Community of Goods, Abstinence from lawful Pleasures, forbade Oaths and Wine, ascrib'd all to Fate, used only inanimate Sacrifices, and some of them prohibited Marriage. There is no Mention of 'em in the New Testament, perhaps because they were then inconsiderable. Dr. *Heylin* thinks, *St. Paul* alludes to their Tenets in *1 Tim.* 4. 3 and *Coloss.* 2. 16. but the first Text evidently relates to Deceivers that were to come, and not then in being. They usually lived together in a sort of Colleges, in which they had their Oratories. None were admitted into their Society without bringing all their Substance into the common Treasury, and undergoing 3 Years Probationership. The Curious may see more of 'em in *Philo's* Treatise *De Vita Contemplativa*.

2. The *Sadducees*, so called either from *Sadoc*, who liv'd in the Time of *Alexander the Great*, and was thought to be their Founder, or from the *Hebrew* Word *Sadoc*, which signifies Justice, because the *Sadducees* pretended to be so exact in their Dealings, that they would justify themselves before God's Tribunal. They are said to have risen from a Mistake of *Antigonus*, otherwise a learned Man, who taught, That Men ought not to serve God as Servants do their Masters, meerly for Reward; That there was no Recompence after Time, Resurrection, or World to come; and that there were no Angels or Spirits as we may perceive from *Matth.* 22. 3. *Luke* 20. 27. and *Acts* 23. 6, 8. These were their most capital Errors; but they had other Tenets not mention'd in the Scriptures, as, the ascribing all Things entirely to a Man's Free-will, and not to Fate or Predestination; that the Soul was to be annihilated at Death; rejected all manner of Traditions, and allowed no other Scripture than the *Pentateuch*. But, tho' they differed in some Points, yet they agreed in their

their Opinions from the *Scribes* and *Pharisees*, they united with them in opposing the Doctrine of Christ.

3. The *Scribes* derive their Original from hence: When the *Israelites* return'd from their 70 Years Captivity in *Babylon*, they had so much forgot the *Hebrew*, by being so long us'd to a Mixture of *Hebrew* and *Chaldee*, or that now called *Syriac*, that they could not understand the Scriptures when read to them by *Ezra*; so that he was oblig'd to employ Persons learned in that Tongue to expound it to them. And from hence came the *Scribes*, who for this Cause were called *Scribes of the Law*, *Ezra* 7. 6. *Doctors of the Law*, *Luke* 5. 17. and *Lawyers*, *Luke* 7. 30. their Office being to expound the Law to the People, and not much unlike the Canonists in the Church of *Rome*, or our Divinity Readers in Colleges. This Order was mightily esteemed by the *Jews*, because of their zealous Endeavours to preserve the written Word from Corruption and Contempt. It appears from *Matth.* 23. that they concurred with the *Pharisees* in most of their Superstitions.

4. The *Pharisees* were a Sect of the most mischievous and malicious Persons of their Time. They derived their Name from *Pharez*, to separate, because they were first separated to the Study of God's Law. 2. From other Men, by a Pretence to a stricter Life. Thus the *Pharisee* thanked God he was not as other Men, or as the Publican. 3. They separated from the Company of others, whom they thought impure, call'd them Sons of the Earth, and objected to Christ, that he kept Company with Publicans and Sinners. Besides, they wore a particular Habit, and us'd to say, *Vestis Populi Terræ sunt conculcatio Phariseorum; i. e.* The Habits of the Sons of the Earth are despised by the *Pharisees*. They affected a particular Severity in their Countenances, and had Phylacteries broader than others, which were Parchment Scrolls bound about their Heads and Hands, with the Decalogue writ in 'em, because 'tis said *Deut.* 6. 8. *And they shall be as Frontlets between thine Eyes.* They began with the *Sadducees* about 300 Years before Christ. They hold, That the Soul of righteous Persons passed from one into another at Death, which gave Rise to their different Opinions about Christ men-

tioned *Matth.* 6. 14. They minded not the written Law, but adher'd chiefly to unwritten Traditions. They us'd frequent Washings, as a Point of great Sanctity, especially when they came from Market, and before they sat down to Meat, *Mark* 7. 4. and *Matth.* 15. 2. The Reader is referred to the 24th of *St. Matthew* for a particular Account of them. In Process of Time, by their Pretences to Sanctity, and other Arts, they grew to such a height, that they became a Terror to Kings and Emperors. *Josephus*, in his *Antiq. Lib.* 13. *Cap.* 23. tells us, That *Alexandra* durst not enter upon the Government during the Minority of her Children, till she left all Things to the Disposal of the *Pharisees*, and promised to do nothing without their Advice, which she was forced to do, because she found that the ill Success of her Husband's Government was chiefly owing to the Sights and Affronts he put upon that rising Faction, who were so prevalent, says the same Author, *Lib.* 19. *Cap.* 18. that whatever they published concerning the Regal or Pontifical Power, was taken for granted without further Question.

5. The *Herodians* were not so much a Sect of Religion, as a Faction in the Court, and were called *Herodians*, because they consulted more the Grandeur of *Herod*, than the Good of their Country; and depending upon *Herod's* Fortune, as his did on that of the *Romans*, they earnestly solicited the paying 'em Tribute, that *Herod* might thereby ingratiate himself with his Masters; and 'tis probable, that some among them seeing the Magnificence and Power of *Herod*, entertained a Belief that he was the long expected *Messiah*.

6. The *Gaulonites* or *Galileans* were also a State Faction opposite to the *Herodians*, and so nam'd from *Judas* a *Gaulonite*, as *Josephus* calls him from the Place of his Birth; and *Galilean* by *Gamaliel*, *Acts* 5. 37. from the Place of his Abode. He perswaded the *Jews* to refuse this Tribute, told them it only discover'd and heighten'd their Servitude, and that they ought to know no Lord but the God of Heaven. Upon this they took Arms, in which they perish'd, with their Leader. He had some Disciples in *Jerusalem* and *Samaria*; but most of his Followers lived in *Galilee*. *Pilate* is said in *Luke* 13. 1.

to have mingled the Blood of these *Galileans* with their Sacrifices.

We must refer the Reader to the Holy Scriptures for an Account of what ought to have been the Religion of the *Jews*, both under the Old and New Testament. The primitive State of their Church after our Saviour's Death is to be found in the Acts and Epistles of the Apostles. Many of the Ancients say, St. James the Son of *Alphaeus*, commonly call'd our Lord's Brother, was their first Bishop. If any such Thing as a Primacy or Precedency were allowed to Churches by the Christian Institution, that of *Jerusalem* could not be disputed; but the Scriptures being silent on that Subject, we are not to wonder that the Ancients differ'd in Opinion. When *Jerusalem* was destroyed by the *Romans*, *Cæsarea* became the Capital of the Country; and when the Bishops began to dispute Precedency, he of *Cæsarea* was esteemed to be superior to the Bishop of *Jerusalem*, tho' he was allowed the Rights of a Patriarch in his own Diocese, which were the three *Palæstines*, according to the Council of *Chalcedon*.

The best Description of the ancient State of this Country is that of *Moses*, *Deut.* 8. where he says, 'Tis a Land of Brooks and Waters, of Fountains and Depths, that spring out of the Vallies and Hills; a Land of Wheat and Barley, and Vines and Fig Trees, and Pomegranates, of Oil, Olive, and Honey; a Land wherein was Bread without Scarceness, whose Stones were as Iron, and out of whose Hills were dug Brasses.

Bleau says, the Length of the Holy Land, from Mount *Lebanon* on the N. where stood the City of *Dan*, to *Beersheba* and *Judah*, is 240 *Italian* Miles; and the Country beyond *Jordan*, from the Sea of *Galilee* to the Brook of *Arnon*, is 54. The Breadth of it, from the Fountains of *Jordan* to the *Mediterranean* Sea, is 54 Miles; but from the Lake *Sirbonis*, now *Stragnone*, formerly call'd the Brook of *Egypt*, which lies near *Gaza* on the S. thro' the Wilderness to Mount *Seir* and the *Dead Sea*, is 103 *Italian* Miles. *Moll* places the Length from the Borders of *Egypt* to those of *Syria* betwixt Lat. 31 and 35. according to which the Length is 198 Miles; and betwixt Long. 57 and 59. according to which the greatest Breadth is about 120 M. *Sanfon* the Father and Son

place it S.W. and N.E. betwixt Long. 67. 40. on the S. and Long. 67 and 68 on the N. and betwixt Lat. 30. 50. and 33. 40. So that the greatest Length according to them is 180 Miles, and the greatest Breadth about 120 betwixt *Arabia Deserta* and the *Mediterranean*. Mr. *Sandys* makes it 140 Miles long from *Dan* to *Beersheba*, and 50 broad; but this Breadth must be understood of the N. Parts. *Heylin* makes the Country inhabited by the *Israelites* 200 Miles long, and 80 broad, places it between the 3d and 4th Climates, and says, the longest Day is 14 Hours 15 Min. *Bleau* says, the Air is very temperate, so that they are never troubled with excessive Heats or Colds. The Soil is naturally fruitful and fat, so that it needs no manuring with Dung or Lime, and is easily plough'd with one Yoke of Oxen. It produces Roses, with many other Flowers and sweet-smelling Herbs, of its own Accord; and their Corn is so good and sweet to the Taste, that Travellers prefer the Bread of *Jerusalem* to all others. It abounds with Pulse of all Sorts. They have few ordinary Apples or Pears, but have other Sorts of Fruit in Plenty, which may be call'd perpetual, because before the old Fruit be ripe, the new is in the Bud on the same Branch, which is very delightful to the Eye; and with these Buds they make excellent Pickles. They make delicate Sweetmeats of their Citrons, and their Apples of *Paradise*, which grow like Bunches of Grapes, are of a yellow Colour, and sometimes 100 of them as big as Eggs hang in a Cluster. The Skin is thick; but when par'd off, the Fruit is of an excellent Taste. The Tree which bears them lasts only two Years, when it dries, and young ones spring from its Root. Its Leaves are as long as a Man, and two of 'em serve to wrap one round. *Bleau* thinks the proper Name of this Tree to be *Mauza* or *Musca*. They have likewise abundance of excellent Vines, and would have more, did not the *Mahometans* destroy them in many Places. They bring forth three times a Year, and their best Wine is about *Bethlehem*. They abound likewise with Figs, Pomegranates, Oranges, Melons, Cucumbers, Lemons, Olives, Dates, and other Sorts of Fruit. They have many Cotton Trees, Sugar Canes, Turpentine Trees, Cedars, Cypresses, and other Trees

that produce Balsam. They have great Quantities of Manna and Honey. Their Mountains are perpetually green, and they have many fine Meadows; yet in most Places the Country is desolate. They have numerous Herds of Camels, Dromedaries, Mules, Horses, Asses, Bears, Lions, Leopards, Harts, Does, Goats, and abundance of Hares, Rabbits, Partridges, Thrushes, Quails, Pheasants, Pigeons, and Turtles. There are many Princes who possess the several Parts of this Country by Hereditary Right, from whom the Grand Seignior has a vast Tribute, besides what is exacted from Christian Pilgrims. Most of those Princes are of *Arabian* Extract, and called by the common Title of *Emir*.

The chief Rivers of this Country are, 1. *Kedron* or *Cedron*. *Luyts* says, 'tis a Rivulet which runs betwixt *Jerusalem* and *Mount Olivet*; and passing thro' the Valley of *Jehosaphat* and the Plains of the Desert, runs Westward into the *Dead Sea*. 'Tis chiefly remarkable for *K. David's* passing it when he fled from *Absalom*, our Saviour's doing the like when he went to his Passion, and that on its Banks also *Asa* King of *Judah* burnt his Mother's Idols, and *Josiah* the Vessels which were made for *Baal*. 2. *Zared*; and, 3. *Naphthea*, which rise out of the Hills of the Tribe of *Judah*, and fall into the *Mediterranean*. 4. *Arnon*, now called *Adramelech*, a little River of *Judaea* beyond *Jordan*. It springs from a Hill of its own Name, and having water'd the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, falls into the *Mare Mortuum*. 5. *Jabot* or *Jabbok*, frequently mention'd in Scripture, rises in the Mountains of *Galaad*, and runs into *Jordan*. 6. *Hernon*, which issues from the Hills so named, and likewise falls into *Jordan*. 7. *Jordan*, call'd by the *Hebrews* *Jarden*, and now *Scheriah*, or *the Law*, the most pleasant and largest River of *Judaea*. It rises, says *Luyts*, with a double Stream in *Galilee*, at the Foot of *Antilibanus*, 4 Miles above *Cesarea Philippi*, from two Springs named *Jor* and *Dan*, at a little Distance from one another. These two Streams joining at *Cesarea Philippi*, make up the *Lesser Jordan*. Hence running S. and dividing *Upper Galilee* from *Trachonitis*, it passeth thro' the Lake *Samochonites*, or the Waters of *Meron*. Then it runs into the Sea of *Galilee* by the Towns of *Caper-*

naum and *Chorazin*, where 'tis called the *Greater Jordan*, flows between *Perea* on the E. and *Samaria* and the N. of *Judaea* on the W. At length, dividing *Judaea*, it enters the Lake *Asphaltites*, where some say 'tis swallow'd up in that pestilential Gulph; but *Bleau* says, according to the present Inhabitants, it flows thro' the Lake without mixing, and afterwards runs under Ground, and disburthens it self in the *Fretum Mequitatum*. *Heylin* says, the Fountains *Jor* and *Dan*, from which this River seems to rise, take their Source from *Phiala*, a Well at the Foot of *Antilibanus*, about 24 Miles from the Fountains. 'Tis, says he, a River of more Fame than Length, Breadth or Depth, running from N. to S. almost in a straight Line to the *Dead Sea*, where it ends its Course, not navigably deep, nor above 10 Yards over where broadest, shadowed on both Sides with Poplars, Tamarisk Trees, and Reeds of several Sorts, with some of which the *Arabians* make Darts, Javelins, and Arrows, and Pens to write with. Passing along, it makes two Lakes, the one in *Upper Galilee*, by the Ancients called *Samachonitis*; the other in the *Lower Galilee*, about 100 Furlongs in Length, and 40 in Breadth, called the Sea of *Galilee* from the Country, the Lake of *Tiberias* from a City of the same Name on its Banks, and the Lake of *Genesareth* for the same Cause; which Lake it runs thro' with such a rapid Stream, that it preserves it self distinct from the Waters of it both in Taste and Colour; and finally, having run thro' the Plains of *Jericho*, it finishes its Course in the *Mare Mortuum* or *Dead Sea*. *Janssonius* says, the River having at last forced its Stream through this Lake, is swallow'd up by a great Vortex or Abyss, and adds, 'tis about 100 Miles long. *M. Thevenot* having seen it, says, 'tis half as broad at *Jericho* as the *Seyne* at *Paris*; that 'tis muddy, and full of Fish. *Mr. Maundrel* says, the Plain by which he passed to *Jordan* is barren, produces nothing but Samphire, and other Marine Plants; and the Ground is so impregnated with Salt, that in such Places where the Rain or other Water had stagnated, he found Crusts of Salt upon the Surface of the Ground. Within a Furlong of the River, he saw the Ruins of a Church and Convent dedicated to *John the Baptist*, near the Place

Place where he is supposed to have baptiz'd our Saviour; and there are some Marks where the River had formerly overflowed its Banks near it. After passing the outermost Bank, where it overflows, he went about a Furlong on a level Strand before he came to the proper Bank, which is so cover'd with Bushes and Trees, that there is no seeing the River till one comes to it. In these Thickets, Lions and other Wild Beasts harbour; and being washed out by the overflowing of the River, gave Occasion to that Allusion, *Jer.* 49. 19. and 50. 44. *He shall come up like a Lion from the Swelling of Jordan.* He says, it was 20 Yards broad there, above a Man's Height in Depth, and so rapid, that there was no swimming against the Stream. *Thevenot* says, the Greeks and other Christians go in Procession to this River on Holy Monday under a strong Guard of *Turks*, to preserve them from the *Arabs*, for which they pay great Sums. They perform their Devotions on its Banks. Both Men and Women bathe in the River, have its Water poured on their Heads in Memory of our Lord's Baptism, wash their Linen in it, and carry off Water in Jars and Bottles, with Mud, Earth, and Sticks, which they keep as Relicks. The Bushes are full of Nightingales, and other Singing Birds; which make a very melodious Harmony.

Bleau says, the Water of the Lake of *Genesareth*, thro' which *Jordan* runs, is very clear, wholesome and grateful. It abounds with many Sorts of Fish of an excellent Taste and Shape. *Thevenot* says, 'tis 12 M. long, and 5 broad, but the Fishery neglected, because of the heavy Tribute impos'd on it by the *Turks*.

The Lake *Asphaltites* or the *Dead Sea*, in which *Jordan* is suppos'd to be swallowed up, *Bleau* makes 120 Miles long from S to N. and 70 broad from E. to W. *Mr. Maundrel* agrees almost with the same Dimensions. He confutes the Story that the Vapours of it kill Birds which attempt to fly over it, for he saw the contrary; nor does he believe that it kills Fishes. It abounds with Bitumen, which is gather'd on its Shores, exactly resembles Pitch, and can scarcely be distinguish'd from it, but by the Sulphurousness of its Smell and Taste. *Bleau* says, 'tis made use of for Shipping,

and heals Ulcers and Wounds. *Mr. Maundrel* says, the Water of the Lake is very clear, salt to the highest Degree, and extreme bitter and nauseous. He swam in it, and found it bore up his Body with an uncommon Force; but says, it's a Fable that it buoys Men up to the Top when they wade as deep as their Navels. For those call'd the Apples of *Sodom*, which are said to grow on its Banks, look fair to the Eye, and are nothing but Dust within, he takes it to be likewise a Fable, for he could neither see nor hear of them, nor was there any Trees near the Lake proper to bear them. He could perceive none of the Ruins of *Sodom*, *Gomorrhah*, and the other Cities that formerly stood here, nor any Smoke ascending from the Lake; but says, he was informed by the Father, Guardian, and Procurator of *Jerusalem*, who were Men of Sense and seeming Probity, that they themselves, and several *French* Men, had seen the Ruins of Pillars, and of other Buildings there, when the Water was low. 'Tis sometimes very much swelled by Rains, and the Snow that melts from the Mountains. The Guides told 'em, That on a Cape at the W. Side of the Lake, there's Part of the Monument into which *Lot's* Wife was transformed still remaining; but he gives no great Credit to it. He found on the Shore a sort of black Pebbles; which being held in the Flame of a Candle, soon burn, and issue a Smoke with intolerable Stench. They lose of their Weight, but nothing of their Bulk, when burnt. The neighbouring Hills are full of these Stones, which, when polish'd, look like black Marble, and are us'd instead of it. The Lake is enclos'd on the E. and W. with very high Mountains. On the N. it receives *Jordan*, and is bounded by the Plain of *Tricho*. On the S. the Country is plain, and the Lake extends beyond the Reach of the Eye. 'Tis sometimes call'd the *Sea of the Desert*, because there are several on the W. and S. Sides of it. In the neighbouring Plains he perceiv'd a strong Scent of Honey and Wax, and Multitudes of Bees sucking the Salt Weeds produced here. He saw likewise Thorny Bushes with small Leaves, that bear a Fruit which resembles a green Walnut. The *Arabians* call it *Zaccho-ne* They bray the Kernels in a Mortar, put them in scalding

scalding Water, and skin off the Oil, which rises to the Top. They take it inwardly for Bruises, apply it outwardly for green Wounds, and prefer it to the Balm of *Gilead*. He found it by Experience to be a very healing Medicine.

One of the chief Mountains of *Palæstine* is *Hermon*. Authors differ about the Situation of it, or whether there be two of 'em, one on the Borders of *Galilee*, and another about the Fountains of *Jordan*. *Lightfoot* thinks there is none such on the Borders of *Galilee*, and that the Mistake was occasion'd because *Tabor* and *Hermon* are mention'd together, *Pf.* 89. 13. But it does not follow, tho' they are jointly mention'd in the Text, that they join together. *Cellarius* observes, this Mountain had several Names, and particularly that 'tis called *Sion* or *Sihon* in *Deut.* 4. 48. but that it must not be confounded with Mount *Sion* at *Jerusalem*. It appears by *Deut.* 3. 9. that *Hermon* was called *Sirion* by the *Sidonians*, and *Shenir* by the *Amorites*; and by the 8th Verse, that it was one of the Boundaries of the *Bashanites* and *Amorites*. Profane Authors include it under the Name of *Libanus* and *Antilibanus*, with which it joins on the E. beyond *Jordan*, according to *Rabbi Gimchi*. Its true Situation is on the Borders of the *Amorites*, who were drove out by the Tribe of *Manasseh*, *Joshua* 11. 17. *St. Jerome* says, there was a famous Heathen Temple on the Top of it. 'Tis likewise call'd *Baal-Hermon*. Some divide it into *Major* and *Minor*; but *Cellarius* thinks what they say of the *Lesser Hermon* seems to be very uncertain. *Mr. Maundrel* says, he and his Company were sufficiently taught by Experience what the *Psalmist* meant by the Dew of *Hermon*, their Tents being as wet with it as if it had rain'd all Night. He saw this Hill and Mount *Tabor* Eastward after he had passed the River *Kishon*, which was then low and inconsiderable. It swells exceedingly by Rains which fall down from the Hills in Torrents, as he thinks it did when it ruin'd *Sisera's* Army, *Judg.* 5. 21. *Heylin* says, That *Hermon* is a Ridge of Hills call'd by different Names in different Places. They begin at the E. Point of *Antilibanus*, and run S. They are call'd *Alfadamas* where they border on *Cæle-Syria*, and where they begin to part the Country of *Trachonitis* from *Arabia De-*

serta. They are call'd *Hermon* in Scripture, and further *S. Gilead* or *Galaad*, &c. *Strabo's Trachonitæ*. They are thought to be the highest Part of Mount *Libanus*, and so we are to understand the Words of *Jeremiah*, *Cap.* 22. v. 6. *Thou art Gilead unto me, and the Head of Lebanon*. It had the Name of *Gilead* from the Heap of Stones laid there by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be witness of the Covenant betwixt them, *Gen.* 31. 27. the Hebrew Word signifying an Heap of Witnesses. One of the highest Tops of it is call'd *Amana*, *Cantic.* 4. which some mistook for *Amanus*, a Branch of Mount *Taurus*, that divides *Syria* from *Cilicia*. By these Hills, and the main Body of *Antilibanus* on the N. and the Mountains of *Phœnicia* and *Idumæa* on the W. *Palæstine* is in a manner encompassed with a natural Fortrefs; the Passes in many Places being so narrow as scarce to afford Room to a single Traveller. The other Mountains of *Palæstine* we shall describe in their proper Places.

The first Division of *Palæstine* we meet with is into the Countries possessed by the *Philistines*, *Perizzites*, *Hittites*, *Jebusites*, and others of the Sons of *Canaan* on this Side *Jordan*; the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and *Amorites*, on the other. For the rest of the Inhabitants, the Boundaries of all of 'em, and the 33 Kings destroyed by *Moses* and *Joshua*, we refer to *Joshua*, Chapters 12, 13. and for the Division of the Country among the Tribes of *Israel* when they conquer'd it, we refer to the 13th, 14th, 15th, 16th, 17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st, and 22d, Chapters of that Book, which it is needless for us to repeat. This Division continued under the Judges and Kings till the Revolt of the Ten Tribes from *Rehoboam*, when the Country was divided into the Kingdoms of *Judah* and *Israel*. When the Ten Tribes were led Captive into *Assyria*, the new Colonies sent thither in their stead were call'd *Samaritans*, from *Samaria* their Capital City. Upon their Return from Captivity, they were called by the general Name of *Jews*, and the Country was then divided into *Pe-ræa*, *Ituræa*, *Galilee*, *Samaria*, *Judæa*, and *Idumæa*. When conquer'd by the *Romans*, they were all join'd into one Province, and reckon'd Part of *Syria*. *Constantine* afterwards divided it into *Palæstina Prima*, their Capital *Cæsarea*; *Palæstina Secunda*, their Capital *Samaria*;

Samaria; and *Palæstina Salutaris*, their Capital *Jerusalem*; but this Division soon grew obsolete. The other is most follow'd by the Greek and Roman Authors, and the Chorography of those Divisions is excellently well described by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, and improv'd by Dr. *Heylin*. *Cluverius* divides it into *Idumæa*, *Judæa*, *Samaria*, and *Galilee*. *Luyts* divides it into Ancient *Judæa*, *Judæa* beyond and on this Side *Jordan*, and says, the Romans divided it into *Judæa*, *Samaria*, *Galilee*, *Trachonitis*, *Peræa*, and *Idumæa*. *Cellarius* gives the following Account of the Division of it by the Romans: The *Asmoneans* or *Maccabees* of the Tribe of *Levi* having taken Arms in Defence of their Country against the Tyranny of *Antiochus K.* of *Syria*, who had subdued the Kingdom, possessed themselves of the Sovereignty, and govern'd all the *Holy Land*, till *Hyrcaus* and *Aristobulus*, two Brothers, falling at Variance, the Romans invaded *Palæstine* under the Conduct of *Pompey*. *Aristobulus* being taken and carried to *Rome*, *Pompey* left *Hyrcaus* in Possession as a Tributary Prince, and *Julius Cæsar* join'd *Antipater* with him. He was succeeded by his Son *Herod*, to whom *Augustus* not only gave *Palæstine*, but several Provinces of *Arabia* and *Syria*. After *Herod's* Death, the Country was divided among his Sons by the Consent of *Augustus*. *Archelaus*, the eldest Son, had the Tetrarchies of *Judæa* and *Samaria*; his Brother *Herod Antipas* had *Galilee* and *Peræa*; and their Brother *Philip* had *Ituræa*, *Trachonitis*, with the adjoining Provinces. *Archelaus* being afterwards banish'd, *Judæa* and *Samaria* were made a Roman Province. *Antipas* being likewise banish'd, his Tetrarchy was added to *Agrippa's* Kingdom by *Caius Cæsar*, under whom and *Claudius* he obtained the rest of his Grandfather's Possessions, by which his Kingdom was much enlarged, and *Agrippa* the Son possess'd *Abilene*, and *Philip's* Tetrarchy, the rest being left to the Roman Province, as appears by *Josephus*. During this Reign of the *Herods*, the Country was sometimes reduc'd into a Province, sometimes divided into Tetrarchies mix'd with the Province, and sometimes assum'd the Form of a Tributary Kingdom, which very much perplexes Geographers, and therefore the greater Divisions of *Galilee*, *Samaria*, *Judæa*, and the Country beyond

Jordan, are follow'd by *Cellarius*, because they were not subject to the like Mutations. *Josephus* says, the Romans divided it also into five Jurisdictions, three on this Side *Jordan*, at *Jerusalem*, *Jericho*, and *Sepphoris* or *Zippore* of *Galilee*, and two beyond it, viz. *Gadaris* and *Amathus*; but they were soon chang'd. *Cellarius's* Division being that mention'd in the Evangelists, as appears by *Acts* 9. 31. we chuse to follow it, and the rather, because it agrees in the main with *Cluverius's* Map of the *Holy Land*, which we make use of.

G A L I L E E,

Is mention'd 1 *Kings* 9. 11. where it is said *Solomon* gave *Hiram* 20 Cities in the Land of *Galilee*; and *Isa.* 9. 1. where 'tis called *Galilee* of the Nations. It is also mention'd in *Matt.* 4. 15. where it is translated *Galilee* of the Gentiles. It was the Northern Part of *Palæstina*, and reach'd from the Borders of *Syria* betwixt the River *Jordan* and the *Mediterranean* beyond the Lake of *Genesareth*. *Buno* bounds it with *Ptolemais* and *Mount Carmel* on the W. *Samaria*, *Scythopolis*, and *Jordan*, on the S. *Hippene*, *Gadaris*, *Gaulanitis*, and the Kingdom of *Agrippa*, on the E. and by *Tyre* and its Jurisdiction on the N. *Josephus* divides it into *Upper* and *Nether*; but the Boundary betwixt them is not certain. *Cellarius* supposes it to be above *Mount Carmel* towards the N. and to lie from thence to *Jordan*. *Upper Galilee* begins at the Borders of the *Tyrians* and *Sidonians*, and runs E. to the Fountains of *Jordan*; after which 'tis bounded by that River. The Maritime Part of it was never wholly nor always possess'd by the *Israelites*, *Mount Carmel*, *Ptolemais*, *Acre* or *Acco*, which belong to the Tribe of *Asher*, and, with Part of *Naphthali*, made up the Division, being some Time possess'd by the *Tyrians*. *St. Jerome* calls the *Upper*, *Galilee* of the Gentiles, and supposes the 20 Cities given to the K. of *Tyre* lay here. The *Lower Galilee* he places about *Tiberias*, and the Lake of *Genesareth*, in the Tribe of *Zabulon*, and this Opinion is follow'd by most; but *Causabon* thinks it to be *Nether Galilee*, because the *Hebrews* commonly call'd it *Galilee the Populous*. *Lightfoot* argues, that *Galilee* of the Gentiles was beyond *Jor-*

dan, and so call'd to distinguish it from Galilee on this Side Jordan. He thinks this is favour'd by the Connexion of the Words Matt. 4. 14, 15, 16. where the Prophecy of *Isaiah* is mention'd; *The Land of Zabulon and the Land of Naphthalim, by Way of the Sea beyond Jordan, Galilee of the Gentiles, the People which sat in Darkness, and saw great Light, &c.* The Sum of the Controversy depends on this, Whether the Words, *By the Way of the Sea beyond Jordan*, be put by Way of Apposition, to signify the same Country or different Parts? And the latter to him seems most probable, because they are divided by the Accent *Sateph*. The Reason of its being call'd *Galilee of the Nations*, was its being inhabited, according to *Strabo*, by a Mixture of *Egyptians, Arabians, and Phœnicians*; and some think *Tidal*, who in *Gen. 14.* is call'd the *King of Nations*, was Prince of this Country; and he who is call'd *King of the Nations of Gilgal*, *Josh. 12. 24.* is likewise suppos'd to be K. of the same Place; for *Gilgal* and *Galilee* do both signify a Border. The other Opinion, that *Nether Galilee* is the Place, seems to be favoured by *Matt. 4. 18.* where our Saviour is said to be walking by the Sea of *Galilee*, when he call'd the Apostles *Peter* and *Andrew*: But this we submit to the Judgment of the Readers. *Cellarius* thinks, that all *Upper Galilee*, or Part of it at least, was the *Galilee of the Gentiles*. The Situation of the Towns of this Country, mention'd *Josh. 19.* is now for most Part unknown. The *Ecdippa* of *Ptolomy* is supposed to be the *Achfib* of the Scripture; and *Ptolemais* to be *Aco*, as we have said before. *Ecdippa* lay 9 Miles from *Ptolemais* towards *Tyre*, according to *St. Jerome*; and the high Mountain named *Scala Tyriorum* lay near it on the N. The other Towns of this Country are mention'd *Numb. 13. 22. Josh. 11. 17. 12. 7. 13. 5. 19. 25. 26. 28. 30. and Josh. 21. 30.*

The chief Towns are, 1. *Baalgad*, plac'd by *Eusebius* and *St. Jerome* at the Foot of Mount *Hermion*, from whence some think it belong'd to *Auranitis*.

2. *Cæsarea Philippi*, which some likewise think to be out of the Bounds of *Galilee*; but it lies in the Borders of it, and is by some assigned to *Iturea*, because it was built by *Philip* the Tetrarch, who govern'd *Trachonitis* and *Iturea*. It lies near the

Fountains of *Jordan*, about 40 Miles E. from *Tyre*. We describ'd it before, *P. 91.* It was call'd *Cæsarea Panea* in the Time of *Ptolomy*, and *Paneus* in that of *St. Jerome*. The Woman cur'd of the Bloody-Flux by our Saviour, is by some thought to be a Native of this Place. 'Tis said, she erected his Statue, with her own kneeling at his Feet, in Remembrance of this Cure; and that *Julian* the Apostate order'd them to be cast down, and his own set up in their Place, which was destroyed by Fire from Heaven; but this smells too much of a Legend. It was afterwards an Episcopal See.

3. *Dan*, anciently *Laisb*. It was near this Place where *Abraham* defeated *Chederlaomer* and his Associates, *Gen. 14. 14.* and taken by the *Danites*, *Josh. 19. 47.* 'Twas noted for one of *Jeroboam's* Golden Calves. *Cellarius* places it on the Left of the Fountain of *Jordan*; and *St. Jerome* says, it lay 4 Miles from *Paneus*, in the Way to *Tyre*. *Josephus* places it near Mount *Lebanon*, and the Fountains of *Lesser Jordan*, one Days Journey from the great Field of *Zidon*; so that *Heylin* mistakes when he confounds it with *Cæsarea Philippi*, and seems to have mislead *Dr. Wells*.

4. *Kadesh*, a City of Refuge. *St. Jerome*, who places it upon Mount *Naphthali*, about 20 Miles from *Tyre*, says, it was taken by the K. of *Affyria*, and in his Time call'd *Cydissus*. It was the Birth-place of *Barak*, who defeated *Sisera*, and afterwards a Bishop's See. *Heylin* mistakes when he says it was one of the Towns of *Decapolis*, for that lay beyond *Jordan*, all but *Scythopolis*. It was call'd *Kadesh Naphthalim*, to distinguish it from *Kadesh* in *Issachar*.

5. *Beroth*, lay near *Kadesh*, noted for the Defeat of the Kings of the *Canaanites* by *Joshua* in its Neighbourhood, at the Waters of *Merom*.

6. *Hazor*, near the Lake of *Merom*. It was the Capital of all the Northern Kingdoms of the *Philistines*, taken by *Joshua*, who put all the Inhabitants to the Sword, and burnt the Town. It was afterwards rebuilt, and possessed by the *Canaanites*, *Judges 4. 2. 1 Sam. 12. 9.* when K. *Jabin* oppress'd the *Israelites*. *Josephus* places it on the Lake *Samachonitis*.

7. *Harosheth* of the *Gentiles*, lay near *Hazor*, and was the Residence of *Sisera*, General

ral to King *Jabin*. *Josephus* says, that near these Towns, on the Lake *Samachonitis*, there was a pleasant little Country called *Daphne*, which abounded with Springs, that increas'd the Stream of the *Lesser Jordan*.

8. *Hamath*, or *Amath*, join'd with *Cinnereth*, *Josh.* 19. 35. which had a Lake of that Name in the Neighbourhood. *Heylin* says, it deriv'd its Name from *Hamathi*, the Son of *Canaan*, and was anciently of such Esteem, that it was reckon'd one of the Keys of the Land of *Canaan*. The Entrance or Passage of *Hamath* is mention'd *Numb.* 34. 9. and elsewhere. *Heylin* taxes *St. Jerome* with mistaking this Town for *Hamath* in *Syria*, which by the *Greeks* and *Romans* was afterwards called *Epiphania*. *Josephus* mentions three Towns in *Upper Galilee*, *Jamnia*, *Ameritha*, and *Charabe*, which stood upon Rocks, and were fortified by himself during the *Roman War*, with several others, whose Situation are not now known.

LOWER GALILEE.

It lies S. from the Upper, has the Lake of *Genesareth* on the E. Mount *Carmel* and the Sea on the W. and the Country of *Samaria* on the S. It contains the whole Tribe of *Zabulon*, and Part of *Naphthali* and *Issachar*. This is better inhabited than the upper Part, and called *Galilee* by Way of Eminence, without any Addition. It is separated from *Gaulanitis* by the Lake *Maron*, thro' which *Jordan* runs. The most ancient Name of it is the Lake of *Cinnereth*, taken from that Town, which lay upon it. It was a fortified Town, as appears by *Josh.* 19. 35. *St. Jerome* takes it to be the same with *Tiberias*, and *Bonfrerius* by Mistake thinks it to be *Capernaum*. *Chamath* mention'd by *Joshua*, *Cellarius* thinks to be the Baths of *Tiberias*, with whom the *Talmudists* agree, and the Lake is the same with that of *Genesareth*, the greatest Part of which was in *Lower Galilee*. This Country is memorable for the Birth and Education of our Blessed Saviour, who was therefore called the *Galilean*, as his Disciples were *Galileans*.

The Towns of most Note here are, 1. *Cana of Galilee*, so called to distinguish it from the Greater *Cana* in the Tribe of *Asher*. This, says *Dr. Wells*, was within the Tribe of *Zabulon*. *Bleau* says, it lay 4 Miles from

Ptolemais or *Acre*. It was the Birth-place of *Nathanael*, alias *Bartholomew*, and *Simon* the Apostle, therefore called the *Canaanite*. It lay betwixt the two *Galilees*, not far from *Nazareth* to the N. says *Cluverius*, and is noted for our Saviour's first Miracle of turning Water into Wine, *Joh.* 2. 1. and also for his healing the Nobleman's Son who lay sick at *Capernaum* with a Word of his Mouth, *Joh.* 4. 46, 47, &c. *Alpheus* or *Cleopas*, whose Wife was *Mary*, the Sister or Cousin-German of the Blessed Virgin, is supposed to have liv'd here, and the Marriage to which Christ was invited is said to have been kept in his House. *Thevenot* says, 'tis now only a small Village; tho' by the Ruins, it seems to have been a large Place. On a Hill there's a Church, where they say the Wedding was solemnized, and a Fountain just by from whence the Water was fetch'd that our Lord turn'd into Wine. The Church, with a Convent adjoining to it, were built by *St. Helena*; but the Moors have now turn'd them to a Mosque. *M. Coppin* saw the Hall, which was almost 25 Paces long, and 30 Foot wide, of a proportionable Height, and the Windows long and round at the Top, like those of our Churches.

2. *Betharamphtha*. *Cellarius* corrects the Maps which place it in *Perea*, at a great Distance from *Jordan*, as he does *Lightfoot* for placing it on the Left of that River, and says, it lay on the Right of *Jordan*, a little before it falls into the Lake of *Genesareth*. 'Twas fortified and called *Julias* by *Herod* the Tetrarch, in Honour of *Julia*, the Wife of *Tiberius*: So that *Heylin* must also be mistaken who places this Town in *Perea*, and says, it was built by *Herod Antipas*, and call'd *Livias*, in Honour of *Livia*, the Wife of *Augustus Caesar*.

3. *Chorazin*, or *Chorazim*, included under the Curse mention'd *Matt.* 11. 21. and *Luke* 10. 13. *Cluverius* says, it lay on the Left Shore of the Sea of *Galilee*. *Heylin* and others make it one of the Cities of the *Decapolis*, mention'd in *Matt.* 4. 25. and place it beyond *Jordan*; but *Cellarius* chuses to follow *St. Jerome*, who places it in *Galilee*, not far from *Capernaum*.

4. *Capernaum*, situate, according to *Cellarius*, on the Eastern Shore of the Lake *Genesareth*, with whom *St. Jerome* seems to agree;

agree; adding, that it lay in the Borders of *Zabulon* and *Naphtalim*, as in *Matt.* 4. 13. and over against *Bethsaida*, as appears from *Joh.* 6. 17. 24. and from *Luke* 9. 10. where 'tis mention'd, that they pass'd over to *Capernaum* in Ships from the Desert belonging to *Bethsaida*. It was the ordinary Residence of our Saviour after he left *Nazareth*, noted for divers of his Miracles, and call'd his own City, as in *Matt.* 9. 1. compar'd with *Cap.* 17. v. 24. and *Cap.* 8. v. 13. *Buno* says, this was the chief City of *Decapolis*; but 'tis long since fallen to Decay, according to the Woe denounc'd upon it *Matt.* 11. 23. 'Tis not once mention'd in the Old Testament, from whence *Dr. Wells* concludes it was not then in Being, but that it was built by the Jews at their Return from the *Babylonish* Captivity. He thinks it took its Name from a neighbouring Spring, fam'd for its Chrystalline flowing Waters, which, says *Josephus*, the Natives call'd *Capernaum*. *Cellarius* says, this Spring runs into the Plain called the *Land of Gennesareth*, in *Matt.* 14. 34. and *Mark* 6. 53. *Josephus* praises it for a very beautiful and fertile Country, says it gave Name to the adjoining Lake, and that 'tis near four Miles long, and two and half broad. Some think the Spring of *Capernaum* before-mention'd to proceed from the Nile, because of a certain Fish in it that is no where else to be found but in *Alexandria*. Some take the Name to be deriv'd from the Deliciousness of the Soil, because *Gen.* in the Hebrew signifies Garden, and *Sar* a Prince: But *Dr. Wells* argues from *Josh.* 19. 35. *1 Kings* 15. 20. *Numb.* 34. 11. *Deut.* 3. 17. and *Josh.* 12. 3. that 'tis rather to be deriv'd from a considerable City call'd *Cinnereth* in the Tribe of *Naphtali* on the Lake *Gennesareth*.

5. *Tarichea*. *Josephus* says, 'tis 30 Stadia from *Tiberias*, and was fortified with a strong Wall, except where wash'd by the Lake *Gennesareth*. It was anciently a very large Town, because *Josephus* says, when *Vespasian* took it, he slew 1200 of the Inhabitants, sent 6000 into *Achaia* to dig through the Isthmus which *Nero* had appointed, and sold 30400 Captives, besides others which he gave to *K. Agrippa*. *Cellarius* says, the Greek Name *Tarichea* is deriv'd from the abundance of Salt-Fish in the adjacent Lake. *Buno* says, it lay on the E. Shore of the Sea

of *Galilee*, and (according to *Heylin*) 8 M. from *Tiberias*.

6. *Tiberias*, the last Town according to *Cellarius*, which lies on the S. Part of the Lake of *Gennesareth*, from hence called the Lake of *Tiberias*. The Town was built by *Herod* the Tetrarch, who gave it this Name, in Honour of *Tiberius*. *Josephus* says, 'twas 30 Stadia from *Hippos*, 60 from *Gadaris*, and 120 from *Scythopolis*. The Evangelist *John* mentions it *Chap.* 6. 23. It has been disputed amongst the Learned, Whether this City was built by *Herod* from the Ground, or only repair'd and augmented? *Cellarius* inclines to the latter, and says, that there were Coins of this City, one inscrib'd TIBEP I A Σ, another TIBEP I E O N E Π I K A A T Δ I O T E T. A Π I. and another TIBEP I E O N. *Buno* says, it was the Metropolis and Boundary of *Decapolis*. The *Nubian* Geographer says, in the 12th Century it was the greatest City on the River *Jordan*, and that it stood a little further from *Tyre* than from *Ptolemais*. *Luyts* says, 'tis called *Tabaryah* by the Inhabitants, situate on the Western Coasts of the Sea of *Galilee*, and for most Part ruin'd by the Incursions of the *Arabs*. *Monconys* says, the Ruins and the Multitude of Pillars which remain, shew that it was a very long City, but strait and fine built. There's a little square Inclosure encompassed with Walls, which are still entire, but all the Buildings in the Inside decay'd, and there only remains 4 Walls, and the Roof of a Church, where *Jesus* said to *Peter*, *Thou art Peter*, &c. See *Matt.* 16. On the Right Side going in there's a Stone against the Wall, on which is carved a Garland of Leaves, in the Middle whereof is a Candlestick with 7 Branches, with a Palm on one Side, but so ill shap'd, that it rather resembles *Sparagras*; and on the other Side a Horn, with its Point uppermost. *M. Coppin* says, 'tis about 8 Leagues from *Nazareth*, almost of a square Figure, about two Miles round, encompassed with good Walls, garnished with Towers, but sorry Ditches. He saw the Ruins of the West Gate, which was built with white and black Marble, and says, there is no good House in the Town, but Heaps of Ruins. There is not a quarter of the Inhabitants which might easily live within its Compass; one Reason of which is, their having expelled

expelled a great Number of *Jews* who dwelt there, having first obliged them to build up the Walls at their own Charge, in Hopes of suffering them to reassemble, and make a Body of their own Nation in the Town. On the Side looking to *Bethsaida*, there still remains the best Part of a great Church, which *St. Helena* caus'd to be built in Honour of *St. Peter*, but now turn'd into a Stall for Deer. *Bleau* says, there are only 8 or 10 Cottages, inhabited by *Arabs* and *Jews*. *Dr. Wells* says, *Herod* the Tetrarch endow'd it with great Privileges; that it had formerly 13 Synagogues, and an Academy; and that here was the last Session of the *Sanhedrim* of the *Jews*, whose *Talmud* was collected in this Place. *Thevenot* says, the Church of *St. Helena* is still entire, 25 Paces long, and 15 broad. Some say, it was at this Place that our Lord eat Fish with his Apostles after his Resurrection, when he appeared to them upon the Side of this Sea. *Thevenot* says, *Herod* repair'd the Town; that it has two Gates, one always shut; that there grow abundance of Palm-Trees in and about the Town; and about 100 Paces from the City, close by the Sea, there is a natural Bath of hot Waters, to which the Walls anciently extended. *M. Coppin* says, they are two little Miles from the Town, and call'd the Baths of *Emmans*. There is only a small House with two Chambers, one lower than the other, in both of which are two Springs of hot Mineral Waters, which are very clear, and have been always esteem'd for their Medicinal Vertues. They do not boil up as other Springs, and their Heat is very moderate. They come under Ground from a neighbouring Hill, run out of those Chambers by Openings made on purpose, and fall at some Distance into the Sea.

Having thus gone thro' the Towns of most Note on the Lake of *Cinnereth* or *Tiberias*, we shall only add, that it was on the E. Side of this Lake where Christ miraculously fed the 5000 with five Loaves and two small Fishes. *Luke 9. Joh. 6.*

We come next to the Inland Towns of *Lower Galilee*, which are, 1. *Sepphoris*, *Sippora*, or *Sepharis*, call'd by the Rabbins *Zippori*. *Josephus* and *Cellarius* say, it was anciently a large, strong City, and the chief in these Parts. According to *St. Jerome*

and *Secrates*, it was afterwards called *Dio-Cæsarea*. *Coppin* says, 'tis about 5 M. from *Nazareth*. *Mr. Maundrel* says, 'tis now reduced to a poor Village, but the Ruins of its ancient Grandeur still appear. At the W. End of the Town there's Part of a large Church, on the Place where they say liv'd *Joachim* and *Anna*, the Parents of the Blessed Virgin. 'Tis 50 Paces long, and of a proportionable Breadth. *Heylin* says, *Herod* the Tetrarch fortified this Town, and made it his Regal Seat for *Lower Galilee*. Before that Time, *Gabinius* made it one of the five Places of Jurisdictions for *Palæstine*. It was afterwards reduc'd by *Vespasian*, and has now a Castle called *Zaphet*, the Seat of the *Turkish* Sangiack, who governs this Province. 'Twas lately the Residence of the Emirs of *Sidon*. *Mr. Maundrel* says, the fine Plain of *Zabulon* begins at this Town.

2. *Arbela*, which *Cellarius* places betwixt *Sepphoris* and *Tiberias*, and *Heylin* on the Shores of the *Mediterranean*, near the Cave of the two Robbers, who mightily infested this Country in the Time of *Herod*. The Town was afterwards called *Castrum Peregrinorum*, or the Castle of Pilgrims, by the *Latins*, because of a Fort built there by *Raymund E. of Thoulouse*. 'Twas after fortified by the Templers, for the Security of those who travelled to the Holy Land, and for a long Time the Magazine of the *Western* Christians, and now call'd *Tortora*.

In these Parts lies Mount *Tabor*, the Northern Boundary of the Tribe of *Issachar* on the Confines of *Zabulon*, as in *Josh. 19*. Here *Barak* assembled an Army, and overthrew *Sisera*, *Judges 4*. And in *Pf. 89. 13*. we find it compar'd with the great Mountain *Hermion*. The *Septuagint* and *Josephus* call it *Ιταβύριον*, according to the Greek Inflection. The latter makes it 30 Stadia in Height, inaccessible on the N. Side, with a Plain upon the Top of 26 Stadia, walled round. He himself fortified it during the Roman War. *Polybius* says, *Antiochus* took it by Stratagem. *Cellarius* thinks, it has two Summits, which is the Reason of its different Names; that the Ascent of the one is 15, and the other 30 Stadia. *Lightfoot* places it about 10 Miles N. W. from *Caper-naum*. The Learned are not agreed whether our Saviour was transfigured on this Mountain. 'Tis the common Opinion.

and

and was that of *St. Jerome*, *Cyillus*, and *Bede*. The Curious may see more of this in *Cellarins* and *Lightfoot*. Mr. *Maundrel*, who saw it, determines nothing about its being the Place of the Transfiguration, but says, in the Area on the Top there are 3 contiguous Grotto's, made to represent the Tabernacles which *St. Peter* propos'd to erect there. It took Mr. *Maundrel* and his Companions almost an Hour to ascend it. The Area at Top is a fruitful and delicious Plain, two Furlongs in Length, one broad, of an oval Figure, and enclos'd with Trees on all Sides except S. The Ruins of the old Fortifications are still to be seen. It has several Cisterns of good Water. The Mountain is round, beautiful, and high, stands by it self in the Plain of *Galilee*, at a small Distance from other Hills. From hence there's a noble Prospect of the *Mediterranean*, Mount *Hermon*, the Mountains of *Gilboa*, those of *Samarina*, the River *Kishon*, the Plain of *Esdraelon*, the Valley of *Jezrael*, and of the Towns of *Nazareth*, *Naim*, and *Endor*, and many other Places mention'd in the Gospel. *Monconys* says, it is full of Oaks, Turpentine Trees, and many of other Sorts. *Bleau* makes it a League and half in Heighth, says the Air of it is very temperate, and that it abounds with Vines, Olives, and other Fruit-Trees; that there are many Flowers nourish'd with the perpetual Dew, and abundance of Fowl and Wild Beasts upon it. *Monconys* says, there are the Ruins of a fine City on the Top, with Walls of Stone, cut in Form of Diamonds, and a Ditch round them cut out of the Rock, with abundance of Cisterns. It was accessible only by two Gates, and there was a Bridge cut out of the Rock to pass the Ditch. All Travellers agree, that in Form it resembles a Sugar-Loaf, flat on the Top. *Coppin* says, That it lies a League from any other Mountains; that the neighbouring Plain is very pleasant and fruitful; and from the Top there is a Prospect of the best and most pleasant Part of the *Holy Land*. The Monks, who go hither from *Nazareth* on the Day of our Saviour's Transfiguration, pretend to shew the particular Places of this Mountain mention'd in the Gospel.

3. *Nazareth*. *Maundrel* says, it lies two Hours W. from Mount *Tabar*. *Lightfoot*

places it 16 Miles from *Capernaum*. *Maundrel* says, 'tis now an inconsiderable Village on the Top of a high Hill, in a round Valley. There's a Convent at the Place of the Annunciation, inhabited by 7 or 8 *Latin* Monks, who live in perpetual Fear of the *Arabs*, now the absolute Lords of the Country. The Church is in a Cave, suppos'd to be the Place where the Angel spoke to the Blessed Virgin. 'Tis in Form of a Cross, the longest Part of which is 14 Paces long, and 6 over, runs directly into the Grot, and has no other Arch but the natural Rock. The Traverse Part is built athwart the Mouth of the Grot, 9 Paces long, and 4 broad. Just at the Section of the Cross are erected two Granite Pillars, each two Foot and one Inch Diameter, and about three Foot Distance from each other. One of them is broke at the Bottom, and hangs to the Roof by its Chapter. They are supposed to stand on the very Places where the Angel and the Blessed Virgin stood at the Time of the Annunciation. N. W. from the Convent stands *Joseph's* House, in which they say the Son of God lived near 30 Years in Subjection to Man, and just by the Synagogue where he preach'd that Sermon *Luke 4*. by which he so exasperated the *Jews*. They were formerly beautified with handsome Churches by *Qu. Helena*, which are now in Ruins. *Monconys* says, here stood the Chappel pretended to have been transported hence by Angels to *Loretto*, where we have described it. *Thevenot* says, *Nazareth* lies 8 Leagues from *Acre*. About three quarters of a League S. is the Precipice from which the *Jews* would have thrown down our Saviour, who rendering himself invisible, retired, as they say, into a little Cell about the middle of the Precipice, near which are the Ruins of a Chappel. 'Tis inhabited at present by *Arabians* and *Turks*, with a few *Greeks* and *Maronites*. The Cave of the Annunciation is 15 Foot long, 6 broad, and finely carv'd within, and near it a Place which they call the Virgin's Chamber. The Town stands at the End of the Plain of *Esdraelon*, on a Height, from whence there is a fine Prospect of the whole Valley. Betwixt the Town and the aforementioned Precipice there are the Ruins of a Nunnery, and a Church dedicated to our Lady of Fear, because

cause the Monks say, that the Virgin fearing the Jews would precipitate her Son, fell down there. At 600 Paces Distance they shew a great Stone, call'd our Lord's Table, upon which they say our Saviour and his Disciples often eat. Close by there's a Fountain called St. Peter's Well, because they say our Lord rais'd it by Miracle to satisfy St. Peter's Thirst. Heylin says, there are the Ruins of many Churches built here by the Christians, in whose Time it was an Archbishop's See. Mr. Sandys says, the Moors suffer no Christian to live here now. Our Saviour spent most of his Life here before his Baptism, from whence he and his Disciples were called *Nazarens*. Luyts says, 'tis still reputed the Capital of the *Nazarene*, in which there are 25 small Villages.

4. *Naim*, or *Nain*, which lies S. of Mount *Tabor*, on the Brook *Kison*, and at the Foot of Mount *Hermon*, is about a Day's Journey from *Capernaum*, as appears from *Luke 7*. St. *Luke* calls it a City; but 'tis now only a Village, and chiefly remarkable for the Place where our Saviour restored the Widow's Son to Life, *Luke 7. 11. &c.* *Thevenot* says, it stands on one Side of the Plain of *Esdraelon*, in which, *Monconys* says, there is nothing sown but Cotton; the rest of the Plain, which is above 20 Leagues round, being uncultivated, and full of Thistles, tho' the Soil is naturally good. M. *Coppin* says, 'tis interspers'd with many Hills, the largest of which are on the S. Side, and that the Brook *Kishon* runs thro' it. 'Tis remarkable for the Victory which *Joshua* obtain'd over the *Canaanitish* Kings leagu'd against the *Israelites*. *Thevenot* says, 'tis about 4 Leagues in Length.

5. *Endor*, on the other Side of the Plain of *Esdraelon*. *Jael*, who kill'd *Sisera*, dwelt here. 'Tis also noted for the Habitation of the Witch whom *Saul* consulted, and for the Overthrow of the *Midianites* by *Gideon*. St. *Jerome* places it in the Tribe of *Manasseh*; and *Cellarius* says, it lay 4 Miles S. of Mount *Tabor*.

6. *Suna*, *Sula*, *Sanem* or *Sulam*. *Josephus* calls it *Senna*. It lies in the Tribe of *Issachar*, as in *Joshua 19. 18.* and near the Mountains of *Gilboa* in *Samaria*, *1 Sam. 28. 4.* where *Saul* gather'd an Army against the *Philistines* who were pitched in *Shunem*. It

was the Birth-place of *Abisbag* the Damsel, who administred to *David* in his old Age, *1 Kings 1. 3, 4.* and where *Elisha* us'd to sojourn as he went that Way, and in Gratitude restored the *Shunamite's* Son to Life. *2 Kings 4.*

7. *Jotopata*. *Cellarius* is not positive as to its Situation and Distance from the other Towns of *Galilee*, nor whether it was repair'd after it was ruin'd by *Vespasian*, who, as *Josephus* the Governor of the *Garrison* says, took it after a long Siege, killed all he found in it, and commanded it to be raz'd to the Ground. He adds, that it was a very strong Hold, founded on a Rock, and only accessible on the N. Side. Dr. *Heylin* places it near the Lake of *Gennesareth*.

8. *Japha*. *Josephus* says, it lay near *Jotopata*, was strong by Situation, and fortified with a double Wall. In one Place he calls it a City, and in another the greatest, strongest, and one of the most populous, Villages of *Galilee*. *Cellarius* thinks it to have been formerly a large Town, because *Titus*, when he took it, put 15000 Persons to the Sword, and made above 2000 Captives.

9. *Gischala*. *Heylin* says, 'twas a strong Town, noted for the Birth of *John* or *Jehocanan*, one of the three seditious Ring-leaders in *Jerusalem* when besieg'd by *Titus*, and that attempting to betray the Place to the *Romans*, the *Tyrians* taking the Opportunity, made themselves Masters of it, and burnt it to the Ground. *Josephus*, when Governor of *Galilee* for the Jews, caus'd it to be rebuilt; but it surrender'd some Time after to *Titus* on Composition.

10. *Thaanach*, or *Thenach*, lay in *Manasseh* beyond *Jordan*, *Josh. 17. 11.* and was assign'd to the *Levites*, *Josh. 21. 25.* but the *Canaanites* were not drove out of it. *Cellarius* thinks it lay W. from Mount *Tabor*. Here *Sisera* was defeated by *Barak*.

11. *Megiddo*, or *Mageddo*, a Town situate near Waters, *Judges 5. 19.* *Bonfrerius* thinks it was the River *Chishon*, because *Sisera* was defeated near it. It belonged to the *Manassites*, and lay in *Issachar* or *Asher*. It was noted for the Death of K. *Ahaziah* and *Jehoshaphat* in a large Field in the Neighbourhood, where they fell in Battle; so that it seems to lie more to the N. than the Maps commonly place it.

12. *Hepher*, or *Opher*, lay in *Zabulon*. Its King was killed by *Joshua* 12. 17. The neighbouring Country was called by its Name. *St. Jerome* thinks it was the Birth-place of the Prophet *Jonah*, and says, his Sepulchre was shewn there; tho' others think he was born and buried near *Diospolis* or *Lydda*. *Heylin* thinks it to be *Ophra*, the City of *Gideon*, near which that great Captain defaced an Altar of *Baal*; and that he made an Ephod here with the Golden Earrings of the *Ismaelites*, &c. which prov'd a Snare to his own House and the *Israelites*, *Judges* 8. 27. *Heylin* adds, that the Stone on which *Abimelech* slew 70 of his Brethren lay near this Place.

13. *Zabulon*. *Cellarius* makes it a strong Town in the W. Corner of that Tribe. 'Tis thought to be the same mention'd by *Tacitus* as a strong City of *Galilee*, which divided *Ptolemais* from the Roman Province; and that it is the *Chabulon* mentioned by *Josephus* to be near the Sea-Coast, not far from *Ptolemais*, from which *Cellarius* thinks it lay 60 Stadia. *Heylin* observes, that it was burnt to the Ground by *Cestius*, a Roman President. There are many other little Towns in this Country mentioned by *Strabo*, which we pass over.

Cellarius takes Notice of the *Méya mēNor*, or great Field, frequently mention'd in *Galilee*, and by *Josephus* in his Wars, where he says, Mount *Tabor* lay in the Middle, betwixt the Great Plain and *Scythopolis* or *Bethsan*. This Valley extended likewise into the District of *Samaria*. *St. Jerome* thinks it to be the Valley of *Jezrael*; and *Cellarius*, that it is the *Asochis* mention'd by *Josephus*. He thinks *Bethulia*, spoke of in the Book of *Judith* as a Town of *Galilee*, to be as Apocryphal as the Book it self, which he takes to be only a Dramatick Poem, because it can't be reconciled with History. *Cluverius* places *Stratonis Turris* or *Cæsarea Palæstina* in *Galilee*, but *Cellarius* more justly in *Samaritis*, or the Country of *Samaria*. *Cluverius* likewise places *Bethsaida* in this Country, and seems to have very good Reason; but we refer the Description of it, and the different Opinions about it, to the Country beyond *Jordan*, where *Cellarius* places it.

We shall add to *Galilee* in general from *Heylin*, That the Soil was naturally fertile,

produced excellent Fruit and Corn without much Pains, and was anciently so well inhabited, that there was scarce any waste Ground in it. The Villages were so populous, that the least of them, according to *Josephus*, contained 15000 Inhabitants; but 'tis probable, his Copyers have added a Cypher too much, for 1500 is a great Number for a Village. The People were so warlike, that *Titus* found it very difficult to subdue them; which, together with their Zeal for the Jewish Religion, makes *Heylin's* Conjecture very probable, that most of them were descended from the ancient *Israelites*, and not from the *Assyrians* and other Strangers brought hither after the Captivity of the 10 Tribes. This is likewise the more probable, because it appears by the New Testament, that the *Galilean* Tongue differ'd only from that of the *Jews* in Tone or Dialect. *Heylin* thinks it was the same with the other Tribes on this Side *Jordan*, especially *Simeon* and *Dan*.

Bleau says, this Country is well water'd with Fountains and Streams, and is more fruitful than *Judea* and *Samaria*; that it produces Corn, Wine, Oil, Apples, Dates, Nuts, Figs, &c. in great Plenty, and abounds with pleasant Fields. He adds, that most of the present Inhabitants are *Moors* and *Mahometans*. The Populousness of this Country may be guessed at by the Number of the Tribes contained in it at their Musters, *Numb.* 2. where those of *Naphtali* were 53400 Fighting Men. The Tribe of *Asher* contain'd the like Number; the Tribe of *Zabulon* contain'd 65000, the Tribe of *Issachar* 64300, in all 236100, besides Part of the Tribe of *Dan*, which contain'd 157600; but how many of them lived in *Galilee*, is not said. The Difference of their Numbers at the 1st and 2d Musters may be seen *Numb.* 1. 2. To these must be added Part of the 22000 *Levites* which were distributed among the Tribes; and if we likewise consider how much they might be increas'd in our Saviour's Time, *Josephus's* Account of their Populousness does not seem unreasonable. *Heylin* and others put the following Places likewise in this Country.

1. *Saphet*, *Sephet*, or *Seph*, a Place so well fortified, as to be reckon'd impregnable. It was one of the strongest Fortresses the Western Christians had after they drove the

the *Turks* and *Saracens* from this Country. *Heylin* says, 'tis the only Place where the *Jews* have any Shadow of a Commonwealth in the *East*. *Coppin* says, it was the Seat of a *Bashaw* in his Time, corrects the Mistake of those who take it for *Saphe*, which he says is the *Bethulia* mentioned in *Judith*, lies 15 Miles S. from hence, has a strong Castle, but the Town is now small, and is for most Part inhabited by *Jews*. *Cluverius* places it near 4 German Leagues N. W. from *Capernaum*, on the Sea of *Galilee*.

2. *Mascaloth*, a strong Town, taken by *Bacchides* the Syrian General in the Time of the *Maccabees*.

3. *Aphek*. *Cluverius* places it 3 German Leagues N. E. from *Casarea Palestina*, and above 3 S. W. from *Nazareth*, memorable for the Slaughter of 100000 Syrians by *Ahab* when *Benhadad* besieged the Town, and for 27000 Men killed there by the Fall of a Wall, 1 *Kings* 20. 29, 30. and 2 *Kings* 13. 17.

4. *Gabala*, one of the 20 Towns which *Solomon* gave to *Hiram*. It was afterwards rebuilt, and strongly fortified by *Herod the Great*. *Josephus* calls it *Gabara*, says it was one of the chief Cities of *Galilee* in his Time, and places it on the Borders of *Galilee*. *Cluverius* puts it in *Upper Galilee*, above 5 German Leagues E. from *Tyre*.

5. *Thoren*, a strong Place built by the Christians near *Tyre*, to hinder the Excursions of the *Turks* when possessed of that City. 'Tis frequently mention'd in the Holy Wars, stands in a pleasant Country, and gave Name to the Noble Family of the Lords of *Thoron*; one of whom being Constable to K. *Baldwin III.* of *Jerusalem*, was buried here in a curious Chappel dedicated to the Virgin.

6. *Belford*, built also by the Christians in this Country, and was so call'd from its Strength and Beauty. 'Tis memorable for the Defeat of *Saladine* the Great Turk before it by the Christians.

7. *Castrum Regium*, which belonged to the *Teutonic Knights*, who defended it valiantly against the *Turks*. *Cluverius* makes it 3 Leagues and a half N. E. from *Ptolemais*.

8. *Castrum Thoron* or *Norum*, almost three Leag. N. E. from *Castrum Regium*. It was built by one of the Lords of *Thoron*, and *Saladine* the Great shamefully rais'd the Siege of

it, he was so frighten'd at the Death of one of his Favourites killed by an Arrow from the Town.

SAMARITIS, or SAMARIA.

Josephus says, it lies betwixt *Judaea* and *Galilee*, begins at a Village in a great Plain called *Gineza*, and ends at the Toparchy of *Acrabatena*. *Bleau* says, it has *Judaea* on the S. *Galilee* on the N. *Jordan* on the E. and *Phœnicia* on the W. That the Air is very temperate, except in the Vallies, where the Mountains reflect the Heat of the Sun, which occasions several Diseases among the Inhabitants. 'Tis encompassed with pleasant and fruitful Hills, and the Vallies are likewise very fertile. They have abundance of Olives, Vines, Mulberry, Mastick, and other Fruit-Trees. The Vallies abound with Herbs of all Sorts, and they have Plenty of Melons, Gourds, Cucumbers, and more Pot-Herbs than any other Part of the Holy Land. They have great Herds of Cattle, and Plenty of Milk.

After the 10 Tribes were carried Captive by *Salmanassar*, he sent a Colony of *Assyrians* hither, who were *Gentiles* at first, till God sent Lions to punish them, 2 *Kings* 17. After which, they petition'd to be taught the Divine Law, and the King sent them a Priest for that End; but still they adher'd to their Idols. *Heylin* says, they own'd the *Pentateuch*, but rejected the rest of the Canon. They were very conceited of their own Perfections, insomuch that they imagin'd themselves polluted by any strange Company; and when they return'd from visiting any of their neighbour Nations, us'd to sprinkle themselves with Urine; but if they had touch'd any who were not of their own Sect, they drench'd themselves, Clothes and all, in the next Fountain. For this they were so hated by the *Jews*, that they could think of no greater a Reproach than to call Christ a *Samaritan*, &c.

These *Samaritans* were divided into, 1. The *Dositheans*, from *Dositheus*, supposed to be the first Priest sent thither by the King of *Assyria*. They own'd Circumcision, the Sabbath, and the Resurrection, with the *Jews*; but rejected the Writings of the Prophets, would eat nothing that had Life, abstain'd

abstain'd from Marriage, and so strictly kept the Sabbath, that they resolv'd in whatsoever Posture a Man was found that Morning, he should continue in the same without Alteration the whole Day. 2. The *Selvians*, so called from *Selva*, one of *Dositheus's* Companions. They kept all publick Festivals, but not at the same Time with the *Jews* and the other *Samaritans*, for which Reason the latter would not permit them to worship in their Temple on *Gerizim*. 3. The *Gortem*, who kept publick Festivals at the Times enjoind by Law; but observ'd only one of the 7 Days of the great Festivals, and laid by the rest as Days of ordinary Labour.

These *Samaritans*, tho' at first possessed of all the Land belonging to the 10 Tribes, yet were afterwards confin'd betwixt *Gallilee* and *Judea*, within the ancient Territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the Half-Tribe of *Manasseh*, on this Side *Jordan*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Samaria*, the Metropolis of this Country, and the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Israel*, from the Time that *Omri* founded it, till the *Affyrians* carried away the *Israelites* Captives, and plac'd Men from *Babylon*, *Cushay*, &c. in their room, 2 *Kings* 17. 'Tis said, *Omri* bought the Hill *Samaria* of *Schemer* for the building of the City, and called it after his Name, 1 *Kings* 16. 24. *Buno* says, it lay not far from the Hill *Gerizim*, and *Luyts* places it on the Borders of the Tribe of *Manasseh*. *Brochardus*, who saw the Ruins of this Town, thinks it was formerly a fine City, and larger than *Jerusalem*. *Josephus* says, it was repaired and fortified after the first time that the *Affyrians* destroy'd it, but demolished again by *Johannes Hyrcanus* the *Maccabean*. *Herod the Great* rebuilt it again in more stately Manner than before, inclos'd it with a strong Wall 20 Stadia in Circuit, beautified it with a fine Temple, and called it *Sebaste*, in Honour of *Aug. Caesar*, whom the *Greeks* called *Sebastos*. *St. Jerome* says, it gave Name to the adjacent Country. *Cellarius* says, there are extant some Medals struck here by *Commodus*, inscrib'd, *CEBACTHNON CYP. Sebastenorum Syriae*, and another of *Julia Domna*, inscrib'd, *COL. SEBASTE*. *Bleau* says, it was anciently call'd *Marran*, and had a Church dedicated to *S. John the Baptist*, whose Sepulchre

is shewn here; but the *Turks* have made it a Mosque. There are great Marble Pillars among the Ruins. Here are also the Sepulchres of *Elisha* and *Abdias*, and some little Houses of the *Moors* built of dry Stone without any Morter. From the Town there is a fine Prospect of the *Mediterranean*, *Jaffa*, and *Casarea-Palastina*. *Thevenot* says, the three Tombs above-mentioned are inclos'd with a Wall in a Chappel under a Mosque, and only to be seen through some Holes, where the *Turks* keep Lamps. *Bleau* says, this Town lies a Day's Journey from *Jerusalem*.

2. *Thirza*, *Thersa*, or *Tharza*, 3 Leagues from *Samaria*, according to *Bleau*. 'Twas, says *Luyts*, situate on a Hill, and the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Israel* before *Samaria*, from which City *Cellarius* places it N. 'Tis mentioned 1 *Kings* 15. 21. and 16. 6, 8, 9. *Buno* thinks the Hills *Bethel* and *Dan*, famous for *Jeroboam's* Golden Calves, lay in this Country.

3. *Sichem*, *Sichmi*, and *Ephron*. *Scaliger* says, in his Time it was the Metropolis of *Samaria*. It was made a Colony by *Vespasian*, who called it *Flavia-Casarea*. Of this Colony was *Justin Martyr*. *Jacob* and his Family dwelt here, as did also *Sichem*, who deslour'd *Dinah*, *Jacob's* Daughter, for which Fact his Sons destroy'd the City, *Gen.* 34. It was repair'd again, till *Abimelech* levelled it to the Ground, *Judges* 9. 45. It was a third time rebuilt by *Jeroboam*, 1 *Kings* 12. 25. but, says *Heylin*, ruin'd by the Kings of *Damascus*. In the Time of our Saviour it was called *Sichar*; after its Restauration, *Neapolis*; and *Luyts* says, it still retains the Name of *Naplofa* or *Napolitza*. *Mr. Maundrel* says, it consists only of two Streets, lying parallel under Mount *Gerizim*; but 'tis full of People, and the Seat of a *Bassa*. *Dr. Wells* says, 'tis the same with that mentioned *Acts* 7. 16. and with *Shalem* in *Gen.* 33. 18. which last he believes to have been the proper original Name. It lies in a narrow Valley, between Mount *Gerizim* on the S. and *Ebal* on the N. *Bleau* says, it was called from its Colonies *Mabortha*, and *Mamortha*, is of a round Figure, two Miles in Compass, and the first City of *Samaria*. From Mount *Gerizim* near this Place the Lord order'd the Blessing to be pronounced to the *Israelites*, as he did the Curse from

its opposite Mount *Ebal*, *Deut* 11. 29. *Josephus* says, *Sanballat*, a great Courtier, having married his Daughter to *Manasses* the Priest, and fearing he would put her away to avoid the Sentence of Excommunication which he was involv'd in for that Match, on Promise that he would retain her, built a Temple on Mount *Gerizim* equal to that of *Jerusalem*, and made *Manasses* High-Priest of it: But it was destroy'd 200 Years after by *Hyrchanus* the *Maccabean*. Mr. *Maundrel* says, the *Samaritans* of *Sichem* have still a Temple here, to which they repair at certain Seasons for Worship. He finds Fault with *Adrichomius* for placing both this Mountain and *Ebal* on the same Side of the Valley of *Sychem*. He says, *Gerizim* seems the more verdant and fruitful of the two, because fronting towards the N. it is sheltered from the Heat of the Sun by its own Shade; whereas *Ebal* looking to the S. the scorching Beams of the Sun strike directly upon it. He seems to doubt, whether the great Stones which God commanded *Israel* to set up, inscrib'd with the Body of their Law, in *Deut*. 27. 4. were placed on Mount *Gerizim*, or that of *Ebal*, because the *Hebrew Pentateuch* assigns the latter, and the *Samaritan* the former. He discoursed with a *Samaritan* Priest about this Difference, who told him, the *Jews*, in Hatred to the *Samaritans*, had put *Ebal* for *Gerizim*, because the *Samaritans* worship'd in the latter, which the *Jews* would not allow for the true Place appointed by God. But Mr. *Maundrel* says, none of those Stones are to be seen in Mount *Gerizim*; so that it still remains a Question. *Bleau* says, there are several Caves on that Side of Mount *Ebal* next to the Town, which serve the *Turks* and *Moors* as Repositories for their Dead. He adds, the Valley of *Sichem*, as well as the Town, is water'd with very many curious Fountains; that 'tis 3 Leagues in Length from E. to W. and about one in Breadth; and that the Town is inhabited at present by the *Moors*, *Turks*, and a considerable Number of Christian *Jacobites*. Mr. *Maundrel* says, he saw a Mosque in the Valley just without the Town, built (as 'tis supposed) over the Sepulchre of *Joseph*, whose Bones were interr'd here when brought up from *Egypt*. Not far from hence he saw *Jacob's* Well, noted for the Conference which our

Saviour had here with the Woman of *Samarita*, *Joh*. 4. He thinks the Town anciently reached hither. There formerly stood a large Church over it, erected by the Empress *Helena*; but Time and the *Turks* have almost destroyed it. The Well, when Mr. *Maundrel* saw it, was cover'd with a Stone Vault. 'Tis dug out of a firm Rock about 3 Yards in Diameter, and 35 in Depth, 5 of which he found full of Water, which confutes the Story that 'tis dry all the Year, except on the Anniversary-Day when our Saviour sat upon it. He says, the Valley of *Sichem* ends at this Well, where it opens into a wide Field, supposed to be that given by *Jacob* to his Son *Joseph*, *Joh*. 4. 5. and therefore called *Jacob's* Field. 'Tis made very green and fertile, by a Stream which runs thro' it. *Bleau* says, 'tis four Miles long, and two broad, runs from S. to N. and swells in little Hills, which abound with Fruit-Trees; and that *Jacob's* Well, which lies on the N. Side of it, is now so stopped up with Stones, that there is not the least Appearance of Water. *Thevenot* says, 'tis 16 Fathom deep. Some think that the 12 Patriarchs were buried near this Well.

4. *Jezrael*. St. *Jerome* says, in his Time it was a very large Town in the Tribe of *Manasseh*, on the Borders of *Issachar*, situate between *Scythopolis* and *Legio*, and was the Metropolis of *Samaria*. It was anciently the Residence of the Kings of *Israel*. Near it lay *Naboth's* Vineyard, and the Place where *Jezabel* caus'd him to be stoned, 1 *Kings* 21. Here it was also that *Jezabel* was slain by the Command of *Jehu*, 2 *Kings* 9. 33. 'Tis reckon'd *Josh*. 19. 18. among the Cities of *Issachar*. *Adrichomius* places it in the Half-Tribe of *Manasseh*. *Luyts* says, 'tis seated on the Frontiers of that Tribe, at the Foot of *Gilboa*, to the W. *Heylin* says, it lay on the Edge of the Tribe of *Issachar*. *Cellarius* places it in the N. Part of *Samaria* towards Mount *Carmel*, and consequently near the Confines of *Galilee*. The adjacent Plains, call'd the Valley of *Jezrael*, had their Name from hence. They are called *Campus Magnus*, or the Great Field, *Maccabees* Lib. 1. Cap. 10. and are memorable in Scripture for the Battles of *Gideon* against the *Midianites*, of *Saul* against the *Philistines*, of *Ahab* against the *Syrians*, and of *Jehu* against *Jehoram*.

ram. Here was also, says Heylin, a Battle of the Christians against the Saracens. St Jerome makes it 10 Miles in Length: Adrichomius and Bonfrerius make it two Miles broad. Modern Geographers place it N. of the Town of Jezrael, and say, it extends from E. to W. betwixt Mount Hermon on the N. and Gilboa on the S. Heylin says, it reached from Scythopolis to the Mediterranean.

5. Ginum, call'd Gennaya or Genea by Josephus. Bleau places it at the Foot of Mount Ephraim, 4 Miles from Samaria, and makes it the last of this Country. Here it was that Christ cur'd the 10 Lepers, Luke 17.

6. Bethsan, the Gracian Scythopolis, which we have already described in Cœle-Syria, p. 89.

7. Zartan, or Zaretan, mention'd by Cellarius in this Division; but Adrichomius thinks there were two Towns of this Name, the Upper and Lower, and both in Peraea. 'Tis mention'd on Occasion of the miraculous Reflux of the River Jordan, Joshua 3. 16. as also in 1 Kings 4. 12. and 7. 46.

8. Aenon, mention'd in Josh. 3. 23. and no where else in the Scriptures, nor in Prophane Authors, except Eusebius and St. Jerome, who place it 8 Miles S. of Scythopolis, between Salim and Jordan.

9. Salim. The Text last mention'd proves it to be near Aenon; but we have no other Light from Prophane Writers as to the Situation of it than from Eusebius and St. Jerome, who place it at the same Distance from Scythopolis as Aenon. The latter says, it was call'd Salumias, and has the Ruins of the ancient Palace of Melchisedec.

10. Thapuab, or Taphua, mention'd in Joshua 16. 8. and 17. 8. St. Jerome says, it lay in the Tribe of Joseph, 10 Miles from Neapolis to the E. Cellarius thinks it to be Thaanath Silo mention'd Josh. 16. 6. where 'tis made the Eastern Boundary of the Tribe of Ephraim.

11. Dora. 'Tis call'd Dor, Judges 1. 27. one of the Towns from which the Children of Manasseh could not drive the Canaanites. Ptolomy makes it the last Town of Phœnicia. In the Maccabees 'tis call'd Dora. Peutinger's Maps place it 8 Miles from Casarea, and 20 from Ptolemais. Heylin says, it lay on the Mediterranean, near Castellum Peregrin-

orum, in the Tribe of Issachar. It was a very strong and powerful City, to which Tryphon fled for Refuge after he had treacherously murder'd Jonathan the Maccabæan, who had given him 200 Talents for his Ransom. But Antiochus Gryphus besieging the Town, took him and put him to Death.

12. Casarea, says Heylin, was anciently call'd Stratonis Turris, from Straton a King of the Zidonians; Casarea, in Honour of Augustus; and Casarea-Palestina, because it was the Metropolis of Palestine when it became a Roman Province. It was also the Seat of their Governors, as appears from the History of Festus and Felix in the Acts of the Apostles. Cellarius says, there were Medals struck here in the Time of Hadrian, inscrib'd, C. FLAV. CÆSAR. Another inscrib'd, COL. P. FL. AUG. CÆSAREA. It lay, according to Pliny and Ptolomy, betwixt Dora and Joppa, but nearest the latter. The former says, it was call'd Apollonia, and Vespasian gave it the Title of Flavia. Luyts says, it had the Mediterranean on the W. and a deep Marsh of fresh Water on the E. Cornelius the Centurion was by St. Peter here initiated in the Faith, Acts 10. Here Herod Agrippa was smitten by an Angel, and eaten up with Worms, Acts 12. 23. Here S. Paul, who was two Years in Prison, pleaded his Cause before Felix, Festus, and Agrippa, Acts 2. 4. Here liv'd Philip the Evangelist, and his 4 Daughters the Prophetesses, Acts 21. 8, 9. and Agabus here foretold St. Paul's Imprisonment, v. 11. The Emperor Justinian made it a Proconsulary State. Dr. Wells says, this was the Birth-place of Eusebius, the learned Historian and Chronologer, who was Bishop of it in the Reign of Constantine the Great. Josephus, who calls it the fairest City of Judæa, gives this Account of it: Herod liking its Site, rebuilt it with great Magnificence. The Houses were all of Marble. He made a Port as large as the Pyæum at Athens with extraordinary Charge and Difficulty, the Materials being fetch'd a great Way off. The Shore being expos'd to the Rage of the S. W. Wind, oblig'd him to make a Mole in Form of a Half-Moon, large enough for a Royal Navy. 'Twas founded on prodigious Stones of 50 Foot long, 18 Foot broad, and 9 Foot thick, let down in 20 Fathom Water. This Mole was 200 Foot in Extent;

tent; the one Half served to break the Sea, and the other for the Foundation of a Stone Wall fortified with Turrets, the largest of 'em called the Tower of *Drusus*, from *Drusus*, Son-in-Law to *Augustus*. There were several arch'd Vaults, which serv'd for Seamen's Cabbins, a Key for landing, and a fine Walk to take the Air. Upon a Mount in the middle of the Port stood a Temple dedicated to *Cæsar*, which was a Sea-Mark to Mariners. It had two Images on it, the one of *Rome*, the other of *Cæsar*. The Vaults and common Shores were at convenient Distances from one another, and discharg'd themselves into the Sea. *Herod* built a spacious Theatre and Amphitheatre, which had a fine Prospect to the Sea. *Josephus* adds, he was 12 Years in perfecting this great Work, and that the Town was inhabited for most Part by *Greeks*.

13. *Joppa*. *Ptolomy* places it 15 Miles S. from *Apollonia*. According to *Strabo*, *Jerusalem* might be seen from it. He calls it the Sea-Port of the *Jews*; but *Josephus* says, 'twas naturally incapable of a good Haven. *Buno* says, it lay in the Tribe of *Dan*, and had a commodious Haven. *Cluverius* makes it the ancientest City in *Phœnicia*. *Mela* and *Pliny* say, it was built before the Flood; and some think it was built by *Japhet*, and from him called *Japho*. The Poets fabled, that *Andromeda* was here expos'd to the Sea-Monster. The *Syrians* had a Garrison here in the Time of the *Maccabees*, and having a strong Fleet in the Harbour, invited 200 of the principal Townsmen on board, and drown'd them, for which *Judas* burnt their Fleet, and put the Men to the Sword. The *Romans* took it twice, and the last time destroy'd it by Fire. In 1250, *Lewis* King of *France* new wall'd and fortify'd it with Towers. There is nothing standing of it now but two little Turrets for Defence of the Haven, which is very unsafe, because tho' shelter'd from the S. and W. Winds by Rocks, it lies quite open to the N. Some Merchants trade here for Cottons, and hold their Factory in the neighbouring Town of *Rama*. 'Tis commonly plac'd in the Tribe of *Dan*; but *Spanheim* thinks that Tribe reach'd no farther than the Suburbs, and the Town lies in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. *Luyts* says, that Part of the Town

next the Harbour is well inhabited, and furnish'd with commodious Inns. *M. Boussingault* says, 'tis very strong by Situation. The Christian Pilgrims go thro' it in their Way to *Jerusalem*, from whence 'tis 10 Leagues. 'Tis for most Part ruin'd and uninhabited. *Monconys* says, there's a sorry Castle upon a small Rock which runs out into the Sea built upon the Ruins of an old one, that was very strong. The Haven is quite spoiled, and their Houses are only matted Tents rais'd against the Rock, where the Natives have dug some Grotto's. It lies two Leagues from *Rama*. *M. Thevenot* says, the House where the Pilgrims lodge is on the Sea-Shore, in Possession of the Monks, who lett Horses to 'em, with an Interpreter and a Passport, at 14 Crowns a Man, without which they can't proceed to *Jerusalem*. *St. Peter* was sent for from hence by *Cornelius* to *Cæsarea*, *Acts* 10. 5. and here he rais'd *Tabitha* to Life, *Acts* 9. 38, &c. All the Materials sent from *Tyre* towards the Building of *Solomon's* Temple were brought hither and landed, in order to be carried up to *Jerusalem*, 2 *Chron.* 2. 16. It was here that *Jonah* took Shipping to flee from the Presence of the Lord, *Jonah* 1. 3. Also here they say that *Mary Magdalen*, *Martha*, and their Brother *Lazarus*, were by the *Jews* put on board a shatter'd Vessel, and left to the Mercy of the Winds.

14. *Saron*, mention'd *Acts* 9. 35. *St. Jerome* calls all the Tract of Land betwixt *Cæsarea* and *Joppa* by this Name, and says, it consisted of spacious and fertile Fields. *Adrichomius* and *Bonfrerius* conclude, that it was the Royal City of the Kings of *Lassaron*, mention'd *Joshua* 12. 18. but *Cellarius* doubts it. *Heylin* says, it lay S. of *Antipatris*. *Luyts* says, the N. Part of the Plains of *Saron* lay in the W. Tract of the Half-Tribe of *Manasseh*, the S. Part in the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and adds, that they were encompassed with Mountains on the E. and W. and abounded with Corn, Orchards, and Pastures. *Dr. Wells* says, it was famous among the Rabbins for its Wines.

15. *Lydda*, where *St. Peter* cur'd *Aeneas* of the Palsie, *Acts* 9. 34. It lay near *Joppa*, v. 38. *Buno* says, it lay E. from *Jamnia*. It was anciently reckon'd one of the three Governments in *Judæa*, 1 *Maccabees* 11. 34. *Pliny* calls it a distinct Toparchy, and plac'd it

it amongst those Tribes which were added to *Judea* from *Samaria*, for which Reason *Cellarius* places it in this District; tho' some, who were not agreed as to its Situation from *Joppa*, have added it to the Tribe of *Ephraim*. It was anciently call'd *Diospolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*, as *Cellarius* thinks, by the *Macedonian* Kings of *Egypt* or *Syria*: But the *Jews* abhorring that Name, retain'd the old one. The *Christians*, says *Heylin*, some say a King of *England*, in the Time of the Holy Wars, gave it the Name of *St. George*, and built a Church in Honour of the Martyr of that Name, who they suppos'd suffer'd here; and on this Account they made it an Episcopal See. Mr. *Sandys* says, the *Greeks* here pretend to shew his Skull. *Thevenot* says, there are still some Remains of that Church, where the *Christians* have a small Place for Worship; and that 'tis now only a small Village, but pleasantly situated in a Woody Country.

16. *Ramatha*, or *Ramah*, mention'd 1 *Sam.* 19. 19. &c. It was the Birth-place of that Prophet, 1 *Sam.* 1. 20. and his Habitation, 1 *Sam.* 15. 16, 19. It was one of the Towns which was taken from *Samaria*, and added to *Judea*, 1 *Maccabees* 11. 34. *Luyts* says, it was a City of the *Levites*, in the Confines of *Ephraim*, *Dan*, *Judah*, and *Benjamin*. *Spanheim* confines it only to the latter. 'Tis call'd *Ramathaim Zophim*, 1 *Sam.* 1. 1. because situate on *Sophim*, now *Soba*, a Mountain of *Ephraim*, famous for the Sepulchre of *Samuel*, where *Bleau* says, there was anciently a Church, now a Mosque. 'Tis in some Places render'd by the 70 *Arimathæa*, and therefore suppos'd by some to be the Dwelling of *Joseph*, who begged *Christ's* Body of *Pilate*. In the latter Ages it was call'd *Ramula*. *Cellarius* says, it lay in the Neighbourhood of *Lydda*, in the Road from *Joppa* to *Jerusalem*.

17. *Gezer*, *Gefer*, and *Gazer*, mentioned *Joshua* 21. 21. 10. 33. 12. 12. 1 *Chron.* 20. 4. 2 *Sam.* 5. 25. and *Gazara*, 1 *Maccabees* 14. 34. *St. Jerome* says, it anciently belong'd to the Tribe of *Ephraim*, was subdued by *Joshua*, afterwards built by *Solomon*, and call'd *Gazara*, at 4 Miles N. of *Nicepolis*. But *Cellarius* thinks, he errs both in the Situation of the Place, and the Account concerning *Joshua*, because 'tis said, 1 *Kings* 9. 16. that *Pharaoah* having slain the *Canaanites* in the

City, burnt it, and gave it for a Present to his Daughter, *Solomon's* Wife.

18. *Antipatris*. *Josephus* says, it was built by *Herod* in the pleasant Field of *Capharsalama*, 1 *Maccab.* 7. 31. call'd *Antipatris* in Honour of his Father, and lay 150 Stadia from *Joppa*. Near this Place Part of *Nicanor's* Army was defeated by *Judas Maccabæus*; and *Obadiah*, *Ahab's* Steward, hid the Hundred Prophets from the Fury of *Jezabel*. *St. Paul* was conveyed hither by Night, at the Command of *Lysias*, to save him from the *Jews*, who sought his Life, *Acts* 23. 31. *Luyts* says, 'tis a Sea-Port between two Rivulets on the Frontiers of *Ephraim*, encompassed with a fine Grove in an admirable Champain Country. 'Twas very strong in the Time of the Holy War, but taken by *Baldwin*, after his Predecessor *Godfrey* the first K. of *Jerusalem* had in vain attempted it. *Cellarius* places it N. of *Gezer* and *Lydda*.

19. *Nabata*. *Josephus* says, it was a Tract about 60 Stadia from *Cæsarea*, the *Jews* of which Place retired hither with their Sacred Volumes when the Heathens molested 'em in that Town.

20. *Bethoron*, the Upper and Lower, *Joshua* 16. 3, 5. both built by *Sherah* the Daughter of *Ephraim*, 1 *Chron.* 7. 24. and repair'd by *Solomon*, 1 *Kings* 9. 17. and 2 *Chron.* 8. 5. *Cellarius* thinks the Upper *Bethoron* lay in the N. Part of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the Lower S. The latter is plac'd by *Josephus* and *St. Jerome* on a Hill 100 Stadia or 12 M. from *Jerusalem*; for which Reason *Adrichomius* and others have added it to the Tribe of *Benjamin*.

21. *Dothan*, or *Dothaim*, where *Joseph* found his Brethren when they cast him into the Pit, and sold him to the *Ishmaelites*, *Gen.* 37. *Bleau* says, the Well into which he was cast is still to be seen. It has a Marble Cover, supported by three small Pillars. Here it was also that *Elisha* struck the *Syrians* who besieg'd him in it with Blindness. *Eusebius* says, it lay 12 Miles N. from *Samaria*; but *Adrichomius* and others place it further back towards the Tribe of *Zabulon* and *Galilee*.

22. *Thebes*, about 13 Miles from *Scythopolis*, noted for the Death of *Abimelech*, who was killed by a Woman, that threw a Piece of a Mill-stone upon his Head as he approach'd the strong Tower there to burn it. The

The Mountains of *Gilboa* lie betwixt *Scythopolis* and *Neapolis*, about 6 Miles from the former, famous for the Death of *Saul* and *Jonathan*, and the Rout of the *Israelites* by the *Philistines*. There was a large Town or Village upon them called *Galbus*. They lie from W. to E. in the Borders of the Half-Tribe of *Manasseh* and *Issachar*, and on the S. of the Valley of *Jezrael*.

23. *Bethel*, formerly call'd *Luz*, noted for *Jacob's* Vision, *Gen.* 28. The Name signifies the House of God. It was afterwards called *Bethaven* by the Prophets, which signified an House of Iniquity, because of the Calf which *Jeroboam* set up there to be worship'd. Some reckon two other Towns of the same Name. *Bethaven*, before *Jeroboam's* Time, was a distinct Town from *Bethel*, *Joshua* 7. 2. Chap. 18. 12. and *1 Sam.* 13. 5. *Cellarius* says, it lay near *Bethel* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. *Cluverius* places it a German League and half S. from *Samarina*.

24. *Acrabata*, or *Acrabatta*. *Josephus* says, it lay one Day's Journey N. from *Jerusalem*, and was the Head of a Toparchy.

25. *Shilo*, in the Borders of *Ephraim*, noted for being the Seat of the Ark of Covenant for above 300 Years. The Place of its Situation is not exactly known. *Cellarius* places it in *Ephraim*. The Town stood on a Hill; and it was here that *Joshua* divided the Promis'd Land among the Tribes. *Sandys* says, the Mountain is the highest in *Jewry*, and in his Time had the Ruins of a City upon it.

Azotus, *Ascalon*, and *Gamala*, are by *Cluverius* reckon'd in *Samarina*; but *Cellarius* elsewhere; therefore we refer them to the proper Place.

Drusias, near *Neapolis* in this Country, is by some reckon'd to be *Sichem*; and being rebuilt by *Herod*, was called *Drusias*, in Honour to the Family of *Augustus*.

Heylin places in this Country, 1. *Thamnath-Cares*, given by the *Israelites* to *Joshua*, who enlarg'd and made it a strong and brave City. He was buried here, and it was afterwards the Chief of the Jurisdiction called *Thamnithica*. 2. *Adeza*, or *Adassa*, where *Judas Maccabeus* with 3000 Jews defeated the Army of *Nicanor*. 3. *Jefleti*, or *Peletthi*, which gave Name and Birth to the *Peletthites*, Part of *David's* Guard. 4. *Aso-phon*, a Village famous for the Defeat which

Ptolomy Lathurus gave to *Alexander K.* of the *Jews*: After which, he slew all the Women he met with, and caus'd the young Children to be boil'd in Cauldrons. 5. *Bezek*, the City of the Tyrant *Adoni-Bezek*, who cut off the Thumbs and great Toes of 70 Kings, and made 'em gather their Meat under his Table. He was taken here by *Judah*, who killed 10000 of his Men, and mangled him in the same Manner as he had done those Kings, *Judges.* 1. *Josephus* calls it *Bala*, and *Heylin* thinks it to be the Place where *Saul* assembled 33000 Men for the Relief of *Jabesh Gilead*. 6. *Alexandrium*, a strong Castle in the S. Border of *Manasseh*, fortified by *Alexander*, the Son of *Aristobulus*; but he was forced to yield it to the Romans, who demolish'd it. It was rebuilt by *Herod*, who left his Wife *Mariamne* in it when he went to see *Augustus* at *Rhodes*.

Heylin says of the *Samaritans* in general, That they were as changeable in their Temper as in their Fortune. When the *Jews* were prosperous, they call'd 'em Cousins; but when otherwise, disclaim'd all Relation to 'em, and pleaded their Descent from the *Medes* and *Persians*. The *Jews* call'd them *Cuthaans*, because most of them came from *Cuth*, now *Chuzestan* in *Persia* or *Chusites*, by Way of Scorn, as being descended from *Chus*, the Son of cursed *Cham*. They were bitter Enemies to the *Jews*, because they would not allow them to join with them in rebuilding the Temple, which they maliciously endeavour'd to hinder. They were at last subdued by *Hyrcaeus* the *Maccabee*, who destroy'd their Temple, and levelled *Samarina*; so that the *Jews* and these People could never be reconcil'd. Both of them were at last extirpated by the Emperor *Adrian*, and forced into other Countries.

J U D A E A.

IS by most of the Roman Writers taken for all *Palastina*, or the greatest Part of it. 'Tis the 3d Part of *Palastine* on this Side *Jordan*. It contain'd the Tribes of *Judah*, *Benjamin*, *Dan* and *Simeon*, besides *Philistea* and *Idumaea*, which were annex'd to it by Conquest. *Heylin* says, it reach'd from the Borders of *Samarina* to *Arabia Petraea*, be-

twixt the *Mediterranean*, the Lake *Asphaltites*, and Part of *Jordan*, which lay on the E. of it; and that the Soil was much the same with that of *Samaria*, but more filled with Hills and Rivers. It had its Name from *Judah*.

The principal Towns were, 1. *Jerusalem*, not only the chief Town of *Palestina*, but of all the *East*, and so ancient, that *Josephus*, *Onkelos*, and others, think it to be *Salem*, the Seat of *Melchisedec*. It was call'd afterwards *Jebus*, and the Capital of the *Jebusites*, one of the Nations of *Canaan*, whom the *Israelites* drove out of the Town, but could not take the Castle till the Time of *David*. It is sometimes call'd *Hierosolyma*, and *Soly-ma*, both in the Singular and Plural Numbers. Authors dispute in which Tribe it lay, because in *Josh.* 15. 63. and *Judges* 1. 8. it is given to the Sons of *Judah*; but *Judges* 1. 21. to the Sons of *Benjamin*. This is reconciled *Josh.* 15. 8. where it appears, the Line which divided these Tribes went thro' *Jerusalem*. The *Talmudists* say, it went thro' the Court of the Temple. The Curious may see more of this in *Lightfoot's* Choro-graphy. This City was first adorned by *David*, more-beautified by *Solomon*, destroy'd by the Kings of *Babylon*; and after it was rebuilt, much infested by the *Macedonian* Kings of *Syria*, defended by the *Asmonæan* Family, but through their Divisions was first taken by *Pompey*, then by the *Parthians* for *Aristobulus*, again by the *Romans* for *Herod*, and at last destroy'd by *Titus* for its Rebellion. *Josephus* says, it stood upon two Hills, whose Fronts look to one another, and that the Buildings on both Sides reach'd down to the Valley. The higher and larger Hill contain'd the Upper Town, call'd the Castle of *David*, and afterwards the Upper Market or Town. The other Hill, call'd *Acra*, contain'd the Lower Town. Over against this lay a 3d Hill, lower than *Acra*, and divided from it by a Valley, which the *Asmonæan* Princes fill'd up by levelling Part of the Hill of *Acra*, that they might join the Temple to the City. There was also a 4th Hill inhabited, call'd *Bezetha*, which *Josephus* interprets the New City. It lay over against *Antonia*, from which it was divided by deep Ditches. *Heylin* says, the Town was seated on a rocky Mountain, of a steep and difficult Ascent, except towards

the N. and was encompassed on all Sides with neighbouring Mountains, as if plac'd in the middle of an Amphitheatre. In its best State it was divided into 4 Parts, each of which had their own Walls. He calls them the Upper, Lower, New City, and the City of *Herod*; the first three upon several Hills. The first Hill, containing the Upper City, is the famous Mount *Sion*, in which *Josephus* says *David* built his Royal Palace. This Mount was the Northern Part of *Jerusalem*, as appears *Pf.* 48. 2. and in the furthest Part of it lay *Millo*, built by *David*, and therefore call'd his Town. On the W. Part of the Hill stood the Tower of *David*, and a double Palace built by *Herod*, one call'd *Agrippa*, and the other *Casar*. They were both of Marble, and interlaid with Gold. Near this stood the House of *Annas* and *Caiaphas*, whither our Saviour was led to his Tryal. The 2d Hill, call'd *Acra*, was the Old *Jerusalem*, to which was added afterwards *Sion*, or the City of *David*. The principal Buildings here mention'd by *Josephus* were the *Acra*, properly so call'd, and the Court. The 3d Hill was Mount *Moriah*, where *Abraham* was to offer *Isaac*, and upon which *Solomon* built the Temple. The Hill was too narrow at first for the Temple, so that one of its Porches was built on a Rampart rais'd up from that Valley. Afterwards other Ramparts were added, with splendid Structures, by which the Hill was enlarg'd, that the Temple might have a larger Circuit. *Josephus* says, it was encompassed with a treble Wall, so that this Temple was a very strong Fortress. The 4th Hill, called *Bezetha*, contain'd the New Town, says *Josephus*. *K. Agrippa* began to fortify it, but gave it over to prevent the Suspicion of the Emperor *Claudius*. The Jews afterwards rais'd the Fortifications 20 Cubits high. *Antonia*, which lay over against *Bezetha*, was built, says *Josephus*, by *Hyrchanus*, the first High-Priest of that Name. He erected a House in Form of a Tower, where he dwelt for most part, and kept the Priestly Ornaments. *Herod* afterwards enlarg'd this Tower or Palace, made it stronger for the Security of the Temple, and called it *Antonia*, in Honour of his Friend *Anthony*, the Roman Præfect of the *East*. It was so large as to contain a Roman Legion, which kept Garrison in it when the Country was made a Pro-

Province. For Bigness it resembled a Town, and for Magnificence a Palace. The Walls were 40 Cubits high, with a Tower at each Corner, one of which was 70, and the other three 50 Cubits high, so that the whole Temple was seen from it; and where it join'd to the Porches of the Temple, there were Stairs on both Sides. *Josephus* adds, that not only the Fortifications of the Castle, but those of the Town, were very strong. The City was encompassed with a treble Wall, except where it was surrounded with inaccessible Ditches, and there it had but one Wall. The outermost Wall was fortified with 90 Towers, at 200 Cubits Distance from one another. The middle Wall had 14 Towers, and the innermost 60. Such of them as were built or repair'd by *Herod*, he called by the Names of his own Family. One of them he named *Phasaelus*, from his Brother. It was 70 Cubits high, and resembled the famous *Egyptian Pharos*. Another he call'd *Mariamne*, in Honour of his Wife: But the most famous Tower was an Octangular one, call'd *Psephina*, of 70 Cubits high, from whence one might see *Arabia* on one Side, and the Sea on the other. Near that stood the Tower of the *Hippici*, his two Friends of that Name, who were slain in his Service. *Tacitus* gives this Account of *Jerusalem*; That it was of very difficult Access, and yet fortified by such Works as were enough to make a Town of a low Situation very strong. Their Walls inclos'd two vast high Hills, and were made sloping or winding by Art, that those who attack'd it might be the more liable to the Shot of the Engines from their Walls. The Outside of the Rock was steep. Where the Mountain was high, their Towers were raised to 60 Foot; where the Ground was low, to 120, which made a wonderful Prospect, and to those at a Distance looked of an equal Height. There were other Towers in the Inside upon the Walls of the Palace, and the Tower of *Anthony*, so call'd by *Herod* in Honour of *Mark Anthony*, extreme lofty. The Temple, in Form of a Castle, had its own Walls, and exceeded all the rest in Workmanship. The very Porches or Galleries which surrounded the Temple were noble Bulwarks. They had a Fountain of running Water, and under their Moun-

tains there were dug Cisterns for preserving Rain-Water. The Builders being sensible they must have frequent Wars with their Neighbours, because of the Difference of Customs, had provided every Thing against the longest Siege; which Fear and Experience had taught them to be necessary after the Town was taken by *Pompey*; so that by bribing the *Claudii*, and obtaining Leave to fortify their Town, they rais'd Works in Time of Peace as if they had been in War. The Strength of the Temple was such, that *Pompey* could scarcely take it in 3 Months Time, say *Josephus* and *Eutropius*. On the N. where it was weakest, and attacked by *Pompey*, it had great Towers, and deep Ditches in the low Valley which encompassed it; and towards the Town, the Ascent was very steep, and a Bridge over the Ditch, which the Garrison broke down when besieg'd. Their Well was that call'd *Siloe* or *Gihon*, which lay within the outer Fortifications, and the Stream of it formed several Pools call'd by the same Name, as appears *Joh. 9. 7*. 'Tis supposed to be the same which *Josephus* call'd *Solomon's Pool*, and that Part of the Town was call'd *Siloeam*, from the Well, *Luke 13. 4*. where the Tower of *Siloe* is mention'd. This Fountain is also call'd *Gihon*, *1 Kings 1. 33*. where *Solomon* was anointed; for what the *Hebrew* calls *Gihon*, *Jonathan* in his *Targum* calls *Siloe*, the Waters of which are said to run softly, *Isa. 8. 6*.

Bano says, the N. Part, which was call'd the Lower City, because most of it lay in the Valley, was also call'd the *Daughter of Sion*, because built after it; and *Heylin* says, That for Majesty and Greatness, it exceeded the Mother. From this Valley, he says, rose Mount *Moriah*, on which stood the Temple; and on another Hill, betwixt that Mountain and Mount *Sion*, was the Palace which *Solomon* built for *Pharaoh's* Daughter, and that which he erected for himself, from whence by a high Bridge he had a Passage to the Temple. W. from hence, on a lofty Rock which overlook'd the City, stood the Royal Palace of the *Maccabees*, which was rebuilt by *K. Agrippa*, and near it *Herod's* Theatre, adorned with admirable Paintings, expressing the Victories and Triumphs of *Augustus*. In this Lower City stood also Mount *Acra*, upon which there was a Citadel

del built by *Antiochus K. of Syria*, but demolished by *Simon Maccabeus*, because it overtop'd the Temple. Here stood also the Palace of *Helena Qu. of Adiabene*, who becoming a Jewish Profelyte, lived and died here. In this Part also was *Herod's Amphitheatre*, capable of 80000 Persons, whom he sometimes entertain'd with Shews after the Roman Manner, and not far from it the high Rock on which the Tower of *Baris*, afterwards call'd *Antonia*, was built. Here lay also the Palace of *Qu. Berenice*, and a Castle of *Antiochus Epiphanes*. Here stood likewise the spacious Court join'd to *Antonia* by the *Xystus* or Great Hall, into which some think our Saviour was brought by *Pilate*, and shew'd to the Jews with a Crown of Thorns on his Head. Here it was where *Agrippa* dissuaded the Jews from making War against the Romans; and in this Part of the Town lay the Pool of *Bethesda*, or the Sheep-Pond, in which were wash'd the Cattle design'd for Sacrifice, and whose Waters being stir'd by an Angel, cured Diseases. Here it was that our Saviour heal'd the lame Man.

That call'd the New City lay upon Mount *Bezetha*. *Buno* and *Heylin* say, it was the N. Part of *Jerusalem* with respect to the City of *Herod*. It had been formerly a Suburb, inhabited by none but Mechanicks and the meanest Tradesmen. It was afterwards encompassed by *Agrippa* with a Wall of 25 Cubits high, and fortified with 90 Turrets. *Buno* says, it was defended by a treble Wall, and betwixt the first and second lay the Palace of *Herod*, and in that was the Prison from whence the Angel deliver'd *Peter*. *Heylin* seems to call this the City of *Herod*; for he says, his Palace lay in the W. Part of it, which for Cost was excessive, and contain'd Gardens, Groves, Fish-Ponds, with other Places for Pleasure and Exercise; and for Strength, it was reckon'd invincible, being fortified by the Towers we formerly mentioned. *Heylin* says of this City in general, That it was defended by a wonderful Circumvallation, and had a Ditch cut out of the Rock of 50 Foot deep, and 250 broad. He observes of *Jerusalem* in the main, That it remain'd unconquer'd for the first 400 Years after the Entrance of the *Israelites* into the Land of *Canaan*; *Josephus* says 515, but mi-

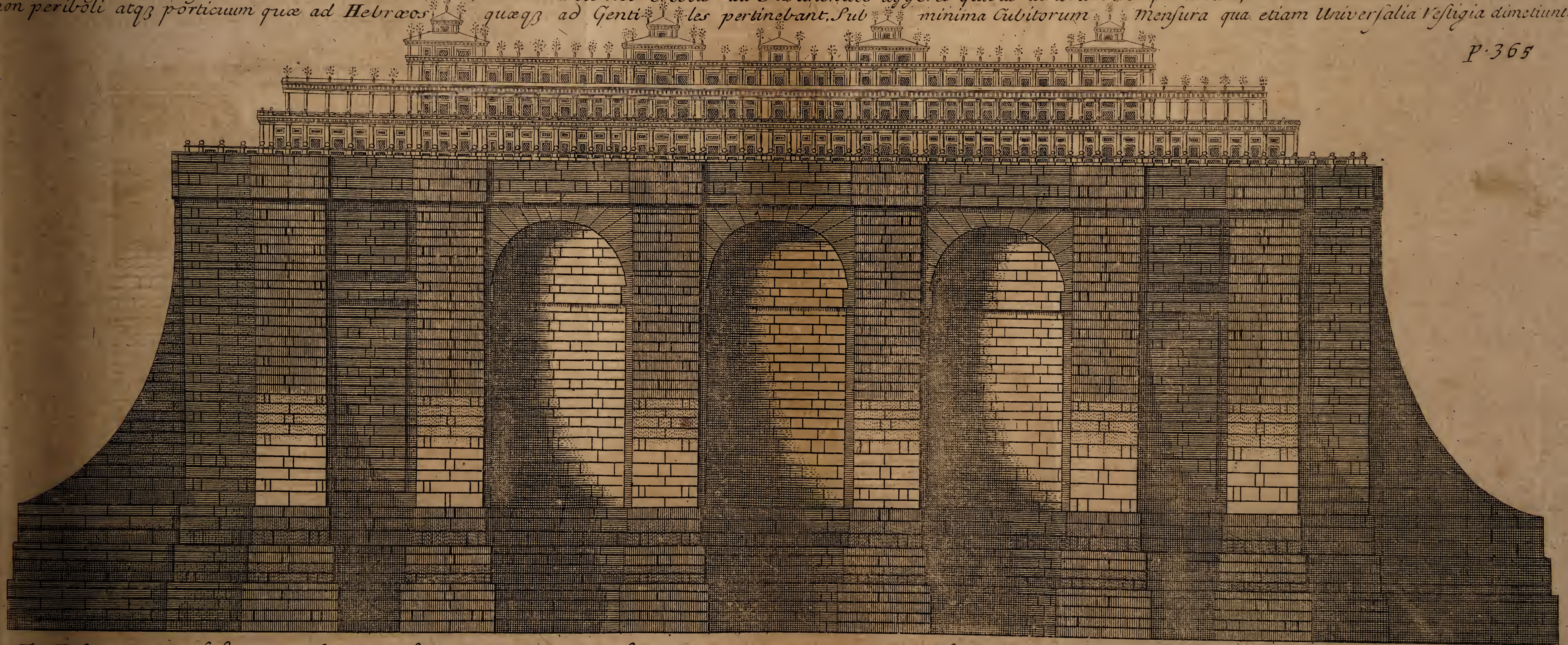
stakes; for the Temple was begun in the 480th Year after the *Israelites* came from *Egypt*, 1 *Kings* 6. 1. The *Jebusites*, the Inhabitants of the Place, rely'd so much on the Strength of it, that they answer'd *David's* Summons by Way of Scorn, *Except thou take away the Blind and the Lame, thou shalt not come in hither*. *Dr. Heylin* approves the Commentary of *Mr. Gregory of Christ-Church, Oxon*, on this Passage, viz. That by the *Blind and Lame*, they understood their Idols, which they thought capable of defending them as well as the *Palladium* did *Troy*, and that they gave them this Name by Way of Irony, because they knew the *Israelites* upbraided the *Gentiles* with their Blind and Lame Gods; but their vain Hopes were soon disappointed, for *David* took the strong Hold of *Sion*; and *Josephus* says, That he made *Joab* his General for his Bravery in this Expedition, according to his Promise, 2 *Sam.* 5. 8. 1 *Chron.* 11. 6. *Bochart* rejects the Opinion of those who think *Jerusalem* was the same with *Salem*, the City of *Melchisedeck*; for he places that in the Way betwixt *Damascus* and *Sodom*, which seems to be favour'd by *Gen.* 14. 18. He argues also with *St. Jerome* against those who think the Name of *Jerusalem* was a Mixture of Hebrew and Greek, and will not allow what *Homer* says of the *Solymi* to be applicable to the Inhabitants of *Jerusalem*. He says, these *Solymi* were a People of *Phœnicia*, the same with the *Pisidians*; and that the Mountains call'd *Solymi* were in *Lycia*, near the Lake *Phaselis*, and not the Lake *Asphaltites*, as *Josephus* and others imagine. These *Solymi*, mention'd by *Homer*, hav'd their Heads, which was forbid to the Jews, *Levit.* 19. 27. and therefore they could not be the same People.

The Temple of Jerusalem.

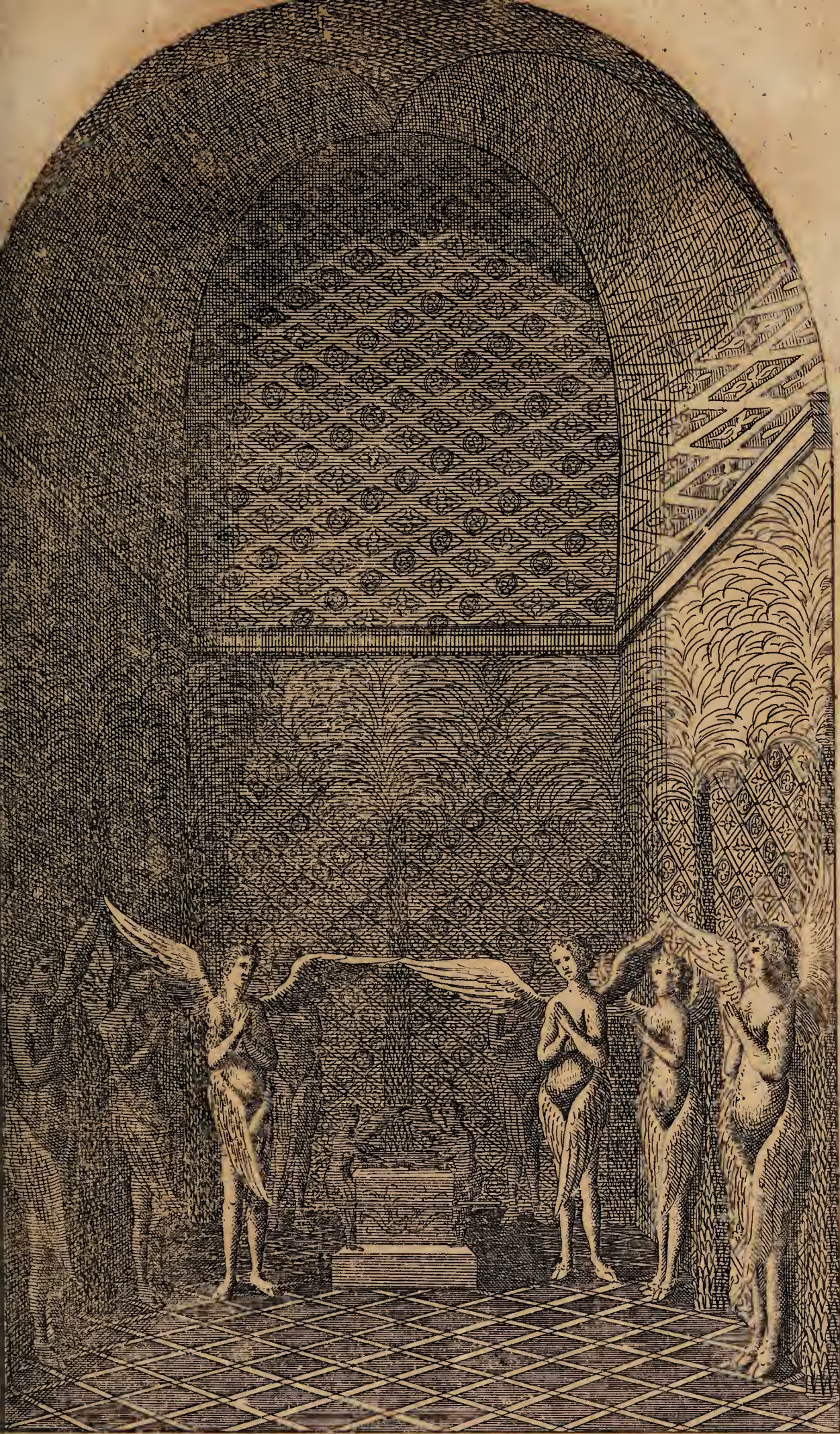
THE best Description of it is in 1 *Kings* 6, 7, 8. and 2 *Chron.* 3, 4, 5. which we shall not repeat. The Prodigiousness of the Work may be understood by the Number of Men employ'd to prepare the Materials, and oversee the Structure, 1 *Kings* Cap. 5. there being 10000 per Month in *Lebanon* to hew down Timber, 70000 to carry Burdens, 80000 to hew Stones, and 3300 Over-

Orientalis facies Substructionis ab imis Vallibus, cubitos trecentos erectæ ad Sustipendos aggeres quibus atriorum Templi aream, Solomon Laxandam curavit nec non periboli atq3 porticium quæ ad Hebræos quæq3 ad Genti- les pertinebant. Sub minima Cubitorum Mensura qua etiam Universalia Vestigia dimetiuntur.

P. 365



The Eastern Front of Solomons Temple, & of the Rampart built up from the Valley 300 Cubits high to Support and Enlarge the Area of the Courts of the Temple, of the Outer Wall & of the Gallerie of the Jews & Gentiles, according to the lesser Cubit by which y^e whole was measur'd.



View of the Roof, Walls & Pavement of the Holy of Holies.
Aspectus Testudinis Murorum & pavementi Sancti Sanctorum.



MARE
CASPIUM

SYRIA

CILICIA

ASSUR

CARMA-
NIAE
PARS

SINUS
PERSICUS Arab.
Mare Alachdar id
est Mare Viride.



MARE INDICUM

MESO
POTAMIA

BABYLONIA

CHALDEA

HAVILAH

ARABIA
SARA

CENI

FELEX

VILA

SINUS ARABICUS
Mare Suph Arab Chalzem id est Clisma

ÆTHIOPIA sub Ægypto

Ebr. LUD

ÆGYPTUS THEBAIS

NILI ANCONES

Regio

Myrrhifera

Penetra-
lia

MARE MEDITERRANEUM

TERRA PELISTINORUM

Linea seu Quadrans Regionis EDEN

NABATEI

PETREA

ARABIA

ARABIA DESERTA

CHALDEA

Auranitis
Audanitis
sive Edenitis
rectius

Chus et
Chut

Teredon

Dadan
Ichnophagi
Suranda Nabunisi
Bakarem Oleario
hui Margaritarii
piscatio

Amurza

Sadir

Samidace
Ebr. Sabteca

Elymei

Tigris flu.

Euphrates flu.

PHRAT flu.

Pichon flu.

Gichon flu.

Gichon flu.

Baisat foetan

Callanites

Ophit et Ierach

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Phoenice

Panopolis

Cataracte

Nilus flu.

Ebr. Sihor

Syene

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Austri. job. 9. v. 9.

Nilus flu.

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

Phyle Ebr.
Phul

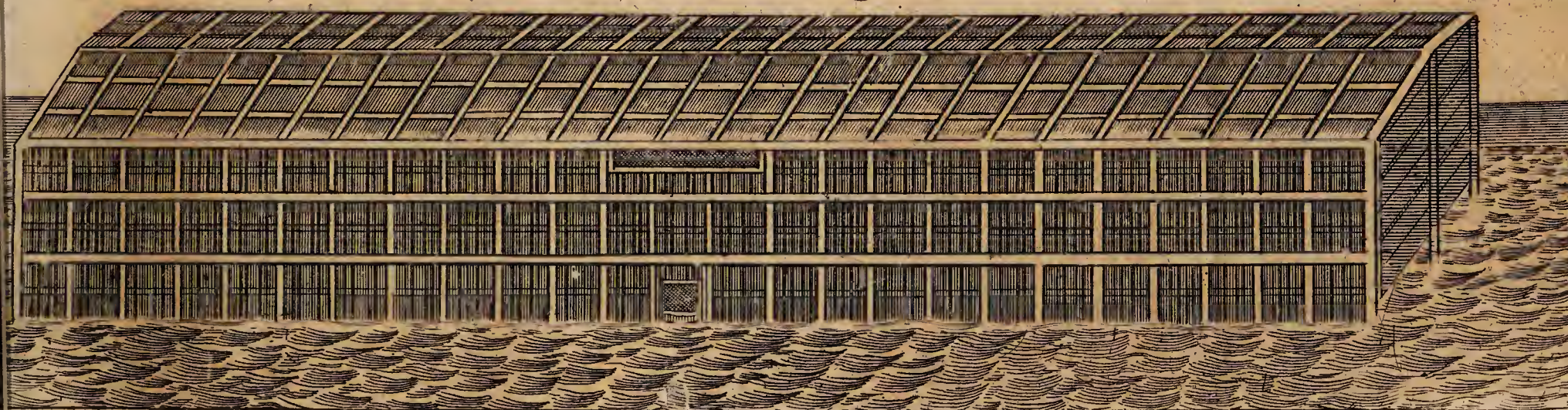
*Arcæ Noachicæ delineatio Interna, Loca Animalium cujuscunq3 generis et
Nutrimenti illis appropriati, Exhibens*

*A Draught of the Inside of the ARK, Shewing the Apartments assign'd to the
several Creatures therein contained, and to the keeping of the Food they lived upon.*



Arcæ Noachicæ delineatio Externa.

A Draught of the Outside of the ARK. of NOAH



Overseers, who were all employed for 7 Years. *Josephus* says, That there was another Edifice built over the Temple of the same Dimensions with its self, and makes the whole Height 120 Cubits. He makes the Porch of equal Height, and says, there were round it 30 Cells, 25 Cubits broad, 25 long, and 20 high. About these there were built others, and over them the like; so that they were almost as high as the other Buildings. The whole Building was of Freestone, so exactly join'd, that it seem'd to be one entire polish'd Rock, growing there of its own Accord. He adds, that *Solomon* prepared for the Service of the Temple, besides the large Table of Gold for the Shew-Bread, many others, on which stood 20000 Ewers and Basins of Gold, 40000 of Silver, and 10000 Candlesticks. He made likewise 80000 Pots, 100000 Ewers of Gold, and 200000 of Silver, to offer the kneaded Flower on the Altar; 60000 Cups of Gold, and 120000 of Silver, to contain the Flower mix'd with Oil; 2000 Measures of Gold, and 20000 of Silver, resembling an Ephah; 20000 Gold Censers for Perfume, 1000 Vestments for Priests, with Surcoats, Tyara's, and Pectorals; and there was one Crown in which *Moses* had writ the Name of God, which *Josephus* says continued to his Time. There were 10000 Stoles of fine Linen for the Priests, with Scarlet Girdles for each; 200000 Trumpets, and 40000 other Musical Instruments, made use of in praising of God. The Temple was encompassed with a Wall 3 Cubits high, to exclude the Prophane Multitude, and admit none but the Priests. *Josephus* says, it was called *Gison*. Without this Wall stood a square Temple, the Doors of which were cover'd with Gold, and all the People that were purified might enter here. The Curious may find *Josephus's* Mistakes, and the Difference betwixt his Account of the Temple and that of the Scripture, learnedly discuss'd, together with the Descriptions of *Vallalpandus* and the *Talmudists*, by *Lewis Capell*, Professor of Hebrew, and D.D. in the University of *Salmure* in France; Part of the *Apparatus* to *Dr. Walton's Polyglott Bible*, where the Description of the Court of *Israel*, and of the Temple in *Ezekiel*, Chap. 40, 41, 42, and

76. is also consider'd. We shall give the following brief Account from that learned Treatise: The Height of the whole Temple is reckon'd 120 Cubits, amounting to 2880 Inches, and that of the Courts was the half. The Front on the E. Side was sustain'd by Ramparts built up from the Valley 300 Cubits high, which makes the whole Height on that Side 420 Cubits; but if we reckon to the Top of the highest Flower over the Tower of the Porch, it makes 60 Cubits more, in all 480, according to the Scale annexed to the Draught of it.

The Length of the Ramparts which supported the Wall was 800 Cubits on the Top, each of which were equal to a common Pace, or two Foot and a half. The Length of the Ramparts below was 1000 Cubits, the Breadth 100 Cubits, and the Corners where straightest 50 Cubits; the Height 300 Cubits. The Buttresses which supported the Wall were of the same Height, and on the Top of a square Form, and 50 Cubits broad, according to the Thickness of the Wall. They jutted out at Bottom 150 Cubits. The Stones of which they were built were, according to *Josephus*, 40 Cubits long, others say 25, 12 broad, and 8 high. They were all of Marble, cut with Saws, and so exactly join'd, as to deceive the Eye, and look'd all like one Stone.

The Pillars of *Parian* Marble were 1453, without reckoning the Half-Pillars join'd to the Walls and Buttresses, which were above twice the Number. They were built of Stones so thick, as three Men could scarcely fathom them. They were double the Height, and none of them less than 15 Cubits. The Capitals were of the *Corinthian* Order, and beautiful to a Wonder. The Windows, besides those in the Pavement to let Light into the Apartments under Ground, were 2246. The Length of the Wall which inclos'd the whole was 125 Reeds, or $770\frac{1}{2}$ Cubits on each Side; which multiplied by 4, makes $3081\frac{1}{2}$ Cubits or common Paces. The said Wall was one Reed high, and one thick, a Reed being 6 Cubits and a Hand breadth, with Marble Rails betwixt Cubical Pillars of one Reed. The Space or Way betwixt the outer Wall

and the Porch of the *Gentiles* was $37\frac{1}{2}$ Cubits broad, and 123 Reeds or $768\frac{1}{4}$ Cubits long.

The Porch of the *Gentiles* was $687\frac{1}{2}$ Cubits long, $43\frac{1}{4}$ broad; the Wall of it, above the Height of the outer Wall to the Top of the Dome, 25; and the Height of each Porch, for it was double in the Height, $43\frac{1}{4}$. The Court of the *Gentiles* was 50 Cubits broad, and 600 long.

The Wall of the Courts was 500 Cubits long on each Side, and 60 Cubits high, besides the Height of its Basis, equal to that of the outermost Wall, and had a Three-fold Order of Columns. The Height of its Gates, in which there was the 4th Order of Columns, from the Floor of the Court of the *Gentiles*, was 78 Cubits, and that of the Castles, in which there was the 5th Order of Columns, 90. The Area of the Courts of *Israel*, which were 7 in Number, and square, were 100 Cubits. The Area of the Inner Court, or that of the Priests, in the Middle of which stood the House of God, was encompassed with its own Wall, and 100 Cubits broad, and 250 long. The Length of the Galleries which encompassed each Area were equal to that of the Areas, and their Breadth half so much, viz. 50 Cubits. The little Castles which stood in the Angles, and at the joining of the Galleries, were 16. They were all square, and 50 Cubits long and broad. There were 6 Gates, 3 outer ones into the Court of *Israel*, and as many inner ones into the Court of the Priests, each 50 Cubits long, and 25 broad. The empty Space betwixt those called the *Thalami*, or Beds of the Gates, was 10 Cubits. There were 6 of those *Thalami*, 3 on one Side, and 3 on t'other. They were square, of a Reed in Height, Length and Breadth, and encompassed with Rails. The Posts were a Reed in Thickness, and the Opening of the Gates 13 Cubits high, and 8 broad.

The House of God he describes thus: The Breadth of the Tower was 64 Cubits; the Height, to the Top of the Corner Stone, 125 Cubits. The Porch, from the one Wall to the other of the Holy Place, $12\frac{1}{2}$ Cubits in the Inside, and 20 long. The Holy Place was 20 Cubits broad, and 40 long, in which was included the Wall of two

Cubits and a half thick, and 20 Cubits high, without Windows, which divided the Sanctuary from the Holy of Holies. In the whole Structure there were 712 Chambers, most of 'em square, and 12 Cubits of Extent, but many of them much more. There were also Apartments under Ground, Kitchens Sacred and Prophane, with large Storehouses for the Tents and First Fruits of all *Israel*, and a vast Hall or Wardrobe over the Sanctuary and *Sanctum Sanctorum*, where the Table, Curtains, and the rest of the Instruments of the Tabernacle and sacred Offerings, were kept. The Passage betwixt the Chambers in each Side was of the same Breadth with the Chambers, but 487 Cubits in Length. The common Beams were $12\frac{1}{2}$ Cubits, at least $1\frac{1}{4}$ thick, and $1\frac{2}{3}$ broad. There were others larger, which went the whole Breadth of the Temple, 54 Cubits long, $2\frac{1}{2}$ thick, and $3\frac{3}{4}$ broad; all of Cedar, adorn'd with Sculptures, Carv'd Work, and Gold Plates. The Floor of the whole Structure, especially of the Galleries, was pav'd with Stones of various Colours, very precious, and so artificially laid in Checker-work, that they looked like one entire Stone. The Walls, Roof, and Floor of the Sanctuary, were cover'd with Plates of Gold, join'd by Golden Nails, whose Heads were of curious Workmanship, each of them taking up 25 Ounces of Gold. They were all engraven with Work of different Sorts; and instead of enamelling, were adorn'd with most precious Jewels of various Colours, set in Gold, and disposed in such excellent Order, that they shone like the Stars in the Firmament. There belong'd to the Temple 440000 Vessels of Gold, and 1340000 of Silver, which took up 108000 Talents and 2000 Shekels of Gold in the whole, amounting to 1817654024 Roman Gold Crowns, and of Silver a Million of Talents, which is 1464480000 more such Crowns. All this was consecrated to the Temple, besides what was laid out on the Wages and Food of the Workmen, and for other Materials. All this Gold, reduced to a Cubical Form, makes 500 Cubical Cubits, which would fill a Room of 10 Cubits square, and 5 high; and the Silver, if reduced to the same Form, would have filled a Room of 20 Cubits

Cubits square. Authors differ so much in reducing the Shekels and Talents to our Weight and Coin, that 'tis scarce possible to make any exact Computation of the Value of this Gold and Silver; but according to *Capell's* Reduction of them into *Roman* Gold Crowns, which are about 6 s. *English* apiece, the Gold of those Vessels amounted to Five hundred and forty five Millions, Two hundred ninety and six Thousand, and Two hundred and three Pounds, Four Shillings, Sterling; and the Silver came to Four hundred thirty nine Millions, Three hundred forty four Thousand Pounds Sterling. The Weight of the Brazen Altar was 20000 Talents, that of the Brazen Sea 8640. The Roof of the Temple being cover'd with Plates of Brass, came to 500141 Talents and 103 lb. Weight. The two Brass Columns called *Jachin* and *Booz*, at the Entrance of the Sanctuary, weigh'd 19027 Talents; and being cover'd with Gold of an Inch thick, it amounted to 5758 Talents of Gold. In the 10 Lavers, with the Vessels belonging to them, there were 20000 Talents of Brass. *Solomon* employ'd in building the Temple, and preparing Material, 401900 *Israelites*, *Sydonians*, *Tyrians*, and *Egyptians*, to each of whom, besides their daily Wages and Diet, he gave when the Temple was finished 10 Shekels of Gold, which *Brerewood* reckons at 15 s. apiece. *Solomon* likewise gave for the King of *Tyre's* Household per Ann. 20000 Cors or Measures of Wheat, each containing 8 Bushels and almost $\frac{1}{2}$ *Winchester* Measure, according to *Dr. Cumberland* in his Essay upon *Jewish* Weights and Measures; and 20 Measures of Oil, of 75 Wine-Gallons and above 5 Pints each, which was the Contents of the Cor for Liquids according to the same Author. He gave them likewise 20000 Measures of Wine of the same Contents. He gave the K. of *Egypt* as much, and to the *Tyrian* Workmen Annually 120000 Measures of Wheat, and as many of Barley; so that all the Workmen had every Year 602850 Measures, besides 602850 Measures of Wine, and the like Quantity of Oil, together with Meat and other Necessaries. When the Temple was built, he gave the King of *Egypt* 10000 Measures of Oil, 166 Measures of Dates, with 100 Vessels of Honey and Spices. He gave likewise to

the K. of *Tyre* 20 Towns in *Galilee*, and a Golden Pillar of great Value, says *Villalpandus*. By all this it appears, that there never was such a magnificent and expensive Structure in the World as the Temple built by *Solomon*. The Gold and Silver Vessels consecrated to the perpetual Use of the Temple, and the Gold for covering the two Pillars, amounts, according to the Particulars and Computation of *Capell*, to One Thousand and one Millions, Five hundred fifty one Thousand, and Two hundred and three Pounds four Shillings, besides the Gold Plates with which the Walls, Roof, and Pavement, were lin'd, the Gold Nails, and the Jewels above mentioned, which are not valued. He gave as a Free Gift to the Workmen Six Millions, Seven hundred sixty three Thousand, Nine hundred and seventy seven Pounds, besides their daily Wages and Diet, which are not valued; nor have we any Valuation of the Brass and other Materials made use of in the Building. By *Villalpandus's* Computation of the Number of Talents of Gold, Silver, and Brass, laid out upon the Temple, the Sum amounts to Six thousand nine hundred and four Millions, Eight hundred and twenty two Thousand, and Five hundred Pounds Sterling, besides the Wages, Diet, and Presents to the Workmen, and the Charge of other Materials; and the Jewels are reckoned to exceed this Sum. There were in the whole, according to *Josephus*, Four hundred and forty Thousand Gold Vessels, and Thirteen hundred and forty Thousand of Silver, for the Use of the Temple; Ten Thousand Priests Vestments of Silk, with Purple Girdles, and Two Millions of Purple Vestments for the Singers. The Treasure left by *David* towards building the Temple is by *Villalpandus* reckon'd at One thousand eight hundred and seventeen Millions, Six hundred fifty four thousand and twenty four *Roman* Crowns, of Gold, and Fourteen hundred sixty four Millions, and Four hundred and eighty Thousand *Roman* Crowns of Silver; which at 5 s. the Silver Crown, and 6 s. the Gold Crown, amounts to Nine hundred and eleven Millions, Four hundred and sixteen Thousand, Two hundred and seven Pounds four Shillings, Sterling. To this, if we add *Solomon's* Annual Revenue, which *Villalpandus* reckons

reckons was a Hundred Millions of Crowns, his Trading to *Ophir* for Gold, and the Presents made him by all the Earth, as mentioned *1 Kings* 10. 24. so that he exceeded all the Kings of the World for Riches; we are not to wonder at his being able to carry on this expensive Work, nor that it surpassed all the Structures of the World for Magnificence and Contrivance, since it was built by the Direction of Heaven.

This glorious Temple was, for the Sins of the People, destroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* at the End of the 11th, and Beginning of the 12th, Years of the Reign of *Zedekiah*, *A. M.* 3515, according to *Capell's Chronologia Sacra*; 588 Years before Christ according to the Index of the *Oxford Quarto Bible*; *A. M.* 2350 according to *Heylin*; 3446 according to *Luyts*, and 3360 according to *Helvicus*. The second Temple was rebuilt at the End of 70 Years, when the *Jews* returned from the *Babylonish* Captivity; but the Workmen were obliged to keep Swords by them to repulse the *Samaritans*, who watched all Opportunities of obstructing them in their Work. This second Temple fell far short of the Glory and Magnificence of the former, both as to the Structure and Ornaments; neither had it the Pot of *Manna*, the Rod of *Aaron*, the Ark of the Covenant, the two Tables of the Law, nor the Fire of Sacrifice which were order'd to be kept perpetually in the Temple as Memorials. This Temple growing ruinous, was pulled down by *Herod* the *Ascalonite*, says *Heylin*, who rebuilt another in its Place much more magnificent, and scarce inferior to that of *Solomon*; but his chief Author being *Josephus*, we can't rely upon it; nor is it probable that *Herod* did any thing more than repair the Temple, and add to its Height, &c. because the Promise made that the Glory of the 2d Temple built by *Zorobabel* should be greater than that of the former, *Haggai* 4. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. points directly at the coming of our Saviour to honour that Temple with his Presence, by which it was made more glorious than that of *Solomon*; tho' in Respect of Magnificence and Riches, it fell very much short of it. Besides, it appears by the Draught of *Herod's* Temple given us by *Capell*, that it was nothing so large as that of *Solomon*. The Courts belonging to the Temple were,

1. That of the Priests, which stood next the Temple. It contain'd the Brazen Altar, and the Laver for washing the Priests and Sacrifices. None might enter into this Court but the Priests. 2. The Peoples Court, separated from this by a Wall. Hither the People repair'd to perform their Sacrifices, say Prayers, and pay their Vows. In the Middle of this Court *Solomon* made a Brazen Scaffold 5 Cubits long, 5 broad, and 3 high, *2 Chron.* 6. 13. In Imitation of the Porch he built before the Temple, many other Porches were afterwards built in this Court to keep the People from Rain; and hence this whole Court was called *Solomon's Porch*. 3. Without that stood the Court of the Women, in which was the Treasury or Poor-men's Box, mentioned *Luke* 21. and hence this whole Court was called the Treasury, *Joh.* 8. 20. Betwixt these last Courts there was an Ascent of 15 Steps, on which the *Levites* us'd to sing those 15 Psalms which immediately follow the 119th, and are therefore call'd *Songs of Degrees*. So far was reckon'd holy Ground, into which none might enter but natural *Jews* and Profelytes of the Covenant. 4. The Court of the *Gentiles*, into which the Profelytes of the Gate were admitted; and here they permitted a Market of Sheep, Oxen, Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of Money-Changers, which our Saviour overturn'd and drove out, restoring it to its primitive Use of being a House of Prayer for all Nations. This was separated from the other Court by a Wall of 3 Cubits, and an Inscription upon it, importing, that no Alien must enter into the Holy Place. *Heylin* thinks, the Apostle alludes to this Wall where he says of our Saviour, *He hath broken down the middle Wall of Partition between us, making one of twain*, *Ephes.* 2. 14, 15. *Capell* computes, that the Temple and its Courts were capable of containing Three hundred thousand and Three hundred fifty four People, allowing a square Cubit to every Person.

The City had anciently 12 Gates, viz.

1. The Valley Gate. 2. The Fountain Gate.
3. The Sheep Gate. 4. The Fish Gate.
5. The Dung Gate. 6. The Water Gate.
7. The Horse Gate. 8. The East Gate.
9. The Gate of Ephraim. 10. The Prison Gate.
11. The Gate of Miphkad. 12. The Old

Old Gate. The City and Temple were totally destroyed by *Titus*, the Son of *Vespasian*, the 69th Year of Christ, which put an End to the Jewish State and Worship. *Heylin* observes, that the Temple of *Delphi* was destroy'd by Thunder and Earthquakes at the same Time, as a Sign that God did likewise declare himself, against the Heathen Idolatry, to make Way for Christianity. And 'tis very observable, the Temple was burnt much against the Will of *Titus*, who design'd to have preserv'd it for the Honour of the Roman Empire. *Josephus* says, That when *Titus* enter'd the City, he admired the strong Holds and rocky Towers which the Jews had deserted, and said, *Surely God assisted us in this War*, and drove the Jews from those Fortresses, from which the Hands or Engines of Men could never have forced them. The Number of Captives taken in this War were 87000, and those that died or were slain about 1100000; and the City was so totally destroy'd, that not one Stone of it was left upon another, according to our Saviour's Prophecy. It was taken on their Sabbath, as it had been formerly by *Pompey* and *Herod*; and the Providence was so much the more remarkable, because vast Multitudes of Jews came hither at that Time from all other Parts to the Solemnities of *Easter* or the Passover. This Number cannot seem strange to those who have read, that *Cestius*, Lieutenant of *Judaea*, sent *Nero* Word, That at the Passover in his Time, the High-Priest number'd 2700000 that came to make their Offerings.

A. C. 132. the Emperor *Adrian* began to rebuild *Jerusalem*, and call'd it *Ælia Capitolina*; but the Jews having rais'd a Rebellion under an Impostor call'd *Barchochebas*, he routed them, forbid them to enter *Jerusalem*, or to look upon it at a Distance; and to shew his Contempt and Hatred of them, order'd the Figure of a Swine to be put over the Gate of *Bethlehem*, and built several Heathen Temples in it, one for *Venus* on Mount *Calvary*, and one for *Jupiter* upon our Saviour's Tomb. They stood till the Time of the Emperor *Constantine*, who repeopled the Town, and built several Churches in it. In 614, the Town was taken by *Chosroes II.* K. of *Persia*. From that Time it continued under the *Saracens* and

Mahometans, till the Reign of *Charles the Great*, to whom it was resign'd, with the *Holy Land*, by *Aaron* King of *Persia* in 807. After *Charlemaine's* Death, it came again under the Infidels, till 1099, when it was conquer'd by *Godfrey of Bouillon*, General of the Croisado, who was made King of it. In 1187, it was retaken, with all the *Holy Land*, by *Saladine* K. of *Syria* and *Egypt*, in the Reign of *Guy of Lusignan*, which put an End to this new Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, after it stood 88 Years; and from the Power of the Caliphs, it came under that of the Grand Seignior in 1517, where it still continues. Several Ecclesiastical Councils have been held here against Hereticks; but we can't insist upon 'em.

The present State of Jerusalem.

Monsieur *Bouffingault* says, 'tis now no bigger than *St. Dennis* or *Blus* in *France*, and about a League in Circuit, which may easily be walked in an Hour. The Streets are narrow, crooked, ill contriv'd, and most of them full of Ruins. The Houses are plain, without Ornament, and have Terrasses on the Top. There are no large Squares or open Places except the Court of the Temple, that of the Holy Sepulchre, and the Market. The Town is encompassed with a good high Wall of hewn Stone, and adorned with little Towers and Battlements, but has no Ditch except on the Side of the Vallies on the E. and S. It has six Gates, large, high, and cover'd with Iron Plates, at which Strangers are obliged to enter Sideways.

Monconys says, the Town is full of Ascents and Descents, and is encompassed with other Hills, which make the present Situation of it very unpleasant. The Houses are all vaulted, and look like so many Pigeon-Houses. Most of the Town is now about Mount *Calvary*, because that Place was so much revered on the Account of our Saviour's Sufferings when the Christians possess'd it, and is still much resorted to by Christian Pilgrims. 'Tis now enclos'd within the Walls, because the *Turks* look upon that to be the Place which the Christians have the greatest Mind to regain, and on Account of the great Tribute which they

they receive from Pilgrims who come to visit it. *Bleau* says, many new Places lie within the present Walls, and many of the old ones are excluded, and particularly Part of Mount *Sion*. The Length of the Town is about 1200 Paces. There's a Castle near Mount *Gihon*; but the chief Structure is that on Mount *Moriah*, where *Solomon's* Temple stood. It was built by the Christians when in Possession of it, and is now turn'd to a *Turkish* Mosque. 'Tis a very noble and fine Building, and contains many old and late Monuments. It stands near that called the *Golden Gate*, which lies over against the greatest Court, that is 260 Paces long, and 150 broad. They pretend it was built on the Foundation of the old Temple, and of the same Form within, but much less. *Thevenot* says, That no Jew nor Christian is suffered to look into the Court before it. In the S. Corner of it stands the Temple of *Presentation*, so call'd because our Saviour was presented there; and *Siméon* taking him in his Arms, said, Lord, now lettest thou thy servant depart in Peace according to thy Word, for mine Eyes have seen thy Salvation, Luke 2. 29, 30. 'Tis a noble Structure, and has two Domes cover'd with Lead. The *Turks* have also made it a Mosque. In the Center of this large Area stands an Octogonal Temple, which they call *Solomon's*. From the Foundation, 10 Foot high, 'tis faced with *Parian* Marble, and above 'tis of Checker-work. 'Tis 250 Paces in Compass, and has 4 Gates. Every Front has 4 Windows, and in the Middle there's a high Dome with 16 Windows. It looks very white at a Distance. In the Middle of this Temple there's a Three-corner'd Stone about 10 Paces long, upon which the *Turks* say *Jacob* slept when he had his Vision. This Temple is supported by two Rows of Marble Pillars within; and tho' no Christians are suffer'd to enter it, yet 'tis easily seen from *Pilate's* Palace, now the Residence of the *Turkish* Governor. Not far from hence lies an Hospital built by *St. Helen* for Pilgrims, and (as they say) *St. Peter's* Prison. The Church of the Holy Sepulchre lies on Mount *Calvary*, a small Hill upon the greater Mount of *Moriah*, says *Maundrel*. The Founders of this Church were obliged to cut down several Parts of the Rock, and to raise others to make an

Area for the Church to stand on, but took mighty Care, say the Guardians, that none of those Parts of the Hill should be alter'd which were reckon'd to be more immediately concern'd in our Lord's Passion; so that they pretend to shew the Place whereto the Cross was fasten'd, and the Sepulchre where our Saviour lay, which looks like a Grotto above Ground, the Rock about it being all cut away. The Church is less than 100 Paces long, and 60 wide, and they say contains under its Roof 12 or 13 Places to which they pay extraordinary Veneration, because of some particular Actions done in 'em relating to our Saviour's Death and Resurrection; and they are all now adorned with Altars. For the Particulars, we refer to *Maundrel*, *Thevenot*, *Sandys*, &c. There are many Galleries round the Church, and little Buildings annex'd to it for Fryars and Pilgrims. Most Christian Nations did formerly maintain a small Society of Monks in this Place; but now there are only the *Latins*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Cophytes*; and the two latter are so much in Debt to their *Turkish* Landlords, who make them pay great Rents, that they are speedily like to abandon them. They have each of them their own Altars and Sanctuaries, exclusive of others. The *Greeks* and *Latins* have several times fought and wounded one another about the Propriety of the holy Sepulchre; but the *French* King procur'd it for the *Latins*, who alone have the Liberty to say Mass in it since 1690, tho' others may enter it for their private Devotions. Their daily Employment is to trim the Lamps, and to go in Procession to the several Sanctuaries in the Church with Tapers, Crucifixes, &c. and sing *Latin* Hymns at every particular Place. Mr. *Maundrel* says, That the Night of *Good-Friday*, which they call the *Nox Tenebrosa*, is observ'd with extraordinary Ceremony by the *Latins*, who are about 10 or 12, besides their President, that constantly reside here. As soon as it grows dark, all the Friars and Pilgrims are conven'd in what they call the Chappel of the Apparition on the N. Side of the holy Sepulchre, in order to go in Procession round the Church. Before they set out, one of the Friars preaches a Sermon; and as soon as he begins, the Candles are put out till he has done. Then every one has a large
lighted

lighted Taper put into their Hands, and the Proceſſion begins with carrying a large Crucifix, repreſenting our Saviour to the Life, crown'd with Thorns, beſmear'd with Blood, and nail'd to the Croſs. Then they go to the Pillar at which they ſay our Saviour was whipped; next to his Priſon, then to the Place where his Garments were divided; after that, to the Place where he was mocked. Then they aſcend to Mount *Calvary*, leaving their Shooes at the Bottom of the Stairs. Here they viſit the Place where they ſay he was nailed to the Croſs, then that on which it was erected. They aſt both theſe Parts, and ſet up the Croſs in a Hole of the Rock in which they pretend the real one ſtood; and after a Hymn, hear a Sermon on the Paſſion. About a Yard and a half from hence is ſeen the Cleft in the Rock mentioned by *St. Matthew* 27. 51. Mr. *Maundrel* ſays, 'tis about a Span wide at its upper Part, and two deep. After which, it closes, but opens again below, as is ſeen in another Chappel under this, and runs down to an unknown Depth in the Earth. He ſays, That Senſe and Reaſon ſhew it to be a natural and genuine Breach, that could not be counterfeited by Art, for the Sides of it fit like two Tallies to each other; and it runs in ſuch intricate Windings, as no Instruments could poſſibly reach. The Ceremony of the Paſſion being over, two Friars perſonating *Joſeph of Arimathea* and *Nicodemus* approach the Croſs, and with ſolemn and concern'd Looks and Behaviour draw out the great Nails, and take down the feign'd Body from the Croſs. The Effigies is ſo contriv'd, that its Limbs are ſoft and flexible, as if they were real Fleſh; and the two Friars bend down the extended Arms as is uſually done with Corps. When they take it down from the Croſs, 'tis received in a large fair Winding-Sheet, carried to the Place where they ſuppoſe our Saviour's Body was anointed and embalmed, which they perſonate; and after a Hymn, one of the Friars preaches a Funeral Sermon in *Arabick*. Then they lay the Corps in the Sepulchre, where they ſhut it up till *Eaſter Morning*. Next Day they mark ſuch Pilgrims as had a Mind with the uſual Enſigns of *Jeruſalem*. They have Stamps in Wood of any Figure you deſire, by which they make an Impreſſion

in your Arm with Powder of Charcoal; and taking two very fine Needles ty'd cloſe together, dip them in Ink made of Gun-Powder and Ox-Gall, and with great Quickneſs and Dexterity make ſmall Punctures along the Lines of the Figure without any Smart, and but ſeldom draw Blood. After which, they waſh the Part with Wine, which concludes the Work. In the Afternoon they ſing the Lamentations of *Jeremy* before the holy Sepulchre. On *Eaſter Morning* the Sepulchre is opened, when the Friars appear with joyful Looks, for then their *Lenten* Diſciplines end, and they live plentifully. The Father Guardian, with Episcopical Robes and a Mitre, ſays Maſs on a Throne, and gives the Hoſt to Children, or any that will receive it.

Mr. *Maundrel* adds, That without the Gate of *Damaſcus* he ſaw a large Grotto, ſuppos'd to have been the Place where the Prophet *Jeremiah* ſtay'd for ſome Time, it being near that where they ſay he wrote his Lamentations. There's a Shelf in the Rock 8 Foot from the Ground, which they alledge was his Bed. 'Tis now a College of *Mahometan* Priests, and much reſpected by *Turks*, *Jews*, and *Chriſtians*. Not far from hence, on the ſame N. Side of the Town, are thoſe famous Grotto's call'd the Sepulchres of the Kings; but thoſe of *Iſrael* and *Judah* being buried elſewhere, as appears by the Scripture, ſome think that *Hezekiah* was interred here, or *David's* Sons, mention'd 2 *Chron.* 32. 33. However that is, theſe Grotto's have coſt ſo much Labour and Treafure, as may entitle them to be called Royal. We enter at the E. Side, thro' a Paſſage cut out of the Rock, which leads to an open Court of 40 Paces ſquare, cut down into the Rock. On the S. Side of this Court there's a Portico 9 Paces long, and 4 broad, hewn likewiſe out of the Rock. It had a kind of Architrave in the Front, adorn'd with Sculpture of Fruits and Flowers, which is ſtill partly diſcernible. At the End of the Portico, towards the Left, there is a Deſcent to the Paſſage leading to the Sepulchres, which is now render'd almoſt impaſſable by the Stones and Rubbiſh. Within is a Room about 6 Yards ſquare, cut out of the Rock. The Sides and Cieling are exactly ſquare, and its Angles of a juſt Dimenſion, and the whole ſeems

seems very firm and entire. This leads to 6 other Rooms one within another, all of the same Fabrick with the first. There were Niches in them, in which were plac'd Stone-Coffins, which were formerly cover'd with handsome Lids, and carv'd with Garlands; but most of them are since broke to Pieces. The Sides and Cielings of the Rooms always dropping with the moist Damps which gather'd upon them, every one had a small Channel cut in the Floor, which serv'd to carry them off as they fell. Mr. Maundrel particularly remarks a Door which he saw remaining to one of these subterraneous Chambers. He says, it consisted of a Stone-Plank about 6 Inches thick, and almost as big as an ordinary Door. It was carv'd in the Form of a Piece of Wainscot, tho' it visibly appear'd to be of the same Kind with the Rock, and it turn'd upon two Hinges in the Nature of Axels, which were of the same entire Piece of Stone, and were contain'd in two Holes of the Rock, one at Top, and the other at Bottom: But many have doubted whether it was cut out of the Rock in the same Place and Manner as it then hung, or whether it was brought thither and fix'd there like other Doors. Mr. Maundrel inclines to the latter, because he says it did not touch its Lintel by two Inches, as if it might have been lifted up and unhinged; and the Doors of the other Chambers, which were thrown down, had their Hinges at the upper End twice as long as those at the Bottom.

Mr. Maundrel says, there's another Grotto near Herod's Gate, which is suppos'd to be *Jeremiah's* Dungeon, *Jer.* 38. When any Pilgrims arrive at the Convent, the Father Guardian washes their Feet, while the whole Society stands round singing some *Latin* Hymns; and when he has done, every Friar comes in Order, and kisses the Pilgrims Feet.

Every *Easter-Eve* the *Greeks* and *Armenians* here keep up the Function of the Holy Fire, upon a Perswasion, that a miraculous Flame then descends from Heaven into the Holy Sepulchre, and kindles all the Lamps and Candles there. Mr. Maundrel, who saw this Ceremony, says, the Church of the Holy Sepulchre was crowded with a numerous Mob, running about and crying, *Huia*, i. e. *This is he*, or, *This is it*. Then they acted

all manner of antick Tricks in the most distracted Postures: Sometimes they dragged one another round the Place; sometimes they set one Man upon another's Shoulders, and in this Posture marched round: Sometimes they took Men with their Heels upwards, carrying them about in a very indecent Manner; and sometimes they tumbled round the Sepulchre like Tumblers on the Stage. At length the *Greeks*, and the *Armenians* after 'em, made a Procession thrice round the Sepulchre, with the Standards, Streamers, Crucifixes, and embroider'd Habits, made Use of on that Occasion. Towards the Close of the Procession, there was a Pigeon came fluttering into the Cupola over the Sepulchre, at which there was a greater Shout than before. This was to make the People believe it was a visible Descent of the Holy Ghost. The Procession being ended, the Suffragan of the *Greek* Patriarch, and the principal *Armenian* Bishop, cutting the String with which the Door of the Sepulchre was fasten'd and seal'd, enter'd, all the Candles and Lamps within having been first put out before Witnesses. The Exclamations were doubled as the Miracle drew nearer to its Accomplishment. At length the 2 Priests who perform'd the Cheat came out of the Sepulchre with blazing Torches in their Hands, which they held up at the Door, while every one throng'd who should first obtain a Part of the pretended holy Flame. Those that got the Fire, apply'd it immediately to their Beards, Faces and Bosoms, pretending it would not burn like an Earthly Flame. But Mr. Maundrel observ'd, that none of them could endure the Experiment long enough to make good that Pretension. These Illuminations clos'd the Ceremony. As Mr. Maundrel was going out of the Church, he saw several gather'd about the Stone of Unction, who were dawbing Pieces of Linen with the Wax of the Candles which they had thus lighted, upon Belief, that if they are buried in a Shroud smuttet with this imaginary Celestial Fire, it will certainly secure them from the Flames of Hell. The *Armenians* have a Convent here, built (as they say) over the Place where *St. James* was beheaded, *Acts* 12. 2. In this Church are two very splendid Altars, deck'd with rich Mitres, embroider'd Copes, Silver and Gold Crosses, Crowns, Chalices, &c. and

and a Pulpit in the Middle made of Tortoise-shell and Mother of Pearl, finely mix'd, with a Canopy of the same. In a Chappel belonging to this Church are kept 3 large rough Stones, esteem'd, as being one of them the Stone upon which *Moses* broke the two Tables, one brought from the Place of Christ's Baptism, and the other from that of his Transfiguration. They pretend to shew many other Places, only memorable for particular Facts related in Scripture; but Authors differ so much as to the Situation of those Places, that we can rely upon none of them, except such as carry their own Evidence with them, as the Mountains, the Cleft made in the Rock when our Saviour suffer'd, &c. For the City having been entirely destroy'd by the *Romans*, and so much alter'd since in its Dimensions and Situation, as has been already observ'd, 'tis impossible we can be certain of any thing but what in its own Nature was not changeable, most of the rest being the Inventions of superstitious Monks and Priests, who make their Gain by them, and are conniv'd at by the *Turks*, because of the great Revenues they have by the Taxes on Pilgrims, and others whose Curiosity leads them to visit those Places.

In a Garden on the S. Side of Mount *Moriah*, Mr. *Maundrel* saw several large Vaults at the Foot of the Mount, running 50 Yards under Ground. They were built in two Isles, arch'd at Top with huge firm Stone, and supported with tall Pillars, each consisting of one single Stone, and two Yards in Diameter. He thinks it was some under-ground Work made to enlarge the Area of the Temple, because *Josephus* seems to describe some such Work erected over the Valley on this Side the Temple.

The Valley of *Hinnom* begins not far from the Foot of Mount *Sion*; and near it on the W. is the Place call'd anciently the *Potters Field*, and afterwards the *Field of Blood*, from its being purchas'd with the Pieces of Silver which were the Price of the Blood of Christ; but from the Veneration which it has obtained among Christians, it is now called *Campo Sancto*. Mr. *Maundrel* says, 'tis about 30 Yards long, and half as broad. One Moiety of it is taken up by a square Fabrick 12 Yards high, built for

a Charnel-House, into which Corpses are let down through 5 Holes for that purpose on the Top. The Mouth of this Valley is crossed by that of *Jehoshaphat*, famous for the Brock *Kedron*, and for the Sepulchre of *Jehoshaphat* at one Side, from whence it has the Name. Here is the Pool of *Siloam*, which had anciently a Church over it; but when Mr. *Maundrel* saw it, 'twas us'd by a Tanner. On the opposite Side of the Valley is the Village of *Siloe*, where *Solomon* is said to have kept his strange Wives, and above it the Hill call'd the *Mountain of Offence*, because *Solomon* built there the high Places mention'd 1 Kings 11. 7. Upon the Edge of the Hill, on the opposite Side of the Valley, there runs along the City a Wall, in which there's the short End of a Pillar jutting out, whereupon the *Turks* have a Tradition, That *Mahomet* shall sit in Judgment at the Last Day, and that all the World shall be gather'd together in the Valley below to receive their Doom from his Mouth. A little further Northward is that Gate of the Temple which is wall'd up, because the *Turks* have a Prophecy, That their Destruction shall enter at that Gate. Crossing this Valley, there is an Ascent to Mount *Olivet*, in which are several Grotto's, cut with intricate Windings and Caverns under Ground. There are also 12 arch'd Vaults Side by Side, made in Memory of the 12 Apostles, who are said to have compiled the Creed here. There was anciently a large Church built on the Top of this Mount in Honour of our Lord's Ascension; but when Mr. *Maundrel* saw it, there were only the Ruins of an Octogonal Cupola, about 8 Yards in Diameter. 'Tis turn'd into a *Turkish Mosque*. On the highest Summit of this Mountain was anciently erected an high Tower, in Memory of the Apparition of the two Angels to the Apostles after Christ's Ascension, *Acts* 1. 10, 11. from whence it was called *Viri Galilæi*. Mr. *Maundrel* says, it remained till about two Years before his Time, when it was demolished. From hence *Bleau* says there is a fine Prospect of *Jerusalem* and the Parts adjacent, of the *Dead Sea*, *Jordan*, Mount *Quarantania*, and the Country of *Arabia*. Betwixt St. *Stephen's Gate* and the Area of the ancient Temple lies the Pool of *Bethesda*. Mr. *Maundrel* says, 'tis 120

Paces long, 40 broad, and 8 deep, but void of Water. About two Furlongs without Bethlehem Gate to the W. lies Mount Gikon, and the Pool so call'd, which is 106 Paces long, and 67 broad. Mr. Maundrel says, the last of the *Easter* Holidays is call'd a Day of Charity by the *Turks*, who then permit all Persons to enter the Church of the Holy Sepulchre without any Fee or Reward, which gives such an Opportunity to the Lewd amongst the rest, that 'tis said they prophane the holy Places as bad as the Heathens did when they kept their *Aphrodisia* there. Mr. Maundrel having pac'd round the Walls of the City, computes it to be about 4630 Paces, or 4167 Yards, in Circuit, which make just two Miles and a half. *Monconys* says, there are always 7 or 8 *Turks* standing at the Entrance of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, to take Money for the Cadi, the Mufti, and several Santons. The Monks, &c. who live there are always cloister'd up, and Provisions and other Necessaries are given them thro' a Hole made for the Purpose in the great Gate. Here live all Sorts of Christians, *Romans*, *Greeks*, *Cophytes*, *Jacobites*, *Armenians*, and *Abissines*. M. Mallet says, 'tis very populous, and full of *Turks*, *Moors*, *Arabs*, *Greek* and *Armenian* Christians, whose chief Traffick consists in Beads and Relicks, which they sell to Pilgrims. *Bleau* says, the present Inhabitants call it *Cox*, *Godz*, or *Chutz*; the *Turks*, *Cudzimubarek*, i. e. a most religious Place; also *Elkoudech*, and *Hirslin*, both which signify a holy Place; and the *Arabians* call it *Beyt-Almocadas*, i. e. The Dwelling of Saints. It has 6 principal Gates, secur'd with Plates of Iron and strong Bars; and they are call'd, 1. The Golden Gate. 2. The Sheep Gate, or that of St. Stephen. 3. The Gate of Ephraim or Damascus. 4. The Gate of Jaffa, or Hebron. 5. Sion Gate. And, 6. The Dung Gate. There is an Ascent of 19 Steps to the Top of Mount Calvary, where our Lord was crucified between the two Thieves, and the Christians ascend it bare-foot, or at least without their Shooes. He says, the Hole in which the Cross of Christ was fixed is still to be seen, of a round Form, half a Foot deep, and cover'd over with a Silver Plate, on which there's a Greek Inscription, importing, Here God, who was our King before the Beginning of the

World, work'd out Salvation in the midst of the Earth. There is another Silver Plate just by, on which are engraven the various Mysteries of Christ's Passion. There hang down from the Roof of this Place 32 Lamps, which burn Night and Day. On both Sides of the Hole of our Lord's Cross there stand two Marble Crosses, set up in the Place of those of the two Thieves. That on the Right looks towards the N. 4 Foot and 2 Hands-breadth from the Hole of our Saviour's Cross. The other looks to the S. and is about 6 Foot distant from it, by reason of the Cleft that was made in the Rock at Christ's Death. In a Chappel on the S. Side, where they pretend Christ's Body was nailed to the Cross, 33 Lamps are kept always burning, and Sacrifices daily perform'd by the *Franciscans*. The Pavement is checker'd with fine Stone of various Colours, always cover'd with a white Cloth, and none enter but with their bare Feet or bended Knees. Some think that Adam was buried in *Golgotha*, or Mount Calvary, and the *Cophytes* keep a Lamp always burning in a Chappel under it to his Memory. *Bleau* says, the Church of the Holy Sepulchre is 72 Paces in Diameter, and has a Hole left in the Middle equal to the Extent of the Chappel under Ground, to let in Light to it. Near the Chappel of St. John, under the same Rock of *Golgotha*, there is a Place wall'd in, where are two Mausoleums, supported by 4 Marble Pillars, which are suppos'd to have been the Tombs of Godfrey of Bouillon, and Baldwin II. He says, this City is about 36 Miles from *Acra*, 16 from *Samarina*, 8 from *Sichem*, 27 from *Nazareth*, 8 from *Joppa*, 7 from *Jericho*, 2 Leagues from *Bethlehem*, and 8 from *Hebron*. The most common Language here is that of the *Turks* and *Moors*; but each Nation has its peculiar Idiom. The Town is govern'd by 3 supreme Magistrates, who have Power of Life and Death. The first is the Sangiack-Bey, who has the Title of a Bashaw, and is the chief in Authority: The 2d is the Moulacadi, who is supreme Judge in Matters Civil and Criminal: The 3d the Sub-Bashaw, who forms the Process against Offenders, commits them to Prison, and executes the Sentences of the Cadi. In 1621, the French King had Leave from the Sultan Ozman to repair the Church of the Sepul-

Sepulchre, and other Places of the *Holy Land*, which was a Permission never granted to any one besides; whereupon *Bleau* says, he sent consecrated Furniture, Vestments for the Priests, precious Ornaments for the Churches and Altars, and rich Gifts, deposited in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, to the Value of above 400000 Pounds. *Heylin* says, when *Helena* was about building this Church, she had much ado to find the Place where our Lord's Body had been laid; for the *Jews* and *Heathens* had rais'd great Hillocks upon the Place, and built there a Temple of *Venus*. This Temple being pluck'd down, and the Earth digg'd away, she found three Crosses, whereon our Saviour and the two Thieves had suffer'd. To know which of those was our Lord's, they were all carried to a Woman who had been long visited with Sickness, and lay at the Point of Death. The Crosses of the two Thieves, say the *Legendaries*, did the weak Woman no good; but as soon as they laid her on our Saviour's Cross, she leap'd up, and was restor'd to her former State of Health. From hence came the Festival on the 3d of *May*, which the *Latins* call *Inventio Sanctæ Crucis*. *Heylin* adds, That the Tribute paid by Strangers who come to visit the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, brings the Grand Seignior 80000 Ducats *per Annum*. The other Buildings are generally of Flint-Stones, but one Story high, flat on the Top, and fenc'd with Battlements of a Yard in Height, to keep those who walk there from falling.

Some have taken Occasion to assert, that *Jerusalem* stood in the Center of the World, from that Passage in *Psalms* 74. 12. *God working Salvation in the midst of the Earth*; and so much has this Opinion prevail'd, that they pretend to shew a little Overture there, which they say divides the Earth into two equal Parts. This Opinion would have been consistent enough before *America* was found out; but all modern Geographers must allow, that to advance an Hypothesis of that Kind now, would be the grossest Absurdity, because they know that *Jerusalem* lies under the Temperate Zone; whereas the true Center of the Earth must be under the Equinoctial Line, from which *Jerusalem* is above 500 Leagues distant; so that *David* could mean no other than that

Jerusalem was in the midst of the three Parts of the World then known, because 'tis bounded with *Asia* on the E. and N. with *Europe* on the W. and *Africa* on the S.

The other Places mention'd in Scripture which lie about *Jerusalem* are, 1. *Bethpage*, a little Village, *Matth.* 21. 1. seated at the Foot of Mount *Olivet*. Some call the adjacent Tract of Land by the same Name. 2. *Bothany*, at the Foot of the same Mount, about 15 Furlongs, or near two Miles, off from *Jerusalem*, *John* 11. 18. *St. Jerome* says, in his Time it was a little Town, and had a Church built by *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*, in Memory of *Lazarus*, who was rais'd here from the Grave by our Saviour, as in *John* 11. *M. Thevenot* says, 'tis now only a small Village, inhabited by a few Husbandmen of the *Arabs*. There's an old Ruin which they call *Lazarus's Castle*, supposed to have been formerly his Mansion-House. *Mr. Maundrel* says, at the Bottom of a small Descent, not far from the Castle, they shew the Sepulchre from whence he was rais'd. There are 25 steep Stairs, at the Bottom of which there's a small square Room; and in another lesser Room, which is about a Yard and a half deeper, the Body is said to have been interred. The *Turks* use this for a Place of Prayer, and demand a small Tribute of Christians for their Admission into it. This Village lies in the Way from *Jerusalem* to *Jericho*; and in a Rock by the Road-Side, there is an excellent Fountain, call'd, *The Fountain of the Apostles*, probably from a Tradition, That the Apostles us'd to refresh themselves at it when they passed that Way.

From this Place towards *Jericho*, there is an intricate Way amongst Hills and Vallies, barren at present, but discovers eminent Signs of the Labour of the Husbandman in ancient Times. After some Hours Travel in this Road, we come to the Desert where our Saviour was tempted by the Devil. 'Tis a miserable barren Place, fill'd with high rocky Mountains, so torn and disorder'd, as if the Earth here had suffer'd some great Convulsion, and its Bowels turned outward. In the deep Vallies near them are the Ruins of Cells and Cottages, anciently inhabited by Hermits, who could not have chosen a more desolate and comfortless Place. On the Top of these Hills there's

there's a Prospect of the Mountains of *Arabia*, the *Dead Sea*, and the Plain of *Jericho*. On one Side of this Plain lies Mount *Quarantania*, which they say is the Mountain whither the Devil carried our Saviour to be tempted, and call'd *Quarantania*, because our Saviour fasted 40 Days in this Wilderness. Mr. *Maundrel* says, 'tis an exceeding high Mountain, of a difficult and dangerous Ascent, with a small Chappel at the Top, and another about half way up, founded upon a prominent Part of the Rock. Near this latter are several Caves and Holes in the Side of the Mountain, made use of by some Hermits for Places to keep *Lent* in, in Imitation of our Saviour. About a Mile further in the same Plain is the Fountain of *Elisha*, so call'd because miraculously purg'd from its Brackishness by that Prophet, at the Request of the Men of *Jericho*, 1 *Kings* 2. 19. When Mr. *Maundrel* saw it, the Waters were received in a Basin about 9 Paces long, and 5 broad, from whence they divided into several Streams, which water'd that Part of the Plain next to *Jericho*. 3. *Alexandrium Castellum*, suppos'd to be built by *Alexander Jannæus*, Father to *Hircanus* and *Aristobulus*. It was a fine strong Fortrefs on the Top of a Hill N. of *Jerusalem*, in the Tribe of *Benjamin*.

Cellarius gives an Account of the following Towns and Castles in this Country near *Jericho*: 1. *Phasaelis*, above *Jericho* to the N. a Castle built by *Herod* in Honour of his Brother, with a Town of the same Name. This Town, with the neighbouring fruitful Valley, was given by *Augustus* to *Salome*, *Herod's* Sister. 2. *Cypron*, another Castle built by *Herod* near *Jericho*, a noble Fortification, situated on a natural Strength. The seditious *Jews* besieg'd it in the Time of *Nero*, and put the *Roman* Garrison to the Sword. 3. *Archelais*, N. W. from *Jericho*, built by *Archelaus*, Son to *Herod*, famous for Palm-Trees in the Neighbourhood.

Jericho, call'd the *City of Palm-Trees*, *Deut.* 34. 3. was the first Town taken and destroyed by the *Israelites* after they passed *Jordan*; but was rebuilt again a long Time after, 1 *Kings* 16. 34. by *Hiel* the *Bethulite*, who laid the Foundation of it in *Abiram*, his First-born, and set up the Gates in *Segub*, his youngest Son, according to the Curse pronounced by *Joshua* 6. 26. to which

we refer for the remarkable Siege of that City. *Cellarius* says, it lies 150 Stadia from *Jerusalem*, and 60 from *Jordan*. *Cluverius* places it 5 German Leagues N. E. from *Jerusalem*. *Josephus* calls the neighbouring Plains a *Divine Field*, which produces Balsam, and Mirobalans, a Fruit like Plumbs or Damascens, and is planted with many Gardens. *Tacitus* says, That besides other Fruit-Trees, it produced Balsam, and Palm-Trees, the latter tall and comely, and the former low; That if any Iron Tool was applied to the Branches, their Veins trembled, and they were open'd to let out the Juice by sharp Stones or Shells. *Strabo* says, this Valley was encompassed with Mountains in some Places, sloping down like a Theatre; That it was 100 Stadia in Circumference, well water'd and inhabited, with a Royal Palace, with a Garden of Balsam-Trees, with Juice like thick Milk, gather'd in Shells, and highly valu'd for its healing Vertue. *Maundrel* says, this Town is now a poor Village, inhabited by *Arabs*, who shew *Zacheus's* House, which is an old square Stone Building in the S. Part of the Town. *Luyts* takes Notice, That some learned Men are of Opinion, that the Terrestrial Paradise was seated in this Valley.

Of the Situation of Paradise.

Herbinus, in his *Dissertationes de Admirandis Mundi Cataractis*, &c. Lib. 3. Edit. *Amsterdam* 1678. takes Notice, that some deny the present Existence of the Place where *Paradise* lay, and of the Difference of those who believe it still to exist. He concludes, that it lay in the *Holy Land*, which he alledges to have been the Place where our first Parents finned, and therefore God appointed it afterwards to be the Residence of his own peculiar People, and the Place where our Saviour should accomplish the Work of Redemption, and lay the first Foundation of the Christian Church. For his other Reasons, and the Arguments he brings against those who are of the contrary Opinions, we refer to the Book it self, and shall give a short Account of what he says concerning the Situation of *Paradise*, its Rivers, and Topography.

As to the Situation of it, he conceives it to be bounded in Part by *Mesopotamia*, *Armenia*, and the neighbouring Countries. His Reasons are, That the Patriarchs were not only excluded from *Eden* before the Deluge, but those who surviv'd it, and went from the Mountains of *Armenia*, wander'd into the Land of *Shinar*, which signifies a Country of Rivers; and he takes it to be the present *Babylon*, where they liv'd and sojourn'd as Exiles and Captives. He thinks, that the Author of *Ecclesiasticus* bounds *Eden* much in the same Manner, when he reckons *Jordan*, *Pison*, *Gihon*, *Euphrates*, and *Tygris*, to be Rivers of the same Country, *Cap.* 24. v. 25, 26, 27.

But he is of Opinion, that *Eden* does not extend to the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Seas, since none of the Patriarchs had ever any Commerce or Residence there. He grants however, that those Seas were the remote Boundaries of *Eden*, and inclos'd its proper Boundaries, as may be seen by his Map. He draws therefore the Geometrical Line of *Eden* from the W. thro' the Countries of *Phœnicia*, the Land of the *Philistines* and *Egypt* as far almost as the Mouths of the *Nile*. From the S. he draws it thro' *Arabia Petraea* and *Deserta*; from the E. by Way of *Chaldea*, *Babylonia*, and *Affyria*; from the N. by Way of *Armenia*, descending thro' *Silicia* and *Syria* to the Land of *Damascus*. The Reason why he has drawn the Bounding Line of *Eden* by and as far as *Egypt*, *Arabia Felix*, *Chaldea*, *Affyria*, and beyond *Cœlo-Syria*, is, because of the Commerce of those Countries with the People of God; and that the Dominions of *David*, *Solomon*, and the rest of the Kings of *Judah*, reach'd to those Boundaries, and as far as *Euphrates* the great River, 2 *Sam.* 8. 3. 1 *Chron.* 18. 3. and *Solomon* is said to have had all the Kingdoms from the River to the Land of the *Philistines*, 1 *Kings* 4. 21. i. e. as appears v. 24. from *Tipsack*, or the Town *Tapsacum*, at which there was a Bridge over the *Euphrates*, *Lib.* 2. 16. as far as *Gaza*, a Town of the *Philistines*.

He comes next to what he calls the Cataracts or Rivers of *Paradise*. The first is that mention'd *Gen.* 2. 10. And a River went out from *Eden* to water the Garden; but whether it proceeded from a Cataract thrown up from a subterranean Bay, or from a

great Spring, he says he is not able to conjecture. The next River or Cataract is that now called *Tygris*, which he says is Two-fold; the first is that which rises under Mount *Taurus*, and the 2d that which comes from the Lake *Thospes*, of which he gives the following Account from *Cluverius's* Introduction to Geography: 1. *Tygris* arises in *Armenia Major*, from a large Fountain in a Plain, where it runs more slowly. 'Tis called *Diglito*, from the Hebrew *דגלית*, the Letters being somewhat deprav'd by the Vulgar; but where it runs more swift, 'tis called *Tygris*, which in the Language of the *Medes* signifies a Dart, according to *Pliny*, *Lib.* 6. *Cap.* 27. 2. *Curtius* *Lib.* 4. and *Strabo* *Lib.* 11. Running thro' the Lake *Arethusa*, it meets with Mount *Taurus*, falls into a Cave under it, and comes out again at the other Side. This he says is the first Cataract of the *Tygris* in *Eden*, and the same Thing happens to the *Indian* *Ganges*, which runs thro' Mount *Caucasus*. The 2d runs thro' the Lake call'd *Thospes*, and then sinks under Ground for 25 Miles; and running beyond *Seleucia* to *Ctesiphon*, forms a large Island. Where the Waters rise up again, 'tis called *Pasitigris*, disburdens it self into the Lakes of *Chaldea*, and from thence falls into the *Persian* Sea with two great Mouths. *Solinus* and others say, That the Fountains of the *Tygris* and *Euphrates* are in other Respects 1500 Stadia distant from one another; but this does not hinder our Author's Account of the Rivers of *Paradise* to be true.

The 3d Cataract was at the Passage, out of *Paradise* towards the S. in that Place where lay the pleasant Vallies of *Sodom*, *Gomorrhah*, *Admah*, and *Zeboim*, before the Destruction of those Towns; but when they were ruin'd by Fire and Brimstone, all those Plains were turn'd into that now call'd the *Dead Sea*.

Our Author supposes, that after the Deluge, the *Jordan* of *Paradise* discharg'd it self into a Cave under the Mountains of *Edom*, as the *Tygris* does under Mount *Taurus*, and loses it self under Ground in some Abyfs. He supposes the same as to that Stream of *Jordan* which falls into the Lake *Asphaltites*; and to the Objection, that the Waters of the Lake would at the same Time be swallow'd up by that Abyfs, he answers,

answers, that the Mouth of it is no larger than just to receive the Stream of *Jordan*; and that the Water of the Lake being thick and oily, does not mix with that of *Jordan*, nor move with it.

He comes next to the Topography of *Paradise*, and takes Notice, 1. Of its Boundaries or Fences, and its Situation with respect to the 4 Cardinal Winds. 2. Its Area. 3. Its Dimensions. 4. The Entrance into it, and Passage out of it. 5. The Place where our first Parents fell. 6. The River which runs thro' the Garden, and was the Head of 4 others deriv'd from it without the Boundaries of *Paradise*. He places *Paradise* as before in the *Holy Land*, and its Fences or Boundaries he makes the Mountains of *Lebanon* and *Cælo-Syria* on the N. the Mountains *Hermion*, *Gilead*, *Nabatha*, and the rest of the Hills of the *Ammonites*, on the E. On the S. the Mountains of *Edom*, which run Westward in a Range, and are also call'd the Mountains of *Seir*. On the W. *Antilibanus*, the Mountains of *Tyrus*, *Saro*, and the *Philistines*. For Ditches to it, he reckons the Vallies of *Lebanon*. On the N. the Desarts of *Palmirena* in *Cælo-Syria*: On the E. the vast Desarts of *Arabia*: On the S. the Wilderness of *Arabia Petrea*; and on the W. the *Mediterranean*. These he says are such Fences as are not to be found in *Mesopotamia*, where some would place *Paradise*, nor any where else.

The Court or Porch of *Paradise* he reckons, first, to be *Cælo-Syria*, and in that the Land of *Damascus*, where some of the *Jews* and Christian Fathers alledge *Adam* to have been created. 2. *Arabia Deserta* and *Petrea*: So that *Adam* was created in the Court or Porch of *Paradise*, and banish'd thither after his Fall. In this, says our Author, *Abel* and the rest of the Patriarchs sacrific'd, and *Abraham*, *Isaac*, *Jacob*, and *Moses*, built Altars to the Lord either in *Paradise* it self, or in its Court, *Arabia*, &c. but never built any in *Egypt*, *Arabia Felix*, *Mesopotamia* or *Chaldea*.

He comes next to the particular Place of *Paradise*, and, in order to find it out by comparing of Scriptures, he first removes the Sea of *Galilee* and the *Dead Sea*, because in that Place where the Sea of *Galilee* now lies was *Genessar*, i. e. the Garden of the Prince, as he had endeavour'd to prove be-

fore. He supposes *Genessareth* retains the Footsteps of the Name; and that where this Sea now is, there was a pleasant Valley, and in that the Garden; and that the Valley of *Sodom*, after the Destruction of that City, was overflowed by the Lake *Asphaltites*. Then he draws the Line of Length on the N. Side from the Mountains of *Lebanon* thro' the Sea of *Galilee*, and the Valley of *Jericho* to the *Dead Sea*; and the Line of Breadth from the E. and the Mountains of *Gilead* to the Mountains of *Bethulia* and *Samaria*, because betwixt those Mountains there's a very convenient Valley for Gardens.

He supposes the Gate or Entrance into *Paradise* to be in the Land of *Damascus* towards the N. where some will have our first Parents to have been created, and *Abel* to have been murther'd by *Cain*. He also alledges, according to the Tradition of the *Jews*, that the Town of *Damascus* had its Name from the Blood there shed; and that *Adam* and his Wife were thrust out of *Paradise* the same Way they enter'd, because 'tis said, that when God thrust them out, he plac'd Cherubims at the E. of the Garden; but by what he said before, he places the Entrance towards the N.

He alledges, the Place where our first Parents fell is discovered by the Symbolical Trees, which he thinks to have been in the Valley of *Genessar*, near the Sea of *Galilee*, which he takes to have been the Heart of *Paradise*, because *Josephus* commends it mightily for its delicate Fruits, temperate Air, and Pleasantness.

In the next Place he comes to the River of *Paradise*, which is said, *Gen. 2. 10.* to be a River that went out of *Eden* to water the Garden, and from thence 'twas parted, and became 4 Heads, and this River he will have to be *Jordan*; and because the Garden lay in Length from N. to S. he supposes the River went thro' it, and water'd it by a periodical Inundation, as the *Nile* does *Egypt*. He supposes it went out of the Garden towards the E. and the S. betwixt the Mountains of *Moab* and *Edom*, at the End of the *Dead Sea*, where 'twas divided into other 4 Rivers; for he says, that the Plains of *Moab* took up 12 Leagues; so that there was Room enough for the River to divide it self towards the 4 Quarters of the World.

The

The River, he thinks, may properly be said to be divided into 4 Heads, because they were all capital Rivers, that run thro' noble and vast Countries. The two first, called *Phrat* and *Hiddekel*, run a little towards the N. and then both turning towards the E. run thro' the middle of *Assyria* and *Chaldea*, from whence the Country betwixt them was called *Mesopotamia*. He thinks there's no Doubt that *Phrat* is the *Mesopotamian Euphrates*, because the great and noble *Euphrates*, though the Deluge has hid the Channel, by which 'twas deriv'd from the River of *Paradise*, still continues its Course Eastward, as does the *Tygris* its Companion; tho' since the Deluge, it has also its own proper Fountains, and continues the same Channel. *Pison* run thro' *Arabia Deserta* into *Arabia Felix*, and washing the Land of the *Sabeans*, *Abraham's* Offspring, and the Land of *Havilah*, the *Gembae*, and *Catanite*, fell into the *Persian Gulph*. *Gihon* run thro' the Desarts of *Sur*, and *Arabia Petraea*, into *Arabia Felix*, where washing the Land of the *Cassanites*, and the Mountains of *Ophir*, it fell into the *Red Sea* betwixt the *Sabeans* and the *Fretum Erythraeum*.

Our Author answers the Objections made against this Hypothesis from the contrary Face of Things which now appear in those Parts, by alledging, that this Alteration was owing to the Deluge; that Part of their former Course is filled up by Sand; and that the Streams in those Parts may as well be swallow'd up by subterranean Abysses, as the Waters of *Jordan* are at the Foot of the Mountains of *Seir*.

Heylin supposes *Paradise* to have been in *Chaldea*, in an Island formed by the Rivers *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, and some Branches running from both; the Uppermost of which is *Pison*, falsely (says he) translated *Ganges*, which waters the Land of *Havilah*, or that Part of it now called *Chusistan* or *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; and the Lowermost is called *Gihon*, which compasses the E. Parts of *Arabia Petraea*, by the Seventy render'd *Aethiopia*. This he supposes to agree both with the Position of the Country, and the Course of those Rivers: For that *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, which the Hebrew Text calls *Hiddekel* and *Pera*, join their Streams here, he says, is agreed on all Sides.

Pison, he thinks, is the same which by *Ptolomy* is call'd *Basilus*, and by *Curtius Piso* *Tygris*, or *Pasi-Tygris*, is a little Stream which waters the Land of *Havilah*, or the Country of the *Charvilei*, runs into the *Tygris*, and falls with it into the Gulph of *Persia*. *Gihon*, he says, is *Ptolomy's Maarsares*, by others called *Marsyrus*, and only a Branch of *Euphrates*, which watering the Land of *Chus* or *Aethiopia Asiatica*, loses it self in the Lakes of *Chaldea*. *Spanheim* raises many Objections against *Paradise's* being situated near *Jericho* in his Introduction to Geography, to which we refer. Some believe it lay in the *Greater Armenia*, because they think the Rivers mentioned in Holy Writ arise from thence; that is to say, not only the *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, but also *Pison*, afterwards called *Phasis*, and *Gihon* or *Araxes*. But *Luyts* thinks this irreconcilable with the Sense of the Holy Scriptures, which shew, that *Eden* was situated Eastward, either with respect to *Arabia* or the Land of *Canaan*, because the Term *East*, according to the usual Expression of the *Hebrews*, denoted all the Region which extended from *Palestine* towards the East, including *Arabia Deserta*, *Chaldea*, the S. Part of *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria*, *Susiana*, and *Persia*: For, says he, *Eden* lay in that Part of the East where the Rivers *Tygris* and *Euphrates* meet, and are thence parted into several Streams, among which were *Gihon* and *Pison*, altho' their Course is by the Length of Time render'd somewhat obscure, the former watering *Cush*, and the latter *Havilah*, which Countries are plac'd by many Authors in *Arabia Felix*, near the *Persian Gulph*, into which *Tygris*, *Euphrates*, and the aforesaid Streams, discharge themselves. Upon the whole, *Luyts* seems to incline to the Opinion of *Huetius*, *Bochart*, *Bishop Patrick*, *Spanheim*, and others, that *Paradise*, or the Country of *Eden*, was situate in the S. Tract of *Babylonia* or *Mesopotamia*, betwixt *Tygris*, *Euphrates*, and the neighbouring Rivulets. *P. Dan Huetius* Bishop of *Auranches*, and *Bishop Patrick*, fix the Situation of *Eden* betwixt the Place where the *Euphrates* and *Tygris* unite into one Stream, and that where they divide into two Branches, viz. betwixt the 34th. and 32d Deg. of N. Lat. and the Garden it self upon the E. Side of that Stream, just above the Division.

Dr. *Wells*, in his Geography of the Old Testament, Cap. 1. seems to agree with this Situation of *Paradise*, only he makes Part of the Garden on the W. Side of the River, a little above where it divides it self into the *Pison* and *Gihon*, which fall into the *Persian Gulph*. He makes *Hiddekel* to be the *Tygris*, places the Land of *Havilah* betwixt *Arabia Deserta* and *Petraea* on the N. W. End of the *Persian Gulph*, and the Land of *Cush* opposite to it on the E. Side of the River *Gihon*, as appears by his Map. He has a very large Dissertation to prove this to be the Situation of *Paradise*, and quotes many Authors to shew, that all the Marks of *Paradise* given by *Moses* agree to this Country, for which we refer to the Book it self. *Reiskius* on *Cluverius*, and *Bochart* in his *Phaleg*, seem to be much of the same Opinion.

Cellarius says very judiciously, That after the different Opinions of so many learned Men about it, he does not know which he can safely follow. He rejects that of *Josephus*, which makes *Nilus* and *Ganges* two of the Rivers of *Paradise*, because of their too great Distance. He leaves those Authors to their own Opinions who place it further from the *Tygris* and *Euphrates*; but he supposes it lay E. from *Palæstina* or *Arabia Petraea*, in which *Moses* wrote. That sacred Penman mentions the *Euphrates*; so that there can be no Dispute as to that River. The Learned in Etymologies derive *Tygris* from *Hiddekel*; for by cutting off the *Alpi-*rate, according to the Greek Custom, it becomes *Dekel* or *Degal*, and the *L* being changed into *R*, as is frequently done in Proper Names by the Greeks, we have *Deger* or *Tyger*, from whence comes the Name *Tygris*, as *Bochart* shews at large, which agrees with what is said of it by Dr. *Wells*. Upon the whole, *Cellarius* owns there are Difficulties that attend each of those Opinions. He thinks that *Paradise* was in *Mesopotamia*, *Babylonia*, or *Chaldæa*; but in what Place, or what that River was issuing from the Land of *Eden*, that water'd the Garden, and afterwards divided it self into 4 Heads, cannot certainly be determined; for he agrees with *Herbinius*, that many Things have been alter'd by the Flood, which make it impossible for us to be at any Certainty in this Matter.

Having thus finished what we had to say

about *Paradise*, we go on with the Description of *Judæa*.

The next Place that occurs is *Gilgal*, which *Josephus* places 50 Stadia on this Side *Jordan*, and 10 from *Jericho*. 'Tis fam'd for the Monument of 12 Stones which the *Israelites* took out of *Jordan* when they encamp'd here, to be a Remembrance of their passing that River on dry Land, *Josh. 4. 20. &c.* Here it was *Saul* muster'd his Army against the *Amalekites*, according to *Josephus* and the *Seventy*; but the *Hebrews* call it *Telaim*, which is suppos'd to be another Name of the Place. The neighbouring Country was call'd the Nations of *Gilgal*, whose King was one of those subdued by *Joshua*, Chap. 12. so that it seems to have been of a very great Extent. It was the Place where *Samuel* hew'd *Agag* to Pieces, and where he Annually administred Justice to the People of *Israel*.

2. *Ephraim*, lay near the Desert, as appears by *Joh. 11. 54.* where our Saviour continu'd some Time with his Disciples. *Cellarius* thinks it lay N. of *Jerusalem*, near the Desert of *Jericho*. *Josephus* joins it with *Bethel*, says it was a little Town, and garrison'd by *Vespasian* when he marched to the Siege of *Jerusalem*.

Cellarius goes next to the Places which lay above *Jericho*, and takes Notice, first, of *Ai*, call'd also *Hai* or *Gai*, the Seat of one of those Kings whom *Joshua* subdu'd, Cap. 12. 8. of which there's a further Account Cap. 8 where we find *Joshua* took it by Stratagem, and put 12000 of the Inhabitants to the Sword. It lay E. from *Bethel*, near *Bethaven*, was burnt by *Joshua*, but rebuilt afterwards, as we find *Nehemiah 7. 32.*

From hence *Cellarius* proceeds to the Tract which lay W. of *Jerusalem*, where he takes Notice of, 1. *Gophna*, or *Guphna*, which he thinks to have been of considerable Note in the Time of the 2d Temple, because it gave Name to a Toparchy, according to *Josephus* and *Pliny*. He believes it to be the same with *Ophni*, *Josh. 18.*

2. *Michmas*, one of the Places where *Samuel* us'd to administer Justice to the People, and noted for the Encampment of the *Philistines* with 30000 Chariots, 6000 Horse, and a multitude of other People, like the Sand of the Sea, 1 *Sam. 13.* but were defeated with a great Slaughter, 1 *Sam. 14.* It lay E. from

E. from *Bethaven*, and is noted for two Rocks in the Neighbourhood, one of which stood over against *Gibeah*, which shews this Place to have lain N. from *Jerusalem*. It was the Residence of *Jonathan the Maccabean*, 1 *Maccab.* 9. 73.

3. *Adida*, near *Jerusalem*, being one of the Places where *Vespasian* built Castles, and plac'd Garrisons, in order to shut up that City, says *Josephus*. It was strongly situated on a Mountain.

In the W. Limits of *Benjamin* lay, 1. *Ono*, join'd with *Lud* or *Lydda*, *Nehem.* 11. 35. where 'tis called the Valley of Craftsmen. It lay near the Frontiers of *Ephraim*, and is by some placed in that Tribe.

2. *Modim*, or *Modin*, the Seat of the *Maccabees*, where their Sepulchres were to be seen, says *St. Jerome*. It had formerly been a considerable Town, with a Garrison, and lay betwixt *Joppa* and *Jerusalem*; but in the Time of the *Maccabees* 'twas reduced to a Village. *Heylin* says, the Sepulchre of the *Maccabees* was supported by 7 high Marble Pillars, which serv'd for a Sea-Mark.

3. *Nob*, a Town belonging to the Priests, and the Seat of the Ark, 1 *Sam.* 21. 1. and 22. 9, 11. It was barbarously destroy'd by *Saul*, because *Abimelech* the Priest had entertained *David* there. *Cellarius* thinks it lay 15 or 16 Miles from *Jerusalem*.

Geographers are much perplexed by the different Names of *Gaba*, *Geba*, *Gibea*, *Gabba*, *Gibea Benjamin*, *Gibea Saul*, *Gibeon*, *Gabaon*, *Gabao*, and *Gabatha*. *Gibea* was a Town of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, near *Jerusalem*, whither 'tis said the *Levite* turn'd in to lodge, *Judges* 19. 15. in which Place 'tis called in *Hebrew*, *Gibea*; in *Greek*, *Gabaa*; and by *Josephus*, *Gaba*, and the Inhabitants *Gabaeni*. *Josephus* makes it 50 Stadia from *Bethlehem* to the N. 'Tis the same with that called *Gibea-Benjamin*, *Judges* 20. 4. and 1 *Sam.* 13. 2. and *Gibea Saul*, *Isa.* 10. 29. probably because King *Saul* lived mostly here, 1 *Sam.* 10. 26. and 11. 4 &c. 'Tis also called *Gibeon*, or *Gabaon*, where begun the Slaughter of the *Philistines*, 1 *Chron.* 14. 16. but *Cellarius* thinks 'tis called so nowhere else in the Scriptures; for in another Text 'tis said, the Slaughter begun from *Geba*, from whence he conjectures, that the different Denominations arose from the Proximity of both Places to the

Field of Battle; and they are thus distinguished as two several Cities, both in the Tribe of *Benjamin*, *Josh.* 18. 24, 25. and 21. 17. *Heylin* sets down a Place called *Gebab* as the N. Border of the Kingdom of *Judah* towards *Israel*. *Bleau* says, it lay 5 Miles from *Jerusalem*, and that there's a Hill in the Suburbs where *Saul's* 7 Sons were hang'd, 2 *Sam.* 21. 6.

5. *Gibeon*, or *Gabaon*, famous for the League which the Inhabitants cunningly obtain'd of *Joshua*, *Cap.* 9. afterwards made a City of the *Levites*, *Cap.* 21. 17. and the Seat of the Tabernacle in the Reigns of *David* and *Solomon*, 1 *Kings* 3, 4, 5. and 1 *Chron.* 16. 39. *Josephus* says, in one Place it was 40, and in another 50 Stadia from *Jerusalem*, in the Way to *Lydda* and *Bethoron*; and that it was formerly a considerable City.

6. *Rama*, not far from *Gibeah*, as appears from *Judges* 19. 13. and 1 *Sam.* 22. 6. from whence 'tis called *Rama* of *Saul*, and to be distinguished, according to *Cellarius*, from that of *Samuel*, named *Ramatha*, and *Ramathaim Zophim*, which we have already described. *St. Jerome* says, it lay 6 Miles N. of *Ælia*. 'Tis mentioned in *Isaiah* 10. 29. *Jeremiah* 31. 15. and *Matth.* 2. 18. where 'tis noted for the Massacre of the Infants by *Herod*. *Baasha* King of *Israel* began to fortify it, that he might streighten *Asa* King of *Judah*, 1 *Kings* 15. 17. 21. *Josephus* calls it *Ramatho*, and places it 40 Stadia from *Jerusalem*, which agrees almost with the Computation of 6 Miles made by *Isidore* and *St. Jerome*. It appears to have been once a very considerable Town; for *Monsieur Bouffingault* says, it had more stately Ruins, Vaults and Cisterns, than *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, tho' now scarce inhabited, and lies 4 good Leagues from *Joppa*. *M. Thevenot* says, 'tis pretty large, and yields a good Prospect on the Outside, about three Miles from *Lydda*, mention'd *Acts* 9. Here is the House of *Nicodemus*, where there is a Convent, a Church and Lodgings for Pilgrims. The Doors of the Houses are not above 3 Foot high, to keep the *Arabs* from riding in. He says, there are a great many Wells about the Town, us'd formerly for the Stowage of Wheat and Oats. There is one in particular built artificially upon two Rows of Piazza's, which *Thevenot* suppos'd was for supplying the Town with

Water, but now not us'd. There are several *French* and *Dutch* Merchants here, who trade in Oil, Soap, Cotton, Thread, and Cloth. He adds, That some Years the S. E. Wind coming from the Wilderness across *Jordan*, causes a violent Heat for several Days, and brings a prodigious Multitude of Locusts, which would soon devour all the Herbage, if they were not destroy'd by Birds. He says, these Locusts lay their Eggs in Holes a Foot deep in the Ground, 80 in a Bunch, which they hatch in 15 or 16 Days, and then produce a numerous Breed, which are able to fly abroad in three Weeks time, and come to be as big as Grasshoppers. He adds, that this Town is subject to the *Basha* of *Gaza*, who usually diverts himself in these Parts by hunting the Wild Boar, and Jackals or Wild Dogs; which last they catch with a Leopard train'd up on purpose. The Women of this Town, according to the Custom of the *Turks*, go on certain Days in Companies out of the Town to their Relations Tombs, where they make strange Lamentations. *Heylin* says, the Town is situate in a sandy Plain on a rising Ground, and the Streets narrow. Here was anciently, among other Christian Churches, a fine large Monastery built by *Philip the Good* of *Burgundy*, which *Monconys* says is now a Mosque. There are abundance of Collyflowers, extraordinary Melons, and Tobacco planted here. The Town looks now like a Village; all the Houses are low, built of Freestone, with arch'd Roofs, except a few which are flat on the Top, with Terrasses.

7. *Emmaus*, or *Ammas*, where Christ appeared to the two Disciples after his Resurrection, about 60 Stadia from *Jerusalem*, *Luke* 24. 13. *Josephus* says, That a Quarrel arising here amongst the *Jews* after the Death of *Herod, Qu. Varus*, Governor of *Syria*, caus'd it to be burnt. Some derive the Name from a Word signifying hot Waters, which *Cellarius* says is a Mistake; for tho' there are Medicinal Baths here, they are not of a hot Quality. It was afterwards call'd *Nicopolis*; and when *Titus* subdu'd *Judea*, he sent a Colony of 1800 of his Soldiers to this Place. *Heylin* says, it was here that *Judas Maccabeus* gave the 3d Overthrow to *Gorgias*; and that the adjacent Baths gave the Name of *Salutaris* to this Part of

Palestine. *Thevenot* says, 'tis 8 Leagues W. from *Jerusalem*, and that there are the Remains of an ancient Castle. *Mr. Sandys* says, they are the Ruins of a Temple built by *Paula*, a Roman Lady, near the House of *Cleophas*, where Christ was known by his Disciples while he broke Bread. *Monconys* says, the Valley where *Joshua* defeated the *Canaanites* while the Sun stood still, lies near this Place; that it has two Avenues, and that *Gibeon* stood near one of them on the S.

8. *Anathoth*, the Birth-place of *Jeremy* the Prophet, a Town belonging to the Priests in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. *St. Jerome* places it 3 Miles N. from *Jerusalem*. It was formerly a considerable Town, but in his Time a mean Village.

Cellarius returns from the Tribe of *Benjamin* to that of *Judea*, and takes Notice of, 1. *Bethlehem*, 6 Miles S. from *Jerusalem*. 'Tis noted for being the City of *David*, and the Birth-place of our Saviour. Here *Ruth* and her Mother-in-Law were entertain'd by *Booz* their Kinsman, and here *David* was anointed. Its ancient Name was *Ephrat*, or *Ephrata*, *Gen* 35. 19. and 48. 7. so that those Names are us'd as synonymous. Tho' but a small Town, it became more glorious than all the Cities in the World by our Saviour's Birth, as is expressed in Divine Raptures by the Prophet *Micah*, Chap. 5. 2. *But thou Bethlehem Ephrata, tho' thou be little among the Thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be Ruler in Israel, whose Goings forth have been from old, from everlasting; and by the Evangelist, Matt. 2. 6. And thou Bethlehem in the Land of Judah art not the least among the Princes of Judah, for out of thee shall come a Governor that shall rule my People Israel.* 'Tis likewise excellently expressed by *Prudentius*, *Hymno Epiphaniae*, thus:

O sola magnarum Urbium
Major Bethlehem; cui contigit
Ducem salutis cœlitus
Incorporatum gignere!

Maundrel having view'd this Town, says, he saw there the Place where they alledge our Saviour was born, the Manger in which they suppose he was laid, that call'd the Chappel of *Joseph*, his suppos'd Father, that
of

of the *Innocents*, with several others, and the School of *St. Jerome*. The *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Latins*, have Convents here, and a Door from each into that call'd the Chappel of the *Holy Manger*. Near this Convent there's a Grotto dug out of a Chalky Rock, where they say the Blessed Virgin hid her self, with the Divine Infant, before her *Départure* to *Egypt*. The superstitious Priests say, the Whiteness of the Grotto is not natural, tho' of Chalk, but proceeded from some Drops of the Virgin's Milk; and perswade the Women, that the Chalk of this Grotto increases Milk in the Breasts of such as give Suck. *Thevenot* says, 'tis a pretty large Village, and the Inhabitants live by making Chaplets and Cro-nets. The *Turks* have made *St. Jerome's* School, whose Arch is supported by 6 Pillars of Granite, a Stable. In his Oratory, where he translated the Bible, are his Tomb, and those of *St. Paula*, and her Daughter *Eustochium*, and an Epitaph on them writ by *St. Jerome*. The great Church built by *St. Helena* is beautiful and spacious, has a high Roof of Cedar curiously wrought, and leaded over. 'Tis supported with two Rows of high great Marble Pillars, and on each of them the Picture of a Saint. The Walls are painted with lovely Mosaick Work in Green, on a Ground of fine Gold. The beautiful Marble which fac'd the lower Parts of the Wall is carried off by the *Turks* for their Mosques. The Church has many fair Windows, which makes it very light. It is reckon'd one of the finest Churches in the *Levant*, 80 Paces long, and 50 broad. It has a Gate on each Side, supported by 4 Columns each, and a Stair from them down to the Grotto, where they say our Saviour was born. 'Tis cut out of the Rock 40 Foot long, 12 broad, and 15 high, with abundance of Lamps continually burning in it; but every one may see how contrary this is to the Scripture Account of his being born in a Stable, *Luke* 2. 7. and 12. We refer for the other Particulars of these pretended Holy Places to the Authors above-mentioned, with *Monconys*, *Boussingault*, &c. since 'tis not possible there can be any Certainty concerning them at this Distance of Time; but those Things procure Money to the Priests. The Pilgrims have Marks made upon their Arms here like

those of *Jerusalem*, the Pain of which sometimes throws them into Fevers, and makes their Arms swell exceedingly. From the Top of the Church there's a large Prospect of the adjacent Country. He says, it is about two Hours Journey from *Jerusalem*, and the Country thro' which the Road lies is the Valley of *Rephaim*, famous for *David's* Victories against the *Philistines*, 2 *Sam.* 5. 25. The remarkable Places in the Road are, 1. The House of *Simeon* the Prophet, who taking our Saviour in his Arms in the Temple, sung, *Now lettest thou thy Servant depart in Peace.* 2. A famous Turpentine Tree, under the Shadow of which 'tis pretended the Virgin fate to repose her self when she carried our Saviour to the Temple. 3. A Convent dedicated to *Elias*, where the *Greeks* pretend to shew a hard Stone, which was his Bed, and bears the Mark of his Body. Near this Convent there's a Well, where they say the Star appeared to the Wise Men of the East. 4. *Rachel's* Tomb, which, tho' it may be a Place of her Interrment, is of modern Structure.

The Places in the Neighbourhood of *Bethlehem* are, 1. The celebrated Fountains, Pools and Gardens, about a League and a quarter S. from the Town, said to have been the Delight and Contrivance of King *Solomon*, to which he alludes *Eccles.* 2. 5, 6. The Pools are three in a Row, above each other, so as the Waters of the uppermost fall into the 2d, and those of the 2d into the 3d. They are Four-square, of equal Breadth, and about 90 Paces each. The first is 160 Paces long, the 2d 200, and the 3d 220. They are fac'd in the Inside with a plaister'd Wall. Near those Pools there's a noble Castle of modern Structure; and about 140 Paces from the Pools lies the Fountain from which they principally derive their Water. The Friars alledge this to be the Seal'd Fountain, to which *Solomon* alludes *Canticles* 4. 12. They pretend he seal'd them up for his own Drinking. *Maundrel* says, this might easily be done, for the Springs rise under Ground, to which there is no Avenue but by a little Hole like the Mouth of a narrow Well, thro' which one descends with Difficulty for about 4 Yards, and then there's a vaulted Room 15 Paces long, and 8 broad, with another somewhat less joining to it, both cover'd with hand-some

some Stone Arches of ancient Workmanship. There are 4 Fountains in them, whose Water is convey'd by little Streams into a Basin, and from thence by a large subterranean Passage to the Pools, and Part of the Water by an Aqueduct of Brick, in Form of Pipes, by many Turnings and Windings round the Mountains to *Jerusalem*. Below the Pools there's a narrow rocky Valley, enclos'd on both Sides with high Hills, which the Friars think to be the Garden enclos'd, alluded to in the *Canticles*. *Maundrel* adds, That he doubts whether this was the Place of the Garden, because the Ground was rocky, but supposes the Fountains to be really *Solomon's*, there not being the like Store of excellent Spring Water in *Palestina*. 2. The Field where the Shepherds watch'd their Flocks when they received the glad Tidings of our Saviour's Birth, and near it the Village where they dwelt, and the ruinous Monastery built by *St. Paula*, who died there. 3. A little W. from *Bethlehem* is that called the Well of *David*, which he so passionately thirsted for, 2 *Sam.* 23. 15. 'Tis now a Cistern supply'd only with Rain. Two Furlongs beyond it are the Remains of an old Aqueduct, which convey'd the Waters from *Solomon's* Pools to *Jerusalem*. 'Tis carried along upon the Surface of the Ground, compos'd of large square Stones, with a Channel cut out in them for the Water. They are let into each other with a Fillet, fram'd round the Cavity to prevent Leakage, and join'd with so strong a Mortar, that the Stones, tho' of coarse Marble, break sooner than the said Mortar; but the *Turks* have in most Places broke down this strong and expensive Aqueduct, which is 5 or 6 Leagues long.

In the Road from hence to the Wilderness of *St. John Baptist*, *Mr. Maundrel* crossed Part of that Valley where the Angel destroyed *Sennacherib's* Army. Here stands a Village call'd *Boothallah*, possess'd entirely by Christians, because of a Tradition, That no *Turks* can live in it above two Years, which makes them unwilling to try the Experiment. In this Road lies also the Fountain where they say *Philip* baptiz'd the Eunuch; but the Way being so rocky as not to afford Passage for a Chariot, 'tis suppos'd this cannot be the Place. A little

beyond the Fountain there's a Village call'd *St. Philip*, and after ascending a steep Mountain comes the Wilderness of *St. John*, which, tho' rocky and mountainous, produces Plenty of Corn, Wine, and Olives; so that 'tis also questionable whether this be the Place. In this Wilderness there is a Cave and a Fountain where they say the *Baptist* liv'd, and near it some old Locust Trees, which the ignorant Friars say yielded Food to the *Baptist*, and the Pilgrims carry away the Fruit with great Devotion. About a League to the E. lies the Convent of *St. John*. *Maundrel* in his Way hither passed by one Side of the Valley of *Elah*, where *David* slew *Goliath*; and near this Place lies that pretended to be the House of *Elizabeth*, Mother to the *Baptist*, formerly a Convent, but now in Ruins. Here they shew a Grotto, in which they say the Blessed Virgin saluted *Elizabeth*: And yet they pretend *St. John* was born at the Place of his Convent, which has been lately rebuilt. 'Tis square, uniform, neat and large. It has a very beautiful Church, consisting of three Isles, with a handsome Cupola in the Middle, and a curious Pavement of Mosaick Work, equal to the best of the Ancients. At the upper End of the North Isle they descend by 7 Marble Steps to a splendid Altar, erected over the Place where they say the *Baptist* was born. This Convent is so sumptuous, that the Monks boast every Stone in it has cost them a Dollar, which, considering the Sums extorted from them by the *Turks* for Liberty to erect such Buildings, and the other Expences of them, may possibly be true. About three quarters of a League further, and within half a League of *Jerusalem*, the *Greeks* have a Convent, call'd that of the *Holy Cross*, because here they say the Tree grew of which the Cross was made; and they shew a Hole where they say the Stump of the Tree grew, which is devoutly worship'd by the superstitious Pilgrims, where their Feet are wash'd and kiss'd by the Father Guardian, the Society singing Hymns all the while.

The next Town taken Notice of by *Celarius* is *Tekoa*, the Birth-place of the Prophet *Amos*. *St. Jerome* reckons it 6 Miles S. from *Bethlehem*, and 12 from *Jerusalem*. It has a Desert of the same Name, which he says reaches to the *Red Sea*. A little fur-

ther, *Herod* built a Castle and Town called *Herodium*, in Remembrance of his Victory over the *Jews* that took Part with *Antiochus*.

Cellarius describes next the Places betwixt *Jerusalem* and *Hebron*, the chief of which is *Beth-Zur*, situated upon Rocks. *St. Jerome* makes it 20 Miles from *Jerusalem*. Here they pretend was the Fountain where *Philip* baptiz'd the Eunuch; but that lay in the Way to *Gaza* at another *Beth-Zur*, about a Mile from *Eleutheropolis*. The Town now under Consideration lay near *Hebron*. 'Tis mentioned *Joshua* 15. 58. and was fortified by *Rehoboam*, 2 *Chron.* 11. 7. It was a very strong Town, and taken with much Difficulty by *Antiochus*, says *Josephus*. 'Twas also fortified by *Simon Maccabeus*, but is by some reckon'd in *Idumæa*, because the Inhabitants of that Country had seized the S. Parts of *Judæa*. *Cellarius* observes a Mistake in 2 *Maccabees* 11. 5. where it is made but 5 Stadia from *Jerusalem*. *Strabo* makes it 30, which agrees better with *St. Jerome*.

The next Place is *Hebron*, an ancient Town in the mountainous Part of *Judæa*. It was anciently called *Kirjath Arba*, *Genesis* 23. 2. where *Sarah* died. *Josephus* says, it was more ancient than the *Egyptian Memphis*. *St. Jerome* places it above 20 Miles S. from *Jerusalem*, *Cellarius* says rather to the S. E. because in the *Talmud* 'tis said, one was appointed every Morning to go to the Top of the Temple when they were to make their Morning Sacrifice, to try whether they could see *Hebron*. The Country about it was the Seat of the Patriarchs in the Plain of *Mamre*, *Gen.* 13, 18. 35, 27. and 38, 14. It was also *David's* Residence, 2 *Sam.* 2. 1. After the *Babylonish* Captivity, it was possessed by the *Edomites*, and therefore in the *Maccabees* 'tis reckon'd in *Idumæa*. Near the Town lay the Grove of *Mamre*, which is supposed to have been of Oaks; others say, of Turpentine Trees: For *Josephus* takes Notice, that there was a very great Turpentine Tree 6 Stadia from *Hebron*, suppos'd to have continued from the Creation. *Mamre* was regarded as a Holy Place by the *Heathens* as well as the *Jews*, and afterwards by the *Christians*, because the *Angels* appear'd here to *Abraham*.

Engaddi, or *Engedi*, is join'd with the City of *Salt*, *Josh.* 15. 62. which proves them to be Neighbours. 'Tis noted for a Wilderness of the same Name, and a Cave where *David* hid himself, and cut off the Skirt of *Saul's* Garment. *St. Jerome* says, it was a large Village in his Time on the *Dead Sea*, and noted for Balsam and Vineyards, *Canticles* 1. 14. *Pliny* says, it was next to *Jerusalem* for a fruitful Soil, and Groves of Palm-Trees, which *Solinus* says had escaped the Fury of the War. Some Authors place it in *Arabia*, because the *Dead Sea* reach'd the Borders of that Country. *Onkelos* thinks it to be the same with *Hazezon-Tamar* mentioned *Gen.* 14. 7. which had its Name from Palm-Trees. It was made the Southern Boundary of the Holy Land, *Ezekiel* 47. 19. Near this Place stood the Castle of *Masada*, a very strong Fortress on a Mountain, built by the ancient Kings of *Israel*, according to some. *Josephus* says, it was afterwards built by *Jonathan* the High-Priest, and then made impregnable by *Herod*. Not far from hence lay the Mountain of the *Franks*, a steep Hill, so called because 'twas defended by a Party of the *Crusadoes* 40 Years after the Loss of *Jerusalem*.

Near to this lay the Town of *Maon*, join'd with *Carmel* and *Ziph*, *Joshua* 15. 55. so that it gave Name to Part of the Wilderness whither *David* retired, 1 *Sam.* 23. 24. *Nabal*, who had Possessions in *Carmel*, was an Inhabitant of *Maon*, 1 *Sam.* 25. 2.

Carmel was a Town on a high Mountain, as appears v. 5. from whence *Nabal* and his Wife were named *Carmelites*, 1 *Sam.* 27. 3. *Jerome* says, it was named *Carmelia* in his Time, lay 10 Miles S. E. from *Hebron*, and had a Roman Garrison. By all this it appears, that *Maon* lay in the Southern Boundary of *Judæa*, near *Zoar* on the *Dead Sea*.

Ziph lay E. from *Hebron*, and gave Name to Part of the neighbouring Wilderness, 1 *Sam.* 23. 14. and 26. 2. *St. Jerome* says, in this Desert lay the dark and cloudy Mountain of *Ziph*, where *David* stay'd, 1. *Sam.* 23. 14.

Cellarius says, *Zoar* lay on the S. Side of the *Dead Sea*, and was at last a Roman Garrison. From hence he concludes, that *Sodom* lay but 6 Miles below *Zoar*, because *Lot* escap'd thither betwixt the Dawning of the Day and Sun-rising, and not on the up-

per Part of the Lake, as most Maps have it. Gomorrah lay N. from Sodom. Zeboim lay nearer the Mouth of Jordan, and Admah betwixt both.

Cellarius comes next to the Inland Places of Judæa, and gives an Account, 1. of Kirjath-Jearim, which signifies a City of Woods. It is also call'd Baalah, Josh. 15. 9. about 9 Miles from Jerusalem, noted for the Abode of the Ark when it was recover'd from the Philistines, 1 Sam. 7. 1, 2.

2. Bethshemesh, i. e. the City of the Sun. It lay betwixt Accaron or Ekron of the Philistines and Kirjath-Jearim. It is noted for the great Slaughter of the Inhabitants for prophanely looking into the Ark, 1 Sam. 6. 19. and for the Defeat and taking of Amashiah King of Judah by Jehoash K. of Israel, 2 Kings 14. 13. It lay W. from Kirjath-Jearim.

3. Timnah, or Thamnah, lay N. from Bethshemesh, noted for Judah's shearing his Sheep here, and lying with Tamar his Daughter-in-Law, Gen. 38. 12, 13, 14. It was afterwards taken by the Philistines, from whence Sampson's Wife is called a Philistine, Judges 14. 1. 'Twas recover'd by David, but retaken afterwards by the Philistines, and in the Time of Josephus became Head of a Toparchy. Cellarius says, it differs from that Timnath-Sera in the Tribe of Ephraim, where Joshua was buried, Josh. 24. 30.

4. Gallim, mentioned Isaiah 10. 30. and 1 Sam. 25. 44. lay in the Neighbourhood, and belong'd to Phalti, to whom Saul gave Michal, David's Wife.

5. Laish, mentioned with Gallim, Isa. 10. 30. differ'd from that afterwards call'd Dan, and is noted for the Encampment of Judas Maccabeus when he pursued his Enemies, 1 Maccab. 9. 5.

6. Eleutheropolis. The Origine of this Town, and when built, is not known. It must be later than Josephus and Ptolomy, because they don't mention it. Cellarius thinks it was built by the Heathen Emperors. It was one of the principal Cities of Palestine, the Birth-place of Epiphanius; and Macrinus, one of its Bishops, sign'd the Council of Nice. It lay about 20 Miles from Jerusalem, and 24 from Ascalon; so that they are mistaken who think it the same with Hebron.

7. Azekah, mention'd Josh. 10. 10. noted for the great Slaughter of the 5 Kings of

the Amorites by Joshua. It lay S. from Eleutheropolis, and a little N. from Socho, 1 Sam. 17. 1. 'Tis noted for the Defeat of the Philistines, and the killing of Goliath by David. It lay in the Tribe of Judah, and held out against the King of Babylon's Army, Jerem. 34. 7.

8. Makedah, noted for the Slaughter of the 5 Kings of the Amorites in a neighbouring Cave by Joshua, Chap. 10. 23. Cellarius thinks it lay N. E. from Eleutheropolis.

9. Socho. There were two Towns of this Name, one in a Plain, and another in a Mountain, but near one another. 'Tis mentioned Josh. 15. 35. and noted for the Encampment of the Philistines, and the Death of Goliath, 1 Sam. 17. 50.

10. Libnah, a Town belonging to the Priests, Josh. 21. 13. and besieg'd by Sennacherib, 2 Kings 19. 8. Jerome says, it lay E. from Eleutheropolis. It was one of the Towns taken by Joshua, Chap. 15. and 39. who killed its King, Chap. 10. and 30.

11 Lachish, 7 Miles S. from Eleutheropolis. It was also taken by Joshua, who kill'd their King, Chap. 10. 32. Amasias K. of Judah was killed here, 2 Kings 14. 19. by Rebels. It was besieged by Sennacherib, 2 Kings 14. and by Nebuchadnezzar, Jerem. 34. 7.

12. Ashtemoth, a Town belonging to the Priests, Josh. 15. 50. David sent Part of the Spoil of the Amalekites hither, 1 Sam. 30. 28. It lay a little beyond Lachish.

The following Towns lay in the N. of Judæa; 1. Beer, where Jothan dwelt when he fled from Abimelech his Brother, Judg. 9. 21. Jerome places it 8 Miles N. from Eleutheropolis. 2. Gedar, mention'd Josh. 15. 58. 3. Jarmuth, Josh. 15. 35. S. W. from hence lay Hazor, or Azor, mention'd Joshua 15. 23. 25. 4. Bethoglah, Joshua 18. 21. 5. Mizpah, Josh. 15. 38. But there are other Towns of the same Name elsewhere. 6. Kedron, fortified by K. Antiochus, and noted for the Defeat of the Syrians, 1 Maccab. 15. 39. 16. 9.

East from Eleutheropolis lay Moresthi, the Birth-place of the Prophet Micah, Ch. 1. 1. 2. Keilah, sometimes the Residence of David, 1 Sam. 23. where he defeated the Philistines. It lay about 8 Miles from Eleutheropolis, in the Way to Hebron. 3. Adullam, about 10 Miles E. from Eleutheropolis. Joshua took it, and killed their King, Chap. 12. 15. David hid himself in a Cave near it,

it, 1 Sam. 22. 1. 4. Eglon. Jerome places it 12 Miles E. from Eleutheropolis; Eusebius 10. Their King was one of the five overthrown by Joshua, Chap. 10. 3, 5. who took the Place, and put the Inhabitants to the Sword, v. 36, 37. Cellarius says, in this Tract lay also Aphek, where the Philistines pitched their Tents twice against Israel, 1 Sam. 41. and Chap. 29. 1.

Next Cellarius proceeds to the Towns which were allotted to Simeon out of the Tribe of Judah towards the S. and W. where he takes Notice, 1. of Ziklag, mentioned Josh. 15. 31. Chap. 19. 5. It seems to have continu'd in the Hands of the Philistines till David's Time, 1 Sam. 27.

2. Horma, or Herma, mention'd Josh. 19. 4. but 'tis doubted whether it be the same Place where the rebellious Israelites were routed, Numb. 14. 45. by the Amalekites, and the Canaanites were afterwards defeated, Numb. 21.

3. Atbar, Josh. 15. 42. Asan 19. 7. and Jutan and Etam, were also Towns of this Country. The latter seems to be Sampson's Rock, Judges 15. 8. which was afterwards fortified, and became a Town, 2 Chron. 11. 7.

Beersheba, mentioned Josh. 19. 2. lay in this Tribe, and was the Southern Boundary not only of Judaea, but of all Israel, as appears by the common Saying from Dan to Beersheba. 'Twas the Seat of the Patriarch Abraham, who gave it its Name, Gen. 21. 31. which signifies the Fountain of Swearing. Jerome makes it 25 Miles S. from Hebron; but Cellarius says, it lay further in the Way from Canaan to Egypt. The Romans made it a Garrison. Cluverius places it about 45 Miles S.W. from Hebron.

On the S. of Judaea lay the Jerachmelites, 1 Sam. 27. 10. The Geshurites lay betwixt the River of Egypt and the Land of the Philistines, S. from Beersheba. Near the latter stood Gerar, mention'd Gen. 10. 19. and is made the Southern Boundary of Canaan, together with Gaza. It lay betwixt Kadesh and Sur, two noted Defarts, one of which lay towards Egypt, and the other towards Arabia Petraea. Jerome says, it was formerly the Metropolis of the Philistines, lay 25 Miles S. from Eleutheropolis, and gave the Name of Geraritica to the Province, which lay S. from that called Daroma. It was the

Seat of Abimelech K. of the Philistines, tho' it did not properly lie in his Country. It came afterwards under the Kings of Ethiopia, or Southern Arabians. Asa K. of Judah, when he defeated their King, wasted the Country about Gerar, 2 Chron. 14. 14. Cellarius corrects the Samaritan Translation, and the Targum of Jerusalem, the first making it Ascalon, and the 2d Arad, since neither of them agree to its Situation.

Cellarius returns again to the Tribe of Judah, and takes Notice, 1. Of Maresbakh, mention'd Josh. 15. 44. It lay in the S. of Judah, near Keilah and Achsib, was fortified by Rehoboam, 2 Chron. 11. 8. destroy'd afterwards, re fortified by Gabinius the Roman, but in Jerome's Time lay desolate, within two Miles of Eleutheropolis, which is suppos'd to have sprung from its Ruins.

He comes next to Daroma, a Province in the S. Border of Judaea, where he takes Notice, 1. Of Arad, whose King was defeated, and his Towns destroyed, by the Israelites, Numb. 21. It lay about 24 Miles from Hebron. 2. Acrabbim, Numb. 34. 4. and Joshua 15. 3. The neighbouring District was called Acrabatena, but differs from that in the Borders of Ephraim and Benjamin. This Boundary is fully described by Joshua, Cap. 15. 2.

The Province of Daroma, so frequently mentioned by Eusebius and Jerome, is a large Tract of Ground in the S. of Judaea; and the Province of Goshen, mentioned Josh. 10. 41. and 11. 16. lies also towards the S. of this Country, but further in them Daroma.

The Toparchies of Judaea, Pliny makes 10, and Josephus 11. The former distinguishes them from Idumaea, Galilee, Samaria, and Peraea, and says, they were called Jericho, Emmaus, Lydda, Joppa, Acrabatena, Gophnitica, Thamnitica, Bethleptephene, and Orine, in which lay Jerusalem and Herodium. Josephus makes Jerusalem the chief of them, to which he adds those of Gophna, Acrabatta, Thamna, Lydda, Emmaus, Pella, Idumaea, Engeddi, Herodium, and Jericho. But Cellarius thinks Pella one too many, because it lay beyond Jordan. He doubts also whether Bethleptephene ought to be reckon'd as a Toparchy of Judaea; neither does he seem very positive as to the exact Number, Order, or Names, of those Toparchies.

The Land of the Philistines, and the Maritime Coasts of Judæa.

THE West Border of the Land of the Philistines to the Great Sea, and the Coasts thereof, belong'd to the Tribe of Judah, Josh. 15. 12. The other Part, assign'd to Dan and Simeon, is mentioned Cap. 19. To the Tribe of Judah belong'd also Gaza, Ascalon, and Ekron, Judges 1. 18. but lost soon after; and tho' claimed by David and his Successors, yet never entirely subdued till the Time of K. Uzziab, who warring with the Philistines, demolish'd the Fortifications of their Towns, and built other Cities to keep them in awe, 2 Chron. 26. 6. In a Word, the whole Tract of the Philistines, and namely the 5 famous Principalities assign'd by God to the Israelites, were not master'd without great Difficulty, because of the Sins of the Children of Israel. The most ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the Avims, driven out by the Caphtorims, Deut. 2. 23. The latter are mentioned Amos 9. 7. and Gen. 10. 14. where the Greek and Latin Interpreters, with the Chaldees, and the Targum of Onkelos, render it Cappadocians, and Caphtor, Cappadocia. For in the Text last mentioned, the Philistines are said to come out of Caslukim, which Bochart interprets Colchi, Neighbours to the Cappadocians. But Josephus derives Cappadocia, with the other Countries beyond the Mountains of Amanus and Taurus, from the Posterity of Japhet; and in Gen. 10. 4. the Caphtorims and Philistines are said to be descended from Ham; for which Reason Cellarius thinks the Caphtorims were not a People of Pontus or Cappadocia, but rather that they dwelt in the Islands of the Nile about Delta, because Caphtor is called an Isle, Jerem. 47. 4. whereas Cappadocia is a Continent. However, Cellarius supposes the Philistines and the Caphtorims might be Neighbour Nations and Allies, according to Kimchi, who in his Commentary upon that Place in Jeremias, observes, that the Philistines and the Caphtorims were Brother Nations, who increas'd so in the Land of the Avims, which they possess'd, that it lost the Name of the Caphtorims, and that of the Philistines prevail'd.

The same Author says, the Land of the Philistines lay along the Coast of the Great Sea or Mediterranean from Joppa to the Borders of Egypt, and that they had some Inland Places which join'd to their Maritime Towns. Adrichomius extends it from Casarea Palestinae to Gaza and the Egyptian River Sichor. Heylin says, the Philistines were Masters of all the Coasts from the S. of Phœnicia to the N. of Idumæa, or from Castrum Peregrinorum to Gaza inclusively. But Joppa, and all the Towns on the N. of that, being taken by the Israelites, they held no more than 6 Towns of any Note, with the Territories thereto belonging, namely, Gath, Accaron, Ashdod, Ascalon, Gaza, and Maioma. Nevertheless, they were so populous and strong, that by the Assistance of the Edomites, and such of their Neighbours who were not well affected to the Tribes, they kept them under more than all the Cannanites together. These Philistines were a Gigantick Race of Men, and call'd in Scripture the Sons of Anak. Heylin says, before they drove out the Avims, and took Possession of this Country, they dwelt in the Borders of Egypt and Idumæa, where the Caslukim gave Name to the Province of Casiotis and Mount Casius. They were govern'd at first by one King, whom they always call'd Abimelech, then by five, who united in Time of Danger. They were too strong for the Israelites, whom they master'd several times, and lorded it over them for above 150 Years, till broken by Sampson, and kept off a little while by Samuel. Recovering again, they subdued the Israelites in the Time of Saul, whose dead Body they hang'd on the Walls of Bethsan. But David overthrew them in several pitch'd Battles, and took Gath, one of their strongest Holds, whereby he made them quiet all his Reign; nor did they stir for a long while after. Beginning to be troublesome again in the Days of Uzziab K. of Judah, he gave their Army a total Rout, raz'd to the Ground Ita and Amcia, two of their fortified Towns, and again dismantled Gath. Nevertheless, in the Time of Ahaz, siding with the Edomites, who were perpetual Enemies to the Tribe of Judah, they broke out again, took several Towns, carried off abundance of Prisoners, and made a great Slaughter. Yet Hezekiah made them pay dear for it, taking from

from them the greatest Part of their Country betwixt *Gath* and *Gaza*. Notwithstanding this, they recover'd to that Height, that the whole Country was from them called *Palæstine*. But the *Maccabeans* crush'd 'em both in their Power and Credit, from which Time they were only counted as a Part of *Jewry*, and ever after follow'd its Fortunes. There were several Cities belonging to the *Philistines*, as *Gerar*, *Gen 20*. *Jabne* or *Jamnia*, *2 Chron. 26. 6.* and *Gibethon*, *1 Kings 15. 27.* with others; but there were only 5 of chief Note, which were called the Five Principalities of the *Philistines*; and being leagu'd together in the Form of a Commonwealth, the whole was called *Pentapolis*. Their Towns and Names are certain enough, but Geographers cannot agree in their Order and Position. Their Order is thus set down, *Josh. 13. 3.* *The Five Lordships of the Philistines, viz. the Gazathites, the Ashdodites, the Eshkalonites, the Gittites, and the Ekronites*, where their Boundaries are fixed from *Sihor*, which is before *Egypt*, unto the Borders of *Ekron* Northward. They are set down in *1 Sam. 6. 17.* in the following Order; *Ashdod, Gaza, Ashkelon, Gath, and Ekron*: Which different Dispositions are the Reason that there can be no certain Order fix'd as to their Situation from N. to S. *Josephus* reckons them up in this Order; *Gath, Accaron, Ascalon, Gaza, and Azotus*. *St. Jerome* thus; *Gaza, Ascalon, Azotus, Accaron, and Gath*; which Position is follow'd by the common Maps; but some of the latest leave out *Gath* and *Accaron*. Besides, *Ptolemy* places *Ascalon* S. of *Gaza*, and *Antoninus* in his *Itinerary* makes it N. *Cellarius* having premis'd thus much as to the Difference of Authors about the Position of the several Towns, discusses, 1. That of *Gath*. *Benjamin* of *Tudela*, the Jewish Traveller, thinks that *Cæsarea*, or *Stratonis Turris*, was anciently call'd *Gath* of the *Philistines*; but *Cellarius* fully proves, by an ingenious Discussion, to which we refer, that *Cæsarea* lay too far N. to be the *Gath* in Question, and chuses rather to place it in the S. Part of the Land of the *Philistines*. Some say, it was the Metropolis and Royal Seat of their Kings before the Time of *David*. *St. Jerome* distinguishes between *Geth* and *Getha*. The former, in which dwelt the Giants or *Anakims*, lay 5 Miles from *Eleutheropolis*, in

the Way to *Diospolis*. The latter, whither the Ark of the Testimony was brought from *Azotus* or *Ashdod*, was a considerable Town between *Getha*, *Antipatris*, and *Jamnia*; but *Cellarius* thinks the former was without the Bounds of the Country of the *Philistines*, and call'd *Gath-Rimmon*, which we shall take Notice of in its Place. The latter he allows to be the Place whither the Ark was brought, and *St. Jerome* takes it to be the Birth place of *Goliath*, and one of the five Towns of the *Philistines*, tho' neither of them determines its Situation. *Cellarius* thinks *Gath* and *Getha* were not far distant. *Gath* was demolish'd by *David*, and rebuilt by *Rehoboam*. 'Twas raz'd again by *Uzziah* K. of *Judah*, and finally destroyed by *Hæzæel* K. of *Syria*. *Heylin* says, in the latter Ages, *Fulk* K. of *Jerusalem* erected a new Castle there upon the old Ruins, from whence he supposes the Idol Dagon of the *Philistines* was call'd *Ater-Gatis* by the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians*, and not from *Gatis* a *Syrian* Queen. *Buno* says, *Gath* lay W. of *Jerusalem*, on a Hill not far from the Sea, and about 4 Leagues from *Joppa*.

2. *Ekron*, or *Accaron*, the Northern Boundary of the Land of the *Philistines*, *Joshua 13. 3.* and of the Tribe of *Judah*, *Cap. 15. 11.* It was afterwards allotted to the Tribe of *Dan*, *Cap. 19. 43.* but possess'd by neither; and tho' taken by *Judah*, *Judges 1. 18.* was quickly lost again. It was at a small Distance from the Coast, because the Borders are said to be continued from thence to the Sea, *Josh. 15. 11. 46.* 'Tis famous for the Idol *Baal-Zebub*, which King *Ahaziah* sent to consult, *2 Kings 1. 2.* *Cellarius* thinks from the Story of the Ark, that *Ekron* lay near *Bethshemesh*, and by the way finds fault with *Adrichomius* and others, who were of Opinion, that it was afterwards call'd *Turris Stratonis* or *Apollonia*; for *Accaron* is not touch'd at by *Prophane* Authors. *Buno* says, it lay between *Gath* and *Ascalon*. *Heylin* thinks it lay S. of the former, and observes, that their Idol was called *Baelzebub*, i. e. Lord of Flies, by the *Jews*, either in Contempt of Idolatry, or because of the great Multitude of Flies said to have attended his Sacrifices.

3. *Azotus*, or *Ashdod*. It was one of the Towns dismantled by *Uzziah*, *2 Chron. 26. 6.* Its Ruin was foretold by the Prophets *Isaiah*,

Jeremy, Amos, Zephania, and Zechariah. Bonfrerius places it in the Middle, betwixt Gaza and Ascalon, according to Josh. 13. 3. but *Diodorus Siculus* proves his Mistake, where he says, *Demetrius*, when he was beaten at Gaza, fled to Azotus, which was 270 Stadia, or near 34 Miles; because if there be so great Distance betwixt those two Towns, it can't be suppos'd but another Town of *Pentapolis* must lie between them, otherwise it would extend the Shore too far. The Traveller of *Tudela* says, it lay two *Parasanga* from *Jamnia*. *Pentinger's Map* and *Plolomy* make it about 10 Miles. Here was a Temple of the Idol *Dagon*, which fell down before the Ark of God, 1 Sam. 5. 2. *Buno* says, this Idol had the Head of a Fish. *Josephus* relates, That *Jonathan the Maccabean* destroy'd both the City and Temple, and that his Brother *Judas*, after his Victory at *Bacchis*, died here in the midst of his Enemies. *Buno* says, it lay 4 Leagues from Ascalon. Hither it was that the Spirit of the Lord brought *Philip* when he had taught the Eunuch the Way to eternal Life. *St. Jerome* says, it was rebuilt by *Gabinus* the Roman General, made a Bishop's See in the Times of Christianity, and continu'd a fair Village till his Days.

4. *Ascalon*, or *Scalona*, which *Cellarius* says lay on the Shore betwixt Gaza and Azotus. *Cedrenus*, *Lightfoot*, and others, think it was also call'd *Gerara*, which *Cellarius* disproves. *Josephus* says, it was an ancient City, 520 Stadia from Jerusalem, well fortified, and had a Roman Garrison commanded by *Anthony*. He says, the Inhabitants, who were for most Part Heathens, slew 2500 of the Jews their Neighbours at one Rising. But *Cellarius* thinks *Josephus's* Computation of the Distance from Jerusalem too much. *Antoninus* in his *Itinerary* makes it 44 Miles, which is but 352 Stadia. *Pentinger's Map* makes it 48 Miles. This Place seems to have been of Note in the Time of the Romans, from a Coin of *Augustus*, inscrib'd on one Side, ΑΣΚΑΛ, and on the Reverse ΣΕΒΑΣΤΟΣ. Another of *Claudius*, inscrib'd ΑΣΚΑΛΩΝ; and from another of *Titus*, with ΑΣΚΑΛΩΝΙΤΩΝ at length, and the Effigies of *Venus Urania*, who was worship'd here by the Heathens. *Buno* says, it was the Country of *Semiramis*; that 'twas formerly a noble Town, 720 Stadia from Jerusalem, 4 Leagues

from Azotus, and the Place where *Sampson* stripped the 10 Men whom he slew with his own Hands, and gave their Garments to those who were able to expound his Riddle. *Heylin* says, it had a Temple dedicated to *Doroeto*, the Mother of *Semiramis*, worship'd here in the Form of a Mermaid, and another of *Apollo*, wherein *Herod*, the Father of *Antipater*, (and from his Birth here call'd *Herod the Ascalonite*) officiated as Priest. It was a Bishop's See in the Times of Christianity, and in the Course of the Holy Wars adorned with a new Wall, and several fair Buildings, by *K. Richard of England*. *Mr. Sandys* says, it lay 10 Miles from Gaza, near the Sea, as many S. from Azotus, and 20 S. of Accaron.

5. *Gaza*, the last Town of *Pentapolis* allotted to the Tribe of Judah, Josh. 15. 47. who could not take it till after *Joshua's* Death, Judges 1. 18. *Pemponius Mela* says, it was a great City of Palestine, well fortified, and the Treasury of the Persians, because when *Cambyses* warred against Egypt, he brought his Treasure and warlike Stores to this Place; but not call'd Gaza from hence, as some have imagin'd, for it had that Name in the Time of the Patriarchs, Gen. 10. 19. *Stephanus* says, the ancient Syrians call'd it *Aza*. *Arrianus* says, it lay 20 Stadia from the Sea, was of difficult Access, and situate on a rising Ground. Ancient Historians make a Distinction between the Port of Gaza and the Town. *Strabo* says, the latter lay 7 Stadia from the Harbour, and that it was demolished by *Alexander the Great*; after which, he seems to think it was never rebuilt, which *Cellarius* does not agree with, because *Polybins* says, it was raz'd again by *Antiochus*. It was a strong and populous Town in the Time of the Maccabees, who after several fruitless Attempts at length forced it, 1 Maccab. 11. 61. 13. 43, 44. *Josephus* says, *Alexander Jannæus*, the King and High-Priest of the Jews, dismantled it, from which Time it seems to have been desert, according to *Strabo*. But *Cellarius* says, it reviv'd again, and had some Coins struck in Honour of *Titus*, *Adrian*, *Antoninus Pius*, *L. Verus*, *Faustina Jun.* and *Plautilla*. *Causabon*, in his Notes upon *Strabo*, observes, that it was not wholly deserted, but less frequented than before. *Cellarius* says, the Port of Gaza, which was call'd *Majema* or *Majuma*,

Majuma, was only a Village, till *Constantine* made it a City, and call'd it *Constantia*. *Heylin* says, *Julian* reannex'd it to *Gaza*, and caus'd it to be call'd *Gaza Maritima*. *Antoninus's Itinerary* places it 16 Miles S. of *Ascalon*. Tho' this Town was sometimes possess'd by the *Jews*, yet the Inhabitants remain'd Heathens, and were Worshippers of *Jupiter of Crete*, whom they call'd *Marnan*; and *Spanheim* says, they had a Coin inscrib'd to the Honour of *Adrian*, FAZA MAPNA ΔΠΡ. *Sampson* took the Gates of this City, and carried 'em to the neighbouring Mount *Hebron*: And here it was that when taken, he pull'd down the House upon the *Philistines* Heads, *Judges* 16. *Buns* says, that it was twice as big as *Jerusalem*. *Thevenot* says, here are the Ruins of many Marble Pillars and Tombs. There is a small Castle near the Town, kept in good Order, and near it a Seraglio for the *Basha's* Wives. Above it there's some Ruins of an old Wall of a *Roman* Castle, made of so compact a Matter, as not to be broken with an Hammer. He adds, the Town is but small, tho' there is a good *Bezestan*, and a pretty large *Greek* Church, whose Roof is supported with two great Marble Pillars, and Cornishes of the *Corinthian* Order. There is also a Church of the *Armenians*, and several good Mosques, without the Town, fac'd with Marble, which seem to have belong'd formerly to the City. There is good Wine and Brandy here, but none from hence to *Cairo*. He says, the Town is about two Miles from the Sea, and two Days Journey from *Rama*. *Mr. Sandys* says, the Vallies which encompass it are planted with all Sorts of delicate Fruits, but the Buildings mean, and the Inhabitants such Slaves to the *Turks*, that they dare not keep handsome Houses, or employ their Grounds to the best Advantage, lest they should be counted wealthy. It lies 10 Miles from *Ascalon*. *Bleau* says, it was called *Gazer*, *Gazaris*, *Gazara*, or *Gazera*, and by the *Syrians* *Ayan*. *Luyts* says, 'tis govern'd by its own Prince, commonly call'd the *Emir* or *Turkish Bashaw*, and is the Capital of a Territory of the same Name, which has 300 Villages under its Jurisdiction. 'Tis said to have been the Receipt of Treasury, where the *Persians* laid the Tribute of the Western Provinces, from whence all Riches came at length to be called *Gaza*.

Cellarius gives the following Account of the other Towns in this Country which belong'd to the *Philistines*, *Danites*, &c. 1. *Jabne*, or *Jamnia*. King *Uzziah* took it from the *Philistines*, 2 *Chron.* 26. 6. It had an Harbour of its own Name upon the Sea, which *Ptolomy* calls *Ἰαμνιῶν Λιμὴν*. It was also the Seat of a Sanhedrim, and the Harbour was burnt by *Judas Maccabeus*, 2 *Maccab.* 12. 9. where 'tis said to lie 240 Stadia from *Jerusalem*. *Cluverius* places it almost 10 *German* Leagues N. W. from that City. *Heylin* says, it was formerly a Bishop's See.

2. *Gibethon*, or *Gabathon*, was assign'd to the Tribe of *Dan*, *Josh.* 19. 44. It was afterwards retaken by the *Philistines*, but recover'd by *Baasha* K. of *Israel*, 1 *Kings* 15. 27. 16. 15. It was call'd *Gibbethon* of the *Philistines*, to distinguish it from *Gibbethon* in *Benjamin*. It belong'd to the *Levites*, but its true Situation not known.

3. *Eshtaol*, belonging to the *Danites*, but formerly to the Tribe of *Judah*, *Josh.* 15. 33. and 19. 41. *St. Jerome* places it 10 Miles from *Eleutheropolis*. *Sampson* was buried betwixt this Place and *Zarea* or *Zora*, *Judges* 16. 31.

4. *Ajalon*, in the Tribe of *Dan*, and assign'd to the *Levites*, *Josh.* 19. 42. 21. 24. *Judges* 1. 45. but inhabited by the *Benjamites*, 1 *Chron.* 8. 13. Some think it was in the neighbouring Valley that *Joshua* commanded the Moon to stand still, *Cap.* 10. 12. but *Jerome* and others think it was at *Ajalon* in *Benjamin*.

5. *Gath-Rimmon*, a Town of *Dan* belonging to the *Levites*. There was another of the same Name belonging also to them in the Tribe of *Manasseh*, *Josh.* 19. 45. 21. 24. 25. The former is suppos'd to have lain near *Gath* of the *Philistines*.

Cellarius comes next to the Tribe of *Simeon*, and takes Notice, 1. Of the Town or Castle of *Menois*, mention'd by *Eusebius* to be near *Gaza*. He takes it to be the *Mænenum Castrum*, mention'd in the 30th Law of *Theodosius's* Code, *De Erogatione Militaris Annonæ*. He adds, that the Tract which lay betwixt *Gaza* and the Brook of *Egypt* seems to have been an Appendix to the Tribe of *Simeon*, in which were the Towns of *Anthedon*, *Raphia*, and *Rhinocolura*.

1. *Anthedon* lay near *Gaza*, on the Coast. *Josephus* says, it was repair'd by Order of *Gabos*.

Gabinius, and taken and beautified by *Herod*, who call'd it *Agrippiades*; but it assum'd its old Name after his Death.

2. *Raphia*, or *Raphea*. *Cluverius* places it near the Coast, about 5 German Leagues S. W. from *Gaza*, and 2 N. E. from *Rhinocolura*. 'Tis famous for the great Battle fought by *Ptolomy IV.* with *Antiochus Magnus*, mention'd by *Polybius*; after the Loss of which, *Antiochus* fled to this Town.

3. *Rhinocolura*, or *Rhinocorura*, so call'd because the K. of *Persia* cut off the Noses of the Inhabitants. It stood near the Mouth of the River *Sihor*, or Brook of *Egypt*, not far from the Bank of the Sea, at the further Side of the sandy Desert. *Cluverius* places it two German Leagues S. W. from *Raphia*. *Stephanus* says, it belong'd to *Egypt*; but *Cellarius* thinks it rather belong'd to *Judaea*. This Brook is by *St. Jerom* call'd, *A Stream of the Nile*, which is a visible Mistake. This Brook or River of *Egypt* is mentioned 1 *Kings* 9. 65. and is reckon'd the Boundary of *Israel* on that Side. The Country which lay S. W. of it belong'd to *Egypt*. *Heylin* says, 'tis memorable for a false Tradition, That the World was divided here by Lots betwixt *Noah's* Sons, and for being well fortified by *Baldwin I.* of *Jerusalem* during the Holy War, to intercept the Supplies which came to the Infidels from *Egypt*.

Cellarius afterwards takes Notice of the remarkable Rivers of *Canaan* on this Side *Jordan*, which, with *Kishon* and *Kedron*, we have already described. The first of the other is *Besor*. *Cluverius* makes it fall into the Sea about a League S. from *Gaza*, and calls it in his Map the River of *Egypt*. 'Tis noted for the Passage of *David* when he pursued the *Amalekites*, who burnt *Ziglag*. *Bleau* makes it run close by *Gaza*. 2. *Esbecol*, or *Botry*, lies also in the S. of *Canaan*. Some place it betwixt *Hebron* and *Bethsar*; but *Cellarius* thinks it lay nearer the Wilderness where the *Israelites* were encamp'd, because the Spies brought a Bunch of Grapes from hence to the Camp, *Numb.* 8. 13. 23. Some say, that it runs into the R. *Besor*. 3. *Canna*, which run by the Western Boundary of *Ephraim*, *Josh.* 16. 8. and fell into the *Mediterranean*. 4. *Cherith*, the Brook near which *Elijah* hid himself, and where he was fed by the Ravens. *Cellarius* says, it lay N. of *Jericho*, and fell into *Jordan*.

He refers *Idumaea* to *Arabia Petraea*, of which it was a Part, and not included in the Land of Promise.

The Country beyond Jordan.

Moses gave this Country to the *Reubenites*, *Gadites*, the Half-Tribe of *Manasseh* after he had taken it from the *Amorites*, and *Baschanites*. It went then by the Name of *Gilead*, *Numb.* 32. 26, 29. *Cellarius* observes, that *Gilead* was properly the Name of a Mountain which run a long Way from S. to N. and gave Denomination to the Country. 'Tis mention'd *Deut.* 3. 12. To them also were given the Plains of *Jordan*, from *Cinnereth* unto the Salt Sea, and Eastward as far as Mount *Pisgah*. But *Gilead*, properly so called, was given to *Manchir*, the Son of *Manasseh*, *Deut.* 3. 15. Other Places were afterwards added from *Syria* on the N. and *Arabia* on the E. so that all the Country from Mount *Hermion* to *Arabia Petraea* belong'd to the *Israelites*, and were distinguish'd by new Names. The Romans divided it into *Trachonitis*, *Auranitis*, *Batanea*, *Iturea*, &c. *Iturea* and *Trachonitis* were the Tetrarchy of *Philip*, *Luke* 3. 1. *Josephus* adds *Gaulonitis*, *Batanea*, and *Paniades*, as Parts of that Tetrarchy, and *Augustus* added *Auranitis*, with a Part of that call'd *Zenodorus's* Household. Mount *Hermion* in this Country we have already described.

TRACHONITIS.

Before *Cellarius* comes to describe this Country, he gives an Account of that call'd the Part of *Zenodorus's* Household. 'Twas so nam'd, because *Zenodorus* had hir'd the House or Province of *Lysanias*, and encourag'd Robberies in *Trachonitis* from the Land of *Damascus*; which being complain'd of, *Augustus Caesar* gave this Country to *Herod*, because he was most able to reduce and dislodge the Robbers. *Josephus* describes the Place thus: It was a rocky and high Tract, to which there was no Access but by winding Ascents. The Inhabitants had neither Towns nor Lands, but lurk'd in large Caves, from whence they robb'd the Merchants who came from *Arabia Felix*. *Strabo* says, there were two rugged Mountains

ains called *Trachones*, that lay near the Country of *Damascus*, besides unpassable Mountains towards *Arabia* and *Iturea*, in which there were Caves capable of 4000 Men apiece. The Inhabitants were infamous for Witchcraft as well as Robbery.

Cellarius proves against *Lightfoot*, that *Trachonitis* lay N. and says, that not only that rocky Part of the Country was so called, but also the large Champain Country as far as the Fountains of *Jordan*. It made up a large Part of *Herod's* Kingdom, and rebelled during his Absence at *Rome*, but was reduc'd by his Captains.

The chief Places were, 1. *Baalgad*, mentioned *Josh* 11. 17. in the Valley of *Lebanon*, under Mount *Hermon*, and was taken by *Joshua*.

2. *Mizpah*, or *Maspah*, *Josh* 11. 3. which was also taken by him from the *Hivites*. There was another of the same Name in the Tribe of *Gad*.

3. *Panaas*, which we have already describ'd P. 91, 122. The Curious may find a further Account of its Antiquities, &c. in *Cellarius*, and his Reasons why he places it here rather than in *Galilee* or *Phœnicia*. It gave Name to the neighbouring Country, which was a Part of *Trachonitis*.

AURANITIS and ITURÆA.

Cellarius derives the Name from *Hauran*, a Country Town or Mountain beyond *Jordan* to the N. 'Tis mentioned *Ezek* 47. 16. with *Hamath*, and other Places near to *Damascus*. *Jerome* says, it was a Town in the Wilderness of *Damascus*. The *Talmudists* speak of a Mountain so called, from the Top of which issued Flames in the beginning of the New Year. *Josephus* calls it sometimes *Abranitis*. *Cellarius* takes it to be the same with *Iturea* mentioned in *Luke*. The Inhabitants, as appears by *Virgil Georgic* 11. v. 448. were excellent Bow-men. *Cicero*, 2 *Philip*. Cap. 8. says, they were the most barbarous of People, and much given to Robbery. *Anthony* made use of them for his Guards. *Aristobulus* K. of the *Jews* subdued them, and made them embrace his Religion, or at least a Part of them, says *Josephus*. There are none of their Towns mentioned; so that 'tis suppos'd they liv'd in moveable Tents like the *Arabians*. *Hey-*

lin says, it had its Name from *Jetur*, one of the Sons of *Ishmael*: That the best Part of it being given by *Moses* to the Half-Tribe of *Manasseh*, that Part of it towards *Damascus* was seiz'd by the *Aramites*, and made a Kingdom of it self by the Name of *Geshur*, the more mountainous Part being left to the first Inhabitants. He makes *Batanea*, *Gaulanitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Panaas*, Subdivisions of it; says, the *Syrians* dwelt in the mountainous Part, and the *Israelites* in the Plains; that it was equal to *Galilee* in Extent, but nothing so fruitful or well inhabited. *Maacha*, Wife to *David*, and Mother of *Absalom* and *Thamar*, was Daughter to *Tolmai* King of this Place; and hither *Absalom* fled after he murther'd his Brother *Anamion*. *Heylin* says, the little Kingdom of *Ischtob*, which sent 12000 Men to assist the *Ammonites* against *David*, and that of *Beth-Rehob*, mentioned 2 *Sam*. 10. 6. lay near this Country. He adds, that *Us* near the Borders of *Damascus*, the first Habitation of *Us* the Son of *Aram*, and Grandson of *Sem*, has occasioned some People, but without Ground, to think that this was the Land of *Us* inhabited by *Job*; and that *Sueta* in the same Country is by the like Mistake suppos'd to have been the Residence of *Bildad* the *Shubite*, one of *Job's* three Friends. There was a strong Fort here, recover'd from the Infidels by *Baldwin* II. of *Jerusalem*, who dug thro' the Rock upon which it stood. This Country, after the Decay of the *Seleucian* Family, was conquer'd by *Alexander* II. King of the *Jews*, but most of it lost by *Hircanus* his Son. It afterwards made up the greatest Part of the Kingdom of *Chalcis*, possess'd by *Ptolomy* the Son of *Mnæus*, whose Son *Lysanias* being murther'd by *M. Anthony*, *Augustus* suffer'd *Lysanias*, the Son of the murther'd Prince, to resume the Possession. During his Time *Zenodorus*, formerly mentioned, farm'd his Demesnes, and encourag'd the Robberies of the *Trachonitis*. *Herod* being commanded to subdue those Robbers, reduced all the Country but *Abila* and its Territory, from whence *Lysias* is called *Tetrarch* of *Abilene*, *Luke* 3.

BATANÆA, or BASHAN.

It was by the *Greeks* and *Latins* call'd *Bashanitis* and *Batanea*, the Kingdom of Og the Giant,

Giant, *Deut.* 3. 1. where it appears he was possessed of 60 fortified Cities, besides many unwall'd Towns, which the *Israelites* took from him and destroy'd. The greatest Part of the Kingdom was called *Argob*. *Cellarius* thinks, that *Bashan*, properly so called, had *Trachonitis* on the N. *Iturea* on the E. *Gaulonitis* on the S. and *Jordan* on the W.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Edrei*, *Deut.* 3. 10. *Salchab*, mentioned in the same Place, and *Astaroth*, said to be in *Edrei*, *Deut.* 1. 4. so that *Edrei* seems to have given Name to a District. 'Tis controverted, whether *Karnaim*, mentioned *Gen.* 14. 5. be the same with *Ashtaroth*. Some think there were two Towns of this Name, and both in *Bashan*. *Ashtaroth*, the Idol of the *Sidonians*, was worship'd here. *Saron* lay also in this Country, 1 *Chron.* 5. 16. as did *Ecbatana* and *Seleucia* on the Lake *Semachonitis*, which, together with *Soganni*, were fortified by *Josephus*.

Heylin places in this Country, 1. *Pella*, which we have described in *Cælo-Syria*, P. 90. according to *Cluverius*; and *Cellarius* places it in *Decapolis*. 2. *Gadara*, which we have also describ'd in *Cælo-Syria*, according to *Cluverius*; but *Cellarius* places it in *Decapolis*. 3. *Gerasa*, or *Gergesa*. 4. *Hippos*, which we have also describ'd as above-mentioned. *Cellarius* places them likewise in *Decapolis*. 5. *Abel*, by *Josephus* call'd *Abel Maacha*, noted for the Revolt of *Sheba*, 2 *Sam.* 20. who being besieg'd in that Town by *Joab*, the Citizens, by the Advice of a wise Woman, cut off his Head, and threw it over the Wall, which put an End to the Siege and Rebellion.

G A U L A N I T I S.

Cellarius says, it was the furthestmost Part of *Bashan* on the S. in the Confines of *Gad*, and was called so from the Town *Gaulon*, where it appears to have been one of the Cities of Refuge; and some say, that *Soganni* and *Seleucia* were Towns of this District. Near this Town lay *Ptolomy's Capitolas*. *Gaulanitis* was divided into Upper and Lower, and the chief Town of the latter call'd *Gamala*, situated near a Lake over against *Tarichæa* of *Galilee*, upon a high Mountain, encompassed with deep Vallies, so that it was very strong, and taken by

Vespasian with great Difficulty, who cut off all the Inhabitants but a few Women, says *Suetonius*. *Hegesippus* gives a noble Description of the Strength and Situation of this Town. The Mountain on the Right and Left had rugged and steep Rocks. It grew narrow by degrees towards the Top. On the fore Part of the Mountain there was an extraordinary deep Valley, and on the hinder Part a Descent somewhat more level, but very narrow, and of difficult Access. On the Top of the Mountain stood a Castle, which resembled a Camel's Head. The narrow Passage to it was like one's Neck, and the Ascent to the Castle was in Form of a Camel's Tail and Back, from whence it has been suppos'd to derive its Name, of which *Gamala* was a Corruption.

The next Town of *Lower Gaulanitis* was *Julias*, formerly *Bethsaida*. *Philip* the Tetrarch having repair'd it, gave it this new Name, in Honour of *Julia Augustus* his Daughter. *Pliny* says, it lies on the E. of the Lake of *Gennesareth*, and *Josephus* agrees with him. *Cellarius* says, it is one of the most difficult Questions in sacred Geography, whether this be *Bethsaida*, the Birth-place of the Apostles so frequently mentioned in the Gospels. *Lightfoot* is for the Affirmative, upon the Authority of *Josephus*; but all the Maps of the Holy Land, and the Accounts of Travellers, place *Bethsaida* in *Galilee* on the W. Side of the Lake, except *Cluverius*, who places it on the E. Side. But the Monks of *Palestine* shew the Ruins of it to Travellers on the W. Side. To this is objected our Saviour's passing the Sea of *Galilee*, *Joh.* 6. 1. *Mark* 8. 4. &c. *Luke* 9. 10. into the Wilderness of *Bethsaida*, where he miraculously fed the Multitude that follow'd him with 5 Loaves and 2 Fishes. But the Interpreters answer, That our Saviour did not pass the Sea where 'twas broadest, but a Bay of it betwixt *Tiberias* and *Bethsaida*. They add, That if our Saviour had sailed thro' the whole Lake, the Multitude could not have followed him a-foot, as *Mark* 6. 33. *Biddulph*, a Traveller, who saw the Place, solves the Objection thus; That there was a common Road betwixt *Capernaum* and *Tiberias* by the Bridge of *Chamatha* into the Country of the *Gadarenes*, and so to *Bethsaida*. We refer the Reader, who would know more of this, to *Cellarius*, who owns,

owns, that *Lighfoot's* Arguments are specious, but does not think they determine the Point; and that we have not any accurate Description of the Seas and Lakes in those Parts. *Cluverius* makes the Lake almost of an oval Figure, and places *Caper-naum* within two German Leagues of *Julias*; so that the People must have passed *Jordan* and another River before they came to *Bethsaida*.

G A L A A D I T I S,

Cellarius says is a Country beyond *Jordan*, so call'd from Mount *Gilead*, which had its Name from a Heap of Stones set up there by *Jacob* and *Laban*, as a Remembrance of the Covenant betwixt them, *Gen.* 31. 47. From this Mountain, all the mountainous Country betwixt *Jordan* and *Arabia* was call'd *Gilead*, and sometimes the whole Country beyond *Jordan*, both mountainous and plain.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Ramoth-Gilead*, a City of Refuge, *Deut.* 4. 43. and *Joshua* 20. 8. in the Tribe of *Gad*. It was afterwards taken by the *Syrians*, and noted for the Death and Defeat of *Ahab* K. of *Israel*, who went thither with *Jehosaphat* K. of *Judah* to recover it, 2 *Chron.* 18. 34. *Jerome* places it 15 Miles W. from *Philadelphia*.

2. *Jabesh Gilead*, all the Inhabitants of which were destroyed by the *Israelites*, except 400 Virgins, *Judges* 21. 10. *Saul* rais'd the Siege of it by the *Ammonites*, 1 *Sam.* 11. in Remembrance of which, the Inhabitants brought the Corpses of himself and his Sons from *Bethshan*, where they were ignominiously fasten'd to the Wall, and buried them, 1 *Sam.* 31. *Jerome* places it 6 Miles from *Pella*, on a Mountain betwixt that Town and *Gerasa*.

3. *Thisba*, the Birth-place of the Prophet *Eliuz*, lay in this Country, but where is not certain.

4. *Tob*, the District where *Jephtha* dwelt when banish'd by his Brethren in *Gilead*, or its Confines.

5. *Abila*, suppos'd by *Cellarius* to be in the Plain of the Vineyards, mentioned *Judg.* 11. 32. where *Jephtha* defeated the *Ammonites*, 7 Miles from *Philadelphia*. There was another City of the same Name, famous also for Vineyards, 12 Miles E. from *Gaderis*. We described the former P. 84.

P E R Æ A.

All the Country which the *Israelites* possess'd beyond *Jordan* was formerly call'd by this Name, which signifies beyond the Sea or the River; but *Peræa*, properly so called, was the ancient Possession of the *Reubenites* and *Gadites*, says *Josephus*. Its Length was from *Macherus* to *Pella*, and its Breadth from *Philadelphia* to *Jordan*. It had *Pella* on the N. *Jordan* on the W. the Land of the *Moabites* on the S. and *Arabia* on the E. 'Twas enclos'd by three Rivers in Form of a Peninsula; *Arnon* on the S. *Jabboc* on the N. and *Jordan* on the W. says the same Author. *Heylin* says, it reaches to *Petra*, the chief Town of *Arabia Petraea* on the S. *Pliny* carries it further towards *Egypt*. It had a rich Soil, and large Fields planted with Olives, Vines, and Palms. It was inhabited by the *Midianites*, *Moabites*, and *Gadites*, when the *Israelites* subdu'd it.

The *Midianites*, descended from *Midian* the Son of *Abraham*, by *Keturah*, mention'd *Gen.* 25. 4. dwelt on the S.E. of the *Dead Sea*, at the Entrance of the Country, where mixing with the *Moabites* and *Canaanites*, they apostatiz'd to Idolatry with them.

Their chief Cities were, 1. *Recome*. *Heylin* says, 'twas that afterwards call'd *Sela*, 2 *Kings* 14. 7. where it was reckon'd a City of the *Edomites*. When in Possession of the *Ishmaelites* and *Arabians*, they call'd it *Hogar*. He says, it was the same which the *Greeks* and *Romans* call'd *Petra*, now reckon'd the Metropolis of *Arabia*, where we shall describe it.

2. *Midian*, on the Banks of the *Dead Sea*, the ordinary Residence of their Princes, *Joshua* 13. 21.

The *Midianites* having, at the Request of the *Moabites*, sent beautiful Women, by *Balam's* Advice, to provoke the *Israelites* to Lust and Idolatry, *Moses* detach'd 12000 Men, who destroy'd their Princes, People, and Country, *Numb.* 31. They recover'd afterwards, and did so much oppress the *Israelites*, *Judges* 6. 2. that they were forced to retire to the Mountains, Caves, and strong Holds; in Revenge of which, *Gideon* made War upon the *Midianites*, and so destroy'd them, that they are not much mention'd afterwards, their Name and Country being

swallowed up by the *Edomites*, *Ishmaelites*, and the Inhabitants of *Arabia Petraea*.

The *Moabites* possessed the Country from the *Midianites* on the S. as far as *Heshbon* on the N. on both Sides the River *Arnon*, having *Jordan* on the W. and the Hills of *Abarin* on the E. The Country was first inhabited by the *Emims*, a Race of Giants conquer'd by *Chederlaomer*, *Gen.* 14. 5. The *Moabites*, who succeeded them, descended from *Moab*, one of the Sons of *Lot*, *Gen.* 19. 37. They lived here in Prosperity till the Time of *Vahab*, Grandfather to *Balak* the Son of *Zippor*, from whom *Sihon* K. of the *Amorites* took all the Country on the N. of the River *Saboc*, and so it stood till the Time of *Moses*.

Their chief Cities were, 1. *Rabbath*, the Seat of their Kings, and the *Rhalmathum* of *Ptolomy*. *Luyts* says, it was called also *Aroer*, *Ar*, and *Arnon*.

2. *Diblathaim*, destroy'd with the rest of *Moab* by *Nebuchadnezzar*, *Jer.* 48. 22.

3. *Gallim*, the Principality of *Phalti* the Son of *Laisb*, to whom *Saul* gave his Daughter *Michal* when he took her from *David*, *I Sam.* 25. 44.

4. *Muthana*; and, 5. *Nathaniel*, which the *Israelites* passed through after they had left the Well called *Beer*.

6. *Bamoth*. *Moses* encamped here when he sent to *Sihon* to demand Passage thro' his Country, *Numb.* 21. 20.

7. *Hor*, the chief City of *Moab*, which the Lord gave for an Inheritance to the Children of *Lot*, and therefore forbade *Moses* to molest it when he marched that Way, *Deut.* 2. 9.

9. *Kirhasareth*, noted in *2 Kings* 3. 27. for the bloody Fact of *Mesha* King of *Moab*, who being close besieged in the Town by the Kings of *Israel*, *Judah*, and *Edom*, and despairing to escape, sacrificed his eldest Son as a Burnt-Offering upon the Walls; which breeding a Quarrel between the Kings, occasion'd the raising of the Siege.

The *Moabites* gave *Moses* a free Passage thro' their Country in his March for *Canaan*, hoping that when the *Amorites* were vanquish'd, they should be put in Possession of their lost Estates: But the *Israelites* gave that Country to the Tribe of *Reuben*. Upon which the *Moabites*, not daring to take Arms, sent for *Balaam* the false Prophet to

curse them. In the mean time, *Balak* the Son of *Zipporah* was King, who was succeeded by none that we read of till *Eglon*, who with the Help of *Ammon* and *Amaleck* subdued and tyrannized over the *Israelites* for 18 Years, till he was assassinated by *Ehud*, which was follow'd with a Slaughter of 10000 of his People. This Tyranny was further reveng'd by *Saul* and *David*, the last of which subdued them, and made them his Tributaries, as is intimated *Pf.* 60. 8. *Moab is my Wash-Pot*. They afterwards revolted from the House of *David* to the Kings of *Israel*, to whom they paid for Tribute in *Ahab's* Time 100000 Lambs, and 200000 Rams, with their Fleeces; but being soon weary of that, they fell off from *Ahab's* House: Upon which they were invaded by *Jehoram*, and the Kings of *Judah* and *Idumaea* his Allies, and the aforesaid *Mesha* their King fain to fly to *Kirhasareth*, where he was besieged, as we said before. After this, confederating with the *Idumeans* and the *Ammonites*, they set upon *Jehoshaphat* K. of *Judah*, to whom God gave a signal Victory without losing a Drop of Blood, the *Ammonites* falling first upon the *Edomites*, and then upon one another, till they were almost all destroy'd, *2 Kings* 20. 23. After which, we find no Mention of 'em. However, *Heylin* thinks it probable that they afterwards recover'd some Part of their former Dwellings, when the two Tribes and half on the E. of *Jordan* were led away Captive by *Tiglath Pileser*; and that they were possessed of their said Habitations till the Reign of *Zedekiah*, when they and the other neighbouring Nations were conquer'd by the *Babylonians*, &c. under *Nebuchadnezzar*. And this Conjecture seems probable enough, because afterwards we never find any Mention of *Moab*, the Name itself being obsolete, and the S Parts of the Country annex'd to *Arabia Petraea*, the E. Parts to *Arabia Deserta*, and, in a Word, the whole swallowed up in the general Name of *Palestine*.

The *Ammonites*, according to *Heylin*, dwelt on the N. E. of the River *Arnon*, possessing all the Tract from the Head of that River to the City of *Rabbah*, and on both Sides of the River *Jaboc*, not excluding the Mountains of *Galaad*. It was anciently the Seat of the *Rephaims* and *Zamzumims*, a Gigantick

gantick Race of Men, not unlike the *Emmims*, who were likewise vanquish'd by *Chederlaomer*. They were succeeded in their desolate Habitations by the Children of *Ammon*, the other Son of *Lot*, and the Brother of *Moab*; but they were depriv'd of the best Part of their Country on the South Side of *Jaboc* by *Og King of Bashan*, at the same Time as their Brethren the *Moabites* lost theirs to *Sihon*.

We shall next take Notice of the Towns which *Cellarius* has set down in the Travels of *Jacob*, and they are,

1. *Mahanaim*, so called from the Army of Angels which appear'd to that Patriarch, *Gen.* 32. 2. for the original Word imports a double Army. It fell by *Lot* to the Tribe of *Gad*, tho' it was situate on the other Side of *Jaboc*, *Joshua* 13. 26. and 21. 39. where 'tis reckon'd among the Towns taken out of the several Tribes for the *Levites*. Here it was that *Ishbosheth* was set up King against *David*, 2 *Sam.* 2. 8, 9. who made this the Place of his Retreat during the Rebellion of his Son *Absalom*, *Cap.* 17. 24. 27.

2. *Penuel*, which in the Original signifies God's Face, because of the glorious Interview which God vouchsafed here to his Servant *Jacob*, mentioned *Gen.* 32. 32. It was afterwards strongly fortified, *Judg.* 8, 9, 17. but *Gideon* defac'd it, in Revenge of their churlish Carriage to him, when he begged their Assistance against the *Midianites*.

3. *Succoth*, near *Jordan*, so called from the Booths which *Jacob* set up here for his Cattle, *Gen.* 33. 17. 'Tis also mention'd *Judges* 8. where 'tis said, the Inhabitants having deny'd Assistance to *Gideon* as he follow'd *Zebah* and *Zalmunnah*, were miserably tortur'd by him at his Return.

The next Places of Note that *Cellarius* sets down in these Parts are, 1. *Bethabara*, which, because the Word signifies a Passage, is suppos'd to be the Place from whence the *Israelites* pass'd *Jordan* on dry Land to *Jericho*. *Lightfoot* refers it to that of *Scythopolis*; but *Cellarius* places it between both, since 'tis probable there were several Passages over that River. It was the Place where *John* baptiz'd; and it appears from *Deuteronomy*, that *Moses* made his last Exhortations here to the Tribes of *Israel*.

2. *Betharan*, or *Beth-haram*. It was cal-

led *Libias* by *Herod*, in Honour of *Augustus*. *Cellarius* proves from several Authors, that this *Libias* lay S. and not N. as in the common Maps. 'Tis suppos'd to be the same Place near which the Children of *Israel* committed Fornication with the *Midianitish* Women; and *Cellarius* takes it to be the *Julias* mentioned by *Josephus*, which was taken by *Placitus*, *Vespasian's* General. *Heylin* says, 14 Villages were annex'd to it by the *Julian* Family, to make it of the greater Power. It is mentioned *Josh.* 13. 27.

3. *Dabir*, or *Debir*, lay betwixt *Bethaborah* and *Betharan*; and *Josh.* 13. 26. 'tis mentioned as the Border of the Tribe of *Gad*.

4. *Dibon*. *Cellarius* places it near *Aroer*, but owns the Situation of it to be doubtful.

5. *Dibon-Gad*, mentioned *Numb.* 33. 45. for one of the Camps of the *Israelites*. *Jerome* says, it was a very large Town near *Arnon*. It first belong'd to the *Moabites*, was afterwards possess'd by the *Amorites*, and when taken by the *Israelites*, assign'd to the Tribe of *Gad*. 'Tis mentioned by *Jeremy* 48. 22. and *Isaiah* 15. 2. as in the Possession of the *Moabites*; so that they probably recover'd it when the *Israelites* were carried Captive by *Tiglath Pileser*.

6. *Aroer*, mentioned *Numb.* 32. 34. and *Josh.* 13. 25. was, according to *Jerome* and *Eusebius*, on the Bank of the River *Arnon*, formerly possessed by the *Omrim*, a very ancient People, afterwards by the *Moabites*, and then fell to the Tribe of *Gad*. The River *Arnon*, on which it stood, falls into the *Dead Sea*. The *Moabites* recover'd it, *Jerem.* 48. 19. when the *Israelites* were carried Captive.

7. *Fazer*, lay (says *St. Jerome*) 12 Miles W. of *Philadelphia*. *Cellarius* thinks it lay S. W. It belonged to the Tribe of *Gad*, *Numb.* 21. 32. and 32. 35. when the *Amorites* were drove out of it. After the Captivity, it was recover'd by the *Moabites*, *Jer.* 48. 32. The Lake or Sea of *Fabzer* is mentioned in the same Chapter, and disburthens it self into *Jordan*. This City was one of the Royal Seats of *Sihon King of the Amorites*, from whom it was taken by *Moses*, and it was recover'd from the *Moabites* by *Judas Maccabeus*, 1 *Maccab.* 5. 8.

8. *Jegbaa*, *Jegabekah*, or *Jogbeah*, belong'd to the Tribe of *Gad*, *Numb.* 32. 35. *Cellarius* thinks it lay in the middle of the Tribe, because *Judges* 8. 11. it is mentioned to be near

near the Way of those that dwelt in Tents, i. e. the *Arabes Scenitæ*, whom *Pliny* calls *Nomades*.

9. *Karkor*, mentioned *Numb.* 8. 10. for the Encampment of *Zebah* and *Zalmunnah* with 15000 Men, after *Gideon* had cut off 120000 of their Army, lay near this Place. *Cellarius* says, this cannot be *Jerome's Karkaria*, within a Day's Journey of *Petra*, for that lay S. of the Country of *Moab*; and 'tis not probable that *Gideon* marched so far.

10. *Mizpeh*, or *Mizpah*, mentioned *Joshua* 13. 26. where it is called *Ramath-Mizpeh*. *Cellarius* takes this to be the Name of a Country, and not of a Town, because the Hebrew says *Ramath* in *Mizpeh*; but whether this be another *Ramah*, or that call'd *Ramoth-Gilead*, is not certain. This is supposed to be the Town which shelter'd *David's* Parents during his Troubles by *Saul*.

11. *Amathus*, beyond *Jordan*, is said by *Josephus* to be the greatest Castle near that River. *Jerome* places it 20 Miles S. from *Pella*. *Theodore*, Son to *Zeno* the Tyrant of *Philadelphia*, hid his Treasures here. It was one of the Seats of Justice appointed by *Gabinus*, the Proconsul of *Syria*, beyond *Jordan* in the *Lower Peræa*, which once belong'd to the Tribe of *Reuben*.

Josephus bounds the Country of the *Amorites* by the River *Arnon* on the S. *Jaboc* on the N. and *Jordan* on the W. so that it lay like an Island betwixt those three Rivers. *Arnon* rises in the Mountains of *Arabia*, was some Time the Boundary betwixt the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*, and fell into the *Dead Sea*.

Cellarius gives the following Account of the Towns of the *Reubenites*; 1. *Heshbon*, one of the Royal Seats of the Kings of the *Amorites*, *Numb.* 21. 26. It was given to the *Levites*, *Josh.* 21. 39. and reckon'd in the Tribe of *Gad*, because it lay in the Confines of both. *Jerome* places it 20 Miles from *Jordan*, in the Mountains of *Arabia*, which lay over against *Jericho*, because the *Arabians* in his Time possessed *Lower Peræa*. It is also called *Eshbun*.

2. *Eleale*, mentioned *Numb.* 32. was a City of the *Amorites*, within a Mile of *Heshbon*, says *Jerome*.

3. *Medeba*, or *Medba*, mentioned *Josh.* 13. 16. lay also near *Heshbon*, in a Valley. *Je-*

rome reckons it in *Arabia*, because the *Arabs* were then possessed of that Country. 'Tis noted for the Defeat of the *Syrians* and *Ammonites* by *Joab*, 1 *Chron.* 19. 7. where they had no less than 32000 Chariots. In the Time of the *Greeks* it was, with some other neighbouring Towns, made Part of *Cælo-Syria*. Upon the Decay of the *Seleucian* Family, it was recover'd by *Alexander II.* King of the *Jews*, and afterwards deliver'd, with 11 other Towns, by *Antipater*, the Father of *Herod*, to *Aretas K.* of the *Arabians*, that he might espouse the Cause of *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Alexander*.

4. *Jahza*, or *Jahaz*, mentioned *Numb.* 21. 23. noted for the Defeat of *Sihon K.* of the *Amorites* by the Children of *Israel*. *Cellarius* places it on the Eastern Boundary of the Country of *Moab*.

5. *Mephaath*, mentioned *Josh.* 13. 18. assigned to the *Levites*, 21. 37. was afterwards taken by the *Moabites*, *Jer.* 48. 21. It lay on the Borders of the Wilderness, and was garrison'd by the *Romans*.

6. *Kedemoth*, mentioned *Josh.* 13. 18. lay betwixt *Jahaz* and *Mephaath*, and belonged to the *Reubenites*.

7. *Baal-Meon*, lay W. from hence. *Eusebius* says, it was a great Village in his Time, near *Baaru* in *Arabia*, 9 Miles from *Heshbon*; and was noted for hot Springs, which came from the Mountain *Baaru*.

8. *Kiriathaim*, or *Cariathaim*, mentioned *Numb.* 32. 37. belong'd to the *Reubenites*. *Eusebius* says, it lay 10 Miles W. from *Medeba*, and was in his Time inhabited by *Christians*. *Heylin* says, it stood near the Mountain which was afterwards call'd *Mons Christi*, because much frequented by our Saviour, whom he supposes to have made Choice of his Apostles here, *Mark* 3. 12. and to have made that Divine Sermon recited in the 5th, 6th, and 7th, Chapters of *Matthew*.

9. *Nebo*, at the Foot of the Mountain so called. It was built by the *Reubenites*, *Numb.* 32. 38. It was afterwards in the Hands of the *Moabites*, as appears from *Isaiah* 15. 2. *St. Jerome* says, it lay 8 Miles S. from *Heshbon*. The Mountain it self is mentioned *Deut.* 32. 49. where *Moses* was commanded to get up into Mount *Abarim* unto Mount *Nebo*, which is in the Land of *Moab*, that is over against *Jericho*, to behold the Land of *Canaan*, and then to die in the Mountain; and

and *Dent.* 34. 1. 'tis said, he went up from the Plains of *Moab* unto the Mountain *Nebo* to the Top of *Pisgah*; from whence *Cellarius* infers, that the Mountains *Abarim*, *Nebo*, and *Pisgah*, join'd together; that *Abarim* reach'd on the E. from the Wilderness of *Moab* hither; and that *Pisgah* lay from thence Southward to the Mouth of *Arnon*: For *Balak* coming out of his own Kingdom, brought the Prophet *Balam* to the Top of *Pisgah*, *Numb.* 23. 14. from whence we may conclude, that that Part of the Mountains lay nearer than his own Kingdom, which was beyond *Arnon*. *Eusebius* and *Jerome* are of Opinion, that there was a Town called *Pisgah* under the Mountain of that Name on the W. Side. 'Tis suppos'd to be the same with *Ashdod-Pisgah*, mentioned *Numb.* 13. 20.

10. *Beth-Peor*, *Josh.* 13. 20. is by *Jerome* said to lie over against *Jericho*, 6 Miles above *Libias*. *Cellarius* supposes this to be the Place where *Baal-Peor* was worship'd, *Numb.* 25. 3. *Jerome* interprets *Baal-Peor* to be *Priapus*.

11. *Bamoth-Baal*, *Josh.* 13. 17. is call'd one of the Towns of *Reuben*. It was the chief City of the Worshipers of *Baal*, who had a Temple on a neighbouring Mountain. The Situation of it may be gather'd from the Story of *Balaam*, who, *Numbers* 22. 36. was received by *Balak* in the Borders of his Kingdom as he came from the *Euphrates*, and next Morning brought to *Bamoth-Baal*, which our Translation renders the high Places of *Baal*, *v.* 41. to see the furthest Part of the Camp of the *Israelites*; from whence it appears to have lain Eastward near *Arnon*, and the Country of *Moab* properly so called. Interpreters differ whether this be the same *Bamoth*; *Numb.* 21. 19. *Cellarius* thinks it is, and that there's no Difficulty in it, if we suppose it to be the first Station of *Balam* from whence he viewed the *Israelites*.

12. *Bethjeshimoth*, *Numb.* 33. 49. is placed by *Jerome* 10 Miles S. of *Jericho*. But *Cellarius* thinks it lay E. according to the March of the Camps of the *Israelites*.

13. *Abel-Shittim*, in the same Plains of *Moab*, mention'd also *Numb.* 33. 49. *Josephus* says, the City remain'd in his Time, was called *Abila*, and the neighbouring Country was planted with Palm-Trees. *Jerome* places it near *Baal-Peor*, and says, the Chil-

dren of *Israel* polluted themselves here with the Daughters of *Moab*, *Numb.* 25. 1. where our Translation renders it *Shittim*.

14. *Bezer*, *Bosor*, or *Bozra*, was a City of Refuge, *Dent.* 4. 43. lay over against *Jericho* in the Wilderness, in the Plains of *Reuben*, *Josh.* 20. 8. Maps place it near the Mouth of *Jordan*.

15. *Adam*, or *Adom*, *Josh.* 3. 16. lay over against *Jericho*, and is noted for the miraculous drying up the Waters of *Jordan*, and their rising on a Heap far from hence near *Zaretan*. *Lightfoot* interprets it, that the Waters were dried up from *Adam* to *Zaretan*, and above the latter they rose in a Heap. Therefore the Maps are mistaken which place *Adam* over against *Zaretan*, that lay 12 Leagues above it.

16. *Herodium*, lay further S. from *Jordan*, and differs from that on this Side that River near *Tekoah*, formerly mentioned. *Josephus* says; this was a Castle built by *Herod* on a Mountain of *Arabia*, against the Incursions of the *Moabites*. Here he was buried, and his Corps brought from *Jericho*, where he died.

17. *Macherus*, was a Castle in the Mountains of *Arabia* belonging to the *Moabites*, near the Lake *Asphaltites*, and the Southern Boundary of *Peræa*. *Josephus* describes it thus: It stood on a high Mountain, encompassed with deep and broad Vallies, which made it of difficult Access. It was built by *Alexander K.* of the *Jews*, destroy'd by *Gabinus* in his War against *Aristobulus*, and rebuilt by *Herod*, who added the Town, and made them both very strong, to bridle the *Arabians*. It had the Lake *Asphaltites* on the S. 'Twas in this Castle where *John the Baptist* was imprison'd and murder'd, says *Josephus*. 'Twas reckon'd the strongest Inland City and Castle in those Parts of the World.

18. *Callirrhoe*, lay in the Neighbourhood of *Macherus*, but nearer the Lake. 'Twas famous for hot Medicinal Springs and Baths. *Heylin* supposes it to be *Lashah*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. 19. with whom *Cellarius* agrees. It was named *Callirrhoe* by the *Greeks*, because of its Fountains of Cold and Hot Water, some of which are bitter, and others sweet; and the Streams being gather'd into one Bath, are reckon'd good for Convulsions, and Contractions of the Sinews.

Having

Having thus finish'd the Geography of the *Holy Land*, we shall take Notice from Mr. *Maundrel* of an Objection rais'd by Pilgrims and others, who seeing so many Rocks, Mountains and Precipices, in it, which contradict the high Idea's they had formed of the Pleasantness and Plentifulness of the Country, it almost startles their Faith, and makes them think it hardly possible that it should feed such a prodigious Number of People; the *Israelites*, who enter'd it first, being 601730 Fighting Men, besides 23000 *Levites*, and Women and Children, as appears by the Muster of 'em, *Numbers* 26. and in *David's* Time, there were told no less than 300000 Fighting Men in the *Holy Land*, 2 *Sam.* 24. 9. which augments the Scruple. Mr. *Maundrel*, in order to solve this Difficulty, says, That there is nothing upon Earth more fruitful than the plain Country and Vallies, or fitter for the Production of Corn and Cattle; and that the Rocks and Hills appear to have been anciently cover'd with Earth and cultivated, by gathering up Stones, and placing them along the Sides of the Hills like a Wall, which kept in the Mould. They form'd many Beds of excellent Soil from the Bottom to the Top of the Mountains; of which, he says, there are still many Signs on all the Hills of that Country. He adds, that these Beds serv'd very well to bear Corn, Melons, Gourds, Cucumbers, and other Garden Stuff, which is the chief Food of those Countries for several Months in the Year. The most rocky Parts might serve for Vines and Olives, as is plain from Experience; and the great Plain by the *Dead Sea*, which by Reason of its Saltness could not produce Corn, &c. brought forth such Herbs and Shrubs as fed Bees, and supplied them with Honey, according to *Josephus*. Upon the whole, we have Reason to conclude, that there's no forming any Idea of its ancient State, when under a Blessing from its present State, under a visible Curse for the Sins of the ancient and present Inhabitants. Nor is there any Reason to doubt, that the Number of its Inhabitants might far exceed 1300000 Fighting Men after *David's* Time; for it is evident from the ordinary Course of Propagation, that they might have much exceeded that Number, considering the long Continuance of their State,

tho' we allow for the Multitudes destroy'd at Times by Plague, Famine, War and Captivity.

The History of the Israelites.

WE shall only give the Chronology from *Capellus* and others of such of their Judges, Captains and Kings, as are contain'd in the Bible, since that is in every one's Hands, and refer to the Chapters where they may be found.

An. Mundi.

2454 I. *Moses* brought them out of *Egypt*, *Exodus* 12.

2494 II. *Joshua* settled them in the Land of *Canaan*, says *Heylin*. *Capellus* places their Entrance 41 Years after their coming out of *Egypt*, *A. M.* 2549. The History of it is in *Joshua*.

2554 The Conquest of *Canaan* was finished, which lasted 6 Years, says *Capellus*.

2555 The Land was divided among the Tribes 47 Years after their coming out of *Egypt*. The History of it is in *Joshua*, Chap. 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21.

2563 The *Israelites* were oppressed by *Cushan* King of *Mesopotamia*, *Judges* 3.

2603 III. *Othniel* the Judge, who deliver'd them from the *Mesopotamians*, died. *Judges* 3. 11.

2621 They were oppressed by *Eglon* King of *Moab*, *Judges* 3. 12.

2701 IV. *Ehud*, who deliver'd 'em from the *Moabites*, died, *Judges* 3. 31.

V. *Shamgar* succeeded *Ehud* as Judge; but the Time of his Government is not set down.

2721 They were oppressed by *Jabin* King of *Canaan*.

2761 VI. *Deborah*. VII. *Barak*, who deliver'd 'em from *Jabin*, died. *Judges* 4. and 5.

2768 They were oppressed by the *Midianites*, *Judges* 6. 1.

2808 VIII. *Gideon*, who deliver'd them from the *Midianites*, *Judges* 6, 7, and 8. died.

2811 IX. *Abimelech*, the Son of *Gideon*, who was made King by a Faction, and murder'd his Brethren, *Judges* 9. died.

2834 X. *Tola*, who succeeded *Abimelech*, died.

2856 XI. *Jaer*, who succeeded *Tola*, *Judges* 10. 3. died.

2874 They

A. M.

2874 They were oppressed by the Ammonites, Judges 10. 7.

2880 XII. Jephtha the Gileadite, who succeeded Jaer, and deliver'd them from the Ammonites, Judges 11, 12. died.

2887 XIII. Ibzan, who succeeded Jephtha, died, Judges 12. 10.

2897 XIV. Elon, who succeeded Ibzan, Judges 12. 11. died.

2905 XV. Abdon, who succeeded Elon, Judges 12. 13, 15. died.

2945 They were oppressed by the Philistines, Judges 13.

2965 XVI. Sampson, who succeeded Abdon after an Interregnum, and deliver'd them from the Philistines, Judges 14, 15, 16. died.

After him there was an Interregnum, as we perceive by Judges 18, 21, 25. but how long is not said.

XVII. Eli the High-Priest was their next Judge, in whose Time the Ark was taken by the Philistines, 1 Sam. Chap. 12. 4. Helvicus begins his Government A. M. 2810, Heylin in 2809.

XVIII. Samuel succeeded him: Heylin says 2849; but these Computations differ very much from those of Capellus, who places the Death of Samuel in 3045.

XIX. Saul, their first King, succeeded A. M. 2878, says Heylin: Helvicus says 2879; but Capellus places his Death in the same Year of that of Samuel, 3045; according to which, since his Reign is computed at 17 Years, it must have begun in 3028. His History is in the first Book of Samuel, and 1 Chron. Chap. 10.

3085 XX. David, who succeeded, died, says Capellus. His History is in 1 and 2 Sam. and 1 Chron.

3125 XXI. Solomon, who succeeded, died. His History is in 1 Kings Cap. 1. to 12.

3126 XXII. Rehoboam his Son succeeded, 1 Kings 12. 21.

The 10 Tribes revolting in his Time, the separate Kingdom of Israel begun under Jeroboam that same Year, 1 Kings 12. 20.

The Kings of Judah after the Revolt.

A. M.

3143 I. Abijam, 1 Kings 15. 1.

3146 II. Asa, 1 Kings 15. 9.

A. M.

3187 III. Jehosaphat, 1 Kings 22. 41.

3209 IV. Joram, 2 Kings 8. 16.

3216 V. Ahaziah, 2 Kings 8. 25.

3217 VI. Athaliah, 2 Kings 11. 1.

3223 VII. Jehoash, 2 Kings 12. 1.

3261 VIII. Amasiah, 2 Kings 14. 1.

3301 IX. Azariah, 2 Kings 15. 1.

3553 X. Jotham, 2 Kings 15. 32.

3369 XI. Ahaz, 2 Kings 16. 1.

3375 XII. Hezekiah, 2 Kings 18. 1.

3404 XIII. Manasseh, 2 Kings 21. 1.

3459 XIV. Amon, 2 Kings 21. 19.

3461 XV. Josiah, 2 Kings 22. 1.

3492 XVI. Jehoahaz, 2 Kings 23. 31.

3493 XVII. Jehoiakim, 2 Kings 23. 36.

3504 XVIII. Jehoiachin, 2 Kings 24. 8.

3505 XIX. Zedekiah, 2 Kings 24. 17.

In his Reign Jerusalem was taken, and the Temple burnt, 2 Kings 25. Capellus computes this to have happen'd A. M. 3515.

The Kings of Israel after the Revolt.

A. M.

3147 I. Nadab, 1 Kings 15. 25.

3148 II. Baasha, 1 Kings 15. 33.

3171 III. Elah, 1 Kings 16. 8.

3172 IV. Zimri, 1 Kings 16. 15.

3173 V. Omri. VI. Tibni. 1 Kings 16. 21.

3175 Omri, 1 Kings 16. 23.

3183 VII. Ahab, 1 Kings 16. 29.

3203 VIII. Ahaziah, 1 Kings 22. 51.

3205 IX. Jehoram, 2 Kings 3. 1.

3217 X. Jehu, 2 Kings 9. 14.

3245 XI. Jehoahaz, 2 Kings 13. 1.

3259 XII. Joash, 2 Kings 13. 10.

3274 XIII. Jeroboam II. 2 Kings 14. 23.

3337 XIV. Zachariah, 2 Kings 15. 8.

3338 XV. Shallum, 2 Kings 15. 13.

3550 XVI. Menahem, 2 Kings 15. 17.

3552 XVII. Pekahiah, 2 Kings 15. 23.

3553 XVIII. Pekah, 2 Kings 15. 27.

3572 XIX. Hoshea, 2 Kings 17. 1.

It was in his Time that the Israelites were led Captive by Shalmaneser K. of Assyria.

Both Kingdoms being thus destroyed, the Jews continued Captives in Babylon for 70 Years, till Cyrus King of Persia gave them Leave to return to their own Country, and rebuild the City and Temple, which was finished by the Encouragement

of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah*, and *Zorobabel*; and being settled in some Part of their old Possessions, they were afterwards govern'd by their High-Priests, and the Sanhedrim or Council of Elders. The History of their Return is in *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*.

Capellus gives us the following Account of the Foreign Princes they were subject to, from the Destruction of both Kingdoms till the utter Ruin of *Jerusalem*.

Kings of B A B Y L O N.

A. M.		Years.
3496	N ebuchadnezzar reign'd	44
3540	<i>Evilmerodach</i> ,	2
3543	<i>Belsazer</i> ,	4
3547	<i>Darius the Mede</i> ,	27

P E R S I A N S.

3574	<i>Cyrus the Persian</i> ,	3
3576	<i>Chambyfes</i> ,	7
	<i>A Magus</i> , 7 Months.	
3584	<i>Darius Hystaspes</i> ,	21
3640	<i>Artaxerxes Longimanus</i> ,	41
3681	<i>Darius Nothus</i> ,	19
3700	<i>Artaxerxes Mnemon</i> ,	43
3743	<i>Ochus</i> ,	23
3766	<i>Artes</i> ,	2
3768	<i>Darius Codomanus</i> ,	7
3774	Conquer'd by <i>Alexander M.</i>	

G R E E K S.

3781	<i>Ptolemæus Lagi F.</i>	39
3820	<i>Ptolemæus Philadel.</i>	38
3858	<i>Ptolemæus Evergetes</i> ,	24
3882	<i>Ptolemæus Philopat.</i>	19
3901	<i>Ptolemæus Epiphanes</i> ,	23
3924	<i>Ptolemæus Philometor</i> ,	30

A S M O N Æ A N Princes.

3954	<i>Jonathan</i> , Brother of <i>Judas</i> ,	9
3963	<i>Simon</i> , Brother of <i>Jonathan</i> ,	8
3971	<i>John Hyrcanus</i> ,	30
4001	<i>Aristobulus</i> ,	1
4002	<i>Alexander Jannæus</i> ,	26
4028	<i>Alexandra</i> his Widow,	9
4037	<i>Aristobulus</i> , Son of <i>Alexander</i> ,	6
4043	<i>Hyrcanus cum Antipatre</i> ,	23
4066	<i>Herod the Great</i> ,	3

A. M.		Ann. Chr.
4103	C H R I S T born,	1
4103	<i>Archelaus</i> ,	10
4113	<i>Coponius</i> President,	13
4117	<i>Antonius Rufus</i> ,	15
4118	<i>Augustus</i> dies.	16
	<i>Tiberius</i> succeeds (2)	
4131	<i>Pilatus</i> President,	29
4135	C H R I S T crucified,	33
4138	<i>Caligula</i> (4)	38
4143	<i>Claudius</i> (14)	41
4156	<i>Claudius Nero</i> (13)	54
	<i>Galba</i> , <i>Otho</i> , and <i>Vitellius</i> ,	2
4171	<i>Vespasian</i> ,	68
4172	<i>Jerusalem</i> destroy'd,	69
4173	<i>Capellus</i> saith	70

The High Priests of the Jews after their Captivity.

A. M.		
3427	I. <i>Joshua</i> , who assisted <i>Zorobabel</i> in rebuilding the Temple, which he did not live to finish. However, some say he continu'd in the Government 100 Years: But <i>Heylin</i> thinks rather, that the Names of his Successors being lost, the whole Term is ascribed to him.	
3530	II. <i>Jehioakim</i> his Son, in whose Time the Temple was finish'd, and God's Worship restor'd.	
3580	III. <i>Jonathan</i> or <i>Johanan</i> ,	30
3610	IV. <i>Jaddus</i> succeeded, not by Birth, but by Election. He was the Brother of that <i>Manasses</i> upon whose Account <i>Sanballat</i> , with the Leave of <i>Alexander</i> , built the Temple on Mount <i>Garizim</i> . He met <i>Alexander the Great</i> when he was marching to <i>Jerusalem</i> after his Conquest of <i>Syria</i> , and assur'd him in the Name of God, from <i>Daniel's</i> Prophecy, That he should conquer the <i>Persians</i> . <i>Alexander</i> was encourag'd to rely upon the Truth of this Message, the rather, because (as he told <i>Parmenio</i> his chief Commander) he had formerly in a Dream or Vision seen such a Person as <i>Jaddus</i> , clad in the like Pontificalibus, and professing the same God; so that he pursued his Enterprize with Assurance of Victory, and hereupon permitted the <i>Jews</i> to live according to their own Laws and Religion with Freedom.	
3630	V. <i>Onias I.</i> succeeded him after the same Manner.	

3651 **VI.** *Si-*

A. M.		Years.
3651	VI. Simon I. surnam'd <i>Justus</i> , reign-	9
3660	VII. Eleazer, the Brother of Si-	32
3692	VIII. Menelaus I. the Brother of	
	Eleazer and Simon.	
3718	IX. Onias II.	14
3732	X. Simon II.	10
3742	XI. Onias III. his Son.	
3787	XII. Jason his Brother.	
3789	XIII. Menelaus II. his Brother, in	
	whose Time the Temple was prophaned	
	by the Syrians, at the Command of <i>Antio-</i>	
	<i>chus Epiphanes</i> .	
3794	XIV. Alcimus, under whom the	
	<i>Maccabees</i> began to appear in Defence of	
	their Country and Religion, and after his	
	Decease succeeded in the Office of High-	
	Priest; for soon after the Death of <i>Alexan-</i>	
	<i>der the Great</i> , they were molested by the	
	Kings of <i>Egypt</i> and <i>Syria</i> , who invaded their	
	Towns, made great Havock and Slaughter,	
	forc'd many of 'em to eat forbidden Meats,	
	and to sacrifice to Idols. But at length	
	God rais'd up <i>Mattathias</i> , (descended from	
	<i>Asmoneus</i> , a Priest of the Rank of <i>Joarib</i>)	
	and his 5 Sons, to repress these Insolencies.	
	In the Reign of <i>Antiochus Epiphanes</i> , they	
	gave the <i>Syrians</i> many notable Overthrows;	
	so that the <i>Jews</i> chose the eldest of the 5	
	Sons, <i>Judas Maccabeus</i> , for their Governor.	

The Asmonean Princes of Jewry.

A. M.	
3799	I. <i>Judas Maccabeus</i> , one of the
	9 Worthies. He defeated
	three mighty Armies of the <i>Syrians</i> , con-
	ducted by <i>Apollonius</i> , <i>Gorgias</i> , and <i>Lysias</i> , the
	3 famous Generals of <i>Antiochus Epiphanes</i> .
3805	II. <i>Jonathan</i> his Brother routed
	<i>Bacchides</i> and <i>Alcimus</i> , the Captains of <i>De-</i>
	<i>metrius</i> King of <i>Syria</i> ; and after many nota-
	ble Exploits, was assassinated by <i>Tryphon</i> ,
	who aspir'd to the Crown.
3823	III. <i>Simon</i> the Elder, their Brother.
	He took <i>Gaza</i> , <i>Joppa</i> , and <i>Jamnia</i> , and drove
	the <i>Syrians</i> quite out of <i>Judea</i> ; but was at
	length treacherously murder'd by <i>Psolomy</i> ,
	his Son-in-Law.
3831	IV. <i>Johannes Hyrcanus</i> , the 3d Son
	of <i>Simon</i> , succeeded, (his two other Bre-

thren being in the Power of *Ptolomy*.) He pulled down the Temple on Mount *Gari-zim*, conquer'd all *Samaria*, subdued the *Idumæans*, compelled them to be circumcised, transferred the War into *Syria*; and dying, left the Sovereignty to *Aristobulus*, his eldest Son.

The Asmonean Kings of Judah.

A. M.	
3862	I. <i>Aristobulus</i> , the first King of
	<i>Judah</i> after the <i>Babylonish</i>
	Captivity. He starved his Mother, and
	slew his Brother <i>Antigonus</i> .
3863	II. <i>Alexander</i> , his Brother, greatly
	enlarged his Kingdom, by annexing to it
	<i>Ituræa</i> , and some Places which he had con-
	quer'd in <i>Syria</i> . Nevertheless, he was a
	great Tyrant, insomuch that he slew 50000
	of his Subjects in Battle for no manner of
	Reason, and commanded 800 of his Ene-
	mies to be hang'd up before his Face. He
	left two Sons, viz. <i>Hyrcanus</i> , who was slain
	by <i>Herod</i> , and <i>Aristobulus</i> , Father of <i>Alexan-</i>
	<i>der</i> and <i>Antigonus</i> , of whom more by and
	by: Only we shall add here, that <i>Alexander</i>
	was the Father of another <i>Aristobulus</i> , the
	most beautiful Prince of his Time, and of
	<i>Mariamne</i> , the Wife of <i>Herod</i> , by whose
	Command they were inhumanely put to
	Death.
3890	III. <i>Alexandra</i> , alias <i>Salome</i> , <i>Alexan-</i>
	<i>der's</i> Wife, who, according to his Counsel
	at Death, resign'd up her self and Children
	to the <i>Pharisees</i> , who were then in great
	Esteem; by which Means she procured an
	honourable Burial for her Husband, ob-
	tain'd the Kingdom for her self, and left it
	to her Children, whose Quarrels brought on
	the Ruin of this eminent Family.
3899	IV. <i>Aristobulus</i> II. the younger Son
	of <i>Alexander</i> . He was of an active Genius,
	and well belov'd by the Army. Immediate-
	ly upon his Mother's Death, he took Pos-
	session of most of the Forts and Castles,
	and succeeded in the Kingdom and Priest-
	hood, notwithstanding the Right of <i>Hyrcan-</i>
	<i>us</i> his elder Brother, who molested him
	in his Government, by the Help of the <i>Ro-</i>
	<i>mans</i> ; And <i>Pompey</i> sent him to <i>Rome</i> with
	<i>Alexander</i> and <i>Antigonus</i> , his two Sons. He
	escaped from hence, and levy'd a new
	Army

A. M.

Army for the Recovery of the Kingdom: But being subdued by *Gabinus*, one of *Pompey's* Lieutenants, he was sent back to *Rome*, where he died in Prison after three Years and six Months Reign.

3903 V. *Hyrchanus* II. a Man of too weak Parts for the Government, was made High-Priest in the first Year of his Mother's Reign, but turned out by *Aristobulus*, his younger Brother. *Pompey* restor'd him; but he was disturbed again by his Nephew *Alexander*, the eldest Son of *Aristobulus*, who escaping from *Rome*, rais'd some Forces against him; but he was soon routed by *Gabinus*, and afterwards slain by *Scipio*, one of *Pompey's* Captains. Upon the Death of his Predecessor *Aristobulus*, the People esteem'd him both their High-Priest and King, and he is commonly called so by *Josephus* in his History. The Administration was for most Part vested in *Antipater*, (an *Idumæan* by Birth, and Father to *Herod the Ascalonite*.) He govern'd with great Care and Prudence; but being poison'd, *Antigonus*, the younger Son of *Aristobulus*, claimed the Kingdom, and rais'd an Army of *Parthians*, to make it good by their Assistance. He subdued *Hyrchanus*, cut off his Ears, (to make him incapable of the Priesthood) and sent him Prisoner to *Babylon*; from which Time *Antigonus* assum'd the Title of King, tho' never acknowledg'd by the *Jews*: Nor did his Reign last long; for *Herod*, who was created King by the *Roman Senate*, took him in the Siege of *Jerusalem*, and sent him in Chains to *M. Anthony*, who cut off his Head. *Hyrchanus*, who was the only rightful Prince, remained Prisoner with the *Parthians*, till hearing of the Death of *Antigonus*, he returned into *Jewry*, where he lived contentedly under *Herod's* Government, of whose Greatness he had laid the Foundation, and by whom he was at last basely murder'd.

The Idumæan Kings and Princes of Jewry.

A. M.

3940 I. **H**erod the *Ascalonite*, surnam'd *The Great*. He was Son to *Antipater*, created King by the Power of *M. Anthony*, and confirmed by *Augustus*. In

his Time the Kingdom was more enlarged, and in greater Splendor than ever it had been since *David*. In a Word, says *Heylin*, he was a Prince of great Magnificence, but of greater Vices. During his Reign, the Scepter being departed from *Judah*, Christ was born.

A. C.

6 II. *Archelaus*, *Herod's* eldest Son. He succeeded with the Title of King, but possessed only that Tetrarchy, or 4th Part of the Kingdom, which contain'd *Judæa*, *Samarita*, and *Idumæa*, that of *Galilee* and *Peræa* being given to *Herod Antipas*; that of *Ituræa* to *Philip*, another of *Herod's* Sons, and that of *Abilene* to *Lysanias*. But being afterwards banish'd into *France*, his Tetrarchy was made a *Roman Province*, and govern'd by *Pontius Pilate* at the Time of our Saviour's Passion.

16 III. *Herod* II. surnamed *Antipas*, at first Tetrarch of *Galilee* and *Peræa*. On the Banishment of *Archelaus*, he succeeded him as chief of the *Herodian* Family, tho' not in the Tetrarchy, and was at length banished himself. This is he who murder'd *John the Baptist*, and in whose Reign our Lord suffered.

40 IV. *Herod* III. surnamed *Agrippa*, in Honour of *Agrippa*, the Son-in-Law, and chief Favourite of *Aug. Cæsar*. He was Nephew to *Herod the Great* by his Son *Aristobulus*, begotten on *Mariamne*, of the *Asmonean* Race. *Caligula* first invested him in the Tetrarchy of his Uncle *Philip* with the Title of King, and next in that of *Antipas*. Finally, *Claudius* put him in Possession also of the Tetrarchy of *Lysanias*, and some Part of the Tetrarchy of *Archelaus* was annex'd to his Dominions. This was he that murder'd *James*, put *Peter* in Prison, and at length was eaten up alive by Worms.

47 V. *Agrippa* Minor, Son of the former, was he before whom *St. Paul* pleaded in Defence of the Gospel, and the last which was call'd King of the *Jews*; for in his Time the City of *Jerusalem* was destroy'd by *Titus*, and the whole Kingdom turn'd into a *Roman Province*.

It may not be improper in this Place to add an Account from *Heylin* of several great Massacres, by which the *Romans* had almost utterly extirpated the Nation of the *Jews*.
First,

First, the Inhabitants of *Cesarea* slew about 20000 *Jews* in one Day, and those that fled were taken by *Florus*, the *Roman* Lieutenant of *Judea*. To revenge this Slaughter, the *Jews* set upon the *Syrians*, but 13000 of them were slain in the Skirmish. The People of *Alexandria* slew 50000 more of 'em, they of *Damascus* 10000. *Antonius*, a *Roman* Captain, put 10000 to the Sword in *Ascalon*; and *Cestius*, another Captain, slew 8040 more. Besides, *Vespasian* in his Wars killed and took 17130 at *Aphaca*, 11600 in *Samaria*, and 42200 in *Jotapata*. So many were kill'd and drown'd at *Joppa*, that the Sea threw up 4200 dead Bodies; and there was such a total Massacre, that none were left to carry Tidings to *Jerusalem* of the Loss of the Town. Forty five Thousand were killed and taken at *Tarichea*, besides those which were given to *K. Agrippa*. In *Gamala*, there perish'd 90000; in *Gascula*, 5000; in *Gadera*, 32200, besides a Multitude who were drown'd; and in *Jerusalem* it self, there died 1100000 by Sword and Famine; 2000 were found in Privies and Sinks, and 9700 taken; insomuch that 30 *Jews* were sold for a Penny, as a just Judgment for the contemptible Price they put on our Saviour. *Heylin* says, all these Massacres, besides divers others omitted, amounting in the whole to almost Two Millions, happen'd within 4 Years, beginning at the 12th of *Nero*, and ending at the 2d of *Vespasian*. Nevertheless, the Nation was not wholly rooted out till 136 Years after our Saviour, when having formed two grand Rebellions, one under *Trajan*, and the last under the Emperor *Adrian*, they were generally banish'd, and never permitted to live here afterwards but as Strangers. From hence they were dispersed all over the World, and especially in *Spain*, where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwell. Yet wherever they came, they were liable to heavy Fines and Ransoms, and at last thrust out of most *European* Kingdoms. *Edward I.* banish'd them out of *England* in 1290, *Philip the Fair* out of *France* in 1307, *Ferdinand the Catholick* out of *Spain* in 1492, *Emanuel* out of *Portugal* in 1497, (as we have given an Account in the Description of those Countries) and *Charles V.* out of *Naples* and *Sicily* in 1539. There are abundance of them still in the *Romish* Parts of *Germany*

and *Poland*, in most Cities of *Italy*, in *Rome*, and in the Country of *Avignon*, where they are permitted to live, not in Hopes of their Conversion, as some give out, but for the Benefit which they bring to the Pope's Coffers. They swarm in the Dominions of the *Turks*, who professedly detest them for crucifying Christ; and think it the greatest Curse upon any Man, to wish he may die a *Jew*. They are not only hated wherever they come, but in Danger of Death upon every Tumult, and especially at *Easter*; insomuch that if a *Jew* stir abroad betwixt *Maundy-Thursd*ay at Noon and *Easter-Eve* at Night, the *Eastern* Christians will be sure to stone them, because at that Time they judged, condemned, and crucified, our Saviour: So that the Curse which they imprecated upon themselves and their Children, by wishing his Blood might be upon them, and our Saviour's Prediction of their Destruction, has been so visibly foretold, and is still so obvious to all Men, as is enough to confirm the Truth of Christianity. *Heylin* says, they know how to conform to every thing if their Profit be concerned in it, and never shew an angry Countenance, tho' they be loaded with the utmost Reproach and ill Usage. They are great Usurers, and never lend without Pawns, which when once forfeited, are not redeemable. The best of both Sexes are said to have an unfavoury Rankness, not common to other People. They still retain Circumcision, tho' accompanied with divers Ceremonies not prescribed by the Law. They place a void Chair for the Prophet *Elias*, whom they believe to be present at the Solemnity, tho' invisible. They think the Female Sex cannot have eternal Life, because not capable of Circumcision, and therefore name them with no other Ceremony than to have the Cradle with the Child in it, lifted up at six Weeks by some young Women, of whom she that stands at the Head gives the Name. They are so pertinacious in retaining the Difference of Meats and Drinks, that they will not sit at Table with other Men, nor eat any Flesh but of their own killing, and with such Precaution, that if any of the Intrails be corrupt or dislocated, they will sell the whole Beast to the Christians for a very Trifle. They are so full of Hopes of the coming of their Messiah, that

they believe every great Warrior who makes a Noise in the World is he, till the Event shews them their Error.

Helena, the Mother of *Constantine the Great*, is reported to have built no less than 200 Temples and Monasteries, in such Places of this Country as were noted either for the Miracles of our Saviour, or the Residence of his Disciples. *Heylin* says, the *Persians*, Anno 615, made themselves Masters of this Country, under the Conduct of *Chosroes* their King; but were expelled by the Emperor *Heraclius*, who taking away the Cross on which Christ suffer'd, carried it in great Triumph to *Constantinople*; from whence came the Annual Festival on the 4th of September, called *Holy Cross-Day*. But within 20 Years after the Recovery of *Jerusalem* from the *Persians*, it was again conquer'd, Anno 637, by *Homar* or *Aumar*, Caliph of the *Saracens*. In 1079, the *Turks* defeated the *Saracens*, and lorded it in their stead with the same Tyranny. At length Pope *Urban II.* caus'd a Council to be held at *Clermont* in *France*, wherein he solicited the Princes of *Christendom* to undertake the Delivery of the Christians: Upon which they began that call'd the *Holy War*, and sent no less than 300000 Men under several Leaders for that Service, who beat the *Turks* out of *Asia Minor*, took most of the strong Towns of *Syria*, and in 1099 made themselves Masters of *Jerusalem*, after it had been 400 Years in the Hands of the Infidels. Then they offer'd it, with the Title of King, to *Robert Duke of Normandy*, Son of *William the Conqueror*, who refus'd the Honour, in Hopes of the Kingdom of *England*; but *Godfrey of Bouillon*, D. of *Lorraine*, who had the next Offer, accepted it with a religious Joy, tho' he refus'd the Crown on the Day of his Inauguration, saying, It was not fit for a Christian Prince to wear a Crown of Gold in that City, where the Redeemer of the World wore one of Thorns.

The Christian Kings of Jerusalem.

A. C.

1099 I. **G**odfrey of Bouillon, Duke of Lorraine.

1100 II. Baldwin of Lorraine, Brother to Godfrey, took *Ptolemais*, and several other Cities of *Syria*.

A. C.

1118 III. Baldwin II. of Bruges, Cousin to Godfrey and Baldwin above-mentioned. He defeated the Sultan of *Damascus*, and added *Tyre* to his other Dominions.

1131 IV. Fulk Earl of *Anjou* succeeded after the Decease of Baldwin II. whose Daughter *Milliscent* he married; but died by a Fall from his Horse.

1142 V. Baldwin III. Son of the said Fulk and *Milliscent*, fortified *Gaza* against the Caliph of *Egypt*, and took *Paneade* from the King of *Damascus*.

1164 VI. *Almericus* his Brother, forced the *Egyptian* Caliph to call in the *Turks* to his Assistance, by whom he was killed, and his Kingdom given to *Saracen* the Turkish General.

1174 VII. Baldwin IV. his Son, overthrew the victorious *Saladine* of the *Turks* not far from *Ascalon*, and gallantly defended his Dominions.

1185 VIII. Baldwin V. Son of *Sybil*, Baldwin IV. th's Sister, by *William Marquis of Montferrat*. After he had reign'd five Months, his own Mother poison'd him, to make Way for her second Husband, named

1189 IX. Guy of *Lusignan*, who was the last King that kept *Jerusalem*; for after he had reign'd two Years, *Saladine* the Sultan of *Egypt* won the Kingdom; and his Successors kept their Ground till 1517, when *Selimus I.* Emperor of the *Turks*, added the *Holy Land*, with *Egypt*, to his Empire. After *Saladine* took *Jerusalem*, the Christians retired with their Forces into some other Parts of the *Holy Land*, which they defended against the Enemy under these 3 Kings following, viz.

X. *Conrade* Marquis of *Montferrat*, Husband of *Isabel*, Daughter of *Almericus*.

XI. Henry Earl of *Campagne*, her second Husband. And,

XII. *John di Brenne*, Husband of *Mary* or *Yoland*, Daughter to the above-mentioned *Conrade* and *Isabel*. He was the last Christian King that had Possession in *Syria* or *Palæstine*. His Daughter *Yoland* married *Frederick* King of *Naples*, who by Vertue of her Descent stiled himself King of *Jerusalem*; after whom the Kings of *Spain* have ever since gloried in the same Title; concerning which, *Heylin* gives us this remarkable Story: When the Wars in Queen *Elizabeth's* Time

Time were hot between *England* and *Spain*, Commissioners met on both Sides at a Town of the *French* King's to treat of Peace, where it was first debated, in what Tongue the Negotiations should be managed. The *Spaniards* being generally well skilled in *French*, one of them propos'd that Language as the fittest, thinking it would confound the *English* Commissioners. And (says he) these Gentlemen of *England*, without Doubt, very well understand the Language of their Fellow Subjects, since their Queen is Queen both of *England* and *France*. Nay, Gentlemen, (reply'd Dr. Dale, a Civilian, and one of the Masters of Requests) the *French* Tongue is too vulgar for an Affair of this Secrecy and Importance, especially too in a *French* Town; we will therefore treat rather in *Hebrew*, the Language of *Jerusalem*, which we suppose you understand as well as we do the *French*, since your Master is King of *Jerusalem*. Heylin says, the Arms of the Christian Kings of *Jerusalem* was *Luna*, a Cross-Crozier crossed; *Sol*, which was commonly call'd the *Jerusalem* Cross.

The chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, after it was recover'd from the *Turks*, were, 1. That of the Sepulchre, said to have been instituted originally by Queen *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*; but Heylin thinks it to have been founded rather by *Philip* the King of *France*, Anno 1099, when the Temple of the Sepulchre was retaken from the *Turks*. The Arms of this Order were the same with that of the Kings before, blazon'd with a Representation of the 5 Wounds of our Saviour. It was anciently conferred on none but Gentlemen of Blood and Merit; but now 'tis sold by the Father Guardian to him that bids most. 2. That of *St. John of Jerusalem*. Their Duty was to defend the *Holy Land*, relieve Pilgrims, and succour Christian Princes against the Infidels. They had amass'd such Store of Wealth, especially after the Suppression of the *Templers*, that Heylin says they had at one Time no less than 20000 Manors in *Christendom*, where they also acquir'd such a Reputation, that in *England* the Lord Prior of this Order was accounted the prime Ba-

ron in the Realm. But their Revenue is very much diminished, since several Protestant Princes fell off from the Church of *Rome*, and at the same Time seiz'd all the Lands of this Order in their several Countries. Their last Great Master that resided in the *Holy Land* was *John de Villiers*, in whose Time they were forced to retire from *Palastine* to *Cyprus*. From hence they fled, Anno 1309, to *Rhodes*, and afterwards settled in the Island of *Malta*, where the Curious may see a further Account of them in P. 1614 of *Europe*. 3. The *Knights Templers*, instituted by *Hugh of Payennes*, Anno 1113, and confirmed by Pope *Eugenius*. They had a Red Cross for their Ensign, in Token that they were ready to shed their Blood in Defence of Christ's Temple. They were buried cross-legg'd, and wore the Figure of a Cross on their Backs, for which they were commonly call'd *Cross-Backs*, or *Crouch-Backs*, and by Corruption *Crook-Backs*. Heylin says, they had subordinate Governors in all Provinces of *Europe*, and were once possess'd of no less than 16000 Lordships. But at the Dissolution of this Order, all their Lands were given to the *Knights of St. John*. The Crimes laid to the Charge of this Order were, 1. Their Revolt from their profess'd Obedience to the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, who was their Visitor. 2. Their excessive Pride: And, 3. Their unnatural Sins. Their chief Residence in *England* was at the Temple in *London*, which, when transferred to the *Knights of St. John*, they sold to the Lawyers for the Rent of 10*l.* per Ann. about the middle of the Reign of *Edward III.*

There being so great a Difference among Writers as to the Chronology of the Scripture, we refer the Curious to the *Opus Historicum & Chronologicum* of Mr. *Robert Bailly*, Professor of Divinity at *Glasgow*, printed at *Amsterdam* in 1663. A Book much esteemed by the Learned, where they will find what he says of the Mistakes of *Capell*, *Walton*, and others, in this Matter; which, for Brevity's sake, we are obliged to omit.

C H A P. V.

A R A B I A.

THIS is one of the most celebrated Countries in the World, one of the largest Provinces in *Asia*, and lies next to the Borders of *Africa*. *Pliny* extends it as far as *Comagena* in *Syria*, and to the Mountains *Amanus* and *Niphates* in *Mesopotamia*, because many *Arabian* Colonies were planted there by *Tigranes*. *Xenophon* takes in the greatest Part of *Mesopotamia*, because situate on the W. of the River *Tigris*; for the *Hebrew* Word which signifies *Arabia*, signifies also *West*. But the proper Bounds of it, according to *Cluverius* and the best modern Geographers, are, *Babylonia* and the Bay of *Persia* on the E. Part of the *Red Sea* and the main Southern or *Arabian Ocean* on the S. the *Red Sea* or Gulph of *Arabia*, with Part of *Egypt*, on the W. *Palestine*, *Cælo-Syria*, and the River *Euphrates*, on the N. *Cluverius* makes the Length of it, from the *Egyptian Sea* to the Mouth of the *Persian Gulph*, 450 *German Leagues*; the greatest Breadth betwixt the Mouths of the *Persian* and *Arabian Gulphs* 340, and the least Breadth about the Middle of the *Peninsula* 180. *Moll* makes it much narrower at the N. End, where he extends it above 120 Miles further N. than *Damascus*. He places it betwixt Long. 63 and 80 on the S. Long. 53 and 65 on the N. and betwixt Lat. 12 and 34 so that from S. E. to N. W. he makes it 1380 Miles, and from the Streights of *Babelmandel* to the Mouth of the Gulph of *Ormuz* 1080, as appears by his Map. *Luyts* says, the Soil in many Places is so rough, sandy, dry, and barren, that it does not yield enough to feed the Inhabitants. The Rivers are few, small, and shallow. They have seldom any Rain,

but Plenty of Dew, which waters the Land, and mitigates the Heat. *M. Mallet* says, the Tropick of *Cancer* passes through the Middle of it, which agrees with our Maps. They have few Fountains; and because of the Heat, the Trading People hold most of their Markets by Night. The Country is ill inhabited, except towards the Sea. We refer the Particulars to the Description of the several Parts.

Some derive the Name from the tawny Complexion of the Inhabitants; and *Reiskius* on *Cluverius* says, for this Reason they are called *Kedureni* in Scripture. Others derive it from *Arabus*, a Son of *Apollo* and *Babylonia*: Some from three supposititious Sons of *Janus Pater*, one of the pretended Grandsons of *Cham*, who they say sent his Son *Arabus* into *Arabia Deserta*, *Petrejus* into *Arabia Petraea*, and *Sabus* into *Arabia Felix*, the Habitation of the *Sabeans*. *Heylin* derives it from *Harabi*, which in *Hebrew* is a Thief or Robber, as the *Arabians* are known to have been in all Ages. *St. Jerome*, in his Commentary upon *Jer. 3. 2. In the Ways thou hast sate for them, as an Arabian in the Wilderness*, says the same. *Dr. Wells* thinks it took Name from the Inhabitants, who were a Mixture of *Ishmaelites*, *Midianites*, and *Amalekites*, *Jer. 25. 24. the Hebrew Word Arab* signifying to mix or mingle, and the Derivative *Ereb* or *Arabim* a mix'd Multitude. *Bochart* says, the Inhabitants are of a Twofold Lineage, viz. those who live in *Arabia Felix*, descended from *Jochan* the Son of *Sem*; and the *Saracens* and the other *Arabs* from *Chush* the Son of *Cham*. *Reiskius* says, the *Saracens* were so called from *Sarak*, an *Arabian Word*, which signifies to steal. Others from *Sarra*, which signifies a Desert;



ARABIA,
*According to the Newest and
most Exact Observations,*
By
Herman Moll Geographer.

Desart; and *Saken*, to inhabit. They were called *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, from their Pastures; and *Scenitæ*, from their Tents. *Coppin* says, they descended from *Ismael* the Son of *Agar*, from whence they were called *Agarenes*; and *Bouffingault*, that they were first called *Ismaelites*, and afterwards *Saracens*. *Pliny* says of the ancient *Arabians*, that they wore Mitres and long Hair, shav'd their Beards, but not their upper Lips; that half of them liv'd by Trade, and half by Robbery; that they were generally very rich, sold what they took by Sea and Land to the *Parthians* and *Romans*, but bought nothing. In this *Solinus* agrees with him.

The People, says *Heylin*, are generally of a mean Stature, raw-bon'd, tawny, and of a Feminine Voice, have a light, swift Gate. They often remove their Tents for the Sake of Booty and Pasturage. They have very swift Horses, and particularly Dromedaries, which they say will carry a Man 100 Miles in a Day with little or no Refreshment: And they think no Horse worth keeping that is not able to out-run an Ostrich; for they trust more to the Swiftness of their Horses than to their Arms, and ride naked.

Bouffingault says, the *Arabs* who dwell in the Towns are called *Moors*, who think themselves the noblest Race in the World, and therefore never mix with other Nations, nor could they ever be totally reduced by the *Egyptians*, *Persians*, *Greeks*, *Romans* or *Turks*, because of their Desarts. They are well skill'd in managing a Horse, a Bow, and a Weapon like a Half-Pike. The oldest of them wear the finest Apparel, and the most gawdy Colours; and the Inhabitants in general resemble the *Italians* in their Behaviour. *Coppin* says, their Climate being hot, they always keep the Field, and are sober in their Diet and Cloathing. They are capable of all Fatigues, and naturally addicted to War; but made no considerable Conquests till after the Declension of the *Roman* Empire, being till that Time ill arm'd and ill disciplin'd. They formerly made great Ravages in *Egypt* and *Syria*. They learn'd Military Discipline under *Heraclius*, who made use of them against the *Persians*. Upon his Return to *Constantinople*,

the *Arabians*, then call'd *Saracens*, because of their continual Robberies, not thinking themselves well enough paid, surpris'd *Damascus*, which they made the Seat of their Government for above 500 Years. They fell in with *Mahomet's* Doctrine, because it did not restrain their Robberies; and then being join'd by a Multitude of barbarous People, who took the same Name, they conquer'd *Mesopotamia*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Judæa*, great Part of *Africa*, and afterwards all *Spain*. They establish'd 5 considerable Empires, the first of them at *Mecca* and *Medina*, which contain'd the three *Arabia's*; the 2d at *Bagdat*, which contain'd *Mesopotamia*, *Chaldæa*, *Parthia*, and a great Part of *Persia* and *Cilicia*; the 3d at *Damascus*, which contain'd *Syria*, *Phœnicia*, and *Palestine*; the 4th in *Egypt*, when removing the Town of *Memphis* to the Foot of the Castle, they nam'd it *Cairo*: The 5th, which was of the largest Extent, comprehended all *Barbary*, and in general all the Provinces of *Africa* betwixt the *Mediterranean* and the Streights of *Gibraltar*; and the Country of the *Negroes*. Their Capital was *Cairohan*, 120 M. from *Carthage*. The Monarchs of *Africk* call'd themselves *Miramamolins*, and it was they who subdued *Spain*.

During their greatest Prosperity, they had War with the *Turks*, originally Natives of *Scythia*, who marching over *Colchis*, invaded the Frontiers of *Asia Minor*; but after some Battles, they easily came to a mutual Alliance, because of the Conformity of their Manners. The *Saracens* perswaded the *Turks* to embrace *Mahometanism*, which they readily complied with, because it suited their vicious Inclinations. At last, by the just Judgment of God, they depriv'd the *Arabs* of 4 of their Empires, and grew more impious than themselves. The *Arabians* possess nothing now in Sovereignty but the Empire of *Miramamolins*, which is also much less than it was. The *Turks* oppress them with Tributes, and govern 'em with great Cruelty, which has made them several times attempt to throw off their Yoke, but in vain. Those of *Arabia Felix* are kept in Awe by the *Turkish* Gallies on the *Red Sea*; and those of the other *Arabia's* not being able to subsist in their barren Countries, have spread themselves into the mountainous Places of *Syria* and

and *Idumæa*, and into the Desarts of *Lybia* and *Thebais*, where they live by Rapine from the neighbouring Countries, and plundering Travellers. The *Bassa's* of *Syria* and *Egypt* do all they can to suppress them, and cut off such as fall into their Hands; but are not able to reduce them totally, they retire with such Swiftmess to the Desarts, Rocks and Mountains, whither no Army can follow them. The Chief of those wandering *Arabs* wear a large white or blue Shirt with great Sleeves, which they tie behind them when they travel or fight. They seldom wear Breeches, go with bare Legs, and gird their Shifts about them with a Leathern Girdle, at which hangs their Scymiter. The richer Sort wear over this a black Vest: The common Sort wear only a long Piece of Woollen Stuff, twisted round their Bodies, with a red Cap, adorned with a Piece of white or blue Cloth; but when they fight, they throw off their Piece of Stuff, that they may be the more nimble. The Women wear only a long Shift of Cloth, with a Piece of Linnen wrap'd round their Head, which hangs down behind and before; and on their Arms they wear Rings of Lattin, and Bracelets of Glass: And thus they run bare-foot with their Husbands thro' the Mountains and burning Sands. Those who dwell in the *Arabia's* carry a Bow and Quiver, with a Leathern Buckler, on their Left Arm, and a Half-Pike in their Hand. Those in *Syria* have Fire-Arms, and such as ride on Horseback have likewise a long Pike, Battle-Axes, and Scymiters. Those of *Thebais* have only Half-Pikes and Darts, of which they carry 5 or 6 in a Bundle on their Shoulders; for the *Turks* have forbid selling of Fire-Arms, Powder and Shot to 'em, on Pain of Death: But those on the Frontiers of *Persia* are furnish'd with Fire-Arms by the *Persians*, on purpose to annoy the *Turks*. Their Way of Fighting is to attack their Enemies by Surprize. When they are briskly charged, they are easily broke; but they rally so frequently, that the Caravans chuse rather to give them Money for most Part than to fight them. Those who live in the Desarts about *Egypt* are the most miserable, except a few of them, to whom the *Turks* give Lands on the Frontiers, that they may

defend them against the rest. The others wander in the Desarts to seek Water and Pasturage for themselves, their Camels, and Goats, whose Milk is most of their Food; and at Times they plunder the neighbouring Towns and Villages of *Egypt*, or lie in wait for Travellers. Those who have no Goats, have nothing but Water and Bread, which they make in little round flat Cakes, and bake with what Fewel they can find, which they kindle with Flint-Stones and Powder. Those in *Syria* procure their Living by making and selling Pot-Ashes. They are *Mahometans*, but don't trouble themselves much with Mosques or the Alcoran. Out of Hatred to the *Turks*, they have embraced an Opinion contrary to theirs, of which *Abulbazar*, Son-in-Law to *Mahomet*, was the Author. They are very hospitable to one another, share their Victuals when encamped together, are very affable, salute one another with much Respect, strike their Hands together; then putting them to their Breasts, bow their Heads, and ask one another how their Families and Cattle do, and part with mutual Wishes of a good Journey. Their Wives are very submissive and affectionate to them.

Those who live in Towns apply themselves to Trades, Merchandize, and the Study of the Liberal Arts and Sciences. Many of them are well vers'd in Physick, Philosophy, and especially in Mathematicks. The Invention of the Figures we use in Arithmetick is ascrib'd to them. They have able Astronomers; and the *Portugueze*, who traffick'd with them, say, That several of their Emirs or Princes have very compleat Libraries, wherein are many Works of *Latin* and *Greek* Authors entire, which we have imperfect. They have excellent Horses, and keep a Register of their Breed. *Mallet* says, some of them are valu'd at 3000 Crowns. The wandering *Arabs* despise those who live in Towns, and call them *Moors*, which among them is as much as Cowardly and Idle; and they themselves glory in the Name of *Saracens*, which signifies Plunderers, as we have said before. He adds, That the Grand Seignior keeps 30000 Men to defend the Pilgrims who go to *Medina* against them, and makes considerable Annual Presents to the Chief of

of Mecca, the greatest of the Arabian Independent Princes, for protecting those Pilgrims.

Their Language is *Arabick*, which *Herbert* says is deriv'd from the *Hebrew*. *Bochart* says, the *Greek* Fathers ascribe the Origine of it to *Hazarmaveth*, mention'd *Gen.* 10. 26. The *Arabians* themselves to his Father *Joktan*. The Antiquity of it is evident from the Scripture's being fill'd with *Arabian* Phrases, particularly the Book of *Job*. The Language was continued within their own Country for almost 3000 Years, until the *Saracens* enlarg'd their Empire, and their Language with it, over almost a third Part of the World, says that learned Author. He adds, That the Knowledge of it contributes more to the perfect Understanding of the *Hebrew*, than is generally believ'd: And therefore Ancient Commentators had frequent Recourse to it for solving Difficulties. The *Arabians*, he says, had the Knowledge of Arts and Sciences in great Perfection for almost 600 Years, when *Europe* was drown'd in Barbarity and Ignorance. *Luyts* says, it is now spoke, or at least understood, in *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, *Palästina*, on the *Red Sea*, in *Egypt*, on the Coasts of *Africa*, and all along those of the *Mediterranean*, as far as the Streights of *Gibraltar*. It is the learned Language wherever *Mahometanism* prevails, because they must not read the *Alcoran* in any other Tongue. The *Arabians* themselves are so fond of it, that they say it was spoke in *Paradise*, and is the Language of the Saints in Heaven. This Country has bred or educated many excellent Physicians, Mathematicians, and Philosophers, such as *Galen*, *Hippocrates*, *Avicen*, *Algazales*, *Albumazar*, *Abubecar*, *Alpharabius*, *Mahomet Ben Isaac*, &c.

The Christian Faith was first planted here by *St. Paul*, as we may infer from *Galatians* 1. 17. to which *Heylin* says, the coming in of the *Saracens* gave a great Increase in the Time of their Queen *Mavia*, during the Empire of *Valentinian* I. Their first Bishop was *Moses*, a Man of exemplary Piety, to whom many Miracles are ascribed. Christianity was more generally propagated by their King *Almondarius*, when *Anastasius* was Emperor of the *East*; but it was soon after supplanted by *Mahometanism*, for the Reasons above-mentioned; so that there were scarce any Christians, says *Heylin*, left in this Country, except at *El-Tor*, a Sea-Port in *Arabia-Felix*; *Petra*, the chief City of *Arabia-Petrea*, and two Monasteries about Mount *Sinay*.

Their Money is *Larins* and *Half Larins*. Five *Larins* make a *French Crown*, which is about 4 s. 6 d. Sterling. *Tavernier* represents the *Larin* like a Carrot with two Branches, and the *Half-Larin* like a single Carrot, with some Figures upon them. He says, They are one of the ancient Coins of *Asia*, and are current only in *Arabia*, and at *Balsara*. The *Arabian* Princes oblige Caravans and Passengers to give them Crowns, Reals or Ducats of Gold, for these *Larins*, by which the Merchants lose about 8 d. in a Crown; for they must carry them to the Mint, when they come to *Persia*, and the *Indies*.

Arabia is usually divided into *Arabia-Felix*, *Deserta*, and *Petrea*, which are again subdivided according to the following Table, by *Sanfon* the Father and Son, and by *M. Luyts*.

A R A B I A

A a

ARABIA FELIX,

containing 7 Provinces.

1. Oman.
2. Segar, or Seger.
3. Hadramut.
4. Tehama.
5. Hagiaz.
6. Jamama.
7. Bahraim.

ARABIA DESERTA, { On the South,
in which are, { On the North,

ARABIA PETRÆA, { Within Land,
in which are, { Near the Red Sea,

ARABIA PETRÆA,

WE begin with this Part according to the Course of the Map. 'Tis now called *Baraab*, and *Barthalaba*. It has *Arabia Deserta* on the E. Part of *Egypt* and the *Red Sea* on the W. the *Holy Land* and Part of *Syria* on the N. and *Arabia Felix* on the S. according to *Sanfon* and *Cellarius*; but *Moll's* Map, and that of *Cluverius*, say *Arabia Deserta*. *Moll* makes the greatest Length from S. E. to N. W. about 200 Miles, and from the Borders of *Egypt* to *Arabia Deserta*, where 'tis broadest, about 170. The *Sanfons* make it 430 from E. to W. and about 200 from S. to N. Some derive the Name from the rocky Soil, others from *Petra* its Metropolis. *Heylin* says, it was named *Chus* by the *Hebrews*, which is generally translated *Ethiopia* in the Old Testament by the *Seventy*, all the *Greek* and *Latin* Fathers, the vulgar *Latin*, and by most other Translations now extant; tho' by Mistake these Texts are ap-

Chief Towns.

{ *Calajata*, *Muscata*, *Sochra* or *Sohar*, *Orfacan*,
{ *Corsean*, *Iquir*, *Nablan*, *Tabla*, *Jemena*,
{ *Mascalat*, *Sochar*, *Masfa*, *Mirabat*, *Syr* or
{ *Sur*, *Calhat* or *Quelhat*, *Amanzirifdin*.
{ *Alibinali*, *Guebelhaman*, *Pechar* or *Pecher*.
{ *Dofar*, *Fartach*, *Almacharem*, *Laghi*, *Aden*,
{ *Zibit*, *Morka* and *Mocca*, *Mareb*.
{ *Dhafar* or *Jacseb*, *Sanaa*, *Saada*, *Hans*, *Jacseb*.
{ *Ziden* and *Giadda*, *Mecca* or *la Meque*, *Bai-*
{ *sat*, *Tasef*, *Giadila*, *Chaibar*, *Medina*, *Ta-*
{ *ref*, *Barn Nackel*.
{ *Salamia*, *Jamama*, *Tima*, *Hadrama* or *Ha-*
{ *druma*.
{ *Bahraim*, *Absa* or *Ahsa*, *Chetta*, *Lassach* and
{ *Labfa*, *Biscia*, *El-Gatif*, *Bahreim* or *Bahr*,
{ *Hadanija*.
{ *Anna*, *Tangia*.
{ *Tsamma*, *Sukana*, *Anna* or *Anah*, *Dalia*, *Ra-*
{ *habat*, *Sumiscabac*.
{ *Busseret*, *Herac* or *Herat*.
{ *Madia* or *Madian*, *El-Tor*, *Elian* or *Eilan*,
{ *Faran*.

plied to *Ethiopia* in *Africa* by those who had never heard of any other. *Herodotus* in his History, 150 Years before the Translation of the *Seventy*, says, the *Ethiops* of *Asia* were armed like the *Indians*, but those of *Africa* with the Skins of Beasts. *Pausanias* and *Philostratus* do likewise mention the *Asian Ethiopia*, but place it elsewhere. *Heylin* thinks it certain however, that this must be the Place, 1. Because *Zipporah*, the Wife of *Moses*, is said to be an *Ethiopian*, *Numb.* 12. 1. It appears indeed, that she was Daughter to the Prince or Priest of *Midian*, who certainly liv'd in this Country, near Mount *Horeb*, *Exodus* 3. 1. which strengthens *Heylin's* Conjecture. 2. Because it is said, *2 Chron.* 21. 16. That the Lord stirred up against *Jehoram*, the Spirit of the *Philistines* and of the *Arabians*, that were near the *Ethiopians*. Therefore he thinks the *Ethiopia* here spoken of must bound upon the rest of *Arabia*, and by consequence the Country where *Midian* lay. 3. Because God threatens, *Ezek.* 29. 10. to lay waste the Land of *Egypt* from the Tower of *Syene* un-

to the Border of *Ethiopia*; that is, from the one End to the other. Therefore he thinks this *Ethiopia* must be *Arabia Petraea*, or the Land of *Chus*, as the most remote Boundary of *Egypt* from the Tower of *Syene*, which all Geographers agree to be in the extream S. Parts of it, towards the Cataracts of the *Nile*. He adds, That as the *Ethiopia* of the Old Testament lay near the *Philistines* on one Side, and *Egypt* on the other, it was bounded on the E. with *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*, the River *Gihon*, which is said to compass the whole Land of *Ethiopia* or the Land of *Cush*, *Gen. 2. 16.* being a Branch of the *Euphrates*, which falls into the Lakes of *Chaldea*. 3. Because *Zerub* the *Ethiopian* came against *Asa* K. of *Judah* with a Million of Men, and 300 Chariots, *2 Chron. 14. 9.* and when defeated by *Asa*, was pursued to *Gerar*, where the *Jews* smote all the Cities in the Neighbourhood, that Part of the *Philistines* Country being then possessed by the *Cushites* or *Ethiopians*. 4. Because it is improbable that the Kings of *Egypt* would suffer the *African Ethiopians* to march thro' all their Country; or that the *Arabians* would have also permitted them to march thro' theirs to *Judea* with such numerous Armies.

Bochart denies *Chus* to be *Ethiopia*, *Phaleg. Lib. 4. Cap. 26.* to which we refer for his Reasons. He says, the Scripture calls *Ethiopia* *Lud*, and the People *Ludim*; and that the *Ethiopia* which was Part of *Egypt* lay in that Part of the Country where the *Nile* has many Turnings and Windings: And in the 31st Chapter of the same Book, he takes Notice, that *Colchis* was also call'd *Ethiopia*, and the *Colchi Ethiopians*.

Cellarius says, it is not undoubtedly certain, that *Ethiopia* is mention'd in the Old Testament, tho' the Seventy and many others have translated *Chus* by that Name: Yet *Josephus, Antiq. Lib. 1. Cap. 7.* says, the *Ethiopians* were called *Cushites* from *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, both by themselves and by all the other People of *Asia*. *Cellarius* says, That *Bochart's* Reasons for the contrary are not to be despis'd, but takes Notice, that in his *Phaleg. Lib. 4. Cap. 2.* from whence *Heylin* had his above-mention'd Arguments, he thinks Part of *Arabia* was called by the Name of *Chus*, which is now follow'd by most of the Learned: And *Cellarius* thinks,

that both *Arabia Petraea* and *Deserta* are design'd by that Name in the Scripture.

Strabo, Ptolomy, and Pliny, call it *Nabathæa*, which *Heylin* thinks came from *Nabathoth*, the eldest Son of *Ishmael*. *Marcellinus* says, in his Time it was a rich Country, and had great Traffick; that the Inhabitants were a warlike People, half naked, and wore painted Cassocks as far as their Groin; that they were much addicted to Robbery, had no Corn nor Wine, and fed chiefly on Venison, Milk, Herbs, and Birds. They were extreamly lustful, hir'd their Wives only for a Time, who brought them a Spear and a Tent instead of a Dowry, and parted with them when they pleas'd. The Women, he says, were as great Ramblers as the Men, married in one Place, and brought to Bed in another, and took little Care of their Children. The Country is full of Desarts, which obliges Travellers and Merchants to carry their Provisions with them, and Camels, which bear from 600 to 1000 Pound Weight each, and subsist without Water 4 Days, and sometimes 14.

Goliut, Bernier, and Baudrand, extend the Borders of this Country much further S. than is usually express'd in the Maps, and reckon *Medina* and *Mecca* among its Towns; but we chuse rather to follow *Cellarius*, who is more critical, and has taken greater Pains than any that went before him on this Subject. The ancient Inhabitants of this Country mention'd in Scripture he takes Notice of as follows; 1. The *Ammonites*; 2. The *Moabites*; 3. The *Idumæans* or *Edomites*; 4. The *Amalekites*; 5. The *Midianites*; 6. The *Ishmaelites*. That of the *Idumæans* continued longest, was succeeded by the *Nabathæans*, and then by the *Saracens*, which still continues. The *Ituræans* and *Trachonites*, formerly mentioned, were also of *Arabian* Descent.

To what we have said of those People and their Towns in the Description of *Petraea*, *P. 169.* we shall add from *Cellarius* as follows:

The *Ammonites* liv'd beyond *Jordan*, in the Mountains of *Gilead*, and beyond them. *Sihon* King of the *Amorites* took the hither Part of the Country from them, as the *Israelites* did from him; and the *Ammonites* being drove Eastward, dwelt next to the

Tribe of *Gad*, *Josh.* 13. 24, 25. What remain'd to the *Ammonites* was bounded on the W. and N. by the River *Jabboc*, which *Josephus* and others say fell into *Jordan*, and not into the Lake of *Galilee*, as *Adrichomius*, and those who follow him.

Their chief Cities were, 1. *Rabbath-Ammon*, 2 *Sam.* 11. 1. 12. 27. 17. 27. *Jeremy* 49. 2. *Polybius* calls it *Rabatamana*. *Josephus* says, it was the Royal City of the *Ammonites*. The Name shews its Magnificence and Largeness, and its Suburb was called, *The City of Waters*, 2 *Sam.* 12. 27. where we have an Account of its being taken by *Joab* and *David*. It was afterwards restored, and adorned by *Ptolmy Philadelphus*, who call'd it *Philadelphia*; from whence the neighbouring Country was called *Philadelphene*. See what we have said of it, P. 89.

2. *Minnith*, to which Place *Jephtha* smote the *Ammonites* from *Aroer*, *Judges* 11. 33. *St. Jerome* says, it lay 4 Miles from *Heshbon*, in the Way to *Philadelphia*, i. e. to the N. E. says *Cellarius*.

3. *Abel*, in the Land of the Vineyards, different from others of the same Name beyond *Jordan*, and from *Abela*, which lies 12 Miles E. from *Gaderis*, says *Cellarius*. *St. Jerome* places it 7 Miles from *Philadelphia*.

The *Moabites* Country lay formerly S. of that of the *Ammonite*, till *Sihon* K. of the *Amorites* took some Lands from both of 'em. It was afterwards possess'd by the *Israelites*, *Numb.* 21. 26. In After-times *Moab* was included within the River *Arnon*, the Lake *Asphaltites*, and the Brook of *Zared*; but when the Kingdom of *Israel* declin'd, they and the *Ammonites* invaded Part of the Tribes of *Reuben* and *Gad*, *Isa* 15, 16. and *Jer.* 48, 49. Their Towns we have already described, P. 170. There is nothing material to add of the *Midianites*, whom we described P. 169.

The *Amalekites* lay next to them, and sprung from *Amalek*, Grandson to *Esau*, by his Son *Eliphaz*, a very wicked Nation, and therefore doom'd to Destruction by God, *Exodus* 17. 14. *Cellarius* thinks they dwelt on the E. Side of the Lake *Asphaltites*, the Mountains of *Seir*, and the neighbouring Vallies, S. from the *Moabites*, and N. from the *Ammonites*; but Part of them in the S. of *Canaan*, from whence they came to disturb the March of the *Israelites*, *Exod.* 17. 8. *Saul* defeated them, 1 *Sam.* 15. 7. from *Ha-*

vilah to *Skur*, over against *Egypt*, and they afterwards burnt the Town of *Ziglag*, 1 *Sam.* 30. 1. where we have an Account of *David's* routing them, and recovering the Spoil. Their Towns are not nam'd in Scripture, tho' it appears by 1 *Sam.* 15. 5. that they had several. That mention'd there is suppos'd to be *Sela*, which the Greeks call *Petra*, and *Josephus* *Gobolitis*. When the *Amalekites* were destroy'd, the *Idumæans* seiz'd their mountainous Country, and the Plains fell to *Caleb's* Posterity, *Numb.* 14. 25. But this is different from *Petra*, the Metropolis of *Arabia Petraea*. *Cellarius* supposes it to be the Rock mentioned *Judges* 1. 36.

The *Ishmaelites* lay West from them in the Wilderness or *Sur*, *Genesis* 25. 18. and possess'd a great Part of *Arabia Petraea*; from whence *Josephus*, *Antiq. Lib.* 1. Cap. 13. calls *Ishmael* the Founder of the *Arabian* Nation. *Joseph* was sold to this People, *Genesis* 37. 27. We hear no more of them till *Judges* 8. 24. where they are said to be defeated, with the *Midianites* and the *Amalekites*. They are likewise mentioned *Psalms* 83. 6. with the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, and *Hagarenes*; by which it would seem they were mix'd with those People. We find that *Ishmael* dwelt in the Wilderness of *Paran*, and married an *Egyptian*, *Genesis* 21. 21. and that he had 12 Sons, who were all of them Princes, *Gen.* 25. from 13 to 19. and that they dwelt from *Havilah* to *Skur*, betwixt *Egypt* and *Assyria*. From his eldest, *Nebajoth*, came the *Nabathæ*, so frequently mentioned by Greek and Latin Authors. His 2d Son *Kedar* is frequently mentioned in Scripture. That his Descendants liv'd in *Arabia*, is evident from *Isaiah* 21. 16. where the Judgments upon *Arabia* are express'd by the Fall of the Glory of *Kedar*. They are suppos'd to be the *Cedreni* or *Cedereni* of *Pliny*, who places them next the *Nabathæans*. Their Tents are mention'd *Cantic.* 1. 5. *Isaiah* in the same Chapter mention'd Judgments upon *Dumah* and *Tema*, which seem to be the Posterity of two others of *Ishmael's* Sons, mention'd *Gen.* 25. 14, 15. so that 'tis probable the Posterity of all his 12 Sons liv'd in those Countries. We read likewise, 1 *Chron.* 5. 19. that the *Reubenites*, *Gadites*, and Half-Tribe of *Manasseh*, made War with *Jetur* and *Nephish*, the Posterity of two more of *Ishmael's* Sons, join'd with the *Hagarites* and those of *Nodab*.

Job. That they were a numerous People, appears by the Account of them, *v.* 21. where 100000 of them are said to be led into Captivity, and the *Israelites* took 50000 of their Camels, 250000 Sheep, and 2000 Asses. We have no particular Account of the Habitation of the rest of *Ishmael's* Sons, unless we suppose with *Dr. Wells*, that the City and Wilderness of *Kedemoth*, *Deut.* 11. 26. had its Name from *Kedemah*, the last of *Ishmael's* 12 Sons, which is not improbable.

Cellarius takes Notice of *Rabbi Kinchi's* Reason why the *Hagarenes* are distinguish'd from the *Ishmaelites*, since *Ishmael* was *Hagar's* Son, *viz.* That they were her Descendants by another Husband. The *Reubenites*, &c. made War with them, *1 Chron.* 5. 20. where it would seem they were the greatest People in that Confederacy, because 'tis said the *Hagarites* were deliver'd into their Hands, and all that were with them. This was the prevailing Name for a long Time, and most noted afterwards during the Empire of *Constantinople*, as comprehending the *Saracens*, and all the other *Arabians*.

Idumaea or *Edom* is by *Cellarius* reckon'd Part of *Arabia Petraea*, tho' *Claverius* makes it a distinct Country, bounded on the N. with *Judea*, the *Mediterranean* on the W. and *Arabia Petraea* on the E. and S. *Luyt* says, it extended formerly to the upper Coasts of the *Red Sea*; and after the Captivity of the *Jews*, it comprehended a great Part of S. *Judea*, and the Coast of the *Mediterranean* as far as *Jerusalem*. *Esaü*, from whence it was named, was called *Edom*, because he sold his Birth-right for a Mess of red Pottage, *Gen.* 25. 30. The *Greeks* call it *Idumaea*, and the Poets *Idume*. *Martial* calls the Triumphs of *Titus* and *Vespasian* over *Judea*, *Idumaeos Triumphos*: The Reason of which is, that after the *Babylonish* Captivity, the *Edomites* seiz'd the Country of *Judea* as far as *Hebron*. *Cellarius* rejects the Opinion of *Bonfrerius*, that there were two *Edoms*, and discovers the Country properly so called from the Journey of the *Israelites* thro' the Wilderness, by which they encompassed *Edom*, *Numb.* 20. 17, 21, 22, 24. and 21. 1, 3, 4. so that *Edom* lay betwixt *Hor* and *Arad*; *Numb.* 20. 23. 21. 1. Its Distance from the River *Jaboc*, where *Jacob* lay with his Flocks when he sent Mes-

sengers to his Brother *Esaü*, urg'd by *Bonfrerius*, is no Reason for there being two *Edoms*, because it lay within 3 Days Journey of *Edom*. The *Horites* inhabited this Country in the Time of *Chederlaomer*, who dispers'd them, *Gen.* 14. 6. and they were totally routed by *Esaü* afterwards.

Their principal Towns, according to *Cellarius*, were, 1. *Theman*, which gave Name to the neighbouring Country, and was their Royal Seat, *Jer.* 49. 7, 20. *Ezek.* 15. 13. and *Amos* 1. 11, 12. *Jerome* says, it was so called from *Theman*, Grandson to *Esaü*, lay 15 Miles from *Petra*, and in the Time of the *Romans* was a Garrison.

2. *Bozra*, or *Bosor*, *Gen.* 36. 33. *Amos* 1. 12. 'Tis now called *Bussareth*, and seems to have been a Town of Note, because the Prophet threatens there, that Fire shall devour its Palaces. 'Tis also mentioned *Isa.* 63. 1. *Who is this that cometh from Edom with died Garments from Bozra*. It was repair'd by *Augustus Caesar*, and afterwards made a Roman Colony by *Alexander Severus*, according to an Inscription in an old Coin, COL. BO- STRAIN. T. R. ALEXANDRIANÆ. The Emperor *Philip*, who succeeded that *Alexander*, is thought to have been born here, from whom it was some Time called *Philippus*. 'Tis said, the Metropolitan Dignity was transferred hither from *Petra* a little before *Justinian's* Time; and that *Titus*, surnamed *Bosrenus*, was Bishop of it in the Days of *Julian* the Apostate.

3. *Dedan*, mentioned *Jer.* 49. 8. *Eusebius* places it 4 Miles N. from *Phana*, that was noted for Mines, in which Criminals were condemned to dig, and for the Martyrdom of *Sylvanus* Bishop of *Gaza*, with several of his Clergy.

4. *Petra*. 'Tis controverted whether this Town, which is the Metropolis of *Arabia*, and (as some think) gave it the Name of *Petraea*, belong'd to the *Edomites*, or is mention'd in Scripture. *Jerome* affirms both, and will have it to be *Jactael*, by the *Syrians* called *Recem*; but *Cellarius* says, that was the *Petra* of the *Amalekites* where *Amalek* defeated the *Edomites* in the Valley of Salt, near the Lake *Asphaltites*, and call'd it *Jactael*. It is mentioned *2 Kings* 14. 7. *St. Jerome* says, the Name of *Recem* seems to have been borrow'd from *Rekem*, the Prince of the *Midianites*, *Numb.* 31. 8. but *Cellarius* re-

jects the Opinion of those who infer from thence, that *Petra Racemis*, where the *Midianitish* Kings were slain, lay in *Moab*, and seems positive that it belong'd rather to the *Midianites*, and was afterwards possess'd by the *Edomites* their Neighbours; from whence, according to the Difference of the Times, *Josephus* might call it a City of the *Midianites*, and *Jerome* a Town of the *Idumæans*. The Situation, according to *Ptolomy* and *Cellarius*, is Long. 65. 45 M. and Lat. 30. 20 M. Therefore it declines 80 M. S. from the Parallel of *Jerusalem*, and 37 M. from the Meridian of the same City, or a little more to the E. *Strabo* places it 3 or 4 Days Journey from *Jericho*, which agrees with *Ptolomy*. *Josephus* places the Mountain *Hor*, on which *Aaron* died, near this City; and 'tis pretty plain from the Journies of the *Israelites*, *Numb* 20. 21. how far distant that Mountain was from the *Arabian* Gulph, from the Borders of the *Moabites*, and the River *Zarid*. Upon the whole, *Cellarius* thinks that *Ptolomy*, tho' frequently mistaken in this Country, could not be deceiv'd in the Situation of Regal and Metropolitan Cities, which were too well known at that Time to admit of such Doubts as obscurer Places might be liable to. *Heylin* places it in the S. Border of *Palæstine*, near Mount *Hor*; *Cluverius* about a League and a half E. from the *Dead Sea*, and less than a League from the River *Zareth*, and about 7 Leagues N. from Mount *Hor*; but it seems to be the *Petra* of the *Amalekites*. *Cellarius* thinks it to be *Sela*, mention'd *Isa*. 16. 1. and 13. where the *Moabites* are commanded to bring their Sacrifices from *Sela* to the Wilderness, and the Citizens are exhorted, together with the other Towns of the Desert, to praise God; for *Sela* signifies the same with the Latin Word *Petra*, a Rock, on which this City was built. It was formerly so strong, that *Scaurus* the Roman General chose rather to accept of a Sum than to continue the Siege; and the Emperor *Trajan*, after many Repulses in his Attacks, was obliged to strip off his Imperial Habit, and fly from before it. If we may credit *Dion*, the Heavens fought against the Romans with Thunder and Tempests whenever they approach'd it; but it was at length subdued, and made the Metropolis of the Province. *Heylin* says, the Soldans of *Egypt* us'd to keep

their Treasures here. It was look'd upon as the Key of *Palæstine*, and much coveted both by the *Turks* and Christians in the Course of the Holy Wars. The *Western* Christians made it the See of a *Latin* Bishop. *Buno*, who places this Town not far from the Eastern Shore of the *Dead Sea*, says, it was enlarged and beautified by *Baldwin* King of *Jerusalem*, and afterwards the Regal Seat of the Kings of *Arabia*. 'Tis now called *Arach*, or *Herat*. Sir *Thomas Herbert* says, it was the Birth-place of *Ruth*. The Citizens set Fire to the Vessels which their Queen *Cleopatra* brought to *Suez* from the *Nile*, over an Isthmus of 300 Furlongs betwixt *Asia* and *Africa*, when she was designing to fly with *M. Anthony* thro' the *Red Sea* to some remote Part of *India*, after their Defeat at the Battle of *Actium*. He says, the Town was built by *Pathruzim*, Son of *Mizraim* the Egyptian, *Gen*. 10. 14. from whom it was called *Petra*. *Pliny* says, it lay in a Valley, was about two Miles in Circuit, and encompassed with inaccessible Mountains, with a River running betwixt them.

Cellarius proceeds next to the Bay of *Arabia*, which he says forms it self at the End into two other Bays, one of which washes Part of *Egypt*, called *Sinus Heroopolitanus*, (from a Town on the same Coast) and the other which runs towards the E. call'd *Elaniticus*.

Cellarius takes Notice here, 1. Of *Phara*, reckon'd by *Ptolomy* the chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wilderness of *Paran* seems to take Name. *Salmasius* thinks it was built by the *Ishmaelites*, because *Ishmael* dwelt in this Wilderness, *Gen*. 21. 21.

2. *Elana*, on the Side of the other Bay, according to *Ptolomy*, which was thence call'd *Elaniticus*. Some write it *Ailana*, *Aelana*, *Aila*, and *Eilana*. *Strabo* makes it 1260 Stadia from *Majuma*, or the Port of *Gaza*. *Cellarius* thinks 'tis the same with *Elath*, *Deut*. 11. 8. 2 *Kings* 14. 22. and 2 *Chron*. 26. 2. St. *Jerome* says, it was anciently call'd *Ailath*, lay in the Border of *Palæstine* near the Desert, and the *Red Sea* on the S. and was the Seat of a Roman Legion.

3. *Ezion-Geber*, or *Asion Gaber*, the Sea-Port of *Solomon* and *Jehosaphat*; 1 *Kings* 9. 26. and 22. 48. 'Tis also mention'd *Numb*. 33. 35. and *Deut*. 2. 8. *Josephus* says, it was in his Time call'd *Berenice*, and lay near *Elana*.

Cellarius places it on the E. Side of the *Sinus Elaniticus*, about 40 Miles E. from *Elana*, near the Wilderness of *Sin*.

Cellarius thinks the People called *Nabathæi* liv'd in and about *Petra*, which *Pliny* makes their Metropolis; and that the *Kedareni* lay towards the N. Part of *Arabia Felix*. They were noted for being good Archers, *Isa.* 21. 17. Joining to them lay the Southern *Midianites*. Having thus given an Account of the ancient Inhabitants of this Country mention'd in Scripture, he says, That their general Name of *Arabians* does not seem to have obtain'd till the Time of the Kings of *Israel*. The *Saracens*, whose Name succeeded that of the *Arabians*, were partly subject to the *Persians*, and partly to the *Romans*; but that which is properly called *Saracene* in *Ptolomy's* Time was Part of *Arabia Petraea*, betwixt *Egypt* and the Black Mountains, which run from *Pharan* Northward betwixt the two Bays.

The Wildernesses of *Arabia Petraea*, where the *Israelites* wander'd 10 Years, are, 1. That of *Sur*, which lies E. from the Borders of *Egypt*, betwixt *Palæstina* and the *Arabian* Gulph. It was here the *Israelites* arriv'd when they came out of the *Red Sea*, *Exodus* 15. 22. *Heylin* says, it was so called from *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalekites*, near which they were defeated by *Saul*, 1 *Sam.* 15. 7.

2. The Wilderness of *Sin*, into which the *Israelites* march'd from *Sur*, *Exod.* 16. 1. It lies S. E. from the former, on the Borders of the *Midianites* and *Amalekites*. From hence they marched, 3. Into the Wilderness of *Sinai*, *Exod.* 19. 1. which lay betwixt that of *Sin* and *Sur*, more to the S. They marched next, 4. To the Wilderness of *Paran*, *Numb.* 10. 12. and 13. 3. in the Extremity of which, towards the Land of *Canaan*, lay *Kadesh Barnea*, from whence *Moses* sent the Spies to view the Land of Promise. *Numb.* 32. 8. It lay in the S. Part of the Holy Land, and is sometimes called *Kadesh* simply, *Gen.* 16. 14. 'Twas near this Place where the Angel spoke to *Hagar*, and comforted her. It must not be confounded with *Kadesh* in the Wilderness of *Sin*, mention'd *Numb.* 20. 1, 16. Then they turned back by the Mountains of *Seir*, and other Places mention'd *Numb.* 33. till they came to the Sea and *Ezion Geber*, and from thence

came to, 5. The Wilderness of *Zin*, which lay E. from that of *Sin*, *Numb.* 20. 1. and encompasses *Idumæa* on the S. and W. *Numb.* 34. 3, 4. In this Wilderness lay the Town of *Kadesh*, to which the *Israelites* came after they decamp'd from *Ezion Geber*, *Numb.* 20. 1. and 33. 36. The Wilderness is also call'd *Kadesh* from this Town. Here *Miriam* was buried, and it is also remarkable for the Rock out of which *Moses* brought Water. *Numb.* 20. 1, 8, 13. Then they came to Mount *Hor*, noted for the Death of *Aaron*; and encompassing the Land of *Edom*, went to *Zalmona*, from thence to *Phunon* or *Phenon*, then to *Oboth*, from thence to *Jim*, and the Mountains of *Abarim* in the Borders of the *Moabites*, thro' which they enter'd into the Holy Land. Their several Marches will be better understood by casting an Eye on the Map of the Holy Land, where their Travels thro' the Wilderness backward and forward are marked by a double Line.

A Description of the remarkable Places in those Desarts mention'd in Scripture, from modern Travellers and other Authors.

Monconys describes, 1. The Passage in which *Pharaoh* thought to have surpris'd the Children of *Israel* near the *Red Sea* thus: When I enter'd betwixt the Mountains, I perceiv'd the Tops of them cover'd with large black Rocks, eat by the Air which comes from the Sea, as I suppose, and on the Flanks of one of them a grey-colour'd soft Earth, in which there are formed Vaults by the Force of the Wind. The Volatile Salts brought thither by those Winds produce in that Earth a vast Number of Stones like Snails, cover'd with a Crust that shines like Chrystal, and consists of small Grains. The Mountains are very steep and high on both Sides, with a Road betwixt them 30. or 40 Paces broad. At the End of those Mountains, there is a vast Plain that reaches to the Sea, of which there's a noble Prospect when one comes 300 Paces within the Mountains. The Plain looks like an artificial Canal from the Passage, at the End of which 'tis about two Leagues.

Leagues broad. I was two Hours travelling thro' this Passage, and 8 before I arriv'd at the Bank of the *Red Sea*. *Herbert* places this Passage betwixt *Toro* and *Suez*; but he ought to have said over against *Tor*, if *Moll* be right, who places this Town on the *Arabian* Side of the Gulph, because it is plain by *Exod.* 14. that *Pihahiroth* and *Migdol* lay on the *Egyptian* Side. *Thevenot* thinks that called *Corondel* to be the ancient *Shur*, where the *Israelites* landed from the *Red Sea*. Here are many fair Trees, and at some Distance Baths in a Grot, which they call *Pharaoh's*. The Inhabitants say, the Sea is always tempestuous where he and his Host were drown'd.

2. *Marah*. *Coppin* says, it lies 20 Miles from *Suez*, and about half a League from the Bank of the *Red Sea*. 'Tis noted for the bitter Waters which the *Israelites* could not drink, and therefore murmur'd, till God order'd *Moses* to sweeten them by casting a Tree into them, *Exod.* 15. 23, 24, 25. *Coppin* adds, these Wells are 7 or 8, at a small Distance from one another; that they bubble up with large Springs, and forming small Streams, lose themselves in the Sand. The Ground in which they rise is somewhat higher than that about it; and near the Fountains there grows abundance of *Sene* and *Colloquintida*. The Water, he says, is nitrous and salt, and much worse than that in the Fountain of *Suez*; so that the Miracle lasted no longer than the *Israelites* had Occasion for it. Travellers are obliged however to make use of it, for the *Arabians* say there is no other to be met with in two Days Journey. *Monconys* says, they lie over against the Passage above-mention'd, and are hot, as well as ill tasted and salt. The *Red Sea* in this Place he reckons not above three quarters of a League in Breadth. About two Days Journey from hence he came to a pleasant Fountain and Stream, with many Trees, in a Valley, where he saw abundance of Partridges, and other Fowls. The Water was very good, and their Camels drank of it, having tasted no other for 22 Days. *Coppin* says, That in his Journey from *Marah* to Mount *Sinai* he travelled continually upon Sands, where he saw great Flocks of Ostriches, so large that they could not fly; but they run so fast, fluttering with their Wings, that no Horse

is able to overtake them. *Thevenot* says, these Ostriches have a Neck, Head, and Bunch on their Backs like Camels, which they resemble in so many Things, that the *Turks* call them Bird-Camels. They are always found in even Numbers, and bring forth a Male and Female. They throw back Stones with their Feet upon those who pursue them. They are very swift, but soon tire. The *Arabians* hunt 'em gently at first; and when they are near spent, put on full speed, come up to them, cut a Hole in their Throats, tie their Neck strait under the Hole, and three or four of them tossing it from Side to Side, untie the Throat, from whence issues a great deal of Matter like Butter, which they call *Mantegue*. They say, all their Flesh turns by the violent Motion into this sort of Matter, which they reckon good Food, but laxative. He mentions likewise another Place of Waters two Days Journey from *Marah*, suppos'd to be the same spoke of by *Monconys*. He says, the Water is good, and the Stream frequented by great Numbers of Fowls. The *Arabians*, who lodge in Caves in the Neighbourhood, come frequently in Arms to hinder Travellers from watering there, and force them to pay Money for Leave, except they be strong enough to repulse 'em. The adjacent Country is mountainous and rocky, and produces wild Caper-Trees, whose Fruit is yellow, as big as little Eggs, and full of small Grains, which tast like Mustard. The *Arabians* steep them in Vinegar, or eat them raw, and esteem them highly. The Heat is so violent in that Country, that their Water, tho' salt, quickly spoils; so that they mix it with Vinegar before they can drink it.

3. *Elim*, where the *Israelites* encamp'd, near 12 Wells and 70 Palm-Trees, *Exod.* 15. 27. *Coppin* says, it is about half a League from *Tor* or *Torre*, on the E. Side of the *Red Sea*, towards the N. End. He adds, That the Wells abound with Water, but it is salt and unpleasant to drink; yet the Vessels which land at *Torre* are obliged to make use of it, because there is no other in a great Way. *Thevenot* says, there's a Monastery here, and that most of those Wells are within the Garden belonging to it. The rest are near by. They are all bitter and hot, and one of them is call'd *Moses's Bath*.

The

The 70 old Palm-Trees are gone; but there are many new ones planted in their Place: *Coppin* says 2000; and the Monks make a great deal of Money of the Dates that grow on them, which are reckon'd the best in all this Country. *Cluverius* places *Elim* about 5 German Leagues N. E. from the Place where the *Israelites* passed the Red Sea.

The Town of *Torre*, which *Moll* places in this Country, on the Bank of the Red Sea, about 30 Miles S. E. from *Corondel*, is a Town of about 400 Houses, says *Coppin*, without Walls, and consists chiefly of one long Street, inhabited by some Christian Merchants, *Jews* and *Moors*. It has a good Harbour and Anchorage, and is the Place where Goods are landed to be carried to *Suez*, which is 120 Miles distant from it, it being dangerous for great Ships to sail any further, because of the Rocks and Shelves which lie in the Gulph. The Town is not well inhabited, because their Water is nitrous and salt, and the adjacent Country is desert and of difficult Access. At one End of the Town there's a small Castle, flank'd with 4 Towers and a Dungeon, to guard the Harbour, and the *Turks* have an Aga and a Garrison here. Near the Town is a Greek Monastery, built for most Part with large Shells, where they live in a very austere Manner. *Thervenot* says, 'tis dedicated to St. *Catherine*, and the Angel that appeared to *Moses* in the Bush. There are 30 Monks in it, who gather Stone-Mushrooms, small Stone-Shrubs, and Branches of Rock, which they call White Coral, with many pretty Sorts of Shells, to sell to Travellers. The Wilderness of *Etham*, where the *Israelites* encamp'd before they marched to *Pihahiroth*, *Numb.* 33. 6. lies E. from this City.

Monconys, in his Way from *Marah* to Mount *Sinai*, says, he travelled thro' many fine Vallies betwixt Mountains, in which was abundance of small Flint-Stones, very beautiful, polish'd and transparent of several Colours, and a vast Number of great Serpents call'd *Dab*. The Heat is excessive betwixt the Mountains, which are full of Veins of black Stone that resemble Coals. In these Vallies he also found abundance of that sort of Stones which are said to be cast of various and pleasant Colours; but so

soft, that they are easily broke. There are several Mountains of this sort of Stone; but he saw none of them from whence entire Columns or Pyramids have been cut, or could be so, as some fabulous Authors have writ; nor were it possible to transport them to other Places, because of the Difficulty of the Ways. In those Vallies he saw abundance of Cassia-Trees, which produce the Gum call'd Frankincense. The Tree is very disagreeable to the Sight, has but few Leaves, small, like those of Mirtle-Trees, cut like those of Fern, and its Branches are full of long and large Thorns, so that it looks like a wither'd Bush. They yield their Gum without pricking. Near this Place there's good Water, and abundance of Colloquintida. The *Arabians*, who look after their Camels in these Mountains, have no other Food but their Milk during the Summer. *Coppin* says, That among those Hills there are Trees which bear a sort of Wool like Cotton, but not so fine nor white; and other Trees with long sharp Thorns, which bear Flowers of a delicate Scent. The *Arabians* strike off the Flowers and Leaves to feed their Cattle. Some think it was of those Thorns our Saviour's Crown was formed, for there are of them in the Holy Land. *Monconys* adds, That in his Way to Mount *Sinai* he met with several Descents full of great Stones, which had fallen from the Mountains, and make the Ways very dangerous; and saw many Veins of speckled Stone. On the Tops of those Mountains there are several delightful Plains, and the *Arabians* lay up their Stores of Provisions for themselves and their Camels in Holes of the Rocks, which they shut up with Stones, and never rob one another: Or if at any Time they find some of their Stores diminished, they bear it patiently, and say, That it must be some of their Friends, who were forc'd to it by Necessity, and that God would have it so. *Coppin* says, the Wilderness of *Sinai* is considerably higher than the rest of the Country, and is a Plain encompassed with Rocks and Hills for 10 or 12 Miles. There were 4 Monasteries in those Places, two of them abandon'd, and two still inhabited by Greek Monks. The Road up to the Desert is cut out of the Rocks almost like Stairs, and very difficult for the Camels; but the Passengers walk on

Foot. He saw several Veins of Chrystal in those Rocks; and he says, the Wilderness is about 260 Miles from *Cairo* in *Egypt*, which makes usually 10 Days Journey. Towards the N. Side of the Plain there rises two Mountains, the lower of which, says *Coppin*, is *Horeb*, where *Moses* receiv'd the Tables of the Law; and the higher one, which is properly *Sinai*, is now call'd the Mountain of *St. Catherine*, because the Legendaries say, the Corps of that Martyr was transported thither by Angels. Those two Mountains are very steep and high, but not proportionably broad. There are Ways cut up to the Top of them, but the Ascent is very difficult. Pilgrims lodge in a Greek Monastery call'd *St. Saviour*, near the Foot of Mount *Horeb*. *Monconys* says, it stands at the Bottom of a large green Plain, about a League and a half long, and a quarter of a League broad; but grows narrower as we approach the Monastery, where the two Mountains are almost join'd, with a Tuft of Trees betwixt them, which shut up the Plain on that Side. This is suppos'd to be the Place where *Moses* kept the Flocks of *Jethro*, his Father-in-Law, and where he saw the Burning Bush, that was not consum'd. *Monconys* describes the Monastery thus: 'Tis a large Square, but irregular Building. Two Thirds of the Walls are of hewn Stone, and the rest of Earth. They are 250 Foot in Front, and 50 high. It contains several Cloisters, irregularly disposed, which serve for Lodgings to the Monks, Kitchens, Dining-Rooms, Dormitories, &c. The Irregularity of the Plan occasions some of them to be higher than others, and from the highest one sees all the Courts. They go round the whole upon Terrasses, descending from one to another. In the Middle there's a Church of hewn Stone, cover'd with Lead. 'Tis an ancient Structure, about 50 Foot long, and 30 wide. The Nave consists of 6 Arches, with a Wing on each Side, and a high Inclosure of Joyner's-Work the whole Breadth of the Church, which separates the Choir from the Nave, and the Workmanship and Gilding is very fine. In the Middle there's two Half-Gates after the Greek Way. The Roof is of Carpenter's-Work, from whence there hang down above 40 Silver Lamps, and 12 large Branches of Latten. The Seats

of the Monks are along the Nave under the Arches, and in the Middle the Archbishop's Throne, cover'd like a Dome, and well carv'd. The Pavement is of Marble, laid in Form of Roses with great Art. The Walls are cover'd with Pictures after the Greek Fashion, and over them the Joyner's-Work is gilt. The great Altar is very large, stands under an Arch, of Mosaick Work, and the lower Parts of the Wall are fac'd with grey Marble, curiously wav'd like fine Tabby. Behind the Altar there's a Chappel, to which we enter by the Side of the Choir. It has 18 Silver Lamps; the Floor is cover'd with Tapestry, and the Walls hung with Pictures, whose Frames are of sweet-smelling Wood. Here is an Altar of white Marble, supported by 4 Pillars of the same, and near it a Marble Table, which covers the Place where *Moses* saw the Burning Bush. It has a Cross cut in the Middle of a Circle, and Greek Inscriptions round it, with 3 Lamps burning. Those who approach it must pull off their Shooes. They enter at one Gate, and go out at another towards the great Altar, near which is *St. Catherine's* Shrine of white Marble, neatly cut with Foliage in *Basso-Relievo*, after the antick Manner. 'Tis cover'd with Cloth of Gold, is two Foot long, one broad, and about 14 Inches high. Here they pretend to shew *St. Catherine's* Relicks, upon which Account 'tis also call'd the Monastery of *St. Catherine*. The Archbishop's Vestments are wonderful rich, embroider'd with Pearls and Jewels, being presented him by a Czar of *Muscovy*. The Vestments of the other Priests are also very sumptuous. They seem to resemble those of the High-Priests and Priests of the Jews. Their Devotions are very tedious and frequent, and their Ceremonies odd, after the Manner of the Greeks. The Archbishop's Tiara and Cross are extremely rich, and they have abundance of Gold and Silver Plate. This Convent is said to have been built by the Emperor *Justinian*. They have a separate Altar for Papists that travel this Way, but refuse to communicate with them. The Monks live very strictly, and eat nothing that has Blood. Their ordinary Habits are mean. They wear Sandals on their Feet, are kept under severe Discipline, and obliged to work when they are not taken

ken up with their Devotions. Their Water comes from a Fountain in Mount Horeb. Their Garden is large and well kept, and produces all sorts of Fruit proper to that Climate, as Peaches, Figs, Grapes, Almonds, Dates, &c. *Thevenot* says, there's a neat Mosque within the Monastery near the great Church. There are 14000 Steps from this Monastery up to the Top of the Mountain. The same Author says, That *Mahomet* the Impostor was Camel-Driver to this Monastery; and being weary one Day with fetching in their Provisions, he fell asleep before their Gate. While he lay there, an Eagle came and hover'd a long Time over his Head. The Porter observing it with Amazement, ran and acquainted the Abbot, who having seen and consider'd it, ask'd *Mahomet* as soon as he awoke, Whether when he was a great and mighty Lord, he would be kind to them? *Mahomet* answer'd, That he was never like to be such an one. But the Abbot still demanding his Answer, he said, He would do them what Good he cou'd. The Abbot desir'd it under his Hand; and *Mahomet* not knowing how to write, dipped his Hand in Ink, and making an Impression with it on a clean Sheet of Paper, gave it them as a Confirmation of his Promise. *Mahomet* arriving at his Grandeur afterwards, confirm'd their Privileges, but on Condition that they should give Victuals to the *Arabs* in the Neighbourhood. They performed this a great while, by letting down Bread in the Basket with which they took up Pilgrims, because they durst not suffer the *Arabs* to come into the Monastery: But 400 of them coming sometimes in a Day, and having frequently robb'd them of their Corn as coming to the Monastery, *Thevenot* says, they were oblig'd to wall up the Gates, and fled to the Monastery of *Tor*, after they had been in this Place above 1000 Years. This must have probably happen'd about 1650; for when *Monconys* was there in 1647, the *Greeks* were still in Possession of it. He says, That *Solyman* Emperor of the *Turks* took away the Paper which *Mahomet* had dawb'd with his Hand, left them a Copy of it, and confirm'd their Privileges; and that over the great Gate of the Convent there's a Safe-guard in *Arabick*, engrav'd upon Marble, that was given them by *Mahomet*, to which the *Arabs*

and *Turks* pay a mighty Respect. At a considerable Distance in the same Plain, says *Coppin*, there are the Remains of two other Convents, one of which serv'd for a College to the rest; and the other is call'd the Monastery of 40 Martyrs, which lies betwixt Mount *Sinai* and *Horeb*. It has also a pleasant Garden, but inferior to that of *St. Saviour*. About 600 Paces from that of the 40 Martyrs there's a great spotted grey Stone about 4 or 5 Foot high, and 3 broad, and has 12 Holes, about a Foot wide each. There are no other Rocks or Stones near it; and they pretend, that this was the Rock from whence *Moses* brought the Water by Miracle to satisfy the *Israelites*. This Rock is mentioned both by *Thevenot* and *Monconys*. The latter says, 'tis 41 Foot and a half round, and above 13 Foot and a half high, and has a sort of a Girdle from the Top on both Sides to the Foot, which he thinks to be the Channel, into which the Water run from a Multitude of Holes that appeared in the Rock. He adds, it was the most remarkable Thing, and what satisfied his Curiosity most of any Thing he saw in that Country.

Monconys gives the following Account of the three neighbouring Mountains: After he had travelled up the Half of the first Mountain, which joins the Convent on the W. he found great Pieces of Chrystal and a good Fountain of Water in the Rock, and on the Top of the Mountain a Chapel dedicated to the Virgin. From hence he ascended a second Mountain, and found two Gates by the Way, built on purpose to prevent Pilgrims going up without first confessing themselves. He took 5 Hours and a half before he could come to the Top of this second Mountain. There he saw abundance of ruinous Hermitages; but *Thevenot* says, That in Mount *Horeb* alone there were anciently above 14000 Hermits. They pretend to shew the Grotto here where *Elias* hid himself when he fled from the Fury of *Jezabel*, 1 Kings 19 8, 9. There is one called the Hermitage of *St. Stephen*, into which one must creep, and it is no higher than for a Man to sit in. Here they say *St. Stephen* stay'd 40 Years, and there's a Thing like a Bed cut out of the Rock. There's another where they say two Sons of a King of *Ethiopia* liv'd 40 Years; and in-

stead of lying a-Bed, only lean'd a-cross a Chain of Iron. There are many other such Monkish Stories, for which we refer to the afore-named Authors. From this Mountain he ascended Mount *Sinai* by a very rugged and difficult Way, hew'd out of the Rock by St. *Helen's* Order. In an Hour and a half he came to the Top of the Mountain, where they shew'd him a hollow Rock, in which they suppose *Moses* stay'd the 40 Days he was on the Mountain. Above that there's a Greek Church, with a Chappel for Western Christians. From hence they descend by 11 Steps to another Cave, which opens to the E. where they suppose *Moses* receiv'd the Law. Above this the *Arabs* have built a Mosque, with abundance of Fruit-Trees, &c. about it. On the Top of the Mountain there was anciently a fine Church, demolish'd by an Earthquake. From hence, *Monconys* says, there's a Prospect of a vast mountainous Country, and of the *Red Sea*, which has a Gulph that lies nearer the *Mediterranean* than that of *Suez*. At the Foot of the Mountain, near the Monastery of the 40 Martyrs, he saw fine Orange-Trees. He says, the Cold is very great there in the Winter. After that he ascended Mount *St. Catherine*, which took him up two Hours and a half, tho' he walked very fast, the Weather being cold. On the Top of the Mountain there's a Chappel of Stone without Mortar. From hence there's a much larger Prospect of the Country than from Mount *Sinai*, which there looks like a little Hill, and the *Red Sea* like a small River. As he came down from the Mountain, he saw a great many Stones which are naturally impress'd with the Figures of Leaves, Herbs, and Trees, in black Strokes. He broke some of them, and found the same Figures in the Inside; but those Impressions are easily rubbed off, and the Stones are not capable of being polish'd. There are abundance of Fountains which flow out of the Rock, and fall into little Basins, that are very agreeable to the Sight. In the neighbouring Plain they shew the Place where *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, were swallow'd up; a great Stone upon which the Brazen Serpent was erected, and two hollow ones, that they pretend to be the Mould in which *Aaron* cast the Golden Calf, and

abundance of little Hills where they think the Men were buried that *Moses* order'd to be slain for worshipping that Idol. But *Korah* and his Companions seem to have fallen near Mount *Hormah*, on the Border of the *Amalekites*, *Numb.* 14. 45. and the Brazen Serpent was set up near Mount *Hor*, at a great Distance from hence, *Numb.* 21. 3, 4, and 8.

The *venot* gives the following Account of the *Arabians* who live in these Wildernesses: Some of them have Drawers, and a furr'd Vest of Sheep-Skins sew'd together, the Wool of which they turn inward in cold, and outward in hot Weather, and some of them wear a sort of Slippers. The Women are very ill clad, and cover their Faces with a Linen-Cloth, which has Holes for their Eyes. Their Tents are made of Goat's Hair, and very ugly. Their chief Dainty is a sort of Buns, the Flower of which is mix'd with a little Butter and Honey, and they bake them on Embers. Their Desarts are divided into Tribes, and their Tribes into Families. Each Tribe has a great *Scheik* or Captain, who presides over all the other *Scheiks* or Captains of Families, who administer Justice to them, and may punish with Fine or Death, as their Crimes deserve. This Office is hereditary; and if a *Scheik* of a Family die without Sons, all the Family assemble, and chuse the most virtuous Man among them, and then intreat the great *Scheik* to approve their Election; and if he die without a Son, the whole Tribe elects one in his stead. The *Turkish* Basha's give the great *Scheiks* an Allowance to keep their Tribes in Peace, and the Caravans are also in Pay with 'em for safe Passage; so that those poor Fellows think themselves great Princes. Sultan *Amurath* would have confin'd them to live in Towns; but they refus'd it. They keep constant Spies, to observe if the *Turks* have any Design against them, that they may either resist or fly, as they see Occasion; and if they chuse the latter, no Army can pursue them without Danger of being ruin'd by Hunger and Thirst, or overwhelmed with Tempests of Sand, besides being continually expos'd to their IncurSIONS from the Mountains and Passes. Their Arms are Launces, Scymiters, and long Daggers, and Bucklers made of the Skin of the Fish they call

call *Seaman*. They feed their Horses as they do themselves, with Camel's Milk, Flesh dried in the Sun, Butter and Wheat, which makes them very strong; and tho' but small, they are very swift, capable of much Fatigue, and so well train'd, that they will move as they please, and stand wherever they leave them. They feed their Camels in like Manner; which being swifter, they make use of to retire in pressing Dangers. When they have Intestine Wars, the great Scheiks are their Leaders; and if they kill one another in Time of Peace, the Relations of the Deceas'd carry the Criminal before the Great Scheik, who fines, or orders them to be put to Death, as he sees Occasion. But they generally revenge the Death of their Leaders, tho' it be 100 Years after. When they marry, the Bridegroom feasts the Relations on both Sides according to his Ability: But if any of the Bride's Friends dislike the Match afterwards, they pay him the Charge of the Treat, and the Marriage is dissolved. They all pretend to be Musselmen, yet make no other Prayers but in the Name of God. They are so dextrous at Stealing, that 'tis almost impossible to prevent it. One of them stole the Bassa's Signet at *Suez* while he was using it.

Since the *Red Sea* washes this Country, as it does the other *Arabia's*, we shall describe it here. Some derive the Name from its red Sands, or red Shrubs which grow in it: Others from a King of *Egypt* call'd *Erythraeus*, which signifies Red, he being the first who employ'd small Vessels to sail on this Sea. But *Bockart* derives it from King *Erythra*, the *Edom* of the *Hebrews*, whose Posterity were the *Edomites* or *Idumeans*; and that by the Scriptures appears to have been *Esau*. The *Hebrews* likewise call'd it the Sea of *Suph*, because of its being full of *Alga Marina*, or Sea-Weed. *Coppin* makes the Length of it from Cape *Guardafui*, where it begins to enter betwixt *Asia* and *Africa*, to *Suez* on the N. End of it, 1500 Miles. The Streights of *Babelmandel* or *Mocca* he makes about 200 Miles from the Cape, and says, it was formerly shut up there with an Iron Chain. *Moll* makes it about 30 Miles broad there, with an Island in the Middle. From hence it runs up 1300 Miles betwixt *Africa* and *Asia*: And

this, *Coppin* says, is properly call'd the *Red Sea*, or *Arabian Gulph*. We have already taken Notice, that great Vessels go no further than *Toro*, from whence Goods are carried in smaller Vessels to *Suez*, and from thence to *Cairo*, or other Towns on the *Mediterranean*. *Thervenot* says, in many Places it is not above 8 or 9 Miles over, which must be at the N. End; for every where else, except at the Streights of *Babelmandel*, 'tis of a considerable Breadth, tho' it lessens by degrees as it runs Northward. It ebbs and flows like the Ocean, and is full of Rocks and Shelves, which have prov'd fatal to many Ships. It was formerly a Sea of great Trade, all the Drugs, Spices, Precious Stones, Pearls, and other Commodities from the *Indies*, and other Places of the *East*, being transported this Way to *Aleppo*, *Alexandria*, &c. till the Passage to the *East-Indies* by the Cape of *Good Hope* was discover'd by the *Portuguese*; and the *Venetians* had a great Trade by transporting those Commodities from *Aleppo*, &c. into *Europe*, &c. *Mr. Pory*, who translated *Leo Africanus*, says, the Middle of this Sea is safely navigable by Day or Night, being clear, and 25 or 30 Fathoms deep: But the Eastern and Western Shores are so full of Rocks, Shoals, and small Islands, that they are not to be pass'd, except by Day-light, and with good Pilots. *Galvano* says, the Traffick in this Sea was begun by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, 277 Years before Christ; *Cosir*, anciently call'd *Myos* or *Hormos*, on the Coast, being the usual Harbour from whence they sail'd to the *Indies*, and whither they returned from thence. The Goods were sent by Land to *Coptus*, and down the *Nile* to *Alexandria*, where the Trade was so great, that *Ptolomy Auletes* had 7 Millions and a half per Annum of Gold for Customs. The *Romans*, when Masters of this Country, doubled the Sum, having sent Annually to the *Indies*, says *Pliny*, 100 Ships, and for every Crown they returned 100. When the *Vandals*, &c. overturn'd the *Roman Empire*, that Commerce ceas'd. It was afterwards renew'd, when *Capha*, in the *Chersonesus Taurica*, belonging to the *Genoese*, became the Mart for it; then *Trebizond*; next *Samarcand*, from whence the *Turks* convey'd their Goods to *Damascus*, *Barutti*, and *Aleppo*. In 1300, the Sultans of *Egypt* restor'd the Passage by the

Red

Red Sea, which continu'd till the Way by the Cape of Good Hope was found out by the Portuguese. Some of the Kings of Egypt, of whom *Sesostris* was the first, attempted to cut a Passage for Ships of the greatest Burden betwixt the *Red Sea* and the Nile, to shorten that Trade, the Marks of which are still remaining. *Darius* the Persian, and one of the *Ptolomies*, attempted the like; but it was abandon'd, lest the *Red Sea*, which is higher than the *Mediterranean*, should drown the Country. *Varenus* gives this politick Reason why the Turks have never attempted it, viz. They very well know the Christians to be superior to them in Maritime Power, and are afraid they would make themselves Masters of this Passage, and cut off the Communication betwixt their Dominions in *Africa* and *Asia*, and invade both at Pleasure. *Thevenot* says, there are very good Oysters, and other Shell-Fish, those call'd *seamen*, Chagrins, which resemble Sea-Dogs, and other extraordinary Fish in this Sea. *Bochart* observes, that the Egyptian *Sijim*, whom the Greeks call'd *Icthyophagi*, liv'd on the Coast of this Sea, and thinks the Psalmist alludes to them Ps. 74. 14. where he says, *Thou breakest the Heads of Leviathan in Pieces, and gavest him to be Meat to the People inhabiting the Wilderness*; which not only relates to the drowning of *Pharaoh* and his Host, but to the Egyptians eating much Fish, and particularly Whales, as is mention'd by *Diodorus*. *Herbert* says, That from *Suachen*, a noted Place on the *Ethiopick* Coast, to *Alcozar*, which is 100 Leagues, there grows abundance of red Coral.

The chief Rivers here are, 1. That call'd the River of *Trajan*, which runs thro' this Country, and falls into the *Red Sea*. 2. *Rhinocorura*, formerly mention'd, which in Scripture is call'd the Brook or River of Egypt. It runs by the Borders of *Idumæa* into the Lake *Sirbon*, with which it falls into the *Red Sea*, according to *Heylin*; but 'tis a plain Mistake, for that River falls into the *Mediterranean* near the Town of *Rhinocorura*, and the Lake *Sirbon* discharges it self likewise into that Sea. This Lake being many times overflow'd with Sand, has frequently swallow'd up Bodies of *Arabians*, and other Troops who marched that Way. It lies on the N. Side of the Isthmus, which

joins *Asia* and *Africa*. *Coppin* says, there are several little Towns still in *Arabia Petraea*, but at a great Distance from one another, with vast Desarts between them, and their Capital *Petra* is now called *Machan*.

A R A B I A D E S E R T A.

Ptolomy says, it has Part of *Syria* and *Arabia Petraea* on the W. *Chaldaea* or *Babylonia* on the E. Part of *Mesopotamia* on the N. and *Arabia Felix* on the S. Some of the Ancients, especially *Eratosthenes*, call all *Arabia*, except *Arabia Felix*, by the Name of *Deserta*; and sometimes they call all that was subject to the Kings of *Petraea* by the Name of *Petraea*, which makes the Boundaries of those Countries uncertain. *Ptolomy* makes *Thapsacum* the first Town of *Arabia Deserta*, which we, according to *Pliny* and *Stephanus*, have describ'd in *Palmyrene*. *Cluverius* says, it is now called *Arden*, has *Petraea* and *Cælo-Syria* on the W. *Euphrates* on the N. *Babylonia* on the E. and *Arabia Felix* on the S. *Moll* makes it much larger, bounds it with *Cælo-Syria* on the N. *Syria* and *Arabia Petraea* on the N. W. the *Red Sea* on the W. the River *Euphrates*, *Iraca*, and the Gulph of *Bassora*, on the E. and N. E. and *Arabia Felix* on the S. *Ptolomy* places the *Catanei* and *Cauchabeni* in the N. near the *Euphrates*; the *Aisita*, *Agræi*, *Morteni*, and *Masani*, in the Midland Parts; the *Cedrei*, *Agubeni*, *Rhaabeni*, and *Orcheni*, in the S. *Heylin* derives the Name from its vast Desarts. Some Authors call it *Aspera*, because of its Roughness; *Inferior*, because of its Situation; and *Cava*, because of its Vallies.

Those that travel the Desarts must carry Provisions with them, and direct their Course by the Stars. A Country, says *Guilandinus Melchior*, that has neither Men, Beasts, Birds, Trees, Grass or Pasture, and nothing but Sands and rocky Mountains, except on the Borders of *Arabia Felix* and the *Euphrates*, where there are a few Towns. *Luyts* says, 'tis less mountainous than other Parts of *Arabia*, but abounds more with sandy Desarts, except near the *Euphrates*, where it is fruitful and well cultivated. The ancient Inhabitants liv'd in Tents, as many of the Moderns do still, and for that Reason are call'd in Scripture *Kedarims*; the gene-

general Name for all those who liv'd so. It is memorable in Scripture for being the Country of *Job*, who liv'd, according to *Spanheim* and *Cellarius*, in the N. Parts of it, near the *Euphrates*, call'd the Land of *Us* or *Ausitis*. *Cellarius* places his Seat about 40 Miles S. from *Thapsacus*, 40 from the *Euphrates*, 60 S. E. from *Palmyra*, and about 200 N. E. from *Jerusalem*. This Situation is confirm'd from *Job's* being invaded by the *Chaldeans* and *Sabeans*, who carried off his Cattle and Servants; those *Sabeans* not being such as are call'd by that Name in *Arabia Felix*, but the Descendants of *Seba*, Grandson to *Abraham* by *Keturah*, who settled in those Parts. It agrees likewise with the Habitation of his Friends who visited him, and his being call'd the greatest Man of the *East*, which confutes the Opinion of those who suppose it to have been *Us* near *Damascus*, or that in the Land of *Edom*, since it had neither been worth their while, nor practicable for the *Sabeans* to pass so many mountainous Countries and Deserts, to plunder *Job*. Besides, *Damascus* lay W. and *Edom* S. from *Judaea*, where the Old Testament was wrote; whereas 'tis certain that *Job* dwelt E. from thence; and the Country was so call'd from *Us* the Son of *Nachor*, the Brother of *Abraham*, *Gen.* 22. 21. We refer the Curious, who would know more of this, to the Authors above-mentioned. His Friend *Bildad* the *Shuhite* is suppos'd to be descended from *Suah*, Son to *Abraham* by *Keturah*, *Gen.* 25. 2. His other Friend, *Elihu* the *Buzzite*, *Job.* 32. 2. seems to be descended from *Buz*, the 2d Son of *Nachor*; and his Country call'd *Busitis* lay near *Uz*. The Wise-men who came from the *East* to see our Saviour are also suppos'd to be of this Country, according to *Pf.* 72. 10. where *David* foretold, That the Kings of *Arabia* and *Saba* should bring their Gifts. For *Ptolomy* places *Saba* in this Country, and *Cellarius* the like, S. from the Land of *Uz*. This was likewise the Opinion of *Justin Martyr*, *Tertullian*, *Cyprian*, and others of the ancient Fathers.

The Towns of this Country, mention'd by *Ptolomy* on the Banks of *Euphrates* and the *Persian Gulph*, are so uncertain as to their Situation, and so little not'd in History, that we pass them over. *Cellarius* is of Opinion, that *Saba* above-mentioned

was built by *Seba*, *Abraham's* Grandson by *Keturah*. For it is plain from *Gen.* 25. that *Abraham* sent all his other Sons but *Isaac* into the *East* Country. 2. *Thema*, or *Themma*, mention'd *Job.* 6. 19. *Isa.* 21. 14, &c. is in this Country, and seems to have been built by *Tema*, one of *Ishmael's* Sons, *Gen.* 25. 15. and it's probable *Eliphaz* the *Temanite*, another of *Job's* Friends, might be from hence. The *Agræi*, plac'd in this Country by *Ptolomy*, are suppos'd to be the Descendants of *Hagar*, by *Spanheim*. The *Nomades* and *Scenitæ* may also be conjectur'd from *Strabo* and *Pliny* to have liv'd in this Part. *Coppin* says, this Country has only one or two Towns now on the Frontiers of *Damascus*. *Mallet* says, it has several Towns, the chief of which is *Ana* or *Anabe*, on the Bank of the *Euphrates*. It consists only of two large Streets along the River: That on the N. Side inhabited by Mechanicks, and that on the S. by those of the better Sort, and is two Leagues in Length. The Houses are but one Story high, and built of Plaister. There are pleasant Gardens for a League round, and Houses of Pleasure, which are not to be found any where else in the Country. The *Sansons* say, That most of the Princes, according to some, are Vassals to the Great Turk; but the People are more inclin'd to the *Persians*, and several of the Lords their Vassals. Others say, 'tis all under one King, who has about 2000 Men constantly in Arms, and moves his Court or City of Tents as he pleases, for the Convenience of Pasturage, and always places his Tents in the same Order, in regular Streets, his own Pavillion being in the Middle; and that he is continually follow'd by a great many Noblemen, Tradesmen and Strangers, whose Quarters are all known, and easily found.

A R A B I A F E L I X.

Cellarius says, it has the *Arabian Bay* on the W. *Arabia Petraea* and *Deserta* on the N. the great Ocean on the S. and the *Persian Gulph* on the E. The *Sansons* say, 'tis in some Places 3, 4, and 500 Leagues, in Length and Breadth. It had the Name of *Felix* from the great Quantity of Spice it produces, especially in the S. Parts. *Coppin*

pin says, it is larger than the other two, and yields abundance of Perfumes and Jewels. The best Pearls in the World are found about the Isles of *Baharem*, on the E. Side of it. It produces likewise Incense, Myrrh, Aloes, Balm, Cinnamon, Cassia, and abundance of Odoriferous and Medicinal Plants. The *Turks* call it *Ayaman*. It has many Towns, especially on the Coasts, which we shall take Notice of in their Place. *Mallet* says, this Country was called *Saba* by the *Hebrews*, and *Arabia Secunda* by the *Latins*. 'Tis divided into several lesser Countries, with Capitals of their own Name, says *Davity*. We shall describe the chief of 'em as we come to them. *Luyts* says, 'tis a kind of Peninsula, whose Isthmus being a continued Ridge of Mountains, is above 500 Miles over. *Ammianus Marcellinus* gives a very hyperbolical Account of this *Arabia*. He says, it was rich in Corn, Cattle, and Vines, as well as odoriferous Spices, was well furnish'd with Roads, good Harbours, rich and numerous Towns, sumptuous Palaces of Kings, many clear Brooks and Rivers, and enjoy'd a temperate Air, so that there was nothing wanting to make it happy; from whence others conclude, that it must needs have been the Seat of *Paradise*; but modern Travellers find it quite otherwise, for the *Nubian* Geographer says, the middle Part of the Country is sandy, mountainous, and desolate, and very difficult to travel for want of Water. *Tavernier* says, the People on the E. Coast about *Mascati* are extream poor; and 'tis so barren towards the *Red Sea* on the W. Side as far as *Mecca*, that the Caravans must starve did they not carry their Provisions with them; so that its Fertility is only in the S. W. Corner. This Difference of Accounts must proceed either from this, That the Ancients gave the Character of it in general from the fruitful Places they saw; or the Inhabitants being much drain'd by Wars, the Country is grown barren for want of Cultivation, as happen'd to *Asia Minor*, *Palestine*, and *Syria*.

The ancient Inhabitants, tho' more civiliz'd than the other *Arabians*, had many barbarous Customs. They allow'd a Community of Women without Regard to the nearest Relations, provided they kept within their own Families: But they reckon'd

it Adultery, and punish'd it with Death, to lie with a Woman that was not of their own Kindred. Thus *Strabo* talks of a King of this Country who had 15 Sons, and but one Daughter, who (according to Custom) was their common Wife. Every one of them had a Staff of the like Make, which they placed at her Door, and none of the rest would enter till that was removed. The Lady growing weary, got a Staff like one of theirs, which she placed at her Door to avoid their brutish Importunity. One of them having left his 14 Brothers all in one Place, came to the Door, and finding a Staff there, accus'd her of Adultery, which oblig'd her to discover the Matter: Upon which she was acquitted, and the Frequency of their Visits restrain'd. They were as barbarous to the Bodies of their deceas'd Friends, and threw those of their greatest Princes on the Dunghills. They boasted of their Descent from *Jupiter*, and despis'd all Arts and Sciences, as Disparagements to their Nobility. They were noted for being faithful in their Promises, in which they are not follow'd by their Successors. They still allow Polygamy, and apply themselves chiefly to Grazing and Merchandize, and contemn Mechanicks. They did not mix with other Nations till conquer'd by the *Turks*, who plac'd Garrisons among 'em. Their chief Boast is, that *Mahomet* was their Countryman, which ought to be their greatest Shame.

The Phoenix was reckon'd one of its chief Rarities, which they alledg'd, after 5 or 600 Years old, burnt her self in a Nest of Spices, and another arose out of her Ashes: But 'tis long since this was discover'd to be a Fable. The Country abounds with Ostriches, especially in the Desarts, where they lay their Eggs in the Sand, and leave them to be hatched by the Heat. The Natives sell their Skins with the Feathers on to Merchants. They are said to swallow Stones, Iron, or any Thing that comes in their Way.

The ancient Inhabitants, according to *Pliny* and *Ptolomy*, were, 1. The *Sabai*, the chief People of the Country, who liv'd from one Side of the Peninsula to the other, and were famous for their Frankincense. They liv'd in the S. Part of the Peninsula, and had several Towns on the Shore of the *Red*

Red Sea, and in the Inland Parts. Among the latter was *Tomala*, famous for their Trade in Frankincense. *Diodorus Siculus* places *Saba*, their Metropolis, on a Mountain. It gave Name to the whole Country; and tho' not very large, was the fairest Town in *Arabia*. *Ptolomy* places it near the *Arabian Gulph*, Lat. 16. 50. and makes it a great Town and Castle. This is the *Sheba* whose Queen came to see *Solomon*, 1 *Kings* 10. 1. so that she was very properly call'd the Queen of the South; *Matt.* 12. 42. and of the uttermost Parts of the East on that Side. *Cellarius* places it about 45 Miles E. from the Shore of the *Arabian Bay*, Lat. 20. 10. *Pliny* and *Agathademon* speak of *Mariaba* as their Metropolis, place it on a Hill full of Trees, and say, they had a King, who reign'd over several others. The *Atramitæ* were Part of the *Sabeans*. *Pliny* makes *Sabota* their Metropolis, and says, it had 60 Temples within its Walls. *Ptolomy* calls it *Saubatha*, and the People *Adramitæ*, and says, *Cane* was their Harbour, which lay on the S. Coast, near the Island of *Dioscorides*. *Cellarius* places *Maraba* about 40 Miles N. E. from *Seba*, and *Sabatha* about 60 Miles S. E. from *Maraba*.

2. The *Maranitæ*, so call'd from *Marane* their Capital. *Pliny* makes them Part of the *Sabæi*. Their Country was possess'd afterwards by the *Garondenses*.

3. The *Minæi*. *Pliny* joins them to the *Adramitæ* in the Inland Parts, and says, their Metropolis was *Carna*. *Cellarius* places it N. E. from *Saba* about 40 Miles.

4. The *Catabani*. *Strabo* places them near the Streights of the *Arabian Gulph*. Their Country produc'd Frankincense, and their Metropolis was *Tamna*, which *Pliny* says had 65 Temples.

5. The *Chatramotitæ* lay E. from the *Catabani*. Their Country produced Myrrh, and their Metropolis was *Cabatanum*.

6. The *Ascitæ*, who lay from the Mountain *Syagrus* along the Coast.

7. The *Homeritæ*. *Ptolomy* places them on the S. Shore of *Arabia Felix*, from the Streights Eastward, and their chief Town was *Arabia*, near the Coast.

8. The *Sapphoritæ* lay betwixt the *Homeritæ* and the *Sabæi*. Their Capital was *Saphar*, about 50 Miles S. E. from *Saba*. 'Tis sometime call'd *Save*, and a Royal Town.

9. The *Sarraceni* are by *Pliny* plac'd in this Country. *Ptolomy* does the like, but in the upper Part, which borders on *Arabia Petraea*; yet some suspect the reading of the Word, because the *Saracens* were not heard of so early.

Ptolomy places next to them, 10. The *Thamydeni*, or *Thamudeni*: Their chief Town *Badanatha*.

These are the most remarkable of the ancient People of this Country, who are reckon'd about 31 in Number.

Panchia or *Panchæa* is also reckon'd Part of *Arabia Felix*, and by some of *Lower Egypt*. Others call it a very rich Island in the Southern Ocean; so that there's nothing certain concerning it.

The chief Towns on the Coast of *Arabia Felix* mention'd by *Ptolomy* are, 1. *Hippos*, near the Borders of the *Midianites*. 2. *Cophar*, about 20 Miles E. from *Hippos*. 3. *Zabram*, a Metropolis or Royal Town, about 15 Miles E. from *Cophar*. 4. *Baddo*, a Royal Town, about 25 Miles E. from *Zabram*. 5. *Muza*, an Emporium, about 30 Miles S. from *Saba*. 6. *Ocelis*, another Emporium, about 30 Miles E. from *Muza*. 'Twas from hence they us'd to sail to the *Indies*.

On the S. Coast lay *Arabia*, formerly mentioned, an Emporium also; then *Cana* or *Cane*, whither Ships arriv'd from *Egypt* to buy Frankincense; next *Trulla*, at the Mouth of the River *Prion*, over against the Island of *Dioscorides*.

On the *Persian Bay* he takes Notice of *Regama*, or *Regma*; the *Solis Promontorium*, &c. and further N. on the same Bay lay the *Garrai*, according to *Strabo* the richest Inhabitants of this Country next to the *Sabeans*. Here lay also that call'd the *Magorum Sinus*, or the Wise-men's Bay. We refer the Curious, who would know more of the Antiquities of this Country, to *Spanheim* and *Harduin*. The Wood from whence the best Frankincense was had lay in the Country of the *Sabeans*, and was reckon'd 100 Miles long, and 50 broad.

The modern State of Arabia Felix.

Sanson divides it into 7 principal Parts, viz. *Oman*, *Segar*, *Hadramut*, *Tebama*, *Hagiaz*, *Jamama*, and *Bahaim*. Some leave

out *Segar*, and add *Ormuz*; but *Sanfon* makes it a Part of *Oman*.

We begin with the most Northerly, and shall take them so as they lie in the Course of the Map.

1. H A G I A Z,

Lies on the Coast of the *Red Sea*, betwixt *Tehama* on the S. and *Arabia Petraea* on the N. according to *Luyts*; but *Sanfon* places *Jaman* betwixt it and *Tehama*. 'Tis divided into the Districts of *Mecca* and *Medina*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Egra*, *Ptolomy's Agra*, now *Algjar*. *Heylin* says, it lies on the Shore of the *Red Sea*, and is the Harbour of *Medina*, from which it lies 3 Days Journey.

2. *Jathrib*, or *Jatrib*, in the Way betwixt *Algjar* and *Medina*. *Heylin* says, it was the Birth place of *Mahomet*, who fortified it with a Mud Wall when he first began to appear.

3. *Medina*, by the *Arabians* call'd *Medina-shalnabi*, i. e. the City of the Prophet, because 'tis the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*: But the Story of his being put in an Iron Coffin, and drawn up to the Roof of the Temple by Virtue of an Adamant, is a Fable. *Moll* places it about 70 Miles E. from the Shore of the *Red Sea*, near a River, about Lat. 25. Long. 55. 48. It lies near the River *Laakie*. *Mallet* says, it has not above 1200 Houses, and those but one Story high, except such as are for the *Mahometan* Clergy, who are mightily rever'd by the *Turks*, because of the Opinion they have of their Holiness, and of their Knowledge to explain the *Alcoran*. There are many considerable Mosques in this City; but the chief is that called *Mos-akiba*, or *Most Holy*. 'Tis supported by 400 Columns, upon which hang above 3000 Silver Lamps, and has a small Tower lin'd with Plates of Silver, and pav'd with Cloth of Gold. Here *Mahomet's* Coffin is kept, under a Canopy of Cloth of Silver, embroider'd with Gold, which the *Bassa* of *Egypt* sends Annually with great Magnificence by Order of the Gr. Seignior. *Heylin* says, the Coffin is cover'd with a Carpet of green Velvet, sent thither Annually by the Grand Seignior, and cut into innumerable Shreds by the Priests, who enrich themselves by selling them as pre-

cious Relicks to the Pilgrims. *Mallet* says, no Christian is suffer'd to come within 19 Leagues of this Place on Pain of Death; but some converted Pilgrims have told, that the Coffin is supported by black Marble Pillars, and encompassed with Ballisters of Silver, hung with abundance of Lamps, the Smoke of which makes the Place very dark. *Thevenot* says, 'tis encompassed with Iron Grates, because some Christians did formerly profess themselves *Mahometan* Priests, in order to steal it. The *Turks* are obliged by their Principles, once in their Life-time, to visit this Tomb, tho' none perform it now but mean People; for the *Mufti* dispenses with the rich, on Condition of sending a Deputy, and paying a Sum of Money. The Windows of the Tower in which it stands have Silver Grates, and the inside Wall at the Head of the Tomb is adorned with precious Stones of infinite Value, presented by *Mahometan* Emperors, Kings and Princes: Among others a Diamond two Inches long, and one broad, and another sent by Sultan *Osman* equal to that, which the Grand Seigniors wear on their Fingers. Below it there's a Half-Moon of Gold, set with Diamonds of great Value. The Bulk of the Pilgrims are not allow'd to see the Tomb, but only the Tower where it stands. The Tower is hung with red and white Damask, and round the Hangings are writ in *Arabick*, *God is God, and Mahomet is Prophet*. These Hangings are renew'd in 7 Years, and at the Succession of every Emperor. The Doors of the Gallery round it are of Silver. *Bouffingault* says, this Mosque is almost square, 100 Paces long, and 90 broad, has two Gates, and the Nave is vaulted.

4. *Mecca*, by some thought to be *Ptolomy's Mechara*. *Moll* places it about 210 Miles S. E. from *Medina*, *Heylin* 270; the *Sanfons* say 230, *Herbert* but 170, *Mallet* 4 Days Journey. He says, 'tis the Birth place of *Mahomet*, and lies in a Valley surrounded with Mountains, thro' which there are 4 Passages to the Town. The neighbouring Territory is so barren, that it brings forth neither Corn, Fruit, Trees, nor Grass. They have no Water but what is brought from elsewhere, which makes it very dear; but the Superstition of the *Mahometans*, which brings Pilgrims thither from all

Parts,

Parts, makes up those Defects; so that they have Provisions in Plenty. It contains about 6000 Houses, most of them of Brick, and terraced on the Top. The chief *Mahometan* Mosque, and the best frequented in the World, lies in the middle of the Town. It is seen at a great Distance, because of its high Roof in Form of a Dome, and two Towers extraordinary high, and well built. It has above 100 Gates, with a Window over each. The Plan of the Mosque is low, so that they descend to it by 10 or 12 Steps. They alledge, that *Abraham* built his first House on the very Spot, and that *Mahomet* was born here. The Richness of its Tapestries and Gildings is wonderful, especially in one Part that has no Roof, and which they alledge was *Abraham's* House. The Entrance into it is by a Silver Door, as high as a Man. On one Side is a Chappel, with a deep Fountain of salt Water, which they throw upon the Pilgrims to expiate their Sins. The Vaults of the Mosque, and the Shops round it, are filled with a prodigious Quantity of rich Merchandize, particularly of Precious Stones, and Aromatick Powders of an admirable Scent. The City is open, and without Walls, gives Name to the Principality call'd the *Xeriff* of *Mecca*, and to the neighbouring Gulph. 'Tis govern'd by its own Prince, call'd the *Cheriff* or Sultan of *Mecca*, one of the most potent in *Arabia*, who derives his Origine from *Mahomet*, and is on that Account much esteemed by all *Mahometan* Princes, who make him large Presents to protect the Caravans from the wandering *Arabs*, says *Luyts*. Authors do not agree whether it be the Place of *Mahomet's* Birth or Burial. *Heylin* says, no Christian is allow'd to come within 5 Miles of it; and *Thevenot* adds, they are burnt without Mercy if they exceed that Bounds. The Mosque, he says, is call'd, *The House of God*, and is surrounded with a Wall to keep People from approaching it. He differs in his Account of it from *Mall.*, says it is but 15 Foot long, 12 broad, and 5 Fathom high. The Door is a Fathom and a half high, and a Fathom wide, is of Silver, and opens with two Leaves, and they go up to it by a Ladder. The Mosque is girt with 2 Belts of Gold, and has a Spout of Gold to carry off the Rain-Water. The Dome on the Roof

is supported by 3 Pillars of Aloes-Wood as big as a Man's Body, and 3 Fathom and a half long, of one entire Piece. It is hung with red and white Stuff. Near the Door there's a black Stone as big as a Man's Head, which they say came from Heaven, and was formerly white, but is now become black for the Sins of the People. He that can first kiss it on a certain Day, is held to be a Saint, and every one strives to kiss his Feet; so that he is frequently stifled on the Spot. This Temple is never enter'd but 4 times a Year; one of them the *Ramadam*, when they wash it with Rose-Water. But Persons of Quality may enter it at any Time for paying 100 Chequins. 'Tis cover'd on the Outside with rich Stuffs, presented by the Gr. Seignior, and other *Mahometan* Princes. The old Stuffs belong to him when their little *Bairam* or *Easter* falls on a *Friday*, and he gives Pieces of them to new Mosques, which serve for a Consecration. When the *Bairam* falls out otherwise, the Stuffs come to the Sultan of *Mecca*, who takes off the Gold, cuts them in Pieces, and sells them for Relicks to the Pilgrims, from whom he squeezes Money by many other Inventions. His Predecessors us'd formerly to exact greater Sums; and one of them having extorted a great Sum from a Sultaness of *Egypt*, and disowning any King but himself, the Sultaness prompted her Husband to Revenge, who defeating the Sultan of *Mecca* in a great Battle, obliged him by a Treaty, That he, with his Successors and Relations, should ever after ride bare-foot, which they still observe. When the Pilgrims come thither, there is a great Fair of all Commodities brought thither from the *Indies*, and the Caves in the Mountains serve them for Shops. Many come hither for Trade, and Multitudes for Devotion; for let a Man be never so criminal, if he make his Escape and get hither, he is accounted an honest Man. They sing Verses of the *Alcoran* in their Pilgrimage, and give Alms according to their Ability. Two Days before they arrive at *Mecca*, they strip themselves naked at a Place called *Raback*, and have only a Napkin to cover their Privities, and another about their Necks. They wear Sandals, that they may not touch the holy Ground, and continue thus 8 Days, during which

they must not be shaved, buy or sell, kill any thing, not so much as a Louse or a Flea; nor must they speak a hard Word to their Servants or Slaves; on Pain of giving Alms to the Poor, or a Sheep in Sacrifice. When they come to *Mecca*, they spend three Days in visiting their holy Places, and go round them, saying their Prayers with ridiculous Postures, in Imitation of an *Iman* that goes before them to show them the Manner. The three Days being over, they sacrifice Sheep, a good Part of which they distribute to the Poor, shave and drefs themselves, and then go to Mount *Arafat*, a short Day's Journey from hence, every Man carrying 42 Stones with him, which, during their 3 Days Stay there, they throw at the Devil's Head, who they alledge tempted *Abraham* in that Place when he was going to sacrifice *Ishmael*; for they will not allow it to be *Isaac*. Their Priests have imposed many other ridiculous Stories upon them relating to this Mountain, as that *Adam* and *Eve*, after they were drove from *Paradise*, wander'd 220 Years upon it, seeking one another, and at last met on the Top of it. When these Ceremonies are over, the Sultan *Cheriff* gives them his Blessing, and then they depart. The Pilgrims are sometimes 200000 in Number, and one of their Priests preaches to them from the Hill of *Arafat*; after which they sacrifice about 400000 Sheep in the Plain, and then return to *Mecca*; and they pretend, that the next Night after their Sacrifice a great Rain constantly happens, which carries away the Blood and Bones of their Sacrifices, tho' their *Bairam* alters 10 Days every Year: And this they look upon as an Approbation from Heaven to their Devotions. But *M. Thevenot* delivers it only as a Tradition, and therefore the Truth of the Fact may justly be questioned. He says, That about 6000 People died in the Caravan from *Cairo* to *Mecca* when he was in that Country, many of them being killed by the hot Winds, and other Hardships they met with in the Journey; and the Goods of all the Deceas'd belong to the *Emir Adgi*, who takes Care to meet them in their Return with a Convoy of Provisions, and is absolute Master during his being with them. By this Means, the poor deluded

People are encouraged to continue those Pilgrimages for the Profit of their Priests, and such Civil Officers; and those who perform it, are ever after highly esteemed. *Monconys* gives a different Account of their going to Mount *Arafat*, and says, they throw Stones at the Devil there in Remembrance of *Eve's* having done so when the Devil shew'd her her own Picture in a Glass, and told her, That it was another Wife whom *Adam* courted; so that they have the Fate of all other Idolaters to be grossly impos'd upon by inconsistent Legends. *Luyts* says, That when *Mahomet* was forced to leave *Mecca*, where the Inhabitants disapproved his Doctrine, he retir'd to *Medina*, was honourably entertain'd there, had Liberty to propagate his Religion, took up Arms with his Followers, and made it the Seat of his Empire, from whence it was called, *The City of the Prophet*. From his Flight, the *Hegira* or *Arabian* Account of Time took its Rise, and is referred to the 15th of July, A.C. 622. Between *Mecca* and *Medina* lies the Desert call'd the *Sandy Sea*, because the light Sands are blown up and down by Winds, to the great Danger of Travellers, who are obliged to guide themselves by a Mariner's Compass.

5. *Taief*, or *Tariff*. The *Nubian* Geographer places it 60 Miles E. from *Medina*, upon Mount *Ghasuan*, which he says was the highest, coldest, and most fruitful Mountain of *Arabia*, abounded with Fruits, particularly Grapes, which being dried, were carried to *Medina*. The Town, he says, was well water'd, and populous, tho' but small.

6. *Cufa*. *Heylin* says, it was the ordinary Residence of the first Caliphs, till the Seat of the Government was removed to *Damascus*. It was afterwards the usual Place of Meeting on Affairs of State, and as memorable for the Sepulchre of *Mortis Haly*, the Progenitor of the *Persian* Sophi's, as *Medina* is for that of *Mahomet*. We have no Account in what Part of the Country it lay.

7. *Ziden*, the Port of *Mecca*, from which it lies 40 Miles, on the *Red Sea*. Some call it *Gidda*, and others *Gedde*. 'Tis the Residence of a *Bassa*, wealthy, well built, and populous, but unwall'd.

2. The Province of J A M A M A,

Lies E. from *Hagiaz*. The chief Towns are, *Salamia*, *Jamama* the Capital on the River *Astan*, *Tima*, and *Hadruma*. The *Bengabres*, a powerful wandering sort of *Arabs*, inhabit this Country, infest their Neighbours with Robberies, and are very troublesome to the Caravans.

3. The Province of B A H A I M,

Lies E. from *Jamama*, and borders on the *Persian Gulph*. Most of it is subject to the *Turks*, and Part to the *Persians*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Lassach*, *Lacach*, or *Labsa*. Some place it in the Province of *Oman*. 'Tis the Seat of a *Beglerberg*. *Thevenot* calls it *Lehhsa*, and says, it is a Staple for *Indian* Commodities, which are transported from thence over all *Arabia Felix*, on the Frontiers of which *Sanfon* places it.

2. *El Catif*, a famous Sea-Port on the *Persian Gulph*, from whence it is called the Sea of *El-Catif*. *Sanfon* places it about 60 Miles N. from *Lacach*. It belong'd formerly to the *Turks*; but *Tavernier* says, it was taken by the *Basha* of *Bassora* in 1664. Whether it be since recover'd, we know not.

4. The Province of T E H A M A,

Lies S. from *Hagiaz*. It has the *Arabian Gulph* on the W. Its chief Towns are, *Dhafar* and *Sanaa*, *Saada*, &c. *Sanaa*, says the *Nubian Geographer*, lies in a temperate Air, and fruitful Soil, is one of the greatest and most populous Cities of *Arabia*, and 20 Days Journey from *Mecca* to the S. E. *Moll* places it near Lat. 15. Long. 67. *Sanfon* places it on the Frontiers of the Province of *Seger*. He says, 'tis one of the largest and strongest Cities of *Arabia*, stands on a Mountain, consists of about 4000 Houses, well built, has Walls 10 Cubits, and Ramparts 20 Cubits high. It has abundance of fine Vineyards, Meadows and Gardens, in the Neighbourhood. Its Territory is water'd with many Fountains, produces excellent Fruits, and the best Horses in *Arabia*.

5. The Province of H A D R A M U T,

Lies S. from *Tehama*, and runs a great Way E. on the *Indian Sea*. Its chief Towns are, 1. *Zibith* or *Zibet*. The *Nubian Geographer* calls it *Zabid* or *Zebid*, places it 20 Days Journey from *Mecca*, 50 Miles from the *Red Sea*, and 132 S. W. from *Sanaa*. *Sanfon* places it on a River of its own Name, 50 Miles E. from the *Red Sea*. *Moll* places it just on the Bank of that Sea, Lat. 15. Long. 64. *Heylin* says, it's now the Metropolis of the Country, and has a good Trade in Sugar, Spice, and Fruits. The *Nubian Geographer* says, it was in his Time the Center of the Trade of *Ethiopia*, *Egypt*, and *China*.

2. *Eltor*, a Sea-Port in this Country, and the only Town, says *Heylin*, where Christians are suffer'd to inhabit; but he does not tell us where it lies, nor do we find it in our Maps. We suppose it is *Torre* already described.

3. *Aden*, on the S. Coast, at the Entrance of the Straights of *Babelmandel*, Lat. 65. Long. 12. Some take it to be *Ptolomy's Madocce*; but it agrees better with the Situation of his Town called *Arabia*. The *Nubian Geographer* says, in his Time it was a small, but famous City, and a Center for the *East* and *West* Trades. 'Tis the Capital of a Kingdom of its own Name. 'Tis reckon'd one of the fairest and strongest Towns in *Arabia*, and has a capacious and well frequented Harbour. *Heylin* says, it contain'd about 6000 Inhabitants, and was treacherously surpris'd by the *Turks* in 1538, when they made it the Seat of a *Beglerberg*. But the *Arabians* revolted, and put themselves under the King of *Moccha*, to whom, says *Luyts*, it is still subject. *Sanfon* says, 'tis the finest and pleasantest Town in *Arabia*, defended by Walls on the Side of the Sea, and by Mountains on the Land-Side. Upon these Hills there are several Castles, which afford a delicate Prospect. It has a great Trade with the *East-Indies*, *Africa* and *Syria*. When the *Turks* took it, they hang'd their King at a Mast, and beheaded the King of *Zebit*, which they took at the same Time. *Herbert* says, That in his Time it was in a miserable Condition, and much short of the Accounts which *Osorius* and *Munster* gave of it. It is miserably scorched

by

by the Reflexion of the Sun from the barren Mountain *Cabobarra*. It lies out in the Sea upon a Promontory. The Town was large, but ill built, and bore all the Marks of Slavery since it was taken by the *Turks*. It had been formerly seiz'd by the *Portuguese*. It has a very strong Castle, well furnish'd with Cannon to command the Road. He supposes it to be the *Eden* mentioned *Ezekiel* 27. 23.

4. *Almacharane*, lies upon the Top of a high Mountain, of difficult Access, about 170 Miles N. E. from *Aden*, and has a Cistern capable of holding Water for 100000 People. 'Tis the Seat of a Cheque, one of their Princes.

5. *Mocha*, or *Mocca*, lies within the Streights, about 80 Miles N. W. from *Aden*, and has a King of its own.

6. *Oran*, which *Heylin* calls the Lock and Key of the Southern Ocean, but does not tell us where it lies.

7. *Fartach*, about 150 Miles E. from *Aden*, the Capital of a Kingdom of the same Name. It lies on a Cape. The Inhabitants are valiant, and their King makes a noble Defence against the *Turks*, since he heard of their Treatment of his Neighbours of *Zibit* and *Aden*.

8. *Dofar*, a Harbour belonging to the *Turk*; and, 9. *Pecher*, upon the same Coast, are the most remarkable Harbours in this Country, and furnish the greatest Quantity of the best Incense in *Arabia*.

6. The Province of S E G E R,

Lies N. E. from *Hadramut*, and contains the Principalities and Towns of *Gubelhaman*, *Alibinali*, *Amanzirifdin*, and others.

7. O M A N.

This is the largest Province of *Arabia Felix*, has *Tehama* and *Segra* on the W. *Jamama* and *Bahama* on the N. and N. W. the *Persian* Gulph on the E. and N. E. and the great Ocean, with several Islands, on the S. The Southern Coast is very barren as far as Cape *Razalgate*, which lies at the Mouth of the Gulph of *Ormus*; but from thence to Cape *Mocanden*, at the Mouth of the Streights of that Name, is one of the most fruitful Parts of all *Arabia*; from

whence some would confine the Name of *Felix* to this Corner. There are several fine Cities both on the Coast and within Land. The *Arabian* Geographer says, That *Sohar* on the Gulph of *Ormus*, about 250 Miles N. W. from Cape *Razalgate*, was one of the chief Places of Trade in the East, till the Commerce was transferred to *Ormus* on the *Persian* Side of the Gulph. The *Sansons* say, the Trade is now returned to *Mascata* in *Arabia Felix*, which is possessed by the *Portuguese*, and lies on the Bank of the Gulph of *Ormus*, 150 Miles N. W. from Cape *Razalgate*. *Tavernier* says, That *Mascata* or *Muskahat* is fortified with a strong Castle for Defence of the Harbour, and grew considerable in Trade after the taking of *Ormus* by the *Persians*. This City lies at the Foot of a Mountain, and has three Rocks at the Mouth of the Harbour, which make it of very difficult Access. He says, 'twas taken from the *Portuguese* by the Prince of *Norrennae*, a small Province, but the most fruitful in *Arabia*, who afterwards call'd himself King of that City; but according to *Sanson*, the *Portuguese* have since recover'd it. It depends on the Vice-Roy of *Goa*, and yields the *Portuguese* a great Revenue. The *Nubian* Geographer and *Heylin* are in a great Mistake as to the Distance of this Town from *Sohar*, which they make 450 Miles. *Sanson* makes *Sohar* but 60 Miles N. W. from *Mascata*, and *Moll* makes it about 110. *Mascata* was anciently the Port from whence Ships set out for *China*.

Heylin mentions in this Country, 1. *Hor*, on the Promontory call'd *Chorodemus*, which he says was a Garrison belonging to the King of *Ormus*. *Sanson* places it about 40 Miles W. from Cape *Razalgate*.

2. *Thema*, or *Theman*, which latter Travellers call *Zeman*. *Sanson* calls it *Theme*, and places it about 110 Miles S. E. from *Mascata*, and 70 N. W. from Cape *Razalgate*. *Benjamin of Tudela* says, it was a Town of 15 Miles square, and had a great deal of Arable Ground within the Walls. *Sanson* says, That in this Part of the Country lay the Town and Kingdom of *Maspha* within Land, about 150 Miles S. W. from *Sohar*.

3. *Mirabat*, or *Mirbat*, a Mountain and City, noted for Frankincense. *Heylin* supposes it to have been the ancient *Sabaa*. It lies

lies about 70 Miles S. W. from *Maspha*, and 230 from *Sohar*.

Sanfon says, That beyond *Cape Mocandon*, towards the Mouths of the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, we have, among other Places, *El-Catif*, formerly mentioned, which communicates its Name to the neighbouring Gulph, by the Ancients call'd the Gulph of *Persia*, and now the Gulph of *Bassora* and *Ormus*. The former is that Part which lies farthest within Land, near the Mouth of the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, and had its Name from the Town of *Bassora* or *Balsora*, which lies towards the upper End of it; and the other has its Name from the City of *Ormus*, which lies in an Island on the Coast of *Persia*. *Moll* makes this Coast from *El Catif* to *Julphur*, which is about 330 Miles long; and about 40 where broadest, a Part of *Persia*. *Sanfon* says, That *Lassach*, *El-Catif*, and some other Towns, belong to the *Turks*; that *El-Catif* is the ancient *Gerra*, the neighbouring Gulph the *Geraicus Sinus*, and the Isle of *Barem* the ancient *Tylos*. He takes likewise Notice, that in the Quarter call'd *Bahaim* or *Baharem*, already mention'd, lies the Towns and Kingdoms of *Mascat*, *Femen*, and *Lassach*, where are the best Horses in *Arabia*; and that there are several other Towns, some of which have their particular Kings or Princes, and some of them are Republicks, which is a Thing very uncommon in *Arabia*. *M. Thevenot* says, That *Julphur*, at the Mouth of the River *Falg*, on the Gulph of *Bassora*, has a good Harbour, where Vessels come in to buy Dates and Pearls, which are fished all along that Coast from *Mascat* to *Bahim*; that there is a good Castle which defends the Harbour; that from thence to *Cape Mocandon* the Coast is mountainous, and runs so near the *Persian* Shore, that there are but 5 Leagues betwixt *Mocandon* and the Island of *Larecca*, which is close by *Comoron*; that betwixt *Julphur* and *Mocandon*, there are many good Ports not set down in the Maps, where Ships may safely winter, and be furnish'd with good Water. He takes Notice of a Fault in Geography here, viz. That the Isles of *Queshimo* and *Larecca* are plac'd at 5 Leagues Distance; whereas they are but a League and a half. In this Sea he met with an extraordinary Tempest of Hail, as big as small Nuts, and exactly round, ex-

cept on one Side, which was flat and smooth, and the Stones clear and transparent, with little white Roses of 6 blunt Points, and a little white Circle about their Center, and in the Middle of it a white Point; and the Storm was attended with louder Claps of Thunder than ever he heard any where else.

The following Account of the King of Mocha in Arabia Felix, and his Country, was imparted to us by a Gentleman who liv'd there.

THE Place which the King of *Mocha* has chosen for his Seat is at a great Distance from the Sea, and known by the Name of *Kuddera* among the Natives. I shall first treat of the Climate and Country, and then describe the King and his eminent Qualifications.

The Climate hereabouts is temperate, the Air healthful, the Situation pleasant, and the Land in some Places enriched with pure delightful Streams. In the Winter, the Cold indeed is sharp and penetrating, especially Mornings and Evenings, beyond what the Latitude of the Place might seem to threaten. For allaying of which, the Natives seldom make use of any Stove or Hearth, but only burn some rich, warm, and fragrant Perfumes: The Smoke of which diffusing it self through the Room, and condensing by degrees, does both afford a most grateful Smell, and revives and cherishes the cold benumm'd Senses; whereby their Spirits are both refresh'd, and their Garments perfum'd with costly Odours; for this Place abounds with Myrrh, Manna, Incense, Cassia, Balm, and Gums of several Sorts; all which are purchas'd at easy Rates. And notwithstanding its Nearness to the Sun, yet are not its Beams so very scorching, but that an *English* Cloth Coat may here be wore in most Seasons of the Year without any great Inconvenience.

The Ground produces Yearly two Crops of Wheat and other Grain; by which the Poor are happily supplied. There's likewise great Variety of the choicest and most excellent Fruits, such as Grapes, Apricocks, Peaches, Quinces, Pears, Mangoes, Dates,

Mulberries, Oranges, Plantans, Figs, Limes, Pomegranates, &c. of an extraordinary Size and Taſt, pleaſant to the Eye, and delicious to the Palate. The Peaches continue from the latter End of *May* to the Beginning of *December*. The Grapes hold in Season till *January*, of which there are abundance, and of fundry Kinds; for Nature here is ſo luxuriant, that Plenty ſeems to vie with Variety; and 'tis dubious whether ſhe pleaſes her ſelf more in the Multitude of her Productions, or in the Delicacy of her Increaſe.

The Beef here is coarſe, and eat only by the poorer People, but the Mutton fine and ſweet, and fit for the nicest Palate. The Country abounds with ſtore of Wild Beaſts and Fowls; particularly with Antelopes, Deer, Hares, Partridges, Pigeons, eſpecially *Guinea* Hens, and upon the Coaſts with Plenty of Fiſh. Nothing is wanting either in the Agreeableneſs of the Climate, or the Fertility of the Soil, to give us a faint Idea of ancient *Canaan*, that lovely bleſſed Place, which as this Country approaches partly in Situation, ſo it does in Quality. And were we to judge of the future Blifs of the Natives by their preſent Felicity, we ſhould conclude them to be one of the happieſt Nations in the World. So that conſidering the conſtant Moderation of the Weather, and the Diſtance of it from the exceſſive Heats and Colds, from the intemperate Rains and Drowths, and conſidering the prodigious Plenty and Variety of moſt delicate and grateful Fruits, and the great Abundance of freſh and healthful Proviſions, with which the Kingdom does ſo much abound, it may very well lay Claim to that Epithet which beſpeaks its Felicity, and juſtly wear the Title of *Arabia the happy*.

And as the People are extreamly bleſſ'd in the Temper of the Air, and the Fruitfulneſs of the Country, ſo is the Country equally happy in the Probity of its Inhabitants, in the Exerciſe of their Temperance, Lenity and Juſtice; for their Religion ſeverely prohibits the Uſe of any ſtrong Drink, which might be apt to unman their Faculties, and tempt them to Diſorder and Exceſs; and Honesty is ſo much the Practice of the Natives, both abroad and in private Concerns, that Robberies here are ſeldom

heard of: Yet if any of them has been ſo unhappy as to fall into ſo deteſtable and uncommon a Crime, they ſhew their Clemency in his Punishment, and don't immediately deprive him of Life who only robbed them of their Goods, but inflict the Penalty upon the offending Part, and cut off that Hand which did the Fact. So that here you may ſee 40 or 50 Camels laden with the richeſt Goods *Arabia* affords paſſing the Road without any Danger or Diſturbance, attended only by 6 or 7 Men. That which chiefly inclines theſe *Arabs* to ſo much Innocence, is, in my Opinion, the Royal Example of their Kings, who generally are Men of ſingular Behaviour; which leads me to ſpeak of their preſent King, and his eminent Qualifications.

The Kings of *Mocha* and the Parts adjacent boaſt their Deſcent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, and *Haſhem* his Great Grandfather. Nor do the other *Eastern* Princes deny this, which renders them both renown'd at home, and gives 'em a ſingular Veneration among all the *Mahometan* Emperors abroad. Therefore both the Great Mogul, the Sultan, and the *Persian* Monarch, expreſs their Reſpect to him, not only in Words and Compliments, but in ſuch valuable and rich Preſents as become the Riches of *Asia*, and their Grandeur to beſtow. For this Reaſon, he lives not only free from the Impoſitions of any Superior, and more powerful Prince, but receives conſiderable Riches from other Kings.

Being honour'd with both theſe Titles of Priest and King, he endeavours to maintain as well the Piety of the Priest, as the Dignity of the Monarch. For the *Eastern* Sovereigns being commonly abſolute, and reſtrain'd by no Laws but their own Judgment, do nevertheless rule their Subjects with that Moderation, and ſo temper their Sovereignty with their Meekneſs, that the Lives of their Subjects are commonly as ſafe in their Hands, as if they were guarded by the ſtricteſt Laws of *Europe*. Therefore, tho' the preſent King has wielded his Scepter with that Compaſſion, that 16 are the moſt that have been put to Death ſince he aſcended the Throne, (which is about 15 Years) yet he is accounted ſevere and rigid, tho' the Criminals condemn'd were notorious Offenders. But he quits himſelf from this Impu-

Imputation by his constant Exercise of Mercy, which is so much his favourite Virtue, that he shews it upon all Occasions, and measures his Kindness so much by the Distress of those that want it, that scarce any were ever yet known to depart from his Palace without some Relief, answerable to their Necessities. For tho' he is attended with numerous Guards, and is careful to maintain the Port of a King, yet he lays aside all awful Majesty when Misery and Distress appear before him, and commands his Retinue to make Way for the meanest Person in the Kingdom to approach him, when their Extremities call for his Assistance. In such Cases, he both cherishes 'em with kind Expressions, bountifully supplies their Wants, and takes a Pleasure on all convenient Occasions to dispense his Liberality with his own Hands. A certain Quantity of Victuals is provided every Day to be distributed at his own Gates: And upon *Fridays*, which are their Weekly Festivals, and on all other religious Days, his Charity exceeds the common Bounds. In all publick Entertainments made for the Nobility and State Officers, the Poor have constantly a Share, and are as carefully attended as the principal Guests; for at that Time the King commands a good Quantity of Provisions to be made ready for them. At other Times their Fare is but mean, and frequently no better than Camel's Flesh, especially that of the barren Females, the others being made use of for Burthen or Increase.

When the Winter approaches, which is not too severe in those Parts, the Royal Bounty, as if it gloried in patronizing the Necessitous, takes likewise Care to provide warm and convenient Rayment for such as are destitute of Cloathing. Nay, the King himself, and likewise the young Princes of the Blood, do often part with their own Clothes from their Bodies to cover such as they find naked. Thus he lives an illustrious Example of all those Princely Virtues, Meekness, Bounty and Humility, which gain him an universal Veneration; and he is ambitious of shewing his Greatness rather by Acts of Mercy than Power, as if he made use of his high Station only the better to view the Necessities of his People, and relieve them.

As his Kindness is thus conspicuous to all that want, he is as Princely in his Bounty to his Servants and Dependants, as he was particularly to an *English* Surgeon. For hearing of the Fame of the *English* in this Art, he sent for this Surgeon to be his Physician, because in *India* they generally practise in that double Capacity. When he arrived at *Mocha* from *Suratt*, which was in the Space of 28 Days, he was detain'd by Sickness for two Months in that City before he went to Court; during which Time his Salary was 125 Roupies a Month, besides an Allowance for Domestick Expences. When he recover'd, the King sent him a curious *Arabian* Horse, and appointed a Linguist, a Groom, a Cook, and a Footman, to attend him; and upon his Arrival, receiv'd him with a gracious Countenance, and permitted him to kiss his Hand. Besides his Monthly Salary of 125 Roupies, he allow'd him a Dollar a Day for himself and his Servants, with three Pounds of Flower, one Pound of Butter, one Pound of Coffee, one Sheep, Wax Candles, Oil for his Lamps, and daily Provision for three Horses.

The first Patient whom this new Physician undertook was the Queen, who labour'd under a tedious Consumption, of which she was recover'd in 4 Months; which was so grateful to the King, that he immediately sent him a delicate Horse, and rich Furniture, and a considerable Sum of Gold. The Queen sent him also a rich Piece of flower'd Silk, a Purse of Gold, and several Yards of choice *English* Broad Cloth; and at the same time cloathed all his Servants. Several of the King's Sons and Daughters, who were heal'd of dangerous Distempers, never fail'd to bestow on him some generous Present, suitable to their high Birth. Nay, the very opening of a Vein, or a Dose of Physick, were always gratified by some signal Reward. And when urgent Occasions call'd the Physician from the Court, and he went to take his Leave of his generous Prince and Patron, he found him very averse to grant him a Discharge, and enquir'd with much Tenderness and Concern, whether any of his Domesticks had given him any Disgust. But when the King saw him pressing, and resolv'd to depart, he sent for him into his

Presence, and conferred upon him a Mark of Honour, as a farewell Sign of his Royal Favour, and generous Esteem of his eminent Services: And therefore commanded a couple of Spears to be shak'd over his Head, presented him with a delicate Horse and a fine Sword, and after that they call'd him *Sheak*; which Ceremony somewhat resembles the making of a Knight with us. Besides, he gave him a Writing, to which was affix'd his Hand and Seal, allowing him the Privilege of all his own Goods Custom-free, and another with the same Privilege for the Goods of all the *English* Merchants that came into the Port of *Mocha*. But the latter of these was lost upon his Departure from the Kingdom, when in his Voyage towards *Suratt* some *European* Pirates took him and his Companions.

The Islands on the Arabian Coast, lie in the Red Sea, South Sea, and Gulph of Persia.

T *Pliny* mentions the following Islands as belonging to *Arabia*: 1. *Adani*; 2. *Eni*; 3. *Are*; 4. *Cardamin*; 5. *Combusta*; 6. *Damanum*; 7. *Hieracum*, or the Isle of Hawks; 8. *Maliaci*; 9. *Polybii*; 10. *Socratis*; 11. *Timagenis*; 12. *Zigana*. But of what Note they were then, or how they are now called, is not certain. Late Travellers call them by other Names, and say, most of them are small, desolate, or ill inhabited.

The most noted of them are, 1. *Dalaca*. *Sanfon* places it near the *African* Shore, betwixt Lat. 15. 16. and about Long. 72. *Moll* in the middle of the Channel, about Lat. 16. and Long. 62. *Heylin* makes it 125 Miles long, and 5 broad, says it has a City of the same Name, and is noted for Pearl-Fishing. *Sanfon* makes it about 90 Miles long, and 50 where broadest. *Moll* makes it much less both in Length and Breadth.

2. *Camaran*, extremely hot, and noted for the great Ravages committed there by the *Portuguese*. *Sanfon* and *Moll* place it in a Bay on the *Arabian* Coast, over against *Zibith*, near Lat. 15. The former says, 'tis the fruitfulest of all the Islands in the *Red Sea*.

3. *Zamoa*. *Heylin* says, the Earth of it is

red, and it has a *Moorish* King of its own; but does not say where it lies, nor do we find it in our Maps.

The next Islands are in the *South Sea*, which runs along from the Banks of both the *Ethiopia's* by the Coasts of *Arabia Felix* Eastward, to the furthest Part of the *Indies*, and therefore is called by some the *Indian* Sea, and by others the *Red Sea* in general; tho' that Name be now particularly applied to the *Arabian* Gulph. *Platony* places a great Number of Islands in this Sea, but many of them of little Note, viz. 1. Two call'd the Islands of *Agathocles*. 2. Three he calls *Cocconati*. 3. One named *Dioscoris*. *Pliny* calls it *Dioscurias*, and says, it had a City of the same Name. 4. Seven in the *Sinus Sachalites*, call'd *Zenobii*. 5. *Organa*, which *Strabo* calls *Tyrrina*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *K. Erythras*, being a great Hill planted with Trees, from whence the Sea was called *Erythraeum*. 6. *Serapias*. *Ammian. Marcellinus* says, it had a Temple of *Serapis*, the *Egyptian* Idol; but none of these are at present of any great Note.

The chief Islands here now are, 1. *Socotora*, or *Socatra*, near the Mouth of the Straights of *Babelmandel*. The *Nubian* Geographer says, it was a great and pleasant Island, with beautiful Trees, and produced the best Aloes. The Leaves of those Trees are gather'd in *July*, and the Juice of 'em being squeez'd out, is expos'd in *August* to the Sun in Brass Pots, till it come to that Consistency we see it in. *Herbert* says, it was the *Dioscorida* of the Ancients, and suppos'd to be *Pliny's* *Topazo*, because of the great Numbers of those Precious Stones call'd *Topazes* found there. 'Tis about 15 Leagues long, and 10 broad, produces Corn, Fruit, Cattle, Olives, Cocoas, Dates, Pistachoes, Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranates, Pom-Citrons, Melons, and Sugar-Canes, besides Aloes, which *Herbert* says is a red Gum that sweats out of the Tree when cut. It has also abundance of Civet-Cats, which the Owners sell cheap. The Inhabitants are Christians and *Mahometans*, of a black Complexion. The Sun darts his Rays twice upon them perpendicularly per *Annum*, at which Time there's no Place hotter in the World. The *Nubian* Geographer says, *Alexander the Great* returned thither from *India* by Sea, and being met here by *Aristotle*, planted

planted a Colony of *Greeks* in this Island by his Advice. They became afterwards *Christians*, but infected with the Errors of the *Nestorians* and *Jacobites*. Their Churches are built in Form of a Cross. They had formerly a Patriarch of their own, and are still very respectful to their Clergy. They use the Cross in Baptism, partake of both Sacraments, wash their Dead, and bury them with their Heads towards *Jerusalem*. They forbid second Marriages, except where Issue is wanting. They were subdued a little before *Herbert's* Time by the Pr. of the *Fartachi* in *Arabia Felix*; but he was drove out by the *Portuguese*, who restor'd the *Christians* to their Liberty, and built a Castle for their Defence, but soon after abandon'd it, because it did not answer their Charge.

2. *Chartan*; 3. *Martan*: Both celebrated by the *Nubian* Geographer for their Amber, and Shells of Fishes resembling Oysters, of which the *Arabians* make Dishes. 4. *Curia*, on the S. Coast of *Arabia Felix*; and, 5. *Muria*, which lies near it, noted for white Tortoises, which *Sanfon* says have very fine Shells.

In the *Persian* Bay *Ptolomy* places, 1. *Tylos*. *Sanfon* supposes this to be *Baharem*, and places it over against *El-Catif* in the *Persian* Bay. It has a Town of the same Name, and is famous for the best Pearl-Fishing in the East. It belongs to the *Persians*, and is Part of the Kingdom of *Ormuz*. The Waters of this Island are so salt, that none can drink them but the Inhabitants; so that were it not for the Pearl-Fishery, it would become desert. Yet in the neighbouring Sea there are Fountains of fresh Water, about 2 Leagues distant from the Town. The Divers go for it when the Tide is out, and the Water not above three Foot high. The *Arabs* put an Earthen Jar upon the Mouth of the Wells, thrust them down 4 Inches into the Sand, draw them round with Bitumen to prevent the salt Water from getting in, and with great Dexterity fill their Vessels with Water, which they sell on Shore. For the Particulars of which, we refer to *Thevenot*. He says, the Pearl-Fishing here continues in *June*, *July*, *August*, and *September*, and employs 2 or 3000 Barks, managed by *Arabians*, who pay a Duty to their several Princes for Liberty to fish;

and the King of *Persia* has a considerable Revenue from it, which is laid out upon Mosques; only all the Pearls that weigh a Half-Medical or more belong to himself, and he is very liberal to the Fishermen who bring them; but if they do it not, or sell any of them out of his Dominions, he never fails to have Notice of it, and destroys the whole Family and Kindred to the 7th Generation. Every Boat has two Divers, who pick up the Nacres, put them in a Basket, and bring them up to the Boat, the Master watching them narrowly that they steal none. *Sanfon* computes the Annual Value of this Fishery at 600000 Ducats per Annum, and says, that of the Island *Gionfa* is almost as much. They don't begin to fish till *June*, the Pearls not being ripe enough till then.

Of MAHOMET.

Mahomet the Impostor being a Native of this Country, and having laid the Foundation of his False Religion and Tyrannical Government in it, 'tis proper to give an Account of him here.

In this Matter we chuse to follow the Life of *Mahomet* by *Dr. Prideaux*, Dean of *Norwich*, who has given the best Account, and from the best and most numerous Authorities that any Writer has yet done. *Mahomet* or (according to the true Pronunciation) *Mohammed*, was of the Tribe of the *Korashites*, the noblest in that Country, and descended in a direct Line of Primogeniture from *Pher Koraisb*, the Founder of it, from whom *Mahomet* was the 7th or 8th by his Mother, and the 6th from his Father. They were great Princes in that Country, and had by Trick obtained the Presidency of the Heathen Temple at *Mecca*, which was then as much celebrated among the *Pagan Arabians*, as it has since been among the *Mahometans*, and render'd em much esteem'd thro' all *Arabia*. He was born at *Mecca*, in *May*, *A. C.* 571. *Justin II.* being then Emperor of *Constantinople*, and *Chosroes I.* King of *Persia*. His Father's Name was *Abdollah*, and his Mother's *Amena*. But notwithstanding the Nobility of his Descent, he was very poor and despicable in the Beginning of his Life; for his Father died be-

fore he was two Years old ; his Grandfather being still alive, and the chief Sway in the Hands of his Uncle *Abu-Taleb*, under whose Protection afterwards *Mahomet* broached his Imposture, and was supported against all Opposers. He lived with his Mother till 8 Years of Age, when she dying, his Grandfather took him ; but the latter dying in a Year after, he was committed to the Care of his Uncle, who following Merchandize, brought him up in that Employment. He sent him with his Camels to *Syria* ; and while he attended his Uncle's Factors in the publick Market place at *Bostra*, *Mahometan* Authors say, that a learned Monk there perceived by the Rays of Light about his Face, that he was to be a Prophet ; but this is a Fable, for he was not acquainted with that Monk till many Years after. He continu'd under his Uncle till 25 Years of Age, when one of the chief Men of the City dying, he left his Stock, which was very considerable, to his Widow *Cabigah*, who invited *Mahomet* to be her Factor, and married him in the 28th Year of his Age. By this Means, being equal in Wealth to the greatest Man in the City, his Ambition made him aspire to the Sovereignty which his Ancestors had enjoy'd, and whereof he himself had been only depriv'd by being left an Orphan. His Trading into *Egypt*, *Palastine*, and *Syria*, made him well acquainted both with Christians and *Jews* ; and perceiving that each of them were divided into several Sects, he concluded, that nothing could be more likely to raise him a Party than the advancing of a new Religion. He conceiv'd those of *Mecca* were very well dispos'd to such a Change, for their Converse with Christians had taken them much off from their gross Idolatry ; but since they generally deny'd Providence and a future State, and had scarce any Religion at all, he believ'd therefore that his Medley, which was compos'd of *Judaism*, the several Heresies of the *Eastern* Christians, and the old Paganism of the *Arabs*, with an Indulgence in all sensual Delights, would readily take with them. But that he might not immediately turn Preacher against that Idolatry which he had practis'd with others, and set up for a Reformer, since he was known to be of an ill Life, without some previous Change, in the 38th

Year of his Age he began to affect an Eremitical Life, withdrew every Morning to a Cave near the City, where he pretended to spend his Time in Fasting, Prayer, and Meditation ; and there it is suppos'd he had his Consults with those who help'd him to frame his *Alcoran*. He endeavour'd to proselyte his Wife with Accounts of strange Voices and Visions in that Place ; but finding they made little Impression, he suborn'd a fugitive Monk, whom he entertain'd in his House, to perswade her of the Truth of them, and by that Means brought her over. Having liv'd thus retir'd two Years, and obtain'd something of a Reputation for Sanctity, he call'd himself the Apostle of God, and began to propagate his Delusions, but privately for the first 4 Years. His second Proselyte was his Slave, whom upon that Account he made free ; and hence it became a Law among the *Mahometans* to manumit their Slaves upon embracing their Religion. 'Tis observable, that *Mahomet* began his Impostures about the same Time that the Bishop of *Rome* usurp'd the Title of Universal Pastor. *Mahomet's* next Disciple was his Cousin *Aly*, Son to his Uncle *Abu-Taleb* ; and having gain'd 8 or 9 more of the richest Men in *Mecca*, he began openly to propagate his Doctrine. He taught, There was but one God ; That he alone is to be worship'd, and all Idols destroy'd ; That it was impious to say God had any Sons or Daughters, or other Gods associated with him. By the latter, he reflected upon the Christians who held the Trinity, and that Christ was the Son of God ; and by the former, on the Female Idols of the *Arabians*, whose Temples he afterwards destroy'd. He pretended to deliver the same Religion which God reveal'd to *Abraham*, and which he taught their Forefather *Ismael*. He allow'd both the Old and New Testament, and that *Moses* and Christ were Prophets, but that the *Jews* and Christians had corrupted those holy Writings, which he was sent to restore : And upon this Account he relates those Passages which he takes out of the Old and New Testament quite otherwise than they are. He pretended, that the Angel *Gabriel* brought him all his Revelations ; and being subject to the Falling-Sickness, he told them, his Fits were Trances, during which that Angel con-

convers'd with him; and these counterfeit Revelations he dispos'd into Chapters, told them the Original was kept in Heaven, and that the Angel brought it to him Chapter by Chapter, as there was Occasion to publish it to the People. Some of these he publish'd before he fled from *Mecca*, and the rest at *Medina*. When he forged a new Chapter, he dictated it to his Secretary, and then deliver'd the Paper to his Followers, till they learn'd it by Heart; and when restor'd to him, he laid it up in a Chest, which he left with one of his Wives call'd *Haphsa*. On his first Appearance the People treated him with Contempt, call'd him Sorcerer, Magician, Lyar, Impostor, &c. of which he frequently complains in his *Alcoran*; but being a Man of ready Wit, and of good Address, he bore these Affronts patiently, applied himself to People of all Sorts, flatter'd the great Men, and gave Alms to the Poor, till at last his Disciples became 39. This Progress alarm'd the Citizens. The Idolaters oppos'd him as an Enemy to their Gods; and Men of Sense perceiving that he aim'd at the Sovereignty over them, they designed to have cut him off; but his Uncle *Abu-Taleb*, tho' a Pagan himself, yet protect'd him against their Attempts. This made him boldly preach in the publick Places of the City, where he insisted on some moral Duties, the Belief of one God, the Dignity of his own Apostleship, and a Mixture of Heathenish and Jewish Rites. His main Arguments were Threats and Promises, both which he suited to the Temper of the *Arabians*, whose Country being excessive hot, made 'em exceedingly given to Women, and look upon Rivers of Water, cooling Drinks, shady Gardens, and pleasant Fruits, to be the most delightful Things in Nature; and of such Pleasures he made his Paradise, which he promis'd them, to consist, as may be seen by his *Alcoran*. In the same Manner he suited his Description of Hell to what they were most afraid of; as, that they should drink nothing but boyling and stinking Water, nor breath any thing but scorching Winds, dwell in continual Fire, surrounded with black, hot, and salt Smoke, and eat nothing but Briars and Thorns, and the Fruit of the Tree *Zacon*, which would burn in their Bellies like Pitch. He threat-

ned them also with grievous Punishments in this Life, and insisted much on the Judgments that fell upon those who did not believe the ancient Prophets as recorded in Scripture, to which he added many fabulous Stories of his own Invention, that had befallen their Ancestors for the like Disobedience. He was join'd at last by two more of his Uncles, but was oppos'd by the rest, who saw thro' his ambitious Designs. His Enemies demanded such Miracles of him as had been performed by *Moses* and *Jesus*; to which he return'd evasive and shuffling Answers: And at last, retiring to *Medina*, where he had an Army to back him, he pretended, that since Men would not obey *Moses* and *Jesus*, whom God had sent with Miracles, he was come to force them to it by the Power of the Sword. Therefore he forbade his Disciples to admit any Disputes about his Religion, commanded them to destroy all who oppos'd it, promis'd them great Rewards for it in Heaven, and that those who dy'd in the Cause should have a Crown of Martyrdom. These Topics have been insisted upon by the *Mahometan* Doctors ever since, and it was usual for their Preachers to have a drawn Sword by them while they deliver'd their Sermons, to signify that their Doctrine is to be propagated, and defended by the Sword. They have Legendaries however who ascribe abundance of ridiculous Miracles to him; but as this is disown'd by himself in his *Alcoran*, their learned Doctors renounce them, and alledge, that the Eloquence of the *Alcoran*, and the Excellency of its Doctrine, is instead of all Miracles, since it was compos'd by a Man who could neither write nor read. In Answer to this, Dr. *Prideaux* quotes several Authors to prove, that *Abdia Ben Salon*, a *Persian Jew*, was one of those who assisted him to compose the *Alcoran*; and having been a Rabbi himself, did very well understand the Jewish Religion, and wrote all his pretended Revelations for the first 10 Years. He was likewise assisted by a Christian Monk in what relates to Christianity, whom some call *Sergius*, a *Nestorian*, and others *Bahira*, according to his *Arabian* Name. He was excommunicated and expelled his Monastery for a great Crime, and retiring to *Mecca*, entertain'd by *Mahomet*. For the Heathenish Rites of the
Arabs,

Arabs, he understood them well enough himself: But the Doctor rejects the Story of his teaching a Bull to bring him the *Alcoran* on his Horns, and breeding Pigeons to come to his Ears, to make them believe it was the Holy Ghost which convers'd with him, as fabulous.

In the 8th Year of his pretended Mission, his Party grew so formidable at *Mecca*, that the Magistrates forbid any more to join him. This signified little so long as his Uncle lived; but he dying two Years after, his Enemies prevail'd, his Party declin'd, and he retir'd to *Abbas*, another of his Uncles, who liv'd at *Tayif*, 60 Miles E. from *Mecca*, for his Protection, and to gain more Profelytes; but making no great Progress there, he returned to *Mecca*, where his first Wife being dead, he married three Daughters of the chief Men of the City, which strengthen'd his Interest. In the 12th Year of his forg'd Mission, he pretended his ridiculous Journey to Heaven, mention'd in the 16th Chapter of his *Alcoran*, which is made up of a Parcel of Fables, that *Abdollah* the Jew collected out of the *Talmudists*. He pretended to perform this Journey in one Night, and told it to the People next Morning, which expos'd him to Derision. Many of his Disciples left him, and more would have done so, had he not been seconded by *Abu-Beker*, a Partner in the Cheat. This he compar'd to *Moses's* talking with God in the Mount, and receiving many Things from him by Oral Tradition, besides the written Law, which laid a Foundation for further Impostures. This lost his Credit so much at *Mecca*, that he was not able to protect his Followers; so that 100 of them, who were guilty of Practices against the Government, were forced to fly to *Nagash* King of *Ethiopia* for Protection; and *Mahomet*, with the rest, had much ado to support themselves. About this Time the *Jews* and Heretical Christians quarrelling at *Medina*, many People came from thence and join'd with *Mahomet* at *Mecca*, from whence he sent them back to propagate his Imposture. Those of *Mecca* resolv'd at last to cut him off; upon which he fled secretly by Night with all that would follow him to *Medina*, where he was received with great Acclamations by the Heretical Christians, as the Doctor supposes. There he

erected a Mosque, and order'd all Computations henceforward to be made from his said Flight, which, by the Advice of a learned *Persian*, he anticipated 59 Days, that his *Era* might commence at the Beginning of the *Arabian* Year, which is Lunary, consisting of 354 Days, 8 Hours, and 48 Minutes; which odd Hours and Minutes in 30 Years making exactly 11 Days, they intercalate a Day on the 2d, 5th, 7th, 10th, 13th, 15th, 18th, 21st, 24th, 26th, and 29th, Years of this Period, which makes those Years consist of 355 Days; so that the *Mahometan* Year falling 11 Days short of the *Solar* one, makes the Beginning of their Year unfix'd, because the next Year always begins 11 Days sooner than the former, and therefore in 33 Years Time goes thro' all the different Seasons of the Year, and comes about again to the same Time of the *Solar* Year, tho' not exactly to the same Day.

When *Mahomet* settled at *Medina*, he married his Daughter *Fatima* to his Cousin *Aly*. And now having a Town at Command, he betook himself to fighting to propagate his Imposture, and commanded his Followers to kill all those who would not embrace it, except they paid an Annual Tax for their Infidelity, which is still observ'd by them where they have Power. He made his Uncle *Hamaz* his Standard-Bearer, and attack'd the Caravan of *Mecca*, where he found great Booty; about the Division of which, his Men were like to have quarrell'd. Upon this Victory, he pretended that God blinded his Enemies, so that they took his Number to be double to what it was; and that he likewise sent 3000 Angels to assist him. He order'd all his Disciples henceforward to pray with their Faces towards the Temple of *Mecca*, whereas he had before order'd them to pray towards the Temple of *Jerusalem*; but chang'd that Order to ingratiate himself with his Countrymen, by honouring their Temple, tho' it disoblig'd many of his other Followers. He afterwards appointed the Month of *Ramadan* to be a Month of Fast, in Imitation of the Christian *Lent*. The remainder of this Year he spent in plundering and destroying his Neighbours that would not embrace his Imposture. The next Year, he subdu'd the neighbouring Tribes of *Arabians* who were *Jews*, and forced one *Caab*, a Person of great

great Learning among 'em, to turn *Mahometan*; and bestowing great Favours upon him, made use of him to compleat his *Alcoran*, for which his great Skill in the *Arabian* Language, and other Learning, render'd him very well qualified. Towards the End of this Year, *Mahomet* was defeated at the Battle of *Ohud* by those of *Mecca*, where he lost his Uncle the Standard-Bearer, and narrowly miss'd being kill'd himself. To salve the Disgrace of his Loss, he charg'd it on the Sins of some who follow'd him, to please the Relations of the Deceas'd, ascrib'd their Death to Fate and Destiny, alledging that their Time was come, and they could live no longer; but they had the Advantage of gaining Crowns of Martyrdom by it. This Doctrine has been of great use to make his Followers fight valiantly ever since.

In the 4th Year of the *Hegira*, he cut off another Tribe of *Jewish Arabs*, and fought several Battles with various Success. But when his Armies were abroad, his chief Men at home fell a quarrelling at their Cups and Game, which had like to have ruin'd him and his Cause. Therefore, to prevent the like for the Time to come, he forbad the Use of Wine, and all Chance-Games, tho' he had before this at a Banquet with his Friends, blessed Wine as a sacred Liquor, which promoted Concord and Love among Men. Next Year, those of *Mecca* and the *Jewish Arabians* came against him with 10000 Men; upon which he intrench'd himself, by the Advice of *Abdollah* the *Persian Jew*, brib'd the Leaders of the opposite Army, and sow'd Dissention among 'em; upon which several deserted, and the rest went home. After this, he subdued another of the *Jewish Arabian* Tribes, cut off all their Men, sold the Women and Children for Slaves, and divided their Estates among his Soldiers.

In the 6th Year, which was A C 627, he subdued several other *Arabian* Tribes, cut off their Men, sold their Women and Children for Slaves, and divided their Goods, as before mention'd; but sav'd a beautiful Captive for himself, and added her to the rest of his Wives. Having thus increas'd in Reputation and Strength, he march'd against *Mecca*, and after a drawn Battle came to a Truce with them for 10 Years, on

Condition that those of *Mecca*, who had a Mind to join him, might have Liberty to do so; and such as had a Mind to leave him, and return to *Mecca*, might do it; and that he and his Followers might come thither any Time during the Truce, provided they came unarm'd, and did not stay above three Days at a Time. This Truce did very much confirm *Mahomet's* Power, and he was created King by his Followers under a Tree near *Medina*, which wither'd immediately, say *Mahometan* Authors, tho' they put a favourable Interpretation upon it. At this Time he ordain'd Annual Pilgrimages to *Mecca*, which have been observ'd ever since. This he did to ingratiate himself with the Heathen *Arabians*, who came thither once a Year to worship their Idols, and perform their Sacrifices: And that they might come and return with Safety, they were allowed three Months, which were held sacred, and to be free from all Hostilities and Trouble. This did likewise secure his Interest among the Inhabitants of *Mecca*, who had great Advantages by those Pilgrimages.

Having thus establish'd himself in the Sovereignty, he not only took all the *Insignia* belonging to it, but retain'd the Character of Chief Pontiff of his own Religion, and transmitted both those Characters to his Successors, who reign'd after him by the Title of Caliphs. Having finish'd his Mosque at *Medina*, he erected a Pulpit, from whence he preached to his Followers, which still remains there. This Year he subdued another Tribe of *Arabian Jews*; and in this War the *Arabians* pretend, that *Aly* perform'd as great Miracles of Valour and Courage as *Sampson*. Being entertain'd at Supper by one of the principal Inhabitants of *Chaibar*, the Man's Daughter poison'd a Shoulder of Mutton, which killed one of his Companions; and *Mahomet* himself having only tasted it, and spit it out again, was never well after, and died in 3 Years. The young Woman being ask'd why she did it, said, That if he were a real Prophet, he cou'd receive no Harm by it; but if not, 'twas of Service to the World to deliver them from such a Tyrant. After this, he reduced several Towns belonging to the *Jewish Arabs*, and made them Tributaries. Having now an Army of 10000 Men, he trea-

treacherously surpris'd *Mecca*, put to Death those who had oppos'd him, forc'd the rest to embrace his Religion, destroy'd their Idols, new consecrated their Temple to his own Religion, and made it the chief Place of Worship for those of his Sect. Among those Idols were the Images of *Abraham* and *Ishmael*, and those of Angels and Prophets, whom the *Arabians* worship'd as Mediators, in the same Manner as the Papists now do their Saints, says Dr. *Prideaux*; for the *Arabians* always held, that there was but one God, whom they durst never represent by an Image, and alledging, that he was too high to be approach'd by Men on Earth, they made use of Angels and Saints as Intercessors with him.

Mahomet having thus taken *Mecca*, his Enemies assembled an Army against him, defeated him in one Battle, and forc'd him to retire to *Medina*; but he routed them in a second, where he took all their Baggage, Wives, Children, and Cattle, which (according to Custom) they had brought with them. Then he demolished their Temples and Idols, and forced them to submit to his Imposture. Next Year he invaded *Syria*, made several of their Princes Tributaries, and oblig'd all the *Arabians* to embrace his Religion; which, together with his Empire, he establish'd in the 10th Year of the *Hegira*, A. C. 631, and sent Lieutenants to govern the several Provinces in his Name. This Year he made his last Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, and several others, encouraged by the Success of his Imposture, pretended to the like Revelations; that they were join'd with him in Commission; and particularly one *Mosalema* in the Country of *Jamama* rais'd a great Army, and publish'd another *Alcoran*; as *Wad*, another, rose up on the same Pretence in the Country of *Hamiar*, where he seiz'd several Towns; but they were quickly reduc'd by *Mahomet's* Successors; for *Mahomet* himself died at *Medina*, after his Return from *Mecca*, in 13 Days Illness, of the Poison above-mentioned, the 28th Day of their *Saphar*, in the 11th Year of the *Hegira*, which answers to the 28th of our *March*, 632. When he was in a Delirium, he call'd for Pen, Ink, and Paper, to dictate a Book to his Followers, to keep them from erring after his Death. *Omar* would not admit of it, alledging the *Alco-*

ran was sufficient; and that *Mahomet* being in a Delirium, knew not what he said. This occasion'd a Contention among them; upon which he bid them be gone in a Rage, and told 'em, It was unbecoming to contend in his Presence. The Want of this Book was much lamented by his Followers. During his Sickness, he complain'd much of tormenting Pains, occasion'd by the Poison. His Death caus'd a great Confusion among his Followers; many of them would not believe he was dead; others said he would return again, as *Jesus* did. *Omar* countenanced this Cheat, and drawing his Sword, swore he would kill those who said the contrary; but *Abu-Beker* compos'd this Scuffle, telling them, That *Mahomet's* God was immortal, but he himself was dead, and would return no more till the general Resurrection. Then they differ'd about his Burial: Those who fled with him from *Mecca* would have him buried there, where he was born: Those of *Medina* said, he ought to be bury'd with them, where he dy'd; and others were for burying him at *Jerusalem* among the Prophets: But *Abu-Beker* did likewise compose this Quarrel, told them, he said himself he would be buried where he died, and order'd him immediately to be interr'd under his own Bed, in the Chamber of *Ayesha*, his best beloved Wife, where his Corps still lies, with a Chappel built over it in one of the Corners of the great Mosque, founded by himself. Thus died that wicked Impostor in the 63d Year of his Age, according to the *Arabian* Account, and 61 according to ours. He had taken upon him the Character of a Prophet 23 Years, 13 of which he liv'd at *Mecca*, and 10 at *Medina*. As to his Person, he was of a proper Stature, and comely Aspect, and affected much to be reckon'd like *Abraham*. He had a piercing Wit, and was perfect Master in the Art of Flattery and Dissimulation, by which he effected his Designs. The first Part of his Life he spent in Rapine, Plunder, and Bloodshed; but the *Mahometans* pretend he was a Saint from the 4th Year of his Age, when the Angel *Gabriel* cut open his Breast, took out his Heart, and wrung from it that black Drop of Blood, which they say was the *Fomes Peccati*, or Nursery of Sin, so that he had none after; yet in the 48th Chapter of his *Alco-*

ran, he brings in God giving him a large Pardon for all his Sins past and to come. His predominant Passions were Ambition and Lust, which appears throughout his *Alcoran*, where he promotes War and the Use of Women, and makes the Enjoyment of Beauties the chief Pleasure of his Paradise. He had 15 (some say 21) Wives, besides Concubines. His best belov'd Wife was *Ayesha*, Daughter to *Abu-Beker*. She was a lewd Woman; but in the 24th Chapter of his *Alcoran*, he makes God declare her innocent. He married her young, bred her up in all the Learning of the *Arabians*, especially in the Elegancy of their Language, and Knowledge of their Antiquities. She was a great Enemy to *Aly*, *Mahomet's* Son-in-Law, because he discover'd her Lewdness, hinder'd him from being chosen Caliph as long as she could; and when he obtained that Dignity, she took Arms against him; and tho' not successful that Way, occasion'd such a Revolt from him, as prov'd the Ruin of himself and his House. She liv'd 48 Years after *Mahomet*, was call'd by his Sect a Prophetess, and Mother of the Faithful, and consulted in every Thing to know the Sense of the Impostor, and her Answers were reckon'd authentick. His other Wife *Haphsa* was entrusted with his Papers, from whence *Abu-Beker* compos'd the *Alcoran* after *Mahomet's* Death, adding what he pleas'd from his own Head, and from the Memory of others who had been most conversant with the Impostor. He lodg'd the Original with *Haphsa*, and deliver'd out Copies, which contain'd so many Absurdities, that when *Othman* came to be Caliph, he call'd in all those Copies, pretending to compare them with the Original, burnt them, and publish'd the *Alcoran* new modell'd, as we now have it; of which he order'd 4 Copies to be writ out fair, one of them to be deposited at *Mecca*, the 2d at *Medina*, the 3d in *Chaldea*, and the 4th in *Syria*. 21 Years after the Impostor's Death. The three first Copies were soon lost, and the last was several Ages after said to be found in a Mosque at *Damascus*, formerly the Church of *St. John the Baptist*; so that they have no manner of Certainty as to this pretended Rule of their Faith and Manners.

Having said enough already to shew the Nature of this Impostor's Religion, we

shall not offer any further Account of the *Alcoran*, which being in *English*, we refer to it, and shall only add from *Dr. Prideaux*, That this Impostor occasion'd one of the greatest Revolutions that ever happen'd in the World, and gave Birth to an Empire, which in 80 Years Time extended it self over more Kingdoms and Countries than the *Romans* did in 800; and tho' it continu'd not in Power above 300 Years, out of its Ashes have sprung many other Kingdoms and Empires, of which there are three still remaining, the largest and most potent in the World, viz. the Empires of *Turkey*, *Persia*, and *Mogul*.

The Caliphs or Emperors of the Saracens who follow'd Mahomet, and call'd themselves his Vicars, as the Popes assume the Name of our Saviour's.

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|---|
| A.C. | A.H. | I. | E <i>Bubezer</i> , or <i>Uquebar</i> , <i>Mahomet's</i> Father-in-Law, and one of his great Captains. He supplanted <i>Ali</i> , to whom <i>Mahomet</i> had design'd the Empire by his Will, and reign'd two Years. |
| 622. | 5. | | |
| 634. | 17. | II. | <i>Haumar I.</i> the second of the Impostor's chief Captains. He commanded the Army under <i>Ebubezer</i> , and succeeded him in the Government, to which he added <i>Persia</i> , <i>Egypt</i> , <i>Palæstine</i> , with great Part of <i>Syria</i> and <i>Mesopotamia</i> , and reign'd 12 Years. |
| 647. | 30. | III. | <i>Osman</i> , the 3d of <i>Mahomet's</i> Captains, succeeded under the Pretence of his Marriage with <i>Zeineh</i> , <i>Mahomet's</i> 2d Daughter. He annex'd all <i>Barbary</i> to his Empire; but being oppos'd by the Faction of <i>Hali</i> , and besieg'd in his own House, he slew himself in the 87th Year of his Age, and the 10th of his Reign. |
| 657. | 40. | IV. | <i>Hali</i> , <i>Mahomet's</i> next Heir, who married <i>Fatime</i> , his eldest |
| | | | E o |

A.C. A.H. eldest Daughter, succeeded upon Osman's Death; but he was murder'd near *Cusa* in *Arabia Felix*, by the Procurement of

660. 43. V. *Muhavias*, who having murder'd *Hali*, his Son *Hafem* or *Oscan*, and 11 of the Sons of that *Hafem*, married *Osman's* Widow, (who was *Mahomet's* Daughter) and usurp'd the Government as his rightful Successor. He conquered *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, most Part of *Asia Minor*, and founded the Family of *Aben Humeja*.

681. 64. VI. *Gizid I.* his Son, a better Poet than Warrior.

VII. *Marvan I.* who carry'd the supreme Dignity from *Habdalla*, his Competitor.

685. 68. VIII. *Abimelech*, his Son, compleated the Conquests which his Father had begun in *Armenia* and *Mesopotamia*, and reign'd 22 Years.

707. 90. IX. *Ulid*, or *Ulit*, under whom the *Moors* first subdued *Spain*, reign'd 9 Years.

716. 99. X. *Zullimin* his Brother, *Mulsamau's* Captain, laid Siege to *Constantinople*, so long till his Ships were burnt, and his Men destroy'd with the Plague. He reign'd 3 Years.

719. 102. XI. *Haumar II.* his Son, succeeded, and reign'd 2 Years.

721. 104. XII. *Gizid II.* his Brother, who was joint Caliph with him whilst he lived, and after his Decease sole Regent.

725. 107. XIII. *Evelid*, or *Ischam*, in whose Time *Charles Martel*, Anno 734, made a great Slaughter of the *Moors* in *France*, under their General *Abderamen*. He reign'd 18 Years.

743. 125. XIV. *Gizid III.* Son of *Gizid II.*

744. 126. XV. *Hyses*, or *Ibrahim*, his Brother. He was put to Death by *Marvan*.

745. 127. XVI. *Marvan II.* the last of the Family of *Benhumeja*. He

A.C. A.H. was slain by *Abdalla* of the House of *Fatime*, and *Hali*.

752. 134. XVII. *Abdalla I.* of the Family of *Alaveci* or *Alabeci*. He was descended from *Hali*, and *Fatime Mahomet's* eldest Daughter. The said Family was also call'd *Abas*, because of their Descent from *Mahomet's* Uncle of that Name, and perhaps Father to *Hali*.

756. 138. XVIII. *Abdalla II.*

XIX. *Mahomet II.* surnamed *Abugefer*, or *Bugiafer*, who built *Bagdat*, which was afterwards the Regal City of his Successors.

777. 156. XX. *Mahadi*, who reign'd 9 Years.

786. 168. XXI. *Musa* or *Moyse*, reign'd one Year.

XXII. *Aron* or *Arached*, to whom *Irene*, Empress of *Constantinople*, was forced to pay Tribute, reign'd 23 Years.

810. 193. XXIII. *Mahomad* or *Mahomet III.*

825. 198. XXIV. *Abdalla III.* He ravaged *Crete*, subdu'd the *Greeks*, and plunder'd *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, and *Corfica*, and reign'd 17 Years.

832. 215. XXV. *Mahomet IV.* wasted *Italy*, fir'd the Suburbs of *Rome*, and made great Havock in the aforesaid Islands. He reign'd 40 Years.

Authors are not agreed as to the Successors of *Mahomet III.* but it appears from History, that about 325 Years after the In-
 possessor's Death, the Governors of the Pro-
 vinces assum'd the Regal Power to them-
 selves, and left the Caliphs nothing but a
 Shadow of their Authority, and paid them
 some sort of Respect as the chief Directors
 of their Religion, in like Manner as Popish
 Temporal Princes do now to the Pope.
 They came likewise to have Anti-Caliphs, as
 there were Anti-Popes; one at *Bagdat* or *Ba-
 bylon*, to whom submitted the *Mahometans*
 of the *East*, and another in *Egypt*, who was
 own'd by those in *Africa* and *Europe*, till
 the *Tartars* put an End to the Pretensions of
 both.



both. After which, most of the *Mahometan* Princes set up one in their respective Dominions who bears this Character, he is in *Turkey* call'd the *Mufti*, and in *Persia* the *Sadre*, who interpret the *Mahometan* Law, but are obliged to make it speak what their Sovereigns think fit.

The Northern Part of Turkey in Asia,

Lies betwixt the *Palus Maotis* and the *Black Sea* on the N. and the *Caspian Sea* on the S. and contains *Comania* and *Georgia*, with their Subdivisions.

C O M A N I A,

According to *Sanfon*, has Part of *Little Tartary* and *Muscovy* on the N. *Georgia* and Part of the *Black Sea* on the S. the *Palus Maotis* and the Streights of *Cassa* on the W. and the *Caspian Sea* on the S. But Authors are not agreed as to its Boundaries. Some include *Little Tartary*, and others *Circassia*; in the latter of which *Sanfon* agrees. *Luyts* says, the Eastern Part is a Champain Country, has rich Soil, and is well water'd. *Sanfon* places it betwixt Long. 65 and 82. but the Breadth is unequal, being much contracted at both Ends. The greatest Breadth he makes betwixt the River *Tanais* and the Borders of *Georgia*. It was little known to the Ancients, and not much known now. *Sanfon* makes it only 300 Leagues long, and 100 where broadest. The Inhabitants, he says, go under the general Name of *Circassians*. The *Poles* call them the Inhabitants of the 5 Mountains. They are in a manner free under particular Princes and Governors, and live, says *Sanfon*, much like the *Swissers*, putting themselves under the Pay of the *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Muscovites*, or *Persians*, as they see Occasion. *Luyts* says, they are under the Protection of the King of *Persia*, and are a Frontier to his Country on that Side: But this must be understood of the *Circassians* properly so called, who live on the E. Side of this Country, next to the *Persians*. They are a warlike People, have no fortified Towns, but trust to their Arms and Mountains, to which they retire in case of Danger. Their Apparel is like

those of *Little Tartary*, and they are furnish'd with Linen and Silk from *Persia*. They were formerly of the *Greek Church*; but for want of Teachers, many of them are now become *Mahometans* and Pagans. *Sanfon* supposes this to be the original Country of the *Amazons*, from whence they made Incursions into many Parts of *Asia* and *Europe*. *Heylin* says, That when they were of the *Greek Church*, they did not baptize their Children till two Years old, and seldom came to Church till 40 or 60 Years of Age, when they thought it Time enough to repent of their former ill Life. They were converted about 860, and subject to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*.

Cellarius makes this Country the *Sarmatia Asiatica*, divided from the *Sarmatia Europea* by the River *Tanais* on the N. W. It was also Part of *Scythia intra Emaum*. It was separated from *Iberia* by the Mountains of *Caucasus*, in which *Ptolomy* mentions several Pyle or strait Passes, particularly, 1. The *Portæ Caucasæ*, or *Pylæ Sarmaticæ*, betwixt this Country and *Iberia*, about the Middle of the Isthmus, between the *Euxine* and *Black Seas*. 2. The *Pylæ Albanicæ*, betwixt this Country and *Albania*, further E. Near this Pass began the *Ceraunian Mountains*, which run Northward to the River *Rha*, now *Volga*. The *Hippici Montes* run N. W. towards the *Tanais*; and N. of that River lie the *Riphei Montes*. The chief Rivers were, the *Tanais*, which falls into the *Palus Maotis*, and the *Rha*, now the *Volga*, which falls into the *Caspian Sea*. *Cellarius* corrects those who make two Rivers of this Name. The other Rivers mentioned here by the Ancients, which run into the *Palus Maotis*, are, 1. *Marubius*, at the Mouth of which lay the Town of *Pamardis*, about 6 Miles N. from the Town *Tanais*, on the Mouth of the River of that Name. 2. *Rhombites Major*, betwixt which and *Pamardis*, on the Coast of the *Palus Maotis*, lay the Town *Patarue*. 3. *Rhombites Minor*, near the Mouth of which lay the Town *Azara*. 4. *Psathis*, at the Mouth of which lay the Town *Tirambe*. 5. *Anticites*, or *Vardanus*, at the Mouth of which lay *Phanagoria*, and E. from that the Town *Sinda*.

The ancient Inhabitants were, 1. The *Tanaitæ*, N. of the River *Tanais*. 2. The *Jaxamata*, S. of the same River. Their chief

chief Town *Navar* is near that River. Betwixt the *Tanais* and the *Rha* lay, 3. The *Melanchlani*; S. from them, 4. The *Symnita*; and betwixt those People to the W. the Town *Hexopolis*. Near the *Ceraunian Mountains*, S. from the *Symnita*, *Ptolomy* places the *Columnæ Alexandri*, or *Alexander's Pillars*, tho' *Alexander* was never in this Country. *Salmasius* thinks that some ignorant People erected those Pillars out of a Mistake, because they took *Jaxartes*, where *Alexander* set up that Monument of his Victory, to be the *Tanais*. S. from hence lay the *Sarmaticæ Pylæ*. In the E. Part of this Country, upon the River *Rha*, lay, 5. The *Kali*; 6. *Sirbi*; 7. *Uda*. W. from them, 8. The *Diduri*; 9. *Olondæ*. In the Midland Parts lay, 10. The *Alani*; 11. *Colica Gens*; 12. *Zingi*, near Mount *Caucasus*. N. from them, 13. The *Asturiani*; 14. *Tirambæ*. On the W. Side lay, 15. The *Mæda Asiaticæ*; and on the N. Bank of the *Black Sea*, 16. The *Bosphorani*, subdivided into the *Sindi*, *Ceræta*, and *Heniochi*. Others add the *Thirsagetæ*, the *Zigæ*, *Turcæ*, *Hunni*, *Avares*, *Coaxtia*, and *Pselii*. *Heylin* says, they all center'd in the general Name of *Cimmerii*, descended from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*, from him call'd *Gomerii*, and by Corruption *Cimmerii*. They first planted *Albania*, and afterwards extended themselves; gave Name to the Town *Cimmerion*, and that of *Bosphorus Cimmericus* to the Streights betwixt the *Black Sea* and the *Palus Mæotis*. From these descended the *Cimbri*; but afterwards all the People of those N. Parts were called *Scythians*, famous for their Expedition into *Media* and *Lydia*; in which the *Cimmerii* were the chief. *Heylin* says, That they made this Expedition in the Time of *Salmanassar* King of *Assyria*; and having possess'd themselves of a great Part of *Lydia* in *Asia Minor*, they made Peace with *Halyattes* the King of that Country, upon yielding them all his Dominions beyond the *Halys*, and settled so good a Correspondence with him, that when *Cyaxares* the *Mede* invaded them, he took their Part; after which both People intermix'd by Marriages. They associated with *Mithridates* against the *Romans*; but his Son *Machares* having made Peace with *Lucullus*, the *Romans* never marched that Way. There is little said of them afterwards till the Invasion of the *Tartars*; by whom being sub-

dued, they submitted to the Great *Cham*, whose Power declining, they are become free, and join with whom they please, but frequently with their Neighbours the *Crim Tartars*, whom *Heylin* says they sometimes assisted with 50000 Horse for the Grand Seignior's Service; and they also furnish the *Persians* with Troops. He adds, That the *Egyptian Mamelucks* are suppos'd to derive their Origine from hence. The *Sarmaticæ Asiatica* extended very far N. *Heylin* says to the Frozen Ocean, so that it included most of *Tartaria Deserta*. *Cellarius* carries it beyond the *Hyperborean Mountains*, which he places in Lat. 60. amongst whom dwelt the People call'd *Hyperborei*, more frequently mention'd than the Mountains. *Pomponius Mela* says, they liv'd on the *Asian Coast*, beyond the *Riphaean Mountains*, and (according to *Virgil*) they lay under the N. Pole, *Georg.* 3. v. 381. The Curious may find more of them in *Pliny*. The ancient Inhabitants of those Countries are very obscure. The *Hippophagi*, or Horse-eaters, lay S. of the *Hyperborei*: The *Periarbidi* S. of the *Riphaean Mountains*: The *Chenides* betwixt the *Tanais* and the *Rha*: The *Esæi*, *Phthirophagi*, *Materi*, *Coraxi*, and *Orgasi*, lay on the E. Side of the *Rha* or *Volga*. *Heylin* places in this Country the following Sorts of *Tartars*; 1. The *Zavolhenses*, betwixt the *Circassians* and the *Volga*. He says, 'tis the greatest Tribe of the *Tartars*, and therefore called *Horda Magna*. From hence he thinks the *Crim Tartars* descended, tho' they afterwards became their Masters: That their chief Town lies on the River *Volga*, and is called *Bolgar*. He supposes this Country to be *Mithridatis Regio*. This Tribe was govern'd by its own King, whom they call'd the Great *Cham*, till in 1506 he was subdued by the *Crim Tartars*, and they were afterwards conquer'd by *Basilus* the Great Duke of *Muscovy*, who seiz'd *Bolgar* their Capital, still retain'd by his Successors, who call themselves Kings of *Bolgar*; but the Majority of the People return'd to the Obedience of the *Crim Tartars*. 2. The *Noihacenses*, or *Nagian Tartars*, lie E. from the *Zavolhenses*, on the other Side the *Volga*, extend as far as *Zagathay*, and come Southward to the *Caspian Sea*, and the *Montes Hippici*. They are the most warlike, fierce, and cruel, of the *Tartars*, despise all Arts, and make no use.

use of Money or Corn. Their best Diet is Horse-Flesh and Mare's-Milk, the former either roasted by the Sun, or dry'd by hanging at their Saddles. With such Cheer (says *Haclyt*) *Azim-Chan*, one of their Princes, entertained Mr. *Jenkinson*, and other English Men, as they travelled down the *Volga* to the *Caspian* Sea in Qu: *Elizabeth's* Time. Their Government is by several *Morseys* or Chiefs. Their Wars for most Part are to get Booty or Presents from the *Muscovites*, and others of their Neighbours.

3. The *Kirgess* lie betwixt the *Nagians* and *Circassians*, mix'd with some lesser Tribes. They wander about with their Families, and govern their Journies by the Pole-Star. They are partly *Mahometans* and Pagans, hang up their Dead on Trees, pay much Reverence to their Priests, who hallow 'em by sprinkling them with a Mixture of Blood, Milk, Earth, and Cow-Dung. They have Annual Presents from the *Muscovites*, that they may not interrupt their Trade down the *Volga*.

4. The *Thumenses* lie more N. than the rest, and have the *Zavolhenfes* on the S. and the Territory of *Viacca* in *Muscovy*. They keep together in great Bodies for fear of the *Muscovites*. They are much given to Conjuring, in order to raise Tempests to defeat their Enemies. 'Tis said, they are subject to the Great Cham of *Cashay*, if there be any such. Next to them lie,

5. The *Molgomozans*, who (*Heylin* says) are Pagans, live in Caves, and feed on Worms, Mice, Serpents, and other Vermin. *Heylin* adds, That these Hords, with the neighbouring Kingdoms of *Casan* and *Astracan*, and some of the *Muscovite* Provinces on the *Tanais* and *Dwina*, did formerly make up the *Sarmatia Asiatica*, whose Inhabitants passing thro' the *Sarmatian* Streights, overrun *Media*, and enslav'd it for many Years, till *K. Phraartes* invited the Chief of them to a Feast, kill'd most of them when in Drink, and gave the rest Leave to return home, where they had a memorable Battle with their Slaves, who having possess'd themselves of their Wives during their Absence, were against readmitting them, and prov'd too hard for them by Weapons; but their Masters having Recourse to Whips, had the better; and in Remembrance of this, the People at *Novogrod*, where the Battle was fought, stamp'd their Coin with a

Horse-man shaking a Whip; and the *Muscovite* Maids send Whips curiously wrought to their Sweethearts before Marriage, in Token of their Subjection to them. This Story is mention'd by *Justin* in his 2d Book. Near the Mouth of the *Rha* or *Volga* in this Country there grows a Medicinal Root, which the Physicians call *Rha-Pontick*, to distinguish it from *Rha-Barbarum*, or *Rhubarb*, which is Purgative; whereas this is Binding.

Their chief Towns of Old were, 1. *Cimmerium*, a Town and Promontory on the Streights of that Name. 2. *Phanagoria*, a little further E. a Town of great Trade on a small Island, where the *Greeks* had a Factory. 'Twas the Metropolis of the *Bosphorani*. 3. *Apathurgus*, *Pliny's* *Apaturium*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus*, where *Hercules* is said to have slain the Giants that assaulted her. This Coast is not well known, because the *Turks* hinder other Nations from trading in the *Euxine*. Their principal Harbours were, the *Sinus Cerceticus*, *Sinda*, and *Bata*.

Luyts says, the *Circassians*, now *Cherken*, live by Robbery on their Neighbours and Countrymen; That the Men and Women are cloath'd alike. The former do not let their Beards grow till 60. Their Religion differs both from the Christian and *Mahometan*, and their Nobility is absolute. *Tavernier* says, the Country abounds with Hills, Vallies, Springs, Woods, many Sorts of Flowers; That they have no Towns nor Fortresses, but large Villages of a Circular Figure, with a great empty Space in the Middle. *Sir John Chardin* says, That this Country, from the Lake *Maotis* to *Mengrelia*, is reckon'd 600 Miles along the Coasts; That 'tis pleasant, fruitful, and produces Cherries, Apples, Pears, and Walnuts, without Trouble. Their chief Wealth consists in Cattle, such as Goats, Deer, and Sheep, whose Wool is as fine as that of *Spain*, and us'd by the *Muscovites* for Felts. They sow no Grain but Millet for their Bread, and Barley for their Horses. Their Drink is Water and *Boza*, a Liquor made of Millet, as intoxicating as Wine. They live in Wooden Huts, go almost naked, and are sworn Enemies to the neighbouring Provinces. Their Beds are of Sheep-Skins sew'd together, stuffed with Millet-Leaves,

beat as small as Chaff. Their Religion, he says, is nothing but superstitious Ceremonies, borrow'd from the Greeks and Mahometans. He adds, That they are neither Subjects nor Tributary to the Port, the Turks not thinking it worth while to conquer their Country. Vessels trade with them from Constantinople, but not without Hostages, and Arms in their Hands, they are so treacherous, and given to Robbing. Their Trade is by bartering Slaves, Honey, Wax, Leather, Jackals, Zandava, and other Beasts-Skins, for what they want. The Abca's border on the Circassians, and possess about 100 Miles on the Coast towards Mengrelia. They are not quite so savage as the Circassians, but equally thievish, which obliges Merchants to the like Precautions with them.

G E O R G I A,

HAS (according to Sanfon.) Comania on the N. Turcomania on the S. the Black Sea on the W. the Persian Sea on the E. and Part of Persia on the S. E. This Country formerly contain'd Colchis properly so called on the W. Iberia in the Midland, and Albania in the E. with Part of Armenia and Media Atropatene.

C O L C H I S P R O P R I A.

The Ancients are not agreed in the Boundaries of this Country. Strabo begins it at Trebisond, and Ptolomy extends it to the Cappadocian Pontus; but they agree better in the Northern Boundary, which they make the Mountain Corax or Caucasus, a Chain of Hills which run almost the whole Length of the Isthmus, and divide this Country from Comania on the N. Strabo says, these Mountains reach from Sea to Sea, and are the highest of Northern Asia. They begin at Colchis, and end at the Caspian Sea. They were anciently inhabited by barbarous People; and the Poets say, Prometheus was banish'd hither. Pliny describes the Portæ Caucasie, or Pass of Caucasus, thus: 'Tis a great Work of Nature, enclos'd with rugged Mountains, the Passage being shut up at both Ends by Gates, made fast with Iron Beams. In the Middle of the Pass flows a

River of a noxious Smell, and on the Rock beyond there's a Castle call'd Gumania, strongly fortified, to keep out the neighbouring People, over against the Town of Harmastis in Iberia. He charges those with a Mistake who confound this Pass with the Caspiæ Portæ. Tacitus is guilty of this Error, *Annal. Lib. 6. Cap. 33.* who says, the Iberi pass'd by the Caspiæ Portæ into Armenia, since that Pass lay a great Way from the Iberi. Procopius places the *Via Caspia* in the E. Part of Caucasus, by which the Huns enter'd Persia and the Roman Provinces. The Macedonians, out of Flattery, call'd Mount Paropamisus in India, Caucasus, that it might be said Alexander had pass'd it; and this might give Occasion to the Fable of his Columns erected in Comania. Caucasus, says Buno, is now called Corax or Cochias, is perpetually cover'd with Snow, and so high, that the Reflexion of the Sun is seen upon it during the third Part of the Night. The Holstein Ambassadors say, That Q. Curtius is not altogether in the Wrong to say, that it crosses all Asia, because the Mountains Ararat and Taurus come so near it, that they look like a Concatenation of three Mountains. Sir John Chardin says, the Natives pass the Snow on the Top of it with flat Sandals, to keep them from sinking; and the Guides here make long Prayers to their Images to keep the Winds down; for if they be high, they bury Travellers in the Snow. This Mountain, tho' desert for some Leagues, is in many Places fruitful to the Top, and produces Honey, Wheat, Gum, Wine, many Sorts of Fruit, and feeds large Herds of Hogs and other Cattle. The Vines are so luxuriant, that they run up to the Tops of the highest Trees. The Inhabitants on and about it live in Wooden Huts, of which every Family has 4 or 5. They are for most Part Christians, use the Georgian Ceremonies, are fresh Complexion'd, and their Women handsome. At the Bottom of the Hill there's a large fruitful Valley, water'd by the River Kur, has many Villages, with the Ruins of several Castles and Churches, destroy'd by the Turks.

The chief Towns mention'd by the Ancients in this Country were, 1. Pityus Magnus, a large Trading City near the Mouth of the River Corax, which falls into the Euxine Sea. 'Twas plunder'd by the Heniochi,

thi, the Boundary of the Romans on that Side, and well fortified, because of their barbarous Neighbours; as was *Sebastopolis*, within two Days Journey of it. 'Twas in this and the neighbouring Countries that *Mithridates* levied his Army against the Romans, on Pretence of making War upon his Neighbours the *Bosporani*.

2. *Dioscurias*, now *Savatopoli*, on the same Coast, about 11 Miles S. E. from *Pityus*. *Mela* says, it was built by *Castor* and *Pollux*, when they enter'd this Country with *Jason*. *Arrianus* says, it was afterwards called *Sebastopolis*; but *Pliny* makes them different Places, and says, *Dioscurias* was once so famous, that it was frequented by 300 Nations of different Dialects, and the Romans made use of 130 Interpreters there in their Negotiations. *Sebastopolis* is suppos'd to have been a Castle adjoining to that City. The principal River in this Country is *Phasis*, which rises in the *Moschici Montes*, on the Borders of *Armenia*, and falls into the *Euxine Sea*. *Pliny* says, it was navigable a great Way by large Ships; that it had 120 Bridges over it, and abundance of fine Towns on its Banks; among others, one of its own Name near its Mouth, now called *Fasso*, and *Phazzeth*, noted for *Jason's* Expedition hither to fetch the Golden Fleece, kept here in a Grove, says the Fable; the Moral of which is, That this Country was in those Days noted for a good Trade, but dangerous, because of the barbarous Inhabitants. 'Twas then reckon'd the outmost Period of Navigation in those Parts, whence came the Proverb, *Phasin usque Navigat*. 'Twas a Bishop's See, Suffragan of *Trebisond*, but afterwards a Metropolis. *Isidorus* says, Peacocks were first found in a neighbouring Island in this River, from whence they were called *Phasiani Aves*. Some say, our Pheasants had likewise their Name from thence.

The Expedition of the *Argonauts* into this Country was undertaken by some Noble Grecians, under the Conduct of *Jason*, in a Ship called *Argo*, in the Time of *Gideon* the Judge of *Israel*. They were induced to it by the Report they heard of the Riches of their Country, and of their King *Aetes* who entertain'd them kindly; but his Treasures being well guarded, *Jason* pretending Love to his Daughter *Medea*, got her to betray

them into his Hands, and brought her and them to Greece. The Poets, because this was an extraordinary Adventure in those Days, set it off with Fables of their having stole the Golden Fleece, &c. it being the Custom of the Inhabitants, says *Strabo*, to lay Fleeces in the Streams, to catch the Gold which the Water brought down from the Mountains.

3. *Sybaris*, the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Colchis*, about 9 Miles from which lay the Temple of *Mars*, to which *Medea* is said to have brought the *Argonauts*.

4. *Æa*, *Ptolomy's* *Æapolis*, an Egyptian Colony, planted here by *Sesostris K.* of *Egypt* in the Time of *Rehoboam*, when he attempted the Conquest of *Colchis*, but in vain. There were several other Towns in this Country mentioned by *Ptolomy* and others, but of no great Note, and now not known.

Bochart derives the Name of the Country and ancient Inhabitants from *Cassahim*, one of the Sons of *Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*; but that seems to be too far fetched. *Amianus Marcellinus* makes them originally Egyptians. *Heylin* says, they had such rich Mines of Gold and Silver, that their Kings made all their Utensils, and the very Beams of their Chambers, of those Metals. The Fame of this engaged *Sesostris* above-mentioned to invade them; but he was discomfited, and forced to retire with Shame. The Inhabitants join'd with *Tigranes K.* of *Armenia* against the Romans, but were worsted; upon which *Orodes* their King was obliged to submit to *Pompey*, and redeem his Peace by sending him a Bedstead of pure Gold, and other rich Presents; so that they were never reduced to a Roman Province. They had much ado to preserve their Liberty betwixt the Eastern Empire and the Persians afterwards. In 1579, Sultan *Amarath III.* sent his Admiral, and took the City of *Phasis*, which he made the Seat of a Turkish Governor, who keeps the Inhabitants in Awe.

The Country is now called *Mengrelia*, and some say is divided into 3 small Kingdoms, viz. 1. *Imaretta*, whose King is the Sovereign of the whole Country. 2. *Mengrelia*, properly so called. 3. *Guriel*, to which some add a 4th called *Abassa*, or *Abogassa*.

Sir *John Chardin* says, it is much less than the ancient Kingdom of *Colchis*, is about 110 Miles.

Miles long, and 60 broad. It was anciently fortified against the *Abca's*, who lie N. of them by a Wall of 60 Miles long, now demolished, and become a thick Forrest. The Country, he says, is full of Hills and Mountains, Vallies and Plains, almost cover'd with Woods, except some Arable Land, which is but little, and they are forced to preserve it by continually grubbing up the Roots that spread into it. The Air is temperate as to Heat and Cold, but unwholesome because of the continual Wet, which by the Heat of the Sun breeds pestilential Vapours. They have but little Corn or Pulse, and their Fruits are wild, without Taste, and unwholesome, except their Vines, which thrive well, and produce excellent Wine. The Earth is so moist, that they never plough it for Wheat and Barley, but sow them upon the Ground without any Cultivation; and for other Corn, they plough with Shares of Wood. Their most common Grain is Gomm, as small as Coriander-Seed, and resembling Millet. Of this they make Paste, use it for Bread, and prefer it to Wheat, it being acceptable to the Palate, cooling, and laxative. The People of Quality eat Wheaten Bread, as a Rarity; but the meaner Sort never taste it. They have Plenty of Millet, and some Rice. They abound with excellent Pork, have some Beef and Goats-Flesh, but the latter not good. Their Wild-Boars, Harts, Stags, Fallow Deer, and Hares, are excellent Food. They have abundance of Partridges, Pheasants, Quails, some River Fowl, and Wild Pigeons. Their Nobility spend most of their Time in Hawking; but their chief Pastime is the Flight of the Falcon at the Herons, which they let go again as soon as they cut off the Tufts of their Crowns, with which they adorn their own Caps. The Nobility and Gentry dispose of the Lives and Estates of their Tenants, sell their Wives and Children at Pleasure, and oblige them to furnish them with Corn, Wine, Cattle, and other Provisions. They decide such Quarrels as happen betwixt their Vassals, but determine their own by Arms, and never go abroad without Lances, Bows and Swords. Their Habit is a thin Felt Cap in Summer, and a Furr'd Cap in Winter, a Shirt as low as their Knee, which they tuck into a strait Pair of Breeches,

have never above one Shirt, and one Pair of Breeches, at a time, which last them a Year, during which they never wash them but thrice, and once or twice a Week shake 'em over a Fire for the Vermin to drop off, with which they are sufficiently haunted. The Men are well shap'd, but given to all Sorts of Wickedness, and glory in Theft and Robbery. They have many Wives, and sell their Children for Money, or what else they want; and if they have not wherewith to maintain 'em, think it a Piece of Charity to murder such as are newly born, and those who are sick and past Recovery, alledging, that they free them from a deal of Misery. The Women are generally handsome and witty, paint their Eyebrows; and such of them as are coarse, dawb their whole Faces. They dress with all the Curiosity they can, their Habit being like the *Persians*, and their Head-Dresses like the *Europeans*, whom they likewise imitate in curling their Hair; but they are haughty, deceitful, cruel, and impudent. Both Men and Women are very great Drinkers, and at their Feasts provoke their Friends to drink as much as they can. They drink their Wine unmix'd, begin with Pints, and end with much greater Quantities. Their Entertainment with Men is of their Wars and Robberies, and with Women obscene Stories of their Amours. They have great Numbers of good Horses, the keeping of which costs them little, for they neither shoe them, nor feed them with Corn. They have no Cities nor Towns, except a few on the Coast; but their Houses are scatter'd so thick thro' the Country, that one can hardly travel a Mile without meeting 3 or 4. Their Houses are all of Timber. The poorer Sort never raise them above one Story, nor the rich above two. In the lower Rooms they have always Beds and Couches to lie and sit upon, because of the Moisture of the Earth; but they have no Windows nor Chimnies, and the whole Family lie together in one Room, and eat together without Distinction. On Working-Days, the Servants eat nothing but Gomm, and the Masters Pulse, with dry'd Fish or Flesh; but on Holidays, and at Feasts, they have Beef, Pork, or Venison.

There are 9 or 10 Castles in the Country, the chief of which is *Ruis*, the Residence

dence of their King. He and his Queen, with all their Servants, eat together. When the Weather is fair, they dine in open Courts; and if cold, they make rowling Fires, for they have Plenty of Wood. His Revenues are about 20000 Crowns *per Annum*, which arises from the Customs, the selling of Slaves, and Fines, &c. This he lays up, because his Slaves serve him for nothing, and his Lands furnish him with more Provisions than he can spend. The Country is but thinly Peopled, because of their frequent Wars, and the great Numbers sold by the Nobility to the *Persians* and *Turks*; so that he is not able to raise above 4000 Men fit to bear Arms, and most of those are Horsemen, for he has not above 300 Foot. His Court upon solemn Occasions consists of about 200 Gentlemen; but at other Times he has not above 120. Their Trade is by Way of Barter, for they have no set Price of Money, that which is current here being *Piasters*, *Dutch Crowns*, and *Abassis* coin'd in *Georgia*, with the *Persian* Stamp.

Their Religion was formerly that of the *Greek Church*. They pretend to have been converted by the Apostle *St. Andrew*; but others say, by a Slave in *Constantine's* Time. *Sir John* says, they are now drown'd in Ignorance, look upon Life Eternal, the Day of Judgment, and the Resurrection, to be Fables devis'd by Men. Their Priests can scarce write or read, but pretend to foretel Things to come by their Books. Their chief Bishop is called *Catholicos*. He is Chief of all the Clergy of *Mengrelia*, *Abca*, *Guriel*, *Mount Caucasus*, and *Imeretta*; but the Prince appoints and deposes him at Pleasure. His Revenue is very great, for he has 400 Vassals, who furnish him with all Necessaries, and many Superfluities. He sells their Children to the *Persians* and *Turks*; and when he visits his Dioceses, 'tis only to rake in Money. He will not consecrate a Bishop for less than 600 Crowns, say a Mass for the Dead under 800, nor any other for less than 100. His pretended Holiness consists in Abstinence from Flesh and Wine during *Lent*, and in long Prayers Day and Night; but he is so wretchedly ignorant, that he can scarce read his Breviary. He is obliged to go once in his Life to the Church of *Pigivitas*, where they alledge

St. Andrew preach'd, and there he consecrates the Oil which the *Greeks* call *Myrone*. He has 6 Bishops under him, who take no Care of the People or Priests, nor ever visit their Churches or Dioceses. They are very rich, sumptuous in their Apparel, oppress their Vassals, and sell their Wives and Children to maintain their Luxury. They place the Whole of their Religion in their Fasts, and think themselves obliged to no other Duty. Their Cathedrals are neat, adorned with Images, which they deck with Gold and Jewels, to atone for their Sins. They are cloath'd in Scarlet and Velvet, and differ only from Seculars in their long Beards, and wearing black high-crown'd Hats. Their Priests are numerous, but as great Slaves as the Seculars, till their own Ground, and have no Respect shown them but when they say Mass or Grace. Their Churches are as nasty as Stables, their Images very ill kept; yet they worship the material Substance of them, without talking of Relative Adoration, as the Papists. They worship those most that are finest, or most fam'd for their Cruelty. *St. Giobas* is one of their most formidable Images; therefore they never approach nearer than they can just see him, but say their Prayers, and leave their Presents at some Distance, on a Fancy, that he kills those who come near him. If they swear by any of their Images, they never break their Oaths. Their chief Saint is *St. George*. They celebrate Mass without any other Sacerdotal Habit but Surplices. Their Chalices and Pattins are of Wood. In *Lent*, they never say Mass but on *Saturdays* and *Sundays*, for they think the Communion spoils their Fasting. They consecrate Leaven'd or Unleaven'd Bread without Distinction. They laugh at Transubstantiation. They anoint the Foreheads of their Children with the Oil call'd *Myrone* as soon as they are born; but do not baptize them till the Parents be able to feast the Priest, the Godfather and Guests, and then they wash them all over with Water. By this Means many of their Children die unbaptiz'd. Their Marriages are by Way of Bargain and Sale: The Parents demand a Price for their Daughters from the Bridegroom. When the Bargain is made, they allow them to keep Company, tho' the Money is not paid. They give

something less for a Widow, but least for a divorc'd Woman. If any be barren, or of an ill Temper, they hold it lawful to divorce them, as a Match not made by God. None of them read the Bible, but the Women repeat some Stories of the Gospel by Tradition. They observe the same Fasts with the *Greeks*. They make the Sign of the Cross when they drink Wine and eat Pork, and direct their Prayers to their Idols for their own Prosperity, and the Ruin of their Enemies. They sacrifice like the *Jews* and *Gentiles*, and never abstain from Work but at *Christmas* and *Easter*, when they spend their Time in excessive Eating and Drinking. Their greatest Festivals are when an Idol is carried thro' their Country. Then they put on their best Habits, and make it Presents. Their Mourning for the Dead is barbarous. The Women rend their Clothes, tear their Hair and Flesh, beat their Breasts, cry, yell, and gnash with their Teeth. The Men do the like, shave their Heads and Beards, and continue this Mourning 40 Days; but the Fury lasts only 10. On the 40th Day they bury the Corps, make a Feast for all their Friends, Relations and Neighbours, that come to bewail the Deceased; and the Bishop that says Mass takes the Horse, Clothes, Weapons, and Plate, of the Person that is dead; so that tho' those Mournings undo many Families, they are obliged to keep up these barbarous Solemnities. They have no Bells in their Churches; but the Priests call them together by knocking on a Board with a great Stick.

They have a sort of Monks of the Order of *St. Basil*, whose chief Religion is to observe their Fasts. They have also Nuns of the same Order, but no Nunneries or Vows; so that they may quit the Order when they please.

Sir John says, the neighbouring People live after the same Manner in all Respects, only those who border on *Persia* and *Turkey* are the most civiliz'd, and such as border on the *Tartars* and *Scythians* the most barbarous. He adds, That the Country of *Guria* is but small, has *Imeretta* on the N. Mount *Caucasus* on the E. *Mengrelia* on the W. and the *Black Sea* on the S. It lies along the Coast, from the River *Phasis* to the Castle of *Goni*, which is held by the *Turks*.

The Inhabitants of *Caucasus*, which border upon *Mengrelia*, were anciently Christians, but profess no Religion now, live by Rapine, and have nothing that can entitle them to Humanity but Speech. They are tall and portly, and their very Looks and Language discover their savage Dispositions, they being the most resolute Assassins and daring Robbers in the World. They are divided into several Tribes; but the *Turks* call them all by the Name of *Black Circassians*, not from their Complexion, for they are very fair, but because their Country is always darken'd with Fogs and Clouds. 'Tis likewise much infested with Tygers, Leopards, Lions, Wolves, and Jackals, which make a great Havock among their Cattle, and disturb the Inhabitants by their dreadful Howlings. Sir John says, That *Isfaour* is the Port where all Vessels that trade to *Mengrelia* lie, but desert, without any Habitations, except some Huts built by the Traders while they stay there with Boughs of Trees.

IBERIA, now IMERETTA,

Lies E. from *Colchis*, about the Middle of the Isthmus. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Iberes* or *Iberi*, say *Strabo*, *Stephanus* and *Plutarch*. *Mela* adds the *Cadusii* and *Hyrcaei*. The *Iberi* were the most powerful in the Time of *Tacitus*, who takes Notice of their invading *Armenia* with great Forces. Some think the *Spaniards* came originally from hence, because the *Greeks* call both Countries and People by the same Name of *Iberes* and *Iberia*. Most of this Country is environ'd with Mountains, which makes its Situation very strong. It has *Caucasus* on the N. *Albania* on the E. and *Armenia the Greater* on the S. says *Ptolomy*. 'Twas well water'd with Rivers, the chief of which is *Cyrus* or *Cyrnus*, which rises in the Mountains of *Armenia*, call'd *Moschici Montes*, takes in the River *Aragon*, and runs thro' *Albania* into the *Caspian Sea*.

Cellarius says, the ancient Towns of most Note were, 1. *Harmozica*, which *Causabon* thinks to be *Ptolomy's* *Harmastica*, a fortified Place on the River *Cyrus*, according to *Strabo*, and the same with *Pliny's* *Hermastis*. 2. *Seumora*, or *Seusamera*, on the River *Aragus* or *Aragon*, which was also a strong Town, within

within 16 Stadia of the other, near the Streights thro' which *Pompey* and *Canidius Bassus* enter'd this Country. 3. The Town of *Phryxus*, a strong Place in the Borders of *Colchis*, built by *Phryxus*, who sail'd hither before the *Argonauts*. *Strabo* says, it was in his Time call'd *Ideeſſa*.

Pliny divides the Country into the Districts of *Phasia* and *Triare*, which reach'd to the Mountain *Paryadræ*. Beyond them lay the Defarts of *Colchis*; on the Side of which, next to the *Ceraunii*, liv'd the *Armenochalybes* and the *Moschi*, towards the River *Iberus*, that falls into the *Cyrus*. Below them lay the *Scacassani*, and then the *Macrones*, upon the River *Abſarus*. Then from the Confines of *Albania* upon the Mountains liv'd the barbarous Nations of the *Sylvi*, and below them the *Lubieni*, *Diduri*, and *Sodii*. The *Ceraunii* liv'd in Part of the Mountains of *Caucasus* ſo call'd, ſays *Strabo*. The *Moschi* liv'd in the *Montes Moſchici*, which ſeparate *Iberia* from *Armenia*, and both from *Colchis*, but are not to be confounded with the *Moffyni*. *Herodotus* ſays, That the Country of the *Moschi*, or *Regio Moſchica*, was inhabited by the *Iberes*, *Colchi*, and *Armenii*. *Heylin* ſays, this Country is now called *Georgia*; but we chuſe rather to follow *Sir John Chardin*, who was on the Place, and ſays, it is now *Imeretta*, bounds it with Mount *Caucasus*, *Colchis*, the *Black Sea*, the Principality of *Guriel*, and Part of *Georgia*. He ſays, it is 26 Miles long, 60 broad, full of Woods and Mountains, and lovely Vallies, which yield Corn, Pulſe, Herbs of all Sorts, and have great Herds of Cattle. The Inhabitants differ little from the *Mengrelians*. They have ſome Iron Mines, and Money coin'd in their own Country. The ancient *Iberians* were noted for a warlike Nation. They us'd to ſet as many Pillars about the Graves of Men as they had kill'd Enemies in their Life-time. They were divided into Tribes, who had all Things in common, and the eldeſt was their chief Ruler. They married always in their own Families, and fancy'd themſelves to be *David's* Offspring by the Wife of *Uriah*. *Heylin* ſays, they were firſt converted by a Chriſtian Captive-Woman, who by her Prayers reſtor'd their Queen when given over by Phyſicians; upon which their King ſent for Miniſters to *Conſtantine the Great*, which was granted.

They were afterwards of the *Greek Church*, but had a Patriarch and 18 Biſhops of their own. Their Patriarch reſided for moſt Part at *St. Catherine's Monastery* on Mount *Sinai*, whoſe Diſtance occaſion'd the ſpreading of *Mahometaniſm* among 'em. *Heylin* ſays, the Jeſuits attempted to ſettle there by the following Cheat: About 1614, the *Persians* invaded this Country, took the City *Cremen*, carried off *Cetaba* the Mother of their Prince, and murder'd her in *Persia*, becauſe ſhe would not turn *Mahometan*. The Jeſuits, who then travelled in *Persia*, laid hold of this Opportunity to ingratiate themſelves with *Teimurazes* Prince of *Iberia*, by cutting off the Head of a dead Perſon whom they found in the Road, anointed it with Oil and Odours, brought it into the Country, ſignified to the Prince that it was the Head of his Mother the bleſſed Martyr, deſired Leave to be planted in a Monastery, and to have the keeping of that Relick. The Prince being thus impos'd upon, the Head was placed with great Ceremony in the Church of *St. George* at *Aberdall*, where miraculous Cures being aſcrib'd to it, 'twas much frequented by ſick Perſons, whom, if paſt Cure, the Jeſuits ſent home, preſcribing them a long Time of Repentance, by Way of Preparation, for a Cure; but if the Diſtemper was curable by Phyſick, which the Jeſuits did very well underſtand and preſcribe, they gave it out to be the Effect of the Relick; by which Means they gain'd many Proſelytes, and had like to have perſwaded the Prince to ſubmit to the Pope, as Chriſt's Vicar; but during the Heat of the Intrigue, a Lady who had been taken with the Princeſs, and was then a Slave to a *Persian*, wrote a Letter to the Prince, acquainting him, That by her Perſwaſion, her Maſter had got the Body of his Mother *Cetaba* into his Poſſeſſion, which he might ranſom if he pleas'd. At the ſame Time, two Travellers from *Persia* giving an Account that they ſaw the Jeſuits cut off the Head of a dead Perſon whom they found in the Road, the Impoſture was diſcover'd, the Body of the Queen was ſent for, the falſe Relick caſt out of the Church, the Jeſuits put in Priſon, and afterwards baniſh'd the Country.

Sir John Chardin ſays, the Kingdom of *Imeretta* govern'd the *Abca's*, *Mengrelians*,

and the People of *Guriel*, after they shook off the Yoke of the Emperors of *Constantinople* and *Trebisond*; but falling into Civil Wars among themselves, they call'd in the Assistance of the *Turks*, who made them all Tributaries; so that the King of *Imeretta* pays 80 Boys and Girls, from 10 to 20 Years of Age, Annually to the Gr. Seignior: The Prince of *Guriel* pays 46; the Prince of *Mengrelia* 60000 Ells of Linen-Cloth. The *Abca's* pay now nothing.

The chief Towns of the Country are,
1. *Anarghia*. Sir *John* says, it lies two M. from the Sea, consists of 200 Houses, but so far distant from one another, that the Town is two Miles long. He supposes the ancient large City of *Heraclea* stood in the same Place. The *Turks* come hither with their Barks to buy Slaves. They have Plenty of Wine, and Provisions here are very cheap. It lies near the Mouth of the River *Astolphus*, now called *Langus*; but we don't find it in our Maps.

2. Further up the River lies *Sopias*, where there are two Churches; one of them belongs to the *Theatin* Friars, who came to this Country in 1627 as Physicians. They have good Employment in that Faculty, and have some Houses and Slaves belonging to them; but none of the Country People will embrace their Religion. After this, Sir *John* passed the River *Phasis*, which he says towards the Mouth is a Mile and a half broad, and 60 Fathom deep; the Water muddy and thick, but good to drink. He adds, that there are Islands at the Mouth of it, which being cover'd with Wood, form a delightful Prospect; but our Maps have nothing of it. On one of these Islands stood the Heathen Temple of *Rhea*, says *Arrianus*. It was afterwards a Christian Church, but now ruin'd.

3. *Gonie*, 30 Miles from *Phasis* to the S. is a large Castle in the Territory of *Guriel*, with a small Village of Wooden Houses, and a Custom-House, where the Officers are very rude, and exact what they please, without Regard to the Orders of the Port.

4. *Akalzike*, a Fortrefs on Mount *Caucasus*, with a Town of 400 Houses, and two *Armenian* Churches. The Castle is fortified with double Walls, and flank'd with Towers built with Battlements. 'Tis the Seat of a *Turkish* Bassaw since it was ta-

ken by the *Georgians*, and his Soldiers are quarter'd in the adjacent Villages. The Town is Peopled with *Turks*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Greeks*, and *Jews*, who have Synagogues here, as the rest have Churches. It is water'd by the River *Cyrus*, now *Kur*.

5. *Usker*, on the Road betwixt *Akalzike* and *Gory*. The *Turks* have a Castle here built on a Rock, with a Garrison and a Custom-House, under the Command of a *Sangiac*, within two Leagues of the Mountains, which part *Persia* and *Turkey*. *Heylin* supposes the first Inhabitants were brought hither by *Tubal* the Son of *Japhet*, from whom *Josephus* thinks they were call'd *Thobeli*, and afterwards *Iberes*; when increasing in Number, a Colony of them settled in *Spain*. They join'd with the *Armenians* against the *Romans*, but were forced to a Peace.

ALBANIA, now GEORGIA,

Lies E. from *Iberia*, has Part of *Sarmatia Asiatica* on the N. *Media Atropatene* on the S. and the *Caspian* Sea on the E. *Cluverius* says, 'tis the E. Part of *Georgia*, and had its Name from the River *Albanus*, which runs thro' it into the *Caspian* Sea. *Strabo* bounds it on the S. with *Armenia*, and the River *Cyrus*, and calls the Inhabitants in general *Albani*. The other Rivers were, *Casius*, which lay N. from *Albanus*; *Gerrus*, which lay N. from that; and *Soana*, which divides it from *Sarmatia Asiatica*, N. from *Gerrus*. They all fall into the *Caspian* Sea. *Vossius* corrects *Mela's* Mistake, who says, That the Rivers *Cyrus* and *Cambyses* rose near one another, from the Foot of the Mountains *Corax*; and after running a very different Course, met together in a Lake, and fell into the *Caspian* Sea, and therefore prefers *Ptolomy's* Account. The River *Alaxon*, which falls into the *Cyrus*, separates *Albania* from *Iberia* on the W. Side. Authors are also divided whether the River *Araxes* falls into the *Cyrus* or into the *Caspian* Sea by a Mouth of its own. *Cellarius* in his Map agrees with *Ptolomy*, that one Branch of it runs into the *Cyrus*, and the other into the *Caspian* Sea. We refer the Curious to his Dissertation on that Subject, as we do whether *Caspiana Regio*, and the People *Caspii*, made Part of *Albania*. The ancient Towns of

of this Country were so obscure, that we pass them over. *Heylin* thinks the first Inhabitants to have been brought hither by *Jecker* the Son of *Aram*, the Grandson of *Japhet*; and that his Memory was preserv'd in the City of *Jetara* in this Country. They are little mention'd in History till the Time of the *Romans*, against whom they join'd with the *Armenians* and *Mithridates*, behav'd themselves with great Valour, bringing 40000 Men against them at one Time, and above 100000 at another; but were defeated, and had Kings impos'd on them by the Conquerors. After the Fall of the *Roman* Empire, they were subdued by the *Tartars*, and then infested by the *Turks*, but are now subject to the *Persians*. Some derive their present Name from *St. George*; but the *Georgians* being mention'd by *Pliny* and *Mela*, sufficiently confutes this. Others derive it from the *Gordiean* Hills, and some from the *Greek* Word, which signifies Labourers, because they were noted Husbandmen: But *Strabo* denies them that Qualification, and says, they needed not to make use of the Sea, since they knew no better how to make use of their Land; tho' the Country be so fruitful, that with very small Industry it produces abundance of Corn and Fruits. *Herbert* says, they were most of them in his Time *Nestorians* and *Jacobites*, and more inclinable to Arms than Trade; That the *Persians* esteem'd them so much for Comeliness of Body, Height of Spirit, and Faithfulness of Trust, that they employ'd them in chief Places of Command; and as anciently the *Egyptian* Sultans had their *Mamalucks*, the *Persians* had the greatest Number of their Troops named *Cooserbashes* from thence. *Abas*, the K. of *Persia*, made War upon them in *Herbert's* Time on this Occasion; *Scander* their Prince having comply'd with the *Turks*, *Abas* the King of *Persia* sent an Army to invade him, and with that Army *Constandel*, Son to *Scander*, because he had turn'd *Mahometan*, and taken Service under the *Persians*. When they enter'd the Country, *Constandel*, on Pretence of Duty, made his Father a Visit, but afterwards murder'd him, and usurp'd his Throne. He did not long enjoy that Dignity, for some of his Countrymen, with the Help of the *Turks*, soon drove him out. He retired again to *Persia*, from whence

Abas sent him with a greater Army; when the Queen, his Brother's Wife, prevailing with him to come to an Interview, got him killed by an Ambush. After this, *Abas* sent *Temerisk* with a great Army to be their King. The *Georgians* accepted him for the Sake of Peace; but *Abas* being inform'd, that *Temerisk* was more the Grand Seignior's Friend than his, he sent for him to Court, and upon his Refusal to come, sent an Army, which ravag'd the Country, and forc'd *Temerisk* to call for Assistance from the *Turks*, who soon drove out the *Persians*, and invaded their Country. To revenge this, *Abas* enter'd *Georgia* in Person with a great Army, burnt the Churches and Towns, destroy'd the Country, and forc'd *Temerisk* to the Hills; after which he return'd home. *Morad*, a Noble *Georgian*, to be reveng'd on the *Persians*, contriv'd this Stratagem: He disfigured his Face as *Zopyrus* did of Old, and went to the *Persian* Court, pretending to fly from the Tyranny of *Temerisk*, and begged Assistance against him. Upon this, another Army was sent to invade *Georgia*; and when they enter'd the Confines, *Morad* gave Notice to his Confederates to invade the *Persian* Camp by Night, where they cut off 700 of them, with 11 great Officers, which struck such a Terror into the rest, that they could not be perswaded to hazard themselves further amongst such desperate Men, who had nothing left them but their Lives and inaccessible Mountains. This brought *Abas* to a Peace with them, on Condition that for the Time to come they should put a greater Value on the Friendship of the *Persians*.

Sir John Chardin says, the Country in his Time was subject to the *Persians*, is woody and mountainous, unless in the Middle, where it is more even and level. The Temper of the Air is kindly, being very dry, cold in Winter, and hot in Summer. Their fair Weather begins in *May*, and lasts till the End of *November*. The Soil is well water'd, produces all Sorts of Grain, Herbs and Fruits in abundance. Their Cattle are numerous and good; their Boars-Flesh excellent, as are their Pigs, upon which the common People live for most Part. They have Plenty of excellent Wine, export much, and the K. of *Persia* drinks it at his Table. The Complexion of the People is good,

good, and their Women beautiful; yet they paint and dress sumptuously. The *Georgians* are naturally witty, and as capable of Learning and Arts as any People in the World, but are drown'd in Vice and Ignorance, perfidious, ungrateful, proud, and implacable when provok'd. Drunkenness, Luxury, and Concubinage, are so common among their Clergy, as well as Laity, that they reckon it no Scandal, and say, That he that is not drunk at *Easter* and *Christmas*, deserves to be excommunicated. The Women contribute more than the Men to that general Debauchery, tho' in common Conversation they be civil and courteous. They are habited like the *Persians*, and the Men like the *Poles*. Their great Men imitate the *Persians* in their Houses. They are absolute Tyrants over their Vassals, make them work for them without Meat or Wages, and sell their Children for Slaves to others, or make them their own. They pretend to have been converted in the 4th Age. They place all their Religion in observing Fasts, and making long Prayers. They have a Patriarch, whom they call *Catholicos*, an Archbishop, and several Bishops, whose Sees are disposed of by their *Mahometan* Prince to his own Relations, his Brother being their Patriarch when Sir *John* was there. Their Churches in Cities are kept neater than those of *Mengrelia*; but these belonging to their Villages full as nasty, and built on inaccessible Mountains, where they bow to them at a great Distance, but scarce go to them once in 10 Years. They are great Usurers, take Two *per Cent. per Month*, and lend no Money without a Pawn. They have great Quantities of Silk, tho' they wear none, but export it to *Turkey*, *Persia*, &c.

Their Towns are, 1. *Teflis*, the Capital of Eastern *Georgia*, one of the fairest, tho' not the largest, in the K. of *Persia's* Dominions. It lies at the Foot of a Mountain, on the W. Side of the River *Kur*, which falls into the *Araxes*. Most of the Houses near the River stand on a Rock. The City has strong and beautiful Walls, except on the Side of the River, and has a Fortrefs on the S. Side, with a Garrison of native *Persians*, who make it a Sanctuary for all Criminals. There are 14 Churches in this City, 6 belonging to the *Georgians*, and 8 to the *Armenians*. *Sion*,

their Cathedral, is built of hewn Stone, after the ancient Manner, consists of 4 Bodies, with a great Dome in the Middle, is kept in good Repair, and painted after the Greek Fashion. The *Armenians* have several Monasteries, and in one of them say there is St. *George's* Skull. They wou'd never suffer the *Persians* to build a Mosque, except in the Fortrefs, which they could not help; but when the *Turkish* Priest went up to the Top of it (according to Custom) to call the People to Prayers, they ply'd him so with Stones, that he never durst appear more. They sell Wine and Pork openly in the Markets and Streets, tho' the *Persians* abhor to see it; but they are obliged to bear with them, lest they should revolt again to the *Turks*. The publick Buildings are of Stone, and kept in good Repair. The Prince's Palace is beautiful, noble, and large, with spacious Gardens, Aviaries and Courts. The Viceroy of *Caca's* Palace is not much inferior to it. There are several Houses of Pleasure in the Out Parts of the City, with many beautiful Gardens, the largest of which belongs to the Prince; but the Trees serve only for Shade and Coolness. The City is populous, much frequented by Strangers on Account of Trade, and the Magnificence of the Court. The Inhabitants name it *Cala*, which is their general Word for all fortified Places. Hence some Geographers call it *Tebele-Cala*. There are several hot Baths here, and the Air is not so cold and boisterous as in other Parts of the Country. Some *Capuchins* were sent hither by the Pope in 1657, who are much esteem'd as Physicians, but make no Progress in planting their Religion; for the *Georgians* will scarce allow them to be Christians. *Herbert* says, it has been frequently a Seat of War betwixt the *Persians* and *Turks*, according as they could respectively master it. *Mustapha*, General to *Amurath III.* forc'd the *Georgians* to abandon it, new fortified it, and put a Garrison into it, with 100 Pieces of Cannon. It was also taken by *Ishmael II.* and *Solyman* his Son, but afterwards recover'd by the *Persians*. *Sanfon* says, it was formerly called *Artaxata*, and was built and fortify'd by *Artaxias*, Father to *Tigranes* K. of *Armenia*, at the Perswasion of *Hannibal*, so as *Lucullus* the Roman was forc'd to raise

raise the Siege of it with Disgrace. That Author places it near Lat. 43. Long. 78 $\frac{1}{4}$.

2. *Derbent*, or *Babalabuab*, lies on the Bank of the *Caspian* Sea; *Moll* says Lat. 41 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 69. *Sanfon* makes it Lat. 46 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 79 $\frac{1}{2}$. He adds, That it is the greatest and most common Passage from *Turcomania*, *Persia*, and other Southern Provinces of *Asia*, towards the N. Places of *Europe* and *Asia*. It lies upon Mountains, and is encompassed with Walls and other Fortifications, so that the *Turks* call it the *Iron Gates*. *Sanfon* thinks it to be the *Caspia Portæ*, so famous in ancient History. *Heylin* says, there are the Remains of an ancient Wall built betwixt this City and *Teflis* by *Alexander the Great*, to defend his Country against the barbarous Nations of the N. He says, 'tis encompassed with two Walls, and so defended by difficult and narrow Passages of the Rocks, that 'tis not easily accessible. 'Tis about two *English* Miles in Length, and the *Caspian* Sea comes up to its Walls. *Mr. Struys*, a *Dutchman*, who saw it in 1670, says, it had then a Garrison of 1200 *Persians*, but very much in Decay, and inhabited by none but *Persians* and *Jews*, who dealt mostly in Slaves. The *Holstein* Ambassadors place it in Lat. 41. 50. say 'tis a League long, and 450 Paces broad. The Inhabitants think the Wall on the S. Side, which is very high, and about 5 Foot thick, was built by *Alexander the Great*. The Stones of it are of Muscle-Shells and Free-Stone beaten to Powder, moulded like Brick, and harder than any Marble. On this Wall there were several *Arabic* and *Syriac* Inscriptions, but so much defaced as not to be legible. The Coast is one entire Rock. They saw several Footsteps of the above-mention'd Wall, which the Natives say reach'd from the *Caspian* to the *Euxine* Sea. On the neighbouring Hills are the Ruins of many Castles, and about the City some Thousands of Tombs, cover'd with Grave-Stones, exceeding the ordinary Stature of Man, with *Arabic* Inscriptions. The Inhabitants say, they are the Tombs of the chief Men of the Army of a King of *Media*, who was routed here by the *Dagesthan Tartars*. The *Persians* and *Tartars* perform their Devotions at those Sepulchres, particularly on the pretended Anniversary of *Abraham's* Sacrifice.

3. *Gory*, a small City in a Plain, on the Banks of the *Kur*, defended by a Castle on a neighbouring Hill, garrison'd by native *Persians*. The Houses are all built of Earth, but the Inhabitants wealthy, and well furnish'd with Provisions, very cheap. There are abundance of Villages on both Sides of this River; and betwixt *Gory* and *Teflis* stands *Calicala*, a City almost in Ruins.

Beyond *Teflis*, in the Way to *Persia*, stands, 1. A Town called *Kupri-Kent*, a Town with a fair Bridge over the River *Tabadi*, in the Arches of which are little Chambers, Portico's, and Balconies, to take the cool Air in the Heat of Summer. 2. *Dely-Jan*, a Town of 300 Houses on the River *Acalstapha*, which runs by a high and dreadful Mountain, that *Sir John Chardin* supposes to be Part of *Taurus*. The neighbouring Country abounds with Villages, and is very fruitful. 'Tis inhabited by *Georgians* and *Armenian* Christians, who hate one another so much, that they won't live in the same Village. Their Houses are hollow Places dug in the Earth, or Huts built of Timber, and cover'd with Turf. The District of *Dely-Jan* is call'd *Cassac*, the Inhabitants being deriv'd from the *Cossacks*, and govern'd by a Prince of their own, who holds of the Crown of *Persia*.

Other Towns of Note in this Country or *Iberia* (for Authors differ to which District they belong) are, 1. *Cremen*. Some make it the Metropolis. 2. *Cachete*, noted for the fairest Church in all the Country, dedicated to St. George. 3. *Triala*, anciently a great City, which had many Churches, as appears still by the Ruins. 4. *Altuncala*, or the Golden Castle, a strong Fortrefs, the usual Residence of the Princes of *Georgia* since the War betwixt the *Persians* and the *Turks*. 5. *Archichelech*, a strong Castle, taken by *Solyman the Magnificent*, and ever since held by the *Turks*. It lies near the Frontiers of *Turcomania*. 6. *Lori*, about two Days Journey from *Teflis*, encompassed with deep Ditches, and a thick Wall, about a Mile in Circuit. It has a strong Castle, and was seiz'd by the *Turks*, who put a Garrison of 7000 Men and 200 Cannon in it. 7. *Temanis*, near which the *Turks* rais'd a Fortrefs of 1700 Yards in Compass, to command the Passes which lead to *Teflis*, and put 200 Pieces of Cannon in it.

We conclude our Account of those Countries in the Isthmus betwixt the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas by observing, that *Sanfon* divides them, according to the modern Names, into *Avogasia* on the N. of the *Euxine* Sea, *Mengrelia* on the E. of it, *Gurgistan* in the Middle, *Zuirrie* on the *Caspian* Sea, and the Country of the *Georgians* on the S.

EASTERN TURKEY in ASIA,

IS divided into *Turcomania* and *Diarbeck*, with their Subdivisions; of which in their proper Place.

T U R C O M A N I A,

Is plac'd by *Sanfon* betwixt *Anatolia* on the W. Part of *Persia* on the E. *Georgia* on the N. and *Diarbeck* on the S. betwixt Long. 71 and 82. and Lat. 38 and 43. So that according to him, the Length from E. to W. is 660 Geometrial Miles, and the Breadth from S. to N. 300. *Heylin* makes it of a much larger Extent, bounds it on the E. with *Media* and the *Caspian* Sea; on the W. with the *Euxine* Sea, *Cappadocia* and *Armenia Minor*; on the N. with *Tartary*; and on the S. with *Mesopotamia* and *Affyria*; but we chuse rather to follow *Sanfon* and *Luyts* who agrees with him. *Tavernier* complains, that this Country is very improperly call'd *Turcomania* in the Maps, and thinks it ought rather to be called *Armenia*, or *Ermenick*, because mostly inhabited by *Armenians*. *Baudrand* divides the *Turcomanns* into 32 Tribes, and says, they are far dispersed thro' *Asia*, especially towards the River *Euphrates*, and the Confines of *Persia*. *Heylin* derives the Name from the *Turcomanns* or *Turks*, who coming hither from *Scythia*, did from hence invade *Persia*, and afterwards spread themselves over those Parts of *Europe*, *Asia* and *Africa*, which they now possess. *Heylin* subdivides it into *Armenia Major*, and the Countries which we have already described betwixt the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas. *Sanfon* subdivides it into the Country of the *Turcomanns* on the N. W. Quarter, *Armenia* on the S. W. Quarter, and the *Curides* on the S. and says, that it answers to the *Armenia Major* of the Ancients. His Description ex-

tends it much further than his Map, for he makes *Teflis* and *Derbent* Towns of *Turcomania*, tho' in his Map he places them in *Georgia*, where we have described them. He reckons also the River *Phasis* in this Country, tho' his Map places it in *Georgia*. *Cluverius* says, That *Armenia* is divided into *Major* and *Minor* by the River *Euphrates*; the *Minor* lying on the W. and the *Major* on the E. Side of it. *Armenia Minor*, he says, is now called *Pegian* and *Bozock*, has the *Euphrates* on the E. the Mountain *Scordiscus* on the W. and N. and Mount *Amo* on the S. The Mountain *Antitaurus* runs thro' the Middle of it.

A R M E N I A M I N O R.

WE chuse to begin with this Part, according to the Course of the Map. *Cellarius* says, Authors are not agreed as to its Boundaries, and censures *Strabo* for his Inconstancy in that Matter, and in describing the Course of the *Euphrates*. *Cluverius* subdivides it into the Countries of *Orbalisine*, *Ætulane*, *Ærethica*, *Horsene*, *Orbisene*, and the Jurisdctions of *Cataonia*, *Morimene*, *Laviana*, and *Aravene*. The only River he mentions in this Country is *Melas*, which rises in Mount *Argæus*, near the Town of *Cæsarea* in *Cappadocia*; and running thro' *Armenia Minor*, falls into the *Euphrates*.

The *Greeks* derive the Name of *Armenia* from the Fable of the *Argonauts*, and alledge, it was so called from *Armenus*, one of *Jason's* Companions, who settled here. *Bochart* derives it from a *Hebrew* Word, which signifies the Mountain of *Minus*, for which he quotes the Interpretations of *Jonathan* the *Caldean* and *Symmachus*, upon *Amos* 4. 3. which they translate, *And they shall be cast out as far as Harmona, or beyond the Mountains of Harminus*. *Theodore*t says, *Symmachus* translated the Word *Armana*, *Armenia*, with whom *Jerome* agrees, and interprets it, *That they shall be cast out into Armenia*, which perhaps may give Light to our Translation, that seems to be very obscure.

The chief ancient Towns of this Country are, 1. *Nicopolis*. *Strabo* says, it was built by *Pompey*, in Remembrance of his Victory over *Tigranes*, and was well inhabited in his Time. *Ptolomy* places it in Lat. 41 $\frac{1}{2}$. About the

the Middle Age, it was the 2d Town of *Armenia Prima*.

2. *Aza*, which *Pliny* reckons in this Country, but *Ptolemy* in *Cappadocia*.

3. *Cæsarea*, which *Hardwin* thinks to be *Neo-Cæsarea*; but of this, there's no Certainty.

4. *Satala*, afterwards a Bishop's See. There are many other Towns mention'd by the Ancients in this Country; but we pass over them, because of their Uncertainty.

Heylin reckons this Country in *Anatolia* or *Asia Minor*, and says, it was formerly Part of *Cappadocia*, till the *Armenians* possess'd themselves of it, and call'd it *Armenia Minor*. It continu'd under their Power till the War of *Mithridates* against the *Romans*. That Prince having perswaded *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, who was his Son-in-Law, to take Part with him, *Lucullus*, *Pompey*, and *Augustus*, subdu'd all the Country as far as the *Euphrates*; and in the Time of *Trajan*, it was made a *Roman* Province. It continued Part of the *Eastern* Empire till overrun by the *Persians*, and after them subdu'd by the *Turks*.

Besides the Towns here formerly mention'd, *Heylin* takes Notice, 1. Of *Melitene*, their Metropolis, call'd afterwards *Malaxia*, and became a *Roman* Colony, celebrated by *Eusebius*, and other Church-Historians, for the Piety of the Christians who dwelt there in the first Persecutions. 2. *Garnace*, or *Garneas*, a strong Town mention'd by *Tacitus*. 3. *Arabissus*, memorable for the Exile of *St. Chrysostom*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who was banish'd hither by the Empress *Eudoxia*.

ARMENIA MAJOR,

HAS (according to *Strabo*) Mount *Taurus* on the S. which divides it from *Mesopotamia*; on the N. *Iberia* and *Albania*; on the W. *Armenia Minor*, or the Mountains *Paryadres*, Part of *Pontus*, and the River *Euphrates*; on the E. *Media Atropatene*, and *Media Magna*. *Ptolemy* agrees with him, only he places the *Montes Moschici* likewise on the W. and Part of the *Caspian* Sea on the E.

Cluverius places the *Montes Moschici* on the N. and says, they divide it from *Colchis* and *Iberia*. The Mountain *Antitaurus* runs thro' it, as well as *Armenia Minor*.

The chief Rivers are 6, according to *Strabo*, of which the *Lycus* and *Phasis* fall into the *Euxine* Sea, the *Cyrus* and *Araxes* into the *Caspian* Sea, and the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* into the *Persian* Gulph. The 4. first we have describ'd already. The *Euphrates*, says *Strabo*, rises in the N. Side of Mount *Taurus*, runs first Westward by *Armenia*, and then turning Southward, breaks thro' Mount *Taurus* into *Syria*; and winding about, runs into *Babylonia*. *Pliny* says, from the Authority of Eye-Witnesses, that it rises in the District of *Caranitus* in *Armenia Major*, from the Foot of the Mountain *Capota*, 12 Miles above *Zimara*, and is there called *Pysurates*. It first separates *Armenia* from *Cappadocia*, and at *Elegia* runs thro' Mount *Taurus* for 12 Miles. When it breaks out, 'tis called *Omira*, and soon after *Euphrates*, where 'tis full of Stones, and runs with a rapid Stream; so that he makes it run from N. to S. till it meet with Mount *Taurus*, quite contrary to *Strabo*. *Mela* says, it rises with a vast wide Mouth, falls down a great Way, and does not run thro' the Plains with a continued Stream, but spreads into broad Lakes, and moves slowly. Afterwards it breaks out, grows a formal River, inclos'd within Banks, and runs with a murmuring Noise W. by *Armenia* and *Cappadocia*; and if Mount *Taurus* did not stop it, would fall into our Seas. Then it turns Southward, runs first into *Syria*, and then into *Arabia*. *Ptolemy* follows a Medium betwixt *Strabo* and *Pliny*, and endeavours to reconcile them. *Samasius* censures *Strabo*, and inclines to follow *Pliny*, but determines nothing. *Cellarius* thinks the Difference comes from this, That as it receives several Rivers from the E. and N. some take the greatest that comes from the E. for *Euphrates*, and others take that which comes from the N. *Heylin* says, That on the W. Side of *Mesopotamia* the Stream is so violent, that they who go from *Bir*, on the N. W. of *Mesopotamia* to *Bagdat* in Boats, are forced to return again by Land, and to sell those Boats for 8 Crowns, which cost them 50. *Hackluyt* says, it first takes the

Name of *Euphrates* at *Birra* or *Bir*, where 'tis gather'd into one Channel; whereas before 'tis divided into so many Branches, that the Inhabitants call it by the Name of a *Thousand Heads*. The Boats they make use of are flat-bottom'd, because the River is shallow in many Places; so that Merchants are forced to take spare Boats with them in the Summer when the Water is lowest, to lighten the other when they come to the Shallows. He says, 'tis as broad at *Birra* as the *Thames* at *Lambeth*, but in some Places narrower, and runs as swift as the *Trent*. He and his Company were 28 Days in sailing down from *Bir* to *Felugia*. *Thevenot* says, the Water of this River is lighter than that of any others in the Country; that 'tis navigable for little Barks as far up as the Mouth of the *Tigris*; but great Barks go only from *Bir* to *Rousvania*, which is 10 Days Journey from *Bir*, and then their Goods are unloaded, and carried by Land to *Bagdat*, which is one Day's Journey from *Rousvania*, and from *Bagdat* they are carried by the *Tigris*. *Hackluyt* says, 'tis dangerous travelling on the *Euphrates*, because of the thievish *Arabs* who rob the Vessels upon any Opportunity. It abounds with Fish of several Sorts, all of 'em scal'd, some of 'em as big as Salmon, but shap'd like Barbels. *Thevenot* says, the Passage-Boats on this River are large, and have their Rudder about 3 Foot distant from the Stern below, the Rudder being only Pieces of Board nail'd Crosswise to Poles. *Morey* says, it rises in the Mountains of *Ararat*, and falls into the *Tigris* near *Ctesiphon*; that it has several considerable Branches, some of which have forced their Way into a new Channel, the old ones being damm'd up by Time; and the Lakes on the W. which receive the Water in Time of Inundations, are also fill'd up by Mud and Sand. The Branch that runs to *Cusa* loses it self in the Sands of *Arabia*, and has turn'd the fruitful Plains of *Babylon* into a Morass. *Pliny* and *Strabo* say, it overflows Annually like the *Nile*, and much about the same Time, which fructifies *Mesopotamia*. *Dr. Wells* says, That after it joins with the *Tigris*, they divide again into two Channels; the Westerly one he takes to be the *Pison*, and the Easterly *Gihon*, mentioned as two of the Rivers of

Paradise, *Gen.* 2. 11, 13. *Hackluyt* adds, That it joins with the *Tigris*, a Day's Journey above *Balsora*, where the *Turks* have a Castle named *Curna*, at which Merchants are obliged to pay Custom. Here he says the two Rivers being join'd, are about 8 or 9 Miles broad, and begin to ebb and flow. The Inundations, he says, make the Country very fruitful of Corn, Rice, Pulse, and Dates. It is navigable by Ships of 60 Tuns as high as *Balsora*; and these Vessels which come hither from *Ormuz*, have their Planks sow'd together with Cords made of the Bark of Date-Trees. They use the Shavings of the said Bark instead of Occam, and make their Tackling likewise of it. The *Hebrews* call it *Phrat* or *Perath*, from whence the *Greeks* formed their *Euphrates*, to denote the Pleasantness of the River, and the adjacent Country. According to *Cellarius's* Map of the *East*, the Country in a direct Line, from the Head to the Mouth of this River, is about 780 Geometrical Miles; but including the Windings and Turnings, it can't be less than 1000, and is navigable above 600 Miles by small Vessels. *Cluverius* says, That before it comes to *Babylon*, 'tis divided into several Channels, of which one runs by *Seleucia* into the *Tigris*; and the other, call'd the Royal Channel, runs by *Babylon*, and thro' the *Chaldean* Marshes, from whence it formerly ran into the Sea; but that Stream being stopped up by the Inhabitants, or rather lost by their dividing it into so many Channels to water their Land, it has no other Passage to the Sea now but by the *Tigris*, into which it falls (according to *Cellarius's* Map) by one Channel N. of *Babylon*, which is afterwards separated into three, and by another S. of *Babylon*.

2. The *Tigris*, which the *Hebrews* call *Hiddekel*; *Josephus*, *Diglath*; and the Inhabitants *Tigil*, rises (says *Pliny*) out of the Mountain *Gordyæi* in *Armenia Major*, and running thro' the Lake *Arethusa*, which is a little below, hides it self for a while under Mount *Taurus*; then passing thro' the Lake *Thospitis*, and some subterraneous Caverns, it glides between *Affyria* on the E. and *Mesopotamia* on the W. taking in by the Way *Lycus*, *Caprus*, and *Gorgus*, from the former. Afterwards it passes by the Towns of *Mosul* and

and Bagdat, below which latter 'tis divided into two Branches, of which one runs to ancient *Chaldaea*, and the other towards *Mesopotamia*; but joining together again afterwards, 'tis called *Pasi-Tigris*. At last it meets near Fort Gorno with the *Euphrates*, with which it runs into the Gulph of *Persia*. *Thevenot* says, it has more Windings and Turnings than any he ever saw. It forms a great many Islands, particularly that of *Balsora*, and is full of Banks of Stone. There were such a vast Number of Birds on both Sides of it when he was there, that he believes they made a Cloud above 500 Paces in Length, and 50 in Breadth. Over against Bagdat 'tis very broad, where it has the Name of *Chau-Bagdat*, or the River of Bagdat. The Water is put by the Inhabitants into great Jars of unburnt Clay, thro' which it percolates into an Earthen Vessel plac'd underneath. *Solinus* and *Eustathius* say, its Spring is 1500 Stadia from the Head of the *Euphrates*. *Strabo* says, it rises from Mount *Niphates*, which he makes to be the S. Part of *Taurus*; but *Cellarius* shews that he is mistaken, and thinks that to be the Spring where it only rises again from under Ground. *Ptolomy* places the Fountain of it in the middle of *Armenia*, in Lat. $39\frac{1}{3}$, wherein he agrees with *Pliny*. Doctor *Wells*, by a very ingenious Discussion in his Account of the Garden of *Eden*, to which we refer, proves it to be the ancient *Hiddekel*, one of the Rivers that water'd *Paradise*, which he thinks is encompassed by this River and *Euphrates*. *Hackluyt* says, the Inhabitants carry Provisions and other Merchandizes down this River upon Rafts, laid upon Goats Skins blown up full of Wind like Bladders; and when they have discharged their Lading, they sell the Rafts for Firing, and let the Wind out of their Goats-Skins, which they carry back again by Land upon Asses, to serve for other Voyages. The Emperor *Trajan* design'd to cut a Canal betwixt this River and the *Euphrates*; but finding the latter lay highest, he was afraid it would empty so much Water into the *Tigris*, that would be no longer navigable. Some relate, That the Stream carries one as far in one Day as a Horseman can ride in seven; and 'tis so swift as to make the Spectators giddy. For this

Reason some derived its Name from an *Armenian* Word, which signifies an Arrow, and others from the swift-footed Beast called a Tiger. From the Head to the Foot in a direct Line 'tis 660 Miles; but there are so many Turnings and Windings, that the Course of the River is a great deal more. The Vapours which rise from this River are full of Nitre, and the Water is of different Colours in several Places.

There are many small Rivers in this Country, which we shall pass over.

The *Sansons* observe, That since the *Euphrates* and *Tigris* are the two Rivers of *Paradise* call'd *Phrat* and *Diglath*, the Seat of *Paradise* must probably be not far from their Fountains; but the greatest Difficulty is to find the other two Rivers, *Pison* and *Gihon*. Many Authors take the *Nile* for the latter, and *Ganges* to be the former; but 'tis plain from the Bible, that those 4 Rivers rise near one another, which is true of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*; but the Head of the *Ganges* is above 1200 Leagues from that of the *Nile*, and above 1500 from those of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*; and the Fountains of the *Nile* and *Ganges* are at least 2000 Leagues from one another. Therefore the *Sansons* think that the River *Phasis*, which rises from the same Mountains with the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, answers better to *Pison*; and *Araxes*, which rises likewise in the same Mountains, answers better to *Gihon*; for that call'd *Gihon* or *Jehun*, mention'd by modern Geographers, answers to the *Oxus* of the Ancients, and rises in the Mountains *Paropamisus*, falsly call'd the *Indian Caucasus*, 8 or 900 Leagues from the Fountains of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and falls into the *Caspian* Sea. From hence they conclude, that the Terrestrial *Paradise* was in the Mountains of *Armenia*; and that the Fountain from whence that River proceeded, which divided it self into 4 more, must have lain in the Middle, and the highest Part of the World, that their Descent might be upon the Matter equal. This will be better understood by looking in *Sanson's* Map of *Turcomania*, &c. and on *Cellarius's* Map of the *East*. But we leave the Reader to make his own Judgment of the whole, after comparing it with what we

have said from others as to the Situation of Paradise.

The greatest Lakes of *Armenia* are, 1. *Archusa*, *Aresa*, or *Arsene*, the first Lake which the *Tigris* falls into, and the Water of it so nitrous, that it takes Spots out of Clothes; but is not fit to drink, and (according to *Pliny*) nothing will sink in it. 2. *Thespires*, or *Thonitis*, another Lake into which the *Tigris* falls, and then loses it self again under Ground.

The chief Mountains in *Armenia* are, 1. Those which run from Mount *Caucasus*, and separate it from *Iberia* and *Albania*. 2. *Taurus*, which divides it from *Mesopotamia* on the S. 3. The *Montes Moschici*, which lie on the W. Side, and (as *Heylin* supposes) preserve the Memory of *Mesech* or *Mosoch*, the Son of *Japhet*, who is said to have planted here. 4. The *Paryadres*, where *Pliny* begins *Armenia Major*. Here *Mithridates Eupator* built and fortified Places for keeping his Treasures, says *Strabo*, for which these Mountains were very proper, because of their many Woods, Waters, and steep Rocks. 5. The *Coraxii*, or *Heniachi Montes*, where the River *Cyrus* has its Rise. 6. *Mafius*, which bounds the Country *Sophene* on the S. as *Antitaurus* does on the N. but differs from another of the same Name in *Mesopotamia*. 7. *Niphates*, fam'd by the Poets. *Ptolomy* makes it a Part of *Taurus*, far N. from *Abus*; but *Strabo* puts it in the same Line with *Abus* and *Iberus*, and says, the *Tigris* rises from the S. Side of it, wherein he differs from *Ptolomy*. 8. *Abus*. Most of the Ancients place the Fountain of the *Euphrates* here, and differ as much in its Situation as they do about the Fountains of that River; so that there is nothing certain to be said of it. 9. *Mons Gordicus*. *Ptolomy* places it in the same Latitude with the Fountain of *Tigris*, but E. from it. *Strabo* joins it with *Taurus*, and makes it the same Ridge of Hills, with a different Name. *Cellarius* agrees with him, and says, 'tis the receiv'd Opinion, that they are the Mountains of *Ararat*, upon which *Noah's Ark* rested after the Flood.

Of the Place where *Noah's Ark* rested.

THAT it was on Mount *Ararat*, is beyond Dispute, and most of the Ancients agree, that *Ararat* was in *Armenia*, to say nothing of *Abydenus* and *Melo*, quoted by *Euseb. Præpar. Evang. Lib. 9. Cap. 12. and 19.* *Berosus* the *Chaldean* says, in *Josephus*, Book 10. Chap. 11. That the Sons of *Sennacherib K.* of *Assyria*, who murder'd their Father, fled to *Armenia*, which *Isaiah*, Cap. 37: calls the Land of *Ararat*; and the Septuagint, as well as *Berosus*, render it *Armenia*. The vulgar Translation renders it in *Gen. 8. 4. the Mountains of Armenia*; and 2 *Kings 19. 37.* they make it the Land of *Armenia*. *St. Jerome* on *Isaiah 37.* says, *Ararat* is a plain Country in *Armenia*, incredibly fertile at the Foot of Mount *Taurus*, and the River *Araxes* runs thro' it. *Cellarius* finds Fault with him for saying, that the *Campus Araxenus* lies near Mount *Taurus*, since it is at a great Distance from it; but approves his saying, that the Ark rested on the highest Mountains of *Taurus*. He thinks, that *Ararat* was the Name of all *Armenia*, or at least of the S. Part under Mount *Taurus*; but the River *Araxes* lay at a great Distance from it, according to *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, and *Pliny*. *Cellarius* adds, That most Interpreters take the *Montes Gordici* to be *Ararat*, and that they are either a Part of *Taurus*, or near it. *Berosus* in *Josephus* mentions a Report, that Part of the Ark was remaining on the *Mons Corduenorum* in *Armenia* in his Time; and in the Targum of *Onkelos*, *Gen. 8. 4.* the Mountains of *Ararat* are translated in the *Chaldee* the Mountains of *Kardu*. In the Targum of *Jonathan* they are call'd the Mountains *Kadrin*. *Epiphanius*, *Heres. 18.* says, the Remains of *Noah's Ark* were still to be seen in the Country of the *Cordieni*; and *Elmasinus* the *Arabian*, *Histor. Saracen. Lib. 1. Cap. 1.* de *Heraclio*, says, he went up to Mount *Gordus*, and view'd the Place where the Ark rested. The Curious may find more for Confirmation of this Opinion in *Bochart's Phaleg. Cap. 3.* and in *Dr. Wells's Geography of the Old Testament.*

Dr. Heylin and others are of Opinion, That the Mountains of *Ararat*, where the Ark rested, were those called *Caucasus*, on the E. Side of the *Caspian* Sea, where Mount *Taurus* and *Emaus* cross one another; but their Arguments for it are refuted by Dr. Wells. Herbert says, in Confirmation of their Opinion who are for the *Gordian* Mountains, that the highest Peak of *Ararat* in *Armenia* is call'd *Baris*, which in the *Coptick* signifies a Ship. He himself was on the Place, and supposes it to be the Peak called *Damoan*, from a neighbouring Village of that Name betwixt *Armenia* and *Media*. Sir John Chardin says, *Ararat* lies 12 Leagues from *Erivan* to the E. where most agree the Ark rested; and he owns these to be the same with the *Gordian* Mountains. The *Armenians*, he says, have a Tradition, That the Ark is still upon the highest Top of it, which they call *Macis*. The Mountain is altogether uninhabited, and from the Half-way to the Top perpetually cover'd with Snow. Struys, who in his Travels was upon this Mountain, says, it lies betwixt *Media* and *Armenia*, and confines on both, but is much higher than either Mount *Caucasus* or *Taurus*, or any other in *Persia*, *Media*, or *Armenia*. The Stones in it are of a clear, brown, and bluish Colour. He found several Minerals there of divers Colours, heavy and shining, besides a certain red Sand, whose Lustre is surprizing. He was sent up the Mountain to cure an Hermit who liv'd upon it of a Rupture. It was cover'd with several Rows of Clouds; the first of which were dark and thick, the next extreamly cold, and full of Snow; the third were so excessive cold, that he was scarce able to endure it. At last, when he got to the Hermit's Cell, he felt the Air more temperate, and the Hermit declar'd to him, he had not felt the least Breeze of Wind or Drop of Rain for the Space of 25 Years which he had liv'd there. He added, That the Air was much more calm on the Top of the Mountain, and never changed, and for that Reason the Ark was not putrified. He gave Mr. Struys a Piece of the Wood of a brownish red Colour, and a Piece of the Rock on which he alledged the Ark rested, and put so high a Value upon them, that he told

Mr. Struys, if he carried them to St. Peter's at Rome, he would make his Fortune by them: And to attest the Truth of this, he gave him a Certificate in *Latin*, That the Hermit had with his own Hand cut off from the Ark that Piece of Wood made in Form of a Cross, and broke off from the Rock on which it rested that Piece of Stone. Dated from Mount *Ararat*, July 22. 1670, and sign'd, *Dominicus Alexander Romanus*, the Hermit being a *Roman* by Birth. Struys says, he was 7 Days travelling from *Erivan* to the Top of the Mountain, which is an entire Rock, without any Earth, Trees, or Verdure, upon it. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, they saw it 15 Leag. into the *Caspian* Sea; that 'tis a vast black Rock, but perpetually cover'd on the Top with Snow, and (according to them) is inaccessible, because encompassed with Precipices. By all these Accounts it appears, that Mount *Ararat*, where the Ark rested, lies on the W. Side, and not on the E. of the *Caspian* Sea; but by Sir John Chardin's, the *Holstein* Ambassadors, and Mr. Struys's, Description of it, the Peak of *Damoan* cannot be the same, tho' it may be in the same Country. For Herbert, who was on that Peak, says, there are hot and cold Baths on the Mountain *Damoan*, very much resorted to by Multitudes of People in *August*, who receive great Cures by the Medicinal Heat of the Waters. He adds, That he and his Company rode up the Hill, from whence they had a Prospect of the *Caspian* Sea, tho' 160 Miles distant: For this neither agrees with the Description of other Travellers, nor Struys's Map of the *Caspian* Sea and adjacent Parts; by which it appears, that the Roots of this Mountain lie very near the Bays of the *Caspian* Sea on both Sides; and that the Top of the Peak where the Ark is suppos'd to have rested is not above 23 *German* Leagues from the Mouth of the River *Kur*, which falls into the *Caspian* Sea S. from *Ararat*; and the Town of *Erivan*, which lies at the Foot of that Ridge of Hills, is not above 22 *French* Miles from the *Caspian* Sea on the S. Herbert says, there are great Numbers of *Jews* about *Damoan*, who say, they are the Offspring of those transported hither by *Salmanassar*, 2 Kings 17. 6. that they have never chang'd their Seats; and that

that they have a constant Tradition, that *Noah's Ark* rested on this Mountain. But tho' he be mistaken as to the Distance of *Ararat* from the *Caspian Sea*, and as to that very Mountain it self, he seems to be right, that this was the Country to which *Salmanassar* transplanted the Inhabitants of *Damascus*, because it is said, 2 *Kings* 16. 9. That King carried them Captive to *Kir*, supposed to be the same with the *Cyrus* of the *Latins*, and that nam'd *Kur* in *Struys's Map*.

Having said so much of the Place where the Ark rested, and given the Cut of it, P. 138, we shall add some Observations concerning the Structure of it, and its Suitableness, to the End for which it was built, from the learned Bishop *Wilkins*, for the Confutation of those who from *Moses's* Description of it take an Atheistical Liberty to ridicule the Scripture. By *Moses's* Account of it, *Genesis* 6. 14, 15, 16. it was to be made of Gopher-Wood, with several Rooms pitched within and without, 300

Cubits long, 50 Cubits broad, 30 Cubits high, divided into 3 Stories, with a Window and a Door, and *Noah* was to take into it a Male and Female of every Living Thing, with Provisions for 'em: Of every clean Beast by Sevens, Males and Females, and of the unclean Two, a Male and a Female; and Fowls by Sevens, the Male and the Female, Chap. 7. 2, 3. Bishop *Wilkins* supposes the Cubit to have been a Foot and a half high; according to which, the Length was 450 Foot, the Breadth 75, and the Height 45; so that the whole Capacity was 1518750 Cubical Feet, enough to hold all that was to be taken into the Ark. He supposes the Height to be equally divided into 3 Stories of 15 Foot high each, deducting a Foot and a half for the Slope of the Roof of the upper Story; that the lower Story was for Four-footed Beasts, the middle Story for their Provender, and the upper Story for *Noah* and his Family, and for the Birds and their Food, which will be better understood by the following Table.

Number,

Number.	Beasts which live on Hay.	Proportion to Beefs.	Stables Length.
	Name.		Feet.
2	Horse.	3	20
2	Ass.	2	12
2	Camel.	4	20
2	Elephant.	8	36
7	Beef.	7	40
7	Urus. †	7	40
7	Bifons. †	7	40
7	Bonafus. †	7	40
7	Bubalus. †	7	40
7	Sheep.	1	30
7	Strepficeros. †	1	
7	Broad-tail'd Sheep. (a)	1	
7	Goat.	1	30
7	Ibex. †	1	
7	Rupicapra †	1	
7	Gazellus. †	1	30
7	Alcis. †	7	
7	Red Deer.	4	
7	Fallow Deer.	3	20
7	Rein Deer. (aa)	3	20
7	Roe.	2	36
2	Rhinoceros.	8	
2	Camelopardis. †	6	
2	Hare.	2 Sheep.	30
2	Rabbit.		
2	Marmotte. (b)		
		92	514

Number.	Beasts which live on Fruits, Roots and Insects.	Proportion to Sheep.	Stables Length.
	Name.		Feet.
2	Swine.	4	20
2	Baboon.	2	
2	Ape.	2	
2	Monkey.		
2	Pigritia. †		
2	Porcupine.		
2	Hedgehog.	7	
2	Squirrel.		
2	Guinea-Pig.		
2	Ant-Bear (bb)	2	
2	Tatu, or Armadillo.	2	
2	Tortoise.	2	
		21	20

Number.	Animals which live on Flesh.	Proportion to Wolves.	Stables Length.
	Name.		Feet.
2	Lion.	4	10
2	Bear.	4	10
2	Tiger.	3	8
2	Pard,	3	8
2	Ounce. (c)	2	6
2	Cat.		6
2	Civet-Cat.	2	
2	Ferret.		
2	Polecat.		
2	Martin.		
2	Stoate. (d)	3	6
2	Wefel.		
2	Castor, or Beaver.		
2	Otter. (e)		
2	Dog.	2	6
2	Wolf.	2	6
2	Fox.		
2	Badger. (f)		
2	Jackall. (g)	2	6
2	Caraguya.		
		27	72

(a) *Ovis Lati-Cauda*. (aa) *Langifer*.
 (b) *Mus Alpinus*. (bb) *Tamendua*. (c) *Lynx*.
 (d) *Putorius*. (e) *Lutra*. (f) *Taxus*. (g) *Lupus Aureus*. These are the *Latin* Names set down in the Table in the *Synopsis Criticorum*, as answering to the *English* Names here us'd. The *Latin* Names with this Mark (†) are such as we have no certain Names for in *English*, except what are made from the *Latin*, as *Ure*, *Bonase*, *Bubal*, &c.

The Mule is not set down in the Table, because not a distinct Species, but a Mungrel Breed; tho' several others, which can scarcely be call'd distinct Species, of Beeves, Sheep, and Goats, are set down, to take away all Pretence of Cavilling. Such Creatures as are allow'd by all to be capable of living in the Water as well as by Land, are also omitted, tho' there be Room enough for them, supposing them to be taken into the Ark. For the Serpentine Kind, Toads, Frogs, &c. there is Room enough left for them in the Bottom of the Ark under the Planks. For the Mouse, Rat, Moles, and Insects, there's no need to assign peculiar Places, since they could easily find Room for themselves: And tho' it be probable that before the Flood, from *Gen.* 1. 29, 30. and *Cap.* 9, and 20. that Men and Beasts liv'd on the Fruits of the Earth; yet supposing those Creatures which are ravenous now were always so, there's Provisions allow'd for 20 Pair of ravenous Creatures that live upon Flesh; and reckoning those 20 Pair to eat as much as 30 Wolves, there's an Allowance of 1825 Sheep for them during the Time they were in the Ark, at the Rate of 5 Sheep a Day; and the Place assign'd those Sheep is the Partitions at the End of the Draught of the Inside of the Ark, marked (AA) divided into 5 lesser Partitions of 15 Foot square each, which is Room enough for 288 Sheep, and a Passage to them. And the two greater Partitions in the Middle of the Diagram, mark'd (DD) are sufficient to hold the other 1600 Sheep, each of those Partitions being 200 Foot long, and 25 broad, are capable to hold not only those Sheep assign'd for Food to the ravenous Beasts, but 56 kept for Breed. The 4 larger Partitions on the Sides, mark'd (CC) in the Diagram, being each 18 Foot wide, and 200 Foot long, are sufficient to contain all the other Beasts taken in the Ark, with Room enough for them to turn, and likewise to hold their Dung, besides 3492 square Feet to spare for any other Beasts, whose Names and Kinds we know not. In the next Place, the second Story was sufficient to contain Provender or other Food to such as did not feed on Flesh, besides Room for Fruits, Roots, Corn or Seeds, necessary to keep such Animals as did not live upon Hay, and for Passages to them.

Half the upper Story was sufficient to hold all the Species of Birds, with their Food, and Boxes to keep them apart; and the remaining Part of the upper Story was abundantly sufficient for *Noah* and his Family, and all that was necessary for them. The Truth of this will appear to those who think fit to take Pains to examine the Computations made by *Buteo*, Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Bishop *Wilkins*, and Dr. *Wells*, which we have not Room to insert; and that Bishop *Wilkins* had Reason to observe, That had the most skilful Mathematicians and Philosophers been employ'd to consult what Proportions a Vessel design'd for such an Use as the Ark was shou'd have in the several Parts of it, they could not have pitch'd upon any other more suitable to the Purpose than those mention'd by *Moses*, which is sufficient to answer all the Cavils of Atheists and Deists against the Truth of the Scripture on that Account.

We shall add from Dr. *Wells*, that 'tis probable the Ark was built in the Country of *Eden*, it being rational to think, that our First Parents liv'd in that Country when turn'd out of the Garden; and that *Noah* being the eldest Son in a Lineal Descent from *Seth*, did keep the Original Seat, and build the Ark there. This he takes to be further confirmed from the Situation of that Country with respect to the Ocean and the Mountains of *Ararat*, from the Testimonies of ancient Authors, and from the Sort of Wood of which the Ark was made. The Wood is call'd *Gopher* Wood, *Gen.* 6. 14. which Mr. *Fuller* has learnedly observ'd to be Cypress Wood, from the Word *Cypar*, which remains by taking away the Termination of the Greek *Cyparissus*, and has all the Radical Letters of the Word *Gopher*, and differs from it but little in Sound. Doctor *Wells* seems to favour this Opinion the rather, because, 1. Cypress is a very durable Wood, and not apt to breed Worms or rot, according to the Observation of *Bochart* and others, since it appears from a great Number of ancient Writers, that some Relicks of it remain'd for several Thousand Years after. 2. Because 'tis also fit for Shipping, according to the Observation of *Plato*, *Plutarch*, *Vegetius*, &c. 3. Because *Babylonia* and the Parts adjacent did abound with Cypress, according to *Arrianns*, who says,
Alexan-

Alexander's Fleet was built at *Babylon* with that Wood, and that there was scarce any other Wood in those Parts fit for Shipping. Now it being probable from what has been already said, that *Eden* lay in *Babylonia*, and the Parts adjoining on the other Side of the common Channel of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, these Considerations do mutually strengthen one another, viz. the Ark being made of *Gopher* or *Cypress* Wood, favours the Opinion that it was made in the Land of *Eden*, and consequently that *Noah* liv'd there after the Flood; and on the other Hand, the Probability of *Noah's* dwelling there before the Flood, strengthens the Conjecture that the Ark was made of *Gopher* Wood.

The ancient Towns of *Armenia* were,
1. *Artaxata*, on the River *Araxes*, their Metropolis, and the Seat of their Kings, built by their King *Artaxias* on *Hannibal's* Advice, not far from the Heads of the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*. *Tacitus* gives an Account, That it was afterwards taken by the *Iberes*, *Parthians*, and *Romans*. *Cellarius* thinks, that *Hannibal* had no Hand in building it, there being no Mention by *Corn. Nepos*, who writes his Life, that he ever was in *Armenia*. *Heylin* says, it was in the middle Ages call'd *Esechia*, and now *Coy*, *Coim*, or *Cholim*. It was remarkable for the Defeat of *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* in its Neighbourhood by *Lucullus* the Roman, and for a Victory by *Selymus* the Turk over *Ismael Sophy* of *Persia*, where the *Turks* lost 30000 of their best Men; upon which Account they call it the Day of Doom.

2. *Armosata*, or *Arsamosata*, near the E. Side of the *Euphrates*, a little N. from Mount *Taurus*. It was a fortified Town in the Time of *Tacitus*, and noted for the Encampment of *Antiochus* near it.

3. *Tigranocerta*, on the E. Side of the Lake, into which the *Tigris* falls. It was built by *Tigranes* in the Time of *Mithridates's* War. *Tacitus* describes it to have been a strong and populous Town, and the River *Nicephorius* ran by its Walls. It was taken by *Lucullus*, who found 8000 Talents in it, besides other Treasure.

4. *Artagera*, or *Artagigarta*, betwixt *Armosata* and *Tigranocerta*, noted for *Caius Caesar's* being wounded in its Neighbourhood.

5. *Gorneas*, a Town or Castle into which

Mithridates fled when defeated by the *Iberians*, says *Tacitus*.

6. *Sebastia*. *Heylin* says, 'tis now called *Saassia*, and lies on the *Euphrates*, where it meets with Mount *Taurus*; that it was the Residence of the *Armenian* Patriarch when they separated from the See of *Constantinople*; but the See is since remov'd to the Monastery of *Ecmeazin* near *Eriwan* in *Persia*, because of the Wars betwixt the *Persians* and *Turks*.

7. *Baraza*, enlarg'd and beautified by the Emperor *Leo*, who call'd it *Leontopolis*, and made it for some Time the Capital of the Province.

8. *Theodosiopolis*, built on the Foundation of an ancient City by the Emperor *Theodosius*. 9. *Colonia*. *Heylin* says, it was the strongest City of this Country when possess'd by the *Romans*; but mentions nothing of its Situation.

10. *Clamassum*, a strong Town on the Banks of the *Euphrates*, taken by *Selymus I.* when he went to conquer *Persia*.

11. *Chars*, supposed to be the *Chorja* of *Ptolomy*, near the *Euphrates*. 'Twas fortified by the *Turks* in 1579, and now said to be impregnable.

MODERN ARMENIA.

Sanson says, the Air is wholesome, but more inclinable to Cold than Heat, because of the Mountains. The Territory produces more Corn and Fruit than Wine, and yields Bole-Armoniack, Amomum, and Silver Mines. They have excellent Pastures, particularly for Horse, of which they us'd formerly to furnish the King of *Persia* with 20000. The *Turks* possess now most of the Country, and keep Beglerbeks in many of the chief Towns. The King of *Persia* has still some Places of Note here. Sir *John Chardin* takes Notice, that *Hayton*, one of the Kings of this Country, deriv'd the Name from *Aram-Noah*. He says, 'tis certainly one of the loveliest and fruitfulest Countries in *Asia*, and is water'd by 7 large Rivers. *Sanson* says, it was much more known and famous in Antiquity under the Name of *Armenia*, than under its new Name of *Turcomania*, to which the Advantage of its Boundaries, the Strength

of its Situation, the Magnificence of some of its Princes, and the Largeness of its Extent, did very much contribute; for some extend it to both the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Seas. It is every where encompassed with high Mountains, and deep Rivers of the Sea. The Inland Part abounds with Hills, Vallies, Rivers, and Lakes.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Erzerum*, on the *Euphrates*. *Sanfon* makes it about 36 M. S. E. from *Trebisond*; but *Moll* places it near the Head of the *Euphrates*, above 140 Miles S. W. from it, in the Country of the *Turcomans*, which brings it a great Trade from the E. W. and N. for Goods are brought hither up the *Euphrates* from the *Indian* Sea, which are carried from hence to *Trebisond*, from whence they receive Goods from the N. by Way of the *Black Sea*. Their Trade with the W. is by Way of *Aleppo*. *Tavernier* says, it stands in a Plain, encompassed with Mountains, and many fair Villages. The Houses are ill built, and proportion'd. The Fortrefs stands on a high Ground, with a double Wall, and has square Towers close to one another, but a pitiful Moat. It had 24 excellent Cannon, but not mounted. 'Tis a great Thoroughfare into *Turkey*, where the Officers demand excessive Customs of Merchants. He adds, That tho' the Climate be cold, Barley grows ripe in 40 Days, and Wheat in 60. Betwixt this Town and *Chars* there's a Fortrefs called *Hassan*, where Merchants pay new Customs.

2. *Chars*, or *Chiseri*. *Sanfon* says, it is 4 or 5 Days Journey E. from *Erzerum*. He places it in his Map at the Conflux of the two first Rivers which form the *Euphrates*, about 96 Miles E. from *Erzerum*. It stands in a good Soil, is large, but ill Peopled, because the Gr. Seignior makes it the Rendezvous of his Army, empties it by Recruits, or sending the Inhabitants to build Villages. One of those Rivers which form the *Euphrates*, and runs by the Wall of the Town, is called by its Name. The adjacent Country is well water'd by those two Rivers, and mostly inhabited by Christians. The few *Mahometans* among 'em are so superstitious, that they will not make use of the Rivers, because they say the Christians defile them, and therefore have Wells and Cisterns of their own.

3. *Halicarcara*, a great Town, inhabited by Christians, whose Houses are built under Ground like Caves. Further E. from hence, there's a Fortrefs on the Top of a high Mountain named *Kagisguan*, the last Place possessed by the *Turks* on that Side. *Tavernier* adds, That a Branch of the *Chars* parts the *Turkish* from the *Persian* Dominions. *Sanfon* says, this Town has been oftentimes taken and retaken by the *Turks* and *Persians*, who have fought several Battles in the Neighbourhood with various Success.

4. *Erivan*, or *Revan*. *Moll* places it on the River *Aras*, near its Conflux with the *Chars*, to which he gives quite another Course than *Sanfon*, who makes it one of the Heads of the *Euphrates*. *Tavernier* places it Long. 64. 20. Lat. 41. 15. Sir *John Chardin* Long. 78. 20. Lat. 40. 15. *Moll* about Long. 64 and Lat. 40 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Tavernier*, who saw it, says, it lies in a Country that produces all Things necessary for Humane Life, abounds with good Wine, yields the K. of *Persia* a large Revenue by its Fruits and the Passage of Caravans, and pays the Governor 60000 l. Sterling per Annum. He is a Person of great Power, and has always an Army to defend the Country. He is obliged to maintain Ambassadors during their Stay here, and to conduct them to the next *Persian* Governor. The Houses and Walls are of Earth, and few live in the City but the Governor and his Officers. The Suburbs are better inhabited by Merchants, Tradesmen, and *Armenians*, who have 4 Churches and a Monastery here. The Summer is so hot, that many of the Inhabitants are forc'd to retire to the neighbouring Mountains for Shade to themselves, and Pastures to their Cattle. The Town has a great Traffick in Silk, as lying near the Province from whence it comes, and the Merchants pay a Duty upon it, to secure the High-ways from Robbers. Sir *John Chardin* (who stay'd here some Time) says, the City is ill favour'd and dirty. Vineyards and Gardens make up the greatest Part of it; nor are there any fine Buildings in it. It lies in a Plain, encompassed with Mountains, and Mount *Ararat* lies N. from one End of it. There are two Rivers run by it, one of which comes from 40 Fountains. The Fortrefs upon a Hill on the N. Side is 4000 Paces in Compass, contains 800 Houses, inhabited

habited only by *Persians*. The *Armenians* are allow'd to be in their Shops there during the Day; but they are obliged to retire to their Houses in the Evening. 'Tis surrounded with three Walls of Earth and Bricks, has Battlements flank'd with Towers and narrow Ramparts, according to the Eastern Fashion, but not regular. It lies on the Side of a dreadful Precipice, above 100 Fathom high towards the River; so that being impregnable on this Side, it has no other Fortifications but Terrasses furnish'd with Guns. They have always a Garrison of 2000 Men, and the Fortress has 3 Gates plated with Iron, strengthen'd with Portcullices, and fortified Courts of Guard. The Governor has a fair, spacious, and delightful, Palace in it. About 1000 Paces N. from the Fortress, on a Hill which commands it, there's a Fort with a double Wall, defended by 200 Men, and planted with great Guns. The Fortress stands about a Cannon-shot from the City, and the Space between them is filled up with a few scattering Houses and Market-places. The Cathedral in this City is in their Language called *Two Faces*. It was built by one of the last Kings of *Armenia*. Their other Churches are small, sunk deep in the Earth, and resemble Catacombs. Near the Cathedral there's a round Stone Tower of antick Architecture, with Inscriptions on the Outside in Characters resembling the *Armenian*; but no body can read them. By the Ruins about it, it seems to have stood formerly in the middle of a Cloyster. There are several Market-places in the City, the largest of which is square, 400 Paces in Diameter, and made use of for Racing, Wrestling, and managing Horses for War. There are many Baths and Inns in the City and Fortress; and the largest, built by a late Governor of *Armenia*, is square, has a fair Gallery full of Shops, with 3 great Lodgings, 60 small ones, many Stables, and large Warehouses; and before it a Market-place, surrounded with Shops for all Sorts of Provisions. There are likewise several Mosques in the Town, and some of them very fair. The Air is good, but a little thick and cold. The Winter lasts long, so that it snows in *April*, which obliges the Inhabitants to bury their Vines, and not to dig them up again till the Spring. The *Armenians* pre-

tend to shew a Place within a League of this City where *Noah* planted his Vineyard when he came down from Mount *Ararat*, and alledge, that 'tis the oldest Town in the World. The two Rivers which water it furnish them with excellent Fish, and the best Trouts and Carps in the East. They have Plenty of all Sorts of Provisions, and particularly of Partridges and other Fowl. Three Days Journey further to the N. W. lies the Lake of *Eriuan*: 'Tis 25 Leagues in Circuit, very deep, the Water is extraordinary sweet, and affords 9 Sorts of Fish, among which are very fair Trouts and Carps. It has a small Island, with a Monastery in the Middle, built about 600 Years ago. The Prior is an Archbishop, calls himself a Patriarch, and refuses to own the Grand Patriarch. Sir *John* observes the Neglect of Geographers and Travellers who take no Notice of this Lake in their Maps. One of the Rivers which runs by *Eriuan* has its Rise here, and falls with the *Araxes* into the *Caspian* Sea. Some take this City to be *Ptolomy's Tervaa*, the Capital of *Armenia*; others to be *Artaxata*; but *Tavernier* says, the Ruins of that lie betwixt this City and *Chars*. Sir *John* says, there are no Monuments of such Antiquity about it, tho' the Inhabitants will have *Noah* to have dwelt here both before and after the Deluge. The *Turks* took it in 1582, and built the Fortress. The *Persians* retook it in 1604, and fortified it. In 1615, it held out a Siege of four Months against the *Turks*, tho' the Ramparts be only of Earth, and they were obliged to leave it with Shame. They took it afterwards; but the *Persians* retook it in 1635, and have held it ever since. *Struys*, who resided here some Time, places it in Lat. 41. about 27 German Leagues W. from the *Caspian* Sea. *Moll* makes it 240 Miles, and places Mount *Ararat* about 75 Miles S. W. from it; whereas all the rest place it E. and the Foot of the Hill reaches very near the Town. *Struys* says, the City is very strong, and in 1670 the Walls were of Stone. He adds, their greatest Trade is in Slaves, which are bought there very cheap. Most of the People, he says, are *Armenians*, and about the neighbouring Mountains of *Ararat* there are a few *Papists*; and some *Capuchins* at *Eriuan*.

Two Leagues from thence stands the famous Monastery of the *Three Churches*, the chief Place of the *Armenian Devotion*. They call it *Ecs-Miazin*, i. e. the Descent of the only begotten Son, because they say Christ appeared here to St. Gregory, its first Patriarch. It consists of a Convent and three Churches. The chief is of Free-Stone, and substantial, but dark. The Pillasters are 72 Foot high, of mishapen Stones, as are the Doom and the Roof. It has several Chappels and other Apartments, with an Altar well adorn'd. They have costly Plate, and Crucifixes of Gold and Silver, given them by Popes, and several pretended Relicks of St. James and John the Baptist, &c. They say, they had the Nails that fasten'd our Saviour to the Cross, the Lance which pierced his Side, and his seamless Coat, which is now in the King of *Persia's* Treasury at *Ispahan*. They tell many other Fables, and yet the Monks here are the great *Armenian* Doctors, tho' ignorant to a Prodigy. They fancy Noah built the Ark where the Church now stands, and sacrific'd here after the Flood. They are very poor, and not above 12 or 15, tho' they have Lodgings for 80, besides those for Strangers who visit them. The main Church has a great Steeple, with 6 Bells; and their Patriarch has Apartments, being obliged to reside here, but continually rambles over *Persia* and *Turkey*, and has 22 Bishops under him. The other two Churches stand at some Distance, and called by the Names of two *Roman* Virgins, who they say were martyr'd here. In the Territory of *Eriuan*, which is about 20 Leagues square, there are 23 Convents for Men, and 5 for Women, but so poor, that they have scarce above 5 or 6 People apiece in them, who are forc'd to work for their Living. One of them is called the Church of the Well, because built over a Well, into which they say St. Gregory was thrown, and preserv'd by Miracle. It lies S. from *Ecs-Miazin*, near the Ruins of *Artaxarte*, said to be built by *Artaxerxes*. Here they shew the Ruins of the Palace of *Tyridates K.* of *Armenia*, built above 1300 Years ago. They say, the Front is still pretty entire, and consists of 4 Rows of black Marble Columns, 9 in a Row, and each of them so thick as three Men can scarce fathom. At the Foot of the Moun-

tain of *Ararat* lies the Monastery of the Apostles, to which the *Armenians* pay a great Devotion, and say, the Bodies of the Evangelists St. Andrew and St. Matthew are still kept there. Sir John Chardin says, the Government of *Eriuan* is the best in the *Persian* Dominions, and yields the Governor above 170000 l. Sterling per Annum. He is called *Beglerbeg*, or Lord of Lords, and always one of the greatest Men in *Persia*. When *Struys* was there, the King presented the Governor with one of his own Princesses or Wives from the Seraglio.

About 9 Leagues from *Eriuan* lies a great Town called *Sederec*, the Capital of the *Armenian* Province of *Charour*, and the Residence of a Sultan.

About 9 Leagues further lies *Nacchiuan*, the Capital of another *Armenian* Province, a great but ruinous City. It has large Bazzars, with long Galleries full of Shops for Merchandize and Provisions. Here are many Inns, Market-places, and publick Houses. This City had formerly 40000 Houses, but now not above 2000, the *Persians* having ruin'd it in the last Age, when they took it from the *Turks*. Some of the *Armenians* say, 'twas founded by Noah, and that the Name signifies the first Habitation; but the History kept in the Monastery of the *Three Churches* says, 'twas the *Artaxate*, built by *Artaxerxes*. Sir John Chardin supposes it to be *Ptolomy's Naxuane*, and that *Artaxate* lay about 7 Leagues from it, on the River *Araxes*. *Nacchiuan* lies Long. 81. 34. Lat. 38. 40. and is govern'd by a Kan.

Esquijulfa, or Old *Julfa*, a ruin'd City, supposed to be the ancient *Ariammene*. 'Tis called Old, to distinguish it from *New Julfa*, over against *Ispahan*. 'Twas well fortified, and of difficult Access, and contain'd about 4000 Houses; but ruin'd by *Abas*, the great King of *Persia*, as he did all the neighbouring Country and Cities betwixt *Erzerum* and *Tauris*, to deprive the *Turks* of Subsistence, this having been their common Road when they invaded *Persia*. Therefore he transplanted the People, burnt the Country, and poison'd the Springs, which had a fatal Effect upon the *Turks*. There are neither Trees nor Grass about *Julfa*, and the People live in Holes and Caverns dug in the Mountains. There are 30 *Armenian* Families that now inhabit the Ruins of *Julfa*.

Heylin

Heylin mentions *Armening*, which he calls the Metropolis of the Country, says it lies on the Lake *Vaslan*, the *Martiana Patus* of the Ancients, is well fortified, and was the only City of *Armenia* possessed in his Time by the *Persians*.

Van, a great City upon a Lake of the same Name, with a strong Castle on a Mountain, garrison'd by the *Turks*. The *Persians* besieg'd it in vain in 1636. *Tavernier* says, there's abundance of Fish, something bigger than Pilchards, in this Lake. They are brought into it by the River *Bendmaki*, when the Snow melts from the Hills. The Inhabitants stop up the Mouth of the River to hinder their Return, and catch them in great wide-mouth'd Baskets. They are much esteem'd in *Persia* and *Armenia*, and eat for a relishing Bit with their Wine. There are several Islands in this Lake, and upon two of them *Armenian* Monasteries. *Sanfon* calls the Lake *Atamar*, and places the Town on the S. Side of it, about 60 Miles W. from the Borders of *Persia*; says 'tis strong, and that its Castle is almost inaccessible.

Tavernier adds, That betwixt *Nacchiwan* and *Julfa* there are 10 Convents of *Armenian* Papists, govern'd by Dominicans of their own Nation, and have their Worship in their own Tongue. He says, the *Armenian* Papists are about 6000. They send some of their Youth to *Rome* from Time to Time for Education, and their Archbishop goes thither for Confirmation. He lives at a great Town, one of the most lovely Places in *Asia*, where there's abundance of delicate Wine and Fruit, and all Things necessary for humane Life. At the Foot of a high Mountain near one of those Monasteries there's a Spring which kills Serpents, and cures their Biting. He says, That at the Village of *Shambé*, beyond the River *Aras*, all the People grow mad at 18 Years of Age, but do no Mischief. 'Tis probably owing to the Climate or Water; but the Legendaries say 'tis a Judgment, because their Ancestors persecuted *St. Bartholomew* and *St. Matthew*. About a League from hence lies the Monastery of *St. Steph'n*, where they pretend to have a Spring miraculously rais'd by *St. Matthew*, much frequented by the *Armenians*, many of whom have impoverish'd themselves by the great

Gifts they have given to the Convent, which is cramm'd with Relicks. 'Tis inhabited by two Bishops, and several Monks, who entertain Strangers with great Civility.

Astabat, a small City, about a League on this Side the River *Aras*. 'Tis very neat, well furnish'd with Provisions and Wine, and noted for the Growth of the Root call'd *Ronas* in the Neighbourhood, this being the only Place where 'tis to be found. 'Tis not much bigger than Liquorice, is full of Juice, yields a red high Tincture, is carried all over *Persia* and the *Indies*, and gives that beautiful red Colour to the Callicoes that come from the Mogul's Country; for which End whole Caravans are sent with it to *Ormus*.

The Country of the C U R D S,

Which lies in the S. E. Part of *Turcomania*, is inhabited by a barbarous People, whose Lords are more inclin'd to the *Persians* than the *Turks*. 'Tis very pleasant; for tho' the Roads be bad in some Places, in others there are delightful Shades of Oaks and Walnut-Trees, embrac'd with wild Vines; and in the Plains there's good Wheat and Barley.

Sanfon mentions the Town of *Betlis* here, on a River near the Frontiers of *Diarbeck*. 'Tis built of Stone, which is rare in this Country, and defended by a strong Castle. He does not know whether it be in Possession of the *Turks* or *Persians*, and owns, that we have no distinct Account of the Province. *Tavernier* says, it belongs to the most powerful Bey or Prince of the Country, who neither acknowledges the *Turk* nor *Persian*; whereas the rest are Tributaries to one of them. Both Potentates are oblig'd to keep fair with him, because he can stop the Passage betwixt *Tauris* and *Aleppo*, the Streights of the Mountains being so narrow, says *Tavernier*, that 10 Men may defend them against 1000. Within a Day's Journey of the Town, in the Road to *Aleppo*, one must travel in a Way cut out of the Rocks betwixt 2 Mountains, broad enough only for a Camel to pass. The City stands on a Mountain, betwixt other two, at an equal Distance, and the Ascent to it so steep, that there's no getting up but by winding

winding about the Mountain. On the Top there's a Platform and a strong Castle, with a Draw-Bridge at the Gate; after which there's three Courts, through which one must pass to the Bey's Apartment. No body is permitted to come higher on Horse-back but the Bey and his Esquire. He is able to raise 25000 Horse, and a great Body of Foot. This City is made a Sanctuary for the Subjects of neighbouring Princes, which the Bey will not suffer to be violated.

Taduan, a great Town near the Lake of *Van*, on which it has a Harbour safe from all Winds, and capable of 20 or 30 great Barks. Here Merchants embark their Goods for *Van*, whither they sail in 24 Hours if the Wind be fair, tho' it be 8 Days riding by Land.

Nuchar, a sorry Village belonging to a Bey, who has Officers here to exact Toll from Merchants; which if they don't pay, he plunders the Caravans in the Streights. Sometimes he demands 50 per Cent. except there be an Agreement with him beforehand. The Governors or *Basha's* of *Van* and *Tauris*, to prevent the Loss of their Trade by his Exactions, took Arms against him, and forc'd him to leave Hostages with them; for it is the nearest Way from *Aleppo*.

Kouns, the Residence of another Bey, who has a Toll for the Caravans. He lives in a Castle, and is Tributary to the K. of *Persia*. Near the Road, betwixt this Place and *Checheme*, there's a Rock 320 Paces round, and 80 Foot high. The Rock is full of Dens, and under a hollow Part of it there's a large clear Pool, which abounds with Fish that have a great Head, and a large Mustacho. Thousands of 'em come up to the Surface of the Water upon throwing Bread to them. *Tavernier* says, he shot several of 'em with a Carbine laden with Hail-shot, and the *Armenians* which had been in *Europe* eat them, tho' the *Turks* and the rest would not, because they reckon'd them to be defiled.

He says, the *Curds* in general are a brutish People, and *Mahometans*, but have few Priests. They have such a Veneration for black Greyhounds, that no Man must kill one on Pain of his Life; nor will they suffer Onions to be cut in their Presence; and when

they use them, they squeeze them betwixt two Stones.

The River *Araxes* or *Aras* is the Boundary betwixt *Armenia* and *Media* on the E. Side. It rises in the Mountains of *Ararat*, and falls into the *Caspian* Sea. 'Tis large and rapid, receives several others during its Course, and runs so furiously when the Snow melts in the Mountains, that no Bridge can stand upon it. Sir *John Chardin* says, its Swiftnefs and Noise astonishes those who come near it; so that when they ferry it over, they row up a great Way along the Shore, and then letting the Boat go with the Current, they steer to the other Side by a long and strong Rudder, and are carried 500 Paces in an Instant.

The HISTORY of the Armenians.

Josephus thinks that *Hul*, whom he calls *Otrus*, the Son of *Aram*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. 23. first planted this Country; but *Bochart* supposes his Reason was, because he would derive *Otene*, Part of *Armenia* betwixt the *Cyrus* and *Araxes*, from *Otus*, so well known in the Fables; and thinks that *Hul* rather settled in that Part called *Cholobetene*, which (as do also several Towns) seem to derive their Names from him. *Stephanus*, *Strabo*, and others, say, they were originally *Phrygians* and *Syrians*, their Language being a Mixture of both, and they resembled them and the *Arabians* in their Way of Living and Lineaments. *Heylin* says, *Armenia* was made a Kingdom as soon as any, *Babel* excepted; that *Ninus*, the 3d from *Nimrod*, forc'd their King *Barzanes* to own his Superiority, and to assist him against *Zoroaster* K. of *Bactria*.

Those of most Note afterwards (for there's no certain Catalogue of their Princes) were, 1. *Araxes*, who being at War with the *Persians*, and promis'd Victory by the Oracle if he would sacrifice his two Daughters, he sacrific'd those of *Miesalcus* a Nobleman, who in Revenge kill'd *Araxes's* Daughters, took Arms against him, and pursuing him to the River *Helmus*, *Araxes* was drown'd there, which occasion'd the River to be so call'd.

2. *Artaxa*, the Founder of the great City *Artaxata*.

3. *Tigranes*, the most powerful King ever they had. Being left for an Hostage among the *Parthians*, they assisted him to recover his Country, for which he gave them 60 Vallies on the Confines of *Media* and *Assyria*; but afterwards took them again, defeated the *Parthians* in their own Country, ravag'd *Assyria*, subdu'd Part of *Media*, all *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, *Phœnicia*, *Cilicia*, &c. but taking Part with *Mithridates*, his Father-in-Law, against the *Romans*, was defeated, tho' he had 1500000 Foot, and 50000 Horse, by *Lucullus*, who had only 12000 Foot, and 1200 Horse, kill'd 10000 on the Spot, took *Tigranocerta*, with his Crown, and stripp'd him of all but *Armenia*. His Son, who was K. of *Armenia Minor*, joining with the *Parthians*, was carried to *Rome*, and his Country made a Province.

4. *Artawasdes*, who was circumvented by *M. Anthony*, sent to *Rome* in Gold Chains, and his Country given to one of *Cleopatra's* Sons.

5. *Artaxias*, Son to *Artawasdes*, succeeded as a Vassal to the *Romans*, who disposed of that Crown as they pleas'd. *Trajan* made it a Province; but they had Kings of their own again in the Reigns of *Constantius*, *Julian*, and other Emperors, whom they own'd as their Superiors, till 687, that they were subdued by the *Saracens*, under whom, except a little while that *Justinian II.* recover'd it, they continu'd, till subdu'd by the *Turks* in 844. After the *Turks* emptied themselves into *Persia*, the *Armenians* set up Christian Kings of their own. They were subdu'd by *Occadan*, the Son of the first *Tartar Cham*, but still had Kings; for we find their K. *Haithon Armenius* went to the Great Cham in 1257; and *Leo*, another of their Kings, came to K. *Richard II.* of *England* for Help against the *Turks* of *Persia*, by whom he was dispossest'd, and his Country made a *Persian* Province, till 1515, that the Turk *Selimus I.* annex'd it to his Empire, and now it is divided betwixt the *Turks* and *Persians*.

The Arms of their Christian Kings were Gules, 3 Heads of a Buck Argent, crown'd Or.

Their RELIGION.

SIR *Paul Ricaut* gives an Account of their Confession of Faith in his *Present State of the Armenian Church*, and says, they embrace the Council of *Nice*, and that call'd the *Apostles Creed*. As to the Trinity, they agree with the *Greeks*. He speaks doubtfully of their believing but one Nature and Person in Christ, and inclines to acquit them of that Error. He says, they hold our Saviour's Descent into Hell, and his reprieving the Wicked from thence till the End of the World, when they must return thither. They are the most rigorous People of the Earth in observing their Fasts. They keep the Great *Lent* at the same Time with the *Greeks*, but with much greater Severity, their chief Cates being the Dregs of Oil of Olives or Rape-Seed, enough to turn one's Stomach. They abstain from their Wives, and at the Beginning and Close of *Lent* fast entirely for 3 or 4 Days, and during the whole eat nothing till 3 in the Afternoon; but after *Easter*, eat Flesh every Day till the *Ascension*, and the like the whole Week after *Epiphany*; but at other Times fast on *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*. They have 6 *Lents* in all, but the Times of 'em not regular. Their Feasts are *Easter* and *Pentecost*, according to the *Greek Church*, and the Birth, *Epiphany* and Baptism of our Saviour, on the 6th of *January*, which is our 12th Day, for they don't observe our *Christmas*. They say, one of the Wise-men who offer'd Gold and Incense to our Saviour was an *Armenian* Prince call'd *Gaspar*. They have 7 other Feasts of less Note. They have three Orders of Monks, viz. of *St. Gregory*, *Basil*, and *Dominick*. The latter is observ'd by their Papists. They have also Nuns and Hermites of very austere Lives, but all wretchedly ignorant. The Papists got footing among them about 350 Years ago by one *Kurnah*, a wandering Fellow: But when he came to preach up the Authority of the Pope over their Patriarchs, he was forbid to preach, or the People to hear. Their Liturgy, they say, was compos'd by *St. James*, *St. Chrysostom*, and *St. Basil*. At Baptism,

Baptism, they dip Infants thrice, or pour the Water all over them, anoint them with Oil, cross them, and rub their Lips with the Eucharist, which they celebrate only on *Sundays* and Festivals. They put no Water in the Wine, use unleaven'd Bread, and have receiv'd Transubstantiation from the Papists of late, says Sir Paul, because it makes for the Honour and Profit of the Priests; yet they say they were forc'd into it by Threats and Rewards. They dip the Bread in Wine, and give both together. They are severe in their Penances, and seldom absolve any without Money, and the Patriarch himself can't remit it when once impos'd. Their Clergy is generally guilty of Simony, and perform no Office without Money, for which they excuse themselves, because of the heavy Taxes demanded of them by the *Turks* and *Persians*. Their Bishops and Monks are not allow'd to marry; but they admit no Secular Priest unless married; yet if his Wife die, he must not marry again. Lay People are allow'd to marry twice; but they abominate 3d Marriages. A Widower must marry none but a Widow; and those who have not been married, must marry Virgins. They observe the same Degrees of Consanguinity with us. They marry betimes on *Monday* Morning, feast three Days before Consummation, and expose the Signs of Virginity, like the *Jews* and other *Eastern* Nations. They think no departed Souls are in Heaven but those of *Elias* the Prophet and the blessed Virgin, and lodge the Spirits of Men and Women in the Starry Heaven, where they have Pleasure or Grief according as their Conscience is good or bad; That such as die with minute Sins, are reliev'd by the good Works of the Faithful; That at the Resurrection, the Good go to Heaven, and the Bad to Hell; yet they invoke Saints departed, and worship their Images. They anoint the Corps of the Clergy, and wash those of the Laity. They hire Priests to pray 8 Days for those who die before 9 Years of Age, and the Rich keep Annually a Day of Commemoration to perform Offices for their deceas'd Relations. On *Easter* Monday they visit their Sepulchres, howl a while, and then feast to Excess. Sir Paul takes Notice, That some Popish Friars, by Means of the *French*

Ambassador at *Constantinople* in 1674, persuaded the *Armenian* Patriarch and Bishops there to sign a Confession of Faith agreeable to that of *Rome*, and exposes the Fraud of it.

He says, their Church is govern'd by 4 Patriarchs: The chief of 'em resided formerly at *Sebastia* in *Armenia*, but now at *Ecs-Miazin*, because the *Persians* favour them more than the *Turks* did; the 2d at *Sis* in *Armenia Minor*, 16 Days Journey E. from *Ecs-Miazin*; the 3d at *Ganjar*, and the 4th at *Achtamar*, who have no Dependence upon one another; but the Precedency is given to the first, and they must all concur in Person or Deputy to the Ordination of a Priest. The Patriarchs they have at *Constantinople*, *Jerusalem*, &c. are only Titular, to please the *Turks*; and besides some Revenues, they have Collections in all their Churches, sometimes 4 in a Day.

Tavernier says, the Patriarch of *Ecs-Miazin* has 47 Archbishops under him, and every Archbishop 4 or 5 Suffragans, with whom he lives in a Convent, with some Monks under their Jurisdiction, who, as soon as Mass is said, which is about an Hour after Day, go to work for their Living. The Patriarch's Revenue is about 600000 Crowns per Annum, collected out of 400000 Villages, if there be no Mistake in the Number; but saves little of it, he has so many Poor to maintain, and for whom he pays Tribute to the *Turks* and *Persians*, to prevent their being forc'd to turn *Mahometans*. He was nobly entertain'd here by the Patriarch, 6 Bishops with Ladles serving the Guests, according to the *Eastern* Manner; and after the Feast is over, they beg from the Guests towards the Support of their Churches. They entertain'd him with a Fight of 8 Buffaloes in an Inclosure, where being shew'd a red Cloth, it presently sets them a fighting. These Creatures abound in this Country: They till their Ground, and the Females give Milk, some of them 22 Pints in a Day, of which they make Butter and Cheese, mingled with other Sorts of Milk. Sir John Chardin says, this Patriarch, when he was there, run himself in a great deal of Debt, by soliciting at *Constantinople* to have the only Privilege of selling the consecrated Oil called *Myrone*, which they make the People believe cures all Distempers of the Soul.

Soul. He obtain'd his Desire; but the *Armenian* Patriarch at *Jerusalem* having inform'd the *Port*, that it would lessen the *Grand Seignior's* Revenue, the Privilege was recalled. The Curious may find a further Account of the Religion of the *Armenians*, and their Constancy in suffering for it, in *Tavernier's Travels*, who gives such an Account of some of their Austerities, as seems to exceed Belief.

D I A R B E C K, or M E S O P O T A M I A.

Sanson observes, that this Country and *Syria* went anciently under the general Name of *Affyria* or *Syria*, as we took Notice in the Description of the latter. *Affyria* was anciently subdivided into *Affyria Proper*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Chaldea* or *Babylonia*; but now *Diarbeck* has chang'd both the general and particular Names, *Terack* answering to *Chaldea*, *Diarbeck Proper* to *Mesopotamia*, and *Curdistan*, &c. to *Affyria Proper*. The Divisions of *Diarbeck Proper* may be seen in his Table, P. 1. and 7. of this Volume.

A N C I E N T M E S O P O T A M I A.

The *Hebrews* call'd it *Aram*, *Aramea*, *Aram Naharaim*, or *Paddan-Aram*, i. e. *Syria* of the Rivers, or Champagne *Syria*. The *Greeks* call'd it *Mesopotamia*, because of its Situation in the middle of Rivers, or *Mesopotamia Syria*, and the vulgar *Latin* calls it *Syria*; for the Inhabitants differ'd little in Language or Customs from those of *Syria* on this Side *Euphrates*.

Ptolomy divided it into *Anthemusfa*, *Chalcis*, *Gausanitis*, *Acabene*, *Tingene* and *Antobarritis*; but they are little mention'd in History, and their Boundaries are not well distinguish'd. *Anthemusfa* was the chief of them, bounded on the N. by *Armenia*, and on the W. by the *Euphrates*. *Eutropius* and *Rufus* call it a Country of *Persia*, or of the Kingdom of the *Parthians*, as *Mesopotamia* for most Part was. Others divided it into *Osroene*, *Mygdonia*, *Sophanene*, *Mesopotamia Propria*, and *Arabia Scenitarum*. *Ortelius* takes *Osroene* and *Anthemusfa* to be the same; but the latter is the more ancient Name, and *Osroene* seems to be so called from King *Chos-*

roes or *Osdroes*, who liv'd in the Time of the *Antonins*. In the *Notitia Ecclesiae*, *Edeffa* is made the Capital of *Osroene*; and *Dio Cassius* calls that *Abgarus* who misled the *Romans* into By-ways, *Osroenus*, i. e. an Inhabitant of *Osroene*. *Mygdonia*, which had its Name from the *Mygdones*, a People of *Macedonia* transported hither, seems to be the same with *Anthemusfa* and *Osroene*. *Nisibis* and *Antiochia* were its Towns; so that it seems to have reach'd as far E. almost as the *Tigris*. *Sophanene* lay above *Nisibis* towards *Amida* and the *Tigris*, and as low as the River *Nymphius*. *Mesopotamia Proper* had *Amida* for its Capital, and the Lower or S. Part of *Mesopotamia* was inhabited by the *Arabians*, who liv'd in Tents, was therefore called *Arabia*, and separated from *Arabia Deserta* by the *Euphrates*.

Mesopotamia was also divided betwixt the *Romans* and the *Parthians* with respect of Empire, and that differently, as either of them enlarged their Boundaries; for some of the *Roman Emperors* chose rather to make *Euphrates* the Boundary, than to extend it to the *Tigris*. There were also some Provinces beyond the River belonging to this Country; but Authors differ about them.

The ancient Towns of *Mesopotamia* are accounted for by *Ptolomy* according to the Course of their Rivers. Such of them as were obscure we pass by.

The most remarkable were, 1. *Apamea*, forgot by *Ptolomy*, but mention'd by other Writers. 'Twas join'd by a Bridge to *Zeugma*, describ'd by us P 71. and noted for being a great Pass over the *Euphrates*. It had a strong Castle named *Seleucia*, which defended the Bridge, and was given by *Pompey* to *Antiochus K.* of *Commagene*, says *Strabo*.

2. *Nicephorium*, on the *Euphrates*, Lat. 35. built by *Alexander the Great* for the Convenience of the Situation. 'Twas taken, with the other Towns of this Country, by *Tiridates* and *Crassus*, and afterwards called *Constantina* and *Constantia*.

3. *Callinicus*, built by *Selucus*, and named from *Callinicus* the Sophist, who was slain there. 'Twas a strong Town, and noted for the Defeat of *Galerius Maximianus* in the Neighbourhood. It lay S. from *Nicephorium*, on the Banks of the *Euphrates*.

4. *Cercusium*, *Circesium*, or *Circessus*, at the Mouth of the *Chaboras*, a great River that falls into the *Euphrates*, a very strong Town, of a Triangular Form, and a Roman Garrison, fortified by *Dioclesian*. The Learned suppose it to be *Carchemish* mentioned 2 Chron 35. 20. Jer 46. 2. and Isa. 10. 9.

5. *Zautha*, or *Zaita*, on the *Euphrates*, noted for the great Quantity of Oil produced in its Territory, and for the Tomb of the Emperor *Gordianus* in or near it. *Julian* marched thro' it against the *Persians*.

6. *Dura*, on the *Euphrates*, S. E. from *Zaita*, formerly a strong and large City, built by the *Macedonians*, who call'd it *Euphratus*.

7. *Anathon*, or *Libanius*, a Town and Island in the *Euphrates*, near the Mouth of the *Sacoras*, strongly fortified, and taken by *Julian*.

On the River *Sacoras*, which divided *Mesopotamia* almost into two equal Parts, lay several Towns, but none of Note. *Xenophon* calls this River *Araxes*.

8. *Naarda*, *Nearda*, or *Nehardea*. It lay on the *Euphrates*, in the Confines of *Mesopotamia* and *Babylon*, and is by *Josephus* assign'd to the latter. 'Twas a strong Town. The *Jews* fled hither after their Defeat by *Tiberius*, and set up their Schools. It had a large Territory of its own Name.

9. *Syphara*, the Capital of the *Sypareni* on the Borders of *Babylonia*, where the *Euphrates* divides it self into several Streams.

10. *Achaicala*, a strong Fortrefs, furround-ed by the *Euphrates*, which was difficult to be pass'd there.

11. *Zaragardia*, noted for a high Tribunal of Stone, said to be built by *Trajan*.

12. *Seleucia*, near the Conjunction of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*. Authors differ whether it lay on the *Mesopotamian* or *Babylonian* Side. *Gellarius* places it on the former, and thinks it was wash'd by both Rivers. 'Twas built, or rather enlarg'd, by *Seleucius Nicator*, who exhausted *Babylon* to People it. Its first Name was *Coche*, or rather was built near that Place. *Cassius* the Roman took and destroy'd it.

On the *Tigris*; *Ptolomy* places the following Towns of Note:

1. *Singara*, near the Mouth of the River *Mygdonius*, which *Stephanus* places by *Misake* near *Edeffa* in *Arabia*. Others make

two *Singara's* in this Country, which is confuted by *Spanheim*. 'Twas taken by *Trajan*, and made a Roman Colony, under the Names of *Aurelia* and *Septimia*. 'Twas taken from the Romans, and fortified by the *Persians* or *Parthians* in the 8th Year of *Constantius*, but recover'd by them again. 'Tis thought to be *Shinar* mentioned *Genesis* 11. 2. and reckon'd to belong to *Babylonia*. It has a Mountain of the same Name adjoining to it. The Romans were defeated near this Place under *Julian* by the *Persians*.

2. *Birtha*, or *Virta*, a strong Town, built, or at least fortified, by *Alexander the Great*. *Bochart* takes it to be *Reholoth* mentioned *Gen.* 10. 11.

Ptolomy and others place the following Towns in the Inland Parts of *Mesopotamia*:

1. *Edeffa*. *Pliny* calls it a noble Town, and says, 'twas also named *Antiochia*. He places it in *Arabia*, because the *Arabs* inhabited that Part of the Country. It lies on the River *Scirta*, above where it falls into the *Euphrates*, near the Foot of Mount *Taurus*. 'Tis memorable for the Story of *Abgarus* their King, who is said to have invited our Saviour to live with him. 'Tis also noted for the Death of the Emperor *Caracalla*, slain here by Order of *Macrinus*, the Captain of his Guards, to avoid his own Death, because the Magicians, whom *Caracalla* consulted to know his Successor, sent him a Letter, to signify that 'twas *Macrinus*, to whom the Emperor deliver'd the Letter without looking into it, with another Packet that he receiv'd in his Chariot. *Edeffa* was one of the four Tetrarchies of the Western Christians when they conquer'd the Holy Land. The two first Tetrarchs succeeded *Godfrey of Bouillon* in the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*. 'Twas retaken by the *Turks* in 1142, and formerly a Roman Colony and Metropolis, as appears by the Medals of *Gordianus* and *Severus*.

2. *Bathnas*, near the *Euphrates*, built by the *Macedonians*, formerly inhabited by rich Merchants, and had a great Annual Fair in August for Goods brought thither by Sea and Land by the *Indians* and others. It lay a Day's Journey S. from *Edeffa*, and was an Episcopal See. *Gellarius* warns the Reader not to confound it with *Bathnas* in *Syria*.

3. *Carrae*, a noble strong Town, and a Roman Metropolis and Colony, noted for the

the Defeat and Death of *Crassus* in the Neighbourhood by the *Parthians*. *Stephanus* says, it was so nam'd from a neighbouring River. *Bochart*, *Salmasius*, and other learned Men, take it to be the *Haran* or *Charran* of the Patriarchs; but *Spanheim* questions it. The Curious may find the Reasons on both Sides in *Cellarius*. Others place *Haran* more S. on the River *Chaboras*, E. from *Nicephorium*. This Place was also noted for a Temple where the Moon was worship'd under both Sexes, the Male being called *Lunus*. The Heathens fancy'd, that those who worship'd the Male should keep the Mastery of their Wives, and the others should be subject to them.

4. *Anthemus*, *Anthemusia*, or *Anthemusium*, the Metropolis of the District so called. *Cellarius* thinks it lay betwixt *Carrae* and *Nicephorium*.

5. *Ichnae*, or *Ischna*, below *Carrae*, noted for the Defeat of *Publius* the Son of *Crassus* by the *Parthians*.

6. *Davana*, or *Dabana*, a Roman Garrison betwixt *Carrae* and *Callinicus*.

S. E. from hence lay, 7. *Eleia*; and, 8. *Resana*, or *Resaina*, memorable for Battles fought by the *Romans*, especially the latter, where *Trajan*, *Severus*, and *Gordianus Junior*, obtain'd noble Victories over the *Persians*; but the latter lost his Life here by Treachery. This is not to be confounded with *Risina* in *Mesopotamia*, or with *Resen* in *Assyria*.

9. *Nisibis*, or *Nesibis*, an ancient and noble City in the N. Part of *Mesopotamia*, on the River *Mygdonius*, and not the *Tigris*, as some say. 'Tis thought to have been built by *Nimrod*, who *St. Jerome* says reign'd here, and that it is the *Acchad* mention'd *Gen. 10.*

10. The Name was chang'd by the *Macedonians*, who call'd it *Antiochia Mygdonia*. *Tigranes* held it in the Wars of *Mithridates*. 'Twas taken from him by the *Romans*, who made it a Garrison against the *Parthians* and *Persians*, and afterwards a Roman Colony. *Heylin* says, *Nisibis* was the Metropolis of *Mesopotamia Proper*, besieg'd by *Sapores* the *Persian* in the Reign of *Constantius*, and bravely defended by *James* their Bishop. 'Twas afterwards quitted to *Sapores* by the Emperor *Jovinian*, with the neighbouring Province. He says, 'tis still a considerable Town, the See of an Archbishop, and Seat of a Turkish Sangiack, and called *Nesbin*.

10. *Bezabde*, a fortified Town, honour'd with the Privileges of *Rome*, bravely defended by the *Romans*, but taken by the *Persians* in the Time of *Constantius*. It lay upon a Hill near the Banks of the *Tigris*.

11. *Amida*, a noble and ancient Town near the *Tigris*, the Metropolis of *Mesopotamia* when 'twas one Province. 'Twas enlarged and beautified by *Constantius*, the Son of *Constantine*, who nam'd it *Constantia*. After his Death, it resum'd the former Name. 'Twas a strong Garrison against the *Persians*, and lay near the Foot of Mount *Taurus*. Ancient Geographers say, the River *Nymphæus* or *Nymphius* falls into the *Tigris* near this City, which some reckon to belong to *Armenia*. The Town is now called *Diarbequir*, or *Caramit*; of which in Modern *Mesopotamia*.

12. *Martyropolis* lay about 240 Stadia N. W. from *Amida*, and was subject to it as Metropolis. It lay in the District of *Sophanene*, and was taken by the *Persians*.

13. *Scenæ*. *Strabo* calls it a memorable Town, and the Inhabitants *Arabes Scenitæ*. It lay on a Ditch near the Confines of *Babylon*, 18 Schœni from *Seleucia*, each Schœnus being 30 Furlongs.

14. *Ur*, a Castle plac'd by *Ammianus Marcellinus* betwixt the *Tigris* and *Nisibis*. Some take it to be *Ur* of the *Chaldees*, *Abraham's* Country; but more of that in its proper Place.

15. *Hatra*, or *Atra*, an ancient Town in the Middle of a Wilderness, betwixt the Upper *Tigris* and *Nisibis*. Some place it by Mistake in *Arabia Deserta*. It was attack'd by the Emperors *Severus* and *Trajanus*, who lost both their Armies, and narrowly escap'd with their own Lives before it. The People in the Town and District were called *Atreni*; but *Xiphilinus* and *Dio* call them by Mistake *Agareni*.

16. *Eressa*. *Heylin* says, the *Greeks* rebuilt this City, and nam'd it *Callirhoe*, because of its fair Streams and Fountains. The *Romans* call'd it *Justinopolis*. *St. Jerome* takes it to be *Ereh*, where *Nimrod* is said to have reign'd, *Gen. 10. 10.* Some will have it to be *Haran*, and the Seat of *Zenobia* Queen of *Palmyrene*. 'Twas taken by the *Saracens* Anno 637, and by the *Turks* in 1142 or 1150.

17. *Colgenbar*, a strong Town, besieg'd by *Sanguin* the Turk in 1142, after he took

Edeffa.

Edessa. He was murder'd before it in a drunken Quarrel.

18. *Phalga*, or *Phaliga*, at the Conflux of the *Chaboras* and *Euphrates*, says *Heylin*. He adds, That *Stephanus*, *Arrianus*, and *Ptolomy*, call it *Pharga* by Mistake, and that it was the Seat of *Phaleg*, one of *Abraham's* Ancestors; but the Doctor seems to be mistaken, since we find in *Cellarius's* Map *Circesium* on the W. Side of the Mouth of the *Chaboras*, and *Chabora* on the E. and that *Ptolomy* puts *Phagra* on the *Arabian* Side of *Euphrates*.

19. *Sarug*, a Day's Journey from *Heran*, suppos'd to be the Seat of *Serug*, another of *Abraham's* Ancestors.

This Country was first planted by the Sons of *Noah*, successively brought under the *Babylonians*, *Assyrians*, *Medes*, *Persians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans*, afterwards by the *Saracens*, and now by the *Turks*. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Abraham* and *Rebecca*, the long Residence of *Jacob*, and the Birth of his Children, and by Consequence gave Rise to the *Hebrew* Nation. *Eusebius* says, Christianity was introduc'd by *Thaddæus*, one of the 70 Disciples sent thither by *St. Thomas* the Apostle; but the Story of King *Abgarus*, his Letter to our Saviour, and the Answer, were condemn'd as Apocryphal by a Council at *Rome* in 494. Since that Time, many learned Papists, as well as Protestants, have charg'd them with being spurious, and others of both Communions have defended 'em. There were many Kings of this Name (which in *Arabick* signifies *Most powerful*) here, so that it became common to them, as *Ptolomy* to those of *Egypt*. Several of them lived in good Terms with the *Roman* Emperors, and their Pictures are found on the Reverse of the Medals of *Gordian*, *Aurelius*, and *Severus*. Christianity is said to have flourish'd here till about 530, that *Jacobus Syrus* fell in with the *Eutychians*; but being oppos'd by the Patriarchs of *Antioch*, they retir'd further into the Country, and *Babylonia* set up a Patriarch of their own, who assum'd the Title of *Antioch*, and are successively called *Ignatius*, as the Successors of that Martyr. They reside for most Part at *Caramit*. The Christians under them were formerly 160000 Families; but *Heylin* says, they were in his Time but 50000.

They are call'd *Jacobites*, and hold but one Nature and Will in our Saviour. They

imprint the Sign of the Cross with a burning Iron on the Face or Arm of their Children before Baptism; circumcise both Sexes, hold that Angels consist of Fire and Light, and that there's no Necessity of Auricular Confession. They reject Purgatory, and Prayers for the Dead, give the Communion in both Kinds, allow the Marriage of Priests, say the Souls of the Deceased remain somewhere upon Earth till the Last Day, and honour the Memory of *Jacobus Syrus*, and *Dioscorus* of *Alexandria*, tho' condemn'd by ancient Councils. There's also a false Patriarch of the Popes Election at *Amida*.

Since the *Saxons* in their Map of *Diarbeck* include not only *Mesopotamia*, but *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*, and Part of *Assyria*, 'tis proper to give an Account of the ancient State of those Countries, before we come to the modern State of the whole under the Name of *Diarbeck*, which the *Turks* have extended over all their Countries on the E. Side of the *Euphrates*.

BABYLONIA and CHALDEA.

Cellarius observes, that some extend *Mesopotamia* beyond the *Tigris*; that *Pliny* says, it all belong'd to the *Assyrians*, except *Babylon* and *Ninus*; that the *Macedonians* built many Towns here, because the Soil was fruitful; and that *Seleucia*, *Laodicea* and *Artemita* belong'd to it. *Ptolomy* allows none of those but *Seleucia* to *Mesopotamia*: *Babylon* lay in *Babylonia*, and the rest in the *Regio Transfigritana*. The latter is charg'd as an Error upon *Pliny* by *Cellarius*, who says *Seleucia* is the Eastern Boundary of *Mesopotamia*, and that what lies within the Channels of the *Euphrates*, and beyond them to the S. belongs to *Babylonia* and *Chaldea*.

Ptolomy limits *Babylonia* by *Mesopotamia* on the N. by the *Tigris* on the E. *Arabia Deserta* on the W. Part of the *Persian* Gulph and *Arabia Felix* on the S. That which lies on the *Euphrates* he calls *Auranitis*; that adjoining to *Arabia Deserta*, *Chaldea*; and the Country about the Marshes, *Amordacia*, or *Amordosia*; but *Chaldea* is the noblest and best known, and includes *Babylonia* in *Jeremy's* Prophecy, where the *Chaldeans* and their Armies are said to live chiefly about *Babylon*,

Babylon, Jer. 24. 5. 25. 12. 50. 8. &c. and *Babylon* is said to lie in *Chaldea*, Ezek. 12. 13. But *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, and *Pliny*, make more Use of *Babylonia*, by which they mean either all the Country betwixt *Mesopotamia*, *Arabia*, *Tigris*, and the *Persian Gulph*, which makes it equal to *Ptolomy's Chaldea*, or the upper Part about the Channels of the *Euphrates* and *Babylon* it self, and so reduce *Chaldea* to the rest of the Country adjoining to *Arabia*; therefore we shall treat of them apart.

Babylonia is chiefly contain'd within the Channels of the *Euphrates*, and the adjoining Country. 'Tis hard to describe the Form of the *Euphrates* here before it was divided into artificial Canals, because they are older than the Greek Authors from whom we have our Accounts. The Rivers of *Babylon* are mentioned Ps. 137. so that those Canals are very ancient. 'Tis probable *Euphrates* fell into the Sea by one Mouth, and that those Canals were cut, that Part of it might run into the *Tigris*, and Part into the Lakes or Marshes. *Pliny* says, the Mouths of the *Euphrates* and *Tigris* were 25 Miles distant, or, according to others, but 7, and both of them navigable; but the *Orcheni* and Husband-men, by cutting out Streams to water their Lands, did long ago stop up the Mouth of the *Euphrates*; so that 'twas carried into the Sea by the *Pasi-Tigris*. *Pliny* adds, that the River was divided 80 Miles from *Zeugma*, about the Village *Massice*. On the Left Hand it run into *Mesopotamia* by *Seleucia*, and then fell into the *Tigris*. On the Right it run to *Babylon*, formerly the Capital of *Chaldea*, and passing thro' the Middle of it, fell into the Marshes. He says, the former Canal or Stream, or at least Part of it, was made by *Nicator*, who built *Seleucia*, and by that Means dispeopled *Babylon*. *Ptolomy* speaks of the same Channels, and a 3d betwixt them, which he calls the *Royal River*, and makes it fall into the *Tigris* much lower at *Apamea*. *Ammianus* says, this Country was water'd by the *Marse*, the *Royal River*, and the *Euphrates* exceeding them all; which being divided into three, was navigable in all its Streams; and washing the Islands and Arable Lands, made them fit for Corn and Wood. Now allowing this Division of *Euphrates* to include *Marse* and the *Royal River*, it does not seem to be the same with *Ptolo-*

my's Division, except we make *Ammianus's* *Royal River* to be the Branch which runs by *Seleucia* to the *Tigris*; therefore we must enquire after it. *Polybius* calls it a *Royal Ditch*, Some call it *Narmacha*, *Narmalaches*, *Arma-cales*, *Armalchar*, and *Naarmalcha*; the last the truest, because it signifies a *Royal River*. *Abydenus* in *Euseb. Præp.* 9. Cap. 41. says, 'twas made by *Nebuchadnezzar*. *Zosimus* mentions a great Ditch, which the Inhabitants said was made by *Trajan*, and receiv'd the *Narmalaches*, which fell with it into the *Tigris*. *Ammianus* says, *Trajan* dug it first, and *Severus* cleans'd it afterwards, to make a Passage for Vessels betwixt the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*; but since *Ptolomy* says, that *Naarmalcha* fell into the *Tigris* at *Apamea*, above 60 Miles distant from *Seleucia*, *Cellarius* supposes that those *Roman Princes*, during the *Parthian War*, that they might come a shorter Way from the *Royal River* to *Ctesiphon*, seem to have dug a new Canal betwixt *Coche* and *Ctesiphon*, which *Julian* clean'd, and made use of afterwards when he cross'd the *Tigris* with his Army, says *Zosimus*. It remains then to find out the old *Royal River*. *Ptolomy* does not mention where it begins; but *Cellarius* thinks it was on the Right Hand above *Babylon*, to break the Force of the Stream which run thro' that City. Others think it the Branch on the Left Hand that runs by *Seleucia*. *Pliny* says, it was the Opinion of some, that *Euphrates* was divided near *Massice* by the Governor *Gabaris*, that the Violence of the Stream might not annoy *Babylonia*; and that all the *Affyrians* call'd it *Naarmalcha*, or the *Royal River*. *Cellarius* thinks, since there were more Canals than one dug by Kings, there were several which bore that Name; so that there's no Certainty to be had either from ancient or modern Authors as to the Divisions and Turnings of the *Euphrates*. The Curious may find more of this in *Cellarius*, and the particular Names of several of those Streams or Branches.

The chief Towns of this Country were, 1. *Babylon*, their Metropolis, and the oldest Town in the World. The *Hebrews* call it *Babel*, from whence the Country was nam'd *Babylonia*. We have an Account of the Building of this City and its Tower, *Genesis* 11. by *Nimrod*, and not by the fabulous *Semiramis*. It was enlarg'd by *Belus*, but chiefly

chiefly augmented and adorn'd by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who proudly arrogated the whole to himself, *Dan.* 4. 30. *Herodotus* tells us, That the true *Semiramis* built a sumptuous Bridge here over the *Euphrates*. We know from the Sacred History, that 'twas a long Time the Seat of Empire. All agree, that 'twas justly reckon'd one of the Wonders of the World. *Pliny* says, it was long the Metropolis of *Chaldea*, and the most famous City of the Earth; for which Reason a great Part of *Mesopotamia* and *Affyria* was called *Babylonia*. He adds, that 'twas 60 Miles in Compass; that its Walls were 200 Foot high, and 50 broad, their Foot being 3 Inches larger than ours, and it had 150 Towers upon the Walls. *Herodotus* agrees with *Pliny* in its Circuit; but *Diodorus* reduces it to 45 Miles; and *Curtius* says much the same. *Strabo* makes the Circuit above 48, and the Walls broad enough for Chariots to pass one another, or 6 to draw in a-breast. *Heylin* says, they were finish'd in one Year by 200000 Workmen. At each End of the Bridge over the *Euphrates* there was a stately Palace. 'Twas noted also for the magnificent Temple of *Belus* the Idol, and the Gardens built on its Walls, and the Tops of Palaces, so as they seem'd to hang in the Air, and were supported by stately Arches. The Vaults thro' which the *Euphrates* run were also remarkable. *Aristotle* says, it ought rather to have been reckon'd a Country than a City, being so very large, that when 'twas surpris'd by the *Medes* and *Persians*, 'twas three Days before those at the other End of the Town had Notice of it, which some think was because there were Gates at the End of every Street for its better Defence, or because the Inhabitants were drown'd in Riot and Drunkenness at *Belshazar's* extravagant Feast. By this the Prophecy was fulfill'd, *Jer.* 51. 31. *That one Post and one Messenger should run to meet another, to shew the King of Babylon that his City was taken at one End.*

As to the Tower of *Babel*, it was begun at the Solicitation of *Nimrod*, and others of the Race of *Cham*, who impiously thought to secure themselves from a second Deluge by that Tower; a wicked Precaution, considering that God made a Covenant with *Noah*, *Genesis* 9. 11. &c. not to drown the Earth any more: Therefore 'tis

probable that *Shem* and his Posterity, call'd the Children of *Eber*, *Gen.* 10. 21. in whom the true Church was continued, as may be seen *Gen.* 11. did not join with them in this ungodly Attempt, no more than in establishing an arbitrary Government, of which *Nimrod* laid the Foundation. *Herbert* says, good Authors report, that there were no less than 500000 Men employ'd 30 Years in building that prodigious Tower, whose Basis was 9 Miles about, and its Height, according to some, 5000 Paces, or 5 Miles. *St. Jerome* makes it 16000 Paces, which must be understood of the winding Stair from the Bottom to the Top, which was so large, according to some, that Horses and Carts could easily turn in it, except we suppose, with the *Jews* in their *Falchut*, that the Tower was 27 Miles high; but leaving these Things as uncertain, we are sure from the Scripture, that it was a stupendious Work, and the Design of it so arrogant, as provok'd Heaven against the Builders, and made them give over. Some fabulous *Greek* Authors say, that *Semiramis* attempted to finish it; and it is not improbable, that *Nebuchadnezzar* did in his Pride reattempt it, which brought that remarkable Judgment upon him of being sent to graze with Beasts, *Dan.* 4. 30, 31, 32, 33. *Alexander the Great* is said likewise to have attempted the finishing of it. The other remarkable Buildings here were, 1. The Temple of *Belus*, in which were the Golden Statues of *Belus*, *Juno*, and *Rhea*, which were worship'd by the People. 2. *Diodorus Siculus* tells us, That *Semiramis*, besides erecting the noblest Bridge over the *Euphrates* that we meet with in History, built here two Obelisks, the least of them 130 Foot high, and 25 Foot thick, being hewn out of Mount *Ararat*, and brought hither down the *Tigris*. 3. Two sumptuous Palaces on the Sides of the *Euphrates*, one on the E. and the other towards the W. End of *Babylon*, the first 30, and the 2d 60 Furlongs in Extent, and each of them encompassed with a noble Wall. 4. In the Middle of the City she rais'd a square Tower of black polish'd Marble, being 1000 Paces on each Side, and having 4 Gates of burnish'd Brass. *Diodorus* says, there were 8 Towers upon one another, gradually diminishing; and on the Top a Chappel, in which

which *Semiramis* plac'd a sumptuous Bed and Table of Gold, with three Images of the same Metal, one representing her Father-in-Law *Belus* by the Name of *Jupiter*, her Husband *Ninus* by the Statue of *Ops*, and her self by that of *Juno*. They were each 12 Cubits high; those of *Jupiter* and *Ops* weigh'd 1000 *Babylonian* Talents each, and that of *Ops* 800. There stood by them two Golden Cups of 30 Talents each, two Perfuming Pots, and three other large Golden Vessels, one of them weighing 1200 Talents. These Images were the Objects of Idolatry for many Ages; and *Herodotus* says, there was Annually spent in this Temple 100000 Talents in Frankincense; and that it continu'd undefaced till A. M. 3490, that *Xerxes* demolish'd it in a frantick Fit, after he was defeated at Sea and Land by the Greek Generals *Leonidas* and *Themistocles*. From the Top of the highest Tower, the *Chaldean* Astrologers, then reckon'd the ablest in the World, view'd the Motions of the Stars. These Authors add, That when *Xerxes* open'd the Sepulchre of *Belus*, in Hopes of Treasure, he found nothing but a large Vessel of Glass full of Oil, in which the Corps had been preserved for 1600 Years; and that when *Darius* open'd the Tomb of *Semiramis* with the like Design, it sent forth such a pestilential Vapour, as kill'd several of the Spectators, and afterwards infected most of *Asia*. They say, That round the Wall of the City there was a broad deep Trench fill'd with Water. There were 100 Brass Gates in the Wall, and Arches round it within, which cover'd the People with a Shade like a Piazza. This City underwent several remarkable Disasters. It revolted first in the Time of *Semiramis*, who receiving the News as she was dressing her Head, vow'd she would not put up her Hair till she had besieg'd and recover'd it, and did it accordingly. 2. *Xenophon* tells us in his *Cyro Paideia*, That when *Cyrus* besieg'd it, he drein'd the Channel of the *Euphrates* by so many Canals, that he surpris'd the Town while the *Babylonians* were feasting, by marching in his Forces at the Channel of the River. 3. It revolted from the *Persians* in the Reign of *Darius Hystaspes*, when the Garrison having defended it 22 Months, and being reduc'd to Want, they kill'd most of the Women for Food; so

that the *Persians* could not reduce it till *Zopyrus*, one of *Darius's* Captains, betray'd it by the following Stratagem: He cut off his own Nose and Ears, and flying to *Babylon*, pretended he had been thus mangled by *Darius*, and therefore came to assist them in Defence of the Town. The Citizens believing him, and knowing his Valour, trusted him with the Command of the Garrison, which gave him an Opportunity of betraying them to *Darius*. It was afterwards taken by *Alexander the Great*, who found in it 200000 Talents of Gold, and design'd to have made it the Seat of his Empire, but kill'd himself by excessive Drinking, or was poison'd there according to some. Tho' Part of the above-mention'd Relations of this great City may justly be rejected as fabulous, yet it appears by good History, that for many Ages it had the Empire of a great Part of the World, and is reckon'd to have been the Seat of 49 Emperors from *Nimrod* to *Belsazzar*, which was about 1600 Years; so that what *Pausanias* in *Affyr*. says of it seems to be true, that it was the greatest and most splendid City that ever the Sun beheld, for which we have a much better Authority from the holy Prophets, since *Isa.* 14. 4. calls it by Way of Eminence, *the Golden City*; and *Cap.* 47. *the Lady of Kingdoms*; and *Jer.* 51. 41. calls her, *the Praise of the whole Earth*. The Truth of the Divine Predictions concerning the Destruction of this City and her Idols, *Bel*, &c. *Jer.* *Cap.* 50. and 51. were verified of old, and visible now: For *Curtius* tells us, that a 4th Part of it was destroy'd in his Time. *Pliny* says, it was reduc'd to a Wilderness in his Days; and *St. Jerome* tells us, that in his Time it was turn'd into a Park, where the Kings of *Persia* us'd to hunt. *Strabo* tells us, *Lib.* 16. That Part of it was destroy'd by the *Persians*, and Part of it by Time; but the greatest Blow was given to it by the Neglect of the *Macedonians*, and by the Design of *Seleucus Nicator* about A. M. 3645, 360 Years before our Saviour, that Prince having built *Seleucia* at the Conflux of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, 50 Miles N. from *Babylon*, says *Herbert*, from whence he forced 600000 Souls to people *Seleucia*, which fulfilled *Jeremy's* Prophecy, *Cap.* 51. 41, 42, 43, 44, 45. &c.

Of its present State we have the following Account: *Herbert* says, That the Ruins of *Seleucia* and *Ctesiphon* in the Neighbourhood confound Travellers, so that they often mistake them for the Ruins of *Babylon*. *Leonard Rauwolf*, a Physician of *Augsburg* in *Germany*, who saw its Ruins in 1574, says, they lie near a small Village on the *Euphrates* call'd *Eulogo*, or *Phelugo*, a Day and a half's Journey from *Bagdat*. The adjacent Lands are so desolate and barren, that one wou'd doubt of its ancient Fertility, and the Greatness of the City, did not the vast Ruins still to be seen banish all Cause of Suspicion. He saw the Arches of a Bridge over the River, which is near half a Mile broad, and very deep there. He adds, that those Arches are built with Brick, wonderfully compacted. A quarter of a Mile below the Village, in the Plains, there are the Ruins of a Castle, and beyond that the Remains of the famous Tower, now a Receptacle for Serpents and other venomous Creatures, among which there's a Lizzard with 3 Heads, very dangerous. All over those Plains there are the Ruins of great tall Buildings, and arch'd Towers of admirable Architecture. Among others, there's one called *Daniel's Tower*, still inhabited, and from whence may be seen the Ruins of this vast City, which proves the Truth of what ancient Authors say of its mighty Extent. *Hackluyt* says, That he saw the Ruins of the Tower, which at a Distance resembled a great Mountain. The Remnants then standing were a quarter of a Mile in Compass, built with Sun-dry'd Bricks half a Yard thick, and three quarters of a Yard long each; that betwixt each Course there lay Mats made of Canes, which were very fresh, and these Ruins were as high as the Stone-Work of *St. Paul's Steeple* in his Time; but some think these to be rather the Ruins of *Seleucia*, because they lie on the *Tigris*; whereas *Babylon* lay on the *Euphrates*. *Tavernier* says, That at the parting of the *Tigris* a little Way below *Bagdat*, there's the Ruins of a City, which the Chronicles of the Country say was Old *Babylon*; and that some of the Walls were then standing, and so thick, that 6 Coaches might go a-breast upon them; and that in a wide Plain there's a vast Heap of Ruins, which the Vulgar call *Nimrod's Tower*, and

suppose to be the Remains of that of *Babel*; but the *Arabians* say with more Probability, that it was a Tower built for a Beacon by one of their Princes. The utter Desolation of this City, and the Uncertainty of the very Place where it stood, is a visible Accomplishment of the Prophecy, *Jer. Cap. 50. and 51. v. 37. that Babylon shall become Heaps, a Dwelling-Place for Dragons, an Astonishment, and a Hissing without an Inhabitant; and v. 43. Her Cities are a Desolation, a dry Land, and a Wilderness, &c.* *Moll* places the Ruins of *Babylon* Long. $62\frac{1}{2}$. and about Lat. 31. above 80 Miles almost S. from *Bagdat*. *Cellarius* places it Lat. $34\frac{2}{3}$. *Cluverius* in his Map of *Persia* places it Long. 80. Lat. 33.

2. *Volgesia*, *Vologesia*, or *Vologesocerta*, built on the *Euphrates* by *Vologesus K.* of the *Parthians* in the Time of *Nero* and *Vespasian*. Some call it *Volocesia*; but *Spanheim* from his Medals makes it *Bologasi*. It lay S. from *Babylon*, according to *Ptolomy* near the *Chaldean Lakes*, on the Branch of the *Euphrates* call'd *Marfes*.

3. *Borsita*, suppos'd to be *Strabo's Borsippa*, sacred to *Diana* and *Apollo*. 'Twas noted for a Linen Manufacture, and the People of this Town and the adjacent Country were called *Borsippeni*. *Josephus* says, *Nabonades* fled hither when defeated by *Cyrus*.

4. *Apamia*, on the *Tigris*, Lat. 34. 10. according to *Ptolomy*, who brings *Mesopotamia* as far as this City, and calls it *Apamia Mesenses*; from whence *Cellarius* concludes against other Writers, that this was the famous and true *Mesene*. It lay at the Conflux of the *Tigris* and *Royal River*.

5. *Coche*, on the *Tigris*. *Ammianus* thinks *Seleucus Nicator* enlarg'd this City, and call'd it *Seleucia*; but they appear to have been different Places, tho' near one another. *Coche* was a Place well fortified, and, according to *Naxianzen*, *Invective II.* against *Julian*, was separated from *Ctesiphon* only by the River; so that they look'd like one Town. *Eutropius* calls them both noble Towns, and says, they were taken by the Emperor *Carus*. *Ctesiphon* lay on the E. Side of the *Tigris*, and was the Royal Seat of the *Parthian Kings*. *Coche* lay on the W. Side, in the Island call'd *Mesene*, form'd by the *Royal River* and the *Tigris*, about 40 Miles E. from *Babylon*.

6. *Pirifabora*, a large and populous City, says *Ammianus*, the Seat of King *Sapores*, who built the Town, and had Wars with *Constantius* and *Julian*. He places it in an Island betwixt the *Euphrates* and the *Royal River*.

There were several Towns inhabited by the *Jews* in these Parts, which, together with their Synagogues, were destroy'd by *Julian*; but we pass them over, since there is nothing certain of their Situation, and refer the Curious to *Bochart* and *Cellarius*.

C H A L D E A.

THIS Country is frequently mention'd in the Scriptures, as the same with the Land of *Shinar* and *Babylonia*, of which *Ptolomy* makes it a Province towards *Arabia Deserta*, and subdivides it into *Auranitis*, *Amordocia*, and *Strophæ* or *Strophades*. *Jerome* and others derive the Name from *Chesed* the Son of *Nahor*, *Gen.* 22. 22. *Bochart* takes the Inhabitants to be the same with those called *halybes* or *Alybes* in these Parts. He denies the *Chaldean* to be the ancientest of all Tongues, as the *Maronites* and others say, but thinks it was a Dialect deriv'd from the *Hebrew*, a very ancient and noble Language, of great Use, and very like the *Syriack*. The Name of *Chaldeans* is made use of to signify Men learned in Astronomy and Philosophy, as well as the People of this Country, many of whom were very remarkable for their Knowledge of the Stars, and for pretending to calculate Nativities, as we find in *Cicero de Divinatione*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. and *Strabo Lib.* 16. It appears, that *Chaldea* properly so called lay S. and W. from the Province of *Babylonia* towards *Arabia* and the *Persian Sea*.

Their chief Towns were, 1. *Opis*, an Emporium on the *Tigris*, mention'd by *Ptolomy* and *Strabo*; but where it lay is not certain. *Strabo* says, the *Persians* attempted by Cataracts or Sluices to stop the Navigation to *Ophis*; but *Alexander* broke them all down.

2. *Teredon*, which *Cellarius* thinks lay near the old Mouth of the *Euphrates*, and not in the other Island *Mesene*, formed by the two Branches of the *Tigris* above where it falls into the *Persian Gulph*. This Island was the Seat of King *Athambilis*, who was ea-

sily subdued by *Trajan*, and not to be confounded with *Mesene* in the Province of *Babylon*.

Ptolomy mentions several obscure Towns in the Inland Places of *Chaldea*. *Orchoe* is the only Place of Note here insisted upon by *Cellarius*, who places it betwixt the Lakes of *Chaldea* and the ancient Channel of the *Euphrates*, but nearer the latter. Many Interpreters take this to be the *Ur* of the *Chaldees*, which was *Abraham's* Seat, because they find none other of *Ptolomy's* *Chaldee* Towns, in which there is Mention of the Name of *Ur*, and that 'tis sometimes writ *Urchi*. But *Cellarius* finds no Agreement in the Name, nor to *Abraham's* Journey into *Palæstina* by *Haran*, whether it be the *Roman Carra*, or the other *Haran* near the Mouth of the River *Chaboras*, and therefore is rather of Opinion, with *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Bochart*, and other learned Men, that *Abraham's* *Ur* lay betwixt the *Tigris* and *Nisibis* in *Mesopotamia*, the Place being called by that Name till the Time of *Marcellinus*. This Opinion is so much the more probable, because *Carra*, suppos'd to be *Haran*, lies directly in the Way betwixt this Place and *Palæstina*; and to the Objection that it is called *Ur* of the *Chaldees*, he answers, that Part of *Mesopotamia*, especially towards the *Tigris*, was possess'd by the *Chaldeans*, which he thinks is supported by *Acts* 7. 2. where 'tis said, *God appeared to Abraham when he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran*; and v. 4. That he came out of the Land of the *Chaldeans*, and dwelt in *Charran*. However, by the Inspection of *Cellarius's* own Map, the Conveniency of the Road does not appear so very conclusive; for *Abraham* might as well have travelled from *Orchoe*, which is without Doubt in *Chaldea*, by *Charra*, as from the suppos'd *Ur* betwixt *Nisibis* and *Tigris*; tho' it must be own'd, that the Journey from *Orchoe* is longer, and that *Abraham* must have passed more Rivers, besides the *Euphrates* twice, before he came to *Palæstine* by Way of *Charran*; and that *Orchoe* did not lie on the other Side the *Euphrates* or *Flood*, from whence *Abraham* is said to be brought, *Josh.* 24. 2. for he might have travelled to *Palæstine* thro' *Arabia Deserta*, &c. tho' not to *Charran* without passing that River; but this we submit to the Judgment of the Learned. The *Orcheni*, a

Sect of the *Chaldeans*, are more probably suppos'd to have liv'd about *Orchoe* than in *Arabia Deserta*, as some will have it.

Chaldea, according to *Herodotus*, was so fruitful, that it yielded ordinarily 200, and in some Places 300 Fold. He adds, That the Blades of their Wheat and Barley were 4 Fingers broad. *Pliny* says, they mow'd their Corn twice, and seeded it a 3d Time, otherwise it would be nothing but Blade; That their worst Land yielded 50, and their best 100 Fold. In some Places, the Country was cover'd with a slimy Matter, proceeding from the Nature of the Soil, and the overflowing of the Rivers. This they made use of instead of Morter, and 'tis suppos'd they built the Tower of *Babel* with it. *Heylin* says, That some talk of a Cliff in this Country, which issues such pestilential Vapours, as kill the Birds that fly over it, and of another Place near a Town called *Ait*, which continually throws out boiling Pitch, that overflows the neighbouring Grounds, and is made use of by the Inhabitants for their Boats. Christianity was first preach'd here by *St. Peter*, as appears in his first Epistle, Cap. 5. v. 13. It was much persecuted by the *Persians* at first; but at last prevail'd so far, that they had a Patriarch at *Seleucia*, who sat in publick Councils next to the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*. The Christians of *St. Thomas* or of *India* do also own him as their Primate; but now there are only some few *Jacobites* and *Nestorians* among 'em.

A S S Y R I A,

WAS a large Country beyond the *Tigris*, and famous for having obtain'd the Empire over the East. It had its Name from *Ashur*, *Noah's* Grandson, *Gen.* 10. 11, 22. We have taken Notice before, that many Authors confound it with *Syria*, and the *Assyrians* with the *Syrians*. *Bochart* divides the *Assyrians* into those beyond the *Tigris*, whom he calls the *Proper Assyrians*, and derives them from *Ashur*; and into those on this Side of the *Euphrates*, who are called *Syrians*, from *Tyre* their Metropolis. *Justin* says, the *Assyrians* were afterwards called *Syrians*. It appears also by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, that the Inhabitants of *Babylonia* and *Chaldea* were named *Assyrians*.

Ptolomy bounds *Proper Assyria* with Part of *Armenia* and the Mountain *Niphates* on the N. *Susiana* on the S. *Mesopotamia* or *Tigris* on the W. Part of *Media*, *Choatre*, and Mount *Zagrus*, on the E. It is also called *Aturia*, *Atryia*, and *Adiabene*, by some; and others reckon them Divisions of it, as were *Artacene* or *Aractene*, *Chalonitis* or *Callonitis*. Its principal Rivers were the *Tigris*, into which fell the *Lycus*, *Caprus*, and *Gorgos*, betwixt *Ninive* and *Seleucia*. Others add *Silla* and *Gyndes*; but Authors are not agreed as to the latter's falling into the *Tigris*. *Cellarius* in his Map makes it run towards the *Caspian Sea*. *Ammianus* mentions *Diaba* and *Adiabab* also as Rivers of this Country; but *Cellarius* takes them to be new Names to some of those already spoke of, because they are said to fall into the *Tygris*: *Heylin* says, they are the *Lycus* and *Caprus* of *Ptolomy*.

Cellarius describes *Assyria* by its Subdivisions thus:

1. *Calachene*, mention'd by *Strabo*. *Ptolomy* names it *Calacina*. This lay in the N. W. Part of the Country, at the Foot of the *Gordian Mountains*, Part of Mount *Taurus*. The Name is deriv'd from *Calach*, mention'd *Gen.* 10. 11. to be a City built by *Ashur*; and *Bochart* takes it to be the *Ghalach* to which the King of *Assyria* carried the *Israelites*, *2 Kings* 17. 6. Our Translation reads it *Halah*. This Town seems to have been built near the *Tigris*, because the others built with it, particularly *Rezen* and *Ninive*, were in the Neighbourhood of this River. *Bochart* thinks it to be *Xenophon's Larissa*, which he says was a large but desert Town on the *Tigris*. *Ptolomy* mentions some obscure Places in this Country, which we pass by.

2. *Arrapachitis*, lay N. E. from *Calachene*, a Country of small Note, and by Consequence its Towns obscure. Some think, that from *Darna* in this Country, the People called *Darnei*, and by Mistake in *Herodotus*, *Dardanei*, had their Name. *Herodotus* brings the *Gyndes* thro' this Country into the *Tigris*, noted for the Story of *Cyrus*, who out of a mad Humour is said to have divided it into 360 Streams. Some think this Country had its Name from *Arphaxad* the Son of *Shem*, who planted here.

3. *Adiabene*,

3. *Adiabene*, was the noblest Part of *Affyria*, and frequently taken for the whole. It lay along the *Tigris* a great Way, and had its Name from the Rivers *Diaba* and *Adiaba*, says *Ammianus*; and *Atturia* and *Arbelitis* were Subdivisions of it, as appears by *Strabo* and *Pliny*. *Stephanus* confounds it with *Mesopotamia*. Others derive the Name from the Greek Word *Αῆσατος*, which signifies Inaccessible, because of the *Euphrates* and *Tigris* on one Side, and the Mountains on the other. *Severus* subdu'd the Inhabitants of this Country, and therefore was call'd *Adiabenicus* in his Medals.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Ninive*, call'd by prophane Authors *Ninus*. It was built by *Asbur*, *Gen.* 10. 11. and a vast City, that in *Jonah's* Time had 120000 Persons that could not discern betwixt their Right and Left Hand, *Jonah* 4. 11. *Strabo* says, 'twas much greater than *Babylon*, and contain'd many Fields, Gardens, and other uninhabited Places, as well as it. *Diodorus Siculus* says, it was 480 Stadia in Compass, which makes 60 Miles; but he or his Transcriber are mistaken when they place it on the *Euphrates*, since it lay on the E. Side of the *Tigris*, as appears by *Herodotus* and *Pliny*. The Walls of it are said to have been 100 Foot high, and so broad, that 3 Carts might go a-breast on them. Upon the Walls were 1150 Turrets, 200 Foot high each. It was thought impregnable. *Sardanapalus* made it the Seat of his War against *Belochus* and *Arbaces* in Arms against him. They besieg'd it 3 Years in vain, till the River, by an Inundation, threw down 20 Furlongs of the Wall, which so terrified this effeminate Prince, that he burnt himself in the midst of his Treasures and Strumpets, and left the Town to the Besiegers. It was destroy'd, because of the Wickedness of its Inhabitants, by *Astyages* the *Mede*, according to *Nahum's* Prophecy; so that in the Time of *Cyril of Alexandria*, it was scarce to be discern'd where this City stood. *Heylin* thinks it was built by *Nimrod*, and that *Gen.* 10. 11. ought to be translated as in the Margin; He, i. e. *Nimrod*, went out into *Affyria*, and built *Nineveh*, &c. which he call'd from his Son or Nephew *Ninus*, according to the Example of *Cain*, whom he follow'd, who built a City, and call'd it after his Son *Enoch*. *Herbert* says from ancient Authors, That

when *Sardanapalus* set Fire to his Palace, there were melted down a Hundred Millions of Talents in Gold, and a Thousand Millions of Talents in Silver, that amounts to Twenty Thousand Five Hundred Millions of Pounds Sterling, which seems incredible, did not the Greatness of the Empire, and the long Time his frugal Predecessors had been in amassing it, give Ground to believe that the Sum was immense. *Tavernier* says, That for a League along the Ruins, are to be seen full of Vaults and Caverns; and about half a League further there's a Mosque on a Hill, where they pretend *Jonah* was buried. The *Turks* cover his suppos'd Tomb with a rich Carpet, keep Tapers and Lamps always burning in the Mosque, with two Priests continually reading the *Alcoran*, and suffer no Christians to enter the Place without Money, and pulling off their Shooes. *Salmasius* blames *Ptolomy* for mentioning *Ninive* as in being in his Time; whereas 'twas destroy'd long before; but *Cellarius* supposes another was built from its Ruins, which still kept the Name, as happen'd to *Troy*. Some talk of another *Ninive* that stood on the *Euphrates*; but their Reasons are not convincing.

2. In *Aturia*, a Province betwixt the *Tigris* and *Lycus*, lay *Gaugamela*, on the River *Bumadus*, near *Arbela*, noted for *Alexander's* last Victory over *Darius*: but *Arbela* being a Town, and the other a Village, 'twas call'd the Victory of *Arbela*. *Ptolomy* mistakes when he places it on the other Side *Lycus*, for *Darius* retired over *Lycus* after his Defeat. *Arianus* says, he had above a Million of Men here: Others make them but 200000 Foot, and 50000 Horse. *Alexander* had but 40000 Foot, and 7000 Horse, yet killed 40000, *Diodorus* says 90000 *Persians*, and lost only 300 *Macedonians*, says *Curtius*. He called a neighbouring Mountain *Nicator* in Remembrance of this Victory, which was chiefly owing to the Cowardice or Treachery of *Mazeus*, appointed by *Darius* to guard the Pass of the *Tigris*, thro' which *Alexander* march'd his Army, his Men linking themselves together by one Arm to withstand the Force of the Stream, and holding up their Bows and Arrows with the other, to prevent their being wet; and in this Posture waded the River in the Face of the *Persians*.

Arbela, 600 Stadia E. from *Gaugemala*. 'Twas *Darius's* head Quarter, and Place of Arms, fortified, and gave the Name of *Arbelitis* or *Arbelene* to the District. *Ptolomy* places it on the *Caprus*; but it lay a good Way on this Side of it.

The 4th Division of *Assyria* was *Apolloniatis*, E. from the *Tigris*. The chief Places were, 1. *Apollonia*, its Capital, beyond the River *Gorgus*, built by the *Macedonians* after their Victory. 2. *Artemita*, built also by the *Greeks*, about 500 Stadia E. from *Seleucia*. *Strabo* places it in *Babylonia*, beyond the *Tigris*, and calls it a famous City.

5. *Sittacene*. *Ptolomy* places it by *Susiana*. According to *Cellarius's* Map, it lay S. of the River *Silla*, and E. from the *Tigris*. *Pliny* makes it the same with *Arbelitis* and *Palästine*, and *Strabo* makes it the same with *Apolloniatis*, from which it lies S. It deriv'd its Name from *Sitace*, its chief Town. *Xenophon* calls it a great and populous City, 15 Stadia distant from the *Tigris*; but the Situation of it is uncertain. Some take it to be *Accad*, one of the Towns built by *Nimrod*, *Gen.* 10. 10.

6. *Chalonitis* was the last Province of *Assyria* towards the S. and lay upon the Banks of the *Tigris*. It had its Name from the Town *Chala*, a little below *Ctesiphon*, about 40 Miles S. E. from the *Tigris*. The only other remarkable Town in this Part was the said *Ctesiphon*, on the Banks of the *Tigris*, over against the Island *Mesene*. *Ammianus* says, it was a large and populous Town, founded by *Vardanes*, and enlarg'd by King *Pacorus*. The Kings of the *Parthians* chose to winter here, because of the Temperateness of the Air. *Tacitus* calls it the Seat of their Empire. It was taken by *Severus*, and their great King *Artabanus* narrowly escap'd him. This City was built by the *Parthians*, in order to drein *Seleucia*, as that City drein'd *Babylon*. It was frequently attack'd by the *Romans*, but commonly without Success, and is noted for *Julian* the Apostate's being killed in its Neighbourhood, and crying out when he receiv'd his mortal Wound in a blasphemous Manner, *Thou hast overcome me at last, O Galilean*. It is supposed to be the same with *Calneh*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. 10. and the *Canneh* in *Ezekiel* 27. 23. from whence some derive the Name of the Province *Chalonitis*.

The *Assyrians* were anciently great Warriors, and extended their Dominions from the *Mediterranean* Sea to the River *Indus*. *Heylin* says, they were very formal in their Habit, and wore long Robes, which trail'd on the Ground. Their Hair was long, and their Caps pyramidical like the *Persian* Mitres. They delighted in Perfumes, in wearing Rings upon their Fingers, and frequent Washings. They us'd to sell their fairest Women in the Market, and with the Money receiv'd for them put off those that were not so handsome.

The ancient Kings of Assyria.

I. **N**imrod, Great Grandson to *Noah*, was their first King, *Gen.* 10. 10. and is reckon'd the first who alter'd Paternal Government, and usurp'd Dominion over others. It was he that projected the building of the Tower of *Babel*, where he fix'd the Seat of his Kingdom. *Heylin* reckons the Beginning of his Reign *A.M.* 1798; but this Computation is disputed, for some place it in 1878; but we refer the Curious to *Helvicus*, *Talents*, and other Chronologers. *Hewel* thinks him to be the *Belus* and *Bacchus* of the Ancients, and some call him the *Saturnus Babylonius*. *Hewel* computes that he reign'd 63 Years.

II. *Heylin* makes *Belus* or *Jupiter Babylonius* to be his Son and Successor, says, his Image was worship'd by the old Idolaters under the Name of *Bel* or *Baal*, and that he reign'd 62 Years. But *Hewel* and *Talents* make *Ninus* his Son and Successor, say he worship'd his Father as a God, and was the first who introduc'd Idolatry. He enter'd into a League with the King of *Assyria* properly so called, and with joint Forces subdu'd *Armenia* and *Media*. In 17 Years they conquer'd all *Asia*, besides the *Indians* and *Bactrians*, the latter being commanded by their brave King *Zoroaster*. He died in the 52d Year of his Reign, by a Wound with a Dart as some say, or by the Treachery of his Wife *Semiramis* according to others. *Helvicus* and *Heylin* make *Ninus* the Son of *Belus*, and say, he remov'd the Imperial Seat to *Niniveh*, which he very much enlarg'd and beautified. Others think that *Asbur* was *Ninus*.

III. *Ninus*,

III. *Ninias*, or *Ninus*, Son to *Ninus I.* by *Semiramis*, who put on Man's Habit, and reign'd in his stead, because he was but an Infant. Authors differ much about the Story, and the Time of this *Semiramis*, and likewise of her Husband *Ninus*. *Herodotus*, and Archbishop *Usher* after him, place *Ninus A. M.* 2737; and *Porphyry* places *Semiramis* in the Time of the Trojan War Anno 2760, *Helvicus* says 2464, and *Heylin* begins her Reign 1959. He adds, she was born at *Accaron* in *Syria*, expos'd to the Fury of Wild-Beasts, but rescu'd by Shepherds, who, when she was grown up, presented her to the *Syrian* Viceroy, and he married her to his only Son, with whom going to the Wars, she came acquainted with *Ninus*, who afterwards married her, and was so fond of her, that he granted her Request to have the Command of the Empire for 5 Days, and made a Decree, That whatever she commanded should be done; and being thus invested with Power, she order'd the King to be slain, enlarg'd the Empire into *Ethiopia* and *India*, and led with her an Army of 100000 Chariots, Three Millions of Foot, and 500000 Horse. *Justin* says, That when her Husband died, she put on Man's Habit, and feign'd her self to be his Son, who was of a small Stature, and of a Womanly Voice and Features. [She made him put on Woman's Habit, and being entic'd by her to incestuous Embraces, he kill'd her in the 2d Year of her Reign. Others accuse her of being so unsatiably lustful, that she prostituted her self to the common Soldiers. From all this, those Writers seem to have very good Reason who reject the whole Story of this *Semiramis* as a Fable, whatever Truth there may be in that of another *Semiramis* who liv'd during the War of *Troy*. *Ninias*, her suppos'd Son, is said to be the first who drew up Soldiers in Order of Battle, and by *Justin* and others is represented as a negligent and luxurious Prince, who, as if he had really chang'd Sexes with his Mother, was seldom seen by Men, and spent his Time among Women. He had 30 Successors, most of whom follow'd his Example. We have nothing of Certainty concerning them, nor scarce so much as their Names, except what *Annianus*, a Monk of *Viterbo* in *Tuscany*, has impos'd upon the World in the Name of *Berosus*. *Tutamus*, one of them,

is said to have assisted *Priamus* King of *Troy* when besieg'd by the *Greeks*, and the last of that Line was *Sardanapalus*, by his own Countrymen call'd *Tonoscoës* and *Tonosconcole-ros*. He was the most voluptuous and effeminate Man in the World, and spent his whole Time among his Courtezans in Woman's Habit and Work, so that he was seldom seen by any other of his Subjects. This gave an Opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, and *Belochus* Governor of *Babylonia*, to conspire his Ruin; of which the King having timely Notice, he prepared for his Defence, and gave them three total Routs: But this good Success render'd him secure, so that he return'd to his former Pleasures, which so animated the Rebels, that they took Arms again, obtain'd an equal Number of Victories over his Troops, and besieg'd him in *Niniveh*. *Sardanapalus* held it out for two Years in Hopes of Relief, because the Oracle had foretold, That the Place should never be taken till the River it self wag'd War with it: But in the 3d Year, an Inundation of the *Euphrates* broke down 20 Furlongs of the Walls. This reduc'd him to Despair, and he erected a Funeral Pile, wherein he burnt himself, &c. as before-mentioned. This, says *Justin*, was the only Manlike Action of his whole Life. *Howel* thinks this happen'd *A. M.* 3186, and 1400 Years after the Building of *Babylon*. Upon the Death of *Sardanapalus*, the *Assyrian* Empire was divided into two Principalities; the one containing *Media* and *Persia*, with the neighbouring Provinces, govern'd by *Arbaces* above-mentioned and his Posterity; the other containing *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, &c. under the Jurisdiction of *Belochus*, and call'd the New Kingdom of *Assyria*, of which we come now to give an Account.

The new Kings of Assyria and Chaldea.

A. M. I. **P**Hul *Belochus*, the Beginner of this new Monarchy. 'Tis uncertain how long he reign'd, or who succeeded him. *Howel* says, That at the End of 71 Years, *Nabonassar* obtain'd the Kingdom of *Babylonia*, about 424 Years before the Death of *Alexander the Great*.

A. M. 3194.

A. M.
3194.

II. *Phul Assur*, whose Name is disputed by Historiographers. Some think him to be *Phul* who invaded *Israel* in the Reign of *Menachem*, and date the Beginning of his Reign 17 Years before *Nabonasar*. Others confound him with *Tiglath Pileser* in the Holy Scriptures. However, this Prince destroy'd *Galilee*, and brought *Damascus* under Subjection. *Howel* says, he reign'd 28 Years.

3217.

III. *Salmanassar*, according to *Heylin*, the same with the *Nabonassar* of the Chronologers. He destroy'd *Samaria*, subdu'd *Phœnicia* and *Syria*, and carried off the Ten Tribes of *Israel* to perpetual Captivity.

3227.

IV. *Sennacherib*, who infested *Egypt* with Hostilities, and insulted *Hezekiah* King of *Judah*. But his Blasphemies provok'd God, who sent an Angel, that in one Night slew 185000 of his Soldiers; and himself returning home, was murder'd by two of his Sons, *Adramelech* and *Sharezer*, and succeeded by his other Son.

3233.

V. *Assarhaddon*, or *Escarchaddon*, suppos'd to be the same with *Assardinus*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* in his List. Revenging his Father's Death on his Brothers, he was depos'd by his Deputy of *Chaldea*, and the Seat Royal transferred from *Niniveh* to *Babylon*. *Howel* says, he planted a new Colony in *Samaria*, and thinks he went into *Judea* at the same Time, from whence he brought *Manasseh* the King Prisoner to *Babylon*. According to *Heylin*, he reign'd 10 Years, but *Ptolomy* says 13; and that he was succeeded by

VI. *Saosduchinus*, or *Saosducimus*. The common Opinion is, that he was slain by *Merodach*, who succeeding to the *Assyrian* Empire, annex'd to it the *Babylonian*: But *Howel* thinks it ought to be rejected. Dr. *Heylin* sets down *Merodach Baladan* as the next Successor to *Assarhaddon* above-mention'd, without taking Notice of *Ptolomy's* *Saosduchinus*, whom *Howel* thinks to be the same with *Nabuchodonosor*, who

A. M. kill'd *Arphaxad* King of the *Medes*, mentioned in the Book of *Judith*. Some think *Merodach Baladan* to be the *Mardocempades* of *Ptolomy*, and others the same King, who by his Captain *Holofernes* vex'd *Judea*.

VII. *Saosducimus*, says *Howel*, was succeeded by *Chynaladanus*, whom *Alexander Polyhistor* calls *Saracus*. *Phraartes* K. of the *Medes*, in Revenge of his Father's Death, declar'd War against him, but was defeated. Nevertheless, his Son *Cyaxares* renew'd the War, beat the *Assyrians*, and besieg'd *Niniveh*; but was oblig'd to raise the Siege, and return home, to put a Stop to the *Scythians*, who taking the Opportunity of his Absence, had expelled the *Cimmerians* out of *Europe*, and pursued them to *Media*. Dr. *Heylin* makes no Mention of this Prince, in whose Room he has placed *Ben. Merodach*, (Son of the aforesaid *Merodach Baladan*) who, says he, reign'd 21 Years. After *Chinaladanus* had reign'd 21 Years, he was supplanted by his General

3304.

VIII. *Nabopolassar*, or *Nabolassar*, who got the Empire in the 23d Year of *Nabonasar*, by Means of his Alliance with *Cyaxares*, whose Grand-Daughter *Amitæ* he had obtain'd for his Son *Nebuchadnezar* in Marriage, whom afterwards he made Partner with him in the Government, and sent at the Head of an Army against the *Egyptians* under *Pharoah Necho*, who was at War with him, as well as against the rebellious Inhabitants of *Cælo-Syria* and *Phœnicia*. During this he died at *Babylon*, after he had reign'd 25 Years, according to *Heylin*.

3339.

IX. *Nebuchadnezar* or *Nabuchodonosor the Great*, by some called the *Hercules* of the East, in his March obliged *Jehoiakim* K. of *Judah*, who was subject to *Necho*, to become his Tributary: Upon which the *Egyptian* K. marched against him; but was routed in a second Engagement at *Carcemissus*, and was there slain. *Nebuchadnezar* pursued his Victory, and

A. M. and conquer'd all between the *Euphrates* and the *Nile*, till his Father's Death, when he was called to the Crown. He beautified *Babylon*, added a new City to the old one, and surrounded them with three Walls. He caus'd the famous Hanging Garden to be made round the Palace, for the Entertainment of his Wife *Media*, who delighted much in beholding the high Lands of her own Country. He confederated with *Astyages* K. of the *Medes* in destroying the stately City of *Niniveh*; and in the 18th Year of his Reign, after two Years Siege, he spoiled *Jerusalem*, and carried away the Inhabitants Captive to *Babylon*. But for this, his remarkable Dream and Interpretation, as well as his Exile from Humane Society, we refer the Reader to the four first Chapters of *Daniel's* Prophecy. Historians says, That during his Abode with the Beasts of the Earth, or rather his Distraction, his Son *Evilmerodach*, his Daughter *Nicoris*, with her Husband *Niglissat*, and *Laborasoradach* their Son, govern'd his Empire as Protectors, and therefore are by some reckon'd as Kings. But after that set Time was expir'd, he return'd to himself and the Kingdom, and died, says *Heylin*, when he had reign'd in all 44 Years. But *Ptolemy*, who calls him *Nabocolassar*, says 43 Years.

3383. X. *Evilmerodach* was his Successor, a Man wrapped up in Wickedness and Debauchery: But at the End of two Years he was slain by *Astyages* K. of the *Medes*, and some say by the Contrivance of *Neriglissor*, his Brother-in-Law. *Howel* says, the latter reign'd 4 Years, and left his Son *Laborosardock* to succeed him, who being an ill natur'd Prince, was killed by his own People after 9 Months. But *Heylin*, who says nothing of the two latter, makes it 26 Years from *Evilmerodach* to the Reign of *Nabonydus*, upon whom the Government now devolved.

A. M. XI. *Nabonydus* was a *Babylonian*, call'd by some *Nabannidochus*, and *Labynitus*, and *Balthassar* by *Heylin*, who says, he was the Son of *Evilmerodach*. 'Tis said, he was a Prince of a cruel Temper, and dissolute Life. In the latter End of his Reign he was attacked by *Cyaxares*, the Son of *Astyages*; and after he had reign'd 17, or (according to some) 27 Years, put to Death by *Cyrus* King of *Persia*, who conquer'd *Babylon*, and transferred the *Assyrian* Empire to the *Medes* and *Persians*.

The Modern Geography of Mesopotamia, Babylonia, Chaldea, and Assyria, now under the General Title of Diarbeck.

THEIR chief Towns are, 1. *Bir*, on the E. Bank of the *Euphrates*. The Natives call it *Berygeon*. It stands on the Front of a Hill, and is ill built, like most of the Cities in *Turkey*; but is well stor'd with Provisions, and has excellent Bread, Wine, and Fish. Below it upon the River there's an ancient Castle, half as long as the City, without any other Fortification, save a Tower, with a few pitiful Guns. In the higher Part of the Town there's another Castle, the Seat of a *Basha*, who has 200 Foot, and 400 Horse. The *Euphrates* is crossed here in large Ferry-Boats, and on the other Side there is a large Inn to defend the Merchants from the *Bedouins* or Robbers till they can pass. On the other Side, near the Town, there's an Inn on the Top of a Mount, where the Caravans pay their Duty; and there are several Chambers cut out of the Rock near it for such as can't have Room in the Inn.

2. *Sharmley*, a good Town, with a fair Inn and Baths, and near it a Mountain in the Middle of a Plain, and a Fortrefs on the Top of it, with 200 Spahi's to curb the *Arabs*. This Place was fortified in 1631 by the *Vi- zier* in his Return from *Bagdat*, where he lost most of his Army, without being able to take that City. He design'd to have fortified himself here for fear of the Grand Seignior's

Seignior's Displeasure, and to have usurp'd *Mesopotamia*; but was strangled by some of his Confidants when he had inclos'd the Mountain with a Wall of 20 Foot thick, and rais'd it 3 Fathoms high. 3. *Orfa*, or *Orfa*, on the River *Chabur*, about 57 Miles E. from the *Euphrates*, Long. 73. Lat. 37. according to *Sanfon*. *Tavernier* says, 'tis the Capital of *Mesopotamia*, built (say the Inhabitants) in the same Place where *Abraham* liv'd, and where ancient *Edeffa* stood. They shew the Castle where *K. Abgarus* liv'd when he sent to our Saviour. They have two Churches and a handsome Monastery in and about this Town. The neighbouring Country produces good Wine, and there are many pleasant Gardens about the City, water'd by artificial Channels. The Walls of the Town are of Free-Stone, with Battlements and Towers; but the Houses are small, ill built, and many of them ruinous. A *Basha* resides here, with 150 Foot and 600 Horse, to prevent the Incursions of the *Arabs*. This Place is noted for dying the best yellow Cordovants, the Water being very proper for that Colour. *Thevenot* says, it is about two Hours March, in Compass almost square; and tho' the Houses be ruinous, very populous. On the S. Side there is a large Castle upon a Hill, with wide deep Ditches cut out of the Rock. The Houses in it are ruinous, and its Guns old and broken. There's a square Turret on the Top, where they say *Elias* liv'd. There is a fine Prospect from hence over the Country. On the Side towards the Town, are two great Stone Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order standing on their Pedestals. They consist of 27 Lays of Stone apiece, each Lay containing but two Stones, and each Stone 19 Inches high, and two Foot and a half in Diameter. They say, there were two others stood near them formerly; that upon these 4 Columns *Nimrod* had a Throne; and that *Abraham* was thrown headlong into a Furnace underneath it; upon which immediately there issued the Spring which fills the neighbouring Canal, whose Water having washed the Town, sinks under Ground at some Distance from thence. There are great Plenty of Carps in this Canal, which the Inhabitants suffer none to catch, alledging, they throw those who eat them into Fevers; but such as are taken

beyond the Bridge at the End of the Canal, may be eaten safely enough. On the S. Side of the Castle there are several Hills that command it. On one of them they say *Nimrod* had his chief Throne, and that he quarter'd 100000 Soldiers in the Grotto's, which are very numerous here. Without the S. Gate of the City there's a Well, into which they pretend one of *Abgarus's* Messengers (being attacked by Thieves in his Return from our Saviour) threw a Handkerchief, which had the Print of his Face, and that *Abgarus* going in Procession to take it out of the Well, was cur'd by it of his Leprosy: Upon which he and his Subjects turned Christians. They pretend likewise that *Job* recover'd from his Illness by washing in this Well, which is much resorted to by Lepers, upon whom the Water runs by a Spout from a Vessel filled with the Water, and set upon the Wall, which is built round the Fountain. He adds, that the Leprosy here looks like the Pox; that the Lepers look hideously, are black and melancholy, can scarce speak, and have great Pains all over their Body. *Sanfon* says, this Town is 10 Miles in Compass.

4. *Caraemid*, or *Caramit*, anciently *Amida*, on the River *Soaid*, about 105 Miles N. E. from *Orfa*. *Sanfon* says, it is as large as that City, and has good Walls, with 360 fine Towers upon them. The *Turks* call it *Diarbequir*. *Tavernier* places it on the *Tigris*, says it stands on a rising Ground; that the River here forms a Half-Moon, and the Descent to it from the Walls is very steep. The Town is encompassed with a double Wall, and upon the outer Wall are 62 Towers, which they say were built in Honour of our Saviour's 62 Disciples. The City has 3 Gates, and over one of them a *Latin* and *Greek* Inscription, which mention *Constantine*. It has 3 fair Piazza's, and a magnificent Mosque, formerly a Christian Church. About a League from the City there's a Channel cut out from the *Tigris*, which waters the Town; and in this Water all the red Maroquins made here are washed. They are more beautiful than any other Maroquins of the *East*, and employ a 4th Part of the Inhabitants. The Soil is good and fruitful. They have excellent Bread and Wine, and Pigeons better than any in *Europe*.

rope. The City is populous. There are above 20000 Christians here, two thirds of whom are *Armenians*, the rest *Nestorians*, and a few *Jacobites*. There are also some *Capuchins* here, who have no House, but lodge in an Inn. The Basha of this City is one of the Viziers of the Empire, is able to bring 20000 Horse into the Field, and keeps always a considerable Number on Foot, to prevent the Incursions of the *Arabs* and *Curds*, who being all Horsemen, he maintains only a few Foot. The *Tigris* is always fordable here, except when swelled by Rain or Snow, and then they cross it a quarter of a League higher over a Stone Bridge. About a quarter of an Hour on this Side the City there's a great Town, with a large Inn, where the Caravans to and from *Persia* lodge, because 'tis cheaper than at the City; and half a League on the other Side of the *Tigris* there's a Village with an Inn, where the Caravans rendezvous, and furnish themselves with Provisions for 9 or 10 Days Journey. *Thevenot* says, in the Road near this City there's a Chappel with a Dome, in which they say *Job* was interred. 'Tis much frequented by Pilgrims, and there's a Santo or Hermit who has a Cell near it. There grows abundance of *Agnus Castus* in the Neighbourhood, whose Leaves are divided in Fives, like a Man's Hand, and at the Top there are several little Flowers, of a bright Blue. He finds very much Fault with *Sanfon's* Map of this Country, particularly for his placing *Caramit* wrong, says there is no such River as *Seaid*, on which he puts it; and that he is very faulty in the Positions, Names, and Distances of Places. He makes *Amid* a different Town from *Caramit*, tho' they be but one, and makes the River *Alchabour* the same with *Dgiallab* and that of *Orfa*; whereas *Alchabour* rises 5 Days Journey S. from *Merdin*, and falls into the *Euphrates*. He observes likewise, there's another River *Chabur*, the *Chobar* mentioned in *Daniel*, which rises below *Mosul*, and falls into the *Tigris* at *Bagdat*. He says, there are a great many other Errors in his Map, which discovers it to be taken from bad Memoirs. *Thevenot* says, That there are *Curds* and *Turcomanns* who live in this Country, and are very dangerous to Travellers; but were much more so formerly, till the Basha of *Diarbeck*, being provoked by their

Robberies, made a great Slaughter of 'em. The *Curds* live in Tents made of black Goat's-Hair, and sell Provisions to the Caravans for Tobacco and Soap, which they chuse rather than Money.

5. *Telghiwran*, a Castle inclos'd with many great Stones piled upon one another. 'Twas formerly a great Town, till ruin'd by the *Turks*. There are about 100 *Armenian* Families here, and a *Turkish* Aga and his Servants, who takes Toll of the Caravans. Their Harvest in this Country is in July. *Thevenot* says, That near Mount *Taurus* the Wind blew so hot, that it was scarce to be endured.

6. *Kodgiasar*, formerly a great Town. There are still some high and substantial Buildings remaining, and a spacious Church of good Architecture, now turned to a Mosque, and near it a River with a Bridge of 5 Arches over it.

7. *Merdin*. *Sanfon* places it on the W. Side of the *Tigris*, Lat. $37\frac{2}{3}$. Long. $76\frac{1}{4}$. He says, it is 4 or 5 Miles in Compass, and has a Castle of a Mile in Circuit. The Town it self is strong, and stands on a high Mountain. *Thevenot* says, the Castle is so strong, that the *Turks* think no Army is able to take it. They alledge, *Tamerlane* lay 7 Years before it without Success, tho' he took all the other Towns that ever he attacked. The City is govern'd by a Basha, with a Garrison of 600 Men. The Christians have a Bishop here.

8. *Gezire*. *Tavernier* says, 'tis a little City of *Mesopotamia*, on an Island in the *Tigris*, where they have a fair Bridge of Boats. 'Tis govern'd by a Bey, and the Merchants meet there to buy Gall-Nuts, and Tobacco. The Country beyond the *Tigris*, from hence to *Tauris*, is almost equally divided into Hills and Plains: The Hills cover'd with Oaks, that bear Gall-Nuts, and the Plains planted with Tobacco. The Country looks poor, and has neither Towns nor Villages, but Houses scatter'd within Musket-shot of one another; yet he says, there is no Country in the World where more Money is laid out, nor where the People are more nice in examining its Weight and Goodness. Their Galls and Tobacco bring them a vast Trade, the former being reckoned the best of the Kind; and every House

has a Vineyard where they dry their Gaapes, for they make no Wine.

9. *Amadie*, on a high rocky Mountain, which takes an Hour to travel up. 'Tis a pretty large City, and has a great Piazza in the Middle full of Merchants Shops. 'Tis the Seat of a Bey, who is able to raise 8000 Horse, and more Foot than any of his Neighbours; his Country is so populous. Many of the Natives of *Affyria* bring their Tobacco and Gall-Nuts to be sold here. There is no Water in the City, so that the Inhabitants must fetch it from the Springs that rise half-way down the Hill.

10. *Sahana*. Betwixt this Town and *Po-lisba*, there's a rocky Mountain as high as one can see, and as steep as a Wall, which has upon it the Figures of Men clad like Priests, with Surplices, and Censers in their Hands; but the Natives know not what they mean.

11. *Dadacardin*, formerly a great City, now in Ruins, and the People about it dwell in Caves cut out of the Rocks, and sell Provisions to Travellers very cheap. There is nothing remarkable now left but a long Stone Bridge well built. The adjoining Country is a large Plain 20 Miles long, and capable of Improvement; but the Inhabitants, particularly the *Armenian* Christians, are grievously oppressed by the *Turks*.

12. *Carasara*, a large Town, formerly inhabited by Christians, as appears by the Ruins of 7 or 8 Churches at a considerable Distance from one another, their Steeples still left entire. One of those Churches has a long Gallery, and at the End of it a Door, from which there's 100 Steps, of 10 Inches thick each, down into a large Vault under the Church, supported by Pillars, and its Windows are cut thro' the Rock. On the N. Side of the same, under Ground, there are two great Cisterns, each 450 Paces long, with two large Arches, sustain'd by several Pillars. They fill them every Year with Water that falls from the Mountain. A quarter of a League from the Church, we descend the Mountain above 100 Paces together, among Rocks and Rooms cut out on each Side, with a Cross over every Door, a Bench, Table, and Bedstead, in each Room cut out of the Rock; and at the Bottom there's a Hall with a Bench round it, the Roof plain, and in the Middle

a Hole-cut up to the Top of the Mountain. These Places are now become Shelters for Robbers, who insult the Caravans. In 1638, Sultan *Amurath*, in his March this Way to besiege *Babylon*, went to see those famous Ruins, and to dislodge the Robbers. He likewise order'd the Roads to be mended, to the great Conveniency of Travellers ever since.

13. *Ousasar*, a large open Town, inhabited by *Armenian* Christians and *Nestorians*. The latter perform their Worship in *Chal-dee*. They had three great Monasteries; but the *Turks* have ruin'd two, and turn'd a 3d into a Mosque. Here *Tavernier* saw two *Chaldee* Bibles writ in Vellum, the Capital Letters being in Gold and Azure. The Priest told him one of them was 937 Years old, and the other 374. They hide them in a Chest under Ground as soon as they have done their Worship. Betwixt this Town and *Nesbin* there's a large Plain, where for the first Day's Journey the Ground is cover'd with Pimpernel, some of whose Roots are a Foot and a half in Diameter. The next Day Travellers come to Fields cover'd with a large thick Leaf, the Root of which is bulbous, and as big as an Egg. They abound likewise with Flowers of all Colours.

14. *Nesbin*, the Remains of the ancient *Nisibis*, now only a large Village, inhabited by *Nestorians* and *Armenians*. The latter have a Bishop and several Churches here, and a Chappel where they say the Brother of our Lord, St. *James* one of the Bishops of this Place, was buried.

15. *Anna*, about 4 Days Journey on this Side *Bagdat*. 'Tis a pretty large Town, built on both Sides the *Euphrates*, and upon an Island in the River there's a fair Mosque. About two Leagues round the Town there are many Gardens and Country-Houses.

16. *Mached-Raba*, 5 Days Journey from *Anna*, a Fortrefs on the Point of a Hill, at the Foot of which there is a large Fountain, very rare in those Desarts. This Place is encompassed with high Walls, defended by Towers, and within it there are Huts, where the Inhabitants keep their Cattle from Thieves. They have fine Horses here; and *Tavernier* says, he saw such a beautiful Colt in this Place, that they refus'd 3000 Crowns for it.

17. *Taiba*, 5 Days Journey from *Mached-Raba*, where the *Turks* have a Governor, who demands Toll from the Caravans and Merchants, and lives in a Fort which defends the Place.

18. *Bagdat*. *Tavernier* says, That tho' it be usually called *Babylon*, it lies at a great Distance from the Ruins of that City, on the *Persian* Side of the *Tigris*, Lat. 33. 15. *Moll* makes it 32 $\frac{1}{2}$. in Long. 63. The *Arabian* Chronicles say, it was built by *Almanzar*, one of their Caliphs, about A. C. 762. They call it in their Language, *The House of Peace*. About 40 Years before he was there, the Inhabitants digging up the Foundations of an Inn, found a Corps habited like a Bishop, with a Censer and Incense by him; and near it they discovered several Cells, which shews a Christian Monastery to have been formerly in the Place. The Walls of the City, he says, are of Brick, with large Towers like Bastions, mounted with a few sorry Cannon. The Town is about 3 Miles round, has 3 Gates on the Land-Side, and one towards the River, over which there's a Bridge of 33 Boats, about the Breadth of a Boat from one another. They have a Castle, which reaches from one of the Gates to the River, encompassed with a single Wall, and adorn'd with little Towers, on which are about 150 Cannon without Carriages. The Moat is narrow and shallow, nor have they any Draw-Bridge before the Gates. When he was there, the Garrison consisted of 900 Foot, 60 Cannoneers, and about 4000 Horse. The Governor is a *Basha*, and generally a *Vizier*. He has a fair House on the Side of the River, and has always 6 or 700 Horse under his particular Command, the rest of the Troops having their own *Aga's*. This City was taken by the *Turks* in 1638, not so much by Valour, as by a Revolt, occasioned thus: The Governor was an *Armenian*, had commanded this City a long Time, and defended it twice against the *Turks*; but the K. of *Persia* having sent a Favourite to govern in his Place, the old Governor, not being able to bear the Affront, poison'd himself, and perswaded his Wife and Son to do the like, just as the Gr. Seignior was preparing for a Storm. The Soldiers upon this refus'd to obey their new Governor, and agreed to deliver

up the City, upon Condition of marching out with Bag and Baggage; but, contrary to Agreement, the *Turks* murder'd 20000 of them in cold Blood, *Thevenot* says 50000, and that the *Turks* had 1000000 Men before it. The Civil Government is in the Hands of a *Cadi*, who acts the Part of a *Mufti*, and has a Treasurer under him for the Revenues. It has five Mosques, two of them pretty well built, and have Domes cover'd with varnish'd Tiles of several Colours. They have 10 Inns, of which only two are good. The City is ill built, and has nothing of Beauty but the Bazars, which are arch'd, and water'd 3 or 4 times a Day at the publick Charge; for the Merchants could not otherwise endure the Heat. They have a considerable Trade, but much short of what it was in the Time of the *Persians*, the *Turks* having killed most of the rich Merchants after the Siege. 'Tis much frequented by Pilgrims of the Sect of *Haly*, who they say liv'd here; and those who go to *Mecca* must pass thro' it, and pay a Duty to the *Basha*. There are two Sorts of *Mahometans* here; the greatest Part are call'd *Rafedi's* or Hereticks. They will not eat or drink with a Christian, and scarce with the other *Mahometans*; for if they happen to drink out of the same Cup, or touch them, they reckon themselves polluted, and wash immediately. When the Gr. Seignior was here in 1639, one of those Fellows, a Water-Carrier, having refus'd Water to a Jew, and given him ill Language, the *Cadi* made the Fellow drink out of the same Cup with the Jew, and ordered the *Rafedi* to be bastinado'd, telling him, That *Jews* and Christians were God's Creatures as well as *Mahometans*, which has a little cur'd those People of their Superstition. At their Funerals, especially when their Husbands die, the Wife pulls off her Head-Clothes, lets her Hair fall about her Ears, besmears her Face with Soot, and frisks about in a ridiculous Manner. The rest of the Women strive to outdo one another in Apish Tricks, beat their Faces, and then dance to the Sound of two Drums for a quarter of an Hour; after which they set up mournful Cries, and poor People go before the Corps with Banners and Crescents at the End of Sticks, singing dismal Songs all the while. Their Women must not go abroad, but to

Sepulchres on *Thursdays*, to pray for the Dead; and the married Women to Baths on *Wednesday* Mornings, to perfume themselves, because their Husbands by their Law are obliged to lie with their lawful Wives on *Thursday* or *Friday* Night. They allow them sometimes to visit their Relations, but so wrapped up, that no body can know them in the Streets. The *Persian* Women always go abroad on Horseback, and the Courtezans, to distinguish themselves from the rest, put their Feet in the Stirrop, but the others in the Stirrop-Leathers. They are richly habited after their Fashion, wear Jewels about their Necks and Wrists, and hang them like Bracelets about their Faces. The *Arabian* Women wear hollow Rings thro' the Gristle betwixt their Nostrils, and some of them so big as one may thrust one's Hand through them, and they make a Ring round their Eyes with a certain Sort of Black. The Men do the like in the Desarts, and say, it preserves their Eyes from the Heat of the Sun. Most of the Christians here are *Nestorians*, and have a Church. The *Armenians* and *Jacobites* have none, and worship with the *Capuchins*. They go in Devotion to the Chappels of *St. Elias*, *Simon* and *Jude*, who they say were martyr'd there, make great Feasts when any of them die, and pray frequently for them. This frequently obliges the Poor to sell their Children for Slaves to pay the Debt they contract by it. There are several *Jews* here, and many come every Year in Pilgrimage to the pretended Sepulchre of the Prophet *Ezekiel*, about a Day's Journey from the City. *Tavernier* reckons the Number of Inhabitants to be 15000. *Thevenot* says, there is a Suburb on the other Side the River at the End of the Bridge, which they undo every Night. The Town, he says, takes two Hours to walk round it; but there are many empty Spaces within the Walls, so that except the Bazars, which are populous, the rest looks like a Desert. The *Turkish* Troops are very licentious, and their Officers dare scarcely punish them, they are so apt to mutiny. This occasions the Grand Seignior to keep a great many Christians in Pay to defend the Town and neighbouring Country on Occasion. 'Tis so hot here, that the People sleep on their Terrasses. They burn more of the Oil of *Naphra* than Can-

dles, and have the best Sort of Carrier-Pigeons. He takes Notice of a considerable Mistake in all Maps, which place *Bagdat* a great Way below the Conflux of the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, tho' they don't join till 10 or 12 Days Journey below that City; but sometimes in the Winter, when they overflow, they join near *Bagdat*. About 8 or 9 Days Journey below this City, there is a Canal dug betwixt those two Rivers.

19. *Mosul*. *Thevenot* says, it was anciently call'd *Aasour*, and stands on the W. Side of the *Tigris*. *Moll* places it about Lat. 35. Long. 62. *Sanfon* places it in the same Lat. but Long. 81. near the Ruins of ancient *Niniveh*. It makes a great Shew without the Walls, being of rough Stone plaister'd over, with little pointed Battlements on the Top. *Thevenot* says, one may walk round it in an Hour. There's a Castle near the River almost of an oval Figure. Towards the River it is built of Free-Stone, and the Walls about 3 Fathom high. On the Land-Side it has a Ditch. The Entrance from the Town is by a Gate, thro' the middle of a square Tower, built on a strong large Arch. This Castle was built by Christians, and has a fair Church within it. 'Tis the Residence of a *Basha*. The Town is ruinous, and noted only for the great Concourse of Merchants, especially the *Arabians* and *Curds*, the Inhabitants of ancient *Assyria*, now *Curdistan*, from whence they bring great Quantities of Gall-Nuts. The Christians in it are *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Nestorians*, and *Maronites*. They had also some *Capuchins*; but the *Basha* fin'd them so much, that they were forced to leave it. There are only two sorry Inns in the Town, so that Strangers are forced to set up their Tents in the Market-Place. The *Basha* has about 3000 Horse under him. There's a Bridge of 30 Boats over the *Tigris*, on which they pass to an Isle, from whence there's a Stone Causeway to the other Shore. When the River overflows, they take down the Bridge. The Town has 5 Gates. The Heat is very excessive here, and they have excellent Melons. *Thevenot* says, an Eclipse of the Moon happen'd when he was here, and that it look'd as red as Blood. The People while it lasted beat with Kettles on their Terrasses, to frighten a huge Beast, which they fancy at that Time comes to devour the Moon.

Moon. He adds, they have a dangerous Wind in that Country call'd *Samiel*, i. e. a Poisonous Wind, supposed to be that East Wind mentioned by *Job*. It reigns during the Summer from *Mosul* to *Suratt* by Land, but not by Water, and they who breath it fall instantly dead; and if they have Time to speak, cry they burn within. They become immediately as black as a Coal; and if any one lift them, the Flesh comes off from their Bones. They say, there are Streaks of Fire as small as a Hair mix'd with it, which kill those who breath in the Streaks; but the others receive no Hurt. He supposes, those Streaks of Fire must proceed from sulphureous Exhalations which rise out of the Earth, and kindle with being toss'd in the Wind; and the Reason why 'tis not felt on the Water, is, because those inflam'd Vapours are dissipated by the Exhalations which rise from it, or by the cool Breezes. However that be, he says, the Effects of it are certain; and if it do reign from *Mosul* to *Suratt*, it must only be near the River, for there are many Places by Land where it is never felt.

He says, they have a sort of Boats call'd *Kelecks*, which they use on the *Tigris*. They have neither Peg, Nail, nor any Iron, tho' made up of as many Pieces as our Boats. They have neither Mast nor Sail, and yet sink if they want Wind; and as we pump the Water out of our Boats, they throw Water into theirs. They make them thus: They tie together with Ropes a great many *Borachio's*, i. e. Leathern Jugs of Goat-Skins blown full of Wind, of a square Figure, but longer than broad. Upon these they fasten a Hurdle of Poles together with Withies, and upon those Poles they place 4 Benches, being Bundles of Poles about half a Foot-thick, two Foot and a half from one another, and two Foot and a half high; so that round them there's a Border or Side-way two or three Foot broad. Then they lay Poles cross from one Bench to another, and upon them load the Goods, and place the Passengers. These Boats are about 4 Fathom long and 3 broad below, and 3 Fathom long and 2 broad above, and with the Loading and all about 5 or 6 Foot high. The Leathern Jugs are wet every half quarter of an Hour with a Leathern Pouch tied to the End of a Pole, to prevent their

squatting for want of Wind. They are managed by three Watermen, two of which row the Boat with Oars towards one End, and the 3d wets the Leathern Jugs. These Boats have neither Stem nor Stern, and go any Way, but commonly Side-ways. They new blow their *Borachio's* every Evening with Reeds, and they suffer no Wine to be embarked on board them; for the drinking of it being contrary to *Mahomet's* Law, they think it wou'd sink them. They are forc'd to make Use of those Boats because of the numerous blind Rocks in the River, which has also many Turnings.

Thevenot gives an Account of the following Places and remarkable Things which he saw upon this River betwixt *Mosul* and *Bagdat*: 1. Several Hills of Sulphur, where the Inhabitants dig that Mineral which they purify and melt into Canes. He supposes, the Wind *Samiel* above-mentioned has its dangerous Quality from the Vapours which rise out of those Hills, the Smell of which is very offensive to those who go by Water. 2. *Alihamam*, a Village on the *Mesopotamian* Shore, noted for many hot sulphureous Baths, much frequented by the Natives, and good against the Leprosy. They lie within a Day's Journey by Land from *Mosul*. The Villages on the Side of the River are compos'd of little Huts about two Fathom square, made up of Canes and Branches of Trees intermix'd. 3. *Asguir*, noted for a Waterfall over the Foundations of an ancient Bridge, which obliges Passengers to land, that the Boats may the more easily shoot it, and they are forced to arm themselves for fear of the Lions and *Arabs* till they embark again. 4. *Teop-Calai*, a Castle on a Hill, said to be built by *Nimrod*, who also erected that demolish'd Bridge. Here there are a great many Hills of Sulphur, very high: The Sulphur is yellow, and smells strong. Near this Place *Zarb*, a great River which comes from the Mountains of *Curdistan*, falls into the *Tigris*, and on the *Mesopotamian* Side there are Woods of Tamarisk and Liquorice. *Thevenot* says, the latter being infus'd in the Water of the Country, makes it wholesome, and prevents the excessive Sweating and Blisters which it otherwise occasions to those who drink it. 'Tis likewise proper to mix it with Sumack, a Grain like Hemp-Seed, which being pound-

ded, makes the Water very red, cooling, and wholesome; and if mix'd with a little Salt, is the more pleasant. Being put into Broth, 'tis good against the Bloody Flux.

5. *Altāndaghi*, a Hill from whence the *Arabians* dig some Gold. Near this Place begin the Mountains *Cordasī*, mention'd by *Curtius*, which are supposed to reach to the *Indies*. Near this Place the Boat-Men catch'd with a Hook a Fish 5 Foot long, as big as a Man. Its Head was above a Foot long, the Eyes 4 Inches above the Jaws, round, and about the Size of a Farthing. The Mouth of it was likewise round, and capable of holding a Man's Head. It had 4 long white Beards of Flesh, had Scales like a Carp, the Flesh white, soft, as loose as Flax, and tasted like a Tunny. The Watermen told him, it was but a young one. 6. *Tikri*, formerly a great Town, but now in Ruins. It stands upon a very high Rock, because of the overflowing of the *Tigris*, which in the Spring swells to a prodigious Height, and resembles a Sea in these Parts. 7. *Eski Bagdat*, i. e. Old Bagdat. Some of the Company went ashore here in the Afternoon, the Boat having stopped because of the high Wind; but came running on board again for fear of the Wind *Samiel*, the Air being as hot as Fire. These Parts are mightily infested by Lions, of which the *Arabs* are so little afraid, that they pursue them with Sticks in their Hands. They also saw here Caracoulacks, somewhat bigger than Cats, and much of the same Shape, with black Ears half a Foot long. They and the Chacales, which are as big as Foxes, and seem to be of a middle Kind betwixt them and Wolves, find out Prey for the Lions, and call them with shrill Voices. They make a terrible Howling by Night, carry off every Thing they can find; and the Watermen told *Thevenot*, that the Lions have many times snatched Men out of their Boats by Surprise; for when they swim, they are all under Water but their Noses. This obliged the Company to keep Firing constantly when they came near those Places where the Lions haunt. 8. *Mendeli*, the farthest Town which the *Turks* have on that Side towards the Frontier of *Persia*. 'Tis a small Town, surrounded with a great Number of Palm-Trees, and has a Castle with some Towers, but all built of Mud. The

Road betwixt *Bagdat* and this Place is very good in the Summer, but much infested by Robbers.

The Kingdom of BASSORA.

Thevenot says, it is a Kingdom or Bassa-ship, which has *Arabia Deserta* on the W. *Arabia Felix* on the S. and *Persia* on the E. Some call it *Terack* or *Hierack-Arabi*.

The chief Places are, 1. *Bassora*, *Balsora*, *Bazra*, or *Bozra*, two Days Journey below the Conflux of the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*. *Moll* places it Lat. 30. Long. 66. *Thevenot* says, the Needle declines here about 13 Deg. and a half from N. to W. He makes it but two Days Journey from *Bagdat* by Land; but the great Barks that come by Water take usually 15 or 16 Days, because of the Turnings of the River, and the Difficulty of the Passage, and take from 50 to 80 Days upwards against the Stream, because they are only drawn by Men. The City is encompassed with Earthen Walls, about 6 Hours March in Circuit; but contain a great deal of empty Ground. It has only two Gates, one of which leads to *Bagdat*. He adds, the Situation is so advantageous, that it might be made one of the richest and loveliest Cities of the World, for Gardens might be made along the Canal, which is brought from the River thro' the Town, and the Land about it seems to be very fertile, being twice a Day moisten'd by the Tide, which runs 4 Days Journey and a half above it, and rises a Fathom and a half at the Town, where it is not salt, tho' they say the Soil is; and that if they dig two Fathom deep, they find salt Water in some Places. There are more Palm-Trees in the adjacent Country than any where of its Dimensions in the World. They have likewise Plenty of Pot-Herbs, Wall-Fruits, Grapes, Melons, Pomegranates, and Lemons; but none of them keep long, because the S. E. Wind, which reigns at that Season, is moist and hot. The Harbour is good and safe, and capable of the greatest Ships. It lies about 12 Leagues from the Sea, and conveniently for Commerce with most of the habitable Places of the World. *European* Goods are easily transported hither from *Aleppo* to *Bir* on the

Euphrates;

Euphrates; those of *Persia* by the Ports of *Comron* and *Gongo*, and those of *India* and *Arabia* by the Gulph of *Persia*. It is pretty much frequented by Ships with *Indian* Commodities since the Destruction of *Ormus*; but they must observe the proper Winds or Monsons for going out or coming in. There are several good publick Places in the Town, and among others a great Market-Place before the *Basha's* Palace; and they have many large Bazars. They are govern'd by a *Basha*, who has a Palace here, and 12 Culverins mounted before it in the great Market-place. The City in general is ill built. Great Quantities of Dates are transported hence to the *Indies*, and a great deal of ready Money; and during the 4 Months of the Monson, the Town is crowded with Foreign Merchants. In *July*, *August*, and *September*, the Heat is almost insupportable, especially with a S. E. Wind; so that the People then lie upon their Terrasses. *Tavernier* says, That in *July*, 1665, 4000 People died there by the Wind *Samiel* in 3 Weeks Time. During the hot Season, they have Water every Minute at their Mouths; but he says, their Water is not wholesome, because they do not keep the Canal clean. Tho' they have Plenty of Grapes, they are not allow'd to make any Wine or Brandy. During the hot Months, they are troubled with Swellings, which resemble Plague-Sores. 'Tis ascribed to their eating so many Dates, but few die of them. From the End of *October* till *January* 'tis very cold in the Evenings and Mornings. There's a large Castle upon the River at the End of the Canal. *Tavernier* says, while he was there, there flew by such prodigious Numbers of Locusts, that afar off they appear'd like a Cloud, and darken'd the Air. They pass by this Town 4 or 5 times a Year, and are carried by Winds into the Desert, where they die; and if it were not so, he says nothing could live in some Parts of *Chaldea*. He adds, that the Canal from the City to the *Euphrates* is half a League long, bears Vessels of 150 Tuns, and has a Fort at the Mouth which commands it. He says, the Sea is 15 Leagues from the Town, and the Tide flows up as far above it. The Country is so low, that were it not for a strong Dam of Free-Stone that runs along the Sea-Shore

for a League, it would overflow the Country. *Balsora* above 100 Years ago belong'd to the *Arabians* of the Desert, and then had no Commerce with other Nations. The *Turks* took it from the *Arabians*, and govern it by a *Basha*, who is in a manner hereditary, for he always takes Care to obtain the Reversion for his Son by Presents. He lives in little Dependance upon the Port, to whom he pays only 1000 Piasters per Annum, besides Presents to the chief Courtiers; and if at any Time he be disobedient, the neighbouring *Bashas* arm against him. He has Power of making Leagues with Foreign Nations, and there is so much Liberty and good Order preserv'd in the City, that one may walk the Streets all Night without Molestation. The Customs paid here are about 4 per Cent. The Revenue of the Prince arises from Horses, Camels, Customs, and Date-Trees; but the last is his chief Wealth, his Country for 30 Leagues together being cover'd with them, and for every Tree he has about 9 d. The Inhabitants breed them by digging Holes in the Ground, wherein they heap a great Quantity of Date-Nuts in Form of a Pyramid, the Top of which ends in a single Nut; which being cover'd with Earth, produces a Palm-Tree. They say, those Trees are Male and Female, and that the latter will bear no Fruit unless the Male be planted near it. Others say, that except they take a Flower from the Male when in Blossom, and put it into the Heart of the Female, a little above the Stem, the Fruit will fall off before it come to Maturity. *Thevenot* says, the Estate of this *Basha* is very considerable, for he has on the Side of *Persia* all the Country of *Gabam*; and on the Side of *Bagdat* he has the Island formed by the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, with the Castle of *Corneo*, which commands the Passage of both; and this Island is fertile and well Peopled. He has also the Towns of *El-Catif* and *Lechsa* in *Arabia Felix*. His Revenue is about 800000 Piasters per Annum; and *Tavernier* says, he may lay up Three Millions of Livres every Year. He has a great deal of Money for guarding the *Persian* Pilgrims to and from *Meccha*. The Christians here are *Jacobites*, *Nestorians*, and those of *St. John*, who are most numerous, and also call'd *Sabaens*; but *Thevenot* says, they are more Heathens.

Heathens than Christians, and their Religion seems to be a Compound of Christianity, *Mahometanism*, *Jewism*, and *Gentilism*. They call themselves Christians of *St. John*, from *John the Baptist*, and pretend to derive their Religion from him. They retain Baptism in Memory of his baptizing our Saviour, and perform it thus: They go on *Sundays* with one of their Ministers to the Side of a River, for they hold no Baptism to be good but in running Water, and therefore always live near Rivers. The Priest pronounces these Words over the Child; *In the Name of the ancient mighty Lord God, who knows all that we do before the Light of the World*; or, *In the Name of the Lord, first and last of the World, and of Paradise, the high Creator of all Things*. He repeats this three times, and sprinkles the Child's Head as often with Water; after which, he who holds the Child dips it three times into the River. This Ceremony is renew'd every Year, when at a Festival, which is continued 5 Days, every Person, young and old, are again rebaptiz'd; and at Marriage, the Bride and Bridegroom are always baptiz'd. At the Sacrament of the Supper, they do not pronounce the Words of Consecration, but only some Prayers, and make use of Bread made with Wine and Oil. Their Wine is what comes from dry'd Grapes steep'd in Water, and then pressed. They have nothing of Confirmation, Extreme Unction, or Penance. They have Bishops and Priests, who are allow'd to marry, and succeeded by their Sons when they die; or if they have none, by the next Kinsman. The Bishop at the Ordination of a Priest is obliged to pray and fast 6 Days, and the Priests the like. Their Clergy wear their Hair long, and a little Cross wrought with a Needle, and must marry none but reputed Virgins. At Weddings, the Bridegroom and Persons invited go to the House where the Bride lives. She is set under a Canopy. The Bishop examines her upon Oath, whether she be a Virgin, and after that sends his Wife and some other grave Women to inspect her, and the Bishop's Wife makes Oath according as she finds it. If she swears she is a Virgin, they go to a River, where the Bishop rebaptizes the Bride and Bridegroom. When they return to the House, the Company stops at some

Distance, and the Bridegroom leads the Bride to it 7 times, the Bishop always following, and saying some Prayers. After that, the new-married Couple sit under the Canopy with their Shoulders against one another, when the Bishop reads something, and makes them lay their Heads three times together. Then he looks into his Divination-Book, to find the luckiest Day for consummating the Marriage, and tells them of it. If the Bishop's Wife don't swear the Bride is a Virgin, the Bishop proceeds no further; but if the Man will have her notwithstanding, he must get a Priest to perform the Ceremony, which is reckon'd a great Dishonour; and the Priest unwillingly performs it, merely to prevent their turning *Mahometans*, which they do sometimes in Spight, when the young Women pretend they are unjustly dealt with. All their Worship consists in some Prayers, for they know nothing of the Gospel, nor of the Trinity. They hold Jesus Christ to be the Spirit and Word of the Father, but inferior to *John the Baptist*; That the Angel *Gabriel* is the Son of God, begotten upon Light; and that Christ became Man to save us from Punishment, and was conceiv'd of a Virgin by Means of the Water of a certain Fountain. They hold he was crucified by the *Jews*; that he rose the third Day, and his Soul ascended to Heaven; but he left his Body on Earth, which they say was not really crucified, and that he deluded the *Jews* with his Shadow. They say, the Angel *Gabriel* created the World, taught *Adam* all necessary Sciences, and made the 7 lower Spheres all of Metal within one another, except the Earth. They hold, That over every one of those Spheres there is Water; That the Sun and Moon swim in Ships guided by a great Number of Servants; That the Masts of those Ships are Crosses, from whence they receive their Light; and that an Angel goes in a Bark to see that they move right. For the Life to come, they hold, That the Souls of the Good and Bad go through a narrow Way, guarded by Lions, Serpents, &c. who devour the Wicked; but the Good get thro' them to Paradise, which they hold to consist of sensual Pleasures, like the *Turks*. They eat no Meat but what is killed and consecrated by their Priests, with abundance

dance of ridiculous Ceremonies. They will not eat or drink with any but those of their own Way, for fear of being defiled, and break their Vessels if others make Use of them. They abhor the Blue Colour, because the *Jews* (they say) threw Indigo into *Jordan* to hinder the Baptism of Christ; but that the Angels brought Water from *Jordan* to baptize him before it was polluted. They hold, That *Mahomet* and all the *Turks* will be damned, and that all themselves shall be saved. This occasioned the *Turks* to treat them cruelly, so that they retired to the Dominions of *Persia*. They are about 25000 Families in all, some of them Merchants, but most of them Mechanics, especially Goldsmiths, and few of them rich. The Curious may find more of their foolish Opinions in *Thevenot* and *Tavernier*.

The latter gives an Account, That the Inhabitants of these Countries transport Passengers and Goods over the *Euphrates* and *Tigris* thus: They have Killets or Boats as above-mentioned, which they haul 4 or 500 Paces higher than the Place they intend to land at on the other Side, and then row down the Stream, steering to the Place where they design to land, and a Parcel of naked People with Goat-Skins blow'd under their Stomachs swim the Rivers upon the Horses, Mules, &c. that are to carry the Goods by Land; and if any of them be weak, put a Bladder under their Bellies, and thus they cross the Rivers, he that rides upon the hindmost taking hold of the Beast's Tail that swims before. About 4 Hours Sail below *Niniveh*, there's a huge Dam of 200 Foot wide in the *Tigris*, which makes a Fall of above 20 Fathoms high. Some say, it was made by *Alexander the Great*, to turn the Course of the River, and others by *Darius*, to hinder the *Macedonians* from sailing up it. Merchants unlade their Goods before they come to this Dam, and embark them again below it, while the Natives pass the Dam with their Killets, and tie themselves and their Oars fast to a Perch bent like a Semicircle, and thus fall down above 120 Foot without any Damage, the Killets being kept from sinking by their Leathern Jugs. The Natives use to cross the River, with a Borachio under their Stomachs, and another upon their Heads,

which holds the Commodities they sell to the Caravans for Tobacco, Bisket, or Pepper, for they will take no Money. About 4 Days Journey below *Niniveh*, a River called *Altam-Sou*, or the River of Gold, which comes from the Mountains of *Media*, falls into the *Tigris*, upon the Banks of which there are many bituminous Springs, and others of hot Water, that smell of Sulphur.

Tavernier, in his Account of the Road from *Niniveh* to *Ispahan*, takes Notice of a considerable River called *Zarbe*, which falls into the *Tigris*, and that he passed it on a Stone Bridge of 9 Arches, which they say was built by *Alexander the Great*. Beyond this Bridge there's a Town called *Sherazoul*, built on a rising Ground, and defended with 3 Redoubts. The Houses are all cut out of a steep Rock, to which one must go up by Stairs of 15 or 20 Steps. Their Doors are thin round Stones like Mill-Stones, which they rowl away when they go in or out, the Sides of the Wall being cut so as to receive them. This Town, he says, is about a quarter of a League long, and they have Caves for keeping their Cattle from the *Arabs*. A *Turkish* *Basha* resides here, who must be paid to let the Caravans pass. The 2d Day's Journey from hence lie the Plains of *Arbela*, where *Alexander* obtain'd his last Victory over *Darius*. The Plain is about 15 Leagues long, very pleasant, well water'd, and stor'd with Fruit-Trees. In the Middle of it there's a little Hill about half a League in Circuit, and on the Top of it the Ruins of a sumptuous Castle, where *Darius* stay'd during the Battle, say the Natives. This Hill is cover'd with fair Oaks. Three Leagues further to the N. are the Ruins of a Castle and other Houses, where they say *Darius* secur'd some of his Wives after his Rout. It stands in a lovely Place, and from a Mountain near it there rises a Spring, which in a quarter of a League forms a navigable River. In five Days Journey this Way from *Niniveh*, *Turkey* is separated from *Persia* by Fens and hot Springs, and a high Mountain cover'd with Oaks, that bear Gall-Nuts and Acorns upon the same Branch. Of the latter the poor People make Bread. Having thus finished our Account of the Empire of the *Turks* in *Asia*, where they had their Rise,

it remains to give a brief Account of their Origine, History, and Customs.

The Origine of the T U R K S.

AUthors differ very much in this Point. *Buno* on *Cluverius* derives them from *Togarma*, *Noah's* Great Grandson, *Gen* 10. 3. and places them betwixt the *Palus Maotis* and the *Caspian* Sea, N. of Mount *Caucasus*, from whence, with other Nations, they invaded *Albania*, *Iberia*, *Colchis*, and *Armenia*. This he thinks agrees with *Pliny*, *Mela*, and *Herodotus*, who all place the *Turks* a *Sarmatian* Nation, about the *Palus Maotis* and the River *Tanais*; and he is of Opinion, that *Ezekiel's* *Gog* and *Magog*, mentioned *Cap.* 38, and 39. must be meant of those People. *Ben. Gorion* is of the same Mind, and places them about the *Volga*; but *Bochart* thinks the Posterity of *Togarma* settled in *Galatia* and *Cappadocia*, and agrees better with what *Ezekiel* says *Cap.* 27. 14. They of the House of *Togarma* traded in the Fairs of *Tyre* with Horses, Horsemen, and Mules; whereas the Climate of *Scythia* was too cold for As-
ses and Mules. The Oriental Authors, who are drown'd in Fables, as may be seen by *Herbelot's* Dictionary, derive them from *Turk*, whom they call *Japhet's* eldest Son, and say, his Father made him Prince of *Targuistan*; but whatever be their Origine, most Authors agree, that they were first known by the Name of *Turcae* about the *Palus Maotis*, and were not much taken Notice of till the Time of *Tiberius II.* about A. C. 577, when they drove the *Avars* their Neighbours out of their Country, and forc'd them into *Pannonia* in Europe. In the Time of the Emperor *Heraclius*, they are mentioned with other barbarous Nations at the Siege of *Constantinople* in 619, but under Command of the *Persians*; after which they began to set up for themselves, and about 763 invaded *Albania*, and the other Countries betwixt the *Caspian* and *Euxine*, which they plunder'd, and return'd Home. About 844, they invaded those Countries again, and possess'd themselves of *Armenia Major*, which they call *Turcomania*. Here they lived in a wandering Manner like the *Arabs*, and made no great Figure, till *Mahomet* the Sultan of *Persia* rebelling against the Caliph

of *Babylon*, call'd them to his Assistance, and by their Means obtain'd a signal Victory. After this, the *Turks* desired the Rewards he promis'd them, and Leave to go Home; but *Mahomet*, unwilling to spare them, refus'd both, and shut up the Passes of the *Araxes*, which he had open'd to 'em, in order to prevent their Return. The *Turks*, provok'd by this unkind Usage, mutinied, and under the Conduct of their Leader *Tangrolipix* plunder'd the Country, where being join'd by Multitudes of needy People and discontented Soldiers, they fought, defeated, and kill'd the Sultan; whose Army being dissatisfied with his Conduct, they agreed with the *Turks* to make *Tangrolipix* Sultan of *Persia* about 1030.

The *Turks* at this Time were divided into two chief Tribes, with others subordinate. The chief were the *Selzuccian* and *Oguzian*. Of the first, *Tangrolipix* was the chief, and under him were *Cutlummofes*, *Melech*, and *Ducat*, of whom we shall not repeat what we said concerning the *Turkish* Kings in *Asia Minor*, P. 61, &c. and 112, of this Volume, where the Reader may find an Account of them, but shall only take Notice, that the Line of *Tangrolipix*, and of the Chiefs of the subordinate Tribes of that Family, being worn out, the *Oguzian* Family, the chief of the other Tribe, became the most noted among the *Turks*. *Solyman*, the chief of this Family, being drove out of *Persia* by the *Tartars*, was drown'd as he fled over the *Euphrates*; and his Son *Ethrogul* having obtain'd a Settlement from the other Family in *Bithynia*, laid the Foundation of the present *Turkish* Empire as follows:

The Kings of the Turks of the Oguzian or Ottoman Family.

A. D. I. **O**ttoman or *Osman*, the Son of *Ethrogul*, who died about 1300. was saluted with the Title of Governor of the *Oguzian* *Turks*, and soon after with that of the Lord *Osman*. He spoil'd the Castles of *Chalce* and *Einigiol*, and put all the Christians there to the Sword: But the latter privately studied a Revenge, particularly at the Marriage of one *Mich. Cossi's* Daughter, where *Ottoman* making richer Presents than the Christians, these so far
envied

envied him, as to contrive his Death, which was to have been executed by the Captain of *Bilezuga*, who purposely invited him to the Nuptials of his own Daughter: But *Ottoman* being informed of the Treachery, resolved upon this Counter-Plot; He sent Word he would be with him at the Time appointed, and desired Leave, because he was at War with Prince *Germean Oglı*, to send some of his best Moveables to the Castle, pretending withal, that he design'd to bring his Mother-in-Law, his Wife, and their Retinue, with him to the Wedding. But instead of rich Moveables, he pack'd up arm'd Men, and sent them by Twilight to the Castle; then he himself, with some of his best Soldiers in the Disguise of his Wife, Mother-in-Law, &c. went thither, and at his Arrival he desired his Women might be sent to the Castle for Convenience of Lodging and Privacy; which done, those in the Packs, and these in Disguise, suddenly kill'd the Guard, and seiz'd the Castle. *Ottoman*, who was with the Captain, guessing the Time when this was done, made towards the Castle. The Captain pursuing him, was slain, and his Men put to Flight. *Ottoman* afterwards took and spoil'd the rich City of *Nice*; and the chief Sultan dying *A. D. 1300*, we must from thence date the Beginning of the great *Turkish* Empire under *Ottoman*, who was advanc'd in his stead. The neighbouring Christians, especially of *Mysia* and *Bithynia*, fearing he might become an Over-Match for them, rais'd all the Force they could, and invaded his Dominions: But he totally routed them, fell upon the neighbouring Countries, and subdued the greatest Part of *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, and *Bithynia*, with other Regions, as far as the *Euxine* Sea. At length, growing old, he left the Affairs of War to his Son *Orchanes*, whom he liv'd to see perform many great Exploits. He died in 1328, the 28th Year of his Reign, and the 69th of his Age. His Tomb is at *Prusa*, in an old Monastery of the Castle. There is another Monument of his at *Sugata*, near the Sepulchre of his Father, which has given Occasion to think he was buried there. He was a wise, valiant, and fortunate Prince, but full of Dissimulation and Ambition, was very liberal, especially to his Soldiery and the Poor, whom he often fed and

cloath'd with his own Hands. Of a poor Lordship, he left a large Kingdom, having conquer'd a great Part of *Asia Minor*; and from him the *Turkish* Emperors are call'd *Ottomans*, as being lineally descended from him.

A. D. 1328. II. Orchanes, upon his Death, was peaceably set upon the Throne, during which the Christian Princes recover'd *Nice*, and several other Castles, particularly that of *Tzurichiser* upon the *Sangarius*; but *Orchanes* sent several Soldiers disguis'd as Merchants to the Place, who slew the Garrison. Having almost starved *Nice* by a long Blockade, he defeated *Andronicus* the Emperor who came to its Succour, and then seiz'd several Maritime Towns of *Bithynia*, took *Nice* by a Stratagem, conquer'd *Candara*, with Part of *Phrygia* and *Paphlagonia*, and the Country of *Carasina*. He was the first that got Footing in *Europe*, where seizing the Castle of *Zemenick* on this Side the *Hellepont* with a small Party, and having burnt all the Shipping of the Christians lest they should interrupt his Passage, he transported 2000 well disciplin'd Soldiers, who soon master'd the Castle of *Maito*, and put a Garrison into it; after which, the *Turks* came over in great Numbers to dwell in the *Chersonesus*; and by the Supineness of the *Greeks*, they made such a formidable Head, that they beat the Governor of *Galipolis*, and then took the City. He died in the 80th Year of his Age, and the 31st of his Reign, *A. D. 1359*. He was a wise and liberal Prince, and went beyond his Father in devising Engines of War. He was also very exact in the Administration of Justice, but a mortal Enemy to the Christians.

A. D. 1350. III. Amurath I. the younger Son of *Orchanes*, succeeded. He took many Places in *Romania*, with *Adrianople*, &c. and defeated the Christians of *Servia* and *Bulgaria* with a terrible Slaughter. He married *Bajazet* his Son to *Halun*, the Daughter of *Germean Oglı*, a great *Mahometan* Pr in *Asia*, who gave her in Portion divers Cities and Territories, particularly *Cathaie*. *Amurath* leaving the Government of his Dominions in *Asia* to his Son *Bajazet*, marched into *Europe*, where he extended his Conquests to the Confines of *Macedonia*. In the mean time, *Aladine* King of *Carmania*, his Son-in-Law, invaded his Territories in *Asia*; but *Amurath* marched

marched against him from *Europe*, routed him in the Plains of *Carmania*, and forc'd him to fly to *Iconium*, where he was so close besieg'd, that he sent his Wife to her Father to intercede for him, was pardon'd, and restor'd to his Dominions. This Victory forced the *Mahometan* Princes of the *Selzuccian* Family in *Asia* to submit to *Amurath*. While this was doing, the Despot of *Servia* confederated with the K. of *Bosnia*, who laid divers Ambushes for the *Turks*, made a great Slaughter of them, and took a vast Booty from them. Upon this, *Amurath* rais'd an Army, subdued *Bulgaria*, and forced the Prince of the Country to deliver up his Capital City, on Conditions which were not performed by the Prince; upon which *Amurath* order'd his Basha to ravage all the Country with Fire and Sword, which struck such a Terror into the People, that many Places were voluntarily yielded, and the Prince forced again to humble himself for Pardon, which was granted. *Amurath* being now intent upon the Conquest of *Servia*, the Despot of the Country, with the Assistance of several Christian Princes, rais'd a great Army to oppose him; and the Armies joining Battle in the Fields of *Cassovia*, the *Turks* defeated the Christians; but *Amurath* was kill'd by a Christian Soldier, one of the wounded Men, who drawing near the Sultan; as if he wanted the Honour to kiss his Feet; suddenly stabbed him in the Belly, which occasions the *Turkish* Custom ever since, That when any Ambassador or Stranger comes to kiss the Sultan's Hand, or approach his Person, to lead 'em by the Arms between two of the great Courtiers. *Amurath* was more superstitious than his Predecessors, a Prince of great Courage and Success, and who mightily enlarg'd his Kingdom in *Asia* by Sword, Marriage, and Purchase. He was liberal and severe, of few Words, and a deep Dissembler. He was slain in 1390; in the 68th Year of his Age; but Authors differ in this. He was interred at *Bursa*; and there is a Castle with a Tomb erected to his Memory in the Plains of *Cassovia*.

A.D. 1373. IV. *Bajazet* or *Baiafit*, immediately after his Father's Death, strangled his Brother, which afterwards became a State Custom among the *Turks*. In the first Year of his Reign he took *Cratova* in *Ser-*

via, and, contrary to Capitulation, murder'd all the Christians there. He ravag'd *Theffaly*, *Valachia*, and *Bosnia*. He enlarg'd his Conquests in *Asia Minor*, and forc'd the Vaywod of *Valachia* in *Europe* to become his Tributary. He afterwards defeated the Christians at *Nicopolis* under *Sigismund* King of *Hungary*, who came to relieve *Constantinople*, then besieg'd by the *Turks*. This Victory cost *Bajazet* dear, for he lost 60000 Men in the Action; whereas the Christians lost but 20000. *Bajazet* return'd to the Siege, but was forced to raise it, upon the News that *Tamerlane* was marching against him, by whom he was defeated, taken, and imprison'd in an Iron Cage; and to punish him for his Barbarity and Pride, *Tamerlane* made use of him as a Footstool every Time he mounted on Horseback; for Grief of which, *Bajazet* knocked out his own Brains against the Cage about the Year 1399, and the 26th of his Reign.

A.D. 1402. V. *Solyman*, his eldest Son, succeeded to his Dominions in *Europe*, and marched to recover those in *Asia* from his younger Brother *Mahomet*, who had usurp'd them, but soon obliged to return against *Musa* his 3d Brother, who during his Absence had usurp'd his Dominions in *Europe*, defeated and kill'd *Solyman* in Battle, and succeeded him for a Time at *Adrianople*, *Solyman's* Army having revolted because of his Cruelty and Luxury. Some say, he was kill'd a Hunting; and others, that he was strangled by his Brother's Order. Authors differ likewise as to the Time.

A.D. 1404. VI. *Mahomet*, youngest Son to *Bajazet*, first wrested from his Brother *Bajazet's* 2d Son what he possessed in *Asia Minor*, assum'd the Title of Sultan, and recover'd what his Father had lost from the *Tartars*. Then he came into *Europe* to fight against his Brother *Musa*, whom he made use of against his other Brother *Solyman*. *Musa* defeated him at first; but *Mahomet* being assisted by *Emanuel* Emperor of *Constantinople*, and *Musa* being hated by his own People for his Cruelty, many of them revolted; so that *Musa* was defeated and strangled by *Mahomet's* Order. Thus *Mahomet* united the *Turkish* Dominions in his own Person, and enlarg'd them by the absolute Conquest of *Dacia*, *Macedonia*, and Part of *Sclavonia*. He died in the 17th Year of his Reign. Here the

the *Turkish History* is very confus'd ; for the *Atlas Historique* makes *Amurath I.* Successor to *Solyman I.* who he says died in 1349 ; and that *Amurath*, by the Help of the *Genoese Ships*, conquer'd *Greece* in 1360. To *Amurath* he makes *Bajazet* succeed in 1404, after having strangled his elder Brother. To him he makes *Izazebel* or *Joshua* Successor, and says, he took *Bursa* in 1406. He was strangled by *Musulman* his Brother in 1409. He by his Brother *Moses* in 1413 ; he by his Brother *Mahomet* in 1416 ; and he by his Brother *Amurath* in 1421.

This was *Amurath II.* who subdu'd *Achaia*, *Theffaly*, *Epirus*, and much of *Hungary*, and would probably have made a far greater Progress, had not the Course of his Arms been stopped by the brave *Scanderbeg* and *Hunniades*. It was he who defeated the Christians at the Battle of *Varna* in *Hungary*, after appealing to Christ, and holding up the League which the Christians had broke. He died in the Siege of *Troy*, *Scanderbeg's* Capital, in the 34th Year of his Reign.

A. D. 1450. VIII. His Son *Mahomet II.* surnamed *The Great*, succeeded. He is reckoned the first of the *Ottoman* Emperors, having conquer'd the two Empires of *Constantinople* and *Trapezonde*, 12 Kingdoms, and 200 Cities. He was bred a Christian in his Youth by his Mother, who was Daughter to the Despot of *Servia*, from which it was hop'd he would declare himself a Christian ; but instead of that, he behav'd himself like an Atheist, and valu'd no Religion at all. He murder'd his Brother, enlarg'd his Dominions in *Europe*, but was stopped in his Career by the great *Scanderbeg* ; after whose Death, he subdu'd his Dominions, and was successful against the *Venetians*. He was so brutishly cruel, that he murder'd *Irene*, a beautiful *Greek* Captive Lady, on whom he doated, before his Grandees, because he understood they reflected on him for giving himself to his Amours, and neglecting the Affairs of his Empire. He died in the 30th or 31st of his Reign.

A. D. 1481. IX. His eldest Son *Bajazet II.* succeeded. Some of the *Bashaws* set up his own Son *Corcucus* against him ; but he quickly resign'd to his Father. Others set up his younger Brother *Zemes*, whom he defeated. The *Atlas Historique* makes this *Bajazet* the youngest Son of *Mahomet*. He subdu'd *Ca-*

ramania, Part of *Armenia*, and drove the *Venetians* from *Rhea* and *Dalmatia*. He poison'd his own second Son *Mahomet*, and was obliged to resign to his youngest Son *Selymus* by the Revolt of the Army, tho' he design'd rather to have done it to his elder Son *Achomates*, who had also taken Arms to obtain it. *Bajazet* was poison'd by Order of his Son *Selymus*, in the 31st Year of his Reign.

A. D. 1512. X. *Selymus I.* succeeded his Father ; and to secure his Succession, murder'd his two Brothers, and 7 of his Nephews. He defeated the *Persians* and the Sultan of *Egypt*, where he broke the Power of the *Mamelucks* : After which, all *Egypt* submitted to him. He died in the 7th or 8th Year of his Reign near the Town of *Chiurli*, where he design'd to have murder'd his own Father *Bajazet*. He left bloody Precepts to his Son.

A. D. 1520. XI. *Solyman II.* call'd *The Magnificent*, succeeded his Father, whose Cruelty he dreaded, having narrowly escap'd being poison'd by him. He enlarg'd the Pay of the *Janizaries* to obtain their Favour, was the greatest Prince that ever the *Turks* had, took *Rhodes*, *Belgrade*, *Buda*, and a great Part of *Hungary*, and made himself Master of *Babylon*, *Affyria*, and *Mesopotamia*. He miscarried however in the Siege of *Vienna*, and died in the 46th Year of his Reign at *Five Churches* in *Hungary*.

A. D. 1567. XII. His Son *Selymus II.* succeeded. He made Peace with the Emperor of the *Persians*, took *Cyprus* from the *Venetians*, and *Tunis* and *Algiers* from the *Moors*. In his Time *Don John* of *Austria* defeated the *Turkish* Fleet in the Bay of *Lepanto*. *Selymus* died in the 51st Year of his Age, and the 9th of his Reign, leaving the Character behind him of a Prince wholly addicted to Wine and Women.

A. D. 1575. XIII. His Son *Amurath III.* succeeded. He was a capricious and cruel Prince, murder'd 5 of his Brethren, and two of his Father's Concubines, because they were said to be with Child. He took *Armenia*, *Media*, and the City of *Tauris*, from the *Persians*, after defeating them in Battle ; but was routed by them frequently afterwards. He took several Places in *Hungary* and *Croatia*, though often defeated by the *Hungarians*, and died in the 52d Year of his

his Age, and 19th of his Reign, in great Agony of Body, and Mind, his Janizaries being at that Time very insolent and mutinous.

A. D. 1595. XIV. *Mahomet III.* one of his younger Sons, succeeded. He murder'd his Brethren, who some say were 19, others 21, and 10 of his Father's Wives and Concubines, for fear they should be with Child. He narrowly escap'd the Tumults of the Janizaries, was defeated in many Battles by the Emperor and other Confederate Christians; but obtain'd a great Victory over them at *Karesta*, in which Battle he was so terrified, that he never durst take the Field again. He was forc'd to sue for Peace to his rebellious Subjects in *Asia*, which, by his Concessions, he obtain'd; but many of his Officers being dissatisfied with that dishonourable Treaty, and at his preferring some of the Rebels, they conspired to set up his Son in his stead; but he discover'd the Plot, caus'd 50 of the Conspirators to be put to Death, order'd *Mahomet*, his eldest Son, to be strangled before his Face, upon Suspicion that he was in the Plot; but afterwards found him guiltless, caus'd his Body to be buried in his own Sepulchre, and hang'd the *Basha* that misinform'd him. He died at *Constantinople*, aged 44, in the 8th or 9th Year of his Reign. He was a Man of a mean Spirit, exceeding proud and voluptuous, and every Way unfit for Government. He left 4 Sons and 3 Daughters.

A. D. 1603. XV. *Achmet*, his 2d Son, succeeded. He condemn'd his Brother *Mustapha* to perpetual Imprisonment; and that he might enjoy his Pleasures, made Peace with the Emperor of *Germany*, and a League with the *Dutch*. He quelled the rebellious *Basha* of *Aleppo*, but gave him his Pardon, restor'd him to his Favour, and died in the 30th Year of his Age, after he had reign'd 13, some say 15 Years.

A. D. 1618. XVI. *Mustapha*, his Brother, succeeded, being kept alive contrary to the Practice of the *Turks*, because *Achmet* being but 15 Years old at his Accession to the Throne, it was not thought fit to put him to Death, lest the young Emperor should die Childless, which might probably involve the Empire in Confusion. When *Achmet* came to have Children of his own,

he resolv'd to dispatch him; but they say, he was deterred from it by Apparitions and fearful Dreams; and that one Time he was seized with a sudden Pain in his Arm as he was going to shoot him. During *Achmet's* last Sickness, he was sent for by him, and declar'd his Successor. He prov'd a very dull Prince, and reign'd not much above a Year, when he was depos'd, and *Osman* set up in his stead. He was enthron'd twice after that, and as often depos'd.

A. D. 1618. XVII. *Osman* or *Ottoman II.* succeeded his Uncle *Mustapha* when but 12 Years old. He was a Man of great Courage, but little Success, especially in his War with *Poland*; during which, he was strangled in an Uproar by the Janizaries, after he had reign'd about 4 Years.

A. D. 1623. XVIII. *Amurath IV.* or *Morath*, Brother to *Osman*. He succeeded when about 14 Years of Age on the 2d Deposition of *Mustapha*. In September 1631, he was suddenly awak'd by a terrible Lightning, which burnt Part of his Shirt, and terrified him so, that he fell into a Swoon, and had his Brain disturbed. He was so affected with this Accident, that he dismissed many of his Buffoons, abstain'd for some Time from Wine, gave 5000 Dollars to the Poor, order'd a Corban of 300 Sheep, and went solemnly to the Mosque to return God Thanks for his Preservation. As he advanc'd in Years, he grew severe and cruel, hang'd a *Venetian* Merchant, and seiz'd the Goods of all the other Christian Merchants. He march'd with a strong Army against the *Persians*; during which, he shew'd a singular Example of Frugality and Patience to his Soldiers, for he often marched on Foot in the greatest Heat, was very temperate in his Diet, tho' naturally luxurious, us'd no Pillow for several Months but his Saddle, nor any Covering but his Horse Cloths. He took *Babylon*, and after great Ravages in the Territories of the *Persians* made Peace with them. He strangled his Brothers *Orchan* and *Bajazet*, and his Uncle *Mustapha*. He left no Son, hated his Kindred, and wish'd that the Empire might after his Death devolve to the *Tartars*. He maintain'd Spies in all Corners of the City, and would go up and down in Disguise to hear what People said of his Government. He was a great Dissembler, active, revengeful, and extream-

extremely covetous, but otherwise a stout Prince, and applied himself to revive the ancient Discipline. He died of a Debauch in the 17th Year of his Reign, and 31st of his Age.

A. D. 1640. XIX. *Ibrahim*, after he had suffer'd 4 Years close Imprisonment, in Expectation of Death, was call'd to the Throne, which he so little expected, that when the Courtiers came to release and compliment him, he thought it was only a Trick of his Brother to cut him off. Therefore he barred the Prison Doors, and deny'd them Entrance, till *Amurath's* dead Corps was shew'd him. *Ibrahim* having active and prudent Ministers, left the Government to them, and follow'd his Pleasures. He was unsuccessful in War against the *Venetians*, deposed for ravishing the Mufti's Daughter, and soon after strangled, in 1648, the 8th Year of his Reign, and call'd the *Ottoman Sardanapalus*.

A. D. 1648. XX. *Mahomet IV.* his Son, came to the Throne at 7 Years old. When he went a Hunting, he us'd to appoint 30 or 40000 Men to beat the Woods for him for 3 or 4 Days together. He took *Candie* from the *Venetians*; and in 1682 he declar'd War against the Emperor, contrary to Treaty, and in 1683 his Vizier laid Siege to *Vienna*, where he receiv'd a dismal Overthrow; and *Mahomet* was depos'd for want of Success in the 39th Year of his Reign.

A. D. 1687. XXI. Notwithstanding *Mahomet* had a Son at Age, yet his Brother *Solyman*, the 3d of the Name, but the 2d call'd Emperor, succeeded by the Favour of the Army. He was about 45 Years of Age when he began his Reign, and had liv'd 40 in Prison, where his chief Converse was with Books. He made Choice of a learned Man, who had a very good Library, for his Favourite; but he was weak in Matters of Government. In his Reign the *Turks* lost the remainder of *Hungary*, *Sclavonia*, *Servia*, *Transilvania*, *Moldavia*, and *Walachia*, and might have been driven over the *Bosphorus* into *Asia*, from whence they came, if the present *French* King had not begun a War in 1688 upon the Empire of *Germany*. He died at *Adrianople* in 1691, after he had reign'd 3 Years; upon which the *Port* immediately proclaim'd his Brother.

A. D. 1691. XXII. *Achmet II.* He suc-

ceeded him by Help of the *French* Faction, who promoted him because being incapable to govern himself, their Faction might do what they pleas'd to carry on the War against the *Germans*, how much soever it tended to the Ruin of the *Ottoman* Empire. He died in 1695, in the 5th Year of his Reign, and 33d of his Age.

A. D. 1695. XXIII. *Mustapha II.* the eldest Son of *Mahomet IV.* succeeded. He began his Reign with cutting off most of the Enemies of his Family, which had been much contemn'd by the *Turks*, especially in his Father's Time. He took the Field in Person against the Emperor, and had good Success in his first Campaign. He afterwards concluded a general Peace with the Christians at *Carlowitz*: And on the 19th of *August*, 1703. the *Janizaries* revolted, and set up *Achmet* in his Room.

The Government and Customs of the T U R K S.

THE *Turkish* Emperor is perfectly absolute, and his Government so severe, that every Crime is almost punishable by Death, without Legal Process at his Pleasure. The Lands being originally invested in the Grand Seignior, they were divided among the Soldiers called *Timars*, as a Reward of their Service, who in Consideration thereof are obliged to maintain Horses and Men to serve the Sultan in his Wars. They are said to enjoy these Lands by Inheritance; but the Propriety being always reserv'd to the Emperor, he alienates them at Pleasure. His Subjects give him the Titles of, *God on Earth*, *Shadow of God*, *Brother of the Sun and Moon*, *The Giver of all Earthly Crowns*, &c. His Lawyers say, he is above the Law, and that he only has the Power to interpret it infallibly. The Sultan swears at his Inauguration to maintain the Faith of the *Mussulmen*, and the Laws of *Mahomet*; but he can break this loose Tie at Pleasure, and with a safe Conscience, according to the Maxim of the *Turkish* Doctors, who assert, that his Oaths are always revocable. His Subjects are made to believe, that he who dies without Resistance by the Hand or Order of their Sultan, is immediately translated to Paradise. They who receive any

any Salary from the *Exchequer*, or other Office depending on the Crown, have the Title of *Slave*, which they count more honourable than that of *Subject*. No Man is regarded for his Descent or Birth, but for his present Possession, or Interest at Court. Upon the Death of a *Basha*, the Grand Seignior seizes his Estate, which he generally confers upon his own Children. But if such *Basha* be married to a Relation of the Grand Seignior's, then he deducts her Dowry out of it, which is commonly 100000 Dollars. Their Laws make the Children of a Sultan's Daughter married to a *Basha* incapable of any Office in the Empire, so that they rise no higher than to be *Capigi Basha*, which is one of the Porters of the Grand Seignior's Gate: And 'tis almost as bad as Treason for such to mention their Pedigree; so that by this Means, all Hereditary Succession in Estates, for the Preservation of ancient Nobility, is cut off.

When the Grand Seignior is afraid of the Greatness of a *Basha*, he prefers him to the Marriage of one of his Female Kindred, by which he becomes miserably enslav'd to the Tyranny of an insulting Woman, whom he is forced to entertain, even tho' he has a Wife already, and obliged to banish the latter and all her Kindred. The *Bashaws* enjoy their Offices for no determinate Time, for the Gr. Seignior cuts them off or transplants them into another Province at Pleasure. To prevent Rivalship among the Princes of the Blood when they come to Years of Maturity, they are transplanted to particular *Seraglio's*, where they are kept separate, and cannot enter the Walls of *Constantinople* during their Father's Life, that so they may have no Opportunity to attempt the Government. For this Reason most of the Sultans, since *Bajazet's* Time, have either put their Brethren to Death, or confin'd them as above mentioned.

The *Turks* think nothing conduces more to the Welfare of their State than a frequent Change of their Officers; and none are advanc'd to any without paying the Grand Seignior vast Sums, in Proportion to the Profit of the Post, and the Money is commonly borrow'd at 40 or 50 per Cent. and sometimes double. Law Suits are commonly determin'd for those that give most Money; and the *Turks* will bear false Wit-

ness for the least kind of Hire in any Case, especially when it falls out between a Christian and themselves.

If the *Port* suspects any great Man powerful enough to raise a Commotion, or to design it, the Grand Seignior pretends to send him a Present, and the Executioner puts the Bow-String about his Neck. Great Men are many times sent with a new Commission to a higher Charge, and all possible Demonstrations of Favour; but before they come to the Place, the Sultan's fatal Command overtakes them, and without any Cause shewn they are barbarously put to Death, and their Bodies thrown into a Ditch. To this arbitrary Sway may be attributed the Decay of Arts among the *Turks*, their Neglect of Agriculture, the Slightness of their Buildings, their Want of pleasant Gardens and Plantations in a Country so beautiful by Nature; because knowing no certain Heir, nor how long they may be continued in their Possessions, they aim only at a few Years Enjoyment; so that they are afraid to shew any Magnificence or Ingenuity, lest they should incur the Danger of their Lives.

The *Turks* have, to increase their Empire, and propagate their Faith, receiv'd such a Mixture of all Nations, that none of them can derive his Lineage from the ancient *Saracens*. They had formerly a Custom every 5 Years to take away the Children of Christians, and breed them *Mahometans*; but 'tis now in a great Measure disus'd, because of the Abundance of *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Jews*, &c. who flock in to enjoy the imaginary Honour and Privilege of a *Turk*. They have likewise another extraordinary Supply from the *Black Sea* by the *Tartars*, who make Incursions into the neighbouring Territories of the Christians, whom they carry off, and sell at *Constantinople*, where (according to the Registers) it appears that they import one Year with another at least 20000. They tempt the Chief of them to become *Mahometans*, with Promises of Riches and Honours, or Threats of the vilest Slavery and Death: And that they may not be disposed to rebel, they are never allow'd Arms, or to go to the War.

The *Turks* pretend a sacred Esteem for Foreign Ambassadors, whom they are forbid to hurt by one of their Canons, and their

their Office is call'd Inviolable by their Alcoran, tho' they frequently practise the contrary. They shew the greatest Honour to the Emperor's Minister, because he is their most powerful Neighbour, and they have oftenest felt the Weight of his Sword. They defray the Charges of his Ambassadors, and give his Residents a constant Allowance. The Emperor is obliged by ancient Agreement to send Presents by his Ambassadors to the *Port*, as Offerings of Peace, and the Gr. Seignior is bound to send him others of equal Value. But the Ambassadors of more remote Princes, whose Business is about Trade, must make Presents, which the *Turk* by Prescription calls *his Right*, and is not obliged to make any Return. The Audience is usually given on the Days appointed for Payment of the Janizaries, that the Ambassador may see the Order of that Militia, and the great Sums of Money paid them. He is first introduced into the Divan, and seated near the Vizier and Treasurer. After the Money is distributed, a plentiful Dinner is prepar'd, and they sit together at one Table, which is cover'd with a large Volder of Silver, wherein the Dishes are set without Table-Cloth or Knives. There are two Tables more in the same Room for the Ambassadors Attendants, and the rest of the *Turkish* Nobility. There are in all 60 or 80 Services, which are brought in by one at a time, and as soon as tasted taken off, to make Room for another. The Dishes are of China, worth about 150 Dollars apiece, and will break, they say, with the least Infusion of Poison. After Dinner the Ambassador, with about 18 of his Retinue, is conducted to a Place where they put on gay Vests of rich Silk, presented them as a Token of the Gr. Seignior's Favour. Then two Capigi Bashaws, or Chief Porters, bring them nearer to the Gr. Seignior's Presence. Afterwards follow the Presents brought by the Ambassador, which are carried to the best Advantage, and deliver'd to the proper Officers. In the mean time, the Janizaries in the Outer Courts keep the profoundest Silence. Then the Ambassador is brought to a great Gate near the Audience, the Porch of which is filled with white Eunuchs, cloath'd with Silks and Cloth of Gold. At the Door of the Audience-

Chamber, which is kept only by a white Eunuch, there is a deep Silence, which is made the more solemn by the murmuring of an adjacent Fountain. Here they tread softly, in Token of Reverence to the Sultan's Majesty. At the Entrance of the Chamber hangs a Golden Ball, studded with Precious Stones, and about it Chains of rich Pearl. The Floor is cover'd with Carpets of Crimson Velvet, embroider'd with Gold Wire and Seed Pearl. The Grand Seignior's Throne is rais'd a little above the Ground by 4 Pillars plated with Gold. The Roof is gilded, from which hang Balls, that seem to be of Gold, and the Cushions are embroider'd with Gold and Jewels. The Gr. Seignior has no other Attendance on this Occasion in the Chamber but the Prime Vizier, who stands very reverently at his Right Hand. As soon as the Ambassador is come into the Royal Presence, he is led in and supported under the Arms by the two Capigi Bashaws, who, when at a convenient Distance, lay their Hands upon his Neck, make him bow very low, then raise him up again, and retire backwards to the farther Part of the Room. The Ambassador has no Chair set him, but stands and informs the Sultan by his Interpreter of the Business he comes about, which is first penn'd down, and when read, deliver'd with the Credentials to the Prime Vizier, from whom the Answer is to be receiv'd.

But tho' the *Turks* shew these outward Signs of Respect to Ambassadors, yet in all Differences between their Principals and the *Port*, they break in upon the Law of Nations, as well as on their own publick Faith; for as soon as War is proclaimed, the Ambassador is committed to close Prison, or at least confin'd by a Guard to his own House, as has happen'd to those of most Nations, except the *English* Ambassadors, who always prevented or wisely compounded Matters before the Breach grew too wide, and never met with any such Disgrace. The *Turks* excuse this Usage of Ambassadors by saying, They are sent as Hostages to be responsible for what is acted by their Principals and Countrymen against the *Turks*. Tho' they thus abuse Ambassadors, they rarely plunder the Merchants of Princes with whom they are at Enmity; for they compare Merchants to the *Bee*, which brings

Honey to the Hive, is innocent, industrious, and profitable, and therefore an Object of their Compassion and Defence. The little Regard they have to Leagues proceeds from their Maxim, That they ought not to regard a League made with any Prince, or the Justice of a Quarrel, if the Breach tends to the Enlargement of their Empire, and the Propagation of their Faith.

The Turkish Crown is Hereditary in the Male Line, and upon the Grand Seignior's Death his Successor goes by Water to the Mosque of *Youp*, at the Bottom of the Harbour, where he mounts a Marble Tribunal rais'd on Marble Pillars, and after some Prayers the Mufti girds him with a Sword, and then he enters *Constantinople* with a Cavalcade. When they rid themselves of their Brothers, to secure their own Possession, they order 'em to be strangled with a Silken Halter, and not to be beheaded, because they think it a Sin to shed the Imperial Blood. They excuse this barbarous Custom, because of the insolent Humour of the Janizaries, who always importune him for an Augmentation of Pay, and if it be refus'd, threaten to depose him, and set up his Brother. The *Turks* think it a Sin to eat in Silver and Gold Plate; yet the Gr. Seignior has abundance of both, and allows his Mother the like; but at publick Entertainments, the Port makes use of Vessels of *Terra Sigillata* or China. They never say, the Gr. Seigniors go frequently abroad in Disguise, with Servants, and an Executioner likewise in Disguise, who follow them at a Distance to see how their Orders are kept; and that they have several times order'd the Heads of Butchers and Bakers to be cut off in the Streets for using false Weights, and particularly Sellers and Smoakers of Tobacco, because *Constantinople* is so liable to Fire; and sometimes the Sultans draw their Scymiters from under their Vests, and turn Executioners themselves. Sultan *Amurath* narrowly escap'd being killed by such an Adventure; for being alone, and having taken a Spahi by the Collar, in order to cut off his Head for smoaking Tobacco, the Spahi knock'd him down with his Mace, and fled.

The Grand Vizier is the Chief Minister, and wants nothing of the Sovereign Power but the Name; yet 'tis a very ticklish Post; for if he do not gain the Favour of

the Ladies and the Eunuchs by Bribes, he seldom enjoys his Post long, or escapes with his Life. This makes them generally cruel, and to cut off all those who they think bear them any Grudge. Next to the Grand Vizier, the other Viziers are the chief Ministers, but generally act as he would have them. Next to them are the Cadelisquers, who are Sovereign Judges in Affairs Military and Civil. There's but one of them in *Europe*, one in *Asia*, and another in *Egypt*. Under them are the Cadi's, who determine ordinary Causes, and are appointed by the Cadelisquers, with the Gr. Seignior's Approbation. The Captain Basha, or Admiral of the Sea, commands the Fleet, and is chief Judge in Marine Affairs; but few of these Officers leave any thing to their Children, being for most Part cut off, and their Estates seiz'd by the G. Seignior.

The Divan consists of the chief Officers, who debate all Affairs of State; and the Vizier, who is President, determines all Causes with great Dispatch, and is obliged to receive the Petitions of the meanest Subjects. While the Divan is sitting, the great Officers are brought successively one after another before the G. Seignior, to give an Account of their Management, and none of them can promise themselves to return with their Lives. They appoint Officers at *Constantinople* to see that none be cheated at Market in the Rate or Weight of their Provisions, and the Criminals are immediately punish'd by Bastinadoes, or otherwise, according to their Fault; so that the poorest Child may buy what they want of that Nature without Danger of being impos'd upon. And to prevent Murders, if a Person be found kill'd in the Streets, and the Murderer escape, the Neighbourhood must pay 500 Crowns for it. Their Punishments are by Bastinadoes on the Feet or Buttocks, Hanging, Beheading, Impaling, or throwing the Criminals upon Tent-hooks or Spikes of Iron. The latter occasions the Criminals many times to languish so long before they die, that they seldom use it. Such as turn Christians, they burn alive, by hanging a Bag of Powder about their Necks, and putting a Pitch-Cap on their Heads. Christians that say any Thing against the Law of *Mahomet*, or taken with a *Turkish* Woman, or go into Mosques,

Mosques, except where the latter is allow'd at certain Hours, are impal'd alive.

The Grand Seignior's MILITIA.

Thevenot says, he keeps always a great Standing Army of Horse and Foot, which is punctually paid once in two Months. The Infantry is of several Orders. The first of them is the Capigi's or Porters, because they attend the Grand Seignior's Gate and Person. Their chief Commander is the Capigi Basha. They are about 3000, distinguish'd from others by their Caps; and these are sent for the Heads of such as the Gr. Seignior pleases. 2. The *Solaques*, or the *Guard du Corps*, attend the Gr. Seignior when he goes into the City, wear Feathers in their Caps, and are arm'd with Bows and Arrows. 3. The chief of the Infantry are the Janizaries, who consist for the most Part of Tribute Children and Renegadoes. This is a very numerous Body, endow'd with great Privileges, have a firm Union among themselves, call one another Brothers, and will suffer no Injury to be done to the meanest of them. They do what they please, and none but their Officers dare lift up a Hand against them on Pain of Death; so that neither Love nor Money can save a Man who beats a Janizary; but they are allow'd to beat any Man upon a just Ground. This occasions Christian Ambassadors, Consuls, Merchants, or others of Note, to hire some of them when they go into the Country to attend them; and they soundly drub any one who offers to give a cross Word or a Look to those who hire them. They are also distinguish'd by their Caps and Habits, and their Pay is from 2 to 6 Aspers a Day, every Asper being 3 Farthings. They are allow'd a Piece of Cloth Yearly, and every Gr. Seignior adds an Asper to their Pay. There are 12000 of them call'd Janizaries of the Port, who live in two Colleges, divided into Chambers, containing from 30 to 50 apiece, under 3 Officers: And when any of them commit a Crime, Complaint is made to their Aga or General, who orders the Oda Basha, or Commander of the Chamber to which he belongs, to punish him in the Night-time, for they allow no Soldier to be

publickly punish'd; and if the Crime deserve Death, they are strangled, put into a Sack, and thrown into the Sea. The Power of those Janizaries is so great, that they have frequently depos'd the Grand Seigniors. There are several other Orders of Turkish Foot, which we pass over, these being the chief.

The principal Orders of their Horse are, 1. The *Chiaoux*, much like the *Exempts de Garde* in France. Their Office is very honourable, for they execute most of the Commands of the Grand Seignior and his Bashaws, are sent on Embassies to Foreign Princes, and their Caps are the same with the Cap of Ceremony us'd by the Grand Seignior and his Bashaws. Their chief Commander is call'd *Chiaoux Basha*. 2. The *Muteferaca's*, who are all Persons of Quality. The Gr. Seignior himself is their Captain, and they never go to the Field but when he goes in Person. All Governors of Places are of this Order. 3. The *Spahi's*, who are their ordinary Troopers. They are of two Sorts: The first receive their Pay every two Months, from 15 to 20 Aspers per Day. The 2d have a Timar or Yearly Pension on the conquer'd Territories, and are obliged to serve the Gr. Seignior with so many Horse, according to the Value of their Pension. They are very numerous, and commanded by the Sangiacks or Lords of the Manor, from whence they have their Pension. The Gr. Seignior is Heir to all in his Pay if they die without Issue. If they leave Daughters, he takes only Two Thirds of the Inheritance. Thevenot says, That by these Methods, the Grand Seignior can soon raise 2 or 300000 Men; for a great Part of his Subjects receive his Pay. His Bashaws, besides the Troops they command, have a great many Servants, who are all Soldiers; and the Sangiacks attend him with their Timar. Spahi's, who have Servants under them, that are all Troopers. They carry little Baggage, fear no Fatigue; and provided they have Rice, a little Bread, Water, Coffee, and Tobacco, are very well satisfied. They commit no Disorders in their own Country; so that the People resort with Provisions to their Camp as safe as to a Market. The Turkish Soldiers are generally well arm'd, skilful in handling them, and

place their chief Delight in the Goodness of their Clothes, Horses, Arms, and Harness, of which they are very careful.

Their Religion, Customs, &c.

HAVING already given an Account of *Mahomet*, and their Alcoran, we shall only add, That besides the Decalogue of *Moses*, they have 5 Commandments, as their Authors commonly say, tho' they are but 4, the first being the same with ours: The 2d is to fast the *Ramadam* or *Lent*: The 3d, to pray at the Hours appointed: The 4th, to give Annually the 40th Part of their Substance to the Poor: The 5th, to go once in their Lives in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*. They honour our Saviour and the blessed Virgin, and punish those who speak ill of them. They alledge, that *Mahomet* was the Comforter he promis'd, and blasphemously give him the Preference. They believe every Man has two Guardian Angels, who record his good and bad Actions, and that there are black Angels who examine them at their Death, and according to their Lives punish or reward them, by leaving an ugly or a lovely Creature with them, to torment or please them till the Day of Judgment, when they go to Heaven or Hell. They fancy that certain Beasts and Birds shall enter Paradise, viz. the Camel of their Prophet *Saleh*, the Ram that *Abraham* sacrific'd, *Moses's* Cow, *Solomon's* Ant, the Ass of *Exra*, the Whale of *Jong*, a little Dog they call *Kitmer*, and *Mahomet's* Camel. They use Circumcision, but in a different Way from the *Jews*, and do not practise it till their Children be 10 or 12 Years of Age. They are very cleanly, and place great Part of their Religion in Bathing and Washing, and take particular Care that their Children don't foul themselves or their Clothes with their Excrements or Urine: To prevent which, they have Contrivances for Infants of both Sexes in their Cradles. Their Mosques are stately without, but plain within, having only the Name of God writ on the Walls, and a Nich in the S. Wall or in the N. according to their Situation from *Mecca*, to which they must turn their Faces and pray. The Floors of their Mosques are cover'd with Mats. They have nothing else in

them but a Pulpit for their Priests, and a Piece of a Cloth brought from *Mecca*. They have Prayers 5 Times a Day, and 6 Times on *Fridays*, that is their *Sunday*, on which they are allow'd to work; but most of 'em spend it in Merriment and Rest. They put off their Shooes when they go into their Mosques, always repeat the same Prayers, make use of many Prostrations and Beads like the Papists, are very devout in their Mosques, never prattle or look about there; and when they have ended their Worship, bow to the Right and Left to their Guardian Angels. They are so charitable, that they have few Beggars; and the Rich leave great Estates to build Hospitals, Bridges, and publick Inns, and to bring Water to the Roads, &c. for the Conveniency of Travellers. Those who have not Money, supply it by charitable Works, as filling Cisterns on the Road for Travellers, shewing them the Way, and the Fords of Rivers, &c. for which they will take no Money, but do it all for God's Sake. Their Charity extends even to Beasts and Birds. The Rich buy the latter in Markets to set them at Liberty, and fancy their Souls will declare their Kindness to God at the Day of Judgment. Some of them leave considerable Sums to feed so many Dogs and Cats, and give the Money to Butchers and Bakers, who punctually dispose of it according to Order.

The chief of their Religion is the Mufti, whom they reverence as much as Papists do the Pope. He is put in or out as the Grand Seignior pleases; and tho' he be his own Creature, the Sultan rises up, advances some Steps, and salutes him with great Respect when he comes to see him. He is consulted in all Matters of Conscience, and gives his Decisions in little Pieces of Paper; but if he decide otherwise in publick Matters than the Gr. Seignior would have him, he turns him out, and changes till he find one that suits his Humour. They hold it unlawful to put a Mufti to Death, yet sometimes the Gr. Seignior orders him to be strangled, and thinks he satisfies the Law if he don't shed his Blood. The Mufti's on the other Hand take Part sometimes with the mutinous Janizaries, and strangle the Grand Seigniors in their Turn. There being but one Mufti in the Empire, who re-

sides always at *Constantinople*, and cannot possibly determine all Affairs of Conscience, the *Cadelisquers*, *Moullah's*, or *Cadi's*, act their Part in other Places. There is also an Order of Clergy call'd *Hodgia's*, who are old Men, expert in their Laws, and much respected by the People, who consult them in Affairs of Importance, and delight to hear them preach. They have *Dervishes* who live in common like the *Popish Monks*, pretend to great Austerity, and are mean in their Apparel. On *Tuesdays* and *Fridays* they have ridiculous Dances to the Sound of Drums and Flutes, while one of their Number sings some Verses of the *Alcoran*; and during this Ceremony, they turn round upon their Left Foot as fast as *Wind-Mills*, keep a sort of Time with their Musical Instruments, and follow one another with their Arms stretched out, and their Eyes shut. *Thevenot* adds, That their *Dervishes* and *Santo's* are generally great Hypocrites, and drown'd in all Sorts of Vice, tho' they pretend to be wholly taken up in Divine Contemplations. Their Clergy forbid all Sorts of Figures of Animals, say 'tis a Sin to make them, and that those Figures will at the Day of Judgment come and demand Souls from those who made them, which will heighten the Crime, and add to the Punishment of the Maker. They will buy no Watches or Clocks which have any Figures of Live Creatures about them; and when they hire Ships from Christians, they deface the carv'd Work upon that Account. They prohibit Usury, but evade the Command by selling Goods upon Trust at a very high Rate, and buying them immediately back from the Borrower at a low Price, pay him in ready Money, and enter him Creditor for the Overplus in their Books. They hold the same Creatures to be unclean as the *Jews*; so that their Shoemakers must not make use of Hogs-Bristles, which puts them to a great deal of Trouble in making their *Pabouches* or *Shoes*. They admire Cats, but account Dogs to be unclean; and if touched by them, must wash themselves, and therefore keep none in their Houses, but appoint them particular Places.

They have three Sorts of Wives: The first they call *Lawful*, agree with the Parents, in Presence of a *Cadi*, to give her a

Dowry, and the Bargain is writ down. These they never see till they are married, and the Wedding-Day is spent in Jollity. The 2d they call *Kebin*, and only go to the *Cadi*, tell him they have a Mind to such an one, and promise to pay her so much if they divorce her. The 3d Sort are their Slaves, of whom they take as many as they please. If they divorce the first Wife, they must tell it the *Cadi*, and pay her her *Dowry*, if they have no just Ground; but if they have, give her nothing, and she must not marry another in 4 Months. If she be with Child, they must forbear till she be deliver'd, and are oblig'd to keep all her Children. If the Man have a Mind to take her again, she must first be married to another. For their other Wives, they put them off when they please, but must keep their Children, who are all reckon'd equally lawful. They must not marry within the 8th Degree. *Thevenot* says, their Women are commonly beautiful, well shap'd, and fair, cleanly and neat, never go abroad without a Veil, and seldom except to the Baths, which they do twice a Week. They paint their Eyebrows and Eyelids with Black, which they reckon graceful, and their Nails with a reddish Brown. Their Habit differs little from the Men's except their Head-Dress. They are generally haughty, sumptuous in their Apparel, and extream lazy, which makes them vicious; for tho' they be very careful to seem modest, they stretch their Inventions to cheat their Husbands, and procure Gallants, which makes the *Turks* extreamly jealous; so that they never suffer them to go to the Mosques and Market, or to shew themselves to any Man, tho' their nearest Relations, if they can help it: And the better to prevent it, the richer Sort have Baths for them in their own Houses, because when they go abroad to bath, they form Intrigues with their Gallants. The Wife may sue a Divorce before the *Cadi* if the Husband refuse to allow her Necessaries, be not able to maintain her, or offer to use her contrary to the Course of Nature; and in the last Case she goes before the *Cadi*, and turns up the Sole of her Slipper, without saying a Word; upon which the Husband is sent for, and if he can't make a good Defence, is bastinado'd, and his

this Wife divorc'd. *Thevenot* adds, That the *Turks* don't believe Women go to Heaven, and scarcely account them rational Creatures.

When any one dies, the Women of the House fall a howling so loud, that all their Neighbours hear it, and come to howl with them; and they hire others to increase the Noise. This they do for several Days. They wash and shave their Dead, burn Incense about 'em to scare away evil Spirits, and then carry them to the Grave with Ceremonies, according to their Quality, set up a Stone at the Head of the Grave for the Angels to sit on, who they fancy are to examine the Deceas'd, pray at it for several Days, that he may be deliver'd from the black Angels; and the Women keep a howling and wailing as if they were mad. On *Fridays* they set Viſtuals and Drink upon the Graves, which are generally by the Sides of the Roads, that Travellers may eat and drink freely, and pray for the Souls of the Deceas'd.

Thevenot adds the following Particulars of their Manners and Customs, viz. That many of the natural *Turks* are very sociable, will not do to others what they would not have done to themselves, and love honest People, whether they be Christians or Jews: That they scarce ever quarrel together, and their Soldiers seldom carry Swords in the City. If any be injur'd, he cites his Companion before the Judge, who punishes the Criminal according to Merit; and if he don't appear, the Accusation is taken as confessed. He adds, That they are very proud, think themselves the bravest Men upon Earth, and that the World was made for them only. Many of them are such Bigots, that if they meet a Christian or a Jew first in a Morning, they say, *God deliver us from the Devil*, and so return to their Houses. The Rabble are apt to insult Christians, especially such as wear the *French* Habit, whom they call Apes without Tails. They are generally given to Sodomy, and most of their Songs are upon that unnatural Crime, or on Wine. They are very covetous, their Friendship is easily gain'd by Money or Presents, and the common People will do any thing for their Belly-full of

Drink. The worst Sort of *Turks* are the Renegadoes, who give themselves up to all Manner of Wickedness.

Thevenot says, the *Turks* are commonly well shap'd and proportion'd, for most Part strong, and few of them crooked or Cripples. Their Habit makes them seem proper, and cover Bodily Defects better than ours. The Form of it being generally known, we need not insist on it. They commonly wear two Daggers at their Girdle, and affect to have the Handles and their Sheaths as rich as they can. They carry a Handkerchief at each Side of their Girdle, with a Tobacco Pouch, and use their Bosoms for Pockets. Their Quality is discover'd by their Turbants, and the Fashions or making up some of them is so difficult, that 'tis a particular Trade. They shave their Heads, because they think that Devils would nestle in their Hair; but they nourish their Beards and Mustachoes, have a great Esteem for large Beards, swear by them as they do by the Head of their Father, and of the Grand Seignior, &c. They don't uncover their Head when they salute one another, only lay their Hands on their Breasts, and bow a little. He that speaks first, says, *Peace be with you*. The other repeats the same Words, and adds, *God's Mercy also*. The Left Hand is with them the most honourable. They are temperate in their Diet, their usual Food being Rice boild with Fowls or Meat, with which they mix Pepper and Saffron. They dress all their Meat in small Pieces, which saves them the Trouble of Carving. They don't drink till they have done eating, and their Liquor is Water, Boza made of Barley and Millet, somewhat like our Beer, but not so good, and us'd only by the meaner Sort, because it is cheap. They drink Wine in private, and alledge, that *Mahomet* did only advise, but not command, to forbear it. They drink much Coffee, which some of them mix with Cloves, Cardamum-Seed, and Sugar. They have abundance of Coffee-houses, with Musicians to entertain the Guests. They have also Sorbet brought from *Egypt*, made of Sugar, Lemon-Juice, Musk, Amber-Greece, and Rose-Water. With this they entertain their Friends, whom they likewise perfume if they be

Per-

Persons of Note; and if they also give them some of the Perfume, they reckon it the highest Civility.

Their Bedding is Quilts spread on the Ground. Those of the better Sort have them commonly upon a rais'd Place in the Room call'd the *Divan*, with two Quilts under them, a Cushion instead of a Pillow, over which lies a Sheet, and they cover themselves with a quilted Coverlet, to which they sew another Sheet, and in the Mornings they pack all up in a Trice, as if there had been no Bed there.

They don't walk as we do, and think us Fools for walking to and again in a Court or Room. When at Home, they either sit on their Divans, sleep, smok, or play on a kind of Lute, which to us seems a very coarse Musick; and if they be Scholars, they read or write. They never play at Cards, Dice, or any Chance-Game, but only at Chess, Draughts, or the like, and never for Money, or any Thing of Value: Nor do they speak or quarrel at their Games. The Recreations of their Soldiers are altogether Military, as shooting at Marks with Bows and Arrows, or Fire-Arms, in which they are very dextrous. On Horseback they make use of a *Zagaye*, a square Battoon of Palm-Tree, about 3 Foot long, and 2 or 3 Inches thick. This they dart at one another, and he that is pursu'd holds his Hand behind him to catch the *Zagaye*, which they frequently do, or stoop to avoid the Blow, and thus they pursue one another by Turns. With these Sticks they wound their Enemies very dangerously. The Bashaws allow Premiums to encourage this Exercise. They are more dextrous at Puppet-Shows than we, which are manag'd only by *Jews*, and the Players sing obscene and filthy Songs, with which the *Turks* are wonderfully delighted. They have likewise Dancing-Women, who play on Castanets or other Instruments, and shew 1000 obscene Postures.

Thevenot says, the *Turkish* Language is an Original, and deriv'd from no other that we know of. 'Tis grave, pleasant, and easy to be learn'd, but not copious; so that they borrow many *Arabick* and *Persian* Words. They are little addicted to Sciences, but have Doctors of the Law who explain all

the Senses that can be given it. Some of them study Astrology, and many of them Poetry, in which they make most Use of the *Persian* Tongue. They don't sing Musically as we do, but with a certain Tone, which at first is not pleasing, but by Custom becomes agreeable enough. Their chief Musical Instruments are Flutes, and a Lute with three Strings. Abundance of them pretend to Divination, of which they have three Sorts. These Diviners sit frequently in the Corners of the Streets upon Carpets, with Books spread round them, and they pretend to foretel the Success of War, Journies, Trading, &c. They take 4 Arrows, place them with their Points against one another, give them to two Persons to hold, lay a drawn Sword on a Cushion before them, and read a certain Chapter of the Alcoran. Two of those Arrows they call *Turks*, and the other two by the Name of their Enemies; and after they have read in the Alcoran, they pretend those Arrows will fight whether the People that hold them will or not; and they judge of the Success according as those Arrows prevail over one another. This they call, Doing the Book. The Curious may see more of their Way of Divination in *Thevenot*.

They are commonly long-liv'd and healthful, which he ascribes to their Temperance in Diet, frequent Exercises, and the little Encouragement they give to Physicians, who are either Christians, *Jews*, or Renegadoes. They have common Receipts of general Use. They look upon Honey as a Sort of *Catholicon*, and make much Use of Scarifications and Fire, by applying burning Matches, &c. for Pains in their Limbs. They let Blood with Butcherly Launcets like our Horse-Fleems, or sharp pointed Canes: And besides paying their Physicians ill, they frequently charge them with the Death of the Patient if they don't succeed.

Tavernier differs something in his Account from *Thevenot* as to the *Turkish* Court, and particularly about the Number of the Janizaries of the *Port*, whom he makes 25000; whereas *Thevenot* says but 12000. He adds, there are other Janizaries who have no Pay, but are only exempted from Taxes, and bearing publick Offices, and that

that they are about 100000 in all. The Aga or General of the Janizaries has the Privilege to approach the Grand Seignior with a confident Deportment, with his Arms at absolute Liberty, tho' the Grand Vizier must not come near him without his Arms folded a-cross, as a Mark of Submission. The Timar-Spahi's, he says, are 15000, pass for the Gentry and Nobility of the Country, stand much upon their Gallantry, are petty Sovereigns in the Places where they command, and are not obliged to attend the Army but when the Grand Vizier commands in Person; nor can their Timars be taken from them but for neglecting that Duty.

The 4 principal Bashaws, whose Power is most dangerous to the Grand Seignior in case they be not faithful, are, the Grand Vizier, the Caimacan of *Constantinople*, the Basba of the Sea, and the Aga of the Ja-

nizaries, who by conspiring together have frequently depos'd the Sultan.

Tavernier says, the Origine of the *Turks* taking the Horse-Tail for their Standard was thus: One of their Generals having his Standard taken in a Battle with the Christians, and perceiving the Loss of it to discourage his Men, he cut off a Horse's Tail, and fastening it to the Top of a Half-Pike, advanc'd it on high, crying out, *This is the great Standard, let him that loves me follow it.* Upon which his Men rallied, and he obtain'd the Victory. The Grand Seignior has 7 of those Standards carried before him, the Viziers 3, and the other Officers are allow'd but one. The Grand Seignior carries 4 Heron-Tops or Tufts on his Turbant; and when he declares the Grand Vizier to be General, he takes out one of them, and puts it into the Vizier's Turbant, without which the Army will not obey him.

C H A P. VI.

P E R S I A.

Sanſon's TABLE of P E R S I A.

		Towns.
On the East,	Send, or Sinda.	Sarusan, Candayl, Debil.
	Makeran.	Guadel Fitz Makran, Firbk or Fibr, Chalak or Chalack.
	Sigeſtan, or Sit- ziſtan.	Fardan, Kets, Chaluck, Camul- tan, Sitziftan, Maſurgian, Maſnith or Maſnih, Araba.
	Sableſtan, or Sa- blaſtan.	Bekſabet or Bechſabath, Buſt. Sarentz, Sarvan, Aſbe, Me- mend, Rabel Emir, Kanda- har, Greeſa or Greeſ, Cur- van, Duka or Duke, Alan- kan.
	Choroſſan, or Cho- raſſan.	Balbachſi, Herat, Thun, Cho- raſan, Meched or Meſched, Niſabur, and Nichabour.
	Eſtarabad.	Eſtarabad, Damkam or Dam- kan, Amul.
	Mazanderan, Ma- ſanderan, or Tabriſtan.	Firuz-Kuh, Sukar-Abad, Mio- nikiella or Mionikielle, Giru, Talarapeſkt, Saru, Ferh- Abad, Ciarmen, Eſkiref.
	Schirvan, or Schirman.	Derbent, Baku, Chamaki or Schamacie.
	Edzer-Bayan, or Adirbeitzan.	Ardebil, Tauris or Tebris, Soltania or Sultania.
	Erak-Atzem, or Hierak-Agemi.	Kasbin Caſbin, or Caſwin, Sava or Sawa, Kom, Kaſ- chan or Kachan, Hamadan or Hemedan, Iſpahan, the Metropolis of Perſia, Zulpha or Zulfa, Yezd.
On the North	Chuſiſtan.	Suſ, Suſa or Suſter, Ardgan, Ramhormous or Ramhor- nous, Ahawas, Skabar, Ban- der-Rik, Bander-Rakel or Bander-Bakel.
	Farſiſtan, and Fars	Kazeron or Kaſiron, Aſtakar, Schiras, Benarou, Firus- Abat or Firus-Abad, Darab- Gier or Daragierd-Lar, Bander-Kongo, Bander- Abaffi or Gomron, the Iſle of Ormus.
	Kherman, or Kir- man.	Bermazir, Bermafir or Barma- ſier, Kerman or Kirman, Jaſkes or Jaſques, Kuheſtek.
		P E R S I A.

P E R S I A contains 13
Provinces.

P E R S I A.

CLUVERIUS says, the ancient *Persian* Monarchy reach'd from beyond the Mouth of the River *Indus* to the *Hellepont*, which was 2800 *English* Miles in Length, and from the *Black Sea* to the Mouth of the *Arabian Gulph*, which was 2000 in Breadth. *Mallet* says, it did likewise comprehend *Egypt*, Part of *Ethiopia* and *Libya* in *Africk*, the Islands of the *Ægean Sea*, *Thracia* and *Macedonia* in *Europe*. But we must observe, that *Egypt* was then reckon'd Part of *Asia*, and that what they had in *Europe* could not properly be called Possession, they having enjoy'd it only during the Time of Invasions, while they made War with the *Greeks*. *Mallet* adds, That long after them the *Parthians* establish'd a new Empire, which reach'd from the River *Indus* to the *Euphrates*, and sometimes as far as the *Hellepont*: That the Island of *Taprobana* was Tributary to them; and that they possess'd in *Africk*, *Egypt*, *Libya*, and as far as the Frontiers of *Ethiopia*.

Some derive the Name from *Persis*, one of its chief Provinces, which was so called, says *Isidore*, from King *Perses*, a *Greek*, who subdu'd the Country, and gave it his own Name. The Poets make him the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, and Conqueror of all the East. Others derive it from *Paras* or *Pharas*, which signifies an Horseman, because *Cyrus* taught them the Use of Horsemanship, and publish'd an Edict, That all Men should travel on Horseback, be their Journeys never so little. *Josephus* and *Bochart* are of Opinion, that it was anciently the same with that called *Chusa* or *Cuth* in the Days of *Nimrod*, from *Cuth* the Son of *Cham*; and that from the Time of *Chedorlaomer* till *Daniel*, it is call'd *Elam* in Scripture, from *Elam* the Son of *Sem*, and the People *Elamites*. *Herbert* observes, that the Word *Paras*, which in *Hebrew* signifies a Horse, in the old *Persian* signifies a Ram, under which it is typified by *Daniel*. We refer to that Author for the various Names by which it was afterwards called in Heathen Authors.

Briffonius, President of the Parliament of *Paris*, in his Book, *De Regio Persarum*.

Principatu, says, the *Persians* were obscure till the Time of *Cyrus*, who having subdu'd the *Medes* and *Lydians*, settled the Empire in *Persia*, after having subdu'd *Asia* and all the East. His Son *Cambyses* succeeded, and added *Egypt*. The Empire continu'd in Splendor till the Time of *Darius*, who was subdu'd by *Alexander the Great*, and murder'd by his own Subjects. Authors differ about the Duration of this Empire. Some assign it only 200 Years, and others 250. *Briffonius* says, however that be, there are none of the other Empires which ever equall'd it in Extent and Magnificence, from whence their Kings were called by the Name of the *Great King*, and *King of Kings*. The Succession was not strictly Hereditary, but they chose the fittest of the Royal Line; and sometimes their Kings, when they went on Expeditions, appointed their Successors by the People's Consent. The Curious may find a large Account of the Manners and Customs of the ancient *Persians* in *Briffonius*, who tells us, they worship'd their Kings with Divine Honour, would suffer no Strangers to see them except they ador'd 'em, which was refus'd by the *Jews* and *Greeks*. None durst enter the Palace without their Leave. They were seldom seen to their Subjects, obliged the Nobles to stand at their Gates, and manag'd their Business by Messengers. It was Capital for any one to sit down in the King's Seat, or to put on any of his Apparel. They had no Law but their Will. None durst contradict them in Council, oppose the Letters under their Seal, or offer to salute them without making Presents, &c. They had Multitudes of Wives and Concubines, were very luxurious; yet every Morning one of their Bed-Chamber call'd on them to rise, and look after the Kingdom which God had committed to their Charge; and they were also obliged to perform publick Worship every Day. They were prodigal in their Diet and Apparel, magnificent in their Rewards, and had Ministers who were call'd their Eyes and their Ears, that inform'd them of every Thing in their Dominions. *Herodotus* says, they laid up Annually, all Charges paid, 14560 *Euboic* Talents. *Justin* says, *Alexander* levied 300000 Talents per Annum. But over and above their Tribute in Money, the

Sub-

PART OF
ASIA
MINOR
PART OF
ARABIA

PERSIA,
*According to the Newest and
most Exact Observations.*
By H.Moll, Geographer.

CASPIAN
SEA

of INDEPENDENT

TARTARY

PART

INDIA

ARA
BIAN SEA

60 120 180 240 300
Miles of Great Britain



Subjects maintain'd their Family and Army. The *Persian* Kings kept an exquisite Poison by them, made of the Dung of an *Indian* Bird, which would kill without putting them to Pain, that they might use it themselves in case of any Disaster. To preserve their Health, they made use of Medicinal Herbs, and particularly of one called *Theambrotion*, which *Pliny* says grew about the River *Chouspis*, resembled the painted Feathers of a Peacock, and had an excellent Smell. The Kings eat it, or drank the Infusion of it, against all Diseases of the Body, or Disorders of the Mind.

The ancient *Persians* were Idolaters, worship'd *Jupiter*, the Sun, the Moon, *Venus*, Fire, Water, Rivers, the Earth, and the Winds. They erected no Temples or Altars to their Gods, and therefore destroy'd those of the *Greeks*, because they reckon'd it impious to shut up their Gods within Walls. They sacrific'd upon high Places or Castles in the open Air. The Magi performed and directed their Worship, and whoever sacrific'd or said Prayers, ask'd nothing in particular for himself, but for the whole People and the King. They gave no Part of the Sacrifices to the Gods, for they thought them to be content with the Soul of the Sacrifice; but they offer'd Wine to them. The Magi, they pretend, had their Origine from *Zoroaster*, suppos'd to be *Misraim* the Son of *Cham*, and the Founder of their Nation, who being burnt by the Dæmon or evil Genius, his Ashes were preserv'd, and committed to the *Persians*, which nourish'd their perpetual Fire; for they believed there were two Gods opposite to one another, the one good, and the other bad, whom they call'd Dæmon. The Magi came to be so numerous, and in such Repute, that they commanded their Kings, and nothing Civil or Sacred was undertaken without them. They held, that Fire and Water were the Origine of all Things, and therefore taught the *Persians* to worship the Sun and the Sea. Some of them were so superstitious, that they would not sail upon the latter, because they thought it unlawful to pollute it with Spit-
tle or other Excrements. *Diogenes Laertius*, in the *Proem.* to his *Lives of Philosophers*, gives a summary Account of their Doctrine, to which we refer. They pre-

tended to foretel Things to come from Prodigies, Marks on Men's Bodies, &c. and would kill nothing but what was offer'd in Sacrifice. There were three Sorts of Magi. *St. Jerome* against *Jovinian* commends some of them for their Learning, Eloquence, and Temperance. The best of 'em applied themselves to the Study of God and Nature. The *Persian* Kings were instructed in their Rites and Learning, which they taught to none but Natives, without the King's Leave. *Pythagoras*, *Plato*, *Democritus*, and *Apollonius Tyaneus*, learn'd many of their Notions from them. 'Tis from them that Magick and Magicians had their Name. The *Persians* had also Women Priestesses consecrated to the Sun, who were obliged to perpetual Chastity. The *Persians* had likewise their Holidays consecrated to their Idols and Saints, and particularly an Annual Festival call'd *Magophonia*, in Remembrance of the Magi, who were murther'd by the usurping *Septemvirs*. They had also something like the *Saturnalia*, call'd *Saccarum Festum*, when 'twas lawful only for the King to be drunk and dance; and for 5 Days Time the Servants were allow'd to wear sumptuous Apparel, and to command their Masters and all the Family. Another of their Festivals was called, *The Destruction of Vice*, when they killed all the Poisonous Creatures and Wild Beasts they could find, which they reckon'd grateful to the good, and hateful to the ill God.

Xenophon, in his *Cyropaedia*, commends the *Persian* Laws above those of all other Nations. By his Account of them, they prohibited all the Sins forbidden in the second Table of the Decalogue, and set up a publick School to instruct Youth in the Principles of good Morality. In this School, which he calls a *Forum*, the King, the Judges, and other Magistrates, had a Palace, in which they administred Justice, took Care to form the Manners of the People of all Ages, and to have them instructed in Civil and Military Sciences. For the excellent Order and Method observ'd here, we refer to the Book it self.

By this Means the *Persians* liv'd very frugally and soberly at first, but were afterwards corrupted by the Luxury of the *Medes* and *Lydians*, and drown'd in all Manner of Vice, indulg'd Concubinage and incestuous

cessuous Marriages, and Commerce betwixt Children and Parents, Sisters and Brothers, and became so effeminate, that it ruin'd their State, and made them an easy Prey to the conquering Greeks.

The ancient History of PERSIA and MEDIA.

The Kings of the MEDES from Heylin, &c.

A. M. 3146. I. **A**Rbaces, Governor of the Country under *Sardanapalus*, joining with *Belochus* against him, as formerly mention'd, defeated his Master, founded this Monarchy, and reign'd 28 Years.

3174. II. His Son *Mandanes* reign'd 50.

3224. III. *Sisarmus* 30.

3254. IV. *Medius*, alias *Artyras*, 25.

3279. V. *Cadicceus*, alias *Arbianes*, 13.

3292. VI. *Deioces*. He built *Ecbatana*, was the Legislator of the *Medes*, and first brought 'em under a strict Government, their former Kings having but little Authority over 'em. He reign'd 40.

3303. VII. *Phraortes*, a Prince of great Courage and Success. He kept all *Asia* in Fear, and made the *Persians* Tributary, but was overpower'd by the *Scythians*. He reign'd 22.

3331. VIII. *Cyaxares*. He was for two Years little more than a Tributary to the *Scythians*; but he and his Nobles plotted their Ruin, invited the Chief of them to a Supper, and cut them off when in Drink: Upon which the common Sort return'd willingly Home. He reign'd 40.

3371. IX. *Astyages* his Son. He married his Daughter *Mandane* to *Cambyses*, the Tributary King of *Persia*. She was brought to Bed of a Son. Her Father dreaming that she had made as much Water as drown'd all *Asia*, he commanded *Harpagus*, one of his Nobles, to kill the Child; but abhorring the Cruelty, he or-

A. M. der'd *Mithridates*, the King's Herdsman, to see it done, who also disobeying the barbarous Command, preserv'd the Child, and call'd him *Cyrus*. This young Prince coming afterwards to be K. of *Persia*; and abhorring his Grandfather for his unnatural Cruelty, he depriv'd him of his Crown, and confin'd him to *Hyrcania*, in the 35th Year of his Reign.

3406. X. *Cyaxares* II. Son to *Astyages*, suppos'd to be *Darius* the *Mede* mention'd in *Daniel*, succeeded his Father at the Age of 52; for his Nephew *Cyrus* knowing that his Uncle had done him no Wrong, suffer'd him to enjoy the Kingdom of *Media*, but set up for himself as Independant K. of *Persia*, which before that was Tributary to the *Medes*. *Torniel* in his *Annals* supposes an Agreement with *Cyaxares*; that *Cyrus* should have his only Child to Wife; that they should join in subduing their Neighbours; the Conquests should belong to *Cyaxares* during his Life; and that *Cyrus* should be his Heir. In the 20th Year of their several Reigns, they took *Babylon*, kill'd *Belshazzar*, and put an End to the *Chaldean* Empire. This is ascrib'd wholly to *Darius* in *Daniel*, because, says *Jerome*, he was the elder, the greater King, and Uncle to *Cyrus*; but the *Persians* ascrib'd all to *Cyrus*, their own Prince, and they are follow'd in this by the *Greeks*. Another Reason is, that *Darius* liv'd but two Years after this Conquest, and *Cyrus* was afterwards most taken Notice of. *Josephus* ascribes the Conquest to both. *Heylin* blames *Joseph Scaliger*, *Helvicus*, and *Calvisius*, for calling this *Darius Nabonnedus*, or *Nabonidus*, and says, it was the Name of *Belshazzar*. The Curious may consult *Howel's Institutions*, and *Bailly's Opus Chronologicum*, upon this Subject. *Cyaxares* dying, *Cyrus* succeeded to the whole.

The P E R S I A N Kings.

MR. Ogilvy, in his *Asia*, says, when this Country was first Peopled, the several Tribes were commanded by their own Princes, of whom *Chedorlaomer*, defeated by *Abraham*, was one. By this Means they were little taken Notice of till the Time of *Perses*, who wrested the same from *Sardanapalus*, *A. M.* 3059. but the Truth of this is questionable. He says, his Son *Achæmenes* succeeded, from whom his Successors were called *Achæmenides*, and the People *Achæmenii*, according to *Propertius*. To him succeeded *Cambyfes*, whom *Herodotus* sometimes calls *Darius*. To him *Cyrus*, the Ancestor of *Darius Hystaspes*, and to him his Son *Cambyfes II.* but we pass over these Things.

I. *Cyrus*, surnam'd *The Great*, is by all agreed to be the Founder of the Empire, and the Son of *Cambyfes* by *Mandane*, Daughter to *Astyages*; except *Ctesius*, who says, he was nothing a-kin to *Astyages*. Authors differ also as to the Circumstances of his Father. *Justin* says, he was a mean Person, and that *Astyages* married his Daughter to him on purpose, because he had dream'd that he saw a Vine come out of her Belly, whose Branches overshadow'd all *Asia*; and therefore when the Child was born, order'd him to be murder'd, as above mention'd; but *Xenophon* says, *Cambyfes* was truly K. of *Persia*, and that *Cyrus* was admirably well vers'd in all the Learning of that Country, and subdu'd the *Babylonian* Monarchy, as above; but Authors differ about the Beginning of his Reign. *Helvicus* and *Isaacson* place it *A. M.* 3391, *Sir John Marsham* in 3402, *Talents* in 3419, *Capel* in 3574, *Ogilvy* in 3421, and *Heylin* in 3406. But however this be, 'tis agreed, that *Cyrus*, after establishing his Empire, releas'd the *Jews* from Captivity, when the 70 Years foretold by *Jeremy* were expired. The Foundations of the 2d Temple were laid in his Time. Authors differ likewise about the Duration of his Reign. Some reckon 30 from his ruling over *Media*; and some say, he reign'd 10, others but 3 over the *Babylonian* Empire. They differ likewise as to the Manner of his Death. *Justin* says, he was kill'd in an Am-

bush laid for him by *Tomyris* Qu. of *Scythia*, who cut off his Head, put it into a Vessel full of Humane Blood, and bid him take a full Draught of it, since he had always thirsted after it. Some say, he was kill'd in a Sea-Fight against the *Samians*, and others against the *Derbices*, a *Scythian* People; but *Xenophon*, who makes him his Hero, says, he died peaceably when worn out with Age, reasoning with his Friends about the Immortality of the Soul. *Heylin* observes, That before his Time, no Part of the *Lesser Asia* was subject to the Eastern Empire, and by Consequence little known to the *Greeks*; but *Cyrus's* Conquest of *Lydia* and *Phrygia* made them inform themselves better of it, which happening just as the Sacred History of the Bible drew near a Conclusion, the *Greeks* continu'd the History of that Part of the World, which in all Probability had otherwise been lost.

In order to give what Light we can into the Chronology of those Times, wherein Authors differ so much, we think proper to observe, that the *Æra* of *Nabonassar*, reckon'd the best Foundation of ancient Chronology, and which *Helvicus* says is infallible, began, according to him, *A. M.* 3203; but Mr. *Dodwell* and he seem to differ in this, for he places *Cyrus's* Reign in the 189th Year of *Nabonassar's* *Æra*, whereas *Dodwell* places it in the 218th; so that the Difference betwixt them is 29 Years; but this must proceed from their different Computations of the Reigns of the Kings, and not from their beginning the *Æra* in a different Year; for Mr. *Dodwell* begins that only one Year before him. The *Æra* of *Nabonassar* reckons the Year to consist of 365 Days, without taking Notice of the odd Hours; so that every 4 Years it begins the Year a Day further back, until in the Space of 1461 Years it returns again to the first Day of the *Epocha*, which was the 26th of *February*. We refer the Curious in Chronology to *Baillie's Opus Historicum & Chronologicum*, for an Explication of the Doubts which are moved about the Chronology of the Old and New Testament.

II. *Cambyfes*, his Son, having subdu'd *Psammiticus* King of *Egypt*, and forced him while a Captive to drink Bull's Blood, added that Country to his Empire. He marched afterwards against the *Ethiopians*; but

but wanting Provisions, was obliged to return with his Army, after they had eaten every 10th Man. He likewise sent some Forces against the *Ammonians*, but 50000 of his Men were buried in the Sands. In the mean time, he had made away with his only Brother *Smerdis*, because he dream'd he sat upon the Throne. During his Invasions, he destroy'd all the sacred Things amongst the *Egyptians*. Then he married two of his own Sisters, his Scruple being removed by his Judges, who told him, That tho' they knew no Law which admitted such Marriages, yet that there was one by which the *Persian* Kings might do what they pleas'd. He afterwards kill'd his youngest Sister when with Child, for charging him with the Murder of his Brother. Upon this, says *Howel*, *Fatizabes*, a Magus, who was Governor of his Household, and his Viceroy in *Persia*, having a Brother who resembled the Deceased both in Name and Body, gave out that he was *Smerdis* the Son of *Cyrus*, and press'd the People to obey him, wherein the rest of the Magi concurred. *Cambyfes* hearing this, resolv'd to set out for *Susa* to quash the Rebellion; but as he mounted his Horse, his Sword slip'd out of his Scabbard, and wounded him in the Thigh, of which he died, after he had reign'd 7 Years and 5 Months, leaving no Issue. He was infamous for his Cruelty and prodigious Lust.

The Interregnum of the Magi.

Smerdis the Magus having reign'd 7 Months, and obtain'd the Reputation of a good Prince, because he govern'd mildly, the Imposture was discover'd by the Daughter of *Otanes*, formerly Concubine to *Cambyfes*, and then to *Smerdis*, who finding that his Ears were cropp'd, call'd to Mind that *Cambyfes* had done it once in a Frolick, and reveal'd it to the 7 Princes, viz. *Otanes*, *Gobryas*, *Intaphernes*, *Megabyzus*, *Hydarnes*, and *Darius*, who rush'd into his Palace and slew him, and the rest of the Magi, in the 8th Month of his Reign. This done, they agreed with *Darius's* Proposal, to meet next Morning, and that he whose Horse neigh'd first before the Sun-rising should have the Empire. The Night before *Darius's* Groom put his Horse to a Mare in the Place where

they were to meet; and next Morning, *Darius's* Horse remembering his Mate, neigh'd as soon as he came to the Place, by which *Darius* obtain'd the Crown.

III. *Darius* was the Son of *Hystaspes*, who was Nephew to *Cambyfes*, and Grandson of *Cyrus*. *Howel* thinks he had only a sort of perpetual Dictatorship, and that others retain'd a Power like that of the Tribunes, because the Scriptures and Prophane Histories mention other Kings between the Slaughter of the Magi and his Reign. He cut off the rest of the Conspirators out of Fear and Envy. In the 2d Year of his Reign, he commanded the rebuilding of the Temple at *Jerusalem* at his own Charge. *Josephus* thinks him to have been the Husband of *Esther*, and that for her Sake he favour'd the Jews; but *Baillie* thinks *Astyages* was her Husband; and rejecting *Josephus's* fabulous Stories of *Zorobabel's* Familiarity with *Darius* as the Cause of his Favour to the Jews, refers to *Ezra*, Chapters 5, 6. where it appears, that the Prophets *Haggai* and *Zechariah* encourag'd the Jews to rebuild the Temple; and when their Enemies complain'd of it to *Darius*, he finding that it had been formerly order'd by *Cyrus*, encourag'd the Jews to go on. Mr. *Baillie* likewise takes Notice of other gross Mistakes of *Josephus*, particularly in his alledging, that Four Millions Six hundred and Twenty eight Thousand Jews returned from *Babylon* at this Time, for which we refer to the Book it self. *Darius* after this destroy'd *Babylon*, which had revolted; so that he accomplish'd *Jeremy's* Prophecy both with respect to the restoring of the Jews, and the punishing of the *Babylonians* for their Cruelty towards them, having crucified 3000 of the chief Citizens, and pulled down their Walls, which *Cyrus* had spared. After this he invaded the *Scythians*, but with little Success. He left *Megabyzus*, the Son of *Zopyrus*, in *Europe*, at the Head of a great Army, who subdued several of the *Grecian* Commonwealths and Princes; but their Leaders being cut off at an Entertainment by the Contrivance of *Alexander*, Son to *Amyntas* King of *Macedonia*, that Army was ruin'd. *Otanes*, another of his Lieutenants, took *Byzantium*, with several Greek Islands; but the *Ionians* revolting, and being join'd by

by the *Athenians*, it brought on a War, wherein sometimes the *Persians*, and sometimes the *Greeks*, had the Advantage. *Darius* being implacable against the *Athenians*, resolv'd to extirpate them, laid a Wooden Bridge over the *Hellespont*, and sent *Mardonius*, his Son-in-Law, with above 100000 Men against them, and a great Fleet; but that was scatter'd by a Tempest, 20000 of his Men drown'd, and the Land-Forces so harass'd by the *Thracians*, that *Mardonius* was forced to retire with Disgrace. *Darius* sent a greater Army against them, which was also defeated by the *Athenians* at *Marathon*, under the Conduct of *Miltiades*, and the Success of the *Greeks* encourag'd the *Egyptians* likewise to revolt. *Darius* design'd to march with a numerous Army against both, but died in the 36th Year of his Reign.

IV. *Xerxes*, his Son, succeeded, recover'd *Egypt*, and resolv'd to invade *Greece*, to which he was encourag'd by the Solicitation of the Princes of *Thessaly*, who envied the Liberty of the *Greeks*, and the *Pisistratidae*, who hated the *Athenians*. He was 4 Years in preparing for this War, and kept *Asia* in a continual Motion towards it. In the 5th Year of his Reign he invaded *Greece* with 12120 Ships, and 5 Millions 283220 Men, as *Howel* computes them, taking in the Retainers that follow'd the Camp, besides the Women that bak'd their Bread, their Concubines, Eunuchs, &c. so that it was no Wonder, says *Howel*, that whole Rivers did not suffice for Drink to this vast Multitude, and their Beasts of Carriage. The *Grecians* enter'd into a Confederacy against him, except a few that sided with him, and sent *Leonidas K.* of *Lacedæmon* to defend the Streights of *Thermopylæ* against him, which he gloriously perform'd, tho' he lost his Life and his Men in the Conflict. *Xerxes* lost 400 Ships in a Sea-Fight at *Artemisium*. The Part of his Army which he sent to *Delphi* was almost destroy'd by Thunder and Tempest, and the Fall of Rocks from Mount *Parnassus*. With the other Part he marched and burnt *Athens*; but his Fleet being entirely routed by the *Greeks* at the Island of *Salamine*, he fled in Precipitation towards the *Hellespont*, for fear the *Ionians* should destroy his Bridge there. When he came, he found it broke down by

a Storm; and which is a notable Instance of Divine Vengeance, he who was so proud before, that he order'd the Sea to be whip'd with Cords, and bound with Chains, because it had formerly broke his Bridge, was now forced with Trembling to cross the *Hellespont* in a little Boat; and most of his Men dying of the Plague, Famine, &c. the Fowls of Prey follow'd them in great Flocks to feed on their Carcasses. He left 300000 Men in *Greece* under *Mardonius*, who routed the *Athenians*; but the other *Greeks* assembling against him in *Beotia* with 110000 Men, he was kill'd in the Engagement, and of his 300000 Men, and 50000 traiterous *Greek* Auxiliaries, scarce 3000 escaped. His Fleet was likewise defeated at the Promontory of *Mycale* in *Asia Minor*, which put an End to the War, A. M. 3526; says *Howel*. These Disasters broke *Xerxes's* Heart, and he was murder'd at the Solicitation of *Artabanus*, the Captain of his Guards, who design'd to usurp his Throne in the 21st Year of his Reign. *Artabanus* endeavour'd to cut off his 3 Sons, *Darius*, *Artaxerxes*, and *Hystaspes*. In order to this, he inform'd *Artaxerxes*, that his Brother *Darius* had a Design against his Life; upon which *Darius* was cut off; but after 7 Months Usurpation, *Artabanus* and his Accomplices were killed as they attempted *Artaxerxes*.

V. *Artaxerxes*, surnamed *Longimanus*, because his Right Arm was longer than the Left, succeeded, says *Howel*, A. M. 3540. The *Bactrians* and *Egyptians* rebelled, but were at length reduc'd. In the 7th Year of his Reign he permitted the *Jews* to go up to *Jerusalem*, Ezra 7. And *Howel* thinks, that tho' the Edict mentions nothing of building the Walls, yet the K. design'd it, since the Inhabitants and Builders of the Temple could not otherwise be safe. *Howel* is also of Opinion, that *Daniel's* 70 Weeks, which he makes to consist of 490 Years, must be dated from this Juncture, and end at the Death of our Saviour, which he likewise proves, by computing from this 7th Year of *Artaxerxes* down thro' the Reigns of the *Persian* and *Macedonian* Kings, the *Hasmonei*, and of *Herod the Great*, or thro' the Series of the Olympiads, and the Years of *Rome*, to the Death of *Christ*; which in the whole amounts to about 490 Years. We refer the Curious

to *Howel* himself for a larger Account. *Herbert* says, the Reign of *Artaxerxes* was peaceable and full of Honour towards the latter End. It appears from *Ezra* 2. and *Nehemiah* 2. 7. he was a constant Well-wisher to the *Jews*; for which Reason some think he was that *Ahashuerus* who was the Husband of *Esther*. *Howel* says, he died in the 41st Year of his Reign, the 2d of the 98th Olympiad, 421 Years before Christ, *A.M.* 3592, and left behind him only one lawful Son.

VI. *Artaxerxes* succeeded, but was killed by *Secundianus*, one of his Generals, in the 45th Day of his Reign.

VII. *Ochus*, one of his Bastard Brothers, was advis'd by the Generals of the Army to ascend the Throne. He put *Secundianus*, who had murder'd his Brother, to Death, by ordering him to be thrown among *Ashes*, and call'd himself by the Name of *Darius* or *Darius II.* He married his own Aunt *Parysatis*, who was Daughter to *Xerxes*, and made *Cyrus*, one of his Sons, the chief of his *Satrapæ*, and sent him against the *Greeks*, over whom he gain'd many Advantages, because of their intestine Divisions. *Darius* died *A.M.* 3600. While he lay on his Death-Bed, his Wife advis'd him to leave the Crown to his Son *Cyrus*, because he was born after he himself was made King; but he rejected it as unjust.

VIII. *Artaxerxes*, his eldest Son, formerly call'd *Arfaxes*, succeeded; and because of his vast Memory, was surnamed *Mnemon*. His Brother *Cyrus* rebell'd against him, but was kill'd and defeated in Battle near *Babylon*. The *Greeks* took Part with *Cyrus*; and after his Defeat, *Xenophon* with the *Greek* Troops made that famous Retreat from *Babylon* to his own Country, so much celebrated in History, which afterwards shew'd the *Macedonians* the Way how easily they might conquer the *Persian* Empire. *Artaxerxes* had War with the *Greeks*, but was unsuccessful; nor was he able to reduce the revolted *Egyptians*. Several of the *Satrapæ* rebell'd against him, and his eldest Son *Darius*, with 50 more of his Brethren, the Sons of Concubines, plotted against *Artaxerxes's* Life; which being discover'd, they were all put to Death. After this, *Ochus*, the second of his lawful Sons, aspired to the Crown, got his lawful Brother *Ariaspes*

poison'd, and his Bastard Brother *Arfamis*, whom his Father doated on, kill'd. The Grief of this kill'd *Artaxerxes* in the 94th Year of his Age, *A.M.* 3944. He kept 360 Concubines, and polluted his own Daughters; but, his Subjects reckon'd him a merciful Prince in comparison of the cruel List of Parricides who succeeded him.

IX. *Ochus* his Son took the Throne, and was surnamed *Artaxerxes*. *Howel* supposes him to be the *Ahashuerus* who married *Esther*, because the Circumstances related in Scripture agree best to him. He conceal'd his Father's Death 10 Months, till he had impos'd upon the People a counterfeit Writing under his Father's Seal, as if he had appointed him to be his Successor. Having thus settled himself by wicked Methods, he fill'd his Palace with barbarous Murders, without any Regard to Dignity, Blood, Sex or Age. *Artabarus*, one of his Generals, revolted to the *Greeks*, defeated several of his Armies, and forced him to a Peace. The *Egyptians*, *Phœnicians*, and *Cyprians*, did likewise revolt, and enter into a Confederacy. *Ochus* march'd against them with 300000 Foot, 30000 Horse, and 300 Ships. *Sidon* was betray'd to him by their own K. *Tennes*, who lost his Head for it; and the Citizens finding the Town lost, they set it on Fire, and about 40000 People perish'd in the Flames. *Ochus* did likewise reduce *Cyprus* and *Egypt*, return'd home with great Glory and Spoil, and carried off a great many of the *Jews*, whom he settled about *Babylon* and the *Caspian* Sea. *Ochus* was poison'd in the 23d Year of his Reign, by Means of his Favourite *Bagoas*, an *Egyptian* Eunuch, in Revenge for *Ochus's* having kill'd *Apis* the K. of *Egypt*, as some say, or rather to enlarge his own Authority. He expos'd *Ochus's* Corps to be devour'd by Cats, and buried another in the Royal Tomb; and as an Emblem of *Ochus's* Cruelty, caus'd Sword-Hilts to be made of the Bones of his Legs. He set *Arfes*, the Son of *Ochus*, upon the Throne, and cut off all his Brethren, that the King might have no Friends to depend upon but himself: So that *Bagoas* did actually reign while *Arfes* had only the Name; but perceiving that he began to take Notice of Things, and was likely to call him to Account, he murder'd him and all his Children in the 3d Year

Year of his Reign. The Royal Family being thus destroy'd, there was scarce one of the Blood left to possess the Crown; upon which he pitched on *Codomannus*, a Friend of his, who some say had no Relation to the Royal Family; and others, that he was Grandson to *Ochus*, and had behav'd himself well in the *Cadusian War*, for which he was made Governor of *Armenia*.

X. *Codomannus*, after being elected King, was call'd *Darius*, as a Name of more Majesty and Honour. *Bagoas* soon repented of his promoting him, and design'd to have poison'd him; but the King perceiving it, oblig'd him to drink the poisonous Draught himself. This was that *Darius* against whom *Alexander the Great* made War; and defeating him in the three Battles of *Granicus*, *Cilicia*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Persians* was transferred to the *Grecians*, A. M. 3675, according to *Howel*.

How long the *Grecian Monarchy* continu'd, we have mention'd already. After this Overthrow, the *Persian Name* lay in Obscurity for about 535 Years, till *Arfaces*, one of the *Parthian Nobility*, taking Advantage of the Differences that happen'd among the Successors of *Alexander's* Captains, who had divided the Empire amongst themselves, perswaded the *Persians*, and other People of the *East*, and set up for King himself about A. M. 3718, and from him the *Persian Kings* of the second Dynasty were call'd *Arfacides*. Some say, he was a Person of obscure Birth, but rais'd himself by commanding a Band of Robbers, who plunder'd the Merchants and other Passengers. He enlarg'd his Dominions from the *Indus* almost to the *Euphrates*, and was as much esteem'd by the *Persians* as *Ptolemy* by the *Egyptians*, or *Romulus* by the *Romans*.

II. *Mithridates*, or *Arfaces II.* succeeded about 3741. *Antiochus the Great* invaded him with 120000 Men, but without Success. We have nothing remarkable of *Pampatius*, or *Phraartes* his Son, who were the next Successors.

V. *Mithridates II.* Brother to *Phraartes*, subdu'd the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to the *Euphrates*. The next Successors were *Phraartes II.* kill'd in Battle by the *Scythians*; *Artabanus*, his Uncle; *Pachorus*,

Artabanus's Son; *Mithridates III.* *Pachorus's* Brother; of which 4 we have very little memorable.

X. *Horodes*. *Orodes*, or *Dorideus*, Brother to *Mithridates III.* whom he defeated, and caus'd to be slain in his own Sight, succeeded about 3903. He vanquish'd *Crassus* the Roman, slew 20000 of his Men, and pour'd melted Gold down *Crassus's* Throat; a just Punishment for his Covetousness, and robbing the Temple of *Jerusalem* in his March against the *Parthians*. *Ventidius*, one of *M. Anthony's* Lieutenants, reveng'd this Disgrace, by defeating the *Parthians* in Battle, and had the first Honour of a Triumph at *Rome* for subduing the *Parthians*. *Horodes* was afterwards slain by his own Son.

XI. *Phraartes III.* having murder'd his Father, and most of his Brothers, assum'd the Crown. *M. Anthony* march'd against him with 16 Legions, but was defeated, and obliged to retire with the Loss of 10 Legions. Yet the Power of the *Romans* was so great, that *Phraartes* thought fit to submit to *Augustus*, restor'd all the Captives, and the *Parthians* were obliged to accept such Princes as the *Romans* were pleas'd to set over them. *Phraartes* was murder'd by his own Son *Phraartes IV.* who succeeded by the Assistance of the *Romans*. *Horodes* his Son succeeded, and was slain in a Tumult. *Vonon* was set up in his Place, but outed by

XV. *Tiridates*, who was favour'd by the *Romans*, because he submitted to their Power. This disgusted his Subjects: Upon which *Artabanus*, a *Parthian*, but nothing related to the Royal Family, taking Advantage of the Discontents, kill'd *Tiridates*, put an End to the Race of the *Arfacides*, set up for himself, and founded the 3d Dynastie of the *Persian Kings*. There were 11 other Kings of this Race, of whom we have nothing remarkable till the last of them, who was called *Artabanus III.* and barbarously murder'd by *Caracalla* the Roman Emperor, Son to *Septimius Severus*. *Caracalla* courted *Artabanus's* Daughter, and a Match being agreed on, *Artabanus*, with the Flower of his Nobility, came on the Faith of this Agreement to solemnize the Marriage at the Roman Camp, where he and his Nobility were barbarously murder'd, or (as some say) the King himself escap'd. This Treachery

chery did so incense the *Parthians*, that they fought gallantly against the *Romans* in a set Battle for 3 Days, when understanding that *Macrinus* the *Roman* General had slain *Caracalla*, and reveng'd their Quarrel, they made Peace with him.

The *Parthians* and *Romans* being so much weaken'd by those Battles, *Artaxerxes*, a noble young *Persian*, improv'd the Opportunity to recover the Liberty of his Country from both, and set up for himself. The *Parthians* under their King *Artabanus*, as some say, fought bravely against him for three Days, but were defeated. *Artaxerxes*, proud of this Success, demanded Restitution from the *Romans* of all the Provinces of *Asia* which formerly belong'd to the *Persian* Empire. *Severus* march'd against him with an Army divided into three Bodies, two of which were defeated, and he himself narrowly escap'd with the third. *Artaxerxes* having thus laid the Foundation of the 4th Dynastie, consisting of natural *Persian* Kings, about A. D. 226, died.

II. *Sapores* succeeded. The Emperor *Valerian* march'd against him, but was defeated, taken, and made a Footstool by *Sapores* when he mounted his Horse, and afterwards flea'd alive: The greatest Contempt that ever befel a *Roman* Emperor, but a just Punishment to *Valerian* for his cruel Persecution of the Christians. *Sapores* was afterwards routed by *Odenathus* K. of the *Palmyreneans*, and *Zenobia* his Wife, and kill'd in the same Place where *Gordienus* had been murder'd by his Order, which was a just Vengeance upon him for his Cruelty. During his Time, the *Persian* Name was so terrible to the *Romans*, that *Constantine the Great* fix'd his Residence at *Constantinople*, and transplanted many Colonies and Garrisons from the N. W. Part of the Empire into the E. to keep the *Persians* in Awe. We have little of his 5 Successors, but that *Varranes*, the 3d of 'em, was defeated by *Carus*; that *Marses*, the 4th of them, was forced to seek Peace of *Dioclesian*, defeated *Gallerius*, was at last routed by him, and burnt himself in Despair.

Sapores II. the 6th from *Sapores I.* succeeded about A. C. 309. He was acknowledged Sovereign before he was born, and the Crown at an Adventure set upon his

Mother's Belly, by the Advice of the Magi, who said he would be a Son. When he came to reign, at the Instigation of the *Jewish* and *Persian* Priests, he rais'd a terrible Persecution against the Christians, martyr'd 250 Bishops, and 30000 others, which occasion'd *Constantine the Great* to write to him in their Behalf. *Sapores* besieg'd *Nisibis*, worsted *Constantius*, and had almost enter'd *Constantinople*. In his Days *Julian* the Apostate persecuted the Christians in the W. as he did in the East; but the Blood shed by both of them prov'd the Seed of the Church. The Emperor *Jovian* made a dishonourable Peace for 30 Years with *Sapores*, who conquer'd *Armenia*, and put out their King's Eyes. *Sapores* died in 380, having sigh'd out his affrighted Ghost, says *Herbert*, in the 71st Year of his Age and Reign. We have nothing remarkable of his Successors till the 4th of them, called *Isdigerdes I.* He was a constant Friend to the *Romans*, was converted to Christianity, says *Socrates*, destroy'd the Idol-Temples, and extinguish'd the pretended immortal Fire *Arcadius*, the Christian Emperor of the East, committed the Education of his Son *Theodosius* to him, which he faithfully discharg'd. Christianity increas'd very much in *Persia* during his Reign. He died A. C. 426.

Varanes IV. succeeded, was cruel, perfidious, and a Persecutor of the Christians, in whose Defence *Theodosius* the Emperor of the East sent an Army against him. *Varanes* call'd the *Arabian Saracens* to his Assistance, and assembled so numerous an Army near *Babylon*, that they cover'd the Country for many Miles; but were struck with such a pannick Fear from Heaven, that they fled with Confusion before the Battle, and above 100000 of them were drown'd in the *Euphrates*. This remarkable Judgment broke his Heart in the 20th Year of his Tyranny.

Perozes, the 2d from him, was defeated by the *Huns* and *Scythians*, with whom he made a dishonourable Peace, and breaking it, was slain by them in the 20th Year of his Reign.

Cabades, the 2d from him, routed the *Huns*, and made a brutish Law, That Women should be common, for which he was imprison'd and depos'd, but restor'd again by

by the Help of his Wife. His Palace being possess'd by Devils, so that he could not enter it, he employ'd the Jews and the Magi to cast them out in vain. Then he apply'd himself to the Christians, by whose Prayers it being effected, he stop'd the Persecution, and honour'd them, says *Nicephorus*. He was frequently routed by *Belisarius* the Emperor's General, and died A. C. 527.

Chosroes I. succeeded. He was a great, learned, and excellent Prince, made a Peace with the Romans for 110 Years, call'd, *The perpetual Peace*, but quickly broke it. *Belisarius* put a Stop to his Victories, yet he routed 50000 Romans, and the Persians who join'd them, flea'd his General for fighting ill, took much from the Romans, and died about 573.

Hormisdas III. succeeded in 579, was often routed by *Philippicus*, sent a Woman's Habit to his General *Baza*, as a Reproach for his Cowardize, which so incens'd him, that he conspir'd against his Sovereign, and depos'd him about 588.

Chosroes II. succeeded. *Herbert* confounds him with *Chosroes I.* He was one of the wickedest Tyrants that ever mounted the Persian Throne, murder'd his elder Brother to make Way for himself, kill'd his Mother, and beat his Father to Death with Clubs. The People being justly offended at his Barbarity and Hypocrisy, he engag'd them in a desperate War against the *Palmyreans*, wherein they were defeated by *Qu. Zenobia*. He ravag'd *Phœnicia*, where he brutishly forc'd *Euphemia*, a Christian Lady, and compelled the Nymphs of *Daphne* to offer Incense to him as a Deity, threatening otherwise to ravish them. He plunder'd *Jerusalem*; but upon the Approach of *Belisarius* with an Army, he made a Peace with the Romans, which he broke next Year, and invaded *Phœnicia*, where he kill'd *Narses*, the Emperor's General. *Justin* the Emperor defeated *Chosroes*, who soon after rais'd another Army, ravag'd *Syria*, and enter'd *Iberia* and *Armenia*. The *Armenians* about this Time receiv'd the Christian Faith, for which being persecuted by *Chosroes*, the Emperor *Justin*, at their Request, sent a great Army against him under *Tiberius*, who was elected *Cesar*. *Chosroes* was defeated, and narrowly escap'd with his Life, by passing the *Euphrates* on an Elephant. The Loss of this

Battle, and of his Idol the sacred Fire, which his Enemies took, and made Sport with, broke his Heart; so that he died in the 48th Year of his Reign, leaving this Character behind him, That he was cruel to the Christians, perfidious to the Greeks, and tyrannical to the Persians. *Evagrius* and others say, That he was depos'd by his Subjects under the Conduct of *Barames* or *Baza*, who dethron'd his Father, and fled for Assistance to *Mauritius*, the Emperor of the East, by whose Help he recover'd his Throne, for which he seem'd to be very thankful, and pretended that he would without Delay profess himself a Christian; but his *Qu. Casarea*, who was really one, knowing his Treachery, fled privately to *Constantinople*, where she might own her self to be such. *Chosroes* follow'd her with 60000 Men; but finding he could not recover her by Force, nor upon any other Terms than his turning Christian, he was baptiz'd, to the Amazement of the Persians, and the whole World, says *Paulus Diaconus*: But as soon as he heard that the good Emperor *Mauritius* was murder'd by the treacherous *Phocas*, on Pretence of revenging his Quarrel, he levied an Army, renounced Christianity, and forced his Subjects that would continue Christians to turn *Nestorians*. He enter'd *Syria* with 100000 Men, subjected *Egypt*, and Part of *Libya*; and in *Asia Minor* 'tis said he massacred no less than 300000 Christians, being prompted unto it by the Jews who follow'd his Camp. The Emperor *Heraclius* sent Ambassadors to treat for Peace with him, which he despising, was several times defeated, and fled into *Media*, whither *Heraclius* pursu'd him, destroy'd his Idols and their Temples, with an Image of *Chosroes*, which the Pagans worship'd. *Chosroes* rais'd several more Armies, that were constantly defeated by *Heraclius*. Upon this, *Chosroes* fell sick with Grief, and appointing his Son *Mardeses*, by his beloved Wife *Syra*, to be his Successor, his other Son *Syroes* murder'd his Brother before his Father's Face, and commanded some Villains to shoot *Chosroes*, who died in great Anguish of Mind, acknowledging the Justice of God in punishing him thus for having murder'd his own Father.

Syroes succeeded his Father about 627, murder'd his Brothers, and was himself slain by *Sarbaras*, one of his Generals. Authors differ about his Successors, whether they were 3, 5, 6, 7, or 11. The last of them is said to have been *Hormisdas II.* the last King of this Race. He was slain by *Omar*, the 2d Caliph after *Mahomet*, about A. C. 640.

Their Modern HISTORY.

THE Caliphs who succeeded the Impostor *Mahomet* having subdu'd this Kingdom, and appointed several Sultans to govern it as Deputies in their respective Districts, these Sultans came to make War upon one another, and at last *Mahomet*, the chief Sultan of *Persia*, call'd the *Turks* to his Assistance under *Tangrolipix*, as we have mentioned already, who settled a 5th Dynastie here of the *Turkish* Line about 1030, of whom *Tangrolipix* was the first.

II. *Axan* his Son, who sent *Cutlumoses* his Kinsman with a mighty Army into *Asia Minor*, most of which he took from the Christians, as we have mention'd before.

III. *Balak*. He reign'd in *Persia* at the Beginning of the War of the *Holy Land*, undertaken by the Western Christians, whom he opposed. There's nothing certain of his Successors, till

IV. *Cassanes*, who was the last King of the *Turkish* Line, and begun his Reign about 1198. He was vanquish'd about 1202 by the Cham of *Tartary*, *Gingis Chan*, who founded the 6th Dynastie of the *Tartarian* Kings. His Successor *Haalon*, who was made K. of *Persia* by the Great Chan, exterminated the Race of the Caliphs of *Bagdat*. There were in all 9 Princes of this Line, the last of whom was *Abusaid*, who began his Reign about 1317. After his Death, about 1337, the most powerful of the *Tartar* Princes seiz'd in Property the several Parts of the Country they commanded, and thus it continu'd till

Tamerlane over-run the whole. His 4th Son succeeded him as K. of *Persia* in 1405. There are 5 other Princes of this Race, the last of whom, called *Zeuzes*, *Joancha*, or *Malaonchres*, was defeated in 1472 by *Ussan-Cassan*, an *Armenian* Prince, who laid the

Foundation of the 7th Dynastie, call'd the *Armenian*. There were 5 other Princes of this Line, the last of whom, call'd *Alamac* or *Hagaret*, was at first successful in War against the *Sophian* Family, which begun then to make a great Figure in *Persia*; but was at last defeated by *Ismael Sophi*, who founded the 8th, which is the present Dynastie of the *Sophian* Race. Authors differ about the Etymology of the Name *Sophi*. Some say, 'twas given those Princes by the *Greeks*, from whom they were descended by the Mother's Side. *Herbert* says, he could meet with no Satisfaction about it from the *Persians*. *Sir John Chardin* says, it signifies *Friend*, *Elected*, or *Purified*; but he thinks the first Sense most proper with respect to the Kings. He adds, they are neither call'd so in general nor in particular, and therefore taxes *European* Writers with Ignorance when they call them the *Sophi's* of *Persia*, or the *Grand Sophi's*; and says, if those Princes understood the *European* Characters, and that this Title is given them on Letters directed to them from *Europe*, they would certainly take it as a great Affront.

I. *Ismael Sophi*, was the 3d Son of *Aidar*, a Cheick or Lawyer. He marched with 300000 Men against the *Turks*, from whom he recover'd all the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire they had taken. He overthrew them in a set Battle, and took *Bagdat*, *Baste*, *Kurdestan*, and several other Forts on their Frontiers. With the like Success he took the Province of *Candahor*, and other Places from the Great Mogul. He afterwards marched to *Georgia*, and made their King his Tributary. The Fame of these Victories brought Ambassadors to compliment him from most of the Princes of *Europe*. *Herbert* says, *Bajazet* thought he was the Ghost of *Tamerlane*, and the *Jews* took him for their Messias, but found him afterwards a second *Vespasian*. He died in 1525, the 20th of his Reign, and the 40th (some say the 45th) Year of his Age. He was the first *Persian* King that adher'd to the Sect of *Aly*, from whence some think he was not only the chief Propagator, but the first Instituter of that Sect. He is commended among the *Persians* for his Justice, but would drink Wine, and eat Swine's Flesh; and he kept a Hog which he call'd *Bajazet*,
in

in Derision of the Great Turk. *Herbert* says, this Prince instituted the *Persian* Life-Guard, called *Couzel-Basha's*, or Red-Heads, which at first consisted of 100 Horse, but afterwards increas'd to 1000, who have extraordinary Pay, but must be well experienc'd in Arms, and of more than ordinary Repute, before they can be admitted.

II. His eldest Son *Tamas* succeeded, who being a weak Prince, the *Turks* recover'd all the *Persians* had taken from them, except *Bagdat* and *Wan*. Then Sultan *Solyman* entering *Persia*, took *Tauris*, and laid Siege to *Sultania*; but the Rains obliged him to raise it; and as he was retiring to his own Frontiers, he was engaged by the *Persians* near *Betlis*, and routed. *Herbert* says, That the *Turkish* Army before the Battle consisted of above 200000 Horse and Foot; that 5 Sangiacks, 800 Janizaries, and 20000 private Soldiers, were slain, and 40 Pieces of Cannon taken, together with *Solyman's* Seraglio of Beauties. This Victory is Annually celebrated by the *Persians* on the 3d and 10th of *October*. *Solyman* enter'd *Persia* again the next Year with 150000 Men; but *Tamas* having prevail'd with the Viceroy of *Goa* for 5000 *Portuguese*, with Artillery-Men, who brought 20 Cannon with them, he worsted him in another Rencounter. *Herbert* adds, That from this Day forward, the *Persians* were acquainted with the Use of Cannon and small Shot. Notwithstanding this, *Solyman* enters *Persia* again with 80000 Men. *Tamas* engag'd him near *Erex*; but the *Persian* Horse not enduring the Noise of the Guns, many of his Men were killed, and the rest put to Flight. *Solyman* dying soon after, his Successor *Amurath* renew'd the War with *Persia*; and *Tamas*, while he was preparing for his Defence, died *A. D.* 1576, in the 68th Year of his Age, after he had reign'd 50 Years, says *Herbert*, or (according to others) 53.

III. *Aidar* or *Eider*, the 3d, or (as some say) the 2d Son of *Tamas*, being in particular Favour with his Father, caus'd himself to be crown'd before his Death; and taking Advantage of the Absence of his elder Brother, whom he is said to have imprison'd, succeeded to the Throne, but was soon after murder'd by his own Sister *Periaconcona*, and others engag'd in his Brother *Ismael's* Faction. *Herbert* says, That he and

8 others of his Brethren were slain at the same Time.

IV. *Ismael* II. whom some call the eldest, and others the 2d Son of *Tamas*, succeeded in the 43d Year of his Age. He put all those to Death who adher'd to his Brother *Eider's* Interest. In order to try the Inclination of the *Chans*, he caus'd a Rumour to be spread Abroad of his Death, and then executed those who expressed the least Satisfaction with the News, which so terrified the rest, especially his Sister *Periaconcona*, say the *Holstein* Ambassadors, that she and her Adherents took away his Life in 1577, and the second of his Reign, but after what Manner is unknown; yet *Herbert* seems positive, that his Sister, and 4 young Sultans in Women's Apparel, enter'd his Chamber, and cut off his Head. After him succeeded,

V. *Mahomet*, who having embrac'd a Religious Life, by Reason of the Weakness of his Eyes, was surnamed *Chodabende*, i. e. *Servant of God*. *Tavernier* says, his Dim-sightedness was occasion'd by the Application of a hot Iron to his Eyes, at the Command of his unnatural Brother. *Mahomet* having fled to *Georgia* during the Usurpation of his younger Brothers, was now invited to the Crown; and some say, his Sister *Periaconcona* was the chief Cause of his Advancement: Nevertheless, in 1578, when he came to the Government, he caus'd her to be beheaded for contriving the Death of his two Brothers. He was very negligent in his Administration, by which he gave the *Turks* and *Usbeque Tartars* an Opportunity to take Possession of *Armenia*, *Media*, a great Part of *Georgia*, and several Provinces of *Persia*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, he died in 1585, but *Herbert* says in 1597. He left 3 Sons behind him, *Emir Hemse*, *Ismael*, and *Abas*.

VI. *Emir Hemse*, the eldest, during his Father's Life-time expelled the *Turks* and *Tartars* out of *Persia*, and at his Death succeeded him; but had not reign'd above 8 Months, before he was murder'd, at the Instigation of *Ismael*, or (as others say) of *Abas* his younger Brother.

VII. *Ismael* III. succeeded. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, he enjoyed the Royal Dignity but a few Months, and was killed by the Means of his Brother *Abas*, who caus'd his

his Barber to cut his Throat; but in the Presence of several Lords who were privy to the Conspiracy, cut the Barber in Pieces on the Spot, that it might not seem his Brother was murder'd by his Consent.

VIII. *Abas* ascended the Throne with general Applause. He cut off his Governor *Murschiduli*, with all his Friends and Adherents, because he upbraided him in open Council with Want of Years and Experience, which was a just Judgment upon that Minister, who had advis'd him to murder his Brother. *Abas* recover'd the Provinces which the *Turks* and *Tartars* had taken from the *Persians* in his Father's Time. He besieg'd the strong Fortrefs of *Orumi* 8 Months in vain, but at last carried it by the Assistance of the *Curds*, a free People of the Neighbourhood, whom he had engag'd by Promises; but fearing they might afterwards join the *Turks*, he invited their chief Leaders to a Dinner, and barbarously murder'd them in his Tent. The *Turks* invaded *Persia* with 500000 Men, and after a bloody Battle, which lasted a whole Day, they retired in the Night, and were pursu'd by *Abas*. He narrowly escap'd being poison'd by 5 of his *Grandees*, but took Antidotes in time, and order'd the 5 Traytors to be cut in Pieces. Two Years after the *Turks* besieged *Eriuan* with 300000 Men, but were forced to raise it. They defeated the *Persians* afterwards in 5 Engagements; but were routed at last by *Abas*, which brought on a Peace of 20 Years. After this, the War was renew'd with various Success, but to the Disadvantage of the *Turks* at last. *Abas* having forbid the Use of Tobacco in his Camp, order'd a Tobacco-Merchant, who had sold some privately to his Soldiers, to be burnt, together with his Tobacco. *Abas* becoming insupportable by his Cruelty, some of the *Grandees* threw a Note into the Chamber of his Son *Sefi-Mirza*, to acquaint him, That if he would consult his own Happiness and theirs, they would set him on the Throne; for he was universally belov'd by the People, and till that Time by his Father, because of his Valour and other good Qualities. But the young Prince abhorring the unnatural Design, carried the Note to his Father, who seem'd to take it well; but the Horror of his own Guilt, and the Apprehensions of

his Son's Popularity, depriv'd him of all Rest, and made him resolve upon his Death. To this he was encourag'd by certain Court Parasites, and first propos'd the Murder to the Constable of *Persia*, an *Armenian* by Descent, and an ancient Gentleman, who threw himself at the King's Feet, and begged to be excus'd from dipping his Hands in Royal Blood. But another barbarously undertook it, and surprising the Prince as he came from the Bath, attended only by one Page, told him, It was his Father's Will he should die; upon which the poor unfortunate Prince, with his Eyes lifted up to Heaven, cry'd out, O good God! What have I done to deserve this? May the Traytor be cursed who is the Occasion of it; but since it is God's Will and the King's, it must be done. He had scarce spoke the Words, when the Villain stabbed him dead, and order'd his Body to be thrown into a Fen. Upon the News of this Murder, the People assembled about the Palace, and threaten'd to force it, if the Murderer was not deliver'd to them. The young Prince's Mother, who was a Christian Slave, upbraided the King with his Tyranny, and flew in his Face, which he took very patiently, ask'd her with Tears, What he shou'd have done, since he was informed that he had plotted against his Life? Adding, that it was now past Remedy, &c. He seem'd to repent, mortified himself for some Time, mourned a whole Year, order'd the Place where his Son was murder'd to be enclos'd with a high Wall, endow'd it with a Revenue for maintaining so many Poor, and made it a Sanctuary. He sent for the *Persian* Lords who had fomented this Jealousy against his Son, on Pretence of giving them a Feast, and order'd Poison to be mix'd with their Wine, till all of them died in his Presence. He sent for *Bebut*, who had murder'd the Prince, commanded him to cut off the Head of his own Son, and to bring it him in his Hand; and when he came into the Room, ask'd him, How he did? *Bebut* reply'd, That his Grief for being the Executioner of his own Son wou'd bring him to his Grave. The King answer'd, That now he was able to judge of the Grief he had occasion'd him by the Murder of the Prince, and that he might be very well satisfied in being equal in that

Respect to the K. his Master. The brutish Murderer did not escape so, for tho' the King spared him, because what he did was by his own Command, *Bebut* was soon after murder'd by his Slaves when in Drink, for his Cruelty towards them. And the King was so little concern'd at it, that he wou'd not have punish'd the Murderers, had it not been for the Sollicitation of the other Grandees, who represented to him the Danger they were in, if *Bebut's* Slaves escap'd without Punishment. The Prince's Widow being afraid that her Son might run his Father's Fate, she conceal'd him for some Time, till *Abas*, who had blinded his other two Sons, to prevent their aspiring to the Crown, pretended a mighty Fondness for his Grandson, and brought him to Court under his Mother's Tuition, that he might be bred up for the Succession; but the jealous Tyrant perceiving the Youth to inherit his Father's Valour, and being afraid he would gain the Affections of the People, he order'd him every Day a Dose of Opium to stupify his Senses; but his Mother, instead of that, gave him Antidotes to fortify him against all Sorts of Poison. *Abas* did after this subdue the *Georgians*, took *Babylon* from the *Turks*, and *Ormuz* from the *Portuguese*; and about the latter End of 1629, finding himself extremely ill, and that no Antidotes could preserve him from his Distemper, which proceeded from Poison, he order'd his chief Lords to set his Grandson on the Throne, and to conceal his Death till it was effected. *Abas* died in the 65th Year of his Age, and the 45th of his Reign. The *Holstein* Ambassadors, from whom we have this Account, say, That his Memory is still in great Veneration among the *Persians*, because of his Wisdom, Courage, Conquest, and some extraordinary Acts of Justice, notwithstanding his Cruelty. Upon his Death, the Nobles went to *Ispahan* to crown the young Prince, according to his Order; but his Mother suspecting they came to murder him, barricado'd his Doors for three Days, till they told her they would force them open. The disconsolate Lady being no longer able to resist, cry'd out with Tears, Go, Child, follow thy Father, for the Murderers are at hand to send thee after him; but was agreeably disappointed when she

saw the Lords kiss his Feet, and carry him to the Palace to set him on the Throne.

IX. *Sefi*, who took that Name according to his Grandfather's Order, and prov'd as cruel as he; for he order'd his only Brother, the Son of a Concubine, to be murder'd, together with his two Uncles, whom his Grandfather had blinded, and likewise his Uncle, *Isachan*, who had married his Aunt by the Father's Side, and their two Sons, because she had unwarily said to him one Day, That having no Issue of his own, she hop'd the *Persians* would after his Death crown one of her Sons. While he lay encamp'd near *Bagdat*, which the *Turks* had besieg'd, his Nobles plotted against him because of his Cruelties; which being discover'd by *Seiul-Chan*, one of those who chiefly contributed to his Advancement, and advis'd him to dispatch them, *Sefi* answer'd, He would take his Advice, and begin with himself, since he was one of the most powerful of his Lords, and stabbed him with his own Hands, tho' he had done him eminent Services in Foreign Embassies and otherwise. He treated so many of his Nobles in this barbarous Manner, that several of the Governors of Provinces revolted to the *Turks* and the Great Mogul. Tho' to secure himself of their Allegiance, he kept several of their Wives and Sons as Hostages at Court; but upon their Revolt, he barbarously expos'd the Ladies to be Prostitutes, and their Sons to be Catamites. He valued the Lives of his Subjects so little, and was so insensible of Gratitude, that at the Siege of *Erivan*, tho' there was no Breach made in the Walls, he commanded the Army to storm the Town; and when his Lords represented the Impossibility of Success, the Place was so very strong, he swore that he would lead on the Attack himself, and for that End took the Habit of a common Soldier. The Lords address'd themselves to his Mother, to divert him from what would certainly cost him his Life; which he took so ill, that he gave her a Box on the Ear, when she begged him with Tears not to expose his Person. Upon this, the Lords fell at his Feet, begged him to forbear but 24 Hours, and if they did not take the Town by that Time, they would no further oppose his Resolution. Then they attacked *Erivan* with

with the whole Army, and carried it, but with the Loss of 50000 Men. His monstrous Cruelty being thus insupportable, the Lords got Poison to be given him by the Ladies of the Seraglio; which being discover'd, he prevented the Effect by Antidotes, made 40 of the Ladies, with their Attendants, be buried alive, and his own Mother amongst the rest. Tho' he was successful at first against the *Turks*, they recover'd *Babylon* and many other Places from him; so that by the just Judgment of God, his Affairs declined every Day. He gave himself wholly up to Wine and Women; for besides three Wives, he had 300 Concubines. Whenever he clad himself in Scarlet, the Court was in a general Consternation, for it was a certain Sign that he design'd some barbarous Execution, and no body knew on whom the Storm would fall. They poison'd him at last in 1642, in the 12th Year of his Reign, and he was succeeded by his Son

X. *Abas II.* at 13 Years of Age. *Tavernier* says, That on the Day appointed for his solemn Entrance into *Ispahan*, the Citizens were order'd to march out in Arms, and with the standing Forces lin'd both Sides the Road for 5 Leagues, two of which were cover'd with Tissues of Gold and Silver, Carpets of Silk, and other rich Stuffs, at the Expence of the Inhabitants. *Tavernier* went out to meet him, in Company of the *English* and *Dutch* Merchants; and when they came near his Person, the General of the Horse told the King who they were; upon which they alighted, and had the Honour to kiss his Majesty's Boot. When the King came to that Part of the Road spread with Tissue, none was allow'd to ride over it but his Majesty, and after he passed it, every one scramble'd to get what they could. In 1643, the Prince of the *Usbeque Tartars*, whose Sons had rebelled against him, came to desire *Abas's* Help. He sent a great Body of Troops and Officers to receive him within 4 Days Journey of *Ispahan*, and furnish'd him every Day with fresh Attendants, rich Tents, and other Necessaries. The Road for a League and a half without the City was covered with rich Carpets, and Silk Stuffs, and the King himself went so far to meet him. As soon as he saw the *Tartar* Prince, he made a Shew of spurring

on his Horse, and when he came up to him, put his Foot out of the Stirrop, as if he design'd to alight, but did not. The *Tartar*, tho' ancient, presently alighted to salute the King, who passed some Compliments on him for giving himself the Trouble to alight; and then mounting again, they rode together upon the Carpets to the City. *Abas* furnish'd him with 15000 Horse, 8000 Foot, and a great Sum of Money, for which the *Tartar* gave him a Province frontiering on *Perzia*, that brought the King a great Revenue. *Tavernier* adds, That the Governor of *Schiraz* presented *Abas* with a wild Ass, whose Skin was as red as Scarlet, and he had a Horn growing out of his Forehead, which was a Foot long.

Sir *John Chardin* gives this King *Abas* a mighty Character, says he was a great Friend to Strangers, encourag'd them to trade in his Dominions, was very favourable to Christians, and protected them from all Insolence. He was affable, liberal, successful in his Wars, and formidable to his Neighbours the Czar of *Muscovy*, the Cham of *Tartary*, and the K. of *India*. He died the 25th of September, 1666. of the Foul Disease, as Sir *John* thinks, by too much Use of Women, according to the lewd Custom of that Country, tho' some think he was poison'd. He had been very severe to his eldest Son, and confin'd him under a strong Guard at a great Distance from himself, because he thought him too aspiring. When he died, his Death was conceal'd, as usual; and having drop'd some Expressions during his Agony, that he was poison'd, but that his Son would revenge it, his Physicians and great Lords knowing the Danger they were in by such a Suggestion, they agreed in general to chuse his youngest Son for Successor, because being an Infant, they should be continu'd in the Administration; and it would be long e'er he was in a Condition to enquire into the Manner of his Father's Death. But this was oppos'd meerly out of Respect to Justice by the Eunuch, who had the younger Son in keeping. The principal Argument they insisted on for excluding the eldest Son was, that his Father had made him blind to prevent his Succession, for none who labour under that Defect are capable of succeeding by the *Mahometan*

metan Law ; but the Eunuch told them boldly the Pretence was false ; that the Prince was not blind ; that they urged the Objection meerly for selfish Ends ; that for him he spoke against his own Interest, since they were for chusing his Pupil ; but rather than suffer such notorious Injustice, he would strangle him with his own Hands. This Disinterestedness of the Eunuch turn'd the whole Assembly, so as they pitch'd on the eldest Brother, but kept the King's Death secret from all but themselves, till their Deputies could arrive at *Ispahan* from the Camp to acquaint him with the Succession. They sent the General of the Musketers, with 11 of their Deputies, upon this Errand. When they came to the Place of the Prince's Confinement, the Princess, his Mother refus'd them Admittance, bewail'd her Son, and curs'd them, as being sent to murder him by Order of her Husband. They could scarce prevail by all the Assurances they gave her to make her believe the contrary, till she saw them prostrate themselves before him, and salute him as King in his Father's stead.

XI. He succeeded by the Name of *Shasfi* II. but soon after his coming to the Throne fell dangerously ill. *Tavernier* says, 'tis the Custom in such Cases for the Grandees to put great Sums of Gold into a Basin set with Precious Stones, which is wav'd three times over the King's Head, with these Expressions, *This Money is sacrificed for his Majesty's Health*. If he recover, he himself and the Ladies of the Seraglio add plentifully to it, and give it the Poor ; but if he die, 'tis put into the Treasury, and the Poor have nothing. The *Armenians* and other Christians were commanded to pray for his Recovery, and they likewise sent Money to be wav'd over his Head ; but instead of saying, *They sacrific'd it for his Health*, they assign'd it for Alms to the Poor. The King being recovered, but having an ill Habit of Body, which made him still languish, the Physicians, who knew their own Danger if he should not perfectly recover, put it upon the Astrologers, as if they had not chosen a lucky Hour for setting him on the Throne. Therefore they advis'd the repeating of the Ceremony, and that he should alter his Name. This pleas'd the King and his Council ; so that the Phy-

sicians and Astrologers agreed to renew the Ceremony on the first lucky Day ; and when the Morning of it came, that there might be no Interregnum, one of the Gaur, or Worshippers of Fire, who pretend to be descended from the *Rustans*, the ancient Kings of *Persia* and *Parthia*, was order'd to set himself upon the Throne, with his Back against a Wooden Figure, which represented him to the Life ; and all the Grandees were order'd by the King to do Homage to the Gaur. This Action lasted till the lucky Hour, which was a little before Sun-set. Then came an Officer of the Court, who cut off the Head of the Wooden Figure, when the Gaur took to his Heels and fled. Upon this, the King ascended the Throne, had *Sophi's* Bonnet put on his Head, and was regirt with the Scymiter, which is their Ceremony of Investiture, and took the Name of *Solyman*. *Tavernier* says, he was forced to act this Comedy to satisfy the Law, which enjoined that he should change his Name, and take new Possession, by ejecting an Usurper, who had wrongfully claim'd the Throne : And to give Countenance to this, the Gaur was set up as a Pretender. The King after this happening to recover, and the Famine to cease, the Physicians establish'd their Reputation, and the Astrologers lost theirs, except two or three of the most skilful, who still have a Share of the Royal Favour. We refer for the Ceremonies of this Coronation to *Sir John Chardin's* Account of it. He says, this young Prince being altogether incapable of Government, since he had no other Education but among Women and Eunuchs, gave himself wholly up to his Pleasures, and left the Administration to his Ministers ; but it seems he has improv'd very much since. *Sanfon*, in his *Present State of Persia*, says, That he is a Prince of a fine Mien, but his Air is a little too effeminate, is of a curious Shape, has a masculine Voice, a courteous Temper, and great Strength of Body ; so that he exceeds his Courtiers in all manner of Exercises. He is very merciful, except to Traytors, to whom he is inexorable, tho' of his own Blood. He goes frequently in Disguise to hear the Grievances of his Subjects, and their Complaints against his Officers, in order to redress them. He will not suffer

his Christian Subjects to be disturbed in their Religion; and if any of them complain of being forced to turn *Mahometans*, allows them to recant it. He gave a remarkable Proof of his Goodness to the *Armenians* in this Respect, many of whom having turned *Mahometans*, because they could not pay the Taxes demanded of them, he commanded that they should be released from those Taxes, as well as of their Promises to change their Religion; that no such Thing should be demanded of 'em in Time to come, and forbade the receiving such Offers from them any more if they were extorted by Force. He exacts no Tribute from the *Armenians* or other Christians who come to trade in his Kingdom. He has also granted Missionaries the Freedom of their Religion, and at the Request of the *French* King exempted them from all Taxes. In 1693, he commanded the Governors of the *Persian* Gulph to receive *French* Vessels with Honour and Civility, and to furnish them with what Necessaries they wanted. That Author says, he was then 48 Years of Age, and in the 27th of his Reign. His Subjects call him the Sanctuary of all Nations; and tho' he be absolute Sovereign of more than 12 vast Kingdoms, he assumes no other Title than that of *Cha*, which signifies King. The *Turks* call the *Persian* Kings *Chiek-Ogli*, or the Son of a Priest, by Way of Contempt; but they glory in the Title themselves, because they are descended from *Fatima*, *Mahomet's* only Daughter.

The modern Government and Court of P E R S I A.

Herbert, *Thevenot*, *Tavernier*, *Chardin*, and all our modern Travellers, agree, that the Kings of *Persia* are so absolute, as to dispose of the Lives and Fortunes of their Subjects at Pleasure, without being ty'd to any Law or Rule; and they are as arbitrary in their Punishments, which they sometimes execute themselves. Thus *Sha. Abbas* cut off with his own Hands the Ears and Nose of one of his Ambassadors, who had misused his Domesticks in *Spain*; and forc'd him to eat them immediately, together with a Piece of Flesh cut out of his Arm. But notwithstanding this absolute Power, their

Government is generally more mild in its Administration than that of the Gr. Seignior, and other *Mahometan* Princes. *Thevenot* says, they must not begin any Religious Festival without the King's Leave, and that he delays them at Pleasure. The Subjects never look upon them but with Fear and Trembling, and perform their Commands, tho' contrary to the Laws of God and Nature; so that Parents and Children become one another's Executioners if the King command it; and if they swear by the King's Head, they think it more obliging than to swear by God himself. The Kings of *Persia* observe no Form, nor consult any Person, in their Decrees; and are so afraid of being deprived of the Power which they abuse, that upon their Accession to the Throne, they order the Eyes of their Brothers, and all other Princes of the Blood, to be pulled out; and when the Princesses their Sisters, or other Kinswomen, are brought to Bed of Boys, they order the Infants to be starv'd to Death. They take the Wives and Daughters of their Subjects at Pleasure, and put them into their Seraglio's for Concubines; and when they take the Wives of any great Lords, they usually send them some of those Concubines, and take them from them again at Pleasure. They send their Officers to search for the handsomest Virgins in their Dominions for the Use of their Seraglio, without any Regard to the Cries and Tears of their tender Mothers, from whose Arms they force 'em. The *Armenian* Christians, to prevent this, generally marry their Daughters at 9 or 10 Years of Age. But these Princes, tho' so free with the Wives and Daughters of their Subjects, are so jealous of their own, that when they go abroad with them for their Pleasure or otherwise, they are carried upon Camels in a little sort of Chest cover'd with a thin Cloth, lest they should be seen; and they have a Guard of Eunuchs who clear the Way, and issue an Order for all Men to retire so many Miles on Pain of Death; so that the Men must remove, whatever the Weather be, to the Hills and Mountains, if they have no Friends within the Distance to entertain them; and if any Man be found asleep on the Road, he is killed without Mercy. *Tavernier* says, That in the Time of *Sha. Abbas II.* one of the Fellows that

that set up the Women's Tents being weary, and falling asleep on the Place, was seiz'd by the Eunuchs, wrapped up in the Carpet where he lay, and buried alive in the neighbouring Fields. This Sort of Prohibition they call *Courouks*. *Thevenot* says, there were 40 of 'em in the City while he was at *Ispahan*, which put the Citizens to incredible Trouble. He adds, That they have likewise *Courouks* upon any Sort of Provisions the King pleases, during which none but his Majesty must have any of the Sort. There happen'd a *Courouk* upon Fish and Poultry while he was there, so that none could have any for Love or Money for three Weeks.

Thevenot says, That notwithstanding this great Power, the *Persian* Kings are very familiar with Strangers; and many times with their own Subjects, with whom they will eat and drink freely. But these Favours are very dangerous, especially to their Subjects; for on the least Capricio, or when heated with Drink, they will order their Bellies to be ripped up; but they have made an Order, That no *European* shall be put to Death, since a *German* Watchmaker was executed for killing a *Persian* that had debauched his Mistress, and would not redeem his Life by turning *Mahometan*. After the Man was executed, the King's Watch being out of Order, he sent for a Watchmaker that belong'd to the *Holstein* Ambassadors, and offered him his Post; but he refus'd it, because of his Countryman's Fate; upon which the King issued the said Order in Favour of *Europeans*.

The Kings of *Persia* are very rich in Gold, Plate, and Precious Stones, with which they have all Sorts of Arms embellished. They entertain Workmen constantly in Pay, who make new Pieces for them, and never sell any. Besides, all their Grandees make them frequent Presents, and particularly once every Spring. Their Treasury is likewise continually augmented by the Estates of those whom they put to Death. *Herbert* says, the Revenue in his Time was 1190000 *l. Sterling per Annum*, arising chiefly from Raw Silks, Customs, and Cotton. *Thevenot* says, That all the Silks of *Persia* belong to the King; that he has certain Sums from every Company of Tradesmen, and many Lands of his own; which he farms,

some for a 5th, and others for half the Income. The strictest *Moulla's* or *Mahometan* Priests never say Prayers upon those Lands, for they reckon them accursed, because taken from the Poor. *Ogilby* makes the King's Revenue 20000000 *l. Sterling per Annum*; the *Holstein* Ambassadors say 8 Millions of Gold; but for the Particulars, we refer to themselves. *Boussingault* says, That the very Fashion of the Plate made by *Sha-Abas's* Order, and still us'd by the Kings of *Persia* at solemn Entertainments, cost 900000 *Ducats*; and the Palace is so magnificent, that there is nothing to be seen in it but Furniture of Silk, Silver, and Gold, adorn'd with Pearls and Precious Stones of inestimable Value, that all the Flambeau's and Tapers us'd by the King are mixed with Musk, Amber, and other precious Odours; and that the Carpets which cover the Floors of his Palace are so very fine, that those made use of by the greatest Lords in *Europe* for their Tables are coarse in comparison of them. *Sir John Chardin* says, That when *Solyman* was crown'd, the two Halls of the Palace were spread with Carpets of Silk, and all along the Sides there was a great Number of low square Beds, cover'd with Cloth of Gold and Silver. The Balcony of State in the Middle of it was hung and spread with Carpets of the same: The Cushions round it of Velvet, woven in Foliage of Gold and Silver, and the Spitting-Vessels embellished with Rubies and Turquoises. The Place where his Majesty sat was spread with a fine *Indian* Coverlet, pink'd with Gold, of most admirable Workmanship, and at the Corners there were great Apples of massy Gold, set with Precious Stones: At the End of it lay a Cushion of Cloth of Gold, intermix'd with green and red Foliage, embroider'd all over with Diamonds, Pearls, Emeralds, and other precious Stones, that cast a wonderful Lustre. The Room was enlightened with 14 Lamps of massy Gold, set on the Ground, with Branches so substantial, that they weigh'd from 30 to 60 Marks apiece. Besides these, he saw many Candlesticks with two Branches apiece of massy Gold, 3 Foot high, and weighing more than the Lamps. The Seat which served instead of a Throne was like a square Cushion-Stool, 3 Foot high, all of massy Gold; the Feet of the Pillars that

supported it being like great Apples of the same Metal, and the Cross-Bars which formed the Seat of the like. The Gold Frame was embellished with Rubies and Emeralds, and the Whole was so weighty, that two Men could scarce carry it. The Crown which Travellers call *Sophi's Bonnet* is a flat Cap, in the Fashion of that worn by our Judges, but straiter at the lower End. 'Tis of Cloth of Gold, bound about after the Manner of a Turbant, with the finest *Indian Calicut* tissued with Silver. The Outside of the Cap was embroidered with Diamonds, from whence hung down several Chains of Precious Stones, that dangled down upon the Bonnet, which was sumptuously embellished with the richest Jewels of the Crown, and round about stood several Tufts resembling those of Herons, all of Jewellers Work. In other Parts of the Bonnet there were erected little Plumes of Heron's Feathers, and Birds of Paradise, to which were fastened Strings of Diamonds, and other Precious Stones, which cover'd all the Turbant from the Top to the Bottom; and just over the Forehead was another Heron-Tuft of Jewels, more glorious than all the rest; from the Top of which rose up three Sockets of Precious Stones, with other Tufts of Heron's Plumes. The Royal Sword, whose Blade was in Form of a Semicircle, had the Hilt and Scabbard all covered over with Precious Stones, and the Dagger the like. The Courtiers valued the Sword and Dagger at near Five Millions of *French Money*; but Sir *John* thinks they over-rated them.

The King, says *Ogilby*, is distinguished by a red Turbant, of a different Fashion from others, and he wears that Part before which his Subjects wear behind, and are prohibited to do otherwise on Pain of Death. The Succession goes generally to the eldest Son; but the Eunuchs have such an Influence, that they place the Crown upon which of 'em they please. If there be no Issue by the Qu. the Sons of Concubines succeed; and if there be none such, the Crown goes to the other nearest Relations. The Houses where the King's Children are born are Sanctuaries, and if distant from the Court, are immediately walled in, and the Government of them given to Eunuchs. Formerly the *Mahometan* Kings of *Persia* bore a

Crescent proper for their Arms, but now a Sun on the Back of a Lion. *Zonarus* says, their Heathen Kings did anciently bear *Luna*, an Eagle crown'd, with the Sun display'd *Saturn*, till altered by *Cyrus*, who, *Xenophon* says, bore a Golden Eagle hang'd at a long Spear. This continued till they defeated *Crassus*, at which Time they blazon'd a Sagittary in the Royal Standard, and *Darius* coin'd Pieces call'd *Dariques*, with his own Effigies on one Side, and a Sagittary on the other; to which *Agessilaus* in *Plutarch* alludes, when he complains, that his Design to conquer *Persia* was prevented by 30000 Sagittaries, meaning so many Pieces of Gold of 15 s. each, which the *Persians* gave as a Bribe to those that hinder'd his Enterprize; but when *Mahomet* over-run the Country, his Standard bore *Mercury*, and a Crescent with this Motto, *Totum dum impleat Orbem*. *Herbert* says, their Nobles have no Coats of Arms, because of their Ignorance in Heraldry; and that Honour there is not hereditary.

Their Great Seal is about the Size of Half a Crown, impressed with the Characters of the Country. That of *Shach-Sef* had this Inscription in the Ring. *To God alone I am a Slave with all my Heart*. Sir *John Chardin* gives an Account of the Great Seal affixed to his Patent, when the K. of *Persia* made him his Merchant, thus, viz. In the Middle of the Seal there was engrav'd, *The Slave of the King of the Country, Abas II.* 1059. On the upper Part of the Seal, appendant to the Patent, there were these Words, *God is my Sufficiency*: And betwixt the innermost and outermost Ring there were these two Sentences engrav'd round; 1. *Whoever he be that loves not Ali, tho' it were my self, I love not him.* 2. *Whoever he be that does not at his Door bow his Head to the Earth, tho' he were an Angel, let the Earth be upon his Head*; and under the Seal were 12 Names of such as they reckon *Mahomet's* lawful Successors.

The *Grande'es* reckon it as great an Honour to be called the King's Slaves, as the *Europeans* think the Title of a Duke or Marquis; and the highest Expressions of Slavery is with them the greatest Eloquence; so that when they speak of an Ambassador's paying Obeisance to the King, they say, that he has kissed the Feet of the King's Slaves;

Slaves; and when they speak of any great Actions performed by their Princes, they say, *The Slaves of the King have done it*, because they think it more honourable, according to the Style of the Alcoran, which ascribes the Creation of the World to Angels, and not to God; for they argue thus: If Angels have so much Power, how much greater must his Power be, who has such Ministers and Servants? The Persians call their King *Vali-Iron*, i. e. *The true Lieutenant of Aly*, to whom God gave the Dominion of the World after *Mahomet*; and *Vali-Neamet*, i. e. *God's Lieutenant*, to distribute Blessings to Men, and the Conduit thro' which Heaven conveys its Blessings to Earth. *Sanson*, in his *Present State of Persia*, says, they look upon their Kings to be infallible, because descended from *Aly*, and therefore don't dispute their Commands. They believe that none of their Kings can be damned, or so much as judged for any Crime whatever, because being subject to no Law, they reckon them impeccable.

Herbert gives the following Account of their Titles, viz. Emperor or Potshaw of Persia now Pharsy, Parthia now Arac, Media now Shervan, Bactria now Sablestan, Ortispana now Candahar, Chorasana now Trocharistan, and Aria now Erey: King of the Ousbeg Tartars now Zagathai, Hyrcania now Mozendram, Draconia now Turquestan, Evergeta now Syrgian, Parmenia now Phargan, Hydaspia now Thalican, Sogdiana now Maurenabar, Paropamisada now Kalsistan, Drangiana now Sigistan, Arachosia now Maqueron, Margiana now Istigiaz, Carmania now Kyrman, Gedrosia now Laristan, and Cizcan, and as far as Indus now Synde. Sultan of Ormus now Armusia, Gekorra now Larr, Arabia now Jaziry, Susiana now Ghusistan, Chaldea now Keldan, Mesopotamia now Diarbeck, Georgia now George, Armenia now Armeny, Iberia now Karkash, Mengrelia now Vespracan. Mirza or Prince of the imperious Mountains of Ararat now Aramnob, Taurus now Tauracow, Caucasus now Naugracoti, and Periarde now Jarval. Commander of all Creatures from the Caspian Sea or Deriob Korasan to the Gulph of Persia or Deriob Farsee. Lord of the 4 Rivers of Paradise, Euphrates now Phrat, Tigris now Diglah, Araxis now Arass, and Indus now Synde. Of

true Descent from *Mortu Aly*, Governor of all Sultans, Emperor of *Mussulmen*, Bud of Honour, Mirror of Virtue, Rose of Delight, &c.

Shaw-Abbas, in his Passport to the Attendants of the *English* Ambassadors, who died there in 1625, assum'd this Title to himself: "The High and Mighty Star, whose Head is covered with the Sun, whose Motion is comparable to the Firmament, whose Imperial Majesty is come from *Ashtaraff*, and hath dispatched the Lord Ambassador of the *English* King, &c. The Command of the great King is, That his Followers be conducted from our Palace, &c. thro' all my Territories. Fail not my Command. I also command them a safe Travel.

What lofty Titles they assume to themselves, and that they are very liberal of the like to their great Officers and Lords, appears by *Sir John Chardin's* Patent, wherein the K. of Persia speaks to his Lords and Officers thus: "I absolutely command the Lords of Lords, who have the Presence of a Lion, the Aspect of *Deston*, (i. e. the ancient Persian Heroes) the Princes who have the Stature of *Tahem-ten-ten*, (i. e. another Race of Heroes or old Giants) who seem to be in the Time of *Ardevon*, (i. e. an ancient Giant who they say conquer'd all Asia) the Regents who carry the Majesty of *Feribours*, (i. e. a 3d Race of Giants) the Conquerors of Kingdoms, Superintendants that unloose all manner of Knots, and are under the Ascendant of *Mercury*, &c. As soon as this Patent shall be adorned, enlightened, ennobled, and enlivened, with the Seal, which resembles the Sun in Dignity and Virtue, which makes manifest the Decree of the Lord of the World, and which being above all Things in Length and Breadth, serves for a Law to the Universe; and that the Subscription, Adorable, Holy, most High, and without Compare, shall be affixed thereto: That they give entire Credit to it, and render all Obedience to what it contains, as being a Decree from on high, elevated above all Things.

The

The *Holstein* Ambassadors, *Thevenot*, *Tavernier*, *Chardin*, and *Sanfon*, give the following Account of the *Persian* Court :

The Dispensers of the *Mahometan* Religion take Place of all other Officers of the Crown, and are, 1. The *Sadre Cassa*, who superintends the Religion of the Empire, governs the King's Conscience, and orders the Court and City of *Ispahan* according to the *Alcoran*. He is First Minister of State, and sits at the Foot of the *Sofa* on the King's Right Hand. This Officer is so much respected, that the Kings and their Families do frequently intermarry. He is called Viceroy to the King and *Mahomet*. He has Deputies in all Capital Cities, resembling Bishops, who, as all others that have any Employment relating to *Mahomet's* Law, must take their Orders from the *Sadre*, which brings him a vast Revenue, because he sells all such Preferments. He gives his Opinion in Matters of Religion in Writing; but if it be of Importance, it must be ratified by the King. 2. Next to him in Spirituals is the *Sadre Elman Alek*, his Coadjutor and chief Deputy. He is also a Collateral Judge with the *Divan Begui*, who can give no Sentence without his Consent; so that he is a Civil as well as Ecclesiastical Judge, and has Power to try and condemn Criminals. He sits below the *Sofa* on the King's Left Hand. 3. *Akond*, or *Chiek Ali-Isan*, i. e. the venerable old Man of the Law of *Mahomet*. He is the first Lieutenant in Civil Affairs, and has 50000 Livres *per Annum*, that he may be under no Temptation of taking Bribes. He is Chief of the Law, and reads upon it to his Subalterns *Wednesdays* and *Saturdays*. He has Deputies in all Courts of Justice, who, with those that belong to the 2d *Sadre*, draw up all Contracts and Agreements. He sits next to the Great *Sadre*. 4. The *Kazi*, who is 2d Lieutenant in Civil Affairs, takes Cognizance of the same Causes with the former, and has equal Prerogatives. He has two Substitutes in every Court, to determine small Businesses in Coffee-houses, and the Governors of Towns always consult them in Matters of Importance. 5. The Great Almoner, who performs Worship in the King's House in the Presence of the

chief Bishops, is the universal Divine of the Empire, takes Order about all Disputes and Conferences in Matters of Religion, is one of the King's Council, and his Privileges are almost equal to those of the Bishops. None of these 5 attend at Entertainments, because then the King drinks Wine.

The great Ministers of State are 6, and called Pillars of the Empire: 1. The *Etmadaulet*, i. e. Prop of Power. He is Great Chancellor of the Kingdom, President of the Council, Superintendant of the Customs, and of all Foreign Affairs and Commerce. No Pensions are paid without his Order, and he must sign the King's Mandates. He has 540000 Livres *per Annum* for Salary, but his Perquisites are vast, for he is in a manner absolute, disposes of all Posts, Civil and Military; and when the Grandees and Governors of Provinces make Presents to the King, they must not forget him, because he is able to cross their Aims; and he has likewise Money to favour their Grants. He has 6 Deputies under him, who form a Council, of which he is the Head. The first is the Comptroller-General of the Revenue. 2. The Comptroller of the Household, and of the Jurisdiction of *Ispahan*. 3. The Keeper of the General Register of the Revenue. 4. The Keeper of the General Register of *Ispahan*. 5. The *Kalenter*, who is Chief Provost of the Merchants of *Ispahan*. Each of these 6 are Intendants over several Provinces, and keep their Court in the Palace. The *Etmadaulet* has likewise two Secretaries, who dispatch all the Orders of the Court. *Thevenot* says, he takes Place of the Grand Seignior, tho' *Sanfon* says the contrary.

The 2d Minister of State is the *Kortchi Bashi*, formerly the first Person in the Kingdom, and General of their Armies; but now he only commands their Horse or *Kortchi's* employed to cover the Frontiers, each of whom has 100 Crowns *per Annum*, and the Son succeeds the Father if the General pleases. The 3d Minister is *Quer-Koule Agasi*, i. e. Captain of the Slaves, which is compos'd of Persons of Quality, who have the same Pay with the *Kortchi's*, but are not so numerous. Those who aim at great Employments, are generally Members of this Body. 4. The *Tefanktchi Agasi*, or General of

of the Foot, which consists of 2000 Fusiliers, and are the King's Guards. 5. The *Toptchibachi*, or Great Master of the Artillery. He has 4000 Men under him, commanded by 4 Colonels, and they always attend the King in publick Ceremonies. 6. The Divan *Begui*, or Lord Chief Justice. Tho' he be the last of the 6 great Ministers, he has the second Place in the Court of Justice, and commands the King's Messengers. He has 50000 Crowns *per Annum*, receives Appeals from inferior Courts, and sits next to the Bishops, except the Generalissimo of the Armies be there, to whom he gives Place.

The other Court-Officers are, 1. The Great Master of the Ceremonies, who has always the Quality of Kan or Prince. He attends at publick Audiences, has the richest Apparel of any of the Courtiers, carries a Staff covered with Plates of Gold, and garnished with Precious Stones, on which he leans before the King. He commands all the Officers of the Guards, holds Ambassadors and Homagers by the Arm when they appear before the King, and makes Way for his Majesty when on Horseback. His Place is one of the most considerable at Court, and has always a Government annexed to it. 2. The *Nazir*, or Chief Steward of the Household: He provides for the Royal Family, has 40 Stewards of Honour, and all the Officers of the King's Table, under him. The *Etmadaulet* furnishes him with Money, and accounts with him once a Year. 3. The Secretary of State. He keeps an Account of Expences, which he reports to the *Etmadaulet*, writes the King's Letters and Orders, is the Royal Historiographer, and reads to his Majesty in the Court the Journal of every Year on New-Year's Day. 4. The Great Astrologer. He constantly attends the King, who undertakes nothing without first consulting him as to the Success. His Predictions are respected as Oracles. In different Actions, he determines by counting his Beads at Even and Odds; but in great Matters, consults his Ephemerides, and must be reputed a great Mathematician before he gain the Post. 5. The Chief Physician. He always attends the King to advise what he should eat or drink. His Post is of as great Honour and Profit as any at Court, but ve-

ry dangerous, being responsible for the King's Life, and seldom escapes with his own when the King dies. 6. The Keeper of the Seals. He assists at all Ceremonies, with the King's Seal fixed to a Gold Chain, adorned with Precious Stones. It hangs over his Shoulder before his Breast, and he has 5 Deputies, who present all Petitions and Addresses to the King, and return 'em to the Suppliants when granted. But *Sanfon* says, they have not the Custody of the Seals, nor do affix them to Grants, that being performed by a Matron in the *Haram* or *Seraglio*, or by the King himself, say the *Holstein* Ambassadors, who always carries his Seal about his Neck, puts it into the Ink, and stamps it on the Paper. There are a great many other Officers, as the Master of the Horse, Great Huntsman, &c. which being common to *European* Princes, we shall not insist on them. The Introducer of Ambassadors is always about the King, with a Staff in his Hand, on which he leans, wears a large green Cap embroidered, with a long Steeple Crown, adorned with little white Feathers about the Sides of it, with Heron and Crane Feathers on the Top, and the lower Part is embellished with Gold and Precious Stones. This Cap is in great Veneration, being consecrated to the 12 *Persian* Saints. The Governors of Provinces and Towns, and great Officers of the Army, are allow'd to wear such Caps in publick Ceremonies; an Honour which is granted only to Soldiers.

The Order of *Sophi's* is likewise allow'd this Cap. They were instituted by *Chiekses*, the first Prince of the present Dynasty, who engag'd them by Oath to swear they would endeavour the Recovery of the Empire, which *Tamerlane* had ruin'd. They are call'd Holy or Saints, and have a President, who is the King's Chaplain, assembles them every *Thursday* in the Royal Mosque, to pray for the King's Prosperity. He attends his Majesty, with the other chief Men of the Order, on Holidays with a Basin of Sugar-Candy, which he blesses, presents to the K. who takes a Piece of it, and the Grantees do the like, putting it on their Heads and their Eyes in Token of Respect. The same Ceremony is observed at the Birth of their Princes, and for eminent Victories. The King himself was Head of the Order, and

and all the *Grandeos* Companions of it, which occasion'd Strangers to call him the Grand *Sophi*; but at present they are in Disgrace, being accused of unnatural Lewdness, and many other Crimes in their Nocturnal Assemblies.

There's an Officer call'd Chief of the Torch-Bearers, who furnishes the Court with Candles, which are all of Wax. He has the Fines of those who play at Chance-Games, and many Officers under him, who have Power to break open all Houses which they suspect for such Games, except those of the greatest Quality.

The *Deroga* is an Officer who punishes Robberies, Quarrels, Murders, and Whoredoms, has a Power to suppress lewd Houses, and Officers under him like Constables, who prevent Disorders by Night, go round the Streets, take up such as are abroad at unreasonable Hours, and imprison or drub them if they can't give a good Account of themselves.

Thevenot says, their Officer named *Kelonter* resembles the Tribune of the People among the *Romans*, defends them against the Tyranny of the great Men, and represents Matters to the *Chan*, who reports 'em to the King. Both of them receive great Presents, because they have a Power to promote or stifle Complaints.

The Military Government of Persia.

THEIR Militia is divided into 3 Bodies:

1. The *Kortchi*, who are descended from the ancient *Turks*, live in Tents, and make about 50000 Men. *Tavernier* says, they are all Horsemen, well paid and look'd after, and frequently advanced to the chief Posts in the Kingdom. They breed up their Youth to Arms, till they be fit to be sent to the King. They were formerly call'd *Red-Heads*, because they wore red Caps. They have a General of their own, and are much esteemed for their Valour. *Sha-Abbas* I. being afraid of their Power, did what he could to abolish them; so that now there are only 22000 of them in Pay. They are employ'd to put great Men to Death, are review'd every Year by the King, who then gives them a 3d Part more than the usual Pay. They admit no General but one

of their own Body. There are many great Lords among this Militia.

2. The *Goulams*, who are Slaves, or the Sons of Slaves, of all Nations, but chiefly of Renegado *Georgians*. Their Male-Issue to the Hundredth Generation is taken into their Body. There are betwixt 15 and 18000 of them in Pay, who have from 5 to 8 Tomans *per Ann.* apiece, each Toman being 3 *l.* 9 *s.* Sterling. They are all Horsemen, but noted for Spendthrifts, as the *Kortchi* are for being good Husbands. Their General is the *Goular Agasi*. They have many great Lords likewise among them, and most of the *Persian* Courtiers are made up of those two Bodies. Their Arms are Bows, Arrows, and Skains. Some of 'em wear Coats of Mail and Head-Pieces, and others Vambraces, Battle-Axes, and Iron Clubs. They seldom revolt, because being Slaves of different Nations, there are no Ties of Affection or Kindred among them, which made *Sha Abbas* favour them more than the *Kortchi*. When they commit any Crime, the King charges their General with the Punishment.

3. The *Tufenkgi's*. They are but of late Institution, and compos'd of Husbandmen and Shepherds, who live in Tents upon the Mountains in Summer, and remove to the warm Countries in Winter. They are divided into Tribes, of which every one furnishes a set Number. *Tavernier* says, they are about 8000 in every Province, march on Horseback, but fight on Foot. Their Arms are Muskets and Scymiters. They are well train'd, for every 3 Months they are muster'd by the Governors of their Provinces, are taught to shoot at a Mark, and rewarded according to Merit. They are always provided with a good Suit and Arms when they take the Field, and are useful to the rest of the Army as Sutlers. The other Soldiers despise them; so that the King never makes use of them but on urgent Occasions. They have not above 4 or 5 Tomans *per Ann.* but as a further Encouragement, pay little to the King. The Sons of all those Soldiers receive Pay at 7 Years old, and 'tis augmented as they grow in Years. Besides these, the King has a Guard of Musketers of late Institution, who carry Muskets of a wide Bore. They are commanded by a General of their own,

are about 2080 in Number, and Part of them disposed every Night round the Palace. Their General stands with a Battoon in his Hand by the King in Council; and when his Majesty beckons to him to receive his Orders, he prostrates himself on the Floor. *Herbert* says, the *Persian* Scymiters are more bent than our Faulchions, are of excellent Metal, broad, and as sharp as Razors. *Herodotus* says, the *Scythians* worship'd them as the Image of *Mars*. The Hilts are of Gold or Silver, &c. according to the Ability of the Persons, and have no Wards but Cross-Bars. Those of Note have Velvet Scabbards embroider'd with Gold and Precious Stones on solemn Occasions, and the Quivers and Cases of their Bows and Arrows are curiously wrought. Their Bows are short, but strong, and their Arrows long and well headed, with which they did anciently great Exploits, as we find by the *Roman* Poets and Historians. They are very dextrous at Shooting, so that 'tis dangerous to pursue them when they fly, for they seldom miss of hitting the Mark backward. To that End they make use of short Stirrups, that they may the more easily raise themselves on Horseback. The *Persians* have no Naval Force of Note, but only some large Barks in the Gulph of *Ormuz*, and a greater Number in the *Caspian-Sea*, to curb the *Usbeque Tarars*.

Herbert says, the King of *Persia*, as appears by his Muster-Rolls, can raise 320000 Horse, and 70000 Foot, but seldom exceeds 50000, because 'tis hard to get Forage for Horses in such barren Countries. Their best Entertainment is chop'd Straw, and a little Barley, so that they are generally thin, but healthy, and capable of Fatigue. *Bouffingault* says, *Ismael Sophy* had 300000 Horse in the Plains of *Caldar* against *Selymus* Emperor of the *Turks*. The King's Guards are about 14000, divided into five Bodies, and, with the Frontier Garrisons, compose 150000 Men, besides those in the Inland Towns.

The Government of the Provinces and Cities is by Cans, Sultans, Kalenters, Daroga's, Viziers, and Kaucha's. The Cans are Viceroys, have almost a Sovereign Power in Matters Civil and Criminal, and pass Sentence of Death, without special Order from Court. There's one of these in most

Provinces. They are obliged to defray the Charges of Ambassadors in their Districts, and maintain a certain Number of Soldiers, that are to be ready at Call. They are chosen by the King for their Merit, no Dignity being hereditary in *Persia*. The Sultans have the same Power, and both of 'em are sent on Embassies to Foreign Princes. The Kalenter collects the Revenues of the Province or City, accounts to the Can or the King, and protects the People from the Oppression of the Grandees. The Daroga's and Viziers are like the Governors or Mayors of Cities, and the Kaucha's like our Under-Sheriffs.

Sanfon gives the following Account of the subordinate Governors of the *Persian* Provinces and Towns: 1. The *Valies*, who are descended from such Princes as have been conquer'd by the *Persians*, but are left in Possession of their Governments, and are 10 in Number. They are admitted to Council, the King's Table, Feasts, and publick Audiences, take Place next to the great Ministers, are consider'd as Princes, and have Pensions. The King has lately seized some of their Governments, out of Jealousy that they designed to rebel. These *Valies* have a Right to 12 *Kerona's* or Speaking-Trumpets, with Hautboys, Drums, and Tymbals, to sound before them at Sun-set, and two a Clock in the Morning; a Privilege also allow'd the Cans; but inferior Governors are not allow'd the Speaking-Trumpets.

The RELIGION of Persia.

They are *Mahometans* as well as the *Turks*, and equally affect the Title of *Mussulmen*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, 'tis derived from the *Hebrew* Word *Salama*, which signifies deliver'd or sav'd; for according to the *Alcoran*, all such as refus'd to pronounce these Words, *There is no God but one, and Mahomet is his Prophet*, were to be destroy'd; but those who pronounc'd them, saved. The modern *Mahometans* apply it to eternal Salvation, and don't call their Sons *Mussulmen* till they be circumcised. *Herbert* says, the *Persians* circumcise the Females as well as the Males: The latter before 12, and the former betwixt 9 and 15; and that

this was anciently practis'd upon Females before the *Mahometans* were heard of, we may guess from *Strabo*, who, *Lib. 16.* says, *Quemadmodum Viri Præputium habent, Mulieres habent etiam quandam Glandulosam Carnem quam Nympham vocant, non ineptam accipiendo Characteri Circumcisionis.* But we chuse to keep the *Latin Veil* over it. *Sanfon* says, the *Persians* don't agree in Matters of Religion among themselves, and differ from the *Turks* chiefly in the following Particulars: 1. About the Successor of *Mahomet*. The *Persians* say, it was *Mortus Aly*, Cousin-German and Son-in-Law to *Mahomet*, and the *Turks* pretend it was *Omar*, of whom they speak more modestly than the *Persians* do of *Aly*, concerning whom they blasphemously say, *That tho' they don't believe Aly is God, they can't think him much less.* Upon which Account, the *Turks* call the *Persians* Blasphemers and Idolaters. 2. In the Interpretation of the *Alcoran*. 3. In not acknowledging the same Saints. 4. Nor the same Miracles. 5. Nor the same Ceremonies and Mosques. 6. The *Persians* say, the *Alcoran* was intended by God for *Aly*, but by Mistake fell into the Hands of *Mahomet*. 7. The *Persians*, in their publick Worship curse the *Turkish* Prophets *Abubeker*, *Omar*, and *Osman*, *Mahomet's* Fathers-in-Law, who usurp'd upon *Aly*, whom *Mahomet* declar'd his Successor. 8. The *Persians* have 12 Saints, whom they derive from *Aly*, which are detested by the *Turks*. To them, and *Sheik Sefi* the Founder of their Sect, the *Persians* pay their Devotions, and go in Pilgrimage to their Tombs at *Kufa*, when they can't conveniently go to *Medina* or *Mecca*. Such Pilgrims as receive a Certificate of their having been at *Kufa*, are protected against the Anger of the Cans, and of the K. himself, be their Crimes what they will. 9. The *Persians* believe all the same Legal Impurities with the *Jews*; and their Bigots and mean People are so superstitious, that they won't eat in the same Plate with Christians, *Jews*, *Indians*, or *Turks*; whereas the latter eat indifferently with all People, and abstain from nothing but *Pork*, wherein they are imitated by the *Persian* Courtiers and Soldiers. 10. The *Persians* allow Disimulation not only to be lawful, but necessary, to avoid being ill treated by their *Mahometan* Neighbours when they travel among

them, and go in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*; so that they change their Habits, and profess themselves to be Followers of *Omar* as well as the *Turks*. But the latter abhor this Practice. 11. The *Turks* have so great a Superstition for the Green Colour, because it was consecrated to *Mahomet*, that they forbid Christians to wear it on Pain of Death. But the *Persians* allow it to every Body, and laugh at this Superstition; so that when *Sultan Amurath* sent an Ambassador to *Shah Abbas* to complain that he suffer'd that Colour to be prophan'd by Christians, he answer'd scoffingly, That he would forbid the Green Colour to be prophan'd by Christians, as soon as *Amurath* could hinder the green Meadows and Pastures to be prophan'd by his *Turkish* Cattle. The Curious, who would know more of their Differences, may find it in our modern Travellers above-mentioned.

The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, the *Persians* are very devout in their Worship, and fix their Eyes on the Ground, or look up towards Heaven, with so much Steadiness, that they take Notice of no Body. They use Beads to number their Prayers, which some of them pronounce with so much Fervour, that they lose their Breath, and fall into a Swoon. They hold, that the Bible has been corrupted by the *Jews* and *Greeks*, and alledge, that our Saviour nam'd *Mahomet* in the N. Testament as the Comforter he would send after his Ascension. They fancy there are 7 Hells, and 8 Paradises. They commonly assign their Children one of their Saints for a Patron, and bore a Hole in their Ears as a Token of their being Slaves to those Saints, which is signified by adding *Culi* to their Name, such as *Mahomet Culi*, *Aly-Cali*, &c. i. e. the Slave of *Mahomet* and *Aly*.

The *Persians* allow great Immunities to the Posterity of *Mahomet* and *Aly* call'd *Seid*. They wear their Hair long, ty'd up in a Prefs, are clad in White, abstain from Wine, and won't be present where any is drank. They marry always in their own Family, boast of their Descent, and swear by their own Birth, pretend never to tell a Lye, and are so much esteem'd by the *Persians*, that they exempt them from all Taxes. There are many Vagrants who assume this Title, for which they forge Certificates, and cheat the

the Country-People by selling them Hair, which they call *Mahomet's*, and this the Bigots lay upon their Books when they say Prayers. These Fellows cut Pieces of Chrystal half round, by which they set Cotton on Fire with the Heat of the Sun, as we do by Burning-Glasses, which the ignorant People take to be a Miracle, and a Proof that they are of *Mahomet's* Kindred.

They have a Sort of Monks called *Abdalla's*, who derive themselves likewise from *Aly*. They wear a coarse quilted Coat without Sleeves, or Hair-Cloth girt about them, with a Brass Girdle resembling a Serpent, bestow'd upon them by the Doctors when they enter the Order. They carry a Wooden Scepter in their Hands, with which they make abundance of frantick Gestures, strowl about the Country, preach to the Mob in publick Places, and their chief Theme is Reproaches upon the *Turkish* Saints, of whom they tell many lewd and fabulous Stories, to keep up the Animosities betwixt the *Persians* and *Turks*. They are generally vicious Fellows, addicted to Drunkenness, Whoredom, Sodomy, and Robbery; so that few People care to receive them in their Houses, which occasion'd the building of Chappels near the Mosques, say the *Holstein* Ambassadors, where they lodge.

The *Persians* look for the Return of *Aly*, and their 12 Saints, or at least of some of them, to the Earth; so that those of Estates leave considerable Legacies, with Horses and other Necessaries, to entertain them when they come. *Hakluyt* says, That in his Time the King of *Persia* kept one of his Daughters to be *Aly's* Wife. The chief Subject of their Preachers is Legends of *Mahomet* and *Aly*. Those who go in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, they call Saints; and tho' they tell the grossest of Lies, none must offer to contradict them.

The *Persians* keep their *Lent* after *Christmas*, from the first Time they see the new Moon till they see the next, fast all the Day, and feast all Night. Their greatest Festivals are, 1. That of *Hoccen* and *Hussein*, *Aly's* first and second Sons, who were murder'd by the *Turkish* Caliph of *Bagdat*, that usurp'd the Succession of *Mahomet*. The Zealots on this Occasion black their Faces and Bodies, go naked about Streets, with a Covering only to their Secret Parts, carry a Flint in each

Hand, which they knock against one another, making wry Faces, and a Thousand other antick Gestures, and cry, *Hussein*, *Hoccen*, *Hoc-n*, *Hussein*, till they foam at the Mouth. Their Preachers have Pulpits at the Corners of the Streets, where they preach to the Mob about Sun-set; and the Women being allow'd to go abroad at this Time, they improve it for Assignations with their Gallants. At this Feast they carry about on Biers the Representation of *Aly's* Children, which were murder'd with their Father, and make great Lamentations, at which the Courtezans are sure to attend, because they believe they obtain Pardon by it. At this Solemnity the several Companies carry *Aly's* Children, quarrel for the Precedency, and knock one another down with Clubs, being forbid other Weapons. The King sees this Cavalcade from a Room over the Gate of his Palace; and notwithstanding the Care he takes to prevent those Tumults by Troops posted on purpose, the Mob is so zealous, that they will not be hinder'd; and others, to shew their Valour before their Prince, fight at Sharps; for they believe, that whoever is killed on this Occasion, goes to Heaven. When the Scene is like to be bloody, the King's Elephants, with their Trappings of Gold, are brought out, which diverts the Mob from their Fury, to see those Creatures perform their Obeisance to his Majesty, which they are taught to do by their Keepers. Then the Chief Moulla makes a Discourse upon the Death of *Hussein* and *Hoccen* before the King, who presents him with a rich Habit, and the Moulla's that attend him with others of less Value. Then the Ceremony is concluded with a Prayer for the Welfare of the King and Kingdom, and the People receive the Zealots into their Houses, where they feast them plentifully. 2. The Camel Feast, in Remembrance of *Abraham's* Sacrifice, when one of the fairest Camels they can get is dressed up, with Plates of counterfeit Gold and Silver, and led out of the City to a Place appointed, attended by the Nobility, Magistrates, and the People divided into several Companies. The King, or his Deputy if he be not there, darts a Javelin at the Beast; upon which they pull down the Camel with Ropes ty'd to his Legs on purpose, cut off his Head, and di-

vide him into Pieces, so that each Company may have one, which is boil'd with Rice, and made the Foundation of their Feast. Every one reckons it an Honour to have a Bit of it. They make up the Entertainment with other Things, and conclude it by giving Alms to the Poor. We refer the Curious, who would know more of the *Mahometan* Impieties and Fooleries, and the numerous Sects into which they are divided, to *Herbert's Travels*, where he reckons up above 70 of them, with their distinguishing Tenets, and odious Characters.

The G A U R S,

AR E the Relicks of the ancient *Persians*, who worship'd Fire, and would never embrace the Alcoran. They have lost the Courage and Politeness of their Ancestors, being kept in perpetual Slavery, forbid to study the Liberal Arts, and are employ'd only in Drudgery and Mechanics. Multitudes of them retired into other Countries when persecuted by the *Mahometans*; but now the Kings of *Persia* give them their Liberty. Their chief Priest and principal Temple, to which they must go in Pilgrimage once in their Lives, is 4 Days Journey from *Karman*. *Tavernier* gives a large Account of their Origine, their Prophets, Books, Religion, Manners and Customs; tho' he says, they are very scrupulous in discovering their Mysteries, and that he was obliged to frequent their Company much before he could learn what he says of them. They say, the Father of their Prophet was *Azer*, a *Frank* by Nation, and Carver by Trade; that he came from his own Country to live in *Babylon*; that his Wife conceiv'd their Prophet *Ebraim Zer-Atoucht* by a Cœlestial Light, which overspread her, and made her as beautiful as the Sun; that the Astrologers of that Time predicted his Birth, and told the King that he would deprive him of his Crown; upon which he caus'd all the Women with Child in his Dominions to be killed; but her big Belly being imperceptible, she escaped. When she brought forth her Son, he laugh'd as soon as he was born. Her Husband, for fear of his Life, discover'd it to the King, who offer'd to stab the Child; but his Arm

was immediately dry'd up. Then he order'd the Infant to be thrown into a Fire, which immediately turned to a Bed of Roses. Some of this Fire they pretend was carried off by those who were converted by the Miracle, and is still kept in their chief Temple, where it is held in great Veneration. They say, that this King was killed by a Fly for persecuting the young Prophet, who, to prove his Divine Mission, threw himself into a Bath of melted Silver, which the succeeding King had prepar'd for him; and upon his coming out safe, he and his People receiv'd him as a Prophet, and hence he was call'd *Zer-Atoucht*, which signifies *Wash'd in Silver*. They fancy he was soon after taken up into Paradise. They expect that three of his Children shall come into the World, and make his Religion universal: After which follows the general Resurrection, when all Souls shall return to their Bodies; the Hills and Minerals of the World shall be melted, fill up the great Chaos of Hell, and destroy the Mansion of the Devils. After which, the Earth shall be level, and fit to be inhabited, and the Damned shall be taken into Paradise when they have suffer'd enough for their Sins. They pretend, that their Prophet sent them from Paradise 7 Books of Laws, which taught them the Way to Heaven; 7 which interpret all Dreams, and 7 that taught all the Secrets of Physick. The last 14 were carried away from *Babylon* by *Alexander the Great*, and he burnt the first 7, because no Body understood them but the Angels, for which God punished him by a terrible Sicknes, of which he died. Their Doctors who fled to the Mountains from *Alexander's* Fury compos'd one Book out of all by the Strength of their Memory, which *Tavernier*, who saw it, says is a large one, and writ in a Character different from the *Arabian*, *Persian*, or *Indian*. Their Priests scarce understand it; but they have other Books that explain it; and when they read or pray, they tie a Handkerchief about their Mouths, lest the Air should pollute their Words. They don't circumcise, but dip their Children in Water, wherein Flowers are boil'd, and the Priest prays over it. If this be neglected, they think the Child can't go to Paradise, and that the Parents must answer for the Neglect. They allow a Man

to have 5 Wives if he can maintain 'em, and admit of no Divorce but for Adultery and turning *Mahometan*. The divorc'd Party is allow'd a Year to try if they will repent; and if they do, after 3 Years Pennance, they are remarried. The Ceremony is perform'd by the Priest's asking their Consent, washing their Foreheads with Water, and praying, and pronouncing certain Words. They are not to marry within the 3d Degree. They allow Wine and Swines Flesh, provided the Hogs be of their own Feeding, and eat no Humane Ordure. They never cut their Hair or Nails; but if constrain'd to it by Way of Punishment or Misfortune, they carry their Hair and Nails to a Place appointed without the City. They have several Fasts, on some of which they abstain from certain Meats, and on others from all till the Evening. They have 30 Saints-Days, when they abstain from Work, and they solemnize their Prophet's Birth-Day with extraordinary Pomp, and by giving of Alms.

When they are sick, they confess to their Priests, who enjoin them Alms and good Works to obtain Pardon. They tie their Dead to a Post in their Burying-place, with their Face to the East. They that accompany the Corps, go to their Prayers at a Distance, till the Crows come to feed on the Corps; and as they commonly begin with the Eyes, if they fall first on the Right, they reckon the Person happy, and then rejoice and give Alms. If they fall on the Left, they reckon the Soul must be purified by Cold and Fire before it can be happy, on which they mourn. If the Crows pick out both Eyes before they devour the other Parts, they reckon them damned, and then lament grievously. *Sanfon* says, they won't own that they worship the Sun or the Fire, but only that they do Homage to the Sun, as the most perfect Creature that God has made next to Man; and is the Seat of his Throne; and they respect Fire, because 'tis the purest of Elements, and keep it always burning; for they reckon it would be polluted if they blow it with their Breath or otherwise. They believe Paradise to be within the Sphere of the Sun, and that the Happiness of the Saints consists in seeing God in it by Way of Reflexion, as in a Glass. They

think none are admitted to this Felicity till 3 Days after their Death, during which they carry Provisions to the Tombs, that they may not suffer by Hunger or Thirst; but when they are gone, the poor *Mahometans*, the Dogs and the Birds, reap the Benefit of this Superstition. They believe Hell to be a damp stinking Prison under Ground, fill'd with Worms, Serpents, and other noxious Insects, but especially with Crows and Frogs, for which they have the greatest Aversion, call the former Heralds to the Devil, and the latter Musicians to the Damned. They reckon the Way to become Saints is to till the Ground, cultivate Gardens, purge the Water of Insects, and keep the Fire always burning. They leave Sums by their Wills for those Uses, and to carry away the Carrion, which the *Mahometans* let stink in their Streets; for they reckon it meritorious to purify the Air, and to preserve it from Contagion. *Sanfon* adds, That their Morals are better than those of the other *Persians*, and that they might be sooner converted to Christianity.

Tavernier gives the following Account of their Manners and Customs:

Their Language and Character differ from the *Persian*. They love good Cheer, and are profuse with their Wine and Strong-Water. They eat no Hares or Mulberries, because they reckon them menstrous. Their chief Purification is by washing in Cows-Piss, and this they do if a Hair fall upon their Clothes when they comb their Heads and Beards, and if their Priests meet a dead Corps in the Road, he must wash himself all over in Cow's Piss. They say, the Vertue of it was discover'd thus: A Person contemporary with the first Man having his Arm bruis'd by the Malice of the Devil, fell asleep in the Fields, and an Ox pissing by him, some of the Urine touch'd his Arm, and heal'd it immediately. They say likewise, That this Piss being preserv'd 40 Days with Willow-Bark, and certain Herbs infus'd in it, purifies them from Sin when they drink of it; but if it be an enormous Crime, the Person must stay 10 Days in the Priest's House, eat or drink nothing but what he gives him, and walk about naked, with a little Dog ty'd to the great Toe of his

his Right Foot, for a longer or shorter Time, according to the Nature of the Crime. Then he desires the Priest to purify him, who answers, That the Dog must do it, and not he. After which, he pours Cow's Piss, prepar'd as above, 7 times upon his Head, gives him a Draught of it, and so absolves him, for which he must feast all his Friends at the Priest's House; and the Women and Maids are purified in the same Manner by the Priests Wives. When they are at the Point of Death, they set a little Dog upon the Party's Breast, put the Dog's Mouth to theirs, make it bark twice just as the Person is dying, when they fancy the Dog receives his Soul, and delivers it to an Angel appointed to come for it. For this Reason, when Dogs die, they carry them out of the City, and pray for them. They must eat no Cows or Ox-Flesh, because they say the Ox plows the Ground for Man, the Cow feeds him with Milk, and purifies him with her Urine. The Creatures they abhor most are Adders, Serpents, Lizzards, Toads, Frogs, Cray-Fish, Rats, Mice, but above all Cats, for they say all those Creatures come out of the Devil's Body, and retain his ill Nature; but that the Cats are his perfect Resemblance, and therefore are so strong, that a Man can scarce kill 'em. When the *Gaurs* fall sick, they hire poor People to go and kill all of those Creatures they can find, which they fancy will mitigate the Pains of Hell, because the Devils make use of them to torment the Damned. The last King of the *Gaurs* was drove out of *Persia* by *Omar II.* Successor to *Mahomet*.

The Customs of the Persian Court.

THevenot says, they speak nothing but *Turkish*, because that Language was introduc'd by the *Turks* and *Tartars*, who conquer'd the Country, and the Courtiers retain it out of Vanity, to distinguish them from the rest of the People; but it differs so much from that spoke at *Constantinople*, as it seems another Language.

Sumptuous Feasts were practis'd of old at the Court of *Persia*, as we find by the Instance of King *Ahashuerus* in the Book of *Esther*. The King has still Ordinary and

Extraordinary Feasts. The Ordinary are on Holidays, or at other Times when the King treats of Affairs of State, and gives Audience to Foreign Ministers. The Extraordinary are when the States are called together on pressing Occasions. But let them be made when they will, they are always stately and magnificent, and the Riches of the Palace are shewn in the greatest Lustre. *Sanson* says, the Carpets on which the Guests sit are of inestimable Value, and the Table-Cloths spread on them are all of Brocard. The King is served out of a Golden Vessel above 3 Foot in Diameter: The Cover and Padlock by which his Portion is shut up are of the same Metal, and the Officers carry this Vessel about in great Ceremony upon a Hand-Barrow cover'd with Plates of Gold. The King's Carver opens the Lock before his Majesty, falls on his Knees, tastes the Victuals, and with a Golden Spoon and Fork, which he wears at his Side, as the Badge of his Office, fills several Golden Plates, and sets them before his Majesty. The King's Wine is put up in Bottles, seal'd with his own Signet, and open'd by the Great Master of the Household in his Presence, who tastes and presents it on his Knees.

The Guests are serv'd in above 150 Gold Plates, of a Foot and a half Diameter each, with Covers of the same Metal; but the Sweetmeats, which they begin with, are in Vessels of Silver and China. The Entertainment is serv'd up while the King gives Audience, and then he distributes Wine to the Lords of his Court in Bottles and Cups of Gold enamell'd, and set with Precious Stones. They are all set in Order about a Marble Basin in the Middle of the Hall, with 4 Casks of Gold and 4 of Silver, of about the Weight of an ordinary Man each. These, together with the Golden Perfume and Flower-Pots, make a very agreeable Shew.

Before the Hall are placed in State a great many Elephants, Lions, Tigers, Leopards, and other Wild Beasts, fasten'd with Chains and Nails of Gold, and each of them has two Gold Cisterns before him, one for Meat, and the other for Drink.

At a little Distance before the Hall, there are 18 Led-Horses expos'd to View. Their Bridles, Breast-Pieces, the fore and hind

hind Part of their Saddles, and the Stirrups, are all of Gold, set with Precious Stones. Their Housings are large, of Cloth of Gold, garnish'd with Pearls, Diamonds, and other Precious Stones, of a surprizing Bigness and Beauty, and every Horse has a Gold Trough for his Meat, and another for his Drink. Sometimes they have Wild-Asse accoutred in the same Manner, which being perceiv'd by a *Spanish* Missionary, who came with a Letter from the King of *Poland*, he could not retain his Gravity, but laugh'd heartily. An Officer seeing it, civilly ask'd him the Reason. The *Spaniard* reply'd, That he could not but laugh to see those Animals treated with such Distinction here, that were so much despis'd in *Spain*. The *Persian* wittily reply'd, That was because you have more Asse than we, and therefore we think them Rarities.

The King sits Cross-legg'd at the upper End of the Hall, on a rich Brocard Bed, within gilded Ballisters, leaning on a rich Pillow, which none is allow'd but himself, and no Man must sit in the same Manner. The Guests sit on the Carpets, with their Legs extended. The Children of the *Haram* attend his Majesty: Two of them fan him with Peacocks Tails; one presents him his Cup, another his Tobacco, and others his Coffee, Tea, and Basin to wash in. The principal Eunuchs stand on each Side of him, and the Officers of Arms make an oblique Line from the Throne to the two chief Columns of the Hall. The great Officers and Ministers of State sit according to their Ranks, mention'd before, and the Guests sit in a parallel Line to the lower End of the Hall, where the Musicians form another Line facing the Throne. They continue playing during the Audience, (which precedes the Banquet) that the Guests may not hear what is said to the King; and the 40 Stewards of Honour make a Circle before him, leaning on their Staves, which hinders the Guests from seeing what passes at the Audience. There's nothing more splendid than this numerous Assembly dress'd in their Robes. Their Head-Attire gives them so noble an Air, as quite eclipses the *Ottoman* Turbants. The *Coozel Bachi's* attend this Solemnity with two Gold Feathers in their Caps. Their Vests and Sashes are of Brocard, and their

upper Coats of Scarlet, or of the richest Brocard, lac'd all over with Gold, and lin'd with the richest Sables: For these Troops so much affect to make a splendid Appearance, that they content themselves with a Piece of Bread and a little sour Milk, that they may save Money for rich Accoutrements for themselves and their Horses.

The King himself wears no distinguishing Habit on such Occasions, but his Golden Feather, adorn'd with Precious Stones of inestimable Value, on the Left Side of his Turbant. He forces his Grandees to drink to Excess, that he may get out of them what they conceal when sober. He makes them drink in a sort of Gold Ladle, which holds a good *Paris* Pint. This Vessel they call a *Thousand Trades*; for they say, he who empties it thrice, will easily run Divisions upon a Thousand several Arts and Professions. They eat with their Hands, having no Forks or Spoons; so that 'tis pleasant to see them throw the boil'd Rice, mix'd with Boil'd and Roast Meat, into their Mouths with their Fists, without so much as Napkins to clean them. With their Rice they drink a Liquor out of large Box Spoons, compos'd of Rose-Water, boil'd Wine, and Verjuice. There's a profound Silence at the King's Table. The Courses are brought in speedily one after another; and when they have done, every one has Water brought him to wash; and all those who have the Honour to dine with the King, are obliged to attend him on Horseback when he goes a Hunting, or to take the Air. To this End he has a large Compass of Ground enclos'd, which they call the Course. 'Tis adorn'd with magnificent Palaces, Houses of Pleasure, and noble Walks, with Rows of Plane-Trees on each Side, which makes a most curious Shade. One of these Walks is 6 Miles long, and 200 Foot broad. The Course is round, with a noble Fountain in the Middle, which throws Water into great Eight-corner'd Basins as large as Ponds, from whence 'tis convey'd into other Basins 300 Paces distant from one another; and between those Basins are the Royal Pleasure-Houses, opposite to one another, on both Sides the Walks. They are magnificent and commodious. Each Story has a Balcony, and their Fronts are painted with Gold Foliage in *Demi-Relievo*.
The

The great Walk is crossed by another which is less, with a fair Canal in the Middle, 20 Foot broad, and 6 deep, with gilded Iron Pallisades on both Sides, which give a delightful Prospect into the King's Gardens; and thro' the Course there runs a pleasant River. The whole Inclosure contains above 6000 Acres. When the King takes this Course, he is attended by his Guards, some of whom clear the Way before him, and there are 400 Fusiliers drawn up in two Lines, with red Taffety Streamers on their Guns, at the Ends of the Course. Their Officers follow on Horseback, with their Carbines on their Shoulders. After them march those who carry the King's Arms, then the great Officers of the Household, with many Led-Horses richly accoutred; next to them the Officers of the Sophi, and the Ushers of the Palace, with every one a Battle Ax. They are follow'd by the Introducer of Ambassadors, with the 40 Stewards of Honour, and the Great Master of the Ceremonies marches alone. Then follow the Pages and the Children of the *Haram* well mounted. Next comes the Umbrella-Carrier, and he that prepares the King's Tobacco. The chief Eunuch goes immediately before the King, who marches in the middle of 12 Footmen, and allows any of his Ministers to discourse with him on the Way. Then the other Lords and Gentlemen follow without any Order. The King is attended in the same Manner when he goes a Hunting.

But if he have a Mind to give that Diversion to the Queen, the Princesses, and the Ladies of the *Haram*, he is attended by the Eunuchs, and the Fusiliers guard all the Avenues within half a League round, their Backs being toward him; and the Subaltern Eunuchs take special Care that the Fusiliers don't look behind them toward the Ladies, which they must not do on Pain of Death: But the Women are allow'd to see this March, and from them *Sanfon* had this Account.

On these Occasions the King has always a double Equipage, that he may change when he pleases, and rich Pavillions are planted for himself and his Ladies, being all of rich Silks, embroider'd with Gold and Silver, and some of them so large, that they contain moveable Baths, great Tanks

of Water, and Gardens and Flowers. At Night, the Ladies Apartments under those Pavillions are close shut up, and the great Lords attend in Course to guard the King's Tent. They relieve one another; and that the King may be sure they attend, the Usher of his Pavillion names every one of them aloud as they take their Post, and the Eunuchs guard the Ladies in the same Manner. As soon as it is Day, the Lords must go to start the Game, and drive it toward the Place appointed by the King. His Ladies are clad like Amazons, taught to manage their Horses, and to dart their Arrows at the Game with wonderful Dexterity. They carry Hawks on their Fists, which they let slip when the King commands, ride after them full speed, and recal them by beating on little Drums ty'd to the Pummels of their Saddles. If they strike any Game, they bring it immediately to the King, who, if they be Cranes, divides the Feathers among them to make them Caps, and presents his Lords with some of them for their Turbants. The King diverts his Ladies thus to make them Amends for their Solitude in the *Haram*; and to make their Confinement the more supportable there, the Eunuchs teach them to ride, to use the Bow and Fire-Arms, to course the Deer, to paint, dance, sing, play on Musical Instruments; and such as have a Genius for it, are taught Poetry, History, and Mathematics. There are about 800 Women in the *Haram*, but not all Concubines, many of them being appointed to wait on the Queen, and the Princesses of the Blood, with those of the conquer'd Countries, and the Daughters of his great Lords, till the King provide for them suitable to their Birth, by giving them in Marriage to the Grandees. He takes the like Care of the Sons of his Nobles, who are taught the Manners of the Court, Law, and Military Exercises, in their proper Apartments. When the King hunts with his Ladies, the Lords are likewise allow'd to hunt at a due Distance, without Sight of the Court. What the Dogs catch is their own; for *Mahomet's* Law forbids his Followers to eat any Thing that is tore by Beasts, because they cannot know whether the Blood was first shed on the S. Side, which is necessary by their Superstition. What the King kills with his Darts or otherwise,

wife,

wife, is held in such Esteem, that his Nobles reckon it the greatest Honour to be presented with a Part of it. The Seasons of Hunting continue almost all the Winter; for *Persia* is so disposed, and the Climate there so various, that in one Mountain 'tis excessive cold, and in another equally hot at the same Time, according to *Sanfon*.

The Eunuchs have the chief Authority in *Persia*, and are entrusted by the King with his most secret and important Affairs, because being incapable of Marriage, and having no Families to provide for, nor any other Interest to pursue but his Favour, he thinks them least capable of being corrupted, so that his Cabinet-Council consists of them; and tho' the great Officers of State are allow'd to treat and consult about Means for executing the King's Measures, the final Resolves are determin'd by the King and his Eunuchs, without being communicated till such Time as they are order'd to be put in Execution. The Kingdom being so large, that the Cans of distant Provinces might easily give Disturbance to the State, there's a Vizier in every Province, like the Intendants in *France*, who are appointed to assist them, and to be the King's Spies upon 'em. They are likewise entrusted with the Pay of the Soldiers, that the Cans may have no Opportunity to engage them in a Revolt; and to make those Viziers popular, they have a Power to redress any Injuries done the Peasants by the Cans.

The People have no Opportunity of presenting their Petitions to the King but when he goes abroad on Horseback; and to render this likewise ineffectual, the Cans make the Great Astrologer or the Great Marshal, and the King's Footmen, their Friends. The Astrologer, because he can easily divert the King from receiving Petitions, by telling him the Hour is unlucky. The Marshal, because he can command his Servants to keep the Suppliants off with their Clubs; and the Footmen, because they run to receive the Petitions, and can suppress what they please. And when a Petition is presented, if the Lords about the King suspect that it may touch themselves or their Friends, they having the Privilege to discourse with the King on such Occasions, are sure to divert him from the Subject

of the Petition; so that the People have no other Way left them but to get their Petitions presented by the *Etmadanlet* or *Dirvan-Begui*, which is liable to the same Inconveniencies of their being in Friendship with the Persons petition'd against, besides the great Charge and Danger that attends this Method of Petitioning. For the Petitioner is not only in Danger of having a Copy of his Petition secretly sent to the Person accus'd, but is likewise bound in a Recognizance to the King to pay a Sum proportion'd to the Dignity of the Person, and the Importance of the Matter complain'd of, if he fail in the Proof. Besides the Duties, he must pay for having his Petition registred in several Offices; and if the Petition be prov'd, the Suppliant must bear the Charges of the Messenger who solicits it, and puts the King's Order in Execution upon it; and many Times the Vizier and the Can concert Measures together, and share what is extorted from the People betwixt them. From all which it appears, that the Subjects of *Persia* are as absolute Slaves as any upon Earth. *Sanfon* adds, That this great Power of the Courtiers has made the *Persian* Court of late very unjust in their Treaties with Foreign States, and with Respect to the Privileges they grant to the Merchants of all Countries, by which the *Dutch* in particular have suffer'd very much. The like Injustice reigns in their Tribunals of Religion, by which the Christian Subjects of *Persia* are terribly oppress'd, and many of them forc'd to turn *Mahometans*, which expiates the greatest of Crimes; so that all the Favour which Christians enjoy there proceeds from the Temper of the reigning Prince, or the Interest of the Governors, who sometimes oppose the Fury of the Bigots, because they lose their Tribute from such Christians as turn *Mahometans*.

The Manners and Customs of the People of Persia.

T *Hevenot* says, their People of Quality are idle, spend the Morning at Court, and the rest of the Day in smoaking Tobacco at Home, or in Visits with their Friends. They smook thro' Water held in a large Glass Vessel betwixt the Bowl and

the End of the Pipe. These they carry along with them when they visit; and when weary of Smoaking, play at Chefs and Draughts. Some of them delight in Hunting, and they are very dextrous in the Use of their Bows and Fire-Arms. They have Greyhounds couragious enough to encounter Lions, and they have excellent Hawks from *Russia*. They are very luxurious in their Apparel, Household-Furniture, and Tables; and when they travel, carry a vast deal of Baggage, that they may have the same Conveniencies as at Home under their magnificent Tents. They keep numerous Trains of Servants, and on the whole are so profuse, that they are commonly poor of Money. *Herbert* says, they are generally obliging, facetious, harmless in Discourse; and their chief Enquiry as to Foreign Countries is, Whether they have handsome Women, good Wine, serviceable Horses, and well-temper'd Swords? They admire Poetry, especially amorous Ballads, and their Musick resembles the *Dorick* and *Phrygick*, being a soft and lofty Consort. Many of them understand Mathematicks, and all the Parts of Philosophy, and they have good Authors on those Subjects, as well as on Morals, says *Tavernier*; but they are insupportably curious in considering and admiring every Thing; and if a Stranger have any little Knack about him, they will examine every Thing else he has. They make Astrolabes well, have no Aversion to the Figures of Animals like the *Turks*, but use them in Painting, Carving, and Sculpture. They love obscene Pictures, being much addicted to Impurity and unnatural Lewdness. They are very inquisitive after Futurity, look upon Astrologers as Oracles, and love Almanacks filled with Predictions. Their Doctors use Divination by the Alcoran, and another called *Rambe* by casting the Dice, and counting Even and Odd. The People who hire Camels and Horses, &c. will scarce let Strangers have them, till they try by one of these Sorts of Divinations whether the Journey will be lucky.

Tho' *Mahomet's* Law forbids the Use of Silver and Gold Plate, and appropriates those Metals to Commerce, none but the Poor here, who can't reach it, observe that Prohibition. The *Persians* don't use Surnames, but Patronymicks, after the Man-

ner of the *Jews*; and when they circumcise their Children, write 3 or 4 Names in Pieces of Paper like Lots, which are put into a Box, in which a Child puts his Hand, and the first he draws is the Name of the Infant.

The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, the *Persians* are very nice in their Houses and Clothes. The richer Sort change the latter as soon as there is a Spot in them, and the Poor wash them once a Week. The Habit of the Men is a sort of Cassock without Sleeves, of printed Callico of divers Colours, that reach to the Middle of the Leg, and quilted in the Winter. They draw the Sides of them together under the Left Arm, and about their Middle they wrap a Silk Scarf several times, and over that the better Sort wrap an *Indian* Scarf, which they value much more. In this Scarf they wear their Ponyards, Knives, Handkerchiefs, Money, Inkhorns, and Penknives, and in short use them instead of their Pockets, as the *Muscovites* do their Boots. Persons of Quality wear over this Coat a kind of Rochet without Skirts, as low as their Wastes, and border'd with Sables; and when they go abroad on Foot or Horseback, they cast a loose Silk Garment of several Colours, embroider'd with Gold Flowers, over all. Their Shirts are of strip'd red Callico, and under them they wear Callico-Breeches made like Drawers. Their Stockings are of Woollen-Cloth, very ill shap'd, and generally Green, out of an Aversion to the *Turks*, who wear Green on their Heads, and therefore they wear it on their Feet. Their Shooes are peak'd at the Toes, and so low in the Heel-quarters, that they put them on and off like Slippers, which they are obliged to do when they come into the King's Antichamber, or into their own and their Friends Houses.

The Women wear finer Stuffs than the Men, and their Habit is much the same; but they wear no Scarves about the Middle. They let their Hair hang carelessly about their Shoulders, or ty'd in Tresses; but have two or three Rows of Pearls set over their Forehead, which come down along their Cheeks, and are fasten'd under the Chin; to which that Passage of the *Canticles*, *Thy Checks are comely with Rows of Jewels*, seems to relate, that being then the Fashion among the

the Jewish Women. Their Stockings are commonly of red or green Velvet, and better shap'd than the Men's. Maids wear Rings with Precious Stones on their Fingers, and in the Right Nostril, and Bracelets of Silver Plates on their Arms; but the Men must wear no Gold Rings by *Mahomet's* Law, and therefore use Silver. The Women, when abroad, wear white Veils, which reach below their Knees, but open them a little before to see their Way. The Men affect to have their Clothes of several Colours, and wear their Turbants streaked, and much larger than the *Turks*. The Curious may find more of their Habits in *Tavernier*, *Thevenot*, &c. The Apparel of the ordinary People is generally of Callico, and very cheap, as is their Furniture and Diet. Their chief Expence for Household-Goods is for Tapestry-Carpets in their Lodging-Rooms. They dress their Meat in Stoves, have some Brass or Copper Pots and Kettles well tinn'd, and some of them Earthen Pots; but those of all Sorts are fasten'd to the Hearth. The Country-People have little but Earthen Ware. They are sparing in their Diet, seldom eat Flesh above once a Day, and the poorer Sort live chiefly on Rice soak'd in Water, Butter, Cheese, Fruits, and Pot-Herbs. At their Entertainments, they make their Rice of several Colours with the Juice of Pomegranates, Cherries, or Saffron, and serve it up under their Meat in the same Dish. They use Rice instead of Bread; but some make use of Wheat, and have a Sort call'd *Komatsh*, of which they make Cakes of several Sorts. They have Wine at 3 *d.* per Quart in many Provinces, which being forbid by *Mahomet*, the Bigots make use of Water mix'd with Vinegar, &c. Some of them will take an Ounce of Opium at a Time, which makes them as giddy as if they were drunk. Those who use it to Excess, can't live without it, carry it always about them; and if they forget when on a Journey, must return to their own Houses if they can't be supply'd otherwise; for if they want it long, they die. There's a great deal of it made about *Ispahan* from the Heads of green Poppies, which being cleft, issue a white Liquor, that congeals and grows black in the Air. They think it inspires them with Courage. The Women use it seldom; but when they

have a Mind to rid themselves from the Cruelty of their Husbands, they take a good Quantity of it, and drink cold Water or Vinegar after it, which kills them without much Pain, and can't be cur'd by any Antidote. They delight so much in Tobacco, that those of Quality take it in their Mosques, and the poorer Men and Women spend most of what they have in it. They use much Coffee and Tea; but the poorer Sort drink nothing but Water. The Women don't care their Husbands should drink Coffee. To this Purpose the *Persians* tell a Story of one of their Queens, Wife to *Mahomet Castain*, who liv'd before *Tamerlane*, that looking out at her Window, and seeing the Grooms gelding a Stone-Horse, ask'd them the Reason. They told her, 'twas to cool his fiery Temper. She answer'd, That Coffee would do it as well, without using the poor Creature so barbarously. They add, That her Son succeeding to the Crown, and having order'd their famous Poet *Hakim Tандаuci* to make some Verses, he rewarded him so slenderly, that the Poet being exasperated, wrote a Satyr, upbraiding him with his niggardly Temper, and said, That the Reward look'd more like the Son of a Baker, or an ordinary Shopkeeper, than like one of Royal Offspring. The King's Mother fancying that the Poet had been inform'd of her Intrigues, went to her Son, told him, That the King her Husband had made himself so impotent by drinking Coffee, that she made use of a Baker to get him an Heir, and therefore advis'd her Son to stop the Poet's Mouth with a good Bribe, lest he should speak it out more plain, and occasion the Grandees to dethrone him, which the young King did accordingly.

Tavernier says, they have another Drink compos'd of boil'd Poppy-Seed and Broth, which is sold in Publick-Houses, where People meet to see the ridiculous Postures of those who drink this intoxicating Liquor, and to hear them quarrel and scold. There's another call'd *Bongue*, made of the Leaves of Hemp and other Drugs, which made those who us'd it so very shameless and ridiculous, that it was forbid by Law; and some of them smook the Flower or Woolly Substance of Hemp, that puts them quite besides their Senses for two or

three Hours; during which some are very pleasant, and others stark mad.

The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, That tho' the *Persians* be good natur'd, and sensible of Obligations, they are very revengeful, and never forget Injuries. When the Men make Water, they squat down like Women, and if Conveniency serve are sure to wash themselves after; therefore they chuse, if possibly they can, to piss near some Brook, or Vessel fill'd with Water. From hence the *Turks* call them *Aly's Affes*, because *Affes* always piss when they go through Water; and the *Persians* call the *Turks* *Omar's Dogs*, because they piss against the Walls, as Dogs do.

Sir *John Chardin* says, they take their Wives either by Way of Purchase, Hire or Marriage, and all of them equally legitimate; so that if a Man have a Son by his Slave before his married Wife brings him one, the Son of the Slave enjoys all the Privileges of Birth-right: But Marriage here being very expensive, scarce any, except those of Quality, venture on it, the meaner Sort contenting themselves with a Concubine or a Slave. The latter the Husbands use as they please. The hir'd Wives they may dismiss at Pleasure, but she must not hire her self to another till 40 Days after she is dismiss'd. A Man may have 4 of those call'd married Wives; but they seldom take above one, to avoid the Expence of it, and the Confusion it occasions in Families. They usually marry by Proxy, because they are never seen by one another, and the Dowry prefix'd is always the Condition express'd in this sort of Marriage. When the Proxies have agreed, the Priest asks the Man to be married, if he ratifies what his Proxy has promis'd; and if he does, the Contract is seal'd by all present, and given to the Woman's Proxy for the Security of her Dowry. The common People do it without any Proxy, and say mutually, that they take one another for perpetual Husband and Wife upon their Souls. The Husband settles the Wife's Dowry upon the clearest Part of his Estate, sends the Wedding Ring, and the Presents in Clothes, Jewels, ready Money, &c. to the Bride, and she returns him embroider'd Handkerchiefs, Toilets, stitch'd Night-Caps, and such kind of Trifles, usually

made by her own Hand. The Wedding-Feast is kept at the Man's House, holds generally 10 Days, and upon the last the Bride's Portion, consisting in Furniture, Jewels, Slaves, and Eunuchs, &c. according to their Quality, is sent home on Beasts of Carriage, with Musick playing before them; and sometimes they hire a Train, and send empty Chests meerly to make a Shew. At Night the Bride, if a Person of any Note, is brought home in a kind of Cradle on a Camel's Back, with Musick and Tapers before her, and her Servants following with lighted Candles. If she be an ordinary Person, she comes on Foot with a small Retinue, but so veil'd up, that no Body can discover her Shape or Stature, and two Women lead her by the Arms. An Hour after she comes home, she is carried to the Bed-Chamber, and the Bridegroom is conducted to the Room by Eunuchs or old Women, the Candles being put out before he enters. Thus they never see one another till the Marriage is consummated, and that many times happens not to be done till several Days after the Bride comes home, especially if the Woman be of Quality; for they reckon it a Point of Honour to appear very coy, and to hide themselves among the Women, &c. Sir *John Chardin* says, the Ladies of the Blood Royal give their Husbands the Trouble of some Months before they will admit them. He tells a particular Story of a Daughter of *Abas the Great*, who being married by her Father to one of his chief Generals, would not suffer him to come near her for a long Time: Upon which he complain'd to the King, that his Majesty had given him a Tygress, who run at him with a Dagger when he offer'd to come near her. *Abas* laugh'd at it, ask'd him, How many white Slaves he had in his Seraglio? And being answer'd, 45, he bid him lie with them all one after another, and that would be the best Means to reclaim his Wife. The General took his Advice; upon which the Lady upbraided him, and complain'd to the King, who told her, with a stern Countenance, the General had done so by his Order, bid her go home, and invite her Husband to Bed, which she did, and so the Matter was made up. Sir *John* adds, That the meaner Sort of People do frequently, to obtain the Parties

Con-

Consent, promise a greater Dowry to the Woman than they are able to give; but to bring them to an Abatement, he shuts his Door against her when she comes home, and cries he will not give so much for her, which seldom fails of obtaining his End; for it would be the greatest Dishonour in the World to the Bride and her Friends to have her sent back. Sir John says, That tho' this Way of Marrying, without ever seeing the Party's Face, shou'd, one would think, prove very unfortunate, it happens otherwise there; and the Reason he gives is this, That those who don't see other Men's Wives, are less apt to lose the Affection which they have, or ought to have, for their own. He adds, That tho' Divorces be very common among the Vulgar for slight Causes, and upon any Dislike, those of Quality never do it; but sometimes both of them use their Wives so ill, that they force them to be content to quit their Dowry for the Sake of their Liberty; and if they won't do that, frequently poison them.

Others add, That if the Man don't find the Tokens of Virginity in the Bride, he has Power to cut off her Nose and Ears, and send her away; but Persons of Note content themselves with sending her and her Friends immediately a packing. If she be found chaste, the Friends make extraordinary Rejoycings. They have many ridiculous Diversions at their Weddings; one of which is, That if any of the Guests come ever so little after the Hour appointed for Dinner, he is fasten'd to a Ladder, and set against the Wall, with his Heels uppermost, and they whip his Soals with their folded Handkerchiefs, except he redeem himself by paying a Fine. They allow those who travel frequently to take Wives where they please for a certain Term, and to leave 'em when that is expired. If Women have hard Labour, they run straitways to the next School, and give a Present to the Schoolmaster to let the Scholars have a Play-day, and to pardon those who deserve Correction, or they buy Birds that are in Cages, and give them their Liberty, which they fancy will procure the Women an easy Delivery. Tho' the *Persian* Men use so much Freedom with their Wives, they punish Adultery in them by Death, and they may kill the Adul-

terer if he be taken in the Fact. *Tavernier* says, they marry their Children at 9 or 10 Years old. The Men give Dowries to the Women from their Estates, but receive very little with them.

When the *Persians* are dangerously sick, Fires are lighted on the Terrasses of their Houses, to give the People Notice to pray for them. When they die, Leave must be had from the Priest to wash their Bodies in Houses appointed for the Purpose. Then comes a great Number of Priests with the Ensigns of the Mosque, crying *Allah* as loud as they can, dancing sometimes on one Foot, and sometimes on another. They that bawl loudest get most Money; and that they may make the greater Noise, they put their Thumbs in their Ears, and their Fingers on their Cheeks, and gape as wide as they can. They have the same Fancy with the *Turks*, that a good and bad Angel come to examine the Deceas'd as soon as he is in the Grave; and that at the Day of Judgment, they must pass over a Bridge as sharp as a Razor, which the *Mussulmen* do without any Hurt; but the rest fall into a Torrent of Fire among Devils, arm'd with Cramp-Irons, Pincers, and Tenter-Hooks. Some of them have the same Opinion of a Sensual Paradise with the *Turks*; but others think the Happiness of that Place consists in a perfect Knowledge of the Sciences.

Tavernier says, when they carry a dead Corps on the Bier, every one who meets it proffers his Help to bear it, for which the Relations of the Deceas'd make some Acknowledgment. If he be a Person of Quality, or a stout Soldier, all his Horses are bridled and saddled. One carries his Turbant, and others his Scymiter, his Bow and Arrows, Buckler, &c. which are buried with him. They lay their Bodies with the Face towards *Mecca*. The Rich set up an Arch with 4 Pillars over the Grave, and eat and drink in the Shade when they visit their Tombs. None but the *Moulla's* or Priests return to the House of the Deceas'd, where they have Meat set before them, and are further paid for their Singing and Bawling. A while after the Kindred visit the Heir, discourse him upon the Contempt of the World, and tell him, That 'tis but as a Caravan, some of which arrive sooner at their Journey's-end than others. The *Grandees* order

order in their Wills, That they shall be carried to *Mecca* or *Mesched*. *Herbert* says, they never lay two Bodies in one Grave, for fear of disturbing the Dead, who they think are sensible of Torment while in the Dust. He gives this Account of their Funeral Processions: First go the Relations, then the Servants naked above the Waist, who burn and scratch their Arms and Breasts, and make Circles in their Flesh. Next to them follow Youths bearing some Texts out of the *Alcoran* on their Shoulders, and repeating Eulogies on the Deceas'd. Next to these come Persons of the best Rank, each putting his Hand to the Cord that draws the Hearse, and on every Side throng the Multitude, bearing Lawrel, Cypress, Garlands of Flowers, Fruits, &c. in their Hands. With these are mix'd some Horsemen half naked, who sometimes wound themselves to express their passionate Sorrow. In the last Place go Women that are hir'd to weep and howl, who tear their false Hair, and use other antick Postures under a Shew of Mourning.

The common People are very abusive in their Language to one another, but they rarely blaspheme God, or wish themselves to the Devil; and if they hear any such Thing, they cry out with Astonishment, *Is not that Fellow a Fool to give himself to the Devil, and renounce Paradise?* They think it a mighty Curse upon one another, when they wish, That their Souls may have no more Rest in Paradise, than a *Frenchman's* Hat has upon his Head. They are as fulsome in their Compliments as they are rude in their Anger; for when they invite a Friend to their House, they beg *that he may ennoble it by his Presence; that they may sacrifice themselves to his Command, lie prostrate at his Feet, and pave his Way with the Apple of their Eye.* A *Persian* having a Pain in his Side, came to the *Holstein* Ambassadors Physician for Advice, and told him, if he cur'd him, *he would give him his Head.* The Physician answer'd, That at that Rate it was needless to cure his Pain. To which the *Persian* reply'd, That it was only their Way of Speaking. The Ambassadors say, That the *Persians* are not very religious in keeping their Promises, nor in speaking Truth, and therefore to call one another Lyar is reckon'd no more than a Jest; yet they

have a certain Friendship which they prefer before all Obligations of Kindred, and say, ought not to be dissolv'd till Death. It is their Custom to entertain their Kindred and Friends once a Year; and if on that Occasion any of the Company desire to enter into a stricter Amity, they pitch upon one of their Number, whom they chuse for their Godfather, which he must not refuse. Then they go to the Caliph, and prostrate themselves at his Feet, when he strikes them thrice with a Wand on the Back, and says, *Allah, Mahomet, and Haly.* After which, they kiss the Rod, and the Caliph's Hand; and this Friendship is accounted inviolable. If one of those be injur'd by another, the Breach is made up at the next Feast thus: The injur'd Person goes to the Door of his Friend, with his Head stooping, and his Arms hanging in a careless Manner by his Sides; and in that Posture he stands till the other invite him three times to come in. Then they go together to the Feast, where the Reconciliation is perfected.

Their Trade and Manufactures.

THE Country-Trade of *Persia* is managed by the *Persians* and *Jews*, and the Foreign Trade by the *Armenians* only, who sell the Silks for the K. and the Nobility, and exceed all the others in Riches, according to the *Holstein* Ambassadors, who say, they export Yearly 20000 Bales of Silk, which they exchange at *Ormus* for Tin, Copper, *English* and *Dutch* Cloths, an ordinary Cloth yielding 5 or 6 l. a Yard in some Parts of *Persia*, where they don't so well understand that Manufacture. Their Raw-Silk is commonly worth about Half a Crown per Pound. They add, That the Traffick is never obstructed in *Persia*, tho' in Time of War, because of an Agreement between the *Persians* and the *Turks* for that End. *Tavernier* says, the Seal-Skins and Goat-Skins dress'd in *Persia* are transported into *India*, *Japan*, *Muscovy*, and *Poland*. They sell vast Numbers of their Camels into *Armenia* and *Natolia*, and some Horses and Mules into *India*. Great Flocks of Sheep are drove out of the Province of the *Medes* and *Higher Armenia* as far as *Tauris* and *Amadan*, where they

they are bought up by Foreign Merchants, and the greatest Part of the Mutton which is spent in *Romania* and *Natolia* comes likewise out of *Persia*. Both Inhabitants and Foreigners may travel whither they please, and trade to all Places, paying only the Custom, and some small Duties to the Crown. They carry to *Ormuz*, Gold, Silver, Silk, Silk-Stuffs, Brocades, Carpets, Horses, Allum, Tutty, Rhubarb, Rose-Water, &c. which they barter for Cinnamon, Cloves, Pepper, Cardamum, Ginger, Nutmegs, Mace, Sugar, Tin, Sandal, and Japan Wood, *Chinese* Porcelane, Musk, Amber, Aloes, Precious Stones, Pearls, Indigo, Wax, &c. They also transport Turquoises into *India*. The *Hollanders*, and the Natives of *East-India*, import Pepper, Sugar-Candy, Japan, Camphire, Porcellane, Preserv'd Ginger, *China* Roots, Anniseeds, Tea, Cloves, Nutmegs, Mace, Pepper, Cinnamon, Gum, Wax, Benjamin, Sandal, Ebony, Copper, Tin, and most *Indian* Commodities, and carry back Pearls, red Skins dress'd, red Earth pack'd up in Bales from *Ormuz*, Diamonds, Rubies, Emeralds, Turquoises, Rings, Rose-Water, &c. and especially the *Persian* Silks and Carpets. The *English*, *Netherlanders* and *Portuguese* trade thro' the whole Country, only the latter are not permitted to come to *Ormuz*, *Gamron*, *Lareca*, *Cismy*, &c. and the *Hollanders* are oblig'd every Year to make great Presents to the King and his Courtiers for the promoting of their Trade. They have their Factories at *Bander-Gamron*, *Lar*, and *Ispahan*. The Pearl-Trade is one of the chiefest at *Gamron*. *Sanfon* says, the Commerce of *Persia* is greatly decay'd thro' the Injustice of the Cans and Viziers, in not observing the Privileges the King grants to Merchants, and the Badness of their Coin, proceeding from their Neglect in finding out, and their Lenity in slightly punishing, those that counterfeit it. He adds, that they have so lower'd the Value of *European* Money, that no Merchant will carry any thither now. *Tavernier* says, they don't import such Quantities of Velvets, Tissues, and Taffata's, as formerly into *Europe*, because now the *Europeans* make them cheaper and better than themselves.

Hakluyt says, the *Persians* are such Artists at dying of Cloth and Silk, that neither Rain, Wine, nor Vinegar, will stain it.

Sir John Chardin says, the King and the *Grandees* keep in their Houses Manufactories of all Sorts, which they call *Carcone* or Work-houses, wherein they maintain a great Number of excellent Masters, who have a Pension and Diet during Life, and allow them Materials; and when they have finish'd any curious Piece, make them Presents, or advance their Pay.

Tavernier says, there are some Handicraft Trades which pay a Yearly Duty to the K. and those which are exempted pay him as much by their Labour as the others do in Money. Their Painters do all in Miniature, and draw Birds and Flowers indifferently well, but know not what belongs to Figures and Stories. Their Gold and Silver Manufactures never tarnish by long wearing or lying by. They make Silk-Stuffs of all Sorts. Some make Bonnets and Girdles of Gold and Silk: Others fasten Flowers of Gold and Silver to their Taffata's with Gum-Water, and prefer them before the Stuffs of *India*, tho' these be much finer. They also make great Quantities of Linen-Cloth of all Colours, upon which they fasten several Flowers, and some Figures, tho' the Law forbid it. These Pieces they hang before their Doors, and those hollow Places in the Walls where they put their Quilts and Carpets when they rise. They are excellent Artists at damasking with Vitriol, or engraving Damask-wise upon Swords, Knives, &c. *Tavernier* imputes this to the Nature of the Steel that they use, which is brought from *Golconda*, and is the only Sort of Steel that can be damask'd. They are very ingenious at making Bows and Arrows, and other Weapons which they use, and in sewing their Bridles and Saddles. Abundance of the Poor get their Livelihood by mending Glass Tobacco-Pipes.

Their C O I N S.

They have no Gold nor Silver Mines in *Persia*; nevertheless they have Medals of the former, and Coins of the latter. *Tavernier* reckons them up thus: The *Abassi* is worth 1 s. 4 d. the *Mamoudi* 8 d. the *Bassfi* 6 d. $\frac{1}{4}$. the *Chayet* 4 d. the *Or* 6 s. 11 d. $\frac{1}{4}$. and the *Toman* 3 l. 9 s. There is also a Copper

per Coin call'd *Casbeke*, which goes at 1 *d.* $\frac{1}{2}$ apiece. The 4 first are of Silver. The *Or* and the *Toman* are not the Names of Coins, but of Sums. The aforefaid Pieces of Money, except the *Casbeke*, are only inscrib'd with the Name of the King reigning, when they were coin'd, of the City where, and the Year of *Mahomet's Hegyra*.

The *Holstein* Ambassadors reckon the *Abassi* at 1 *s* 6 *d.* They add the *Half-Abas* and the *Scahi*, which is the 4th Part of an *Abas*. *Pul* is the general Name for all Brass Money. They make the *Casbeki* above-mentioned the 40th Part of an *Abas*; and add, that Foreigners are obliged to pay for what they buy in Rixdollars or *Spanish* Ryals, which are generally converted into *Abassi's*, because they gain the 4th Part by it. Every City has its peculiar Brass Money and Mark, which they change and recoin every Year, to the great Advantage of the King, who out of a Pound of Metal that cost about 1 *s.* 6 *d.* makes 64 *Casbeki*, or about 6 *s.* Sterling. The common Mark is a Stag, a Deer, a Goat, a Satyr, a Fish, &c. *Thevenot* says, the *Abassi's* are of the most refin'd Silver, stamp'd (as their other Coins) with the Hammer, and not mill'd.

Their Weights and Measures.

THE *Holstein* Ambassadors say, they weigh by the *Badman*, which at *Tauris* is 6 Pound, in *Kilan* 12 Pound, and at *Schamachie* and at *Karabath* 16 Pound. *Mandelstoe* adds the *Man*, which is 6 Pound, the *Mancha* 12, and the *Mansurats* 30 Pound. *Thevenot* says, the *Man* of *Ispahan* is a Weight of 12 Pounds; and that, according to the *Persian* Geometry, a Degree makes 22 *Parasangs* or *Farfangs* and $\frac{1}{7}$, a *Farfang* 3 Miles, a Mile 4000 Cubits, a Cubit 24 Fingers, and the Finger 6 Barley-Corns laid Side-ways.

Their Language and Learning.

THE *Persians* reckon four Languages among 'em, viz. the *Persian*, the *Turkish*, the *Arabian*, and that spoke by the Country People, which is rather an unintelligible Gibberish. They count the *Ara-*

bian the most eloquent, and therefore all their Books are written in it. They call the *Persian* sweet and pleasing; but that spoke by the Gentry is compos'd chiefly of *Arabick*, because the *Persian* is very barren. The *Turkish* is spoke at Court, and call'd the *Rhodomantado* Language. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, there are a great many *German* and *Latin* Words mix'd with the *Persian*, and think it very different from the ancient *Persian*. 'Tis easily to be learn'd, but hard to be pronounc'd. The Curious may consult *Herbert's Travels*, where they will find a little Vocabulary of these Languages compar'd together.

They have no Printing, therefore they publish their Books and all other Matters in Writing. *Hakluyt* says, they write backwards, and make almost every Letter to signify a Word by some particular Mark or Circumflex over it. *Tavernier* says, they use three Sorts of Hands, which are, the Set, Court and Running Hands. They write with small *Indian* Reeds, and lean very slightly upon the Paper, which they hold in one Hand, to turn it according to the Motion of the Pen, otherwise their Dashes could not be large and free, as the Character requires. They make their Paper of Cotton-Fustian, very coarse and brown, and apt to tear with folding. They smooth it with Sleek-Stone, and make their Ink of Galls and Charcoal pounded together with Soot. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, they write upon their Knees, because they have no Tables; that they make some of their Paper of Silk and Cotton, and their Ink of the Rind of Pomegranates, or Galls and Vi-triol, which they thicken with burnt Rice or Barley powder'd, and then dissolve it in Gum-Water.

Sir *John Chardin* says, the *Persians* make *Mercury* the Patron of all Penmen and Writings, and hold those born under that Planet to be endu'd with a refin'd Wit. *Thevenot* says, not only the Learned, but the common People and Soldiers, study Astrology; and that all their Talk is of Spheres, Apogees, Perigees, Excentricks, &c. that they may not be thought vulgar and illiterate. They compute their Time, says *Herbert*, rather by the Moon than the Motion of the Sun, falsely affirming, that the Firmament or 8th Heaven finishes its Revolution in

in 32 Years, and make the Year to consist but of 353 Days. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, they make use also of the Solar Year of 12 Months and 365 Days, by which they calculate the Longitude and Latitude of the Planets. Their New Year's-Day is when the Sun coming to the Equator, enters *Aries*. They had anciently, says *Scaliger*, their peculiar Almanack, in which every Day of the Month was assign'd a particular Name, in Remembrance of their Kings or Heroes. They now use the *Arabian* Calendar, but imitate the Lustra's and Olympiads of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by computing 4 or 5 Years at once. They begin the Week on *Saturday*, and their 7th Day or Sabbath falls upon *Friday*. *Tavernier* says, every one of their Months begins from their first Sight of the Crescent, and that the first Month of the Year commences from our 11th of *March*, on which Day all the *Grande*s appear at Court, make Presents to the King, give God Thanks for continuing their Lives to the New Year, and for preserving the Fruits of the Earth. And so proud are they, from the highest to the lowest, that if they have not Money to provide a new Suit on this Day, they'll pawn their Bodies rather than be without one. He adds, that the *Persians* make 4 Divisions of the natural Day, viz. from Sun-rising to Noon, from Noon to Sun-set, from Sun-set to Midnight, and from Midnight to Sun-rising; and that at Midnight, Morning, and Sun-set, they hire Men to play for a quarter of an Hour upon Kettle-Drums, Hautboys, &c. in some Place where they may be heard all over the Town.

Their Physicians, says *Herbert*, generally attribute the first Causes to Nature, are very covetous, and have Degrees of Titles, according to their Skill and Seniority. Their Libraries are small, but select and useful. He observ'd, that they prefer Vegetables before Minerals, affect Silence, and a particular Sway of their Body when they sit Cross-legg'd, which they think helps their Study. They call the Doctors, *Hackeems*, i. e. Philosophers, or Prescribers of Life; but they call the Quacks and Mountebanks, *Shitan-Tabib*, i. e. the Devil's Surgeons. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, they know nothing of Anatomy, and cure Distempers by Contraries. They are *Gallenists*, but averse

to Phlebotomy; and their Pharmacy consists chiefly of Decoctions and Fomentations. *Herbert* says, their Epidemick Physick is Sweating, insomuch that some Cities have above 60, and some 300 Humums or Baths.

He adds, their Poets are Mimographers, and quaver like the *French* when they repeat their Verses; which makes 'em seem pretty harmonious, but they are lame in Quantity. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, the best *Persian* Pieces are in Verse; that the King entertains several Poets as his Domesticks, who are distinguish'd by their Habits; that the *Grande*es do the like; and the Vulgar have their Poetafters to divert them at Tippling-Houses.

Their Laws and Punishments.

THEIR Laws are taken out of the *Alcoran*, of a great Extent, and, says *Hakluyt*, wicked and detestable; for if a Man offends the Prince, the Punishment falls both upon himself and Kindred. *Tavernier* says, a Murtherer is always severely punish'd, and not to be got off with Money; for after he is brought before the *Divan Begui*, the Kindred of the Person slain are allow'd to torture him to Death. Debauchery is punish'd, by throwing the Offenders to Dogs kept for that purpose. Felons are tied sometimes by the Feet to a Camel's Tail, and their Bellies ripp'd open. At other Times they are buried alive, all except their Heads. But the most cruel Punishment is, when they set the Thief on Horseback, fasten his Legs to a long Stick behind, and then lard him with lighted Candles, which they suffer to burn into his very Bowels. They bind Criminals by placing a forked Piece of Timber before their Throat, into which they put their Head, the Prongs of the Fork going on each Side of the Neck: Then they shut their Hand into an hollow Place at one End. When they put any to the Rack to extort a Confession, they pinch off their Flesh with hot Pincers, and cudgel their Feet; and if they be Women, put a live Rat into their Drawers. Their lesser Punishments are, plucking out the Malefactors Eyes, piercing the Nerves of their Ankles, and hanging them up by their Feet.

Feet, which they bastinado, and sometimes cut off the Nerves.

In the Distribution of Inheritances, says *Tavernier*, the Sons have two Parts, and the Daughters one. They have a Law which says, If a Christian turn *Mahometan*, at the Death of any of his Kindred the whole Estate falls to him, excluding the Deceased's Children, or others nearer a-kin: But the Christians have found out a Way to evade this unjust Law, by making a pretended Sale of their Goods to trusty Persons, and then disposing of them by Will, which the *Mahometan* Civilians will not scruple to confirm for a little Money. They are speedy in determining Suits, without making Use of Lawyers. Their Judges are easily corrupted, but carry it with great Secrecy, because when discover'd, they seldom fail of being severely punish'd.

The ancient Geography of Persia.

AUthors are not agreed whether Ancient Persia was divided into 14, 16, or 17 Provinces. *Luyts* reduces them to 5. 1. *Aria*, subdivided into *Gedrosia*, *Arachosia*, *Drangiana*, *Aria Proper*, and *Paropanifus*. 2. *Bactriana*, subdivided into *Bactriana Proper*, and *Sogdiana*. 3. *Parthia*, subdivided into *Parthia Proper*, *Margiana*, and *Hyrkania*. 4. *Media*, subdivided into *Choromithrena*, *Tropatena*, and *Antropatia*. 5. *Persis*, subdivided into *Persis Proper*, *Susiana*, and *Carmania*.

He gives us the modern Names of those Countries as follows: 1. *Gedrosia* he takes to be *Sinda* or *Makeran*, because it was situated on the W. Side of the River *Indus*. 2. *Arachosia* comprehends the Kingdom of *Hajacan*, now Part of the Mogul's Empire, and the Province of *Candahar* in Modern Persia. 3. *Drangiana* is *Sigestan*. 4. *Paropanifus* or *Paropamisus*, and the E. Parts of *Aria*, he takes to be *Sablestan*. 5. *Sogdiana* and *Bactriana* he takes to be the S. Part of Great Tartary, particularly that now possessed by the *Usbeque Tartars*, being the Country which lay beyond the R. *Oxus*. 6. *Margiana* he thinks to be *Chorasán*, tho' some are of Opinion, that this Country includes Part of *Bactriana*, *Aria*, and *Parthia*. *Ta-*

vernier supposes *Estarabad* to answer *Margiana*. 7. *Hyrkania*, which gave Name to the *Hyrkanian* or *Caspian* Sea, is that now called *Mazanderan*, or *Tabarestan*. 8. *Parthia* included the W. Part of *Chorasán*, with the E. of *Hierak-Agemi*, and its Capital City the Metropolis of Persia call'd *Hecatompylos*, from its Hundred Gates, now suppos'd to be *Ispahan*. 9. *Media* he thinks contain'd the Provinces now called *Kilan*, *Schirwan*, *Edzerbayan*, and the W. Part of *Hierak Agemi*; but *Media Choremithrena* took up the S. E. Part of *Media*, and next to that (according to *Ptolomy's* Map) lay *Media Tropatena*, on the *Caspian* Shore. Lastly, *Media Atropatia* or *Atropatene* extended it self to the N. and W. and was inhabited by the *Caspians*, who gave Name to the neighbouring Sea. The Capital of the Country was *Ecbatan*, by many now thought to be *Tauris*, where the *Persian* Kings dwelt during the Summer. Part of the 10 Tribes led Captive by *Salmanassar* dwelt in this Country, and particularly (according to *Bochart* and most Authors) in *Media Atropatena*, and from thence spread into the neighbouring Provinces as far as *India* and *China* Eastward, and to *Armenia*, *Iberia*, and *Colchis*, Westward, as likewise into *Asia Minor*, *Greece*, and *Egypt*. 10. *Susiana*, now *Chusistan*, its Capital being *Susa* or *Shushan*, in a temperate Climate, and therefore the Winter-Seat of the Kings of Persia, and now called *Sustera*. 11. *Persis Proper*, now *Farsistan*, its Metropolis *Persepolis*, suppos'd to be *Schiraz*, or the Ruins of *Tehilminar*, further to the N. Here the Kings of Persia us'd to pass the Autumn. *Alexander the Great* burnt it in his Drink at the Perswasion of the Harlot *Thais*. 12. *Carmania*, call'd *Deserta* and *Proper*, now *Cermania*, or *Kherman*.

Cluverius makes *Gedrosia*, *Cassimeer*, and *Guzara*, *Carmania*, *Kherman*, *Guadel* and *Ormuz*; *Drangiana*, *Sigestan*; *Arachosia*, *Candahor*; *Paropamisus*, *Sablestan*; *Bactriana*, *Corasán*; *Margiana*, *Elsabar* or *Estarabad*; *Hyrkania*, *Tabaristan*; *Aria*, *Diargum*; *Parthia*, *Eraek-Persis*; *Farsi-Susiana*, *Elaran*; *Assyria*, *Chusistan*; and *Media*, *Schirwan*.

In the Chorography of those ancient Divisions of Persia, we chuse to follow *Cellarius*, because his Method is most natural, and best suited to our Maps.

MEDIA, and the adjacent Countries.

Ptolomy bounds it on the N. with Part of the Caspian Sea; the People call'd *Caspian*, *Gadusi*, &c. on the W. with *Armenia Major*; on the E. with *Parthia* and *Hyrkania*; and on the S. with *Persis*, *Susiana*, and Part of *Assyria*. *Bochart* derives its Name from *Madai* the Son of *Japhet*, who they say first Peopled it, or from an *Arabian* Word which signifies a Boundary. The Country was anciently of a large Extent, and divided into *Atropatene* and *Magna*. That Part beyond Mount *Taurus* and the *Hyrkanian* Sea was cold, and so barren, that they made their Bread of Almonds, and their Drink of the Juice of Herbs. They had few tame Cattle, and liv'd by Hunting and Fishing. On the S. Side of *Taurus* the Soil is very rich, the Country pleasant, and fruitful in Corn and Wine, &c. and has such large Pastures, that 50000 Horses graze in some of them. *Mandefloe* observes, that most of the Maps of *Persia* in his Time were very defective, and place the Caspian Sea too far N. by which they make the Country 10 Degrees broader than it is; for they put the City of *Resht* in Lat. 41. whereas it lies in 37, and *Gameron* or *Gambron* in 25; whereas it lies in 27.

The ancient Inhabitants were great Warriors, and overturn'd the *Babylonian* Empire, as has been mentioned already. Polygamy was in such Esteem among them, that it was reckon'd a Punishment for a Villager to have fewer than 7 Wives, or a Woman of Note fewer than 5 Husbands. In Wars they poison'd their Arrows with the bituminous Water call'd *Naphta*, which from hence was named *Oleum Mediacum*. The Arrows so poison'd being shot from a slack Bow, (for a strong Motion took away its Force) did burn the Flesh in which it fasten'd with so much Violence, that nothing but Dust could quench it, for Water increas'd the Flame.

Christianity was planted here by *St. Thomas*, but never universally embrac'd, because always persecuted. Those among them now are *Armenians* or *Nestorians*. The ancient Inhabitants, besides those mention'd

already, were the *Carchusi* or *Carduchi*, afterwards called *Corduani*, *Corydai*, or *Gordiai*, who liv'd about the *Tigris*; the *Mardi*, who liv'd in the Borders of *Hyrkania*; the *Tapuri*, in the Borders of *Media Magna*; and the *Tapyri* in *Atropatena*, besides other obscure People, which we pass over.

Its principal Mountains were, 1. *Choatra*, which divided it from *Assyria* on the S. and branch'd out from the *Gordian* Mountains in the Confines of *Media* and *Assyria*. 2. Mount *Zagrus*, which divided *Assyria* from *Media* on the E. 3. *Parachoatra*, which *Ptolomy* places on the Frontiers of *Persis*, but *Strabo* N. on the Banks of the Caspian Sea. 4. A Ridge of Mountains which separated it from *Hyrkania* and *Parthia* on the E. In the Middle of the Country lay Mount *Orontes* towards the N. *Jasonius* to the S. and *Coronus*, which join'd the *Parthian* Mountains.

The chief Rivers were the *Araxes*, already described; *Cambyses*, *Cyrus*, *Mardus* or *Amardus*, *Straton*, and *Charindas*. Most of them run into the Caspian Sea.

MEDIA ATROPATENE.

IT lies betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the Caspian Sea, and derives its Name from *Atropatus*, who defended the Country against the *Greeks*, set up for himself and his Race, and enjoy'd the Crown in *Strabo's* Time. Their Towns were, 1. The Metropolis *Gaza*, in a Plain at an equal Distance from *Artaxata* and *Ecbatana*. 2. *Vera*, taken by *Anthony* in his *Parthian* Expedition. The Inhabitants of this Part of the Country were the *Cadusi*, &c. above-named, whom *Fuller* thinks to be the Offspring of the *Israelites* when the 10 Tribes were brought Captive hither, and derives their Name from the Hebrew Word *Kedoshim*, signifying Holy, on Account of their Vocation; but *Bochart* denies this, because *Ctesias*, a very ancient Writer, says, the *Cadusi*, *Tapyri*, &c. were subject to *Ninus*, and by consequence not Strangers. He tells us also, That the *Cadusi* wag'd great Wars with *Artaxus* or *Arseus* K. of the *Medes*, who was defeated by *Parfodes* when he invaded the *Cadusi* with 800000 Men; so that the Wars continued

betwixt the *Medes* and the *Cadusii* till the Time of *Cyrus*, in whose Reign they willingly submitted to the *Persians*, but rebelled under *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, who march'd against them with 300000 Foot, and 10000 Horse, but without Probability of Success, unless two of their Kings had been circumvented by *Tiribazus*. We pass over the obscure Towns mention'd by *Ptolomy*. *Phraata* is thought to have been a Royal Town; according to *Appian* in *Parth.* who says, *Anthony* besieg'd it in vain. *Cellarius* observes *Pomponius Mela's* great Mistake in alledging, that the Rivers *Cyrus* and *Cambyse* rise from the Foot of Mount *Coraxicus*, and run different Ways thro' *Iberia* and *Hyrkania*, and afterwards meet in one Channel, and fall both together into the *Hyrcanian Sea*, since the Thing is impossible in Nature.

Heylin places the *Martiana Palus* in this Country, and upon the Confines of *Syria* and *Armenia*, from the Fish of which dry'd in the Sun, and exported into other Countries, the Inhabitants make great Profit.

2. *Hamadum*, which *Benjamin* of *Tudela* calls *Madai*, and says, in his Time there were 50000 *Jews* in it. *Bochart* supposes them to have been the Remains of the 10 Tribes captivated by *Salmanassar*, and rebukes those who place them in *Iberia*, *Colchis*, *Armenia Minor*, and the farthest *Scythia*, since the Scripture says so expressly 2 Kings 17. 6. and 18. 11. that they were carried into *Assyria*, and the Cities of the *Medes*, especially since in *Assyria*, and the adjoining Part of *Media*, those Places are found which are mention'd in Scripture, viz. *Chalach*, which is *Ptolomy's Calachena*, in the N. Part of *Assyria*; *Chabor*, which is *Ptolomy's Chaboras*, betwixt *Media* and *Assyria*, but falsely call'd *Ghoatras* in Maps, from which Mountain, about Midway to the *Caspian Sea*, lies *Gozan*, Lat. *Gaušana*, mention'd 2 Kings 18. 11. betwixt the two Channels of the River *Cyrus*; and he thinks this Town did then give Name to the Country and River before *Cyrus* reign'd there, and had the River call'd so in Honour of himself. *Bochart* likewise observes, that *Media* is call'd *Hara*, 1 Chron. 5. 26. from whence the *Greeks* call'd it *Aria*, and the *Medes*, *Aris*.

M E D I A M A G N A,

IS enclos'd with *Persis*, *Parthia*, *Hyrkania*, and the *Caspian Sea*, which lies N. from it. The Boundary on the W. from *Atropatene* is not certain. Part of *Assyria* does also touch upon it. This is that Country so much commended by *Polybius* and others of the Ancients, who speak of *Molo*, a Prince of *Media*, formidable for the Largeness of his Dominions. He likewise commends the Country for Plenty of Corn, Cattle, Wine, Fountains, &c. and for its Largeness and Strength, he says, it exceeded any other Part of *Asia* in those two Respects, as it did for Men and Horse.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Ecbatana*, which he says far exceeded all other Towns in Riches and Magnificence. *Diodorus* says, it was 250 Stadia in Circuit, and vastly rich. It was chiefly noted for the Sepulchres of the Kings, and the Temple of *Anaitis*. Authors differ about the Antiquity and Founder of it. *Cellarius* agrees with *Herodotus*, that it was built by *Dejoces*, a King of the *Medes*, and corrects *Pliny* for ascribing it to King *Seleucus*, who he supposes might have repair'd it. He likewise corrects *Diodorus* for ascribing it to the fabulous Times of *Semiramis*, who he says built it in a Valley, with a sumptuous Palace; whereas *Herodotus* says, it was built on a moderate Ascent. It lay about 12 Stadia from Mount *Orontes*; 'Tis call'd *Ecbatana* of *Media*, to distinguish it from a Town of the same Name in *Syria*. The Walls of it are described in *Judith* to be 70 Cubits high, and 50 Cubits broad, built of hewn Stone, 6 Cubits long, and 3 Cubits broad. There were Towers of 100 Cubits upon its Gates. The Foundations of them were 60 Cubits broad, and the Gates 70 Cubits high, and 40 broad. *Polybius* says, in his Time the Town had no Walls, but that its Castle was fortified to a Miracle. 'Twas encompassed by 7 Walls, which rose gradually above one another with Battlements, the building of it in that Manner being favour'd by the natural Situation of the Hill. The uppermost of those Walls, says *Herodotus*, was equal in Compass to *Athens*, which was about 178 Stadia;

Stadia, say some; 200, say others. Several compar'd it in Largeness to *Rome*, and others to *Syracusa*. The Battlements which jutt'd over the Walls were of different Colours: Those on the first were White, the 2d Black, the 3d Purple, the 4th was Sky-colour, the 5th Scarlet, the 6th of Silver, and the 7th of Gold Colour. *Bochart* thinks it had its Name from this Variety of Colours, because *Agbatha* in the *Arabick* signifies as much. Near the Castle stood the Royal Palace, 7 Stadia in Circuit. 'Twas built of Cedar and Cypress. The Beams and Columns were cover'd with Silver and Gold Plates, and the Tiles were of Silver. But most of these Things were carried off upon *Alexander's* Invasion; yet when *Antigonus* and *Seleucus Nicator* reign'd, the Temple of *Anaitis* had still gilded Columns, and Tiles of Gold and Silver; which being melted down, mounted to 4000 Talents, says *Polybius*. *Josephus* supposes the Prophet *Daniel* to have built this Palace; but *Bochart* thinks justly, that it much exceeded the Ability of a private Man, tho' *Daniel* might give his Advice as to the Management and the Architecture to *Darius the Mede*, who is suppos'd to have built it, and that therefore the keeping of that Palace might be committed to a Jewish Priest as low as the Time of *Josephus*. Some make *Seleucus* the Founder; and in *Judith*, 'tis said to have been founded by *Arphaxad K.* of the *Medes*, who was cotemporary with *Nebuchadnezzar*. *Diodorus* says, That Queen *Semiramis* cut a Canal thro' Mount *Orontes* 12 Stadia from the Town, to bring Water to it from a Lake; so that nothing certain can be determin'd about it. *Bochart* says, it lay in a Valley at the Foot of the Mountains, but not upon them. *Pliny* makes it 750 Miles from *Seleucia Magna*, 20 from the *Portæ Caspiæ*, 450 from *Susa*, and as much from *Gaza Atropatensis* or *Gozan*; which seeming to be inconsistent with one another, *Ptolomy's* Position of it is the most certain. During the Empire of the *Parthians*, the Royal Seat was removed from *Ecbatana* to *Rhagæ* or *Rhaga*. *Cellarius* supposes the Town called *Batana* to be different from *Ecbatana*, and to have lain on the other Side of the Mountain.

2. *Laodicea*, so called either from *Nicator's* Mother, or the Wife of *Antiochus II.* who

is said to have built it on the Confines of *Persis*.

3. *Ragæ*, *Ragia*, *Ragea* or *Raga*, and *Rhaga*. 'Twas afterwards called *Arfacia* by the *Parthians*. *Cellarius* says, there were two Towns of this Name, the Old and the New; the latter built by *Seleucus Nicator*, who called it *Europus*. The Old Town lay within a Day's Journey of the *Caspia Portæ*. The Old one was at last swallow'd up in the New; so that latter Writers mention but one. It was the greatest Town in *Media*, and the Place where their Kings liv'd in the Spring. 'Twas built in a great Plain call'd *Ragau*, that lies near the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, and was capable of feeding 150000 Horse, says *Arrianus* in *Alexandro*. 'Tis suppos'd to derive its Name from *Raga* the Son of *Phaleg*.

The CASPIAN SEA,

IS also call'd the *Hyrceanian*. *Pliny* says, it had the former Name from the Banks of it, which the *Caspia* inhabited; and the latter from those inhabited by the *Hyrcaei*. 'Tis also called the Sea of *Bachu* and *Sala*, from two Ports of those Names. Ancient Authors differ much about the Origine and Form of this Sea. Most of them by Mistake make it a Bay of the Northern Ocean, among whom are *Strabo* and *Mela*; but *Herodotus*, who wrote long before them, said truly, that it had no Communication with any other Sea. He likewise gave a good Description of the Bigness and Form of this Sea, and tells us, that it was 15 Days Sail with Oars from E. to W. and 8 Days Sail in Breadth from S. to N. which *Julius Scaliger* and *Olearius*, with other Geographers and Map-makers, have inverted; but are confuted by *Isaac Vossius* in his Observations on *Mela*, and by most of our modern Travellers.

Herbert, who saw it, says, 'tis about 3000 Miles in Circumference; that the Shape of it is Oval; the Diameter from N. to S. is about 600 Miles. Towards the Shore 'tis shallow and full of Shelves, and stands so, that the Ships made use of upon it seldom draw above 8 Foot Water when loaden; yet a few Leagues off from the Shore 'tis so deep, that 'tis scarce to be fathom'd. It resembles

seembles the Ocean in Taste and Colour, tho it has no visible Communication with any Part of it: Yet he thinks it must have a secret Outlet into some other Sea, and particularly the *Euxine*, to which it lies nearest, and because that Sea has a Current, which from its Eastern Shore towards the *Caspian* runs along the *Æstuarium* of the *Palus Mæotis*, from whence it empties it self into the *Thracian Bosphorus*, and by consequence into the *Mediterranean*. That it has an Intercourse with the Ocean under Ground, he thinks is evident from its abounding with those Sorts of Fish whose ordinary Abode is in salt Waters, and don't care to be in fresh, such as Porpoises, Congers, Gudgeons, Thornbacks, Turbets, Cackarels, Scate, Soals, Oysters, Lobsters, Crabs, and Sturgeon, &c. He is not positive that it ebbs and flows, but to the best of his Observation it does; and tho not so much as our Seas, yet more than the *Baltick*, and its Water is also more salt. He says, that in 8 Days Ships usually cross this Sea with a favourable Wind from *Astracan* to *Derbent*. The ordinary Vessels made use of are only stitch'd together with Hemp and Cord; and they have Canoes dug out of large Oaks, capable of holding 6 Fishermen, who launch out some Leagues in those Canoes without any Fear of Danger. But at several Sea-Ports he saw great Flag-bottom'd Vessels with Masts and Sails, with which they trade along the Coast, and cross to *Astracan*. *Herbert* is of Opinion, that we might have a Trade with *Persia* and the *Indies* much nearer this Way, by sailing to *Archangel*, and from thence down the *Dwina* and *Volga*. He adds, according to *Mercator*, that this is the greatest Lake in the whole World. He bounds it with *Nagay Tartary* on the N. *Hyrkania* on the S. *Zagathay* on the E. and Part of *Media* and *Armenia* on the W. and says, it is surrounded with lofty Hills, and has many noted Towns of good Trade on its Shores.

Struys, who was a Mariner, and sail'd this Sea, gives us a good Map and Account of it. From S. to N. he makes it 129 *German* Leagues, or 516 *English* Miles, and the greatest Breadth 80 *German* Leagues, or 320 *English* Miles. It has two great Gulphs on the W. Side towards each End, call'd the Gulphs of *Kieselar* and *Gilan*. There

are many Islands in it, especially in the N. Gulph towards the Mouth of the *Volga*, and near *Astracan*. He adds, That the Fishery of this Sea, and of the neighbouring Rivers which fall into it, being no fewer than 85, belongs to the King of *Persia*, and makes a great Branch of his Revenue. From *April* to *September*, a great Part of the *Persian* Coast is inclos'd with Stakes, in which no Man must fish without Order on Pain of Death. Within these Stakes there are Carps, Salmon, Sturgeon, and Herring, much larger and fatter than those on the Coast of *Holland*. He says, he has seen Carps there above two Ells long, and several other Sorts of Fish not to be found elsewhere, particularly one called a *Glutton*, because he devours the rest, and has a very big Head. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, its Head is as it were within its Belly, and has a round Tail 7 or 8 Foot broad, and as many long, which they fasten to the Fisher-Boats; and if the Men be not careful, overturn them. *Struys* says, That it is suppos'd this Sea has a Communication with some other under Ground from the Gulph of *Gilan*, where it makes such a Noise, that in a calm Day 'tis heard above 6 Leagues. Therefore the *Persians* avoid this Gulph as much as they can, and there are two particular Places where the Noise is greatest, which they carefully shun. He says, when he was there, several *Armenian* Merchants told him, they wonder'd that the *Dutch* did not chuse to trade hither by the Way of *Muscovy*, since it would be shorter, less dangerous, and much cheaper than by Way of *Smyrna*; adding, that the best Commodities for the *Caspian* Sea would be Lead, Tin, Quick-silver, Cloth, Serges, and such Merchandize, which would sell very well at *Derbent*, *Schamachie*, and *Ardeuil*, by which Means they might engross the *Persian* Silk-Trade, &c. for they might have above 30000 Bales of Silk Annually from the Provinces of *Gilan*, *Shirwan*, &c. which bound on that Sea, besides fine Skins, Shagreen, Saffron, Rhubarb, and other Commodities, that would yield much Profit. He adds, that from 6 to 9 Leagues on the Coast of this Sea the Water is sometimes wholly fresh, and at other Times half salt, and the Soundings are from 12 to 50 Fathom, but when further at Sea, the Water is wholly salt. The

Gulph

Gulph of *Gilan* runs 38 Leagues up the Country. The Mountains round this Sea are either of Shells, Free-Stone, or Marble of all Sorts; and from the great River of *Jem* on the E. Side, which separates the *Calmuck* from the *Gwin Tartars*, there are Plains and Vallies inhabited by those People, but the rest of the Coast by the *Persians* and *Medes*.

The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, this Sea neither ebbs nor flows, and take Notice of the Mistakes of *Qu. Curtius*, who says, that its Waters are fresher than those of the Ocean; and of *Petreius*, who says, 'tis black as Ink. They likewise refute *Curtius's* Story, that it breeds vast Number of Serpents; and of *Contarin's* great round Fish without a Head, of an Ell and a half Diameter, from whence the *Persians* have Oil for their Camels and Lamps; for they say, that Oily Liquor they make use of they have from Mount *Barmach*, near the City *Bachu*, from whence great Quantities of it are transported all over the Kingdom. They likewise tax *Mela* and *Bizarrus* for saying, the *Caspian Sea* is unnavigable because of monstrous Fishes, there being no such but the *Glutton* above-mention'd.

Father *Averill* confirms *Struys's* Opinion, That the Water of the *Caspian* discharges itself by subterraneous Passages in the Gulph of *Gilan*, because there are two Whirlpools there which swallow up the Water with great Rapidity, and such a terrible Noise, that the Mariners carefully avoid them. He adds, that it probably falls into the *Persian Gulph* from those subterraneous Passages, because at the End of Autumn a vast Quantity of Willow-Leaves is found in the Gulph; whereas 'tis very well known there is no Tree of that Sort in the S. of *Persia*, and that there are Multitudes of them on the Banks of the Gulph of *Gilan*.

P E R S I S, S U S I A N A, and the adjacent Provinces.

THESE Countries lie betwixt the River *Tigris*, the Mountains of *Media*, *Carmania*, and the *Persian Gulph*. *Susiana* begins at the *Tigris*: Next to it lies *Elymais*, and last comes *Persis* or *Persia*, the largest of the 3; and in the N. Mountains of this

Tract liv'd the *Oxii*, *Cossæi*, and *Paratacceni*, with other People of less Note. The Name in *Hebrew* is *Paras*, which signifies both the People and Country, and from hence came the *Latin* and *Greek Persis*, *Persæ*, and *Persia*. Its ancient Name was *Elam*, from whence 'tis believed the *Persians* are the Offspring of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*, *Gen. 10. 22.* tho' *Elymais* be more probably the Place of his first Settlement, according to *Josephus*, *Jerome*, &c. It was also call'd *Achæmenia*, from *Achæmenes* one of their ancient Kings, and one of the chief Tribes from whence those Kings descended was named *Achæmenides*. Hence *Achæmenius* and *Persicus* are the same with the Poets. Their chief Rivers were, *Oroates*, *Harax*, *Meseus*, and *Euleus*, which learned Men take to be the same with *Choaspes*: But Authors differ both as to the Head and Mouths of those two. *Pasitigris* we have mention'd already. *Ptolomy* mentions *Rogomanis*, *Brisoana*, *Nearchus*, and *Bagrada*. Others speak of *Araxes* and *Arosis*, and *Cyrus*, different from that in *Armenia*. All these run into the *Persian Sea*.

Cellarius sums up the whole Controversy about the Rivers thus: That *Ptolomy* seems to mistake the Mouth of the *Moseum*, because of the cross Navigable Ditch from the *Tigris* to *Euleus*; that *Euleus* and *Choaspes* are the same, and receive the *Hedyphon*; that *Pasitigris* and *Oroates* are the same; that *Araxes*, which runs by *Persopolis*, and is likewise call'd *Arosis* and *Rogomanis*, is increas'd by the River *Medus*. Next to this is *Brisoana* or *Brizana*; and in the last Place, that *Agradatus*, which is also call'd *Cyrus* and *Corus*, seem to be the same with *Bagrada* and *Granis*.

S U S I A N A,

Had its Name from *Susæ* or *Susa* its Metropolis. It lies betwixt *Assyria* to the N. the *Persian Gulph* on the S. the *Tigris* on the W. and *Elymais* on the E. *Ptolomy* makes *Elymais* a Part of it; but *Strabo* distinguishes them. *Susiana* was divided into *cities*, *people* and *Provinces*. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Uxii* in the N. the *Cossæi* on this Side *Euleus*, and likewise towards the Mountains on the N. the *Sissii* about *Susa* and the *Choaspis*. It was divided into *Parapotamia* or *Melitene*. *Ptolomy* mentions *Caleandene* and *Caltapetis*; but these are uncertain.

tain. In the S. Part lay *Caracene*, about the Town *Charax*, which some mistake for the Name of a River.

The remarkable Towns were, 1. *Susa*, called *Shushan* in the Scripture, the Royal Seat of the ancient Kings of *Persia*, which the Name signifies. It lay near the River *Uhlai*, *Dan. 8. 2.* the same with *Euleus* and *Choaspes*. Some think they join'd together above the Town. It was founded by *Tithonus*, adorn'd by *Memnon* his Son, and repair'd by *Darius Hystaspes*. *Strabo* compares the Walls of it with those of *Babylon*. 'Tis likewise called *Memnonium*, was 120 Stadia in Circuit, and of an oblong Form. It was here where *Ahasuerus* liv'd when he married *Esther*. The adjoining Country was afterwards called *Cissia*. *Bochart* corrects *Ptolomy* for placing it too far from the *Tigris*, whereas it lay but a Day's Journey distant, says *Diodorus*. The Name is deriv'd from a *Phœnician* Word, signifying a Lilly, and hence came the Ointment call'd *Susum*, which was so much valu'd. The Kings of *Persia* liv'd here in the Winter, because the Climate was very hot. *Bochart* says likewise, that the Country was called *Chus* and *Cuth*, from whence the *Persian* Word *Chuzestan*, or the Province of *Chus*, from *Chus* the Father of *Nimrod*. *Heylin* supposes this Country to be the Land of *Havilah*, which *Pison*, one of the Rivers of Paradise, is said to encompass; but his Arguments don't seem conclusive. He adds, that it produces the *Bdellium* there mention'd, a Tree about the Size of an Olive, that yields a Sweet-smelling Gum, which *Eugubinus* and *Beroaldus* say in Time hardens to a Pearl. *Cassiodorus* says, the Walls of *Susa* were cemented with Gold. It was certainly a rich and magnificent City, for *Alexander* found 50000 Talents of uncoin'd Gold, besides Wedges of Silver, and Jewels of inestimable Value here.

2. *Aracca*. *Bochart* supposes it to be the *Arach* mention'd *Gen. 10. 10.* to be built by *Arachys*, whereas *Strabo* says, it is noted for Fountains of Naphta, of which the *Medians* compose their Oil, which easily took Fire, but was hard to be quench'd; from whence that Verse,

Ardet Areccæis aut unda perhospita Campis.

3. *Charax*, the Capital of *Characene*. *Pliny*

says, it lay on the Bottom of the *Persian Gulph*, upon a Hill rais'd by Art betwixt the Conflux of the *Tigris* and *Euleus*, and was 3 Miles in Circumference. It was built by *Alexander the Great*, who brought the Inhabitants from the ruin'd City of *Durine*; and having left his unserviceable Soldiers here, order'd it to be call'd *Alexandria*. It was afterwards overflow'd by the Rivers, restor'd by *Antiochus V.* who call'd it *Antiochia*. Being drown'd again, *Pasines*, an *Arabian* Prince, rebuilt it, and call'd it by his own Name. It had then a famous Harbour; but late Travellers say, it lies a great Distance from the Sea. *Roman* Authors mention it by the Name of *Spasine Vallum*.

E L Y M A I S,

Was so call'd from *Elam* the Son of *Shem*; but the Name extended to all *Persis*. The *Elamites* are mention'd *Acts 11. 9.* as speaking a distinct Language from the *Parthians*, *Medes*, and the Inhabitants of *Mesopotamia*, *Cellarius* says, the Country lies betwixt the River *Euleus* and *Oroates*, from *Media* to the *Persian Gulph*, according to *Pliny*, and rejects the Opinion of *Ptolomy*. The Sea-Coast was inaccessible, because of Shelves and Slime, and the N. Parts were mountainous, and infested by Robbers; but that which lay next the Rivers was fruitful. It was divided into *Massabatica*, *Gabiana*, and *Corbiana*, and into the small Dynasties of the *Sagapeni* and *Silaceni*. The Country was so powerful, that their King would not submit to the *Parthians*, nor the *Syro Macedonians*, and they made also a famous Resistance against the *Romans*.

The chief Towns were, 1. *Seleucia*, or *Soloce*, on the River *Hedyphon*, a very great Town.

2. *Badaca*, on the *Eubæus*, noted for the Defeat of *Antigonus* by *Eumenes* in the Neighbourhood.

3. *Elymaus*, as to which the Learned differ, some taking it to be *Persepolis*, and others *Seleucia*. The Town which *Antiochus* is said to have attack'd, in order to plunder the rich Temple of *Diana*, is only said to belong to the *Elymaei*, a People in *Persis*; whereas the *English Polyglott* on *1 Maccab. 6.* mentions *Elymais* to be a rich Town in *Persis*;

sis; but the Edition of *Aldus* and the *Weche-*
lii read it, Εν Ελύμας ἐν τῇ Περσίδι πόλιν.

The most remarkable People of this Country were, 1. The *Cossæi*, whom some place E. from the *Susiani*, and others next to the *Medes*. *Plutarch* calls them *Cussæi*. *Diodorus Siculus* says, they were a valiant Nation, dwelt in the Mountains of *Media*, and resisted *Alexander*, who at last subdu'd them. Some make them the same with the *Cissii*; but *Ptolomy* distinguishes them. Some think the *Guthæans* that were transported into *Sarmaria*, 2 *Kings* 17. 24. were the Inhabitants of this Country. 2. The *Uxii*, who liv'd beyond the *Pasitigris*. Some of them dwelt in the Mountains, and others in the Vallies, which are very fruitful. They were also subdued by *Alexander*. 3. The *Mardi*, who liv'd backwards from the *Euxine* Sea in the further Parts of Mount *Caucasus*. They were a fierce Nation, and defended their Liberties bravely. 4. The *Parætaceni*. Some make them the Inhabitants of *Persis Proper*: Others place them beyond it. *Arrianus* says, *Alexander* subdu'd them when he march'd forward into *Media*. They were more given to Agriculture than their Neighbours the *Cossæi*. *Pliny* says, they liv'd beyond the *Caspia Portæ*, betwixt the *Parthi* and *Ariani*, which is too far E. as *Strabo* places them too far W. their proper Country being near *Media*; but they extended themselves into the Mountains, for the greater Convenience of plundering their Neighbours.

PERSIS PROPRIA, now FAR S,

Lay betwixt *Elymais* and *Carmania*, the Breadth of it being betwixt *Media* and the *Persian* Gulph. 'Twas of difficult Access, because encompassed with Mountains, thro' which there were only a few strait Passes, being those famous *Pylæ* betwixt the *Persians* and the *Susians*, and possess'd sometimes by the one, and sometimes by the other. *Curtius* calls them the *Pylæ Susidæ*, and says, *Ariabarzanes* possess'd them with 25000 Foot, while the Barbarians stood on the Tops of the Rocks without Reach of Bow-shot, till the Army enter'd the narrowest Part of the Streights, where they oblig'd *Alexander* to retire with great Loss. The Subdivisions of this Country are obscure, and not worth insisting on, no more than

the different People who dwelt in it, such as the *Mesabata*, *Rapsii*, *Hippophagi*, *Suzai*, *Metores*, *Meraphii*, *Masii*, *Panthelai*, *Deruziei*, *Germanii*, *Dai*, *Dropici*, *Sagartii*, and the *Pasagardæ*, who are the most known of the whole. The N. Parts of this Country are hilly and barren, but produce some coarse Emeralds. The Middle of the Country is pleasant and fruitful, and furnishes the adjoining Provinces with Plenty of Rose-Water, and Cordovant Skins. It is likewise well furnish'd with Lakes and Rivers; but that Part towards the *Persian* Gulph is sandy, barren, and produces little but Palm-Trees and Dates.

Their principal Towns were, 1. *Persepolis*, beyond the *Araxes*, Lat. 23 $\frac{1}{3}$, according to *Ptolomy*. It had a noble Palace, which, together with the City, was burnt by *Alexander* in a drunken Fit. *Curtius* calls it, *The Palace of the East*. The Walls of the Houses were of Marble from the adjoining Mountains, and the rest of Cedar and Cypress. *Diodorus Siculus* says, it was the goodliest and richest City in the World. *Alexander the Great* found 120000 Talents in ready Money here, after the Soldiers had plunder'd all the Coin, Plate, Boullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of inestimable Value. Its chief Beauty was the Royal Palace, built on a Hill, encompassed with 3 Walls, the first 16, the 2d 30, the 3d 60 Cubits high, all of black polish'd Marble, with stately Battlements, and 100 Turrets, which formed a charming Prospect. The Roof within was lin'd with Ivory, Amber, Silver and Gold; the King's Throne of solid Gold, adorn'd with the richest Pearls. After *Alexander* had burnt it, by the Instigation of *Lais* an infamous Strumpet, in Revenge for so many Cities of the *Greeks* which the *Persians* had burnt, he repented of it, and order'd it to be rebuilt; but dying soon after, it was not accomplish'd. It was so much ruin'd in the Time of *Curtius*, that he said it could not have been discover'd but by the River *Araxes*, which water'd it.

Herbert, who saw it, describes it thus: It was the Metropolis of the Eastern World in the Time of *Cyrus*, who with his Son *Cambyses* enlarg'd and beautified it; so that it was the Royal Seat during the Reign of 13 Kings, and upwards of 200 Years. *Justin* says,

says, it was enrich'd by the Spoils of the whole World, and (according to Sir *Walter Raleigh*) there was no Place in the Earth which exceeded it; so that it was justly call'd, *The Glory of the World*. The Eastern Nations call'd it *Elamis*, as we find *1 Maccab. 6.* *Ferrarius*, *Heylin*, and others, who take *Schiraz* to be built on its Ruins, are mistaken. *Plutarch* says, the Palace was so majestick, that it struck *Alexander* with Amazement when he enter'd it. In the Royal Bed-Chamber, among other Curiosities, there was an artificial Vine, whose Stalk was of pure burnish'd Gold, and the Clusters of Orient Pearl, mix'd with Rubies of great Value, and the Bedstead of Gold thick set with Jewels; the Bolster valu'd at 5000 Talents, and the Footstool at 3000, each Talent being 4500 *l.* Sterling. The Palace lay at the E. End of a spacious Vale, upon a Rock 400 Paces from the City, and the Plat contain'd about 50 Acres. The Walls on all Sides were curiously carv'd with Figures of Men and Beasts. The 2d Story was of Porphyry, mix'd with Marble of several Colours, embellish'd with costly Stones in Mosaick Work; the Architrave, Freeze, and most Part of the Arches, studded with Gold, and terrass'd at Top. Towards the E. was the stately Tower or Castle above mention'd, with a treble Wall, thro' which there were 7 Gates of burnish'd Brass. From the Summit of that Tower there was a noble Prospect of the City, and adjacent Country. Adjoining to this lay a Mount, containing about 4 Acres, and magnificently built. This was the Mausoleum of the *Persian* Kings. The Roof and Casements were of Gold, Silver, Amber, and Ivory, and the Walls of polish'd Marble of several Colours. Near this stood the Temple of *Ania* or *Diana*, equal to that of *Ecbatan*, then accounted the richest in the World, built of Marble of several Colours, intermix'd with Precious Stones in Mosaick Work, representing Men, Beasts, Flowers, &c. But to return to the Palace; it was built on a Mountain of black Marble, in a Plain of 40 Miles round. About 60 Acres of this Mountain was by extraordinary Labour and Art cut out from the rest to be a Foundation to the Palace, and the Walls and Pavements cut out of the same, and adorn'd with extraordinary Sculptures.

The Ascent to the Palace was by 95 Steps, each being 20 Inches broad. The Stair-Case was 36 Foot broad, and so contriv'd, that it had a double Passage, one N. and the other S. In each Stair, about the Middle, there was a large square Pause pav'd with Porphyry, and lin'd on the Sides with a bright Marble. Both the Stair-Cases were so easy, that *Herbert* says he saw a dozen *Persians* ride up them abreast without crowding. At the Head of the Stair there's the Ruins of a Gate about 20 Foot wide, and from thence the Hill runs 500 Paces N. and S. being cut perpendicular, about 22 Foot high, upon which there are the Remains of ancient Grotesque-Work. E. from the Stair there are Figures of 4 Beasts carv'd in Stones, at a considerable Distance from one another. One of them resembles an Elephant, the 2d a Rhinoceros, the 3d a Pegasus; but the 4th so defac'd, that it cannot be describ'd. Two of them have Visages, Beards, and long Hair, like Men: Their Heads arm'd with Helmets, and the Pegasus has Trappings resembling Mail, studded in Mosaick Work, and of such lively Colours, as if it had been but new done. *Herbert* supposes those Beasts did formerly support a Terrass or Gallery that look'd to the Garden; and within a few Paces of these there's a large square Stone Cistern, and the Fractures of some Pillars. The Wall on each Side the Stair-Case has several Rows of Sculptures, with Figures in *Relievo*, resembling some memorable Procession by Persons of different Qualities, Civil and Military; some of them carrying Baskets, others Boxes, some leading Horses, others Elephants, Camels, Mules, Oxen, and Sheep; and not far from them are the Figures of the Magi; so that 'tis probable they represent some great Sacrifice made by the King and Princes, of whom there are likewise Majestical Representations. W. from them there's a Jasper Table, with 20 Lines engraven in strange Characters, not to be decipher'd by any Alphabet now extant. The Curious may find a Copy of them in *Herbert*, and of many other antique Inscriptions there in the *Miscellanea Curiosa*, Vol. 3. printed at London in 1707. Near this there's a spacious Room resembling a Hall or Temple, wherein there are 19 Columns, sharp towards the Tops, on which Storks do now build,

build, that the *Persians* have a great Veneration for. 'Tis impossible now to discover of what Order those Columns were. They are about 20 Cubits high, about 3 Yards and a half in Compass, and fluted. The Mouldings of the Capitals are rich, and the Pedestals of Grottesque-Work with Figures, and all of fine white Marble. There are the Ruins of 21 more. After an Ascent by a few Marble Steps, there's another large square Room, of 90 Paces each Side, with 8 Doors, whose Cases are of 7 polish'd black Marble Stones, every Stone 12 Foot long, and 4 high, which, as well as the Walls and broken Arches, have Figures upon them resembling Men of Quality on Horseback, and others in Procession to a Sacrifice or Triumph. There are several other large Rooms, whose Walls are of black Marble, so finely polish'd, that they represent a Man as well as a Looking-Glass; and the Freezes and Cornishes so curiously gilt, as if they had been but newly done. There are excellent Sculptures on the Walls, representing Men of an extraordinary Size, and different Qualities and Habits; some of them resembling Princes, with Ministers of State and other Attendants, with Inscriptions over their Heads, somewhat like the ancient *Greek*; so that there's Work enough here to employ the best Pencil for half a Year to take Draughts of those Curiosities. There are many Representations of Giants, Idols, Men combating with Lions, and Beasts of all Sorts with one another; and likewise Kings, Princes, and Priests, in their respective Habits, and with the Badges of their Order. *Herbert* thinks this stupendious Structure was rais'd in the Time of *Cyrus*, and much of it by the Direction of the Prophet *Daniel*, who was President or Chief of the 120 Princes that govern'd the Kingdom, *Dan.* 6. 12. 3. Their Conspiracy against him *Herbert* takes to be represented by some of those Sculptures. The Ruins of the Temple of *Diana*, with Figures expressing the Adoration paid to that Idol, is also to be seen there; and upon the Front of the Mountain there's the Image of a Man in Gigantick Size, and ugly Shape, with a dreadful Visage, betwixt Man and Beast, and he has 7 Arms on each Side. *Herbert* thinks it to be the Figure of an Idol; but

the *Persians* alledge, it represents the greatest Prince that ever they had, call'd *Jamsheat*, whom they fancy to have been a Necromancer, and that he commanded Hell as well as the Earth. We cannot insist on the further Particulars of this admirable Structure, and shall conclude our Account of it with the Judgment of *Don Garcias de Sylva Figueroa*, Ambassador from *Philip II.* of *Spain* to *Shah-Abas*, concerning it, viz. That it exceeds all the ancient Monuments to be seen at *Rome*, or perhaps any where else in the World. The Curious may find more of it in the Travels of the *Holstein* Ambassadors, *Thevenot*, *Struys*, and others, with the Draughts of its Ruins in *Herbert*, the *Miscellanea Curiosa*, &c.

2. *Pasagardis*, was the more ancient Royal Seat of the *Persian* Kings, for which *Cyrus* had a particular Esteem, because in the Neighbourhood he obtain'd his last Victory over *Astyages* the *Mede*, and therefore order'd himself to be buried there. His Sepulchre being violated by a *Macedonian* Soldier in Hopes of Treasure, *Alexander* order'd him to be put to Death. There was nothing found in it when broken up but an Inscription to this Purpose: *I am Cyrus, who founded the Persian Empire; and therefore, whoever thou art who approachest this Place, don't envy me this small Spot of Earth which covers my Body.*

3. *Gaba*, on the River *Granis*, about 200 Stadia from its Mouth, was another Royal Palace. *Strabo* and others add *Oca* or *Taoca*, another Palace on the same River. They likewise mention an *Ecbatana* in this Country different from those in *Media* and *Syria*, and also another *Laodicea*, with several Islands belonging to *Persis*, as *Tabiana*, *Sophtha*, and *Aracia*, call'd afterwards *Alexander's* Island.

The *Persian* Gulph, on one Side of which lies *Persis* and *Carmania*, and on the other *Arabia Felix*, &c. *Pliny* says is 2500 Miles in Circuit.

CARMANIA, now KIRMAN,

Has *Persis* on the W. *Parthia* on the N. *Gedrosia* on the E. and Part of the *Persian* and *Indian* Sea on the S. from whence it is called *Carmanium Mare*. 'Tis divided into *Carmania Deserta*, which lies next to *Parthia* and

and *Carmania Proper* towards the Sea. *Ptolemy* mentions neither Town nor River in *Carmania Deserta*. The N. Part of it he calls *Modomastice*, and the ancient Inhabitants were the *Ifatiche*, *Zuthi*, and *Gadanopidres*. The Rivers of *Carmania Proper* are, *Bagrada*, *Dara*, *Araxis Ostia*, *Corcus*, *Achindana*, *Saganus*, and *Andania*, near the Cape of *Armozus* or *Ormus*, which fall into the *Persian Gulph*, and *Sarus*, *Samydaches*, *Hydriaces*, and *Zoramibus*, which fall into the *Indian Sea*. *Pliny* mentions several others, and differs about some from *Ptolemy*, for which we refer to him. *Pliny* reckons the Coast of *Carmania* to be 1250 Miles in Extent, Part of it cultivated with Vineyards and Arable Land towards *Armuzia*. Some derive the Name from the *Carmani*, its principal Inhabitants. Most of the Country was barren, sandy, destitute of Water, and the Air very hot and unhealthful; the Shores full of Rocks, and the Rivers small. *Mela* says, the ancient *Carmani* had no Houses, Corn nor Cattle, but fed on Fish, clad themselves with their Skins, and were hairy all over, wherein he contradicts *Ammian Marcellinus*. The Inhabitants of *Carmania Proper* were the *Carmani*, *Camelobosci* or *Soxotæ*, *Aeræ*, and *Chelonophagi*, who liv'd on the *Indian Sea*, eat Snails, and cover'd their Huts with their Shells; the *Armozæi* and *Arbii*, who together inhabited 402 Miles along the Coast.

The Islands belonging to this Country in the *Persian Gulph* were, 1. *Sagdiana*, in which lay the Town *Miltus*. 2. *Vorochna*. In the *Indian Sea* lay *Palla*, *Carmana*, *Liba*, and the noble Island of *Ogyris*, famous for the Tomb of King *Erithras*: But Authors differ about the Place of his Sepulchre. *Aphrodisias*, which some name *Casæa*, is also an Island belonging to this Country.

The ancient Inhabitants are suppos'd to have been the Posterity of *Sabta*, the Son of *Chus*, who came hither from *Arabia Felix*. This Country is only noted by the Ancients for *Alexander's* keeping his *Bacchanalia* here when he return'd from *India*, in Imitation of *Bacchus*, who first conquer'd that Nation. He feasted 7 Days and Nights with his Friends on a Scaffold drawn by 8 Horses, his Companions following in their Chariots, adorn'd some with Purple and Silk, others with Flowers and Boughs,

Garlands on their Heads, and Drinking-Cups in their Hands. Instead of their Arms, they had nothing but Barrels and Flaggons, and all their Skirmishes were who should eat, drink, sing, and laugh most. They were attended with Minstrels, playing on Flutes, the Women dancing, Boys shouting, &c. whence *Curtius* observes, that 1000 sober arm'd Men (had the *Persians* been endow'd with so much Courage) might have routed this drunken conquering Army at once, redeem'd their Honour, and recover'd their Liberty.

PARTHIA, now HIERACK,

Had *Media Magna* and *Hyrkania* on the N. *Carmania* on the S. *Persis* on the W. and *Aria* on the E. 'Tis also called *Parthya* and *Parthyene*. This is understood of *Parthia Proper*, and not of their Empire, which *Pliny* says consisted of 18 Kingdoms betwixt the *Red Sea* on the S. and the *Hyrkanian* on the N. Eleven of the uppermost they divided with the *Scythians*. *Salmasius* corrects *Pliny's* Mistake for extending their Empire to the *Red Sea*, because it appears from *Strabo*, that the *Persians* always kept their own Dominions, tho' subject to the *Parthian* Kings.

The *Parthians* made no great Figure till after the Reign of the *Syro-Macedonians*; so that *Curtius* says, they were formerly an ignoble People; but in his Time commanded over all beyond the *Euphrates* and *Tigris* as far as the *Red Sea*. *Strabo* says, it was a poor hilly and woody Country, encompassed with Desarts, and the most remote Inhabitants were call'd *Nomades*. Authors differ about the Extent of it, which is occasion'd by the different Success of those People and the *Medes*, who frequently possess'd Parts of one another's Country, and therefore several of the Towns and Provinces were sometimes ascrib'd to the one, and sometimes to the other. They were originally *Scythian* Exiles, and therefore call'd *Parthi*, which signifies Banish'd Men. Great Part of the Country is sandy Desarts, where the Sands being continually drove from one Place to another, fills up the Roads; so that the Government is at the Charge of building Castles at the End of every three Miles for the Reception of Passengers, and of

of laying Causeways of many Miles long in other Places, for the Conveniency of Travellers, to prevent their being swallow'd up by the Sands. The ancient *Parthians* were very temperate, their Country affording nothing for Luxury, yet much addicted to multiply Wives and Concubines. They were good Horsemen, and so much on Horseback, that they consulted all publick and private Affairs in that Posture. They were such Lovers of War, that they reckon'd no Man happy except he died in Battle, and yet looked upon those that did not as Fools and Cowards. Their Soldiers were for most Part Slaves, whom they train'd up to Arms and the Management of Horses; so that of 50000 Horse which their King brought against *M. Anthony*, not above 800 were Freemen. They were famous Bow-men, and chose to fight retiring, because they were dextrous at shooting backward, whence that of *Seneca*, *Terga conversa metuenda Parthi*. *Lucan* elegantly describes their Way of Fighting thus:

*Pugna levis, bellumq; fugax, turmaeq; fugaces,
Et melior cessisse Loco quam pellere Miles.
Illita Terra dolis, nec Martem cominus unquam;
Ausu pati Virtus, sed longè tendere Nervos.*

From hence, whence *M. Crassus* was marching against them, and dissuaded from it by an Astrologer, because he found an ill Aspect in *Scorpio*, answer'd, That he was more afraid of *Sagittarius*.

Christianity was planted early in this Country, as we find by *Acts* 11. 9. where *Parthians* are mention'd among those that were Witnesses of the miraculous Gift of Languages to the Apostles; but their Religion suffer'd the same Changes afterwards as that of *Persia*. The Country was formerly more populous than at present; for Historians tell us, That many Cities, and 2000 Villages, were destroy'd by Earthquakes.

There is little to be said of the ancient Divisions of their Provinces and Inhabitants, Authors are so indistinct and different about it.

Their chief Towns were, 1. *Hecatompylos*, their Metropolis, which *Pliny* says lay 133 Miles from the *Caspian Portæ*, and *Prolo-*
my places it Lat. $37\frac{1}{2}$. *Polybius* says, it lay

in the Middle of *Parthia*, and had its Name from the Meeting of 100 different Roads at the Place where it was built. *Curtius* says, it was founded by the *Greeks*, but does not say when. Besides, it was a famous Town when *Alexander* came to it. Others say, it was called so because of its Hundred Gates. *Calliope* was another of their ancient Towns. The rest are not worth mentioning.

HYRCANIA, now *DIARGUM*, *ME-SENDRAM*, and *CORCUM*,

Has the *Hyrcanian Sea* on the N. *Parthia* on the S. *Media* on the W. and *Margiana* on the E. Some derive the Name from *Hyrcana*, a large Forrest betwixt it and *Scythia*, and it is sometimes called *Caspia*, from the *Caspian* its principal Inhabitants, of whom it is said, that they us'd to shut up and starve their Parents when they came to be 70 Years old, because they reckon'd them then to be no more useful to the Publick. The S. Parts yield abundance of Wheat, Wines, Figs, and other Fruit; and the N. Part toward the *Caspian Sea* abounds with Pasture. The Middle is cover'd with thick Forrests, which are difficult to pass, and full of Panthers, Leopards, Lyons, and Tygers: The last so fierce, that it gave Occasion to say of cruel Men, That they had suck'd an *Hyrcanian Tyger*, according to that of *Virgil*; *Hyrcanæq; admorunt ubera Tigris*. 'Tis divided from *Parthia* by Mount *Coronus*, a Part of *Taurus*, thro' which the *Persian* Legendaries say *Mortus Aly* cut a Pass by one Blow of his Scymiter. This Pass is not above 40 Yards broad, and the Hills on both Sides extraordinary high, so that it might be easily defended by a few Men against a great Army. This is the *Caspian Portæ* formerly mention'd.

The chief Rivers are, *Zioberis*, *Maxera* or *Mazeras*, *Oxus*, *Socanda*, with a Town of the same Name, and *Apavortena*, which run from the Branches of *Caucasus* into the *Caspian Sea*.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Maxeræ*, *Astabeni*, *Chrindi*, and the *Arsitenses*, all known by the general Name of *Hyrcani*. They defended themselves against *Alexander* by tying the Boughs of their Trees together, so that he was forced to cut down the

the Woods before he could subdue them. They were the first who join'd with *Arfaces* to shake off the *Greek* Yoke, and became afterwards Members of the *Persian* Empire, till it was conquer'd by the *Tartars*, when it was govern'd by some Princes of *Tamerlane's* Family, under the Protection of the *Tartars* of *Zagathai*, but recover'd to the *Persians* not long ago by *Shah-Abas*.

Authors differ much about their ancient Towns and Inhabitants, and place several in this Country which belong to the neighbouring Provinces. They differ particularly about their Metropolis, which *Ptolomy* calls *Hyrkania*; *Polybius*, *Syringæ*, who says, 'twas a strong and opulent Town, not far from *Tambrace*, a large Town with a Palace. Some call it *Talabroca*, and *Arrianus* makes *Zeudracarta* their chief and Royal City. *Holstein*, in his Annotations on *Ortelius*, thinks that *Afsac* was the same with *Ptolomy's* *Hyrkania*, the Metropolis of the Province. Upon the whole, *Cellarius* is of Opinion, that there could not be so many Royal Seats in this Country; therefore he thinks them to be only different Names of *Hyrkania*, which *Ptolomy* places near the River *Maxera*, betwixt Lat. 40 and 41.

MARGIANA, now TREMIGEN
and JESSELBAS,

So call'd from the River *Margus*, has *Hyrkania* on the W. the River *Oxus* on the N. *Ariana* on the S. and *Bactriana* on the E. *Pliny* says, it was famous for its pleasant Fields, encompassed with delicious Mountains, was 1500 Stadia in Circuit, and of difficult Access, because of sandy Desarts which lay round it 120 Miles. *Strabo* says, it had such excellent Vines, that a Man could scarce fathom them, and that they had Bunches of Grapes two Cubits long. *Antiochus Soter* encompass'd the Plain of this Country by a Wall. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Derbicæ* or *Derbices*, about the Mouth of the River *Oxus*; the *Massagæ*, *Parni*, *Dæ*, *Tapori* or *Tapyri*, and *Sacæ*; but the Situation of those several People is uncertain. The *Derbices* were a numerous People, says *Curtius*. The *Massagæ* are by some reckon'd *Scythians*, because *Cyrus* was forc'd to cross the *Araxes*, or rather *Oxus*, when he march'd against their Qu. *Tomy-*

ris. *Herodotus* says, they were a great and valiant People. The Inhabitants have a Tradition, That it was here where *Noah* planted his Vineyard after the Deluge.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Margus*. 2. *Arias*. 3. *Oxus*, which receives the other two, and forms a large Lake, anciently call'd *Palus Oxiana*.

Their chief Towns were, 1. *Antiochia*, call'd *Margiana* by Way of Distinction. It lay on the River *Margus*, was built by *Alexander the Great*, who call'd it *Alexandria*, destroy'd by the Barbarians, and rebuilt by *Antiochus*, Son of *Seleucus*, and by him call'd *Antiochia*. *Strabo* says, he was so taken with the Fruitfulness of the Country, that he encompassed it with a Wall of 1500 Stadia. The Town was 70 Stadia in Circuit. *Orodes* brought hither the Roman Prisoners that were taken at the Defeat of *Crassus*. *Alexander* built 6 Towns in this Country on the Tops of Hills, so near, that his Garrisons might relieve one another, and secure his Possession. It afterwards follow'd the Fortune of *Persia*, till conquer'd by the *Tartars*, to whom Part of this Country and *Bactria* is still subject.

BACTRIA, now CHORASSAN,

Is also call'd *Bactriana*, has *Margiana* on the W. the River *Oxus* on the N. the Mountain of *Paropamisus* on the S. and the *Scythians* on the E. 'Tis a large and rich Country, water'd by many Rivers, which run mostly from S. to N. and fall into the *Oxus*. The chief of them are, the *Ochus*, *Dargomanes* or *Orgomanes*, *Zariaspis*, and *Artamis*. *Ptolomy* mentions a great many People and Towns here, known to no body else. The general Name of the Inhabitants was *Bactri*, *Bactrii*, and *Bactriani*. They were a potent and warlike Nation, subdu'd with much Difficulty by the *Assyrians* and *Persians*, whose Luxury they abhorred. They are charg'd with having been so unnatural to their Parents, that when they were old, they cast them to their Dogs, which they kept for that Purpose, and are call'd by *Latin* Writers, *Canes Sepulchrales*. Their Women were sumptuous in their Apparel, but unchast. This Country is suppos'd to have been as soon Peopled almost as any after the general Deluge, because of the great Army of

of 400000 Men which their King *Zoroaster* is said to have brought into the Field against *Ninus*, over whom he prevail'd at first, and slew near 100000 of his Men; but *Ninus* invading him a second time with 1700000 Foot, and 20000 Horse, if there be no Mistake in the Computation, defeated and killed *Zoroaster*, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. *Bessus*, who traiterously murder'd *Darius* after his Defeat at the Battle of *Arbela*, was Governor of this Country, for which *Alexander* put him to a cruel Death, and subdu'd the *Bactrians*. They were afterwards subject to the Kings of *Syria*, till *Euthydemus* recover'd it from the *Syrians*, and brought *Antiochus Magnus* to a Peace. It became afterwards subject to the *Parthians*, and follow'd the Fate of *Persia*; but the People being old *Mahometans*, have been averse to the *Persian* Government since they set up the Sect of *Aly*.

Their chief Towns were, 1. *Bactra*, call'd likewise *Zariaspe*, a large and rich City upon the River *Zariaspis* or *Bactrus*; but in this, Authors differ. 2. *Alexandria*, built by *Alexander*, who is said to have built 8 Towns in *Bactriana* and *Sogdiana*, besides other obscure Places. *Sisimithrae Petra* is mention'd among other Fortresses of *Bactriana*, where *Alexander* says *Strabo* married *Roxane*, the Daughter of *Oxyartis*.

S O G D I A N A,

Lies betwixt the Rivers *Jaxartes* and *Oxus*, E. from the *Caspian* Sea, into which those Rivers fall, has the *Montes Auxii* on the W. and the *Sacæ* on the E. Some extend it as far W. as the *Caspian* Sea. The People were called *Sogdii* and *Sogdiani*. They were subdivided into the *Pasæ*, *Jatai*, *Oxydracæ*, *Candari*, *Mardyeni*, *Oxiani*, *Chorasmi*, *Drepiani*, *Aristes*, *Cyrradæ*, and *Candari*. Their chief Rivers were *Oxus* on the S. and *Jaxartes* on the N. which *Curtius* and *Arrianus* mistake for *Tanais*. The River *Polytimetus* ran thro' the middle of the Country into the *Caspian* Sea. Their chief Towns were, *Drepfa* their Metropolis, and two *Alexandria*'s, one on the River *Oxus*, and another on the *Jaxartes*, both built by *Alexander the Great*. There were other obscure Towns not worth insisting on. The chief of the rest were, 1. *Nauasaca*, to which *Bessus* retir'd when he fled

from *Alexander*. 2. *Petra Sogdianæ*, which *Arimazes*, a Native, possess'd himself of with 30000 arm'd Men. *Curtius* says, this Rock was 30 Stadia in Height, and 150 in Circuit, accessible only by one narrow Pass; so that *Alexander* had much Difficulty to take it, by heaping up vast Piles of Trees, and setting them on Fire against the Pass, to amuse the Enemy, while some Detachments climb'd up the other Side of the Rock. It was also call'd *Oxi Petra*, and *Arimazeæ Petra*. 3. *Cyreschata*, *Cyropolis*, or *Cyra*, near the Head of the *Jaxartes*, the furthest Town which *Cyrus* built in those Parts, as a Monument of his Victories. 4. *Aræ*, call'd by the various Names of *Herculis*, *Liber Pater*, *Cyrus*, *Semiramis*, and *Alexander*, built in the North Parts of *Sogdiana*, as Monuments of their respective Victories, near the River *Jaxartes*. But *Cellarius* thinks with Reason, that *Alexander*'s *Aræ* was the furthestmost *Alexandria*, and *Cyrus*'s was *Cyropolis*.

There are several other Countries annex'd to *Sogdiana*, which some ascribe to the *Scythians*, because most of the Inhabitants were such; yet *Ptolomy* distinguishes them into, 1. *Gabaza*, mention'd by *Curtius*, that *Clarius* thinks to be the same with *Arrianus*'s *Gaza* or *Gaba*, which he calls a fortified Town, and is suppos'd to have given Name to the Country. 2. The Country of the *Massagetæ*, which is as much disputed as that of the *Amazons*. *Ammian.* and *Tibull.* place it near *Albania*, beyond the *Araxes*; but *Cellarius* thinks they mistook the *Armenian Araxes* for the River *Oxus*, and that the *Massagetæ* liv'd E. of *Sogdiana*. *Herodotus* mentions the War of *Cyrus* against those People, and *Justin* calls them *Scythians*. 3. The *Dakæ* or *Dacæ* are join'd to the *Massagetæ*. There were People of this Name in several Countries. *Herodotus* mentions the *Dai* in *Persis*: Most others place them beyond the *Caspian* Sea; *Ptolomy* in *Margiana*. *Strabo* says, That most of the *Scythians* who inhabit E. from the *Caspian* Sea are called *Dacæ*, and that they border'd on the *Massagetæ* and *Dacæ*; but *Pliny* calls them all *Scythians*. The Poets, both *Epick* and *Comical*, mention them: The latter as Slaves, and the former as a fierce and conquer'd People. Thus *Virgil* calls them, *Indomiti Dacæ*; and *Silius* joins 'em with the *Bactrians*; *Cui pervia Bactrae Dacæq;* To them *Curtius* and

and *Pliny* join the *Sacæ* as Neighbours that lay further E. These People in general liv'd after the Manner of the *Scythians* in Tents, without any fix'd Habitations; but *Strabo* owns, there is nothing certain to be said of those People, the ancient Writers of the *Persian*, *Median*, and *Syrian* Affairs, being either ignorant or fabulous.

PAROPAMISUS, now *CANDAHAR*, and *SABLESTAN*,

Lay under the Mountains of that Name, which are Part of *Taurus*. 'Tis also called *Parapamisus* and *Parapanisus*, and the Inhabitants *Paropamasidæ*, *Parapamisidæ*, and *Paropanidæ*. The *Macedonians*, out of Flattery to *Alexander*, call'd these Mountains *Caucasus*, that it might be said, he had subdued the Inhabitants of that famous Range of Mountains. *Strabo* and *Ptolomy* do likewise mention this *Caucasus*; the one places it W. of *Paropanisus*, and the other E. but 'tis more probable, that what they call *Alexander's Caucasus* lay to the W. because he enter'd *Bactria* that Way in Pursuit of *Bessus*, as is plain from *Strabo*. This Country had *Aria* on the W. and the River *Indus* on the E. The Part next to this River was called *Capissene*, from the Town *Capissa*, which *Cyrus* demolish'd. We pass over the obscure People and Towns mention'd here by *Ptolomy*, and shall only take Notice of *Alexandria*, built in the N. of this Country by *Alexander* in his March to *Bactriana*. Some derive the Name from its Resemblance to an Island, being encompassed on all Sides with Rivers. The Country is mountainous, and has some Vallies tolerably fruitful; but the Mountains so high, that the clearest Day in some of those Vallies is no more than a Twilight. The People were so rude and obscure in *Curtius's* Time, that he calls them the most clownish and unpolish'd of all the Barbarians. These Mountains lie in the common Boundary of *Scythia*, *India*, and *Persia*, and are so very high, that the Stars appear much greater, and their Rising and Setting is better discern'd here than from other Places, which is suppos'd to have given Rise to the Fable of *Prometheus's* having stole Fire from Heaven to animate the Man he made of Clay, for which *Jupiter* fix'd him to this Mountain, where a Vultur

continually fed on his Liver. The Moral of which is, that *Prometheus* was a Philosopher and Astronomer, taught Philosophy, &c. to his ignorant Neighbours, and spent himself with his Studies.

ARIA or *ARIANA*, now *EREZ*.

Authors are not agreed whether *Aria* and *Ariana* be the same. *Pliny* distinguishes them, and some think the *Ariani* include the *Arii*, *Gedrosii*, and *Drangæ*. *Strabo* makes *Ariana* larger than *Aria*, and bounds it with the *Indies*. *Dionysius* says, That all the People who dwelt on the Declivities of *Paropamisus* were called *Ariani*. *Salmasius* takes a great deal of Pains to distinguish them, but does not fix their Boundary. *Ptolomy* says, it has *Margiana* and *Bactriana* on the N. *Paropamisus* on the E. and *Drangiana* on the S. The Subdivisions of the ancient Inhabitants, and most of the Towns mention'd by *Ptolomy*, are so obscure, that we omit them. The general Name of the People was *Ariani*. They were subdued by the *Persians*, and afterwards by *Alexander*, against whom they rebelled; but being worsted, retired to a vast Cave on the Top of an inaccessible Rock, to which there was only a strait Pass, easy to be defended; but *Alexander* piled up vast Heaps of Timber against the Mouth of the Cave, and setting Fire to it, forced them to surrender by the Fire and Smoke. *Saatibarzanes*, a *Persian*, whom *Alexander* set over the Provinces, encourag'd them to this Revolt, and being their General, he challeng'd any of the *Macedonian* Army to fight him Hand to Hand, which was accepted by one of the oldest of *Alexander's* common Soldiers, who cry'd out aloud, That he would let the *Arians* see what Soldiers *Alexander* had, and kill'd the *Persian* at the 2d Charge, which occasion'd the *Arians* to fly.

Ptolomy mentions about 30 Towns in this Country, the chief of which was *Arias*, on a River of the same Name; but the only Town of Note of which we have any Certainty was *Alexandria*, built by *Alexander*. *Ammianus* says, it was 1500 Stadia from the *Caspian* Sea, and seems to think that they might sail thither from *Alexandria*, which is very improbable, considering the Situation of the Country, and the Mountains that

that lay betwixt *Aria* and that Sea. *Arrianus* mentions likewise *Artacaona*, a Royal City, where *Satibarzanes* assembled the Rebels; but this is very uncertain.

DRANGIANA, now *SIGISTAN*,

Has *Aria* on the N. *Arachosia* on the E. Part of *Gedrosia* on the S. and *Carmania* on the W. Some call it *Drangina*, and the Inhabitants *Drangæ*. It is bounded chiefly by two Rows of Mountains, *Bagoas* on the N. and *Becius* on the S. Some derive the Name from the River *Drangius*, now *Ilment*. The Country is hilly and barren. *Ptolomy* mentions 10 Towns in it, but few of them of Note. The first is *Prophthasia* or *Prosphasia*, under Mount *Bagoas*, by some called *Phradag*, their Metropolis. *Ammianus* says, it was rich, and a Place of Fame. 2. *Ariaspas*, *Agriaspas*, or *Zariaspa*, from whence the People had the same Name, and were afterwards called *Evergetæ* by *Cyrus*, the Son of *Cambyfes*, whom they assisted in his *Scythian* Expedition, and reliev'd his Army with Lodging and Diet. They were also called *Arimaspi*, and *Scythæ Hyperborei*. The ancient Inhabitants were divided into the *Bactrii* and *Araudæ*. Some Writers call them *Arabians*, from the R. *Arabius*, which separates this Country from *Gedrosia*. *Alexander* was in this Province when he had Notice of the Treason of *Philotas* against him. We meet with little of it in History afterwards till 1262, that *Aladine*, a seditious *Persian* Lord, who had his Seat in the Valley of *Mulebet* in this Country, of whom *Paulus Venetus* tells the following Story: He fortified the Entrance of his Valley with a strong Castle call'd *Tigado*. Hither he brought all the lusty young Men and the handsome young Women of the Country: The Women he confin'd to their Chambers, and the Men to Prison, where being severely treated, they were cast by Art into a deep Sleep, during which they were carried into the young Women's Chambers, and when they awak'd, were entertain'd with all the Pleasures that Youth and Lust could yield them; and having wallow'd thus in Sensuality a whole Day, they were again cast into a deep Sleep, and convey'd back to their Irons. This look'd so like a Dream, that *Aladine* made them believe he had sent them to Pa-

radise; which agreeing very well with *Ma-homet's* Notion of it, they were easily impos'd upon, and he promis'd to seat them there eternally, if they would swear to do what he bid them, and engage in his Quarrels. They readily undertook it, and then he employ'd them to murder such neighbouring Lords and Princes as he thought fit. This made the neighbouring Princes conspire against him, and destroy him and his Fool's Paradise all at once. Some ascribe this to *Aladules*, who inhabited the Mountains of *Taurus*, and was conquer'd by *Selymus I.*

ARACHOSIA, now *CABUL*,

Lies E. from *Drangiana*, and has a River and Town of the same Name, by some call'd *Cophe*. It was built by *Qu. Semiramis* in the E. Part of the Country. The People were called *Arachotæ* and *Arachosii*. Their chief Town was *Alexandria*, the 15th of that Name, built by *Alexander*, near the Borders of the *Indies*. The other Towns and Subdivisions of the People mention'd by *Ptolomy* are obscure, and not worth Notice. *Alexander* planted a Colony here of 7000. of his old *Macedonian* Soldiers, that were worn out by Fatigues. They were brought under the Command of *Alexander* by Means of *Ammenides*, one of *Darius's* Secretaries, whom *Alexander* made Governor of this Country. One of *Tamerlane's* Sons, from whom the Great Mogul is descended, was King of this Province.

GEDROSIA, now *CIRCAN*,

Has *Carmania* on the W. Part of *India* on the River *Indus* on the E. *Drangiana* and *Arachosia* on the N. and Part of the *Indian* Ocean on the S. a large Country, which reaches from *India* to *Caramania*, and runs likewise a great Way N. The Inhabitants were the *Gedrosi*, *Gedrusi*, and (according to some) *Kedrosi*. Their chief River is called *Arbis*, *Arabius*, *Artabis*, and *Artabius*. The Maritime Coast reaches from the River *Indus* to the *Persian* Gulph. The Inhabitants were divided into the *Arbitæ*, *Oritæ*, and *Ichthyophagi*, who together possess'd 13900 Stadia along the Coast, which was above 1737 Miles. This Country was subdu'd

by *Alexander*, but not without Difficulty. The *Ichthyophagi* fed upon raw Fish, or dry'd in the Sun, and ground to Meal, and they built their Huts with Fish-Bones. They were a very barbarous Sort of People; upon which *Alexander* forbid them to eat Fish, that he might reduce them to a more orderly Way of Living. Most of their Towns mention'd by *Ptolomy* are very obscure. One of them was call'd, *The Harbour of Women*. Within Land, one of their chief Towns was *Arbis*, on the River of the same Name, so that Vessels came up to it. Their Metropolis on the same River was called *Easis* or *Parsis*, or *Pura*. Some say, there was an *Alexandria* built likewise by *Alexander* in this Country; but Authors are not agreed about that. *Pliny* mentions *Xylenopolis*, built also by *Alexander*, but is not distinct as to its Situation. *Ptolomy* mentions two Islands belonging to *Gedrosia*; 1. *Astea*, which lay towards *Carmania*, and E. from that another nam'd *Codane*. *Pliny* mentions one call'd, *The Island of the Sun*, and the *Chamber of the Nymphs*, which lay 100 Stadia from the Coast of the *Ichthyophagi*. The Poets fancy'd, that *Nereis* dwelt here, transformed Strangers into Fish, and chang'd them again into Men, from whom descended the *Ichthyophagi*. *Arrianus* mentions several other Islands that *Nearchus* met with in his Voyage, but as obscure, and perhaps as fabulous, as that of the *Island of the Sun*. The Country in general is barren and desert, has little fresh Water, and dangerous Sands. They have Rain sometimes, but not sufficient to allay the Heat and Drought; yet in several Places they have Nard, Myrrhe, and some other Spices. 'Tis noted for little in History, except for *Alexander's* Folly, who, finding by the Opposition he met with from *Porus*, whose Kingdom lay towards the Head of the River *Indus*, that there was but small Hopes of extending his Conquests further into *India*, would needs make a fruitless Voyage to see the *Indian Ocean*, and landed his Army on this Coast, where he lost more Men in the Desarts for Want of Provision, Water, &c. than he did in many Battles; so that of 15000 Horse and 120000 Men which he carried into *India*, scarce a 4th Part return'd to *Babylon*.

The Modern Geography of Persia.

FOR the better understanding at one View how to apply the ancient Divisions of the Kingdom of *Persia* to the modern ones, we shall give the following Account from *Sanfon*.

Servan or *Xervan*, *Gilan*, Part of *Yerack-Agemi*, and *Dilemon*, answer to the ancient *Media*; which being divided into *Antropatene*, *Tropatene*, and *Choromithrene*, *Servan* answers to the first, *Gilan* to the 2d, and the rest to the last. *Tabaristan* and *Gorgian* answer to *Hyrkania*; *Khæmus* in Part, and Part of *Chorasan*, answer to *Margiana*; *Curdistan*, and Part of *Yerack-Agemi*, answer to the most Easterly Part of ancient *Assyria*, the rest belonging to the Turks. Part of *Khæmus* and of *Chorasan* answer to ancient *Parthia*; the rest of *Chorasan* to ancient *Aria* and *Paropamisus*. *Hyérack* is the ancient *Chaldea* or *Babylonia*; *Chusistan* is the ancient *Susiana*; *Fars* is the ancient *Persia*; *Karman* and *Sablustan*, the ancient *Carmania*; *Sigistan*, *Candahar*, and *Mackeran*, answer to *Drangiana*, *Arachosia*, and *Gedrosia*, of the Ancients. *Sanfon* says, he will not undertake that this Correspondence betwixt the ancient and modern Divisions is exact in every Part, but only that it agrees in the general.

Modern *Persia* has the *Caspian Sea* and *Tartary* on the N. the *Indian Ocean* on the S. *Turkey in Asia* on the W. and the River *Indus*, with Part of *Tartary*, and the *Mogul's* Empire, on the E. *Herbert* says, That from *Candahar* to *Babylon* 'tis 1320 Miles E. and W. and from *Giulphar* or *Jalphy* near *Van* in *Georgia*, in Lat. 25. and the furthest Part of *Gedrosia* or *Mackeran* on the *Indus*, N. and S. is 1488 English Miles. The *Sanfons* make it about 1580 Miles from E. to W. and about 1100 Miles from S. to N. *Luyts* makes it 1180 from E. to W. and but 900 from S. to N. *Cluverius* and *Golnitijs* make it 1840 E. and W. and 1810 S. and N. The *Holstein* Ambassadors make it but 720 from S. to N. and but 500 from E. to W. *Moll* makes it about 1200 Miles from E. to W. and about 960 from S. to N.

The Nature of the Soil and Climate in general.

THE *Holstein* Ambassadors say, 'tis situate under the Temperate Zone, and divided by Mount *Taurus* under different Names. The Provinces on the S. of this Mountain are excessive hot, but those on the N. more temperate, and several of the Provinces on both Sides are more subject to Epidemical Diseases than others. The Soil, excepting the Province of *Kilan*, is sandy and barren, especially in the Plains, which are full of red Stones, Thistles, and Reeds; but some of the Vallies are pretty fruitful, and produce Rice, Wheat, Barley, Millet, Lentils, Pease, Beans, and Cotton. The Fields are sown with a certain Herb called *Gensheht*, resembling Clover, once in 7 Years. It grows up about 3 Foot high, with blue Flowers, is cut twice a Year, and given to the Horses of the Nobility instead of Hay; and in some Places they have Grass enough all the Year round. They have abundance of Sheep, whose Flesh is not pleasant to Strangers. They are somewhat bigger than ours in *Europe*, have short flat Noses, and long Ears like Spaniels. Their Tails weigh from 10 to 30 Pound, and are very fat, but their Bodies lean. They have numerous Herds of Goats, eat their Flesh, make Candles of their Suet, and what we call *Spanish* Leather of their Skins. They have abundance of Bufflers, especially near the *Caspian* Sea, where some Peasants keep 5 or 600. Their Cows will not be milk'd without a Calf by their Sides; so that if the Calf happens to die, (for they never kill them to eat) they fill the Skin with Straw, cast a little Salt upon it, and whilst the Cow licks it, they milk her. They have but few Hogs, because the *Persians* have an Aversion to Swine's Flesh. They have several Kinds of Camels, of which the *Holstein* Ambassadors give the following Account: There are some with two Bunches, and others with one. Of these latter there are four Sorts; the first is a Male engender'd of a Camel, with two Bunches, and a Female with one. These are counted best, and sometimes sold for 100 Crowns apiece; for they are scarce to be tired, and

will carry 900 or 1000 Pound Weight. When they are over-heated, they foam at the Mouth, and are so malicious, that they bite those who come near them, for which Reason they are muzzled. Their Breed degenerates, are very heavy, and rarely sold for above 30 or 40 Crowns. The 3d Sort do not foam at the Mouth; but when they go to rut, put out under their Teeth a red Bladder, which they draw in with their Breaths, lift up their Heads, and often snort. They are not near so strong as the rest, and are commonly sold for 60 Crowns apiece. The 4th Sort is called Wind-Camels: They are much less than the others, but far more nimble, for they will trot and gallop; whereas the others never exceed a Foot-pace. They trot with incredible Violence; and when they set a gallopping, they stretch out their Necks with open Nostrils, and run so furiously, that nothing can stop them. The King and the Nobility keep many Teams of them, each Team consisting of 7 coupled together, and easily guided by one Man. They serve to ride Post, and to meet Ambassadors, are accoutred with embroider'd Clothes and Saddles, and with Silver Bells about their Necks. They feed commonly upon Thistles and Nettles; but sometimes their Keepers force a Quantity of Paste down their Throats, made of Barley-Chaff. They can live 3 Days without Water. When they are to receive their Burdens, the Guides touch the Knees of their fore Legs; then they kneel, and take on their Loads. They are more enliven'd by a Man's Voice, and the Sound of an Instrument, than by beating; so that the *Persians* tie small Bells about their Knees, and a large one about their Necks, and the *Arabians* use Timbrels. Their deadliest Enemy is a kind of Snail call'd *Mohere*, which lying between the Thistles, stings their Nostrils mortally. They are so revengeful for Injuries done them, that the *Camel's Anger* is a *Persian* Proverb; so that *Pliny* was in the Wrong to assert, they had no Gall, and that there is an irreconcilable Enmity betwixt them and Horses; for the *Holstein* Ambassadors say, nothing is more common in *Persia* than to see Camels, Horses and Asses, stand quietly together in the same Stable. *Tavernier* says, the Female goes 11 Months with

Young, and her Milk is good against the Drophy. As soon as a Camel is foal'd, they make him lie down with his Legs under him for 15 or 20 Days, laying a Carpet over his Back, and Stones upon the Ends of it, which touch the Ground, that he may not rise, and in the mean time give him Milk, but seldom, that he may be us'd to drink little. Thus they use them to lie down, that when they are grown strong enough for Service, they come constantly to their Masters to take up and lay down their Burdens. When a Camel is in the Heat of Generation, he neither eats nor drinks for 40 Days, and is so furious, that 'tis dangerous to come near him. They eat but little, and will live 8 or 9 Days without Drink. *Tavernier* adds, that there are two Sorts of Camels, one for hot Countries, and the other for cold. The first cannot travel if the Ground be dirty, for their Bellies burst, and their hinder Quarters will tear from their Bodies. They are small, cannot carry above 5 or 600 Pound Weight, nor go long Journies. The Guides call them together, and drive 'em by Singing and Piping; and when that ceases, they stand still. The Camels of the cold Country are large and strong, able to carry 15 Hundred Weight; but in miry Roads they are in Danger of tearing their Limbs, so that the Guides either spread Cloths for them at such Places, or stay till the Roads be dry. *Tavernier* adds, that they never lade them with Wine, because that Liquor is strictly forbidden by *Mahomet*, to whom the Camels are also consecrated. *Thevenot* says, that when they couple, the Female lies down on her Belly in the same Manner as when they load her. The *Holstein* Ambassadors tell us, the *Persian* Horses are extraordinary handsome, but inferior to the *Arabian* Breed, which the *K. of Persia* accounts the choicest Horses in his Stables. Here are also Mules, which are much esteem'd by the *Persians*; for the King and the Persons of Quality chuse to ride upon them, and they are sold for a Hundred Crowns each. They have likewise Asses, which are in greater Numbers here than any where besides in the East, but thought to be more slothful than others.

Luyt says, *Persia* is under the 4th, 5th, 6th, and 7th Climates, and enjoys a more

healthy temperate Air, than the other Parts of *Asia*, except on the S. Border under the 25th Deg. of Lat. where the Weather is constantly fair in the Summer, but excessive hot; yet produces abundance of the choicest Fruit. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, they have some Onions which weigh 3 Pound apiece, and their Cabbages are of an excellent Taste. They have great Quantities of curious Melons, some of which keep all Winter. They are 30, 40, and sometimes 50 Pound Weight. There is another Sort no bigger than an Orange, not good to eat, but of a pleasant Scent. They have a kind of Cucumber, which Herbalists call *Cucurbita Lagenaria*. 'Tis as big as a Man's Head, has a long Neck, and must be eaten green, because when ripe, the Rind is hard and tough, and the Meat dried up. Of these the *Persians* make Drinking Vessels.

There is scarce a Province but produces very fine Grapes of several Sorts, especially in the S. Parts; and all manner of Fruit-Trees. They have a Pear like a Citron, of a fragrant Scent, full of Juice, but not very well tasted. Pomegranate, Almond, and Fig-Trees, grow naturally here in vast Quantities. They have black and white Mulberry-Trees, to which the *Persians* owe their vast Product of Silk. They plant them close together, and suffer them not to grow above 6 Foot high.

The *Holstein* Ambassadors give us the following Account of their Silk-Worms, and how they make their Silk: When these Trees begin to put forth their Leaves, the *Persians* carry the Spawn of the Silk-Worms in a little Bag under their Armpits 7 or 8 Days, till they be hatch'd. Then they put them in Wooden Dishes upon Mulberry-Leaves, which they change once a Day, and keep as much as possible from the Wet. At the End of five Days, they sleep three: After which, they are dispos'd into Rooms fitted for that Purpose, Laths being nailed along the Beams to lay the Mulberry Branches with the Leaves on for the Worms to feed upon. These Branches are chang'd once or twice, and at last three times a Day, as the Worms increase in Bigness; and all the Openings of the Room are cover'd with Nets for fear of the Birds. Just before these Worms begin to spin, they sleep

sleep 8 Days, during which great Care is taken that no Woman come near them that has her Monthly Courses. They commonly begin 7 Weeks after they are hatch'd, when they leave off eating, and the Silk-Threads come out of their Mouths. They work 12 Days at their Cod; after which the *Persians* take the Cods, and preserving the biggest for Seed, throw the rest into a Kettle of boiling Water, into which they put ever and anon a Besom made for the Purpose. Unto this the Silk sticks, which they wind up, and cast the rest away. The Cods that are preserv'd for Seed, produce in 15 Days after a kind of Butterfly, which they keep likewise for Seed in a moderate Heat till the next Spring.

Dr. *Fryer* says, the Soil frequently produces a Threefold Crop of Corn, which *Tavernier* says is of two Sorts; one that grows naturally, and another which is rais'd artificially, by the Help of Water forc'd into Channels. The former is sound, and will keep well; but the latter breeds a Vermin within a Year, which eats it up; and if ground to prevent it, there breeds a Worm in the Flour, which makes it too bitter to be eaten. They have 6 Months of hot, and as many of cold Weather. When the Snow is extraordinary deep, they look upon it as an Omen of succeeding Plenty. They have little Rain but in *April*. *Tavernier* adds, That *Persia* in general has abundance of small Rivers, but few navigable in the Inland Parts, except the *Araxes*, and that only by some flat-bottom'd Boats. The whole Country is mountainous, and the Mountains for most Part barren, but yield Store of Salt and Stone. There are few Trees but what grow in Gardens. In some of their Plains the Sand is nothing but Salt, which *Tavernier* says is not so savoury as ours in the N. There are Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, and Steel; but their Gold and Silver costs so much to dig and purify, because of their Scarcity of Wood, that it does not quit Cost. Their Steel is very fine, but brittle. Their chief Flowers are Lillies and Roses, which they distil. Their Peaches and Apricocks are large and delicious; but their Apples, Oranges, Granates, Prunes, Cherries, Quinces, Chestnuts, Medlars, &c. are not generally so well tasted as in *Europe*;

and they have few small Nuts and Walnuts. Their Dates, if eaten during the Heats, make the Body to break out in Botches and Boils. They have a Tree call'd *Kerzerhe*, i. e. the Ass's Gaul, because 'tis bitter. They say, that Part of its Root, which spreads to the E. is Poison, for which that on the S. Side is an Antidote; and that the Wood of this Plant makes excellent Coal for Gunpowder. All Herbs and Roots are very good in *Persia*; but they have no Pulse. Here are Lions, Bears, Leopards, Wild-Boars, Asses, Harts, Goats, and a Beast call'd *Ounce*, which is spotted like a Tiger, but very tame. They carry it behind them on Horseback; and when they see a Wild-Goat, set it down, and in 3 or 4 Leaps it seizes the Goat, and strangles him. Here are also Porcupines, which sometimes kill Men. They have Oxen with a great sharp-pointed Bunch on their Backs near the Neck. The Country People use them to carry Burdens, and to ride on. In the River *Aras*, says *Tavernier*, there is abundance of Carps, Trouts, and Pikes; but in all the other Rivers of *Persia*, there is but one Sort, which is a kind of Barbel. They have good Crabs, as big as the Palm of a Man's Hand, which, when the white Mulberries on the Rivers begin to bear Fruit, come out in the Night, climb the Trees, and eat the Fruit, and then return again by Break of Day into the River. Their Fowls are like ours in *Europe*, only they have no Quails. Their Pigeons are wild, except a few which are kept tame for the Decoys; and because the Christians are not allow'd to keep them, some turn *Mahometans* to have that Privilege. Our Author says, there are above 3000 Pigeon-Houses in *Ispahan*, most of which belong to the King, who draws a greater Revenue from the Dung than from the Pigeons. They have all Sorts of Water-Fowl, and many Birds of Prey; particularly Faulcons, Sparrow-Hawks, Lenerets, &c. which they teach to fly at the Wild-Boar, Ass and Goat, and others at Herons, Wild-Geese and Partridges. *Th. venot* says, this Country breeds a great black Sort of Scorpions, so venomous, that their Poison kills in a very few Hours. There are also Gnats, and a white Sort of Flies, which are no bigger than Fleas, and make no Buzzing, but sting unawares, and their Bite is much

much more pungent than that of a Flea. There is also a Worm of a square Body like a Caterpillar, but longer and smaller. It hath so many Feet, that the *Persians* call it *Hezar-Pai*, i. e. a Thousand Feet. It runs very fast, and the Bite of it is dangerous and incurable, especially if it gets into one's Ears. *Heylin* says, the longest Summer's Day in the S. Parts of *Persia* is 13 Hours almost $\frac{3}{4}$, and 15 Hours $\frac{1}{4}$ in the most N. Parts.

The chief Rivers of this Country, according to the same Authors, are, 1. *Euleus*, in *Susiana*, which falls into the Bay of *Persia*. The Learned have disputed, whether this be not the same with *Choaspes* mention'd by *Herodotus*, and *Cellarius* favours this Opinion. This River, says *Heylin*, is of so pure a Stream, that the great *Persian* Kings would drink of no other Water. 2. *Ochus* in *Bactria*, noted by the Ancients because it was navigable. It runs from Mount *Taurus* into the *Caspian* Sea; as does also, 3. *Oxus* in *Margiana*, a River at which the *Persians* have been frequently repuls'd by the *Scythians*. *Alexander*, when in Pursuit of the Murderers of *Darius*, having no Ships to transport his Army over this River, made his Men cross it on a great Number of Bags and Bladders, which he caus'd to be stuffed with Straw. 4. *Zioberis* in *Hyrkania*, rises out of Mount *Taurus*, and after it has run a long Way, hideth it self under Ground for 38 Miles, and then falls into, 5. *Rhadaga*, another principal River of those Parts. 6. *Hidero*: Its ancient Name is not known. Modern Travellers say, it has such a steep and strong Fall into the Sea, that the People feast under it, because the Stream shoots so violently over their Heads, that it never wets them.

The Province of Schirwan, Shirvan, or Servan.

THIS and the adjacent Province of *Adirbeitzan* or *Adxerbajan*, which *Tavernier* and *Sansón* unite under the Name of *Schirwan*, made up the ancient *Media*, of which this was the N. Part, and call'd *Media Atropatia* or *Atropatene*; but Mr. *Jenkinson* will have it to be *Hyrkania*. It had formerly many Towns and Castles, and was go-

vern'd by its own Kings, who were able to make War with those of *Persia*; but now they are subject to the *Persians*, who invaded them not many Years ago for their Diversity in Religion, cut off the Heads of the Nobles and Gentlemen, and demolish'd their Towns and Castles, to prevent a Rebellion. Its chief Commodities are, Raw-Silks, Cotton, Galls, and Allum. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, the Country is very much subject to Fevers. *Cluverius* and *Moll* make this the most Northerly Part of *Persia*, and place it betwixt Lat. 40 and 42, on the W. Coast of the *Caspian* Sea, with *Daghestan Tartary* on the N. *Georgia* and *Iran* on the W. and *Adirbeitzan* on the S. 'Tis computed 100 Miles in Length. *Heylin* says, 'tis a very cold Country, and so barren, that the Inhabitants make their Bread of dry'd Almonds, and their Drink of the Juice of Herbs, and have no Fruit but a few Apples, nor no tame Cattle, their ordinary Food being Wild-Beasts. But the *Holstein* Ambassadors, who were on the Spot, say, That the Soil is very fertile in Rice, Wheat, and Barley; and that they have great Store of Vines, with Plenty of Wild-Fowl and Hares, and two kinds of Foxes, one like those of *Europe*, the other being woolly, with white Bellies, black Ears, and little Tails. They add, That the Inhabitants draw with Bufflers instead of Horses; that they make excellent Butter of their Cows Milk, and make all their Cheese of Sheeps Milk.

Here are several Mountains; but the most noted are, 1. Mount *Elbours* or *Albors*, a Branch of Mount *Caucasus* on the Side of *Tabristan* towards *Georgia*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, here is the best Air and Pasturage in this Country. The ancient *Persians* kept and worshipped their Perpetual Fire on this Mountain. *Strabo*, *Procopius*, and *Ben. Jonæ*, all speak of it. Here was formerly a round Temple, with an Altar rais'd a little from the Ground, and under it the Fire was kept. This Temple was open at the Top to let in the Air; but there are no Remains now to be seen either of the Idol or its Worshippers. *Hakluyt* and *Herbert* say, That upon *Quiquits* or *Quequits*, a high Hill, (which is Part of this Mountain) there are some Relicks of the Giantess *Lamasague*, and her Husband *Arneost*, who they report

was of an incredible Stature, and had two great Horns on his Head, with the Ears and Eyes of a Horse, and the Tail of a Cow. 'Tis said, they kept a Passage on this Mountain till *Ham-Sha-Hancoir* climb'd the Hill, bound him and his Wife and Son in Chains, and then slew them. Some say, this *Hancoir* was a religious Man, others a Soldier; however, the Inhabitants have him in great Veneration for this Exploit. 'Tis said, the Hill stinks so intolerably, that none can come near it.

2. *Barmach* or *Parmach*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, 'tis of a vast Height, lies a quarter of a League from the *Caspian* Sea, and has the Name from a steep Rock on the Top, that resembles one's Finger extended. It produces the Oil of *Naphta* by 30 Springs. *Struys* says, the higher one ascends, 'tis the colder, and the Top is frozen. Here are the Vestiges of several Forts, built for Defence of the Country; and,

3. *Cale-Culistan*, another Mountain, half a League N. off *Schamachie*, noted for the Ruins of a Fort on the Top of it, built (as they say) by *Schirwan*, a King of this Country, in Memory of *Culistan*, one of his Concubines, and afterwards taken and demolish'd by *Alexander the Great*. Others think it had the Name rather from an adjacent Valley with all Sorts of fine Flowers. 'Tis intolerable hot in the Summer at the Bottom of this Mountain; wherefore the Artificers and common People of *Schamachie* spend all the Day upon the Top of it, and go down again at Night to their Habitations.

The Towns of most Note are, 1. *Schamachie*, *Shammaki*, *Sammachi*, or *Summachi*. *Olearius* places it two Days Journey from the *Caspian* Sea. Some think it to have been the ancient *Cyropolis*. *Moll* places it in Long. 69. Lat. 41. The former makes it 55 Miles S. of *Derbent*, but the latter 65. It lies, according to *Cluverius*, about 40 Miles W. of the *Caspian* Sea. *Moll* makes it but 30. The *Sansons*, who extend it almost to Lat. 43, make it above 50 from the nearest Shore of the *Caspian* Sea, and near 60 S. W. of *Bachu*; whereas *Moll* makes the latter but 30 Miles N. W. It was formerly the Capital of *Schirwan*, to which it gave Name. *Heylin* says, it was taken by *Osman Basha* Anno 1578, and afterwards made the Seat of a *Beglerberg*. The *Persians* call'd it

Cyrcabata, from *Cyrus*, who built and beautified it. *Hakluyt* says, there's a Column of Flint-Stones here, intermix'd with the Heads of the Noblemen that were cut off as above-mentioned for their Difference in Matters of Religion. *Struys* says, it lies in a Valley between 2 high Mountains, about 40 Deg. of Lat. and 50 Min. He adds, 'tis 6 Days Journey from hence to *Derbent*, tho' a good Horse may easily reach it in two, and a Caravan in 4 or 5. 'Tis not so large as formerly, since *Sha-Abas* King of *Persia*, being at War with the *Turks*, fearing they would surprise it, or that it might serve for a Place of Retreat to his rebellious Subjects, dismantled all the S. Part of it, the rest being in too sorry a Condition to give any Umbrage; and *Struys* says, the Remains of the Walls which are standing may easily be forced. The Streets are very narrow, and the Houses only of Twigs dawb'd over with Clay, and Planks set together; yet it has a rich Market of Silks, Cottons, Cloth of Gold and Silver, &c. The *Muscovites* have a Place where they sell Pewter and Brass, and all Manner of Furs, and another where the *Tartars* expose to Sale Men, Women, and Children, Beasts, and all the other Particulars of their Robberies. *Struys* says, this Town has suffer'd several Earthquakes; and that when he was there, three happen'd in one Day. There was an extraordinary one in 1667, which lasted 3 Months, and not only overturn'd Towers, Churches, Houses, &c. but swallow'd up in one Moment above 80000 Men, besides Women and Children. The adjacent Country suffer'd the same Fate; all their Towns and Villages were swallow'd up the same Day, several Mountains sunk into a Level, and the great Roads were broke up, insomuch, that ever since the Caravans have been oblig'd to take a different Road. There was another Earthquake on New-Year's Day 1671, which swallow'd up abundance of Houses and People. The next Day it return'd with great Violence, which threaten'd the total Destruction of the City; but it soon ceas'd. He mentions two other Earthquakes while he was there, accompanied with Thunder, Lightning, and the Falling of Balls of Fire from the Skies: Upon which the Women run through the midst of the Tempest, which was follow'd by

by Wind and Rain, to the Sepulchres of their deceas'd Relations, to pray that the Judgment might be averted. After that, there was an extraordinary Tempest of Thunder and Lightning, attended with Hail as big as Eggs. He tells a Story of a jealous *Persian* who flea'd his Wife here alive, and hung up her Skin against the Wall of his House without Doors, to be a Terror to others. He adds, there is no Country more subject to frequent Tempests than this; That on the 13th of *July* that same Year, the Air seemed to be all of a Flame, and great Globes of Fire fell down from the Clouds, with a Noise like Cannon, which seemed to threaten the Destruction of the City. This was follow'd by such a Deluge of Rain, attended with Thunder and Lightning for 24 Hours, that it demolish'd abundance of Houses, and drown'd Multitudes of People; upon which succeeded an Earthquake, and a Tempest of Wind and Rain, which overflowed half the Town. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, it contain'd above 5000 Houses before it was destroy'd by the *Turks* in the Reign of King *Abas*; That 'tis now divided into two Parts, and contains about 1800 Houses. The Inhabitants are for the most Part *Armenians* and *Georgians*. Here are 6 Churches, and 3 publick Baths; two of them are us'd by the Men in the Night-time, and by the Women in the Day, but the third belongs only to the Men. The Revenue of this Bath is appropriated to the defraying of the Charges of a Sepulchre hard by of *Schich Marith*, one of the *Persian* Saints, who planted two tall Trees near this Place, which are held in great Veneration. The *Holstein* Ambassadors look'd after the Tower of Dead-Men's Skulls mention'd by *Hakluyt*; but all they saw of this Kind were two Men's Heads cut in Stone in the City-Wall, of which they could not learn the Meaning. *Herbert* says, it lies in the Road from *Russia* and *Armenia* to *Casbin*. 'Tis water'd by a pretty River; and not far out of the Town there's a Spring, which, instead of Water, sends forth a thick and clammy Liquor like Tar, suppos'd to be *Naphta*. The Chan here has 1000 Men under his Command, and keeps a noble Court. When the Ambassadors were there, he was the Son of a Peasant, but advanc'd to that great

Dignity for his Valour against the *Turks*. There are several *Mahometan* Chappels in the Neighbourhood, hung about with Pieces of Cloth of several Colours, and Rods of Iron fasten'd to the Sepulchres, with Silk Strings. The Ambassadors, in their Way from hence to *Ardevil*, met with several Meadow Grounds on the Banks of *Araxes* full of Liquorice, the Stalks of it bigger than a Man's Arm, and the Juice incomparably sweeter than that of *Europe*. They saw also Herds of Deer resembling our Harts, but their Horns without Brow-Antlers, smooth, and turning backwards, like those of Wild-Goats. They are extream swift, and only to be found in this and the neighbouring Provinces. They found likewise abundance of Tortoises on the Banks of the Brooks, where they expose their Eggs in the Sand to the Heat of the Sun. The Children hereabouts go stark naked, except those of the better Sort, who have Callico Shifts. They likewise saw many Fig-Trees produc'd without Cultivation, and a venomous kind of Wormwood, which kills both Men and Beasts that eat of it. The People of the neighbouring Country live in Huts, and are much given to Robbery.

2. *Bachu*, about 30 Miles S. E. from *Schamachie*, upon the same Coast, at the Foot of a Mountain, remarkable for little but by giving its Name to the *Caspian* Sea. *Herbert* says, there's a Spring here which furnishes the Inhabitants with a dark-colour'd Oil, that serves for Lamps and other Uses, and it has no offensive Smell. *Hakluyt* calls it *Naphta*, and says, 'tis transported all over the Kingdom upon Beasts of Carriage by 5 or 600 at a time. He adds, that there's another kind of Oil, which is white and very precious, and he supposes it to be *Petroleum*.

3. *Pyrmaraas*, a Village within 3 Leagues of *Schamachie*, famous for the Tombs of several *Persian* Saints, consisting of arch'd Apartments, where the Tombs lie enclos'd with Iron Grates. There are several Galleries in them, and the Floors cover'd with rich Tapestry. Some of them have Windows, and others are lighted with Lanterns and Lamps. They are much resorted to by *Persian* Pilgrims, who pretend these Relicks perform as many Miracles as the Papists ascribe to theirs. The Inhabitants abstain from

from Wine for fear of defiling those Sepulchres.

4. *Erex*, or *Arash*. *Hakluyt* says, it borders upon *Georgia*, is the richest Town, and most noted for Trade, in those Parts, especially for Raw-Silk, Galls, Cotton, and Alum, besides Drugs brought hither from the *East-Indies*. 'Twas formerly a Place of great Strength, taken by the *Turks* in the Time of *Amurath III.* and fortified, as one of the Keys of this Country.

5. *Yavate*. *Hakluyt* says, it lies between *Schabran* and *Bachu*, and is noted for a Royal Palace, that has Orchards and Gardens, well furnish'd with all Sorts of Fruit.

Muscour is a District of this Province along the *Caspian* Sea, comprehending 200 Villages. 'Tis a pleasant Country, green till November, has Plency of Barley, Rice, Wheat, all Manner of excellent Fruits, and Trees of a delightful Shade, which harbour abundance of melodious Birds. Their Cattle lie abroad all the Year. The chief Town is *Schabran*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, the Inhabitants are by the *Persians* named *Kurs*, which has led some Authors into a Mistake, to think that this Country was *Curdestan*, which is the ancient *Chaldea*. *Struys* says, the best Rice in *Persia* grows here, and is sold sometimes for less than a Halfpenny per Pound. It was formerly a fortified Town, but now dismantled. The Ovens which *Alexander* built for his Army are still to be seen here. This Country is so full of Robbers call'd *Padars*, that there is no travelling without Guards, or a good Number together.

The Province of Aderbeitzan,

Lies S. from *Schirwan* and *Iran*, and is call'd *Azerbeyan* or *Asupaican*. *Sir John Chardin* says, 'tis one of the largest in *Persia*, has the *Caspian* Sea and *Hyrcania* on the W. It contains all the Eastern and Western *Media*, according to him. The *Persians* derive the Name from its being a Country of Fire, and having the principal Temple of the Fire-Worshippers, which they say was about two Days Journey from *Schamachie*. They pretend the Sacred Fire is still there; that it resembles a Mineral and subterranean Fire; that they who repair

thither out of Devotion see it in Form of a Flame; and that if one dig a Hole in the Ground, and set a Pot over it, it will make it boil, though the Fire be not visible. *Sir John* agrees as to the Signification of the Name, and thinks that *Affur* signifies the same; and some think, that this was the ancient *Assyria*, and that *Asbur*, one of the Sons of *Sem*, retired hither, and was so call'd either from this Country, or from *Chaldea*, which was then call'd, *The Country of Fire*, as appears *Gen. 11.* where our Translation has it *Ur of the Chaldees*, *Ur* signifying Fire in the old *Persian*, and most of the ancient Oriental Languages. *Procopius de Bello Persico* mentions likewise the great *Pyraeum* or Fire-Temple to be kept here by the *Magi*, till *Abdas*, a primitive Bishop, prevail'd with the *Persian* King to destroy them and their Temple. *Herbert* thinks this Custom was taken from the *Jews*, who were commanded by *Moses*, *Lev. 6. 13.* to keep the Fire ever burning upon the Altar, and not suffer it to go out. We are told 2 *Maccab. 1. 19.* that when the *Jews* were carried Captive to *Persia*, the Priests took Fire from the Altar, and hid it privily in a dry and hollow Pit, which *Nehemiah* upon his Return to the *Holy Land* order'd to be drawn out; and that thô it appeared like thick Water when the Wood on the Altar was sprinkled with it, and the Sun reflected its Beams upon it, it became a great Fire, and quickly consum'd the Sacrifice. In those *Pyrae* the *Gentiles* us'd to sacrifice their Children, and sometimes Bigots threw themselves into the Flames with great Ceremony, and Sound of Musick, fancying that they should be incorporated with the Fire, and become thereby immortal, as *Mandanis* the *Brachman* told *Alexander*. *Herbert* mentions the Peak of *Damoan* in this Country, which we have taken Notice of already. It abounds with Brimstone and Sulphur, and Springs of *Naphta*, and near it a Castle built on the Top of a large Rock, with Ground enough about for Gardens, adorn'd with Fruits and Flowers, and a Stream of pure Water which springs from thence. He thinks it to be the same which *Procopius* says excelled for wholesome Air and Water. A *Persian* of Quality told *Herbert*, That about 25 Years before a Prince liv'd there call'd *Meleck Bahaman*, who commanded

many Hills and Dales on those Mountains, which are Part of *Taurus*, and maintain'd himself against both the *Persians* and *Tartars*. He added Art to his natural Fortifications, which made the Place altogether impregnable, and several *Persian* Armies had been ruin'd in attempting it; therefore *Abas* resolv'd to have it at any Rate, and sent a crafty General against it, who a long Time attempted it in vain; but at last prevail'd with the Prince and his two Sons by rich Presents, under Pretence of a Treaty, to come to his Camp, where he barbarously murder'd them, and made himself Master of the Fortrefs and Country.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Marant*. Sir *John Chardin* says, it lies in Long. 81. 15. and Lat. 37. 50. according to the *Persian* Geographers. *Moll* makes it Long. 66. Lat. 38. It consists of about 2500 Houses, and has Gardens equal in Extent with the City. It stands at the Bottom of the Hill in one of the most lovely Plains of *Persia*, one League broad, and five long, with a River running thro' it, which the Inhabitants cut into Trenches to water their Grounds and Gardens. The best Fruits in *Media* grow hereabouts, with *Cochineel*, tho' not in any great Quantity, and is gather'd only 8 Days in Summer, when the Sun is in *Leo*. The Inhabitants say, it does not ripen till that Time; after which, the Worm from whence they draw the *Cochineel* makes a Hole in the Leaf upon which it grows, and is lost. Some take this to be *Ptolomy's Mandagorana*. The *Armenians* fancy that *Noah* is buried here. The Mount on which the Ark rested may be seen from hence in a clear Day.

2. *Taurus*, or *Tabris*. *Moll* places it in Long. 66. Lat. 37. *Tavernier* makes it Lat. 39. 10. Long. 63. 15. 'Tis supposed to be the ancient *Ecbatana*. Sir *John Chardin* says, 'tis 159 Miles from *Erivan*, and the adjacent Country has many large and fertile Plains, abounding with Arable Lands and Villages. 'Tis the 2d City of *Persia* for Grandeur, Riches, Trade, and Number of Inhabitants. It lies at the Bottom of a Mountain, supposed to be the *Orontes* of the Ancients. It is irregular, not fortified, and has a small River which runs thro' it, and sometimes swells so much, that it carries away the Houses built near it; and there's another

River on the N. Side as large as the *Sine* at *Paris* in the Winter. Several Salt Marshes empty themselves into it. Sir *John* says, the City is divided into 9 Wards or Quarters, and has in it the two distinct Factions (common to all the Towns of *Persia*) called *Haydar*, and *Neamet Olahi*, like the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* in *Italy*. It contains 15000 Houses, and as many Shops, which stand apart from their Dwellings in long and arch'd Streets 40 or 50 Foot high in the Middle of the City, the Houses being for the most Part in the Suburbs, with Gardens belonging to them. He says, there are few Palaces or magnificent Houses; but he commends their *Bazars* or Exchanges for their Extent, Beauty, and Riches. There are about 300 Caravanferas, some of which are spacious enough to lodge 300 People, and no less than 250 Mosques. There are three neat Hospitals, wherein they lodge no Body; but give Victuals to those that come twice a Day. Upon a little Mount at the W. End is a neat Hermitage of curious Workmanship, which they call the *Eyes of Haly*; for they say, that he was the most lovely Man that ever was seen; and therefore, when they wou'd say any Thing is extremely handsome, they call it *Haly's Eyes*. At the E. End of the Town there's a great Castle almost in Ruins, as are abundance of Forts on the Tops of the adjacent Mountains and Rocks, and most of the principal Edifices and Fortifications built by the *Turks*. The only Thing entire which remains of their Building is a large Mosque, whose Inside is lin'd with transparent Marble, and the Outside is of Mosaick Work; but the *Persians* don't use it, because they reckon it defil'd with the *Turkish* Worship. Near this City there are also the Ruins of a Palace of the late Kings of *Persia*, and of a Castle which belong'd to *Chosroes*, where they say he laid up the Holy Cross, and the other Spoils he brought from *Jerusalem*. Sir *John* says, the great Piazza of *Tauris* is the largest that ever he saw, and that 30000 Men have been drawn up in it in Order of Battle. It is filled in the Evening with the meaner People, who resort thither for Gaming, Wrestling, Bull and Ram Fighting, and to see the Dancing of Wolves, which the Citizens delight so much in, that they give 500 Crowns apiece for some of them that

that are best taught; and here they have those who repeat Verses to the People, and others who tell Stories in Prose. In the Day-time, this Piazza is a Market for Provisions, and other Things of small Price; but the rich Commodities are sold in the *Bazars*, which are the largest in *Asia*. They have another Piazza before a ruinous Castle, which serves for their Shambles and Cooks Shops. Sir John says, the Citizens reckon 1150000 Persons within the Town, and he supposes there may be half the Number. 'Tis much resorted to from all Parts of *Asia*, and has Magazines of all Sorts of Merchandize. They have great Manufactures of Cotton, Gold and Silk, of which they work up 6000 Bales per Ann. for they have a Trade all over *Persia* and *Turkey* with *Muscovy*, *Tartary*, the *Indies*, and the *Black Sea*. The Air is cold and dry, and very healthful, and the Snow lies 9 Months in the Year on the Mountains that surround it, which makes the cold Season continue long. The Wind blows almost every Day Morning and Evening, and they have frequent Rains, except in the Summer. They have abundance of excellent Provisions very cheap, and are furnished with good Fish from the *Caspian Sea*. They have Store of Venison and Wild-Fowl, and many Eagles in the neighbouring Mountains, which they sell for a Groat apiece. Persons of Quality hunt the Eagles with Sparrow-Hawks, which soaring above them, stoop on a sudden, strike their Pounces into the Eagle's Sides, and beating his Head continually with their Wings, speedily make them fall to the Ground, and sometimes fall with them. These Sparrow-Hawks do many times stop the Flight of hunted Stags, and make the Chace short. Sir John adds, That in the adjacent Country there are 60 Sorts of Grapes, with great Quarries of white Marble, some of it transparent, which they say proceeds from a Mineral Fountain, and hardens by degrees. They have likewise a considerable Mine of Gold, but the Profit does not answer the Expence of the Workmanship. There is also a Salt Mine, and several Mineral Fountains, some of them hot, and others cold. He adds, That he knows no City in the World whose Origine and first Name has been more disputed. Some will

have it to be *Ptolomy's Gabris*, others the ancient *Tervæ*; but that lies in *Armenia*. Some take it to be *Tigranocerta* or *Tigranocerta*, and others the *Shushan*, so famous in Scripture; so that 'tis most probably the ancient *Ecbatana*, tho' not so much as the Ruins of the magnificent Buildings that were formerly there are now to be seen. The *Persian* Historians say, 'twas founded in the 165th Year of the *Hegyra*; but they are neither agreed in the Etymology of the Name nor Circumstances. *Josephus* ascribes the Building of it to the Prophet *Daniel*; and in the Book of *Judith* 'tis ascrib'd to *Arphaxad*, who was slain by the great K. *Nabuchadnezzar*. The Curious may see more of this in *Herbert*. This City has suffer'd much by War and Earthquakes, of which Sir John Chardin gives a particular Account, and says, that one of them was foretold by a learned Astrologer call'd *Aboretaber* in 849, which came exactly to pass; wherefore a great many of the People remov'd; but 40000 of such as did not believe him were destroy'd in the Ruins. It was rebuilt by the same Astrologer's Advice, and the Foundation laid when the Sun was in *Scorpio*, and he told them they should have no more Earthquakes, but be in Danger of Inundations, which they say has been exactly verified. In 1490, the *Persian* Kings removed their Seat hither from *Ardeville*. In 1514, it was taken by *Selymus* the Turk, but restor'd two Years after. *Selymus* carried from hence a vast Booty, and 3000 *Armenian* Artificers, whom he settled at *Constantinople*. Upon his Removal, the Citizens surpris'd and cut off the *Turkish* Garrison, which was severely reveng'd by *Ibrahim* Basha, General to *Solyman the Magnificent*, who in 1548 took, plunder'd, and destroy'd most of it with Fire and Sword. In the Beginning of *Amurath's* Reign, the Townsmen again surpris'd and cut off the Garrison of 10000 *Turks*; for which, in 1585, he sent another Army thither, who took it, and repair'd the Fortifications. In 1603, *Abas the Great* of *Persia* surpris'd it by Stratagem, and the *Persians* have kept it ever since. The *Armenians* say, it is one of the ancientest Cities in *Asia*, and formerly called *Sha-Hastan*, or the Royal Palace; but that *Chosroes*, a King of *Armenia*, chang'd it into *Tauris*, which signifies *Revenga*, because there he

defeated a King of *Persia* who had murder'd his Brother. Sir John says, the Government of this Province is the greatest in *Persia*; that the Governor is a Beglerberg, has an Annual Revenue of above a Million Sterling, besides considerable Casualties; that he maintains 3000 Horse in constant Pay, and has 4 Chans and 20 Sultans under him, who together maintain 11000 Horse more. Tavernier says, That Money is more plentiful here than any where else in *Asia*; that there are rich *Armenian* Merchants here, and abundance of Artificers in Iron-Work; and that the greatest Part of the Shagreen Skins vended in *Persia* are dressed here; that they are made of the hinder Part of the Hides of Horses, Mules or Affes; and that the latter is the best Grain. The Houses are most of Brick, few above two Stories high, and terrass'd a-top. He gives a Description of several of their Mosques, which are very magnificent, with Pillars of white Marble, emboss'd Work in curious Painting and Gilding. Several of them were formerly Christian Churches. The Capuchins have a Settlement here. There are the Ruins of several Monasteries and Tombs of the ancient Kings of *Media* in the Neighbourhood, which appear to have been of curious Workmanship. About half a League from *Tauris*, in the Road to *Ispahan*, there's a Bridge of 50 Paces long, and several Arches, built on the Top of a Mountain by a Priest, out of meer Vanity, that *Shah-Abas* might be told it when he came to *Tauris*.

Tavernier mentions two Lakes in this Country, one of them 11 Leagues from *Tauris*. 'Tis 15 Leagues in Compass, the Water of it black, and so bitter, that it kills all the Fish which come into it. It lies in the District of *Roymi*, to which and a small City the Lake communicates its own Name; and near this Lake there are many times found Pieces of Wood and Worms congeal'd in transparent Stones. The other Lake lies on the Road to the City of *Tokoriam*, and has a little Hill in the Middle of it, which rises insensibly, and produces abundance of Springs. It has two Sorts of Earth, the first of which serves to make Lime, and the other covers a spongy Stone, under which there's a white transparent Stone as clear as Glass, which being

polish'd, they adorn their Houses with it. Tavernier says, the Governor of the Province sent one of those Stones as a Present to *Shah-Abas*, which had a Lizard of a Foot long congeal'd in it.

3. *Tyroan*. Herbert says, it lies in Long. 80. Lat. 35. 40. He supposes it to be *Strabo's Rhazunda*. It stands in the Middle of a large Plain. The Air is temperate in the Morning and the Evening, but very hot in the Middle of the Day. It contains about 3000 Houses of white Bricks harden'd by the Sun. It has a large Market, Part of which is open, and Part arch'd. A small River runs through it in two Branches, which water the Groves and Gardens. The King has a large Garden adjoining, which is equal to the City in Compass, and enclos'd by a Mud Wall. They have a noble Caravanera. The Inhabitants are stately, the Women lovely, and both curious in Novelties. It lies within two Days Journey of *Tauris*.

4. *Vaspinge*, a Town of 600 Houses, within a Day's Journey of *Tauris*, on the Road to *Ispahan*. 'Tis water'd with many pleasant Streams, and has abundance of Groves of Poplars and Tylets, with fine Gardens that encompass it.

5. The Plains of *Agiagach* lie within 5 Leagues of this City. Sir John Chardin says, they are the best Pastures in *Media*, and perhaps in the World; and that about 3000 of the best Horses in the Province graze in it. He supposes 'em to be the *Hippothoon* of the Ancients, where they say the Kings of *Media* kept a Breed of 50000 Horse. He takes them also to be the Plains of *Nysa*, so famous for the *Nysene* Horses; but contradicts the Report of *Favorinus* and others, that these Horses were always of an Isabella Colour.

6. *Miana*, a Town in a large Plain, encompassed with Mountains, where the King of *Persia* has a Custom-House. It is the Boundary on that Side betwixt *Media* and *Parthia*, that are separated by a Branch of Mount *Taurus*. On the Top of one of the neighbouring Rocks there's a large ruin'd Castle, which the *Persians* say *Artaxerxes* built to imprison the Princes of the Blood. It was destroy'd by *Abas the Great*, because it serv'd for a Retreat to Robbers. There are large Causways on both Sides the Mountain,

tain, which that Prince order'd to be laid for the Conveniency of Travellers. *Tavernier* says, it has one of the fairest Inns in all *Persia*.

7. *Sancan*, formerly a large City, and noted for Trade, till ruin'd by *Tamerlane* and the *Turks*. It has still many goodly Houses, but its Fortifications dismantled. 'Tis encompassed with sandy Desarts. *Ogilby* says, the Name signifies *The Sighing of the Soul*, because a *Tartar* Prince who took it put all the Inhabitants to the Sword.

8. *Sophian*, suppos'd to be the ancient *Sophia* of *Media*, but now reduc'd to a small Village, seated in a Plain of admirable Fertility, and abounds with Streams and Gardens. *Sir John Chardin* places it 4 Leagues from *Marante*, in the Way to *Tauris*. *Tavernier* says, 'tis still an indifferent large City; but by reason of the great Number of Trees planted in and about it, it looks rather like a Forrest. From a neighbouring Hill there's a View of the Plains where *Amurath* the Turk encamp'd when he besieg'd *Tauris*; and the News coming to *Shas-Sefi* of *Persia*, that he had taken and burnt the Town, and was marching further into the Country with 100000 Men, he said, *Let him come, I know how to make him pay for his Invasion without any great Trouble*. *Shas-Sefi* was as good as his Word; for by turning the Course of the Streams, the *Turkish* Army perish'd for Want of Water, having imprudently advanc'd too far towards *Ispahan*.

9. *Ardevil*, or *Ardebil* *Moll* places it in Long 66. Lat 36. *Tavernier* Long. 62. 30. Lat. 38 15. He says, 'tis famous for being the first Market of Silks that come from the Province of *Gilan*, upon which it borders, and likewise for the Sepulchre of *Shas-Sefi* I. of *Persia*. The Avenues are pleasant, being planted with Alleys of great Trees in a strait Line at a due Distance. 'Tis indifferent large, stands in a lovely Opening of the Mountains call'd *Sevalan*, the highest in *Media*. The Houses are of Earth, the Streets uneven, dirty, and narrow, except one, at the End of which stands the *Armenian* Church. A small River runs through the Middle of the City, from which there are several Cuts to water their Gardens, and in many Places there are Rows of Trees very delightful to the View.

The Market place is large, with a noble Caravanfara on one Side, besides others, which have a fine Prospect over lovely Gardens, particularly that of the King, to which there's a stately Walk of 4 Rows of Trees. Tho' the adjacent Country is very proper for Vines, the *Persians* will suffer none to be planted, nor no Wine to be drank in the City, but privately; yet the *Armenians* are very well stor'd with it. The great Trade of Silk, and the Pilgrimages hither from all *Persia* to the Sepulchre of *Shas-Sefi*, make this one of the most considerable Towns in all the Kingdom. The Entry of the Sepulchre faces the Market-place. There are Chains across the Gate, fasten'd with great Rings, which if any Criminal can but touch, and enter the first Court, no Person can apprehend him; so that this Place is full of Criminals and Pilgrims, and no Body must enter it with a Stick or Arms, or without giving something to a Priest who always attends there. In the 2d Court of the Mosque there's a Rivulet, on one Side of which are Baths, on the other Granaries for Rice and Corn; and at the End there's a Place where Royal Alms are distributed to the Poor. The Gate of it is cover'd with Plates of Silver, and in the Kitchen there are 30 Ovens and 30 Cauldrons to dress Food for the Officers of the Mosque and the Poor. The Master Cook, who commands the House, sits in a Chair cover'd with Silver Plates, and sees the Alms distributed. There are several other Courts, whose Gates are cover'd with Silver, and lead to the Royal Tombs. No Man must tread on the Thresholds of those Gates on severe Penalties. The Mosque is richly hung with Tapestry, and furnish'd with Desks, cover'd with the Books of their Law, which their Doctors read to the People, and have fix'd Salaries for that End. In the Body of the Mosque there's an Octagonal Monument for *Shas-Sefi*, curiously carv'd, and inlaid with 4 Apples of Gold at each Corner, and cover'd with Crimson Sattin, embroider'd with Gold Flowers. There are several other rich Tombs belonging to the Royal Family, and in the Body and Choir of the Mosque are abundance of Lamps, Candlesticks, and Branches of Gold and Silver. The Roof is curiously painted with Gold and Azure *a la Moresque*, and the

Outside varnish'd with several Colours. There are many other stately Tombs in and about this City, which is much frequented by Merchants from all Parts, and all Sorts of Goods are to be had here as well as at *Tauris*, especially Silks, which are brought hither by Caravans of 8 or 900 Camels at a time. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, it is one of the most ancient and celebrated Cities of the Empire, was formerly the Residence of their Kings, and the Place where *Shah-Sefi* liv'd and dy'd. Some think it to be the *Arbela* of *Qu. Curtius*. They place it in Long. 82. 30. and Lat. 38. 5. It stands in a Plain 3 Leagues in Compass, surrounded with Mountains like an Amphitheatre, which occasions a continual Change in the Air to Extremities of Heat and Cold, and renders the Inhabitants subject to epidemical Distempers. There are 60 Villages round the City, and 100000 Sheep feed in the Plains, for which the King has a Groat each. Every House has its Garden planted with Fruit-Trees, which makes the City very pleasant. The Chains at the Gates of the Sepulchres are of Silver, and the Gates themselves of white Marble. The great Gate is built like a Tower, cover'd with Silver Plates, and adorn'd with Silver Rings, and the Vaults of the Sepulchres are divided by Silver Rails, and into some of them they enter by Silver Steps, which the *Persians* kiss. *Shah-Sefi's* Tomb is fenced in with Rails of Gold. The *Holstein* Ambassadors were admitted to see them; but a Priest follow'd them with Incense to purify the Places thro' which they passed. They have a Library, with abundance of Manuscripts in *Arabick*, *Turkish*, and *Persian*, excellently painted, richly bound, and cover'd with Plates of Gold and Silver; and in the Niches there are above 400 China Vessels, some of them that hold 10 Gallons apiece, for the Entertainment of Princes and Persons of Quality. The Kitchen-Doors are cover'd with Plates of Silver, from whence 1000 Persons have Alms distributed to them every Day. The Revenues of this Mosque are computed at many Millions of Gold; so that they can raise more ready Money than the King himself, and are able to maintain a very good Army on Occasion. Above 200 Houses, 9 publick Baths, 8 Caravansera's, 260 Shops, and

40 Villages, belong to it, besides the many Gifts and Legacies left them by Pilgrims and others, with a Duty upon every Thing sold in the City, and the Money they receive for Certificates from Pilgrims and Criminals, who are thereby exempted from Punishment. There are several Medicinal Springs near this City, both hot and cold, and one of them is not reckon'd wholesome till Serpents appear in it. *M. Figueron* says, this Place is in such Reputation among the bigotted *Persians*, that when *Shah-Abas* design'd to have destroy'd it, to prevent its falling into the Hands of the *Turks*, and order'd the Inhabitants to remove, they were ready to rebel, and the Women fill'd the City with Cries and Tears, and reproach'd the King to his Face, for offering to destroy it; yet his Fear was so great, that he remov'd the Relicks of those pretended Saints, and all the Riches from the Place; for since the Defeat of the *Persians* by the *Turks* in the Plains of *Calderan*, the *Persians* have avoided coming to a general Battle with them. This happen'd in 1618, when *Shah-Abas* dismantled and deserted the Town, and soon after purchas'd a Peace from the *Turks*. *Alexander the Great* is suppos'd to have kept his Court here for some Time.

10. *Sultania*. *Sir John Chardin* places this City in *Parthia*, Lat. 36. 18. and Long. 48. 5. *Tavernier* Lat. 39. 40. Long. 76. 15. *Moll* Long. 67. Lat. 36. *Sir John* says, it lies at the Foot of a Mountain, forms a delicate Prospect at a Distance, but does not answer when one comes to it; yet they have remarkable publick Structures, and about 3000 Houses. The Inhabitants say, it reach'd half a League more W. anciently, which is probable, it being once the Metropolis and biggest City of the Kingdom; nor is there any about which more Ruins are to be seen. Provisions are plentiful and cheap, the Air wholesome, but changeable; the Evenings and Mornings very cold, but the rest of the Day exceeding hot. The *Persian* Historians say, it is one of the ancientest Towns in *Parthia*; but they differ about the Founder, and alledge, that it was called *Sultanie*, which signifies *Royal*, when the Kings made it their Seat. *Sir John* is not of their Opinion who say, that it was the ancient *Tigranocerta*. The Kings of *Armenia* resided here,

here, when they say it had above 400 Churches. The Ruins of many of them appear still; but no Christians live here now. It suffer'd much by the ancient *Persian* Kings, by *Tamerlane*, and several *Turkish* and *Tartar* Princes. *Tavernier* says, the *Armenians* alledge, that there were 800 Churches and Chappels in it. The *Holstein* Ambassadors place it in Long. 84. 5. Lat. 36. 30. in a spacious Plain, and say, that 'tis still half a League long, and the Multitude of noble Ruins shew its ancient Extent and Splendor. The most remarkable Thing in it is the Sepulchre of *Mahomet Chodabende*, who conquer'd Part of the *Indies*, and defeated the *Turks* and *Tartars*. His Sepulchre has three Gates of the finest polish'd Steel, much higher than those of *St. Mark's* Church at *Venice*. The Roof grows narrow by degrees, and is form'd of white and blue Stones, with fine Figures and Characters. The Tomb is enclos'd with Brass Rails, and surrounded with a Grate of polish'd *Indian* Steel, wrought *Damask-wise*, each Bar as big as a Man's Arm, and so artificially join'd; that it seems to be one entire Piece. The Workmanship is so excellent, that nothing like it is found in *Persia*. The Tower is an *Octogone*, encompassed with a Gallery, containing 8 lesser Towers, mounted with Artillery. It has also a pleasant Garden, with a noble Summer-House. Over the great Gate there's a round Tower, and within the Court a noble Pyramid, in the midst of 8 fine Marble Pillars. The Mosque is arch'd, the Roof supported by a great Number of Pillars, with convenient Galleries, and in the Middle of the Garden there's a Tower in Form of a Pyramid. Near this Mosque there's the Ruins of a stately Triumphal Arch of Free-Stone. *Struys* says, there's another noble Mosque, built by *Shah-Ismael I* varnish'd on the Outside, which is of different Colours, and the Painting within is *à la Moreſque*, with *Arabian* Figures. *Figueron* says, it lies 14 or 15 Leagues from *Casbin*; and *Boysſingault*, that it contains about 6000 Inhabitants.

11. *Zerigan*, a City of about 2000 Houses, in a narrow Plain between two Mountains. The adjacent Country is fruitful and pleasant, and the Air wholesome and cool in the Summer. The Town is surrounded with pleasant Gardens, but has

many great Ruins within. The *Persians* say, it was built long before our Saviour and consisted of 20000 Houses, which is, probable enough from the many Ruins that appear a Mile round it. 'Twas destroy'd by *Tamerlane*, who afterwards rebuilt Part of it, because it had been a Nursery of learned Men famous in those Parts. 'Twas destroy'd since by the *Turks* and *Tartars*, but began to be rebuilt in the last Century. It lies in the Road betwixt *Tauris* and *Sultanie*.

12. *Caxem*. *Figueron* says, it lies on the Frontiers of *Media*, and has 4 Leagues of Gardens round it. He and his Retinue were much infested here by a Sort of white Flies, so small that they are scarce perceptible, but bite their Faces, Hands and Necks, while asleep, so that they seemed to be all on Fire. They hang in Clusters upon certain Trees in the Gardens. Part of this City is very well wall'd, and the Houses have Galleries and Balconies. It has a large Market-place planted with Trees, and there's a noble Caravanſera, with a Palace and Gardens belonging to the King. There's also a *Seraglio* very well painted and gilt, with Fountains, lin'd with Jasper and Marble of several Colours. Here he was entertain'd with a Fight betwixt Bulls and Rams, upon which the People lay Wagers. The Inhabitants of this City are so fond of that Diversion, that they purchase Fighting-Bulls and Rams at great Rates from remote Provinces, and many times decide the Quarrels themselves with Clubs, because of their Wagers. 'Twas incredible to see with what Fury those Creatures fought, and they are never suffer'd to give over till one of them fly. When the Bulls were weary, and gave over, their Masters came up to them, and spoke to them as if they had been reasonable Creatures, and told them, if they behav'd themselves well, they shou'd be kindly treated, but otherwise sent to the Plough or the Shambles. Accordingly they renew'd the Fight with great Fury, till one of them fled; upon which the Conqueror's Party shouted for Joy. The Kings of *Persia* have a great Esteem for this Town, because the Inhabitants are civil and rich by their Manufactures of Silk and Tapeſtry, reckon'd the best in the Kingdom. The Mechanicks live within the Walls; but the

Merchantts and richer Sort, with the best Caravanſera's, are in the Suburbs, which are more pleasant than the City, have abundance of good Fruit, particularly Grapes, and extraordinary Apricocks. They have no Streams nor Rivers, but very good Water in their Wells. The Town consists of about 5000 Houses, and lies in a great Plain, Lat. 32. 35. The Heat is almost insupportable in the Summer.

13. *Cencez*, a Village about a Day's Journey from *Caxem*, noted for the Sulphureous Vapours which rise from the neighbouring Hills, and make the Heat and Stench intolerable during the Summer. The Inhabitants are afflicted with a terrible Head-ach, which carries them off in 5 or 6 Days, if they be not reliev'd by Sweating. At the same Time black Spots come out in their Bodies. *Figueres*, out of Compassion, advis'd them to bleed the Patients, which had a very good Effect, and sav'd many of them.

HYERACK, or YERACK- AGEMI.

SIR John Chardin says, it is the ancient *Parthia*, and reckons *Sultanie*, with several of the Places already described, to belong to it. The *Persians* call it the Country of the Mountains. He supposes them to be descended from the *Scythians*, now call'd *Usbeck Tartars*, and formerly *Bactrians*; and that *Arsaces*, who founded the *Parthian Empire*, was a Native of the same Country with *Tamerlane*. Sir John adds, that this Country was long the Seat of the Empire of *Asia*, and is the largest and principal Province of *Persia*. It has the Province of *Chorasán* on the E. *Proper Persia* on the S. *Media* to the W. and *Gilan* and *Mazanderan* to the N. It is 200 Leagues long, 150 broad, and contains above 40 Cities, which is extraordinary in *Persia*, where the Country is not peopled proportionably to its Extent. It is all the proper Domains of the King, and therefore has no Governor. The Air is dry and healthy, the Mountains barren, and produce nothing but Thistles and Briars; but the Plains are fertile and pleasant where there is any Water, and for 6 Months together they have scarce any Rain or Clouds.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Ebher*, about 8 Leagues from *Sultania*. It consists of above 2500 Houses; but has so many large Gardens, that one can scarce ride through it in half an Hour. A River of the same Name runs through the Middle of it. 'Tis suppos'd to be the ancient *Barontha*. It lies in Long. 48. 30. Lat. 36. 45. according to the *Persian Maps*. *Moll* places it about Long. 67. and Lat. 36. The Situation is pleasant, the Air wholesome, and the Soil fruitful. The publick Structures are tolerably handsome. It has 3 spacious Mosques, and is govern'd by a *Deroga* or Mayor. The *Persians* say, *Darius* began the Castle, and *Alexander the Great* finish'd it. Sir John supposes it to be the *Vologocerta*, *Massabetha*, or *Artacana*, so frequently met with in the ancient Histories of *Persia*. Here the Vulgar begin to speak *Persian*; their Language till one comes hither being *Turkish*. From hence to *Casbin* there are 9 Leagues of delightful Plains.

Three Leagues from *Ebher* lies, 2. *Parſac*, a Town as big as it self.

3. *Casbin*. Sir John places it in Long. 85. 5. Lat. 36. 35. *Tavernier* Long. 87. 30. Lat. 36. 15. *Moll* Long. 68. Lat. 36. Authors differ about its ancient Name. Some take it to be *Arsacia*, formerly call'd *Europa*; Others to be the *Rages* or *Rages* of *Media*, and others *Strabo's Casbira*; but the *Persian Histories* don't allow it to be so ancient. One of their Histories says, 'twas founded by *Shapour*, the Son of King *Ardesbir-Babecon*, who gave it the Name of *Shaepour*, i. e. The City of the King's Son; but another of their Authors contradicts this, and says, it had its Rise from a Castle built here by K. *Ardesbir-Babecon*, to repel the Incursions of the *Deilemites* that came down from Mount *Alouvent* into this Country. It consists of 3 little Cities join'd in one, and was nam'd *Casbin* in the 245th of the *Hegyra*, because it was then made a Prison for Grandees. An *Armenian* Author says, it had its Name from one of their Kings. It suffer'd much by two Earthquakes in 460 and 562 of the *Hegyra*, but was rebuilt, and enclos'd with Brick Walls of 100300 Paces Compass, and at the End of every 500 Paces a strong Tower. These Fortifications were destroy'd by the *Tarks* and *Tartars*; but Sir John says, it was restor'd about 300 Years before his Time, and became the Metro-

Metropolis and Royal Seat for many Years. Their Kings liv'd here in Winter, and retir'd to the Foot of Mount *Alouvent* during the Summer, where they dwelt in Tents among cool Springs and pleasant Shades, till *Abas the Great* remov'd his Court to *Ispahan*, to enlarge his Eastern Conquests: Since which, this City has much decay'd. This Place has been famous for learned Men, and particularly *Lockman*, who compos'd Fables in Imitation of *Æsop*, which are very much esteem'd by the *Persians*. This *Lockman* was an *Arabian* Physician, who on his Death-Bed deliver'd his Son three Viols of Liquor, which he said had Power to raise the Dead. The Experiment was try'd upon *Lockman's* Son by his Servant; so that in pouring the 2d Glass *Lockman* recover'd, and bidding his Servant pour on, the Fellow run away in a Fright, and left his Master to die for Want of the 3d Viol. The *Persians*, who are much addicted to Fables, believe this Story, and fancy that in the Bath where this was attempted *Lockman* cries out still for the 3d Glass. *Sir John* says, 'tis a great City, in a delightful Plain, is 6 Miles in Circumference, and contains 12000 Houses, and 100000 Inhabitants; among which there are 40 Families of Christians, and 100 of Jews, but all very poor. The Royal Piazza is 700 Paces long, and 250 broad. There is a noble Palace with 7 Gates, and over the chief of 'em an Inscription in Letters of Gold to this Purpose; *May this Gate always be open to good Fortune, by that Confession which we make, that there is no God but God*. There are beautiful Gardens belonging to the Palace, and a Royal Mosque, one of the fairest in *Persia*. There are several other Mosques, and many stately Caravanseras. The Royal Caravansera has 250 Channels within its Walls, a large Fountain encompassed with Trees in the Middle of the Court, and two Gates which front two Streets, where the richest Merchandize is sold. The *Persian* Grandees have several Palaces here, which are the chief Ornament of the City; but it has not so many Gardens as others for Want of Water, having only a Branch of a River, which is not sufficient to supply their Grounds. The Water which they drink is brought from the Mountains by subterranean Channels, and emptied into Wells 30 Foot deep,

which, tho cool, is heavy and insipid; and the Air of the City is not healthful, for Want of Streams to carry away the Filth of the Town: Yet the neighbouring Plains are so well water'd, that they feed great Herds of Cattle, and produce Plenty of Corn and Fruit; amongst others, the fairest Grapes in *Persia*, of a Gold Colour, transparent, and as big as a small Olive. They make the strongest Wine in the World, but luscious and thick. These Grapes have the Epithet of Royal, and are dry'd and transported all over the Kingdom. They grow for 4 or 5 Months together in the Heat of Summer under the scorching Sun, without receiving one Drop of Water from the Sky or otherwise. When the Vintage is over, they let in their Cattle to browse on the Vines, and afterwards cut off all the great Wood, leaving only the young Stocks of 3 Foot high, which need no propping with Poles as in other Places. They have also Store of Pistachoes; and tho the Air be so hot in the Day, it is so very cool at Night, as occasions Illness to those who don't take Care of themselves. *Herbert* says, That for Extent, Inhabitants, and Grandeur, it is equal to any City in *Persia* except *Ispahan*. *Hephæstion*, *Alexander's* Favourite, was buried here; but nothing of his Monument, which cost his Master 12000 Talents, is now to be seen. He says, it is about 7 Miles in Compass, and in his Time contain'd 200000 Inhabitants. The King's Palace is built of Bricks, varnish'd and painted on the Outside with *Arabian* Figures in Gold and Azure. Most of the Rooms are arch'd, the Roofs and Sides neatly painted in Grotesque; and the Floors spread with rich Carpets of Silk and Gold. *Mortis Aly* took from *Jesdegird* the *Persian* King, whom he conquer'd, a Carpet here 60 Cubits square, woven of Silk, Silver, and Gold, and embroider'd with Precious Stones of an inestimable Value, representing Herbs and Flowers of all Colours. *Figueron* says, he was splendidly receiv'd here by the *Persian* Courtiers, and attended by a great Company of Horsemen clad in Cloth of Gold, the Hilt of whose Swords and Daggers were of massy Gold, adorn'd with Precious Stones. They were all of 'em Men of Quality, about 200 in Number, and resembled Princes and Generals. He adds, that tho

the Presents sent by the K. of *Spain* were extraordinary rich, and very well lik'd, the K. of *Persia* esteem'd a great fierce *Spanish* Dog which the Ambassador brought from Home on purpose more than all the rest; and the *Persians* were more taken, and spoke oftner of *Roldan*, which was the Dog's Name, than of any thing else; the very Fame of this Cur being such, that the People flock'd from all the Towns in the Road in great Numbers to see *Roldan*, whose Feet being very much galled with his long Journey, he was carried in a Sort of Litter, and far better attended by the *Persians* than the Ambassador himself. The Present was carried to the Palace by 600 People sent from Court on purpose, who wou'd have every one something to carry, how small soever. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, That on the E. Side of the Market, after the Shops are shut in the Evening, great Numbers of Prostitutes sit in a Row, with Bawds behind them, and Quilts or Beds at hand, and unlighted Candles, which they light so soon as any Body comes to cheapen their Ware, and carry them to the Place appointed. These Parts are very much celebrated for their Peaches. *Hakluyt* says, 'tis 4 Days Journey from *Gilan*, 7 from *Cashan*, 15 from *Babylon*, and 6 Weeks from *Ormus*. Provisions and every Thing else is very dear here, because brought from a great Distance. He adds, that 'tis bad travelling in this Country for Want of Towns and Villages, and for Scarcity of Water, besides the great Danger of being robbed: Therefore he seems to prefer being a Beggar in *England* during Life, before being a rich Merchant 7 Years in this Country. He says, the Town lies in a fertile Valley of 3 or 4 Days Journey in Length. *Boussingault* says, it has neither Walls nor Garrison. The Houses are all built of Bricks dry'd in the Sun, not very beautiful without, but within ciel'd and wainscotted, and adorn'd with Paintings and handsome Furniture; and to every one almost belongs an Ice-House, where they lay up the Snow and Ice for the Summer. Here are about 50 Mosques, several fine large Markets, and great Palaces built by the Chans and Lords of *Persia*. Those Markets, as well as the Shops and Warehouses, are full of Merchants from *Tartary*, *Muscovy*, *Arabia*, *Georgia*,

and other Countries far and near. They export from hence a great many Silks, fine Tapestries, Pearls, and Precious Stones, Corn, Fruits, Spice, and several Sorts of Drugs. S. S. E. from the Town lies the Mountain *Elwend* or *Elouvent*, which is a Branch of the *Taurus*, the most considerable in *Persia*, according to *Boussingault*, who says, 'tis famous for Quarries of white Marble, with which it supplies all the Kingdom. *Theravenot* says, it took him and his Company an Hour to ascend it.

4. *Kiare*, a Day's Journey from *Casbin*, in the Road to *Ispahan*. Sir *John* says, it consists of 500 Houses, with a half-ruin'd Castle in the Middle; Invasions and Civil Wars being so frequent and furious in the 13th Age, that the Inhabitants were oblig'd to fortify themselves in every Village. 'Tis the Custom in this Country to travel by Night during the Summer, because of the scorching Heat.

5. *Saxava*, a small City, with handsome and convenient Inns. *Lucas* says, 'tis two Miles in Circuit, and has a Salt River that runs through it. *Tavernier* says, the adjacent Country bears excellent Nuts.

6. *Sava*, a good City, in a fruitful Plain, about 70 Miles S. from *Casbin*, according to *Moll*. It has a great Trade in grey Lamb-Skins, whose Curl is very neat, and of which they make Furs. The adjacent Plain abounds with Villages, and is well manur'd; and within half a League there's one of the fairest Inns in *Persia*. Sir *John Chardin* says, 'tis two Miles in Circuit, has sorry Walls, and is but thinly peopled, tho' formerly a considerable City, as appears by the Ruins of many great Structures. There's a small River runs thro' it, with a good Number of Canals. He places it in Long. 85. Lat. 35. 50. and says, it is govern'd by a *Deroga* or Mayor. The *Persian* Histories say, That this Plain was formerly a Salt Marsh, like that call'd the *Salt Sea*, about 20 Leagues E. from this City, and cross'd by a Causeway 30 Leagues long, as to which the *Persians* tell many fabulous Miracles, and alledge, that it was dried up by *Mahomet* the same Night he was born, or by his Son-in-Law *Haly*, at the Pronunciation of one Word, and that *Sava* was built in Remembrance of that Miracle. This City has suffer'd very much by War. The *Holstein* Ambassadors

bassadors say, That tho' the Town be ruinous, it makes a very good Prospect without by its numerous Towers and publick Structures; That they have excellent Pomegranates and Almonds in their Gardens, and great Quantities of Cotton and Rice in the adjacent Fields, with which they drive a considerable Trade. *Herbert* says, it consists of 1200 Houses, has a small Stream runs through it; and that besides the above-mention'd Product, there's Plenty of Barley, Figs, Olives, Honey, and great Store of Nightingales and other Singing-Birds in their Gardens. *Struys* says, 'tis almost as large as *Casbin*, and that its Territory produces such Quantities of Tobacco, as furnishes a great Part of the Kingdom.

7. *Segsabad*. *Chardin* says, it signifies the Habitation of Dogs; that it lies in a fair Plain, with a great Number of Villages, and is as large as *Kiare*; that neither of those Towns have any Inns, but 15 or 20 great Houses in each, much more cleanly, and affording better Accommodation, than the Caravanera's. The Hosts dare ask nothing for their Lodging or Trouble, but make one pay what Rates they please for Provisions for Man and Beast; whereas in the Caravanera's every thing is tax'd at a certain Rate. In the Neighbourhood there's a Champain Country full of Villages, said to be the Place where *Lucullus* fought *Mithridates*, and where *Crassus* was defeated. *Chardin* says, there's an Inn in this Country call'd *Koskeirou*, the fairest and largest in *Persia*. It was founded by the chief Wife of *Abas the Great*, who laid out 18000 *l.* Sterling in building it, and settled an Annual Revenue to maintain the Inn, and Servants to look after it, which has been diverted by the Covetousness of the Trustees, so that now it goes to Ruin. This Lady expended 400000 *l.* Sterling in such charitable Works, which made her Name famous.

8. *Echmonil*, one of the most famous Places of Pilgrimage in *Persia*, lies 4 Leagues E. from *Sava*. *Chardin* says, the Inhabitants believe the Prophet *Samuel* was interred here, and over his supposed Tomb there is a sumptuous Mausoleum in the Middle of a magnificent Mosque.

9. *Rhey*, lies 9 Miles W. from *Sava*.

Chardin says, it was once the most famous and biggest City in *Asia*, according to the *Persian* Historians, who tell incredible Wonders of it. They say, That in the 9th Century of Christianity it was divided into 96 Quarters, each of which contain'd 46 Streets, and each Street 400 Houses, and 10 Mosques; That it contain'd besides 6400 Colleges, 16600 Baths, 15000 Towers of Mosques, 12000 Mills, 1700 Channels, and 13000 Inns. He says, he dares not insert the Number of Houses, because he believes they were not half so many, tho' all the Oriental Authors assert it. The *Arabian* Writers say, That in the 3d Age of their *Hegyra* it was the best peopled City in *Asia*; and that except *Babylon*, there was never any City so considerable for Wealth, Trade, and Number of Inhabitants; so that they call'd it, *The First of Cities*, *The Spouse of the World*, *The Gate of the Gates of the Earth*; and, *The Market of the Universe*. The Chronicle of the *Magi* say, *Chus*, the Grandson of *Noah*, founded it, and laid the first Stone when the Sun was in *Scorpio*; That it was afterwards enlarg'd by several *Persian* Kings, and destroy'd by *Mehdi-Billa Mansour the Victorious*, 3d Caliph of *Babylon*, but rais'd to the Splendour above-mentioned by his Successors. It was again destroy'd in the Time of the Civil Wars, when the *Tartars* invaded the Country; and that the *Mahometans* were divided into the *Persian* Sect of *Shia*, and the *Turkish* Sect of *Sunni's*. These two Factions had War together for 60 Years, wherein the *Sunni's* were Conquerors, and then divided into two other Sects, call'd that of *Sha Fai* and *Hanifei*, which *Sir John* says continue still. These Divisions, and the Incursions of the *Tartars*, destroy'd *Rhey* about the End of the 6th Century of the *Hegyra*. A *Parthian* Prince attempted to rebuild it 60 Years after, but without Success. *Chardin* supposes it to be *Ptolomy's Raquaia*. It lies in Long. 76. 20. Lat. 35. 35. *Moll* places it about Long. 70. and betwixt Lat. 34 and 35. about 80 Miles S. E. from *Casbin*, and 58 N. E. from *Sava*. *Sanfon* says, there's excellent Manna in the Neighbourhood. *Chardin* says, the Soil is fruitful and pleasant, and produces Plenty of good Fruits; but the Air is unhealthful, makes the Inhabitants look yellow, and breeds Agues. The

fabulous *Persians* say, That an Angel dispers'd the unwholesome Vapours every Morning, so that the People liv'd as long there as any where else in the Country. It produc'd many learned Men, and was for several Ages the chief Treasury of the Riches of the E. *Tavernier* says, it lies in the best Soil of all *Persia* for Wheat, Fruit, and Pasturage.

10. *Hamadan*, or *Amadan*. *Moll* places it Long. 67. and near Lat. 35. *Tavernier* Long. 75. 20. and Lat. 34. and says, the adjacent Country breeds great Store of Cattle. He adds, that 'tis one of the largest and most considerable Cities of *Persia*, and lies at the Foot of a Mountain, from whence proceed a great Number of Springs, which water all the Country. The neighbouring Lands abound with Corn and Rice, with which they furnish most of the adjacent Provinces. He says, one of the Reasons why the Statesmen of *Persia* were against their Kings keeping *Bagdat* was, that it drew Provisions from *Amadan* which should maintain the other Provinces, and that he could not supply *Bagdat* otherwise; whereas it is easy for the Gr. Seignior to do it by the Neighbourhood of *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria*, and the *Arabs*, Enemies to the *Persians*. *Thevenot* says, it contains many void Places, Gardens, and Corn-Fields; that the Houses are handsome, and built of Bricks; but it has no fair Street except one, which is strait, long, and broad, and abounds with Shops, where they sell Cloths and Stuffs. It is considerable for Traffick, and was formerly very strong, till the Castle and other Fortifications were demolish'd by the *Turks*. The Air and Water is bad, and they have no Wine, but Brandy. The Town is commanded by a Chan, and the *Armenians* have a Church here. *Lucas* says, it has been much larger formerly, as appears by the Ruins. There are more *Jews* here than in any Town of *Persia*, because many of them come from all Parts in Pilgrimage to the suppos'd Tombs of *Mordecai* and *Esther*, which are in their Synagogue, made of Brick, and cover'd with Wood painted black. This Synagogue has formerly been a great Edifice, but is now only a small Chappel. *Benjamin of Tudela* says, in his Time there were 50000 *Israelites* here. This City had formerly the Title of a Kingdom, and 15 other Cities subject to it, ac-

cording to *Sanfon*. *Lucas* says, That within a small League of it there's a Mountain called *Nalbane*, or the Mountain of the Sun, because it continually shines upon it. 'Tis above a League long, as much in Height, and join'd to other high Mountains. The Country People say, it produces Herbs of such Vertue for preserving Health, that several have liv'd upon it above 200 Years; and 'tis said, the famous *Avicen* studied Simples here a great while. Upon this Account, he went up to it, and says, it abounds with more Simples than any Place he ever saw, so that it seems to contain all Sorts of Plants in the World. The Odours of the Herbs are so sweet, that he never found any Place so agreeable. The Inhabitants add, that there's no Herb of any malignant Quality upon the whole Mountain. There are the Ruins of abundance of Houses on it, which some say were the Cells of ancient Hermits; and others, that they were built for the Entertainment of Naturalists who came to study the Quality of the Herbs. Abundance of People come hither in the Spring from the neighbouring Provinces to recover their Health, which they frequently do by lying only upon the Herbs. The Sheep that feed upon it have their Wool finer and longer than others. *Lucas* says, he gather'd a Salad there of 400 several Sorts of Herbs at a Venture, and found it excellent and delicious. He adds, that they have noble Wine in this Country; and that Bread, Meat, and all Sorts of Fruits, are very cheap. *Boussingault* says, there's abundance of Fruit-Trees in the Streets and publick Places of *Amadan*. *Ogilby* says, the Jurisdiction of this City extends 30 Leagues, and contains 15 Towns, inhabited mostly by Merchants. The Air of this Country is very cold in the Winter.

Couch-Telisme is a Mountain about 8 Leagues and a half from *Rhey*. *Chardin* says, it signifies, *The Hieroglyphical Mountain*, and that it has this peculiar Property, which he could not believe had he not seen it; That as one approaches, it varies both in Bigness and Figure. The Top is always in Sight, and seems to turn to you which Way soever you look upon it from all Points of the Compass. This he reckons to proceed from the Variety of the Optick Mediums thro' which 'tis seen; so that it resembles

seemles those ingenious Pictures that vary the Object, by turning the Picture this or that Way to the Eye. It consists of a black Earth, that crumbles like the burnt Mould of those Mountains which vomit Fire. Tho' the People of the Country know nothing of its ever having done so, yet they say, that no Body who offers to ascend it ever comes back; and that *Abas the Great* having sent a Foot-Boy up to it with a Light in his Hand, the Light went presently out, and the Boy was never more seen; so that 'tis probable it abounds with sulphureous Streams, which kill those who go up to it.

11. *Com*, or *Kom*. The *Persians* place it Long. 85. 40. Lat. 34. 45. *Chardin* Long. 85. 48. Lat. 34. 30. *Figueron* Lat. 33. 4. *Tavernier* Long. 75. 40. Lat. 35. 35. *Moll* about Long. 69. Lat. 33. *Herbert* Lat. 34. 40. and the *Holstein* Ambassadors Lat. 34. 17. 'Tis one of the oldest Towns in *Persia*, suppos'd by some to be the ancient *Guriana*, by others *Arbacta*, founded by *Arbaces* the *Mede* upon the Destruction of *Niniveh*; and others take it to be the *Coama* mention'd in *Ptolemy* and *Diodorus*: But those of the best Authority think it rather than *Ispahan* to be the *Grecian Hecatompylos*. *Herbert* favours this Opinion, because it agrees with *Ptolemy's* Lat. The *Arabian* Geographers say, 'twas one of the 4 best Cities of the Empire, and the Inhabitants have a Tradition, That it was formerly as big as *Babylon*. *Friar Odo-ricus de Friuli*, who calls it *Como*, reports it to have been 50 Miles round, and says, it was inferior to no City in *Asia* for Greatness. *Herbert*, who could not discover any Marks of that Circuit, observ'd however, that it was a large Town by the ruinous Foundations of ancient Structures. He says, 'tis situate in a fruitful Country, where the Air is commonly serene and temperate, except when the Sun passes from the Vernal *Æquinox* to the Northern Tropick, and then 'tis parching hot. Their Gardens produce abundance of Grapes, Pomegranates, Melons, Pom-Citrons, Apricocks, Plumbs, Pears, Pistachio's, Almonds, Apples, Quinces, Cherries, Figs, Nuts, Berries, &c. They have also the best Sort of Wheat in *Persia*, and a Peach which, with its Leaf, is so much like the Heart and Tongue of a Man, that the *Egyptians* dedi-

cated it to their Goddess *Isis*, as the *Hieroglyphick of Affection*. The Town lies 36 Miles from *Cashan*. In *Herbert's* Time it had about 2000 Houses, most of them well built and furnish'd. The Streets are spacious, and there's a famous Mosque, richly adorn'd by the Shrine of *Fatima*, Wife to *Mortis Aly*, Daughter to *Mahomet*. The Tomb is 3 Yards high, cover'd with Velvet, and ascended to by 3 or 4 Steps of Silver. He adds, that *Sha-Sefi*, who succeeded *Abas*, was interred here likewise; and that Anno 1397 it was spoiled by *Tamerlane*.

Sir John Chardin says, the *Persians* reckon 400 Sepulchres of *Aly's* Descendants (whom they call the *Sons of the Apostles*) in and about this Town. 'Tis seated in a Plain by a River, half a League from Mount *Elwend*. It resembles a long Square from E. to W. and (as the People say) has 15000 Houses. 'Tis surrounded with a Moat and Wall, and flank'd with Towers, half ruin'd. There are two fair Keys on the River, and a handsome Bridge over it. There are also several large beautiful Bazars; yet *Sir John* says, 'tis a Place of no great Trade. However, they export vast Quantities of Fruit dry'd and raw, Soap, Sword-Blades, and Earthen-Ware, white and varnish'd. *Sir John* says, the former, by its peculiar Quality, suddenly cools the Water put into it in the Summer; so that they who have a Mind to drink coolly, never drink in the same Pot above 5 or 6 Days. They wash it with Rose-Water the first time, to take away the ill Smell of the Earth, and they hang it in the Air full of Water, wrapt up in a moist Linen Cloth. One 4th of the Water transpires in six Hours the first time: After that, it transpires less from Day to Day, till the Pores are clos'd up by the thick Matter contain'd in the Water: But as soon as the Pores are stopped, the Water stinks in the Pots, and they take new ones. The Citizens have deep Cellars, to which they descend by 40 or 50 Steps for Water, which comes from Fountains stop'd with Cocks, that's delicious, refreshing, and cold as Ice, which is very convenient, because the Summer is excessive hot here. This City contains many fair Inns and Mosques. The chief of the latter is that where the two last Kings of *Persia* lie interred. *Sir John* gives

gives the following Account of it: It has 4 Courts; the first, planted with Trees and Flowers, is a long Square, with an Alley in the Middle, separated from the Plots by a Ballustrade. There are two Terrasses on each Side the full Length of the Garden, 3 Foot high, and on each Side 20 vaulted Chambers 9 Foot square, with a Chimney and Portico each. At the Entrance into this Court there's one of those deep Cellars on the Left, and on the Right an Aviary. The Court is encompassed with a Canal of running Water. Over the Top of the Portal there are 10 Distichs in Letters of Gold, full of blasphemous Rants, according to the Manner of the *Persians*. The last King of *Persia* caus'd a Tent to be erected here that cost 150000 l. and was called, *The House of Gold*, because it glister'd with that Metal. The Antichamber was form'd of Velvet, with a Ground of Gold, and Verses in the Cornish, which call'd it, *The Throne of Second Solomon*. The 2d Court is not so beautiful as the first, but the 3d is, and they ascend to the 4th by 12 Marble Steps, thro' a magnificent Portal, cover'd below with white transparent Marble. The Top of it is a large Half-Dome, painted with *Moresco* in Or and Azure. There are Apartments round it for the Governors, Priests, and Students, that live on the Revenues of the Place. Fronting these Courts stands the Body of the Structures, consisting of 3 great Chappels upon a Line. The Portals and Domes are like those already described, cover'd with large square Tiles of *China* painted in *Moresco*, and the Inside embellished with Gold and Azure. The Door-Cases are of transparent Marble, and the Folding-Doors plated with Silver, embellished with Vermilion, gilt, carv'd, and polish'd. The Chappel is Octogonal, with a high Dome, and the lower Part cover'd with large Tiles of Porphyry, wav'd and painted with Flowers in Gold and Colours so lovely, that they dazzle one's Eyes. The Inside is *Moresco* Work of glittering Gold and Azure. The Spire on the Top is very lofty, and of curious Architecture, compos'd of Golden Bowls of several Proportions. In the Middle of that Chappel stands the Tomb of *Fatima*, to whom they make the same Applications as the Papists do to the Blessed Virgin. There is also the Tomb

of one of the Caliph's Daughters, cover'd with Cloth of Gold, and enclos'd with a Grate of massy Silver, 10 Foot high, and at each Corner crown'd with large Apples of Gold. There's Velvet hung about the Inside of the Grate to hide the Tomb from the View of the People; so that only Favour or Money can procure a Sight of it. At Festivals, the Floors are spread with Carpets of Silk and Gold, and the Chappel is adorn'd by Silver Lamps of great Value. Upon the Grate there are several Inscriptions upon Vellum in Letters of Gold, containing the Eulogies of those pretended Saints and their Families, and a Prayer, which all the Pilgrims say when they come to make their Visits. They kiss the Threshold and the Grate three times, stand upright with their Faces to the Tomb, say the Prayer *verbatim* by the Direction of a Priest; after which they kiss the Grate and the Foot of the Door, and give the Priest Money according to their Ability; and their Certificate for having perform'd the Pilgrimage costs them 8 or 9 Shillings. The Money which the Pilgrims and Votaries give is put into an Iron Chest, which is open'd every *Friday*, and distributed to those who belong to the Chappel. The Curious, who would know the Forms of their Prayers, may find them in Sir John Chardin.

In the two Chappels on each Side stand the Tombs of the two last Kings of *Persia*; the Portals not so large, but the Ornaments much the same with that of *Fatima*. The Painting is of Gold and Azure, laid on so thick, that it looks as if it were massy. The Dome opens towards the lower Part with a double Row of 24 Windows, glaz'd with Panes of Chrystal painted with Gold and Azure, and fasten'd in massy Silver. Over the Tombs there hang Lamps of massy Gold upon Rods of Silver, and the Tombs are cover'd with rich Cloth of Gold of betwixt 60 and 70 l. Sterl. an Ell. Over that there's a Scarlet Counterpane, and a Canopy of Gold over Head. Round the Gallery of the Tombs are the Eulogies of *Haly* the *Persian* Idol, which shews the Transports of *Mahometan* Devotion, for which we refer to Sir John Chardin. All the Vessels that belong to the Chappels are of Gold and Silver. They consist of large Flam-

Flambeau-Branches of 4 and 500 Ounces apiece, of flat Dishes wherein they serve the Poor with Viſuals, Spitting Pots, Chafing-Diſhes, Fire-Shovels, Perfuming-Pans, and Boxes for Greafe and ſweet Odours; but they uſe the Gold Veſſels only at Feſtivals. Behind the Chappels and upon each Side are neat Gardens, with Apartments well furniſh'd, and upon the Left Hand a large Burying-place 1500 Paces ſquare, whither they bring Corps from all Parts, becauſe they reckon the Ground holy. A Revenue belongs to this Place of 11000 *l.* Sterling *per Ann.* The City contains ſeveral other beautiful and ſumptuous Structures, is very pleaſant, but exceſſive hot in Summer, and in Winter the R. of *Joubadgan* overflows much of the City, eſpecially after a great Thaw. Some *Persian* Hiſtorians ſay, 'twas twice as big as *Conſtantinople*, till *Tamerlane* deſtroy'd it. In 1634, an Inundation ruin'd 1000 of its Houſes, and another ſince deſtroy'd 2000. The *Persians* call it, *The Habitation of the Pious*. *Tavernier* ſays, he ſaw a Fight here betwixt two Bulls, the one call'd *Haly*, and the other *Mahomet*, in the great Piazza. A great Number of Tumblers and Puppet-Players, divided into two Bands, came with a Bull each, which they held by the Horns, and ſet looſe in the Ring; but whether it were by Accident, or the Cunning of the Bull-Maſters, who knew which was the beſt Fighter, after an obſtinate Conflict, wherein both the Beaſts foam'd with Rage and Heat, *Mahomet* quitted the Field, and left *Haly* the Victory. Then the People ſhouted for Joy: The Piazza was filled with the Noiſe of Flutes and Hautboys, and every one came running to adore the Bull *Haly*, and cry'd out, *Behold the Works of God that Haly has made*. At laſt they brought the Bull *Haly* under a Gate, with his Head turn'd toward the People, every one of whom brought him Preſents, which turn'd all to the Tumblers Profit. The Chan of the Town, who was preſent with 100 Horſes richly trapp'd to behold the Fight, preſented the Bull with 750 Crowns. They who attended him preſented ſome a Garment, others a Girdle, and the meaneſt of the People preſented him with Fruits and other Things, according to their Abilities.

The *Holſtein* Ambaſſadors ſay, the Melons here are no bigger than Oranges, and the Rind ſpotted, but of a better Scent and Taſt than others. They are the ſame which *Grotius* gives an Account of in his *Arabick* Lexicon. The Sword-Blades made here are the beſt in *Persia*, and ſold ſometimes for 5 *l.* apiece. The Mountain *Demawend*, which is rich in Iron Mines, furniſhes them Materials for thoſe Blades. *Struys* ſays, the Inhabitants are very complaiſant and courteous, but filch from Strangers. *Figueron* ſays, they are the beſt Soldiers of this great Empire.

12. *Casſem-Abad*, or *Casfabath*, 5 Leagues from *Com*, a Town of about 300 Houſes, which was the Queen Mother's Dowry, and has a Street of one continu'd Arch. Beyond this Place there's a Plain of 9 Leagues without Villages or Water, and cover'd with a moving Sand, very dangerous to Travellers.

13. *Casſhan*, *Caschan*, or *Casſchan*. *Chardin* places it in Long. 86. Lat. 35. 35. the *Holſtein* Ambaſſadors ſay Lat. 33. 51. *Tavernier* Long. 76. 15. Lat. 34. 40. *Moll* Long. 69. Lat. 34. *Chardin* ſays, it lies in a Plain, in Form of a Half-Moon, is a League long, and a quarter of a League broad. It has no River, but ſeveral Channels convey'd into Ciſterns under Ground. It has a double Wall flank'd with round Towers, 5 Gates, and a Royal Palace without the E. Gate. It contains 6500 Houſes, 40 Moſques, 3 Colleges, and 200 Sepulchres of *Aly's* Deſcendants. The Houſes are built of Earth and Bricks, but few of them remarkable, except the Bazars and Baths, which are noble Structures, and well kept. It has ſeveral Inns; and that call'd the Royal Inn without the City, *Chardin* ſays, is the faireſt in *Persia*. It is ſquare, and each Front within 200 Paces long, with two Stories and an Antichamber that runs along the Fronts 8 Foot high, and pav'd with white Marble, transparent like Porphyry. The Stories on the Sides have 15 Chambers each, the two others but 10, with a large Apartment in the Middle of 5 Chambers each. The other Chambers are 15-Foot long, 10 broad, high and vaulted, with Chimnies in the Middle; and there's a ſquare Portico before them, cover'd with a Half-Duomo, and a Chimney on each Side. The 2d Story is much

much, the same, with a Balluster 4 Foot high round the Structure, that lets in the Light. There are Shops at the Entrance, with all Manner of Provisions for Men and Beasts. The Gate is under a high and magnificent Portal, adorn'd with Mosaick, as is the rest of the Structure; and upon the Sides there's a Portico, where one may lie as conveniently as within. In the Middle of the Court there's a Fountain rais'd above 5 Foot, and the Walls 4 Foot broad, for the Conveniency of those who say their Prayers after their Purifications. The back Part of the Inn consists of large Stables, with Places for Servants and Baggage, built in the same Manner as the other Apartments, with Lodgings for the Poor, and Storehouses for Goods. There are large Gardens behind the Stables, and near the Inn stands the Royal Palace, with another over against it for Ambassadors, all built by *Abas the Great*, with a Place for publick Exercises on Horseback. The Trade of *Cashan* is in all Sorts of Silk Stuffs, and Tissues of Gold and Silver. There's as much Sattin, Velvet, Tabby, plain and flower'd Tissue, made here and in the Neighbourhood, as any where else in *Persia*; so that one single Borough in this District has 1000 Houses inhabited by Silk-Weavers. The Air is so violently hot in Summer, by the Reflexion of the Beams from a neighbouring Mountain, that it scalds one. They are also much infested with Scorpions at all Times, but especially when the Sun is in that Sign; so that 'tis become a Curse, *May the Scorpions of Cashan sting thy Gulls*. This occasions every one to be provided with sovereign Remedies against them, which is a Piece of Copper Money they put on the Wound, take it off after 24 Hours, and apply a Plaister of Honey and Vinegar. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, they are very black, of the Length and Thickness of a Man's Finger, and run faster than Crab-Fishes, with their Tails always sticking up. The Inhabitants, to avoid them during the Night, lay their Beds upon Frames at a good Distance from the Ground. They tell many idle Stories about them, particularly, that if a Stranger say to them, *Scorpions, I am a Stranger, don't sting me*, they never hurt them. One of the Ambassador's Retinue being stung by one at *Schamachie*, it occasion'd a painful

Swelling in his Mouth; but applying some Oil of Scorpions immediately to the Wound, and taking a good Dose of Venice-Treacle inwardly, the Pain was allay'd in 3 Hours, and quite remov'd in two Days; tho' for several Years he had the Remnants of a pricking Pain at certain Intervals, especially in the Autumn. They have also an Insect like a Spider, about two Inches round, which the Ambassadors suppose to be the *Latin Stello*, and the *Italian Tarantula*. It lets its Poison fall like a Drop of Water, which causes an insupportable Pain in the Part, communicates the Venom immediately to the Stomach, and sends up such Vapours to the Head, as cause immediately a profound Sleep, from which the Patient is not to be recover'd but by crushing one of the same Creatures upon the Wound. Or if this can't be had, by pouring as much Milk down his Throat as they can; after which they lay him on a Bier, fasten'd with Cords at the 4 Corners to a Beam: Then turning the Bier about till the Cords be twisted, they let it go back on a sudden; so that by untwisting the Ropes, and the Violent Agitation thereby occasion'd in the Person's Head, his Stomach discharges the Milk, which appears greenish, because of the Poison, and a certain Matter issues from his Yard with excessive Pain. Those who are cur'd thus, have some Remnants of the Pain once a Year about the same Season. The Sheep of this Country hunt greedily after this Animal, and feed upon it. The Ambassadors add, that there's a Summer-House in the King's Garden which has 1000 Doors and Windows. *Tavernier* says, there's 1000 Families of *Jews* here, who pretend to be of the Tribe of *Judah*. The Citizens coin Money, and make Copper Vessels, in which they have a great Trade. He says, that betwixt this City and *Gilan* there are Plains of pure Salt 12 Leagues long, and but one Cistern of Water by the Way. *Struys* says, the *Jews* here manage the Vines, of which they make excellent Wine. *Herbert* places it 60 Miles N. from *Ispahan*, says it is a very ancient City, as large as *York* or *Norwich*; the Inhabitants are civil, richly apparell'd, and dextrous at dying Silks, staining Linen, and painting Leather.

14. *Arum*, two Leagues from *Cashan*, contains 2000 Houses, 600 Gardens, and is mostly inhabited by Silk-Weavers.

Less than a Day's Journey from *Cashan* there are two strong Dams built betwixt two Mountains by *Abas the Great*, to contain the Water which falls down from them when it rains, or the Snow melts, and from hence by Sluices they water the neighbouring Plains. Beyond this Mountain there's a deep narrow Valley about a League in Length, so filled with Houses, Vineyards and Gardens, that it resembles a continu'd Village. It abounds with cooling and delightful Springs, which are very refreshing in that scorching Climate; and tho' at so little Distance from *Cashan*, their Harvest is a Month later. This is thought to be the Plain where *Darius* was murder'd by *Bessus* and *Nabarzanes*, which Sir John Chardin thinks probable, because *Cashan* lies directly in the Road which leads to *Hyrkania* and *Bactriana*, whither the Murderers fled.

15. *Natens*, about two Days Journey from *Cashan*, in the Way to *Ispahan*. Near this Place there are two high peaked Mountains, and upon one of 'em is an Octogonal Tower of Brick 8 Paces Diameter at the Bottom, but narrower towards the Top, where it has many Windows to let in the Light. It was built by *Sha-Abas* in Memory of one of his Faulcons that killed an Eagle here. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, 'tis surprizing to think how the Materials for building it were carried up so high, since it cost Mr. *Mandelsloe* (who had the Curiosity to view it) 3 Hours hard Work to go up it, and as many to come down. *Figueroa* says, 'tis a large Town, and the Water which comes from the Mountains makes the Valley very fruitful, which abounds with Gardens, that produce excellent Fruit; but the Plain is so full of Rocks and Trees, that 'tis difficult for Strangers to find the Road to the Town; at the Entrance of which there's a noble Mosque for the Accommodation of Pilgrims and Travellers. He says, there's a great Plane-Tree here, whose Trunk is 7 Fathom round, and its Branches of such a vast Extent, that a great Number of Men, Horses and Camels, may lodge under its Shadow without incommoding one another. It is encompassed by a Wall about 12 Paces on each Side from its Root, where Travel-

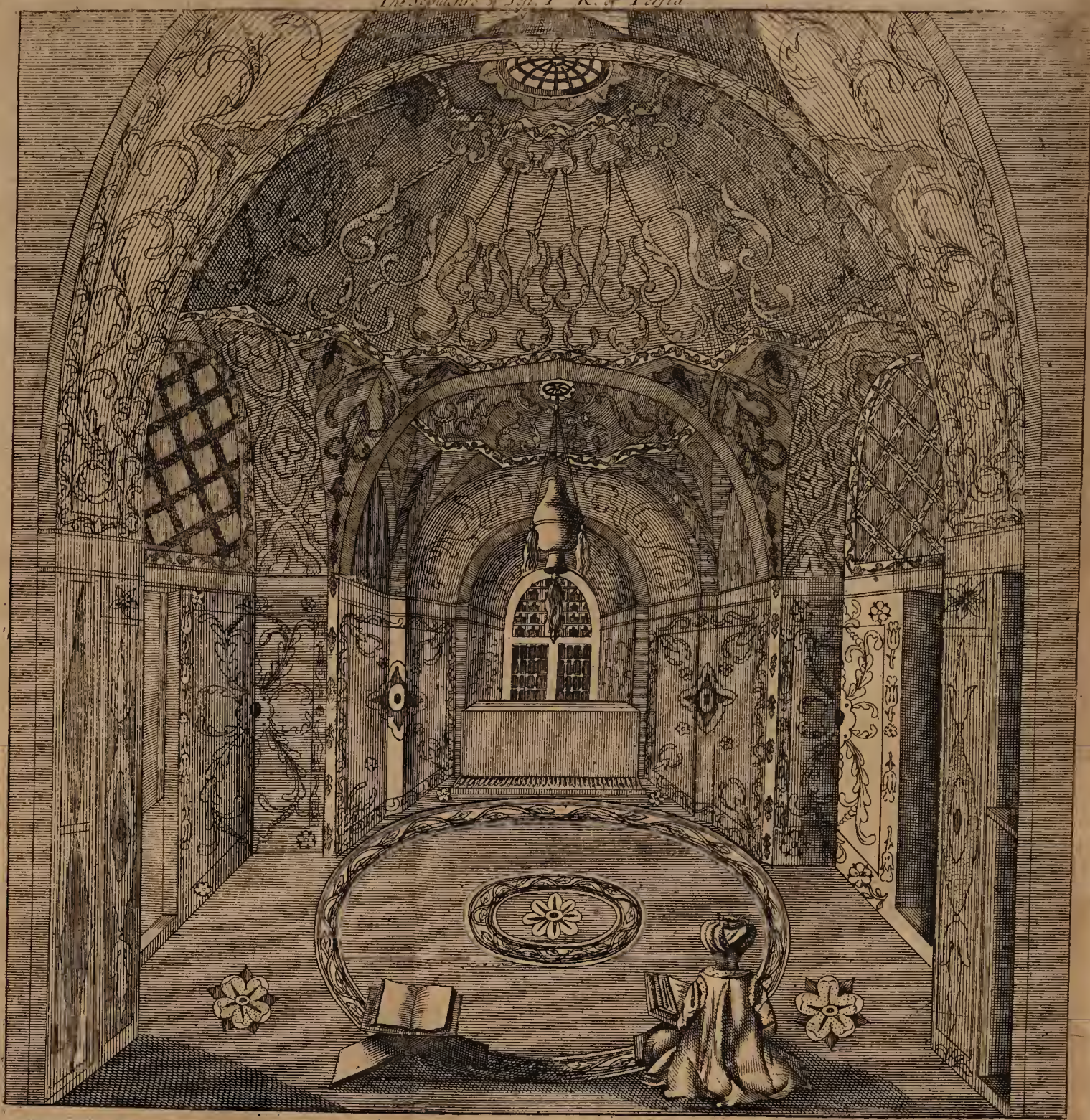
lers place their Beds and Baggage. There's a Stream runs through it; and the Shade of the Branches reaching 30 Paces round, is capable of lodging a whole Caravan. The Ambassador lodged above 200 Camels and Horses, &c. that belong'd to him with a great deal of Ease round the Wall. The Branches of the Tree are so extraordinary big, that they exceed the Trunks of the largest Trees in *Europe*, so that it was a Wonder how the Trunk could bear them. It is so old, that the Inhabitants say they have no Accounts which reach so high. The Branches and Leaves are so thick, that the Rays of the Sun don't pierce thro' 'em. The Ambassador compares it to the Tree which *Licinius Mucianus* met with in *Asia Minor* when he travelled from *Antioch* to *Rome*.

16. *Ispahan*, *Hispahan*, or *Spahawne*. *Tavernier* places it in Long. 86. 40. Lat. 32. 40. The *Holstein* Ambassadors Long. 68. 40. Lat. 32. 26. the Declension of the Needle from N. to W. being 7 Degrees here; *Herbert* Long. 86. 30. Lat. 32. 39. *Figueroa* Lat. 31. 30. *Sanfon* places it Long. 90. Lat. 33 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Long. 69. Lat. 32. *Chardin* Long. 84. 18. Lat. 32. 40. The *Holstein* Ambassadors, who stay'd here 5 Months in 1637, say, it is supposed to be the ancient *Hecatompylos*, and before *Tamerlane's* Time was call'd *Sipahan*, which signifies Armies, because of the great Number of its Inhabitants. 'Tis the Capital of the Province, and of all *Persia*. *Herbert* says, it was formerly call'd *Dura*; but whether it be *Ptolemy's Dera* or *Dara* built by *Arfaces*, the first *Parthian* Emperor, mention'd by *Justin*, he knows not. It was likewise call'd *Nymzamen*, which signifies Half the World. *Cluverius* calls it *Hagistan*. *Herbert* thinks it to be *Ptolemy's Aspadana*, because it agrees with his Lat. and supposes it to be the old Town call'd *Spada*, where Eunuchs were first gelded, and that *Hecatompylos* was *Cashin* or *Com*. It suffer'd much by *Omar* Caliph of *Mecca*, *Mahomet* Caliph of *Bagdat*, and *Tangrolipsis*. *Ben-Jonas* says, That about 500 Years ago it was 12 Miles in Circuit. *Joseph Barbarus* says, That in 1474 it contain'd 1500000 Souls. *Rabbi Benjamin*, and *Contarini* the *Venetian* Ambassador, say, in their Time it was 20 Miles round. *Herbert* says, it was 9 M. round, contain'd 70000 Houses, and 200000 People, there being Merchants there of

most Nations. *Tavernier* says, it was formerly two contiguous Towns, but not considerable till enlarg'd by *Sha-Abas*. The Circuit, he says, is not much less than that of *Paris*, but it does not contain above a 10th Part of the Inhabitants, because every Family has its House, and every House its Garden. *Thevenot* says, it requires 4 or 5 Hours to make the Round of it. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, the Extent, including the Suburbs, is about 8 Leagues; that it has 18000 Houses, 500000 Inhabitants, and 12 Gates, 3 of which are shut up. The Fortifications are of Earth, very inconsiderable, and a Man may pass the Ditch at any time dry-shod. There's a Citadel or Fortrefs on the S. Side of the City, but inconsiderable, defended only by some pitiful Earthen Towers. Here the King's Rarities and Treasures are kept by a strong Garrison, who have an Armory, a Magazine, and some Field-Pieces, for Defence of the Place. The City is wash'd on the S. and S. W. by the R. *Senderout*, divided into two Branches, one of which falls into the Park, and the other is convey'd by Canals to the Royal Gardens, and by Pipes to supply the City with Water: Besides which, they are well stor'd with Springs. There's a Stone-Bridge upon this River betwixt the Royal Garden and the City, where it is as broad as the *Thames* at *London*. This River rises from Mount *Demowend*, and on the other Side of that Mountain rises the River *Abkuren*, which *Sha-Abas* design'd to join with the other, employ'd 1000 Pioneers, *Herbert* says 40000, and sometimes 100000, in that Work, and brought it within 200 Paces; but that Prince dying, his Successors attempted it no further. *Sanfon* says, the Design was stopped by some selfish Lords, because it would have made the Plains of *Ispahan* fruitful enough to have supplied the City with Provisions, which would have lessen'd their own Rents. He says, this Bridge is an admirable Piece of Workmanship, above 300 Paces long, and proportionable in Breadth. The Walls on both Sides are 10 Foot high, and 6 broad, and at every 10 Paces have great oval Holes, thro' which are seen on one Side another Bridge far exceeding this, and on the other a Prospect of the Suburb of *Julpha*. The Walls of the Bridge are so thick, that

there's a Hollow quite through from one End to the other, and at every one of the Holes a secret Stair down to the River, by which one may avoid Crowds, and walk under them secure from the excessive Heats. At the Ends of this Bridge there are two small Towers, from whence the People go to the Parapets for Air. *Tavernier* says, *Ispahan* is so full of Trees, that it looks more like a Forrest than a City. The Streets are narrow and unequal, and for most Part dark, because of the Arches that go from House to House, so that a Man is forced to feel his Way sometimes for 300 Paces together. They are likewise annoy'd with Filth and the Carcasses of dead Beasts, which would be very infectious, were not the Air wholesome. The Streets are not pav'd, which makes them dusty in Summer, and dirty in Winter, except it be where the great Merchants live; so that Persons of Note ride the Streets on Horseback, with Lackies before them to clear the Way during the Summer; but in the Winter there is no Body to be seen in them; for the *Persians* are so superstitious, that they won't admit a Man into their Houses with a Spot of Dirt upon his Clothes, for fear of being defiled by it. There are little Holes against the Walls of the Houses in the open Streets, where the *Persians* squat down and piss before any Body. If there be running Water near them, they take a little in their Hands, and wash their Member with it: But if there be none, they rub it against a Stone or the Wall, which they look upon as a Piece of good Breeding and Modesty. The Butchers throw the Blood and Excrements of the Beasts which they kill into the Streets; and if any Beast die, it is presently thrown out, and People come to buy it from the Owner, mash it, and boil it with Corn till it become like Pottage, and this they sell to the poor Workmen in the open Market, where they sell another of good Meat to the better Sort. Every Door has a Trough before it, where they throw the Ordure and other Nastiness of the Family. The Countrymen come with their Asses, buy it of the Servants, and carry it off to dung the Ground; but they give most for that of the *Armenians* and others who drink Wine, because 'tis better for their Soil. The City in general looks like

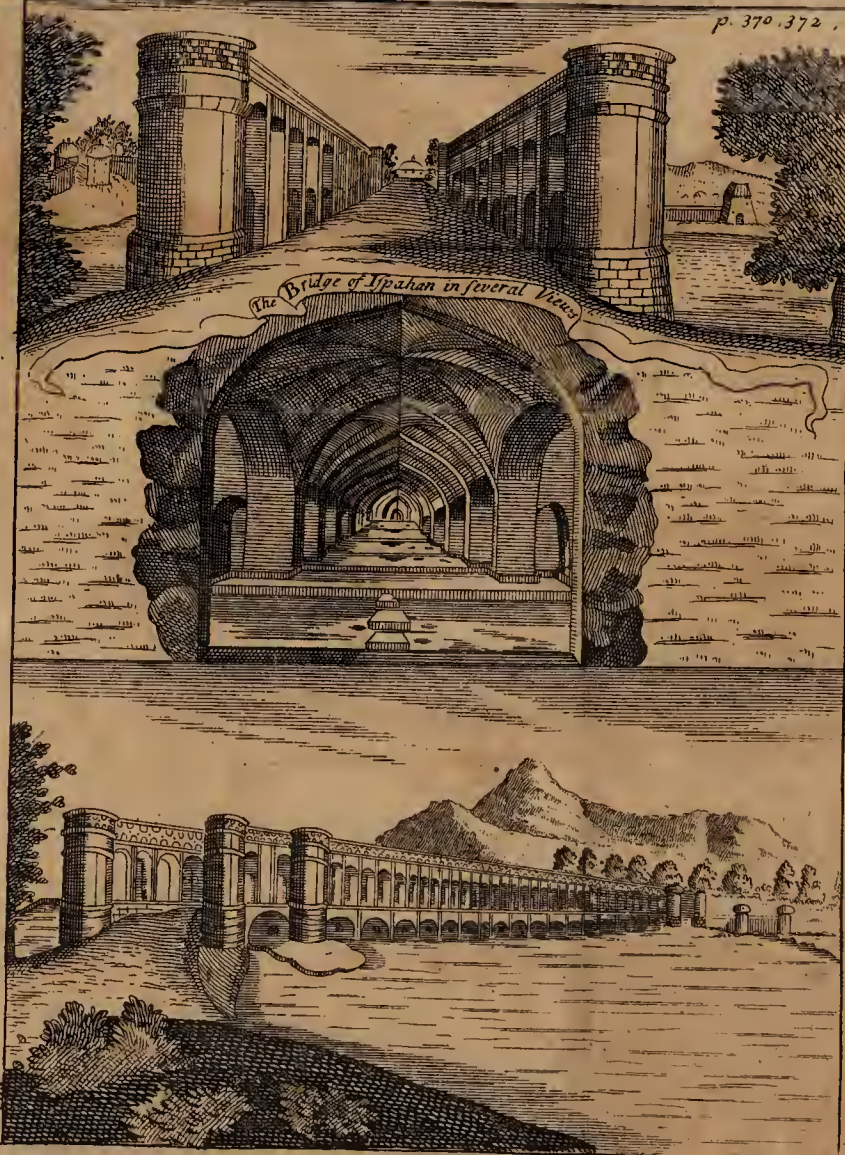
con-



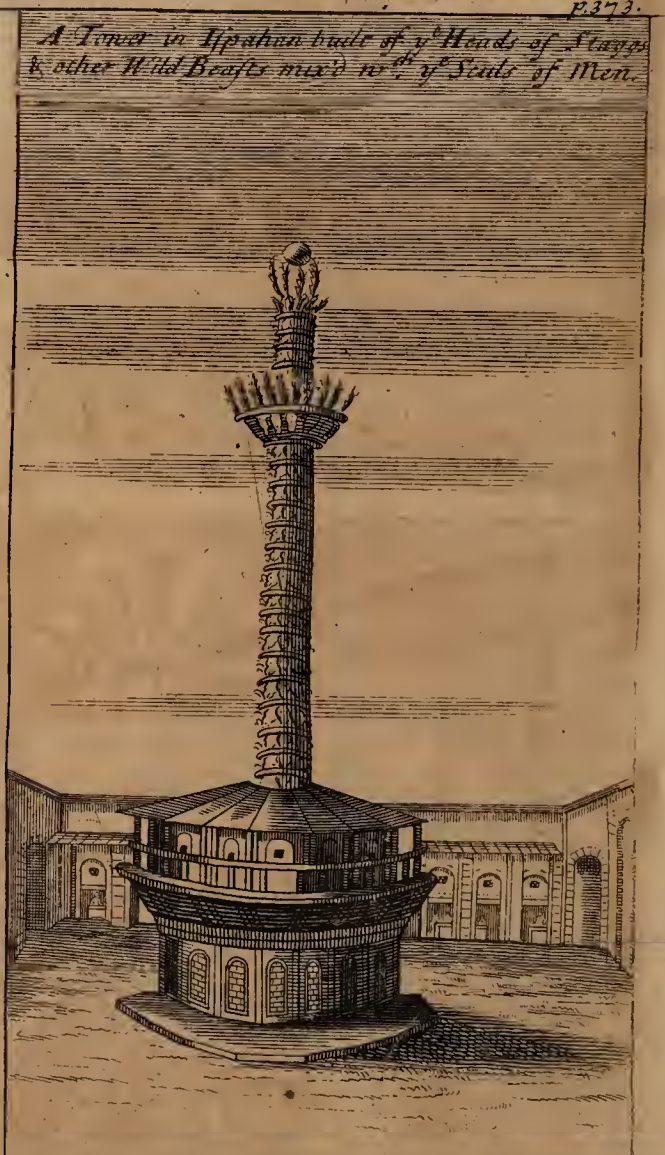
a Persian Lord.



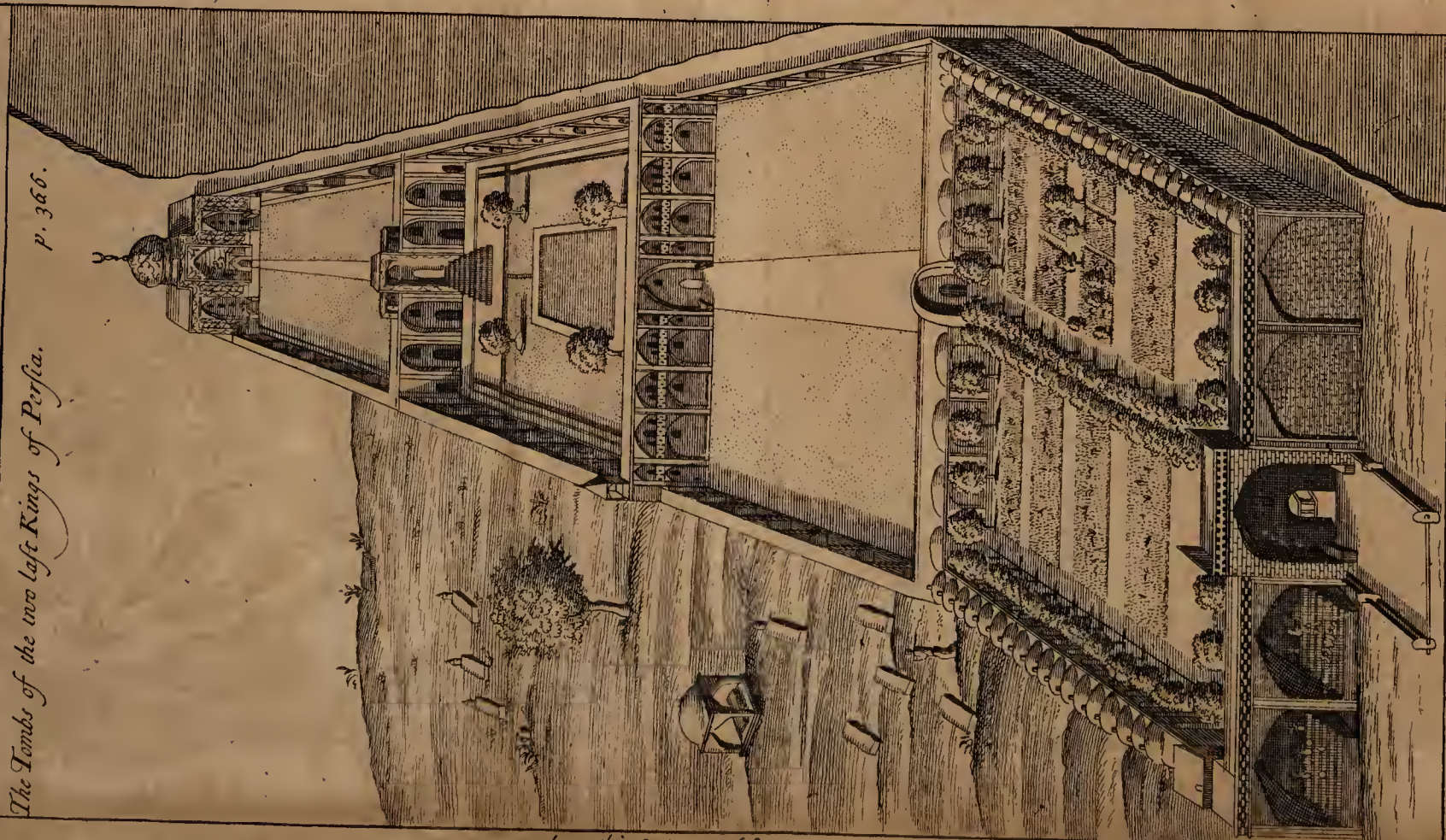
a Persian Lady.



p. 370. 372.



P. 372.



p. 366.

The Tombs of the two last Kings of Persia.

contiguous Villages, join'd by Gardens, except it be in the Meidan and principal Streets. *Thevenot* says, this Meidan is the greatest and finest Piazza in the World, is about 700 Paces long, *Herbert* says 1000, and 2 or 300 broad, is built all round, and the Houses are in Form of Portico's, over which there's a second Range of Arches more backwards, which serve for Galleries and Passages to the adjoining Caravanferas; and being all of an equal Height, form a lovely Prospect. Round the Meidan, at some Distance from the Houses, there's a fair Canal of Spring-Water, with Rows of Trees at competent Distances, which make the Place exceeding delightful. At the N. End of the Square, over the Gate of the Bazar, there's a great Bell, which was brought from *Ormuz*; and on each Side the Gate there are large Galleries, from whence at Sun-set and Midnight there's Conforts of Musick with several Instruments; among which there's one resembling our Speaking-Trumpets, which is heard over all the City, but makes a Noise more proper to alarm than divert. Towards the S. End of the Meidan there are two Banks of 6 Foot high, and about a Fathom distant from one another, where the *Persians* play at the Mall on Horseback, and drive the Bowl betwixt those Banks. In the Middle of the Meidan there's a high Mast erected, with a round Ball on the Top, where the People exercise Archery on Horseback, by shooting backwards like the ancient *Parthians* at the Representations of Birds, &c. When the King shoots, there's a Cup of Gold put on the Top of the Mast. *Tavernier* says, That *Sha-Sefi*, Grandfather to the present King, shot down 3 such Cups at 5 Courses while he was there, and whoever does so has the Cup to himself. *Lucas* gives us the following Story of the Expertness of a *Persian* Archer, which he saw him perform: The K. reviewing his Troops in the Meidan, the Musketers shot at a Mark, and those who had Launces wheel'd about with their Horses, and run at Rings; and the Archers on Horseback shot at a But riding full Speed. Among those, there was a Fellow of a contemptible Mien pass'd by the King without spurring his Horse, or shooting his Arrow; at which his Majesty being offended, he order'd him immediately to be cashier'd

with Disgrace. His Officer interpos'd, and acquainted the King, That however this happen'd, the Man was one of the best Soldiers in the Army, and had done many great Actions, for which his Majesty had trebled his Pay. Upon this, the King call'd for the Soldier, and ask'd him the Reason of his Behaviour. He answer'd, That he never us'd to discharge his Arrows but at the Faces of his Majesty's Enemies. The K. being pleas'd with this Reply, order'd him to remount, and give him a Proof of his Dexterity. The Fellow did so, and managing his Horse with wonderful Address, rode full Speed beyond the Mark, and fix'd his Arrow in it backward; and wheeling about again, cleft that Arrow with another; at which the King being surpris'd, he honour'd him with a Vest, and enlarg'd his Pay. Here they have also the Diversions of Bull-Fighting, &c. about which the different Quarters of the City lay great Wagers, and many times quarrel. The King, who stands Neuter, gives the Master of the Beast that conquers a considerable Sum, and they that win the Wager likewise give him Money. They have also a Diversion by knocking the Ends of a certain Sort of Eggs against one another. These Eggs cost sometimes 3 or 4 Crowns apiece. The Hens that lay them are bred 100 Leagues from *Ispahan*; and the Cocks of that Country being stronger than others, cost sometimes 100 Crowns apiece. They have likewise Rope-Dancers much more dextrous than those of *Europe*. The Author of *Figueroa's* Embassy tells an incredible Story of two of them: The first tied a Cord to the Top of a high Steeple and the Roof of a House at 400 Paces distant, supported by another Cord tied to a Stake in the Ground, and danced upon it, tho' the Cord shook from Side to Side; and on that Part from the Middle-Cord to the Top of the Steeple, which sloap'd very much, he walk'd up and down without any Fear, tho' all the Spectators thought he would fall and break his Neck every Moment, especially when he came down backwards with his Pole in his Hand. This he did several times, and laying aside his Pole, he made as if he were falling, and hung by one Foot, with his Head downwards, struck his Hands together, and leap'd up again on his

Cord. The other came with two Iron Nails and a great Hammer in his Hand, and going to the Foot of the Steeple with the Nails, which were 2 Inches thick, and 4 Foot long each, he drove in one as high as he could reach, two thirds of the Length, into the Wall, and getting up upon the Nail, fix'd the other as high as he could reach, and hung upon the latter by his Feet, with his Head downward; after which he got up on the uppermost, and hanging again by the Feet, pull'd out the undermost, and so on alternatively till he got to the Top of the Steeple, to the Amazement of all the Spectators. When he came to the Gallery, he fasten'd to the Wall of the Tower a great Piece of Wood like a Joyst, which came 6 Foot without the Gallery. Thro' this Wood he drew two Cords 6 Foot long each, and at every two Foot Distance betwixt the Cords he fasten'd a Piece of Wood as big as a Pike-Staff, of which he made a Sort of Ladder, and placing himself on one of those Rounds, threw his Body backward and forward betwixt them with incredible Agility and Danger, and so much Swiftnefs, that his Motions were almost imperceptible; and sometimes he lay across one of those Steps at full Length. After that, a Man reach'd him a Bow and Arrows from the Gallery, which he fasten'd to his Girdle, and sitting upon the uppermost Round of the Ladder, threw himself with his Head downward, and hanging by the Feet on the lowermost Round, he pull'd the Bow from his Girdle with his Left Hand, and the Arrows with his Right, and shot them one after another with as much Force as if he had been standing on firm Ground. The Author excuses his telling this Story, because *Nisephorus Gregoras*, a grave Writer, gives an Account in his History of the Emperor *Andronicus II.* of what he saw perform'd by Rope-Dancers who came from *Egypt*, tho' much short of this. He adds to the Description of the famous Bridge already mention'd, that Horses may with Ease go down the Stairs to the arch'd Passage which is made for those who go on Foot, in the Thickness of the Walls from one End to the other; so that there are 6 Passages on this Bridge, viz. 3 above, that in the Middle being broad enough for two Coaches

to go a-breast; one on each Side thro' the Thickness of the Wall for those who go on Foot, and three of the same Sort in the Story underneath. The whole is supported by Arches of white Stone, thro' which the River runs. The Palace is nothing extraordinary either in its self or its Gardens, except only 4 Rooms they call *Divans*, the rest being narrow low Galleries. *Herbert* says, the Buildings are uniform to the Meidan, pargetted with Blue and Gold, mix'd with *Arabick* Inscriptions, and the Rooms within embossed above, painted with White, Red, Blue, and Gold, and the Sides with Landskips and Sports. Before the Gate of the Palace stand 70 Pieces of Cannon and their Carriages, with a Sun-Dial, which the *Persians* brought from *Ormuz*, when they took it by the Help of the *English*. There are several Bazars or Market-places, and Inns where Merchants lodge their Goods with all manner of Safety, because the Masters are answerable for them, and likewise for the Payment of the Money by those who purchase them, and for the 2 per Cent. to the King. All the Trades have their several Places in the City, and there are Manufactories of Tissues, Silks, Sattins, and Carpets, maintain'd at the King's Charge, besides a great many Christian Artists who come every Day from *Zulpha* on the other Side the River to work in the Palace. On the N. Side of the Meidan there are Rooms where People smoak Tobacco and drink Coffee. The Seats are in Form of Amphitheatres, and in the Middle of the Room there's a Vessel of running Water, where they clean their Pipes. *Ska Abas*, to prevent their talking of State Affairs in those Places, order'd that a Priest should attend each Room, and divert them with Points of Law, History, or Poesy; and at the End of 3 Hours at furthest bids every one retire to his own Business. *Thevenot* says, the Air is very dry here in the Summer; but during the Rains and Snows in Winter, which come about *December*, there's so great a Moisture, that all Vessels of Iron contract Rust, not excepting what is carried in one's Pocket. The Gate of the Palace call'd *Ali-Capi*, over which there is a lovely Divan, is so much respected by the *Persians*, that all Malefactors who can escape to the Court within it, or to the King's Stables and Kitchens,

Kitchens, are safe; and there's a round Step before that Gate which none must tread upon, for which End 'tis always guarded by Sophi's, and the *Persians* kiss it with great Devotion. There are several famous Mosques in this City, the chief of which is the Royal Mosque, founded by *Abas the Great*. It has 5 Gates cover'd with Silver Plates, and the Towers are of white Marble. Over the large Entry there's a round Dome, well built and painted. All the Walls are of white Marble for a Fathom high, and the rest of Stones painted with several Colours. No Christian is suffer'd to enter it if known; but sometimes they pass undiscover'd, as *Thevenot* did in the Habit of the Country. *Sanfon*, *Lucas*, and others, say, That *Shah-Abas* took so great a Number of Beasts in one Hunting with his Lords, that he rais'd a Tower in the Middle of *Ispahan* of the Horns and Bones of those Beasts, which is built with wonderful Skill. It is round, and resembles a Pyramid of Columns rais'd one above another, being divided by Capitals, that seem Pedestals to the other Columns. The Capitals are form'd of Thigh-Bones, which are so join'd, that they look very well. The Balcony and Top of the Pillar are formed of the tallest Stags Horns. The Bodies of the Columns are compos'd of the smallest Bones and Horns, and the Symetry kept so exactly every where, that the Skill and Industry of the Workmen is to be admir'd, in composing so noble a Piece of Architecture out of such strange Materials. *Herbert*, who saw it, says, the Column is mix'd with Men's Skulls, and that it was erected first on this Occasion: About 1500, the Citizens rebelled against *Shah-Tamas*, for which in two Days he cut off 30000 of them, and erected a Pillar of their Heads; and *Abas* being upbraided by the Inhabitants for the Death of his Brother *Emyr Hamze*, and denied Entrance into the City, which held out against him for a Month, he swore he would cut off all their Heads, and build a Tower with 'em. The Town being reduc'd to Want, which obliged many of the Inhabitants to steal away, he storm'd it, and for two Hours killed all that he met, whose Heads he mix'd with those of the Beasts when he erected his Tower, and would have built it entirely of the Heads of the Rebels, had not the Musti,

to prevent it, feigned a Vision, wherein he pretended the Prophet told him, that so the Pillar was built of the Heads of Beasts, it was enough to fulfil the King's Vow, by which he obtain'd Pardon for the rest. *Bouffingault* says, there are 600 Caravanse-ra's, 300 publick Stoves, 10000 Bazzars, and 100 curious Towers, in this City, built so high, that from their Windows on the Top one may see 6 Leagues round. He adds, there are 500 Doors in the King's Palace. The *English* and *Dutch* Merchants have their Houses near it, and other Foreign Merchants have theirs elsewhere, it being customary for all those of one Nation to reside together. *Sanfon* says, the Fruit about this City is the best in the World, their Wine equal to that of the *Canaries*, their Horses and Mules excellent, and their Camels so strong, that they carry twice as much as others.

The Street and Gardens of *Tcheharbag* are two of the most remarkable Things at *Ispahan*. The Street is two Miles long, and 100 Paces broad. The Entry to it from the Town is under a square Pavilion two Stories high, with many Balconies and painted Windows; and from hence there's a Passage to the Palace by a Coridore or Gallery. This Street is bounded on both Sides by Garden-Walls, and at certain Distances by uniform Pavilions, thro' which there are Passages into the Gardens of the King and Nobility, and about 12 Paces from the Walls on each Side a lovely Row of Plane-Trees, which yield a refreshing Shade, and in the Middle of the Street a Canal of running Water, fac'd with Stone, about 5 Foot deep, and 13 broad, adorn'd here and there with curious Water-works; and from the Sides of the Canal to the Passage for Horses, the Road is pav'd with Stone for Foot-men. This Street is divided by the River *Zenderout*, over which stands the noble Bridge above-mention'd. There are two other Bridges upon that River to the Right Hand, all three not above half a Mile distant from one another; the first of them plain; but the other, call'd the Bridge of *Shiras*, exceeds the other for Beauty in one Thing, which is a Hexagon in the Middle, that forms a lovely Cascade. At the further End of this noble Street stands a sumptuous House, and before it a large square

square Court. Next to this lies the Garden of *Hezar-Gerib*, which has 6 Stories of Terrasses about a Fathom above one another, fac'd with Stone. There are many Walks both in the Length and Breadth of this Garden, which reach all from one End to the other, and are very straight, saving those which lie long-ways, from which one must ascend every Story 7 or 8 Steps. The chief Walk that begins at the House is very broad, and has a Canal in the Middle of it, with Water-works at every two Fathoms Distance, and at each Story a Sheet of Water that falls into a Basin below, from whence it runs into the Canal. On each Side of these Sheets or Water-falls there's a Pair of Stairs, and a Way that leads strait up, which with the Cascades form a delicious Prospect. Mounting up to the 4th Story, there's a large Place with an Octogonal Basin above 20 Fathom in Diameter, 3 Foot deep in Water, and Spouts which play all round it, besides one in the Middle. On each Side of this Place there's a large cover'd Divan, arch'd underneath, with a Basin of Water in the Middle. It is much the same as the rest of the Stories; so that this is one of the pleasantest Places in the World. None of these Canals return to the River, but lose themselves by Channels in the Fields, which it makes very fruitful; and a little below the City the River loses it self in like Manner. This Garden is the King's; the rest belong to the Nobility; but they are not adorned with Plats of Grass or Flowers as ours in *Europe*, being planted only with Fruit-Trees, Rose-Bushes, and Plane-Trees. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, the Houses are generally square, and three Stories high above the Ground-Room; their Windows for most Part as big as Doors, and cover'd with oil'd Paper Lettice-wise in the Winter. Fire-Wood being scarce, they make Stoves in the Ground-Room thus: They dig a large Hole in the Middle of the Floor, which they fill with Charcoal, cover'd with a Plank, and lay a Carpet over all; and as they always sit on the Ground, thrust their Feet under it, draw the Carpet up to their Breasts, and have Conduits under Ground which draw away the Vapours. But their Houses being either of Earth plaister'd over, or of Bricks dried by the Sun, they

want frequent Repairs, being soon damag'd by Rain and Snow. Therefore the richer Sort terrass them with Bricks. The Ambassadors add, that there are 12000 *Indians* here, who deal in the richest Commodities; and there are *Spanish*, *Italian*, and *French* Monks, who have Settlements in this City. There are innumerable Sorts of Fruits in the King's Gardens above-mention'd, the Trees being brought from all Places of the World; among others, Vines whose Grapes are large without Stones, the Meat firm, and of a delicious Taste. There are 100 Gardiners to look after the Gardens, who let any Body in for 2 *d.* apiece, where they may eat what they please, but must carry none away. The Gardens are about half a League square. The City is surrounded with large Suburbs on all Sides.

The chief of 'em is *Zulpha*, inhabited by *Armenian* Christians, the Posterity of those transported hither by *Abas the Great*. They have 12 Churches, and about 3000 Houses, as good as any in the City, and that pay only an Annual Tribute of 1000 Livres. Most of them are Merchants and rich Tradesmen. This Suburb was so called from the Capital of their native Country. They are allow'd a Governor of their own Nation, full Liberty of Conscience, and to purchase Estates as well as the native *Persians*. Every Street has a Canal and Rows of Trees, so that 'tis more pleasant than *Ispahan*. *Tavernier* says, 'tis a League and a half long, and three quarters of a League broad. Abundance of other Christians have join'd them, because of the Liberties they enjoy, which *Sha-Abas* thought proper to grant to increase the Trade of his Country; and that they might be easy, he forbid that any *Mahometans* should come among them. *Tavernier* says, they are a very frugal Sort of People, and many of them arrive to great Estates, the King having employ'd them chiefly in managing Foreign Trade among Christians, for which his own Subjects are not fit. He says, there are more Popish Preachers than Hearers at *Ispahan*, there not being above 600 Papists, to whom the *Armenians* have a great Aversion. There are three other Suburbs, one inhabited by a Colony brought from *Tauris*; the 2d by *Gaurs*, or Worshipers of Fire, and the 3d by *Georgian* Christians, who are rich

rich as well as the *Armenians*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, there are near 1460 Villages round *Ispahan*, the Inhabitants of which live mostly by Manufactures of Silk and Woollen. *Figueroa* saw an Animal here about the Bigness of a Setting-Dog, with Legs so short, that its Belly dragged on the Ground, its Tail large at the Buttocks, but grew small by degrees like that of a Lizard. It had a small Head, and short Neck, its Hair was scarce discernable, and the Skin spotted like that of a Serpent. It was very monstrous and deform'd, and of an Ash-Colour. A Peasant held it by a Cord tied to its Legs; yet it was so strong, that it leap'd into a Reservatory of Water, from whence the Peasant was not able to draw it without Help. It was very furious when taken out, so that none durst come near it but the two Peasants who kept it. It gap'd and shew'd two Rows of large strong Teeth. They found it in an Aqueduct under Ground, but could not tell the Name of it. *Figueroa* thinks it to be a Serpent, of that Sort which *Vellanius* says was discover'd at an Earthquake, being thrown up out of the Earth with a certain black and stinking Water near *Mugello* in the Dutchy of *Florence*.

17. *Comsbe*, a great City about two Days Journey from *Ispahan*, in the Road to *Ormus*. *Tavernier* says, it consists of a Row of Villages that lie about half a League in Length, and near it there's a Mosque, with a Pond full of Fish; but the Priests will suffer none of them to be catch'd, because they belong to the Prophet. There are several good Inns here; but in the Summer Travellers chuse rather to lie by that Mosque and Pond, because it is shady.

18. *Yefde*. *Tavernier* says, it lies almost in the Mid-way between *Ispahan* and *Karman*, in Long. 93. 15. Lat. 31. 45. *Sanson* makes it Long. 94. Lat. 34. *Moll* Long 73. Lat. 32. the *Persian* Geographers Long. 79. 15. Lat. 32. 15. *Tavernier* says, it is a large Town, in the Middle of a sandy Desert, two Leagues round, so that Travellers must take a Guide; for upon the least Wind, the Sand covers the Road, and Men are in Danger to fall into old Cisterns, or the Ruins of ancient Buildings. Betwixt the Town and the Sands there's a little good Soil, which produces excellent Me-

lons, Grapes, and other Fruit. The Governor suffers no Wine to be made there; but they dry the Grapes, and of the green ones make a Confection to eat with Bread. They have abundance of large well tasted Figs, distil vast Quantities of Rose-Water, and another from a Root call'd *Hina*, with which they die their Hands and Nails red. They have several Inns and Market-places, where Merchants and Tradesmen keep their Warehouses. Their Manufactures are Silk-Stuffs mix'd with Gold and Silver, which they call *Zerbaste*, strip'd Taffaties, Stuffs of Cotton, some Half-Silk and Half-Cotton, and Serges of a particular Wool, which is handsomer, and better than Silk. Their Carpets made after the *Turkish* Manner are reckon'd the finest and best in the World, and their Women the handsomest in *Persia*; so that at Festivals they have generally 5 or 6 Beauties to divert the Guests with Dancing, from whence comes the *Persian* Proverb, *That to make a Man happy, he must have a Wife of Yefde, the Bread of Yefdecas, and the Wine of Schiras.*

The Province of Chusistan;

HA S *Hierack-Agemi* on the S. the Gulph of *Balsora* on the N. *Hierack-Arabi* on the W. and *Fars* on the E. The *Holstein* Ambassadors take it to be the ancient *Susiana*, and say, the Heats are so excessive here on the S. Side of the Mountains, that the Inhabitants are forced to leave their Cities and Towns in the Summer, and retire to the N. Side of them. There's little to be said of this Country, but what we have mention'd in the ancient Geography.

The chief City, formerly call'd *Susa*, is now, says *Tavernier*, call'd *Suster* or *Shouster*; others say *Desu*. *Moll* places it in Long. 67. Lat. 31. *Herbert* says, the Royal Palace here was thought to be built by *Mordecai*, and scarce inferior to that of *Ecbatan*; the Outside and Pavement of checker'd Marble in Mosaick Work; the Arches and Pillars richly gilt, and set with shining Stones, and the Roof painted with Stars like Firmament. *Cyrus* kept his celebrated Lady *Panthea* here. The Stones of the Palace, says *Boussingault*, were join'd with Gold. He adds, there's a large high Tower of white Marble

Marble near the Town, with Tombs as magnificent as any in the World, where the Kings of *Persia* and *Media* were interr'd. Some say, *Alexander* found here 9000000 of coin'd Gold, besides 50000 Talents in Bullion; and it was so rich, says *Cassiodorus*, as made *Aristagoras* tell his Soldiers, That if they could master it, every Soldier might equal *Jove* for Wealth.

2. *Jaraone*, inhabited mostly by *Jews*, of whom *Heylin* says there are 1000 Families, suppos'd to be descended from those led Captive by *Salmanassar*. The Maps take Notice of several other Cities in this Province, of which we have no Description, *Sanfon* says, the Territory is so fruitful, that it frequently yields 100 and 200 Fold.

The Province of Fars or Farfistan,

HA S *Chusistan* on the W. *Hierack-Azemi* on the N. the Gulph of *Balsora* on the S. and *Kirman* on the E. *Tavernier* says, the little Province of *Larastan* belongs to this. *Ogilby* says, the Coast of this Country consists of open and sandy Plains, without Harbours, except a few Places for small Boats; and that they are inhabited by Pyrates, some of whom pay Tribute to the King of *Persia*, and others to the *Portuguese*. *Sanfon* says, the Soil is good, and that there's abundance of Mastick gather'd in their Woods. There are excellent Arms made in this Province; and there's a precious Mummy found in a Rock near *Stahabanon*, which is preserv'd for the King's Use. 'Tis an excellent Antidote against Poison, and for Wounds and Ruptures. Bezoar is also found here.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Schiraz*, *Sheraz*, or *Chyrax*. *Herbert* places in Long 88. Lat. 29. 30. *Tavernier* and *Struys* Long. 78. 15. Lat. 29. 36. *Sanfon* Long. 91. Lat. 30. *Moll* Long. 71. near Lat. 30. *Figueroa* Lat. 28. 44. He sojourned here near 6 Months, and gives the following Account of it: He takes it to be the ancient *Cyropolis* founded by *Cyrus* K. of *Persia*, who was buried here. It lies in a large fine Plain, encompassed with Mountains on all Sides, except towards *Lara*, about 14 or 15 Leagues from the ancient *Pasagardas*. It is every where surrounded with large Gardens,

among which there are several Villages and fine Houses of Pleasure, very well built, which makes the City seem much larger than it is. The neighbouring Plain is water'd with so many Canals and Aqueducts, that it is very fruitful and pleasant. These Aqueducts are said to be the Work of one of their great Monarchs, who liv'd about 1000 Years after the Deluge; but however that is, they are the Effects of infinite Expence and Labour, being cut thro' Mountains and Rocks. It appears by the Ruins, that this City has been much larger formerly, the Fortifications being dismantled, and many of the Houses ruin'd; by *Sha-Abas*, because the Lord of this Place rebelled against him. Upon a Canal half a League from the Town there is an ancient Mosque, much rever'd by the *Persians* for the Sepulchre of one of their Saints, to whom they ascribe many Miracles, of which the Hermits read Legends to the People. There's a noble Aqueduct runs by this Mosque, which forms a square Pond that abounds with Fish, and below this there's another, to which they descend by Steps. The Fish are so tame, that they let People handle them; but the Priests suffer none to be killed. They have abundance of other Mosques both within and without the City, with Towers they call *Alcorans*, built very slender and high, with 3 or 4 Galleries on the Outside, from whence the Priests say their Prayers with a loud Voice, tho' this is not commonly allow'd in *Persia*, because they don't love the Priests should ogle their Women, who in the Summer-time lie on the Terrasses of the Houses. These Mosques, and two or three Royal Palaces, in one of which the Ambassador lodged, are the only Structures of Note, and the chief Beauty of the City. That in which the Ambassador liv'd is very large, has abundance of Chambers gilt and painted, with Galleries, Courts, Orchards, and Gardens; but most of the Houses of the Town are small and sorry, the best of them having no more but two or three tolerable Chambers, and a lower Gallery. Provisions are wonderful cheap here, and for most Part brought ready dress'd from the Cooks, for few of the Inhabitants have Kitchens. Their Mutton is large and fat, and their Lamb extraordinary good. Here are Store

of

of Wild Fowl, but no Partridges, Hares, Pheasants, or Francolines, are allow'd to be killed here, so that they multiply exceedingly. They have no tame Pork, but abundance of Wild-Boars and Hogs from the neighbouring Mountains, where they feed in the Woods of Elms and Oaks. The Air being dry, fresh, and cold, the Flesh of those Wild-Boars keeps several Days without Salt, and is much better than ours in *Europe*. They sell the largest for a Crown, and the lesser for Half a Crown apiece. They have vast Quantities of Milk, of which they make many Dishes, but love it best when it is sour. They have also abundance of Confections, which they mix with Honey, that they may keep the better, and have several Streets where nothing else is sold. Their Honey and Wax is excellent, because the Bees feed in their numerous Gardens; and their Wax is so pure, that it scarce needs any Purification. This City has produc'd many great Men of their Law, whose Memory is much rever'd, and there's a noble Hermitage on a neighbouring Mountain where one of the chief of them lived. It has a fine Terrass, from whence there's a delicate Prospect of the City and neighbouring Country, with many pleasant Walks and Places to sit or lie in, and Apartments for those who come hither to their Devotions. There's an ancient Cypress-Tree, whose Trunk is so large, that 4 Men can scarce fathom it. The Branches are high, thick, and long, and afford a delicate Shade during the Summer, which is excessive hot in these Parts. There are other Terrasses, to which one ascends by Steps, and there's a curious Fountain in the Middle, which is extraordinary cool in the Summer, and warm in the Winter. The Hermit who liv'd here was above 60 Years of Age, seem'd to have been a Person of Quality, was very civil to the Ambassador, and entertain'd him with Dates, Pistachoes, and Grapes, tho' it was near *Christmas*; but the Grapes were preserv'd on the Vines by little Bags of Cloth tied about them. He presented the Ambassador with a large Wax Taper painted Green, and ascrib'd the same Virtues to it which the Papists do to their consecrated Tapers. On the Top of the Mountain there's a Sort of a Church with a Dome, where one of their greatest Saints,

who built this Hermitage, was buried, to whom they ascribe many Miracles. They ascend to this Place by a long Stair cut out of the Rock, each Step being 2 Foot high, and 96 in Number. This Church is a Sanctuary, takes up the whole Top of the Mountain, and on each Side has frightful Precipices. The first Apartment is a Stone Vault of ancient Structure, 20 Foot long, and 10 or 12 broad, and has no Light but what comes by the Door. Within this, in another Apartment, is the Hermit's Sepulchre of Marble, curiously wrought and painted; and a little further there's a Sepulchre of one of their K.'s Daughters, who liv'd here as a Penitent. In another Place there's a small Chappel with another Sepulchre of one of their Saints, of more curious Workmanship than the others, with the Encomiums of the Saint in *Arabian* Characters. The upper Part was cover'd with green Sattin, hung with large Strings of Beads, which the Saint made use of in his Prayers, and these they reckon it a Sacrilege to touch; so that the Ambassador was forced to restrain one of his Priests who went to handle them, the Hermit made such a Noise. The Walls and Windows were plaister'd, gilt, and painted. The Hermit's own Apartment was at the Foot of this Rock, and had 4 handsome large Windows, from which there's a pleasant Prospect. 'Tis cut out of the Rock, warm in the Winter, and cool in the Summer. The Hermit set up Tapers in his Windows every Night, which were seen from the Town, tho' half a League distant. There's a Kitchen and a Stable belonging to it, and a Cell under Ground where he lodged with his Wife, who was a very handsome young Woman, and they had a Servant to attend them. He kept a Mule, on which he rode to the City to receive the Offerings of the Bigots; so that his Life was none of the most mortified. At the Foot of the Mountain there's a large Garden of Fruit-Trees, with Walks of Cypress, and a Pond of 130 Paces square, and a Fathom and a half deep, filled by Water from the Rock, and by it an ancient House of admirable Architecture, from whence there's a noble Prospect. There are many other Apartments and Courts cut out of this Rock, and great Vessels of black Marble curiously wrought, which the Inhabitants say was the Work of

the ancient Pagans; from whence the Author concludes, that on this Mountain was the Sepulchre of *Cyrus*, which agrees well enough with the Account of *Alexander's* Journey from *Carmania* to *Parfagadas*, when his Soldiers open'd it. The Streets of the Town and the Houses are but sorry, so that it looks much better at a Distance than when one is in it. Most of the Streets are winding; but there's one two Miles long, 80 Paces broad, and very strait, betwixt two plaister'd Walls of a Pike high, with pleasant Gardens on both Sides, and some Pleasure-Houses belonging to the King, very well built, with large Galleries and Balconies towards the Street and Gardens, which extend for half a League on both Sides. This Street serves for their Military Exercises on Horseback, and has 6 Columns of white Marble, about two Foot thick, and half a Pike high, plac'd two by two at equal Distances, for a Barrier to those who exercise themselves with riding the great Horse. 'Twas by this the Ambassador made his Entrance, and was entertain'd by Troops of Dancing-Women and Boys in several Companies, whose Hair was as long as that of the Women. At the End of this Street stands the Royal Palace, which makes a noble Prospect by its Height, Galleries and Balconies, with a Terrass before it, and an Octogon Pond of running Water. Here the Ambassador was entertain'd with Bull and Ram Fighting by Order of the Sultan, who was Governor of the Place, and had an absolute Power, and a Court like a King. The second Story of the Palace has very noble and large Apartments, and a great Hall larger than any in the Royal Palace at *Madrid*. Many of these Apartments are painted with Ladies in the *Italian* Dress, and Garlands of Flowers on their Heads, and some of them of Lawrel, being done by *Venerian* Painters in the Time of *Shah-Abas*. This Palace is very airy and cool in the Summer, but incommodious in the Winter; and near it there's a Seraglio built after the same Manner, but not so large and high. Behind it there's a Garden with Walks of large Cypresses, which resemble great Obelisks, with Terrasses on each Side, and a green Walk in the Middle. There are many pleasant Ponds and Water-Works about the Seraglio, and a

Platform on the Top of it, where they lie in the Summer, and have a Prospect over the whole Garden. The Terrass of the Palace where the Ambassador lodged was so large, that it resembled a Plain, and so high, that they could see from it the King's Garden, with the others adjacent, for 3 Leagues round, and the Middle of the Terrass is cover'd with Grass and Flowers. The Trees in those Gardens are so fruitful, that the Branches are scarce able to bear the Fruit, which is much better of all Kinds than ours in *Europe*. In those Gardens there are large Ponds or Canals, with curious Vessels upon them for the Diversion of the Ladies. These Ponds are so contrived, that the Water runs from one to another. The numerous Walks in those Gardens are border'd with Hedges of Rose-Trees, of which the Gardiners make great Profit by the Rose-Water, which they send as far as the *Indies*. The Roses are of that Sort which we call *Provence*, and they make many Medicines of 'em. Abundance of those Animals call'd *Adives*, a Sort of little *Barbary* Dogs, lodge among those Rose-Bushes, and make an odd Noise, especially by Night. They are very cunning, and hard to be caught, except when they come into the Houses for Hunger.

Tavernier says, on the S. E. of the Plain, where this City stands, there's a Salt-Water Lake 4 Leagues in Compass; and that the best Wine in *Persia* is produc'd in the Neighbourhood. They have 3 or 4 Glass-Houses, where they make Bottles for exporting the Rose-Water and pickled Fruits. They have no other Manufacture but coarse painted Cloth. Near the Town there's a large Vineyard two Leagues long, and one broad. They sell their Wine by Weight, and pickle and dry many of their Grapes. The *Jews* here, who boast themselves to be the Tribe of *Levi*, make most of the Wine, the whole being about 5000 Tun per Ann. They have a Well in this City, which they say is 15 Years in rising to the Top, and sinks again other 15. About a League S. W. there's the Remainder of an Idol Temple, with strange Figures, on the Top of a Hill, holding Vessels in their Hands, from which Fire seems to issue. There are several others of like Sort in the Neighbourhood, with Figures of Men cut upon them.

them. About 2000 Paces from this Mountain there's a Lake of Salt-Water 10 Leag. in Compass, filled by Salt Springs that fall from the Mountains, and here they make great Quantities of Salt. There's likewise a Salt River that runs into it, over which there's a large Stone Bridge, about a League from *Schiraz*. The Dervices or Hermits in and about *Schiraz* have chosen the pleasantest Places for their Hermitages, where they sit smoaking their Pipes with so-much Gravity, that if the King himself shou'd pass by 'em, they wou'd not rise to do him Reverence. *Mandelsloe* says, it contains about 10000 Houses, and that whatever Nature is able to produce for Conveniency or Pleasure, is center'd in this Place; that they have Plenty of Wheat, Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranates, Dates, Almonds, besides what is above-mentioned; and it is so much celebrated for Wine and Women, that the *Persians* say, *Had Mahomet been sensible of the Pleasures of Shiraz, he wou'd have begged of God to make him immortal there.* The Sheep hereabouts are of an Ash-grey Colour, have one Eye white, their Wool curl'd, and their Tails weigh sometimes from 18 to 20 Pound. *Thevenot* says, That in some of the Streets there are lovely Canals of running Water, handsomely fac'd with Stone; that it has many fair Bazars, furnish'd with all Sorts of *Indian* and *Turkish* Commodities, and every Commodity has its particular Bazar. He says, they have Store of Capers, which they transport into all Parts, and they have a Way of preserving Grapes in Vinegar, which have a pleasant acid Tast. There is a great deal of Opium made here, and round the Town large Fields sow'd with White Poppies. *Thevenot* adds, it was formerly govern'd by a Chan, who was the first of *Persia*, and his Government reach'd as far as *Lar*, *Bender*, and the Isle of *Ormuz*; but at present 'tis commanded by a Vizier, who pays 150000 Crowns *per Annum* out of his Government to the King. *Ben. Jonas*, a Jew, above 500 Years ago found *Syaphaz* hereabouts, which *Herbert* thinks was this City. He has a long Discussion concerning the Etymology of the Name, to which we refer the Curious. The Inhabitants say, it was founded by *Jamshet*, the 5th King of *Persia*, and Predecessor to *Chederlaomer*. *Ulughbeg*, a learned Geographer, Nephew

to *Tamerlane*, says, that in his Time it was 15 Miles in Circumference. After him, *Contarinus* found it to have the like Compass, and 80000 Houses. *Barbarus*, almost 200 Years ago, says, it was 20 Miles in Compass: *Cluverius* the like. *Teisheer* after him 36; and *Skikard* upon *Tarich* the like. *John* of *Persia* number'd 80000 Inhabitants, and *Ben. Ally* 300000. *Herbert* says, it lies 324 Miles from *Ormuz*, 186 from *Lar*, 300 from *Babylon*, 222 from *Hispahan*, 600 from the *Caspian* Sea, 486 from *Casbin*, 440 from *Periscom*, 360 from *Candahor*, 219 from *Tesde*, about 60 from *Faza*, and 30 S. W. from *Persepolis*. 'Tis, says he, the 2d City for Grandeur in the *Persian* Monarchy. There are the Ruins of some Walls which were built by *Ufun-Cassan*, the famous *Armenian* Pr. 'Tis said, the Magick Art was invented in this Town; that *Nimrod* liv'd here for some Time; that the first *Sibylla* sung our Saviour's Incarnation here; that the Magi set out hence towards *Bethlehem*; and that a Series of 200 Kings made it their Seat Royal. *Herbert* adds, that here are 15 Mosques, which are generally built round, and rough cast over instead of Tiles. In the same Manner they parget the Outside of their Houses, painting them *a la Morefque*, and thus they spread the Floors and Arches of their Rooms: But the Mosques are pargetted on the Top with Azure Stone, and for the most Part within with black polish'd Marble, and beautified on the Tops with many double-gilt Spires. He takes particular Notice of two of their Steeples: The one is square, above 50 Foot high, partly leaded, and partly painted with Or and Azure, and above has two slender Alcorans of Wood, which are round and coupled at the Top, adorn'd with great Art and Cost, and near as high as our *St. Paul's* Steeple before the Fire. From hence 'tis that the Boys sing Eulogies thrice every 24 Hours to *Aly* and *Mahomet*. The other, says he, is like a Royal Caravanfara four-square, emboss'd with Gold, painted with Blue, and flagg'd with Purple, where they light many Lamps, &c. upon solemn Occasions. Here is a College, where they read Philosophy, Astrology, Physick, Chymistry, and the Mathematicks. Many of the Gardens are 800 Paces long, and 400 broad; but the King's is square, and every Way 2000 Paces.

Paces. *Herbert* adds, That 'tis the Custom every Spring to send Presents to one another, particularly Vests, at which the Gardens are open'd for all to walk in. The Women have the Liberty to appear in publick for 14 Days, during which they indulge themselves in their Pleasures. At the same Time the Men ride, walk, and carouse, but without quarrelling. He says, when he was there, *Emangaly-Cawn* was Great Duke, and one of the Tetrarchs under *Abas*. His Territories extended every Way near 400 Miles, and his Titles were, The Arch-Duke of *Schiraz*, Sultan of *Larr* and *Jarrow*, Lord of *Ormus*, *Maqueroon*, *Kermoen*, *Ehusistan*, *Sigestan*, and *Farsistan*, Prince of the Gulph of *Persia*, and the Isles there, the Great Beglerbeg, Commander of 12 Sultans, and of 50000 Horse, Slave to *Shah-Abas*, Protector of *Mussulmen*, *Nutmeg of Comfort*, and *Rose of Delight*. *Herbert*, who attended *Sir Dodmore Cotton* in his Embassy there, says, when he came near the Duke's Palace, he was usher'd into a long Gallery, set off with Plate, Carpets, &c. where the Duke himself sat cross-legg'd, not moving till the Ambassador was almost at him, and then, like one affrighted, he started up, embrac'd and welcom'd him, and entertain'd him with Wine, Sweetmeats, and Dancing, which was performed not after the usual Manner, but every one kept within a small Circle. The Wenches that danc'd first threw off their loose Garments, the other being close to their Bodies, like Troozes, and of several Pieces of Sattin of different Colours. Their Hair was long and curling. They had Ropes of Pearl hung about their Faces, Carquenets set with Stones about their Necks, Timbrels in their Hands, and Golden Bracelets with Bells about their Wrists and Legs. The chief Solemnity being put off till next Day, the Ambassador and his Attendants were then conducted in State to a sumptuous Banqueting-House, which was a large Room open at the Sides, supported with 20 gilded Pillars, the Roof emboss'd with Gold, and curiously painted: The Floor spread with rich Carpets of Silk and Gold. At one End was a Throne of Crimson Sattin, embroidered with Pearl and Gold, for the Duke. Upon one Side of it was painted his *Ormus* Trophies, expressing to the Life

their encamping on the Shore, their Assaults, Batteries, Entrance, Plunder of the City, and Massacre of the Inhabitants, together with lively Representations of the *English* Sea-Fights, &c. From hence there was a Prospect into a great square Court, set round with the prime Men of the City, and in another adjacent Court there were 500 more of the Inhabitants. The Duke being not yet enter'd, *Sir Dodmore Cotton* was seated on the Left Hand of the State; the Beglerbeg, the Duke's eldest Son, at the Ambassador's Left Hand, and next to him the Captive King of *Ormus*. The disconsolate Princes of *Tartary* and *Georgia* sat together on the other Side. *Sir Robert Shirley* seated himself opposite to the Throne, and the two Princes of *Ormus*, some Sultans, and other great Officers, were placed in the same Room with the Ambassador's Attendants. The rest of the Banqueting Room was fill'd with Sultans, Merchants, Coozelbashs, and other Persons of Note. During the Feast, Youths in Cloth of Gold, with long crisped Locks of Hair, filled the Wine to every one out of Gold Flaggons. Upon the Carpets were spread fine colour'd Pintado Table-Cloths 40 Ells long. The Trenchers were only 6 broad thin Pancakes upon one another. The Spoons were of Wood, very thick and wide, and their Handles almost a Yard long. The Feast was compounded of several Sorts of Pello of various Colours, Store of Sweetmeats, and fine Fruits preserved. The Feast was no sooner ended, and Thanks returned to their *Aly* and God, but by their loud Voice and Musick they gave the Signal for the Great Duke to enter. There went before him 30 comely Youths in Crimson Sattin Coats, whose Tulipants were Silk and Silver, wreath'd about with small Links of Gold, and some had Pearl, Rubies, Turquoises, and Emeralds. The Hilt of their Swords were very rich, and their Scabbards embroider'd, and they carried Hawks upon their Fists, whose Hoods were all set with Stones of Value. After them came the Duke, whose Coat was of blue Sattin, richly embroider'd with Silver. Upon this he wore a very long Robe, cover'd all over with Oriental Pearl, and glittering Gems. His Turbant was of the finest white Silk, interwoven with Gold, and be-
studded.

Adorned with Pearl and Carbuncles, as was his Scabbard with Rubies, Pearls, and Emeralds. His Sandals had the like Embroidery. To this glorious Idol, says *Herbert*, they bow'd and knock'd their Foreheads *a la Mode* against the Ground. Sir *Robert Shirley* constantly wearing the *Persian Habit*, paid the like Respect with a great deal of Formality; and having drunk his Eminency's Health in a Cup of pure Gold, (knowing it would please the Duke) put it up in his Pocket, with this merry Compliment, That after so unworthy a Person as himself had breath'd in it, it was some Indignity to return it; which the Duke took in good Part, and having drank the K. of *England's* Health, very civilly bad the Ambassador and his Company heartily welcome, and then withdrew. Merchants say, this Arch-Duke has about 400000 Tomains *per Ann.* (reckoning every Tomain 5 Marks Sterling) out of which he pays 50000 Horse upon Muster. *Herbert* says, That 3 Years before he was there, he sent a New-Year's Gift to the King of *Persia*, which consisted of 50 Gold Flaggons, 72 Silver ones, as many Larrees as amounted to 465000 Florins, and a great Quantity of Wines, which in the whole amounted to 350 Camels Load. The King in Recompence presented him with 50 *Arabian* Coursers, 6 Changes of rich Garments, his own Sword, and his Promise that he should continue in the Command, which the Duke esteem'd more than all. *Herbert* adds, that this Duke here, and in other Seraglio's or Harams, had above 300 Concubines; and when he went to hunt, he had never less than 20000 Men to rouse the Game; and when the whole Herd was embattel'd upon a Mountain, they impal'd it with a huge Toil of Wire and Cords, supported with Stakes, and so either darted at them from without the Rail, or ventur'd in, and by drawing a cross Line, singled out what Beast they pleas'd to encounter with Sword and Lance.

2. *Horam*, a little City, remarkable for large Mastick-Trees in the Neighbourhood, that produce abundance of Gum, which *Figueron* thinks to be the *Persian* Incense that *Strabo* magnifies so much, and with which the *Persians* use to perfume their Purfes and Water-Flaggons. It also abounds with excellent Dates, and Fountains of good Wa-

ter. Their black Cattle are no larger than Calves of one Year old in *Spain*, and wonderful tame.

3. *Mahin*, a Town of about 600 Houses, so encompassed with Gardens and Orchards, that it resembles a great Forrest. Here there was a Colony of *Circassian Tartars*, whom the K. of *Persia* had settled here. They were fair, and well Limb'd, but miserably poor.

4. *Acopas*. *Figueron* and other Travellers say, That in the Neighbourhood of this Village, and others of the adjacent Country, the Air is very dangerous, the Rivers and Fish are almost poisonous, and Travellers who pass that Road are generally seiz'd with Pains and Diseases, of which they don't recover till they come to a better Air.

The Province or Kingdom of Lar or Lara,

Lies upon the Gulph of *Bassora*, and is so called from a Town of that Name. It was formerly Part of *Caramania Deserta*, which *Figueron* says extended anciently from Cape *Guadel*, near the Mouth of the Gulph of *Ormuz*, to that of the *Euphrates*, and comprehended the two Kingdoms call'd *Lara* and *Oessa*, now the Kingdom of *Monbiareca*, or the Province of *Mogosthan*. This Country was reduc'd by *Shah-Abas*, who dispossessed their own King, whose Predecessors are said to have govern'd there above Two Thousand Years. *Herbert* says, it has *Kerman* to the E. *Chusistan* to the W. *Farsistan* to the N. and the *Persian* Gulph to the S. and is about 300 Miles in Diameter; most Part of it barren and sandy, which produces nothing but Palm-Trees. But where they have Brooks and Springs, there is Plenty of Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranates, Figs, and Variety of Corn. They have Mines of Sulphur, &c. which, for Want of Art, are not improv'd. The City of this Name *Herbert* places in Long. 90 from the Cape of Good Hope, and Lat. 27. 40. *Ogilby* Lat. 27 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Long. 73. Lat. 27. This City was storm'd by Order of *Shah-Abas* in 1602, when their King *Erakim Cawn*, an atheistical and bloody Tyrant, was killed, with 5000 of his Nobility and Gentry, and

and the Fortifications of the Town and Castle demolish'd. *Figueroa* supposes it to have been the Capital of old *Carmania*, and very ancient. *Herbert* says, some take it to be *Ptolomy's Corrha*, but the Lat. differs: Others think it to be *Antiochus's Laodicea*; but there are several of that Name. *Herbert* corrects divers of *Heylin's* Mistakes in this Place, particularly for putting this Town in *Persis*, and for making *Ispahan* and *Casbin* the same, tho' 200 Miles distant. He blames him likewise for placing *Sava* in *Persis*, and *Ctesiphon* in *Parthia*, which is in *Susiana*. When this Town was taken, the K. of *Persia* had 700 Camels loaden with his Part of the Spoil. *Herbert* says, it suffer'd much by Earthquakes in 1400, and 1593, when 8500 Houses and 3000 People were destroy'd. The Town is not wall'd, but defended by high Rocks, and a strong beautiful Castle, with Lodgings and Arms for 3000 Men, but stronger by Art than Nature. They have likewise a stately Bazar, a Mint, and some Mosques, one of 'em resembling that of *Mecca*, painted with *Arabian* Characters, and adorn'd with Lamps, in Honour of one of their pretended Prophets, who they say was a *Mahometan*, tho' he died 600 Years before *Mahomet* was heard of. They have Oranges, Lemons, Melons, Pomegranates, and excellent Pom-Citrons, with Provisions in Plenty; but they are extreemly pester'd with Gnats, and have none but stinking unwholesome Water, which breeds Diseases. Most of it is Rain-Water, which soon corrupts, their Showers being few and violent. The Inhabitants are a Mixture of *Jews* and *Mahometans*, most of them having blar Eyes, rotten Teeth, and mangy Legs, occasion'd by the violent Heats and unwholesome Water; and their Habits are but mean. Our common Maps place a great River near this Place; but *Herbert* says, there's none. He met with some Mathematicians, Philosophers, and Astrologers, here, and says, that for Mechanicks, and other curious Arts, the Inhabitants yield to none in *Persia*. *Figueroa* says, their Houses are of Earth, and plaister'd, but few above one Story high, and some of them painted, *a la Moresque*. 'Tis about as large as *Ormus*: Each House has a Terrass, and many of them artificial Fans to let in Air. 'Tis the usual Place where Caravans

lodge in the Way betwixt *Persia* and *Ormus*. Their Bazar, he says, is one of the most stately and sumptuous Structures in *Asia*, well stor'd with Merchandizes, and as much frequented as the greatest Fairs in *Europe*. It is well guarded, and no Body is suffer'd to enter it on Horseback. Their Gardens are water'd by a Canal brought through the neighbouring Plain. *Figueroa* differs from *Herbert* as to their Water, and says, they have very good both in their publick and private Cisterns, that in the Canal being not fit to drink. He says, the last King of the Place might easily have defended himself in his impregnable Castle, but was deceiv'd by the K. of *Persia*, who promis'd him good Terms, and a Pension, but afterwards cut him off. The excessive Heats made most of *Figueroa's* Retinue fall sick of Fevers. The Governor entertain'd the Ambassador magnificently, and was building a noble Palace, with fine Gardens, where he had the best Dates in *Persia*. He adds, there was a prodigious Earthquake there when their King surrender'd to the *Persians*, which they took for a Presage of his Death that follow'd. *Tavernier* says, their Castle is made a Prison for such Princes as the *Persians* take in War; that sometimes they have no Rain for 3 Years together; and agrees with *Herbert*, that the Water corrupts in their Cisterns, and breeds Worms in the Legs and Feet of those who drink it, as he found by his own woful Experience. *Struys* and *Mandelsloe* give the same Account of it, and say, that sometimes those Worms are two Yards long. The Inhabitants work curiously in Silk. A little Way from the Castle are Springs of certain Oil, which is an excellent Antidote against Poison, flows only in *June*, and in small Quantities; so that it is preserv'd for the King's Use. *Mandelsloe* says, the Town consists of about 4000 Houses. *Therwenot* says, the adjacent Country abounds with the most and largest Tamarisks that ever he saw; and that the *Dutch* have a Factory here. They make good Gunpowder in this Place. He says, the Rain-Water is good when it falls first, which may reconcile *Figueroa's* Account with the others; but he agrees, that afterwards it corrupts and breeds the dangerous Worms before-mentioned. He says, the Peasants here are so much pester'd with Spar-

Sparrows and other Birds, which destroy their Corn, that they are forced to run about the Fields with Clacking-Whips, and shout aloud to frighten them away, which is not to be done by Scare-Crows.

The Province of Kirman.

Sanfon makes it one of the largest, tho' not one of the best, Provinces of *Persia*. It has *Sablestan* on the N. the *Indian Sea* on the S. *Farfistan* on the W. *Sigistan*, *Circan*, and *Mackeran*, on the E. It produces Steel, Turquoises, Rose-Water, Tutty, the Herb of which is made the Confection of *Kermes*, and of its Grain the Crimson Dye; *Sarmach*, the black shining Stone good for Distempers of the Eyes, Tapestries, and excellent Arms, particularly Scimiters, which the *Turks* value highly. *Heylin* says, they have Dates, Myrrh, Arsenick, Mines of Silver, Brass, Iron, and Store of *Alabaster*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, 'tis a mountainous Country; that the Vallies produce vast Quantities of odoriferous Flowers, particularly Roses, with the distill'd Water of which a Sort of People call'd *Lurs*, distinguish'd from the other *Persians* by a long narrow Cap, with a Tassel hanging down over their Back, drive a considerable Trade.

The remarkable Places are, 1. *Kirman*, which *Sanfon* says is the Capital, and gives Name to the Province, lies on the River *Bassiri*, about Long. 99 Lat. 28½. *Tavernier* says, Long 81. 15 Lat. 29. 50. *Moll* Long. 77. Lat. 29½. *Sanfon* says, they make abundance of Cloth of Gold and Silver here. *Tavernier* says, it is a large City, but has been so oft ruin'd by War, that there's nothing handsome in it but one House and Garden built by a late Governor at vast Expence. They make Earthen Ware here as fine almost as China. They have Plenty of Provisions, and good Wine made by the *Gaurs*, who are very numerous in this Province. They likewise manufacture the Wool, of which are made the fine Sashes us'd in *Persia*, and Serge as fine, and of as good a Lustre, as Silk. The Sheep who bear this Wool feed on the adjacent Mountains, and cast their Fleeces naturally about May, so that there's no need of shearing

them. Their Skins are at this Time as smooth as that of a scalded Pig. The Wool is naturally of a clear Brown, or dark Ash-Colour, and very little of it White, which is extraordinary dear, because the *Mahometan* Doctors make their Girdles and Veils of it. 'Tis much finer than any in *Europe*, but must have Salt-Water thrown on it before made up into Bales, to keep it from Worms and Rotting. *Figueroa* says, the Inhabitants of this Country resemble the *Arabians* in their Habit, Mien, and Language. *Bouffingault* says, the Tutty is only found in a Mountain 12 Leagues from this City, and made by mixing the Soil of this Mountain with clean Water, covering it with Lays of fat Ground resembling Potter's-Earth; which being bak'd, they scrape the Tutty from them, and send it in Boxes to *Ormuz*, from whence 'tis transported to all Places. The best Saddles, Bridles, Spurs, Scymiters, Bows, and Embroideries in all *Persia*, are made in this Province. Their Scymiters will cut a Head-Piece without hurting their Edge, and their Launces will pierce a Breast-Plate, their Temper is so extraordinary.

2. *Gomron*, or *Gombrown*. *Orosius* calls it *Hacande*, and the *Persians* *Bender*, which signifies a Port-Town, by Way of Eminence, and 'tis indeed the best in the *Persian* Empire. *Ogilby* places it in Lat. 27. *Moll* Long. 75. Lat. 26½. *Tavernier* says, it is called *Bander-Abassi*, because *Sha-Abas the Great* was the first that brought it into Reputation. 'Tis well built, has large Warehouses, with Lodgings over them for the Merchants. 'Tis the best Landing-place on the Coast, was lately enclos'd with Walls, and is the Port for Ships that bring Goods from *India* for *Asia* and *Europe*. But the Air is so unwholesome and hot, that no Strangers can keep their Health there but in *December*, *January*, *February*, and *March*; and the Natives can scarce stay in it till the End of *April*, when they retire to the cooler Mountains, two or three Days Journey from thence. They that stay during the hot Weather, fall into malignant Fevers; and if they escape Death, have the Yellow-Jaundice during Life. In *April*, the fiery Wind call'd *Samiel* blows there, and frequently kills those who stay after that Time. *Tavernier* says, That this Wind burns sometimes like Lightning.

and that he himself and some of his Companions were like to have been killed by it, had it not been for some *Arabians* who perceiv'd it a coming, caus'd them to light from their Horses, lie down on their Bellies, and cover themselves with their Cloaks for half an Hour. Their Horses narrowly escap'd, and were put into such a Sweat, that they were scarce able to carry them. As the Air is bad, their Soil is sandy, and their Water unwholesome, except what they bring from a Fountain at 3 Leagues Distance. There was not formerly an Herb to be seen in the Neighbourhood; but now, by watering the Soil frequently, they have some Lettices, Raddishes, and Onions. The People are swarthy, wear nothing but Shifts, and their usual Diet is Dates and Fish. The neighbouring Sea yields good Soals, Smelts, Pilchards, and Oysters; but the latter are caught and eat by none but Strangers. The better Sort have good Wine, Mutton, Pigeons, and Partridges, from the neighbouring Provinces. There's a Fortrefs at each End of the Town, which increases in Trade and Building since the Ruin of *Ormuz*. *Tavernier* says, the Trade is settled here rather than at *Bander-Congo*, where both the Air and Water are good, because betwixt *Bender* and *Congo*, which lies about 70 Miles S.W. on the same Coast, there are several Islands, which make the Passage dangerous, and requires frequent Change of Wind. Besides, there is not Water enough for great Ships, and the Way from *Lar* to *Congo* is not good; whereas that to *Bender* is commodious, and furnish'd with convenient Inns. The People feed their Cattle after they have browsed on the barren Shrubs with the Heads and Guts of boil'd Fish, mix'd with the Kernels of Dates. The Exchange of Money is from 6 to 12 per Cent. at *Gomron*; and when taken up there, must be return'd in three Months. *Herbert* says, the Gulph is narrowest here betwixt *Persia* and *Arabia Felix*. The *Portuguese* built two Forts at this Place; but it was taken by the *Persians*. Raw Silks, Carpets, Cotton, &c. are brought hither by Caravans, and all Sorts of other Goods by Sea. He thinks it to be the ancient *Gambrotum*, tho' not taken Notice of for Trade till of late. The Houses are for most Part of Brick dried in the Sun, and as hard

as those dried in Kilns. They are low built, with small Courts and Balconies, and Terrasses on the Top, where the People sleep on Carpets. Their Windows are not glaz'd, but have Wooden Trellizes to open and shut. Some of the People during the Heat lie naked in Troughs with Water, which in a Manner parboils their Flesh, and makes them apt to catch Cold. There is scarce a Cloud to be seen during their Summer, which lasts 9 Months; and they have Engines on the Tops of their Houses to draw in Air. The *English* and *Dutch* Merchants have Factories here, and their Houses are the best next to those of the Sultan. The *English* are allow'd to display their Flag on the Top of their House, because of their Help in taking *Ormuz*; and for some Time they had half the Duties on Import for that Service. The Castles are mounted with the Brass Guns taken at *Ormuz*. Before the Town was wall'd, it was infested at Night by Troops of Jackals, which would tear the Dead out of their Graves. *Herbert* thinks they are bred of Dogs and Foxes. He adds, there are abundance of lewd Women here, who wear Nose Jewels above three Inches long, and half an Inch broad, embellished with Precious Stones of several Sorts, and upon their Arms and Legs they wear Chains and Bracelets of Silver, Brass, Ivory, &c. The Citizens Wives wear Linen-Drawers, and are adorn'd with Jewels and Bracelets; but when they go abroad, cover themselves all over with a white Sheet, so that they can't be known; and the Men impress their Skins with round Circles, by Way of Ornament and Bravery. There are abundance of Trading *Banians* here, who are an unfociable Sort of People. *Herbert* says, he went to see one of their Trees near the Fort, which some call the Arch'd Fig-Tree. They spread their Boughs, which by their Weight fall to the Ground, take Root, and rise again, encompassing the Trunk so as to give a refreshing Shade to some Hundreds of Men without crowding. He found this to be 209 Paces in Circumference. The *Banians* adorn'd it with Streamers of Taffaty of several Colours, and trim the Boughs so neatly within, that there's Room for one to toss a Pike. Under it they had a Temple, with such deformed Images of their Idols,

Idols, that one would think it impossible for the Invention of Man to frame such Monsters. He adds, that the *Banians* worship those very Trees. *Mandelsloe* says, the Harbour has 5 or 6 Fathom Water, and is defended by two Castles and a Redoubt. The Streets are irregular, narrow, and ill kept. Abundance of Callico is made here on portable Looms of Canes. The Pearl taken near the Isle of *Babarema* is one of their chief Trades. The Governor is a Sultan, with a Vizier, a Captain of the Guards, and a Receiver of the Customs, under him. The *Dutch* pay none in this Place; and the *English*, though they ought to have the Half, are scarcely allow'd the 10th Part of the Imposts. For the *Persians* reckon it no Crime to defraud Strangers, especially Christians, where the Interest of their Prince is concern'd. The *English* and *Dutch* pay 50 Crowns for every Horse they export to the *Indies*, where an indifferent *Persian* Horse is worth 400 Crowns; and the *English* have a Privilege to export 12 Annually without Custom. The Language here is *Portuguese*, since that Nation were Masters of it; but none of them are now suffer'd to enter it, tho' it be open to all other Nations: However, the *Spaniards* are permitted to traffick in an Island at 3 Leagues Distance, on paying certain Duties. *Struys* says, the chief Place of Retirement during the hot Season is at *Dadivan*, 5 or 6 Days Journey from *Schiraz*. 'Tis one of the finest Places in *Persia*, and for 4 or 5 Leagues round planted with Orange-Trees of a prodigious Size, Lemon-Trees, and Pomegranates, and the rest of the Plain is sow'd with Rice and Corn. It is water'd with a River, which crosses it, abounds with Fish of several Sorts, and forms many Canals and Ponds. In a neighbouring Mountain there are Caves which will hold 3 or 4000 Men, and here the Inhabitants of *Gomron* spend what they get during the Season of Trade. They have a Drink at *Gomron* compos'd of Rack, Sugar, and Raisins, which is very dangerous to Strangers. *Figueron* says, this Town was taken by the K. of *Persia* from the K. of *Ormuz*; and that it was Part of his Embassy to demand the restoring of it, but in vain. The Water here breeds dangerous Worms in those who drink it, and their Meat is likewise unwholesome. To pre-

vent the ill Effects of the Water, they quench red hot Iron in it, and strain it thro' Linen. The terrible Rains and Thunders during the hot Season preserve the Town from being taken when the Inhabitants leave it.

3. *Kismich*, an Island three Leagues from *Gomron*, is 15 Leagues long, and 3 broad. It furnishes that City with all Manner of Pulse and Fruits, cheaper than any where else in *Persia*. It abounds with Cattel, especially Goats, which they sell for 6 or 8 s. per Head. They have Rams with 4 Horns, no Wild-Fowl, but Plenty of Fish.

4. *Darabghierd*, a City in the Road from *Schiraz* to *Gomron*. It is supposed to derive its Name and Origine from K. *Darius*, for the Word signifies, *Darius's City*. It is very pleasant and populous, and surrounded with Palms and other Trees, which extend a great Way on each Side of it.

Q R M U S.

A Province, Town and Promontory, call'd by the *Greeks* *Armozon*, and by the *Latins* *Armuxa*. *Herbert* says, it was a Kingdom in *Carmania Major*. Its chief Town is *Ormuz*, in an Island of that Name, Lat. 27. *Moll* Long 75. Lat. 27. *Tavernier* says, Long. 92. 42. Lat. 25. 30. at the Mouth of the *Persian* Gulph, two Leag. from Land, and is all over cover'd with good white Salt. It produces black shining Dust, much us'd for Standishes. Before the *Portuguese* took this Island in 1506, there was a City in it the Residence of the Kings of *Ormuz*, who were also Kings of *Lar*. They took in it two young Princes, Sons of the deceas'd King, and carried them to *Spain*. They were handsomely entertain'd at *Madrid* by the King, who having shew'd them the *Escorial*, and other chief Structures, ask'd them, How they lik'd to live there? They reply'd, That every Thing was admirable, and fetch'd a deep Sigh. The King ask'd them the Reason: To which they answer'd, It was for Grief that they must never sit more under their own Tree, being one of those *Banian* Trees already mention'd, which was the only one in the Island. The *Portuguese* made *Ormuz* a very magnificent City, and gilded all the Bars of their Doors and

Windows. They erected a noble Fortrefs, and a stately Church dedicated to the Virgin. The Castle continues in good Repair, and the *Persians* defend it with a strong Garrison; but the City is in Ruins, the *Dutch* having carried off most of the Stones to build *Batavia*. There's a Fortrefs on the Point of the Island which lies over against *Persia*, and is almost encompassed with the Sea. The Channel is not deep betwixt the Island and the Continent, so that great Ships pass on the other Side. This Island formerly commanded Part of *Carmania* and *Arabia Felix*. It was in so much Esteem when the *Portuguese* had it, that they made this Distich upon it:

*Si Terrarum Orbis quaquapate Annulus esset,
Illius Ormuzium Gemma decusq; foret.*

i. e.

*Were all the World a Ring, Ormus alone
Wou'd of that Ring deserve to be the Stone.*

The *Portuguese* suffer'd the Kings of it to continue their Vassals, with a handsome Revenue, till 1622, when *Shah Abas* sent 15000 Men against it, and with the Help of the *English* Merchant-Ships and Cannon reduc'd it. He promis'd 'em great Things for this Service, which being once performed, he took no Care to fulfil, except allowing them the Customs on Strangers, which were worth 40000 *l. per Annum*, and duly paid to the *English East-India* Company till 1671, when being in War with the Great Mogul, they consented to take 3000 *l. per Annum*, says *Bohun* in his Edition of *Heylin*. *Herbert* says, That by the Assistance of *Goa*, the *Portuguese* Metropolis in the *East-Indies*, it gave Laws to all the neighbouring Potentates, and was a very compact City, but intolerably hot in Summer, and there is not so much as one Spring of fresh Water in the Island, which, tho' barren, was supplied with what was necessary for Use and Luxury from all Parts of the Earth by the Ships which traded to it. The Island has a Harbour on the E. and another on the W. and in the Middle a Hill, one Half Sulphur, and the other Salt. Their Houses were extreemly well furnish'd, their Exchange rich and beautiful, their Churches splendid, and their Castle so regular and well fortified, and mounted with Cannon,

that it exceeded all Places in the E. *Herbert* gives us the following Account of the taking of *Ormuz*, and of the Conditions granted to the *English* for their Assistance in it. 1. That the Castle, with all the Ordnance and Ammunition, should belong to the *English*. 2. That the *Persians* might build another Castle in the Island at their own Cost, when and where they pleas'd. 3. That the Spoil should be equally divided. 4. That the Christian Prisoners should be at the Disposal of the *English*, and the Pagans of the *Persians*. 5. That the *Persians* should be at Half-Charge. 6. That the *English* shou'd be Custom-free in *Gomron* for ever. Accordingly they attacked the Place the 20th of January 1622, and soon took the Harbour. The *English* took two *Portuguese* Frigats, and landed 3000 *Persians* on the Island. The *Portuguese* made a brave Resistance, and repulsed the *Persians* with considerable Loss. The 24th of February the *English* Ships advanced towards the Castle, notwithstanding the Fire of the great Ordnance, and of the *Portuguese* Fleet of 5 Gallions and 25 Frigats. They burnt the *Portuguese* Admiral of 1500 Tuns, which obliged the *Portuguese* to cut her Cables, and let her drive with the Wind and Tide; so that she became a Prey to the *Arabian* and *Persian* Rabble. The 17th of March the *Persians* blew up Part of the Wall, and after an Attack of 9 Hours they enter'd the Breach; but were repuls'd with the Loss of 1000 Men. This abated the Courage of the *Persians* for five Days. The 23d, the *English* Ships sunk the *Portuguese* Vice and Rear Admirals, and so batter'd their Fortifications, that, together with the Plague, Famine and Fluxes, it brought the *Portuguese* to a Parley. They desir'd a Cessation of Arms, for which they proffer'd a great Sum in Hand, and an Annual Tribute. The *Persians* insisted on a greater Sum than the other were willing to give. Then the *Portuguese* applied themselves to the *English*, told them their Kings were at Peace; that the Nations had been long in Amity; and that it was inconsistent with the Laws of Nations and Religion for them to assist the *Persians*; adding, that they were willing to satisfy the *English* if they had done them any Injury. But the *English* not listening to those Suggestions, sprung two Mines, and made such a Breach

as gave a large Prospect into the City, which the *Persians* had not Courage enough to improve. The 14th of *April*, a Ship with Mulletto's from the Isle of *Kismich* attempted to put in for the Relief of the Town, but could not do it. They endeavour'd to land in another Place; but the *Persian* General told them, they should receive no Damage from his Army if they wou'd surrender. They foolishly agreed to it: After which 80 of them were cut off, and the rest put in Chains. The Garrison expected Relief from the *Portuguese* Fleet in vain; and being weaken'd by Sickness, they surrender'd to the *English*, on Condition of sparing their Lives, and being safely convoy'd to *Muskat* in *Arabia*. Three Thousand of them were accordingly transported by the *English*; but the *Persians* intercepted above 300, whom they barbarously put to Death contrary to Treaty, and sent their Heads as Trophies to *Gomron*; and in the like barbarous Manner murder'd the half-dead Men that were left in the Town, ravish'd the Women, and plunder'd the Churches and Houses. The *English* charg'd them with Breach of Articles, to which they had no other Answer, but that some of their own Men had made the first Breach. The *English* had no more than 20000 *l.* of the Booty. The Brass Ordnance in the Castle of the Town were to be equally divided; but the *English* had only 53 great Brass Guns mounted, 4 Brass Cannon, 6 Brass Demi-Cannon, 16 Brass Cannon Pedro's, 3 of Iron, 10 Brass Bases, 7 Brass Bastels, some Basilisks of 22 Foot long, and 92 Brass Pieces unmounted, which was not their just Share. The Tributary King of *Ormuz* was carried Prisoner to *Persia*, and allow'd a small Pension. *Woodcock*, an *English* Captain, seiz'd a *Portuguese* Ship with a Million of Rials on board, but was soon cast away with her. Thus *Ormuz*, which was the Glory of the East, after it had been 120 Years in the Possession of the *Portuguese*, became a Desolation, by the needless Provocations they had given the *English* thro' Pride and Avarice. *Figueroa* says, the Island has some Palm Trees and Thorns, and some Brooks of Water, but salt; and when dry'd up by the Heat of the Summer, their Channels are full of great Pieces of Salt. He adds, there's a Hermitage on the highest

Mountain, which rises higher every Day, because of the great Quantity of Salt, Sulphur, and Salt-Petre, which continually swells out of it. The Way to it is very steep, and cut out of the Rock; and near the Hermitage there's a Hill rises from the Top of the other, very high and round, of pure white Salt, so that at a Distance it looks like Snow; and in the Neighbourhood there are some old ruinous Towers, where the Kings of *Ormuz* us'd to keep their Brothers after they had put out their Eyes. There are several other Hermitages in the Island, and Cisterns for Rain-Water, which the Proprietors carefully lock up. The Sepulchres of *Moors*, *Pagans*, and *Jews*, are mix'd together, and frequented by the Women at Nights on Account of Devotion, where they make their Offerings and Feasts. The King had his Palace in a fine Plain, with some Pleasure-Houses in the Neighbourhood, and a small Tuft of Palm-Trees. The Houses of the Inhabitants are made of Canes and Palm Leaves. *Figueroa* adds contrary to what others say, that there are several large Trees and Green Plats betwixt the Rocks, where there are many Hares and Goats. The *Portuguese*, by Advice of their Priests, demolish'd the Mosque in the Citadel, which very much incens'd the *Moors* and the *Persians*, who took all Opportunities to revenge it. The Streets of the Town were built strait, and the Houses high, to shade them from the violent Heat of the Sun, and there were many cross Streets, which serv'd for Channels to convey and purify the Air: And on the Tops of their Houses they had Fans made in the Fashion of Chimnies, but open on all Sides, so formed as to let in the Air to the Rooms, and to shut on the Side opposite to the Wind, which forced it down into the Apartments. We refer to *Figueroa* for the particular Description of them: On the Roofs they had Apartments of Joiners-Work, where they lay during the Summer, and most of them naked, especially the Natives; and tho' there were Terrasses from the Roof of one House to another Robberies or other Insults were seldom heard of. The Harbour was not deep nor safe, so that great Vessels were obliged to lie at Anchor in the Bay 600 Paces from the Town. They find a great deal of Wood

in the Bottom of the Bay, brought down by the Rivers from the *Persian* Coast, which gives some People Occasion to think that it grows in the Bay under Water, because most of it is small and crooked like the Roots of Trees, and not rotten. They find likewise on the Coast abundance of white Pumice-Stones, especially in those Places where there are subterranean Fires, and this they make use of, because it is light to build the Fans for Air on the Tops of their Houses. The Town consisted of about 3000. Most of the Inhabitants were *Arabians*, with a few Christians, Natives of the Country, and some *Indian* Pagans, amounting in the whole to 40000. They were most of them very rich by Traffick, and they had ingenious Mechanicks of all Sorts. There were about 100 Families of *Jews*, but all habited alike, except the *Indian* Merchants. *Figueroa* thinks, that the Mountain cover'd with Salt had formerly a Vulcano on the Top, because it has a Sulphureous Smell, which sometimes infects the Air; and going up to the Top of the Mountain, he found abundance of Stones burnt as black as Coals, which confirm'd him in his Opinion. The Inhabitants during the Heats go into the shallow Places of the Sea on the Coast, Men, Women and Children; but the *Europeans* could not do so, because the salt Water made their Skins to peel; and in the Night-time they wet their Floors and Bed-heads with Water. The Winds are of so different a Nature here, that tho' all of 'em be hot, yet in half a quarter of an Hour's Time some of them occasion the People to sweat, and others shut up their Pores. The S. Wind, altho' extream hot, does not abate the Spirits of the People as the others; and by blowing on the Pots of Water which they keep in their Houses for Drinking, does mightily refresh it. The Inhabitants have most of their fresh Water and Provisions from the Isle of *Queixome* or *Kismich*. *Figueroa* says, That it had not rain'd there for two Years together; so that the Cisterns were all dried up, by which the Inhabitants suffer'd very much; and that on the 2d of *January* 1620, there happen'd such a terrible Tempest of Thunder and Rain, as no Man remember'd the like. It lasted two Hours, filled all their Cisterns, and ruin'd abundance of their Houses. It left so much

stagnant Water in the hollow Places of the Island, that it resembled Seas: But notwithstanding the Loss the Inhabitants sustain'd, they were so overjoy'd at the falling of the Rain, that they did not regard the Damage; but as soon as the Tempest was spent, they run out with their Cattle of all Sorts to drink and bath themselves in the stagnant Water; so that it was one of the most joyful Days they had seen in the Island for a great many Years, because the Poor were by this Means furnish'd with Water for nothing. He says, it never rains here or on the Coasts of *Carmenia* and *Arabia* without a Tempest of Wind, Thunder and Hail, and seldom above two or three times a Year; but now and then they have a small one like Dew without any Tempest, which scarce serves to lay the Dust. *Figueroa* blames the Governor of *Ormuz*, and the Treachery of the Governor of *Goa*, for the Loss of that City and Island, since the Citadel was in a good Condition to have made a Defence; but the former was so wilful, that he would take no Advice in repairing and strengthening his Fortifications. The Treasure lost here he reckons at Two Millions of Gold, besides Jewels and other rich Goods, and above 300 Battering-Pieces; and he blames the *Portuguese* for basely betraying the poor *Arabian* Princes, and not including them in the Capitulation to be sent to *Mascat* or *Goa*. The Governor might easily have preserv'd the Citadel by bringing the Sea round it; but was so haughty, that he rejected the Advice when it was given him by another, because he did not first think of it himself. The *Persians* did it as soon as they became Masters of it, and that's all which they preserv'd of this noble City.

Some call the opposite Continent of *Persia* the Province of *Mogostan*, which signifies the Country of Dates; but there is another of the same Name in *Arabia Felix*. The chief Town of *Mogostan* is *Mina*. *Ogilby* places it Lat. 26. 35. Moll Long. 76. Lat. 26. *Ogilby* says, it has two Fortresses on each Side, enclos'd within a Wall, which run thro' the Town, and has some slight Towers upon it at certain Distances. It has two Baths, with a Governor and a small Garrison. The Houses are made of the Boughs of Date-Trees. There grow abundance of Trees

Trees in this Province, which the *Arabians* call *Nebo*, and the *Persians* *Gonar*. They bear a small Fruit like our Cherries, the Leaves of which being powder'd, and put in Water, makes it lather like Soap, and is us'd by the Natives when they bathe. *Ogilby* adds, That in this Province and other Places of *Persia* there's a strange Beast, in Colour and Shape like a Tyger, but has a Head and Snout like a Hog, makes a great Screaking in the Night, and scrapes the Dead out of their Graves. *De la Valle* thinks it to be the *Hyena*, or a Mungrel Wolf. This Country made Part of the ancient Kingdom of *Ormus*.

The Province of Mackeran, Macron, or Cache,

HAS *Kerman* on the W. Part of *India* belonging to the *Great Mogul* on the E. the Ocean on the S. and *Sigestan* on the N. *Tavernier* says, this was the ancient *Gedrosia*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Mackeran*, the Metropolis, of which we have no Description. *Moll* places it Long. 85. Lat. 25. *Sanson* Long. 108. Lat. 26. 2. *Cobinam*, noted for making of excellent Looking-Glasses, and Mirrors of Steel, says *Ogilby*. *Sanson* places it Long. 105. Lat. 27. The other Towns are, *Guadel*, *Tir*, and *Diul*, on the Coast of which we have no Account. *Moll* says, there's a Desert of 10 Days Journey without Water or House in this Country, which is suppos'd to be that where *Alexander's* Army suffer'd so much in their Return from the *Indian Sea*. The chief River of this Country is *Ilmen*, which runs into *Lourebander Bay* in the *Indian Sea*. *Ogilby* says, the Country produces Plenty of Hemp and Flax, several Sorts of Oil, and a Sort of Horses call'd *Cachis*, from the Country, as good as the *Arabian* and *Persian*. He adds, that *Guadel* has a Viceroy, and *Mackeran* a particular Prince.

The Province of Sigestan,

Lies N. from *Mackeran*, S. from *Chorasan*, E. and W. from the Dominions of the *Mogul*; and *Circan*, which some make a Part of it, lies on the S. E. Side. *Castaldus*

takes *Circan* to be the ancient *Gedrosia*; and *Olearius*, that it is the Kingdom of *Tarsus*, mention'd by the *Psalmist*; but *Niger* thinks *Tarsus* was in *Kerman*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors and *Tavernier* think *Sigestan* was the ancient *Drangiana*. It is also called *Sitristan* and *Sistan*. 'Tis surrounded on all Sides with high Mountains, and the Country of *Rustan*, the principal Hero of the *Persian* Romances, which are full of his Exploits. There is a great Desert in this Province, and Mount *Taurus* runs thro' Part of it. The principal River is *Ilmend* or *Hillemend* above-mentioned. There are several Towns in it; but we have no Description of them. Its Capital is of the same Name.

The Province of Sablestan.

MOLL places it N. of *Sigistan*, and *Sanson* N. W. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, the Inhabitants are by *Curtius* called *Paropamisadae*. 'Tis but a small Province. *Tavernier* says, the City and Territory of *Candahar* is comprehended in it, together with *Duki* and *Alunkan* upon the Frontiers of the *Mogul's* Dominions. *Moll* makes *Candahar* a little Province by it self on the East of *Sablestan*, and *Sanson* brings Part of *Chorasan* betwixt them. *Thevenot* says, it has the Country of *Balc* to the N. whereof an *Usbeck* Prince is Sovereign; *Caboul* on the E. *Bucor* on the S. but *Moll* places it on the S. E. and Part of *Sigistan* and *Sablestan* on the W. according to *Moll*. The Province is but small, abounds with Provisions, except on the Side of *Persia*, where it is barren. Their Trade with *Persia*, the *Usbeck Tartars*, and the *Indies*, makes it very rich, so that it yielded the *Mogul* when in his Possession betwixt 14 and 15 Millions a Year. There are some *Gentiles* or *Banians* here for the Sake of Traffick; but they are not allow'd a publick Temple, or otherwise suffer'd to bury themselves with their deceas'd Husbands. There are many *Gaurs* here, but poor, and preserve the Fire which they worship on a Mountain near the Town of *Candahar*. There are some *Raja's* or Petty Princes in the Mountains, who enjoy their Liberty on paying an easy Tribute, and always take Part with the strongest Side. There's also a little District in the Mountains

tains called *Peria*, or *Fairy Land*, where there are some Christians, but very ignorant.

The chief Town is *Candahor* or *Candahar*. *Herbert* places it in Long. 98. Lat. 34. *Moll* Long. 87. Lat. 32. *Sanfon* Long. 109 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 34 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Herbert* says, the chief Riches of this City proceed from the Passage of Caravans, which makes Provisions dear, and the Roads of the Country are much infested by Robbers. The City is not spacious, but strong both by Art and Nature; the Suburbs large and beautiful, but not well defended, and their Water is bad. It was taken from the Mogul *Sha Jehan* by *Sha-Abas the Great* of *Persia*, who cut off the Head of his Grandmother because she dissuaded him from taking it. *Sha-Jehan* sent several Armies to recover it, one of 300000 Men under his eldest Son, who lost most of 'em before it in 1650. The next Year he sent another of his Sons, who had no better Success: Upon which *Sha Jehan's* eldest Daughter, with whom he was charg'd with infamous Amours, rais'd an Army at her own Charge, and made her Brother *Aurengezebe* Commander of it. He laid Siege to the City, but rais'd it, to prevent the Envy of his other Brothers, and his Sister's having the Honour of taking the Town, since she had rais'd the Army. *Tavernier* says, it has been frequently an Occasion of War betwixt the Kings of *Persia* and the Mogul; that the Prince who reign'd there, when *Sha-Abas* took it chose rather to be under his Protection than the Mogul's, on Condition that one of his Race should always be Governor. That Prince was so rich, that he left vast Treasures behind him, and had abundance of Gold Plate. The Governor deliver'd it up to the Mogul in the Time of *Sha-Sefi*; but *Sha-Abas* recover'd it in 1650. The Town is defended by two Citadels, and has many fair Houses. The *Persians* keep a Garrison of 9000 Men here to defend it against Surprise. *Bussingault* says, it contains about 70000 Inhabitants; that the Province is about 60 Leagues long, has many Wild Sheep, and produces Ballast, Rubies, and Silver Mines. Its particular Princes were of the Race of *Tamerlane*, and submitted themselves as the Exigence of Affairs requir'd, to the *Usbeck Tartars*, *Moguls*, or *Persians*.

The Province of Chorasán.

Sanfon makes this the largest Province of *Persia*, bounds it on the N. and N E. with the *Zagathay Tartars*; on the S. with *Sablestan*, *Sigistan*, and *Candahor*; on the E. with the Mogul's Dominions; on the W. with *Chamus*, and Part of *Hierack Agemi*. He subdivides it into *Cobasan* and *Chouarasan*. *Moll* makes it nothing so large, calls it *Chorostan*, and the N. Part of it *Astrabath*. *Tavernier* says, it contain'd formerly *Aria*, and Part of *Bactriana*, makes *Estarabad* a distinct Province, and says, it was formerly *Margiana*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors make it the ancient *Bactriana*, and say, *Heri* is one of its Divisions. 'Tis one of the most renowned in *Persia* for Fruitfulness, Extent, and Trade. The Product of this Country is Corn, excellent Manna, Mulberry-Trees, (by consequence much Silk) Saffron, *Assa-Fœtida*, *Surmach*, Sheep of several Colours, as Grey, Black, and White, with Wool some three Inches, others but one Inch long, and some long grey and shining Wool, with white Curls at the End that resemble Strings of Pearl. They also make great Quantities of Silks and Carpets. The Natives are white and valiant, but not civiliz'd. *Ogilby* says, Part of the Country is possess'd by the *Usbeck Tartars*, who invaded it while the *Turks* were at War with the *Persians*; but the latter have recover'd most of it.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Mesched* or *Maxad*, by the *Persians* called *Thus* or *Tous*. *Sanfon* places it near the W Side of the Province, Long 100 $\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. 37. *Tavernier* Long. 82. 30. Lat 38. 40. *Moll* Long. 77. Lat 36. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, 'tis encompassed with a noble Wall, adorn'd with many fair Structures, and (if we may believe *Texeira*) with 300 Towers, at the Distance of a Mucker-shot from one another. *Sanfon* the Missionary says, 'tis a very rich City, because 'tis the Place to which the *Persians* make their Pilgrimages to the Tomb of *Iman-Reza*, one of their 12 Saints. This was the Contrivance of *Sha-Abas*, to divert his Subjects from carrying Money out of the Kingdom by the Pilgrimages of *Mecca*, and Impostors suborn'd on purpose, to ascribe

ascribe false Miracles to the Place, counterfeited themselves to be blind, and to have their Sight restor'd here; which has rais'd the Reputation of *Reza's Mosque* so high, that many of the *Persian* Lords order themselves to be buried in it, and leave great Legacies to the Place, which has made it so rich, that the *Usbeck Tartars* have frequently attempted to besiege it, and were so near effecting it when *Sanfon* was in *Persia*, that the King was obliged to send a great Army to prevent it, and brib'd some of the *Tartars* to abandon the rest of the Enterprize. *John the Persian* says, there's a Tower here 18 Foot high, of massy Gold, arch'd on the Top with Precious Stones; and on the Pinnacle, he says, there's a Diamond as large as a Chesnut, which glitters so much, that 'tis seen a League off at Night, if you'll believe him. *Texeira* says, the City, Suburbs and Gardens, is 6 Leagues in Circumference, and contains 100000 Inhabitants. *Sanfon* the Geographer says, the Inhabitants are handsome, strong, and warlike.

2. *Kahen*, or *Kayen*, famous for Saffron. *Sanfon* places it Long. 99 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 35 $\frac{2}{3}$.

3. *Thun*, or *Thon*, noted for Manufactures of Silk, Long. 100 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 35 $\frac{1}{2}$. The *Holstein* Ambassadors mention 17 other Cities in this Province, which they say are all very populous, and Places of great Traffick; but since they only give us their Names, we pass them over.

The Capital of *Heri*, one of its Divisions, is *Herat*, *Herac*, *Harat*, or *Sargultzar*, which signifies the City of Roses, there being more there than in any known Town in the World. *Sanfon* places it Long. 103. Lat. 35 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Long. 78 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 34. It abounds likewise with Rhubarb and Wines, which keep very long, and has such a Trade in Silk, that *Sanfon* says, they sometimes load 3 or 4000 Camels in a Day. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, the best *Persian* Tapestry is made here; and that the *Indians* drive a great Trade in this Place, which lies in the direct Road betwixt *Candahar* and *Ispahan*. *Herbert* says, the Province was formerly call'd *Aria*; but the Town is called *Ery*, and 3 Miles about. The Rose-Water made here excels what we have in *Europe*. They mix it with Sherbet and other Entertainments, and put it in flat-

sided Glasses, which they break over the Heads of their Guests, who sit likewise upon Herbs and Flowers; and this Water running down upon them, makes a most admirable Scent. *Bouffingault* says, it has about 6 or 7000 Houses, and that they have abundance of Musk and China Wood in this Place. *Bouffingault* and *Ogilby* say, they have fine Tabby-Cats in this Country, much esteem'd all over *Persia*, their Hair being fine, long, and shining like Silk, with long beautiful Tair, whose Hair is 5 or 6 Inches long. They carry them curl'd upon their Backs like Squirrels, and the End of 'em resembles a Plume of Feathers, which is very agreeable to the Sight. *Nisabour* lies so near to *Khæmus*, that some reckon it in that Province. *Sanfon* places it Long. 99 $\frac{2}{3}$. Lat. 39 $\frac{2}{3}$. and some reckon it the Capital of a Province of its own Name. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, there's a Mountain near this City which produces such excellent Turquoises, that the King of *Persia* reserves them to his own Use. This Country is full of sandy Desarts, where the Sand is blown about by the Wind, which makes it dangerous to Travellers. *Ogilby* places it Long. 102. 20. Lat. 38 40. *Sanfon* the Geographer says, the Town of *Nisabour* was much more populous formerly than at present; and that *Tamerlane* order'd 400000 People to be cut off there and in the Neighbourhood in one Day: But this does not agree with the Character given that Prince by other Writers, who extol his Generosity.

The same Author places in *Chorasan*, 1. *Bouregian*, near the great Lake of the same Name, which receives several Rivers like the *Caspian* Sea, but has no visible Way of discharging them. He places this Town about 106 $\frac{1}{2}$. and Lat. 37.

2. *Balck*, near the Head of the River *Oboengir* or *Oxus*, Long. 111 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 37 $\frac{1}{2}$. He says, it is a very large, populous, and rich City, and one of the furthest on that Side towards the *Indies*. *Moll* places it on a River which falls into the *Oxus*, near Long. 85. Lat. 36.

The Province of *Khæmus*.

Sanfon places it betwixt *Chorasan* on the S. W. *Dilemon*, *Georgian*, and Part of *Tabarestan*, on the E. makes it a narrow Country,

try, but, broadest on the N. where it borders on *Tartary* and the *Caspian Sea*. Their chief Town, he says, is *Bestan*, on the W. Side of the Country, Long. 96. Lat. 37. He mentions several other Towns, of which he gives no Description; among others, *Thous*, which he places Long. 100. Lat. 40. noted for the Birth of *Nazzarridin*, an excellent Mathematician, who dispossess'd *Mustalzin* of the Caliphate of *Babylon*, because he ask'd him, where his Horns were? So dangerous is it to provoke a Man of Sense and Courage.

The Province of Gorgian.

Sanfon places it betwixt *Tabaristan* and *Khæmus*, which inclose it, except on the S. W. where it borders on *Gilan*. He says, the principal Town is of the same Name, and that it is the old Metropolis call'd *Hyrkania*. He mentions some other Towns, but gives us no Description of them or the Country.

The Province of Tabaristan.

Sanfon places it W. from *Gorgian*, bounds it on the N. with the *Caspian Sea*, on the W. with *Gilan*, and on the S. with Part of that Province and *Gorgian*, and makes it touch upon *Khæmus* on the N. E. *Moll* makes it reach to *Chorasan* on the E. *Gilan* on the W. and *Hierack-Agemi* on the S. *Sanfon* says, it extends above 60 Leagues on the Coast of the *Caspian Sea*, which from hence is called the Sea of *Tabaristan*; that it advances 100 Leagues within Land, and contains 12 fine Cities, of which *Astarabat* or *Starabat* is the chief; but *Moll* extends the Territory of *Astarabat* as far as *Independant Tartary*, and makes it distinct from *Tabaristan*. *Luyts* says, 'tis that which is call'd *Khæmus* in the common Maps. *Tavernier* says, 'tis that formerly call'd *Margiana*, and extends as far E. as the River *Oxus*. The chief Cities, he says, are *Estarabad*, *Amul*, and *Damkam*; but we have no Description of the Towns in either of these Countries.

The Provinces of Gilan and Dilemon,

Sanfon places W. from *Tabaristan* and *Khæmus*, and joins *Gilan* and *Mazanderan*, which some distinguish. *Gilan* he says is divided into 5 Jurisdictions, and above 35 fine and rich Cities. *Mazanderan* contains 25 Cities, the chief of which is *Mazanderan*, that contains 50000 People. *Dilemon* has a Capital of its own Name, and several other Cities; but *Sanfon* gives no other Description of those Towns and Provinces. He says, they design'd to have revolted from the *Persians* in 1594; but *Shah-Abas* reduc'd and chastis'd them. *Luyts* says, That *Mazanderan* and *Tabaristan* are marishy, and annoy'd with innumerable Swarms of Insects, which, with the Vapours, infect the Air; but those Insects die as soon as the Marshes are dry'd by the Heat of the Sun; and there are many fruitful Tracts of Land in these Countries. *Dr. Frian* says, That *Tabaristan* is considerable for weaving and transporting Silks and Velvet; and that the Province of *Gilan* or *Kilan* likewise abounds with Silk.

Theravenot says, *Mazanderan* is a lovely Country, water'd by many Springs and Rivers, which fall into the *Caspian Sea*. The chief Town is *Eschref*, *Eskerf*, or *Hasarof*. *Moll* places it on the Bank of the *Caspian Sea*, Long. 70 $\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. 36 $\frac{1}{2}$. It has a Royal Palace, with large Gardens, Ponds, Fountains, Pleasure Houses, and artificial Mounts cover'd with Flowers; and little Houses on the Top of 'em for People to refresh themselves in, but the Air very cold, and the Ways bad in Winter, and the Climate so malignant in the Summer, as makes the People look tawny; so that the better Sort remove then to other Places. *Herbert* says, it may contain about 2000 Families. He places it in Lat. 30. 17. and about two Miles from the *Caspian Sea*, encompassed with Salt Marshes. The King of *Persia* was in this City, and gave Audience to the English Ambassadors when *Herbert* was with them; to whom we refer for their magnificent Reception, and the rich Furniture of the Palace.

2. *Ferrabath, Ferrabaut, or Ferhabad.* Moll places it on an Arm of the *Caspian Sea* to the S. E. Long. 69 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 36 $\frac{1}{2}$. The *Holstein* Ambassadors derive its Name from *Ferrach*, which signifies the Pleasantness of the adjacent Country. Some take this Town for the Remains of old *Amarusa*, others the *Phraata*, besieged by *M. Anthony* when he invaded *Media*. *Ulughbeg* calls it *Strabat*, and *Texeira Estrabaut*. *Herbert*, who believes it to be the Relicks of *Ptolemy's Secanda*, says, 'tis situate 5 Miles from *Eskerf*, in a flat and rich Soil, beautified with fruitful Gardens, and water'd with a pretty Rivulet, which rises from Mount *Taurus*, and falls just below this Place into the *Caspian Sea*. He says, the Air is not so pure here as in most other Parts of the Province. It has no Walls, but a deep Moat, planted on both Sides with Trees. The Houses are not flat at Top as the others in *Persia*, but like ours in the Roof, and tiled and glazed according to the *English* Fashion. It has about 3000 Families. The Streets are pretty broad, but irregular. *Della Valla* says, in a few Years after its first Building, it grew to the Bigness of *Rome* or *Constantinople*. *Ogilby* says, the afore-mentioned River divides the Province from S. to N. has one Bridge over it at *Ferrabad*, is navigable by small Vessels; and that the Inhabitants ferry it over in a Sort of flat-bottom'd Boats made of one great Tree. He adds, That the Vessels which trade to *Gilan*, *Esterabad*, *Bacu*, and *Astracan*, lade and unlade here. *Boussingault* agrees with *Della Valla* in its ancient Magnitude, and says, it was founded by *Sha-Abas*, who dispeopled several neighbouring Provinces of the *Turks* to fill it, insomuch that here were computed 40000 Families of *Armenians*, 12000 *Georgians*, and 7000 *Jews*, without including the *Mahometans* of *Schirwan*, (who are said to have been 25000 Families) those of *Kilan*, and other Countries, besides Strangers, and those who us'd to follow the King when he kept his Court there. These Inhabitants wear long Breeches and short Coats, which do not reach to their Knees, with an upper Garment made fast about their Middle with a Girdle. They wear no Turbans, but a little Cap made of Leather, and lin'd with Cloth, sharp on the Top, and broad at Bottom, and invented by *K. Abas*. Persons of Quality wear these

within Doors, but their Turbans abroad. However, their Servants carry these Caps after their Masters when they go out. This Province had formerly its own King, who was Tributary to *Persia*, till rebelling, he was reduced by *Sha-Abas*.

Kilan or *Gilan*, according to the *Holstein* Ambassadors, is encompassed in Form of a Crescent, with a Mountain cover'd with Trees. They say, this and *Mazanderan* made up the ancient *Hyrcania*. 'Tis very subject to the Fever and Dropsy. There grows a Kind of Flax here which makes excellent Cloth. The Oxen have a Bunch of Fat upon the Neck like those of the *Indies*, and the Province abounds with Silk, Oil, Wine, Rice, Tobacco, Lemons, Oranges, Pomegranates, &c. and with excellent Vines, as big as a Man's Waist in Compass. Their Rivers are pretty many, well stor'd with Fish, especially Salmon, and their Forrests with Venison and Wild Fowl. The Inhabitants are of two Sorts, viz. those called the *Kileks*, and *Talischs*. The former having frequently rebelled against the Kings of *Persia*, were totally reduced and disarmed by *Sha-Seft*, insomuch that ever since they have been allow'd only a Sort of Hedge-Bill for cutting their Wood, and dressing their Vines. But the *Talischs*, who live on the Borders of *Mazanderan*, having always been obedient, have the free Use of Arms. Their Women are counted the handsomest in the Kingdom, and do not cover their Faces as the others. They tie their Hair in Tresses, the Maids in 24, and the married Women in 12. Their upper Garments are so short before, that their Shifts appear below them. Instead of Shooes, they wear Wooden Sandals fasten'd with a String upon the Heel, and with a Wooden Button betwixt the Great Toe, and the next to it. Nevertheless, both Men and Women generally go bare-foot, because of the Slipperiness of the Ways in rainy Weather. The *Kileks* have Caps made of coarse Cloth, but the *Talischs* of Lamb-Skins. They have each their peculiar Language, which differs from the *Persian* only in Dialect. The Women of *Kilan* are reputed the best Housewives in *Persia*, for they not only employ their Time at Home in Spinning, weaving of Stuffs and Callicoes, making Syrops of

D d d

Wine,

Wine, &c. but also weed, bind, thresh, and sell the Corn. *Bouffingault* says, there are Foxes in this Province as big as those of Europe; but instead of Hair, are cover'd with Wool, have a white Belly, black Ears, and a Tail lesser than ours. *Ogilby* says, this Province was unpassable in many Places, because of the Waters, till King *Abas* rais'd a Causeway thro' the Country from *Astara* to *Astarabath*. The Mountains towards the *Caspian* Sea abound with Hogs, Deer, and Goats with very long Horns, not so crooked as ours, besides Leopards, Wolves, Bears, and Tygers, which last are sold by 10 or 20 at a time, taught to follow the Chace, and made so tame, that the Huntsmen carry them on Horseback, and many Gentlemen keep them for the Security of their Houses, as we do Mastives. 'Tis divided into 20 Counties; but we have little or no Description of any Towns of Note, except

1. *Rescht*, which *Moll* places in Long. $68\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $36\frac{1}{3}$. The *Holstein* Ambassadors place it within two Leagues of the *Caspian* Sea, Lat. 37. They say, 'tis the Capital of the Province, pretty large, but not strong, being open on all Sides like a Village, and very thick planted with Trees. The *Arabs* place it Lat. $85\frac{1}{6}$. Their Houses are not so well built as those of the other Cities of *Persia*, but all cover'd with Slates or Tile, and set round with Citron and Orange Trees. The Market-place is large and full of Shops, and Provisions are sold cheap here. It has a Territory of the same Name, and is govern'd by a *Daruga*.

2. *Kesker*, the Metropolis of a Territory so called, which has above 20 Towns and Villages, but they are no where describ'd. *Moll* places it 45 Miles W. of *Rescht*.

3. *Curab*, a Town only famous for the Birth of *Sha-Sefi*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors place it two Leagues from the *Caspian* Sea.

4. *Lenkeran*, the Capital of the Territory of *Langercunnan*.

Northward from *Kilan*, near the Sea, lie the Plains of *Mocan*, *Mogan*, or *Mokan*, which the *Holstein* Ambassadors believe to be those fertile ones near the *Caspia Portæ*, mention'd by *Strabo* to be kept for the King's Breeding-Mares, and able to feed 50000; but they are not near so large at present, whatever they were then. *Ogilby* says, they are 60 Leagues in Length, and 20 in Breadth. They are inhabited by several Sorts of People, who making an Insurrection in the Reign of *Hossein*, were vanquish'd, and banish'd to these Plains. They are called *Sumeck Rajeti*, i. e. The King's Slaves, and have but very small Allowances. They maintain themselves by keeping of Cattle, which they drive in Summer to the Hills, and in the Winter to the Plains. Their Children go stark naked in Summer, but aged Persons wear Cotton Coats. They live in low sorry Cottages made of Straw and Bushes. They have a Sort of Wild Beasts not to be met with elsewhere in *Persia*, which keep together in great Herds, are very swift Footed, and shap'd like a Roe-Buck. Here grows abundance of Liquorice, the Stalks of which are as big as a Man's Arm. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, That among the neighbouring Hills lies the Village of *Dubil*, the Inhabitants of which us'd to have their clandestine Meetings in the Night-time; and after having drank a great deal of strong Liquor, blew out the Candles, and then putting off their Clothes, committed all Sorts of Lewdness, without Distinction either of Age, Sex or Kindred, till *Sha-Abas* commanded them to be quite extirpated, and sent a Colony thither in their room. The Ambassadors think these were the same, or at least the Posterity of those, noted by *Herodotus* for their promiscuous Carnal Copulation.

A SUPPLEMENT to the Description of PERSIA from Sir John Chardin. The Second and Third Volumes of Sir John's Travels into Persia, &c. being publish'd since we wrote what is above, 'tis thought proper to add from him the most remarkable of what we don't find in other Authors.

HE says, the *Persian* Geographers represent their Empire by its ancient Boundaries, the *Black*, *Red*, *Caspian*, and *Persian* Seas, and the Rivers *Euphrates*, *Araxes*, *Tigris*, *Phasis*, *Oxus*, and *Indus*, because they still claim a Title to all the Countries within those Boundaries, and say, they want only such a King as *Abas the Great* to recover them. Its present Boundaries are from *Georgia* in Lat. 45. to Lat. 24. along the River *Indus*, and from Long. 77. near Mount *Ararat* on the W. to 112 on the Frontiers of *Tartary* and the *Indies* on the E. so that its Length is about 700 *French* Leagues, and its Breadth 450, i. e. 1400 *English* Miles long, and 900 broad. We have the more Reason to believe this, because Sir *John* travelled the Country himself, and is a Person of great Honour and Sense. The *Persian* Geographers reckon in their Empire 544 considerable Places, walled Cities, Towns and Castles, 60000 Villages, and Forty Millions of Souls. He says, the 12th Part of it is not inhabited nor cultivated, and that it is generally peopled about two Leagues round their great Towns, and afterwards desert for 20 Leag. more. It is worst inhabited in the S. Parts, because of their Scarcity of Water; and this, he says, proceeds from their Want of People to dig for it, since there's enough to be found in most Places under Ground. He ascribes the Decay of their People, 1. To the destroying and transplanting of 'em in the conquer'd Provinces. 2. To the unnatural Lust of both Sexes, their too early Vene-

ries, and excessive Number of Concubines. 3. Many of the Women make themselves miscarry, and take Things to occasion Barrenness, because their Husbands abstain from 'em when 3 Months gone with Child, and make use of their Concubines. 4. That abundance of 'em remove to the *Indies*, where they live more at Ease. 5. They leave vast Quantities of Ground desert on their Frontiers, to avoid Quarrels with their Neighbours about their Limits. To this we may add the unhealthful Air in many Places, occasion'd by excessive Heats, Colds, Droughts, or Rains. For the Diversity of their Climates, which we have touch'd already, we refer to the Book it self, and shall only add, that in many Places the Sky seems to be higher, and of another Colour than ours in *Europe*; and the Serenity of the Air occasions an unparallel'd Beauty and Durableness in all the Works of Art and Nature, has a mighty Influence upon the Constitution of their Bodies and Minds, and makes their Wine so spirituous, that it will evaporate, if the Bottles be not stopped with Roses, or some other Flowers. In the Middle of the Kingdom the Winter begins in *November*, and continues sharp and violent till *March*. The Snow falls in great Flakes on the Mountains 3 Days Journey from *Ispahan*, lies there 8 Months, and breeds white Worms as big as a Man's little Finger, which crawl very quick upon it, and when crush'd, issue a Moisture colder than Snow it self. From *March* to *May* they have strong Winds. From *May* to *September* the Air is serene, and refresh'd by Winds which

which blow in the Night, Evenings and Mornings. In the Summer the Nights are about 10 Hours long, and they have very little Twilight, which together moderates the Heat; so that it is better living at *Ispahan* in the Summer than at *Paris*. They are not much troubled with Thunders, Lightning, and Earthquakes, nor any Mercur's occasion'd by Vapours, because the Air in this Part of the Kingdom is very dry; but they have great Storms of Hail in the Spring, that do much Damage to their Corn. He owns, that in other Parts, especially in *Hircania*, they have very great Earthquakes; but in the Summer-Nights, they have Rays of Light which resemble Falling-Stars, that descend sometimes obliquely, and at other times in a direct Line resembling Rockets, attended with Smoak or black Vapours; and the Stars give so much Light, that Men travel and know one another with great Ease by Night.

He gives the following Account of their extraordinary Trees, Plants and Drugs. They reckon their Plane-Trees have a natural Vertue against the Plague, and all other Infections of the Air, and say, that *Ispahan* has suffer'd nothing that Way since they planted those Trees in their Gardens and Streets. The Trees that bear Incense resemble our great Pear-Trees, and grow chiefly in *Carmania Deserta*, tho' there are of them elsewhere. They have several Sorts of Manna, the best of which is yellowish, with large Grains, and grows mostly in *Nichapour*, a Province of *Bactriana*. Their Manna of *Tamarisk* drops from the Trees of that Name, and abounds in *Susiana* and on the *Persian* Gulph. They have a Liquid Sort which drops from the Leaves of other Trees about *Ispahan*, and in the Mornings the Ground under those Trees is cover'd with it. This is sweeter than the other Sorts, and us'd in Physick like the Manna of *Tamarisk*. They have two Sorts of dangerous Shrubs in *Carmania Deserta* towards the *Persian* Gulph; the one they call *Gulbad-Samour*, i. e. The Flower which poisons the Wind. It bears Fruit full of a sharp white Juice as thick as Cream, where there are many of those Shrubs. The Wind which passes through 'em kills those who are near it. The other is nam'd *Kerzehre*, which signifies the Gall or Poison

of an As, because it kills those Creatures, or others that eat of it, and the Water which falls from it is poisonous. The Trunk of it is as thick as a Man's Leg, and the Branches as a Man's Arm. The Bark is thick and green, the Leaves round, with a sharp Point at the End, and its Flowers like single Roses, of a Flesh Colour. He thinks it to be what the *Greeks* call *Rhododendron*, and the *Nerium* of the Herbalists. We mention'd it before, P. 349. They have also Cassia, Sena, abundance of Nux. Vomica, and Gum Ammoniack, which proceeds from a Plant that resembles the Stalk of an Artichoke. They have another Plant call'd *Livas*, not known in *Europe*, which resembles the *Spanish* Thistles. It has an agreeable sharp Taste, and is eaten raw during the Spring. The *Persians* call it Horse Rhubarb, and make use of it to purge those Creatures. Sir John thinks it to be the *Rubus Arabicus* of the Herbalists. He says, that the *Persian* Poppies yield more Juice than those of other Countries, and that the People who gather it look like dead Corps, are lean, livid, and affected with Trembling. They have Plenty of Tobacco, but their best is in *Carmania Deserta*, where it grows naturally without much Cultivation. They only dry the Leaves, and put them up in Boxes without sweating or twisting it, because that wou'd make it as strong as the Tobacco of *Brasil*, which they hate, tho' the *English* formerly vend'd a great deal of it in *Persia*; but the Inhabitants thinking it too strong and too dear, left it off. Sir John could not learn whether it grew originally here, or was first brought from Foreign Parts. They have the best Saffron in the World, especially near the *Caspian* Sea. Their Asa-Foetida drops from a Plant call'd *Hiltit*, suppos'd to be the *Lazerpithyrum* or *Silphium* of *Dioscorides*. It grows chiefly in *Sogdiana*. They eat the White, but esteem the Black most, which has a stronger Scent, and far exceeds that of Musk; so that the Rooms or Vessels into which they put it can never be cleared of the Smell, and they spoil and tarnish every Thing else which is put into 'em. They have Mummies of two Sorts; the first is the Petrification of embalm'd Corps buried in dry and burning Sand, some of which are found 7 or 8 Foot long.

The

The other is a precious Gum, which distils from Rocks, as we have mentioned already. That of *Carmania Deserta* is the best. The *Persians* say, that it cures all Wounds and Bruises, be they never so great, in 24 Hours. The Fountains from whence it distils are seal'd with 5 Seals of the chief Officers of the Province, open'd once a Year in the Presence of them and others, and sent to the King's Treasury, from whence it is dispens'd to those who have Interest to obtain it. The Word signifies Wax or Ointment; and the *Persians* say, the Preparation and Use of it was taught their Ancestors by the Prophet *Daniel*.

The remarkable Plants are, 1. *Hannah*, that yields a Grain with which they dye their Hands, Feet, and sometimes their Faces, to preserve their Complexion, for it hinders their Skins from being pierced by the excessive Heats and Colds, and for that Reason they rub the Horses Legs with it. It grows on a Shrub like Pepper or Juniper. The Leaves of it have the same Effect. They reduce them to Powder, and mix it with Water to the Consistency of Mortar, and rub themselves with it during the Night. They forbear washing for some Time after, and the Tincture lasts above 3 Weeks, when they renew it. Sir *John* thinks it to be the Shrub called *Pastel* in Europe. 2. *Rouna*, which he takes to be our *Opoponax*, that the *Indians* make use of in Dying. 3. There's another Shrub which he does not name, but says it is very curious. It bears a thick long Fruit of a green Colour, which being open'd, yields a Down as fine as Silk, which they card like Cotton. Sir *John* says, he had several Cushions and Quilts made of it.

Their Drugs are as follow: 1. The Bezoar Stone, so famous in Physick. It is tender, and grows in several Skins like Onions or Pearl. They find it in the Bodies of Bucks, Wild and Tame Goats, and Sheep, along the *Persian* Gulph. It is much better than that of the *Indies*. The *Persian* Naturalists say, the more those Beasts feed in dry Countries, and on dry Herbs, the Bezoar is the better. There's always a Piece of Wood in the Middle of those Stones, about which the Humour that forms them congeals. It yields 4 times the Price of the *Indian* Bezoar. They look on it to be a

Counter-Poison, give it to procure Sweat in the Purple-Fever, and use it in their Cordials, Confections, and Philters. The Eastern Physicians prescribe it in all dangerous Cases, and their Mountebanks extol its Vertues above all other Things; but it begins now to lose its Esteem. It is easily counterfeited; but the True is much lighter than the False, which is commonly made with *Spanish* Wax and Rosin. The best Way to try it is by a Piece of red-hot Iron applied to it; for if the Iron pierce it, or draw any Smoke from it, 'tis certainly Counterfeit. They have likewise Musk, which we have described in *Muscovy*. It is produced in *Persia* from an Imposthume in the Body of a Beast that resembles a Goat, and grows near their Navel. They rub it off against the Rocks and the Trees when they are hot. It is better than that of *China*. Sir *John*, who dealt much in it, says, the *Persians* use it to disperse Vapours, and to raise their amorous Inclinations, for which End both Sexes apply it to the *Pudenda*. The Scent of it is so strong, that it many times kills those who hunt the Beast when they first open the Bag, except they stop their Mouths and Noses with Linen. He was forced when he bought it to stand at a Window with a Handkerchief over his Face, at a Distance from those who sold it, and left the Tryal of it to his Broker. It is easily counterfeited; but the best Way to try it is by drawing a Thread dip'd in the Juice of Garlick thro' the Bag with a Needle, and if the Garlick loses its Scent, the Musk is good; but those who are expert discover the False by its Weight and Taste. They have abundance of Amber-greece, which one of their most learned Naturalists told Sir *John* was compos'd of Honey and Wax, wash'd down from Bee-hives on Trees and Rocks, and carried to the Sea by Rivers. He says, it has a very disagreeable Smell at first, which is corrected as it grows hard; and that there's a black Amber not so much valu'd, which proceeds from a coarser Sort of Honey.

Their Fruits. Sir *John* says, they have 20 Sorts of Melons; the first, called *Guermer*, come in the Spring, are small, insipid, and dissolve in one's Mouth like Water. Their Physicians advise the eating of 'em to purge 'em for 3 Weeks. The People eat

eat 10 or 12 Pound Weight of them *per* Day; yet others think they engender Phlegm, which the next Crop of Melons, that are as sweet as Sugar, turn into Bile, and occasion Fevers. The last Crop of Melons is the best, white, and scarce to be distinguish'd in Taste from Sugar. These they keep in Cellars all the Winter. The Melons last 4 Months, and, with Cucumbers, are most of the poor People's Food. Some of them eat 35 Pound Weight in a Day without Inconveniency; so that Sir John says, there are more Melons eat at *Ispahan* in one Day, than in all *France* in a Month. The best are in the Frontiers of *Little Tartary*, and brought for the King's Table above 30 Days Journey without spoiling. They have a Fruit call'd *Badinjan*, the *Zanthium* of *Dioscorides*, likewise call'd *Apples of Love*, which they make use of for Sauce. They grow like Cucumbers, and when ripe their Skin is black.

They have Peaches that weigh 16 and 18 Ounces apiece, and a Sort of Apricocks that are red within, very delicious, and their Kernels of an excellent Taste. When dry'd and boil'd in Water, they make a Syrrup as good as Sugar.

Sir John says, they have a Sort of Wood which serves them as well as our Flints for their Fire-Arms, and strikes Fire when one Piece is hit against another.

Among their Birds, he takes Notice of the Pelican. He says, it is as large as a Sheep, its Feathers white and soft, like those of a Swan. The Head is small in comparison of its Body, and its Bill 16 or 18 Inches long, and as thick as a Man's Arm. Under its Bill there's a Bag, which they can fold up or extend at Pleasure, and it is capable of holding a Pail of Water, from whence they call 'em Water-Carriers. It lives on Fish, and catches them by diving in the Streams. When it opens its Bill, 'tis wide enough to swallow a Lamb. They build their Nests at a great Distance from the Water, because they would not be disturbed; and they carry it in their Bags to their Young sometimes 3 or 4 Days Journey, which gave Occasion to the Fable of the Naturalists, That they open their Breasts, and feed their Young with the Blood; tho' 'tis true, they many times kill themselves by carrying Water to them so far. There's

another Sort of Bird, which they call, *The Water of Locusts* on this Account. There's a Fountain in *Bactria*, whose Water they covet so much, that they smell it, and follow it wherever 'tis carried; so that when any of the Provinces are infested with Locusts, the Inhabitants fetch this Water in open Vials, and holding them on high, these Birds fly after them to the Place where the Locusts are, which they soon devour. These Birds have black Feathers, large Wings, are as big as Pullets, their Flesh is black, and they always fly together in great Numbers. They have also Birds of Prey valued at 1500 Crowns apiece. They are brought from *Muscovy*, and none must have of them but their King. When he sends Ambassadors for them, if any of them die by the Way, they bring the Head and the Wings to his Majesty, who pays for them as if they were alive. They are as large as Eagles, build their Nests in the Snow, which, by the Heat of their Bodies, they melt down to the Ground sometimes a Fathom deep. When they hatch, and the young ones are ready to fly, the Dam pushes them before her thro' that Hole; and if they have not Strength enough to fly out, she stifles them as a degenerate Breed, says Sir John. With these Birds they hunt Cranes and other Fowls. They likewise use them to catch Hares and Rabbits, and all Sorts of Wild Beasts, except the Boars, which are so fierce, that they tear them in Pieces. If the Wild-Beast be large, they fly several of those Birds after him at once, and they teach some of them to hunt Men. They flap the Head of what they hunt with their Wings, and pick out its Eyes with their Bills. The *Persians* have little Drums at the fore Part of their Saddle, on which they beat to call in those Birds. They cover their Heads as we do those of our Hawks.

As to the Manners of the *Persians*, Sir John adds what follows, That they have two very contrary Habits, *viz.* to be continually praising God, and pretending to do every Thing in his Name, and at the same Time to give very foul Language to one another, speak reproachfully of their Wives, tho' they never saw them, or heard their Names, wish they may make them Cuckolds, and brutishly name their secret Parts.

The

The Women, when angry, call one another Atheists, Idolaters, Jews, Christians, and wish they may be eat by the Dogs of the *Franks*, which are better than they. He adds, that they take great Care in the Education of their Youth, and don't generally suffer them to appear in the World till after 20 Years of Age; so that when they come first abroad, they appear very modest, grave, and civil, in their Discourse and Behaviour; but are quickly corrupted by the Example of others. They are great Enemies to Travelling, think it Folly in the *Europeans* to travel to see Foreign Countries, and reckon it a Crime to entertain any Stranger, except they be under the Notion of Ambassadors or Merchants, for they reckon all others to be Spies. This occasions an extream Ignorance of the World among them; nor have they any Gazettes, Books of Geography, Maps, &c. to inform them of other Nations; so that their Ministers of State know no more of what passes in *Europe*, than what is done in the World of the Moon. Those that let Houses, will have the Rent every Night, for they know nothing of giving Credit to one another, except it be in Places of great Trade, where they trust for a Month. They have no Regard to Genealogy, Extraction or Titles, so that their Families have no Surnames; but sometimes they call themselves by the Name both of their Father and Son, as *Abou* the Son of *Japher*, and the Father of *Mahomet*; and the greatest of them think it no Disgrace to name themselves from the Trade of their Ancestors, as *Abraham* the Jeweller, and *Aly* the Taylor. As to Titles, their Footmen will call themselves *David* the Duke, and *Abraham* the Prince. But those who are really great Men, put those Titles before their Names, as Duke *David*, and Prince *Abraham*; and none put the Title of *Mirza* after their Names but the King's Sons, for the Word signifies, *The Son of a Prince*. When Word is brought them of the Birth of a Son, the Person that carries the News takes the Turban off from the Father's Head, and tells him, that he has a Male Infant: Upon which the Father strips himself, and gives the Messenger all his Clothes, or a Present to redeem them. Their Persons of Quality ruin themselves by their

numerous Retinue, having Servants of all Sorts, with the same Titles as the Kings; and when they make their Visits, they have always Led-Horses, and abundance of Servants. Sir *John* says, they have the greatest Dexterity of any People in the World in making Aqueducts, Canals, and Mines under Ground. He has curious Observations upon their Way of manuring the Land, for which we refer to him, and the like for their Artificers, Mechanicks, and Way of Trade. They make all their Payments in Silver, without mixing the several Species, and count their Money by Weight in Bags, which is very expeditious and sure.

He gives us a long Description of their Sciences, Schools, Colleges, Philosophy, and Religion, which we cannot insist on. He says, their Military Affairs are so much neglected by reason of the Luxury of the Court, that if it be not redressed, it will speedily ruin the Empire. He is very large on the Description of their Government and Offices, for which we refer to him. He reckons the K.'s Annual Revenue amounts to 32 Millions *French*, i. e. above Two Millions and a half Sterling, which, considering that his Army, and the Maintenance of his Household, costs him nothing, makes him the richest Prince in the World.

Sir *John* spends 84 Quarto Pages in the Description of *Ispahan*. The chief of what we have not said, or wherein he differs from others, is, 1. That 'tis one of the largest Cities in the World, and, with the Suburbs, is 12 *French* Leagues, or 24 Miles in Compass. The Inhabitants are by many reckon'd 1100000. They who reckon the least make them 600000. But all the Memoirs given him agree, that the Number of Houses is 38249, viz. 29469 within the City, and 8780 without; and upon the whole, he supposes *Ispahan* to contain as many People as *London*, which he owns to be the most populous City in *Europe*. But one Reason why *Ispahan* mayn't appear so populous, is, because all their Women are kept up, and none but those of the meaner Sort are ever allowed to go abroad about Business. 2. The River *Zenderoud* falls under Ground betwixt *Ispahan* and *Kirman*, where it rises again, and runs from thence into the *Indian* Sea. 3. There's another River call'd *Mahmoudker*, join'd to it by

Art, which flows from a Lake that lies betwixt rocky Mountains, which have natural Cavities for the Passage of the Winds. This River in several Places runs across Mountains; and among others, there's a round Passage as big as 4 Tuns, thro' which the River runs like a Pipe, and falls into a large deep Basin made by Nature or Art, and from thence it runs thro' the Plain to that of *Zenderoud*. The Lake from whence this River proceeds is so deep, that it cannot be founded. 'Tis suppos'd to come from Snow, which melts on the Mountains, because the Water is sharp upon the Tongue, and does not quench Thirst. 4. The Design of bringing the River *Abkurren* to join that of *Zenderoud*, by digging thro' the Foots of the Mountains which divide them, miscarried, partly by the sulphurous Vapours which killed the Workmen, and partly by the great Frosts and Snow, which demolished their Works during the Winter. 5. The Walls of the City are about 20 Miles round, but cover'd in so many Places with Houses and Gardens, that they are not to be discerned, which has occasioned the Mistake of several *European* Travellers, who say, that this and the other Cities of *Persia* have no Walls, for there are few of them without; but they are hid as above, generally of Earth, and ill kept. 6. The chief Beauty of *Ispahan* consists in its great Number of magnificent Palaces, pleasant Houses, spacious Caravan-sera's, fine Bazars, Canals, and those Streets which are planted with high Plane-Trees on both Sides. Sir *John* liv'd 10 Years in this City, and came to an exact Knowledge of it by being the King of *Persia*'s Merchant, which gave him Access to all Persons of Quality. He likewise contracted a Friendship with the chief Man of the *Dutch* Factory, who was a Person of great Learning, and join'd with him in the Charge of procuring an exact Information of this City and the whole Kingdom, in which they employ'd the ablest *Persian* Priests. 7. The King has in the City 32 Houses for Artificers of all Sorts, whose Entertainment costs him 5 Millions of *French* Money per *Annum*. They are never turn'd off, and their Sons succeed if they be of the same Employment. 8. In the Great Meidan there are above 50000 Lamps, which being

lighted on solemn Occasions, make the noblest Illumination in the World, there being about 120 at each Arch. The most universal Market or Fair in the World is kept here. 9. The Royal Mosque on the S. Side of it is one of the richest Structures in the whole World, of marvellous Architecture, adorned with Niches of 1000 Sorts of Figures, beautified with Gold and Azure, the finest Marble, Jasper, &c. and has large Courts, with Piazza's round them, supported by Marble Pillars, and there are Fountains fac'd with Jasper. Over the Portico in the Middle is a Dome of the best modern Architecture in *Persia*. 'Tis seen at 4 Leagues Distance, and pav'd and lin'd with Jasper. In this Mosque is kept the bloody Shirt in which they say *Hussens* was kill'd. This the *Persians* keep with the utmost Care, their Priests making them believe, that when their Kingdom is reduc'd to the greatest Danger, the bare exposing of this Shirt will put their Enemies to Flight. There are many Vaults under it, whither the People retire during the Heats of Summer. Its Revenue is about 5000 *l.* Sterling per *Annum*. The noblest Entrance into this Meidan is that call'd the *Imperial Market*, in Form of a Half-Moon, over which there's a Dome, adorn'd with Tiles of China, painted after the *Arabian* Manner, and the Floors and Walls laid with Jasper and Porphyry, upon which there are Representations of Battles, and several other Things. We cannot insist upon the Bazars and the adjoining Caravan-sera's. 10. That the King himself has no Power to seize any Criminal who enters within the Gate of the Palace call'd *Aly's*; so that the only Way he has to be reveng'd on them, if Criminals of State, is to forbid giving them Meat and Drink, which forces them to quit the Sanctuary. The King himself kisses the Threshold of this Gate with great Ceremony, and never passes by it on Horseback. The *Sophi's* who have the Guard of this Sanctuary make great Profit of it, by squeezing Money from Bankrupts and Criminals who retire hither. 11. The Palace is a League and a half in Circuit. The chief Pile of it is of Mosaick Work, supported by 18 Pillars of 30 Foot high, turn'd and gilt. It has several Apartments. The Walls are fac'd with white Marble,

3
painted

painted and gilt half-way up, and the rest lin'd with Chrystal of several Colours. In the Middle of the great Hall there are three Basins of white Marble above one another, which lessen by Degrees, and the King's Throne stands in an Alcove about 12 Paces long, and 8 broad. There are fine Paintings in the Hall, some of them representing Battles, and others lascivious Postures. There are Curtains all round of flower'd Cloth of Gold, which they draw on the Side where the Sun enters, and extend in Form of a Tent, which makes the Hall very cool. The Walls of the Seraglio are higher than those of any Monastery in *Europe*, and it has large pleasant Gardens, with Ponds and Water-works belonging to them; and Barges in the Ponds for the Use of the Ladies. Sir *John* has a large Description of the several Bazzars and Caravansera's in this City, for which we refer to him.

He saw a Rhinoceros in the King's Stables, and describes it thus, in Opposition to a false Account of that Animal in a Book call'd, *A Relation of the Dutch Embassy to China*. He says, 'tis as large as an ordinary Ox: Its Skin of a dark-brown Colour, like the Elephants, but more rough and thick, so that there's no discerning its Joints. All but the Head and Neck, is full of little Knots, so like Tortoise-shells both in Form and Colour, that one would think it cover'd with them. There are 5 thick large Folds in the Skin, beside that along its Neck and below its Ears, resembling a Ruff hanging round it. One of those Folds covers the Shoulders as far as its Belly, another its Belly and Back; and the other three cover its Hips, but lie long-ways, as the others do a-cross. The Horn of this Animal, which is the most wonderful Part of it, is of the Form and Size of a Sugar-Loaf of two Pound Weight. 'Tis of a greyish brown Colour, as is the Skin of its Head, as far as above the Nostrils. Its Muzzle is turned like an Eagle's Beck, but the upper Lip flat and large.

It has only 4 Teeth, two above and two below, at the Extremities of its Jaws. Its Tongue is sharp and thick; its Eyes very low, almost equal with its Lips: Its Tail

is about a Foot long, small, and consists of 8 or 10 Joints. Its Legs are short and thick, and its Feet divided each into three Parts, the two before cover'd with Horn, and the 3d behind with a Scale. The *Dutch Embassy to China* says, 'tis an irreconcilable Enemy to the Elephant; but Sir *John* says the contrary; for there were two Elephants in the same Stable with this Beast, and he saw them several times very near one another without shewing the least Antipathy. It was the Present of an *Ethiopian* Ambassador. He says, that the Story of the *Indian* Princes drinking out of its Horn is false; but whether it discovers Poison by Sweating, which they give as the Reason of it, be true, he cannot say, because he never saw the Experiment.

Sir *John* says, there goes the following Story of a certain Cocker in this City: As his Wife was one Day washing her Linen in a Canal near his Stall, she perceiv'd, that all on a sudden the Water stopped and grew thick. She believ'd at first 'twas only occasion'd by some Pieces of Earth falling off from the Sides of the Canal under Water, (for Sir *John* says, these Canals are made of nothing but Earth;) whereupon she call'd her Husband to help her to clear the Current. The Cocker enters the Canal, and was joyfully surpris'd, as he was forcing back the Soil that stopped the Stream, to find some Pieces of Gold, (for there had been 4 great Urns full just cast into that very Place.) The Cocker and his Wife at several Times carried off as much as they had a mind to, laid it out very liberally, and amongst the rest bought a Garden, which goes by his Name to this Day. But this Abundance soon spoil'd their Conjugal Affection, for they quarrel'd, and afterwards came to Blows. The Woman being none of the strongest, went in a Rage, and told all to the Great Provost, who caus'd both her and her Husband to be committed to Prison, where they were kept a long while, made to confess all that they knew, and deliver up what they had left, and at length released to follow their former Employ.

Amongst other magnificent Buildings of this City, Sir *John* takes Notice of a Palace built by the chief Physician of Sultan *Mellicha*, who promoted him to great Honours
E e e upon

upon this Account. The Sultan had a Bone stuck in his Throat, which he could neither get up nor down, so that he endur'd a great deal of Misery, and must have died if he had not been speedily deliver'd. Those of the best Fame for Surgery, as well as his Chief Physician, try'd what they could do, but all to no Purpose, till the latter made use of the following Stratagem: The Sultan was at this Time in the Field under his Tent, and his Son with him, only separated by a Curtain. The Physician enters at Day-break into the King's Tent with a drawn Sword, all in a Fury, and runs to his Son, who being terrified, cry'd out. The Physician rushes upon him, and very dextrously thrusts his Sword into a little Gut full of Blood, which he kept conceal'd in the other Hand, with which he besmear'd himself and the Youth. The Father running presently at the Noise, and seeing the Blood, imagin'd that his Child was killed, and gave such a violent Shriek, as forced the Bone out of his Throat.

Sir John says, the Tower of Beasts Horns, already described P. 373, stands in the Middle of a Square, surrounded with Shops of the Height of 3 Foot from the Ground. He says, 'tis about 20 Foot in Circumference above the Pedestal, and about 60 in Height. History relates, says he, that it was built during a Feast, that is to say, in the Space of 7 or 8 Hours; and that the Architect coming to tell the King that the Tower was rais'd, and all the Heads used, but that there wanted one of some great Beast for the Top, the King, being pretty well heated in Liquor, answer'd him, That he knew not at present where to meet with a greater Beast than himself, and order'd his Head to be cut off to finish the Work.

Sir John says, there's about 1000 People nam'd *Kaulys* scatter'd in the Suburbs, one of the most villanous Races of Men that ever was heard of. The *Persian* Priests give the following Account of their Origine: *Abraham*, refusing to worship the Fire at the Command of *Nimrod*, that Tyrant order'd him to be burnt on a great Pile of Wood; but his Men could never set it on Fire. *Nimrod* demanding the Reason, his Priests told him, There was an Angel sat on the

Top of the Pile, and prevented it. He ask'd, If there was no Way to chase the Angel from thence? They answer'd, That the only Way was to order some abominable Crime to be committed in the Sight of the Angel, which would force him to retire. Upon this, *Nimrod* commanded a Fellow named *Kau* to commit Incest with his Sister call'd *Ly*, from whence they derive the Origine of this cursed People. They add however, that the Angel continu'd on the Pile; so that *Nimrod* finding it impossible to put *Abraham* to Death, order'd him to quit his Dominions. However fabulous the Origine of this People be, Sir John says, they are such a lazy nasty Race, that the very Sight of them is enough to turn a Man's Stomach. They live in Idleness, lie basking all Day in the Sun, go a robbing by Night, and live without any Sense of Religion, Order, or Form of Worship, couple promiscuously like Brutes, without any Regard to Kindred, and are so ignorant, that when they are called before a Magistrate for their Crimes, they can't give a sensible Answer, nor any Account of their Actions.

Sir John gives a large Description of the Fortrefs of *Ispahan*, and the Treasures contain'd in it, and says, there's no Place in the World where so much Riches is gather'd together. He obtain'd a Sight of them by a particular Favour, when the King was to shew them to his Ladies. The Number of Precious Stones, the Quantity of Gold Plate, and of Arms of all Sorts, set with the richest Jewels, is incredible; so that in the whole they amount to many Millions; but we must refer to himself for the Particulars. The Doors and Windows are fortified with Bars of Iron, and there are Guards continually kept to prevent the stealing of any Thing, as happen'd in 1666, when three Persons of Note found Means to get into it, and stole so many Jewels, that they liv'd at an excessive Rate. The Discovery was occasion'd by one of them who offer'd to sell the Hilt of a Dagger, worth 30000 Crowns, to an *Indian Jeweller* for 8000; upon which he was apprehended, and discover'd his Accomplices, who were thereupon punish'd.

The great Mosque or Cathedral is the largest and most magnificent in *Persia*, of a square Form, with abundance of Domes, and takes up above 4 Acres of Ground. 'Tis cover'd without and within with enamell'd Tiles, and Bricks painted *a la Moresque*, with lively shining Colours, and the Walls for 8 Foot high are lin'd with curious wav'd Porphyry. Before it there's a spacious Court, with Cloysters all round, supported by large Pillars of the same Workmanship. It has many high Towers, 7 principal Gates, is very ancient, and the Work of several Kings. It has several large Fountains of Water for their Purifications. *Abas the Great* would have spoil'd it of its Ornaments to embellish the Royal Mosque which he built; but the Inhabitants would not suffer him. The Place where it stands is called the Quarter of *Hoffeni*, who pretended to be the Posterity of *Husseini*, *Aly's* Son, and therefore call'd all his Children Kings, which did so much provoke *Abas the Great*, in whose Time he liv'd, that he design'd to have cut him off; but was prevented by the Priests, who came in a Body, throwing their Turbans in the Air, and putting Earth on their Heads, with Tears and Cries, begging that he would not shed the Blood of one descended from their holy Prophet. This pleas'd the King for a Time, but it occasion'd the Ruin of *Hoffeni's* Family at last; for this Man was so insolent, that having one of the finest and swiftest Asses in the Kingdom, he refus'd it the King when he sent for it, and told him he was not worthy to mount his Ass.

Sir John gives a large Description of the noble Alley or Walk of *Tcheharbag* formerly mentioned, which he says is the finest that ever he saw or heard of; and that *Abas* saw every one of the Trees in it planted himself, and put under each of them a Piece of Gold of about 14 s. Value, and a Piece of Silver of 18 d. He gives likewise a Perspective of both Sides of the noble Bridge over the River at the End of this Alley, says it is supported by 34 Arches of grey Stone, more durable than Marble, and that there are 8 Passages over the River by this Bridge. He gives an Account of several Inscriptions upon the Pavilions in the King's Gardens, which contain such refin'd Morality, so

much Contempt of the World, and such an entire Submission to the Will of God, as may put most Christians to the Blush to see themselves exceeded by *Mahometans* in their Contemplations, tho' the Alcoran, the Rule of their Faith and Manners, is so foolish and impure; whereas ours is Divinely inspired. We cannot insist on the noble and rich Apartments in those Pavilions, and on the Beauty of the Gardens, where they have several Trees which the *Mahometans* reckon sacred for their Antiquity, lay sick Persons under them to recover their Health, and their Priests perform their Devotions under them.

He takes Notice of a noble Palace belonging to *Rezi*, one of the Princes of the Blood Royal, who, tho' made blind according to the barbarous Custom of the *Persian* Court, is very well vers'd in the Mathematicks and Astronomy, draws Schemes and Figures with wonderful Dexterity, and by the meer Touch of his Fingers is able to discover whether the Workmanship of a Watch and other Things be good, and to distinguish the Course from the Time, which *Sir John* found by Experience, and saw him perform several Operations in Mathematicks and Astronomy upon a Table laid before him.

Sir John gives us an Instance to prove the vast Trade of this City, which seems equally incredible, *viz.* that an Inhabitant gain'd a Million *French* by letting out Tents to those who retail'd Things in the Markets, at a Halfpenny a Day *per* Tent; and of a Jeweller here, who was so rich that he built a large Palace, with noble Apartments, and furnish'd it so richly, that it was fit to entertain the greatest Prince. He travelled into the Mogul's Country, where he purchas'd above 700000 Livres worth of the richest *Indian* Stuffs; and among other Things, three Diamonds worth 500000 Livres; and dying by the Way, left his Son above Two Millions.

Our Author informs us concerning the *Holstein* Ambassadors, we have had Occasion to mention so frequently, what we have not met with elsewhere; That the Reason of their Embassy was the Project of a *Hamburg* Merchant called *Brugman*, who was Chief of the Embassy, to carry on a Trade with

Persian Silks by the Way of Muscovy; and that the Merchants of *Hamburg* engag'd the Duke of *Holstein* in it for the greater Authority: But when they came there, they found the Profit would not answer the Expence; therefore they pretended they came on a politick Account, and to engage the *Persians* in a War with the *Turks*, but with so much Confusion, that the King perceiv'd it, and express'd his Desire to know the real Cause of their coming, because he was willing to oblige them: But being unwilling to explain themselves, and to discover their Weakness, they still insisted on a War against the *Turks*; and to make that seem to be the real Design, desired the King when they came away to put the Interpreters they had made use of in close Prison. While they were there, they had a very unfortunate Rencontre with a great Ambassador from the *Indies*, on the following Occasion: An *Indian* of his Retinue perceiving a *German* of theirs at their Gate with a Hat on his Head, he did so much wonder at it, that he gazed on the *German* a long while. The *German* made Signs to him to withdraw, which the poor *Indian* not understanding, but continuing to gaze, the brutish *German* shot him dead with a Pistol. The *Indian* Ambassador demanded the Murderer to be deliver'd up to him, which the *Holsteiners* refusing, they came to Blows, and many Men were killed on both Sides. The Privileges of Ambassadors being great in *Persia*, the King sent Troops to keep the Peace, offer'd his Mediation, and oblig'd the *Indians* to retire from the Palace of the *Holsteiners*, which they had attack'd, and where a *Scotch* Serjeant of the *Holstein* Retinue had done great Execution among the *Indians*, but was at last killed by one of their Arrows. The *Indians* afterwards renew'd the Attack with 8000 of their Countrymen, surpriz'd the House when the Ambassadors and most of the Retinue were absent, and pillag'd it in an Instant; which oblig'd the *Holsteiners* to be more upon their Guard, and to keep Gunners constantly with Cannon at their Gate, the Noise of which frighten'd the *Indians*. When *Brugman* return'd to *Hamburg*, he was beheaded on Pretence of his ill Behaviour in *Persia*, which was brutish enough; but the true

Cause was his engaging the *Hamburghers* and the Duke of *Holstein* in such a foolish Enterprize.

Sir *John* says, the Palace of *Ispahan*, with its Gardens, is above a League in Compass, and is divided into two Quarters by the River, over which there's a Bridge of Communication. The Suburb of *Julpha*, he says, is the largest of its Kind in the World, contains about 4000 Houses, many of which are magnificent, and richly painted and gilt. The *Armenians* grew so rich there by the Favour of *Abas the Great*, that they had several Merchants worth 2 or 3 Millions a-piece: But since his Time, they have been much oppress'd by severe Taxes; yet there are Merchants among them still worth a Million of Livres. That great Prince, to encourage their Trade, for which he found them very well qualified, advanc'd them Stocks out of his own Treasury, which they improv'd to his vast Advantage as well as their own; but his Successors have not follow'd those wise Measures. Sir *John* gives this summary Account of the City, That it contains 162 Mosques, 48 Colleges, 1802 Caravansera's, 273 Baths, and 12 large Burying-places within the Walls.

Sir *John* says, the Province of *Fars*, which is the 2d in Dignity, but the greatest and most fruitful in the Kingdom, is as large as all *France*, being 150 *Persian* Leagues in Length, and 120 in Breadth, but anciently of a much larger Extent.

He gives a larger Account of the Ruins of *Persopolis*, and more Draughts of them, than any Author has hitherto done. He says, the Avenues to it are so naturally fortified by high Rocks, that he never saw any so secure in the World. There were anciently strong Castles and Guards in those Avenues, which made the Town almost inaccessible. He gives us very distinct Draughts of the Processions mention'd by *Herbert* and others, cut out upon the Rocks near this admirable Structure, with his Conjectures about the Meaning of 'em, and agrees, that they represent a Sacrifice. We refer the Curious to himself for the Particulars. He's of Opinion, that the noble Structure, of which the magnificent Ruins are still to be seen, was a Temple. The Plain in which this ancient City stood is

one of the finest in the World, betwixt 18 and 19 Leagues long, and in some Places 6 Leagues, and in others 2 or 3 broad. It produces the best Wines, and breeds the best Horses in *Persia*. 'Tis water'd by the *Araxes*, another lesser River, and a Multitude of Brooks. The Situation of the Town has been the most pleasant and magnificent in the World. He says, 'tis impossible to give a sufficient Idea of the Grandeur and Magnificence of the Temple by Cuts, because they exceed all Expression. He supposes it to have been the Workmanship of many Thousands of Men for a great Number of Years; that it is a Master-piece, and contains all that could be perform'd by Art and Industry; so that it appears to be the greatest Design that ever was invented by Architects. He differs from those who think it to have been the Palace destroy'd by *Alexander*, and supposes that stood elsewhere. The *Persians* ascribe it to Devils, because they think it exceeds all Humane Power. They tell many Fables about it, and say, Dæmons built it at the Command of *Solomon*. They alledge, it was built before the Deluge. Sir *John* thinks 'tis very ancient, and that 'twas founded by the 4th K. of *Persia*, called *Jamked*, about the Time when *Jacob* went down to *Egypt*. The *Persian* and *Arabian* Historians say, the Town was 12 Leagues long, 4 broad, was 300 Years a building, the most powerful, large, and rich Town, and even the Capital of the World. He gives us exact Copies of the ancient Inscriptions and Figures about the Ruins of the Temple, which are not now to be understood even by the *Guebres*, who are the Remains of the ancient *Persians*; but he thinks they were engrav'd at several Times by Order of their ancient Princes and Priests, to preserve the Memory of remarkable Victories, &c. Some of them are in ancient *Syriack*, and others in *Greek*; but the latter he supposes to be modern, about the Declension of the *Grecian* Empire, because they are very ill done. There are abundance of subterranean Passages of vast Extent, which Sir *John* thinks had a Communication with that call'd, *The Mountain of Sepulchres*, at 2 Leagues Distance. Sir *John* went a quarter of a League into one of those Passages, attended by his Servants

with Torches and Candles, and was forced to leave Men at the several Turnings, which look'd like a Labyrinth, otherwise he could not have found his Way back. He went so far, that his Men's Courage fail'd them, and that he found a Difficulty to breath, which obliged him to return without seeing the Sepulchre that *Della Valle* found there, tho' he supposes it may be true; for there are so many Turnings, that 'tis scarce possible for any Man to find them all. The People of the Country say, one of those Passages is 6 Leagues in Length, and fancy there are vast Treasures hid there, which several People have endeavour'd to search for, but never return'd to give any Account of them, except one of the King's Farmers, who found Gold enough there to pay Part of his Debts; but lost his Life in a second Attempt to get more. Sir *John* gives a large Description of the *Mountain of Sepulchres*, with a Cut of it, and of the Monuments engraven upon it. He got two of his Servants to climb up to one of 'em, who were frighten'd out of their Wits when they enter'd, being almost stifled by vast Numbers of Pigeons which flew out at the Passage, and the Eccho resounded from the Noise of their Wings as they came out of the Cave resembled Thunder, and they were not able to stay in the Place because of the offensive Smell; so that they only measur'd some Tombs in the Vault, and came down again. Sir *John* adds, That several of the brutish Viziers there have destroy'd abundance of fine Monuments, partly out of their Hatred to Images, and partly to prevent the Expence they were at for the Charge of *European* Ambassadors, and others of Quality, who went to see 'em, till the King forbid the destroying any more, because he reckon'd such Monuments of Antiquity one of the Glories of his Country.

Sir *John*, in his Description of *Lar, Bander-Abassi*, &c. gives an Account of the Worms which breed in the Bodies of such as drink their bad Water. The Patient is not sensible of 'em till they are ready to come out. The Symptoms are, first, an extraordinary Itching in the Place, next an Inflammation, and then a Swelling. After which, the Worm issues, no bigger than the smallest

smallest String of a Violin. The Inhabitants fasten the End of it with Silk about a small Piece of Wood, and turn it round as it comes out. They lay the Part so turn'd round upon the Sore, with the Skin of an Onion over it, to ripen the Tumour, and make the Passage easy for the remaining Part, and turn it round every Morning very softly, for fear of breaking the Worm, which proves fatal to the Patient, occasions Vomiting and a Fever, follow'd by Death, except the rest of the Worm come out, which they endeavour to procure by Purgatives and Cordials. Sir John says, these Worms are bred in the Cisterns by the excessive Heat of the Sun, which corrupts the Water.

He tells us likewise, that the Inhabitants preserve the Rain-Water in those Countries by burying Earthen Pots, 30 or 40 together, 2 Foot under Ground; and when the Winter Rains are towards an End, and the Earth over the Pots purified of its Salt by the Rain, they open the Mouths of the Pots,

cover them again with Earth when they are full, and the Water they save thus is very good. They cover those Pots with so much Art, that none but themselves know where to find them.

He informs us, That the Governors of those Countries prey upon the poor *Indian* Heathens, who dwell there in considerable Numbers, by threatening to kill their Cows for Entertainments, or to sacrifice them during the Droughth of Summer to procure Rain, which occasions those foolish Wretches to think Cows to be sacred Creatures, to flock about the Governor with Cries and Tears not to do it; and to redeem them, they pay 500 or 1000 Crowns at a Time, according to their Ability.

Sir John promises a History and Geography of *Persia*. We shall take Notice of what is remarkable in them by Way of Supplement, if they come out before we have finish'd this Work.



SCYTHIA
et
TARTARIA
ASIATICA

C H A P. VII.

G R E A T T A R T A R Y,

IS so call'd to distinguish it from *Little Tartary* in *Europe*, where we described it. *Sanfon* says, it takes up the most Northern Part of *Asia*, and lies W. and E. from the Rivers *Volga* and *Oby*, which separate it from *Europe* as far as the Streight of *Jesso*, which parts it from *America*, and S. to N. from the *Caspian Sea*, the River *Gehon*, and the Mountains of *Caucasus* and *Ussontes*, which separate it from the most Southerly Parts of *Asia*; as far as the Northern, Icy, or *Scythian Ocean*; so that its Length is from the 90th to beyond the 180th Deg. of Long. which is the Half of our Hemisphere, and its Breadth from the 35th or 40th to the 70th or 72d of Lat. which is half the Breadth of all *Asia*. He reckons its Length from E. to W. 1500 Leagues, and from S. to N. 7 or 800. *Boussingault* reckons it 2900 Leagues from E. to W. and 800 from S. to N. *Monf. de Lisle* agrees with *Sanfon* in its Length from E. to W. but makes it much broader from S. to N. *Witsen* makes it 3000 Geometrical Miles from E. to W. and about 2220 where broadest from S. to N. He places it betwixt Long. 83. and 170. and Lat. 40. and 80. and *Moll* the like, and from Long. 77. to 170. *Luyts* places it within the 70th and the 170th Deg. of Long. excluding *Muscovite Tartary*, and between Lat. 40. and 72. *Sanfon* places it almost entirely under the Temperate Zone; but its most Southerly Parts being in the Middle of that Temperate Zone, and bounded by very high Mountains, which exclude much of the Heat, and the rest stretching to the Cold or Frozen Zone, the Nature of the Climate in general is more cold than temperate.

It is bounded by the *Muscovites* on the W. the *Persians*, *Indians* or *Moguls*, and *Chinese*, on the S. The rest is wash'd by the Sea, of

which we have very little Knowledge, some placing on the E. the Streights of *Anian*, which they say separate it from *America*, and others the Streights of *Jesso*, which divide it from the Land or Island of that Name, which lies between *Asia* and *America*, and Authors differ as to the N. Sea.

Mallet says, it comprehended anciently Part of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, all *Scythia Asiatica*, and the Country of *Serica*.

The ancient Geography of Tartary in general.

Cellarinus says, That *Scythæ* was the Name of all the Northern People, but especially in the N. of *Asia*; for tho' there were *Scythians* in *Europe*, whom *Pliny* bounds with the *Dardani*, *Triballi*, *Mæsi*, and *Thracians*, yet these are oftner called *Getae*, and more frequently *Sarmatæ*; whereas the Northern *Asiatics* are for most Part called *Scythæ*. *Mela* joins *Sarmatia* to *Germany*, from which he separates it by the River *Vistula*, and says, the *Scythians* inhabited the Frontiers of *Asia*, except where continual Snow and insupportable Cold made it uninhabitable. *Pliny* says, the *Sarmatæ* and *Germans* were call'd *Scythæ*, and that the People of the hither Parts of *Asia* were likewise called *Sarmatæ*. *Scylax* begins *Asia* at the River *Tanais*, and says, its first Inhabitants in the Country of *Pontus*, or about the *Black Sea*, were the *Sauromatæ*, the same with the *Sarmatæ*. *Cellarius* begins *Scythia Asiatica* at the *Bosphorus Cimmerius*, *Palus Mæotis*, *Tanais*, and extends it betwixt the Northern Ocean, the *Euxine Sea*, the *Hyrcanian Sea*, the River *Jaxartes*, the *Indian Mountains*, and as far E. as the Country of the *Seres*; so that its Boundaries were not every where known,

but

but either touch'd the N. Sea, or some unknown Land; and if we include the Country of the *Seres* with *Ptolomy*, it was also bounded on the E. with an unknown Country. *Cellarius* divides it into 3 Parts, viz. *Sarmatia Asiatica*, which reach'd from the *Palus Maotis* and the Mouth of the *Tanais* to Part of the *Caspian Sea* and the River *Rha*, now *Volga*, according to *Ptolomy*. From thence to the Top of Mount *Imaus* was called *Scythia intra Imaum*, and beyond it *Scythia extra Imaum*. E. of which lay *Serica*, as far as the *Terra Incognita*.

The *Sarmatia Asiatica* we have already described, with Part of *Scythia intra Imaum*, P. 219, &c.

Scythia intra Imaum.

Cellarius says, it reach'd from the River *Rha* or *Volga*, N. of the *Caspian Sea*, the River *Jaxartes*, and the Mountains of *India*, as far as Mount *Imaus*, and Northward to the *Hyperborean Ocean*, or at least the *Terra Incognita*, N. of the *Hyperborei*, *Alani*, *Syebi*, and *Anarei Montes*. Mount *Imaus* parted *Hither India* from *Scythia*, and then running Northward by a long Tract, divided it into *Scythia intra & extra Imaum*. The other Mountains in this Country, Southward from those already mention'd, were, 1. The *Rhymnici*, *Aspisii*, and *Tapuri*, which run thro' the Middle of the Country, and the Inhabitants were called by the respective Names of the Mountains among which they dwelt; but being a wandering People, 'tis not possible to fix their Habitations, for we find them sometime in one Place, and sometime in another, both of *Asia* and the adjoining Parts of *Europe*, so that we shall only name them as we find them in *Cellarius's* Map of *Scythia* and *Serica*: 1. The *Hyperborei*; 2. *Mologeni*; 3. *Sassones*; 4. *Syebi*; 5. *Anthropophagi*, lay N. on the Frontiers of *Terra Incognita* from W. to E.

1. The *Sammitæ*; 2. *Tibiacæ*; 3. *Jastæ*; 4. *Machageni*; 5. *Coraxi*; 6. *Orgasi*; 7. *Jotæ*; 8. *Asiotæ*; 9. *Aorsi*; 10. *Orosbes*, lay betwixt the *Terra Incognita* and the *Caspian Sea*.

1. *Alani*; 2. *Zaretæ*; 3. *Aspisii*; 4. *Norossi*; and, 5. *Jaxartæ*, lay betwixt the *Ala-*

ni Montes and the River of *Jaxartes*. In the Middle of the Country lay, 1. The *Tabeni*; 2. *Galactophagi*; 3. *Scythæ*; 4. *Massagetæ* and *Dæ*. In the E. Part lay, 1. The *Anarei*; 2. *Tapurei*; 3. *Ascataneæ*; 4. *Sacæ*; 5. *Abii-Scythæ*; and, 6. *Hippophagi*, besides others already mention'd in *Sarmatia Asiatica*.

Scythia extra Imaum,

HAD Mount *Imaus* on the W. the *Terra Incognita* on the N. *Serica* on the E. and *India extra Gangem* on the S. from which it was divided by *Mons Emodus*, to which *Mons Sericus* joins on the E. The Inhabitants were, 1. The *Anibi*, who liv'd about the Mountains of that Name in the N. 2. The *Sizyges*, betwixt them and the *Auzacii Montes*; 3. *Damæ*; 4. *Oechardæ*; 5. *Issedones*, who lay S. near the *Casii Montes*. The chief Rivers were *Oechardys* and *Bautes*, which both run into a Bay of the Eastern Ocean. There were several Towns in this Country, but we have no Description of them. *Curtius* mentions the *Abii Scythæ's* sending Ambassadors to *Alexander*, and gives them the Character of a very just People.

Serica, or the Country of the Seres,

LAY E. from *Scythia extra Imaum*. *Ptolomy* commends them for being skilful in the Woollen Manufacture. On the E. and N. they had the *Terra Incognita*, and on the S. Part of *India extra Gangem*; so that the Country seems to answer to the N. Part of *China* or *Cathay*; but Authors differ very much about the Situation of those People. *Ptolomy* mentions several Towns of this Country, of which we have no Description.

Cluverius and others derive the Name of *Tartars* from the River *Tattar*, which runs thro' the Country of *Mongul* into the N. Sea. *Reiskius* upon *Cluverius* says, the Name begun to grow famous in the *Arabian*, *Grecian*, and *Latin* Histories, about the Year 930; that it was first appropriated to a particular People of the *Moguls*, and afterwards communicated to the rest of the *Scythian* Nations both in *Asia* and *Europe*. *Cluverius*

takes Notice, that some fabulouſly derive the German Saxons from the *Saffones* above-mentioned in this Country. He ſays, the *Maſſagetae* were the nobleſt Nation of the *Scythians*.

The chief Rivers of *Scythia* were, 1. The *Oby*, deſcribed already in *Europe*, P. 165. 2. *Paropamiſus*, which *Buno* ſays has its Riſe in a Mountain of the ſame Name, where the *Indus* alſo has its Source, and that it lies in *Scythia extra Imaum*. 3. *Jaxartes*, ſo called by the *Bactri*; but the other *Scythians* call it *Silyſ*. This was miſtaken by *Alexander's* Army for the *Tanaïs*. *Cellarius* ſays, it riſes in the Country of the *Maſſagetae* or *Dae*, and runs Weſtward into the *Caspian* Sea. 4. The *Volga*, which we have already deſcribed.

The chief Mountain was *Imaus*. *Cluverius* ſays, the N. Part of it is now called *Alkai*, where the Emperors of the *Tartars* have their Sepulchres; and that from thence to the Fountains of the *Ganges* and the Borders of *India*, 'tis extended 450 German Miles. *Reiskius* ſays, it runs 4 Ways like a Croſs, and in a Manner divides *Scythia*. *Cluverius* ſays, the *Seres* were a very famous People, and *Buno* thinks they were the firſt who made uſe of Silk, which is the Opinion of *Polydore Virgil* in his Book *De Rerum Inventione*. The *Chineſe* are ſuppoſ'd to derive their Origine from them, they being the moſt polite and mild of all the *Scythian* Nations, a juſt People, and much given to the Study of Nature. They pretend to have a Hiſtory of above 4500 Years, and Writers ancienter than *Moſes*; ſo that *Iſaac Voſſius* laid the Foundations of his new Chronology upon theirs, which *Reiskius* thinks to be very falſe and weak.

Their ancient Hiſtory and Character.

Cluverius ſays, the *Scythians* were the moſt numerous People in the whole World, and reach'd from Lower *Aſia* in Europe to the Promontory *Tabis* and the Streights of *Anian* in *Aſia*, which he reckons 1000 German Leagues in Length, and from Mount *Caucasus* to the Head of the *Indus* about 60 in Breadth. *Reiskius* on *Cluverius* ſays, That the ancient *Scythia* was ſo large,

that it contain'd *Celto-Scythia*, *Spain*, *France*, *Britain*, *Germany*, and the N. Countries, and, according to ſome, extended all over Europe. *Scythia*, known in the middle Ages, and mention'd in the Greek and Latin Authors, was divided into *European* and *Asiatick*, and contain'd a vaſt Tract of Land. Modern *Scythia* contains all the *European* and *Aſian Tartary*, having only chang'd the Name. Some derive the Word from the Greek *Σκῦτος*, which ſignifies a Hide; but others from their being good Archers. This is the Opinion of *Bochart* and *Voffius*, becauſe *Scheiten* or *Skieten* in the old Teutonick ſignifies to ſhoot an Arrow from a Bow; and *Boxhorn* in a Letter to M. *Blancard* gives very good Arguments to prove, that the *Scythians* ſpoke German or Teutonick. *Bochart* derives them from *Magog*, one of the Sons of *Japhet*, according to *Joſephus*, who calls them *Magogites*. They were always reckon'd amongſt the ancienteſt People in the World, which is probable enough, ſince their Country lay near the Place where the Ark reſted. They were noted for being conſtantly on Horſeback arm'd with Bows and Arrows. *Bochart* thinks *Ezekiel* alludes to them, Chap. 38. 4. *I will bring thee forth, and all thine Army, Horſes and Horſemen*; and v. 15. *And thou ſhalt come from thy Place out of the North Parts, thou and many People with thee, and all of them riding upon Horſes*; and Chap. 39. 43. *And I will ſmite thy Bow out of thy Left Hand, and will cauſe thine Arrows to fall out of thy Right*. The *Scythian* Horſemen were for this Reaſon call'd *Hippotoxotæ* by *Herodotus* and *Lucian*. They were ſo train'd from their Infancy to uſe Bows and Arrows on Horſeback, that they ſeldom miſs'd their Mark. Therefore *Cyaxares* K. of *Media* ſent his Son to the *Scythians* to be bred up in Archery. Part of them were call'd *Arimaſpi*, which in their Language ſignifies One ey'd, becauſe they uſ'd to wink with one when they ſhot their Arrows. The *Amazons* were deſcended from this People, and at firſt call'd *Sauromatidæ*, as appears by *Plato de Legibus*, 6, 7. where he ſays, *I know there are innumerable Myriads of Women about Pontus call'd Sauromatidæ, who are train'd up in the Management of Horſes, Bows, Arrows, and other Arms, as well as the Men*. *Hippocrates* ſays the ſame, and that they fought with Bows on Horſe-

back against the Enemy while they were Maids, and were not allow'd to marry till they had kill'd 3 Enemies. He likewise says, That their Mothers us'd to burn one of their Dugs with a Brass Instrument while they were Infants, that they might the better use their Bows. And *Nich. Damascenus de Moribus Gentium*, speaking of the *Galactophagi*, a *Scythian* People, says, the Women were as warlike as the Men, and join'd with them in Battle when Need requir'd. *Homer*, *Aeschylus*, *Charilus*, *Ephorus*, *Strabo*, *Nich. Damascenus*, and others, commend the ancient *Scythians* for a just, plain, frugal, and temperate People. *Strabo* particularly mentions *Anacharsis*, *Abaris*, and other *Scythians*, who liv'd in great Esteem amongst the *Greeks*, and kept up the Character of the Country for Mildness, Honesty, and Justice; and that *Anacharsis*, because of his Temperance and Wisdom, was reckon'd one of the 7 Wise-Men; but *Ovid de Tristibus* speaks of such of them as inhabited about the *Euxine* Sea in his Time as a barbarous People, who kill'd and eat such Strangers as came among them. The ancient *Seres* are much commended by *Pliny* and others, not only for their Manufacture of Silk made of fine Wool, which grew on the Leaves of their Trees, for it seems *Pliny* did not know Silk-Worms, but likewise for their Chastity, Temperance, and Justice; so that the Names of Thieves, Whores, and Gluttons, were not known among them. They commonly liv'd to 200 Years of Age, and were govern'd by a Common-Council of 5000 Men, each of whom was to find an Elephant for the Service of the State. *Ammianus Marcellinus* says, *Serica* was a pleasant and plentiful Country, abounded with Corn, Cattle, and Orchards. The Air was temperate, the People peaceable, had no Knowledge of War, and so far from Covetousness or desiring Curiosities, that when Merchants came to buy their Silks, they sold them and their other Commodities cheap, without seeking after those of other Countries. *Justin* says of the *Scythians* in general, That they were a Nation capable of much Fatigue, and brave in War, of great Bodily Strength, and so much Masters of their Affections, that they made no further Use of their greatest Victories but to increase their Fame. They pu-

nish'd Theft so severely, that their Flocks stray'd from Place to Place without Hazard of being stole. They fed upon their Milk, cloath'd themselves with their Skins, and contemn'd Silver and Gold as much as they are coveted by others. They did not affect Tillage nor fix'd Houses, but remov'd their Families in Waggon cover'd with Hides from Place to Place, as they chang'd the Pastures of their Cattle; so just in all their Actions, that they needed no Restraint of Laws, and attain'd to that Degree of Moderation and Perfection, which the *Greeks* could not reach with all their Learning and Philosophy; so that the Ignorance of Vice did as much contribute to their Happiness, as the Knowledge of Virtue did to that of others. All this makes it probable, that they were descended from the first Colonies planted after the Flood, and keeping to their Original Country, without much Converse with the other Nations, did for a long Time retain their primitive Simplicity.

The first we hear of that made War upon them was *Cyrus* the *Persian*, who invaded *Tomyris*, the Queen of the *Massagetae*, one of the most famous *Scythian* Nations, who inhabited both Sides the River *Oxus*, discomfited their Army, and slew her Son *Spargapises*; but the Queen defeating *Cyrus* in a second Battle, cut off his Head, as we mention'd in his Reign, from the Authority of *Justin*; but others say, that *Cyrus's* Horse being disorder'd by some Elephants that came from *India* to her Assistance, and himself dangerously wounded, the Fortune of the Day was turned to his Advantage by *Amorges* K. of the *Sace*, who was his Tributary and Confederate, and came to assist him with 20000 fresh Men; but that *Cyrus* died soon after of his Wounds.

The *Scythians* are said to have begun the War with *Alexander* upon his building *Alexandria Ultima* on their Frontiers; but being worsted, they sued for Peace, and obtain'd it. They had no Wars with his Successors, nor with the *Persian* Kings of the *Parthian* Race, the *Parthians* being their Allies and Descendants. For the *Romans*, *Historians* say, the *Scythians* rather heard of than felt their Arms; so that they continued undisturbed till the *Tartars*, an obscure and beggarly People, subdu'd so great a Part of *Asia* and *Europe*.

Authors mention 17 of their Kings, the first of whom was *Scythes*, and *Lanthinas* the last, but tell us little more than their Names. Queen *Tomyris* was the most famous of their Sovereigns; but it is more probable that they were not subject to any one Prince, and were govern'd by the Chiefs of their Clans or Tribes, as most other People were in those Days; and that such as are reckon'd their Kings, were only the most famous of their Chieftains, to whom the Conduct of War was committed by the Heads of other Tribes, as we find was practis'd in *Gaul* and *Britain* against the *Romans*.

They degenerated much afterwards, as we find by the Account of the *Tauro-Scythæ*, who invaded that now called *Little Tartary* from about the *Euxine* Sea, where they dwelt; for it was they who us'd to kill and sacrifice Strangers to their Idol *Diana*, whom they call'd *Orsiloche*, and adorn'd the Walls of her Temple with their Heads, which gave the primitive Christians Occasion to upbraid the *Gentiles* with their Sacrifices to *Diana Taurica*. We refer to what we have said of them in our Account of *Little Tartary*, Vol. I. of *Europe*, P. 189.

Christianity is said to have been first planted among the *Scythians* by *Andrew* and *Philip*, 2 of the Apostles. Religion spread far among 'em, so that there were several Kingdoms of 'em entirely Christian; but they were at last infected with the Errors of *Nestorius*. *Paulus Ventius*, who travelled those Countries about 1270, says, there were many Christians intermix'd with the Pagans in the remotest Parts of *Scythia*, even since the Country was subdued by the *Tartars*, particularly in *Tenduc*, one of their chief Kingdoms; and some say, they have a Metropolis in *Cambalu*, the chief City of *Cathay*, where they us'd to crown the Great Chan. *Hayton*, a Christian Author, descended from the Kings of *Armenia*, says, That in the 13th Century, *Cublai* Emperor of *Tartary* and his Brother were Christians, and the Country was full of them; that they made War on the Caliph of *Babylon*, took *Palæstina* from the *Mohometans*, restor'd the Christian King of *Armenia* whom they had de-thron'd, and rebuilt many Christian Churches. This *Hayton* was he who wrote to *St. Lewis* of *France* when he lay at *Cyprus*,

during his first Expedition to the *Holy Land*. Father *Averil* says, That at the Beginning of the 14th Age, several *Franciscan* Friars were sent to the Great Chan, and converted many People in the Kingdom of *Thiber*. Father *Andrada*, a *Portuguese* Jesuit, who travelled into those Parts about 1624, observ'd several Vestiges of Christianity among the Inhabitants.

The Origine and History of the Tartars.

Genebrard alledges them to be the Offspring of the 10 Tribes carried Captive by *Salmanassar* for these Reasons: 1. That the Word *Tatari* in *Syriac* and *Hebrew* signifies a Remnant; but to this 'tis objected, that tho' the Word does signify so, the *Tartars* so infinitely exceed the *Jews* in Number, that they can't be thought a Remnant of 'em. 2. That there's no need of that Etymology, since 'tis known that there's a River and Country call'd *Tatar*, from whence Historians derive their Name and Origine, as we have already mention'd. His 2d Reason is, because they use Circumcision; but to this it is answer'd, 1. That many People besides the *Jews*, as the *Egyptians*, *Ethiopians*, &c. us'd Circumcision. 2. That it can't be prov'd the *Tartars* us'd it till they receiv'd *Mahometanism*. His 3d Reason is, because it is said in 2 *Esdras*, Cap. 13. That the 10 Tribes, that they might the better keep God's Statutes, pass'd the River *Euphrates*; and after a Year and a half's Journey, came into a Country call'd *Arsareth*: But to this 'tis reply'd, 1. That when the *Tartars* were first known, they were meer Idolaters, and had no Footsteps of the *Jewish* Religion. 2. That *Euphrates* lies quite W. from *Assyria*, and those Places to which *Salmanassar* carried the *Israelites*; so that they could not pass the *Euphrates* in a Journey towards the N. 3. That it is not probable the *Israelites* would leave *Assyria*, where they were peaceably settled; or could be able to force a Passage thro' those Countries of *Scythia*, which neither the *Persians*, *Greeks* or *Romans*, were able to do in the Height of their Power.

It is therefore more probably suppos'd, that they were originally a Northerly People

ple of *Scythia*, who being pinch'd by Want, and oppress'd by the King of *Tenduc*, to whom they were subject, arm'd against him, defeated him, and settled their Leader *Cingis* upon the Throne about 1202. *Johannes de Plano Carpini*, who travelled hither by a Commission from the Pope in 1246, confirms this Account of the Origine of the Empire of the *Tartars*, and makes *Cingis-Chan* the Founder of it, another *Nimrod*, who made it his Business to hunt Men as well as Beasts, and to steal or carry them Captives by Force; after which he invaded the neighbouring Princes, and united the *Scythian* Nations under the general Name of *Tartars*, as *Mahomet* did the *Arabians* under that of *Saracens*. The Inhabitants of *Cathay* were at this Time *Nestorian* Christians; but by the Prevalency of the *Tartars*, the Country was over-run with Paganism. Friar *William de Rubruquis*, a French Minorite, who travelled into these Parts in 1253, gives much the same Account to St. *Lewis* the French King; and both those Authors give such a Description of the *Tartars*, as proves them to have been sunk in Brutality and Ignorance, and of their savage Temper towards all other People but themselves; yet they had still remaining some Footsteps of the ancient *Scythian* Justice towards one another, and against Theft, Adultery, and other Crimes which are destructive of Society. The Curious may find the Particulars in *Hakluyt's* Collection of Voyages, Vol. I. where it appears, that the Government of the *Tartars*, tho' absolute and tyrannical, was elective; for after the Death of *Cingis-Chan*, the Dukes or great Men of the Country chose, 2. His Son *Occoday* to succeed. This happen'd about 1168. In his Time the Name of the *Tartars* came to be first known and formidable in *Europe*, for he is said to have subdued *Muscovy*, to have planted his *Tartars* in the *Taurica Chersonesus*, now the *Crim*, to have ravag'd *Hungary*, *Bosnia*, *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*, and likewise to have taken *Persia* from the *Turks*.

3. To him succeeded *Zain-Chan*, *Bathu*, or *Bar-Cham*, who ruin'd the Turkish Kingdom of *Damascus*, and their Power in *Asia Minor*.

4. *Gino Cham* succeeded him, and by his Daughter the Empire was convey'd unto her Husband, who was,

5. *Tamerlane*. This Prince having made a great Figure in the World, and his Character being very differently represented by Authors, we judge it proper to give as full an Account of him as the Nature of our Design will admit. The best Book we have seen on the Subject is that entitul'd, *The History of the Great Tamerlane*, by M. *Saintcyon*, dedicated to the present French King, and publish'd by his Authority at *Paris* in 1677. This Author takes Notice in his Preface, that what he writes of *Tamerlane*, he has from the Memoirs of *Alhacent*, a famous *Arabian*, who attended that Prince in all his Expeditions, and was his Historian. He consulted likewise the History of *John de Beck*, and an ancient Manuscript communicated to him by another Person. He observes, that *Achamed* the Son of *Gueraspes*, and some other Historians, who were either *Turks* or Tributaries to them, have been very injurious to the Memory of this great Prince, because of the Disgrace which his victorious Arms brought on their Country. But the Force of Truth was such; that they were constrain'd to own him to be the greatest Captain that till then had appear'd in the World. He confutes what those Historians have falsly said of his being originally a poor Shepherd, and afterwards a Sort of Free-Booter, who advanc'd himself by his Crimes to be what he was, and says, that he was the Son of a King, and Nephew to the Great Cham of *Tartary*, whose Daughter he married, and by that Means succeeded to the Crown. 'Tis therefore somewhat strange that *Catrou* the Jesuit, who wrote the General History of the Empire of the *Mogul* from the Memoirs of *Manouchi* a *Venetian*, and other Authors, should have reviv'd this Fable in 1708; tho' he seems to cover it, by owning him to be a Prince of the *Mogul's* Race; but alledg'd, that (according to the Custom of the Country) he was employ'd in his Youth to look after his Father's Herds, and was chosen by other young Shepherds to be their Judge and Prince, with whom he makes him to perform several romantick Exploits, which laid the Foundation of his After-Greatness. But to come to his History; *Saintcyon* says, That *Tamerlane* was Son to Og King of *Sachetay* or *Zagatay*, inhabited by the *Parthians*; (for he makes that Province the ancient *Parthia*)

chia.) He was born A. C. 1335, says *Catrou*. *Saintyon* says, his Name signifies *Cælestial Grace*; but *Catrou* and others derive it from *Timur*, which signifies *Iron*, because he was always in War; and *Lenk*, which signifies *Lame*, because he was born with a Weakness in one Leg. *Saintyon* says, That from his very Infancy he gave Marks of the Greatness of his Soul, and of his future Grandeur, with which his Father was so charmed, that he took Care to have the greatest Masters in all Faculties to instruct him, so that at 15 Years of Age he was Master of all the Learning of those Days, and particularly of Astronomy, Astrology, and the *Zoroastrian* Divinity, which has since been so much cultivated among the *Arabians*. He likewise surpass'd all the Youth of his Time in Military Exercises; so that in short he became the Delight of Mankind. His Father growing old, and willing to spend the rest of his Time in Devotion, was so well satisfied with his Son's Ability, that he resign'd the Government to him, and gave him for Counsellors two of the greatest and ablest of his Lords, by whose Advice *Tamerlane* acted till he came to Years of Maturity, and honour'd them as his Fathers. One of them happening to die soon after, *Tamerlane*, out of Respect to his Memory, for the great Services he had done, wore his Ring on his Finger while he liv'd. This Behaviour, with his natural Mildness and Affability, did perfectly conquer the Hearts of his Subjects, so that they lov'd him as their common Father. Being in Peace with all his Neighbours, he applied himself to his Studies and Devotion, for he was very religious in his Way, and gave full Liberty of Conscience to every Body, provided they worship'd God, the Creator of all Things; for it was his Opinion, that the Divine Majesty was pleased with being served in different Manners. He was an irreconcilable Enemy to Idolaters, and most of his Wars were undertaken against such. He was of a middling Size, his Shoulders somewhat narrow, his Legs handsome, his Body full and well set, his Countenance beautiful and well proportion'd, and his Eyes so full of Sweetness and Majesty together, that it was not easie for his Subjects or others to look on his Countenance when

they spoke to him, which made him modestly turn away his Eyes, that they might do it with more Confidence. He had but a little Beard and Mustachoes, but a noble and beautiful Head of curl'd Hair, which he wore very long, contrary to the Custom of the *Tartars*, who shav'd their Heads all but one Tuft behind. The Reason he gave for it was, that his Mother told him he was of *Sampson's* Offspring, and therefore order'd him to nourish his Hair. His Courtiers took Care to spread this about, which made him the more respected of his Subjects, and formidable to his Neighbours, who reckon'd that he must therefore be irresistible.

His first War was with the *Muscovites*, who made an unjust and cruel Invasion upon the People of *Casan* and *Astracan*, that were *Tamerlane's* Neighbours, and pillag'd one of his Frontier Towns. Upon this he assembled an Army of 120000 Horse, and 150000 Foot, against the *Muscovites*, who had 100000 Foot, and 80000 Horse, of whom 10000 were *Poles*, besides 8000 *Hungarians*, and abundance of *Voluntiers* of Quality who came from *Hungary* under *Uladislaus*, one of their greatest Generals. These Troops were much better disciplin'd than *Tamerlane's*, because the *Parthians* had been in no War during his Father's Reign, nor in his own till then; whereas the *Muscovites* had been at constant War with their Neighbours. They had posted a strong Detachment on an advantageous Ground, which made it dangerous for *Tamerlane* to attack them; but he sent 20000 Men under the Conduct of *Aly*, one of the Counsellors and Generals which his Father had plac'd about him, who beat them from their Post, and then they came to a general Engagement, *Tamerlane* commanding the main Body of his own Troops himself: After a noble Harangue to animate his Men, engaged and routed the *Muscovites*, after an obstinate Battle, wherein he was wounded near the Left Eye, and had two Horses kill'd under him. The Emperor of *Muscovy* was taken by a *Parthian* Soldier, who not knowing him, he was soon after rescu'd, and made his Retreat with 10000 Horse. *Tamerlane* after the Victory return'd Thanks to God in his Camp; and upon a Review of his Army, found he had lost betwixt 7 and 8000 Horse, and

and 3 or 4000 Foot; the Enemy having lost 7000 Foot, and about 16000 Horse. He bravely rewarded those who signaliz'd themselves in the Battle; but was much afflicted by the Loss of his able Counsellor and General *Aly*, who was killed by an Arrow as he forced the *Muscovites* from their Post. He embalmed his Corps, and kept it by him till his Return to *Samarchand*, his Capital City, where he built him a stately Tomb, which was the first of the sumptuous Edifices that *Tamerlane* erected there. When this Prince view'd the Field of Battle, and the Number of Slain on both Sides, he bewail'd the Condition of Princes engag'd in War, by which they were obliged to destroy their own Species, and to sacrifice the Lives of their best Friends, which made him say, That his Father was much more happy than himself, because never engag'd in War. He pursu'd the *Muscovites* into their own Country; upon which they sent Ambassadors to desire Peace, which he readily granted, after a just Rebuke for their Injustice. The Conditions were, That they should no more invade him or his Allies; That they shou'd pay him 300000 Ducats for the Charge of the War, besides 100000 *per Annum*, and give him Hostages for Security; which being agreed to, he releas'd all their Prisoners. He return'd to *Samarchand*, where he was receiv'd in mighty Triumph by his Subjects, which he accepted with great Modesty, as Marks of Affection from Children to a Father, and was not at all elevated with his success. Soon after this the Great Cham of *Tartary*, his Uncle by the Father's Side, sent him a solemn Embassy, with rich Presents, to congratulate his Victory, and to offer him his Daughter in Marriage, and make him his Successor, since he had no other Child. Upon this he went to *Quinsay*, his Uncle's Capital, where he was receiv'd with Triumph and great Joy, crown'd as Successor to that mighty Empire, and married the Princess. He stay'd here two Months, during which he gain'd the Affection of the Court, and of the Chief of his future Subjects. He return'd to *Samarchand* with his Royal Bride, where he was met by Ambassadors from many Princes to congratulate his new Dignity, and desire his Alliance, and particularly from the Em-

peror of *Muscovy*, who sent him rich Presents, and assur'd him, that his Military Preparations were against the *Poles*, and not against him. The *Poles* at the same Time solicited him to make War upon the *Muscovites*, lest after they had conquer'd *Poland* they should be troublesome Neighbours; but *Tamerlane* answer'd, That he would not break his Treaty; and since he had beat the *Muscovites* with his own *Parthians*, he was much more capable of doing it now since he was Emperor of *Tartary*, if the *Muscovite* broke with him: But he depended chiefly on the Justice of Heaven, which would certainly punish those who undertook an unjust War. After this, he prepared to invade *China*, as he had agreed with his Uncle, in order to recover what the *Chinese* had taken from the *Tartars*. *Tamerlane* had this good Quality among others, that he was not positive in his own Opinion, but listen'd to the Advice of his Counsellors, and would submit to their Reasons. He had many great Men about him, and particularly a Christian call'd *Analla*, originally a *Genoese*, but bred up with him from his Youth. This Man was his chief Favourite, and it was he who chiefly prompted him to all his great Enterprizes; so that notwithstanding his being of a different Religion, *Tamerlane* advanc'd him to the chief Posts of the Army and State. *Tamerlane* sent to the Emperor of *China*, and demanded Restitution of what he had taken from the *Tartars*; which being refus'd, he declar'd War against him as a perfidious Prince, who had violated his Treaties. *Tamerlane* march'd with his own Troops to join those of his Uncle, which consisted of 200000 Men, having taken Leave of his own Father, who embrac'd him with Tears, gave him his Blessing, and wish'd him Success, telling him, That he never expected to see him more till he met him in Heaven. During his Journey he fell sick, which gave Occasion to some ambitious *Tartar* Lords, who were against the Succession, to form a Plot to deprive him of it. The chief of the Conspirators was *Calix*, a great Man, who would have perswaded his Uncle to set him aside, as unbecoming the Dignity of the *Tartars* that a Foreigner should reign over them. But the Great Cham continuing stedfast, *Calix* actually broke out into a Rebellion,

bellion, and a great many of the *Tartars*, deceiv'd by his specious Pretences, join'd him, and many Provinces submitted to him, especially that of *Cambalu*. *Tamerlane* was inform'd of the Design before; but being unwilling to give Umbrage to his Uncle, because the Faction endeavour'd to persuade him, that *Tamerlane* would usurp the Crown before his Death, he kept close in his Camp, stop'd all the Passes, and suffer'd no Body to go to *Tartary* but his own Messengers, whom he order'd to give out, that he was march'd to the Frontiers of *China*, but to inform his Uncle of the real Truth. This had the design'd Effect; so that *Calix* believing him to be at a great Distance, he assembled an Army of 100000 Men, possess'd himself of *Cambalu*, the Capital of *Cathay*, with the Emperor's Garrison, and sent a Message to the Cham to tell him, That his faithful Subjects had not taken Arms against him, but only to prevent the Succession of a Foreigner, and the Dishonour it would be to the *Tartar* Name to be subject to the *Parthians*. Therefore they requested that *Calix* might be appointed his Successor, that the Glory of the *Tartars* might not be buried by that of the Prince of *Sachetay*. In the mean time *Tamerlane* advanc'd with his Army towards the Rebels, and had order'd the *Parthians* to march against them from their own Country; and being informed that his Uncle was dangerously ill, and the whole Empire like to revolt, he left his Foot to come up at Leisure, and march'd his Cavalry with so much Diligence towards *Cambalu*, that the Citizens considering how unjustly they had acted against *Tamerlane*, began to repent of it. At the same Time the Great Cham order'd his Troops to march against the Rebels, and sent his Ring to *Tamerlane*, with Orders that all his Subjects should obey him. This oblig'd *Calix* to quit *Cambalu*, and take the Field with 80000 Horse, and 100000 Foot. He likewise solicited the *Muscovites* to invade the *Parthians*, but in vain; the Czar was so sensible of *Tamerlane's* rejecting the Advice of the *Poles*, as above-mention'd. The loyal *Tartars* join'd *Tamerlane* in great Numbers; and that Prince, to shew his Aversion to the shedding of the Blood of those who were to be his Subjects, sent Proposals to *Calix*

to return to his Duty; upon which he promis'd him and his Followers Pardon, and to receive him into Favour. This was extream pleasing to his Uncle, and the Chief of the *Tartars*; but *Calix*, hurried on by his Fate, rejected the Proposal, and said, He had rather live one Day as a Sovereign, than many Years in Servitude to a Foreigner, and resolv'd to fight it. Upon this, *Tamerlane* advanc'd with his Army of 200000 Foot and 150000 Horse with great Expedition. *Calix* sent a Detachment which beat in *Tamerlane's* advanc'd Parties to his Camp, and next Day they came to an Engagement, when 16000 of the Rebels Horse, led by *Calix* himself, broke thro' the Body commanded by *Tamerlane*, who was dismounted; but taking a fresh Horse, retir'd fighting after the *Parthian* Manner, till *Axalla* came up with the Rear, restor'd the Battle, and obtain'd a compleat Victory, after a long and obstinate Fight, wherein *Calix* was wounded in the Mouth by a Lance, and after having acted the Part of a great General, was taken by *Axalla*. Above 50000 Men were slain on both Sides. The Victory cost *Tamerlane* dear, and he own'd he was never in greater Danger of being routed and kill'd. *Calix* was brought before him, and was so proud, that he wou'd not answer him one Word when he spoke to him; upon which he was next Day condemn'd by a Council of War, and beheaded, with the other Chiefs of the Rebels, by the Chan's own Order. After this, the Towns that had revolted sent Deputies to beg Pardon, which *Tamerlane* readily granted, after having mildly rebuk'd them, and order'd them to furnish his Army with Provisions. His Moderation had so good Effect, that it quickly put an End to this dangerous Rebellion, and the People were better pleas'd with *Tamerlane* than with the Cham himself, who order'd 200 of the chief Rebels at *Cambalu* to be beheaded. After this Victory, he march'd against *China*, broke thro' the Wall betwixt that Country and *Tartary*, and *Axalla* defeated one of the *Chinese* Armies. *Tamerlane* behav'd himself so mildly towards the conquer'd Provinces, that many of the rest submitted. *Axalla* march'd to *Peking*, which he took after a vigorous Siege, the Garrison of 30000 being reduced to 18000. The King

of *China* came against him with a mighty Host, sumptuously arm'd and cloath'd, and after a bloody Battle was defeated and taken, with two Confederate Kings, two more being slain in the Fight. The *Chinese* Army consisted of 150000 Horse, and 200000 Foot, and *Tamerlane's* of 120000 Horse and Foot, who had very little Loss in the Battle. *Tamerlane* took Care of the Wounded on both Sides, return'd Thanks to God, and order'd the King of *China* to be brought before him. That great Prince, when he came to *Tamerlane*, seem'd nothing discourag'd, and said to him with great Presence of Mind by his Interpreter, *My Gods being provok'd against my Country and my good Fortune, have this Day made me thy Prisoner; and if what Fame says be true, that Tamerlane fights only for the Glory of his Nation, thou oughtest to be satisfied with what thou hast acquired, by bringing under thy Power the Son of the Sun, and the Lord of the World, to receive of thee what Law thou thinkest fit to impose upon him.* *Tamerlane*, who met him a good Way from his Tent with great Civility, answer'd by his Interpreter, *That a bad Cause was always hateful to Gods, false or true: That for himself, he gave Thanks to the true God, whom he ador'd, and who was immortal, incomprehensible, and the Creator of all Things, for the Victory he had obtain'd; and ascrib'd it wholly to his Goodness: Whereas the King of China ascrib'd his Misfortune to his false Gods; and assur'd him at the same Time, That instead of abusing his Advantage, he would treat him so as to make him forget his Disgrace if possible.* The *Chinese* Prince, who expected nothing but Death, was agreeably surpris'd with this generous Answer, and thank'd him for it. The other Prisoners of Note, with the two Confederate Kings, were brought also before *Tamerlane*, who rose up, and civilly saluted them; and they on the other Hand prostrated themselves by Way of Adoration before him. He ask'd 'em who they were? The K. of *China* answer'd for them, They were his Allies, the Kings of *Chiam-pa* and *Cochinchina*; that he bewail'd their Misfortune as much as his own, and was ready to die with them, for still he expected to be put to Death, according to the barbarous Custom of his own Country; but *Tamerlane* assur'd him, That neither he nor they should have any Hurt done them.

His Kingdom contain'd, says our Author, 15 large Provinces, and had abundance of Mines of Gold and Silver. He had under him 70 Tributary Kings that wore Crowns. His Brother escap'd from the Battle to *Quantou*, which he fortified, and gather'd a new Army. *Tamerlane* commanded his chief Prisoners to the Borders of *Tartary*, and sent *Axalla* to reduce *Quantou*, which submitted at Discretion. After this, *Tamerlane* granted Peace to the *Chinese*, on Condition, That the River near *Quantou* should be the Boundary betwixt the two Empires; That the King of *China* and his Successors should pay him and his 20000 Crowns Tribute per Ann. and 500000 down for the Charge of the War; That the other Prisoners should pay their Ransoms to those who took them, and each of the Kings should pay him 100000 Crowns; That none of the *Chinese* who would submit to him should be hinder'd from doing so, nor any of them sold for Slaves; That there shou'd be a free Commerce betwixt the two Empires; and, That the King of *China* should give him for Hostages his Brother, the two Kings his Allies, and 12 others of his chief Lords to be exchanged every Year for others who brought the Tribute. These Terms, tho' hard, were accepted, because they had no Force able to oppose *Tamerlane*. He order'd the King to be set at Liberty; after which, he took his Oath to observe the Treaty, and restor'd him to his Subjects, who receiv'd him with excessive Joy. *Tamerlane* return'd to *Peking* with his Hostages, among whom was the King's eldest Son, and his Brother. He left *Odmar*, one of his Father's Counsellors that he had placed about him, to govern his new Conquests, transported a great many of the principal *Chinese* into his own Country, and sent *Parthians* in their room. He dispatched an Express to acquaint his Uncle with the Success and Treaty; and having order'd all the Idols in his new Conquest to be destroy'd, and the Worship of God to be establish'd, he return'd home to his Father-in-Law with his Queen, who had accompanied him during the whole Expedition. The old Prince receiv'd them with Tears of Joy; and going from his Capital to meet 'em, would have dismounted from his Horse to embrace *Tamerlane*, who had alighted

lighted from his, but he would not suffer him, and paid him all the Respect that was due to his Sovereign, which made the *Tartars* admire him more than ever.

Tamerlane's next Expedition was against *Bajazet* the Sultan of the *Turks*, at the Solicitation of the Emperor *Paleologus*, whom *Bajazet* threaten'd to besiege in *Constantinople*. It was by Means of *Axalla* that the Greek Emperor desired *Tamerlane's* Help and Alliance, for *Axalla* himself was related to him. *Tamerlane* sent an Ambassador to forbid *Bajazet* to meddle with his Ally; but he returned a haughty and disdainful Answer. *Tamerlane* obtain'd of his Uncle the Cham 100000 Foot and 80000 Horse for this Expedition, and he order'd as many from his own Country of *Sachetay*, besides 50000 from the neighbouring Princes, who were his Allies, and he left his Queen with her Father to comfort him in his old Age. *Tamerlane*, the Night before he march'd, dream'd that a Multitude of venerable Men, some with Crowns on their Heads, and many of them clad in White and Cloth of Gold, who were shut up in Prisons, begged his Assistance against the Tyrants that oppress'd them; and that he stretched out his Hand to them, and promis'd to grant their Desire. He told this Dream to his Courtiers next Morning, and began his march to his own Country, where the People met him on the Roads by Millions with Acclamations of Joy. The *Muscovites* being afraid of his Power and vast Preparations, were eas'd of their Fears when he sent to demand Passage thro' their Territories, with the Payment of what they ow'd him, and 15000 Horse to assist him against the *Turks*, which they readily granted. *Axalla* commanded in Chief under him, being equally grateful to *Tamerlane* and his Subjects, because of his modest Behaviour, tho' he was the chief Favourite. When *Tamerlane* marched from *Samarchand*, he appointed a Day of Prayer for God's Assistance. He marched by Way of *Georgia*, *Trebizond*, and *Cassa*, which was the Place of *Axalla's* Birth, and tho' a powerful City, had submitted, with others, to *Bajazet*; notwithstanding, at *Axalla's* Desire, they had formerly put themselves under *Tamerlane's* Protection. Upon this, he was very much incens'd against them, but, at *Axalla's* Re-

quest, he pardon'd them, and made *Axalla* Prince of that City and the neighbouring Country; which Dignity that great General receiv'd with much Joy and Thankfulness at his Hands, tho' he had modestly refus'd to be made absolute Governor of *China*, which was much more considerable; but he chose rather to be in this Post, that he might serve his native Country, and the Christian Interest. *Tamerlane* having receiv'd Advice, that *Bajazet* had besieg'd *Constantinople*, and subdu'd all Greece, hasten'd his March with 300000 Horse and 500000 Foot of different Nations, and by the Way receiv'd Advice, that *Bajazet* had rais'd the Siege, and was marching to meet him with a great Army of his best Troops. *Tamerlane* pass'd the *Euphrates*, and enter'd the Enemy's Country. He punish'd such Towns severely as resist'd him if they were *Turks*, but pardon'd the Christians, and set such of them as were Slaves every where at Liberty. He sent *Axalla* before to chuse a proper Place of Battle, which he did in a vast Plain betwixt the *Euxine* Sea and *Giannich* near *Sannas*, which he took and garrison'd, but order'd his Men to abandon, and set Fire to it on the Approach of *Bajazet*, which they did. He defeated an advanced Body of the *Turks*, took the Bassa of *Natolia* who commanded 'em, and ask'd him the Reason, Why *Bajazet* contemn'd him so much? The Bassa answer'd, That his Pr. was the Sun of the Earth, who would endure no Rival, and wonder'd that *Tamerlane* would undertake so long and dangerous a March to oppose him, who was the Favourite of Heaven, and to whom the whole World submitted. *Tamerlane* reply'd, *I am sent by Heaven to chastise his Audaciousness, and to teach him, that God takes as much Pleasure in abasing the Proud, as in advancing the Humble, of which thy Master's raising the Siege of Constantinople is a Proof already.* Then he ask'd, Whether *Bajazet* was resolv'd to fight him? The Bassa said, He desir'd nothing more; and begged, that out of his Generosity, he would suffer him to go and assist his Master in the Day of Battle. *Tamerlane* granted it, and bid him go tell his Master, That he had seen him; and, that *I shall fight where he sees the green Standard display'd, where he may find me as soon as he pleases; and with that gave the Bassa*

a very good Horse. The Turk was so much taken with his generous Deportment, that he told *Tamerlane*, He was the only Prince in the World he would chuse to serve except his own Master, to whom he went and deliver'd the Message. In a Day or two after they engaged, and after a very bloody Battle, with great Proofs of Valour on both Sides, *Bajazet* was defeated and taken, as we gave an Account before, P. 50, 51, and 276, of this Volume. It was *Amurath* that took *Bajazet*, who thinking him to be *Tamerlane*, surrender'd to him, after he was wounded, but was not known for some Time. This Victory was chiefly owing to *Tamerlane's* own Valour and Conduct. He had a Horse kill'd under him, and was wounded with a Lance, but speedily remounted. Our Author says, the Turks had 60000 Men kill'd, and *Tamerlane* 20000. Among the Prisoners was the Despot of *Servia*, who fought very gallantly. *Tamerlane* treated him civilly, but reproach'd him for fighting against the Christian Interest, and that of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, whom he came to deliver from *Bajazet's* Oppression. The Despot answer'd, That it was not out of Affection to *Bajazet*, but to save his own Dominions, which he saw no other Way to preserve, since all the World seem'd to yield to that Turkish Conqueror. *Tamerlane* being perswaded of the Truth of this, gave the Despot his Liberty.

The Battle being over, *Tamerlane* took particular Care to get *Bajazet's* Sons into his Power, order'd their Father's Wounds to be dress'd, and that he should be brought into his Presence. The Turk carrying himself with his usual Haughtiness, *Tamerlane* was incens'd at it, and told him, That his Life depended only upon one Word; and that whenever he pronounc'd it, there would be an End of him. Pronounce it then, (says *Bajazet*) for I shall reckon it my Happiness. What made you so insolent (says *Tamerlane*) as to attempt the despoiling of so illustrious a Prince as the Emperor of Greece of his Dominions? The Desire of Glory and Empire, (says *Bajazet*.) Why are you so barbarous (says *Tamerlane*) as to cut off those you conquer, without sparing Age or Sex? I do it (says *Bajazet*) to strike the greater Terror into my Enemies. For that Reason (says *Tamerlane*).

thou deservest the same Treatment: And commanding him to be taken out of his Presence, turned to his own People, and said, Lo, there's a proud and barbarous Tyrant, who well deserves to be chastiz'd, and to be made an Example to all such cruel Barbarians: But since God has put into my Hands so great an Enemy, I ought to render him Thanks in the first Place. Then he order'd *Bajazet's* Sons to be brought before him, and pitying their Misfortune, took Care they should be treated according to their Quality. Thus *Bajazet*, who but a few Minutes before despis'd all Mankind, was brought under the Wheel, and his Glory totally eclipsed by one Battle, when he least expected it. He own'd, that he was justly punish'd for despising his Enemies, and putting too great Confidence in his own Troops, particularly his Janizaries. He continued 3 Days like a Man in Despair, wishing for Death; and *Tamerlane*, who was otherwise the mildest and most courteous Pr. of the World, could scarce be touch'd with any Compassion for him, but said, He deserv'd to be treated like a Wild-Beast, because of his Barbarity to Mankind, and therefore order'd him to be shut up in an Iron Cage, and made use of it as a Footstool on solemn Occasions when he mounted his Horse, not out of Ostentation, but to humble that proud Tyrant, and to shew the Folly of ambitious Princes, who rely on their own Power, and express no Dependance on God. *M. Carrou* denies this Passage of the Cage, says it was invented by the Greeks, who hated *Bajazet*; that it is not mention'd in the Mogul's Chronicle; and that *Tamerlane* treated *Bajazet* with great Respect, and always erected a sumptuous Pavilion for him next to his own: But we rather believe *Alhacent*, who was an Eye-witness of what he writes. *Tamerlane* sent the Chief of his Prisoners to *Samarcand*; and all the Asiatick Provinces, formerly conquer'd by *Bajazet* and his Ancestors, submitted to the new Conqueror. *Tamerlane* sent *Bajazet's* two Sons to the Emperor of *Constantinople*, desiring him to have some Compassion for them, and to take Care of their Education. The Remains of the Turkish Army pass'd the Streights of *Gallipoli*, and retir'd to *Adrianople*, which was then their Capital in Europe. The Greek Emperor sent a solemn Embassy of his chief Nobles

Nobles to congratulate *Tamerlane's* Victory, and submit himself and his Empire as Homagers to that great Prince, for having so seasonably rescued him from *Bajazet's* Fury; to which *Tamerlane* generously answer'd, That it was not consistent with his Honour and Justice to take that Advantage over a Prince who was his Ally; that his Design was to gain Honour, and to deliver Mankind from the Oppression of the *Turks*; and since God had assisted him to bruise the Head of the great Enemy of Mankind, he would, to perpetuate the Memory of it, restore the Emperor *Emanuel* to the entire Possession of his Empire; for it shou'd never be said of *Tamerlane*, That under a Pretence of assisting his Friend and Ally, he had despoil'd him of his Dominions; only he desir'd, that this Service might not be forgot by *Emanuel* and his Posterity; that he would make use of this Advantage to retrieve his Affairs, and take Care not to fall into such Disgraces for Time to come. This was equally surprizing and agreeable to the *Greek* Ambassadors, who did not expect such Generosity from a Conqueror of another Religion; and one of them carrying the Tidings to *Constantinople*, the City was filled with universal Joy, and the *Greek* Emperor, by Advice of his Council, went to *Bursa* in Person to thank *Tamerlane*, who receiv'd him with all possible Honour, went incognito to *Constantinople*, which he had a mighty Desire to see, and was treated with all possible Deference and Kindness by *Emanuel*, who presented him with the finest Horses and the richest Trappings that were in his Possession, made rich Presents to his Retinue, and swore a perpetual Alliance with him.

Tamerlane having restor'd to the *Greeks* all that the *Turks* had taken from them in *Asia*, made War upon the Sultan of *Egypt* for having assisted *Bajazet*. *Emanuel* sent his Nephew *Andronicus* with 10000 of his best Horse to join *Tamerlane*. His own Subjects the *Parthians* being willing to return home after so long Absence, were averse to engage in the *Egyptian* War, and like to have mutinied; whereas the *Scythians* or *Tartars*, who were to be his Subjects after their Emperor's Death, were ready to follow him where he pleas'd. Upon this, *Tamerlane* made a Speech to the *Parthians*,

which soon brought them to a Sense of their Duty, made them asham'd to be outdone by the *Scythians* in respect to their natural Prince, so that they chearfully agreed to follow him in the War. After this, he conquer'd *Syria*, *Judaea*, *Egypt*, the greatest Part of *Africa*, and in his Return subdued *Persia*, after having visited *Jerusalem*, and our Saviour's Sepulchre, for whose Memory he expressed the greatest Reverence, performed his Devotions at his Tomb, testified an Abhorrence of the *Jews* for murdering him who came to save them, and allow'd the *Christians* great Privileges, not only there, but thro' all his Dominions. He return'd in great Honour and Triumph to his own Country, and then to *Tartary*, where he had quiet Possession of the Empire after the Death of his Uncle, and was joyfully receiv'd by his Empress, who had born him a Son during his Absence. He appointed Governors in all the Countries he had conquer'd, who were very successful in defending them against his Enemies, that resum'd their Courage upon his Return home. *Axalla*, his chief General and Favourite, was Governor of *Natolia*, where he had a sharp and dangerous War with *Calepine*, Son to *Bajazet*, who assum'd the Government after his Father's Death, and enter'd into a League with the Sultan of *Egypt* and the Emperor of *Constantinople*, who not considering that *Tamerlane* rescu'd his Father from the Brink of Destruction, did treacherously join in that League, on Pretence of *Tamerlane's* exorbitant Power, tho' that Prince had generously rejected the Advice of some of his Courtiers to conquer the *Greek* Empire, after he had subdued *Bajazet* and the Sultan of *Egypt*; but *Axalla* was successful against *Calepin* and his Confederates; and while *Tamerlane* was on his March with a great Army to support *Axalla*, and to make an entire Conquest of the Empire of *Greece*, in order to put a final End to the *Turkish* Power, with whom they were Confederate, he was taken sick, which obliged him to return to his Capital, where he died, having first on his Death-Bed receiv'd the News of *Axalla's* Victories. He sent for the Prince his Son, gave him excellent Advice, order'd him to follow his Example, to take the Counsel of his experienc'd Ministers, and particularly of *Axalla*, who was

the fittest Person to command his Armies in Chief. He advis'd him likewise to be kind to the Christians, who under *Axalla's* Conduct had done him such eminent Services; and taking a Ring off of his Finger, order'd it to be sent to *Axalla*, as the last Pledge of his Favour, and soon after resign'd his Soul with great Submission into the Hands of God, of whom he was always a devout Worshipper, and to whose Favour he ascribed all his Victories. He took a particular Delight in hearing the History of our Saviour and his Miracles, and was always extraordinary kind to Christians; so that he scarce wanted any thing but the Profession and Name to be accounted one of their Number. He died in the 66th Year of his Age, A. C. 1405. The Chronicle of the Moguls says, it was at *Cabul*, when he was about invading *Indostan*; but we chuse rather to follow *Alhacent*, who says, it was at *Samarcand*. *M. Sainctyon* says, he far surpassed *Cæsar* and *Alexander*, because he had all their great Virtues, and none of their Vices, and that his Conquests were much larger than theirs. The great *Maurice* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, carried his History always in his Pocket, and preferr'd it to *Cæsar's Commentaries*, or *Xenophon's Cyropædia*, as a Model more proper to be follow'd by great Princes and Generals than either of them, he having subdu'd more Provinces in 8 Years, says *Herbert*, than the Romans did in 800 Years.

6. *Sentrochio* succeeded, according to *Alhacent*. He was his eldest Son, and *Tamerlane* commanded *Letrochio* the younger always to submit to him; but he being the

Empress Dowager's Favourite, carried the Sovereignty at last from his elder Brother, which ruin'd the Grandeur of *Tamerlane's* Family, and of the Empire, which he had rais'd to be the greatest on Earth.

Alhacent mentions no other but those two Sons, so that we have little certain about the Succession of this Family after that Time. *Herbert* alledges the Great Mogul is descended from a 3d Son of *Tamerlane*; but that we refer to the History of the Mogul. *Heylin* makes, 7. *Allan* Successor to *Letrochio*.

8. *Mangu Chan*. *Haito*, an *Armenian* Prince, begged his Assistance against the Caliph of *Bagdat*, and perswaded him, as some say, to turn Christian; upon which he and many of his Nobility were baptized. There are three other Successors mention'd, the last of whom was *Demir-Cham*, who govern'd *Cathay* in 1540, or thereabouts.

What is said by Historians of the Great Chams of *Tartary*, must either be referred to the Time of their greatest Glory, before the Empire was dismember'd, after *Tamerlane's* Death, or with some Qualifications to the Chams of *Zagathay*, or the Kings of *Tanguth*; for what is said of *Cathay* or *Catajo*, we must refer to *China*, since *Gabriel Magellan*, in his History of *China*, printed at *London* in 1688, spends his first Chapter to prove that *China* is the same Country which *Paulus Venetus* names *Catajo*. His Authority is the more to be depended on, because he liv'd in *China* from 1640 to 1677, when he died; so that there has been no such Prince as the Great Cham of *Tartary*, properly speaking, for many Years.



Sanfon and Luyts's TABLES of TARTARY.

		Chief Towns.	
The Parts of TARTARY are Two, viz.	The Nor- thern, in which are	Desert Tarta- ry.	Risan and Rian, Olgaria, Nahian, Giagian, Hian, Rudhan, Daremda, Marfan, Dademi, and Dadeni, Schadrug or Sahadrug, Dau- baha or Dambaha, Loghman, Charman, Char- can.
		Real Tartary.	Giarda, Mongul, Tartar and Tatar, Chakan or Kaimach, Sifian, Astur or Assur, Caran- tia.
	The Sou- thern, con- taining	Usbeck.	Acfu, Kasghar, Baghara and Bochara, Samar- cand, Kesh or Cash, Balch or Belch, Badas- can or Badaschan, Banghir.
		Turquestan.	Thibet, and Tobbot or Tobbat, Beruan, Ug.
		Cathay.	Xamo and Camul, Tanju or Tangat, Serra, Muanchu or Muonchen.

The Second Table of TARTARY.

TARTARY; other- wise divided into Two Parts:	The Nor- thern, com- prehending	Buchar Kingdom.
		Karacathay.
		Mongal, or } Metrit, Sa-Moal, Mercat, Moal. — } Jeka-Moal.
		The Kaimachites, or Naimans.
	The Sou- thern, in which are	Kasgar Kingdom.
		Mawaralnabha.
		Thibet or Tobbot Kingdom.
		Tangut, Tanju or Tanjeu, and Thokioe King- dom.
		Nieuhe or Niushe Kingdom.
		Jupi.

The principal Rivers of Tartary are,	Oxus, and Gihon or Gehun, and Jihun, Jaxartus or Seihan, and Alshash, Rudha, Jaie, Tartarus, Tartar, or Tatar, Ghammasius, or Ghammas,	which run into the Caspian Sea.
		which run } The Tartarian Sea. into } The Sea of the Kaimachites.

The modern Geography of Great Tartary, and the Customs of the Inhabitants.

SOME divide it into 4 Parts, viz. Real Tartary, which lies N. and E. Desert Tartary on the W. Zagathay or Usbeck Tartary, which borders on Persia, and Turchestan, which lies Southward towards India properly so call'd. The Arabian Geographers and others divide it into several Parts or Kingdoms, scarce known to the Europeans; the chief of which are, 1. The Kingdom of Thibet, which Baudrand takes to be the S. Part of Scythia extra Imaum. 2. The Country beyond Oxus or Mawaralnakra, the ancient Faxarta and Sogdiana. 3. Olgaria, or the Country of the Calmucks, or the ancient Orgasi, a People of Scythia intra Imaum. 4. The Chazalgites, or Kingdom of Kasgar, where dwelt the Saca, a People of Scythia intra Imaum. 5. The Caulachites, or the ancient Alani of Scythia intra Imaum, otherwise call'd Karacathay. 6. Mongul, Moal, or Magog, the ancient Seat, as he supposes, of the Hyperborei. 7. The Kaimachites or Naimans, a large Tract, which he takes to be the N. Part of Scythia extra Imaum, and Part of Serica, or the Country of Seres. 8. The Kingdom of Tangut, Tanju, and Bagarghar, suppos'd by Moderns to be the S. Part of Seres. 9. The Kingdom of Niuche or Tenduc, another Part of Seres to the S. And, 10. Jupi or Yupi, which (as some think) extends a great Way on the E. But Cluverius, the Sansons, and others of the best modern Geographers, divide it more regularly into these 5 principal Parts, viz. Desert Tartary, Usbeck or Zagathay, Turquestan, Cathay, and Real Tartary.

D E S E R T T A R T A R Y.

SANSON, who makes it 1800 Miles from S. W. to N. E. bounds it on the W. by the Rivers Wolga and Oby, which separate it from Muscovy; on the E. with Mount Imaus, which parts it from Real Tartary and Turquestan; on the N. by the Northern Ocean or Sea of Tartary; and on the S. by the

Caspian Sea, the River Kessel or Chesel, and some Mountains, which joining with Imaus, separate it from Usbeck or Zagathay. Heylin says, 'tis parted from Zagathay to the E. by the River Spane, which falls into the Caspian Sea about the Middle of it; and with the great Lake of Kitay from E. to W. Cluverius, who places it between the Rivers Tanaïs, Wolga, and Faxartes, the People call'd Tapyri and Sebyii, and the Mountain Imaus, makes it to comprehend the greatest Part of Scythia intra Imaum, divided into several Tribes or Hordes, the chief of which are, 1. The Zavolkenses or Bulgari; 2. The Hordes of Casan; 3. The Nagaian or those of Nagay; 4. The Thumenses; 5. The Horda Schiambacensis; 6. The Cossacks; 7. Those of Astracan; 8. The Baskirdenses; 9. The Circassians; 10. The Metriti; 11. The Samoieds; 12. The Moigomoxans; 13. The Baidai. To these Heylin adds, 14. The Kyrgessii. But of these particularly.

1. The Zavolkenses we have already described, P. 220 of this Volume, and shall only add from Buno, that they lie on the E. Side of the Wolga; that their Princes Zainchan and Bathis ravag'd Poland, Russia, and Hungary, in 1240; that in 1410, Temir Zar assisted Vitoldus of Lithuania and Uladislaus of Poland against the Christians; and that Sziackmeth being called away from the Lithuanians in 1500 to go against the Pracopenses and Crim-Tartars, was at last vanquish'd, and died a Prisoner at Cauna. These People are commonly accounted Turks, because they imitate them in their Language, Customs, and Manner of Fighting.

2. The Hordes of Casan we have described P. 185. Vol. I. to which we add what Hekelius says of them, viz. That they are more polite, ingenious, and civil, than the rest, for they cultivate their Lands, dwell in Houses, and trade with the Muscovites and Turks.

3. The Nagaians, partly describ'd before P. 88. Vol. I. and P. 220 in Asia. Tavernier says, the Kingdom of the Great Nagoy is all plain and desert, 1200 M. in Length between Astracan and Samara, and 500 in Breadth from Astracan to the River Teike or Jaik. They have no Places of Strength, tho' formerly there were several, especially Czarofsgorod, i. e. the Emperor's Town, said to have been 20 Miles round, and seated in

a healthful Climate and fertile Soil between the Rivers *Wolga* and *Actabon*. He computed the Ruins of 80 great Buildings, some of them 6 Miles from one another, which he suppos'd were Mosques, Palaces, &c. The *Muscovites* are of various Opinions concerning its Destruction. Some say, it was ruin'd by the *Cossacks*; but these know nothing of it, only that they have often dispossest'd the *Russes*, who endeavour'd to rebuild it. 'Tis now uninhabited and ruin'd, as are 5 or 6 more, which *Tavernier* says lay along the River. *Morden* makes the Extent of this Country but 4 or 500 Miles long, and 200 broad. *Tavernier* says, these *Tartars* are taller than the rest, but have little flat Noses, and a rawny Complexion. They take as many Wives as they please, according to their Ability. If one Brother dies, the other takes all his Wives; and if all the Brothers die, they fall to the eldest Brother's Son. *Hekelius* says, these People first began to form themselves into a Civil Society A. D. 1344. *Heylin* says, the Number of their Morseys or Governors is lately reduced to three, of which he who resides at *Scharayirzick*, their Capital, is the chief. Mr. *Jenkinson* in *Hakluyt* says, they were all destroy'd when he was at *Astracan*, A. D. 1558, in which Year above 100000 of them perish'd by Civil Wars, Famine, Pestilence, &c. and their Country, which had such Plenty of Pasture before, made utterly desolate. They had no Towns, but liv'd in the Fields, and us'd to barter their Cattle for what they wanted. The present Inhabitants are very seditious, and inclin'd to Theft and Murder. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, their Huts have a Hole in the Middle on the Top, (like the Chicken-Coops in *Germany*) thro' which they put out a Stick, with a Piece of coarse Cloth at the End, to facilitate the going out of the Smoak, by turning it to the Wind, and draw it in as soon as their Turf or Cow-Dung, which is their ordinary Fuel, is reduced to a live Coal. In the cold Weather they cover these Huts with a coarse Cloth to keep in the Heat, and scarce stir abroad all the Time. They are in great Fear of the *Calmucks*, for which Reason the *Muscovites* furnish them with Arms in the Winter, which they are oblig'd to return again as soon as the Roads are passable, for they are allow'd no Arms in Sum-

mer. *Tavernier* gives this Description of the *Negais*, and such *Tartars* as border upon *Comania*. They keep up an ancient Breed of Horses, with that Superstition, that they reckon it Sacrilege to dispose of them to Strangers. When an old Man falls to Decay, he lends some stout young Man, who is a Soldier, one of his Horses to make an Incursion, on Condition to have half the Booty, and many times they run up as far as *Hungary*. Upon such Enterprizes they ride about 100 in Company, and about 60 when they go a thieving. These Horses will travel 4 or 5 Days together with a Handful of Grass once in 9 Hours, and a little Water every 24 Hours; but they never go a robbing with them till 7 or 8 Years old, nor before they have undergone the following Exercise: For 8 Days together they put under the Saddle a Bag of Gravel or Earth, which the first Day must be no more than the Weight of a Man; but then they add to it daily, till it becomes double the Weight at the End of the 8 Days. In the meanwhile they daily abate the Horse's Provender and Drink, and walk him out for two or three Leagues. The next 8 Days they gradually diminish the Weight, till the Bag be empty, and make a proportionable Abatement of his Meat and Drink, and every Day take in the Girth a Hole shorter. Besides, he eats all the Time with the Bit in his Mouth. The 3 or 4 last Days they give him neither Provender nor Drink, if he be strong enough to live without it. The last Day they work him to a Sweat, when they take off his Bridle and Saddle, and pour cold Water upon him; then lead him into a Field, where they tie him by the Leg at such a Length as they intend he shall feed, allowing him more Rope by degrees, till at last they give him full Range. Their Hoofs are so hard, that they never shoe them. *Tavernier* says, That scarce 10 in 50 endure this severe Tutoring. They that ride carry along with them a Bag full of Pieces of Cheese dried in the Sun, which they put into a Borachoe of Goats-Skins filled with Water, tied under the Horse's Belly; and when 'tis dissolv'd, it becomes a kind of sower Liquor, which is their ordinary Drink. They carry a large Wooden Ladle at their Saddles, out of which the Rider drinks, and then gives it to his Horse. They that
encoun-

encounter them, can hope for no better Booty than their Horses; but they are very hard to be taken, for when one of them perceives that his Rider is slain, he follows those that fly as fast as he can. Besides, if they are carried into other Countries, they are presently spoiled. The common People wear only a Sheep-Skin with the Wool next their Bodies in the Winter, and the other Side in the Summer. The Nobility wear Wolves-Skins, with a Fustian Shirt and Breeches of several Colours, which reach down to their Ankles. Every Horde or Tribe of these People has a Chief, who is one of the Noblemen of the Country, and carries for his Banner a Horse-Tail on a Half-Pike, of the Colour of his Tribe. When they march, every one knows where to place himself and Cattle, so that one Tribe never encroaches upon another. The Women's Faces are broad, and their Eyes very small. They grow deformed at 30 Years of Age. They generally wear a large Shirt that reaches to their Feet, and a great white Veil upon their Heads, their Foreheads being bound about with a black Handkerchief tied in 5 or 6 Rolls. The better Sort wear over this Veil a Bonnet, open behind like a Three-corner'd Cap. One of these Points stands up in the Middle of the Forehead, lin'd with Velvet, Sattin, or Cloth of Gold, and set with small Pieces of Gold and Silver, and false Pearls, of which they also make Bracelets. Their Shoes and Stockings are only a Cordovan Boot neatly sew'd. When a young Man designs to marry, he must give the Maid's Father and Mother a certain Number of Horses or other Cattle, in the Presence of the Moulla and the ancientest of the Tribe; and after the Agreement he has the Liberty to see his Mistress, but not before. Besides Wives, the Men keep several Female Slaves, whose Children are still Slaves, and can never inherit. These *Tartars* are of a very hot Constitution, but the Women exceed. They prefer those to be Moulla's who have the best Beards, if they can write and read. Their young Women ride in Waggon's clos'd up with Boards, and a Window on one Side like a Lettice to let in the Air. After they are 10 or 12 Years old, they never stir out of their Waggon's till married, tho' it be to ease Nature; but there's a

Plank in the Middle which may be taken up; and if it be a Place where they stay, a Slave comes presently and cleanses all underneath. The Maidens Waggon's are painted with Flowers, and there's a Camel generally tied to the Tail of it besmear'd with several Colours, a Garland of Flowers about its Head. The young Men also have every one their Waggon, wherein they carry a Horse-Skin Boracho holding about 9 Gallons and a half, which they usually fill with Mare's Milk. They have also every one another Waggon next to that they ride in, wherein they carry several Borachoes full of sower Cow's Milk. Before they drink, they stir it in the Boracho with a great Stick, that the Curd may incorporate with the Thin, and then mix it with a little Water. They drink nothing but this, for Water alone gives them the Cholick. The Mare's Milk is only for the Master and Mistress. They entertain their Visitors with Bits of dry'd Cheese and fresh Butter, tho' sometimes they kill Sheep and Goats, but never their Horses, unless at Births, Marriages, Burials, or when their Friends return from their Excursions with great Spoils. They think Salt bad for the Eyes, and never use it. They are very healthy and long liv'd, and refuse no Diet but Swine's Flesh. In the Winter they lodge upon the Banks of great Rivers, and near Woods and Marshes, where they give their Herds a free Range, and every Tribe has Wells of its own to water them. The Men cut down the Woods for Firing, and catch Fish, which are never less than 4 Foot, and several of 'em 12 Foot long. Some they dry in the Wind, and preserve till Summer, others they smoke in Holes made on purpose in the Ground, but boil and eat the smaller Sort without any manner of seasoning. When they have eaten their Fish, they drink the Liquor they were boil'd in with Ladles. At Home they spend their Time in Hunting with Greyhounds, and reckon him a very poor *Tartar* indeed that does not keep one. They are all subject to him whom the Gr. Seignior appoints over *Little Tartary*. They have no Physicians for Diseases, and make Use of certain Simples by Tradition. When one is at the Point of Death, the Moullah opens and shuts the Alcoran three times, laying it upon

upon the sick Person's Face, and then says certain Prayers. If the Patient recover, they impute it to the Sanctity of the Alcoran, and present the Moullah with a Sheep or a Goat. If he die, all his Kindred meet and carry him to the Grave, with great Expressions of Sorrow, crying, *Alla, Alla*. The Moullah says Prayers at his Grave, for which he is paid according to the Wealth of the Heirs. For the Poor, he spends only 3 Days and Nights in that Exercise; but for the Rich, a Month, and sometimes 7 or 8, never stirring from the Grave. When any of them is wounded, they only apply hot boil'd Flesh. If the Wound be deep, they thrust in a Piece of Fat very hot. The Flesh and Fat of a Horse are reckon'd better Healers than that of any other Creatures. They that run a-foot, and are weary, take Walnuts, as they do in *Persia*, bruise them, and then rub the Soles of their Feet with them before the Fire as hot as they can endure them, which presently makes them fresh again. *Tavernier* adds, That tho' these People imitate the *Lesser Tartars* in most of their Manners and Customs, and are under the same Prince, yet they perfectly hate them, and reproach 'em with Effeminacy for living in Houses and Villages, and say, that true Soldiers should live in Tents as they do, to be always ready.

4. The *Thumenses*, described P. 221 of this Volume. They are placed E. of the *Nogaians*. Their Capital is *Tumen* on the River *Irtische*. 5. The *Schiambacenses*, which *Botero* places on the *Caspian* Shore. They are not considerable in History. 6. The *Cossacks*, described formerly in *Europe*, P. 196, &c. 7. Those of *Astracan*, the same with the *Nogaians* before-mentioned. The Reader may see a further Account of them and their Country P. 186, &c. in *Europe*. 8. The *Baskirdenses*, of whom we find nothing in History but the Name. 9. The *Circassians*, mention'd P. 219, 221, of this Volume; but we think fit to add here what the following Authors say further of them. *Scaliger* and *Strabo* call them *Zigi*. The former assigns their Habitations beyond Mount *Caucasus*, upon the *Euxine* Sea, near the *Palus Maotis*, betwixt *Asia* and *Europe*. The *Holstein* Ambassadors derive them from the *Scythians* or *Caspian-Sarmatians*, inhabiting Part of ancient *Albania*, with the *Caspian*

Sea and Mount *Caucasus* on the E. and W. and the River *Bustro*, and the vast Deserts of *Tartary* and *Astracan* on the S. and N. What Towns they have are garrison'd by the *Moscovites*, who allow the Natives to live only in the open Towns and Villages; yet the Administration of Justice remains in the *Tartarian* Lords, who are bound by Oath to the Czar, and transact every thing of Moment in the Presence of the Weywode of the Place, and in the Czar's Name. Their Houses are very low and mean, being made of Boughs, plaister'd over with Earth or Clay. The Men are generally strong Limb'd, and of a tawny Complexion. They wear long black Hair, shave the Middle of their Heads, from the Forehead to the Neck, about the Breadth of an Inch, and leave a Lock at the Crown, which falls down behind. *Scaliger* makes them the most barbarous and perfidious of People; but the *Holstein* Ambassadors say, they are more civiliz'd by their Conversation with Christians since the *Moscovites* reduc'd them. They speak both the *Tartar* and *Moscovite* Tongues. Their Habit is like that of their Neighbour *Tartars*. Their Women are of a clear Complexion, and well shap'd. They never veil their Faces, and their black Hair hangs down in two Tresses on both Sides. They wear black Coifs upon their Heads, and cover them with Callico or a Piece of Linen ty'd under the Chin. In Summer they wear nothing but a Smock, which is green, yellow, or blue, and cut very deep before. Their Widows are distinguish'd by a full blown Ox-Bladder, cover'd with Callico or other Stuff, which hangs behind in their Necks. They are pretty free of their Favours, and will invite the Men home to their Huts while their Husbands are abroad; yet nevertheless they are accounted very chaste. In their Marriages they resemble the *Nogaians*. When a Person of Note dies, the Relations appoint a Meeting in the Fields to sacrifice a He-Goat; but first try whether it be proper for Sacrifice, by cutting off its Privy-Members, and casting them against the Wall; if they stick, they flea the Goat, stretch his Skin upon a Pole, boil and roast his Flesh, and afterwards eat it. When the Feast is over, the Men pay their Devotions to the Skin, the Women are sent

H h h

Home,

Home, and the Men carouse in Aqua-vitæ till they be drunk like Beasts, and rarely part without Blows. The Skin hangs upon the Pole till the next Person of Quality dies, when 'tis taken away to make Room for another. The *Helslein* Ambassadors saw one of these Skins near *Terki* upon a black Cross, with the Head and Horns upon it, and fix'd in a Quickset Hedge, to keep off the Dogs and Cattle. They bury the Dead with great Ceremony, and Persons of Note have Houses built over their Tombs. They scratch their Foreheads, Arms, and Breasts, till the Blood comes, and sometimes tear open Wounds that are but just healed up, to shew their Sorrow for the Dead, but never pray for them.

Tavernier bounds *Circassia* on the S. with *Mengrelia*, on the E. with *Comania*, from which 'tis separated by Part of Mount *Caucasus*, and on the N. with *Tanais* and *Volga*, which divide it from *Muscovy*. He says, they have no Fish in their Rivers, but abundance of fair Tulips in their Gardens, and a Sort of pale yellow Strawberries as big as small Nuts, with short Stalks, which grow 5 or 6 in a Bunch. Their Horses are well shap'd, like the *Spanish* Gennets. They have Store of Wild Fowl and Venison, which they never hunt with Dogs; for their Horses are so swift, that they often tire the Game, and force it to lie down. Every Horseman has a Rope with a Sliding-Knot, which they throw about the Neck of the Beast when it begins to be weary. When they have killed a Deer, they cut off his Legs, break the Bones, and eat the Marrow, than which they think nothing better to strengthen the Body. When they go to steal Cattle, they carry Cows Horns, stuffed with boil'd Tripes cut in Pieces, which, while the Herdsman is asleep, they throw to his Dogs, who presently run away with the Horns, and leave the Thieves to drive what they please. *Tavernier* says, they resemble the *Irish* in Person and Garb. Their Cassocks are like the *Nogaians*, except the Sleeves, which are open below and above, and sometimes pinn'd behind. Neither the Men nor the Women suffer their Hair to grow longer than the Tips of their Ears. They imitate the *Nogaians* in their Breeches, Stockings, and Shooes. *Tavernier* gives this Account of a remarkable

Feast they make at the End of every Autumn. Three of the ancientest of the Village are appointed to manage it. These old Men mutter some Prayers over a Sheep or Goat, cut the Throat of it, dress it very clean, and boil it whole all but the Gathers, which they roast. The People meet in a large Barn, where the three old Men stand upright before a Table, and all the People behind them. When the Table upon which the Meat is set is brought in, two of the old Men cut off the Legs and Gathers, and hold them above their Heads, while the 3d holds up a great Cup of Boza. At the Sight of the Meat and Boza the People fall upon the Ground, and lie there till the rest of the Meat be set upon the lesser Table, and that the old Men have said a few Words. Then the old Men who held up the Meat cut off two little Pieces, give each of them a Bit to him that holds the Cup, and then take a Piece for themselves. When they have all three eaten, he that holds the Cup drinks to his Right and Left Hand Man: Then the two old Men present the Meat and Drink first to their Chief or Lord, and afterwards to all the People, who eat an equal Share. The Remains of the 4. Feet is carried back to the Table, where the 3 old Men eat it. Then they place themselves at the Table on which the Mutton stands, where the oldest of the three taking the Head, eats a little Morsel; after him the 2d, and next to him the 3d. Then the first old Man commands the rest to be carried to the Lord, who receives it with a great deal of Respect; and after he has given it to his next a-kin, or him whom he loves best, 'tis given from one to another, till the whole be eaten up. Then the old Men tast of the Mutton, and call the Lord of the Village, who comes trembling with his Bonnet in his Hand, to whom one of the old Men presenting a Knife, he cuts off a Piece, and eats; and having drank a Cup of Boza, returns to his Seat. After him all the People, according to their Quality, do the same by Turns, and then the Children go together by the Ears for the Bones.

He says, they have another Feast before they begin to mow their Meadows, when all the People of the Village that are able take every one a Goat, and the Poor join together

ther for one. When they are all brought before them, they cut their Throats, flea off the Skin, and leave the 4 Feet and the Head in it. They stretch the Skins with Sticks, set 'em up on Poles in the Middle of the Village, and make profound Obeisance to 'em. Every one having boil'd his Goat, sets it upon a great Table in the Middle of the Village. The Lord and his Servants, and sometimes the Lord of the neighbouring Village, are invited to the Feast, which is manag'd as that before-mention'd. They eat and drink all the Day long, and sing and dance to their Flutes, which are pretty harmonious, and fall proportionably from the Treble to the Bass. When the old Men have eat and drank enough, they go home; but the young Men, Women and Children, stay as long as there's any Drink. Once a Year they make in every House a Cross like a Mallet, about 5 Foot high. The Master of the House sets this every Evening within his Chamber-Door, and calling his Family together, gives every one a Wax Candle lighted. Then he fixes his own to the Cross, and the rest do the like. If the Children be too young, the Parents do it for them. If one of the Candles go out before it be extinguish'd, they believe he or she that fix'd it will not live out the whole Year. If it falls, they think the Person to whom it belong'd shall be robbed, or forc'd to fly for his Life. When it thunders, all the People run out of the Village, and the young ones fall a singing and dancing. If any be Thunder-struck, they bury him with Honour, reckon him a Saint, and send over all the Country for a white Goat, which they keep with great Veneration in the Village where the Thunder fell, till thundring in another Place, the People send for it thither: And if the Thunder fall upon any one's House, tho' it kill neither Man nor Beast, all that Family shall be kept on the publick Stock the whole Year, without being tied to any Labour. During this Time they go from Village to Village, dancing and singing at People's Doors, but never enter, the Inhabitants being obliged to bring them out something to eat. There is a Day in the Spring when all that have been Thunder-struck meet together in the Village where the white Goat is kept. They carry this Goat, who has al-

ways a Cheese hanging about his Neck as big as a *Parma* Cheese, to the Village of the chief Lord of the Country. They never enter the Village, but the Lord, with all the Inhabitants, come out, prostrate themselves before the Goat, and after some Prayers take away his Cheese, and put another in its Place. The Cheese which was taken off is distributed among the People. After that, they give the Strangers Meat and Alms; so that by wandering thus from Village to Village, they get a great deal of Money.

They have but one Book, which is a large Folio, kept by an old Man, who has the sole Privilege to touch it. When he is dead, they commit it to another, who is to go from Place to Place with the Book to visit the Sick, in which they imitate the *Nogaians*. They have old Women who feel the Patient all over, especially that Part of the Body that is afflicted, during which they let several Belches out of their Mouths; and the more sick the Party is, the louder and faster they belch. This makes the Standers by believe their Friend is dangerously ill, and that the louder the Women belch, the more Ease the Patients receive; but whether they do or no, the Women are well paid. When they are troubled with the Head-ach, a Barber gives two Cuts across upon the Head with a Razor, and then pours Oil into the Wound; for they believe the Pain proceeds only from Wind between the Flesh and Bone, which by such Incisions evaporates. If a Man and his Wife have no Children, he may take others till he has Issue. If the Husband finds a Gallant in Bed with his Wife, 'tis the Custom for him to go away and take no Notice on't. The Wife observes the like by him; and a Woman is so respected for the Number of her Gallants, that when they fall out, they taunt one another, and say, If they were not ugly, ill-natur'd, or diseas'd, they would have more Admirers. *Tavernier* adds, That the Women work in the Iron Mines, which they melt and forge into several Tools and Implements. They embroider their Saddles, Quivers and Pumps, with Gold and Silver. If a Man and his Wife can't agree together, and the Husband complains first to the Lord of the Place, he sends for the Woman, orders her

to be sold, and gives the Man another. But if the Wife complains first, the Husband is serv'd the same Sawce: And if any disturb their Neighbours, the latter complain to the Lord, who presently causes the Party to be sold to the Merchants that buy Slaves. They that assume the Quality of Gentlemen, sit still and speak very little when at Home. All the Country People are Slaves to the Lord of the Village where they live, who employs them to till his Land, and cut Wood.

We know little of their Towns, because this Country is not frequented by European Merchants. However, the *Holstein* Ambassadors make *Terki* their Capital City, about half a League from the *Caspian* Shore, on the little River *Timenski*, a Branch of the *Bustro*, by which it has Communication with the Sea, the Land Side being encompassed with Fens for a quarter of a League round. The *Holstein* Ambassadors correct *Nich. Jansson* Fisher's Map, for mistaking this City for *Tarku* in the Province of *Daghestan*, and seating it on a Mountain. They place it in a large Plain, Lat. 43. 23. 60 Leagues by Sea, and 70 by Land, from *Astracan*. *Moll* agrees with them, only he makes it but 46 Miles S. W. from *Astracan*. The Ambassadors say, 'tis the last Frontier Place of the Czar on that Side. The Buildings are of Wood. It had a Garrison of 20000 Men, 500 of whom were appointed for the *Tartar* Princes Guards, and the Czar had made some Fortifications of Earth after the modern Way, mounted with Cannon. Near this City they saw a Sort of Field-Mice like Squirrels, but more black, with Heads like Rats, long Ears, and the fore Feet shorter than the hindmost; so that they cannot run very fast, but will leap 5 or 6 Foot high, with their Tails laid over their Backs, which are long without Hair, like those of other Mice, but not so big. They swarm in *Arabia* and about *Babylon*, where the Inhabitants eat them. If they get into their Houses, they will carry all the Money they can find into their Nests. *Tavernier* reckons but two Towns in this Country, viz. *Temerossa*, upon the Gulph that goes from the *Black* Sea into the *Tein* Sea, over against *Arbotka*; and *Tumein* upon the *Caspian* Sea, being 1100 Miles distant from each other. *Heylin* says, this Country has several large Bays and good Havens; that from

hence the *Egyptian* *Mamaluks* had their first Origine, and the Kings of *Persia* their *Coozel-Bassa's*; and that the Christian Faith was planted here first in 860 by *Cyrl* and *Methodius*, sent hither by the Greek Patriarch at *Constantinople*. They imitate the *Muscovites* in their Forms of Devotion, and have their Divine Offices in the *Sclavonian* Tongue.

10. The *Mecriti*, unknown, or at least not mentioned, by modern Authors. *Cluverius* places them E. of the *Baidai*, almost under the N. Pole, along the Bank of the *Tartarian* Sea.

11. The *Samoieds*, already describ'd P. 171 in *Europe*.

12. The *Molgomsai* or *Molgomo-*
sans, for whom we refer to P. 221 in *Asia*.

13. The *Baidai*. *Sanfon* places them in the most N. Part of *Tartaria Deserta*, betwixt the *Molgomsai* on the W. and that Part of the Northern Ocean on the E. which begins to take the Name of the *Tartarian* Sea. We find no other Mention of them in History. Lastly, The *Kyrgeffii*, already described P. 221 of this Volume.

Their Towns are few, and have nothing remarkable.

Tavernier and other late Geographers add to the Hordes above-mentioned, who inhabit this Part of *Tartary*, 1. The *Calmuchs* or *Kalmucks*. He says, they dwell on the Coast of the *Caspian* Sea, between the *Muscovites* and *Tartars*, N. W. from the *Turgeachians*. *Everard Isbrand*, the *Muscovite* Ambassador, who travelled thro' this Country in 1693 towards *China*, says, they border upon *Siberia*. Father *Averil* says, they possess all the Country betwixt *Mongul*, the *Volga*, and *Astracan*, and are divided into an infinite Number of Hordes, under their own Chans or Chiefs. *Tavernier* says, the Men are strong, but extreamly deformed, their Faces being flat and broad, their Eyes very small, and their Nose so low between their Cheeks, that 'tis scarce discernible. Their Knees and Feet turn inward. They carry their Wives and their Daughters, if above 12 Years old, to the Wars, who fight as courageously as the Men, from whom they can scarce be distinguish'd by their Garb and Ridings. Their Arms are Bows, Arrows, and Skains, with a great Wooden Mace at the Pummel of their Saddles, and they have the best Horses in *Asia*. Their Captain is generally of an ancient Family, tho' they particu-

particularly chuse him for his Valour. The Czar of *Muscovy* every Year sends them Presents of Cloth, &c. to preserve their Friendship, and he grants them free Passage thro' his Territories whenever they have a Mind to invade the *Mengrelians*, *Georgians*, or *Circassians*. Sometimes they advance into *Persia* as far as the Province of the *Usbeques*, *Caboul*, and *Candahar*. Their Country abounds with all Things necessary for Life. There are Store of Sables, Martins, Black Foxes, Squirrels, and several other Sorts of Furs, which they exchange with the *Russes* for *Aqua-vitæ*, Mead, Tobacco, &c. *Tavernier* and others include the Town and Province of *Siberia* in this Country, together with *Wadle*, *Sellona*, *Oussa*, which he says lies 500 Miles from *Casan*, near the *Volga*; and *Lucomoria*, which they say is situate upon the *Frozen Sea*. The *Kalmucks* are accounted good Soldiers, being kept in continual Exercise by the *Muscovites* on one Side, and the *Nogaians* and *Cossacks* on the other. They are suppos'd to be Heathens, and to pay a kind of Adoration to the Sun and Moon; but they have a favourable Opinion of Christians, and are Enemies to the *Mahometans*. They eat Snakes, Adders, Foxes, and many Sorts of Carrion. They are nam'd *Kalmucks* by the other *Tartars* from a Sort of Hats, call'd *Coulpacks* by the *Muscovites*, open before and behind, with broad Brims on each Side. *Father Averil* says, they us'd to make their Incursions upon the *Nogaians* every Winter by Favour of the Ice and Snow; but have desisted those Hostilities, since the *Muscovites* furnish'd the former with Cannon and Fire-Arms. However, they make an Excursion once every Year with 100000 Men as far as the Plains between *Astracan* and the *Caspian Sea*, to get Provisions for their Cattle in the more Southerly Parts, and to demand the usual Presents from the *Muscovites*; in lieu whereof they supply the Czar with Horses and Men upon any emergent Occasion. The chief Chan is call'd *Otchiourtican*, who pretends to be descended from *Tamerlane*. He is so potent, that not only the *Muscovites*, but the *Usbecks* court his Amity, by Annual Presents; and 'tis reported, that he is always clad in White, and serv'd in Gold Plate. These People live in the Fields under Tents made of Felts, and seldom rest

long in a Place. *Struys* says, they have their Heads shaven all except one Tuft. They have Horses, Camels, Dromedaries, Oxen, Cows, and other Cattle; but Horse-Flesh is their best Dainty.

An Anonymous Author bound up with *Tavernier*, in his Description of the Countries which border upon the *Euxine* and *Caspian Seas*, gives an Account of the River *Jaike* or *Teik*, which, according to some, rises in the *Kalmucks* Country, but, according to others, in *Siberia*. He says, it runs 1000 Miles, and falls into the *Caspian Sea* a little below *Seraichicka*, is a very large River, the Country on each Side cover'd with Wood, Grass, several Sorts of Herbs and wild Fruit-Trees, and the River abounds with good Fish, especially Sturgeon, in such Plenty, that a Man with a Pole, and an Iron Hook fix'd at the End of it, may stand on the Bank and catch them with Ease. In the neighbouring Coast of the *Caspian Sea*, there are many Caves frequented by Multitudes of Swans, that cast their Feathers every Year about *Midsummer*. The *Russians* hunt those Swans, and drive a great Trade with their Skins and Feathers.

On the E. Side of the *Jaike* lies the Country call'd *Cassachy Horda*. It has the *Kalmucks* on the N. and the *Turgeach Tartars* on the N. E. The Country is desert, the People wild, have no Corn, but feed on Horse-Flesh and Mare's-Milk. They have frequent Wars with the neighbouring *Tartars*.

East from the *Kalmucks* lie the *Turgeacheans* or *Turgench Tartars*, a numerous and warlike People, who have a King of their own. The Borders of their Country lie 20 Days from *Astracan*. The *Karagans*, another Hord of *Tartars*, inhabit a vast Tract of Ground betwixt the River *Jaike* and the *Usbeck Tartars*. They are miserably poor, the Country barren, their Houses are wretched Huts, and they have no Town of Note.

Real or Ancient Tartary.

Sanson makes this the most Northerly Part of all *Tartary* in general, and therefore colder, more uncultivated and barbarous, than the rest. It was call'd *Ancient Tartary*, because *A. D.* 1200, the *Tartars* of this Province

vince having conquer'd 6 of their Neighbour Hordes, extended their Fame, Arms, and Dominion, to the largest and best Parts of *Asia*. Some take 'em to be the Remainder of the 10 Tribes that were transported to *Media*; and others say, that the Names of *Dan*, *Nepthalim*, and *Zabulon*, are still to be found among them; but *Sanfon* rejects the latter as Invention. He says, the Kingdoms, Provinces or Hordes, of this Country, which are best known, are those of *Mongul*, *Bargu*, *Tartar*, *Nayman*; to which *Heylin* adds *Thebet*, *Taber*, *Tenduc*, and *Anian*; and *Luyts*, *Giarea*, *Chakan* or *Kaimack*, *Sisian*, *Afar*, and *Carantia*: Also some add *Gog* and *Magog*, which others place between the Land of *Mogul* and *Ghina*. *Cluverius* places this *Tartary* between the River *Paropamisus* and *Seres* or *Cathay*, and extends it to the Northern Ocean and the Streights of *Anian*, and says, that many of the Learned think that *Ung* and *Mongul* is *Gog* and *Magog*; tho' he himself uses a great many Arguments to prove that they dwelt towards the *Caspian* Sea. *Sanfon* and *Luyts* bound it on the W. with *Tartaria Deserta*, on the N. with the *Tartarian* Sea, on the E. with the Streight of *Jesso*, and on the S. with the Provinces of *Cathay* and *Turquestan*. The former makes it 1640 Miles in Length from E. to W. and 1000 where broadest. *Luyts* says, 'tis the largest of all the Parts of *Tartary*. *Heylin* bounds it on the S. with *Altay*, and the Countries of the Eastern *Tartars*; on the W. and N. with the main *Scythick* Ocean; and on the E. with the Streights of *Anian*, which divide it from *America*. Great Part of it lies under the Polar Circle. He says, many Christians, chiefly *Nestorians*, who were deny'd the Exercise of their Religion by the *Persians* and *Saracens*, went and dwelt formerly in this Country. *Sanfon* says, their chief Subsistence is from their Cattle and Furs, and they make great Gain of their White Bears, Black Foxes, Martens, Sables, &c. They live on Milk and Flesh, of which they have abundance, but don't care for Fruits or Grain, and in a Word do much resemble the ancient *Scythians*. He adds, That some of them have their Kings, others live in Hords, are most of 'em Shepherds, and subject to the Great Cham of *Cathay*.

Carpini, whose Travels are bound up with

Hakluyt, being in this Country in 1246, says, their Air is very intemperate; that in the Summer they have great Tempests of Thunder and Lightning, attended by Snow and Hail, which destroy many of their People and Habitations; and that being present when their Emperor Elect was placed upon the Throne, there was such a Storm of Hail, that upon the sudden melting of it, above 160 Persons were drown'd on the Spot, and many of their Tents carried away. He adds, That during the Summer, they have sometimes excessive Heats and Colds in a small Compass of Time; that they have no Rain but in that Season, nor enough then to moisten the Roots of the Grass. In some Part the Country is mountainous, their Plains are for most Part sandy and barren, and produce nothing except water'd with Canals from the Rivers. He says, they have no Towns nor Villages, but one nam'd *Cracurim*, which they said was a proper Town, but he did not see it. Their Emperor kept his Court at a Place called *Sya-Orda*. He says, the Men and Women were habited alike. They had Jackets of Buckram Scarlet or Baldakines, with Gowns, hairy on the Outside, open behind, and Tails hanging down to their Hams. The Walls of their Tents were cover'd with Felt, and their Doors were of the same. They had abundance of Camels, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats, but especially of Horses and Mares. Their Emperors and great Men abounded with Silk, Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones. Their Victuals, he says, was every thing that could be eat, and some of them he saw eat Lice. Their greatest Dainty was Mare's Milk. They boil'd Millet in Water, but so thin, that they drank it. They took a Cup or two of it in the Morning, and eat nothing else till Night; that they had a little Flesh. For the rest, their Customs are the same with the ancient *Scythians* already described. He says, they punish'd Adultery, Fornication, and Theft, with Death, and married within all the Degrees of Consanguinity except their Mother, Daughter, and Sister by the Mother's Side; but thought it no Crime to marry a Sister by the Father's Side, and their Mothers and Sisters in Law. Drunkenness they reckon'd honourable, and at Entertainments thought it

it no Shame to vomit, and immediately to drink again. They despised all other People, so that the meanest Fellows that were appointed to attend the Duke of *Russia* and the Princes of *Georgia* at the Emperor's Court would take Place of them. They worshipped the Moon, which they call'd, *The Great Emperor*; and at the Appearance of every New Moon, ador'd her on their Knees. Their Way of purifying themselves was by passing with their Cattle, Tents, &c. betwixt two Fires, under a Cord fasten'd to the Points of two Javelins, with Women standing on each Side casting Water, and repeating Charms. In the same Manner they made Ambassadors pass with their Presents before their Emperors would touch them. He says, the Country was anciently call'd *Mongal*, inhabited by 4 Sorts of People, call'd the *Great Mongals*, the *Water Mongals*, afterwards nam'd *Tartars*, and the two others were called *Mercat* and *Merit*. They were governed by their particular Princes till *Gingis Chan* subdued the rest, and set himself over all. They had great Wars with the People of *Cathay*, among whom he says there were many Christians.

Friar *Rubruquis*, a *French* Minorite, who was in those Parts in 1253, gives much the same Account of them; and he says of the *Tartars* in general, That they inhabited from the River *Danube* to the Rising of the Sun: So that we have nothing distinct concerning their Geography from those ancient Authors, nor can we depend upon what they say of them, their Relations are so evidently mix'd with Fables. He gives a particular Account how they made their Drink of Mares Milk, called *Cosmos*, and *Caracosmos*, as follows: They fastened a long Line to two Posts, and to this Line they tied Foals. Then they brought their Dams to them, who suffer'd themselves patiently to be milk'd, which otherwise they would not. They put the Milk into great Bladders, which they beat with Clubs till it produce Butter, that they separate from the Milk, which drinks sharp like Raspberry Wine, is intoxicating and diarrhetick. Their *Caracosmos* or Black Whey, made for the People of Quality, was beat in the same Manner, till the thick Part settled to the Bottom, and the Lees they gave to their Servants, which made them sleep

heartily. He says their Emperor has the Milk of 3000 Mares prepar'd thus for himself and his Courtiers every Day. They made Butter of their Cows Milk, and after it was churn'd boil'd it, and put it into Rams-Skins, where it would keep without Salt till Winter. They let their Butter-Milk grow as fowr as possible; then they boil'd it, till it turn'd into Curds, which they dried in the Sun, and kept also in Bags till the Winter, when they mix'd them with hot Water, and beat the Curds till they dissolv'd in the said Water, which they drank when their Milk fail'd them. One of their Emperors in his Time was *Sartach*, who kept his Court in the Country betwixt the *Tanais* and *Volga*. They had another great Prince call'd *Batu*, who liv'd further to the E. and a third call'd *Mangu-Chan*, whose Dominions extended towards *Persia*.

We think proper here to take Notice of what some call *Daghestan Tartary*, and that Authors differ much about the Situation of it. Some take it to be Part of that *Albania* which was the Seat of the *Amazons*, and lay betwixt *Iberia* and the *Caspian* Sea. Others think it to be the Province formerly call'd *Susiana*, and some will have it to be that now call'd *Chusistan*: But Sir *John Chardin* says, it is a mountainous Country, N. E. of the *Caspian* Sea, and borders upon *Muscovy*. He says, the Inhabitants are a savage People, the most barbarous of all the East, and he believes them to be a Remainder of the *Parthians*. The K. of *Persia* is at present own'd to be their Sovereign, but not absolutely their Master; nor are they always subject to his Commands. The *Persians* call them *Lesgi*; but they call themselves *Daghestan*, which signifies *Highland Tartars*, their Country being mountainous for about 40 Leagues, and they likewise inhabit the Vallies for about 20 or 30 along the *Caspian* Sea. *Struys* says, their Country begins at *Terki*, and ends near *Derbent*, so that it is about 40 Leagues long. The Inhabitants are robust, capable of Fatigue, and much resemble the *Circassian* and *Kalmuck Tartars* in their Clothes, Arms, and Customs. They are as deform'd as the *Kalmucks*, are continually in Arms, live by stealing Cattle and Slaves, which they sell, and have no Regard to any Nation, but plunder all indifferently that come in their Way,

Way, which obliges the Caravans that travel those Parts to carry strong Guards with them. They trust to their inaccessible Mountains, live in a sort of Independency betwixt the *Persians* and *Muscovites*, and chuse either of them to be their Protectors, as Occasion requires. What Religion they have is *Mahometanism*, and they are govern'd by particular Lords, who have their respective Jurisdictions, but join in the Government of the Community under an Elective Prince they call *Schemkal*, upon whose Death all those Lords or Princes meet, sit down in a Circle, where the Priest throws a Golden Apple among them, and he that is first touch'd by it is chosen to succeed. They leave the Management of their Cattle to their Women, while they themselves go a hunting, plundering, or fishing. They wear black Cloth Caps, Coats of coarse Cloth, with Cloaks of Fur; and instead of Shooes, sew Pieces of Sheep or Horse-Skins upon their Feet. The Women plait their Hair into many Locks, which hang dangling over their Shoulders. Their Household Vessels are chiefly Wooden Bowls and Troughs. They eat sitting on the Ground after the *Persian* Manner, and drink out of Cows-Horns a Liquor made of Barley. Their chief Town is called *Saru* or *Tarcu*, which lies among rocky Mountains; but they have few other Places of Note. The *Holstein* Ambassadors say, *Tarcu* is encompassed by steep Rocks, so cover'd with Shells of the Bigness of a Walnut, that they seem to be nothing else. The Rocks are as hard as Flint, but have good Pastures on the Tops, and furnish the City, which consists of about 1000 Houses, with Springs of good Water. The *Muscovite* Ambassadors narrowly escap'd being assaulted and plunder'd by the *Schemkal* of this Country, who expects Presents from every one that travels this Way. His chief Residence is at *Andre*, situate on a Hill near the River *Albanus*, where there's a hot Spring, the Water of which runs into an adjacent Pool, and forms a good Bath. They have an odd Custom there at Weddings, which is, that every one who is invited shoots an Arrow into the Roof of the House, or the upper Part of the Wall, where it sticks till it rot.

The first Subdivision of *Real Tartary* is

Mongul. Father *Averil* says, it begins at the W. Fountains of the River *Tamour*, and extends Westward to the *Kalmuck Tartars*, from whom they are separated by great Deserts. To the S. E. they border on *Turquestan*, and to the E. upon *China*. They are under the Jurisdiction of 3 Chans or Taïso's, who are of the same Family, and live together in Unity. They have no Towns nor Villages, but the People live upon Rapine, and make frequent Incursions upon the Inhabitants near the Lake *Dalac*. The Territories of their Chief Chan border upon the *Bogdoi* and *China*. Among the other Taïso's under his Jurisdiction is the Chan of *Beckroesaim*, in whose Territories resides the *Coutusta Lama*, who is properly the Vicar of the *Dala-Lama*, or *Lama Lamatou*, the Patriarch-General of the *Tartars*, but especially of these *Monguls*, who worship him like a Deity. Their Grounds are water'd with a great many Rivers, that fall into the *Szelinga*, which makes them very fertile, and fit for Pasturage. They live in good Correspondence with the *Muscovites*, are naturally of a quiet Disposition, and if any Quarrels arise among them, they are referred to the *Coutusta*, (who follows them wherever they ramble) or to such Judges as he appoints for that Purpose. They bear a constant Grudge to the *Bogdoi* ever since they made themselves Masters of *China*, but are unacquainted with the Use of Fire-Arms, and incapable of doing them much Mischief. Father *Averil* adds, that there are two other Chans belonging to these *Monguls*, call'd *Osticroikan*, and *D'Janò Garli*, who are scarce known but by Name.

The 2d Subdivision is *Bargu*, which lies N. W. and borders on both Sides the cold *Scythian* Ocean under the N. Star; the People and Soil being much the same with those of the rest of *Tartary*.

The 3d Subdivision is *Tenuc* or *Tanchut*. Father *Averil* says, it extends from the *Monguls*, the *Kalmuck*, and *Turquestan*, between *China* and *Persia*, to the *Indies*, is reckon'd a Kingdom, and its Metropolis is *Barantola*. He adds, That in the Fortrefs of *Beatalac* near this City resides the Impostor *Dalac*, or *Grand Lama*, who is worshipped as the supreme Head of their Religion by all the Nations of the *Tartars* as far as the *Indies*, except those of *Bechara* and *Samarchand*, who

who have embraced *Mahometanism*. They send for his Blessing from the remotest Parts, and whenever he appears in *China*, he is receiv'd with all imaginable Respect, and sent back with great Presents. *Mallet* says, the greatest Lords esteem themselves happy if they can by rich Presents obtain some of his Excrements dry'd, which they put into a Box of Gold, and carry about their Necks, as a certain Preservative against Calamities of all Sorts.

Athanasius Kircher says, they mix his Excrements and Water with their Medicines. The *Tartars* are made to believe he never dies, and therefore call him the Eternal Father. The Imposture is carried on by the inferior Lama's about him, who take Care to have one in readiness as like him as possible to set up in his stead when he dies, and bury the Corps secretly. They keep him in a secret Part of his Palace, cover'd with Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones, and enlighten'd by costly Lamps, where he sits on a rich Throne, to receive the Adorations of those who come from all Parts to prostrate themselves before him with their Faces towards the Ground; but they suffer none to approach very near him. The several Kings of *Tartary* being always us'd to worship him, the *Tartars* in 1629, says *Kircher*, solicited the Great *Tartar* Monarch, as soon as he subdu'd the Empire of *China*, to go and do Homage to this Idol. It was agreed to in Council, so that the Monarch resolv'd to meet him at the Wall of *China*; but was diverted from it by Father *Adams*, a Christian, who was intimate with that Prince; so that the Emperor would not stir out of the City to meet the Lama, nor admit him to come any farther than to the Garden of the Palace of *Pequin*, where he dismissed him with the usual Presents, without paying him any Adoration; so that he who was suppos'd to confer Prosperity and Happiness by his Benediction and Approach, was cursed by the *Chinese* as the Cause of the Famine, Pestilence and War, they were afflicted with. *Magaillans* places this Lama in the Kingdom of *Thibet*, and says, he exercises both Ecclesiastical and Temporal Dominion; whereas those who place him in the Kingdom of *Tenduc* say, there's another Prince who manages the Secular Affairs, and that the Lama meddles only with

those of Religion. *Magaillans* says, the inferior Lama's are usually clad in red and yellow Habits, which hang down to the Ground, with strait Sleeves, and a Mantle of the same Colour, one Side of which they fling under their Right Arms, and throw it back on the Left Shoulder, in the same Manner as the Apostles are painted, as if in this they imitated the Apostle *St. Thomas*; for the Histories and Chronicles of *China* say, That during the Reign of the Family of *Han*, Cotemporary with our Saviour, there came a holy Man call'd *Tamo*, who taught a holy Law, and wrought many Miracles; but finding he could do no Good, return'd to *India*. *Magaillans* thinks, by *Tamo* they mean *St. Thomas* the Apostle. He adds, there are many of those Lama's in *China*, where they are not much esteem'd, but entertain'd merely to oblige the *Eastern Tartars*, who idolize those Priests, fall at their Feet, and kiss the Hem of their Garment, while the Lama's draw the Figure of a Lozenge on their Crowns, after muttering certain Prayers. *Kircher* and *Averil* both agree, that this Lama is the Successor of *Prester John*, of whom we have had so many fabulous Stories in *Europe*, that place him in *Abyssinia*. These Fables had their Rise thus; King *John II.* of *Portugal*, when he sent *Peter de Coulan* to discover the Passage by Sea to the *East-Indies*, gave him particular Orders to enquire after *Prester John*, and in what Part he certainly reign'd. *Coulan* heard nothing of him in the *Indies*; but returning by *Cairo*, he was informed that in *Ethiopia* there was a potent Prince that protected the Christians, and when he appear'd in Publick had always a Cross carried before him. Upon this, he believ'd that Prince to be *Prester John*, and giving an Account of it to his Master, 'twas readily entertain'd at the *Portuguese* Court. The *Portuguese* who afterwards traded to *Africk*, being prepossessed with that Opinion, confirm'd it, and upon their Return spread it all over *Europe*, where it was receiv'd by the Vulgar, but disprov'd by Men of Learning, and particularly by *Balthasar Tallez*, who resided long in *Ethiopia*, and was well inform'd concerning that Kingdom. Besides, *Kircher* observes, that the *Latin* Chronology of the *Abyssinian* Kings makes no Mention of *Prester John*: Therefore there is more Reason to

seek for him in *Asia*. Authors differ much about the Origine of the Name; but *Scaliger* seems to come nearest the Truth, who derives it from the *Persian* Word *Prestigiani*, which signifies Apostolick; and the *Europeans* not understanding this, mistook it for *Prefter John*. Authors likewise differ about the Place of his Residence: Some will have it in that vast Country which extends itself from the Great Mogul's Dominions to the E. and N. as far as *China*. *St. Anthony, Hist. Tom. 3.* says, the Emperor of the *Tartars* having sent his Son to conquer the *Lesser India*, he afterwards advanc'd against the Christians who inhabited *Greater India*, but was defeated by their King, commonly called *Prefter John*. This agrees with what's said by *Paulus Venetus*, who having resided several Years at the Court of the Great Chan, understood that Country better than any body, and places him in *Tenduc*, which lies betwixt the Empire of the Great Mogul and *China*. To this it is objected, that some plac'd his Residence in *Kitay*, to which *Father Averil* answers, that by *Kitay* or *Cathay* they not only understood *China*, but that vast Country inhabited by the *Tartars* betwixt the Rivers *Oby* and *Volga* and *China*; and that the *Muscovites* take it in that Sense to this Day. It is further objected, that the Subjects of the ancient *Prefter John* were Christians, whereas the modern *Tartars* are either *Mahometans* or Pagans; to which *Father Averil* answers, That this Country might be over-run by Paganism, &c. as well as others, where the Christian Religion has been professed; That it is certain, according to him, the Apostle *St. Thomas* preach'd to the *Indians*, and died at *Meliapour*; That some maintain he preach'd also to the *Chinese*; but whether he did or not, it is like he might spread the Gospel more to the W. because there's a Country on that Side whose Inhabitants are still called, *The Christians of St. Thomas*, who yet retain some Tinctures of Christianity, baptize their Children, and make 3 red Crosses on their Foreheads with the Juice of Sanders-Wood: But whether Christianity be so ancient in those Parts or not, it is evident it was formerly there, from the Monument found near the City of *Sigancheu* in *China* A. D. 1625. *Kircher* says, there was a Cross engraven upon it, like that on the Sepul-

chre of *St. Thomas* at *Meliapour*, and not much unlike that of the Knights of *St. John* at *Jerusalem*, and under it a *Chinese* Inscription, importing, That in the Dominion of the Grand Tam, the 2d Year of *Kien-Cium*, in the Year of our Lord 782, in the Month of *Autumn*, on the *Sunday*, this Monument was erected, *Nim Ciu* being Bishop of the Church of *China*. We refer the Curious, who would know more of this, to *Kircher's* Description of *China*. *Father Averil* adds, That the Lama is probably the Successor of *Prefter John*; and that they chang'd their Religion, and became Head of a false one with the Times; that Lama in the *Tartar* Language signifies a Cross; and that the *Bogdoi Tartars*, who conquer'd *China* in 1644, and acknowledge the *Dalec Lama* for their Head, always wear Crosses about them, which they call *Lama*, and preserve them with extraordinary Care.

'Tis proper here to observe, that the Inhabitants of *Tenduc* are by some reckon'd the *Naiman Tartars*, whom *Sanson* places in *Real Tartary*; whereas he makes *Tenduc* Part of *Cathay*. *Heylin* and others make *Thibet* or *Thebet* a Subdivision of *Real Tartary*; but *Sanson* places it in *Turquestan*. *Moll* places *Little Thibet* on the E. of that Country, and *Great Thibet* S. E. from that; so that we can say nothing certain as to their Situation, but must refer to *Witsen's* Description of *Tartary*, and shall give an Account of it by Way of Supplement, if it be publish'd before this Work be finish'd. We cannot but take Notice here of what *Herbert* says, That Geographers have fill'd their Maps and Globes with the Names of *Tenduc*, *Tangutt*, *Tamfur*, *Cando*, *Camul*, and other hobgoblin Words, obtruded upon the World by those three arrant Monks, *Haythou*, *Mark Paul the Venetian*, and *Vertoman*. He much doubts whether there be any such Places, yet they are still continued in our Maps, and described by *Father Averil* and other late Travellers; so that *Sir Thomas* seems to have been too censorious in this Point.

The 4th Subdivision is *Thebet*, which is a fenny Country, full of Woods, and abounds with Coral on the Coasts, which *Heylin* says the Inhabitants use instead of Money; but *Sanson* and *Moll* place it in the Middle of the Continent, far enough from those Coasts where the Doctor finds his Coral.

ral. *Luyt* places it likewise in *Turquestan*; so that we know not what Credit to give to the Doctor's Account of the Inhabitants; That they us'd to eat their Parents; and make Drinking-Cups of their Skulls, lest in the midst of their Jollity they should forget their Progenitors, of whom they could have no manner of Certainty, if it be true what the Doctor says; without quoting his Authors, That they don't care to marry Virgins; therefore their Mothers prostitute them to Merchant Strangers, who present them with Jewels and other Knicknacks, which they wear as Ornaments on the Wedding-Day, and she is esteemed the best Bride who brings the richest Dowry in such base Rewards.

Sanfon says, *Thebet* lies nearest the Mogul's Country and the Indies, among the Mountains of *Imaus*, *Caucasus*, and *Ussentes*; that it abounds with Wild-Beasts, Musk, Cinnamon, and he finds Coral there too without Sea-Coasts. He adds, that the Relations publish'd of it in 1624 and 1626 make it so large and so rich a Country, that they confound it with *Cathay*; but those publish'd in 1651 make it a very cold Country, always cover'd with Snow, reckon their King a Barbarian, and less potent than one of the Moguls, Raja's, or Tributary Princes; so little can we depend upon those Accounts.

We come now to the other Parts of *Tartary* towards the S. and after all must refer to *Ysbrant Ides*'s Account of Northern and *Muscovite Tartary* in our Description of the *Muscovite Dominions* in the First Volume of *Europe*, as the best we have met with.

The first Part of *Southern Tartary* is that called *Usbeck* or *Zagathay*, the native Country and hereditary Kingdom of the Great *Tamerlane*. *Sanfon* bounds it with *Desert Tartary* on the N. Part of *Persia* and of the Mogul's Empire on the S. the *Caspian Sea* on the W. and *Turquestan* on the E. *Moll* makes *Turquestan* or *Tocharistan* the S. Part of it, and bounds it on the N. with the *Kalmucks* Country, and on the E. with *Little Thibet* and the Kingdom of *Casgar*. *Luyt* gives 'em the same Boundaries with *Sanfon*, and says, 'tis reputed the principal and best inhabited Part of the whole Continent of *Tartary*, and has a very great Trade with *Persia*. *Sanfon* makes it 1140 Miles from E.

to W. and 780 where broadest from S. to N. and places it betwixt Lat. 39 and 51. and Long. 99 and 125. *Moll* betwixt Long. 80 and 100. and Lat. 35 and 45. *Sanfon* says, the Inhabitants are the most civil and cunning of the *Western Tartars*, and have sometimes been subject, and sometimes Enemies to the *Persians*, live sometimes in Peace, and sometimes in War, with the *Indians*, and those of *Cathay*, where they sell their excellent Manna, and bring back Silk, which they manufacture and vend to the *Muscovites*. *Sanfon* the Missionary says, they are formidable Enemies to the *Persians*, whose Country they invade thro' the vast burning Deserts that separate them from *Candahor* in the very hottest Part of the Summer. They carry but little Provisions, for they eat their Baggage-Horses raw; and when they are dry, prick their Necks, and suck their Blood. They have little swift indefatigable Pads, with which they ravage the Provinces of the *Persians*, who not being us'd to that Way of Living, are not able to pursue them thro' the Deserts. In his Time they had a numerous Army on foot, with which they so harra's'd the *Persian* Troops by frequent Skirmishes and Surprizes, that they were like to recover the Province of *Chorasan*, and the great City of *Mesched*, which *Abas the Great* took from them, and made a Place of Pilgrimage, because one of their Saints was buried there. *Sir John Chardin*, in his Third Volume, gives a different Character of them, says they are called *Ruzbecs*, which signifies a Hundred Lords, because of the great Number of Principalities into which their Country is divided. The Ambassador of the Prince of *Balke*, one of those Sovereigns, invited *Sir John* to go to his Master's Court, where he promis'd him good Entertainment, and great Prices for his Merchandize. *Sir John* answer'd, That the *Tartars* were said to be so very barbarous to Strangers, especially those of a different Religion, that he durst not venture it. The Ambassador reply'd, That these were only *Persian* Stories, to lessen the Trade of the *Tartars*, and offer'd him what Security he would for his Protection at *Ispahan*; but the greatest Merchants there dissuaded *Sir John* from it, and told him, That several *Armenian* Merchants had been plunder'd and murder'd at *Balke*,

notwithstanding their Passports. He adds, that the Ambassador and his Retinue had the Looks of Highway-men, were incredibly ragged and nasty, and liv'd like Beasts. He says, they were about 4 Inches lower than the *Europeans*, but more bulky in Proportion. Their Faces were red, large, and square, their Noses flat, and their Eyes little. He tells us, they so much resemble the *Chinese*, that he is apt to think them of the same Origine, as are most of the People from the *Caspian Sea* to the Peninsula of *Malacca*. They are so zealous for *Omar*, who made them first *Mahometans*, that they exceed all People in that Respect, and hate the *Persians* so much because they follow *Aly*, that they commonly say, the *Jews* go to Hell riding on the Backs of *Persians*; and when they make War on them, carry Linen to dip in their Blood, and make use of it for Winding Sheets, which they think meritorious. Some of them carry their Bigottry so high, that when they have been in *Persia* on Account of Trade or Embassies, they go to the Tribunal when they return Home, and pretending a Horror of Conscience for being polluted with the Conversation of those heretical Dogs, say their Life is a Burden to 'em, and therefore demand Absolution for their Design to kill themselves. After which, several of them have thrown themselves headlong from the Towers of Mosques. Sir John adds, That it was usual for them when they travelled into *Persia* to bind themselves by Oath to kill any one who curs'd *Omar*, tho' they should die for it, which they perform'd accordingly; and thus the whole Train of one of their Ambassadors was cut off, which occasioned a Custom ever since, when any of those Ambassadors come to *Ispahan*, that a Proclamation is publish'd by Sound of Trumpet, forbidding any body to curse *Omar*, so loud as the *Usbecks* may hear it.

The chief Towns of this Country are,
1. *Samarchand*, *Ptolomy's Maracanda*, call'd also *Samracana* by *Chalcondyles*, and *Paracanda* by *Strabo*, who makes it the chief Emporium of *Bactria*, and the great Mart for some Ages betwixt the *Indians* and the *Roman Subjects*. 'Tis noted for being the Place where *Bessus*, one of *Darius's* Murderers, was seiz'd by *Spitamenes*, and deliver'd to *Alexander*, who punish'd him by

Death. Here likewise *Alexander* in a Drunken Fit put to Death his Friend *Clytus*, who sav'd him at the Battle of *Granicus*. It was the Birth-place of the Philosopher *Avicenna*, who was born here A. D. 880. *Herbert* says, it was anciently call'd *Zoroastes*, from *Zoroaster*, who they alledge was their first King, and slain by *Ninus*. It is also generally said to be the Place of the Birth and Death of the great *Tamerlane*, tho' some say he was born at *Kesh* or *Kash* in the Neighbourhood. It was hither he brought all the Spoils of the East, and made it a most magnificent City, but it is now much decay'd; yet it has still an Academy, which was founded by *Tamerlane*, and is much esteem'd by the *Mahometans*. Some say, it was anciently call'd *Bactra*, which if so, this Country must have been included under the Name of *Bactria*, as well as the Province of *Chorasan*. It was held out against the *Macedonians* by *Spitamenes*, who (according to *Curtius*) fled from hence to *Bactria*; so that it was not then reckon'd in that Country. *Herbert* places it in Lat. 40. *Saucon* in Lat. 45. Long. 109. *Moll* Lat. 40. Long. 85.

2. *Bochara*, now the Capital of the *Usbeck Tartars*. *Father Averil* places it in Long. 93. Lat. 40. *Moll* places it Long. 85. and about Lat. 39 $\frac{1}{2}$. about 60 Miles S. W. from *Samarchand*, and upon the same River, which falls into the *Oxus*. *Du Plessis* makes this Town the Birth-place of *Avicenna*, and says, that both this and *Samarchand* are good and populous Towns. *Jenkinson* says, in his Time it had a high Wall of Earth, was divided into three Parts, whereof two were the King's, the 3d Part was for Merchants and Markets, and that every Science had their Market and Dwelling by themselves. He says, it was a very large City, the Houses for most Part of Earth; but they had many, both Houses, Temples, and Monuments, of Stone, with Baths, sumptuously built and gilt. The latter he says were the most artificial in the World. There's a little River runs thro' the City, but its Water unwholesome, and breeds Worms in them that drink it, such as those we have already described in *Persia*; yet they have a Law which forbids the drinking of any Thing else but this Water and Mare's Milk, on Pain of being cruelly whipped thro' the Markets. Their Metropolitan causes this Law

Law to be strictly observ'd, and has Officers who smell the People's Breath, to find if they have drank any Thing else. The Power of this Metropolitan is so great, that he deposes the King at Pleasure; and when *Jenkinson* was there, kill'd the reigning Prince, who was a Lover of Christians, in his Chamber by Night. The Prince's Revenue is but small, arising chiefly from the Tenth of what's sold in the City. Once a Year this City is much frequented by Merchants from *Persia*, *Russia*, and other Countries. He mentions likewise a King of *Balke* in this Country, which some also call its Metropolis.

Heylin adds in this Country, 1. *Bichend*, which he says is a modern Town, about the middle of the Province, more populous, and has a better Trade, than *Samarchand*. 2. *Azara*, noted for the Rendezvous of *Tamerlane's* Army when he marched against *Bajazet* the Turk. 3. *Maranus*, where the Forces from *China* join'd him when he began his March; but the Doctor gives us neither Long. nor Lat. nor mentions his Authors for what he says. *Sanfon* mentions several other Towns, but without any Description, therefore we omit them.

The 2d Part of *Southern Tartary* is *Turquestan*. *Sanfon* bounds it with *Zagathay* on the W. *Tanguth* and Part of *China* on the E. *Real Tartary* on the N. and the Empire of the *Mogul* on the S. The greatest Length from S. E. to N. W. makes about 1400 Miles, and the greatest Breadth from S. to N. about 740. *Moll* makes it the S. Part of *Usbeck*, as we mention'd before. *Luyts* agrees with *Sanfon* in the Boundaries, and says, the chief Town of it is *Thibet*, call'd otherwise *Tobbot* and *Tobat*, the Capital of a Country of the same Name, plac'd by several Authors in the room of *Turquestan*, which they take to be altogether fictitious. *Herbert* calls it *Tocharistan*, and derives the Name from the *Tochares*, mention'd by *Tzetza* to live near *India*. He says, it is the Original Seat of the *Turks*, the Posterity of *Togarmah* the Son of *Gomer*, a People shut up by *Alexander the Great*, and not adventuring into the World till rous'd by *Heraclius*, in his long War with *Chosroes* the *Persian*, and afterwards seated themselves in *Turcomania*, formerly mention'd. *Rabbi Ben Jonas*, in his

Itinerary, mentions them by the Name of *Torc*. He says, the *Jews* transported by *Salmanassar* join'd with them, which is also mention'd by *Haythou* the *Georgian*, and *Ulu-beghius* the *Bactrian*. He says, the true Situation of it is not now known, tho' most take it for *Cathay*, Part of *Zagathay*; but according to our modern Maps, these Countries lie at a vast Distance from one another. He adds, that Part of it was call'd *Mawrenahar*, which if true, it was Part of *Zagathay*. *Eusebius* says, in his Time the Country was so well govern'd, that they severely punish'd Murder, Adultery, and Theft; and tho' encompassed with *Gentiles*, disallow'd Idol-Worship, which it is suppos'd they learn'd of the *Jews*, or by the Preaching of *St. Thomas* and *St. Andrew*. They had many considerable Towns, but that of chief Note was *Tuzz*, which lay about Lat. 38. as *Herbert* says, and was the Birth-place of *Nazarradin*, who commented on *Euclid*, which Situation does agree with our modern Maps; for *Sanfon* places the Country betwixt Lat. 35 and 53. *Moll* betwixt Lat. 35 and 40. *Sanfon* subdivides it into the Kingdoms of *Cascar*, *Cotan*, *Cialis*, *Ciarchian*, *Thibet*, &c. which have Capitals of their own Names. The Country in general produces Corn, Wine, Flax, Hemp, Cotton, excellent Rhubarb, abundance of Jasper, and other Precious Stones. *Bunsen* on *Cluverius* says, That in some Places of this Country the Women were allow'd to marry another Man, if their Husbands were absent 20 Days from them; and that the *Carazani*, a People of this Country, us'd to kill their Guests of Note, because they thought those Houses most happy that were haunted by the Ghosts of the greatest Men. Some extend this Country as far as the Streights of *Anian*. *Moll* places the Kingdoms of *Gasgar*, and *Little* and *Great Thibet*, in this Country.

The 3d Subdivision of *Southern Tartary* is *Cathay*. *Sanfon* bounds it with *Real Tartary* and the Streights of *Jesso* on the N. *China* on the S. *Turquestan* on the W. and the Streights of *Jesso* on the E. *Cluverius* says, the greatest Empire of the *Tartars* is under the Great Chan, and consists of *Cathay*, *Tangut*, *Tainfa*, *Tenduc*, *Camul*, *Ciarcia*, *Carakitay*, or *Black Cathay*, and *Thibet*; that it begins in the Confines of *Desert Tartary*, and reaches

to the Promontory *Tabis* and the Streights of *Anian*, 600 German Leagues, contains the ancient *Serica*, the greatest Part of *Scythia extra Imaum*, and Part of *Scythia intra Imaum*.

Reiskius takes Notice of the great Differences betwixt both ancient and modern Authors about *Cathay*; that some join it to *China*, and others place it at a great Distance from it. The ancient Greek Authors, who write of *Alexander*, and *Diodorus Siculus*, mention *Cathay*. *Strabo* says, they deriv'd their Name from *Catharius*, one of their Kings, and liv'd in the furthest Part of the E. next to *India*. *Ptolomy* places 'em next to the *Seres*, and *Martinius* in his Atlas of *China* makes *Cathay* the N. Part of it, with whom *Golius* and *Kircher* agree; but several of the *Arabian* and *Dutch* Geographers make it a separate Country from *China*.

Sanfon says, *Cathay* is the most Easterly Part of *Tartary*, and accounted the richest and powerfulest Part of their Dominions. Some place it under one great Monarch or Emperor, whom they call *Ulu-Chan*, or the Great Chan, and make him one of the greatest and richest Princes in the World. Others say, there are several Kings there, but all subject unto him. He adds, the Country is very populous, well cultivated, abounds with noble Buildings, and all Things necessary for Life, in both which Respects they make it equal to *Italy*, and the finest Countries in *Europe*. They reckon *Cambalu* to be its Metropolis, which some say is 10, others 20 Leagues in Circuit, and that it has 10 or 12 great Suburbs, besides a stately Palace on the S. Side, which they reckon 10 or 12 Leagues round, according to *Sanfon*, who says, there's a great Traffick in this City by all the Nations of the *Tartars*, the *Chinese*, *Indians*, and *Persians*. Others take it to be *Peking* or *Xantin*, the Metropolis of *Chipa* on the River *Caramora*, and say, 'tis 8 Miles in Compass, and lies over against *Chakan* or *Kaimach* on the River *Ghammas*. The *Sanfons* place it near Long. 170. and near Lat. 40 in *Cathay*. Some derive the Name from *Cham-Baleck*, which in the Language of the Country signifies the King's Town, as *Peking* does in the *Chinese*, which may perhaps be one of the Reasons why they are suppos'd to be one

and the same. *Heylin* says, it is built of Free Stone on the River *Polysanga*, the Place of the Great Chan's Residence; and that besides other Merchandize, 10000 Cart-loads of Silk come hither Annually from *China*. He says, there are reckon'd 50000 Astrologers or Fortune Tellers in it. 'Tis suppos'd to be the *Iffedon-Serica* of the Ancients, and to be that City of the *Cathaians* which made such a notable Resistance against *Cingis-Chan*; but we must leave these Things as uncertain, since *Magaillans* is so positive that *Cathay* and *China* are the same.

Sanfon subdivides *Cathay* into the Kingdoms or Provinces of, 1. *Tanguth*, whose Capital is *Campion*, where the Caravans stop, because not allow'd to travel further that Way. This Country produces Store of Rhubarb.

2. *Tenduc*, whose Capital is of the same Name, Lat. 54. Long. 180½. This Country furnishes Cloths of Gold, Silver, and Silk Camlets; and some think *Prester John* liv'd here, there being still a Christian King in this Country, who is a *Nestorian*, and a Vassal to the Great Chan.

3. *Thenfu*, a Kingdom noted for the Number of its Inhabitants, excellent Wine, good Arms, and particularly Cannon. All our Travellers, says *Sanfon*, speak Wonders of the Grandeur, Power, and Magnificence, of the Great Chan, of the Extent of his Dominions, the Number of Kings who are his Vassals, and of the Multitude of Ambassadors that are always about him, of the great Reverence paid him, and of the vast Number of Troops he is able to raise; but he lives at such a Distance from *Europe*, adds *Sanfon*, that it was scarce believ'd, till he gave a Proof of his Power in 1618, when he seiz'd the Gates and Passages of the famous Mountain and Wall which separate *Tartary* from *China*, and subdu'd that Country all but one or two Provinces. But the Relations publish'd in 1650 say, that the King of *China* had recover'd most of his Dominions.

A Part of this Country call'd *Altay* has Old *Tartary* on the N. Part of *China* on the S. Mount *Imau* on the W. and the Eastern *Tartars* on the E. It has its Name from the Mountain *Alta*, where the Emperors of *Tartary* are buried.

It is subdivided into 10 Provinces: 1. *Cascar*, N. W. from *China*, where the People are *Mahometans*, mix'd with Christians. The chief Towns are, 1. *Hiachau*, their Capital, a Town of great Trade. 2. *Cialia*, the chief Town of a Province of the same Name, whose King is Vassal to him of *Cascar*. The People are rude and barbarous, and both Sexes take the Liberty to marry again if their Husbands or Wives be absent 20 Days, as *Benedict Goes* informs us.

The 2d Province is *Chefmar*, whose Inhabitants are Idolaters and Magicians, and pretend to a Power to make their Idols speak to darken the Sun, and to raise Winds; which Art was taught them by their Hermits in a sort of Monasteries.

3. *Lop*, memorable for a Desert of 30 Days Journey, thro' which Travellers must carry their Provisions. 'Tis said to be haunted by Evil Spirits, which call Travellers out of their Way, so that they perish by Famine, or are devour'd by Wild Beasts. The chief Town is of the same Name.

4. *Camul*, inhabited by Idolaters, who prostitute their Wives, Sisters, &c. to their Guests, in which being restrain'd for three Years by *Mango Cham*, they petition'd to have the same Liberty again, alledging they did not thrive while they wanted it.

5. *Tainfu*, already described.

6. *Caindu*, with a Town of the same Name, noted for making Women's Veils of the Barks of Trees. They likewise prostitute their Women to Travellers.

7. *Carazan*, inhabited by Savages, who live in Caves by Day for fear of the huge Serpents with which their Country is infested, and by Night they hunt for Wild Beasts. They are said to murder handsome Travellers, that their Souls may dwell among them.

8. *Cardandan*, near *Carasan*, whose Inhabitants are equally barbarous, paint their Bodies with black Lines, which they reckon a great Ornament; and when they are sick, consult Enchanters, who, if they find 'em past Remedy, give them no Medicines, but tell them their Crimes are so great that they cannot live.

9. *Ergimul*, inhabited by Idolaters, mix'd with *Mahometans* and *Nestorians*. 'Tis said, they have Bulls as big as Elephants, with

Manes of fine white Hair like Silk. Betwixt them and their ordinary Cows is produced a Species of Beasts as fit for Labour as Oxen; and here they have a sort of Goats which yield excellent Musk.

10. *Tanguth*, already mention'd, the largest of all the Provinces, lies on the N. of *Cathay*. The Inhabitants are numerous and laborious, and are said to have had the Art of Painting for above 1000 Years. Most of 'em were formerly Christians; but they are now for the greatest Part Pagans or *Mahometans*, and have stately Temples and Monasteries. They were anciently subject to the Great Chan, but have now a King of their own, who is reckon'd one of their most powerful Princes.

The Countries of the Eastern Tartars.

Heylin says, they have *Altai* on the W. the Ocean on the E. *Old Tartary* on the N. and *China* on the S. They are called *Eastern*, because of their Situation towards that Point from *Cathay*, which the *Chinese* call *Western Tartary*. Their Country is barren, because not well cultivated. Their chief Commodities are the Root Ginseng, much esteem'd by the *Chinese*, rich Furs, and Horse-Hair, of which the *Chinese* make their Nets. They have generally broad Faces, of a white Complexion, but their Noses not so flat, nor their Eyes so little, as those of the *Chinese*. They shave their Heads and Beards, but nourish long Mustachoes, and leave a Tuft of Hair on the hinder Part of their Heads. They plait and adorn it with rich Furs, with which they make handsome Caps for their Heads. They have long Garments, and fashion the End of their Sleeves like the Hoof of a Horse. They wear Handkerchiefs, Knives, and Purfes, at their Girdles, and their Scymiters with the Point before them. They have neat Boots, without Spurs, are nimble in War, and eat Horse Flesh as the other *Tartars*, but have more beautiful Tents, which are easily remov'd. *Heylin* assigns them several Provinces, which we don't find in our Maps, nor does he quote his Authors. He says, they are not originally *Tartars*, tho' they join'd with them in their Wars, and assum'd

assum'd their Name, because of their Success. They were subdu'd by *Hombu* King of *China*, who having drove the *Western Tartars* out of his Kingdom, forced them into those Provinces of the *Eastern Tartars* which now make up the Kingdom of *Niuche*, and forc'd 'em to Peace: After which they divided into several Tribes, govern'd by their particular Princes, till about 1550, when being oppressed by the Governors of *Leaotung*, they united into one Kingdom, which they call'd *Niuche*, subdu'd *Leaotung*, belieg'd the K. of *China* in *Peking*, and return'd to their own Country laden with Spoils. In 1644, they were invited into *China* by *Usanguejus*, to support him when he took the Opportunity of subduing that whole Kingdom; of which we shall give an Account when we come to *China*.

M. de Lisle in his Map places this Kingdom of the *Niuchi* on the Coast of the *Eastern Sea*, upon the Streights of *Teco* or *Amour*, so called from a River of that Name which runs thro' this Kingdom into that Streight; and N. of this Kingdom he places a large Country, which joins with *Nova Zembla* on the N. betwixt *Muscovite Tartary* and the *Icy Sea*. The chief Inhabitants of that Country he makes the *Jakuti* and *Gitiaki*; and Part of it on the Eastern Coast, call'd the Plain of *Bargu*, he says has been seiz'd by the *Muscovites*. He represents a Chain of Mountains call'd *Nofs*, which run N.E. near the Polar Circle; but he cannot tell where it terminates, or whether it joins to any other Continent; which if it do, must be some Part of *America*. In this *Witsen* agrees with him.

Neither of these learned Geographers give us any Representation of *Anian*, or its Streights, which *Heylin* and others place N.E. from *Bargu*, and opposite to it. However, it is probable that the N. Part of *America* has been peopled from some Part of this Continent, because the further one travels N.W. in *America*, the more Resemblance there is betwixt the Customs and Language of those People and of the *Samoieds*. This is the more likely, because *Father Averil* in his Travels says, the Weywode of *Smolensko* told him in 1686, that he had liv'd many Years in *Siberia* as Intendant of the *Chancery* there; and that beyond the Ob to the E. is the River *Lena*, which falls in-

to the *Kawootina*, at the Mouth of which there's a great and populous Island, the Inhabitants of which hunt upon the Ice about it in the *Frozen Sea* for a Fish call'd *Behemot*, which affords excellent Ivory; and those People being often surpris'd by a Thaw, are frequently carried off, as he supposes, to the Northern Parts of *America*, which he the rather believ'd, because the most Northern *Americans* have the same Features with those unfortunate Islanders. But *M. de Lisle* represents the River *Lena* taking its Rise in the Country of the *Jakuti*, about Lat. 50. and running into a Gulph of its own Name in the *Frozen Sea*, about Lat. 57. and Long. 120. without representing any Island, except a few Rocks in that Gulph; so that we must refer for the further Certainty of those Things to *M. Witsen's* Description of *Tartary*, which *Luyt* says he has collected with admirable Diligence during the Space of above 20 Years, and caus'd a Map of it to be engraven several Years ago. The *Sansons* place an Island they call *Taxata* in a great Gulph of the Northern Ocean, betwixt Cape *Tabis* and *Ostoff*, near Lat. 65. and betwixt Long. 130. 140. which perhaps may be the Island mentioned by the Weywode of *Smolensko*; but he gives us no Description of it.

Bohun, in his Edition of *Heylin*, gives us the following Catalogue of the Kings of *Niuche* or *Eastern Tartary*, but does not quote his Authors.

1. 2. In 1550, a Person whom he does not name was created King upon the Union of the 7 Hordes or Tribes, but was slain at last by the Treachery of the Governors of *Leaotung*. The Annals of *China* say, That in 1597 the *Western Tartars* enter'd into a League with *Xinxum* King of *China* against them in the Time of their 2d King.

3. In 1616. their 3d King *Theienmingus*, to revenge his Father's Death, invaded *China*, took *Leaotung*, brav'd the Emperor of *China* at the Walls of his Capital, and return'd to his own Country with great Spoils.

4. *Thenxungus* succeeded his Father *Theienmingus*, and was equally successful in his War against *China*.

5. His

5. His Son *Zungteus*, who was secretly bred among the *Chinese*, and perfectly understood the State of their Country, was invited into *China* by *Usanguejus* to assist him; upon which he possess'd himself of *Peking*, the Capital of the Country, and tho' he died soon after, left such Instructions to his Brothers and the rest of his Council, that they speedily subdu'd the whole Kingdom.

6. *Xunchius*, Son to *Zungteus*, succeeded in 1644, being 9 Years of Age, and by the Management of his Uncles was in 4 Years time settled quietly on the Throne of *China*.

7. His Son *Cham Hi* succeeded in 1661, at 8 Years of Age. He perfected the Conquest of *China* in 1680, and reign'd over all the *Tartars* from Mount *Imaus* on the Banks of the River *Oby*; so that he was reckon'd the greatest Prince of the World.

In order to set the Government and State of *Tartary* in as good a Light as we can, until *Witsen's* Account of it be published, we have thought fit to subjoin the following Extract from two Journies of the Emperor of *China* into *Eastern* and *Western Tartary* in 1682 and 1683, as we find them in a small Book printed by Authority at *Paris* in 1695, and dedicated to the *French King*, entitul'd, *Voyages de l'Empereur de la Chine dans la Tartarie*, &c. The Author accompanied that Emperor in both those Journies; and tho' he does not set down his Name, appears to have been a Person of great Note, and to have had the Dignity of a Mandarin conferred upon him by that Prince, whose Favour he had obtain'd to a very great Degree; so that he was order'd to attend him with Mathematical Instruments to make Observations on the Climate, the Elevation and Declension of the Pole in each Country, and to take the Height of Mountains, the Distance of Places, &c.

We shall begin with the Journey into *Eastern Tartary*. The Emperor undertook it about the Beginning of 1692, after having appeas'd a Revolt by three Rebel Kings, two of whom he put to Death, and the other prevented it by murdering himself. The Emperor set out from *Peking* towards the Province of *Leaotung*, the Country of his Ancestors, to visit their Sepulchres.

From *Peking* to *Leaotung* 'tis 300 Miles. He travelled afterwards 400 Miles in that Province, from the Frontiers of which to the City of *Ula*, or the River which the *Tartars* call *Songora*, and the *Chinese* *Sun-hoa*, 'tis 400 more. Their Way was thro' steep Mountains, deep Vallies, and desert Plains, where for two or three Days Travel there was nothing to be seen for Humane Use. Their Journey lay always to the N. E. and on the E. Side of the Country there are Hills cover'd with great Oaks and ancient Forrests, that han't been cut for some Ages. The Country beyond *Leaotung* is almost desert, there being nothing to be seen on either Hand but Mountains, Vallies, Caves, Tygers, Bears, and other Wild Beasts, nor any Houses, but a few sorry Huts on the Banks of Rivers and Brooks. Most Part of *Leaotung* is also desert, their Towns and Villages being destroy'd by a *Tartar K.* who excited the Inhabitants to a Revolt, that he might leave the People no Hopes of returning again to their Country. Their Capital is call'd *Xin-Tam*, a pretty good Town, still entire, and has the Remains of an ancient Palace. Our Author places it in Lat. 41. 56. whereas both the *European* and *Chinese* Authors have hitherto plac'd it in Lat. 41. He says, there's no Declension of the Needle here; but at *Ula*, which lies in Lat. 44. 20. the Needle declines from S. to W. 1 Deg. 40 Min. The Emperor had a Retinue of above 70000 People, who march'd in Order of Battle, a Road being made for 'em by Pioneers, &c. of above 1000 Miles long, for which they were obliged to level several Mountains, and to lay Bridges over Rivers and Brooks with vast Labour and Expence. He encamp'd always on the Bank of some River or Stream, a Body of Men being sent before-hand to fix the Tents, under the Conduct of Quarter-Masters. In 3 Months time they marched 1000 Miles towards the N. E. and arriv'd at *Cam Hay*, a Fort betwixt the S. Sea and the Mountains of the N. where the famous Wall begins which separates *China* from *Tartary*. From thence they marched Northward to the Mountains, where the Emperor diverted himself by Hunting. At *Xin-Tam* the Inhabitants of *Corea*, which according to *Witsen's* Map is a Peninsula S. E. from *Xin-Tam*, presented the

the Emperor with a Sea-Calf. His Majesty went next to *Kirin*, which is 400 Miles from *Xin-Yam*. It is a Town on the great River *Songoro*, which rises in the Mountain *Champe*, 400 Miles S. from *Kirin*. This Mountain, so famous in the E. for having been the ancient Residence of the Chams of *Tartary*, is always cover'd with Snow, from whence it derives its Name, which signifies the White Mountain. As soon as the Emperor saw it, he alighted from his Horse, fell on his Knees, and bow'd three times to the Ground. Then he was carried on a Gold Throne into the Town, where the People met him in Multitudes, and wept for Joy to see him. He was so much pleas'd with those Proofs of their Affection, that he allow'd every one to approach him, and forbid his Guards to hinder them, as it was their Custom to do at *Peking*. Our Author says, they make a particular Sort of Vessels at *Kirin*, and keep a great Number of them in readiness against the *Muscovites*, who frequently come into this River to dispute their Pearl-Fishing. The Publisher foreseeing an Objection against the Probability of this Story, considering the vast Distance that appears in our Maps betwixt the *Muscovites* and the *Eastern Tartars*, says in Answer to it, That those who know how far the *Muscovites* have extended their Empire along the Sea of *Tartary*, will not think it so difficult. Besides, such as have travell'd these Countries, have made Discoveries quite contrary to what our Geographers have hitherto inform'd us; and that M. d'Arcy, Captain of one of the French King's Men of War, being in the Polish Service, and made Governor of a Place towards the Frontiers of *Muscovy*, the *Muscovite* Ambassadors passing that Way in their Return, he treated them so as to bring them into a good Humour. Upon which one of them shew'd him a new Map of the Country betwixt *Muscovy* and *China*, and told him, that from the three Towns of *Lopla*, *Abasinko*, and *Narginsko*, (in the Czar's Possession, tho' situate in *Grand Tartary*,) it was not above 25 or 30 Days Journey to *Peking*. The Publisher observes, this Map must be kept very secret in *Muscovy*, for next Morning the *Muscovite* was extremely concern'd that he had shewn it, and said, if it were known, it might be of dangerous Consequence to him. The Publisher

adds, that M. d'Arcy gave a Copy of that Map to the King, and another to the Secretary of State.

But to return to the Description of *Eastern Tartary*: *Ula*, the best City of the Country; and formerly the Seat of the Chams of *Tartary*, lies 32 Miles below *Kirin*, and the River there abounds with a certain Fish which much resemble our Plaise. Our Author says, he was informed by the Inhabitants of *Ula*, that there's a Place call'd *Nincrita*, about 700 Chinese Stadia from thence, each Stadium being 360 Geometrical Paces, which makes *Nincrita* 252 Miles from *Ula*. Here the People embark on the great River *Helum*, into which the *Songoro* discharges it self; and steering N. E. or rather a little to the N. they arrive after 40 Days Sail at the E. Sea, which he supposes to be the Streights of *Anian*. This he says he had from the General of the Troops who commanded at *Kirin*, and had made that Voyage himself.

This is the *Eastern Tartary* which others call by the Name of *Niuche*; by which it is plain, that this Author differs very much from all the Maps which we yet have of those Parts. He makes the Distance betwixt *Xin-Yam*, the Capital of *Leaotung*, and the City of *Kirin*, to be 369 Miles; whereas M. de Lisle makes it not above 120, and yet his is one of the last Maps, printed in 1708, from the Memoirs of the Royal Academy of Sciences, &c.

In the Journey which the Emperor of *China* took into *Western Tartary* in 1683, we have the following Particulars, viz. That he travelled thither with 60000 Men, and 100000 Horse. His Reasons were to keep his Troops in Exercise during the Peace, and to awe the *Western Tartars*. He march'd thro' their Country in Order of Battle, and every time he encamp'd discharg'd his great Guns in the Vallies, sounded his Trumpets, and beat his Drums, to terrify them. They have no Towns, Villages, or Houses, but live altogether in Tents, spend their Lives in Hunting and Herding, without manuring the Ground, and feed on Milk, Cheese, Flesh, and a certain Sort of Brandy, with which they are frequently drunk. In short, they mind nothing from Morning till Night but to eat and drink like their Cattle. They have Priests call'd *Lama's*, before mention'd, to whom they show great Respect,

Respect, and in this they differ from the *Eastern Tartars*, most of whom, if we may credit our Author, don't believe there's a God, nor have any Religion, but both of them are absolute Slaves, and follow their Lords in Matters of Religion or any thing else. This Part of *Tartary* lies beyond the Wall of *China* about 300 *European* Miles, between N. and N. E. and from the E. of *China* round the same to the N. and W. so that they in a manner encompass it. It was to preserve *China* from their Incursions that an ancient *Chinese* Emperor built that famous Wall, which our Author says he pass'd 4 times; and having view'd it carefully, can justly say without Hyperbole, that the 7 Wonders of the World, if put together, are not comparable to this Work; and that all we have heard of it in *Europe* is much below what he saw with his Eyes. He particularly admires two Things in it; 1. That in that long Extent from E. to W. it not only crosses vast Plains, but also very high Mountains, upon which it is gradually rais'd, and fortified with great Towers at the Distance of two Bow-shots from one another. He measur'd the Height of it in one Part, and found it to be 1037 Geometrical Feet; so that it is hard to conceive how that prodigious Wall could be built in such dry and mountainous Countries, to which they were obliged to bring the Materials from Places at a great Distance. 2. That it is not continued in a Line, but bended in many Places, according to the Disposition of the Mountains; so that it is as good as three Walls instead of one. But after all he adds, That the Monarch who in our Time reunited the *Chinese* and *Tartars* under one Empire, has done more to secure *China* than what can be effected by this Wall; for after having reduced the *Western Tartars* by Force and Artifice, he obliged them to remove 300 Miles beyond this Wall, to a Place where he gave them Lands and Pa-

stures, and put his own Subjects in their stead. Notwithstanding this, the *Western Tartars* are so potent, that were they united, they might easily subdue the *Eastern Tartars* and *Chinese*. The principal Methods by which the Emperor of *China* subdu'd the *Western Tartars*, were by the extraordinary Bounty and Respect to their Lama's or Priests, that perswaded them to submit tamely to this great Prince, who at the same Time despises them in his Heart as a vile and ignorant Order of Men, tho' he carries it fair to them outwardly. He has divided this vast Country into 48 Provinces; so that having *China* and both *Tartaries* under his Command, he is the greatest and most powerful Prince in *Asia*, and has this Advantage, that his Dominions lie all contiguous, without being intermix'd with those of any other Prince. Our Author gives him a great Character, says he takes Care of the Administration himself, and does not trust his Eunuchs, Pages, or other Favourites, as was the Custom of his Predecessors; and he administers Justice impartially to the Mean as well as the Great. In *Western Tartary*, in *July* to *August*, the Winds are so cold during the Night, that they are forc'd to wear thick Cloths and Furs. He ascribes this to the Height of the Country, and its great Number of Mountains, one of which he says is so high, that it cost him 5 or 6 Days to travel up; and our Author having measur'd it, says it has 3000 Geometrical Paces of Elevation above the Sea that lies nearest *Peking*. He thinks also, that the Salt-Petre with which this Country abounds may contribute to the Coldness of the Air, which is so violent, that the Ground freezes for 3 or 4 Foot deep.

By all this it is plain, that there is now no other Great Cham of *Tartary* but the Emperor of *China*.

C H A P. VIII.

A N C I E N T I N D I A.

C Luverius bounds it with the Country of the *Sine* on the W. and S. with the *Montes Emodi* on the N. and the *Montes Damafii* and *Meander* on the E. It had likewise the River *Indus* on the W. and that call'd the *Indian Sea* on the S. where it ran out into two Peninsula's. Its greatest Length from the Fountains of the *Indus* to the Point of the *Chersonesus Aurea*, now *Malacca*, was about 600 German Leagues, and its greatest Breadth from the *Montes Damafii* in the Confines of *Sina* and the *Tartars* to *Cape Simylla*, now *Comori*, 450. *Cellarius* says, it was the largest Country of the E. and (according to *Ptolomy*) divided into two great Parts, call'd *India* on this Side, and *India* beyond the *Ganges*. *India* on this Side was bounded by the Country of the *Paropamisadae*, *Arachosia*, and *Gedrosia*, on the W. by the *Ganges* on the E. Mount *Imaus* on the N. and the Ocean on the W. *India* beyond the *Ganges* had that River on the W. the Country of the *Sine* on the E. *Scythia* and *Serica* on the N. and the Ocean on the S. *Cellarius* observes, that his Western Boundaries are not very certain, because he speaks nothing of the *Indus*, which *Pliny*, *Arrianus*, &c. make its Western Limit; whereas he places *Indo Scythia*, which he reckons Part of *India*, on both Sides that River. *Cellarius* reconciles the Difference thus, That Proper *India* reach'd no further W. than the *Indus*; tho' *Pliny* owns, that the Name extended to the *Gedrosii*, *Arachotæ*, *Arii*, and *Paropamisadae*, its utmost Boundary being the River *Cophene* or *Cophes*; and some ascribed the Town *Nysa*, and Mount *Merus*, sacred to *Liber Pater*, and the *Astacani*, to *India*. As to the *Gedrosii*, &c. *Cellarius* thinks *Pliny* enlarges too much; but for *Nysa*, *Merus*, and the *Astacani*, they are as-

sign'd to *India* by those who write of *Alexander the Great*; particularly *Dionysius Characenus* says, the Southern *Scythians* dwelt on the River *Indus*. These are the same with the *Indo-Scythians*, which are called Southern in respect of the Proper and Northern *Scythians*; so that what lies about the River *Cophene*, and betwixt that River and the *Indus*, subdu'd by *Alexander*, belong'd to those *Indo-Scythians*.

Their chief Rivers were, 1. The *Indus*, frequently mention'd in the History of *Alexander*. *Pliny* says, the Inhabitants call'd it *Sindus*; that it rose in Mount *Caucasus*, call'd *Paropamisus*, and run Westward, which must be understood of some Branches of it, for in general it runs S. W. He adds, it receives 18 other Rivers, the chief of which was *Hydaspes* that receiv'd 4 more into its Channel; *Cantabra*, which receiv'd three; and *Acesines* and *Hypasis*, which were navigable of themselves. *Cellarius* questions *Cantabra*, because mention'd by no body else, and thinks it is wrong writ. *Strabo* mentions them as pass'd by *Alexander* thus; 1. *Cophes*; 2. *Indus*; 3. *Hydaspes*; 4. *Acesines*; 5. *Hyarotis*; 6. *Hypanis*. *Cophes* was the most Westerly, and receiv'd the *Choes* or *Indian Choaspes*, which *Dionysius* confounds with the *Persian Choaspes*, and brings it thro' many vast Countries into the *Euphrates*. *Arrianus* says, *Cophes* receiv'd several other Rivers, and then falls into the *Indus*, for which we refer to *Cellarius*. The *Indus* itself, after receiving several navigable Rivers, runs by *Arachosia*, *Gedrosia*, &c. into the Sea, and by its several Mouths formed the Island *Patala* or *Patalena*. On the East Side, the *Indus* receiv'd the following Rivers; 1. The *Hydaspes*, a noble River, where *Alexander* built the Navy with which he sail'd to the *Indian Sea*. These Vessels were

were made, says *Strabo*, of Pines, Firs, and Cedars, cut down in the *Montes Emodi*. This River receives the *Sinarus* and *Sandabalis*, with which it runs into *Acesines*, says *Ptolomy*, and then into the *Indus*. 2. *Acesines*, receiv'd not only the *Hydaspes*, but a great River call'd *Tutapus*, says *Arrianus*, and retain'd its Name till it fell into the *Indus* near the Country of the *Malli*. 3. *Hyarotis* or *Hydraotes*, which *Alexander* pass'd on Horseback. It seems to be *Ptolomy's* *Adris*. 4. *Hypasis*, *Hypasis*, or *Hypanis*, was the last River pass'd by *Alexander*, (who built Altars on its E. Bank) and fell into the *Acesines* near the Country of the *Malli*.

Others add to the Account of *Indus*, that it was no where above 50 Stadia broad, nor 15 Paces deep, and that it ran with 7 Mouths into the *Indian Sea*; that it was anciently call'd *Mausolum*, and afterwards *Indus*, from a Youth of Quality who drown'd himself in it. *Pliny* says, That *Alexander the Great* sail'd upon it 5 Months, tho' he never made less in a Day than 600 Stadia before he came to the *Indian Ocean*. *Curcius* says, the Water is whiter and cooler than that of other Rivers in the *Indies*.

The second River of chief Note was the *Ganges*; but *Alexander* not having travell'd so far, the Ancients have little that's certain about it. *Strabo* says, 'twas the greatest River in the three Continents of the World; that *Indus* was the 2d, the *Ister* the 3d, and the *Nile* the 4th. *Pliny* speaks doubtfully of its Rise, says some derive it from Fountains, as uncertain as those of the *Nile*, and others from the *Scythian Mountains*, from whence it ran first towards the E. and then towards the S. till it fall into the Sea; *Strabo* says with one Mouth, and *Ptolomy* with 6. The most Westerly he names *Cambusum*, the 2d *Magnum* or the Great one, the 3d *Camberichum*, the 4th *Tilogrammum*, the 5th *Pseudostomum* or the False Mouth, and the 6th *Antibole*. *Pliny* says, it receiv'd 19 other Rivers, of which *Condochates*, *Cesoagus*, and *Sonus*, were navigable. In some Places it is more like a Lake than a River. *Cluverius* says, it was noted for producing Gold and Jewels; that its least Breadth was two German Leagues, and the greatest 5, and where shallowest was 100 Foot deep. The Gulph into which it falls is now call'd the Bay of Bengal.

The most remarkable Mountains of *India* are those of the N. which divide it from *Scythia*, and lie in one Range, but go by the different Names of *Imaus*, *Emodus*, *Paropamisus*, and *Caucasus*, from whence *India* descends in a vast Plain, resembling *Egypt*.

It was divided into innumerable People and Countries. *Cluverius* says, the ancient Geographers reckon'd 9000 different People, and that it had 50000 Towns. The chief of the People were the *Aspii*, *Reucolaitæ*, *Taxili* or *Taxillæ*, *Affaceni*, *Guræi*, *Gandare*, *Malli*, *Oxydracæ*, *Sibæ*, which lay on the N. the *Prasii* or *Prasiatæ*, and those call'd *Gymnosophists* and *Brachmanes*, from their Sect, lay on the *Ganges*. In the S. Part towards the Sea lay the *Laryces*, near the Mouths of the *Indus*, the *Ariaces*, *Limyrices*, the *Aii*, and *Carei*, on the *Sinus Colchicus*. The *Pandiones*, *Bati*, *Arvarni*, *Mæfoli*, *Sabare*, and *Gangaridæ*, all lay towards the Coast. In the Midland Parts, betwixt the *Indus* and *Ganges*, lay the *Sabracæ*, *Musciani*, and *Præsti*, all on the Banks of the *Indus*; and the *Agriophagi*, *Parapiotæ*, *Phylltæ*, *Brolingæ*, *Porvari*, *Adisathri*, *Soranomades*, *Mandalæ*, and *Cocconagæ*, lay in the other Midland Parts. We shall take Notice of the chief of those in the Description of the Towns, according to *Alexander's Travels*.

That Prince, when he marched from *Paropamisidis* into *India*, came first to *Nicaa* on the River *Cophene*, in the Borders of the *Paropamisidæ*. 'Tis suppos'd to have deriv'd its Name from the fabulous Victory of *Liber Pater* and *Hercules*. From hence *Alexander* sent *Hephestion* and *Perdiccas* to *Peucelaothis*, a Country betwixt the *Cophes* and *Indus*. It had a Town of the same Name near the latter. *Arrianus* calls it *Peucela*, and says, it was a great Town. The People subdu'd by *Alexander* in these Parts were the *Aspii*, *Thyræi*, and *Arasaci*. They liv'd about the River *Choes*. Having pass'd that River, he came to *Andaca* or *Andraca*, and the River *Evaspla*. *Arrianus* mentions in these Parts the Town *Arigæum*, the River *Guræus*, and the People *Guræi*, *Ptolomy's* *Goryæa*, one of whose Towns was *Nagara*, call'd also *Dionysopolis*, at the Mouth of the *Choaspes*.

From hence *Alexander* went to the *Affaceni*, whose Capital was *Massaga*, the greatest Town of that Country. Some call it *Massagæ*, *Massaca*, and *Massoca*. The other Towns

of Note in this Country were, *Ora*, *Baxera*, and *Aornos Petra*, which baffled *Hercules*, but was taken by *Alexander*, who garrison'd and wall'd in several of those Towns. The next is *Nysa* or *Nyssa*, betwixt the *Cophene* and *Indus*, suppos'd to be built by *Bacchus*, who was born there; and over this City lay Mount *Merus*, which, because it signifies a Thigh, gave Rise to the Fable of his being born out of *Jupiter's* Thigh. *Bacchus* is said to have preserv'd himself here with an Army when the p'ain Country was infected with Pestilence. The Situation of those Towns cannot now be certainly known, the Face of the Country is so much chang'd. These are the chief subdu'd by *Alexander* on this Side the *Indus*.

When he pass'd that River into *India Propria*, he came first to the great and rich Town *Taxila*, the largest betwixt the *Indus* and *Hydaspes*, and noted for good Laws. Their King *Taxilus* receiv'd *Alexander* very civilly. *Pliny* mentions abundance of different People in this Country, whom we pass over, with several Towns named by *Ptolemy*; but shall take Notice of *Bucephala*, built by *Alexander* on the W. Bank of the *Hydaspes*, in Remembrance of his Horse *Bucphalus*, which he lost there in a Battle against King *Porus*. He is likewise said to have built *Nicea* on the E. Side of the same River, in Memory of his Victory. *Strabo* says, *Porus's* Country lay betwixt the *Hydaspes* and *Acesines*, and that it contain'd almost 300 rich Towns; but *Cellarius* supposes them to have been only Villages, because none of them are mentioned in History.

Alexander having pass'd the *Acesines*, which bounded *Porus's* Kingdom on the E. hasten'd to the *Hydraotis*, and came to the Town *Pimprana* in the Country of the *Adraestæ*, which surrender'd on Terms. Then he march'd into the Country of the *Cathæi*, and took their Town *Sangala*. From hence he march'd to the *Hyphasis*, the last River he pass'd on that Side, when having in vain exhort'd his fatigued Troops to follow him to the *Ganges*, and subdue the *Gaugaride*, he was oblig'd to return, having first cast up greater Intrenchments than usual, and built Altars as high as Towers on the E. Side of that River. When he came back to the *Hydaspes*, he built his Navy, and sail'd down that River against the

Malli and *Oxydracæ*, a fierce People, where he run a great Risque, by leaping down from the Wall among the Inhabitants when he attack'd their Town of *Oxydracum*, according to *Curtius* and others; but *Arrianus* says, it was in a Town of the *Malli*. He built a new City on the River *Acesines*, whose Name is lost, but 'tis suppos'd to be *Alexandria*. From hence he fell down the *Indus*, subdu'd the *Sabracæ*, a potent Nation; and thence sailing into the Country of the *Sogdori*, built another Town, suppos'd likewise to be call'd *Alexandria*; for *Stephanus* mentions two Cities of this Name in *India*, which he calls the 6th and the 14th. Thence he sail'd into the Province or Kingdom of the *Muscani*, who *Strabo* says were the most Southerly People of *India*; but *Curtius* mentions others after 'em, as the *Presti*, and *Sabi*, whom *Alexander* subdu'd, besides the *Sabute* and *Porticani*, spoke of by others. After three Days Sail from the *Muscani* he came to the *Pataleni*, who inhabited the Island of *Patala* or *Patalia* in the Mouth of the *Indus*, which *Arrianus* says was larger than the *Egyptian Delta*, and resembled it in Shape. *Strabo* mentions a famous Town of its own Name, which *Alexander* found deserted, as well as the Island; and having order'd a Fortification to be erected there, it was demolished before he came back from his Voyage to the Sea. *Pliny* mentions *Prasiane*, an Island here greater than *Patala*; but no body else speaks of it. *Patala*, he says, was 220 Miles broad, and that the two Mouths of the River were 1800 Stadia apart; but *Ptolemy* says it had 7 Mouths, and gives us their Names. *Cellarius* very rationally supposes them to have been Canals dug for watering the Ground. This is the chief of what we can learn from *Alexander's Travels*. The rest we must take from *Ptolemy* and others. He talks of many Places upon the Coast betwixt the *Indus* and *Ganges*. The most remarkable are, 1. *Monoglossum*, an Emporium on the Bay of *Canthus*, at the Mouth of the *Indus*. 2. *Barygaza*, an Emporium near the Mouth of another River E. from the *Indus*, whence the neighbouring Bay was called *Barygazenus*, on which lay *Supara* on the E. Side, that *Lucas Holstenius* supposes to be *Solomon's Ophir*, but without any Ground. Further S. E. on the same Bay lay the Cape and Emporium

porium of *Simyha*. Then beyond the Bay of *Binda*, on the E. Side, lay *Hipporura*, the Seat of a King. Nearer the Mouth of that Bay lay *Nitria* or *Nitra*, inhabited by Pyrates. Further S. on the Coast lay *Muziris*, an Emporium, frequented by those who traded to this Country from *Arabia Felix*, was a Place of considerable Business in the Time of *Ptolomy* and *Arianus*, and noted for a Lake in the Neighbourhood. Next to them, in the Country of the *Aii*, lay the Emporium call'd *Elanfon*, the Metropolis *Cetiara*, and the Town and Cape of *Comoria*, now call'd Cape *Comorin*. At this Cape begins the *Sinus Colchicus*, so call'd from the Emporium of *Colchi* in the Neighbourhood.

In the Country of *Pandionis*, which lay on the Coast, stood the Town of *Argarus*, that gave Name to the *Sinus Argaricus*, on which lay *Salur* an Emporium, and *Nicama* a Metropolis. Next to that lay *Chabris*, another Emporium, on the Mouth of a River of that Name; and on the same Coast, and in the Bay of *Ganges*, were several other Emporia, which we cannot insist upon.

In the Inland Parts lay several Royal Seats, according to *Ptolomy*, the chief of which was *Palibrotha*, near the W. Side of the *Ganges*, in the Country of the *Prasii*, who (according to *Pliny*) exceeded most of the other *Indians* in Fame and Power. He says, that *Palibrotha* was a very large and rich Town, and gave Name to the People and Country in the whole Tract of Land upon the *Ganges*. He adds, their King had 600000 Foot, 30000 Horse, and 9000 Elephants. *Strabo* mentions it frequently, says Ships came up to it from Sea by the *Ganges*, and that it was 80 Stadia long, and 15 broad. *Ptolomy* places it in Lat. 27. at the Conflux of the Rivers *Erannoboa* and *Ganges*.

The *Indian* Sects of Philosophers are also said to have possess'd several Towns, and were of two Sorts, the *Brachmanes* and *Germanes*, known by the general Name of *Gymnosophists*. *Strabo* says, the former were the most Orthodox in Opinion, and the latter liv'd a solitary Life in the Woods, abstaining from Wine and Women. *Ptolomy* mentions them as several Nations, places the *Gymnosophists* in the N. behind the Rivers, which were the Scene of *Alexander's* Actions, and the *Brachmans* in the S. towards the Coast,

where stood their Capital *Brachme*; but *Pliny* says, they were dispers'd thro' the several Nations of the *Indies*. With him *Diodorus Siculus* agrees; for when he speaks of *Alexander's* laying wast the Towns of *Sambi*, So great were the Calamities (says he) which the *Brachman Nation* suffer'd. He adds, that *Alexander* took *Harmatelia*, the last Town of the *Brachmans*, by Surrender, after an obstinate Siege.

Pliny mentions other Nations about the Mouth of the *Ganges*, particularly the *Calinga*, a Branch of the *Gangarides*. *Herodotus* speaks of the *Padæi* as the farthest People of the E. beyond the *Ganges*, and says, they fed upon raw Flesh.

I N D I A beyond the Ganges.

THE Boundaries of it we have describ'd before. *Cellarius* corrects the Mistake of *Artemidorus* in *Strabo*, who says, That from the Mountains *Emodi* it runs S. as far as the Town of *Ganges*, and afterwards E. because it is contrary to the Discoveries of our Times. The first remarkable Town beyond the furthestmost Mouth of the *Ganges* was *Pentapolis*, according to *Ptolomy*. Next to that lay the Emporium *Baracura*; beyond that the Mouth of the River *Tocofanna*; then the Country call'd *Argentea*, with several Towns. Next to that lay the Country of the *Bisyngeti*, who were Man-Eaters, their Capital *Besynga*, an Emporium. From hence Southward lay the *Aurea Chersonesus*, now *Malacca*; on the W. Side of it *Tacola*, an Emporium; and on the E. Side the Cape *Malei-Colon*, with several Towns. Many are of Opinion, that this was *Solomon's Ophir*, which seems to be favour'd by *Josephus*, who *Lib. 8. Cap. 2.* says, *Solomon's* Vessels sail'd into a Country of *India* formerly call'd *Sophira*, but then the *Golden Land*. *St. Jerome* says, it was also in *India*, but calls it an Island. *Bochart* alledges it was the Island *Taprobana*, now *Ceylon*, and founds his Conjecture upon Etymology; but *Cellarius* rejects as meer Dreams the modern Disputes about *Ophir*, and sees no just Cause why the later Opinions should be better than the former. He says, the Length of the Expedition mention'd in the sacred History, shews that *Ophir* must have been at a great Distance

Distance from *Palæstina* or the *Arabian Gulph*; yet he is not displeas'd that *Bochart* distinguishes betwixt the *Indian* and *Arabian Ophir*, because the Gold of *Ophir* mention'd *Job* 22, 24. and 28, 16. could not, because of the Ignorance of those Times, be easily understood of the *Indian Gold*. *Bochart* places the *Arabian Ophir* near the Country of the *Sabæans*, and thinks the *Arabs* call'd the *Indian Ophir* by its Name when they discover'd it. Beyond this *Chersonesus* to the N. lay the Country of the *Lestæ*, who were Pyrates and Robbers. The River *Sobannus* runs thro' it. Next to that lay *Ptolomy's Sinus Magnus*, in which were *Balanga* and *Corgatha*, Metropolitan Towns; and here *Ptolomy* finishes the Maritime Coast of *India* beyond *Ganges*. The Inland Parts were so obscure, that it is needless to insist upon them. By the Situation of the Country, these Places last mentioned seem to have been in that which is now called *Siam*.

SINARUM REGIO.

Ptolomy makes this the furthest Country of the E. beyond his *Sinus Magnus*, and says, it stretched towards the S. *Cellarius* says, it must not be confounded with the modern *China*, altho' it reaches as far N. as *Serica*. *Ptolomy* calls the Country beyond this to the E. and S. *Terra Incognita*, and bounds it on the W. with *India* beyond the *Ganges*. He places about the Equator the *Æthiopes Ichthyophagi*, and beyond the Equator the River *Cotiares* and *Caligara*, which he calls, *A Harbour of the Sinæ*. *Martianus Heracleota* places the *Sinæ* likewise at the Extremity of the habitable World towards the E. and next to the *Terra Incognita*.

The Islands in the Indian Sea.

Ptolomy places the Islands of *Hither India* betwixt the Mouths of the *Indus* and *Ganges* thus: In the Bay of *Canthus* lies *Barace*; and from thence to the Bay of *Colchis*, *Milizigeris*, *Heptanesia*, *Peperina*, *Triadira*, *Trinesia*, *Leuce*, *Panigeris*; and in the Bay of *Argaris*, the Island *Cory*.

Taprobane, which is the noblest and largest of all the Islands in this Sea, is placed by

Ptolomy between the Bays of *Colchis* and *Argaris*. The Ancients differ'd much about its Situation, some placing it near the Continent, others 20 Days Sail from it; and some question'd whether it was an Island, or the Beginning of another Continent, particularly *Mela*; tho' before him it was generally reckon'd an Island, as appears by *Dionysius* in his *Periegeta*, which the Learned agree to have been writ in the Time of *Augustus*. *Strabo* compar'd it to *Britain* for Dimensions. *Pliny Junior*, in his Account of the Embassy which the Inhabitants sent to *Claudius Cæsar*, says, it contain'd 500 Towns; and that *Palæsimundus*, their Capital, and the Seat of their King, had 200000 Inhabitants: That they had a Lake call'd *Magiba*, of 375 Miles in Circuit, which contain'd several fruitful Islands, and sent out two Rivers, one of which fell with 3 Mouths into the Harbour of *Palæsimundus*, that in some Places was 5 Stadia broad, and in others 15. This Harbour lay in the S. Side of the Island, and they had another on the N. call'd *Cidara*, 4 Days Sail from *India*, the Island of the Sun being in the Middle betwixt them. *Ptolomy* places it nearer the Continent; and tho' he makes it very long, and extends it beyond the Equator, reckons but 30 Towns in it; nor does he say any Thing of the great Lake, nor of the Town and River of *Palæsimundus*, which occasions the Learned to doubt whether his and *Pliny's Taprobane* was the same; and tho' most agree now that *Taprobane* was *Ceylon*, yet others will have it to be *Sumatra*; but *Salmasius*, *Bochart* and *Vossius*, think 'tis *Ceylon*, it being incredible that the Romans or *Alexandrians* ever sail'd so far as *Sumatra*. *Cellarius* thinks also, that *Ptolomy's Taprobane* was *Ceylon*, tho' he plac'd it too far S. and extended it beyond the Equator. It was anciently call'd *Insula Palæsimundi*, and *Salæ*, and the Inhabitants *Salæ*; yet some will have *Palæsimundus* to be different from *Taprobane*. The Towns and Capes mention'd by *Ptolomy* in this Island were, 1. In the N. Cape, *Boreum*, over against *Cory* or *Conigicum* in *India*. 2. In the W. lay the Towns *Margana* and *Jogana*, with Cape *Anarismundus*. Next to them the River *Soana*, the Portus *Priapeus*, Cape *Jovis*, and the Bay of *Prasodes*. On the S. Shore lay the Mouths of *Hysanus*, the Towns *Odoce*, *Dana* or *Dagana*, sacred

sacred to the Moon, the Promontory *Avium*, of *Dionysius*, with a Town of the same Name, and *Cetæum*. On the E. Side lay the Harbours of *Mordus*, of the *Sun*, of *Rhizola* and *Spatana*, with the Town *Procurus*, and a River call'd *Ganges*; and towards the N. lay the *Emporia Moduti* and *Talacori*. In the Inland Parts, Northward, were the Royal Seat *Anurogrammum*, and the Metropolis *Magrammum*.

Pliny's Island of the *Sun* is different from that which others place near *Gedrosia* and *Carmania*, and some think it to be *Cory*. *Ptolemy* reckons in the Bay of *Ganges* the Island *Bazacata*, and far from hence Southward, under the Equator, the Island *Ayathê Saluovos*, or of *Good Fortune*; and near the great Bay, against the Country of the *Sinæ*, he places the three Islands of the *Satyrs*; and from hence Southward the Island *Jabadium*, which produced Gold, and whose Capital was named *Argentea*. *Cellarius* corrects *Stephanus* for making this the Metropolis of *Taprobane*. Ancient Authors mention several other Islands in these Parts; but *Cellarius* looks upon many of them to be fabulous, and takes their *Chryse* to be the same with the *Aurea Chersonesus*.

Having thus finished the ancient Geography of *India* and its Islands, we shall next give a brief Account of what Authors have said of the Country in general, and its ancient History.

It did so abound with Gold and Silver, that the Ancients thought its Soil to be compos'd of those two Metals; and they were so fabulous in its History, that *Strabo* bewails and curses them for it. *Megasthenes* in particular wrote of People there who had Dogs Heads, long Claws, and had no humane Voice, but bark'd; That the Inhabitants near the *Ganges* liv'd without Food, by the Smell of wild Apples, and were easily kill'd by bad Scents; That there were other People who had but one Eye, and some had Ears which reach'd down to their Feet; That some had but one Foot, which was so broad, that when they lay down on their Backs it cover'd them from the Sun like an Umbrella; but we pass those Fables, and come to their History.

There was little of them known till *Alexander*, after he had conquer'd *Persia*, en-

ter'd this Country. *Postellus* and *Stephanus* suppose them to be the Posterity of *Jostan*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. 30. and the former thinks Mount *Sephir*, spoke of there, to be the S. Part of *Imaus*, now call'd *Gates*; and some will have *Ophir* to be nam'd from his Son. *Diodorus Siculus* says, That *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, invaded this Country with above 4 Millions of Men, and was defeated and slain by *Staurobates*, an *Indian* King, who brought a greater Army against her; which if so, *India* must have been planted before the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and how improbable that is, any one may judge. The next who invaded them is said to be *Bacchus*, accompanied with the *Egyptian Hercules*, who were defeated by the *Indians*; but *Bacchus* at last brought them to Submission, by teaching them Architecture, and the Use of Wine, on which Account they honour'd him as a God. From hence we may conclude, that whoever this *Bacchus* was, he was the first that planted the Country to any Purpose.

We hear no more of them till the Time of *Alexander*, who invaded 'em with 120000 Men, and first subdu'd *Cleophe* Queen of the *Magaxæ*, a People of *Indo-Scythia*, and besieg'd their Capital, tho' strongly garrison'd within, and defended without by 300000 Men, if we may believe the Writers of his History; but at last she resign'd her self and Country to the Conqueror, and they say he begot a Son upon her call'd *Alexander*, who succeeded to her Dominions. The next Prince he encounter'd was *Taxilus*, who submitted, presented *Alexander* with a Crown of Gold, and 80 Talents in Money, which he would not receive, but gave *Taxilus* 1000 Talents out of his own Treasury, and suffer'd him to enjoy his Dominions. This Generosity induc'd *Abiajares*, another great Prince, likewise to submit. After this *Alexander* defeated *Porus*, whose Valour he so much esteem'd, that he restor'd him his Country, and then continu'd his Travels, as we have mention'd already.

After *Alexander's* Death, when the *Macedonians* were engaged in a Civil War, one *Adracottus* made the *Indians* revolt, possess'd himself of the Sovereignty, and regain'd what had been conquer'd by the *Greeks*. *Silencus*, when he obtain'd the Command of *Asia*, march'd against this Prince, who rai-

sing an Army of 600000 Men, brought *Seleucus* to a Peace and a League with him, which continued betwixt their Posterity, and was confirmed by an Interview betwixt *Antiochus the Great* and *Saphagasesus*, one of *Adracottus's* Successors, who gave *Antiochus* 150 Elephants, and promis'd him a considerable Sum. The Posterity of this Prince continu'd in the Throne till the Time of the Romans, and sent Ambassadors to *Augustus* with a Present of Tygers, the first which were seen at Rome, according to *Dio*. They likewise sent an Embassy to the Emperor *Antoninus*, and submitted their Controversy with the *Bactrians* to his Decision. 'Tis suppos'd that *Ptolomy*, who liv'd at that Time, might have his Account of *India* from them. They afterwards sent an Embassy to *Julian* the Apostate when he march'd against the *Persians*, and desir'd his Alliance.

Their ancient Religion, in which they were instructed by their Sects of Philosophers above-mentioned, was gross Paganism. Christianity was first planted here by *St. Thomas*, according to one of their Breviaries writ in *Chaldaick*, and translated by *Campanin* a Jesuit. Whether this be true, or that Christianity was again eclips'd by Paganism, is not certain; but in the Reign of *Constantine*, the *Indians* beyond *Ganges* are said to have been converted by

Frumentius of Tyre, who having spent most of his Time among them, was made their first Bishop by *Athanasius* of *Alexandria*. Yet still they call themselves the Christians of *St. Thomas*, and were govern'd by their own Bishops, under an Archbishop, who resided at *Guagamale*, 15 Miles from *Cochim*; and he submitted for a long Time to the Patriarch of *Musal*, whom they call'd the Patriarch of *Babylon*. *Heylin* says, That in his Time the Number of those Christians was computed at 15 or 16000 Families, or about 70000 Persons, who dwelt betwixt the Mouths of the *Indus* and *Ganges*. They differ'd from the Church of Rome, 1. In administering the Lord's Supper in both Kinds, using Bread season'd with Salt; and instead of Wine, which was scarce in that Country, the Juice of Raisins steep'd in Water. 2. In not baptizing Infants till 40 Days old, except in Danger of Death. 3. In allowing no Images but that of the Cross. 4. In suffering their Priests to marry once. 5. In painting God with three Heads on one Body, to denote the Trinity. 6. In rejecting Extreme Unction. 7. In disowning the Pope's Supremacy. But in 1599, they were, by the Intrigues of the Jesuits, brought in a Synod at *Liamper* near *Maliapar* to submit to the Pope and the See of Rome.

CHAP. IX.

The Modern GEOGRAPHY of INDIA.

A General TABLE of the INDIES by the SAN-
SONS and LUYTS.

		Divisions.
	Malabar.	Upon the Sea-Coast.
		The Inland Country.
I. The Penin- sula of India on this Side the Ganges contains,	The Kingdom of Decan or Decan.	The Kingdoms of Cancan, Ba- laguate, Balaguata, or Balla- gata, and Decan.
	The Kingdom of Golconde or Golconda.	Part on the Sea-Coast.
	The Kingdom of Bisnagar and Coromandel.	Part within Land.
	The Principalities of	Bisnagar, Canara.
		Gingi, Tanjaor or Tanjowar, Madure or Madura.
II. The Pe- ninsula of In- dia beyond Ganges con- tains,	The Empire of Siam, which contains,	Malacca, the Kingdoms of Si- am or Sian, Martaban, and Cambodia or Camboje.
	The Kingdom of Anna.	Chiampa, the Kingdoms of Co- chinchina or Cocinchine, and Tunquin.
INDIA is divided in- to 3 Parts :	The Empire of Ava.	The Kingdoms of Pegu, Ara- racan, and Ava.
	V on the East.	Candiana or Kandiana-Udeffa, Patna-Jesual, Mervat.
	V on the South.	Bengal or Bengala, Orixa, Be- rar, Candis, Guzarate or Gu- zarat.
III. Indostan, or the Empire of the Great Mogul, which is divided in- to 40 Parts or Kingdoms, viz.	XV in the Center of the Empire.	Chitor, Marvay or Malva, Ra- hia-Ranas, Bando, Hendocos, Peop. Jenupar, Delly, Agra, Guateor, Narvar, Mareucha or Maroucha, Sambal, Bacer or Bakar, Jamba, Pengal or Pengab, or Lahor.
	IX on the North.	Naugracut, Siba, Pitan, Gor, Kakares, Bankish or Bankisch, Cachemire or Cassimere, At- toch or Attock, Cabul.
	VI on the West.	Maltan, Hajaian, Buckar, Jesel- mere or Jesselmere, Soret, Tat- ta.

Here follow Three particular Tables of the I N D I E S.

Chief Towns.

			Cape Comorin, Calecut or Calicut, Panane, Pabur, Chale, Parongale, Tanor, Curiga, Panur, Cotigan, Bipur, Cucuram, and Auriola, Chombays, Badara, Moutinguc.
		Calecut or Calicut.	
		Cononor or Canonor.	Idem.
		Cranganor.	Idem.
		Cochin.	Idem, and Viapin or New Orange.
		Coulam or Coulan.	Idem.
		Travancour or Travancor.	Idem, Cosate, and Matadavallur.
		Porca or Porcab.	Idem.
		Calecoulam or Calecoulan.	Idem.
		Batymena.	Catiapely.
		Muterta.	Idem.
		Marta.	Podiagabo, or Mavelycare.
		Mangata, Mangate, or Mangale, Para, Turnbale, Kingdom of Pepper, Changanor, Changanate, Trivilor, Panapely, Tecantutes, The People of Mallians.	Idem.
			Chief Towns.
		The Kingdom of Decan.	Chaul, Andaganar or Amdanagar, Kerky, Danda, Bider, Seffardon.
		The Kingdom of Balaguete or Ballagate.	Doltabad, Bedar or Bider.
		The Kingdom of Cuncan.	Carapata or Carapatan, Centapour, Dabul, Visapour or Visapour, Solapour, Paranda, Wingerla, Aguada, Bardas.
		Note, Luyts places the Countries of Canara and Salfette, and the Islands of Goa and Anchediva, in Decan.	
			Bagnagar, Golconde or Golconda, Condapoli or Condapoly, Condavera or Cundavera, Belumconda, Gani or Colour.
			Narsingapatan, Bimilipatan, Guadavari, Masulepatan, Masulipatan or Massalapatan.

I. The Peninsula of the Indies on this Side Ganges continued.

The Kingdom of Bisnagar.

Bisnagar.

Chief Towns.

Pentapoli or Pettipole, Carcairo or Carceiro, Caletur or Caletour, Penna, Fort Geldria, Maliapur, Maliapur, or S. Thomas, Narsingue or Narsinga, Chativer or Chativero, Cibrangapatan, Bisnagar or Chandegry, Velour, Pelagonga, Tripity, Palieate, Fort S. George, and Madraspatam, Tirepolier, Careal.

Chief Towns.

Canara, containing the Kingdoms of

Garzopa } Gavarada-Naghar, or Ikkeri, Abineli, Sagher. }
Gorcopa. }
Onor. } Onor, Barcelor, Mangalor.
Baticala. Baticala.

Chief Towns.

The Principalities of

Gingi or Gingis.

Tanjavar or Tanjaor.

Madure, Madura, and the Fishing Coast.

Gingi or Gingis, Cidambaran or Cindabaran, Coloran.
Tanjovar or Tanjaor, Trangabar or Tranguebar, Triminapatan, Negapatan, Fort St. David.
Madure or Madura, Manancor, Trichandur, Tutecay or Tutucoti, Manapur or Manapar, Jacancurg or Jacancury.

Malacca.

The Kingdom of Syam or Siam.

The Kingdom of Martaban.

The Kingdom of Cambodia or Camboie.

Chiampa.

The Kingdom of Cochinchina or Cochin.

The Kingdom of Tunquin.

Queda, Torano, Sambilaon, Solongor, Malacca, Ihor, Sinca-pura, Pahang, Potingaram or Potingaran, Redaor, Patana or Patane, Singora.

Bordelong, Ligor, Patanor, Berdio, Juncalan, Tanacerim or Tanasserim, Moro, Lugor, Liam, Bankock, Odia, Odiaa, or Siam, Saccotay or Sacottay.

Martaban, Tuquala, Maraneo, Macaon.

Tarvana, Langor or Langol, Corol and Carol, Camboie and Cambodia, Lauweck, Leuweck, and Ravecca.

Pulocacem.

Bonten, Dinphoan or Dinphaon, Tachan, Camelea or Camelée, Haifo, Caccian, Sansao or Sansoa.

Cuassay or Cuasay, Cuadag, Kecio, Kecio, or Tunquin Bode-

II. India beyond the Ganges is divided into 3 Parts.

The Kingdom of Anna or Annam contains,

India beyond the Ganges
continu'd.

The Empire
of Ava in-
cludes,

The King-
dom of Pegu.

The King-
dom of Arra-
can.

The King-
dom of Ava.

Chief Towns.

Jangoma or *Jancoma*, *Manar*,
Tangu, *Marfin*, *Pegu*, *Siriaon*,
Comri, *Ledea*.

Arracan or *Arracam*, *Sora*, *Ca-*
douascen or *Cadouascan*.

Chacomas, *Tipoura* or *Tipra*, *Caf-*
subi, *Boldia*, *Mandranella* or
Mandranelle, *Canarana* or *Ca-*
narane, *Brama* or *Brema*,
Transiane or *Transiana*, *Ava*
Prom, *Totay*, *Largaray*, *Tole-*
ma.

The particular Geography of India, and first of the Mogul's Country.

THE *Sansons* bound this Empire with *Tartary*, the Gulph of *Cambaya*, *Malabar*, *Coromandel*, and the Bay of *Bengal*, on the S. with *Persia* on the W. and Part of *India* beyond the *Ganges* on the E. They place it betwixt Lat. 18 and 41. and Long. 104 and 143. *Moll* bounds it in the same Manner, but places it betwixt Lat. 15 and 36. and Long. 87 and 110. He makes the greatest Extent from S. to N. about 1300 Miles, and the greatest from E. to W. about 1440. *Herbert* places it betwixt Lat. 20 and 43. says it was 2600 Miles long, and 5000 in Circuit. *Terry*, who extends it from 20 to 43 Deg. of Lat. says, that in 1615 it was 2000 English Miles long, and 1500 broad, and consisted of 37 Provinces, formerly so many Kingdoms: *Boterus* says 47. *Thevenot* makes it about 400 French Leagues or 800 Miles from E. to W. and above 1000 Miles from S. to N. He reduces the Number of Provinces to 20, according to a List which an *Indian*, who knew the Extent of it very well, shew'd him, tho' he supposes them to be 20 Governments, and to be subdivided into lesser Districts. *Tavernier* agrees with those Dimensions. *Thevenot* says, the true Boundaries of this Empire are, to the W. *Macran* or *Sinde*, and *Candahar*; to the E. it reaches beyond the *Ganges*; to the S. it has *Decan*, the great Sea and Gulph of *Bengal*; and to the N. *Tartary*. He says, the extravagant Accounts given of the Extent of

this Empire by Travellers made him consult the most knowing Men of the Country, and that what he writes is their Opinion.

Bernier, in his Letter to M. Colbert, the great Minister of France, says, That the Empire of the Mogul, commonly call'd *Indostan*, from the Frontiers of *Golconda* to the Borders of *Persia*, is 1000 Miles long, and contains many large Countries, of which some are so fruitful, and particularly the Kingdom of *Bengal*, that they exceed *Egypt* in all Things necessary for Life, besides the Abundance of Silks, Cottons, Indigo, and many other Commodities that *Egypt* has not. *Francis Pelsart*, principal Factor of the Dutch in this Country, says in his Remonstrance to their East-India Company, That Salt Petre is found here in several Places, extracted out of three Sorts of Earth, viz. Black, Yellow, and White, and that the best is taken out of the black Soil, which is without common Salt. He gives an Account how they prepare it, to which we refer the Curious. *Terry* calls it the fruitfulest Country of Asia, says they have good Rice, and an excellent Sort of Corn, of which they make extraordinary good Bread. They have great Numbers of Cows and Sheep, which makes Butter and Cheese very cheap. They have Store of Bufflers, which they milk, whose Flesh is like our Beeves, but not so wholesome. They have abundance of Deer and Wild-Beasts, which are forbid to be hunted in any other Place but where the Prince resides. They have also Plenty of Hares, which are sold for Twopence apiece, and three



The West Part of
INDIA,
or the EMPIRE of the
GREAT MOGUL.
By H. Moll Geographer.

60 120 180 240 300
Miles of Great Britain



IN INDIAN OCEAN

three Partridges may be bought for the same Price. Their Rivers abound with Fish. Their Oxen have a thick fat Bunch on their Backs between their Shoulders. Their Sheep have a broad heavy Tail, and a short but a very fine Fleece, and their Flesh is as good as ours. They have Ginger and Canes of Sugar, the finest of which may be bought for Fourpence a Pound, and sometimes cheaper. They have Store of Melons, Pomegranates, Citrons, Lemons, Oranges, Dates, Figs, Raisins and Plantains, and a sweet Fruit call'd *Ananas*, which has a vinous Taſt like Cherries, and leave a Scent in the Mouth like Rose-water. In the N. Parts are great Quantities of Apples and Pears, and in the S. all Sorts of Roots and Herbs that we have in *Europe*. *Terry* and *Thevenot* ſay, they have a Liquor call'd *Taddy*, which they get by making Inciſions in the Trunk of a very high Tree. 'Tis as agreeable to the Taſt as any White-Wine, if taken in the Morning before the Sun comes upon it, which makes it grow tart and unwholesome. It has alſo ſome Phyſical Vertues, and particularly againſt the Stone, as was experienc'd by ſome of his Company.

In the Country from *Surat* to *Agra*, it rains only from the Time that the Sun approaches the Tropick of *Capricorn* till the following Equinox. The Rains begin and end with Tempeſts, Lightnings, and terrible Thunder, tho' the latter rarely does any Damage. During thoſe 3 Months, ſays *Terry*, it rains every Day, and ſometimes even without the leaſt Intermiſſion, which, together with the Heat of the Sun, makes the Soil as fat and fruitful as *Egypt*, by the overflowing of the *Nile*. When the Rain is over, the Air becomes ſerene and clear, and 'tis an extraordinary Thing to ſee the leaſt Miſt for the other 9 Months; at the End of which the Ground is ſo parch'd by the burning Heat, that it reſembles ſandy barren Deſerts, but is cover'd all over with Green again after 5 or 6 Days Rain. The Corn comes up thicker and ſtronger than in *England*. They till their Lands in *May* and *June*, and reap their Harveſt in *November* and *December*, which are with them the moſt temperate Months of the Year. The Inhabitants cut down their Graſs as they want it, without minding whether it be

green or dry. They plant a great deal of Tobacco, but know not how to dreſs it, or to give it the ſame Strength as they do in the *West-Indies*. There are ſeveral fine Woods, and abundance of Trees, which produce a great deal of Sap, but all different from any that we have in *England*. Their Flowers are pretty agreeable both for Beauty and Smell. Their principal Rivers are the *Indus* and *Ganges*.

1. The *Indus*. *Herbert* ſays, it riſes from *Penſab* and the *Caffmyrian* Rivers, and receiving many other Rivers, as before mention'd, runs 3000 Miles, with a Channel deep enough all the Way for Junks of 60 Tuns, and falls into the Ocean near *Diul* in *Tata*, Lat. 23. 15. *Ogilby* ſays, it has two Mouths, and corrects thoſe who place them near the utmoſt Point of the Gulph of *Cambaya*, for he ſays it does not run from the E. to *Saratte*, (wherein he agrees with *Moll*) and adds, that the River which runs into the Bay of *Cambaya* is another call'd *Mehi*. There are ſeveral pleaſant Iſlands near its Mouth, and a City named *Varaxes*. *Moll*'s Map makes it to fall into the Sea with three Mouths.

2. The *Ganges*. The Fountains of it have been as much diſputed, ſays *Cairou*, as thoſe of the *Nile*, and is at preſent controverted by the *Indian* Philoſophers; but *Akebar*, one of the late Emperors, appointed Men to trace it to the Head, and at laſt they came to a high Mountain, that ſeem'd to be cut out by Art in Form of a Cow's Head, from whence there iſſued abundance of Water, and this they took to be the Fountain, which was enter'd accordingly in the *Mogul's Chronicle*. This was no more than what had been diſcover'd long before the Time of *Akebar*; and ſome ſay, the *Indians*, who count this River ſacred, and to have a Power of expiating their Sins, did for this Reaſon worſhip their Cows. It has ſince been diſcover'd, that the Head of the River lies much further up in *Great Tartary*, and that it forms a Cataract at this Mountain, which they took to be its Source; whereas its true Fountains are in the Mountains of *Nigracut*, Part of the falſe *Caucasus*, or (as others ſay) in *Syba*, which *Herbert* ſuppoſes to be *Sephar*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. 30. He adds, that it receives 50 other Rivers, is twice as broad, and three times as deep,

as the *Euphrates* at *Old Babylon*, and after a Course of 3000 Miles falls into the Gulph of *Bengal* by 5 Mouths, about Lat. 22. He says, that it weighs an Ounce in a Pint lighter than any other Water in that Country. The Mogul's Court drink none else, and have vast Numbers of Camels employ'd every Day to bring it them. *Tavernier* and *Bernier* say, that they drank it mix'd with Wine, and that it grip'd them, but their Servants much more, who drank it without. Mr. *Marshall*, in his Letter from the *East-Indies* to Dr. *Coga*, publish'd in our Philosophical Transactions, says, that vast Multitudes of People come from *Tartary* and elsewhere to wash in this River for expiating their Sins; that in some Places it is not above a Mile broad, in others not half a Mile, and in some Places about $\frac{1}{8}$ th. In *April*, when it is lowest, 'tis in many Places almost dry; but in *September*, when highest, it is many Miles broad, very deep, and leaves a Slime, which fructifies the Country as the *Nile* does *Egypt*. The Water is sweet and clear; but some say, it occasions Fluxes, so that most *Europeans* boil the Water before they drink it. *Schouten*, in his Travels to the *East-Indies*, says, That during the ordinary Tides 'tis from 3 to 4 Fathom deep, and that the Bottom is soft whitish Clay. When the Idolaters wash in it, they cry, O *Ganges*, purify me. They dip the Sick in it in order to recover their Health; and if they die soon after, they reckon them happy. The Water is transported to such as live at a Distance, and can't come to it; so that they ascribe as much Vertue to this River as the *Papists* do to their chief Relicks.

The Name of *Mogul* is deriv'd by *Herbert* from the *Arabian* Word *Maghul*, which signifies one unknown, or a Stranger; and this Name he thinks was given the *Tartars* when they first invaded *India*, or when *Tamerlane's* Race made it the principal Seat of their Empire. *Terry* says, it signifies a circumcis'd Man, and that *Grand Mogul* is as much as to say Chief or King of all the Circumcis'd. *Ogilby* says, the Name is deriv'd from a Tribe of *Tartars* in *Zagathay*, and hence all his Soldiers who are descended from the *Tartars* call themselves *Moguls*. Before *Tamerlane's* Race settled here, the Country was govern'd by one or two su-

preme Heads; the S. Parts by the King of *Bisnagar*, the N. by the K. of *Sceherbender*, and afterwards by the three Kings of *Decan*, *Golconda*, and *Telangone*, who were usually in League with the *Persians*.

The History of the Moguls.

FATHER *Catrou*, a Jesuit, has writ a General History of this Empire, from its Foundation until the present Time, chiefly from the Memoirs of M. *Manouchi* a *Venetian*, who translated it into *Persian* from the Chronicles of the Country, which he had Access to in the Mogul's Palace, he being Physician to the Court, and having liv'd there 40 Years in the Reign of *Cha-Jehan*, and adher'd to his eldest Son *Dara*; so that he prefers his Relation to that of M. *Bernier*, because he wrote after him, and had better Opportunities. He has also consulted all the late Travellers into that Country, and particularly M. *de Landes*, who assisted *Tavernier*.

The first Emperor of the *Moguls*, according to this Chronicle, was *Tamerlane*, of whom we have already given an Account from *Alhacent*, his own Historian.

II. *Miracha* his Son succeeded in 1405. He was very disobedient to his Father, who had order'd him to be put to Death, because contrary to his Orders he had made several of his best Battalions and Squadrons fight against one another meerly to shew their Bravery, he himself being at the Head of a Troop of *Tartars*, wherein abundance fell on both Sides: The Grief of which threw *Tamerlane* into the Distemper of which he died. During his Father's Life he had the Government of *Persia*, and was very unfortunate in War with his Neighbours, who were like to have despoil'd him of his Dominions, had not *Tamerlane* come to his Assistance. After *Tamerlane's* Death, he fix'd his Seat at *Herat*, in the E. Part of *Persia*, because the Climate was more temperate than that of *Indostan*: But being much short of his Father in Valour and Conduct, and not equally belov'd by his Subjects, he was obliged to levy his Tributes from the *Indians* by Force of Arms; upon which the King of *Caskar* rebell'd, took him Prisoner, but us'd him generously, and set him at Liberty,

erty, on Condition that *Kaskar* should be exempted from Tribute. *Miracha* having been 7 times defeated by this Prince, overcame and took him at last, and ungratefully put out his Eyes. The unfortunate Prince found Means to revenge it thus: *Miracha* valu'd himself as being the best Archer in the World; but hearing that the King of *Kaskar*, tho' deprived of his Eyes, was so good a Marksman that he could hit any Thing with an Arrow, provided a Noise was made at the Place to give him a Signal, *Miracha* would see the Experiment, and order'd that Prince to be furnish'd with a Bow and Arrow on purpose; which being done, the King spoke out aloud, and said, It was below him to receive Orders from any other but *Miracha*, and therefore desired him to speak, and command him when to shoot, which *Miracha* having done, he discharged his Arrow at *Miracha*, by which he killed him, if we may believe *Catrou*, in the 46th Year of his Reign, A. C. 1451. *Herbert* says, he was slain in Battle A. C. 1480 by *Chara Issuff*, the Turkoman in *Aderbayon*, and that he left Issue Sultan *Mahumed*, Father of Sultan *Abusaid*, from whom the present Great Mogul is lineally descended. He adds, that *Miracha* was by some called *Allan-Chan*.

III. *Abuchaid* his Son, whom *Herbert* calls his Grandson, succeeded. He spent his Time idly in the Seraglio, and had nothing of the Valour of *Tamerlane*, or the Clemency of *Miracha*, but oppress'd his Subjects with Tributes, and put many of them to Death by cruel Tortures, which made them conspire to cut him off. To prevent this, he took the Habit of a *Faqir* or Penitent, and went about begging with two of his Companions. The Subjects set up one of his Brothers, who was more cruel than himself, and cut off his Subjects without Form of Law, or any Sort of Pretext. This made them bewail the Loss of *Abuchaid*, and to search him out among the Multitude of *Faquirs* that begged thro' the Kingdom, and having found him, notwithstanding his Disguise, they restor'd him to the Crown. Upon which he chang'd his former Conduct, but cut off his Brother's Head, which, tho' reckon'd an Act of Cruelty, he cover'd with a Pretence of revenging his Subjects, over whom he tyranniz'd.

Our Author says, this laid the Foundation of that barbarous Custom since used by the Great Moguls, to murder their Brethren. He had Wars with his Cousin *Ulubeg*, Grandson to *Tamerlane*, who reign'd in *South Tartary*, and was descended from *Tamerlane's* eldest Son as well as *Abuchaid*. The Occasion of the War was, that *Ulubeg* preferred his second Son *Abdalaziz* to his eldest Son *Abdalatif*, who thereupon took Arms, and retired to *Abuchaid* for Protection Upon which the latter march'd with an Army to *Samar-cand* against *Ulubeg*, the chief of his own Family, and King of *Tamerlane's* Hereditary Dominions, whilst he was in War with some of his Neighbours at a great Distance from his Capital. *Abdalaziz* held out the Town with great Gallantry, but was at last forced to submit, and *Abdalatif* was set on the Throne. After which, *Abuchaid* return'd to *Herat* with great Glory. *Ulubeg* advanc'd against his Son, who defeated and kill'd him in Battle, but did not long enjoy the Crown, for he perish'd in a few Months, after cutting off his Father, and second Brother *Abdalaziz*, and left the Kingdom of *Samar-cand* to his 3d Brother *Abdalla*. *Abuchaid*, puffed up with his new Victory, marched against the *Tartar* Governors of *Indostan*, who, during his Male-Administration at first, had made themselves in a manner absolute; but he reduc'd them, oblig'd them to continue their Tribute, and re-establish'd his Dominion as far as his Predecessors. He cover'd his vicious Inclinations by Shew of Virtue, but at Intervals discover'd that he retain'd the same ill Dispositions, and particularly his Ingratitude to his two Companions, who adher'd close to him, and follow'd him in the Habit of *Faquirs* during his Abdication; so that when they came to demand to be put in some of the Posts which he had taken from those that were unfaithful to him, as a Reward of their Service, he not only refus'd it, but bid 'em abandon the Court, for he could not endure to see them to whom he ow'd so much, since their Presence was a continual Charge of Ingratitude upon him. This Ingratitude became a Proverb, says our Author, and is inherited by his Posterity, who are the most ungrateful Princes in the World. After this, he made War upon *Abdalla* King of

Samarcand, but the Cause is not said; and join'd with the Prince of the *Usbeck Tartars* against *Abdalla*, besieg'd *Samarcand* a second time, but was repuls'd with Loss. He attacked *Abdalla* again the following Campaign, when the Wing he commanded was defeated; but his Ally *Usbeck-Chan*, who laid the Foundation of that great Empire of the *Tartars*, defeated and killed *Abdalla*, so that *Abuchaid* and he enter'd *Samarcand* as Conquerors. *Abuchaid* being willing to have the sole Possession of his Grandfather's Kingdom, he effected it by the following Stratagem: *Usbeck-Chan* having enter'd the City but with a few of his Troops at the W. Gate, *Abuchaid* order'd it to be shut against the rest of the Army, having a superior Force in the Town, made *Usbeck-Chan* Prisoner, and oblig'd him to resign his Pretensions for his Liberty. While *Abuchaid* was thus employ'd at *Samarcand*, a young beautiful Prince call'd *Ibrahim*, being in Love with a Princess of the Blood, some say *Abuchaid's* Sister, whom he forced to live unmarried in the Seraglio, by an Intrigue with her *Ibrahim* seiz'd *Herat*, and got himself proclaim'd King. He was assisted by his Father, Sovereign of some neighbouring Provinces, and rais'd an Army against *Abuchaid*; but was defeated by him, and fled. His Princess being in Despair, poison'd her self, having first killed her Infant Son, to prevent their falling Victims to *Abuchaid's* Fury, who returning to *Herat* in Triumph, obtain'd a new Reputation for his Clemency, by pardoning some of the Rebels. He afterwards made Conquest of some neighbouring Princes of *Tamerlane's* Blood, and went to *Samarcand*, which was his favourite Conquest, defeated and took *Abdalatif's* Son, who had endeavour'd to recover his Father's Kingdom, and condemn'd him to perpetual Prison. *Abuchaid* made War afterwards upon *Usum-Cassan*, a *Persian* Prince of the Family of the *White Sheep*, so called because they carried that for their Ensign. This Prince having prevail'd over the Family of the *Black Sheep*, who carried that for their Standard, *Hassan-Aly*, the only Heir of that Family, besought *Abuchaid's* Protection. This engag'd him in a War against *Persia*; to prevent which, *Usum-Cassan* offer'd to restore *Hassan-Aly* to his Dominions, and to give

Abuchaid all the Country from *Chorasán* to the *Caspian Sea*. But the Mogul would hear of nothing less than that *Usum-Cassan* should put himself into his Hands as an Hostage for the Performance of his Promises, which the *Persian* would not comply with. Being unable however to give Battle to *Abuchaid*, he intrench'd betwixt inaccessible Mountains and Lakes, harass'd the Mogul with continual Skirmishes, cut off his Provisions, and reduc'd his Army to Want, which forced *Abuchaid* to a disorderly Retreat, wherein he was attacked and taken by *Usum-Cassan's* Son. Being brought before that Prince, who receiv'd him civilly, he provok'd him so by his Reproaches, that he made his Head to be cut off, and put out the Eyes of his three Sons that were taken with him. This happen'd Anno 1469, in the 28th Year of *Abuchaid's* Reign. Our Author owns, that it is not certain whether *Abuchaid* was *Miracha's* Son and his immediate Successor, since in the Mogul's Great Seal Sultan *Mahamed* is placed betwixt him and *Miracha*; but he is of Opinion, that either this was *Abuchaid's* Brother, who reign'd during his Abdication; or if his Father, that he was an unactive Prince, of whom there's nothing said in History.

IV. *Sec-Omor*, or *Seick-Omar*, one of his Sons, succeeded. He was a peaceable Prince, who neither troubled his Neighbours, nor oppress'd his Subjects by Tributes and Wars, which gave the *Tartars* Time to breath, who had been in continual Action since *Tamerlane's* Reign. He kept his Seat at *Samarcand*, now call'd *Sogd*. He was very devout in his Religion, which made him respected by his Neighbours, and he died in 1493, the 24th Year of his Reign, by a Fall from a Terrace, while he diverted himself by seeing a Match of Pigeons whom he had taught to fight, and delighted much in that Diversion.

V. His Son *Babar* or *Babur* succeeded. The *Tartars* being grown effeminate during the peaceable Reign of his Father, *Schaibekkan* Prince of the *Usbeck Tartars*, and Son to *Usbeck Chan*, to whom *Abuchaid* had been so ungrateful, reveng'd it upon *Babar*, who being an effeminate Prince, was drove from *Samarcand* by the *Usbecks*, and was forc'd to fly as far as *Cabul*, where he form'd a Design to recover his Dominions from the
Usbecks.

Usbecks. But the Governor of *Cabulistan*, who was a Man of Experience, and knew the Valour and Discipline of the *Usbeck Tartars*, dissuaded him from it, and made him turn his Arms towards *Indostan*, to establish his Dominion there. *Babar* relishing this Advice, resolved first to know the State of that Country; in order to which, he and some of his Confidants put themselves in the Habit of Pilgrims, and on Pretence of visiting their Holy Places, informed himself of every Thing: After which, he formed his Project of conquering *Indostan*. He had most Inclination for the Kingdom of *Dehli*, to which he had a sort of Pretension, because it had submitted to *Tamerlane*, and received Governors from him. It was then govern'd by *Amwiza*, one of the powerfulest Kings of *Indostan*. *Babar*, upon his Return Home, summon'd him to pay him Tribute, and to lay aside his Title of Sovereign; which being refused, *Babar* marched against him with an Army, defeated and kill'd him, by which he became Master of a greater Empire than what he had lost, and establish'd new Laws there, which have been since follow'd by his Successors. Upon this Success, abundance of the chief *Tartars* came to him from *Samarcand*, and were preferred to great Posts. 'Twas about this Time that the *Indians* began to call the *Tartars* *Moguls*, from the Name of the Royal Family. But *Babar*, by his Ingratitude to *Ranguildas*, the Governor of *Cabulistan*, who gave him the good Advice above-mentioned, follow'd him in a Pilgrim's Habit thro' the *Indies*, and laid the Foundation of his Grandeur, tarnish'd all his Glory. He disgraced this Minister, who, to save his Life, retired to a remote Part of the Country in the Habit of a Faquir. After his Departure, the Government fell into Confusion for want of the Advice of *Ranguildas*, who had a chief Hand in contriving their good Laws. This was follow'd by a Famine and Revolts, which brought *Babar* to a Sense of his Fault, in disgracing his faithful Minister; so that he resolved to have him again if possible. To this End he publish'd a fantastical Edict, by which he order'd the Inhabitants of all the Towns of his Kingdom to bring their Market-places to *Dehli*. By this Means he thought he should find out

Ranguildas; for knowing his Ingenuity to contrive an Expedient to satisfy the King for the People's disobeying such an impracticable Edict, he concluded that by this Method he should know where he was. Accordingly the Inhabitants of a remote Town, where *Ranguildas* liv'd under the Notion of a Philosopher, consulted him for an Answer to the King. He advis'd them to send Deputies to the Court, and to acquaint his Majesty, That they were ready to obey his Majesty's Orders; but since their Market-place did not know the Way to *Dehli*, they begged his Majesty to send his own Market-place to shew theirs the Way, and it would certainly follow. By this Answer the King discover'd *Ranguildas*, and order'd the Town to send the Author of that Answer immediately to him; which being done, he restor'd him to his Favour, and the Government recover'd its Credit under his Administration. But we leave the Reader to judge whether this Story does not favour of a Romance, notwithstanding the Authority of the *Mogul's* Chronicle. *Babar* died in 1530, leaving behind him the Character of a wise Prince.

VI. His Son *Amayum* or *Homayum* succeeded; but in the Beginning of his Reign had well nigh lost his Kingdom, by the Intrigues of *Chira*, one of the Royal Family, whom *Babar* had dethron'd. *Ranguildas* suspecting this Man's Ambition, would never allow him to be trusted with any considerable Post; but *Amayum* imprudently advanc'd him to the highest Honour, and gave him the Command of his Guards and Armies, which inspir'd *Chira* with a Design to seize the Throne. *Amayum* saw his Error too late; for *Chira* having gain'd the Natives of the Country, broke out in Rebellion, and worsted the King's Troops in several Rencounters, defeated *Amayum* in a set Battle, and obliged him to retire to *Persia*, after 11 Years Reign in the midst of Tumults. By the Way he fell asleep in a Field, expos'd to the Heat of the Sun, where an Eagle, say the *Mogul* Writers, hover'd over his Head, and preserv'd it from the scorching Beams, which his Followers took for a good Omen. When he came to *Persia*, the King receiv'd him in a Garden, where there was a Sopha plac'd, which was too narrow for both to sit on. The

Mogul grew red with Anger at the Affront, but with great Presence of Mind plac'd himself at the King of *Persia's* Left Hand, which is the Post of Honour in the East, and setting himself down on his Bow-Case, invited the *Persian* to sit on the Sopha. This Readiness of Thought pleas'd the *Persian* so well, that he espous'd his Cause, and entertain'd him according to his Rank. In the mean time *Chira* confirmed himself in his Usurpation; but in the 9th Year of his Reign he was killed by the Splinter of a Cannon, which broke as he discharg'd it himself, in order to try it. His Death occasion'd new Competitions for the Crown betwixt the old *Indians* and the *Patan* Lords, their former Conquerors, of whose Royal Race *Chira* was the last. *Amayum* having Notice of this, obtain'd Troops, with which he enter'd *Indostan*, where, after several Battles, he recover'd his Crown, and rewarded the Faquir *Chadaula*, who brought him the first Advice of *Chira's* Death, and a Plan for recovering his Crown. He gave him large Possessions for himself and his Heirs, contrary to the Customs of the Country, which are still enjoy'd by his Posterity, who have the Rank next to the Mogul himself. The Memory of the Faquir is honour'd as a Saint, and the Mogul and his Court pay their Devotions at his Tomb; but *Amayum* was as ungrateful to the King of *Persia* as he was grateful to the Faquir, and refus'd to pay him the Tribute he had promis'd, or to give him the Province of *Candahar* and the Town of *Sindy*, according to Treaty, and died by a Fall from a stately Mausoleum he was building for himself in 1552, as he was viewing the Workmanship.

VII. His Son *Akebar* or *Akbar* succeeded, and seem'd to inherit all the great Qualities of *Tamerlane*. His first Endeavours were to root out the *Patans*, who were more numerous than his *Tartars*. To this End he entertain'd the *Persian* Troops which had follow'd his Father with great Bounty, and encouraged them to marry and settle there; so that the greatest Part of the white People now in *Indostan* are of their Offspring. At the same Time he oblig'd the *Rageputes*, who were the bravest of the ancient *Indians*, and gave them great Privileges; and they being as great Enemies to the *Patans* as him-

self, he soon obtain'd his Design against them. After this he subdued the Kingdom of *Guzurat*, whose King *Badur* was assisted by the *Portuguese*, then established at *Goa*; but *Akebar* defeated them both. In the next Place he conquer'd the Kingdom of *Decan*, after defeating the two Princes who govern'd it, and taking their chief Towns. He invaded next the Dominions of *Rana*, which lay 12 Days Journey from *Dekli*, and the Capital of his Country was called *Chitor*. This Prince was a Descendant of that *Rana* who was conquer'd by *Tamerlane*, and deriv'd his Origine from *Porus*, vanquish'd by *Alexander the Great*. *Chitor* was reckon'd impregnable; therefore *Akebar* sent Ambassadors to *Rana*, offering him Peace if he would surrender his Lady, who being one of the most beautiful Princesses in the World, was only fit for the greatest Emperor in it. This Proposition being reject-ed with Disdain, and *Rana* having animated his neighbouring Princes to oppose *Akebar* and his *Mahometans*, the War began. *Akebar* came before *Chitor* with a numerous Army, and with the richest Tents and Pavilions that ever were seen in that Country. Our Author says, the Mogul shot in Love-Letters to the Princess with his Arrows, but without Effect; so that his rejected Amours made him carry on the Siege like a Desperado. He batter'd the Town with a numerous Artillery, but without Effect, the Place was so strong, and the *Indians* defended it with so much Courage. A *Portuguese* Author says, the Siege lasted 12 Years, but the *Mogul Chronicle* says not above two, and was finished by a very odd Adventure, which our Author will not warrant to be true. *Akebar* growing weary of the Siege, shew'd as if he would raise it, and sent an obliging but crafty Letter to *Rana*, wherein, after commending his Courage, he desired only two Favours of him before he left the Siege. The first, That he would shew him his Princess; and the second, That he would allow him to enter the Town, that he might see the only Place in the World which was capable of resisting his Arms. *Rana* refus'd the first, but granted the second, provided he would come in only with 50 Men. *Akebar* accepted it, went in with fewer, and was receiv'd and entertain'd by *Rana* with all possible

sible Respect. When *Rana* was a little heated with Wine, *Akebar*, who was extraordinary eloquent, perswaded him to let him see the Princess but for one Moment, which he agreed to, to the great Regret of the Princess, who (in Obedience to her Husband) came just into the Room, but retired again that very Moment. This raised *Akebar's* Passion more than ever, but he had Craft enough to conceal it, made *Rana* believe he would actually raise the Siege, and talk'd but very coolly of the Princess's Beauty. *Rana* being thus deceiv'd, gave and took Presents from his mortal Enemy; and the Hour of *Akebar's* Departure being come, *Akebar* went to the Gate of the Town, attended by 40 of his Men, and *Rana* would do him the Honour to wait on him to the Gate. *Akebar* by the Way made great Protestations of Friendship, and when he came to the Gate presented him with a great Collar of Pearl; and on Pretence of Affection, would put it about his Neck himself. The Pearl being put on a strong Cord, *Akebar* pull'd *Rana* thro' the Gate by it, whilst the 40 *Moguls* made Head against the Guards; and thus *Akebar* having forced him to mount on Horseback, carried him to his Camp. This put the Town in Confusion. The Suddenness of the Alarm made them believe the Enemy had enter'd the City, and News was carried to the Princess *Padmani*, that her Husband was lost in the Tumult: Upon which she mounted on Horseback, being resolved to conquer, or die at the Head of her Troops, when she receiv'd Information of the Intrigue. She was sensible of the Cause of her Husband's Misfortune, but dissembled it, gave out he was dead, and animated her Troops to revenge his Death. She gave proper Orders for the Defence of the Town; and *Akebar* thinking himself Master of his Point, summon'd it to surrender, and to deliver him the Princess, otherwise he'd cut off *Rana's* Head, and sack the Town. *Padmani* answer'd like a generous Amazon, That she knew the perfidious Barbarian had murder'd her Husband, but he should find she had Power enough to revenge it, and that all her Officers had sworn, like true *Rageputes*, to defend the Place to the last Drop of their Blood, and make him pay dear for that of their Sove-

reign. *Akebar* knowing the Constancy of the *Rageputes*, to pursue what they once resolv'd, rais'd the Siege, sent Ambassadors to *Padmani* with rich Presents, and passionate Letters, perswading her to yield to him, and he would set her Husband at Liberty. He forced the Captive Prince to write Letters of the same Nature; but *Padmani* understood it, and dissembled as well as the Mogul. She pretended to change her Mind, but could not break her Oath without her Husband's Consent from his own Mouth, which, if she obtain'd, she would then be proud to be the Mogul's Sultaneß, and therefore desir'd that *Rana* might either be suffer'd to come into the Town, or that she might be allowed to come with a Guard to see him. The latter was agreed to; and *Rana* being convey'd to a Castle in the Neighbourhood of *Agra*, *Akebar's* Capital, the Princess was allow'd to come thither. The better to deceive the Mogul, she sent him every Day rich Presents of Jewels, and Garlands of Flowers, as Marks of her Passion, and prepared rich Chaises for her Journey; and those for Women being always cover'd, according to the Custom of the Country, and carried on the Shoulders of Slaves, she got two of them made on purpose, into which she put 8 of the bravest of her Subjects, and order'd 'em to keep Silence during the March. These she sent forward with her Guards, whilst she hid her self in her Palace. The People follow'd the Chairs with Tears out of the City, lamenting their Princess, who had suborn'd her chief Eunuch to carry on the Intrigue, to give Answers for her in her Name to the Mogul, and to acquaint him by Letters, That if she were any way disturbed in her March or her Conversation with her Husband, she would dispatch her self by a Dagger, which she carried with her on purpose. The Mogul agreed to this, sent Couriers after Couriers to hasten the March of the Princess, and went himself half a Day's Journey from *Agra* with a magnificent Equipage to meet her, designing, according to his Promise, to send back her Husband with the same Guards which brought her. He suffer'd the two Chaises to enter the Castle where *Rana* was Prisoner without offering to visit them, attended by some Officers of her Guards, who
having

having Arms hid under their Apparel, did with the 8 Men conceal'd in the Chaises kill the Governor who came to receive the Princess, cut off the Guards, mounted *Rana* on a swift Horse, and having others laid by the Way, he made his Escape to *Chitor*. In the mean Time the Mogul waited in a Garden for the Arrival of the Princess at the Hour appointed, when News was brought him of *Rana's* Escape, whom he order'd to be pursued, but in vain. When *Rana* came to his Capital, after due Acknowledgments to his Princess for her Fidelity and Courage, he sent Letters to *Akebar*, reproaching him with his Perfidiousness, and inviting him, by Way of Insult, to come and try his Fortune once more before *Chitor*, where he erected a Column in the Market-place, with an Inscription, forewarning every one from trusting the traitorous Moguls. This Disappointment did so enrage *Akebar*, that he marched with an Army, besieg'd *Chitor* a second time, where *Rana* made a noble Resistance; but at last was killed, says the History of the Mogul, by the Shot of a Musket from *Akebar's* own Hand, who seeing him from one of his Works, fir'd at him, without knowing who he was till two Days after. *Rana's* Corps was burnt, according to the Custom of the Country, and his generous Princess threw her self alive into the Flames; after which the Town speedily surrender'd. *Catrou* says, this is mention'd by the Historians of the *Indies*, and likewise by *European* Writers; but not being in the Mogul's Chronicle, he leaves the Reader to his own Judgment of it; yet says *M. Manouchi*, it has not the Air nor the Form of the *Indian* Romances, which are filled with Stories of the Conversations of Apes and other Animals, and of the Miracles performed by their Idols.

After this Exploit, *Akebar* employ'd himself to embellish *Agra*, his Capital, and designed to have built a Palace of Brass; but finding he could not have Materials for it, he fell to planting a Walk betwixt *Agra* and *Lahor*, which is 150 Leagues, continues to this Day, and is the noblest Monument of the Empire, as well as a great Relief to Travellers, to whom it affords an agreeable Shade, and a delightful Prospect by its continual Verdure.

Some Time after a great Number of Pea-

sants revolted, and Part of them got into a fortified Town, whose Works were not strong, but its Gates of difficult Access. *Akebar* march'd against them, and order'd some trained Elephants to lead the Van, and to break up the Gates; but those who conducted them had not Courage enough to attempt it. *Akebar*, angry at this, and being very well vers'd in managing those Elephants himself, he put on a Disguise next Day, mounted an Elephant in the Habit of a common Centinel, rode up to one of the Gates, forc'd it open, and escap'd without Wounds, tho' the Peasants shot Multitudes of Arrows at him. He that conducted the next Elephant quickly follow'd, and not knowing that it was *Akebar*, ask'd his Name, that he might report his Valour to the King. *Akebar* told him, his Name was, *The Breaker of Gates*, and pray'd him to be a faithful Witness for him to his Majesty. The Town being taken, and *Akebar* appearing at the Head of his Troops next Morning, the Leader of the Elephant told him of the brave Exploit perform'd by one who call'd himself, *The Breaker of Gates*. Upon which the Mogul told the Passage to his Courtiers, commended the Fellow for his Honesty and Courage, and advanc'd him to a considerable Post. But this Rebellion of the Peasants was not soon appeas'd; great Multitudes of them intrenched themselves in inaccessible Forrests, from whence they often made Excursions to plunder or burn the Towns. Whenever they were obliged to fight, they took Care not to charge within Musket-shot; and as soon as they fir'd, the Women recharg'd the Fire-Arms of their Husbands, who defended themselves afterwards with Bows or Javelins.

Our Author adds, That Part of those Peasants continue to this Day in *Indostan*, where they cut off the Heads of such as they find bearing Arms in the Villages, and hang them upon Trees, or fix them upon Poles in the High ways. He says, these Robbers are dispers'd over all the Towns from *Agra* to *Dehli*, and are known by their Chins, which are shav'd, and their Mustachoes, which reach to their Ears.

Akebar had no sooner cleared his Country of these Robbers, but *Jehan Guir*, his eldest Son, who now began to be of Age, and

and was naturally of an easy Temper, was incited by certain Malecontents to set up for himself; but the Rebels were too few, and *Akebar* too well establish'd in the Throne for his Revolt to succeed, and he was put in Prison, where he languish'd in fear of losing his Life: But *Akebar's* Affection to a Son of such great Hopes was stronger than his Anger and Justice. Nevertheless, the Son's Disobedience did not escape altogether unpunish'd: His Father learn'd him what Chastisement he deserv'd by his Revolt; for the same Day that he deliver'd him from Prison, he carried him aside under Pretence of Hunting into a Forrest, where he terrified him with the Sight of the Heads of 100 of the chief Conspirators, which he had caus'd to be hung upon the Branches of one Tree. *Jehan-Guir* knew them all, and was struck with Horror; but he was more sensibly touch'd with Remorse when his Father spoke to him in such Words as these; *Thou hast forgot, Traytor, that I am thy Father, but I cannot forget that thou art my Son. The Revenge which I have taken of thy Accomplices, may easily give thee so understand what thou deservest. I restore you the Life I gave you, at the same Time that you are bent to destroy mine. Nevertheless, in spite of all my Tenderness, thou canst not escape one kind of Punishment, which I ought not to excuse you from for it will always stand in the Chronicles of your Nation, That Jehan Guir, the Chief of Tamerlane's Grandsons, attempted to dethrone his Father. However, avoid the Shame of transmitting the Memory of a second Crime to Posterity.* The young Prince profited so much by this Advice, that for ever after he was most constant in his Obedience.

After this, *Akebar* ordered an Army of 80000 Men to march against the *Patans*, formerly mentioned; but his Soldiers were all killed or perished in the barren Desarts. At length he founded a School of Gunners, because, tho' there was Artillery enough in the *Indies*, no body knew how to make use of it with the same Dexterity as the *Europeans*. For that End he sent to *Suratte* for *English* Gunners, and to *Goa* for all manner of Artificers, viz. Lapidaries, Enamellers, Goldsmiths, Surgeons, and *European* Physicians; by whose Means, and the Department of a *Portuguese* Ambassador sent to him from *Goa*, he became acquainted

with the Christian Religion in general, and (at the Ambassador's Perswasion) sent for a Missionary from *Portugal*, who instructed him in the Particulars, taught him to despise the Alcoran, to esteem the Gospel, and prevailed upon him to learn the *Portuguese* Language, that he might have more frequent and private Opportunities of converse with him, and to send for as many other Jesuits as he could. Those of *Goa* were joyfully surpris'd at the News, and long'd for the Mission. The Lot fell upon three in particular, who were met by the Emperor on the Road, bountifully entertain'd at their Arrival, and offer'd a great Sum of Money; but they represented to the Emperor the Vow of Poverty which they had made, whereby they were excus'd from receiving the Goods of this World. The Presents which they gave to the Mogul were a Bible in 4 Languages, neatly printed, with two Pictures, viz. one of Christ, and the other of the Virgin. *Akebar* took the Bible, put it upon his Head in Token of Respect, kiss'd the Images, and made his Children do the like; and that he might be thoroughly convinc'd of the Falseness of the Alcoran, and the sound Principles of the Gospel, the Jesuits held Disputes with the Moulla's every Saturday at Court. He was well enough perswaded of the former, but seemed somewhat dubious of the latter, by making this Reflection, viz. That the Christians have extended themselves throughout the World by shedding their own Blood; whereas *Mahometanism* has prevail'd in the *East* by spilling the Blood of others. In the meantime the Jesuits were entertained with the greatest Demonstrations of Respect, but were impatient to know whether the Emperor was in good Earnest; for which End one of them accosted him thus: *Your Majesty knows upon what Conditions we left a plentiful Harvest to come and teach you Jesus Christ: We had your Promise that we should have Leave to return to the Places whence we came, if we found the Seed of the Word barren in your Heart. Therefore we presume to beseech your Majesty to fix a Time when you will please to declare yourself, either for Mahomet or Jesus Christ.* The Emperor was not in the least chagrin at the Missionary's Freedom, but answer'd, That so serious a Change was in the Hand of God,

God, whose Illumination and Assistance he would not cease to implore.

So wise an Answer as that, says our Author, was enough to warrant the Emperor's Conversion as infallible. Nevertheless, the Jesuits still feared that Dissimulation and Politicks, so natural to the Moguls, were the chief Ingrédients in the Prince's Discourse; tho' they daily receiv'd fresh Marks of his Esteem, were entrusted with the Education of *Pahari*, his darling Son, and during that Time honoured with frequent Visits from the Emperor himself, who being present on a Time when the young Prince was casually rehearsing his Lesson for the Day at these Words, *To the Honour of Almighty God*, enjoin'd his Son to add also, *And of Jesus Christ the true Prophet*. Then he enter'd into a Chappel which the Jesuits had erected in their Apartment, where he worshipp'd our Saviour by several Prostrations, and afterwards enter'd upon such a Discourse with the Missionaries, as discover'd his whole Heart to 'em. For the Particulars of which, we refer to *Catrou* himself.

But all this was not sufficient to engage *Akebar* to embrace Christianity, tho' he permitted it to be preach'd in his Empire with the *Portuguese* Ceremonies, &c. However, he own'd that he was just ready to make such a Step as should prove the Sincerity of his Esteem for the Gospel, when his budding Faith was suddenly nipped by Adversity. The *Patans* revolted, his Brother took up Arms in their Favour, and stirred up the whole Province of *Cabulestan* against him. Now the Doctors of the *Mahometan* Law thought this the best Opportunity to bring the Emperor back to their own Side, and for that End ascribed all his Domestick Distractions to his Alienation from the Religion of the *Musselmen*. Besides, the Emperor was afraid that his eldest Son wou'd also take hold of this Opportunity to animate his Subjects to a Revolt; so that (says our Author) whether it was in Consideration of the Religion of his Ancestors, or for fear of new Troubles, or whether God, who resists the Proud, had abandon'd him, *Akebar's* Affection began to be but luke-warm for the Christian Religion. He forbore to converse with the Jesuits, heard them with a discouraging Air of Neglect, and seem'd

in publick Disputes to side more vigorously than ever with his *Moulla's*. This made the Jesuits think of returning to *Goa*; but they were detain'd by *Abul-Fasil*, who told them, That the Emperor was glad to see them in his Palace; that Reasons of State hinder'd him from making an open Declaration in Favour of the Religion which they had preach'd to him, and advis'd them to Perseverance. However this be, 'tis certain that *Akebar* renew'd his Favours to 'em, visited them often, talk'd with them also sometimes about Religion; and finally, as a Mark of his entire Confidence, charg'd them to teach his Son the *European* Sciences. But very soon after the Emperor declared, That his Conversion was vastly remote, and told the Jesuits, That he was engaged by the strongest Ties to *Mahometanism*; That he was incessantly pester'd with Invectives from the *Moulla's* of his Palace, and the *Sultane's* his Mother, against the new Religion under his Protection. Besides, says he, *I am opposed by the Women of the Seraglio, who exert all their Caresses to make me out of Love with Christ, for fear lest they should all be sent packing as soon as Christianity shall reduce me to one*. In short, says he, *the Gospel is too holy, and my Manners too much corrupted*.

In the mean time *Akebar* compelled the Rebel *Patans* to fly to the Mountains, and his Brother, who had been defeated more than once, was disposed to an Accommodation. At length, the Emperor considering that his Subjects were a Compound of *Mahometans*, Idolaters, and Christians, he was for setting up a new Religion, and reducing them all to one Faith. He propos'd to join the Baptism of some, and the Circumcision of others, to the Religion of the *Brama*, to retain the *Metempsychosis*, the Plurality of Wives, and the Worship of Jesus Christ, thinking by this Means to join together what each of them thought most valuable in their own Religion, and to make himself the Head of the whole. To this End he assumed the Title of, *The Potent King of the Sovereign Law*, made *Lahor*, where he kept his Court, the Seat of his new Religion, and designed to make use of his Army, which he had assembled for the Conquest of *Cachemire* to establish it. Thus he declared himself against *Mahometism*, shut up the Mosques, or turn'd them to Stables,

Stables, forbid the Moulla's to call the People to their *Mahometan* Prayers, and order'd all his Subjects to follow the Religion of their Prince. He established new Laws and Ceremonies, perswaded his Officers to follow his Example, worshipped the Sun three times a Day to please the Pagans, honour'd Jesus and Mary at certain Times, and wore a Relick about his Neck with an *Agnus Dei*, and an Image of the Virgin, to please the Papists, retain'd Circumcision, and said his Prayers upon Beads after the *Mahometan* Way to please the *Mussulmen*, blasphemously ordered himself to be worshipped as a God, and appeared every Morning on a Balcony, where the People worshipped him, made the Mob believe he heard their Prayers and Vows, and work'd Miracles.

Father *Aquaviva* took an Opportunity from hence to reprove him sharply, desired Leave to retire with the rest of the Missionaries, rebuked him particularly for setting himself up in the Place of God, and told him, he would pray that his Vengeance might be suspended, and that his Majesty might have Time to return to him. *Akebar* heard this without any Emotion, would have perswaded the Missionaries to stay, but at last allowed them to depart; and as a Mark of his Affection, gave them two Christian Slaves, with their Children, to carry with them to *Goa*. After this, *Akebar* subdued the Kingdom of *Cachemire* almost without Resistance; but being touch'd with a Remorse for his extravagant Impieties, he acquainted his Minister *Abdul-Fasil* with it, who having complied with him, contrary to his own Conscience, perswaded him to recal the Missionaries. Accordingly he sent an *Armenian* Deacon, who was at his Court, with a Letter to the Viceroy of *Goa*, and the Provincial of the Jesuits there, with a considerable Sum to be distributed to the Poor. He turned off the Women of his Seraglio, and kept himself to one, worshipped the Virgin's Image, and gratified those who did the like. Two Missionaries were sent him from *Goa* in 1589. He received them with Honour, allowed them to set up Schools, and discoursed with them about his Scruples: But the Missionaries retired again, because he did not declare himself so soon as they would have had him. That Conduct was disap-

proved at *Rome*, and the General of the Jesuits sent two other Missionaries. *Akebar* received them as the former, and at the first Audience shew'd them the Images of our Saviour and the Virgin, which the Fathers worshipped, and *Akebar's* young Grandson, the Presumptive Heir of his Crown, did the like, which *Akebar* was mightily pleas'd with, so that nothing seemed to be wanting to make a compleat Conversion in the Sense of the Jesuits but *Akebar's* publick Profession. He attended at their Devotions, and ordered a Church to be built, but still retained his Pagan Superstition, and allow'd his People to worship him. He appointed a solemn Festival in Honour of the Sun, and set up a Representation of it on a sumptuous Throne, in the middle of the Solemnity; but 'twas overturned with Thunder, which consumed the Emperor's Tent, Part of the City, and most of his Palace and Treasures. Upon this he retired to the Kingdom of *Cachemire*, and took a Jesuit with him, whilst others went on to make their pretended Conversions at *Lahor*, &c. where (says our Author) several People became Martyrs to the Faith. The Missionaries baptized great Numbers, who walk'd in Procession thro' the Streets of *Lahor* with Drums, Trumpets, and other Instruments, after the Manner of the Country. In the mean time *Akebar*, being struck with the Fear of the Thunder as above, pretended to repent of his Extravagancies in secret, but still kept up the Sect he had invented in publick, which was attended with new Judgments: For *Mustapha*, who was dispossest'd of the Kingdom of *Decan*, enter'd that Country with Arms, and was joined by all the zealous *Mahometans*. *Akebar* sent an Army against them under the Command of his second Son, who was defeated and killed by *Mustapha*, tho' much inferior in Number. This made *Akebar* acknowledge the Divine Justice. He abandon'd the Worship of the Sun, and set himself up in the Place of God, at the Perswasion of Father *Xavier*. After this he returned to *Agra*, to make Head against the Rebels in Person. One Day, as he had wearied himself by hunting in a Wood, and lost his Company, he sat down to sleep under a Tree, when perceiving a large Caterpillar, of the Colour

of Fire, (which is scarce found any where but in the *Indies*) coming towards him, he shot an Arrow and kill'd it. He had scarce drawn out the Arrow, when an Antelope appearing, he shot the same Arrow; and tho' it wounded the Beast in a Place that was not mortal, the Antelope died immediately. The Huntsmen coming up, they opened the Beast, found all its Flesh corrupted, and the Dogs which eat of it immediately died. *Akebar* perceiving by this the Effect of the Caterpillars Poison, order'd one of his Officers to carry Part of it Home; and what was never done before at that Court, created an Officer to poison such as he had a Mind to, and employed him to destroy without any Noise such of the great Men as he thought were privy to *Mustapha's* Conspiracy. To this End *Akebar* carried about him a Gold Box with three Divisions, one for the Betel that he chew'd, the 2d for Cordial Pills, and the 3d for others made up of the above-mentioned Poison, which, tho' slow, was incurable, and those he made such Persons as he suspected to swallow down in his own Presence. By Mistake he took one of those Pills himself; and notwithstanding all the Antidotes given him by the *Portuguese* Physicians, he died of a languishing Distemper, and Father *Xavier* assisted him in his last Minutes: But our Author speaks doubtfully of his Conversion. He died in 1605, and had erected a stately Sepulchre for himself, in which there was a Crucifix, an Image of the Virgin, and another of St. *Ignatius*, by which they presume he died a Christian; but others say, they were only placed there as Ornaments. Our Author endeavours to raise his Character equal to that of *Tamerlane*; but how justly, the Reader may judge by what has been said.

VIII. *Jehan Guir*, his Son, succeeded. His Title was disputed, because (as some say) his Father appointed by his Will his Grandson Sultan *Chosrou* to succeed him. But however that was, *Chosrou* rebelled against his Father *Jehan Guir*, who our Author says was favourable to the Christians, but drown'd in Sensuality; so that his Kindness to Christians proceeded only from his Love to drink Wine, and eat such Meats as *Mahomet's* Law forbids. He was also for using the *European* Habit, and for declaring him-

self a Christian on that Account; to prevent which, the *Mahometan* Doctors told him, the Alcoran did not hinder Princes to eat and drink what they would. This made him despise them as Men of no Principles, and to mock their Religion; so that he order'd several little Gold Statues to be made, with which he adorn'd his Apartments, and particularly of Boars, which the *Mahometans* hate above all Things. He contemn'd their Fasts, and during those Solemnities drank Wine plentifully to the *Europeans*, especially by Night, and threaten'd his Courtiers, who scrupled to bear him Company, to cast them to the Lions. In all publick Disputes, he took Part with the Jesuits against the Moulla's. Our Author, and Sir *Thomas Roe*, Ambassador to the Mogul from King *James I.* agree in this, and particularly in the two following remarkable Passages; That during these Disputes the *Mahometans* demanded a Miracle, which one of the Jesuits propos'd thus, That a great Fire should be made, into which a *Mahometan* Doctor should enter on one Side with the Alcoran, and he would enter on the other with the Gospel, and then they should see for which Religion Heaven would declare it self. The Moulla trembled at the Proposition, so that the King forbore putting him to the Test. Sir *Thomas* tells the Story with this Difference, That the Emperor demanded the Jesuits should throw our Saviour's Picture into the Fire, and that if it did not burn, he would turn Christian. The Jesuit refus'd this, alledging it was to tempt God, who was not obliged to work Miracles when Men pleased; but that to prove the Truth of his Religion, he was willing to go into the Fire himself, which the Emperor would not agree to, but took Part with the Christians against the Moulla's, and said, That our Saviour was certainly a greater Prophet than *Mahomet*, as appear'd by his Miracles. Sir *Thomas* relates another remarkable Passage, and asserts the Truth of the Fact as follows: A Mountebank of *Bengal* presented the Mogul with a large Ape, and alledg'd, according to the Opinion of his Country, that this Ape had something divine in it. The King, to try this, pull'd a Ring off his Finger, and without letting the Ape see it, hid it in the Clothes of a young Lad,

Lad, who had 12 more of his own Age standing about him; notwithstanding which, the Ape went directly to the Youth that had it. After this, the Mogul wrote 12 different Notes, with the Names of 12 Legislators, viz. those of *Moses, Christ, Mahomet, Aly, &c.* and mixing them together in a Vessel, bid the Ape draw out the Name of him who was the true Legislator: The Ape drew out that of our Saviour. The Mogul suspecting that the Mountebank understood the Character of the Country, and had given the Ape a Sign, he wrote our Saviour's Name in a Cypher, which he us'd when he wrote Cyphers to his Ministers, and was known to none but himself and them; and mixing it again with others, the Ape drew it out as formerly, at which one of the Mogul's Ministers falling in a Rage, said, He was sure there must be a Cheat in it, demanded Leave to write the Names, and to mix them himself, offering to submit to any Punishment if the Ape found it. Accordingly he wrote the Names, but put 11 of them only into the Vessel, and kept our Saviour's in his Hand. The Ape turn'd them all over, but took none of 'em out. The King wondering at it, would force him to take one; but the Ape would not, testified his Resentment, and made Signs after his Mode, that the Name of the true Legislator was not there. The King bid him find it where it was; upon which it run to the Minister, and took hold of his Hand wherein he kept the Name. This, says Sir Thomas, was done in Presence of the King and his whole Court, and he re-asserts the Truth of the Fact, but leaves the Readers to judge of it as they please, and so do we; for the Christian Religion needs no such Proof of its being true. Sir Thomas says, the Mogul had nothing but politick Views in his pretended Favour to the Christians, and that he order'd two of his Nephews to be baptized, and to profess Christianity on purpose to make them hateful to the *Mahometans*, in whom lies his principal Strength, with a Design, as we may suppose, to make those Princes incapable of being his Rivals. He made them some Time after renounce their Christianity, on Pretence that the King of Portugal had neither sent them Wives nor Presents according to Promise. Sir Thomas adds, That he did not

see one that could truly be call'd a Convert in that Country, nor but few who made Profession of it, except some to whom the Jesuits gave Money and Entertainment; so that considering the treacherous Temper of that People, and the Conduct of the Jesuits, he says there was no great Hopes of Christianity's making much Progress there. He says, That the Jesuits Church being burnt, the Crucifix escap'd, which was given out for a Miracle; but the Fathers knowing that he believ'd nothing of it, tho' out of Respect to Christianity he spoke nothing against it, one of them own'd to him, that there was no Miracle in it, tho' he was glad the *Mahometans* believ'd it to be one.

To return to *Jehan-Guir*, he fix'd his Seat at *Lahor*, because that Climate was more temperate than at *Indostan*. He became enamour'd of a *Persian* Lady, the Wife of one of his Officers, whom he caus'd to be murdered, that he might enjoy her, which the crafty Woman consented to at last, on Condition she should be made the chief Queen, and her Name was chang'd into that of *Nur-Jaham*, which signifies the Light of the World. She obtain'd so much the Ascendant over him, that she govern'd him as she pleas'd; and having no Children by him, she resolv'd to have her Daughter by her first Husband married to one of the Mogul's Sons by his 4 other Wives. She pitched on the eldest Sultan *Chosrou*, who scorn'd such a base Alliance, being already married to the Daughter of a Prince, who was an admirable Person, and dearly belov'd by him. This Refusal cost him his Life afterwards by the Intrigues of *Nur-Jaham*. She got her Daughter married with Sultan *Sceherier*, the Mogul's youngest Son, who upon this became the chief Favourite, and his three elder Brothers were sent to remote Governments. Sultan *Chosrou*, the eldest, did on this Occasion rebel against his Father, and pretended the Crown belong'd to him by his Grandfather's Will, tho' he had willingly agreed that his Father should wear it, but would do so no longer, since by the Intrigues of that wicked Woman he preferred his youngest Brother before him. *Chosrou* was favour'd by *Mahobet-Cham*, one of his Father's chief Ministers, and *Sceherier* by *Asaph-Cham*, Brother to *Nur-Jaham*, another of the great Ministers. *Nur-Jaham*,
by

by her Brother's Help, formed a Plot to get *Mahobet* murder'd by Assassins as he came out of the Palace. They attacked him accordingly; but being a gallant Man, he easily rid himself of the first who attempted him; but finding the Assassins to increase, he retired to the inner Gate of the Seraglio, where being join'd by some Eunuchs that depended on him, he enter'd the Emperor's Apartment, obliged him to follow him to mount an Elephant, and thus came out of the Place with the Mogul by his Side, he himself sitting under the same Canopy with a Dagger in his Hand, and told those who were laid in Ambush for him by the Queen *Nur-Jaham*, that if they offer'd to stir, he would stab the Mogul immediately. By this good Conduct he carried the Emperor to his own House, where the Troops commanded by *Mahobet* arm'd in Defence of their Master, who kept *Jehan-Guir* in a sort of Captivity, but shew'd him all possible Respect, and furnish'd him every Day with new Pleasures. Yet nothing would do without the Presence of *Nur-Jaham*. Therefore *Mahobet* told 'em, he would admit her to come, provided the King would take his Advice; and excusing what he had done for his own Safety against the Queen and her Brother, who had plotted to destroy him, said, It's true, he had taken Part with *Chosrou*, who was oppress'd by that ambitious Woman, that had removed all his Children from his Presence but her Son-in-Law. However, since *Chosrou* had rebelled, he would command his Troops against him, provided the Mogul would recal his other Sons to Court; but withal advis'd him to banish that Fury of a Woman who had rais'd such Discord in his Family. *Jehan-Guir*, convinced of the Reasonableness of what he said, agreed to it; but being of a changeable Temper, when the Day appointed for the Queen's Banishment came, he would not consent to it. Therefore *Mahobet*, out of Respect to his Master, desisted from that Demand, and went with the Army against *Chosrou*, whom he defeated and took; but prevailed with his Father to save his Life, and to imprison him only with his Wives and Children. Being in this Condition, the wicked *Nur-Jaham* promis'd him his Liberty, and to secure his Title to the Crown, provided he

would divorce his Wife, and marry her Daughter, whom for that End she would get divorc'd from Prince *Sceherier*, on Pretence of his Impotence: But *Chosrou* generously refus'd it.

In the mean time her Brother *Asaph-Cham* having married one of his Daughters to *Chorrom*, the Mogul's 3d Son, carried on an Intrigue opposite to his Sister, and design'd to set his own Son-in-Law on the Throne. Therefore he confirm'd *Chosrou* under-hand in his Aversion to the Queen's Proposal, and put him in Hopes of her being disgraced, which would issue in his Liberty. *Asaph* sent for his Son-in-Law *Chorrom* from his Government of *Decan* to the Court, in order to make himself popular; and that wicked Prince, to rid himself of his Brother *Chosrou*, got him murder'd in Prison; for *Chosrou*'s Princess, in order to save her Husband's Life, perswaded him all she could to abandon her, and fall in with the Queen's Proposal; which being known to *Chorrom*, he hasten'd to murder his Brother, with the Consent of *Asaph-Cham*.

This being discovered by *Jehan-Guir* and the Empress, he hated his unnatural Son *Chorrom*, sent him back to his Government, and *Asaph-Cham* had much ado to maintain himself at Court by the Protection of his Sister. *Chosrou* had a Son called *Bolaqui*, of 17 Years of Age, a Prince of great Hopes, and promising Qualities, who soon became the Delight of the Court, and the Queen declared in his Favour. He committed him to the Care of *Mahobet*, who discharged himself very faithfully towards him. In the mean time *Jehan-Guir*, thinking all was safe, gave himself up to enjoy the Pleasures of Peace, and entering a Publick-House in Disguise, where they had Permission to drink Wine, he sat down by a Tradesman, who being elevated by his Cups, was singing very chearfully. The Emperor, pleas'd with such jovial Company, was very familiar with the Fellow, treated him, and made him drink liberally. The Tradesman, among other Discourse, talk'd very freely of the Government, complain'd of the Emperor's Weakness, that he suffer'd himself to be govern'd by a Woman, and let his second Son murder his eldest. They parted very good Friends, and promis'd to meet there often. The Empe-

ror ask'd the Man's Name, what Trade he was, and where he liv'd. He told him his Name was *Secander*, that he was a Silk-Weaver, and liv'd in such a Place. Upon which the Emperor says to him, *Well, Comrade, I'll come and dine with you to Morrow, when we will renew our Acquaintance, and swear a perpetual Friendship.* The Weaver told him he should be welcome, and so they parted. Next Day the Emperor set out from his Palace in greater State than usual, with his Guards and Elephants richly adorned. The Cavalcade pass'd by *Secander's* Door, who was so busy preparing to entertain his Friend, that he took no Notice of it. While the People crowded to the Windows and Streets, and wonder'd at the Design of this magnificent Parade, a Soldier sent by the King ask'd for the House of *Secander*, who hearing himself nam'd, came running out with a Pestle in his Hand, with which he had been braying Rice for his Friend's Dinner; and thinking the Soldier had come for Silk, told him, he had as good as any in *Lahor*. The Soldier reply'd, The Emperor hears you live very well, and therefore he's come to dine with you, as he promis'd Yesterday. Upon this, *Secander* perceiving that it was the Mogul whom he had been so free with, and thinking himself undone, *I wish*, says he, *that those who trust drunken Men had a Rap with this Pestle over their Heads*; which the King hearing, laugh'd heartily, call'd for some of *Secander's* Wine, drank to him to renew their Acquaintance, and advanced him to a considerable Post. After this, *Shah-Abas* King of *Persia* took the Town and Province of *Candahar*, and would have push'd his Conquests further, had not the Mogul sent a great Army, which oblig'd him to retire. But *Jehan-Guir* was in much greater Danger by the Revolt of his Son *Chorrom*, whose Father-in-Law *Asaph-Cham* being order'd to bring the Treasure of the Empire to *Lahor*, which was kept in the Castle of *Agra*, he gave *Chorrom* Notice, that he might intercept it, and by that Means enable himself to get the Crown. But the faithful Eunuch who had the Guard of the Treasury having Notice of *Chorrom's* Revolt, refus'd to deliver the Money, which defeated the Plot. *Jehan-Guir* being inform'd of this, sent a numerous Army under the brave *Mahobet* against his Son; and

Sultan *Pervis*, the youngest Brother, who was Vizier of *Bengal*, march'd likewise against *Chorrom*. A Battle ensu'd, *Chorrom* was defeated, and fled to the Mountains. Sultan *Bolaqui*, Son to *Chosrou*, perform'd Wonders in this Battle, and contributed chiefly to the Victory. *Chorrom* assembled another Army, was again defeated, and forc'd to retire to *Brampour*. He was afterwards pursued, and retired to the Dominions of *Melec Amber*, his ancient Friend. During the Joy for this Success, the *Usbeck Tartars* invaded *Cabulistan*, but were defeated by the Son of *Mahobet-Cham*, which increas'd the Glory of that great Minister. This Diversion by the *Tartars* encourag'd rebellious *Chorrom* to try his Fortune once more. He enter'd the Kingdom of *Bengal*, defeated the Army commanded by his Brother *Pervis* his Lieutenant, and thought to have surpris'd himself. But his Courage fail'd him when he heard of his Brother's Return to *Bengal*, and that his Army was commanded by the brave *Mahobet*. Therefore he had Recourse to Craft, and sent forged Letters to *Cham-Canna*, who had formerly deserted him, and join'd his Brother *Pervis*, as if there had been a Correspondence betwixt them to betray the latter. He order'd it so that those Letters were intercepted by *Mahobet*, who having formerly suspected *Cham-Canna*, believ'd it to be true, and kept him and his Children Prisoners. *Chorrom* march'd against his Brother, from whence a bloody Battle ensu'd. *Chorrom* was again defeated, and escap'd only with 3000 Men. These repeated Victories made the Queen reflect, that the Success of *Pervis* and *Mahobet* was contrary to the Interest of her Family; for the Rebel Prince had married her Niece, and his Ruin would occasion her own, by establishing *Pervis* on the Throne, which would make *Mahobet*, to whom he chiefly ow'd his Success, to be too powerful for her. Therefore she prevail'd with the Emperor to send for *Cham-Canna*, *Mahobet's* declar'd Enemy, to Court, on Pretence of giving her Account of his Conduct. He was accordingly brought, and being sure of the Queen's Protection, represented *Mahobet* as a cruel and ambitious Man, and complain'd of his Injustice to himself and his Family; adding, that *Pervis* and *Mahobet* made War only to advance

themselves, and to seize the Crown. Therefore he advis'd him to be reconcil'd to *Chorrom*, who had taken Arms only to deliver himself from the Fury of a jealous Brother, and an ambitious Minister. This Discourse being seconded by the Queen, the Mogul believ'd it, and order'd *Mahobet* to come immediately to Court. *Pervis* readily agreed to it, because *Cham-Canna* had made him jealous of *Mahobet*, by alledging, that the Glory of all the Victories would be ascribed to him. Thus that great Captain was at once abandon'd by all his Friends, and deliver'd into the Hands of his greatest Enemies. He resolv'd however to obey; but meeting several Expresses on the Road to hasten to Court, he suspected a Design on his Life. Therefore he retired to *Ratampour*, a Town which the Emperor had given him in Property, on Pretence of dispatching some Affairs for the Service of the State. This Delay gave his Enemies a Handle to get him condemn'd without being heard, and he was sent as a sort of Exile to be Deputy Governor of *Bengal* under Sultan *Pervis*, who had Orders to observe him narrowly. Being sensibly touch'd with this Disgrace, he justified himself to the Emperor by a Letter full of Remonstrances, which being not regarded, he so far indulged his Passion as to write a second, wherein he told him boldly, That he knew of a Way to obtain a Hearing, and that he would speedily be at *Lahor*, to confound those who had reproach'd him. The Menaces of so great a Captain made all the Court to tremble except the Queen, who, instead of advising the Emperor to continue at *Agra*, perswaded him to go to *Cabul*, which was a very bold Enterprize, and had well nigh proved fatal to all the Imperial Family.

While the Court was on their Journey, *Mahobet* assembled the bravest Officers who had formerly serv'd under him, and 5000 of the stoutest *Rajapouts* join'd him, as a Captain that was always attended with Victory. With this small but resolute Army he possess'd himself once more of the Emperor, and brought him to Reason, by surprizing him in his Camp; so that *Jehan-Guir*, the Queen, Sultan *Bolaqui*, Sultan *Sceherier*, *Asaph-Cham*, and *Cham-Canna*, did all fall into his Hands. The City of *Agra* de-

clar'd for him, so that he might have advanced to the Throne whom he pleas'd: But his generous Respect to his Master made him leave him at full Liberty, as well as the Queen. *Bolaqui* and *Sceherier* he sent Prisoners to the Citadel of *Agra*, while *Asaph-Cham* and *Cham-Canna* were kept in Chains under a Guard in the Army. But his Moderation to the Queen had like to have cost him dear; for being enraged to find herself her Enemy's Prisoner, and afraid that he would get the Ascendant over the Emperor, to whom he regularly made his Court, she laid a Plot, on Pretence of Hunting, to surprize this brave General by 50000 Men as he was passing a River; of which having some Notice, he abandon'd the Emperor and the Queen, and retired with his small Army to *Agra*, carrying with him the two Prisoners in Chains. The Queen writ to the Governors of the neighbouring Provinces to stop *Mahobet* in his March, and to rescue her Brother out of his Hands. But *Mahobet's* Generosity prevented it, for he sent *Asaph-Cham* back to the Queen, after he had made him swear on the Alcoran, that he would not be ungrateful, since it was in *Mahobet's* Power to deprive him of his Life. The proud Empress, when she saw her Brother, approached him with Cowardice for taking such an Oath, and not waiting with Patience till either she could have deliver'd him, or that his Death should have filled up the Measure of the Traytor's Crimes.

While these Things happen'd, *Chorrom* took the Field again, which alarmed the Emperor and his Army, who had no more the valiant *Mahobet* to lead them. *Chorrom* laid Siege to *Tatta*, but was forced to raise it, and retire to *Backar*. The Emperor return'd to *Lahor*, and the Empress resolv'd to be reveng'd on *Mahobet*. She surpris'd a Convoy of Money that was coming to him from *Bengal*, and sent *Cham-Canna*, to whom he had generously given his Liberty, with an Army against him. At the same Time *Mahobet's* own Son revolted from him to the Court. The Remainder of his Troops did the like, after they had plunder'd his Treasury, and pillag'd his Lands; and Sultan *Pervis*, who had too late repented of his ill-grounded Jealousy against *Mahobet*, died at the same Time. The Sultans *Bolaqui* and

and *Sceherier*, whom he had kept Prisoners meerly as Pledges of his own Security, and to keep the Empress in awe, being set at Liberty, vow'd Revenge on him. Thus *Mahobet* being universally deserted, had no Way left him but to go to *Rana*, one of the chief Raja's of the Empire, and there to negotiate with Sultan *Chorrom*. He wrote to that Prince, signifying that if he would lay down his Arms against his Father, he might assure himself of his Service to obtain the Crown after his Death, which could not be far off, since *Jehan-Guir* was now old and infirm: That he might be sure Sultan *Bolaqui*, his eldest Brother's Son, would dispute the Title with him, and in that Case he might easily conceive of what Use the Service of an experienc'd General, who was belov'd by the Troops, might be to him; and he would willingly engage in his Interest, provided he would not rob his Father of the Empire, nor oblige him to carry Arms against his Sovereign. *Chorrom* thought the Proposal reasonable, but first consulted his Father-in-Law *Asaph Cham*, who being a Man of Experience, tho' *Mahobet*'s Enemy, advis'd him to accept his Proposal, and to make Peace with his Father, as the only Way to secure his Succession. Thus *Mahobet* brought about a publick Peace, which was all the Revenge that generous and faithful Minister took on his Sovereign, who persecuted him at the Instance of a furious Woman. After this, *Jehan Guir* died at *Bimber* in 1627. He was a Prince of an easy Temper, which made him a Prey to his Queen and his Ministers, and expos'd him to the Revolts of his Sons and his Generals. He lov'd Pleasure more than Glory, but was in the main very impartial in doing Justice to his Subjects. He lov'd Arts and Sciences, which made him favour the Jesuits; and he had so good an Opinion of Christianity, that he would have professed it, had it not been for fear of a general Rebellion.

After his Death, the Empire was divided into 3 Factions. The Sultaneſs was for her Son-in-Law *Sceherier*, the Army and most of the Court were for Sultan *Bolaqui*; but *Asaph Cham* and *Mahobet* were for *Chorrom*. The Sultaneſs had not Credit enough to get her Son-in-Law proclaimed any where else but in the Seraglio. *Bolaqui* was proclaimed

in the Army, and seiz'd on the Queen and *Sceherien*, put her in Prison, and put out his Eyes. Having thus possessed himself of the Throne, he sent one of his chief Omrahs as Deputy to his Uncle *Chorrom*, to demand Tribute, and that he should own *Bolaqui* for his Sovereign, with Orders to threaten him if he did not; but by an Intrigue manag'd by *Mahobet* and *Asaph Cham*, this new Emperor was quickly dethron'd, as follows: When the Deputy arriv'd, *Chorrom* pretended to be a dying, and vomited Blood in his Presence, having taken Goat's Blood in his Mouth on purpose. The Omrah thinking it to be real, sent News of it to Court, and soon after they impos'd a Story upon him, that *Chorrom* was dead; upon which that Prince disappeared, the Court put on Mourning, and *Mahobet* appear'd inconsolable. The Omrah wrote to *Bolaqui*, that *Chorrom* was certainly dead, and (at the Request of the Courtiers) begged the new Emperor would allow his Corps to be buried in the Sepulchre of his Ancestors, which was very joyfully agreed to. A Convoy was prepared to attend the Corps with all the Magnificence due to a Prince of the Mogul Race. The empty Coffin was attended by above 1000 of the chief Officers of the Deceas'd, *Mahobet* being the Chief Mourner, and *Chorrom* in a Disguise among them. Squadrons of *Rageputtes* join'd them on the Road at certain Intervals, on Pretence of honouring the Funeral. *Asaph Cham*, who kept with *Bolaqui* all the while, perswaded him 'twould be for his Reputation to meet his Uncle's Corps, and attend it to the Grave, which he did in Mourning, with a small Retinue; but when he saw the great Number that attended the Corps, he suspected the Intrigue, and fled, lest his own Corps should have filled the empty Coffin. Upon this the Trumpets sounded, *Chorrom* was proclaimed, and the Funeral Solemnity converted to a Triumph. *Chorrom* enter'd the Citadel of *Agra* with the Acclamations of the People and Army, and took the Name of *Cha Jaham*, which signifies the King of the World. Thus he ascended the Throne by the Wisdom of *Mahobet*, who having put the Crown upon the Head of his new Master, retired to the Government allotted him, and finished his glorious Life in Peace. They knew not at first
what

what was become of *Bolaqui*, but at last heard he was fled to *Persia*. Sultan *Sceherier* with his two Sons were walled up in Prison, starved to Death, and their Apartment has never been open'd since.

IX. *Cha-Jaham* came thus to the Empire, when 'twas in a more flourishing State than at any Time since the Moguls ascended the Throne, and reign'd over all the Country from *Candahar* to the *Ganges*. *Persia* was govern'd by an effeminate Prince, the *Tartars* were exhausted by their immense Colonies, and the *Indians* beyond the *Ganges* as far as *China* were a People of no Courage; so that the only Enemies he had to fear were the *Europeans*, who had possess'd themselves of the best Harbours on the Coast of *Indostan*, and these were also weaken'd by the Disunion which happen'd by the Rivalship in Trade betwixt the *Portuguese*, *English* and *Dutch*. The first Attempt made by *Cha-Jaham* was against the *Portuguese*, whom he hated, and for whose Sakes he made a Vow to root out all that profess'd Christianity, because they deny'd him Assistance in his Rebellion against his Father. Besides, they join'd with Sultan *Perris* against him, and contributed chiefly to the Defeats he received from that Prince. He was also incens'd against the Christians in general by his Wife, who suck'd in those Principles from her Aunt *Nur-Jahan*, who bore them a mortal Grudge, because they had given a Place of Retreat to two of her Daughters that turn'd Christians. The Mogul first extorted a Sum of Money from the *Portuguese* Governor of *Ougli*, and then besieg'd and took it, made the Inhabitants Prisoners of War, and sent 500 of them, with several of the Clergy, to *Agra*, where many of them turn'd *Mahometans*, and others suffer'd Martyrdom. Several Families of their Descendants continue there still, and are *Mahometans* only in Name, according to our Author. Their Clergy did at last procure their Liberty by the Intercession of an *Armenian* and a *Venetian*, who had great Interest with the Emperor. After this, *Cha-Jahan* enlarg'd *Dehli*, and call'd it *Cha-Jahan-Abad*, i. e. the Town of *Cha-Jahan*, and sprinkled the new Foundations with the Blood of Criminals, whose Throats were order'd to be cut on purpose. He made Gardens there of incredible Magnificence,

the Plan of which was drawn by a *Venetian*. Then he brought a River to water them, by digging a Canal 30 Leagues long, and made Ponds for Fish of a prodigious Size, in whose Nostrils he order'd Gold Rings to be put, adorned with Rubies and Diamonds. In this Place he gave himself wholly up to his Pleasures, and spent his Time in Musick, Poesy, Dancing, and Comedy, and those who acted the Buffoon best pleas'd him most. Sometimes he diverted himself by making barbarous Gladiators fight with Daggers in his Presence, and by hunting of Tygers with Bulls bred up to that Exercise. His Huntsmen carried to the Forrest, Goats, Sheep and dead Horses, the Smell of which brought the Tygers all to one Place. Then they surrounded them with a Number of those Bulls, that had strong Sword-Blades with sharp Points fix'd between their Horns, with which they push'd the Tygers, so that 'twas scarce possible for them to escape, the Bulls being kept close together by armed Huntsmen; and the King, mounted on an Elephant, fired at the Tygers when thus incircled. Besides a great Multitude of Wives and Concubines that he kept in his Seraglio, he took the Wives of his chief Nobility, and was so prodigal to his Whores, that he made them Presents of inestimable Value, and mock'd their Husbands publickly, which they resented to his Cost, as we shall hear afterward. He built a sumptuous Gallery, and adorned the Walls of it with the richest Jewels, Looking-Glasses, and Vases made of Gold and Precious Stones, with wonderful Art. This was principally design'd for one of his Mistresses, a common Dancer of the meanest Extract. Notwithstanding this Extravagance, he was remarkable for doing Justice in particular Cases, and determining nice Controversies. Our Author gives us the following Instance: A Soldier having taken a Female Slave from a Scrivener who belong'd to the Court, the Matter was laid before the Emperor, and the Process appear'd very intricate, because the Slave being ill used by the Scrivener, disown'd him for her Master, and asserted the Soldier's Right. There being no other Evidence to decide it, the Mogul seem'd to put it off, and went to hear other Causes; and calling for Ink, as if it had been by Chance, order'd the Slave to prepare it, which

which she did with great Dexterity. Upon this, *Cha-Jahan* said to her in an angry Tone, *I see you belong to the Scrivener, for Soldiers have no Occasion for Slaves that can make Ink so well.* This was applauded by the Moguls as a Decision equal to that of *Solomon* betwixt the two Harlots. He was also inexorable against Subaltern Judges who took Bribes, and put them to Death without Mercy. He rid his Dominions of Highway-men and Robbers, by making the Officers of Justice answerable for whatever was plunder'd or stole. And thus he made the Governor of *Suratte* give full Satisfaction to the *Dutch* when their Warehouse there was plunder'd by Night.

But his giving himself up so much to his sensual Pleasures, made him contemptible at last to his own Subjects, as well as to Foreign Ambassadors, from whom he receiv'd several Affronts, and divers of his Raja's revolted. He endeavour'd to reduce them by Fraud and Breach of Articles, which sunk his Character.

When he grew in Years, his Prodigality was chang'd into Avarice; so that he oppressed his Omrahs, exacted vast Sums from them, and melted the Gold and Silver into great Ingots, which he laid up in several Apartments under his Palace, where he fed his Eyes with beholding them, on Pretence of going thither for the Shade during the hot Season; and to avoid Expence, he sent his Sons to remote Governments, where he allow'd them nothing for Subsistence but what they could get from the People, whom they govern'd in an absolute Manner, which laid the Foundation of a Civil War, and of his Loss of the Crown, as we shall hear anon. But it is necessary, for the better understanding that Part of his History, to give an Account of his Children and of their Characters as follows: He had only four Sons and three Daughters by all his Wives; for the Moguls have a Custom of using unnatural Means to make their Wives barren. His Children were, 1. *Begom Saeb* the eldest Child, and a Daughter; *Sultan Dara* his eldest Son, *Cha-Chuia* a Son; *Orangzeb* a Son, *Roxanara-Begom* a Daughter, *Moradbax* a Son, and *Merniza-Begom* a Daughter. It was they who occasion'd the Revolution which depriv'd him of the

Crown: Therefore we shall give their particular Characters.

1. *Begom-Saeb* was a very beautiful, cunning, and witty Princess. Her stedfast Adherence to her Father, and his Prodigality towards her, tho' niggardly to all others, gave Occasion to suspect them of unnatural Affection; but our Author says, this proceeded from the Malice of the Courtiers; for had there been any thing of a Criminal Amour betwixt them, he would never have allow'd her the Liberty he did; for tho' his Politicks would not suffer her to marry, he not only conniv'd at an Intrigue betwixt her and a Musician of the Court, which he knew well enough, but was very bountiful to that Musician; so that it was only her Complaisance and Wit which gave her the Ascendant over her Father. She always took Part with her eldest Brother *Dara*, because of the Hopes he gave her that he would marry her when he came to be Emperor.

2. *Dara* was a well shap'd Prince, of a good Size, handsome Features, and noble Inclinations. He had a vast Penetration, learned all the Sciences of *Europe*, and affected *Europeans* so much as it disobligh'd the *Mogul* Lords. His Study of Philosophy, and his Knowledge of all the Religions of the World, made him despise *Mahometism*; so that had he come to the Crown, 'tis probable he would have establish'd Christianity in the Empire. By his Liberality he procured the best Engineers and Gunners in *Europe*; but with these good Qualities, he had the following bad ones. He had so good an Opinion of himself, that to offer him Advice was to lose him; for he reckon'd it an Affront that any Man should be thought to know more than he. This made him despise his Ministers, and caus'd them to have no Confidence in him. And as he never discover'd his Mind to his Council, they never durst give him any Advice; yet he thought every body lov'd him, and thus he embrac'd Flattery instead of Truth. He had two Sons, viz *Sultan Solyman-Chacu*, and *Sultan Super-Chacu*.

3. *Cha-Chuia* was a Prince of Courage, but more cunning than generous. He kept Spies upon his Father and elder Brother, who corrupted their best Officers and Gunners,

ners, and he kept a secret Correspondence with the chief Raja's of the Empire in the *Persian* Court; to secure whose Interest, he declared himself of the Sect of *Aly*.

4. *Orangzeb*. Nature seem'd to take Pleasure in forming the Body and Mind of this Prince. He was of a good Stature, and had a mild Countenance. His Leanness gave him the Air of a Penitent, and he always affected pious Discourse, the chief Subject of his Conversation being *Mahomet's* Law, and he always carried the Alcoran under his Arm. He was frequent and publick in his Devotions, and every Day rehears'd a Form of praising God, with such a Shew of Seriousness, as procured him the Character of Pious. He enter'd himself among the Faquirs or Penitents, pretended that as soon as he could rid himself of Secular Cares, he would end his Days in Devotions at *Mahomet's* Tomb. The better to deceive the Mob, he always wore White in Publick, without being dawb'd all over with Jewels, as is customary with the *Mogul* Princes. He never drank any Wine, and nothing appear'd at his Table but Rice and Pulse. He was observed from an Infant to have his Head turn'd to Politicks and Dissimulation, and conceal'd his Ambition under a Mask of Religion. He entertain'd a Resolution, that when his Father came to die, he would either mount the Throne, or perish, and therefore directed all his Views either to obtain the Crown, or to secure himself by a Counterfeit Penitence. Some say, that he was guilty of unnatural Lust with the Faquirs that were his Confidants.

5. *Roxanara Begom* was not so beautiful as her eldest Sister, but more subtle and cunning, adher'd to *Orangzeb*, and was a Spy for him at Court.

6. *Moradbax* was a Prince of great Valour, but no Conduct. He delighted in Hunting and Manly Exercises, particularly in fighting Lions and Bears, despis'd all Politicks, rely'd chiefly on his own Strength and Valour, and was a zealous *Mahometan*.

7. *Merniza-Begom* was a Princess of tolerable Beauty, but little Sense, and spent her Time in Dressing, and such other Amusements, without meddling with the Factions at Court.

Cha-Jaham shut up his Daughters in the Seraglio, and disposed of his Sons as follows: *Dara* being his eldest, he kept him always at Court, and made him the Chief in the Administration. *Cha Chuia* was made Viceroy of Bengal, *Orangzeb* of *Deccan*, and *Moradbax* of *Guzuratt*; so that *Cha-Jaham* fell into the very Error of his Father, by trusting his Sons with so powerful Governments at such a Distance from Court. *Dara's* Authority grew to an excessive Height during the Absence of his Brothers; so that *Cha-Jaham* meddled with nothing but the Treasury, which his Avarice would not let him part with, and *Dara* had all but the Name of the Emperor, being allow'd such Honours and Privileges as were never granted by any of the Moguls to their Sons before that Time. This increas'd his natural Pride, so that he contemn'd the great Lords, and receiv'd them with disdainful Looks and Words. An Officer belonging to the great *Mahomet-Cham*, who had advanc'd *Cha-Jaham* to the Throne, having insulted one of his Soldiers, nothing else would serve *Dara* but to have that famous old General brought by Force to the Citadel of *Dehli*; tho' his Authority was still so great in the Army, that he was capable of giving *Dara* a great deal of Trouble. Therefore *Cha-Jaham* dissuaded his Son from pushing that Affair any further. He ill treated all his Father's Ministers and Generals, and insulted *Gasin*, the most powerful of the Raja's, who was formidable to the Mogul himself. He call'd that Raja a Musician, by Way of Contempt, which is looked upon as a Term of the greatest Reproach in the *Indies*. The Raja dissembled his Resentments at present, but reveng'd himself afterwards, as we shall hear in its Place. *Dara's* chief Favourites were a few *Europeans*, and particularly Jesuits, whose Friendship has generally been fatal to those who made use of it. His Pride was augmented by a knavish Astrologer, who took upon him to foretel that *Dara* should come to the Crown, and offer'd to submit to the Loss of his Head if he did not. *Dara* was accused of having been accessory to the Murder of several great Men, and he provok'd the Lords of the Court, by comparing them always to one of his Slaves who emptied

emptied his Close-Stools ; so that when any one talked in Commendation of a Minister or General, he immediately launch'd out in the Praise of his Slave *Aber-Can*. Among others, he affronted *Mirza-Mula*, who was sent General against the King of *Golconda* ; and this Man he depriv'd of his best *European* Gunners, which provok'd him so much, that he threaten'd to take them again from *Dara* in his Turn, and was as good as his Word.

While *Dara* made himself odious, *Orangzeb* pursued his Designs for the Crown. He administred Justice with great Exactness in his Government of *Decan*, erected Mosques, encourag'd the bigotted Faquirs, and pretended to despise the World in Imitation of them ; but knowing those Fellows to be crafty Hypocrites, and that they hoarded up considerable Sums by their continual begging, which they converted into Gold, and quilted in their Rags, he summon'd them together, on Pretence of giving them a general Alms, and of having the Honour to eat Rice and Salt with them. They met in a vast Field, where he treated them according to their usual Fare, presented each of them with a new Suit, and order'd them to leave him their old ones, which they were very unwilling to part with ; but they must obey, and *Orangzeb* commanded them to be piled up and burnt, which melted down an immense Sum of Gold that was quilted in their Rags, and this furnish'd him with Money to carry on his Design. He then applied himself to War, but still under a Pretext of Piety. An Occasion offer'd it self thus ; *Mirza-Mula*, who had been disoblig'd by Prince *Dara*, as above-mentioned, pretended to go over to the King of *Golconda*, against whom he was sent to make War. This *Mirza* was a *Persian* by Nation, and came to *India* in the Service of a Merchant. He list'd himself in the Mogul's Army, and by degrees was advanced to be a General. When he went over to the King of *Golconda*, he made him Superintendant of his Customs and Trade. This gave him an Opportunity of Trafficking for himself, by which he acquir'd vast Riches. To procure the Favour of his new Master, he purchas'd the greatest Rarities of *Europe* and other Countries, with which he presented him. By this Means

he procur'd also the Favour of the Courtiers, and at last fell into an Intrigue with the Queen Dowager, for which he was sent to be Governor of the Province of *Carnatte*. This Disgrace turned to his Advantage ; for the Diamond Mine being in that Government, and he being well acquainted with Trade, made a vast Profit of them, taking the best to himself, and settled a Correspondence for that Traffick with the *Portuguese* Viceroy of *Goa*, of whose Protection he secur'd himself in case of a Disaster. Being thus supported, he pillag'd the Idol Temples of the Jewels, and plunder'd the Subjects of all their Gold and Precious Stones. This increas'd his Riches, as it did the Hatred of the Court and Country ; so that the King design'd to have recall'd him, and seize his Estate ; but his Friend the Queen Dowager gave him Notice of it, and laid a Plot to dethrone her Son for the Sake of her Gallant. Upon this he writ to *Orangzeb*, that he went over to the King of *Golconda* on purpose to bring that Country under Subjection to the Mogul, which he could now easily do, since he had form'd a Correspondence in the Seraglio, and that his Son was General of the Army. *Orangzeb* accepted the Proposal with great Joy, as what would pave his own Way to the Throne of the Empire. He immediately undertook a Journey to *Baganagar*, the Capital of *Golconda*, as Ambassador from *Chaham*, and carried a Retinue with him of his best Officers, with a Design to seize the King. That Prince had no Notice of it till *Orangzeb* arrived in his Capital, under the Disguise of an Ambassador. Upon which he retired to the impregnable Fortress of *Golconda*, since he was not able to make Head against so strong a Conspiracy. *Orangzeb* being join'd by *Mirza Mula* and his Son, plunder'd the City, with the King's Treasures and Jewels, and besieg'd himself in the Fortress of *Golconda*, of which he sent Notice to his Father *Chaham*. The poor King being reduced to this Strait, offer'd to surrender, on Condition of having his Life, and being made a Raja in the Mogul's Court ; but while he was treating, *Chaham*, who began to mistrust *Orangzeb*, and was offended that he undertook this Expedition without his Knowledge, order'd him to quit the Siege, and return to

Decan; for *Dara* and his eldest Sister had truly inform'd *Cha-Jaham*, that *Orangzeb* aim'd at his Crown. He was forced to obey his Father; but to cover his Disgrace from the Army, he made his Soldiers believe that he had a Scruple of Conscience, thought it unlawful to oppress a *Mahometan* Prince, and therefore would raise the Siege. In the mean time he made a Treaty with the King of *Golconda*, and restor'd him to his Dominions on the following Conditions: 1. That he should pay the Mogul the Charge of the War. 2. That he should give his eldest Daughter to *Mahamud*, *Orangzeb's* eldest Son, with the Revenues of the Province of *Ranguir* for her Dowry. 3. That *Mahamud* should succeed to the Kingdom in Right of his Wife. 4. That *Cha-Jaham's* Mark should be stamped on one Side of the Coin of *Golconda*. 5. That *Mirza-Mula*, with his Family and Effects, should go where he pleas'd, for his Design was to retain that able General in his own Service. This Treaty was ratified by the Mogul, who (at *Orangzeb's* Request) gave *Mirza-Mula* the Command of the Army that was to be employed in conquering *Visapour*, on Condition that *Mirza-Mula* should send his Wife and Children to the Mogul Court as Pledges of his Fidelity. *Orangzeb* having thus secur'd himself of *Mirza-Mula*, he open'd his Design to him of seizing his Father's Throne, against whom he inveigh'd for countenancing Prince *Dara*, to the Prejudice of his other Sons. While *Mula* subdued *Visapour*, *Orangzeb* continu'd his hypocritical Devotions in the Capital of *Decan*; and all Things seem'd to be in Peace in the Mogul's Empire, when *Cha-Jaham*, by his Incontinence, was seiz'd with a Retention of Urine, which was speedily nois'd thro' his Dominions by *Dara's* Enemies, who gave out every where that the Emperor was dead. This gave his three other Sons a Handle to take Arms; and tho' they had News of their Father's Recovery, they pretended not to believe it, and charg'd *Dara* with cutting him off. *Cha Chuia* marched with a great Army towards *Dehli*; upon which *Cha-Jaham* wrote to him with his own Hand to return to his Government of *Bengal*, and he would pardon what was past. But having Advice from other Courtiers, who were *Dara's* Enemies, that his

Father's Distemper was mortal, he took no Notice of *Cha-Jaham's* Letters, but march'd on, which oblig'd *Cha-Jaham* to retire to *Agra*, sick as he was; and *Solyman-Chacu*, Prince *Dara's* eldest Son, with an experienc'd General, was sent against *Cha-Chuia*; to whom he first offer'd Pardon, upon laying down his Arms, and returning to *Bengal*. This he agreed to, on Condition that they would retire first, which they consented to, and he treacherously attacked their Rear. But having suspected his Artifice, they were prepared to give him a warm Reception, and totally defeated him; yet the General, who was no Friend to Prince *Dara*, suffer'd him to escape with the Ruins of his Army to *Bengal*, but took his Artillery and Elephants.

Orangzeb was not so rash as his Brother *Chuia*, but laid down his Measures with better Judgment. He wrote a dissembling Letter to his Brother *Moradbax*, wherein he inveigh'd against their elder Brother *Dara* as an impious Wretch, who was of the Religion of *Europe*; and against their second Brother *Cha Chuia* as a Heretick, of the Sect of *Aly*, who entertain'd a Correspondence with the *Persians*. Therefore he saluted him as his Lord and Master, who deserv'd the Crown, because he was a true *Musselman*, and desired they might join their Troops together for the Defence of their Religion, saying, That for his own Part, he aim'd at no other Reward for what Service he could do, but that after the Victory he might be allow'd to spend the remainder of his Days near *Mahomet's* Tomb in Pennance and Prayers.

Cha-Abas, *Moradbax's* faithful Eunuch, advis'd his Master to beware of engaging too far with *Orangzeb*; but his Letter did so bewitch him by flattering his Ambition, that he fell in with it, not being aware that *Orangzeb's* Troops were much more numerous than his; for he craftily got *Mirza-Mula* to quit him his Army, without endangering his own Reputation, or the Lives of his Wife and Children, who were Hostages at the Mogul's Court, by the following Trick: *Orangzeb* sent his Son *Mahamud* to *Mula's* Army, where by Concert he excited them to revolt from their General, and sent him Prisoner to the Citadel of *Orangabad*, the Capital of *Decan*, which *Orangzeb*

zeb had called by his own Name. By this Means *Mula* sav'd his Hostages, and procur'd the Esteem and Pity of the Court at the very Time he betray'd them. After this, the two Brothers join'd their Armies; *Orangzeb* gave *Moradbax* all the Honour that was due to his Sovereign, and they march'd together towards *Dekli*. This so much alarm'd the Court, that *Cha-Jaham* writ to both of 'em to lay down their Arms, and return to their Governments. *Moradbax* was inclinable to obey; but *Orangzeb* made him believe that it was only an Artifice of *Dara's*, who had murder'd their Father, and now design'd to entrap them, and so they marched on. *Cha-Jaham* upon this News design'd to march against them in Person, not doubting that his Sons would return to their Obedience when they saw him alive; but the Traitors in his Council dissuaded him from it, as too dangerous an Expedient; and *Dara*, unwilling to leave his Father, trusted the Conduct of the Army to two Generals, one of whom was his secret Enemy, and betray'd the Army when he came to fight, so that *Orangzeb* obtain'd a compleat Victory; the News of which made *Cha-Jaham* fall into a Swoon, and *Dara* behav'd himself like a mad Man, curs'd the Treachery of the General and that of *Mirza Mula*; and press'd to have his Hostages executed, which *Cha-Jaham* wou'd not agree to. Upon the Approach of *Orangzeb* and his Brother *Moradbax*, great Numbers declared for them; and some of their Friends, who still kept at Court, advis'd *Cha-Jaham* to quit the Government to his Son *Dara*, who being hateful to the People on the Accounts above mention'd, they knew it would hasten a general Revolt. *Dara* march'd against the Rebels with a great Army, but of undisciplin'd Troops, while his Son *Chacu*, with the veterane Soldiers, was (by the Treachery of a General who commanded under him) advis'd to pursue his Uncle *Chuia* to *Bengal*; so that he could not join his Father in time. *Orangzeb* advanced, and a Battel ensued, wherein *Dara*, tho' he fought gallantly, was betray'd and defeated, as Victory was just about to declare for him. He retired in good Order, and left his Brothers Masters of the Field; and *Orangzeb* ascribing the Victory to *Moradbax*, continu'd to honour him as Empe-

ror. He likewise corrupted the Generals of Prince *Chacu's* Army, one of whom was the Raja that his Father *Dara* had call'd a Musician by Way of Reproach, and now he took this Opportunity to revenge it; so that *Chacu* with much ado escap'd to the Mountains. *Dara* being alarm'd to appear before his Father after the Loss of the Battle, wrote to him and his eldest Sister in such moving Terms, as drew Tears from their Eyes. *Cha-Jaham* continued to encourage him, and his Love to him overcoming his Avarice, he sent him great Sums to raise new Troops, and advis'd him to go to *Dekli*, where he would find Elephants and Horses enough for his Equipage: But the Governor of the Citadel being corrupted by *Orangzeb*, denied him Entrance. This oblig'd him to go to *Lahor* to recruit his Army. In the mean time *Orangzeb* sent one of his trustiest Eunuchs to his Father, with great Protestations of Respect and Obedience, and said, That he and *Moradbax* had only taken Arms because of the Tyranny of their Brother *Dara*, and to revenge the Insults he had put upon their Emperor and Father: Therefore he ought to bestow his Favour upon those two Sons, and not upon one who was so justly and universally hated, and whom Heaven had punished for his Pride and Ambition. *Cha-Jaham* answer'd as became his Dignity, but with such Precaution as was fit for a Prince in his Circumstances, That his Sons might be sure of his Paternal Affection, and that he would pardon what was past, provided they laid down their Arms, and came to beg it. In the mean time *Cha-Jaham*, who knew *Orangzeb* too well, retired to the Citadel of *Agra*, where he endeavour'd to persuade his two Sons to come to him without a Guard; but *Orangzeb* was too cunning to be caught in that Snare. He pretended he would obey his Father, and in the mean while corrupted those Officers who had continued faithful to him; and advancing with his Army within two Miles of *Agra*, he feign'd himself sick, while his Troops advanced to the Citadel under the Command of his Son *Mahamud*, who being admitted to see his Grandfather, possessed himself of the Citadel, by corrupting Part of the Guards, and murdering the rest. He came up to *Cha-Jaham*, told him his

Age made him unfit to reign, that he must retire with his Wives to his delicious Gardens, and yield the Throne, which he had dishonour'd, to his Sons, who better deserv'd it. Thus *Cha-Jaham* became his own Grandson's Prisoner, and was confin'd to a Pleasure-House in his Gardens, where he contriv'd a Plot, which had well nigh defeated the Hopes of *Orangzeb*, in the following Manner: He desir'd a second Visit from his Grandson *Mahamud*, and when he came threw himself at his Feet, and spoke to him thus; *Since I am so unfortunate as to be dethron'd by my rebellious Children, you have Courage enough, my Child, to deprive those Criminal Princes of the Crown; I resign it to you, for you seem most worthy to wear it. The Town of Agra is your own, your Troops have made you Master of it: Lay hold then of this favourable Opportunity to revenge me, and to deliver yourself from the Slavery of an ungrateful Father, who will never spare his Son, since he has dethron'd his Father. Mahamud* was surpris'd with the Offer, and ballanced for some time betwixt his Ambition and the Sense of his Danger. The Proposal was tempting; but he consider'd, that the Army was entirely devoted to his Father, and that they would abandon him. Therefore he rejected the Offer, and forc'd his Grandfather to give him the Keys of his own Apartments and of the Treasury.

In the mean time the People began to be touch'd with Compassion for *Cha-Jaham*, to murmur against the Conduct of his two unnatural Sons, and particularly of *Orangzeb*, whose Practices they saw were so contrary to his pretended Piety.

To prevent the Effects of this, *Orangzeb* counterfeited a Letter from *Cha-Jaham* to his Son *Dara*, ordering him to make hast with his Troops by such a Day, when his two rebellious Sons were to make him a Visit to receive his Pardon, and the Presents he had promis'd them, and then he might have an Opportunity to surprize and cut them off in his Presence, by the Help of an Ambush which he had laid for them. *Orangzeb* took Care to have this Letter deliver'd him in a Circle of his Officers, as if it had been intercepted, and read it aloud. The Fame of this being nois'd abroad, quite turn'd the Hearts of the People, who curs'd *Cha-Jaham* as much for his Cruelty

towards his Sons, as they had formerly curs'd them for their unnatural Rebellion.

Thus those two Princes usurp'd the Government, dispos'd of all the publick Posts to those that adher'd to them, rewarded them liberally, and sent the two Armies in Pursuit of *Dara*. When Things were settled in the Capital, they resolved to follow the Army; but *Moradbax*'s Friends were for his staying at *Agra*, to suppress any Rebellion that might happen, and not to endanger himself by following *Orangzeb* in his new Expedition. The credulous Prince, instead of following this good Advice, trusted to his Brother's deceitful Promises, and would follow him to share the Glory of reducing *Dara* entirely. Thus they marched together, but kept their Camps a little separate. *Orangzeb* was very assiduous in paying his Respects to *Moradbax*, and came every Day to his Tent, deluding him with false Promises, and kept his own Men in good Discipline, while those of *Moradbax* gave themselves up to Jollity and Drunkenness, and nothing but Mirth, Comedies and Dancing, was seen in his Quarters: Whereas in *Orangzeb*'s all was regular, and publick Devotions as duly observ'd as in Cities, which charm'd the Vulgar, and gave the chief Men who were in the Plot a Handle to tell their Soldiers, how happy they would be under the Conduct of so pious a Prince. Things being thus prepar'd, the 15th of June 1656 was appointed for the Coronation of *Moradbax* in the Camp with great Magnificence. The Evening before *Orangzeb* feign'd himself sick, and invited *Moradbax* to come to his Tent, and consult with Astrologers whether the Day appointed for the Coronation would be prosperous. *Cha-Abas*, the faithful Eunuch, dissuaded *Moradbax* from going, but in vain; so that, hurried on by his Fate, he would go to his Brother's Camp, tho' one of his own Generals, when he had pass'd a River betwixt the two Camps, took hold of his Horse's Reins, stopp'd him a little, and told him of his Danger: But nothing would do, he rebuk'd the General for his Boldness, and went on with a small Retinue to *Orangzeb*'s Tent. When he enter'd it, the Officer who receiv'd him told him his Arrival was happy, and he wish'd his

his Departure might be the like. He had scarce spoke the Word, when *Orangzeb* and his principal Officers came and embraced *Moradbax*, gave him the upper Hand, and perceiving him in a Sweat by the Heat of the Season, he himself wip'd his Face, called him his Lord and Sovereign, and gave him a splendid Entertainment, where, contrary to Custom, *Orangzeb* had Plenty of Wine, but drank none himself; whereas *Moradbax* drank to Excess, and fell asleep. His faithful Eunuch had him carried into another Tent, that he might sleep in Quiet, and watch'd him carefully, being apprehensive of what would follow; but at last he likewise fell asleep. He had scarce shut his Eyes, when *Orangzeb* came in: Upon which the Eunuch awoke, and cry'd out aloud; but his Fright was soon over when he saw *Orangzeb* was attended only by *Asam* his Grandson, a Child of 6 Years old. Then *Orangzeb* making as if he would jest with his Brother, promis'd his Grandson a Jewel if he would take his Uncle's Scymiter and Dagger from him without awaking him. The Child did it with great Dexterity, and carried them to a neighbouring Tent; upon which 6 of *Orangzeb*'s Guards came in with Chains to bind *Moradbax* and his Eunuch. The unfortunate Prince awak'd with the Noise, put his Hand to his Side to draw his Scymiter, and finding it gone, cry'd out aloud. His Brother order'd his Mouth to be stop'd, and covering his Treachery with Hypocrisy, cry'd out with his Hands lifted up to Heaven, That *Mahomet's* Law ought to be reveng'd for the Contempt put upon it by that intemperate Prince, who had made himself drunk, and was unworthy of the Throne because of his Impiety. *Moradbax* upbraided his Brother with his Perjury and Fraud, and ask'd him, if this was according to the Oaths which he had sworn to him on the Alcoran; but the Traitor, without Remorse, sent him and his Eunuch immediately off to separate Prisons, and with so much Secrecy in Litters prepar'd on purpose, that neither Army knew any thing of it. The Musick was continued in *Orangzeb*'s Tent, as if he had still been entertaining his Brother, and both Armies met in a large Field appointed for the Coronation next Day betimes, but without Arms, as it had been

agreed on before-hand, to prevent Quarrels. This was punctually obey'd by *Moradbax*'s Troops; but *Orangzeb* appointed a great many of his Squadrons to come in Arms and encompass the Field. When the Hour for the Solemnity approached, every one looked to see *Moradbax* ascend the Throne; instead of which *Orangzeb* mounted it, and the Officers of his Troops, as it had been pre-concerted, cry'd out aloud, *Long live the Emperor Orangzeb*, which was immediately followed by both Armies; for the greatest Part of *Moradbax*'s Officers had been corrupted, and the rest were in no Condition to withstand it.

X. *Orangzeb* having thus usurped the Throne, pursued *Dara* to *Labor*; and the better to obtain his Ends against that Prince, who had by this time assembled a numerous Army, he corrupted some of his chief Officers, and made those suspected whom he could not bribe, and particularly *Daut-Cham*, a *Persian* General, to whom he wrote counterfeit Letters, as if he had held a Correspondence with him, which being intercepted by *Dara*, had its Effect; so that *Dara* being abandoned, he fled to *Guzuratte*. In the mean time *Cha-Chuia*, who had been worsted by *Dara*'s Son, resumed new Courage upon the Misfortune of that Prince, and rais'd an Army on Pretence of delivering *Cha-Jaham*. A bloody Battle ensu'd betwixt him and *Orangzeb*, who fought Hand to Hand. The latter was like to be worsted, and Part of his Troops were routed; but by the Treachery of *Chuia*'s Officers *Orangzeb* obtained the Victory. *Chuia* fled to an impregnable Post, and had Recourse to Artifice as well as *Orangzeb*; and taking the Opportunity of his Severity to his Son *Mahamud*, prevailed with him to join him against his own Father. He was followed by many others, which would have been fatal to *Orangzeb*, had not *Mirza-Mula* found Means to raise Jealousies betwixt *Mahamud* and *Chuia*, which obliged him to return to his Father, who, instead of receiving him kindly, sent him Prisoner to the same Citadel where *Moradbax* was detain'd. Upon these Successes, *Orangzeb* struck a Medal with this Inscription; *I Orangzeb, Conqueror of the World, have coin'd this Money as bright as the Sun*. After this, Prince *Dara* assembled a new Army at *Guzuratte*,

zuratte, but was again betrayed by Orangzeb's Intrigues, defeated and taken. His cruel Brother, that he might cut him off with a Shadow of Justice, assembled a Council of War to condemn him formally, by which he propos'd likewise to discover such Officers as bore him any secret Affection, for he knew that many of them began to disrelish his own tyrannical Conduct, and he resolved to have cut off all those who should vote for making *Dara* perpetual Prisoner, instead of putting him to Death, which was the Alternative propos'd to the Council; but all of them except one, who was *Dara's* particular Enemy, voted his Death; and instead of punishing that Officer, *Orangzeb* cunningly expressed so much Satisfaction in his Conduct, that from thenceforth he told him he would reckon him one of his principal Friends. *Dara*, when he found his Death was unavoidable, prepar'd for it, discovered that he was a Christian in Heart, and comforted himself by saying, *That Mahomet had destroyed him, but Christ would save him.* *Orangzeb*, a little before his Death, sent Officers to ask him, What he would have done with him had he been his Prisoner? To which he boldly reply'd, That he would have put him to Death as a Rebel, according to his Merit. Upon this he order'd him to be executed, but could not find a Villain barbarous enough to undertake it, till a Slave of *Chaham*, who had served in the Quality of a Scribe, willingly offer'd himself, and cut off his Head, as he expressed his Hopes that Christ would save him, the 22d of October 1657, when he fell, lamented by the People, and even by those who had basely betray'd him. His Princess had poisoned her self a little before, because she would not survive her Husband, and be expos'd to *Orangzeb's* Lust, which she dreaded, because she was a beautiful Woman. The brutish Conqueror order'd *Dara's* Head to be brought to him, which he beheld with Pleasure, and open'd its Eyes with his own Hand, that he might be satisfied it was the Head of *Dara*, by a Speck he had in one Eye; so fearful was he that they had cut off another in his stead. He afterwards expressed himself in this insolent Manner; Lo, says he, *the Head of that silly Wretch, who would have robbed me of the Crown, that it was not fit to*

wear. He next embalmed it, and sent it in a Box to his Captive Father, who was then Prisoner in the Citadel of *Agra*; and being at Table when he receiv'd it, under the Notion of a Present, (for he did not know what it was) said, *It is some Comfort however, that my rebellious Son has not quite forgot me.* But when he saw the Box open'd, he fell into a Swoon, and his beloved Sister *Begom-Saeb* burst out in Tears and Cries; whereas his barbarous Sister *Roxanara-Begom* had prompted *Orangzeb* to this unnatural Fratricide; so that there was never a more melancholy Scene than was then to be seen in the Citadel of *Agra*. *Orangzeb* had nothing now to do for assuring himself on the Throne but to disarm his Brother *Chuin*, and to get Sultan *Chacu*, *Dara's* eldest Son, into his Power, both which he effected by Fraud and Force. *Chuin* was murder'd in the Kingdom of *Arracan*, where the Prince had promised him Protection; and Sultan *Chacu*, who had fled to the King of *Sirina-gar*, was betray'd by the Son of that Prince to *Orangzeb*, who cut him off, as he did his Brother *Moradbax*; but with his usual Shadow of Hypocrisy, he pretended to consult the Astrologers, whom he had prepared before-hand, to tell him that his Reign could not be safe if he did not Justice on the Criminals, so that he order'd him to be poisoned by a Snake. *Orangzeb* having thus secur'd himself of the Throne, assembled the Historians of the Palace, and order'd them to write the History of his Accession to the Crown, that it might serve for an Example to his Successors. The chief of the Historians took the Liberty to ask what Turn they could give to the Imprisonment of his Father, and the Murder of his three Brothers: To which he answered, *Tell Posterity, that my Conduct was warranted by Reasons of State, and to support the Religion of my Country, which was in Danger. The Weakness of my Father, and the Enmity of my Brothers to Mahomet's Religion, wipe off the Scandal of all that I have done. The Glory of my Reign comes from the Protection of the Eternal. 'Tis he who has led by the Hand a poor Faquir to the Throne, to teach future Ages that he humbles the Proud, and advances the Lowly.* Our Author concludes, that it is from the Chronicles wrote by those Historians that he principally collected this History.

History. *Thevenot* says, his Father *Cha-Jaham* died after 5 or 6 Years Imprisonment in 1666. Others say, he was reconcil'd to him before his Death, and sent him frequent Advices how to manage the Government, which *Orangzeb* sometimes approved, and at other times rejected with Contempt; and on the other Hand *Cha-Jaham* still retained something of his ancient Haughtiness, and refus'd to consent to a Marriage which *Orangzeb* propos'd betwixt *Dara's* Daughter and his own 3d Son *Eckbar*, in order to secure the Title to his Posterity, and the young Princess herself reject'd the Proposal with Contempt, saying, she had rather die a Hundred Deaths than marry the Son of one who had murder'd her Father.

Orangzeb being thus settled, Ambassadors were sent him not only from the neighbouring Princes, but from *Ethiopia*, with great Presents, and the *Dutch* sent the Chief of their Factory in *Suratte*, who was kindly received, and soon dispatched. Our Travellers bring his History no lower than his Father's Death, but tell us some other Particulars that happen'd before it; the chief of which are, 1. That the Match he desir'd betwixt his Son and *Dara's* Daughter was consented to by *Cha-Jaham*, who deliver'd her to him, and before he died gave him his Pardon and Blessing. 2. That *Orangzeb* continued his eldest Son in Prison, and also confined his second, after he had made him fight a Lion, which he had the good Fortune to vanquish; but they don't tell us the Cause. 3. That he advanced those who had chiefly contributed to his mounting the Throne, but was very ungrateful to *Emir Jemla*, who had defeated his Brother *Chuia*, and conquer'd *Bengal* for him; so that he forced this Emir to fly the Country, but at last was reconcil'd to him, advanc'd him and his Son, and employ'd him to conquer *Acham*, which he effected with great Valour, but died in his Return; upon which *Orangzeb* told the Emir's Son, *You have lost your Father, and I my greatest and most dangerous Friend*. 4. He subdued a Nest of *Portuguese* and other Christian Pirates, who made their Retreat in the Kingdom of *Rakan* or *Moy*, infested the Coast, and oblig'd him to be at the Charge of maintaining great Force against them

both by Sea and Land. He desir'd the Help of some *Dutch* Men of War against them, which was readily granted; but he had flatter'd them to a Submission before they came, and then treated them like Rogues as they deserv'd. The Curious may find many other Particulars relating to the History of the Moguls in *Bernier*, *Tavernier*, *Thevenot*, and others; but we chose rather to follow *Catrou*, because he is the latest Writer on that Subject, and seems to have the best Authority for the Reasons we have mention'd before.

Tavernier says, *Orangzeb* impos'd a sort of Penance upon himself to expiate his Crimes; that he eat nothing but Pulse and Sweetmeats, which made him very lean, and during the Appearance of a Comet in 1665, he eat nothing but Bread of Millet, drank only Water, and us'd no other Bed but a Tyger's Skin spread on the Ground; which Mortification had almost cost him his Life. He drank his Water out of a large Cup of Rock-Chrystal, with a Cover and Foot of Gold set with Diamonds, &c. and when he eat, 'twas only in Presence of his Wives and Eunuchs, and rarely with his other Subjects. He went to the Mosque in a sort of Sedan, one of his Sons following on Horseback, and the Omrahs on Foot, with 8 Elephants before him carrying his Standards.

The Author of the New Account of *India* and *Persia*, in Eight Letters, printed at London in . . . , gives us the following Passages concerning *Orangzeb*.

He made a great many Omrahs or Nobles of the Moguls and *Persians* that he thought he might trust, but plac'd them in remote Governments, and made them leave their Wives and Children at Court as Pledges for their Fidelity. He assum'd many airy Titles, and among others stamp'd this on his Coin, *That he was King of the World wherever the Sun shin'd*. He plunder'd his Nobles of their Riches at Pleasure; and upon the Death of *Raja Jessinsins*, who chiefly advanc'd him to the Throne, sent to his Widow for his Treasures, and the Surrender of his Territories. To which she answer'd, *That she had no Money, but good Store of Swords*. The Gentiles enter'd into a Con-

federacy with her, and the Governor of *Cambaya* attempted the Advancement of one of the Sultans, and the Dethronement of *Orangzeb*, who was thereupon obliged to solicit the Assistance of the Chan of *Bram-pour*. This brought on a War, wherein *Orangzeb* had the Advantage, which embolden'd him to lay heavy Taxes on the Pagans, and to compel such as were not able to pay them to turn *Mahometans*. His Design of subduing *Cambaya* was delayed by a great Inundation, occasion'd by prodigious Rains in that Province; so as in some Places the Tops of the Trees were overflowed. When that was over, *Orangzeb* marched with a great Army against the Pagans, and his eldest Son led another to *Bram-pour* against the Raja *Seva-Gi*, who ravag'd that Country. This Year there happen'd a Shower of Blood, which lasted 12 Hours, and there was a great Inundation on the Coast of *Mechlapatau*, which destroy'd 16000 People. Next Year the Mogul laid a double Tax on the Pagans, and broke down their Temples and Images, so that they were forced to perform their Worship in Dens and Caves.

In the mean time *Seva-Gi* happen'd to die; and there being a Dispute about his Succession, it turn'd to the Advantage of *Orangzeb*. The Mogul being jealous of his own eldest Son, sent him to a remote Government by Way of Confinement, and he commanded his two other Sons, *Affum* and *Massum*, to resign their Governments of *Bengal* and *Aurangabad*, which they refused. *Orangzeb* made two fruitless Expeditions this Year against the Infidels, his Troops having suffer'd much by Famine. His youngest Son *Eckbar* seem'd to be his chief Favourite, and design'd for the Succession; but *Orangzeb* forbore declaring him till he should see the Success of his War against the Gentiles. The Widow of the Raja *Jessinsins* was deceiv'd by her Generals, whom she trusted, and they bought and sold her with the Money which she had sent to the Mogul himself, in order to purchase Peace. At the same time some of *Orangzeb's* Council corresponded with his Son *Massum*, and a general Revolt was like to happen by the Mogul's persecuting the Heathens. The Chief of his Privy-Counsellors who corresponded with Sultan *Massum*, and advis'd

him to rebel, was thrown headlong from a Rock; yet *Orangzeb* went on to persecute the Heathens, and to force them to turn *Mahometans*, till he was diverted from it by the following Speech of his Pagan Secretary, whom he commanded to quit his Post, or turn *Mahometan*.

Sir, Why will you attempt more than ever was intended by the great Creator? You see there are hardly two Men who have exactly the same Features, and that there is a great Variety of Creatures in the World. God has made Elephants, Tygers, Horses, Camels, Sheep and Oxen, of different Figures, and Man of a more noble Comparison than the rest: Whereas had the wise Disposer of all Things thought convenient, he would have contented himself with making one Form: But each of these in their several Species glorify their Maker. In like Manner God is pleas'd to permit Variety of Religions, by which Men worship and adore him; nor could they continue to do so if it were not his Pleasure. Therefore, till he think fit to make all Men of one Mind, it is in vain for any one to attempt it.

This rational Discourse kept the Secretary in his Office, but did not hinder *Orangzeb* from spoiling the Idol Temples, especially in the Dominions of Raja *Jessinsins*, whose Capital *Chitor* was betray'd to him. Thus the Princess *Rana*, for whom he had a great Affection, because of her Beauty, and the Enjoyment of whom was the chief Design of his War, tho' he cover'd it with the hypocritical Pretext of advancing Religion, was betray'd by those she had trusted. And in Hopes of bringing her to his Terms, he withdrew his Troops from her Dominions, and made kind Proposals to her by his Plenipotentiaries. Our Author does not acquaint us with the Success, nor have we any thing else remarkable from him in this Reign, but an Account of a wonderful Phænomenon in the Heavens, which lasted from the 20th of November to the Middle of January 1682, when he set out for England. He says, it rose 11 Deg. from the Earth S. E. in *Capricorn*, near the Head of *Sagittarius*, and darted its Rays upward like a flaming Torch: That at first it did not seem above two Ells long; but as it inclin'd to the Horizon, grew every Day longer and slenderer. At first it rose at three in the Morning, and then later and later, till the Sun outshone it. At last, having

ving compassed the Horizon, it rose and set at Nights. He saw it at W. N. W. on the 12th of *December*, about 7 in the Evening. When it appeared first, it seemed no bigger than a Man's Hand; but as it mounted towards the highest Part of the Hemisphere, spread its Light above 9 Deg. as big as a Rainbow, or rather like a Pillar of Fire; but he could not discern its Basis till the 18th, when it ascended above the Horizon, and passing the Middle of the Heavens, it lost its Brightness, but grew more fiery the higher it rose. The 16th of *January* 1682, it attain'd its Zenith, and vanish'd at Midnight. At the same Time some gave out they saw two Moons; and several *Englishmen* being a Hunting after Sun-set, saw an extraordinary Star as big as the Sun.

The following Account of Orangzeb is from the Paris Gazette, and other Papers about that Prince that were publish'd in France, &c. after his Death.

HE usually liv'd Abroad in the Middle of his Camp, lest his own Sons should serve him as he served his Father. He had four Sons, whose Names were, *Chah-Alem*, *Akbar*, *Azemdara*, and *Cambax*. *Akbar* having rebelled unsuccessfully, fled to *Persia*, where he died. *Chah Alem* was Governor of a Province of *Indostan*, and the other two were with their Father in *Decan*, near the Fortrefs of *Amadanagar*. *Orangzeb* fell sick on the 7th of *February* 1708; upon which *Azemdara* quarrell'd with his Brother *Cambax*, and 20 Men fell in the Scuffle. *Orangzeb* commanded his chief Vizier to appease the Tumult, and to order *Azemdara* to go and take Possession of the Kingdom of *Decan*, of *Aurengabad*, *Bram-pour*, *Baddar*, and the rest of the Country as far as the River *Naarbada*; and that *Cambax* should take Possession of the Kingdom of *Visapour*, *Golconda*, and the Country of *Carnate*, which both obey'd. *Cambax* having possessed himself of the City and Fortrefs of *Visapour*, assembled Troops to seize all the Places of the Kingdom, in which he was favoured by the neighbouring Princes,

and by the Subjects of *Visapour*, who were incensed against *Orangzeb* for deposing their King, whose Daughter he had married. *Cambax* assembled 30000 Horse, writ fawning Letters to the several Governors, and particularly to him of *Carnate*, who did not think fit to declare openly for him, but sent him 250000 Crowns. In the mean time *Azemdara*, knowing his Father's languishing Condition, marched slowly, by the Advice of the Vizier, who was his Friend, and returned to the Palace upon Notice of his Father's Death, which happen'd the 4th of *March* 1708, being near 100 Years old. A little before his Death, some of his Courtiers desired him to appoint his eldest Son *Chah-Alem* to be his Successor. He answer'd; That he had named him to be King of *Indostan*, but that 'twas God alone who must confirm his Reign. Some Moments before his Exit a violent Tempest arose, which blew down all the Tents in the Army, tore up Trees by the Roots, ruin'd several Villages, stifled Multitudes of Men and Beasts by the Sand which it rais'd, and made the Day as dark as Night. *Azemdara* arriv'd next Day, went to the Camp, attended by the Vizier and Generals, and in a few Days after was proclaimed King by the Name of *Mahomet Afem-Chah*. He gave new Names to his two Sons, and order'd his Father's Corps to be carried to *Aurengabad* on Men's Shoulders, attended by 4000 Horse, where he was interred in a stately Sepulchre, which he had erected himself. *Azemdara* after this sent Troops to the Frontiers of *Indostan*, stopp'd all Couriers, sent Presents to the Governors of Provinces, the Generals, Soldiers, &c. and among others to the Governor of *Carnate*, to whom he gave also the Government of *Visapour*, and an Addition of 500 Crowns per Day. He wrote to the Princes of *Indostan*, asserting his Title, told them he demanded none of their Assistance, but would revenge himself on such as oppos'd him. This haughty Carriage disobliged his Subjects, and particularly one of his Generals, Son-in-Law to Prince *Cambax*; so that he revolted with his Troops, and defeated those which *Azemdara* sent to reduce him. His eldest Brother *Chah-Alem*, who was a Prince of great Prudence and Moderation, behav'd himself quite otherwise; so that tho his Brother *Azemdara*

gave out that *Alem's* Age had impair'd his Understanding, several Princes of the *Rajepouts* sent to offer him their Assistance, without insisting on any Reward; upon which he remitted their Tribute, and made them great Presents. He likewise prevail'd by his Civil Letters on many of the Generals, who did not think fit to declare for him, to continue neuter. He wrote likewise to *Azemdara*, reprov'd him for his Conduct, and told him, That both of them being old, they ought to study Peace, and he promis'd to let him enjoy what his Father had given him. At the same Time *Alem* having assembled a great Body of Troops, marched to *Dekli*, where he was received, and ascended the magnificent Throne which his Grandfather *Cha-Jehan* had caus'd to be made there. He had four Sons well advanced in Years, who had each of them Sons and Grandsons. His second Son *Hassam-Eddin* marched from *Bengal* with a considerable Army to assist his Father, took *Agra*, and put the Governor to Death for stopping Letters that had been sent from Court to his Father. Prince *Cambax* was also preparing for War, when *Alem* sent him a Letter, assuring him, that he would behave himself towards him like a Father, and maintain him in Possession of what *Orangzeb* had left him. Upon this, *Cambax* took the Title of King of *Visapour*, and possessed himself of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, with a vast Sum of Money in the Treasury. He restor'd the Fortress of *Pampancia*, with its Dependencies, to Prince *Jehan-Guir*, who sent him 10000 Auxiliaries, and the Chiefs of the Nation call'd *Marats* follow'd his Example. In the mean time *Azemdara* marched against *Alem* with 150000 Men. *Alem* would have encounter'd him in Person, but was advis'd by his Princes and Generals to trust the Army to his two Sons *Hassam-Eddin* and *Mashoudi*, who had given sufficient Proofs of their Valour and Conduct. Their Army being superior in Number, a Battle ensu'd the 20th of June, with little Loss on either Side till the Evening, when Sultan *Bedarbeck*, *Azemdara's* eldest Son, attacked a Body of Horse commanded by Sultan *Mahmed-Guery*, Son to Prince *Hassam-Eddin*, and in the Encounter they killed one another. Sultan *Valatabar*, *Azemdara's* second Son, did like-

wife attack Sultan *Iskander*, Son to Prince *Mashoudi*, who killed him. *Azemdara*, enraged at the Loss of his two Sons, whom he passionately loved, animated his Generals to Revenge, and they promis'd to endeavour it next Day; for by this Time Night had put an End to the Battle. In the Morning, as soon as it was Light, *Azemdara* found himself surrounded by the Enemy's Army, but fought with such Courage, that he would certainly have gained the Victory, had his Troops observ'd any Order. The Fight lasted near 8 Hours, during which he lost 60000 Men; and while he endeavour'd to rally his Troops, two of *Alem's* Sons attacked him in different Parts, and Sultan *Razinskader*, one of those Sons, charg'd him with 15000 Horse and 1000 Camels, each of which carried a Faulconet. *Azemdara* having only 6000 Horse left about him, quitted his Elephant, and mounted his Horse to make his Escape. His Horse being killed, he fought with his Scymiter in one Hand, and his Ponyard in the other, by which he killed above 20 Men that attempted to seize him. At last, when Sultan *Mashoudi* came up and called to his Men to take him alive, he killed himself with his Ponyard rather than fall into his Enemy's Hands; and thus *Alem* obtain'd the Victory, his Rival Brother and two of his Sons being slain, and a third taken Prisoner in the Battle.

Alem remained peaceable Possessor of the Throne for some Time, and called himself by the Name of *Badour-Chah*. But the Year following, his four Sons and his principal Ministers perswaded him to make War against his Brother *Cambax*, to deprive him of the Kingdom of *Visapour* and *Golconda*, which *Orangzeb*, who conquer'd them, had bequeath'd to him, and which *Badour-Chah* promis'd to let him enjoy quietly, if he did not join their Brother *Azemdara*. Thô Sultan *Cambax* performed his Part, yet *Badour-Chah* was perswaded to break this Promise, on Pretence that his Brother would attack him on the first favourable Opportunity, and that he could never be safe whilst he was in a Condition to molest him. Upon this he marched with 50000 Horse and 30000 Foot against *Cambax*, who not being able to assemble above 8000 Horse and 22000 Foot, intrenched himself near *Golconda*,

conda, where he lay about 6 Weeks: But on the 16th of January 1709, *Badour-Chah* forced his Intrenchments, defeated and took him, with three of his Sons, by which *Badour-Chah* had quiet Possession of the whole Empire, excepting the Ravages committed by the Pagan Raja's in their neighbouring Territories, because *Badour-Chah* had broke the solemn Promise he made to allow them the Freedom of their Religion, and the same Privileges with the *Mahometans*, since it was chiefly to them that he ow'd his Victory over his Brother *Azemdara*: But, by the Advice of his Sons and Counsellors, he had revok'd those Privileges, on Pretence that the exempting them from Taxes would lessen his Revenues; and that by allowing them such Immunities, they might become too strong for him, and dethrone him.

The MOGUL'S COURT.

THE following Account of it is given by M. *Manouchi*, who liv'd in this Country 48 Years, travelled most of it; and being the Emperor's Physician, had better Opportunities to know it than others. He wrote those Memoirs in 1697, and assures us, that what he writes is true.

He says, the Court of the Mogul is so sumptuous, that it astonishes Strangers, and even surprises the *Italians*, who see so much Splendor in their own Country. He owns, that the Emperor's Palaces at *Dehli* and *Agra* are not so regular as the Structures of *Rome* and *Venice*, but yet have particular Beauties, and are as well proportion'd to the Taste of the *Indians*. They have nothing of the *Greek* Architecture, which is unknown in the East; but they have follow'd a Method which is no ways choaking to the Eye, and is more commodious, considering the Customs of the Country, than those great Numbers of lofty Stories which can't be mounted without Fatigue. The Palace of *Agra* is also a Citadel, and lies in Form of a Crescent, on the Banks of the *Gemna*; but towards the City it appears round. *Mandestoe* says, 'tis 4 Leagues in Compass. The Walls are high, and broad enough to support Cannon of a middling Size, which are planted upon them at equal Distances.

The Palace is seen from afar, and easily distinguish'd from the Town, being built of red Stones, which resemble speckled Marble, and make a beautiful Reflexion when the Sun shines on them. 'Tis encompassed with Ditches full of Water, and a Terras'd Garden, cut thro' with Canals and Streams of running Water, which being mix'd with Green-Plats and Houses of Pleasure, form a very agreeable Prospect. It is divided from the Town by a large Space of Ground, equal in Breadth to the Front of the Palace, where the Raja's draw up the Rajaputtes, and keep Guard here every Week by Turns at the Outer Gates, which are two, face the principal Streets of the City, and enter it by Bridges over the Ditch. The first Object that occurs to one's View is a large Canal of running Water, enclos'd by Walls of Stone, so broad on both Sides, that there's a Way for Elephants, and for Passengers on Foot and Horseback, with abundance of Guard Houses, other Habitations, and Shops upon them at certain Intervals. Here are likewise Apartments and Offices for the inferior Servants of the Court, and long Galleries for the Emperor's Manufactures, where Tradesmen work continually for the Palace in Halls for their several Occupations, as Goldsmiths, Enamellers, Silk-Weavers, Tapestry-Weavers, &c. and each of them have a Director, who looks after the Workmen, that do their Business without Noise, or almost speaking to one another, which our Author ascribes to the phlegmatick Temper of the *Indians*. At the End of the Canal there's a large round Place of Arms, where the Omrahs of War, who are the chief Officers of the Army, muster their Troops every Day, and keep Guard by Turns. The whole Palace is encompassed with Tents for the inferior Omrahs, and Huts for the Soldiers; so that this warlike Air both within and without the Palace makes it look very august, and commands a Respect for the Prince who inhabits it; for one must march thro' a considerable Army before they can enter the first Court, which is a large Square, supported by Arches, that afford a Shade against the Sun at all Times of the Day; and from a Height in this Square Musical Instruments play at certain Hours, which is not grateful to Strangers at first, but is agreeable enough.

enough when they are accustom'd to the Musick of the Country. This Court, which our Author compares to the *Place-Royal* at *Paris*, gives Entrance to the magnificent Hall of Audience, where all the Subjects have the Privilege to come and sue for Justice to the Sovereign. 'Tis very large and open to the Court, is supported by a double Row of Columns, and the Roof is painted and well gilt. At the End of this Hall stands the Emperor's Throne. About Noon all the Omrahs in the City come to this Hall of Audience, and stand within a Silver Ballister of curious Workmanship, to distinguish them from the rest of the People, on an Alcove rais'd some Steps above the Pavement, the highest in Dignity being next to the Emperor. They keep Silence till he arrives, which is notified by the Sound of Instruments. Then the Emperor appears on his Throne, with his Sons at his Feet sitting on Cushions of Gold Brocard, and Eunuchs stand round him with Fans to chase away the Flies, and refresh him, which is reckon'd an honourable Post. The Throne glitters so much with Precious Stones, that they dazzle one's Eyes. It was made by a *Frenchman*; but the Workmanship comes short of the Materials. 'Tis cover'd above with the Figures of two Peacocks, compos'd of Jewels and Precious Stones. But we shall treat more of his Thrones hereafter.

In this State and Magnificence the Mogul administers Justice to his Subjects. The Omrahs give him an Account of the Causes Civil or Criminal in a few Words, upon which he decides them; and if the Crime merits Death, the Criminal is executed on the Spot, and either trod to Death by Elephants, beheaded, or stung to Death by a poisonous Snake. If the Causes be of less Weight, the Mogul diverts himself during the Time by seeing his Elephants and Horses pass before him in the Court: But those Princes generally value themselves upon their equitable Decisions and Penetration in determining difficult Cases; so that they give close Attention, and never fail to be present at the Hour of Audience. This is a Custom which they don't dispense with, so that the Moguls have frequently order'd themselves to be carried to their Throne on this Account when almost sick to Death.

From this Hall the Emperor goes to the Apartment of the Baths, follow'd by the chief Omrahs, who compose his Privy-Council, where Matters of State are treated of. After Sun-set the Emperor returns to this Place; and while he and his Counsellors talk together, the *Mansebdars* or Subaltern Officers of the Troops make them pass in Review before him, particularly a Troop of Guards, who are always about him, and appear then by Torch-light, with great Staves in their Hands, cover'd with Plate, and adorned on the Top with the Figures of Animals, or Constellations, to shew themselves ready to execute his Orders. 'Tis some of these Guards who are sent Ambassadors to Foreign Courts, and Envoys to the Princes of *Indostan*. None of the Lords of the Empire can go farther than the Hall of the Baths to follow the Emperor, for the Inner-Part is the Seraglio, which *Manouchi*, who being a Physician, was permitted to see, and describes as follows: 'Tis inhabited by above 2000 Women, &c. divided into several Orders: The first are the Queens, or the Emperor's Wives of the first Rank; the 2d are his Concubines, or Wives of the second Rank; the 3d are the Princes and Princesses; the 4th are the Queens, Ladies, and the Governesses of the young Princesses; the 5th are the Women Musicians; and the 6th are the Female Slaves and the Eunuchs. Of the Queens, or Wives of the first Order, the Mogul has sometimes six. These he marries with Ceremony, and they are usually the Daughters of Raja's; but sometimes the Emperor advances his Concubines, Female Musicians, and Dancers, to that Dignity. None but the Children of those chief Wives are capable of succeeding to the Crown: And since it was never known that any Mogul had above 4 Sons at a time, 'tis suppos'd they destroy all above that Number while Infants. When a Woman is advanced to be one of the chief Queens, the Emperor changes her Name, and calls her, *The Light of the World*, or, *The Crown of the Seraglio*, &c. The Apartments of those Queens are magnificent, pleasant, and furnish'd with Shades, Water-works, and Grotto's, under Ground, for Coolness in the Heat of the Summer. The Wives of the second Order have not such sumptuous

Apartments, large Retinues, and Pensions : But their Names are also chang'd by the Emperor, who calls them *Faithful*, or what else he pleases. None but the Queens of the first Order, and the Princes and Princesses of the Blood, are serv'd from the Emperor's Kitchen. The rest maintain themselves out of their Pensions. When the Daughters come to 13 or 14 Years of Age, they are put into Seraglio's of their own, and treated with as much Magnificence as the Queens; and when the Sons come of Age, all but he who is designed for the Crown are sent to be Viceroys of remote Provinces. They have a Pension from the Hour of their Birth, which is laid up for them till they be married, or sent to their Governments. *Manouchi* says, *Orangzeb's* eldest Son had an Annual Pension of 20 Millions of Rupies, which is about Two Millions and a half Sterling. He blames the Moguls for giving their Sons such Pensions, because it enables them to make Revolts. During their Youth they are committed to the Care of an Eunuch, who teaches them to read and write *Arabian* and *Persian*, their Military Exercises, and Principles of Morality, and likewise to decide imaginary Cases, and to understand the *Mahometan* Religion, and the Interest of the Nation. The Daughters are educated with great Indulgence, and being for most Part the chief Amusements of their Father, their principal Study is to please him; so that many times they are allowed a greater Liberty than suits with their Rank and Sex, which frequently occasions disorderly Practices in the Seraglio. Yet generally their Governesses take so much Care, that these Things make no great Noise. The Queens, the Wives of the second Rank, and the Princesses of the Blood, are commonly dress'd alike. Their Hair is always plaited, and perfum'd with Essences; but the Emperor allows some of them to wear a Turban, with Plumes of Feathers, adorn'd with a Garland of Pearls and Diamonds. Others wear their Tresses in Form of a Pyramid, with Scarfs of Cloth of Gold, that hang as low as the Ground. Their Hair is interlaced with Pearl, which forms a sort of Royal Diadem on their Foreheads, in the Middle of which there's a rich Jewel resembling the Sun, a Crescent, a Star, or

some Flower, and this they reckon the most graceful Dress. They have also Necklaces of the finest Oriental Pearl, mix'd with Diamonds, Rubies, and Saphirs. The Climate being very hot, their Garments are of such fine *Indian* Silk, that all together they scarce weigh above an Ounce. They sleep in them, change them every Morning, without using them any more, and always vary their Colour. But tho' their Raiment be light, they load themselves with Jewels, and have two Strings of Diamonds, with two Rows of Pearls, which go round the Neck of their Gowns, and lie a-cross upon their Breasts. Their Ear-Rings, Pendants, and Bracelets, are surprizingly rich and magnificent, and their Fingers and Toes (for they wear only Sandals) are adorned with Rings of great Value. They all wear upon the Right Thumb a little Looking-Glass in Form of a Ring, set in Pearls, and in this they continually view themselves. They have a Girdle of Gold two Inches broad, set with Diamonds. At this Girdle hang Labels of Gold, set also with Stones, and their Points terminate in Clusters of Pearl; and what is more astonishing, each of those Ladies has 6 or 8 Suits of those Ornaments. Our Author adds, That the Reader may suppose he is telling him a Story of *Fairy Land*; but he declares, that this Description is much below the Truth, and that the Mogul's Court is richer in Jewels than we can imagine in *Europe*: For *Tamerlane*, the Founder of their Empire, plunder'd most of the Palaces of *Asia* of those Things, and it is still the Custom of the *Eastern* Princes to collect vast Numbers of them. *Orangzeb* also, when he conquer'd the Kingdom of *Golconda*, became Master of the Diamond Mine there; and besides what they have Annually for Tribute, they buy the richest that can be had for their Wives and Daughters, and they are never suffer'd to go out of the Palace; for when any of them die, the Emperor seizes all. *Manouchi* adds, That to prevent the Sale of 'em, they are bored, so that they are not fit for the Merchants. Thus *Akebar*, when he wanted Money, sent very beautiful Rubies to be sold at *Goa*, but no body would buy them for that Reason. Those for the Emperor's own Use are Master-Pieces of Nature, and he calls them

by particular Names, as the Sun, Moon, &c. He is at a vast Expence for the best Perfumes of the *Indies*, which burn Day and Night in all the Apartments of the Palace. The Ladies of the Seraglio who belong to the Queen and the young Princesses are generally concern'd in all the Intrigues of State, and by their Interest dispose of all considerable Posts. They are commonly venerable for their Age and Wisdom, and have Titles answerable to those of the great Officers of the Crown, as Chief Minister, Secretary of State, &c. and they correspond with the Men that bear those Titles; for 'tis by Means of those Ladies the Ministers obtain what they desire of the Emperor; so that a Quarrel with any of them is enough to ruin the greatest Minister or General, as their Favour is to make his Fortune. The Mogul gives those Ladies Names answerable to their Character, as the *Lady, Philosopher, &c.*

The Female Musicians and Dancers are divided into Troops, and each of them have a Governess that teaches them to sing and dance. They are chosen indifferently out of the *Mahometan* and Pagan Families, and put into the Seraglio. These Governesses have Pensions equal to the Ladies of the Palace, but must not meddle with the Affairs of State. Each of the Queens and Princesses of the Blood has a Troop of those Dancers peculiar to themselves, and among them they chuse their Confidants. On solemn Occasions all those Musicians join to form one Choir, as upon Thanksgivings for Victories, or when the Mogul goes to War. Their Songs are fullsome Flatteries to the Emperor. When he marches, say they, *the four Elephants which support the Earth tremble, the Sun serves him for a Pillow when he sleeps, and the Moon for a Stirrup when he mounts his Horse.* To these Musicians the Emperor gives likewise fantastical Names, as, *The Voice of Melody, The Spirit of Invention, &c.* The chief Business of those Women is to invent Diversions for their Mistresses, and to amuse them with comical Shews at which they excel. The Emperor is always present at their Comedies, and sometimes advances those who act their Part best to be Queens of the first or second Order. The Women-Slaves of the Seraglio perform the

mean Offices to the Queens, &c. and are formed into Troops of 10 or 12 under particular Mistresses, as the Emperor pleases, and he calls them likewise by fanciful Names, at *Tulip, Jessamine, &c.* He is always serv'd by Women himself, and has a Guard of 100 *Tartar* Ladies arm'd with Bows, Scymiters, and Darts, commanded by a Lady, who has the same Pension as one of the Omrahs or Generals. He is obliged to this Precaution to guard himself against the Fury of his Queens and Concubines, whose Jealousy makes them implacably revengeful.

He has great Numbers of Eunuchs, *Mandefloe* says 1200, within the Palace, some of whom serve for Porters, which is a very difficult and dangerous Post; for if they be too remiss, out of Complaisance to the Queens and Princesses, they are in Danger of their Lives by the Emperor; and if they are too severe, they run the same Risk by the Ladies. Others of those Eunuchs are Superintendants of the Seraglio, and the Nadir, who is the Chief of them, is one of the first Officers of the Crown. He is to keep good Discipline in the Seraglio, to see the Rules observ'd, to adjust the Expence of the Queens and Princesses, has the Charge of the Imperial Treasury and Wardrobe, is to prescribe the Apparel of the Ladies, and to answer for all the Jewels of the Empire. In short, he regulates all the Expences of the Seraglio, by the Help of his Subalterns, who have each their particular Office. The Expence of the Inner-Palace, says our Author, amounts to a Million and a half Sterling *per Annum*. The Eunuchs who are most esteem'd by the Ladies are such as prepare and dispense their Liquors; for by their Means they sometimes obtain Wine or other inebriating Liquors, which they esteem the more, because they are forbid, and must be taken with great Precaution. The lowest Sort of Eunuchs are those who go on Errands for the Ladies, and it's incredible to see what Numbers of them are continually running about the City; so that nothing passes there but what is immediately known at Court, and thus those Cloyster'd Women know better than any body what's done abroad.

What

What follows is from other Authors.

Captain Hawkins makes the Annual Expence of the Court in his Time to be 7300000 *l.* Sterling, - of which he allots 380000 *l.* per Ann. for the Women. Schouten says, the Palace at *Agra* is shut in with Chains, which are only let down for the Emperor and his Children; so that no other can enter it on Horseback. The Apartment for the Royal Family is the most stately in all the Palace. There are two costly Towers, one at the Women's Apartment, and the other at the Treasury Chamber, cover'd all over with Plates of Gold. When the Emperor goes a Hunting, he is attended by above 100 Elephants, with rich Trappings, and 10 or 12000 (*Bernier* says 200000) Men, belonging to the Court and Household, besides a great Number of Elephants, Camels, and Oxen, which carry the Baggage, &c. The Emperor himself mounts upon an Elephant, the Beauty and Richness of whose Trappings, says *Schouten*, is as much beyond Description, as the Elephant's Tractableness and Understanding, if we may be allow'd to speak so, is beyond Imagination. Sometimes he rides a stately *Persian* Horse, and at other times he is carried in a *Palanquin* or *Indian* Coach, drawn by white Oxen of *Bengal*. None dare approach his Throne to make any Request to him without Presents, and those considerable too, or else he rejects them.

On *New Year's-Day*, the Lords make their most considerable Presents to the Emperor, for which Purpose they cause stately Tents to be set up in the Court of the Palace, whither are brought the most rare and precious Things that they have collected in the Year past, and they take the Opportunity of presenting them when he is mounted on his Throne, which is that Day more stately than ordinary. The Empresses sit upon Scaffolds, from whence they see every thing that passes without being seen themselves. Afterwards the Emperor comes down from the Throne to receive the Presents of the common People. He bestows his Bounty on the Courtiers who please him

best, augments the Revenues of some, grants Titles of Honour to others, and gives others Employments and Places of Trust. *Mandelsloe* says, this Feast continues for 18 Days successively. *Bernier* says, his Court, which consisted formerly of none but true Moguls, is now a Mixture of *Usbecks*, *Persians*, *Arabians*, and *Turks*, or their Children, but with this Distinction, that the Children of the 3d or 4th Generation, that have taken the brown Colour and the soft Humour of the Country, are not so much esteem'd as the new Comers, and are seldom rais'd to publick Offices, but count themselves happy if they may serve as common Soldiers.

In 1664, *Auremgzeb* set out with the whole Court from *Dehli* to the Kingdom of *Kachemire*. *M. Bernier* gives us the following Account of their March, which we insert to give the Reader an Idea of the Splendor and Order of the Court when the Great Mogul is in the Field. They marched, says he, with that Gravity from *Dehli* to *Lahor*, which is little more than 120 Leagues, or 16 Days Journey, that they took up almost two Months by the Way. He had a double Provision of Tents for his Court, that one Camp might be always fixed before he left the other. Sixty Elephants, 200 Camels, 100 Mules, and vast Numbers of Porters, were constantly employ'd to carry them and their Furniture. The Emperor's Quarter was about 300 Paces square, in the Center of the Camp, surrounded with Screens 7 or 8 Foot high; and in this Place there were Apartments for himself and his Ladies as in the Palace, with others for the Council, &c. supported by gilt Pillars, and floor'd with Tapestry, &c. Without the Emperor's Quarter were those for the Omrahs, Guards, &c. the Emperor's Elephants, Horses, &c. so that every thing was in the same Order as in the City. The Royal and other Magazines were distinguish'd by their Height, and Flags at the Top, which serv'd for a Direction to find the several Quarters. In the Night-time the Omrahs were lighted to and from the Emperor's Quarter by Files of Torches, and strong Guards were kept at several Places, besides those which went the Rounds all Night to prevent Robberies and other Disorders. Be-

fore the Emperor's Quarter were posted 50 or 60 Field-Pieces, which fir'd altogether when he came out or went in. All the Tents of the Omrahs fac'd the Emperor's Quarter. Sometimes he was carried in a stately Litter upon Men's Shoulders; at other Times he rode on Horseback, or upon an Elephant, in a magnificent Turret; and when he went a Hunting, the Omrahs kept about him on Horseback, as much exposed to the Sun and the Dust as others; but in a March, they rode at Ease in their Palanquins secure from both. There was a great Number of tall Horsemen call'd *Gourzebarders*, with Silver Maces, that rode before the Emperor and about the Omrahs to clear the Way, and before those marched a great Number of Footmen, with large Sticks for the same End. After them came a vast Number of Trumpets and Kettle-Drums, with Men carrying Silver Battoons, that have the Figures of Animals, &c. at the Ends, and the little Omrahs brought up the Rear of the Court, arm'd with Bows and Swords. The Queens and Princesses of the Blood rode in the same State as the Emperor, either carried in Litters upon Men's Shoulders, or on Elephants, as they thought best, upon which they had magnificent Turrets, richly gilt or set with Stones, attended by their Eunuchs and *Tartar Ladies* in fantastical Habits, with Numbers of Lackies, Pages, &c. that carried Sticks in their Hands, and cleared the Way.

The Emperor during his March went sometimes a hunting Wild-Beasts, their Haunts being first surrounded by Men and Horses, who drove them into a narrower Compass by degrees, being provided with Nets, Arms, &c. for that End. The noblest and most dangerous Hunting is that of the Lion, which none must practise without the Emperor's Permission. When he does it, Asses are fixed near the Lion's Haunt, one after another for two or three Days, till he be accustomed to come thither for his Prey, and then being surrounded with Nets, &c. the Mogul shoots at him from his Elephant with a Musket. The Beast, when wounded, makes at the Elephant, but is stopped by the Nets. When the Emperor kills him speedily, 'tis reckoned a good Omen for the State, the Beast

is laid before him in a Circle of the Omrahs, and 'tis recorded in the Chronicles. *Bernier* says, the Emperor was attended in this March by 100000 Horsemen, above 150000 Horses, Mules and Elephants, 50000 Camels, and as many Oxen and Asses to carry Provisions; so that in the whole there were no fewer than 400000 People, most of the Inhabitants of *Dehli* being obliged to follow the Court, since they could not subsist without it at Home. The Emperor enter'd the Camp sometimes on one Side, and sometimes on another, to receive Presents of Gold Roupies from the Omrahs as he passed by their Tents, according to their Ability and Posts. When he came to the Mountains of *Cachemire*, he had 6000 Porters for his own Equipage, and there were 30000 others, who had 10 Crowns for each Hundred Weight they carried thro' those inaccessible Places. So much for this March.

Mandelsloe says, the chief Officers of the Court are, the Head Vizier, or Lord Chancellor, on whom the Mogul sometimes confers the Dignity of Rasgai or Prince; the Chief of the Eunuchs; the Lord High Steward of the Treasury, who keeps 21 Secretaries, wears a long Coat of Tissue, and is carried in a Palekin, with 4 Silver Scepters, and 10 Standards; the Principal Secretary of State, the General of the Elephants, and the Surveyor of the Household-Stuff, Tents, and Jewels. These are constant Members of the Mogul's Privy-Council, unto which is sometimes call'd the Couteval, who is both Chief Justice and Commander of the Mogul's Guards. The Council commonly sits in the Night-time, from 7 till 9 a Clock. He adds, That the Lord Chancellor, who has the supreme Management of Civil and Military Affairs, must not take the least Present; but his Clerks will permit any Man for Money to know every thing that passes thro' their Hands. The Rasgai and other great Men pay a most profound Veneration to their Monarch, and never approach and speak to him without many Bows and Reverences. They go out from him backwards, bowing their Heads down to the Ground, putting their Hands over their Eyes, and afterwards upon

upon their Breasts, to shew their Humility. The Emperor assures them of his Friendship, by laying his Hand on their Shoulders. He worships the Sun when it rises at Noon, and when it sets, in Presence of his Omrahs. *Schouten* says, his Birth-Day is kept with more Solemnity than any Day consecrated to the Deity; that he is then adorn'd with his richest Jewels, is weigh'd in a Gold Ballance against Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, Silks, Butter, Rice, &c. which are afterwards given to the Poor. Then from his Throne he casts Handfuls of Gold among his Nobles, made up like Fruit of several Sorts, but so thin, that 1000 of the Pieces don't weigh above 30 Crowns. They keep an exact Account of his Weight every Year, and measure their Rejoycings according to its Increase. The Grandees on this Occasion present him with rich Furniture, Jewels, Elephants, Camels, or other Things of Value, and make likewise Presents to the Empress Mother if there be one. The Presents made at this Time from all Parts of his Dominions amount sometimes to a Million and a half Sterling. The like Customs are observ'd on the Birth-day of the Prince design'd to succeed him. The Solemnity begins the 5th of *November*, and continues 5 Days. The two great Courts are cover'd over Head from the Middle to the Hall of Audience, which is open on three Sides, and under the Cover are set Pavilions of Purple Velvet, so thick embroider'd with Gold, that they are supported by Posts as big as Masts, from 30 to 40 Foot high; those next the Hall plated with Gold, and the rest with Silver, about the Thickness of a Ducat. The Cords which fasten them are of Cotton of several Colours, as thick as good Cables, and in this Place there are Pavilions for the Omrahs and Guards.

Tavernier says, the Mogul has 7 Thrones set with Diamonds, and other Precious Stones of inestimable Value. The largest, which stood in the Hall of the first Court, resembled a Field-Bed, was 6 Foot long, and 4 broad. He number'd 268 Rubies and Emeralds upon it, the former from 100 to 200 Carats, and the latter from 30 to 60 Carats each. The under Part of the Canopy was embroider'd with Pearls and Diamonds, and there was a Fringe of Pearls

round it. On the Top of the Canopy, made like an Arch, stood the Figure of a Peacock with his Tail spread, made up of Saphirs and other Stones of proper Colours; his Body of Gold enamell'd, encas'd with several Jewels, and a great Ruby at his Breast, from which hung a large Pearl of 50 Carats; and on each Side the Peacock stood two Garlands as high as the Bird, consisting of Flowers of Gold enamell'd. When the Emperor sits on this Throne, there's a transparent Jewel, with a Diamond of 80 or 90 Carats appendent to it, so hung as to be always in his Sight. The Canopy is supported by 12 Pillars, adorned with Rows of Pearl of an excellent Water, and weighing from 6 to 10 Carats apiece. About 4 Foot distant on each Side the Throne are two Umbrella's of Crimson Velvet embroider'd, and fring'd with Pearl, the Bundles of the Umbrella's being 8 Foot high, and set with Diamonds. *Tavernier* says, this Throne was begun by *Tamerlane*, and finished by *Cha. Jehan*; and that it cost 160½ Millions of *French Money*, which is about 13 Millions 375000 *l.* Sterling. Behind this there's another Throne, in Form of an oval Tub, in which the Emperor bathes. 'Tis 7 Foot long, and 5 broad, without a Canopy, but cover'd on the Outside with Jewels and Pearls. On his Birth-day 30 Horses are led before his Tent, whose Bridles and Trappings are cover'd with Jewels. They have also Plumes of Feathers on their Heads, with Jewels about their Necks. *Tavernier* says, these Horses are valued from 3000 to 10000 Crowns apiece. Seven Elephants of War, with rich Trappings, and Chains of Silver and Gold about their Necks, are also led before him on this Occasion, and 4 of them carry his Standard fix'd on their Cruppers to Half-Pikes. When those Elephants are brought within 50 Paces of the Throne, they are taught to lay their Trunks on the Ground three times, and to lift them up as often over their Heads, and make a Noise, in Token of their Obeisance. Then their Cloths are lifted up, that the Emperor may see they are in good Case, and they are measur'd with a Cord, to try how much they grow Annually. One of them he esteems most is a very furious Creature, and allow'd about 250 Crowns per Month in Sugar, Aqua-

Aquavite, &c. The 5 other Thrones are in another Hall, and embellish'd with Diamonds, but no colour'd Stones.

Ogilby says, That when any come to speak with the Emperor, they are conducted from one Watch to another till they come to the Royal City, where they are presented to those whose Office 'tis to receive them. The Watches also by the Way take Receipts from one another for the Delivery; by which Means they know all that pass and repass.

The Emperor's Houses are generally built of Marble or white Alabaster, and the Walls inlaid with Gold. Ogilby makes the Number of those that wait daily upon his Person 12000, besides 1200 Concubines, and 600 Eunuchs. 'Tis said, that the Great Mogul never wears a Suit longer than one Day; after which he sends it with great Ceremony to such Omrahs as are his Favourites, who take it for a great Honour to be clad in the Emperor's Robes.

The Forces of the Great Mogul.

MR. Manouchi says, the Mogul's Militia don't so much want Courage, as the Knowledge of true Military Discipline, and the Use of Arms; that they come far short of the Europeans, but excel all the Nations beyond the *Indus* in Bravery, as they do their Neighbours round them in the Discipline of their Troops, and the Art of War.

Our Author divides his Militia into three Orders; 1. Those which the Mogul keeps always in his Capital, and mount the Guard every Day before his Palace. 2. Those which are canton'd about in the several Provinces. 3. The *Indian* Auxiliaries, which the Raja's are oblig'd to furnish.

The Army which encamps every Day at the Palace Gates, whether the Court be at *Dahli* or *Agra*, amounts at least to 50000

Horse, without reckoning the prodigious Number of Foot-Soldiers, of which those two Cities are full; so that when the Emperor goes into the Field, those Towns are like two Deserts, for all the Inhabitants follow the Court; and if we except the Quarter of the *Banians*, who are the principal Traders, the rest appears all unpeopled. But this Militia of Guards is not all upon the same Foot; the Emperor's 4000 Slaves, who are so call'd as a Mark of their Devotion to his Person, form the most considerable Body of 'em. They are commanded by a Daroga, who is an Officer of Note, and oft-times invested with the chief Command of the Armies. All the Soldiers admitted in this Troop are mark'd in their Foreheads. From among them the *Mansebdars* or Subaltern Officers are advanced by degrees to the Rank of Omrahs, which is a Title that answers to our General Officers.

The Guards of the Maces of Gold, Silver, and Iron, consist also of three several Bodies, whose Soldiers have a different Mark on their Foreheads. Their Pay is in Proportion to the Metal from which they are named. All those Bodies are filled with chosen Men, noted for their Valour, and no Man arrives to any Dignity in the State till he has serv'd and distinguish'd himself in one or other of them; for Birth gives no Pre-eminence in the Mogul Armies, Merit being the only Thing consider'd there; so that frequently the Son of an Omrah of the first Rank serves in the lowest Degree in the Army. The *Mahometan Indians* own no other Nobility but what is derived from *Mahomet's* Blood.

Our Author divides the Mogul's Empire into 21 Kingdoms, tho' others reckon 54; but he says, what is above 21 are only large Provinces which depend upon one or other of these. He computes the Forces according to those Kingdoms as followeth.

Kingdoms.

Kingdoms.	Horse.	Foot.
Dehli, when the Court is there —————	66667 ———	133336
Agra —————	15000 ———	30000
Lahor —————	12000 ———	24000
Asmir —————	6000 ———	12000
Guzaratte —————	10000 ———	20000
Malva —————	7000 ———	14000
Multan —————	6000 ———	12000
Cabul —————	60000 ———	120000
Tata —————	4000 ———	8000
Bakar —————	4000 ———	8000
Krecha —————	4000 ———	8000
Cachemire —————	4000 ———	8000
Decan —————	8000 ———	16000
Barar —————	7000 ———	14000
Brampeur —————	6000 ———	12000
Baglana —————	5000 ———	10000
Ragemal —————	4000 ———	8000
Nande —————	6000 ———	12000
Bengal —————	40000 ———	80000
Ugon —————	15000 ———	30000
Golconda —————	20000 ———	40000
	309667 ———	619336
	—————	309667
Total —————	—————	929003

So that allowing for the 200000 which are ambulatory with the Court, he keeps above 700000 in constant Pay.

Pyrard affirms, That the Mogul is able in a short Time to bring into the Field 300000 Elephants, 80000 Horse, and 200000 Foot, which are generally kept within 5 Leagues of the Place of his Residence.

The additional Troops which the Raja's are obliged to furnish are generally more for Shew than Necessity, and exacted chiefly to secure the Fidelity of those Tributary Princes. Manouchi says, there are 80 who are petty Sovereigns in their own Countries, but scarce distinguish'd from the Omrahs at the Mogul's Court. They have Lands of their own, and their Heirs enjoy what they leave behind, which is the sole Advantage their Sovereignty gives them over the Omrahs, who are all Men of Fortune, and whose Children commonly revolve into the same Nothing from whence Merit or Favour rais'd their Fathers, unless

(as it sometimes happens) the Mogul leaves the Widow and Children a Pension. There are some of those idolatrous Raja's who carry a Shadow of Grandeur in the Presence of the Mogul, especially three, whose Dominions are well peopled, wealthy, and inaccessible. The chief of them pretends to be derived from *Porus*, and calls himself, *The Son of him that sav'd himself in the Deluge*. He is Sovereign of the Kingdom of *Sedussia*, whose Capital is *Usepour* or *Visepour*. All the Princes of this great Territory, from Father to Son, assume the Name of *Rana*; i. e. *A Person of a good Mien*. He has always an Army of 50000 Horse and 200000 Foot, and is the only *Indian* Prince that has a Privilege to march under an Umbrella or Canopy, that being an Honour reserv'd for the Great Mogul. The Raja of *Rator* equals him of *Sedussia* in Riches and Power, and has 9 Provinces under his Sovereignty. His Name when *Orangzeb* mounted the Throne was *Jacomsing*; i. e. *The Master-Lion*. He is as much esteem'd at Court as the former, and is able to raise as great an Army. There is another Sovereign of great Esteem in the Mogul's Court, who can bring into the Field 40000 Horse: His Dominion is called *Chague*, and his Capital *Amber*. Besides these, our Author says there are above 30 others, who keep a great Militia on foot, especially four, who maintain in their Pay above 25000 Horse each. All these, if the Necessities of the Empire require, join their Troops to those of the Mogul, and command them in Person. Their Men have the same Pay as the Soldiers of the Empire, and they themselves the same with the chief Generals.

These formidable Armies and Auxiliary Troops, which are dispers'd through *Indostan*, are not only a Protection to the Frontiers, but preserve the Peace in the Center of the Empire, where (*Bernier* says) for one *Mogul* or *Mahometan*, there are near 100 *Gentiles* or *Heathens*; for which Reason there's no Town, tho' never so little, but has two Horse and four Foot Soldiers to keep good Order, and give the Court an Account of every thing that passes. *Bernier* mentions another Privilege of the Raja's, viz. That when they mount the Guard, they are not confined as the Omrahs for 24 Hours together within the Fort, but keep without under

under their Tents, and never go abroad without a Guard of resolute Fellows, who will spend the last Drop of their Blood in their Defence. The Cavaliers that compose the Armies before-mention'd are called *Ragipouts*, or the Children of Raja's. They carry Swords from Father to Son, and have Land allow'd them by the Raja's, on Condition to be always ready to appear on Horseback at Command. They are very hardy, but want good Order and Discipline. *Bernier* says, the Mogul is obliged to keep these three Raja's in his Service for the following Reasons: 1. Because their Militia is very good, and they are so powerful, that if they combin'd, they would probably be a Match for him. 2. To curb the other Raja's when they refuse to pay Tribute, or to go out of their Country to join the Mogul's Forces. 3. To keep up Jealousies and Animosities among them, by favouring one more than another, which frequently sets them together by the Ears. 4. To employ them against the *Patans*, his deadly Enemies, or against his own Omrahs and Governors if they should rise. 5. To employ them against the King of *Golconda* when he refuseth to pay Tribute, or when he defends the King of *Visapour*, or any of the Raja's his Neighbours whom the Mogul has a Mind to rattle, or to make his Tributaries; for in these Cases he dares not trust his Omrahs too much, because they are for the most Part *Persians*, and of the same Religion with the Kings of *Persia* and *Golconda*. *Bernier* adds, That for these and the like Reasons, he is also obliged to entertain some *Patans* in his Service, who are *Mahometans*, that formerly liv'd on the Side of the *Ganges* towards *Bengal*, and before the Invasion of the Moguls in *India* made themselves very potent, and had many Raja's for their Tributaries. They are a fierce and warlike People, and of a very high Spirit. They despise the *Indians*, Heathens, and *Moguls*, and mortally hate the latter, since they drove them from *Agra* and *Dehli* into the Mountains, where they are now settled, and some of them have made themselves petty Sovereigns, but of small Strength.

The Omrahs, says *Bernier*, as they are commonly advanced by Favour, are degraded at the Mogul's Pleasure. Some of them are Lords of 1000 Horse, some of

2000, others of 5, 7, 10, and 12000, and are paid in Proportion to the Number of Horses, and not of the Horsemen, because they are allowed two Horses a Man, to be the better able to serve in the hot Countries: But the Emperor determines the Number of Horses which they are bound to entertain, and allows them also for a certain Number which they are not oblig'd to keep; and with what they retain out of the Pay of every Man and Horse, is the principal Part of their Pensions, which are very considerable, especially if they can obtain good Lands for a Fund; but otherwise they are paid out of the Treasury. Yet *Bernier* says, very few of them are rich, and most of them in Debt, not by keeping too plentiful Tables, but partly by the great Presents which they are obliged to make to the King, as formerly mentioned, and partly by the vast Expences they must be at for entertaining their Wives, Servants, Camels, and Horses.

Our Author says, the Number of the Omrahs at Court, in the Provinces and Armies, is not determin'd; but that he never saw less than 25 at Court. They have the principal Offices of the Court and Armies, are reckon'd the Pillars of the Empire, and keep up the Splendor of the Court; for they never go abroad but in rich Habits, on Elephants, Horseback, or in Palekys, attended with a good Number of Horse and Foot. All those at Court are oblig'd, under a considerable Penalty, to come twice every Day to salute the Emperor in the Assembly, *viz.* a little before Noon, and at 6 a Clock at Night. When they keep Guard, the Emperor sends them Provisions, which they receive with a treble Obeisance, with their Hands to the Ground, and then lifted up upon their Heads, turning their Faces at the same Time to the Emperor's Apartment, and praying for his long Life and Prosperity.

The *Mansebdars*, according to *Bernier*, are esteem'd as little Omrahs, being oblig'd to the same Duties. They are allow'd from two to six Horses apiece, with the Emperor's Mark, and acknowledge none for their Head but himself. Their Pay is from 200 to 6 or 700 Roupies per Month. Their Number is not fixed, but much exceeds that of the Omrahs, there being always 200 or

or 300 at Court, besides those in the Provinces and Armies.

The Rouzindars are also a sort of Troopers that daily receive their Pay, which sometimes is greater than that of several of the Mansabdars. Their Number is very great, and they execute the meaner Offices of Clerks, Signet-Men, &c.

The Simple Cavaliers are Men that serve under the Omrahs, have two Horses mark'd on the Leg with their Mark, and 24 Roupies or 3 *l* per Month.

The Pay of the Foot-Soldiers is from 10 to 20 Roupies or Half-Crowns per Month. Their Musketers are afraid of singeing their great Beards, of burning their Eyes, or of some evil Spirit bursting their Muskets, which they discharge on a small Wooden Fork that hangs to 'em. There are some Christian Gunners that came from Goa, who, before the Moguls knew how to manage Artillery, had more than 200 Roupies or 25 *l* per Month; but now they have not above 32 Roupies or 4 *l* a Month.

M. Bernier says, all this Militia, from the greatest Omrah to the meanest Soldier, is indispensibly paid every two Months, because otherwise they would all disband and starve, for there's scarce a Soldier in the Service that hath not a Family. Mandelsloe says, they fight without any Method or Order, and place their chief Trust in their Elephants with Wooden Towers, which carry 3 or 4 Harquebusses, with as many Men to manage them. The Elephants serve also for a Bulwark to hinder the Enemy from breaking in upon them; but it commonly happens, that being terrified by artificial Fire-Works, &c. they make a greater Havock among their own Men than the Enemy. Their Armies never march above 5 Leagues in a Day. Mandelsloe adds, That the Mogul and the General of the Army always have their Tents pitch'd without the Reach of Musket shot from the rest. Terry says, they charge on all Sides with great Fury, but never rally, and seldom fight it out to the last.

Manouchi says, the Great Mogul's Stables are filled with Multitudes of Horses and Elephants. His Horses are 12000 at least, of which only 20 or 30 are kept for his own Use, the rest being either for State, or design'd for Presents; for 'tis his Custom to

give a Suit of Clothes and a Horse to him that does him any Service, tho' never so mean. His Horses come all from *Persia*, *Arabia*, and *Tartary*; for those which are brought up in the *Indies* are stubborn, skittish, and dull; so that above 100000 are brought in every Year from *Balk*, *Bochara*, and *Cabul*, and the Emperor receives 25 per Cent. according to their Value, for every one that passes the *Indus*. The best are pick'd out for his Service, and the others sold for mounting the Cavalry. Because the Pastures of this Country are for most Part so parch'd with the Sun, that they can get no Forrage for their Horses but on the Banks of Rivers, they give them Balls of Paste made of Bread, Butter, and Sugar, in the Morning, and at Night Rice steep'd in Milk, with Pepper and Anniseed. The Emperor gives fantastical Names to his own, such as, *The Flight of the Wind*, *The Prince's Favourite*, &c. Thevenot says, most Troopers wear two great Tassels of fine white Ox-Hair behind their Saddles, two others before, and two on the Reins near the Bit. They ride half naked, and the Tassels which wave to and fro with the Motion of the Horse at a Distance look like Wings.

Manouchi says, the Emperor's Elephants are not only a great Strength to his Army, but an Ornament to his Palace. He keeps 500 in great Stalls, and gives them fanciful Names, as, *The Terror of Armies*, &c. The stately Harness of these Elephants is truly astonishing; for he that carries the Emperor has on its Back a Throne, that glisters with Gold and Precious Stones. The others are cover'd with Plates of Gold and Silver, Housings embroder'd with Gold, and adorn'd with Gold Bells and Fringes. The Elephant of the Throne, which is call'd, *The Captain of the Elephants*, has always a large Train to follow him, and a great Number of Officers to attend him. He never marches without Kettle-Drums, Trumpets, and Banners. He has treble Pay for his Allowance, that of the other Elephants being 25 Roupies, or about 3 *l*. 2 *s*. 6 *d*. a Day. There are 10 Men appointed to look after every Elephant, two to exercise, lead and govern him, two to brace on his Chains, two to fetch him Wine and Water, two bear a Lance before him, and clear the Way, and the two last kindle artificial

Fires

Fires at his Eyes, to make him undaunted at the Fire of Artillery, besides others to take away his old Litter, and give him fresh, to drive away the Flies from him, and to cool his Body at Intervals, by throwing Water on him. These Elephants are bred to Hunting and War, so that they will attack Lions and Tygers, and break open the Gates of Towns. *Thevenot* says, the Emperor keeps 200 for the Wars, some of which carry small Field-Pieces upon their Towers.

Manouchi says, there are no Arsenals in the *Indies* but the Emperor's, every Commander being obliged to provide his Men with Arms, which are Muskets, Bows, Swords, Scymiters, and Lances; but nothing can be more magnificent than the Emperor's Arsenal, his Javelins, Bows and Quivers, and especially his Sabres, being all ranged in the neatest Order, and sparkling with Precious Stones. He gives particular Names to his Scymiters, as, *Conqueror of the Earth*, &c. Every Friday Morning the Emperor prays in his Arsenal, and begs of God that he may gain Victories with his Sabres, and make his Enemies reverence the Name of the Eternal Being.

M. Bernier says, their Artillery is of two Sorts, the Heavy and the Light. When the Emperor made a Progress with his Court and Army to *Cachemire*, as formerly mentioned, he had 70 Pieces of Brass Cannon, and 2 or 300 Field-Pieces of the Size of a good double Musket, carried by as many Camels. The light Artillery consisted of 50 or 60 small Brass Field-Pieces, each mounted on a little Chariot finely painted, with a small Coffin before and behind for the Powder, drawn by two fair Horses, driven by the Gunner. The Chariot is adorn'd with small red Streamers, and has a Led-Horse marching by for Relief to the other two on Occasion. This light Artillery always attends the Emperor's Person, marcheth away in the Morning when he goes out of his Tent, and passeth on to the Place of Rendezvous, where it is fixed before his Tent, in a readiness to give a Volley at his Arrival. *Ogilby* says, some of their heaviest Guns require 20 Pair of Oxen to draw them, besides Elephants which help them, by turning the Wheels of the Carriages round with their Trunks when they come

into bad Ways, or go up Hills. *Manouchi* says, the Cannon which he employs in his Armies are for the most Part older than any we have in *Europe*, and concludes, That the Use of Cannon and Powder was known in the *Indies* long before the Country was conquer'd by *Tamerlane*. The Inhabitants have a Tradition, That the *Chonese*, who are said to be the first Inventers of them, cast some Pieces at *Dehli* when they were Masters of that Town. Every Piece is also call'd by a particular Name, as, *The Strength of the Throne*, *The Breaker of Bulwarks*, &c. But *Thevenot* says, their Cannon is rarely good, because they melt the Metal in several Furnaces. They use Kettle-Drums in their Armies, and Copper Trumpets, which are longer than ours, and make no unpleasant Noise. Sometimes they use Pistols. Their Swords are 4 Fingers broad, very thick, crooked, and cut only on the Convex Side. The Handle is commonly of Iron, with a Cross-Bar of the same underneath the Pommel, which is also of Iron, and flat above and below, that the Sword may not slip out of their Hands. The Swords which the Cutlers of the Country make are very brittle; but the *English* furnish them with good ones from *England*. They use Waist-Belts two Fingers broad, with two Hangers, into which they put the Sword. The common People either carry them in their Hand, or upon their Shoulder like a Musket. They have also Daggers with Blades near a Foot long, and above 4 Fingers broad at the Hilt. The Guard is of two square Iron-Bars one Finger broad, and about a Foot long, which are parallel, and 4 Inches from one another. The *Indians* always wear one of these by their Sides. The Officers of War have also Daggers with an Iron Guard, damasked and gilt, and Persons of Quality have those of the *Persian* Make, which are less and richer. They have a round Buckler for Defence about two Foot in Diameter, made of Buff, varnish'd over with Black, and studded with Nails, the Heads of which are above an Inch over. They have likewise Coats of Mail; the Curassiers, Head-pieces and Vambraces, which is a Piece of Iron tied to the Sword, covers the Handle almost round, and growing broader as it reaches from the Guard of the Sword to the upper

upper Part of the Pummel, and sometimes higher. 'Tis 4 or 5 Inches in Diameter at that Place, and lin'd within, that it may not hurt their Hand. By this they secure their Arm from the Enemy's Blows. Their Infantry handle the Musket tolerably well, have a great Lance and Target, and sometimes a Sword, and repair to a Standard of their own. Their Pike-men have Pikes of 10 or 12 Foot long, which they dart at the Enemy, instead of opposing the Horse with them as we do in *Europe*. The Cavaliers or Troopers use no Fire-Arms, but wear a Poyard at the Right Side of their Girdle, a great Sword on their Left Side in a Belt, a Bow made of Horn, strongly glued, with Arrows in a Quiver at the Bow of their Saddles, a great Lance in their Hands, and a Target boss'd hanging across their Shoulders.

The Great Mogul's Riches and Revenues.

THE Riches of this Prince arise, 1. From the Product of his Country, of which he is sole Proprietor. 2. From his being Heir to all his Subjects. 3. From the Trade carried on betwixt his Dominions, *Europe*, *Africa*, and the rest of *Asia*. 4. From the Tributes he raises from his Subjects. *M. Manouchi* observes, That the Revenue of the Lands of *Indostan* is not so good in Proportion as those of *Europe*, because the Mogul's Subjects having no Property in Land, don't cultivate it with the same Care as the *Europeans* do theirs. To remedy this Inconveniency, *Akebar*, who reform'd the Finances of that Empire, gave no Money to the Viceroy's and Governors, but assign'd them some Lands to be cultivated for themselves, and made 'em farm the rest of their District. They again farm them out to others; but can scarce find Labourers without Force, the Peasants being unwilling to cultivate the Ground, from which they have no other Profit but their Food. This occasions frequent Revolts, or the Retreat of those Peasants to the *Indian Raja's*, who treat them with more Humanity.

From hence it is, that the Mogul's Dominions are insensibly dispeopled and lie waste.

This Defect is in a great Measure supplied by the Gold and Silver which is brought to *Indostan* by Commerce, and mightily increases the Riches of the Sovereign. *M. Bernier* says, That the Treasures of *America*, transported to other Places of the World, are all swallow'd up in *Indostan*; for after they have circulated some Time in *Europe* and *Asia*, they come into the Mogul's Country, from whence they never issue again, except a small Part for Commodities which the Moguls have in *Turkey*, from whence it returns into *Persia* by Way of *Smyrna*, where the Merchants buy *Persian* Silk, and from *Persia* it returns to *Indostan* by the Trade of *Moka*, *Babelmandel*, *Bassora*, and *Bander-Abassi*. Besides, great Sums of Money come immediately hither from *Europe* by the Trade of the *English*, *Dutch*, *Portuguese*, &c. Most of the Money which the *Dutch* bring from *Japan* centers here, from whence they transport Goods for it. 'Tis true, the Moguls have Copper from *Japan*, Lead from *England*, Cinnamon, Mace, and Elephants, from *Ceylon*, with Horses from *Arabia*, *Persia*, and *Tartary*: But the Merchants usually take Goods in Exchange for them. *M. Bernier* adds, That notwithstanding those infinite Sums of Gold and Silver which enter this Country, there's no more of it to be seen in the Hands of private Persons than elsewhere, and assigns the following Reasons for it: 1. That vast Quantities of Silver and Gold Specie are consumed in their Cloth and Stuffs of Silver and Gold, in Gilding and Plate. 2. That the *Indians* bury their Money in the Ground, because they fancy, that after their Death their Souls transmigrate into the Bodies of other *Indians*, and they think that those hidden Treasures will be of great Relief to them in case of Poverty. 3. The Great Moguls bury vast Treasures of Gold and Silver in Caves and Vaults under Ground, because if their Subjects should grow rich by the Circulation of it, they would be encourag'd to revolt; so that they constantly bury what remains after they have disburs'd what's necessary for the Charge of their Administration.

M. Manouchi gives the following Account of the Mogul's Revenues, which he took from the Records of the Empire as it stood in 1697. Their Way of Reckoning is by

Carols, Laqs, and Roupies. A Roupie is about the Value of a *French* Half-Crown: 100000 Roupies make a Laq; and 100 Laqs make a Carol. The Account of the Revenue arising from his particular Provinces is

subjoin'd in the following Table, which we have formed from *Manouchi's* History, and for the Reader's Ease have reduced into *English* Money as follows:

Provinces.	Mogul Money.			Sterling.		
	Carol.	Laq.	Roupie.	l.	s.	d.
<i>Dehli</i> —————	1	25	50000	1568750	0	0
<i>Agra</i> —————	2	22	3550	2775443	15	0
<i>Lahor</i> —————	2	33	5000	2913125	0	0
<i>Asmir</i> —————	2	19	2	2737500	5	0
<i>Guzuratte</i> —————	2	33	95000	2924375	0	0
<i>Malva</i> —————	0	99	6250	1237500	0	0
<i>Bear</i> —————	1	21	50000	1518750	0	0
<i>Multan</i> —————	0	50	25000	628125	0	0
<i>Cabul</i> —————	0	32	7250	400906	5	0
<i>Tata</i> —————	0	60	2000	750250	0	0
<i>Bacar</i> —————	0	24	0	300000	0	0
<i>Urecha</i> —————	0	57	7500	711437	10	0
<i>Cachemire</i> —————	0	35	5000	438125	0	0
<i>Illavas</i> —————	0	77	38000	967250	0	0
<i>Decan</i> —————	1	62	4750	2025593	15	0
<i>Barar</i> —————	1	58	7500	1975937	10	0
<i>Candisch</i> —————	1	11	5000	1388125	0	0
<i>Baglana</i> —————	0	68	85000	860625	0	0
<i>Nande</i> —————	0	72	0	900000	0	0
<i>Bengal</i> —————	4	0	0	5000000	0	0
<i>Ugen</i> —————	2	0	0	2500000	0	0
<i>Ragemahal</i> —————	1	0	50000	1256250	0	0
<i>Kisapour, and Part of</i> } <i>Carnatte</i> ————— }	5	0	0	6250000	0	0
<i>Golconda, and the o-</i> } <i>ther Part of Car-</i> } <i>natte</i> ————— }	5	0	0	6250000	0	0
Total —————	38	62	46802	48278069	0	0

Besides those fix'd Revenues which rise from the Product of the Country, he raises a vast Casual Revenue from the following Articles: 1. An Annual Poll-Tax upon all the Pagan Indians. 2. Five per Cent. on all the Goods they transport, from which the *Mahomedans* are exempted. 3. From every Piece of Cloth whiten'd in the *Indies*. 4. From the Diamond Mines. 5. From the Sea-Ports, especially from those of *Sinde*, *Barocha*, *Surat*, and *Cambaye*; *Surat* alone yielding him 30 Laqs for Goods imported, and 11 from the Money which they coin there, which comes to 512500 l. per Annum.

6. From the Ports on the Coast of *Coromandel*, and the Banks of the *Ganges*. 7. From being Heir to all the Subjects in his Pay, by which their Wives and Children are frequently reduced to Poverty, or are only allow'd a moderate Pension. 8. From the Tributes of the Raja's, which rises to a vast Sum. *Manouchi* computes this Casual Revenue to be equal to that from the Lands, which makes in all about Ninety six Millions Five hundred fifty six Thousand One hundred and Thirty eight Pounds per Annum.

Mandelsloe says, he was credibly informed, that *Cha-Jakam* had a Treasure which amounted

mounted to Fifteen hundred Millions of Crowns; and that he had from very good Hands the following Inventory of the Treasure which was found at the Death of *Akebar*, *Chah-Jahan's* Grandfather.

	Crowns.	s.	d.
In Money —————	199173333	0	10
In Precious Stones ———	30026026	0	0
In Gold Statues ————	9503370	2	6
In Gold Plate ————	5866895	0	5
In Brass and Copper } Utenfils ———— }	25612	2	6
In Porcellane and other } Earthen Vessels ——— }	1253873	2	6
In Gold and Silver } Stuffs, Silks and Cal- } licoos ———— }	7654989	2	6
In Woollen Cloths ———	251626	0	0
In Tents, Hangings, &c.	4962772	2	6
In 24000 Manuscripts } richly bound ——— }	3231865	2	6
In Artillery and Ammu- } nition ———— }	4287985	2	6
In Small-Arms ————	3777752	2	6
In Saddles, Bridles, and } other Accoutrements } of Gold and Silver — }	1262824	0	0
In Covering-Cloths em- } broider'd with Gold, } Silver, and Pearls — }	2500000	0	0
In all, Crowns ————	273778926	1	3

Thevenot says, his Revenue amounts to above 330 French Millions. *William Haguin*, an English Knight, who liv'd there 4 Years in Quality of Ambassador from King *James*, reports, That he saw in the Fortrefs of *Agra* a Batman of Diamonds, two Bushels of Carbuncles, 5 of Emeralds, 12 of several other Sorts of Precious Stones, 1200 Cut-laffes, whose Scabbards were of Gold, cover'd with Precious Stones; 12000 Horses, the same Number of Elephants, 20000 Camels, 400 Stags, which the Emperor made use of instead of Dogs to hunt Hares and Deer, and a great many Panthers, tame Lions, and Leopards, for hunting greater Game. In a Word, he says there were 12 Vaults full of Gold, Silver, Pearls, and Precious Stones. Another, who was sent thither as Ambassador, says, that the then

Prince, sending his Son to the War of *De-can*, order'd all the Road that led to his Army, which was 4 Leagues, to be strew'd with Gold; and he adds, that he did not believe there was so much Gold in all the World as he saw at that Time. He says, his Yearly Revenue amounted to Five hundred Millions of Livres. *Bouffingault* says, That the Successor of *Akebar* erected a stately Marble Tomb for his deceased Father, which cost a Million of Gold, and employ'd 90000 Workmen for 10 Years together, and was 6 Miles in Circuit. *Schouten* says, 11 only of the chief Provinces pay 150 Millions Yearly. But as his Revenues are immense, his Expences bear a suitable Proportion; for half of his Subjects are maintain'd by his Bounty, or listed in his Service, besides the vast Number of Peasants and Tradesmen who work for him, and are paid out of his Treasury.

The Mogul's Government and Administration.

Manuchi says, the Emperor's Jurisdiction is as entire as his Domain, all the Power being vested in his own Person, so that his Subjects are no better than Slaves. The Affairs of State are manag'd by 3 or 4 Omrahs of the first Order, who act by the Sovereign's Authority. The *Etmadoulet* is the chief Minister, and holds the same Dignity next to the Emperor as the Prime Vizier does to the Grand Seignior, tho' commonly 'tis only a Title without an Employ; for sometimes they prefer a Man of no Experience to the Post, and give him the Salary without requiring the Attendance. Sometimes the Emperor advances to this Post a Prince of the Blood, and sometimes the Father of a favourite Queen, tho' taken perhaps from the lowest Order of the Militia, or from the very Mob; so that all the Burden of the Government lies upon two Secretaries of State. The one collects the Treasures of the Empire, and the other disposes of 'em. The latter pays the Officers of the Crown, the Troops, and Workmen; the former levies the Revenues of the Domain, receives the Tributes, and exacts the Imposts: A third, who is an Officer of the Finances, but below the Secretaries

aries of State, seizes the Estates of all that die for the Prince's Use. *Manouchi* says, 'tis a gainful, but an odious Commission. Both the Ministers of State and the Generals must be Officers in the Army before they can be advanced. The Command of the Armies, when the Emperor himself is not at the Head of his Troops, is commonly given to a Prince of the Blood. If there be none, 'tis given to two Generals chose by the Sovereign, one out of the *Mahometan Omrahs*, the other out of the *Indian Raja's*.

We shall not insist on the Government and Pay of the Soldiery, having already treated of that under the Head of the Militia; but shall come next to their Civil Administration. *Manouchi* says, nothing can be more uniform than the Exercise of Justice in the Dominions of the Mogul. The Viceroy, the Governors of Provinces, the Magistrates of Cities and Boroughs, act by the same Rules within their particular Jurisdictions in Subordination to the Emperor, as he himself does at *Agra* or *Dehli*. They alone administer Justice, and decide all Affairs relating to the Lives and Fortunes of the Subjects. Also there's a *Cotwal* and a *Cazi* establish'd to judge of certain Affairs in the Towns of the Empire, if the Parties please; but all have the Privilege of immediate Recourse either to the Emperor himself, to the Viceroy in their Capitals, or to the Governors of Places. The *Cotwal* is both a *Civil Judge* and a *Grand Provost*. His chief Duty as a *Civil Judge* is to prevent Drunkenness, to suppress Places of Debauchery, and to punish those that distil Arrak; which is a kind of Aquavitæ they extract from Sugar. He must give an Account to the Emperor of all Domestick Disorders in private Families, of all Quarrels and Tumults, and of all Meetings in the Night; for which purpose he has a great Number of Spies in every Quarter of the Town. The chief Persons he employs as such are those they call *Alarcors*, whose Business is to clean Houses, and to set the Goods in their proper Places. These enter every Morning into the Citizens Houses, where they inform themselves by the Servants of what happens in the Family, and make Report to the *Cotwal*. As *Great Provost*, he is answerable out of his Salary for all Robberies committed

within his District in Town or Country. Therefore he always keeps Soldiers in the Province, and Persons disguised in the Towns to see that good Orders be kept.

As to the *Cazi*, his Power scarce extends further than Affairs of Religion, Divorces, &c. But neither of these Subaltern Judges can give Sentence of Death before the Cause be reported to the Emperor, whose Consent is required three times on three several Days to the Act of Condemnation, before it can be put in Execution. The like Decorum is observ'd in the Provinces; for none but the Viceroy or Governor can condemn any Person to die. In a Word, Justice is administered here with the least Delay that can be, for every one pleads his own Cause, or else does it by the Omrahs without any Formality; and as soon as the Witnesses are heard, says *M. Manouchi*, Judgment is given as equitable as it is speedy, all false Witnesses and partial Judges being punish'd with Death.

As for their Punishments, if any Person commits Murder, he is deliver'd up to the Relations of the Deceas'd, who execute him according to Sentence. If other Criminals are condemned to die, they are not executed by a common Executioner, but by some of the People that are present. Some they sew up in the Hide of an Ox or an Ass while 'tis moist, which when dry shrinks and crushes them to Death. Some they condemn to go through every Street in the City with Oxes-Horns on their Heads. They put out the Eyes of some, and poison or hang others. But when Noblemen are condemned, they have the Privilege to fight for their Lives with a Lion, unless the Crime be High-Treason. Those that murder their Fathers, are tied to an Elephant's Tail, and dragged along the Streets till they die. Others are kill'd by Elephants, Wild-Beasts, and Serpents. No Malefactor lies in Prison above one Night; and sometimes not at all; for if he be apprehended in the Morning, he is immediately carried before a Judge, who either discharges him on the Spot, or else sentences him to Punishment, which is many times perform'd in his Presence; but if it be a Sentence of Death, they instantly carry him to the Bazar or Market-Place; so that this sudden Way of punishing Offenders keeps the People

ple in such Awe, that they seldom commit any Crime to deserve it.

We shall give an Account of the several Sorts of People in this vast Empire, and of

their various Sects, Trade, Manufactures, Coins, Weights Measures, Apparel, and of their different Manners and Customs, in their proper Places.

The Third particular TABLE of the INDIES, which contain Sanson and Luyts's Division of the Empire of the Mogul.

Chief Towns.

V on the East.	Kandiana or Candiana.	{ Karakantaka, Caracatanca, or Karach, Katana.
	Udessa.	{ Jekanet, Jehananac, or Jekansk, Necbal.
	Patna.	Patna.
	Jessual or Jessual.	{ Rajapore, Suigee, Brinkalatte, Masse.
	Mervat.	Narval, Hogipore, Navagur.

Note, Luyts includes the Kingdoms of Gor and Pitan in the foregoing Division.

Bengal.

{ Bengal or Bengala, Chatigan or Chatigam, Bander Dacca or Dacca, Patane or Pattana, Gouro or Gowra, Saferon, Bannera or Banneres, Elabas or Heliobass, Ragmehel or Rojomahol, Sotiga or Satigan, Ougely, Ouguely, or Huguely, Pipli or Piepely, Balasor or Ballasore, Nuddea, Cannouwe, Rotas, Soumelpore, Malda, Cassimbazar, Arsepore, Bangia, Angelim.

Orixa.

{ Orixa, Ramana, Carapara, Palher, Manicapatan.

Berar.

Schapor or Shapor.

V on the S.

Chandis, Kandis, or Candis.

{ Brampore or Brampoure, Hassera or Hassere, Taulnere, Mandoue or Mandou, Canow, Sadissa, Caddor, Sawbon, Daytatote, Netherby, Salote.

Note, Here Luyts adds the Salfette Islands, viz. Bombay, Canorein, Carania, and Elephantino.

Guzarate, Guzerat, or Cambaya.

{ Suratt or Surate, Damaon or Daman, Basaim or Bacaim, Barocke, Goga, Antote, Cambaia or Cambaie, Dio Island or Dia Pate, Mangerol, Amadab or Hamedewar, Jaquette.

III. The Empire of the Great Mogul is divided into 40 Parts or Kingdoms, viz.

The Empire of the Great
Mogul continued.

Chief Towns.

XV in the
Midland.

IX on the N.

Chitor.	{ Chitor, Chetipore or Chitipor, Billmal, Mudre, Rudrepore.
Maray.	{ Ugen or Ougel, Nader, Ranti- pore, Calleada, Serampora or Sarampore, Syrauga, Seronga, or Sirange.
Raja Ranas, or Rahia Ranes.	{ Gurchito or Gurchitto, Candra or Canderu.
Bando.	{ Bando, Asmere or Asmere, Go- day, Jeloure.
Country of Hendowns.	{ Mearta, Hendown or Hendowne. But Luyts reckons this Coun- try in the Western Division.
Jenupar.	{ Jenupar, Syrina, Tanassery.
Delly.	{ Jehan-Abad or Gehan-abad, Del- ly Vetus.
Agra.	{ Agra, the Capital of the Great Mogul's Empire, Secandra or Scander, Fettipore or Feti- pore, Samonger, Doulpore, Bay- na, Itay, Anadipore.
Gualeor.	{ Gualeor or Gualera.
Narvar.	{ Gehud, Ouden.
Maroucha.	{ Gianabad, Aurengabad, Menep- ra or Menepore.
Sambal.	{ Sambal, Sansaran, Govrechuanr.
Bacar or Ba- kar.	{ Bicanor or Bicarcer.
Jamba.	{ Calser or Calser, Serenagar, Jamba.
Pengab or La- hor.	{ Lahor, Fettypore or Fetipore, Tem- mery, Emenbade.
Naugracut.	{ Naugracut, Callamacha or Cal- lamacka.
Siba.	{ Hardware or Hordware, Seren- gar or Serenegar.
Pitan.	{ Camoro or Camojo, Pitan.
Gor.	{ Gor.
Kakares.	{ Dankalen or Dankaler, Purbola or Furhola.
Bankisch or Bankish.	{ Beishur or Beishar.
Cassimeer or Cachemire.	{ Cassimeer or Cachemire, Syrena- ker or Sirinakar, Achiavel, Sand-Brary.
Attock or At- toch.	{ Attock, Candabara, Puckow, Daddos, Ducha, Langora, Va- geston, Hassanabdal.
Cabal.	{ Cabul, Ghidel, Parna, Chere- Gallow, Gorehond.

The

The Empire of the Great Mogul still.

Chief Towns.

VI on the W.

Multan.	Multan, Alicant, Seerpore.
Haican or Ha-jacan.	Chatzan or Chutzan, Uche.
Buckor or Buckar.	Buckor or Buckar, Suckor or Suckar, Rawree.
Jesselmeeer or Jesselmere.	Jesselmeeer or Jesselmere, Ammer, Radimpore.
Soret.	Fanagur, Pacho.
Tatta or Sindi.	Tatta, Sindi, Lourebander, Diul.

The chief Rivers of the Empire of the Great Mogul are, the

Ganges, receiving the Rivers

Guenga. Padder.

Indus, which receives the Rivers

Canda or Kandah.
Persely.
Gemen, or Gemenene, or Gemenah, or Semena.

Chanab or Chenab.
Behat.
Nilab.
Ravee.
Cau or Caul.

And fall into the Bay of Bengal.

And fall into the Bay of Indus.

The particular Geography of the Mogul's Empire.

1. CABUL, or CABOULISTAN,

Lies in the N. W. Corner of the Country. It has Zagathay on the N. Attock on the S. Part of Persia on the W. and Part of Attock and Cassimere on the E. The Sansons make it about 270 Miles from E. to W. and much the same where broadest from S. to N. The River Nilab, which falls into the Indus, and is by some reckon'd one of its Fountains, rises in this Country, as does that called Bohat, which falls into the Nilab. This Country is cold and barren, except in some Vales, and subject to great Winds; yet it is rich, because of their Trade with Tartary, Persia, and the Indies. Thewenot says, the Usbeck Tartars sell 60000 Horses here per Annum, and all Things are very cheap in this Province. Catron says, they have good Pasturage, many fine Horses and Camels.

The chief Towns are, 1. Cabul, Long. 89.

Lat. $33\frac{1}{2}$, according to Moll Catron makes it Lat. 36. and Long. 115. Sanson Lat. $38\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 114. 'Tis a very large well fortified Town, and derives its Name from a Fruit called Mirabolans, which the Indians name Cabuly, that grow in the neighbouring Mountains, with many other Sorts of Drugs and Aromatick Trees, which, with their Iron Mines and Canes, of which they make Halbards and Lances, yield great Profit to the Inhabitants. The Town has two good Castles, was sometimes the Residence of their Kings, and has been successively the Patrimony of the Mogul Princes.

The Country abounds with Boroughs, small Towns and Villages; and they have strong Houses at certain Intervals on the Roads instead of Inns, which are guarded by Soldiers, to prevent the Robberies of the Augans, a sort of wandering People that live in the Mountains of that Name betwixt this Country and Persia, and exact Money from Travellers. Most of the People are Heathens. They have many Pagods or Idol Temples, which they frequent with great Devotion at their Festival call'd Houly, that

that lasts two Days. At this Time they make their Oblations, dance in the Streets to the Sound of Trumpets, are cloathed in Red, and visit their Friends by Companies in Masquerade. Those of the same Tribe eat together, and at Night make Bonfires. This Feast is always kept at the Full Moon in *February*, and concludes by destroying the Figure of a Giant, against which a little Child shoots Arrows, to represent their God call'd *Crushman*, who they fancy appear'd in the Form of a Child, and kill'd a great Giant that endeavour'd to ruin him. *Thevenot* supposes these People to have been formerly Christians, so that 'tis probable by this Fable they represent our Saviour's Conquest over the Devil; for all their Religion consists now in Fables and Tales, according to which they regulate their Lives. Their main Charity consists in digging Wells, and building Houses for the Convenience of Travellers. They supply the rest of the *Indies* with Physicians, who are all of the Tribe of the *Banians*, and some of 'em very skilful. They are Masters of great Secrets in Physick, and apply Causticks to the Parts of the Body affected, by which they extract the Poison of the Spotted-Feaver, &c. *Tavernier* says, the Inhabitants scrape their Tongues every Morning with a crooked Root, which causes them to void a great deal of Rheum and Phlegm, and provokes Vomiting; so that as soon as they begin to eat, they are forc'd to withdraw and vomit; after which, they return to their Vi-ctuals with a very good Appetite; and if they did not practice this, they say they could not live long, nor avoid Dropsies.

2. A T T O C H,

Has *Cabulistan* and *Cachemire* on the N. *Hajacan*, *Multan*, and *Pengab*, on the S. *Candahar*, with other Parts of *Persia*, on the W. and Part of *Cachemire* on the E. The *Sansons* make it about 310 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and about 185 where broadest from S. to N. *Catrou's* Map makes it less. *Ogilby* joins with it the Provinces of *Soret* and *Jesfelmere*, in which he disagrees with our Maps, who make them distinct Provinces, and a great Way further S.

The chief Town is *Attock*. *Moll* places it Long. 92. Lat. 32. at the Conflux of ano-

ther River with the *Indus*. *Catrou* places it Long. 117. Lat. 34 $\frac{1}{2}$. upon the *Indus*, a great Way N. from the Conflux of the Rivers. *Tavernier* says, 'tis one of the best and strongest Garrisons in the Mogul's Dominions, and that no Stranger is suffer'd to enter it without his Passport.

3. C A C H E M I R E, or C A X I M I R,

Has *Tartary* on the N. *Pengab* on the S. *Cabul* and *Attock* on the W. *Kakares* and *Ban-kisch* on the E. The *Sansons* make it about 260 Miles S. and N. and 240 where broadest from E. to W. *Thevenot* says, it is encompassed by Mountains, and enter'd by narrow Passes. It belong'd formerly to the Kings of *Turquestan*, and is one of those that are called *Turchind*; i. e. the *India* of the *Turks*. It is so well water'd by Springs and Rivulets from the Mountains, that it is the most fruitful Country of the *Indies*. These Streams form the River *Tchenas*, by which they transport Goods thro' the greatest Part of the Kingdom to the *Indus*. It breaks thro' a Mountain, and forms a Lake above 4 Leagues in Circuit, in which there are many Islands, and the Capital Town nam'd *Cachemire* lies on the Banks of it. *Catrou* says, this Country is the Paradise of the *Indies*, and there's scarce any in the World where the Air is more temperate and healthful, or which abounds so much with every thing that makes Life delightful. When one passes the Mountains betwixt it and *Indostan*, they seem to be transported all of a sudden from the most scorching Climates of *Asia* to the most temperate of *Europe*. The Fruit-Trees differ from those of the other Part of the *Indies*, and resemble ours, being Pear-Trees, Apple-Trees, Apricocks, &c. The Inhabitants have nothing of the Effeminacy and Idleness of the other *Indians*, but are robust, laborious, brave, and cultivate their Land with great Care. He says, they have an ancient Tradition, that they are descended from the *Jews* transported by *Salmanassar*. He observes, tho' there be no Remains of *Judaism* there, the People being all *Mahometans* or *Pagans*, yet they have something of that Air and Mien of the *Jews* which distinguishes them from all other People. The Name of *Moses* is very common among them, and there are ancient Monuments still

still to be seen which favour the Story of their being descended from the *Israelites*; particularly the Ruins of a Structure built on a high Mountain, which they call to this Day the Throne of *Solomon*. 'Twas in this beautiful Kingdom that *Jehan-Guir* chose to pass the Summer, and said, He had rather lose all the rest of his Dominions than this Country. Several of the Great Moguls built Palaces here, and adorn'd the Province with other Marks of their Magnificence. *Jehan-Guir's* Palace is encompassed with beautiful Gardens, Water-Works, and Canals, which the Sultaneesses filled with tame Fishes, several of which have still Gold Rings in their Noses. *Herbert* thinks this Country to be the ancient *Sogdiana*. *Thevenot* says, it was subdued by the Emperor *Echbar*. The Inhabitants have a Tradition, that 'twas formerly a great Lake, till a certain holy Man cut the Mountains by a Miracle, and let the Water out: But *Bernier* supposes it to have been the Effect of an Earthquake. The Mountains next to the Plain are of a middling Height, cover'd with green Trees or Pasture, fill'd with Cattle of all Sorts, and Game of divers Kinds, but no Serpents or ravenous Beasts; and the Woods abound with Bees; so that this Country may be said to flow with Milk and Honey, like the *Land of Promise*. The Inhabitants bring the Streams from the Mountains into their Rice-Fields, &c. so that the whole Kingdom resembles a Garden of Ever-Greens, cut thro' with Canals, intermix'd with Boroughs and Villages betwixt the Trees, and diversified by Meadows, Fields of Rice, Corn, all Sorts of Pulse, with Hemp, Saffron, &c. and in some Places the Rivulets form small Lakes. They have the same Fruits and Pot-Herbs as ours in *Europe*, but not so good, because of the Unskilfulness of their Gardiners. The Mountains which rise behind those that lie next to the Vallies are very high, and continually cover'd with Snow, appear above the ordinary Clouds, and are always clear on the Top like Mount *Olympus*. *Bernier* differs from our Maps in the Extent of this Country, which he makes but 30 Leagues long, and 10 or 12 broad; by which we suppose he means only the Valley between the Mountains. The Inhabitants are witty, capable of all Arts and Sciences, and make

Household-Furniture, which they send over all the *Indies*. They are excellent at Varnishing; but their chief Trade consists in Stuffs call'd *Chales*, in which they employ their Children. They make them about an Ell and a half long, and an Ell broad, and embroider them at each End the Breadth of a Foot. Both Men and Women wear them in Winter upon their Heads, and throw one End over their Shoulders like a Mantle. One Sort they make of their own Wool, which is finer than that of *Spain*, and another of Wild-Goat's Hair, which they have from *Thibet*. They are finer and softer than Castor, and more valued than the former; but they are obliged to unfold and air 'em frequently, to prevent their being eat by Worms. Some of these cost 150 Roupies, but the others not above 50. They are made in other Places of the *Indies*, but none so fine as here, which is imputed to their Water. The People, he says, have as good a Complexion as the *Europeans*, and their Women are beautiful, which makes them coveted by the Mogul's Courtiers, because their Children are whiter than those of the other *Indians*. The Mountains of *Bember* are high, steep, and black. Some of them on the S. Side have a Mixture of *Indian* and *European* Plants; but those on the N. are altogether *European*. In the Vallies betwixt those Mountains, our Author says he saw Hundreds of Trees falling, or already fallen, upon one another, dead and half rotten, with young ones growing out from the Roots of them. Many of them were burnt, which he supposed to be by Lightning, or by the excessive Heat of the Summer: But the Inhabitants say, they burn of their own Accord when they are old. There are many natural Cascades among those Mountains, and one particularly, which he says is not to be parallel'd. 'Tis a Stream which flows from the Side of a high Mountain, where its Channel is cover'd with Trees: After which, it falls from a stupendous high Rock, with a Noise enough to strike one deaf. *Jehan-Guir* caused a Theatre to be erected near it for his Ladies to behold this admirable Work of Nature. The highest of these Mountains is called *Pire-Penjale*. When the Mogul ascended it, he was followed by a long Train of Elephants, which carried his Ladies. One of those

those Elephants being frightened at the Sight of the Precipice, as the *Indians* suppos'd, fell back upon the next Elephant, and he upon the next, so that 15 of them tumbled down, by which several of the Women were kill'd, and all the Elephants lost. *Bernier* adds, that in less than an Hour's time he felt both Summer and Winter in these Mountains; for as they went up, they were scorched by the Sun; and when they came to the Top, they had Snow, with a misling Rain, and a cold Wind, which made the silly *Indians*, that had never seen nor felt the like before, to run away. In less than 200 Paces he perceiv'd two contrary Winds, one from the N. and another from the S. which he supposed to proceed from the different Exhalations that issued from those Mountains. On the Top of this high Mountain he met a remarkable old Hermit, that had liv'd there since *Jehan-Guir's* Time, and who, they said, could raise Thunders and Storms when he pleased. He had a savage Countenance, and a long white Beard uncomb'd. He begg'd Alms, but very sternly made a Sign, says our Author, for us to be gone, and grumbled at those who made a Noise; because he said 'twould raise furious Storms; adding, that *Orangzeb* and *Gha-Jaham* did well by using that Precaution; but that *Jehan-Guir* causing his Trumpets, &c. to sound in Derision, was like to have perish'd here. *Bernier* says, he saw a strange Fountain at one End of this Province, within three Days Journey from the Town, which every *May*, when the Snow begins to melt, flows and stops for a Fortnight together at Break of Day, Noon and Night. It flows generally about three quarters of an Hour. The Basin is square, about 11 Foot broad, and as many deep. After the first 15 Days it slackens its Course, and at the End of a Month or thereabouts it quite stops till the next Year, unless in great Rains, when it flows without Rule as other Fountains. Here the *Gentiles* have a little Temple in Honour of one of their Idols call'd *Brave*; whence they call this Fountain, *The Water of Brave*; and here Pilgrims come from all Parts to bathe themselves. Our Author did what was possible to find out the Reason of this Wonder, and for that End ascended the Mountain, at the Foot of which this Spring lies, in order to

discover its Site and Disposition; and from thence he forms very rational Conjectures of the natural Cause, to which we refer the Curious. Our Author came next to *Achia-vel*, a Pleasure-House of the Emperor, which is a good Fabrick, water'd round by a Fountain, which runs into the Gardens by 100 Canals. It breaks out of the Earth with so much Violence, and in such Plenty, that it might be well call'd a River. The Water is very good, but intolerably cold. There's a Garden with fine Walks, and Store of Fruit-Trees, with many pleasant Jets of Water and Fish-Ponds. He went afterwards to *Baramoulay*, a pleasant Place, remarkable for its Mosque, with a Tomb of one of the *Turkish* Saints, which they say cures the Sick, that flock thither daily; and for a Stone, which they pretend the strongest Man is scarce able to raise from the Ground, but that 11 Men, by invoking that Saint, may lift it up as easily as a Straw with the End of their Fingers. Our Author says, he saw a Kitchen near the Mosque, where were large Kettles full of Flesh and Rice, which he believes was the principal Magnet that drew the People thither, and the Miracle that cur'd them. As for the Stone, he saw 11 of the *Moulla's* crowded round it, who with their long Vests hinder'd him from seeing in what Manner they took it up. Yet tho' they said, that they held it only by the Ends of their Fingers, and that 'twas as light as a Feather, he perceiv'd they took a great deal of Pains, and apply'd their whole Strength to it. There's an Hermitage here, with a little Garden in the middle of a Lake, which they say miraculously floats upon the Water. The *Kachemirian* Merchants, that go every Year from one Mountain to another to gather Wool, say, That between those Mountains, which are independant on *Cachemire*, there are several Vallies of good Land, which pay Annual Tribute to the Governor in Leather and Wool, and where the Women are extream handsome, chaste, and laborious. They abound with Corn, Rice, Apples, Pears, Apricocks, Melons, and Grapes which make very good Wine. The Inhabitants relying on the Difficulty of their Passes, sometimes refuse to pay their Tribute: That among the other Mountains, at a greater Distance, and likewise independant

dant on *Cachemire*, there are very pleasant Countries, peopled with handsome Whites, that scarce ever stir abroad, have no King or Religion, but abstain from Fish, and reckon them unclean.

The chief Town is *Cachemire*, Long $94\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 35. *Bernier* says, 'tis unwall'd, three quarters of a League long, and half a League broad, situate in a Plain, and about two Leagues distant from Mountains, which encompass it like a Semicircle. A River runs thro' the Middle, with two Wooden Bridges over it. The Houses are generally of Wood, well built, and two or three Stories high. Most of those that stand upon the River have little Gardens upon the Water, which yield a lovely Prospect. Most of the other Houses have also their Gardens and Channels to the Lake, with little Boats to divert themselves upon it. At one End of the Town there's a Hill separate from the rest, on whose Declivity there are very fine Houses with Gardens, and on the Top a Mosque and an Hermitage well built, with a Garden, and Store of green Trees. Over against this Hill there's another, with a Mosque and Garden, and an ancient Building, which seems to have been an Idol Temple; but they call it *Solomon's Throne*, and pretend that he built it. *Herbert* says, this Town is 300 Miles from *Agra*, and 1000 from *Surat*; but he and *Sanfon* make *Shyrenakar* or *Syrenakar* the Metropolis of the whole Province. They say, 'tis an unwall'd Town, 3 Miles in Compass, water'd by the River *Behat* or *Phat*, which rises from Mount *Caucasus*, and runs into the *Indus*. The latter places it about Long. 120. and Lat. 36. *Bernier* says, there are fine Walks on both Sides the Lake, set with Arbors, and surrounded with Aspen-Trees, at two Foot Distance from one another. They are slender, but as tall as the Masts of Ships, and have only a Tuft of Branches at the Top. Beyond the Lake, upon the Sides of the Hills, there's nothing but Houses and Gardens of Pleasure, from whence there's a curious Prospect of the Lake, the Islands, and the Town of *Cachemire*. He says, the finest is that of the King, which is enter'd from the Lake by a great Canal about 500 Paces long, border'd with large Greens, and shaded with Rows of Poplars. It leads

to a great Pleasure-House in the Middle of the Garden, where begins another Canal, which is far more magnificent, and runs with a little Rising to the End of the Garden. 'Tis pav'd with large Free-stone, and in the Middle there's a long Row of Water-Works at every 15 Foot Distance. There are also from Space to Space great Receptacles of Water, from whence issue many curious Jets; and this Canal ends at another great Pleasure House. These Apartments, which are made like Domes, have a Gallery round them, and 4 Gates opposite to one another, two of which face the Walks of Poplars, and have Bridges over the Canals on each Side, and the other two look towards the opposite Canals. The Rooms are painted and gilt, and have Sentences writ upon them in *Persian* Capitals. The Gates are made of great Stones, and two Columns taken from the ancient Idol Temples ruin'd by *Cha-Jaham*. *Bernier* adds, that neither the Value nor the Kind of those Stones and Pillars is known; but they seem to be a Sort of Precious Stone, finer than Marble or Porphyry.

4. K A K A R E S.

Sanfon bounds it on the N. with Mount *Caucasus*, which separates it from *Great Tartary*; on the E. with Part of *Thibet* and the Province of *Gor*; on the S. with those of *Pitan*, *Siba*, *Naugracut*, *Banchish*, and Part of *Cassimere*; and on the W. with *Cassimere* and *Zagathay*. According to him, 'tis 570 Miles in Length, and 205 Miles where broadest. 'Tis the most N. Part of the Mogul's Jurisdiction. Its Towns are *Parhola* and *Dankaler*, but of no Note, and the Province it self is very mountainous.

5. G O R,

Another mountainous Province, is bounded, according to the *Sanfons*, with *Turkestan* on the N. and E. *Kandiana* and *Pitan* on the S. and Part of *Pitan* and *Kakares* on the W. 'Tis 420 Miles long, and 165 broad. *Moll* bounds it with *Thibet* and the Mountains of *Naugracut* on the N. and E. with *Pitan* on the S. E. with *Varal* on the S. and with the *Ganges*, which parts it from

Sambal, *Bacar*, *Jamba*, and *Penjab*, on the W. The Rivers *Kanda* and *Perfilis* rise here, and fall afterwards into the *Ganges*. The Metropolis is of the same Name. The *Sansons* place it Long. 149. Lat. $37\frac{3}{4}$. *Moll* Long. 104. and about Lat. 31.

6. K A N D U A N A,

Has *Turquestan* on the E. the Lake of *Chiamay* and the Province of *Udeffa*, on the S. *Pitan*, from whence 'tis separated by the *Perfilis*, on the W. and *Gor* on the N. The *Sansons* make it 320 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and about 206 from N. to S. This Province and *Gor* are the furthest of the Mogul's Jurisdiction to the N. E. It has a Town call'd *Karakatanka*, which the *Sansons* place Long. $141\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. $35\frac{1}{2}$.

Having thus finished the Northern Provinces, we proceed to the Midland Countries.

7. H A J A C A N, or H A N G I - C H A N,

Is placed by the *Sansons* between *Candahar* on the W. *Attock* on the N. *Multan* and *Buckor* on the E. and Part of *Buckor* and *Sit-zistan* on the S. They make it about 334 Miles from N. to S. and 225 from E. to W. *Terry* bounds it with the River *Indus* on the E. and *Lar* in *Persia* on the W. *Ogilby* places *Penjab* on the E. *Moll* makes this and *Cabul* the farthest Provinces of *Mogul* to the N. W. Some bound it on one Side with the *Patans*. *Mandelslo* says, this Province is inhabited by a hardy Sort of People call'd *Blotians*. Their chief Employment is to let out Camels, and to conduct the Caravans. They will sooner part with their Lives than suffer any thing to be lost. The *Sansons* and *Ogilby* call them *Bulloques* or *Bullocks*. They are Neighbours to the *Patans*, very resolute, and of a mild Conversation, but Man-eaters and Robbers. They till their Lands, and worship the Sun. They have no Towns of Note. *Ogilby* bounds it on the N. with *Candahar*, on the W. with *Persia*, on the S. with *Hajacan*, and on the E. with *Penjab*. *Darviti*, *Texeira*, and others, place it a great Way from the *Indus*, almost in the Heart of this great Empire.

8. M U L T A N, or M O U L T A N.

The *Sansons* bound it on the N. with *Attock*, on the E. with *Penjab*, on the S. E. with the Country of the *Hendowns*, on the S. with the Province of *Buckor*, and on the W. with *Hajacan*, from which 'tis parted by the *Indus*. They make it 240 Miles from N. to S. and 180 where broadest. *Thevenot* comprehends *Buckor* in it, and bounds it with *Cabul* on the N. and *Persia* on the W. *M. Pelsart*, Factor of the *Dutch East-India Company*, says, this Province yields vast Quantity of Sugar, of which they send a great deal to *Tata* and *Labor*; as also Galls, Opium, and Brimstone. The Inhabitants make very good white Cloth and Napkins, great Quantities of Cotton, big Thread, Silk of *Bengal*, Turbans, painted Callicoes, and red Stuffs. They have also some Spices, and Store of Camels, which are transported into *Persia*, and other Parts of the *Indies*. This Country furnishes *Indostan* with the finest Horn-Bows, and the nimblest Dancers.

The chief Town is of the same Name. The *Sansons* place it Long. $114\frac{3}{4}$. Lat. 34. about 3 Leagues from the *Indus*. *Moll* places it Long. 91. Lat. $29\frac{1}{2}$. It lies in a fruitful Soil. Three Rivers which come to it from the Mountains of *Cachemire* made it a Place of great Trade; but *Thevenot* says, 'tis now diminish'd, because the River *Indus*, which us'd to bring up Vessels near the Town, is spoil'd in many Places, and its Mouth full of Shelves. Some Geographers place this Town in *Sinde*, tho' it makes a Province by it self. *Thevenot* says, it has many good Towns in its Dependance, and is the chief Rendezvous of the *Banians* that trade into *Persia*, and the proper Country of another Sort of *Gentiles* call'd *Catry*. They have each a Pagod in the Town, very much frequented by Pilgrims. Their Idol's Face is black, and it is cloath'd in red Leather. It had two Pearls instead of Eyes, and the Governor of the Country takes the Offerings presented to it. The Town is of a small Extent, but well fortified, and of great Use to the Mogul, since the *Persians* took *Candahar*. Since the Mouth of the *Indus* has been stopped up with Sands,

Sands, their Manufactures are carried by Land to *Agra*, and from thence to *Surat*; but that the Dearness of the Carriage has very much lessen'd its Trade, and the Number of its People.

9. *P E N J A B*, or *L A H O R*.

The *Sansons* bound it with *Cachemire* and *Bankisch* on the N. Part of *Naugracut* on the N. E. *Jamba* on the E. *Jenupar* on the S. *Multan* on the W. and *Attock* on the N. W. They make it 435 Miles from E. to W. and 220 where broadest. *Terry* says, 'tis situate betwixt 5 Rivers, which run into the *Indus*. *Thevenot* says, towards the E. of this Province there are high Mountains inhabited by Raja's, of whom some were tributary to the Great Mogul, and others not, because they live in Fastnesses which cannot be forc'd. They rob the Merchants, except they have Guards of Soldiers for their Caravans. The Province yields Plenty of Rice, Corn and Fruit, with good Wine, and the best Sugars of *Indostan*; and in the Towns there are Manufactures of every thing made in the Empire.

The chief Town is *Labor*, which the *Sansons* place Long. 119½. Lat. 34. *Moll* Long. 93¾. Lat. 31½. almost 300 Miles N. from *Dehli*, wherein he differs little from *Thevenot*. *Catrou* makes it Lat. 32½. *Ogilby* Lat. 35. 50. *Herbert* Lat. 32. 15. *Sir Thomas Row* blames *Mercator* and other Geographers for placing this Town wrong, which he says lies on the *Indus*, 1000 Miles N. of *Surat*. *Moll* makes it but 660, the *Sansons* about 900, and all the late Geographers and Travellers place it on the Banks of the *Ravee*, which is only a Branch of the *Indus*. *Terry* says, the 5 Rivers above-mention'd unite into one Channel S. of the Town; that the City is large and well built, and was in his Time the chief of all *Indostan* for Trade. *Pelsart* the Dutch Factor says, it was a Place of great Traffick when the *Armenians* and *Indians* traded from the *Indies* by Land to *Aleppo*; that it was the Staple of Indigo, which was formerly call'd the Indigo of *Labor*, till the *Europeans* found out a Way by Sea, by which the Trade of the Town is so decay'd, that it would be in a manner deserted, if the Emperor did not reside

5 or 6 Months a Year there during the cold Season. It had many Mosques, publick Baths, Caravanfairs, Squares, Tanquies, Palaces, Gardens, and a Castle. The Palace had 3 Gates on the Side of the Town, and 9 towards the Country. There are many Pictures on the Walls, which represent the Actions of their Emperors, who are finely painted. On one Gate there's a Crucifix, and the Picture of the Virgin *Mary* on another, which *Thevenot* believes were plac'd there by *Jehan-Guir*, who pretended a Kindness for the Christian Religion to flatter the *Portuguese*. Many of the best Houses in the Town run daily to Decay. Some of the Streets are above a League in Length. Before King *Humayon's* Time, this City was inconsiderable; but he built a Castle and kept his Court here, and it increas'd so in a short Time, that with the Suburbs it made 3 Leagues in Length. Because of the Number of *Gentiles* here, there are a great many Pagods, some of which are very fine, and all rais'd 7 or 8 Steps from the Ground. From hence to *Dehli*, and so on to *Agra*, there's a lovely Walk set on both Sides with Rows of Trees, already mention'd. *Tavernier* says, the Inhabitants make the coarsest and cheapest Sort of painted Callicoes. *Bernier* says, the River frequently overflow'd its Banks, and made great Havock in the Neighbourhood, till a little before his Time, when by frequent changing of its Bed, it retired a quarter of a League from the Town. *Herbert* says, it vy'd with *Agra* for the Title of Metropolis; and that for 8 Months the Air here is pure and restorative. The Streets are well pav'd, and most of them cleans'd and water'd by Streams of the River. Among the Pictures on the Walls of the Castle, there's one of a *Mogul* Prince, so rich and proud, that he new cloath'd his 100 Concubines every Day, and tore and bury'd their Clothes at Night; that he left *Jehan-Guir* 60 Mawnds of pure Gold, amounting to 3600000 l. Sterling, and 300 Elephants with rich Trappings. Some take this Town to be the ancient *Bucephalos*, built by *Alexander* in Memory of his Horse. *Bernier* says, the Name of that Prince is well enough known here, tho' they say nothing of his Steed. The Court here is more commodious and healthful, tho' not so magnificent as that of *Agra*.

'Tis encompassed with a Wall of Free-stone, mounted with several Guns.

Name, Lat. 33. Long. 129. on a River which falls into the *Ganges*.

10. B A N K I S C H,

Has *Kakares* on the N. *Penjab* on the S. *Cassimere* and Part of *Penjab* on the W. and *Naugracut* on the E. The *Sansons* make it 180 Miles S. and N. and near as much E. and W. The Capital is *Bishar*. *Moll* places it Lat. 34. Long. 96. *Sanson* Lat. 35 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 124. but we have no Description of the Town or Country.

11. N A U G R A C U T,

Has *Kakares* on the N. Part of that Province, *Bankisch*, and Part of *Penjab*, on the W. *Jamba* on the S. and *Siba* on the E. The *Sansons* make it about 360 Miles S. and N. and 210 where broadest from E. to W. *Ogilby* says, 'tis a mountainous Country, is call'd *Nagrakat* and *Nakercut*, and lies the furthest N. of the Mogul's Jurisdiction, wherein he differs from the *Sansons*; but *Moll* seems to agree with him, and places it as far N. as *Cassimere*, to Lat. 36.

The Metropolis is of the same Name. *Moll* places it Lat. 33. Long. 97. the *Sansons* Lat. 34 $\frac{1}{2}$. and Long. 124 $\frac{1}{2}$. This Town is noted for a splendid Chappel, ciel'd and pav'd with Plates of Silver, some say Gold, of several Forms. *Mandelsloe* says, it is consecrated to an Idol call'd *Matta*, who is worship'd in this Chappel, and the *Indians* that repair hither for their Devotion frequently cut off a Slip of their Tongues as an Offering to this Idol. There's another Place here call'd *Jallamake* or *Kalamaka*, built on a Rock near the S. Side of the Province, noted for cold Springs which run from between the Rocks, from whence also come Flashes of Fire, which the Idolaters worship.

12. J A M B A, or J E N B A,

Has *Naugracut* and *Siba* on the N. *Penjab* on the W. *Bakar* on the S. and *Patna* on the E. The *Sansons* make it about 320 Miles where longest from E. to W. and about 180 where broadest from S. to N. 'Tis a hilly Province, and the Capital is of the same

13. S I B A,

Has *Kakares* on the N. *Naugracut* on the W. *Pitan* on the E. and *Jamba* on the S. The River *Ganges* runs thro' this Country, where it forms a Lake, upon which stands *Hardware*, near the N. Side of the Province, and by the *Sansons* is reckon'd its Capital. The Rock in Form of a Cow's-Head, thro' which the *Ganges* runs, lies in this Country, and is worshipped by the Heathens, who come hither daily in great Numbers to wash themselves in this River. The Province is mountainous.

14. P I T A N,

Has Part of *Kakares* and *Gor* on the N. *Patna* on the S. *Siba* on the W. and *Kandua* on the E. according to the *Sansons*, who make it above 300 Miles from N. to S. and above 330 from S. W. to N. E. The River *Kanda* runs thro' it, and falls into the *Ganges* at the W. End of the Province. The chief City is of the same Name. *Sanson* places it Long. 135. Lat. 37 $\frac{1}{2}$.

15. P A T N A,

Is bounded on the W. with the *Ganges*, which separates it from the Provinces of *Sambal*, *Bakar*, and *Jamba*; with *Siba* on the N. W. *Pitan* on the N. *Kandua* on the N. E. *Udessa* on the E. and lastly, by the River *Persely*, by which 'tis parted from *Jesual*, on the S. E. The *Sansons* make it almost 420 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and 240 from N. W. to S. E. *Terry* says, 'tis a very fruitful Province. Its chief Town is of the same Name. The *Sansons* place it on the W. Bank of the *Ganges*, Long. 136. Lat. 33 $\frac{3}{4}$. *Moll* Long. 104 $\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. 25 $\frac{3}{4}$. *Catrou* Long. 135 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 32 $\frac{3}{4}$. *Hakluyt* reports from Mr. *Ralph Fitch's* Voyages into this Country in 1583, That the *Ganges* is so broad hereabouts, that in the Time of great Rains a Man can't see over it; that the *Indians* of these Parts throw themselves into the Water to prevent their being scorched with the Sun; and that the Men swim with their Faces upwards, and the Women with

with theirs downwards. He adds, That there are many Thieves in this Country, who wander about like the *Arabians*; that the Women adorn themselves with Silver and Copper, and have Rings of the same on their Toes. They find Gold here by digging deep Pits in the Ground, which they wall up with Brick, to prevent the falling in of the Earth, and then wash the latter from the Gold in great Bowls. He says, *Patna* was formerly a Kingdom, and in his Time a very long and great Town, the Men tall and slender, and some very aged. The Streets were large, but the Houses made only of Earth cover'd with Straw. The Inhabitants traded to *Bengal* and other Parts of the *Indies* with Cotton, Cloth, Sugar, Opium, and other Commodities. When Mr. *Fitch* was here, he saw a pretended Prophet sitting on Horseback in the Market-place, who made as if he slept, and many of the People touch'd his Feet, and then kissed their Hands. *Tavernier* says, 'tis one of the biggest Cities in the *Indies*; that 'tis 6 Miles long; that the *Dutch* Company have a House here for their Trade in Salt-Petre, which they refine at a great Town call'd *Choupar*, upon the *Ganges*, 10 Leagues above this City.

16. J E S U A L,

Is bounded with *Patna* on the W. and N. *Udessa* on the N. and E. and *Mevat* on the S. *Ogilby* places *Mevat* to the E. The *Sansons* make it 300 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and 180 from N. to S. Its chief Town is *Rajapore*, which the *Sansons* place Long. 135. Lat. 29 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Long. 108 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 25 $\frac{1}{2}$. but we have no particular Account of it.

17. U D E S S A,

Is bounded on the W. with *Jesual* and *Patna*, on the N. with Part of *Pitan* and *Kanduana*, on the E. with the Lake of *Chimay*, and on the S. with *Mevat*. The *Sansons* make it above 360 Miles from N. to S. and 210 from E. to W. 'Tis encompassed with Hills, except on the S. W. Side. This and *Kanduana* are the most Eastern Provinces of the whole Empire. Its chief Town is *Jekanet*, which the *Sansons* place Long. 138 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 29 $\frac{1}{4}$.

18. B U C K O R,

Is bounded on the W. with *Sigesian* in *Persia* and *Hajacan*, on the N. with Part of the latter and *Multan*; on the E. with the Province of the *Hendowns* and Part of *Jesselmere*, and on the S. with *Tata*. The *Sansons* extend it 360 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and almost 240 from N. to S. The River *Indus* runs thro' this Province, and makes it very fruitful. *Catrou* says, it abounds in Corn and Cattle. Its Capital is *Buckor-Suckor*, which lies, according to the *Sansons*, in Long. 112 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 31. *Moll* in Long. 89 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 28 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Catrou* agrees with *Moll's* Lat. but makes the Long. 112. 25. It lies on an Island of the *Indus*, and the Governor has always a strong Garrison in the Castle, to over-awe the *Bullocks*, who are a very mutinous Sort of People. They have a great Trade in *Indian* Cloths and other Commodities, and are all *Mahometans*.

19. H E N D O W N S, or H E N D O W S,

Has *Multan* and *Penjab* on the N. *Buckor* on the W. *Jenupar* and *Dekli* on the E. *Jesselmere* and *Bando* on the S. The *Sansons* make it 240 Miles where longest from E. to W. and about 210 where broadest from S. to N. *Ogilby* says, the *Hindows*, from whom this Country has its Name, are spread thro' many of the other Provinces, and employ'd as Soldiers in Garrisons, &c. being a warlike People, and not inferior to the *Ragaputes* and *Patans* in Courage. They are a sort of Heathens, but eat all Sorts of Meat, both Flesh and Fish, except Beef. They strip themselves stark naked when they pray, and differ in Doctrine from the *Banians*. Their Country produces store of Corn, Cotton, Pasturage, Sheep and Fowls. The Inhabitants are much addicted to Robbery. They dress and eat their Meat in a round Spot of Ground, into which none must enter but themselves while they are dressing and eating their Food. The Women wear Silver, Copper, and Iron Chains, about their Legs, and Pendants in their Ears, in which they make Holes so big, that one may easily put their Fingers thro' them. They wear likewise Bracelets round their Wrists up to their Elbows. Their Metro-

polis,

polis, according to *Davity*, is *Hendown*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. $31\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 117. *Moll* Lat. $26\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 96. but we have no Description of it.

Ogilby mentions the other Towns following in this Country: 1. *Mearta*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. $29\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 116. *Catrou* Lat. 30. Long. 117. *Moll* Lat. $25\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 94. *Ogilby* says, it is a great City, has 7 Markets a Week, and a great Trade in Indigo, Callicoe, and Woollen Cloth. 2. *Rimala*; 3. *Touri*; 4. *Jeiffemer*. But we suppose he confounds this Province with that of *Jeiffemere* and *Bando*, where we find Towns of those Names; of which in their Places.

20. JENUPAR, or JENGAPORE,

Has *Penjab* on the N. *Dely* on the S. *Hendowns* on the W. and Part of *Pengab* and *Dely* on the E. The *Sanfons* make it 270 Miles E. and W. and about 125 where broadest S. and N. The River *Gaul* or *Chaoul* rises here, and runs thro' it into the *Indus*. The Capital is of the same Name, at the Conflux of two small Rivers, which form the *Gaul*. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 121. Lat. 32. *Catrou* Long. 122. and Lat. 31. *Thevenot* mentions the Town of *Tanassar* in this Country, noted only for a Convent of *Gentiles* call'd *Vartias*; of which we shall treat when we come to the other Sects.

21. DELY, or DEHLI,

Has *Jenupar* and Part of *Pengab* on the N. Part of *Bando* and *Agra* on the S. Part of *Hendowns* and *Bando* on the W. and Part of *Jamba*, *Bacar*, and *Sambal*, on the E. The *Sanfons* make it from N. E. to S. W. where longest about 360 Miles, and where broadest from S. E. to N. W. about 180. *Thevenot* says, there are a great many Towns in the E. Part of this Province; that the Ground about the Capital produces abundance of Wheat, Rice, excellent Sugar, and good Indico, with Fruit of all Sorts, and particularly extraordinary Ananas; but in many Parts of this Country Cultivation is neglected. The River *Gemna* rises in this Province, runs by the Town of *Dehli* to the S. E. and then turning Eastward, runs thro' other Provinces into the *Ganges*. This Province formerly belong'd to the *Patax* Kings.

The Beasts of this Province are Camels of all Kinds, Dromedaries, Mules, Asses, Elephants, Elks, Rhinoceroses, as big as the largest Oxen. Their ordinary Oxen are less than those of *Europe*. They have likewise Buffaloes, Stags, Lions, Leopards, Tigers, Panthers, Dogs, Hawks of all Sorts, and a good Breed of Horses. *Thevenot* says, their Elephants are of several Sorts, which go commonly in Troops; and when they do so, offer Violence to no body; but when they straggle, they kill and eat such People as fall in their Way. Some of them are so strong as to carry 3200 Pound Weight. They are the surest footed of all Beasts of Carriage; but it is chargeable to keep 'em, as we have formerly mention'd, so that few entertain them. They are very docile, and taught to do any thing; but when angry or in Lust, are dangerous to their Governors, and not to be manag'd without throwing Fire-works at them. They are caught either by making Pits for them, or by planting tame Females in proper Places when they are in Season for the Male. He couples with the Female on his Back, and then the Huntsmen entangle them with Ropes, lead them to tame Elephants, and break them by degrees. The Females go a Year with their Young, and commonly live till 100 Years old. They swim well, and delight to be in Water, so that they commonly force them into it by Fire-works when they are in a Rage, or have a Mind to take them off from fighting with one another, which is one of the Mogul's chief Diversions. When they lead the tame ones to Water, they go in as deep as they can, and stoop till the Water runs over their Backs, that their Guides may wash them all over, and then they raise their Bodies again by degrees. Some say, this Province was called *Dely*, i. e. Heart, because it lies in the Heart of the whole Empire.

The Capital of this Province is *Dehli* or *Delly*, which the *Sanfons* place Long. 122 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $30\frac{1}{4}$. *Moll* Long. 98. Lat. $28\frac{1}{4}$. *Catrou* agrees with *Sanfon's* Lat. but he makes the Long. 124 $\frac{1}{4}$. Some take it to be the ancient Residence of King *Porus*, who fought with *Alexander*; but that lay nearer the Head of the *Gemna*. The *Indians* say, it had 52 Gates, and at some Distance from its Ruins there's a Stone Bridge, from whence there's

there's a lovely Walk of Trees, that leads to the second *Dehli*, which was the Town taken from the *Indians* by the first *Mogul* Conqueror. It was beautified with many stately Sepulchres of the *Patan* Kings, and other Monuments, which were demolish'd by *Cha-Jahan*, when he built it anew, and call'd it *Jehanabad*. Near the Sepulchre of *Humayon*, there's a Stone Pyramid with unknown Characters, which the Inhabitants think was erected by *Alexander* after the Defeat of *Porus*; but then the Inscription must have been *Greek*, which it is not. The third Town of *Dehli* is join'd to the Remains of the second, says *Thevenot*. It lies in an open Country, on the Banks of the *Gemma*. The Fortrefs is half a League in Circuit, has good Walls, with round Towers at every 10th Battlement, and Ditches full of Water, fac'd with Stone, and lovely Gardens round it. Within this Fort the King has his Palace, and all the Ensigns of Royalty are kept. This third Town has no Ditches, but Walls fill'd up with Earth behind, and Towers. There's a Place towards the River for the fighting of Elephants, and other Warlike Exercises, and on the Side of the Town there's a large Square, where the Raja's keep Guard and muster their Soldiers. Here the Markets are also kept, and the People are diverted by Jugglers, Astrologers, and Puppet-Players. The Court and Thrones are much like those we have described in *Agra*. The chief Things in the Town are, the great Mosque, with its Domes of white Marble; the Caravanfera, built by Princess *Begom-Saeb*; and the two chief Streets, which are wide, strait, and very long, arch'd on both Sides, under which are Shops and Warehouses, and over them a Terrafs-Walk for the Inhabitants to take the Air. These Streets end at the great Square and Castle, and form a most lovely Prospect. The other Streets are narrow and incommodious, and the ordinary Houses are built of Earth and Canes. The Town is very populous when the Court is there, but at other Times very ill inhabited. The Painters here apply themselves to represent Histories, Battles, and Victories, and not lascivious Pictures as those of *Agra*. Their Colours are very lovely, but they make Faces ill. They draw in Miniature, and engrave pretty well; but want-

ing Encouragement, they are forced to do as much Work as they can for Money to subsist on, which hinders them from being exact. Many of the Inhabitants, especially the Raja's, are vastly rich in Jewels, which they preserve from Father to Son, increase daily, and never part with them but in Cases of Extremity; and when they make Presents to their Prince, chuse rather to buy others, than to give those left 'em by their Ancestors. They have a Metal here call'd *Tutunac*, brought from *China*. It is a fine sort of Tin, and frequently taken for Silver. They have also a greyish Stone, which is like the *Theban* Stone or Garnet. They adorn their Sepulchres and build Mosques and Pagods with it. Their Smiths cannot make Screws nor Locks like ours, but form Iron, Copper, or Silver Wire, into a sort of a Screw, which they foulder to the Pieces; and when they open them, turn the Screws from the Left to the Right. Their Women are handsome, and the *Gentiles* chaste; so that did not the *Mahometan* Women bring a Scandal upon the Country by their Wantonness, the Women here might be reckon'd a Pattern of Modesty to all the rest of the *East*. The *Indian* Women have such easy Labour, that many times they walk abroad the next Day after Child-bearing. The Horses of this Country are preserv'd from Flies by rubbing them with Citrul Flowers. One of the most remarkable Things about this City is the famous Walk from hence to *Agra* on the S. and to *Labor* on the N. W. each half League. Half is marked with a Turret, of which there are 70 betwixt this Town and *Agra*, besides little Seraglio's or Caravanfera's from Stage to Stage for lodging Travellers. There is nothing remarkable about those Seraglio's but that called *Chekisera*, within 6 Leagues of *Agra*, where there's an ancient Idol Temple, one of the fairest in the *Indies*, and an Hospital for Apes, to which the Pilgrims bring Food. *Thevenot* says, That this Road, tho' otherwise tolerable, is infested with Tygers, Panthers and Lions, and Robbers of both Sexes, who catch Travellers by throwing Nooses with great Dexterity about their Necks all on a sudden, and then strangle and rob them. They likewise plant handsome Women upon the Road, with their Hair dishevel'd, and feigning to

weep for some Misfortune. Unwary Travellers being moved with Compassion, and touched with their Beauty, enter into Conversation with them, or take them up behind them, which gives them an Opportunity to throw their Nooses over their Heads, and there are always some Men at hand to assist them. In the same Manner those Robbers catch Beasts that happen to straggle from Caravans. The Representation of this Walk may be seen in *Moll's Map*. He makes it about 400 Miles in a direct Line from *Agra* to *Lahor*, but near 500 including the Turnings and Windings. *Bernier* says, the *Gemna* is as big here as the *Loire* in *France*, and has a Bridge of Boats from the Town to the Country. The City lies upon it in Form of a Crescent, and he says he has walked round it in three Hours; so that he reckons the Circuit 3 Leagues. The Walls are of Brick and red Stone, but not very strong. The Houses of the Omrahs, which lie chiefly on the River and in the Suburbs, are large, airy, and so contriv'd, as to receive the Wind on all Sides, especially on the N. They have great Courts, Gardens, Groves of Trees, Ponds, Water-Works, and fine Cellars, with large Fans to move and cool the Air from Noon till about 5 at Night when those Cellars grow warm. They have likewise little Houses made of Straw or Sweet-smelling Roots neatly put together, and these stand usually in the middle of a Plat near a Pond, from whence the Servants water them with Bottles all round. The Omrahs have generally 4 great Divans or Alcoves rais'd about the Height of a Man, and expos'd to the 4 Winds for Coolness. They have likewise Terrasses rais'd as high as the Bed-Chambers, on which they lie during the Summer, from whence they retire into their Chambers in case of Storms of Rain or Dust; and when the Air grows sharp in a Morning, there generally falls a piercing Dew, which occasions Palfies and Stiffness in their Members if they do not avoid it. Their Floors are cover'd with thick Mats of Cotton, spread over with fine white Cloth in the Summer, and Silk Tapestry in the Winter; and in the Omrahs Apartment those Mats are embroider'd with Flowers of Silk, Gold and Silver, and Cushions of Brocard upon them for enter-

taining Guests of Note. The Walls are full of Niches of different Figures, and filled with China or Pots of Flowers, and the Bottoms of those Niches are gilt or painted. The rich Goods sold here are generally in Warehouses, so that their Shops have little besides Provisions, such as Rice, Barley, Grey-Pease, Wheat, Oil, Butter, and the like, which is the common Food of the *Gentiles*, who eat no Meat, and likewise of the ordinary *Mahometans* and Soldiers. They have a Market, where all Sorts of Green and Dry Fruits are sold, which come from *Persia* and other Places, but so dear, that a Melon costs a Crown and an half, and this is the great Treat of the Omrahs. The Melons of the Country are cheap enough in Summer, but not very good, except they have the Seed from *Persia*, which none but those of Quality are able to purchase and cultivate. Their Confections and Bread, and the Meat in the Cooks Shops, are very sorry, for they generally dress the Flesh of Camels, Horses, and Carrion; so that one can have nothing good but what is dressed at home. Their Mutton, Goat's-Flesh, and Beef, tast well, but are hot, windy, of ill Digestion, and seldom keep above a Day. Those who have Money, may have good Provisions, but dear, from the King's Butlers in the Palace. They have no Capons, and think it a Crime to geld any thing but Men to be Eunuchs. They have Plenty of good Pullets cheap enough. Their Skins are black, but they are tender, and eat well. They have Pigeons, Partridges, and other Fowl, and good Fish, but in no great Plenty, because none but the Omrahs have the Liberty to fish when they please. They have no Wine, because it is contrary to the Laws of the *Mahometans* and *Gentiles* to drink any; and what is imported for the Use of Strangers, comes from *Persia*, or else 'tis brought over by the *Dutch* from the *Canaries*; but both are extream dear. They make here a Strong-Water of unrefin'd Sugar call'd *Arac*, which none must drink but Christians. 'Tis very hot and penetrating, like Brandy made of Corn. Those that drink too much of it are troubled with the shaking of the Hands, and fall many times into incurable Diseases. The People are generally more healthy here than in *Europe*, but not so vigorous. *Bernier* imputes the former

former to their Abstinence from Wine and natural Sobriety, and to the perpetual Transpiration of their Pores, and the latter to the great Heats of the Summer, which exhaust their Spirits, and make them feeble. They are obliged for above 6 Months to lie without Covering at the Door of their Chambers, as the Rabble do in the open Streets: But Merchants and those of Quality lie in some airy Hall, Garden, or Terrass, well water'd at Night. In the Day-time the Lords and the Emperor himself go bare-legged, with thin Slippers on their Feet, a slight Turbant on their Heads, and other Garments accordingly. There are no Shops of Handicrafts-men in this Town, because they are ill treated by the Omrahs and Mansebdars, who force them to work for them, and pay them what they think fit. *Bernier* says, at the Entry of the Fortrefs on each Side the Gate there's a great Elephant of Stone, with the Statue of *Jamel*, the famous Raja of *Chitor*, upon one of them, and that of his Brother *Pelta* upon the other. He is of Opinion, that there are almost as many People at *Dekli* as at *Paris*.

22. B A K A R,

A small Province, bounded on the W. with *Dehli*, on the N. with *Jamba*, on the E. with the *Ganges*, which parts it from *Patna*, and on the S. with *Sambal*. The *Sanfons* make it 200 Miles from E. to W. and 120 from N. to S. *Thevenot* includes in it the Countries of *Douab*, *Jesuat*, and *Udeffa*. Its Capital is *Becaner*, which the *Sanfons* place Long. 128 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 32. 270 Miles N. E. of *Agra*, and the same Distance more E. from *Dehli*; *Moll* Long. 107. 20. Lat. 28 $\frac{1}{2}$. but 200 Miles E. from *Dehli*, and 240 N. E. of *Agra*. *Ogilby* places the *Ganges* and the Province of *Naugracut* to the W. contrary to all our Maps.

23. S E N D E, or T A T T A,

Is bounded on the W. with *Persia*, on the N. with *Buckor*, on the E. with *Jesselmere* and *Soret*, and on the S. with the Gulph of *India* and Part of *Soret*. The *Sanfons* make it 420 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and 270 from N. to S. The *Indus* makes several

Islands in this Country, which form a very agreeable Prospect. It lies from S. to N. on both Sides of the same River, which falls into the *Indian* Sea at *Diul*. *Thevenot* extends this Province as far N. as *Multan*; but the *Sanfons* place *Buckor* betwixt them. On the Banks of the *Indus* in this Country was that famous Battle wherein *Cingis-Chan*, the first Emperor of the *Tartars* or ancient *Moguls*, defeated Sultan *Gelaleddin*, whose Ancestors, the *Caresmian* Princes, had for a long Time been Masters of *Persia*, *Zagathay*, and the greatest Part of *Turquestan*.

The Capital is *Tatta*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 25 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 109. *Catrou* Lat. 25 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 112. *Moll* Lat. 25 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 86. 'Tis the Town of chief Trade in the Country, where the *Indian* Merchants buy many Curiosities made by the Inhabitants, who are very ingenious in all Arts. The finest Palanquins of *Indostan* are made here, as are their Travelling-Chariots with two Wheels, which are as convenient as Coaches, and adorned with Pillars of Ivory, or Net-work of Leather, as the Owner pleases. They are cover'd above, and have neat Carpets at Bottom for the Passengers to sit on. They have likewise Hackney-Coaches drawn by two Oxen, which they hire for Half a Crown a Day. The Wheels of their Waggon for carrying Goods are of one entire Piece of Timber, in Form of a Mill-stone, and their Bottoms are thick Frames of Wood. They are drawn by 8 or 10 Oxen, and generally attended by 4 Soldiers. The Palanquin is a Couch with 4 Feet, and Balusters of 4 or 5 Inches high on each Side, and a Stay at Head and Feet like that of a Cradle. 'Tis hang'd upon a long Pole which they call *Pambou*, that runs through two Frames nail'd to the Feet of the Couch, and there are Rings fasten'd to the *Pambou*, thro' which they put great Ropes. The *Pambous* are thick round Canes, 5 or 6 Inches in Diameter, 4 Fathom long, and crooked like an Arch in the Middle; and on the Arch there are Rods cross-wise which hold up the Cloth that covers the Palanquin; and if they be Persons of Quality, the Cover is of Velvet; and in case of Rain, they lay a Wax-Cloth over it. In the Bottom of the Palanquins they have Mats or Cushions to lie or sit upon, and move themselves by Means of some Straps of Silk

fasten'd to the Pambou on the Inside. Some cover their Palanquins with Plates of carv'd Silver, and others have them painted or set round with gilt Balls; and they have Cases for holding the Vessels that contain their Water to drink, beautified in the same Manner. These Palanquins are commonly very dear; the Pambou alone of some of them costs above 100 Crowns. These Palanquins are carried by 4 Men, the Ends of the Pambou resting upon their Shoulders. This Town was eminent formerly for the Portuguese Trade, and it is still frequented by Merchants of several Nations. The chief Commodities here are fine Cotton, Linen, Turbans, Oil of Cocoa-Nuts, Butter, Sugar, Pitch, Rosin, Leather Works wrought with colour'd Silks, which they use for Carpets, Boxes, Cabinets, and other curious Timber-work inlaid with Mother of Pearl, Stuffs of all Sorts, Anniseeds, and other Commodities, which are brought down the *Indus* in Vessels from the other Provinces. The Inhabitants are generally *Mahometans*. Herbert says, this City is so encompassed by the *Indus*, that it is a sort of Peninsula, and is one of the most celebrated Marts of the *Indies*. *Moll* places it in an Island betwixt the Canal and the most Westerly Mouth of the *Indus*. The *Sansons* have two *Tata's*, one upon the E. Side of the *Indus*, Lat. $29\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 111. and the other as before-mention'd upon the W. Side of the *Indus*, which seems to be the Town now under Consideration. *Catrou* has but one *Tata* on the E. Side of the *Indus*. *M. Pelbart* makes it the Port of *Labor*, from which it lies 9 or 10 Days Journey down the River; and the great Ships arriving here, the Goods are sent up to *Labor* by small Vessels. Herbert makes it 30 Days Journey by Land. The other Towns on this River are *Cossampaco*, *Calletallowry*, and the Fortress of *Sevmbeyond Tatta*, says *Ogilby*, which commands the River. The chief Harbour in this Country is *Lowribander* or *Singlybandl*. The *Sansons* place it near the Mouth of the *Indus*, about 120 Miles N. E. from *Lower Tata*, and 150 S. W. from *Upper Tata*. *Thevenot* makes it three Days Journey from *Tatta* upon the Sea, and says, it is the best Road for Ships in the *Indies*, there being no Worms to gnaw them there as at other Places. *Dial* is another Harbour about 50

Miles S. W. from *Tata*, according to the *Sansons*. *Moll* places it about as far W. from *Tata* on *Lowribander Bay*. *Thevenot* places it in the 24th or 25th Deg. of Lat. and says, the Country of *Sindæ* is from hence by some of the Inhabitants called the Kingdom of *Diul*.

24. J E S S E L M E R E,

Has *Hendowns* on the N. *Buckor* on the N. W. *Soret*, *Guzuratte*, and *Chitor*, on the S. Part of *Buckor* and *Tata* on the W. *Bando* and *Ranas* on the E. The *Sansons* make it about 310 Miles N. E. and S. W. and 250 E. and W. The chief City is of the same Denomination. The *Sansons* place it Long. $116\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $28\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Lat. 27. Long. 92. but we have no Description of the Town or Country.

25. S O R E T,

Is a small Province, has *Tata* on the W. *Jesselmere* on the N. and N. E. *Guzuratte* on the S. E. and the Gulph of *Indus* on the S. The *Sansons* make it about 200 Miles N. E. and S. W. and 120 S. E. and N. W. *Terry* and the *Sansons* say, 'tis a very rich and fruitful Province. The Capital is *Janagar*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. $25\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 113. *Moll* in Long. 90.

26. B A N D O, or M A N D O,

Has *Hendowns* and *Dehli* on the N. W. and N. E. *Ranas* on the S. *Jesselmere* on the W. and *Agra* on the E. The *Sansons* make it about 230 Miles where broadest S. and N. and about 260 where longest E. and W. Herbert says, it is full of Sand and Stones. The *Sansons* place the Fountains of the River *Paddar*, which runs S. W. into the *Indus*, in this Country. *Ogilby* says, the Province abounds with Lions, Tygers, Wild Elephants, Opium, and Azure; that the Amazons reign'd here formerly; that they are at present govern'd by a Queen, who when she goes abroad is attended by 2000 Women on Horseback, who wear Half-Boots and Spurs: But how to reconcile this with the Mogul's being in Possession of the Capital, except she be his Tributary, we know not.

This

This Town is call'd *Bando* or *Mando*. The *Sanfons* and *Catrou* place it Lat. 29. Long. 120. *Purchafe* says, 'twas 10 Leagues round in his Time, and cost the Great Mogul 10 Years Siege. *Ogilby* makes it but 6 Miles round, and says, it lies on the Top of a high Mountain of difficult Access, at the Foot of which runs a broad River call'd *Narbodag*; but our Maps have no such River. He adds, that the Mountain is overgrown with shady Trees, where Lions, Tigers, and Wild Elephants, lurk; that the Mogul has a spacious Palace of square Stone here, where he often resides; and near the Palace there's a Cave cut out of a Rock, which is very pleasant and cool. *Thevenot* says, the Town is but of a moderate Bigness, and that the Gates are esteem'd for their Structure and Height. Most of the Houses are of Stone, and it has very lovely Mosques, with a Mausoleum, in which several of their Kings are interred, as appears by their Monuments; and near this Mausoleum there's a large Tower with Portico's and Pillars. *Herbert* says, it is 170 Steps high, and adorned with fine Gates and Windows. *Thevenot* says, the Town lies at the Foot of a Hill, is strong by its Situation, fortified with Walls and Towers, has a Castle on the Top of the Hill, and is encompassed with Walls 6 or 7 Leagues round. He adds, that the Town has formerly been much larger, as appears by the Ruins about it, and particularly of two fair Temples, many stately Palaces, and 16 large Reservoirs for Water. He places it in the Province of *Malva*, of which more anon. *Catrou* and the *Sanfons* make *Asmer* the S. Part of this Country; and the former says, it gives Name to a Kingdom. He places it in Lat. 30. Long. 120 $\frac{1}{2}$. tho' in his Map he makes it Lat. 29. The *Sanfons* make it Long. 120. *Moll* makes it Lat 25 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long 95. The Country abounds with Corn and Pasturage. *Thevenot* makes it N. E. from *Dehli*, says it has *Sinde* on the W. *Agra* to the E. *Multan* and *Penjab* to the N. and *Guzuratte* to the S. wherein he differs from all our Maps, which place *Dehli* to the N. E. *Hendowns* to the N. W. &c. as before in the Description of *Bando*. He includes in it *Bando*, *Jesselmere*, and *Soret*; but still he is wrong, if our Maps be right, as to its Situation from *Dehli*, ex-

cept it be a Mistake of the Translator or the Press, which has put N. E. for S. W. He says, this Country produces great Quantities of Salt-Petre about the Capital, where the Earth is black and fat. The *Indians* fill a great Hole with that Earth, pound it in Water with great Pounders of hard Timber, and when reduc'd to a Mash, they let it rest till the Water has imbib'd all the Salt-Petre. After some Time, they draw off what is clear into great Pöts, wherein they boil, and continually skim it. When it is well boil'd, they drain out what is clear, which being congeal'd and dry'd by the Sun, they carry it to *Suratte*, &c. for Sale. *Mandelsloe* differs something in the preparing of it, for which we refer to him. In the Extremity of this Province Women marry at 8 or 9, and have Children at 10 Years of Age. The young ones go naked, and have nothing but a small Cover over their Privy Parts. The Inhabitants are very rude, the Men clownish and impudent, great Brawlers, but seldom come to Blows, and their Servants are very thievish. They have a Beast like a Fox in the Snout, of the Size of a Hare, and of the Colour of a Stag, with a Bladder under their Belly, that yields excellent Musk; but the Beast seldom lives long after it is cut. They have Pullers whose Skins and Bones are black, but the Flesh white, and the Feathers of another Colour. They are infested by venomous Scorpions, but cure their Stings by holding a live Coal to the Wound as long and as near as they can, till the Poison works out. The Roads being stony, they shooe their Oxen, which they ride like Horses, and govern them by Strings put thro' the Gristles of their Nostrils, and thrown over their Heads like a Bridle, which is held by a Bunch on the fore Part of their Backs, that our Oxen have not. They saddle and spur them as we do Horses, and some of them are very swift. They make use of them likewise to draw Coaches, and some of 'em will travel 15 Leagues a Day. They have some above six Foot high, and others not above three, which they call Dwarfs, and use them for lesser Carriages. They have white Oxen, which are extraordinary dear. He says, the *Dutch* Merchants bought two of 'em for 200 Crowns apiece. They are strong and

and lovely Creatures, and look very well in a Coach or Chariot. Those of Quality put Copper Sheaths upon the Ends of their Horns, curry and cloath them like Horses, and feed them like Elephants. The Town of *Asmer* lies at the Foot of a Hill for most Part, with a Castle on the Top of it, which *Herbert* says resembles *Dover*. The Houses, he says, are well built, but the Town is of small Strength, tho' wall'd with solid Stone, and encompassed with a dry Ditch. *Thevenot* says, the Mountain is very high, almost inaccessible, there being a winding Road to the Castle above a League in Length. There are many Ruins which look very ancient without the Walls of the City. The Town is indifferent big, but scarce capable of entertaining the Mogul's Court when he comes thither. It formerly belong'd to a *Mahometan* Raja or Ragueput, who surrender'd it to *Eckbar*. Near this City there's a Tomb of a *Mahometan* Saint nam'd *Cogeamondi*, which is resorted to by Pilgrims from all Parts, and particularly by such as want Children. It is a fair Building, consisting of 3 Courts pav'd with Marble. The first is very large, with many Sepulchres of pretended Saints on one Side, and a great Pond wall'd in on the other. The second Court is more beautiful, and adorned with many Lamps. The third is more sumptuous, and contains the Tomb in a Chappel, whose Gate is adorn'd with Stones of several Colours, mix'd with Mother of Pearl. There are three lesser Courts with Lodgings, where the Priests read the Alcoran. King *Eckbar* made a Pilgrimage hither from *Agra* on Foot, tho' 200 Miles distant, and order'd a Stone to be planted at every Mile to rest on, and they pretend that he obtain'd Children by this Piece of Devotion; in Remembrance of which he built a stately Palace at *Sicare*, which he call'd *Fettipore*, and design'd to have made it the Capital of his Empire. *Ogilby* says, That on the Road betwixt *Agra* and *Asmer*, at every 25 Miles, there are Inns for Man and Horse, where they are entertain'd by Women, to whom they pay but 3 *d.* a Meal for themselves and their Horses, and their fair Houses at every 10 Miles, which *Eckbar* built for his Women when he made the Pilgrimage above-mentioned.

27. *AGRA*, or *INDOSTAN PROPER*,

Has *Dehli* on the N. *Gualcor* and Part of *Narvar* on the S. *Bando* on the W. and *Sambal* on the E. The *Sanfons* make it 270 Miles where longest from E. to W. and 150 from S. to N. *Terry* says, the Country is plain. *Thevenot* makes it one of the largest Provinces of the Mogul's Dominions, tho' it appears otherwise by our Maps. He says, it has 40 Towns in its Dependance, and above 3400 Villages.

The Capital is *Agra*. *Catrou* places it Lat. 29. Long. 123. *Moll* Lat. 26 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 98. the *Sanfons* Lat 27 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 124. The neighbouring Country is not so fruitful in Rice and Wheat as *Dehli*, but abounds with Indigo, and Manufactures of white Cloth, Stuffs of Silk, Silver and Gold, Lace, &c. which make it one of the richest Countries of the *Indies*. The Palace we have already accounted for in the Description of the Mogul's Court, P. 485. We shall now give an Account of the Town. What some say, that it was anciently call'd *Dionysia* and *Nagra*, and founded by *Noah* or *Bacchus*, is fabulous; for before *Eckbar's* Time, it was only a small Town with a little Castle of Earth, pretended to no more Antiquity than its Neighbours, nor has it any Monuments to justify the Claim. That Prince liking the Situation, enlarg'd it by joining several Villages, and adding new Buildings, and call'd it *Eckbar-Abad*, i. e. *Eckbar's* Habitation. He made it the Seat of his Empire in 1566, which drew People and Merchants of all Countries thither, and particularly Popish Merchants, because he settled the Jesuits there, and allow'd them a Pension, which they still enjoy. He did not fortify the Town, but only encompass'd it with a Ditch, because he hop'd to make it so strong by the Number of Soldiers and Inhabitants, as to secure it from all Attacks. He demolished the old Castle, and built the new one in the same Place, which we have describ'd already. *Thevenot* says, That near the Mogul's Palace there are 25 or 30 other large ones in a Line, which belong to the Princes and Grandees, and form a most delicate Prospect on the other Side the River *Gemna*. There are several other lesser Palaces

ces and Structures in the same Line, which make the Town very long, because the Inhabitants affect to have the Prospect of the River. This occasions the Town to be narrow; so that except some fair Streets, the rest of it is without any Symmetry. The next thing which adds to the Beauty of the Town are above 60 Caravansera's, some of which have 6 large Courts, with Portico's, and very commodious Apartments for Foreign Merchants. There are above 800 Baths, and a great Number of Mosques, some of which are Sanctuaries. It abounds likewise with magnificent Sepulchres, it being the Custom of the Grandees to build their own while they live, or to leave it in Charge to their Sons. The two most remarkable of those Tombs are that built by *Jehan-Guir* for his Father *Eckbar*, and the other for *Tajemehale* his Wife, an extraordinary Beauty, of whom he was so fond, that while she liv'd he kept Company with no other Woman, and did so grieve for her at her Death, that it almost killed him. Her Tomb lies E. from *Agra*, and is join'd to it by a long and broad pav'd Way upon a moderate Ascent, having a high and long Wall on one Side, which incloses a Garden, and on the other a Row of new Houses with Piazza's. About the Middle of this Row is a large stately Gate, which enters a Caravansera, and over against it there's the Gate of a magnificent large square Pavilion, which enters the Garden betwixt two Canals fac'd with hewn Stone. The Pavilion is built with a Stone resembling red Marble, and the Front is very magnificent, having Arches and Galleries over one another, disposed in 100 several Ways, and with admirable Order, but quite different from our *European* Architecture; so that one is never weary with looking at it. A little within the Pavilion as one enters the Garden there's a high Dome, with Galleries round it above, and below two Divans or Alcoves rais'd 8 Foot high. Opposite to the Gate there's a great open Arch that gives Entrance to a Terrass-Walk, which divides the Garden into two equal Parts, and large enough for 6 Coaches to pass in Front. 'Tis 8 Foot high above the Garden, and in the Middle of this Walk there's a Canal fac'd with hewn Stone, and adorned with Jets of Water at equal Distances. The Front of

the Pavilion towards the Garden is likewise very magnificent, tho' not equal to that next the Street. On both Sides this Pavilion, along the Garden-Wall, there's a long and deep Gallery, supported by vast Quantities of low Pillars near one another, where the Poor receive their Alms three times a Week in the rainy Season, for which *Cha-Jehan* hath left a perpetual Fund. As we go along the Walk, we perceive at a great Distance a large Dome, in which stands the Sepulchre, and on the Right and Left there are many Walks thro' the Garden, with Trees on each Side, and abundance of Flower-Plats. At the End of the Terrass-Walk, besides this Dome in Front, there are two great Pavilions on the Right and Left, built with the same Sort of red Stone. They are large square Structures made in Form of Terrasses, with three open Arches upon the Wall of the Garden, so that they resemble high and large Galleries. Betwixt the End of the Walk and the Dome there's a Pond fac'd with hewn Stone of several Figures; and from the Middle of this square Pond there's a delicate Prospect of the Dome, which is very large and high, built of white Marble, and encompassed with abundance of Turrets, that rise gradually above one another, all of the same Marble. This Structure is supported by four great Arches, three of which are open, and one of them shut up by a Hall, and a Gallery where the Priests continually read the Alcoran, with a profound Respect in Honour of *Taje-Mehale*. The Center of those Arches is adorned with Tables of white Marble, inlaid with *Arabian* Characters of black Marble, very pleasant to the Eye. All the Concave Part of the Dome, and the Inside in general from Top to Bottom, is fac'd with white Marble of curious Workmanship and wonderful Beauty, embellish'd with Jasper and other Precious Stones, mix'd with the Marble in 100 different Fashions, and the Floor is laid with white and black Marble of curious Workmanship. Under this Dome, in a small Chamber, is the Sepulchre which is open'd once a Year with great Ceremony, and is said to be extraordinary rich and magnificent; but no Christian is allow'd to enter it, because they think that would profane the Place. Betwixt this Dome and the Extremity of the

Gard-

Garden there's another Terrass-Walk 25 Paces broad, and above 25 high, from whence there's a Prospect of the River, of a vast Number of Gardens, of the Mogul's Palace, of those of the Omrahs, and of great Part of the Town. In short, *Bernier* thinks this Mausoleum deserves better to be reckoned among the Wonders of the World than the Pyramids of *Egypt*, or any thing else. 'Twas contriv'd by the ablest Architects of the *Indies*, and 20 Years a building by a great Number of Men. It is needless to describe the Mausoleum of *Eckbar*, because this far exceeds it. *Thevenot* says, the Air of *Agra* is excessive hot in the Summer, because of the Beams reflected from the Sands which surround it. The Town is very populous, but not able to raise 200000 Fighting-Men, as some have affirmed; for the Palaces and Gardens take up the greatest Part of it. The ordinary Houses are low, and those for most Part of Straw, and but thinly inhabited, except when the Court is there. *Thevenot* says, That some reckon 25000 Christian Families in this City, but all are not agreed in it. The *Mahometans* surpass the Heathens and all the other Inhabitants in Number. The *Dutch*, he says, have a Factory here; but the *English* have quitted theirs, because it did not answer. The chief Trade of the *Dutch* is in Scarlet, Looking-Glasses, Silver and Gold Lace, white Lace, hard Ware, Indigo, and Cloth of *Jelapour*. They have several Houses at other Towns in this Country, whither they send their Factors once a Year; and tho' their Trade be not so considerable as formerly, yet they vend a great deal of Spice here at good Rates, and find it necessary to have some Persons always near the Court, to prevent their being imposed upon by the Tyranny and Covetousness of the Governors, where they have their Settlements on the Coast of *Bengal*, &c. *Bernier* speaking of the Popish Missionaries sent into these Parts, seems to have no great Opinion of them, nor of their Performances, because many of them are ignorant, and of a scandalous Life, and had better keep at home in their own Monasteries: And tho' Missionaries of a better Character might be very useful, he sees no great Probability of their doing much Good among the *Mahometans*, who are much devoted in their Way than the Missionaries;

but he thinks by their Alms and Instructions they might have more Success among the *Gentiles*. He says, *Agra* is much larger than *Dekli*, and the adjacent Country is very pleasant, because of the Palaces of the Omrahs, &c. and the great Plantations about them. *Bouffingault* says, it has 700 great Mosques, of which 6 are set apart for their Devotions on Festival Days. *Catrou* says, 'tis about 9 Italian Miles in Length, but not near so wide. *Tavernier* says, their Houses are built a good Distance one from another, and hid by the Height of their Walls, to keep their Women from being seen.

The Habits at *Agra*, according to *Thevenot*, are as follow: The *Mahometans* are cloath'd as the rest, but distinguish themselves by a particular Coif. The Breeches of the *Indian* are commonly of Cotton-Cloth, for they have no Flax in the *Indies*. Some reach down to the Calf of the Leg, and others to the Ankle. The better Sort wear long Silk Breeches strip'd. Their Shirts hang over their Breeches, are open from Top to Bottom for Coolness, and the Ease of putting off and on. When 'tis cold, the *Indians* wear over it a close Wastcoat quilted with Cotton, pink'd and painted on the Outside with the most lively and durable Colours, and over that they wear a Caba or upper Garment, wider than that of the *Persians*. 'Tis a kind of Gown, with a long Jerkin fasten'd to it, open before, and pleated from Top to Bottom. The Collar is two Fingers deep, and of the same Stuff with the Vest, which they don't button as we do our Coats, but fold it cross ways over their Stomach. They tie it with Ribbons of the same two Fingers broad, and a Foot long. They have 7 or 8 Couple of them, but tie only the first and last, and let the rest hang loose. These Caba's are commonly of white Cotton Cloth for Lightness and Neatness, and are often wash'd. Some wear them painted, but that's not the genteelest Fashion. When the Rich don't wear White, they use broad streaked Silk; but during the Heat they wear only a Caba next their Shirt. When 'tis very cold, they wear a Vest over all. The better Sort have them of Cloth of Gold, or other costly Stuff lin'd with Sables. When they go abroad, they wear a Chale, as before mentioned, which

which is made in *Cachemire*. They wear a Girdle of white Cloth, but those of Quality the fine Girdles of *Persia*. They commonly wear little Turbans; those of the *Mahometans* are always white, and the Rich have them of so fine a Cloth, that 25 or 30 Ells go to one Turban, do not weigh 4 Ounces, and cost 25 Crowns apiece. Some have them mix'd with Gold. The *Indians* wear their Hair for Ornament, but the *Mahometans* shave their Heads. They use no Stockings or Socks, but Shoes of *Maroquin*, shap'd like the Slippers of the *Turks*. Persons of Quality have them border'd with Gold. The *Banians*, who are Men of Business, wear them with Heels. The rich *Banians* cover the upper Leather with Velvet, embroider'd with large Flowers of Silk; but the rest are of red Leather with small Flowers.

The *Mogul* Women are cloath'd almost like the Men; but the Sleeves of their Shifts do not reach below the Elbow, that they may adorn the rest of their Arm with Carkanets and Bracelets of Gold, Silver, and Ivory, or set with Precious Stones. They wear the like on the Small of their Legs. The ordinary Shifts and Waistcoats of the Pagan Women reach no lower than their Middle, and from the Waist downwards they wrap themselves in a Piece of Cloth or Stuff that reaches to their Feet, like a Petticoat, and cut in such a Manner, that one End comes up to their Head behind. They wear no other either within or without Doors; and instead of Shoes, have high Pattins. They wear flat Gold or Silver Ear-Rings engrav'd, and Nose-Rings, which they put thro' their Nostrils, and have a great many on their Fingers, one of which is a Looking-Glass of an Inch in Diameter. The Pagan Women go bare fac'd, but the *Mahometans* veil'd.

Thevenot gives us the following Account of the remarkable *Curiosities at Agra*: The Inhabitants have a Custom to entertain their Friends with the fighting of Beasts and Birds, and for that End keep He-Goats, Weathers, Rams, Cocks, Quails, Stags, and Antelopes. The latter have more Courage than those of other Countries, and have black Horns a Foot and a half long, winding at the Point like a Screw. The Faquirs

and Santons commonly carry two of them join'd together, with Iron Ferula's at both Ends, and use them for Staffs. They catch Antelopes either with tame Leopards, or a tame Male of the same Kind, by fastening a Rope about his Horns with several Nooses, and let him run to the first Herd they discover. The Male of the Herd advances to hinder him, and by playing with his Horns, he entangles himself in the Nooses, which gives the Huntsman an Opportunity to take him.

They have green Pigeons which they catch by Bird-lime, and take Parroquets after the same Manner. They catch Water-Fowl with great Dexterity thus: The Fowlers swim almost upright, having their Head only above Water, and a Pot full of Holes over it cover'd with Feathers. By this Means, when the Fowler draws near they are not scared, so that he catches them one after another by the Feet, and draws them under Water; for they are so accusom'd to dive, that the rest are not surpriz'd at it; and seeing no body, they stay for the Return of their Companions, till they be taken themselves.

They have a Way here of inlaying Gold upon Agat, Chrystal, and other brittle Matter, which our Goldsmiths and Lapidaries have not. They likewise exceed our Workmen in Japanning and Furneering with Silver, Gold, &c. and fouldering Handles about brittle Ware; but they know not how to enamel Gold.

Fettipore. Moll places it about 30 Miles W. from *Agra*; *Catrou* and *Sanson* about 12 S W. This is the Place formerly call'd *Sycary*, but had its present Name, which signifies the granting of Desire, from *Eckbar*, upon the Birth of his eldest Son. He built a stately Palace here, and a Bazar for Trade, which vies with any of the East, and design'd to have made it the Metropolis of his Kingdom, but forsook it because the Water of the adjoining River is unwholesome, after he had spent 4 Millions *English* in adorning it, says *Herbert*, so that it is now of little Account. It is wall'd about, and has a Lake 5 Miles broad N. W. of it. The Bazar is 500 Paces long, well built, and neatly pav'd, and near it there's a stately Mosque. The Top of the Bazar is full of little Pyramids,

the Court within is 6 times larger than our *Royal-Exchange*, and the whole supported with beautiful Columns all of one Stone. Mr. *Fitch* says, when he was there this Town was bigger than *Agra*, and either of them bigger than *London*, and betwixt the Towns there was a continu'd Market of Provisions and other Things, as if one had been in a City. *Thevenot* says, tho' the Town be much decay'd, it has still a large Square with many fair Buildings. The Entrance of *Eckbar's* Palace is entire, and there's a great Reservatory which supplies the Town with Water, because the Springs there are salt. Their chief Manufacture is fine Taffaties.

Byana lies about 58 Miles W. from *Fettipore*. *Sanfon* makes it S. W. It has a Royal Palace, with fine Gardens near it in the Road to *Agra*, divers Seraglio's, and a long Market-place; but the Town is ill peopled. The best Indigo in the Country is found here, and at *Scanderbad*, about 30 Miles W. from it. This Town was formerly the Capital of the *Patan* Kings, and very large till ruin'd by *Eckbar*.

Secandra or *Tzecander*, so call'd, because they say it was the utmost Boundary of *Alexander the Great's* Travels in these Parts, lies N. E. from *Agra*, on the other Side the River, and is the Place where the Moguls have their noble Tombs that we mention'd before. There are many other Towns in this Province, where they have Manufactures of painted Cloth, &c. but we pass them over, because they are not describ'd.

28. S A M B A L, or S A N B A T,

Has *Agra* on the W. Part of *Patna* and *Mevat* on the E. *Bakar* on the N. *Narvar* and Part of *Prurop* or *Bengal* on the S. The *Sanfons* make it about 230 Miles from the E. where 'tis bounded by the *Ganges* to the W. and 120 S. and N. Some call this Province *Doab*, because it is in a Manner surrounded by Rivers. 'Tis very fruitful, and was anciently populous. The Capital is of the same Name, and lies on the E. Side upon a River, which falls into the *Ganges*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. $29\frac{2}{3}$. Long. 130. but we have no further Description of the Town or Country.

29. M E V A T, or M E R A T,

Has *Sambal* on the W. the Country of *Maug* on the E. *Jesual*, with Part of *Udessa*, on the N. and *Patan* on the S. The *Sanfons* make it 340 Miles E. and W. and 120 where broadest from S. to N. 'Tis a mountainous and barren Province. *Narval*, its Metropolis, is plac'd by *Moll* Lat. 27. Long. 104. We have no further Description of the Town or Province, but that the Mogul's Dominions on this Side reach no further. We return again to the W.

30. G U Z U R A T T E, S U R A T, or the Kingdom of C A M B A T A.

Has *Jesselmere* on the N. the *Indian Sea* and *Decan* on the S. the Gulph of *Indus* and *Soret* on the N. W. the *Indian Sea* on the W. *Chitor* on the N. E. and *Candish* and Part of *Decan* on the E. and is cut in the Middle by the Gulph of *Cambay*, which runs N. E. The *Sanfons* make the greatest Length from N. E. to S. W. 500 Miles, and the greatest Breadth from S. to N. about 460. *Thevenot* says, it is the pleasantest, tho' not the largest, Province of *Indostan*; that it is water'd by the *Nardaba*, *Tapty*, and many other Rivers, which make it very fertile, and the Fields look green at all Seasons of the Year, being cover'd with Corn, Rice, and Fruit-Trees of various Sorts, which bear continually. *Mandelsloe* says, it was formerly of a larger Extent: It still contains above 20000 Cities, Towns and Villages, *Herbert* says 60000; the chief of them near the Sea, of which in their proper Places. He adds, that it supplies the neighbouring Provinces with Fruit and Provisions, but suffer'd much by a great Drought in 1640, which it has since recover'd. Their chief Commodities are Callicoes and Silk-Stuffs, as Sattin, Taffata's, Petola's, Commerbands, Ornis of Gold and Silver us'd for Women's Veils, Brocadoes, Tapestry, streak'd Carpets, Quilts, Tents, Bedsteads, Cabinets, Lacquer, Seals, Beads, Chains, Ivory Rings, Amber, Rock-Chrystal, Agat, Indigo of the best Sort, Cummin, Ginger, Mirabolans, and several Physical Drugs. They have likewise Diamonds, but not many. They have

have Store of Pearls, Emeralds, Granates, Alabaster, Red Marble, and Jasper better polish'd than any where else. They have also Wheat, Rice, Pease, Beans, Barley, Millet, *Turkey* Wheat, Flax, Mustard-Seed, Oil, Butter and Cheese, the last being salt and dry. Their Wheat is larger than ours, their Beans and Pease less, but more delicious, especially the Red Ciches, with which in many Places they feed their Cattle instead of Oats, which are scarce in the E. Parts. They sow in *May*, and reap in *September* and *November*. They cut no Grass, but consume it green. They have the same Pot-Herbs with us, and the most delicious Melons in the World. They value Flowers more for their Colour than Scent, except that of Roses, which they admire. They have Flowers call'd *Mogera*, of a delicious White; and *Seampi*, of a pleasant Yellow, which last the Year round, and have an agreeable Smell. Besides *European* Fruits, they have *Anana's* Banana's, *Jacca's*, *Cocoa's*, and *Indian* Fig-Trees, with Vines about *Surat*. The Grapes are not so big as those of *Persia*, but sold very dear. They have Jackals and other Wild-Beasts in their Forrests; but none except the King and the Governors must hunt any that are yellow or black on Pain of Death.

Their Cattle, Fowl and Fish, are the same with ours, only their Oxen have a Bunch betwixt their Shoulders, and their Shell-Fish are best at New Moon; whereas ours are best at the Full. The poorer Sort feed much on Beef and Mutton, and the better Sort on Kids and *Persian* Sheep. Their Winter begins in *June*, and holds till *September*, but not so rainy as at *Goa*. There are two Winds which reign on this Coast, viz. the N. and S. which blow each for 6 Months without Intermission. The greatest Heat is in *April*, *May*, and the Beginning of *June*, which is temper'd by frequent Breezes of Wind; but they sometimes raise such Clouds of Dust, as darken the Sun at Noon.

The ancient Inhabitants are the *Indostans*, who are more black than the *Moguls* and *Pagans*. They are barbarous and covetous, but not very crafty. *Thevenot* says, this Province came to be join'd to the *Mogul* Empire thus: In 1545, *Ebamet-Chan*, a Favourite of their King, *Sultan Mahomet*, being left Guar-

dian to the young Prince his Son, he solicited *Eckbar* the Great Mogul for Protection against the *Grandeers*, who envied his Authority, which gave *Eckbar* an Opportunity to possess himself of the whole Kingdom, and to carry off both the young King and his Guardian. When the King came of Age, he made his Escape, and regain'd Part of his Dominions; but the Mogul made him quit the whole in less than 12 Months, and took him a second time; upon which he cut his own Throat in 1565. Since that Time, the Province has been govern'd by a Viceroy, who has absolute Authority in managing the publick Affairs and the Revenues, which amounted formerly to 18 Millions of Gold, besides the Customs, which produced 800000 Crowns *per Annum*. The rest comes chiefly from the 3d Part of the Arable Lands, which belong to the King, who assigns the Revenues to the Governor for the Maintenance of a certain Body of Horse and Foot, to curb the Insolence of some petty Princes inhabiting the Mountains, and to clear the High-ways from Robbers, which sometimes rush out of the Woods by 3 or 400 in a Gang. His Court which he keeps at *Amadabath* is scarce to be parallel'd for Splendor by any in *Europe*. The Posterity of the ancient Inhabitants are still Pagans, and call'd *Hindous* or *Indous*. *Mahometanism* was introduc'd here by *Tamerlane*. They use the *Persian* Language as much as their own, and are of the same Religion; and tho' they adhere to the Opinions of different Expositors of their *Alcoran*, they both reject the *Turkish* Interpretation with a great deal of Zeal. They are generally of an Olive Complexion, but those to the N. are not quite so dark as those to the S. The Men are strong and well made, with large Faces and black Eyes. They shave their Heads and Beards, excepting the Mustachoes, like the *Persians*, whom they likewise imitate in their Garb, only they pleat their Turbans in a different Fashion, and wear the Opening of their Vests under the Left Arm, as the *Persians* do under the Right. Their Women are short, but well shap'd. They wear their Hair over their Shoulders, and a kind of Lawn Cap interwoven with Gold, the Ends of which come down to their Knees. Breeches are common to both Sexes, and are generally

rally of Taffata or Callico. Over these they wear short Smocks, and a thin Petticoat of Taffata or Callico. Their Shoes are flat soal'd, narrow towards the Toe, and commonly of red *Spanish* Leather. For the rest, they imitate the Inhabitants of *Agra*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Amadabath*, *Amed-Ewat*, *Amadavad*, or *Amadab*, the Capital of the Province. The *Sansons* place it Long. $115\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $23\frac{1}{4}$. 45 Miles N. of *Cambaya*; *Moll* Long. $90\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 24. 50 Miles N. E. of *Cambaya*; *Catrou* Long. 119. Lat. $23\frac{1}{3}$. 'Tis one of the greatest and richest Towns of the Country, has 12 Gates, and a strong Wall 40 Foot high, 15 thick, and 4 Miles round. *M. Pelsart* says, it was a Town of great Traffick when he was there, and imported from *Agra* a great many Silks of *Patana*, with Cloth, Sattins, several Sorts of curious Stuffs formerly brought from *China*, Cushions wrought with Gold Wire, Spikenard, *Assa-Fœtida*, and 100 other Drugs; as also Stuffs of *Bengal*, and white Sugar, from thence, *Lahor*, and *Cachemire*. They export Scarves for Turbans, Head-Dresses for Women wrought with Gold, Velvet, Sattins, Cocoa Nuts of *Malabar*, the Cloth of *Europe*, Lead, Pewter, Vermilion, Quicksilver, Nutmegs, Cloves, Cinnamon, Mace, and Sandal-Wood, most of which Goods they buy of the *Dutch* at *Surat*, as they did formerly of the *Portuguese* at *Cambaya*. *Mandelsloe* says, the *English* have a very fair Lodge here in the Heart of the City, with convenient Apartments and Courts for their Goods, which are chiefly the Cloths of *Lahor* and *Dehli*. The Royal Market-place is 1600 Foot long, above 800 broad, and planted about with Palm, Date, Orange, and Citron-Trees, as are also some of the Streets. There are 4 other publick Market-places for Merchandize. Near the Royal Market stands the King's Palace of Brick; the Apartments are richly furnish'd, and adorn'd with Pictures and Gilding. Over the Gate of this Palace is a large Balcony for the Musick. The *Mansebdars*, who command 1000 Horse each, keep Guard under the Windows, as the *Omrahs* do in the Rooms and Balconies. There are several Towers upon the Walls, but the Ditch of 16 Fathom broad is ruin'd, and dry in several Places. The Castle is very large,

defended by 18 Cannon, and built of Free-stone. He says, there are several Mosques, and that of the *Banians* is one of the finest Structures he ever saw. It stands in the Center of a vast Court, surrounded by a high Free-stone Wall, with a Piazza, divided into Cells, in each of which stands a Marble Statue either white or black, representing a naked Woman sitting with her Legs under her, according to the Eastern Fashion. Some of them have three Statues, viz. a great one between two little ones. At the Entrance of the Mosque there are two Elephants of black Marble, upon one of which is the Effigies of the Founder, who was *Santides*, a *Banian* Merchant. The Mosque is vaulted, and the Walls adorned with the Figures of Men, and various Sorts of Animals. Nothing is to be seen within but 3 dark Chappels, divided by Wooden Rails, with Statues of Marble like those in the Cells, the Middlemost having a Lamp burning before it. The Priest there receives Flowers, Oil, Wheat, and Salt, from those that perform their Devotions. With the first he adorns the Images, and his Mouth and Nose are cover'd with Callico, for fear of prophaning the Mystery with his Breath. The Oil is for the Lamps, and the Wheat and Salt for Sacrifices. He says Prayers over the Lamp, and washes his Hands in the Smoak of the Flame. The City is seated in a fine Plain on a small River, (which runs into the *Indus*) 18 Leagues from *Cambaya*, and 45 from *Surat*, and, with the Suburbs, is near 7 Leagues in Circuit. The Streets are very spacious, but unpav'd, and the Mosques and private Buildings noble. The Mogul has constantly a good Garrison here, to repel the Incursions of the *Badures*, a People living 25 Leagues from the Town. *Mandelsloe* says, there's scarce any Nation in the World, or any Commodity in *Asia*, but may be seen in this City. They have a vast Manufactory of Silk and Callicoes, and of Gold and Silver Brocades; but they are slight and dear; so that the Inhabitants use a great deal of *China* Silks, which are finer and cheaper. When he was there, they invented a new kind of Stuff of Silk and Cotton, with Gold Flowers, which was sold at 5 Crowns per Ell. They deal much in Taffata's, Carpets, Sugar Candy'd or in Powder, Cummin, Honey, Lacque, Opium, Borax,

Ginger, Mirobalans, and other Fruits preserv'd, Salt-Petre, Sal-Armoniack, and Indigo. They also sell Diamonds, which are brought from *Visapour*, with Ambergreece and Musk from *Pegu*, *Bengal*, *Mosambique*, and *Cape Verd*, at 8 Crowns an Ounce. All Merchandize, either imported or exported, are Custom-free, except 15 *d.* which is paid to the Mogul's Receiver for every Waggon; and Strangers may deal in what Commodities they please, but must not export Gunpowder, Lead, and Salt-Petre, without the Governor's Leave. *Mandelsloe* adds, that this City has under its Jurisdiction 25 large Towns, and 2998 Villages. Among the many noble Gardens about this City, which make it look at a Distance like a Forrest, the Emperor's Gardens in the Suburbs, called *Begampour*, claims the Precedency. They are inclos'd with a noble Wall, and adorn'd with a very fair Summer-House richly furnish'd. There's a fine Stone Bridge of 400 Paces long, which leads from thence into another Garden. Both the House and Garden lie on a Descent, with a Terrass-Walk, from whence there's an admirable Prospect into a fine Champaign Country. It has a large Fish-Pond, supplied with Rain-Water in the Winter, and in Summer with Water drawn up by certain Engines turn'd by Oxen. In this Pond the Ladies use to bathe. There is a strait Walk planted with a double Row of Cocoa-Trees on each Side, which reaches to a Village at 6 Miles Distance. Among the Trees are vast Multitudes of Apes, some as big as Greyhounds. They seldom assault any body, unless provok'd, are of a Brown Colour, with a faint Mixture of Green, and have long Beards and Eyebrows. They multiply exceedingly; for the *Banians*, who hold the Transmigration of the Soul, are very kind to 'em, because they resemble Mankind. There are abundance of Wild-Fowl likewise about these Trees, and Parrots of all Kinds, the biggest call'd *Indian Crows*. They are all White, or of a Cream Colour, with a Tuff of Carnation Feathers on their Heads. They are very common all over the *Indies*, and build under Eaves of Houses, but the lesser Sort in the Woods, on the Extremities of the top Branches. Tho' they do a great deal of Mischief to the Fruits and Rice, yet the *Banians* think it a Crime to hinder them

from eating. The adjacent Country abounds with Wild-Fowl of all Kinds, Fallow Deer, Roebucks, Wild Asses, Boars, Hares, Tame Bufflers, Oxen, Cows, Sheep, &c. and their Rivers have Plenty of Fish and Water-Fowl, especially that near the Town, where there are abundance of Ducks, Herons, and Cormorants. Their Water is good. They have no Wine; but instead of that, they drink the Liquor of the Cocoa-Tree, and a kind of Aquavitæ, better than ours, which they make of Rice, Sugar, and Dates. Here are also Crocodiles, Serpents, and Snakes, some of which they say have two Heads. The Woods are likewise full of Lions, Leopards, Tygers, and Elephants.

Mandelsloe says, the Governor of the Town has the Quality of Rasgai or Prince annex'd to his Dignity. In his Time the Governor had amass'd a Treasure worth 50 Millions of Crowns. He married his Daughter to the Mogul's 2d Son, and sent her with an Attendance of 20 Elephants and 1000 Horse to Court, besides 6000 Waggons loaden with Riches. His Attendance consisted of 500 Persons, 400 of whom were his Slaves. The Expence of his House amounted to 5000 Crowns per Month, besides his Stables, where he always maintain'd 500 Horses and 50 Elephants for his own Use.

Thevenot thinks *Amadabath* to be the *Amadavistis* of *Arian*, tho' others say it had the Name from a King call'd *Amed*, who rebuilt it; and that before his Time it was called *Guzerat*, as well as the Province. *Cha-Jahan* nam'd it *Guerdabad*, or the Habitation of Dust, because there's always a great deal here. The *Dutch* Merchants, who trade chiefly in painted Callicoes, are lodged in the fairest and longest Street of the Town. In the Meidan above-mention'd there are little square Buildings about three Fathom high, which are Tribunals for the Civil or Criminal Judge. A very high Tree stands in the Middle, where their Archers shoot at a Ball placed on the Top of it; and there's a triangular Structure across the Street, which resembles a Bridge with three Arches, and near it a great inclos'd Well. There's a noble Caravanera, with Lodges and Balconies in the Front, supported by Pillars, the Stone of the Balconies being delicately cut to let in the Light. The Entry is a large Eight-square Porch, arch'd

over like a Dome, with 4 Gates, and a great many Balconies. These Gates open into a Square of Free-stone two Stories high, varnish'd over like Marble, with Chambers on every Side. *Thevenot* says, the fairest Mosque is that call'd *Jama-Mesgid*, or *Friday's Mosque*, because all the devout People repair to it on that Day. It has an Ascent of large Steps, a square Cloyster 140 Paces long, and 120 broad, supported by 34 Pilasters. There are 12 Domes round it, and the Square in the Middle is well pav'd. There are three great Arches in the Middle of the Front of the Church, two large square Gates at the Sides, beautified with Pilasters, and a very high Steeple on the Outside, with 4 lovely Balconies, from whence the Beadles call the People to Prayers. The main Dome is very handsome, adorn'd with several little ones, and two fine Minarets. The whole Pile is supported by 44 Pillars plac'd two and two, and the Pavement is of Marble. In a Corner to the Right of the Iman's Chair there's a large Jube, supported by 42 Pillars, 8 Foot high each, and clos'd up to the Cieling with Grates of Plaster, for the Women. *Thevenot* saw above 200 Faquirs here, who held their Arms across behind their Heads without any Motion. He adds, that here are likewise several Pagods. *Orangzeb* converted this Pagod into a Mosque, by causing a Cow to be killed in the Place; after which, he knew the Gentiles would not worship there any more. Here's also the Sepulchre of a vast rich Man, who the *Indians* say was a Magician, and the *Mahometans* a Saint. 'Tis very much frequented, and continually fill'd with white Flowers, brought hither by the *Mahometans*. 'Tis a square Pile, has 7 little Domes on each Side a great one in the Middle, and is enter'd by 7 Gates in the Front. Within there's a Court pav'd with Marble, and a Chappel with two Doors of Marble, adorn'd with Mother of Pearl and Chrysal. The Windows are shut with Copper Lattices cut into various Figures. The Tomb in the Middle of the Chappel is a kind of Bed, cover'd with Cloth of Gold, the Posts the same with the Doors of the Chappel, and over all there are 6 or 7 Silken Canopies of different Colours. 'Tis hung with a great many Ostrich Eggs and Lamps. There's the like Building on the

other Side, where other Saints are interred, and near it a Mosque with a large Porch, supported by Pillars, Chambers for the Poor, and a spacious Garden behind. There's a square Fabrick in the Town, noted for the Interment of one of their Kings, in which the *Indians* say the Magicians and Sorcerers converse with the Devil. 'Tis cover'd with a great Dome, and 5 smaller ones on each Side, supported by Pillars; and there's another Sepulchre near it, where a Cow is buried under a Dome, supported by 6 Pillars. Without the Town there's a curious square Well, cover'd with 7 Free-stone Arches. 'Tis 4 Fathom broad, and about 24 long. At each End there's a Stair-Case two Foot broad, with 6 Stories, supported by Free-stone Pilasters 8 Foot high. Each Story hath a Free-stone Gallery 4 Fathom long, supported by 16 Pilasters. The Figure of the third Entrance is an Octogon. The *Indians* say, 'twas built by a Nurse of one of the Kings of *Guzuratte*, and that it cost 30 Millions. There are a great many Forrests about the Town, where they take Panthers, which they teach to hunt, and send them to the King. The Governor suffers none to buy them but himself. *Thevenot* says, the *Dutch* here shew'd him a Beast which had the Head of a Coney, the Ears, Eyes, and Teeth, of a Hare, the Muzzle round, and of a Flesh Colour, and the Tail like a Squirrel of a Foot and a half long. It had 4 Fingers and a Claw on the fore Feet, and on the hinder 5 long Toes and Claws, the Soles resembling those of an Ape. The Hair was long, coarse, and of a dark Red, but that on the Belly and fore Feet Grey, like the Wool of a Hare. It eat no Flesh, but any other Sort of Food, and easily cracked the hardest Nuts. *Thevenot* takes it to be a sort of Squirrel, tho' three times as large as ours in *Europe*. The *Dutch* bought it of an *Abyssine*, who brought it from *Moca*.

Tavernier says, the River here during the 4 rainy Months overflows the Country, does much Damage, and is not passable by Boats till the Waters fall, which is about 6 Weeks or two Months; but the poor People of the Country swim it with Bladders of Goat-Skins tied betwixt their Stomach and Belly. In this Town there are Hospitals for Birds and Beasts that are wounded or lame, which

which are carefully fed by the *Gentiles*. He adds, that all the Apes in the Neighbourhood come every *Tuesday* and *Friday* to the City of their own Accord, and lie on the Tops of the Houses, where the Inhabitants give them Food, to prevent their untiling the Houses, and doing Mischief. The best refin'd Sugar of the Country, which they call Royal, is made up here in Loaves from 8 to 10 Pound. *Ogilby* says, this is one of the 4 Cities which the Mogul honours with his Court. The Houses are for most Part of Sun-dry'd Brick, pretty large, but low and flat. The *Moors* have 30 great Temples, besides many little Pagods. The *Banians* have 12 Places of Worship in this City, besides others in the Suburbs. The *Brahmans* have 4 Churches, the *Armenians* and *Abyssines* one each, and the *Jews* a Synagogue. At the End of the great Street there's a Pagod of one of their Idols, much frequented by Pilgrims and others. The Priests that attend here are all naked but their Privities, wear long Hair, which they seldom comb, colour their Foreheads with Saffron, and strew them with Sand, as they do the Paint on the other Parts of their Bodies with Ashes. The adjacent Country is like a Wilderness, the Highways hedg'd on both Sides with a Plant that has neither Fruit nor Leaves, but has long green Stalks all the Year, the Juice of which is milky, like that of green Figs, and corrodes one's Skin. The Fields next the Highways are full of *Tamarins* and *Ambe* Trees, which bear a Fruit like great Olives. The *Moors* have Multitudes of Tombs round this City, which are more stately than their Houses. There are abundance of Cat-a-mountains both within and without the Town, which do a great deal of Mischief to the Fruiterers.

2. *Zirkes*, or *Sirkesia*, is a large Village, about a League and a half from the City, noted for making Indigo, and for a Tomb of one of their Saints, to whom they ascribe many Miracles. It is built of Marble, with 14 Domes, supported by 440 Pillars, 30 Foot high each, and contains likewise the Tombs of many Kings and Princes. This Place is frequented by Pilgrims, who expect Pardon for their Sins by seeing it. It consists of 3 large Courts pav'd with Marble, and encompassed with Galleries. None must enter the third Court till they pull off

their Shoes. The Inside is of Mosaick Work, compos'd of Agats of divers Colours. There are many Sepulchres hereabouts, which we cannot insist upon. The Indigo Pits here are generally 80 or 100 Paces round, and made of Lime, which grows as hard as Marble. *Tavernier* says, they fill them half-full of Water, and then up to the Brim with the Herb which resembles our Hemp. Others say, 'tis like a yellow Parsnip, and rises 6 or 7 Foot high, with Branches like a Reed. The Flower is like that of a Thistle, and the Seed like Fennugreek. They cut it three times a Year; first, when it is about 3 Foot high, within half a Foot of the Ground. The first Cutting is better than the 2d, and that than the third. After they clear the Stalk from the Leaves, they bruise and stir them in Water till it be thick as Mud, let it settle for some Days, draw off the Water, fill their Baskets with the Slime, and make it up in Pieces like our Children's Tops, or in flat Cakes, and afterwards dry them in the Sun. The Merchants try it by breaking the Pieces, and observing the Colour and Smell, in both which the best resembles our Violets; then it is sifted to separate the Dust. The Sisters stop their Nostrils, keep a Linen-Cloth before their Faces, with little Holes for their Eyes, and drink Milk every Half-Hour, to preserve them from the piercing Quality of the Dust, which, notwithstanding these Precautions, makes them spit blue for a considerable Time. *Tavernier* says, he laid an Egg by those Sisters in the Morning, and when he broke it at Night, it was blue quite through. The Natives are very apt to cheat the Merchants by mixing a blue Sand with it; so that to prevent their being impos'd upon, they burn some Pieces of each Parcel, when the Indigo turns to Ashes, but the Sand remains. The Indigo Fields are left fallow every 4th Year.

3. *Cambaya*. Moll places it under the Tropick of Cancer, about 45 Miles N. W. from *Amedabad*, near the Bottom of the Bay, to which it gives Name, Lat. 24 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 91. *Catrou* and the *Sansons* place it more to the S. 60 Miles from *Amedabad*, near the Mouth of a River which falls into the Gulph. *Thevenot* makes it about 32 Miles from *Amedabad*, says it is as big again

as *Surat*, but not near so populous, and is encompassed with fair Brick Walls about 4 Fathom high, with Towers at certain Distances. *Mandelloe* says, 'tis 10 Leagues in Compass, and has 12 Gates. The Houses are high, built of Sun-dry'd Bricks, and the Shops full of Perfumes, Spices, Silks, and other Stuffs. They make vast Numbers of Ivory Bracelets, Chaplets, and Rings, with Cups of Agat, of which they have Quarries at the Village *Nimotra*, four Leagues from the Town, on the Road to *Baroche*; but the Pieces are no bigger than one's Fist. The Streets are large, and have Gates at the Ends, which they shut at Night. Most of the Inhabitants are *Banians* and *Rajeputs*. The Castle where the Governor resides is large, but not beautiful. The Monks are so numerous here, that sometimes they cover the Tops of the Houses, and throw what they can get at the People's Heads. There are many fair Gardens without the Town, and stately Sepulchres, one of them consisting of 3 Courts, supported by Pillars of Porphyry. Their Hospital for sick Beasts is now in Ruin. In the Suburbs, which are almost as large as the Town, they make Indigo. The Sea which came formerly up to the City is now fallen off half a League from it, which has lessen'd their Trade, for great Ships can come no nearer than 3 or 4 Leagues. The Tides are so swift to the N. of the Gulph, that a Man on Horseback can't keep Pace with the first Waves, which is one Reason why great Ships go seldom thither. The *Dutch* don't come hither till near the End of September, because a violent W. Wind blows all along this Coast in the Beginning of that Month, accompanied with thick Clouds, which they call *Elephants*, because of their Shape; so that it is almost impossible to avoid Shipwreck. The Banks are likewise numerous in the Gulph, which proves fatal to the Brigantines that trade from hence to *Surat*, besides the Danger they run by the *Malabar* Pirates. The Bottom of the Gulph is passable by Chariots at low Water; but then they must travel 3 Leagues and a half in Water 3 Foot deep, and sometimes the Waves overturn the Chariots. Those that go to *Surat* by Land take with them as a Safe-guard one of the Tribe of the *Gentiles* call'd *Tcherons*, with his Wife, because the

Idolaters have a great Veneration for this Tribe; so that if they attempt to rob those under their Guard, the *Tcheron* threatens to cut his own Throat, and his Wife threatens to cut off one of her Breasts; upon which the Robbers immediately retire, because their Tribes would abandon them ever after, as they have done several, who suffer'd those People to kill themselves rather than lose their Booty. The *Tcheron* and his Wife have a Crown a Day for this Service; but sometimes they oblige Travellers to compound with those Robbers, in which 'tis supposed they go Sharers. The Pagan Women in this Town are so fond of Ivory Bracelets, that they had rather pinch their Stomachs than be without them, tho' they make no Scruple to sell their Children for Bread. There are vast Numbers of Peacocks in the neighbouring Fields, which fly to the Bushes when pursued by Day, and roost upon the Trees at Night, when the Inhabitants take them in this Manner: They approach the Tree with a Banner, having a Peacock painted to the Life on both Sides. At the Top of the Stick which holds the Banner there are two lighted Candles, the Brightness of which amazing the Peacock, makes him stretch out his Neck towards the End of the Stick, upon which there's a Noose with a Sliding-knot, that is drawn by the Man who holds the Banner as soon as he puts his Neck into it; but none must kill Birds or any other Animal in the Territories of the *Gentile* Raja's on Pain of Death, from which they don't exempt Strangers, even tho' they know not their Customs. At a small Distance from this City there's a Pagod, to which all the *Indian* Courtezans resort and worship naked Images, and particularly a large one of *Apollo*, with his Privities uncover'd. The old Courtezans purchase young Slaves, whom they carry with them to this infamous Place, and teach them Singing, Dancing, and the rest of their lewd Art. About 9 Miles from this City the Mogul has one of his fairest Palaces, with large Gardens, Ponds, and every Thing else for Pleasure, which suits the Genius of the *Indians*. *Boussingault* says, there are 3 great Places in the Middle of *Cambaya*, and 15 pleasant Gardens full of Mango-Trees, which furnish the adjacent Countries with their Fruit. The Inhabitants

ants are supplied with Water by 4 or 5 Cisterns, wherein they preserve the Rain, for the Water of the Country is salt.

4. *Petan*, or *Patan*. *Mandelsloe* says, this was formerly one of the most considerable Cities in those Parts, 6 Leagues in Circuit, and encompassed with a good Free-stone Wall, which is very much decayed, since the Trade was destroy'd by Robbers, who so infested the Roads, that the Merchants durst not venture to come or send their Goods hither. The Inhabitants live now for most Part by weaving Silk Stuffs and coarse Calicoes. There's a good Castle, where the Governor resides, and in the Middle of the Town one of the most sumptuous Mosques of all the East, the Roof being sustain'd by 150 Pillars, most of Marble. It was formerly an Idol Temple. *Moll* places it on the W. Coast, Lat. $22\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 86. about 200 Miles S. W. from *Cambaya*; the *Sansons* in Lat. $21\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 113.

5. *Byfantagan*, contains above 20000 Houses, according to *Mandelsloe*. 'Twas formerly a mean Village; but the Fertility of the adjacent Country in Rice, Wheat, Cotton, and Pasture, and its Situation in the Center of the Province, has rais'd it to its present Grandeur. It has many large Towers and Temples, and in the Middle a great Pool, where the Inhabitants of both Sexes bathe every Day. This City is not in our Maps.

6. *Deder*. *Bouffingault* says, this is a Town of great Importance, and one of the Keys to the Mogul's Frontiers. It stands upon an Eminence, almost inaccessible, encompassed with very high Walls, planted on all Sides with Artillery, and Brass Guns of an extraordinary Size. He adds, that 'tis one of the most regular Towns in all these Parts.

7. *Diu*, or *Dew*, seated in a Peninsula of the same Name on the *Indian* Sea, at the Entry of the Gulph of *Cambaya*, and is the S. W. Frontier of the Empire. *Catrou* places it Long. 114 $\frac{3}{4}$. Lat. 21. *Sanson* Long. 114. 10. Lat. $20\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Long. 87. Lat. $21\frac{1}{2}$. *Herbert* Lat. 22. 18. Mr. *Fitch* says, this was a little, but the strongest Town that the *Portuguese* had in this Country. 'Twas well stored in his Time with Merchandize, and they laded many great Ships here with Commodities for the Streights of *Mecca*, *Ormus*, &c. *Thevenot* says, it was anciently

called *Alambater*, and *Deira*, *Patala*, *Patalena*, and *Hidaspa*, by *Arian*, *Pliny*, and *Strabo*. *Alexander* took Shipping here for *Cambaya*. *Herbert* places it 60 Leagues S. of *Ormuz*, and 200 from *Cape Comorin*. He says, the Haven is Land-lock'd, and has good Anchorage; that the Town it self is large, but that Christians are not so well belov'd here as in other Places, which he attributes to the Haughtiness of the *Portuguese*. Formerly it drove a great Trade in Opium, *Assa-Fœtida*, *Puchio*, *Cotton*, *Indigo*, *Mirabolans*, *Sugar*, *Arack*, *Agats*, *Cornelians*, *Diasperies*, *Calcedons*, *Amethyst*, *Pearl*, and *Elephant's Teeth*, till the *English* and *Dutch* settled in *Cambaya* and *Surat*. Since which, the Traffick here is mightily decay'd. *Mandelsloe* says, the *Portuguese* have three good Forts here, of which one is impregnable. *Herbert* says, 'tis as strong as any in the East, and was built in 1515 by *Albuquerque*, the famous *Portuguese* General. *Thevenot* says, 'tis surrounded with two Ditches fill'd with the Water of the Sea, the outermost of which is big enough to admit of Ships. 'Tis defended by several Stone Bastions built very high upon a Rock, and furnish'd all round with a great Number of Cannon. He adds, that the Inhabitants have no Water but Rain, which they preserve in Cisterns at every House. *Campson*, the last but one of the *Egyptian Mamalucks*, prompted by *Badur* the King of *Guzerat*, sent an Army which perish'd here. In 1538, *Solyman* the *Turkish* Emperor, set on by the same King, besieg'd it, but with no better Success. His Fleet consisted of 62 Gallies, 6 Gallions, and other smaller Vessels, with 4000 Janizaries, and 16000 other Soldiers on board, besides Gunners, Seamen, and Pilots. When they came before the Town, they were join'd by 80 Sail of Ships of the Country. They landed their Forces, who batter'd the Citadel with 50 Cannon, while the King of *Guzerat* besieg'd it on the Land-side. But the Governor of the Castle made such a brave Resistance, that at length they shamefully rais'd the Siege, and left behind them their Tents, Ammunition, Artillery, and above 1000 wounded Men, besides the like Number who were out a foraging, and 50 great Guns, which fell into the Hands of the *Portuguese*. *Thevenot* adds, that in this Town they make the famous Stones call'd

call'd *Cobra*, of the Ashes of burnt Roots mix'd with a certain kind of Earth, with which 'tis burnt a second time, and then made up into a Paste. They are a good Antidote to expel Venom, if us'd in this Manner: A little Blood must be let out of the Wound with a Needle, and the Stone put to it till it drop of its own Accord; then it must be put into Woman's Milk, or else that of a Cow, where it leaves all the Venom it hath imbib'd; but without this Precaution it will burst. *Bouffingault* says, this Island is 70 Leagues from the *Indes*, 30 from *Cambaya*, and 20 from the Entrance of the Gulph of *Cambaya*; that it abounds in all Things necessary for Life, but produces little Fruit; and that there are several Parish-Churches and Monasteries here both for Regular and Secular Priests. He adds, that 'tis a pretty Town, full of Shops of divers Sorts of Merchandize; and that there are several Steps at the Key 50 Paces in Length, where are two Columns or Pyramids, one adorned with the Arms of the King of *Portugal*, and on the other are three Arrows, which signify that the Duties and Imposts must be paid to the said King. Over against this stands the Custom-House; at the Entrance of which are two Standards with a Cross, a large Court, and a great many Chambers and Shops for Merchandize. The Island is about a League in Length, and a quarter of a League in Breadth, according to *Bouffingault*; who says further, that 'tis the Mart or Staple for all the Vessels that come from *Cambaya*, the *Red-Sea*, the Gulph of *Persia*, *Ormuz*, and other Places of the *Indies*; and that Provisions are very cheap here. He adds, that their chief Trade is in Coral, which is not only used by the *Indians*, but also by the *Eastern-Tartars*, who come hither to fetch it.

8. *Gaga*. *Moll* places it 90 Miles E. of *Diu* further up the Bay of *Cambaya*. The *Sanfons* make it 180 Miles to the N. E. from *Diu*, and 90 S. W. from *Cambaya*, which *Moll* makes 120; yet they differ very little in the Lat. which they make near 22. in this *Catrou* agrees with them. *Thevenot* and *Mandelsloe* say, 'tis a little open Place about 30 Leagues from *Cambaya*, full of *Banians* and Seamen, and is the Rendezvous of the *Portuguese* Ships in their Passage to

Goa. *Ogilby* says, it has a Wall of Free-stone next the Sea; and that 'tis but three Leagues from *Cambaya*.

9. *Brodera* or *Broudra*. *Moll* places it under the Tropick of *Cancer*, 45 Miles E. of the Gulph of *Cambaya*, and about the same Distance S. E. from *Amadabath*. *Thevenot* says, a great many Artizans are continually employ'd here in making fine Callicoes, with which they drive a great Trade to all Parts of this Province. 'Tis a large Town, stands in a fruitful Soil, hath pretty good Walls and Towers, and is inhabited by a great many *Banians*. *Mandelsloe* says, it lies in a large sandy Plain upon a little River, and was built by *Rasia Ghie*, Son of the last K. of *Guzurat*, out of the Ruins of the old *Brodera*, about half a League distant. 'Tis indifferently fortified after the antick Way, and had 5 Gates, but one is stopped up. The Governor has 210, others say 220, Villages under his Jurisdiction, 65 of which are assign'd for the Payment of the Garrison, and the other 135 for Pensions to certain Officers belonging to the Mogul's Court for their good Services. One of these Villages, call'd *Sindickera*, produces every Year 25000 Pound of Lacque, which *Mandelsloe* says is a red Gum that comes from a Tree like our Plum-Tree, and being dry'd and beat to Powder, they give it what Colour they please, and make it into the Sticks with which we seal Letters, or for Lackering of Cabinets, &c. *Ogilby* says, that *Brodera* lies 21 Leagues E. from *Amadabath*, and 30 W. from *Brotcha*. It has 10 stately Palaces, Gardens and Tombs, one especially built in an Orchard for a great Lord and his Family. There are 5 very pleasant Gardens full of Fruit-Trees, Flowers and Herbs; and near the Gate that leads to *Brotcha* is a pretty deep Pool about half a Furlong broad, and flank'd on one Side with a Stone Wall, from whence the Inhabitants fetch their Water. The adjacent Country produces Wheat, Barley, Rice, &c. and Cotton in great Abundance.

10. *Brotcha*, *Broitschia*, or *Barach*, on the same Side of the Bay. The *Sanfons* and *Moll* place it on a little River that runs into the Bay. The latter makes it 95 Miles S. of *Amadabath*, 75 S. W. of *Broudra*, and 60 N. of *Surat*: The former about 43 Miles from *Surat*, and 75 S. of *Cambaya*. It lies, according

according to them, betwixt Lat. 21 and 22. *Herbert* makes the Distance from *Surat* but 34 Miles, that from *Cambaya* but 54, and 124 from *Amadabath*. He says, it lies in a good Soil on a Hill, and seems so strong both by Art and Nature, that one would think it impregnable at first View. The Inhabitants are numerous and industrious, and the Buildings generally low. He adds, that formerly *Brodera*, and several other Towns at a great Distance, depended on it. *Mandelsloe* says, it has Free-stone Walls about 3 Fathom high, flank'd with great round Towers, two large Gates to the Land-side, as many lesser ones upon the River, and is reckon'd one of the strongest Fortresses in the *Indies*. All Goods that pass thro' it pay 2 per Cent. There are a great many Callico-Weavers here, who make the best in the Province. The Fields for about 6 or 7 Leagues round the Town are very plain, and yield a great deal of Rice, Wheat, Barley, and Cotton. There are fruitful Mountains on the S. W. call'd *Pindatsche*, which produce abundance of Agat; and in the Way from hence to *Amadabath* is the Sepulchre of a *Mahometan* Saint, whither they go in Pilgrimage with Padlocks on their Mouths, and Chains on their Arms, till they have perform'd their Vows. *Thevenot* says, That the Fort, which is large and square, stands by its self on the Top of the Hill, and that the Town lies upon one Side, and at the Foot of it, in which last Part are the Markets in one great Street, where they also make the *Bastra's*, a long fine Sort of Cotton Stuffs, of which great Plenty are sold in the *Indies*. Here are divers Mosques and Pagods, and Callicoes are brought thither from all Parts to be whiten'd, because of the Excellency of their Water. Their chief Trade is in Agats. The *Dutch* have a Factor, and the *English* a fair House here. There are many Mountebanks or Conjurors, who wander up and down with their Wives and Children like Gypsies; and in the Neighbourhood are great Numbers of Peacocks. *Dr. Fryar* says, 'tis the Thoroughfare to *Lahor*, *Dehli*, *Agra*, and *Amadabad*, and was the Metropolis of the Province of *Cambaya* before it was annex'd to the Empire of the Moguls. It was dismantled for refusing Passage to *Cha-Jehan*; but the Ruins shew that 'twas doubly wall'd and trench'd,

and had 9 Gates. He adds, that the River here is broad, swift, and deep, but choak'd up with Sand in many Places: Nevertheless good Pilots bring up stout Vessels to the Walls of the City, where they load Salt and Corn. *Ogilby* says, a strong Guard is kept in many Places on the Land-side, without whose Leave none can pass.

Thevenot says, *Debca*, 14 Leagues N. is a little Town formerly inhabited by *Cannibals*, who sold Man's Flesh publicly in their Shambles, and now by Robbers; so that Passengers must be in Arms, and continually on their Guard while here.

11. *Surat*, on the N. Side of the *Tapti*. *Moll* places it Long. 90. Lat. 21 $\frac{1}{2}$. the *Sansons* Long. 116 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 20 $\frac{2}{3}$. *Catrou* Lat. 21. *Moll* makes it 122 Miles S. E. from *Cambaya*. *Herbert* says, it is the old *Maxiris* of *Ptolomy*. 'Tis a Town of the greatest Trade and Note in *India*. The adjacent Soil is sandy, the Air hot, but moist betwixt June and September, and mix'd with Wind and Thunder; and for the other 8 Months, it either scorches or freezes. It was burnt by the *Portuguese*, and taken afterwards in 1566 by the Great Mogul's Army. The River here is as broad as the *Thames* at *Windsor*. The Houses are of Carv'd Wood or Sun-dry'd Bricks, and flat at Top. Those belonging to the *English* and *Dutch* are more stately than the rest. The Suburbs have 3 Gates, near one of which there's a Free-stone Cistern with 100 Angles, and about a Mile in Compass, which preserves Rain-Water. The Founder's Sepulchre is in the Middle of it. The City is square, and on the Land-side has a good Stone Rampart, with fair Gardens. The Harbour is at the Village of *Swalley*. *Moll* places it 30 Miles N. W. from the Town, and higher up in the Bay. They that go to it by Land cross the River at the Town. All Ships formerly anchor'd here; but to prevent the Running of Goods, none but the *English* and *Dutch* have been allow'd that Privilege since 1666. They have each a Harbour of their own, with Warehouses, Gardens, and Burial-places, which gives 'em an Opportunity of running Goods at Pleasure, and the Governors may with great Ease carry off small Parcels in their Coaches. While Ships lie here, which is commonly from September to March, the *Banians*, *Persians*, *Armenians*, and *Turks*, pitch their Straw-

Tents along the Coast like a Fair, where they sell Callicoes, China, Sattin, Porcelaine, Cabinets of Mother of Pearl, Ebony, Ivory, Agats, Turquoises, Heliotropes, Cornelians, Rice, Sugar, Plantanes, Arack, &c. and there are Numbers of Boys who for 2 d. a Day serve as Interpreters, go on Errands, &c. but will not eat or drink with Christians. *Thevenot* says, That the Ships of other Nations, since this Prohibition, lie at the Bar, 12 Miles below *Surat*, because Vessels of Burden cannot enter the River till unloaded, and then must wait for a Spring-Tide; but small Vessels go up to the Town. When a Ship comes to the Bar, the Master must go ashore to acquaint the Custom-House Officers, who immediately search him, and send Waiters with Boats to bring the Men and Goods ashore. The Waiters have 1 s. 6 d. and the Boatmen 15 d. for every Passenger. If the Custom-House be shut, they are kept in the Boats strictly guarded till it be open, which is from 10 in the Morning till Noon, when one Bark advances at a time to the Key, where Centinels observe all that go in or come out of the Boats; and there are Fellows at hand with great Canes to make a Lane for the Passengers, who are strictly searched before the Chief Officer in the Custom-House, who takes 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ per Cent. for what Gold and Silver they have about them, and dismisses them till next Day, when they must come to own their Goods, for which the *English* pay 3 $\frac{3}{4}$, the *Dutch* 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ per Cent. other Christians 4, and the *Banians* 5. The Officers sometimes make them stay a Month before they clear them, and make them part with what Goods they have a Mind to at their own Price. *Lockyer* says, they have no Book of Rates, but charge all Things *ad Valorem*. *Dr. Fryar* says, they punish those who defraud the Customs by Corporal Punishment with a great Whip, and that one hangs at the Landing place in *Terror*, but don't confiscate their Goods. The Entrance to the Harbour of *Swally* is narrow, about 500 Paces broad, sandy at Bottom, and full of Banks, which are almost dry at low Water. It is 7 Fathom deep at high Water, and 5 at Ebb. Many Goods are sent by Land from *Swally* to *Surat*, because of the Badness of the Harbour. There's a great Number of Gardens, Fruit-

Trees, and white Summer-Houses, about the Town. There are People of most Nations here, but the *Moguls* are most numerous, and the *English* and *Dutch* the most considerable of all Foreigners. The former make this their chief Place of Traffick in the *Indies*, and most of their Ships that come into these Parts touch here. All their other Factories are accountable to the Chief Director here; but *Lockyer* says, the *Europeans* don't drive so great a Trade here as those of the East. The Walls of the City were formerly of Mud, but now of Brick, and low. The Castle lies so near, that it cannot much annoy the Town by Cannon. *Rennefort* says, the Town is as big as *Roan* in *Normandy*, but was formerly much larger. 'Tis so populous from *January* to *April*, the Season when Ships arrive here, that 'tis hard to get Lodgings in the City or Suburbs. Some of the Inhabitants are so rich, that *Thevenot* says he knew a *Banian* worth 8 Millions; and *Lockyer*, that he knew a *Moor* that had 15 Sail of Ships from 100 to 500 Tun each. The former says, there were 100 Catholick Families here in his Time. The Castle was founded by *Tamerlane*, defends the Entry of the River, and has a Draw-Bridge over it. 'Tis Four-square, and has a large Tower at each Corner mounted with Cannon. The Ditch on three Sides is filled with the Sea, and on the 4th by the River. The Revenues of the Province are kept here, and the Governor is chang'd once in 3 Years. The principal Gate opens to the Market-place. The Garrison consists of 300 Men, and the Governor is independant on him of the Town, and must not go beyond a Garden near the Bridge on Pain of Death. Building is dear here, because the Materials are scarce, and brought from afar. The Houses are cover'd with Tiles made half-round, and half an Inch thick, but ill burnt, so that they are laid double. They are fasten'd to *Bambou's* instead of Laths. The meaner Houses are of Canes cover'd with Palm-Branches. The Streets are large and strait, have Shops on both Sides, but are not pav'd. There are no publick Buildings of Note, but many good Houses. The Christians and *Mahometans* eat Cow-Beef, that of the Oxen not being good, because they are employ'd in tilling the Ground and Carriages. They have

have good Mutton, Tame and Wild Fowl of all Sorts, and season them with Oil of Wild Saffron, reckon'd the best in the *Indies*. They have some Grapes, but not good, of which the *Dutch* make a tart Wine. They make a Strong-Water of black Sugar, and the Bark of a Tree they call *Baboul*. They make others by distilling Tarry, Rice, Sugar, and Dates. They make Vinegar of black Sugar infus'd in Water, mix'd with split Raisins; but the best is mingled with Tarry, and set to infuse in the Sun. This Place is the Staple for all the Commodities of *Europe*, *India*, and *China*; and besides what is sold at the Harbour above-mentioned, they deal in Diamonds, Rubies, Pearl, all the other Precious Stones of the East, Musk, Amber, Myrrh, Incense, Manna, Sal-Ammoniac, Quicksilver, Lacque, the Root *Roenas*, with all Sorts of Spices, Fruits and Drugs. *Lockyer* says, they are expert in Ship-Building, and chuse the *English* Models before the *Dutch*. They build with a lasting Timber call'd *Teak*, don't caulk the Seams as we do, but rabbet the Planks, and join them dextrously by Damar and Oakham. They have Wells betwixt Decks for their fresh Water. The Cocoa-Tree affords them Cordage; but they have their Anchors and Guns from *Europe*. They sometimes use *English* Pilots, but are always mann'd with *Lascars*, who are Sailors fit for that Climate, hir'd cheap, and easily maintain'd. *Lockyer* says, That upon a Disgust, when he was there, the *Dutch* blocked up the River with a Squadron of Men of War, which brought the Inhabitants to their Terms; That the Old and New *English East-India* Companies have separate Houses here, tho' the United Trade is manag'd in the new Factory by a President and Council, who have Factors under them that live in good Credit. He adds, there are other *English* Merchants who trade here independant of the Company, under the Protection of the Government. *Dr. Fryar* says, the *English* House is partly the Emperor's Gift, and partly hired. 'Tis built of Stone and Timber, with excellent Carving, but no Figures of Animals. The Floors are made of the best Plaster, half a Yard thick. They have upper and lower Galleries or Terrass-Walks, with a neat Oratory, and a convenient Place for Dining. The President has spa-

cious Lodgings, with pleasant Tanks, Yards, and Hummums; but most of the Gardens are in the Suburbs. The *English* had a neat one without the Town; but *Seva Gi* in a late Incurfion destroy'd it. The Factory is known by the *English* Flag display'd at Top. There are 4 chief Officers here belonging to the *English*, viz. the Accomptant, who is next to the President, manages the General Accompts of all the *English* Factories in *India*, and signs every Thing; but the Broker keeps the Cash. Next to the Accomptant is the Warehouse-keeper, who registers all *European* Goods that are vend'd, and receives the Eastern Commodities that are bought here. Under him is the Purser-Marine, who gives an Account of Goods imported and exported, pays the Seamen, provides Waggons and Porters, and looks after the Ships Tackling and Stores. Lastly, the Secretary, who models all Consultations, writes all Letters, carries them to the President and Council to be perus'd and sign'd, keeps the Company's Seal, records all Transactions, and sends Copies of them to the Company; but none of these can act without the President's Approbation, who alone regulates all the *English* Affairs in *India*, issues out Orders, disposes of Places, and manages the Council. The Company's Servants are Merchants, Factors, and Writers. They take Bluecoat Boys Apprentices for 7 Years, and employ them afterwards upon giving Security. The Writers are obliged to serve 5 Years for 10 *l. per Annum*, and give 500 *l.* Bond for their good Behaviour. After that, they commence Factors, and rise higher according to Seniority or Favour, must give 1000 *l.* Bond, have their Salary augmented to 20 *l. per Annum* for 3 Years, and then entering into new Indentures, are made Senior Factors; and lastly, after 3 Years more, they are promoted to be Merchants, and out of them are chosen the Chiefs of Factories, as Places fall, and they are allow'd 40 *l. per Annum*, besides Lodgings and Diet. In their several Seignories they behave themselves according to the Fundamentals of *Surat*, which are also a Model to the Under-Factories. Afterwards, by the President's Leave, they are sworn in course Members of the Grand Council at *Surat*, which consists of about 5 in Number, besides the President, who must

must always reside there. The President is chosen by the Company: His Salary is 500*l.* *per Annum*, Half paid here, and the other Half reserv'd to be paid at Home; and in case of Misdemeanor, to make Satisfaction, besides a Bond of 5000*l.* Security. The Accomptant has 72*l.* *per Annum*, 50*l.* paid here, and the other at Home. The rest are half paid here, half at Home, except the Writers, who have their whole Pay here. Out of the Council are elected the Deputy-Governor of *Bombaim*, and the Agent of *Persia*. Thô the Company, to encourage young Men, keep a Master to learn them to write and read the Language, and give them an Annuity when perfect, yet very few attain it; so that the Company are obliged to employ *Banians* for Brokers, and allow them 2 *per Cent.* on all Bargains, besides what they get secretly. There belong 20 Persons to this Factory, including those at *Swally*, with a Parson, a Surgeon, and when a President is here a Guard of *English* Soldiers, consisting of a double File, commanded by a Serjeant. The Deputy here in the Doctor's Time was attended by 40 Moors and a Flagman, who carry *St. George's* Colours, fasten'd to a Silver Partisan. The Bridles of his Horses were of Silver, and he had Furniture for the Gentlemen of his House, and Coaches for the Ladies and Council. The President was carried in a Palanquin, with Trumpets, a Horse of State led before him, and a Fan of Ostrich Feathers to keep off the Sun. The rest were attended according to their Quality. They export Cloth to *Bantam*, and import Sugar, Tea, Porcellane, Lacker'd Ware, Quick-silver, Tuthinag, and Copper, from *China*; Coureys and little Sea-Shells from *Siam* and the *Philippine* Islands; Gold and Elephant's Teeth from *Sumatra*, in Exchange of Corn; also Drugs and *Carmania* Wool from *Persia*, and Coffee from *Moca*. The Inland Factories subject to this are *Amadabath*, whence they bring Silks and Gold Atlases; *Agra*, from whence comes Indigo, *Chuperly*, coarse Cloth, *String* Chints; and *Barock*, from whence they have *Basta's*, broad and narrow, *Dimities*, and other fine Callicoës: *Bombaim* and *Rajapore* on the Coast, whither they trade for Salloos; *Carnear* for Dunga-rees and the heaviest Pepper; *Calicut* for Spice, *Ambergreece*, *Granats*, *Opium*, and

Salt-Petre: All which, after the *Europe* Ships have unladen at *Surat*, they go down to fetch, and bring up before the *Caphala's* from the Country come in with their Wares. The Doctor observes, that this Trade is manag'd by a Company better than by Free Traders, and that the latter, who are permitted at *Bombaim*, are greater Slaves than their Servants; and thô the Charge of the Company has been very great, yet not so much as that of the *Hollanders*. *Sir Geo. Oxendine* was President when *Seva-Gi* plunder'd *Surat*. He made such a brave Defence, that the Great Mogul offer'd him a Robe of Honour, with an Abatement of the Company's Customs to 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ *per Cent.* Upon which his Masters gave him a Gold Medal with this Device:

Non minor est virtus quam quærere parta tueri.

Mr. Gerard Aungier, afterwards President, gave *Seva-Gi* a second Repulse, when the Governor of the Province and Town were afraid to shew their Heads, and sav'd the Castle and the *English* House, thô the Enemy had sprung a Mine to blow up the Castle, and set Fire to the rest of the City. The Doctor says, That in the Extent of the Presidency, there are 100 Company's Servants continually in the Country, and all Ships during their Stay are under its Command. If Offenders are refractory, they are dismissed and sent Home; but in case of Murder or other Capital Crimes, they are sent to *Bombaim*, and try'd according to the Laws of *England*. The *Dutch* have a Factory here, where they sell the Spices imported from *Batavia*, for which they send back coarse Cloth for their Planters, or to be sold to the *Malayans*, and the rest in *Roupies*; so that the Doctor observes, the *English* are of most Advantage to the Inhabitants, and fill the Custom-House with the best Commodities. He adds, that the *French* have a Factory here, better stor'd with *Monsieurs* than Cash, tho' they live well, borrow Money, make a Show, and have a Convent of *Capuchins*.

The Doctor says, here are a Sort of sturdy *Musselmen* Beggars, who if they see a Moor or Christian well habited, and mounted on Horseback, fall presently to question the Almighty why he suffers him to go a-foot

a-foot and in Rags, and the Unbeliever to vaunt it thus. Some of them, especially if they have made a Pilgrimage to *Meca* and to *Mahomet's* Tomb, will kill such Christians as they meet if they can. The rest of the Inhabitants are very respectful and orderly, except the Seamen and Soldiers, who when drunk are not to be opposed; but if left to themselves, they many times cool their Fury by cutting and flashing their own Bodies. The Moor Merchants in this Town have several noble lofty Houses, flat at Top, and terrass'd with Plaster. The King of *Bantam's* Broker has a spacious costly Fabrick, but ill contriv'd, as are most of the Houses of the *Banians*, who chuse to live in low Hovels two or three Families together, with their Cattle. Glass being dear, their Windows are made like Folding-Doors, skreen'd with Lattises of Wood, or made of Ising-Glass and Oyster-Shells. The Governor is attended every Morning by 300 Foot with Fire-Arms, three Elephants, 40 Horsemen, 24 Banners, and a large Retinue of the Cazy, who is always present to assist him in Points of Law. He has also great Kettle-Drums, and Trumpets like our Speaking ones. He keeps 1500 Men in Pay, with Matchlocks, Swords and Javelins; 200 Horse, with Quivers of Arrows before them, Lances at their Right Stirrup, and great Swords with Bucklers hanging over their Shoulders. Next to the Governor in the Executive Power is the Cateval, who, after the Keys of the Gates are carried to the Governor at Night, scowrs the Streets with a Guard of near 200 Men, takes an Account of those who are out late, and carries House-breakers and all lewd Persons to Prison. He is attended with Drums, Trumpets, and Flambeaux, and his Crew shout and hallow. He and his Companions ride in Coaches or Palanquins. He seizes and imprisons Debtors, and punishes Offenders. The Custom-House, which stands near the Market, has a good Front. Over against it there's a stately Entrance into the Mint, whither all Bankers repair for the Proof of Silver and Gold, which are purer from Allay at this Place than any where else. The Doctor says, there are several Remains of *Sera-Gi's* Fury still to be seen in the City; and that when they built the new Walls, they made six

Gates, with two Towers at each, barb'd them with Iron Spikes to keep off Elephants, rais'd 36 Bastions with 6 Guns each, and Spiked-Timber on the Top to annoy Sca- lers. *M. Rennefort* says, That the Governor having taken two Brass Guns from the *French* Factory, which the President order'd to be planted before his House, in Imitation of the *Dutch*, the *French* threaten'd to send for Cannon from their Ships to batter the City, which obliged the Governor to restore the two Guns; for he knew the *Mogul* did not allow him to molest any that traded in his Empire. This bold Action procur'd more Respect to the *French* than before, and they obtain'd Precedency of the *Dutch*, which made the silly *Indians* believe that the *French* King gave Laws to all *Europe*. The same Author says, That the Inhabitants, to secure their Money from Thieves, have Wells under their Beds, shut up with great Stones, Iron Bars, and strong Padlocks.

Dr. Fryar adds, That there are many Tombs and Out-Walks about the Town, where they have Pagods, and bury the *Mus- sulmen* with their Heels upwards; and at *Pulpara*, about two Miles from *Surat*, there is a Seminary of *Brachmins*, who superintend the Devotions of the Heathens, and especially the Women when they wash. They burn their Dead in this Place, and throw their Ashes into the Air and Water. They carry the Corps hither bound up in a Sheet upon their Shoulders, with a Colt-staff, and sometimes expend Thousands of Roupies on their Fires, that are maintain'd by Wood of Aloes. They hire Mourning-Women, who howl barbarously, beat their Breasts, and ask the Deceas'd, If he had not a kind Wife, loving Children, a good Estate, &c. and what was the Reason of his or her Death. The Friends bestow large Sums to redeem Cattle appointed to Death and Labour, feed them at their own Charge, give them to the Poor, and are very liberal to the *Brachmins*, which they think will ease the Souls of the Deceased: But more of this when we come to describe the Sects. The Inhabitants have in their Gardens abundance of Summer-Houses, refresh'd with Water-Spouts, during the hot Season; and here they have Grotto's under Ground, to which they descend by huge Arches and Steps.

Steps, shaded by Trees, till they come to deep Wells, from whence Water is drawn up by Machines for the Use of their Gardens. Here they have the Silk Cotton Tree, which resembles a Maple in Leaf and Branch, and produces first a Bud, then a white Flower, and next a Seed, about which the Cotton grows in three distinct Cells. They have likewise a Plant like our Hemp. They grind the Seed, and mix it with Liquor, which makes it intoxicating. They have likewise the Bark of a Tree call'd *Allub*, which is a present Remedy against all Fluxes. In their Gardens they have noble Banqueting-Houses, beset with Trees like a Wilderness, with hot and cool Plants, divided by Gravelly Walks and Water Courses. They delight much in Stock-Gilliflowers, and in a Plant nam'd *Culga*, which Dr. *Fryar* says is fam'd for Silk, and thinks it to be our *Amaryllis* or Mallow-Tree. It is red as Scarlet in the Morning, pale at Noon, and Milk-white at Night. The Sensitive Plant is commonly in their Fields, and they have a large Banian-Tree about a League from the City, to which the *Banians* pray and make Offerings. The Leaves resemble our Ivy, and the Doctor says, they are capable of over-spreading whole Fields, so that one of them may make a large Wood. He was informed, that some of them are able to shade an Army of 30000 Men when taken due Care of; for it is the Nature of this Tree to extend its Branches on every Side till they fall down to the Ground, where they take Root, spring up again, and form new Trees, which spread in like manner in Resemblance of Arches. Their Hedges and Lanes are chiefly set with Bushes call'd Milk Trees, because of their white Juice, which is so corroding, as we mention'd before, that it frets one's Skin like an Ascarotick; and when unruly Horses rush in among them, as sometimes they do, this Juice blinds both them and the Riders, and swells their Heads to an extraordinary Size. The Doctor takes it to be a Sort of Tithymal. There are different Sorts of them all green and tender, grow up to the Height of a Man, and are full of Prickles, like our *Carduus*. Others grow up into a Tree with Boughs and small Leaves, resemble our Privets, are quick of Growth, and both make good Fences. The Goats feed on the

Leaves and Branches of the latter, but with great Caution, and not till the Heat has parched up all the other Plants. There's also Tobacco and Sugar-Canes in the Neighbourhood of this City. The Doctor says, the *Dutch* never teach the Natives any Art in which they may be their Competitors; and that they were first taught to build Ships by some needy *English* Shipwrights. They have some which carry from 30 to 40 Guns, but fitter for Shew than Service. They have 3 or 4 Men of War as big as Third Rates, and Frigats made either to row or sail, but better for Creeks and Rivers than in the Main. The Mogul has always 4 great Ships which carry Pilgrims to and from *Mecca gratis*. Their chief Festival is at the New Moon, when the *Moors* lay aside all Quarrels, embrace one another, and make a Jubilee by firing of Guns, sounding of Trumpets, Feasting and Praying. They observe the *Ramazan* or *Lent*, which is the first New Moon in *November*, with so great Strictness, that they are forbid to swallow their Spittle till the Evening, which they conclude with extraordinary Joy. At this Time the Governor goes in Procession to the Chief Place of Devotion, scatters Money among the People, and is attended by all the Gallants of the Town, his Troops, the Priests and Merchants, the Cazy with green Banners, a Guard of 100 Men, the chief Officers of the Customs with their Streamers and Palankins, Elephants in Armour with Castles and Banners on their Backs, Leopards train'd for Hunting, Camels of War with Patereroes on their Backs; and during the Solemnity there's a great Noise of Kettle-Drums and Trumpets. The Governor rides in the Middle of the Cavalcade upon a little She-Elephant richly accoutred, and attended by a Troop of Horsemen in Coats of Mail, Head-pieces, &c. their Horses being likewise in Armour. In this State he marches to the Gate of the Queen's Garden without the City, where, after Prayers, he receives the Compliments of the Grandees, and returns to the Feast; the Walls of the City and Towers of the Castle being adorned with red Banners, and firing their Guns all the while. They likewise observe the Festival of *Hussein* and *Hassein* in the same frantick Manner as the *Persians*. The Ceremonies of Marriage among the

the Pagan *Indians* are very magnificent. The Youth appear in rich Dresses of Gold and Silver, with Mitres on their Heads, and costly Sashes about their Middles. The married Couple ride on Horseback, and the richer Sort in Palankins or Coaches splendidly adorn'd, drawn by Oxen, Goats, or Elks, painted with Saffron, and their Horns tipped with Silver. The Musicians go before with Banners. The Women sing the *Epithalamiums*, and the Men follow with Pageants, distributing Pawn and Cocoa-Nuts to the Spectators. The Ceremony is concluded by washing and cleansing the Bride and Bridegroom, who sit two Hours ty'd by the Neck, while the Priest says Prayers. Then the Woman is manacled with Gold and Silver Shackles about her Wrists and Ankles, a white Sheet is laid over her and the Bridegroom, and the Bargain is confirm'd by the exchanging of a Cocoa-Nut, and scattering Corn among them: After which the Priest sprinkles them with Water, that they may increase and multiply.

The second Moon in *October* their Women flock to the sacred Wells, where they are very liberal of their Favours, because they reckon that their Washing there afterwards cleanses them from all Sin. The first Week of *March* they spend in Revelling and lascivious Discourses; and at the Beginning of the Rains they treat the Ants and Flies with Sweetmeats, Honey, and Sirrops. They are constant Benefactors to Dogs, but avoid touching them, as the *Turks* do.

Their Exercises are, Riding manag'd Horses, Tilting; Casting of Darts, and Shooting of Bows and Arrows; and the *Pata-mars*, the only Foot-Posts of this Country, run so many Courses every Morning, or dance some Hours to a certain Tune, as the *Lancashire Men* do to *Roger of Coverley*. Their Wrestlers take Opium, anoint with Oil, and are quite naked, except a Belt about their Middle, by which they tug one another till they be weary, for they have no Art. They hunt Tygers, Wild Bulls, Buffaloes, and Boars, by surrounding the Woods with Men and Horses arm'd with Lances, and rouse the Beasts by loud Musick, who rushing forth at the unusual Noise, do generally kill the first they come at, except prevented by their Lances. They have tame Leopards for catching of Antelopes,

and the *Grandeers* have *Persian* Greyhounds, which they cloath in the Winter, and hunt Columns with them, which is a great Fowl, and long a rising. The great Men divert themselves also by the Fighting of Buffaloes, *Persian* Rams and Elephants. The Doctor says, the chief Pleasure of the *Banians* is to cheat, cuckold, scold with one another, and pull off their Turbans, which is call'd the *Banian Fight* by Way of Proverb. They are so implacable, that they study for a sure and secret Revenge upon the Lives or Estates of their Adversaries. The *Moors* here are so slothful, proud and lustful, that they scorn to be taught any thing, and are so addicted to Sodomy, that they are afraid to trust their Children at Schools; so that few of their great Men or Merchants can read, which obliges them to keep Pagan Clerks, and to trust the *Banians* in making their Bargains, who are so dextrous at Cheating, that while they look in your Face, and propose fair Terms, they teach one another by the Motion of their Fingers to cheat you. The Dr. gives us an Account of their cutting Diamonds and other Stones by Wheels and other Engines, but they come much short of the *Europeans*. The *Banians* are the chief Traders in rough Diamonds; and some of them, that by outward Appearance don't look worth a Farthing, carry to the Value of some Thousands of Pounds of 'em in their Pockets to sell. The City, he says, is very nasty for want of Houses of Office, and they have a Dunghil at every Door, yet they never have any Plague; for the excessive Heat soon evaporates the noisome Steams, and the great Rains wash away the Filth. Their Diseases are according to the Seasons. The N. Winds make their Bodies solid and active, by exhausting the serous Humours, and the dry Weather quickens their Digestion; but in the variable Months they are miserably afflicted with Coughs, Catarrhs, Tumors of the Mouth and Throat, Rheumatisms, and Intermitting-Fevers; and their Youth thro' all *India* is very subject to the Small-Pox. In the extream Heats they are troubled with Cholerick Diseases and Inflammations of the Eyes. During the Rains they have Fluxes, Apoplexies, and Distempers of the Brain and Stomach. To prevent this, they eat Liquid *Assa-Fœtida*, which makes them smell odiously; and

against Lethargick Fits, they use Garlick and Ginger, mix'd with Oil or Butter. For Cupping, they use Blisters without Scarifications, made of a Nut, by which they stamp their Callicoes black. For Vomiting, Looseness, or Calentures, they apply Cauteries without any Mercy. They have no learned Physicians, but practise by Tradition or Experience, without considering the Diversity of Tempers or Seasons: But what succeeds in one, they apply to all. In Fevers they prescribe Coolers, till the Vital Heat be extinguish'd, which throws the Patients into Dropsies, Jaundice, and other ill Habits. They know nothing of Anatomy or Phlebotomy, but clap on Multitudes of Leaches, which they know not how to pull off, till they drop of their own Accord. They are as ignorant of Surgery and Pharmacy; so that their Apothecaries are only Perfumers or Druggists, and give such Potions as will operate by their Weight. They pretend to understand the Pulse, but won't look upon Urine, and attempt to cure the Bloody-Flux by laying the Patient on his Back, tickling his Reins, squeezing the Abdomen on each Side, and tying a Pot full of dry'd Earth upon their Navel. They make use of Spells, and the Doctor says, there was a *Brackmin* Physician who got a good Estate by making Powder for Agues of natural Cinnabar, which was as effectual as the Jesuit's-Bark. He adds, That the *English* Company is as much respected by the Natives as their Omrahs, because they dread their Naval Power; so that they have the Preference of all Strangers. They had a Quarrel with the *Dutch* while he was there, but were brought to a Compliance by their Fleet. The *English* House is fortified, has Docks for Vessels, and Yards for Seamen, Soldiers, and Stores. Among the Rarities there, the Doctor saw an Unicorn's Horn, not that of a Rhinoceros, of which they made Cups, which they say discover Poison if pour'd into 'em. He saw likewise Tumbling and Carrier Pigeons, with others that strutted and spread their Tails like Turkeys, and were of a py'd Colour. They have Rats as big as Pigs, that burrow under their Houses, and destroy the Poultry. Their Squirrels are delicately streak'd White and Black, and they have Musk-Rats of the same Colour, which infest their

Houses and Water-Pots with their Scent, and oblige them to keep the latter well cover'd. They have Guiana's which resemble Crocodiles, and are made use of by Robbers, who hold by their Tails, and clamber up Houses. Their Insects are Centipedes, Scorpions, and large Spiders; for the Venom of the two former, they make use of an Oil extracted from those Creatures. The Sting of the Scorpion is frequently mortal, but the Poison of the other works off after a burning Fever of 24 Hours. Their Fields and Rivers are infested by poisonous Snakes, and the latter by Crocodiles and Aliigators. The *Brahmins* pretend to charm 'em, but in vain. Their best Water is brought from a Well at *Old Swally* by Buffaloes or Oxen, for their Horses are dear, and only us'd for War or Pleasure. Three hundred Pounds is an ordinary Price for a good *Persian* or *Arabian* Horse. They have fine large Milk-white Oxen with Circling Horns, artificially modell'd in Cases, which shine like Jet, and are tipp'd with Silver, Gold, or Brass. They have Collars of Bells round their Necks, are fed delicately as their Horses; and such of them as are fit for Coaches, are 30 and 40 *l.* apiece. Their other Oxen are little, and not gelt, but have their Testicles squeez'd. Their Buffaloes are Dun, as big as their largest Oxen, love to wallow in Mire like Hogs, and some of them are very fierce, set upon Men, whom they trample to Death, or moil them with their Heads; for their Horns are so turned, that they can do no Mischief. They have the same Roots, Herbs, Fish, and Fowl, with us, and a peculiar Sort of Geese nam'd *Columbines*, which come from Mount *Caucasus* in the cold Season. Their *Aspera Arteria* is wound up in a Case on both Sides their Breast-Bone, in Manner of a Trumpet, like those of our Waits, with which they make a greater Noise than a Bittern, fly together in great Numbers, and are heard a long Time before they are seen. Near *Swally* there are Groves of Brabb-Trees, from which they draw Wine that resembles Toddy. 'Tis greedily drunk by the Seamen and *Moors*, which, together with their Strumpets, occasions frequent Quarrelling among them. The Doctor says, the *Arabs* begin to infest these Coasts by their Pirates, and if not check'd in Time, may prove as dangerous

gerous to Trade as the Pirates of *Barbary* in the *Mediterranean*. He says, That were the Difficulties above-mentioned removed, and the Robbers in the Neighbourhood reduced, *Surat* is so well design'd by Nature for the Seat of Traffick, that it would be the compleatest Emporium in the World; but the Mogul contents himself with the Continent, and takes no Care of his Fleet; for he says, that God has allotted the Watry Element to the Christians, whom he calls the Lions of the Sea.

Lockyer says, the Goods proper to be sent hither from *Europe* are Wine, Beer, fine Hats, Worsted Stockings, a few Periwigs for the *Europeans* here, Small-Shot, Lead, Iron, Case-Knives, Flint-Glass, Hubble-Bubbles, Rose-Water, Bottles, Cochineel, Red and White Lead, the finest Knives and Sword-Blades, with Toys, &c. for the Country Merchants. The Company in *England* send over coarse Cloths, and several Sorts of our Woollen Manufacture. *Thevenot* says, if a Man sue here for Debt, he must produce a Bond and two Witnesses, or confirm it by Oath. If a Christian, on the Gospel; if a *Moor*, on the Alcoran; and if a *Gentile*, he lays his Hand on a Cow, and wishes he may eat her Flesh if what he says be not true: But most of the latter chuse rather to lose their Debt than to take such an Oath, because they reckon it infamous. When a Robbery is committed, the Couteval apprehends the whole Family where it is done, and lashes them severely with long Whips for several Days, to extort a Confession from them; and if he can't, dismisses them. There are many Hermaphrodites here, who are obliged to wear a Man's Turban with Women's Apparel, in order to distinguish them. In the *Dutch* Burying-place there's a Tomb of a great Tipler, who was banish'd hither from *Holland* by the States General. There's a large Stone Cup on the Top of his Pyramid, one below at each Corner, and by every Cup the Figure of a Sugar-Loaf. Here the *Dutch* divert themselves sometimes by Feasting, and drinking out of the large Cups, with little ones that they bring on purpose. Near the *English* Burying-place there's a great Well arch'd over, and the Figure of an Idol with a red Face on the Outside of it. There are others of the like Sort, one of them said to

be a Representation of *Eve*. Another represents the Mother of the Gods. The Heathens pay great Devotion to both, and the *Brahmins* put a red Mark on the Foreheads of such as come to worship, and make their Offerings to them. *Tavernier* says, the ordinary Women of *Surat* get their Livelihood by cleansing Lacque. After the Scarlet Colour is drawn from it, they give it what Colour they please, and make it up into Sticks for Sealing-Wax, of which the *English* and *Dutch* export Annually 150 Chests.

12. *Daman*. The *Sansons* place it 60 Miles S.W. of *Surat*, at the Mouth of the Gulph of *Cambaya*, Long. 115. Lat. 21. *Mol* places it 72 Miles S. from *Surat*, in Long. 92. Lat. 20 $\frac{1}{3}$. *Thevenot* Lat. 20. 15 French Leagues from *Bassaim*, 21 from *Surat*, and 40 from *Dia*. He says, it belongs to the *Portuguese*, who have a good Fort in it. They make an excellent Sort of Bread here, and their Drink is only the Water of a Tank, which is very good. A Range of high Hills runs along the Coast from hence to Cape *Comorin*. The Harbour is a little Canal which is dry at Ebb; so that great Ships lie in the Road. 'Tis pretty large, and fortified with good Walls and a Citadel. It depends on *Goa*, as do the other *Portuguese* Towns in these Parts, especially as to Spiritual Affairs, for which the Bishop keeps a Vicar-General. The *Portuguese* have a great Number of Slaves of both Sexes here. *Tavernier* says, *Orangzeb* besieg'd it 20 Days with above 40000 Men; but wanting Ships to hinder Relief by Sea, he was forced to raise it, after he had lost half his Army in two or three Hours, by a Sally which the Governor made at Midnight upon the Quarter guarded by 200 Elephants, which were so terrified with Fire-works, that they trampled upon their own Masters; after which that Prince abstain'd from War with the Christians. *Herbert* says, this Place is supposed to be the *Ne plus* of *Alexander's* March with his Army into *India*. The Castle stands at the N. End, is large, built of a white chalky Stone, and well furnish'd with Cannon. Most of the Houses are of the same Stone. They have 4 Churches, and several Convents. Mr. *Fitch* says, 'tis reckon'd the second Town of the *Portuguese*, has several Villages subject to it, and trades in

Y y y 2

Corn

Corn and Rice. *Ogilby* says, that in 1559 'twas conquer'd by the *Portuguese*, who had, with the Consent of the Inhabitants, built a Fort near the City for securing their Trade; but the latter endeavouring to dispossess them, the *Portuguese* in a little Time made themselves Masters of the Town. The *Portuguese* have several Islands near it, which pay Tribute to the King of *Salsette*. The Blacks here who are Christians are the best Musquetiers in *India*.

13. *Bacaim*, *Bassaim*, or *Bacein*, subject to the *Portuguese*. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 116. Lat. $18\frac{1}{2}$. near the Coast. *Moll* places it Long. $91\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $19\frac{1}{2}$. about 118 Miles S. from *Surat*; *Catrou* but 60 Miles S. W. the *Sanfons* about 100. Dr. *Fryar* says, it is enclosed with a round Stone Wall, has 4 Gates, and is strong enough against the *Indians*, but not able to hold out against *Europeans*. There's a round Fort in the Middle of the City, upon which and the Out-Walls there are 42 Cannon. There are 6 Churches, 4 Convents, a College of *Jesuits*, and another of *Franciscans*, which make a Sort of Academy. The *Jesuits* are their Teachers, and have an indifferent Library. The College is a neat Structure, with fine square Cloysters above and below, on the Side of which are Cells. They have also a spacious Refectory, a stately Church, and a Property in three Parts of the City. The Town is a Mile and a half round, stands on an Island, separated from the main Land by a small Channel. Near the Market there's a Town-House, where the Governor assembles the Fidalgo's every Morning for Consultation, during which Time all must stand, the Governor not excepted; and in the Evening they meet here for Game. These Fidalgo's being pilfering abusive Rascals, are not suffer'd to live in the City, (where none but Christians inhabit) but they have stately Dwellings, with cover'd Balconies and large Windows two Stories high, with Panes of Oyster-Shell instead of Glass. 'Tis dangerous for Strangers to be out late among them. The *Banians* are obliged to retire to the Suburbs upon beating the Tattoo. 'Tis suppos'd to be the *Borace* of *Ptolomy*. It has a convenient Harbour, but had many Houses overturn'd by an Earthquake the Beginning of the last Century, which were never rebuilt. The ad-

jacent Country is plain, and abounds with Sugar-Canes and Corn, but is liable to the Incursions of the *Arabs* of *Muschat*, who burn the Villages, carry off the Inhabitants, murder the Priests, and plunder the Churches. This they do in Revenge for the Cruelty of the *Portuguese* at *Muschat*, contrary to the Capitulation, when the Town surrender'd to them. The *Portuguese* are obliged to have a Squadron in these Seas against the *Arabians*, who make sudden Incursions, and retire on the Approach of the *Portuguese* Men of War. The Coast produces Oil and Cocoa-Nuts.

14. *Asserim*, a Fortrefs on a strong Rock, lies further up the Country, about 65 Miles N. W. from *Baceim*. The Rock is so steep and slippery, that the People climb it bare-foot, or are hal'd up by Ropes, as are also the Provisions of the Garrison. There are many other Rocks in the Neighbourhood, but this commands them all. It belongs to the *Portuguese*, is a Key to their Dominions on this Side, and a great Eye-sore to the neighbouring Princes, who frequently attempt it, which obliges the *Portuguese* to be continually on their Guard, and to watch every Night with Torches of a sort of Cane, that cannot be put out by Wind or Rain. This Place is a Sanctuary for Criminals, who are made use of for Soldiers, and the Number of Inhabitants is about 700. There's a large Plain on the Top of the Rock, from whence they throw Stones upon those who attempt it.

31. CHITOR, or SANGA,

Lies in a Triangular Form, about 290 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 195 from E. to W. according to *Catrou* and the *Sanfons*, who bound it on the W. with *Guzurat*, on the N. with Part of *Jessimere* and the Territory of *Ranas*, on the E. with *Malwa*, and on the S. with *Candisch* and Part of *Guzurat*. *Thevenot* includes this Province, with two others, in that of *Malwa*, which we shall describe hereafter. This Province was anciently the Chief of a flourishing Kingdom.

The Capital is of the same Name. The *Sanfons* place it in Lat. $24\frac{3}{4}$. Long. $119\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Lat. $23\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 95. The former says, the adjacent Country is mountainous. *Herbert*

bert supposes it to be the ancient *Taxilla*, and the Metropolis of *Porus*, from whence he issued against *Alexander the Great*. They had Sovereign Princes of their own, who deriv'd themselves from *Porus*, till 1614, that the last of them submitted to the Mogul. This City was formerly so noble, that it was called, *The Umbrella of the World*. The *Sansons* say, it was 5 Leagues in Compass when *Eckbar* destroy'd it; so that there's nothing now but the Ruins of above 100 Temples, and many stately Palaces, inhabited by Storks, Owls, and Bats, which the Pagan *Indians* do in a manner worship. The Castle was so strong by Art and Nature, that the Kings of *Debli* could never take it, and Sultan *Alandine* besieg'd it 12 Years in vain. *Thevenot* says, it is inhabited by a few People, the Walls are but low, and besides the Ruins of the Temples, &c. there are many Antick Statues here, and 4 Reservatories for Water. It stands pleasantly on the Top of a very fruitful Hill. There's but one Ascent up to it by a Path cut out of the Rock, and there are 4 stately Gates which must be pass'd before one enters the City. *Ogilby* says, the Sultan of *Cambaya* besieg'd this Town so close, that the Inhabitants despairing of Relief, set Fire to it, which lasted three Days, and consum'd 70000 People, with immense Riches; and that soon after this the Kingdom of *Cambaya* was subdued by the Mogul. Dr. *Friar* ascribes the chief Destruction of this City to *Orangzeb*, whose Treachery impos'd upon the Princess that then govern'd it.

2. *Cheytepour*. The *Sansons* place it 115 Miles E. from *Amadabath*, Long. 119. 12. Lat. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. under the Tropick of *Cancer*. *Moll* removes it farther N. from the Tropick, and but 53 Miles N.E. from *Amadabath*, in Long. 93. Lat. 24 $\frac{1}{4}$. *Mandelsloe* says, 'tis a small City, garrison'd by 150 Men, for the Security of the Caravans, situate upon the Banks of a small River, and inhabited by *Banians*, who make Cotton-Yarn, and weave Callicoes call'd *Chites*, from whence the Town has its Name. *Tavernier* says, he saw Lions tam'd in the Neighbourhood as follows: They are tied 12 Paces from one another by the hinder Legs, with a Rope fasten'd to a great Stake in the Ground, and have another about their Neck, which the

Master holds in his Hand. These Stakes are planted in a Line, and in another Parallel they stretch out a long Cord from one End of the Lions to the other. The Cord about the Lion's hinder Feet gives him Liberty to spring out as far as that long Cord, which is a Mark to those that provoke the Lions, by throwing Stones and Pieces of Wood at them, not to venture any farther. When the Lion is provok'd, he gives a Spring towards the People; but the Man with the other Rope in his Hand, which is ty'd about the Lion's Neck, pulls him back; so that by degrees they become familiar with the People.

Here also he met with 52 Faquirs or *Mahometan* Derviches, besides the Superior and 4 others, who, next to him, were the Chiefs of the Company. They wore a Tyger's Skin over their Shoulders, ty'd under their Chins, and the 5 Chiefs had 4 Ells of Orange-colour Callico about their Hips. The rest had only a Cord for their Girdle, and a little Piece of Callico to hide their Privy-Parts. Eight fine Horses, cover'd each with a Leopard's Skin, were led before them, of which three had Bridles and Saddles cover'd with Plates of Gold, and the others with Plates of Silver. The Men's Hair was tied like a Turbant: They carried Bows and Arrows, Muskets, long Tucks, Half-Pikes, and a sharp Piece of Iron wound several times about their Necks, like the Brim of a Platter. They throw these Iron Circles with such Force, that they'll go very near to cut a Man thro' in the Middle. Every one had also a Hunting-Horn, which they wind when they come or go from any Place. They have also an Iron Grater or Rasp like a Trowel, which the *Indians* carry always about them to make clean the Places where they intend to rest; and some of them, says *Tavernier*, when they have scrap'd up all the Dust in a Heap, use it as a Pillow to lie upon. Their Luggage consisted of 4 great Chests full of *Persian* and *Arabian* Books, and some Household-Stuff. They had also 10 or 12 Oxen to carry their Sick. He adds, that when the Dervicks or Faquirs come to any Place, the Superior sends some to beg in the Towns and Villages; after which the Alms is equally distributed, and every one boils his own Rice.

What

What is over and above, they give to the Poor in the Evening, for they reserve nothing till next Day.

Some join the Province of *Utrad* to the West Part of this Country, and say, it has a Capital of the same Name, but don't describe it. It produces Stone-Salt, and *Asa Foetida*, which is the least Bitter of any of the Sort. The Plant which yields it grows in Mountains and barren Places, and is of two Kinds, one a high Bush with Leaves like those of Rice; the other is like a Reddish, has several great and small Stalks, and Leaves like those of a Fig-Tree. The Gum begins to distil from it the latter End of the Summer. The *Bamians* mix it in their Sawce, reckon no Dish good without it, and anoint their Drinking-Cups with it.

32. The Country of *R A J A - R A N A S*,

Is 240 Miles from E. to W. and 90 from N. to S. according to the *Sanfons*, and bounded on the N. with *Bando*, on the E. with *Gualeor* and Part of *Malway*, on the S. with *Chitor*, and on the W. with *Jesselmere*. This was the Place where *Rana* the Prince, so much mentioned in the Reign of *Akebar*, resided, in the Castle of *Gurchitto* on a Hill, surrounded with inaccessible Rocks; so that he withstood, says *Mandelsloe*, the Great Mogul and the Kings of *Patan* or *Pettan*, and was able to bring 120000 Horse into the Field. *Schouten* says, the Country lies in the middle between *Amadabath* and *Agra*, is very mountainous, and inhabited by the *Rasbutes*, who are govern'd by *Rajahs*, do not own the Great Mogul, and take all Opportunities to fall upon the Caravans. Their Arms are long Javelins, Bows and Arrows, and some have Fire-Arms.

33. *M A L V A T*, or *M A V A T*.

The *Sanfons* make it 285 Miles from S. W. to N. E. and 225 from N. W. to S. E. and bound it on the W. with *Chitor* and the Territory of *Ranas*, on the N. with *Gualeor*, on the E. with *Bengal*, and on the S. with *Berar* and *Candisch*. *Thevenot*, who includes the Territories of *Ranas*, *Gualeor*, and *Chitor*, in this Province, says, it produces all that grows in the other Provinces,

and that it has a great many Trading Towns. He saw two Sorts of Bats here, one like ours, the other 8 Inches long, cover'd with yellowish Hair: The Body was round, and as big as a Duck, the Head and Eyes like a Cat, the Snout like a great Rat, with prick'd black Ears, without Hair. It had no Tail, but two Teats under its Wings as big as the End of one's little Finger. It had 4 Legs or Arms join'd to the Wings, which were almost two Foot long from the Shoulder downwards, 7 or 8 Inches broad, and of a black Skin. Each Arm was as big as a Cat's Thigh, and towards the Joint almost as big as a Man's Arm: The two foremost, from the Shoulder to the Fingers, were 9 or 10 Inches long, cover'd with Hair, and terminating in 5 Fingers, (and the same Joints as a Man's Hand) which were black, and without Hair. With these they stretch out their Wings when they have a mind to fly. Each hind Leg is but half a Foot long, and reaches to the lower Part of the Wing, out of which peeps a little Hand like a Man's, only instead of Nails it has Claws. They are black and hairy, like those before, but smaller. He adds, that these Bats stick to the Branches of Trees, fly very high, and some say they are good Meat.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Ratispore*, or *Rantipore*. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 123. Lat. 25 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Long. 99 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 24 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Thevenot* says, 'tis the Capital and the most Trading Town of the whole Province. It stands upon a Mountain, and is the Place whither the Mogul sends condemn'd Traitors. They are kept here a certain Time, and some always in the Room with them. The Day they are to die, they make them drink a great Quantity of Milk, and throw them down from the Top of the Castle upon craggy Stones, that tear their Bodies before they can reach the Bottom. *Mandelsloe* says, it lies half a League from the River *Copra*, which runs into the Gulph of *Cambaya*, wherein he agrees with the *Sanfons*.

2. *Syranga*, or *Seronge*. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 122 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 26 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Long. 96 $\frac{1}{3}$. Lat. 24. *Tavernier* says, 'tis a great City, chiefly inhabited by *Banian* Merchants and Handicraft Tradesmen, some of whom have Houses of Stone and Brick. They drive a great

great Trade here in Callicoës, some white, and others painted, call'd *Chites*, which the more they are wash'd, the fairer the Colours shew. There's a River near the City, the Water of which gives that Beauty and Liveliness to the Colours.

3. *Nader*. *Tavernier* says, 'tis a great City, upon the Descent of a Mountain, encompassed with Walls, and has a Fortress upon the Top. Most of the Houses are thatch'd with Straw, one Story high, except those of the better Sort, which are two Stories, and terrass'd. There are several great Ponds round the City, with divers fair Monuments about them. Three Parts of the City and Mountain are encompassed like a Peninsula with a River, which, after a long winding Course, falls into the *Ganges*. The Inhabitants make great Quantities of Quilted Coverlets, some white, others embroider'd with Gold, Silk, and Sattin Flowers. But we can't find this Town in our Maps.

34. *GUALEOR*, or *GUALIAR*,

Has Part of *Ranas* and *Bando* on the W. *Agra* on the N. *Narvar* on the E. and Part of *Bengal* and *Malvay* on the S. according to the *Sanfons*, who make it almost 270 Miles from E. to W. and 180 where broadest.

The Capital is of the same Name. The *Sanfons* place it on the N. Borders of the Province, in Long. $123\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 27. *Moll* Long. $97\frac{1}{2}$: Lat. $25\frac{1}{2}$. *Tavernier* says, 'tis a great City, ill built on the E. Side of a Mountain, which at the Top is encompassed with Walls and Towers. Within the Inclosure there are several Ponds of Rain-Water, and Ground to sow enough to subsist the Garrison; for which Reason 'tis counted one of the best in the *Indies*. Upon the Descent of the Hill towards the N. E. *Cha Jaham* built a Pleasure-House, from whence there's a Prospect over all the City. Below there are several Idols cut out of the Rock, and one much higher than the rest. Since the *Mahometan* Kings became Masters of this Country, they have made use of this Fortress to secure Princes and great Noblemen. Here *Cha-Jaham* at his Accession to the Throne confined during Life all the Princes and Lords whom he mistrusted; but his Successor *Orangzeb* poi-

son'd all whom he sent hither at the End of 9 or 10 Days. Upon the Death of *Morad-Bakche*, his youngest Brother, whom he imprison'd here, the Inhabitants erected a stately Monument for him in a Mosque, with a great Piazza before it, surrounded with Vaults and Shops, it being the Custom of the *Indians*, when they raise any publick Building, to make a great Piazza before it, where they keep their Markets, and give Alms to the Poor to pray for the Founder. *Ogilby* says, the Great Mogul keeps also a vast Treasure in this Castle, guarded by a strong Garrison.

35. *NARVAR*,

Is bounded on the W. with *Gualeor* and Part of *Agra*, on the N. with *Sambal*, and on the E. and S. with *Bengal*. The *Sanfons* make it 240 Miles from S. W. to N. E. and 180 from N. W. to S. E.

The Capital is *Gehud*, on the Banks of the *Send*, which runs into the *Ganges*. *Sanfon* places it Long. 129. Lat. $26\frac{3}{4}$. *Moll* Long. $100\frac{3}{4}$. Lat. $25\frac{1}{4}$. But we have no Description of it.

Ogilby places the *Bulloits* in or near this Country, upon the Borders of *Chandisch*. Mr. *Covert* says, they are *Pythagoreans*, a deceitful and cruel People, and force Women to burn themselves after the Decease of their Husbands; and if they refuse, shave them, and cloath 'em in Black; after which they are reckon'd so ignominious, that none will converse with them. We find nothing of this Country in our Maps, and *Ogilby's* Description of it is so full of visible Contradictions as to its Situation, that we cannot depend upon him. He mentions several considerable Towns here, which we have not in our Maps.

The chief of them are, 1. *Gorra*, which he places a Day's Journey from the River *Andere*, and says it is two Leagues in Circumference, has 4 publick Schools, was formerly a Seat of War, and conquer'd with the adjacent Country by the 6th of *Tamerlane's* Successors. 2. *Sandaye*, two Days Journey from *Gorra*, where he says there's Store of Wool and Cotton, and a Manufacture of Arms, and 'tis much frequented by Merchants. He says, they have *Manga's* and *Sugar-Canes* in such abundance, that

that they feed their Horses with them, and have vast Flocks of Sheep, whose Wool being like the *Spanish*, makes good Cloth. The Woods abound with Lions, Tigers, Elephants, Apes, and other Beasts; and they have Inns in this Country where Travellers are entertain'd at the publick Charge. 3. *Haudee*, with a well fortified Castle, built on a Rock, and defended by many Cannon. 4. *Barandon*, much frequented by Caravans, and noted for a great Trade in Arms, Harts, and Elephant's Teeth.

36. *CANDISCH, CHANDIS, KANDIS,*
or *SANDA*,

Has *Malway* on the N. *Chitor* and *Guzurat* on the W. *Decan* on the S. *Berar* and *Golconda* on the E. The *Sanfons* make it 210 Miles S. and N. and about 200 from E. to W. where broadest. *Thevenot* says, That *Berar*, and what the Mogul possesses in *Orissa*, are join'd by some to this Province. Their greatest Trade is in Cotton-Cloth, for it abounds more with Cotton than any Province in the *Indies*. They have also Plenty of Rice and Indigo, and white and painted Callicoes, much esteem'd for their Stripes of Gold, Silver, and Silk, intermix'd with Flowers, which makes them very dear. The richer Sort use them for Veils, Scarves, Handkerchiefs, and Coverlets. *Tavernier* says, they transport them to *Persia*, *Turkey*, *Muscovy*, *Poland*, *Arabia*, *Grand-Cairo*, &c. *Herbert* says, That where 'tis water'd by the River *Tapty* 'tis fruitful and pleasant, but elsewhere barren and sandy. *Terry* says, it is the most Southerly Province of the Mogul's Dominions on this Side, and is mighty populous. A great Part of it is call'd the Kingdom of *Bram-pore*, from its Metropolis. The River *Tapty*, and another more N. run thro' it towards the Gulph of *Cambaya*. *Sir Thomas Row* says, the Country in general is but poor, and thinly inhabited.

The chief Town is *Bram-pore*. The *Sanfons* place it near the *Tapty*, Long 120 $\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. 20 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Catrou* Long. 123 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 23. *Moll* Lat. 21. Long 96 250 Miles E. from *Su-rat*, the *Sanfons* about 270. *Herbert* thinks it to be *Ptolomy's Baramatis*, noted for an ancient Seminary of *Gymnosophists* by him and *Porphyry*, and now of *Brahmins*. This City

lies in an unhealthy but spacious Vale, and is mostly inhabited by *Banians*. The Streets are many, but narrow, the Houses low and mean. At the N. E. End there's a Castle on the River Side. 'Twas formerly the Residence of the Kings of *Decan* before they were drove out by the Moguls; and near it there are the noble Gardens of one of their Princes, noted for its Shades, Fruits, Water-Works, Flowers and Herbs of all Sorts. The *Sanfons* say, it has prov'd unfortunate to many of the Sons or Uncles of the Great Moguls, some of whom have perish'd here by their Debauches, and others by Rebellion. *Orangzeb* was formerly Governor of this City, a Post commonly bestow'd on Princes of the Blood. *Thevenot* says, the Soil is very uneven, so that in rainy Weather many of the lower Streets are overflow'd. Most of the Houses are of Earth, but cover'd with varnish'd Tiles of several Colours, which, with the pleasant Verdure of many green Trees, makes an agreeable Prospect. *Tavernier* says, they are thatch'd with Straw. There's a very large Caravanfera for lodging Strangers, and another for keeping the King's Money. Both of them front the Market-place, which is 500 Paces long, and 350 broad, but fill'd with nasty Huts for selling Herbs and Fruit. The Entry into the Castle is from this Market, and the chief Gate betwixt two large Towers. The Walls of the Castle are 6 or 7 Fathom high, with Battlements round them, and at certain Distances large round Towers, which jet out a great Way, and are about 30 Paces diameter. The Palace is in the Castle, which no Man must enter without Permission. The Walls of the Castle on the Side of the River are 8 Fathom high, with neat Galleries on the Top, from whence the King sees the Elephants which fight in the middle of the River, where there's a lively Statue of an Elephant, which he says was erected by Order of *Cha-Jaham*, as a Monument to one of his beloved Elephants which died there a fighting. 'Tis of a reddish transparent Stone. The *Gentiles* colour it as they do their Pagods. The Inhabitants very rarely drink the Water of the *Tapty*, because 'tis brackish, but are supplied from a large square Basin in the Market-place. *Thevenot* adds, That there are so many Houses on the other Side of the River,

River, as form a second Town. *Tavernier* says, That sometimes there's such a great Product of Tobacco in the Neighbourhood, that the Natives let vast Quantities rot in the Ground; and that the *Dutch* buy up much Opium here, which they barter for Pepper. *Mr. Fitch* says, the Natives marry at 5 or 6 Years old, but must not bed till 10. *M. Pelsart* says, the *English* us'd to have a Factory here, and had a Warehouse for Clothes, Lead, Pewter, Quicksilver, Sabres, Sattins, Velvets, and Gold Stuffs, for which they return'd Money by Bills of Exchange to *Agra* and *Surat*. *Purchase* says, this City is much bigger than *London*, and the richest in the Mogul's Dominions.

2. *Hassera*, or *Hassere*. The *Sansons* place it Long. $120\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. 21. *Herbert* says, 'tis a Castle, the strongest both by Art and Nature in the whole Province, built on the Top of a Precipice, has Forrage enough in the Neighbourhood to subsist 40000 Horse, and was furnish'd with 600 great Brass Cannon by the last King of *Guzurat*. There are some Springs in it; but the Water commonly breeds Worms in the Legs and Thighs of such as drink it. *Bouffingault* calls it *Syr*, says it lies on the Top of a high Mountain, 5 Leagues in Circumference, and is surrounded with three Walls, so made, that one may conveniently defend another. Within the Inclosure there's Plenty of Wood, Pulse, and of all Sorts of Provisions, enough to subsist 20000 Men, which are usually there in Garrison. In this Castle were anciently kept, according to the Custom of the Country, several Princes bearing the Title of Kings, with their Families and Retinues, which never came from thence, except the King of the Country that was nearest in Relation died without Male-Issue. In 1600, this Fort held out against *Eckbar* the Great Mogul, who besieg'd it with 200000 Men. There were above 60000 Men in Garrison, with Wood, Corn, and other Provisions, for many Years, and 3000 Pieces of Cannon on the Walls; but he made himself Master of it by Bribery and Treachery.

3. *Batterpore*, a Village, which *Moll* places 23 Miles N. of *Brampore*; *Sir Thomas Row* but two, and says, the Mogul has an

Arsenal here, well stor'd with Brass Cannon, but for most Part short, and of ordinary Metal.

4. *Kanowe*, or *Canow*. *Ogilby* says, 'tis a large City, whose Inhabitants drive a great Trade in Clothes, Swords, Muskets, and a certain Fruit for Dying; but we don't find it in our Maps, except it be that which *Moll* places on the *Ganges* in the Province of *Narvar*.

5. *Mandoue*, or *Mandoway*. The *Sansons* place it in the N. W. Corner of the Province, Long. $120\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $22\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* 75 Miles N. of *Brampore*, in Long. $95\frac{2}{3}$. Lat. 22. *Mr. Fitch* says, 'tis a very strong Town, stands upon a high Rock, was of a large Circumference, and besieg'd 12 Years by *Eckbar* before he could take it.

Sir Thomas Row, in his Journey N. from *Brampore*, came to *Godah* or *Godach*, a Wall'd City in an excellent Country. 'Tis one of the fairest Towns in all the *Indies*: The Houses are for the most Part two Stories high: The Streets are full of rich Shops. There are several stately publick Buildings of Free-stone, and Ponds with Galleries round them, supported by Arches. The Town lies in a great Plain, where there's a Village almost at every Mile's end. Their Gardens are planted with Mangoes, Tamarins, and other Fruit-Trees, with many Pagods, Fountains, Baths, Ponds, and Summer-Houses, of Free-stone. 'Tis much decay'd since *Eckbar* conquer'd it, with the rest of its Territories, from a Raja who us'd to reside here. The *Sansons* place this Town in the Province of *Bando*, Long. $117\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 28.

Tavernier, in his Travels from *Brampore* to *Gualeor*, sets down, 1. *Callabas*, a great Town, formerly the Residence of a Raja, who paid Tribute to the Great Mogul. But when *Orangzeb* came to the Crown, he cut off his Head, and those of his Subjects, and fix'd them on two Towers near the Town. 2. *Collasar*, a little Town, inhabited by Idolaters. The Highway without the Town is planted with Mangoe-Trees, and in many Places there are little Pagods, with Idols: But we find neither of these Towns in our Maps.

37. B E R A R.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Bengal* on the E. *Golconda* on the S. *Candisch* on the W. and *Malway* on the N. They make it 240 Miles from E. to W. and 120 from N. to S.

The Metropolis is *Shapore*, or *Shapour*. *Moll* places it 105 Miles E. of *Mandoue*, in Long. 98. Lat. $21\frac{3}{4}$. the *Sanfons* Long. $123\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. $22\frac{1}{2}$. above 150 Miles from *Mandoue*: But we have no Description of the Town or Country.

38. B E N G A L, O U L E S S E R, or J A G A N N E T.

The *Sanfons* bound it on the W. with *Be-rar*, *Malway*, *Gualeor*, and *Narwar*; on the N. with *Sambal*, *Patna*, and *Mevat*; on the E. with *Arracan* and *Ava*; and on the S. with the Bay of *Bengal* and *Golconda*. They make it 750 Miles from E. to W. and 480 from N. to S. and divide it into *Prurup* on this Side the *Ganges*, *Patan* beyond it, and *Pro-per Bengal* along the Coast, and between the Branches of the *Ganges*, which runs thro' the Middle of this vast Kingdom from N. to S. and after having form'd a great Number of Islands, falls into that Part of the Ocean which from hence is call'd the Bay of *Bengal*. It was formerly divided into 12 Provinces or Kingdoms, which were denominated from their principal Towns. Here are all Sorts of Animals, and great Plenty of Venison. The People are courteous, but deceitful. Their Kings us'd to be reckon'd the most rich and powerful in all the *Indies* next to those of *Cambaya* and *Narsingua*.

They add, That the Coast is 150 Leagues in Length. *Bernier* makes it almost 100 Leagues along the *Ganges* from *Ragemehale* to the Sea-Coast. *Herbert* says, the Country was anciently call'd *Baricura* and *Gandarida*. 'Tis not very mountainous, except on the Frontiers. *M. Bernier*, in his Answer to *Thevenot's* five Questions, says, 'tis the best and fruitfulest Country in the World, and the Air temperate. They export vast Quantities of Rice every Year to the *Molucca's*, *Sumatra*, *Malabar* and *Cormandel*, the *Maldives*, *Ceylon*, *Goa*, &c. It produces also

Plenty of Sugar, which is sent to *Golconda*, *Carnatte*, *Arabia*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Persia*; as also Spices, Cotton, Silks, Canes, &c. which are carry'd all over the *Mogul's* Empire, and transported to *Europe*. The *Portuguese* here make Comfits, with which they drive a great Trade, as also with large Pom-Citrons like those in *Europe*, a certain long Root like *Sarsaparilla*, but very delicate, another Fruit call'd *Amba*, *Anana's*, *Mirabolans*, *Lemons*, and *Ginger*. The common People feed chiefly upon 3 or 4 Kinds of Pulse, Rice, and Butter. Fowls are so cheap, that 20 good Pullets may be had for Half a Crown, and Geese and Ducks in Proportion. They have abundance of Kids, Sheep and Pork, which is almost the only Food of the *Portuguese*, and the *English* and *Dutch* victual their Ships with it. They have also Plenty of fresh and salt Fish. From this Abundance, together with the Beauty and good Humour of the Women of *Bengal*, arose a Proverb among the *Europeans*, That there are 100 Gates open to enter this Kingdom, but none to come out again. It also produces Salt-Petre, which is carried down the *Ganges* from *Patna* to the *English* and *Dutch* Merchants, who load whole Ships full for the *Indies* and *Europe*. The other Commodities of this Kingdom are, Lacque, Opium, Wax, Civet, Long Pepper, and Butter. The first is sold very dear, because they use it in painting their Callicoes.

Bernier says, That the Country is well water'd by Channels cut out of the *Ganges*, on the Banks of which grow their Pulse, Mustard-Seed, *Sezanium* for Oil, and little Mulberry-Trees two or three Foot high to feed Silk-Worms; but their Silk is not reckon'd so good as the *Persian*. The Islands of the *Ganges* next the Sea, which were formerly inhabited, are for the most Part abandon'd, and fill'd with ravenous Tygers, which in the Night leap into the Boats in the Channels, and carry away the Men. *Bouffingault* says, they'll pursue a Ship along the Coast for above 20 Leagues, in Expectation that some body will land; but that Divine Providence has, for the Safety of Mankind, created an Animal call'd *Pera*, which, tho' no bigger than a little Cat, as soon as it discovers a Tyger, follows its Track, and never ceases barking after him, by which Means Men and other Animals are

are warned to retire; so that it often happens that the Tygers, for Want of Prey, die with Hunger. *Bernier* says, he saw a Sort of Fishes among these Isles which had a Bladder like that of a Carp hanging out of their Mouths, full of Air, and reddish at the End. Here also he observ'd several Lunar Rainbows, which were opposite to the Moon, as the Solar ones are to the Sun.

As it is the Custom amongst the *Gentiles* of *India* to burn the Widows with the Bodies of their deceas'd Husbands, those of *Bengal* are burnt after a different Fashion from other Provinces. *Tavernier* says, the Woman accompanies the Body of her deceas'd Husband to the *Ganges*, where they are both wash'd. Then she dances up to the Funeral Pile after the Musick of Drums, Flutes, and Hautboys. When she gets upon the Pile, she places her self as if she was sitting up in her Bed. Then they lay her Husband's Body across her; after which her Friends give her Letters, Pieces of Callico, or some Bits of Silver or Copper, to deliver to their Friends in the other World. When they have all done, the Woman asks the Standers-by three times, if they have any more Service. If they make no Answer, she ties up all the Tokens in a Piece of Taffata, puts them in her Lap, and then bids them set Fire to the Pile, which is done accordingly; but before their Bodies are above half burnt, they cast 'em into the *Ganges*, where the Remains are devour'd by Crocodiles. The Idolaters of this Country have a wicked Custom, That when a Woman is brought to Bed, and the Child will not suck, they carry it out of the Village, put it into a Linen-Cloth, and tie it to the Boughs of a Tree, where they leave it from Morning till Night: During which the Crows come many times and pick out their Eyes, which is the Reason, says *Tavernier*, that many of the Idolaters of *Bengal* have but one Eye, and some none at all. They fetch back the Infant in the Evening; but if it refuse the Breast, they carry it again to the same Place next Morning, repeating it for 3 Days successively; after which, if the Child still refuses to suck, they believe it to be a Devil, and drown it in the next Pond or River. Sometimes the *Europeans* finding Infants thus expos'd, steal them from the Tree, and give

them good Education. *Schouten* says, the Rivers of *Bengal* are much infested with Caimans, a sort of Crocodiles, which devour Swimmers, and sometimes overset the little Fishing-Barks of the Country; so that there are no Boats or Canoes to be seen on any of their Rivers, tho' the Inhabitants know how to build Vessels from 200 to 1000 Tuns. This Province is govern'd by a Chan, with other subordinate Officers, who, in the Name of the Emperor and the Governor-General, exercise an absolute Power over the Forts, Cities, and Boroughs, under their Jurisdiction; and when Occasion requires, are call'd to the Council, where they are very much esteem'd, but they are only summon'd thither out of Formality, and to say *Yes* and *Amen*. All the Governors and other Officers, from the highest to the lowest, affect a numerous Retinue of Guards, Musicians, and other Attendants, with Trains of Elephants, Horses, Ensigns, Standards, and Liveries. Some of them are carried in Palanquins, with Parasols, Sabres, Vessels to wash in, &c. born behind 'em. The Governors are generally ambitious, proud, and voluptuous, and direct all Affairs for their own Profit. They particularly oppress the *Gentiles*, who live chiefly by tilling the Ground, weaving Callicoes, &c. for when they sow, they know not whether they shall reap for themselves or the *Moors*, to whom they are miserable Slaves. The Tributes, Imposts, and Fines, are rais'd for the Governors, who are obliged to furnish the Emperor, upon the first Notice, with some Thousands or Hundreds of Horse, according to their Quality. *Schouten* says, they have almost continual Rains in this Country, accompanied with Tempests from *April* to *September*, when the Water, which runs down from the high Lands into the *Ganges* and other Rivers, makes them overflow their Banks, and do a great deal of Mischief; and that while he was there, an Inundation threaten'd the Fall of the *English* House at *Ougli*, and quite bore down the *French* House at *Pipely*. During the 6 other Months, the Weather is very fair, and cool'd by the N. E. Wind; but 'tis cold in *December*, *January*, and *February*, and the Mornings are very misty. However, in *December*, when their Days are shortest, they have the Sun from half

an Hour after 6 in the Morning to half an Hour after 5 in the Evening. At the same Time the Days are very fair and clear, but the Nights cold. He adds, That in this Season the Inhabitants gather in their Corn and other Fruits.

Schouten gives the following Account of the *Moors* of *Bengal*: They are *Mahometans* of the Sect of *Aly*, hold *Hassan* and *Hossein*, his two Sons, for their greatest Saints, and keep Festivals to their Honour. They likewise very solemnly observe their *New-Year's-Day*, which begins the first of the New Moon in *March*, and lasts 9 Days, which are spent in Feasting and Jollity. They celebrate a Festival in the Month of *June* in Memory of *Abraham's* Sacrifice, wherein they make Mention of *Ismael*. Then they sacrifice a great many He-Goats, which the *Moors* come and eat, and afterwards divert themselves by Singing, Dancing, and several Sorts of Games. They have another Feast in Remembrance of *Aly's* two Sons, the same with that of the *Persians*. The Idolaters are obliged to keep within Doors during this Festival; for if any dare appear in the Streets, or but put their Heads out at Window, they are massacred, or shot to Death with Arrows. The *Moors* in general are very honest, civil, amiable, and of a sweet Conversation. They ridicule the Vanity, Lightness, and Irregularities, of the *French*, are grave in their Actions and Apparel, which they do not change with the Fashion, and abhor Incest, Drunkenness, Quarrels, and Fightings; but they allow of Polygamy, are much given to Fornication, and for most Part very luxurious, incontinent and debauch'd. They abstain from Wine and other strong Liquors in publick, but drink 'em in private. The better Sort send their Children to learn to read and write, and make them study the *Alcoran*; after which they put them to learn the Sciences for which they are design'd. The poorer Sort bring them up for Service, War, or Trades. They betroth their Children at 6 or 8 Years of Age, but do not compleat the Marriage till the Parents give their Consent, and they come to Years of Maturity. Then the Bride is carried with great Ceremony to the *Ganges*, or some other River, to be washed, the Road being strew'd with Flow-

ers or rich Perfumes, according to the Wealth of the Persons, and all possible Marks of Joy are shewn that the Bride is happily arriv'd to the Age of Child-bearing. In the Proposals of Marriage, the Parents solicit hard on both Sides for a Bargain. When the Time prefix'd is come, the Bridegroom, if he is rich, makes a Cavalcade for some Evenings successively, and particularly that before the Feast-Day, his Horse being richly harness'd, according to his Estate, with one or more Umbrella's born over his Head, and attended by his Friends and Companions. In his Train are several Jugglers and Musicians for the Diversion of the Company. Some throw artificial Fireworks; and the whole Cavalcade is accompanied with every thing that can make it pleasant, diverting, and honourable. 'Tis perform'd from the House of the Bridegroom to that of the Bride through all the high Streets, and if requir'd by the longest Way. When he comes to the Bride's House, into which he is usher'd by Musical Instruments, he places himself upon a Cloth spread for that purpose, whither the Parents bring the Daughter. Then a Priest performs the Ceremony, in Presence of a Magistrate, who swears the Man, That if he divorces his Wife, he shall give back her Portion. Then the Priest concludes, and gives them his Blessing. The Feast is commonly of Betle, Arack, and other Dainties; but they have few strong Liquors. They generally use on these Occasions little round Balls of Past, made of several Aromatick Seeds like Comfits, wherein they mix Opium, which makes them brisk and merry, and then disposes them to Drowsiness and Sleep. The Bride keeps all the while in a separate Room with her Kindred and Friends, who also feast together, the Musick playing all the while. If the Marks of the Bride's Virginity don't appear the first Night, the married Couple are very much confounded next Day, and commonly unhappy for ever; for her Mother, or the nearest of Kin on both Sides, come next Morning to search; and if they are not satisfied, set the Husband against his Wife, and expose them to every body's Laughter; but if they be, make great Rejoycings. They allow Concubinage, and live with their Wives much after the Manner of the *Turks* and

and *Persians*, are extream jealous, have a Liberty to kill them in case of Adultery, and Merchants or others of the richer Sort dispose of their Wives in several Places, where their Trade or other Occasions call them; so that they have Families in each Place, and their several Wives vie with one another who shall be most obliging, that they may enjoy most of their Husband's Company. Their Habits are very rich, and much like those of the *Persians*, so that we need not insist upon them; but shall only observe what *Schouten* says, That the Wives and Daughters of the *Moors* within Doors are for most Part naked from the Girdle upward, and go bare-foot; but when they come abroad, or appear before their Doors, they cover themselves with loose Garments, which fly about their Shoulders, so that most of their naked Bosoms and Arms are seen. The richest Sort load their Arms as high as their Elbows with Rings, and Circles of Silver, Gold, &c. according to their Ability, which are burdensome to themselves, and not at all grateful to the Eyes of Strangers, tho' these proud People delight in them. They wear them also about the Ancles of their Legs. They likewise wear Rings adorned with Pearl in their Ears and Nostrils; and some of their Ear-Rings are so large, that they hang down upon their Shoulders. They have also rich Necklaces, and abundance of Rings on their Fingers, and the poorer Sort have them of Ivory or Glass. They have the greatest Esteem for Hair as black as Jet, and those who are handsome take great Care to tie it up in Buckles with Art. Those of Quality, when they go abroad, cover themselves with Veils, and they have their Gardens, Ponds and Baths, after the Manner of the *Turks*, in which they raise Tombs of a Pyramidical Form, that frequently cost them great Sums of Money.

The Walls of their Houses are made of Earth and Clay, dry'd in the Sun, and plaister'd with Chalk mix'd with Cow's Dung, which they say prevents the breeding of Insects; and over all there's another Composition made of Grass, Milk, Sugar, and Gum, which makes the Walls so even and shining, that nothing can be more pleasant. Their Houses are likewise richly furnish'd with *Persian* and other Tapestries,

and some of them have great Quantities of Silver and Gold Plate. Their Beds are for most Part but slight Quilts laid upon Couches. The Women have their particular Apartments, where they lie, eat, and manage the Affairs of their Household; and they are generally very costly.

The Houses of the ordinary People are built of Straw and Clay, cover'd with Reeds, plaister'd with Cow's Dung, but have neither Chambers, Chimney, Cellars, nor Beds, no Glass to their Windows, nor Locks to their Doors, yet never complain of being robbed. The *Moors* make use of Stools and Benches, but chuse rather to sit cross-legg'd on fine Mats or *Persian* Sopha's; and some of the richest Merchants have sorry Chairs, especially at *Pipely* and *Ougli*, for the Conveniency of their *European* Friends.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Bengal* or *Bengala*, which gives Name to the Kingdom and Gulph, and is by the *Sansons* reckon'd the Capital. They place it on the E. Bank of the *Cosmin*, (which runs about 60 Miles S.W. into the Bay) under the Tropick of *Cancer*, in Long. 136. 40. and Lat. 23. wherein *Catrou* agrees with them. Others place it between the Branches of the *Ganges*, and reckon *Gouro* and *Chatigan* the Capitals of the Province. *Bouffingault* says, it lies on an Island in the Middle of the Mouths of the *Ganges*, 40 Leagues in Circuit; that the Town has 60000 Houses, tho' none of the best; and that 'tis the Residence of the King or Viceroy, who keeps a Guard of Women, in whom he places more Confidence than in the Men. They march with a great deal of Gravity, are very valiant, and expert in riding of Horses, in Tilting with the Scymiter and Buckler, and in Throwing the Mace and Dart; and are apt to affront all Passengers that they meet in their March. After Sun-set, none must come near the Verge of the Palace, where he keeps a Seraglio of the handsomest and finest of these Women, who at that Time walk out into the Garden, which lies along the River. *Bouffingault* adds, That there are Mines of Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones, in the Country, together with Elephants, Rhinoceros's, and Unicorns. They have Canes as big as a Man's Leg, 6 or 7 Fathom long, very hard to break, and are us'd for Levers or to carry Burdens, and especially Palan-

Palanquins. The Natives are great Artists in the Cotton and Silk Manufactures, and in all manner of Embroideries. They make the former so fine, that 'tis hard to judge, says *Bouffingault*, whether a Person that puts them on be cloath'd or naked. They trade very much in black Pottery-Ware and other Utensils, which they make so neat, that they are scarce known in *Europe* from China Ware. They export great Quantities of Sweet-Oil. They make a sort of fine Stuff of an Herb which they spin, intermix'd with a little Silk; but the former is dearest and finest. *Bouffingault* says, 'tis yellow, and call'd the Herb of *Bengal*. They work it in curious Flowers and other Figures, and use it for adorning their Beds, Pavilions, Pillows, &c. He adds, That in certain Islands which lie near the Gulph, between those of *Nicobar* and *Tanasserin*, there's a Nation of Cannibals, who, when their Parents grow aged, hoist them up to the Top of a Tree, and then beat the Trunk with all their Force, in order to shake them off. If they drop, they say they are ripe, and fit to be eat; but if they hold fast, they let them alone as not ripe enough. *Schouten* says, the Inhabitants of *Bengal* have Baths in their Houses. Their Mosques are very low, but built on rising Ground, so that they appear above the other Buildings. They are made of Stone and Lime, but the rest of the Materials are very indifferent. They are generally square at Bottom, and flat on the Top. The Walls are commonly not above two Fathom high, but some are extraordinary white, and encompassed with several fine Apartments and Tombs. The principal Mosques are known by one or two high Towers upon them. They are surrounded with large Ditches full of Water, and there are great Cisterns at the Gates, where the People wash their Faces, Hands, and Feet, before they enter; but they have no Statues, Images, or Painting.

Thevenot says, That in the Islands of the *Ganges*, and other Places of *Bengal*, there's a Bird call'd *Meina*, of the Colour of a Black-bird, as big as a Raven, and has the like Beak, only 'tis yellow and red. The Face above the Eye is cover'd with a yellow Streak, and the Feet are of the same Colour. The Inhabitants esteem it much, and teach it to speak like a Starling, which

it resembles in Tone. It has a peculiar Note, wherein it imitates the Neighing of a Horse. It lives on dry'd Pease. *Thevenot* adds as to the Province in general, that in his Time there were reckon'd here above 20000 Christians. He tells us a notable Story of a Faquir, who, to make himself the Author of a new Trick of Devotion, set about measuring the Extent of the *Mogul's* Empire from hence to *Cabul*, by laying his Body at full Length on the Ground, and rising up again continually. At the same Time his Followers made a Mark on the Ground at the Crown of his Head every time he lay down, that he might know how to regulate his Journey. He went about three quarters of a League a Day, and was a Year a measuring the Extent of this Province; during which he had all possible Respect shew'd him by the Inhabitants, and was obliged to distribute most of the Alms he got among the Poor, who for that Reason follow'd him in great Numbers; but *Thevenot* does not tell us whether he reach'd to *Cabul*. He adds, that this Country was kept in far better Order by the *Patan* Kings before 'twas subject to the *Mahometans* and *Moguls*, because they had then an Uniformity in Religion; but that *Mahometism*, and the Diversity of Religion which ensu'd, introduc'd a general Disorder and Corruption of Manners. *Luyts* seems to doubt whether there be such a Town as *Bengal*, but thinks it mistaken by Geographers for,

2. *Chatigan*, or *Chatigam*. *Moll* and *Herbert* place it at the S. E. Corner of an Island, formed by the two Eastermost Mouths of the *Ganges*, Long. 109. Lat. $22\frac{1}{2}$. the *Sansons* on the W. Side of the *Cosmin*, over against *Bengal*, in Long. 136. Lat. 23. *Mr. Fitch* says, 'tis the chief Harbour of this Country; but 'tis of no further Note among Travellers.

3. *Sondiva*, an Island in the Bay of *Bengal*, in Long. $134\frac{1}{3}$. Lat. $22\frac{1}{3}$. according to the *Sansons*, and Long. $108\frac{3}{4}$. Lat. 22. according to *Moll*. *Herbert* places it 20 Leagues from *Chatigan*, *Mr. Fitch* 120 Miles, and says, 'tis one of the most fruitful Islands in the World, and divided into two Parts by a Channel, navigable at High-Water. There is such Plenty of Rice, salted Kine, Wild-Hogs, and Hens, that he bought good fat Kine for 6s. 3d. apiece, 4 Wild-Hogs ready dress'd

dress'd for 12 s. 6 d. and large fat Hens for 1 d. apiece: Yet the Sellers thought he paid too dear for his Bargain.

4. *Daca, Dekaka, Daac, or Bander-Dacca.* The *Sanfons* place it Long. $133\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $24\frac{1}{2}$. at the Conflux of the *Chaor* and *Ganges*, 196 Miles N. W. from *Chatigan*. *Moll* makes it but 135 Miles, and places it Long. 107. Lat. $23\frac{1}{2}$. in the Tropick of *Cancer*. *Thevenot* makes it the Capital of *Bengala*, says 'tis very narrow, and lies almost a League and a half along the *Ganges*. The Houses for most Part are built of Canes, cover'd with Earth; but the *English* and *Dutch* Houses are more solid. The *Austin* Friars have a handsome Monastery here. *Tavernier* says, the Town lies above two Leagues along the *Ganges*, and is chiefly inhabited by Shipwrights. The Governor's Palace is a sorry Wooden House, enclos'd with high Walls. The Sea flows up above the Town.

5. *Tanda.* The *Sanfons* place it on the W. Banks of the *Chaor*, Long. $134\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $24\frac{1}{2}$. 60 Miles N. E. of *Daca*. Mr. *Fitch* says, the Inhabitants drive a great Trade in Cotton and Cotton-Cloth, and wear nothing but a little Cloth about their Waistes. There are many Tygers, Buffaloes, and Wild-Fowl, here. It was formerly a Kingdom, till subdued by *Eckbar* the Mogul. The Inhabitants are great Idolaters. The Town stands a League from the *Ganges*, the Current being diverted from its old Channel, because it formerly us'd to overflow the adjacent Country, especially in Time of Rain.

6. *Patana, or Patenaw.* The *Sanfons* place it on the E. Side of the *Ganges*, Long $131\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 26. 55 Miles S. E. from *Gouro*, and 135 N. W. from *Daca*. *Moll* puts it Long. $103\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $25\frac{3}{4}$. and makes it double the Distance from *Daca*. *Thevenot*, who places it on the W. Side of the *Ganges*, says, 'tis very large, and that the *Dutch* have a Factory here. This Part of *Bengal* produces great Plenty of Corn, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, Long-Pepper, Cotton and Silk, with several other Commodities, and especially the Fruit *Ananas*, which looks like a Pine-Apple or a Melon. 'Tis green and yellow at first; but when ripe, it loses the former Colour. It grows on a Stalk not above a Foot and a half high, and has a pleasant Taft, like an Apricock. *Luyts* says, this Town, which gives Name

to one of the Divisions of *Bengal*, is not exceeded by any in the Province for Largeness and Riches, tho' he owns that the Buildings are low and mean, and that 'tis but two Miles in Length. 'Tis the Residence of the Governor of the adjacent Country, and the Seat of an *English* and a *Dutch* Factory. *Tavernier* says, the latter is chiefly for Salt-Petre, which the *Dutch* refine at a great Town call'd *Choupar*, 10 Leagues further up the *Ganges*. Mr. *Fitch* says, the Streets are spacious. The Inhabitants send Cotton, Cotton-Cloth, Sugar, Opium, &c. to *Bengal*, and other Parts of *India*. They dig Gold in the Neighbourhood of this Town, which was formerly a Kingdom of it self, till subdued by *Eckbar*, who took it after 4 Months Siege, and permitted his Soldiers to use it at Discretion.

7. *Gouro, or Gowra, on the River Ganges.* The *Sanfons* place it Long. 131. Lat. $26\frac{1}{2}$. 45 Miles above *Patana* to the N. W. and above 100 Leagues from the Coast. Mr. *Marshall*, an *English* Traveller, says, it was once the largest City in the World, being 100 Miles in Circuit, and that it had been the Seat of 26 Kings of *Bengal*, who scorning to live in their Predecessors Houses, built every one a particular Palace, which he supposes chiefly contributed to the mighty Extent of the Place. But Father *Tosi* tells us with more Probability, that the Walls are 9 Miles in Compass, and inclose the Ruins of many noble Palaces; but that at present the Town is almost depopulated.

8. *Malda.* *Moll* places it on the most Easterly Branch of the *Ganges*, Lat. $24\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 106. *Luyts* says, 'tis a large Town of good Trade, and the Seat of an *English* Factory.

9. *Bannara, Banarou, or Benares.* The *Sanfons* place it near the E. Side of the *Ganges*, Lat. $25\frac{3}{4}$. Long. $131\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Lat. $26\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 102. *Tavernier* says, 'tis a large and handsome City, most of the Houses being of Brick or Stone, and higher than any where else in *India*; but the Streets are narrow. They have many Inns, and one particularly very large and handsome, with Galleries, where they sell Calicuts, Silks, &c. The Workmen dare sell none till they be seal'd with the King's Seal, on Pain of being fin'd and cudgell'd. This Town is noted for one of the principal *Indian* Pagods.

About

About half a Mile N. from the City, there's a Mosque with many curious *Mahometan* Sepulchres of fine Architecture, inclos'd in Gardens, in one of which there's a Column 35 Foot high, and as thick as three Men can fathom. It consists of one Stone of a grey Colour, so hard that a Knife can't scrape it, of a Pyramidical Form, with a great Bowl at the Top, and the Fronts are cut with Figures of Animals. The Inhabitants say, 'tis the Sepulchre of one of the Kings of *Boutan*, who was expelled by *Tamerlane's* Successors, and that it was formerly 30 Foot higher, but that it has sunk so much within these 50 Years. *Luyts* says, 'tis noted for an *Indian* University. *Catrou* says, That they have Plenty of Pulse and all Sorts of Grain in the Neighbourhood, and make rich Stuffs of Gold, Silver, and Silk, magnificent Turbans, fine Girdles, and light Vestments for the Ladies of the Seraglio, which makes this one of the richest Places of the *Indies*. *Tavernier* gives the following Description of the Pagod in this City: From the Gates of the Pagod to the River there's a Descent of Stone, with Platforms, and small dark Chambers for the Apartments and Kitchens of the *Bramins*, who dress their own Victuals, because they think others would defile it. They fill Pots full of the Water of the *Ganges*, carry them before the Great Priest, who covers them with a fine Piece of Callico of a Flame Colour, seals them up, and then the *Bramins* carry them on Sticks laid across their Shoulders, and travel with them 3 or 400 Leagues up the Country, where they sell them at vast Prices, because the Idolaters, by drinking this Water, think they obtain Pardon of their Sins, and the richest of them at their Nuptials and other Festivals lay out 4 or 500 Crowns in this Water. The Body of this Pagod is made like a Cross, of equal Parts, as are all the rest. In the Midst there's a very high Cupola, Pyramidical at Top, and at Each of the 4 Ends of the Cross there's a high Tower, with an Ascent on the Outside, with Balconies and Niches for the People to take the Air, adorned with lewd Figures of all Sorts of Creatures. Under the Dome, in the Middle of the Pagod, there's an Altar with Steps to mount it, and 'tis cover'd with rich Tapestry, or Cloth of Gold and Silver, or

painted Callico and Silk, according to the Solemnity. The Women are not suffer'd to enter the Pagod, but worship without. There are many Idols on the Altar, and among others one that stands upright, 6 Foot high, cover'd all over with a long Robe, except the Head and Neck, which are adorned with Chains of Gold and Precious Stones. This is the Representation of one of their Saints call'd *Bainmadou*; and on the Right of the Altar there's the Figure of a Chimæra in massy Gold, being Part Elephant, Part Horse, and Part Mule. This they say carried their Saint when he was alive, and none must approach it but the *Bramins*. On the Left of the Altar there's an Idol of black Marble sitting cross-legg'd about two Foot high, against which the High-Priest's Son rubs Pieces of Callico, Taffaty, &c. that the People throw to him, and restores them again after putting them to his Lips, by which they reckon they are consecrated. This Idol, they say, was the Brother of the tall one. Under the Portal sits a principal *Bramin*, with a great Basin full of yellow Colour, with which he marks those on the Forehead, Arms, and Stomach, that have wash'd themselves in the *Ganges*, and are reckon'd better purified than others that are only wash'd with the Water of it sent to them. Their different Tribes are mark'd with several Colours; but those marked with Yellow are counted purest. Near this Pagod there's a College built by Raja *Jessin*, the most potent of all the Idolaters in the Mogul's Dominions, for the Education of their Youth of Quality. There they are taught to read and write a Language peculiar to the idolatrous Priests, with something of the Mathematics and other Sciences. At the Opening of the Pagod the People crowd about it, and the *Bramins* enter with Censers in their Hands, follow'd by others, who make a hideous Noise with Drums and other Instruments. The two eldest *Bramins* sing, in which the People join, and every one has a Peacock's Tail or some other Fan in his Hand, to drive away the Flies, that they may not annoy the Idol when the Pagod is open'd. These Ceremonies last half an Hour: Then two of the chief *Bramins* make a Noise with Bells, and knock at the Door with a Mallet, when 6 other *Bramins*

within open it; and on the Altar there appears a She-Idol, the Sister of the former, with the Representations of a Boy, and a Girdle on the Right and Left. Then the People fall down and worship three times; after which they throw Nosegays and Garlands to the Priests, who rub them on the Idols, and restore them. They present Store of Rice, Butter, Meal, Oil, and Milk-Meats, to the Idol, upon which the *Bramins* feast with great Luxury. And this Idol being the Patroness of the Females, the Pagod is constantly crowded with Women and Maids without the Door. There are several other Pagods in the Neighbourhood, and in one of them an Idol who has Diamonds instead of Eyes, a Collar of Pearl about his Neck, and a rich Canopy over his Head, supported by Pillars of Silver.

Tavernier says, That 8 Days Journey Northward the Country is mountainous, but sometimes opens into very large Plains, which abound with all Sorts of Corn. Such vast Numbers of Elephants breed here, that they not only destroy their Harvest, but rob the Caravans of their Provisions, except they be scared by their Fire-Arms, or the Shouts of the Company, who are forced to lie in the Fields, because there are no Inns. Here there's a Pagod, with many Representations of Women and Maids, and Idols of Gold and Silver upon the Altars. This Place is chiefly frequented by Women and Pilgrims, who fast and wash themselves frequently, and take all the Hair off their Bodies by a certain Earth which they rub on them.

10. *Saferon*. *Moll* places it on the W. Side of the *Ganges*, 30 Miles S. E. from *Benares*, on the Road to *Patna*, at the Conflux of the *Goudaras* and *Ganges*. *Tavernier* says, it lies near a Range of Mountains, by which there's a great Lake, with a small Island, on which there's a fair Mosque, with a stately Sepulchre, and a handsome Stone Bridge, that joins it to the main Land. On one Side of the Lake there's a great Garden, with a fair Sepulchre in the Middle. *Luyts* says, the City is spacious, the Houses high, and built of a sort of Clay in the Neighbourhood, burnt to the Hardness of a Stone.

11. *Halabasse*, *Praya*, *Heliobasse*, *Alabas*, or *Elabas*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 29. Long.

131. *Moll* Lat. 26 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 101. near the Conflux of the *Gemena* and the *Ganges*. *Catrou* places it on the E. Side of the *Ganges*, near the Mouth of a River, which falls into it, Lat. 27. Long. 133. about 20 Miles N. E. from *Banares*. *Luyts* supposes it to be *Strabo's* *Palibothra*. It gives Name to the Province, which *Thevenot* says comprehends *Narwar* and *Mewat*. He supposes it to be *Pliny's* *Chrysobachra*, places it at the Mouth of the *Gemna*, and says, it was taken by the Mogul *Eckbar* after he subdued *Bengal*. He built a strong Citadel here in a Peninsula on the N. Side of the *Gemna*, encompassed with 3 Stone Walls. Mr. *Finch* says, 'tis reckon'd one of the Wonders of the East: 20000 Men were employ'd in it for several Years. There's an ancient Obelisk in it of hard red Stone, above 60 Foot high, and of an unknown Depth under Ground, with many Inscriptions, which are not now legible. *Herbert* supposes it to have been erected by *Alexander the Great* or *Bacchus*. The Royal Palace is a fair Structure, with Arches underneath, where they keep their Pagods, which the Inhabitants ascribe to *Adam* and *Eve*, whose Religion they pretend to follow, and fancy they were created there. There's a Tree which they call the *Tree of Life*: 'Tis a wild Fig-Tree, which springs up; notwithstanding all Endeavours have been us'd to destroy it. The Place is frequented at certain Seasons by incredible Numbers of Pilgrims from all Parts of the *Indies*, who, before they approach the Place, wash themselves in the *Ganges*. This Place is much haunted by Multitudes of Faquirs, who, by their ridiculous Pennances and Austerities, draw great Sums from the Rich, and (according to *Thevenot*) resemble our Gipsies in their lewd Way of Living; but they pretend to derive themselves from one of their Princes, who being strip'd of all he had by an Ape, was, with his Followers, maintain'd by the Charity of others. They sometimes go arm'd, and rob such as don't give them what they demand. They are so brutish, that they annoy those who give them Subsistence, and particularly the Caravans, with whom they travel, and will scarce suffer them to rest at Nights by their hideous Singing and Preaching, tho' many times they are soundly bang'd for it. Some of them

are really devout in their Way, and do wonderful Penitence with admirable Patience, as holding their Arms across behind their Head as long as they live, by which they lose the Use of them. Sometimes they will stand on a Stone for several Weeks and Months: Others bury themselves in Pits for a considerable Time. Some of 'em never sleep but by leaning their Bodies across a Rope, and others beat their Heads with great Stones in each Hand, and all to extort Charity from the Idolaters, who think they merit by it, and therefore carefully supply them: But the *Mogul* Princes are well enough pleas'd when such of them as commit Violences are kill'd by those they assault; for by the Orders of their Superiors, they sometimes lay whole Provinces under Contribution, on Pretence of begging, and will not stir till they have their Demands. Mr. *Finch* says, *Orangzeb* shelter'd himself in the Castle when he rebelled against his Father. *Thevenot* adds, there are many good Towns in this Province, but does not describe them.

12. *Rotas*, or *Roughraz*, a famous Castle. *Moll* places it at the Conflux of two Rivers, which run 60 Miles N. into the *Ganges*, and makes it about the same Distance S. W. of *Patna*. *Herbert* says, it was anciently call'd *Oreophanta*, render'd impregnable both by Art and Nature, and seated upon a steep Hill, whose Ascent is cut obliquely out of the Rock 3 Miles in Circuit. The rest of the Rock is round; the Top is a Plain of 8 square Miles, healthful and fruitful, and contains 16 Villages near the Castle. 'Tis supposed to be one of the strongest, as well as most pleasant, Fortresses in the World. 'Twas taken in the Time of *Eckbar* the Great *Mogul* by Men in Women's Apparel, the Raja who commanded it being deceived by one of the *Mogul's* Grandees, who marching that Way with a Seraglio of Ladies, shew'd them to the Raja, and desir'd Liberty to leave them in his Castle till he returned from his Expedition. The Raja being weak and lustful, agreed to the Proposal, as thinking himself sure of so many Beauties; and the Grandee making his Ladies change Habits with so many young Soldiers, conducted by Eunuchs, they surpris'd the Castle, and cut off the Raja's Head. *Fauquernier* says, the Castle is fortified

with 6 Bastions, 27 Cannon, and 3 Moats full of Water, wherein there's good Fish. He makes the Plain at Top but half a League in Compass. 'Tis water'd with 20 Springs, and produces Corn and Rice; but the rest is a steep Precipice cover'd with Woods. He adds, that none of the *Indian* Kings could ever take it, till it was surpris'd as above.

13. *Kasembasar*. *Moll* places it on the E. Side of the *Ganges*; Lat. 24. Long. 106. 160 Miles S. E. from *Rotas*. *Tavernier* says, it sends abroad Annually 22000 Bales of Raw Silk, each Bale a Hundred Weight. The *Dutch* export 6 or 7000 Bales per Ann. and would export more, but that the *Tartar* and *Mogul* Merchants oppose them; for they make use of all the rest, except what the Natives keep for themselves. This Silk is naturally yellowish; but the Natives whiten it with Ashes of what they call *Adam's Fig-Tree*. *Bernier* says, the *English* Merchants have a Factory here.

14. *Jonpour*, or *Jonpore*. *Moll* places it Lat. 24. Long. 102. *Sanson* Lat. 26 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 131. 'Tis noted for some Monuments of Antiquity, and for a considerable Trade in Sweet-scented Oils, rich Carpets, Hangings embroider'd with Silk, and all Sorts of fine Linen.

15. *Ragemahal*, *Rojomahol*, or *Ragmehol*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 25 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 130 $\frac{3}{4}$. *Tavernier* says, That the Road from the *Ganges* to the Town is pav'd with Brick for a League or two. It was formerly the Residence of the Governors of *Bengal*, a Place of great Trade, and the adjacent Country yields excellent Hunting; but the River having chang'd its Course at a greater Distance from the City, the Governor resides now at *Dacca*, and the Merchants have follow'd him. The Silks of the Neighbourhood are much esteem'd, and they have Rice in great Plenty.

16. *Satigan*, or *Sotiga*. The *Sansons* place it in an Island within the most Western Branch of the *Ganges*, just under the Tropick of *Cancer*, Lat. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 131. Mr. *Frederick*, in his Travels, says, in his Time about 30 Ships were Annually laden here with Rice, Lacque, Sugar, Long-Pepper, Oil of *Zexelin*, &c. and that Merchants usually bought and freighted Vessels at this Place to trade up the *Ganges*, by which they made

made great Profit; but the Commerce is now removed to *Ougli*. The People here worship the *Ganges*, are brought to its Banks, and water'd with it when sick; and if they die, are half burnt, and thrown into it, with an empty Jar about their Necks.

17. *Ougli*, *Ouguely*, or *Huguely*, lies on the S. Side of the same Island, in an unhealthy Air, about 50 Miles S. from *Satigan*. *Moll* places it Lat. $23\frac{1}{4}$. Long. $105\frac{3}{4}$. *Schouten* says, it lies along the River *Ganges*, and is pretty large. The Streets are wide, but not pav'd. They have fine commodious Houses, according to the Fashion of the Country, rich Warehouses and Shops, with infinite Sorts of Goods, especially Silks, fine Cloth, and all the Stuffs of the *Indies*. There are abundance of *Moorish* Merchants, who drive a great Trade here. They have five Pagods in the great Market-place, frequented by as many Sects, who have their particular Idols, and they all live in the Quarters belonging to their Pagods. The *Dutch* have a magnificent Factory here, in a large open Place about a Musket-shot from the *Ganges*, that they mayn't be annoy'd by its Inundations. It looks more like a great Castle than a Factory of Merchants, being encompassed with high Stone Walls, and Bastions fac'd with Stone, and mounted with Cannon. The whole is encompassed with deep Ditches full of Water. 'Tis a very spacious Place, and has convenient Apartments for the Director, the Counsellors, Officers, and all that belong to the Company. They have also great Warehouses built of Stone, for the Goods which they export and import. The adjacent Country is very fine, and well diversified by arable Land, neat Houses, large Gardens, Ponds, Bathing-Places, pleasant Villages, and Roads set with Trees, which resemble Walks. *Schouten* says, the *English* built a new Factory when he was there, the Inundations of the River having endamaged their old one. *Bernier* says, there were 8 or 9000 Christians there in his Time, and about 25000 in the rest of the Kingdom. The *Portuguese* here call the Town by the Name of *Porto-Piqueno*, and had a Factory there in *Fitch's* Time. He mentions likewise *Porto-Angeli* a little to the S. W. which also belong'd to the *Portuguese*, and had a considerable Trade in the same Commodi-

ties as *Ougli*, which was founded by that Nation, who had a great Commerce there, till they were expelled by the *Moguls* for their Piracy,

18. *Laccanow*, mention'd by Mr. *Fitch* in his Travels, in the Road betwixt *Cannore* and *Jonpour*. He says, 'tis a Place of mighty Trade, especially in Linen.

19. *Oudee*, or *Oujea*, betwixt *Laccanow* and *Jonpour*, an ancient City, formerly the Seat of the *Patan* Kings, but much defac'd by Time and War. Its greatest Fame at present is from the Ruins of *Ranachand Castle*, inhabited by *Bramins*, who encourage the Idolaters to come and wash in the *Ganges* here, which they tell them has been practis'd 394500 Years before the Creation of the World, according to the *European* Computation. Abundance of Gold is found in the Ruins of this Castle, and a sort of Horns, which they value much more. Some say, it is the Unicorn's Horn. They bring a mighty Trade to this Place, and are us'd by the *Indians* for Drinking-Cups and Bucklers. *Herbert* says, 'tis noted for several antick Monuments.

20. *Bacola*. The *Sansons* place it under the Tropick of *Cancer*, Lat. $24\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 128. Mr. *Fitch* says, in his Time they had a King of their own, who had large and fruitful Dominions, that produced abundance of Rice, Cotton, and Silk. The Houses of the Town were fair and high, the Streets large, the People naked, except a little Cloth about their Middle; and the Women had many Silver Chains and Rings about their Necks, Arms, and Legs, and the Poorer had them of Copper and Ivory.

21. *Serripore*. *Fitch* says, it stood on the *Ganges*, and had a King of its own. All the People hereabouts were Rebels against *Eckbar* the *Mogul*, and upon the Approach of his Horse retired to their Islands, where they bid him Defiance. Their chief Manufacture was Cotton-Cloth.

22. *Sinnergan*, or *Sonargan*. *Fitch* says, it lies 6 Leagues from *Serripore*, and was noted for the finest Cotton-Cloth in the *Indies*. Many of the Inhabitants were rich, and serv'd their Neighbours with Cotton-Cloth and Rice. He adds, that the Inhabitants went naked like those of *Bacola*, would eat no Flesh, nor kill any Beast; that their Houses were little, and cover'd with Straw;

that the chief King of all these Countries was then called *Isachan*, a great Friend to the Christians, and had many other Kings under him.

23. *Soumelpore*, about 60 Miles from *Rotas*. *Tavernier* says, 'tis a great Town, the Houses of Earth, and cover'd with Branches of *Coco-Trees*. The Road from hence to *Rotas* is thro' Woods, much infested by Robbers. The Raja of this Country took Occasion, from the War between *Cha-Jaham* and his Father, to revolt; but the former sent an Army, and obliged him to continue his Tribute. In the River *Gouel*, which rises from the S. Mountains of *Golconda*, and runs by this Town into the *Ganges*, are found Store of Diamonds. About the End of *January*, or the Beginning of *February*, when the Water is cleared from the thick Soil occasion'd by the great Rains, which generally fall in *December*, above 8000 Men, Women and Children, search for Diamonds all along from this Town to the very Mountains from whence the River rises. The Way of finding them, we shall describe in *Golconda*.

24. *Pipli*, or *Pipely*. *Moll* places it in *Orissa*, on the Sea-Coast. Long. 104. Lat. $20\frac{2}{3}$. the *Sansons* 60 Miles from it, in an Island formed by the River *Guenga*, between *Golconda* and the Mouths of the *Ganges*, Lat. $21\frac{2}{3}$. Long. 128. *Schouten* says, it lies in a fine Plain by a River Side, which is so shallow, that the *Dutch* Ships are obliged to cast Anchor two Leagues from the Coast, where they are exposed to all Wind and Weather, so long as the S. Winds reign. But in *November* and the three following Months, when the N. E. Wind blows, the Weather becomes fair, and the Road pretty good. The smaller Vessels anchor nearer behind the Island of *Gale*. Yachts and other light Ships may go up and down the River of *Pipely* with the Tide: But sometimes they strike upon the Shelves, which are beyond the Mouth of the River, so that 'tis very difficult to recover them. He says, the Town lies 4 or 5 Leagues up the River, is pretty large and populous, but un-walled. The principal Houses, Pagods, and other great Structures, are graced with Courts, Galleries, Gardens, Beds of Moss, and Orchards. The Houses of the *Moors* are very fine; but those of the *Banians* and

Gentiles are for most Part built of Cow's Dung and Clay, cover'd with Bamboo-Canes and *Coco-Leaves*. All the Houses of the Idolaters are erected upon Heaps of Clay, which are higher here than any where else, because of the great Inundations that happen in the rainy Months, by which sometimes all their Lands are cover'd, and many Men and Cattle drown'd.

25. *Bellesore*, or *Balasor*, formerly *Balapur*. The *Sansons* place it 60 Miles S. W. of *Pipeli*, near a River, which runs 40 Miles Eastward into the Bay of *Bengal*. *Moll* places it scarce 15 Miles from it, and not above 30 from *Pipely*, in the same Province. *Schouten* makes it 5 Leagues W. of the River of *Pipely*. Here the *English* have a good Factory, and most of their Ships unlade. There are rich *Moors* *Banians* and *Gentiles* in this Town. On the Land-side there's a very high Mountain. The Road is secured from the Violence of the S. Wind and Tempests by *Cape Palmeris*; and when the Weather is clear, the *English* in this Harbour, and the *French* at *Pipely*, can see one another. *Luyts* says, the Air is not very good.

Having thus finished the Geography of *Bengal*, we shall only add the following Particulars concerning the idolatrous Inhabitants, collected from M. *Luillier's* Voyage to the *Indies*, printed at *Paris* in 1703. That Author says, the *Gentiles* here, amongst other Deities, worship one whom they call *Caltia*, the Goddess of War. They paint her with 7 Heads, arm'd with Helmets, to denote her Grandeur; and with 14 Arms, holding Sabres, Bows and Arrows, to express her Valour. They adorn this Figure with all Sorts of Flowers and fine Ornaments: Then they expose her to publick View for a Month, when the Pagans bring her Coris, Fruits, Fish, Rice, Oil, and (in short) the best of every thing they can get. After they have made their Offerings, they dance and play about her incessantly till the Month is ended, when they carry the Idol to the *Ganges*, put it into a Boat; and after they have made her take a few Turns on the Water, throw her in with all her Ornaments, and then they say she goes to Rest with *Ganges*.

These Pagans reckon it a Crime to kill Cows, or to touch any that have been killed,

led, and because they believe the *Metempsychosis* live for most Part on Rice and boil'd Fish. They use a little Oil and Mustard, but no Salt or Pepper, and every one eats by himself. They never sit down at their Meals, use the Leaves of *Bananier* for Napkins, and the Ground for their Table. They boil their Rice in an Earthen Platter, which serves but once, and make their Fires with dry'd Cow's Dung, which they think purifies more than other Fuel. They wash in the *Ganges* every Evening and Morning before Meals, and as often as they happen to be touch'd by any of those Nations they reckon impure, and will suffer Extremity of Hunger rather than continue in that State of pretended Impurity. They frequently make Rejoycings in Honour of their Gods, which they call *Tamachars*, and then pay their Homage to the *Ganges*, attended with Songs, Dances, and Flambeaux. Before they present their Offerings to the Idols, they tumble an Hour in the Mire, then embrace one another, and wash in the *Ganges*. There are always two *Bramins*, who are High-Priests or Interpreters of the Law, and are of the first Cast or Degree of Profession. The *Mahometans*, since they became Masters of this Country, seldom or never permit the *Gentiles* to burn their Wives with their Husbands.

39. O R I X A, or O R I S T A N,

Is bounded with the River *Guenga*, which parts it from *Bengal* on the N. the Bay on the E. *Golconda* on the S. and the Mountains of *Ballagate* and *Berar* on the W. The *Sansons* extend it between 20 and 23 Deg. of Lat. 445 Miles from E. to W. and 235 where broadest. *Moll* makes the former 470 Miles, and the latter 240. Mr. *Fitch* says, it was formerly govern'd by a King of its own, who was subdued first by the King of *Patan*, and afterwards by *Eckbar* the Mogul. The *Dutch* confound it with the Coast of *Coromandel*, and *Mandelsloe* with *Golconda*, of which (according to *Luyts*) it was formerly a Part, till it was by the Mogul annex'd to his Empire. *Catrou* calls it *Urecha*, and says, the Soil is fruitful in Rice.

The chief Town is of the same Name. The *Sansons* place it Long. 124. Lat. 20 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* Long. 100. Lat. 20 $\frac{3}{4}$. *Fitch* says, it lies

6 Days Journey from *Satagan* to the S. W. and that they make a great deal of Cloth here of Cotton, and of the Herb or Grass formerly mention'd in *Bengal*. Mr. *Frederick* says, 'That when 'twas govern'd by its own King, they Yearly exported 25 or 30 Ship-load of Rice, White Cloth, Butter, Lacque, Pepper, Ginger, Mirabolans, Cloth of Herbs, &c. but the Trade is since diminished by the great Custom which the Mogul has laid on those Commodities. *Luyts* places this Town on a Hill in the Middle of this Province, 100 Miles from the Sea.

The other principal Towns are, *Ramana* on the River *Guenga*; *Caprara*; *Manicupatam*; and *Palhor*, on the Coast; but we have no particular Description of them.

40. M A R O U C H A,

A Province omitted in our Maps. M. de la Robbe places a Country of this Name N. of *Narvar*, on the other Side of the River *Semena*, including in it the Towns of *Gianabad*, *Aurengabad*, and *Menapora*, wherein he seems to agree with *Luyts* and the *Sansons*, who in their Tables of the Mogul's Empire make it one of the Midland Provinces next to *Narvar*; but we find only *Menapora* in our Maps, according to M. Robbe's Position of it, *Gianabad* being not mention'd at all, and *Aurengabad* being placed both by *Moll* and *Catrou* in the Country of *Ballagate*, several Hundred Miles S. of *Narvar*. The former makes it Long. 94 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 18 $\frac{2}{3}$. 212 Miles S. E. of *Surat*; the latter Long. 120 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 19 $\frac{1}{2}$. on the Banks of the River *Guenga*. *Thevenot* makes it 75 Leagues from *Surat*, and says, the Way betwixt them is planted with a great Number of different Sorts of Trees, and filled with Antelopes, Hares, Partridges, and Buffaloes. Most of it is arable Land, which produces the best Rice in the *Indies*. It abounds also with Cotton, and in many Places with Sugar-Canes. There are some Hills of difficult Access, intermix'd with fine Plains, well water'd with several small Brooks. He adds, that in this Road there are 4 Towns and 34 Villages well peopled. In the Highways are Guards, who demand Money of Travellers, tho' it be not their Due. There are also a great many Reservoirs of Water, and nasty Caravanse-ways. They

They have Pagods in most of their Towns and Villages. There's one dedicated to their God *Ram*, with an Ox of Stone at the Door, which they say is the Figure of the Beast that us'd to carry him. Some are of one entire Stone, 6 Foot high, on which the Figure of a Man is carved in *Relievo*. *Thevenot* says, the Town of *Aurangeabad* or *Orangabad* is large, but has no Walls. 'Tis the Residence of the Governor of these Parts, and took its Name from *Orangzeb*, who commanded here in his Father's Lifetime. He erected a stately Mosque in Honour of his first Wife, who died here. 'Tis cover'd with a Dome, and beautified with 4 Steeples. The Stone of which it is built is polish'd, and looks like Marble. There are other fair Mosques here, with Caravan-fera's and Bagnio's. The Buildings are chiefly of Free-stone, and pretty high. The Streets are planted all along with Trees, and in their Gardens there are several Sorts of Grapes and other Fruit. They have Sheep without Horns, which are so strong, that they bridle and saddle them to carry their Children. The Town drives a good Trade, is well peopled, and has good Soil about it. When *Thevenot* was here, he saw a Sort of Apes brought from *Ceylan*, which their Masters call'd Wild Men, and are much valu'd by the *Indians*. They were no bigger than one's Fist, had a flat Forehead, large round Eyes, which were very clear and yellow. They had also a sharp Snout, their Ears were yellow in the Inside; they had no Tail, and their Hair was like that of other Monkies.

The Peninsula of the Indies on this Side Ganges.

IT lies, according to the *Sansons*, betwixt Lat. $7\frac{1}{2}$ and 20. and betwixt Long. 115 and 124. on the N. Part; but it is much contracted on the S. *Moll* places it betwixt Lat. 9 and 23. and Long. 91 and 109. on the N. but likewise contracts it on the S. The latter makes it about 900 Miles from S. to N. about 840 where broadest from E. to W. on the N. Part; but the Breadth is various on the S. where it runs out into the Sea almost in Form of a Pyramid.

It has the *Indian Ocean* on the W. and S. the Bay of *Bengal* on the E. and *Indostan* on the N. 'Tis divided into the Kingdoms of *Decan*, *Golconda*, *Bisnagar*, *Malabar*, and the Principalities of *Gingi*, *Tanjaur*, *Madura*, and the Fishing Coast.

The Kingdom of DECAN,

IS subdivided into *Decan Proper*, *Cuncan*, and *Ballagate*, and has *Cambaya* on the N. *Anna* and *Bisnagar* on the S. the *Indian Ocean* on the W. and *Golconda* on the E. according to the *Sansons*, 390 Miles from S. W. to N. E. and 344 Miles from S. E. to N. W. *Ananias* extends it N. and S. above 250 along the Sea, from the River *Bate* to that of *Aliga*. *Johannes de Baroes* makes it 65 Spanish Miles from *Chaul* to the River *Aliga*.

DECAN PROPER.

The *Sansons* make it 210 Miles from E. to W. and 90 from N. to S. and bound it with *Cuncan* on the S. *Cambaya* on the N. the Sea on the W. and *Ballagate* on the E. *Luyts* says, 'tis but 60 Miles in Breadth, and not above 120 in Length. *Ogilby* says, this Country is fruitful in all Things necessary for Life, except Raisins, Nuts, and Chestnuts. It was formerly, with *Ballagate*, *Cuncan*, and *Visiapour*, subject to one Prince.

Betwixt 3 and 400 Years ago, these Countries were subdued by the King of *Dehli*, as *Cambaya* was by the *Mahometans*, who us'd the Pagan Inhabitants very cruelly. The Remains of them are now called *Venafars* and *Collers*, who frequently plunder their Neighbours with Impunity. The *Moguls* did afterwards subdue the greatest Part of *Dehli*, from whence they were drove out by a Lord of *Bengal* call'd *Tcherkan*, who taking Arms against his King for cutting off his Brother, unjustly seiz'd the Country, with *Ballagate* and *Cuncan*; after which he return'd to *Bengal*, leaving the Government to one of his Nephews, who divided the Country amongst several Lords, that conspir'd against him, and set up as so many petty Sovereigns. The Curious may see more of it in *Thevenot*. They were afterwards subdued by the King of *Narsingua*, and

and he by another, who seiz'd all those Countries except *Melik*, which was conquer'd by the *Moguls*, who made themselves Masters of the Whole in the Time of *Eckbar*, about 1595. The greatest Resistance he met with was from one of their Princesses, who was at last subdued, tho' assisted by the *Portuguese*. About 1623, a Child of 12 Years of Age happening to be King of this Country, it was chiefly govern'd by *Melec-Amber*, one of his Slaves, and a *Mahometan*, who is accused for having been a Tyrant and a Sorcerer; and that in order to obtain Success, he offer'd up some Hundreds of Slaves as a Sacrifice to the Devil. He maintain'd a long War against the *Mogul*, and 'tis said had a Gun of such a prodigious Size, as required 1500 Weight of Powder to charge it, and some Thousands of Oxen and Elephants to draw it; that he held it in such Esteem, as to cover it with Cloth of Gold, and repair'd Annually with great Solemnity to the Place where it was kept, as if he would worship it. *Mandel-Aoe* says, the King of *Decan* had more Store of Artillery than any of the *Indian* Princes; that he had one Brass Piece cast by an *Italian*, the Ball of which weighed 800 Pound, and required 540 Pound of fine Powder to discharge it. Perhaps it is the same with that mentioned by *Ogilby*. The Inhabitants of this Country are *Banians* and *Mahometans*, and the *Venesars* above-mentioned, who are chiefly employ'd in carrying Wheat and Rice by Caravans of 1000 Beasts at a time to *Indostan*, and other neighbouring Countries. They always travel with their Families, and their Wives are so expert in Archery, that they serve as a Guard against the *Rajeputs* and other Robbers.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Decan*, the Metropolis, which, according to *Herbert*, lies about 10 Miles from the Diamond Mine. Other Travellers say, it is strong and well built, and has a noble Palace; and *Heylin* says, the Inhabitants are so rich, that they are generally clad in fine Silk; but *Luyts* thinks they are mistaken, and have confounded it with *Andanagar*, which is sometimes call'd *Danagar*; and it's certain that we have no such Town as *Decan* in our Maps.

2. *Andanagar*, *Amdanagar*, or *Amadnagar*. *Moll* places it Lat. $18\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 94. about 100

Miles E. from the Coast. The *Sansons* agree in the Lat. but make the Long. 118. *Luyts* says, it lies on the River *Guenga*, near the Borders of *Golconda*, and was formerly the Residence of their Kings, because of its pleasant Situation, and being encompassed with delightful Gardens, says *Ogilby*. *Heylin* says, it is a beautiful and flourishing City. The Natives took this Town from the *Moguls* in 1610, says Mr. *Finch*, tho' they had then 500000 Men in the Field.

3. *Chaul*, lies on the W. Coast, near the Mouth of the River *Bate*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. $18\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $115\frac{1}{2}$. 'Tis also called *Chiaul*, *Ciul*, and *Seuul*. *Astaldus* supposes it to be *Ptolomy's Comane*. Ships come up to the Walls of the City by the River, and there's a spacious Haven in the Bay below it; but *Thevenot* says, 'tis of very difficult Entrance. Mr. *Fitch* says, it makes two Towns, one belonging to the *Moors*, and the other to the *Portuguese*, which lies nearest the Sea, commands the Bay, and is wall'd about. A little above this stands the *Moors* Town, govern'd by a King of their own. Their chief Trade is in Silks, Spices, Drugs, Sandals, Elephant's Teeth, China, and Sugar made of Coco-Nuts: Others say of Nuts of the Palm-Tree, with the Wood of which they build Ships: Of its Nuts they make Wine and Sugar; and out of the Tree there runs a white Liquor in the Spring, which being distilled, makes a strong Liquor, and put into Casks with a Quantity of *Zibibbo*, it becomes perfect Wine. They likewise press Oil out of the Nuts, make Cables of the Bark; of the Boughs, Bedsteads; of the Leaves cut small and woven, Sails and fine Mats: Of the outer Rind of the Nut, they make Occam to caulk Ships; and of the hard Bark, they make Spoons and other Vessels for Meat, says Mr. *Frederick* in his *Indian* Observations. *Ogilby* says, the *Portuguese* have two Forts here, one which they built by Leave in 1520, and that on the other Side the Harbour they took from the *Moors*. S. of the Harbour there's a famous Mountain, with a Fortress on the Top, which commands both the Haven and the City. It was also taken by the *Portuguese* in 1507, who have since made it stronger, and defend the Town by it against the *Moors*. The *Portuguese* have several Churches, a Toll-House,

House, and a Cloyster of Jesuits in this City. The Air here inclines more to Hot than Cold, and they have abundance of Horses and Black Cattle in the Neighbourhood. *Luyts* says, the Trade is much diminished by the Neighbourhood of the *English* and *Dutch*, and that the *Portuguese* are at great Charge in maintaining a Garrison here. *Thevenot* includes this Town in the Province of *Baglana*, which he makes one of the Subdivisions of *Decan Proper*.

4. *Bider*, by some reckon'd the Metropolis and Seat of their Kings; but whether it be the same with what some others place in *Ballagate*, is not certain. *Heylen* says, one of their Kings order'd every one of his Governors to build a Palace here, which much enlarg'd and beautified the City; and that he oblig'd every one of them to leave his Son here as an Hostage for their Fidelity. *Thevenot*, who makes the Province of *Telenga* one of the Subdivisions of *Decan*, says, 'tis the Capital of that Province, and that it belong'd to *Ballagate* when it had Kings, but at other times to *Decan*, which seems to reconcile the different Position of it by Geographers. He says, the Town is encompassed with Brick Walls; furnish'd with Battlements and Towers, mounted with great Cannon, of which some of the Pieces are 3 Foot wide in the Mouth. The Garrison consists commonly of 3000 Men, half Horse, and half Foot, with 700 Gunners. The Governor lodges in a Castle without the Town.

5. *Danda*, or *Dunde*, a large well built Trading Town, about 30 Miles N. from *Dabul*, and about 45 S. E. from *Bombay*. It lies at the Mouth of the River *Derry*, according to *Mandelsse*.

6. *Bombay*, or *Bombaim*, so call'd because of its good Harbour, capable of 1000 Ships, lies in an Island on this Coast, Lat. 19. Long. 91. about 30 Miles S. W. from *Baceim*, and 45 N. W. from *Danda*. It was given by the *Portuguese* to the *English* on the Marriage of *Catherine*, Infanta of *Portugal*, to *K. Charles II.* of *Great Britain* in 1662. But *Dr. Fryar* says, they refus'd to surrender it for some Time, tho' commanded to do it by their King, and not at last but on Conditions. He tells the Story as follows: *King Charles II.* sent 5 Men of War, under the Conduct of my Lord *Malberry*, who

carried with him a *Portuguese* Viceroy, confirm'd by their own King, to take Possession of *Bombay* and the neighbouring Islands in the Name of our King *Charles*: Yet the *Portuguese* not only refus'd to surrender, but constrain'd that Viceroy to concur with them, otherwise they would not allow him to take Possession of his new Dignity. Upon this, my Lord *Malberry* examin'd his Commission, and finding it not large enough, retired to *Swally*, where he landed 500 stout Men, commanded by Sir *Abraham Shipman*, who was appointed Generalissimo for the King of *England* on the *Indian* Coast. This so alarmed the *Moors*, that they threaten'd to destroy the *English* Factory at *Surat* if the Men did not reembark, which they did at the Desire of the Factory. Then they sail'd to *Angediva*, a barren, unhealthful, and desert Island, near the Main, and 12 Leagues S. of *Goa*. But the *Portuguese* perceiving my Lord to be resolute, resign'd the whole Island, with the Bay, on Condition that the Sovereignty should belong to the King of *England*; but that every Man should enjoy his own Estate, and the free Exercise of the Popish Religion. Sir *Abraham*, with most of his Men, perish'd at *Angediva* by the noisome Air, the violent Rains, and their own Intemperance. Mr. *Cook* succeeded him, and with the few Men that were left was admitted into *Bombaim* in 1664. When he came, he found a House pretty well seated, but ill fortified, having only 4 Brass Guns and a few Chambers placed on small Towers to over-awe the *Malabars*, who infested the adjacent Parts, plunder'd and kill'd the Inhabitants, or carried them off into Slavery. About the House there was a delicate Garden, said to be the pleasantest in *India*. This the *English* converted into Fortifications. Mr. *Cook* being chang'd, was succeeded by Sir *Gervase Lucas*, sent over by *K. Charles*, brought the *Portuguese* to a better Compliance, and would have made them perform their Bargain to the full, but he died. Captain *Gary* succeeded him, and took upon him the State of a Viceroy: But the King finding that 'twas not worth while to support his Pride, and that the Commanders of the Men of War made more Profit of this Place than the Crown, and the *East-India* Company being undersold by those new Adventurers, and liable to suffer

fer for what Austerities they had committed against the *Indians*, they begged the Island of the King, which he readily granted, upon their defraying his Charge, and holding it of the Crown. This was displeasing to the Soldiers to be under the Government of Merchants, and the ill Effect of it was seen by the faint Resistance our Ships there made to the *Dutch*, whom they imprudently attack'd; but many of the Captains being principal Owners of the Vessels, were more careful to secure themselves, than to support the Character of the Nation. The *Dutch* did afterwards attack this Island; but were so warmly received by Sir Geo. Oxendine, the Company's President, who came hither himself from *Surat*, that they drew off with Loss, saying, That *Bombaim* was as strong as the Devil, there being then 120 Cannon mounted upon the Fort, 20 more in other convenient Places, and 60 Field-Pieces with Carriages to attend the Militia, which then consisted of 300 *English*, 900 *Portuguese* under *English* Commanders, and 300 *Bandarins*, who look'd after the Cocoa-Woods adjoining to the Town, that are the chief Estates of the Inhabitants, besides some Thousands more that serv'd to make a Shew, and 3 *English* Men of War riding in the Harbour. Since that Time, they have cut a Trench out of the Rock, that it may be surrounded with the Water of the Sea. But after all, the Doctor says the Fort is ill contriv'd, being not large enough to entertain a sufficient Number of Defendants, and ill supplied with Water and Granaries. The Town lies at a pretty Distance from the Fort, inhabited by *English*, *Portuguese*, Pagans, *Mahometans*, and Christians call'd *Coolys*, most of them Fishermen. The Town is a Mile long, the Houses low, thatch'd with the Leaves of Cocoa-Trees, except a few left by the *Portuguese*, and some built by the Company. The Custom-House and Ware-House are pretty well built, and their Windows have Oyster Shells polish'd, and cut into Squares, instead of Glass, which look gracefully enough. They have a handsome Market-place at the End of the Town, and the *Portuguese* have a pretty House and Church, with Orchards of *Indian* Fruit. The *English* have a Burying-place, with

some handsome Tombs, that form a good Prospect at the Entrance of the Harbour, but neither Church nor Hospital. They have no Water but Rain preserv'd in Cisterns; and when that fails, they are forced to dig Wells, which have a brackish Taste; so that the better Sort have it from *Masse-goung*, where there's a fresh Spring about a Mile up the Bay. This is a large Fishing-Town, noted for a Fish call'd *Bumbelo*, which, with a coarse Rice, and Cocoa Wine call'd *Toddy*, is the Sustainance of the poorer Sort. Here the *Portuguese* have another Church, and a Monastery of *Franciscans*.

The other Places of Note in the Island are, 1. *Parell*, where the *Portuguese* have a Church, and the Jesuits some Lands manur'd, as are the others by Husbandmen and a Sort of Porters or Labourers call'd *Fraffes*. They are distinguish'd into Tribes, govern'd by Superintendants of their own Nation, who give an Account of them to the *English*; and being bred up in the same Degree of Slavery with themselves, are cruel Task-masters to those under their Charge. Near this Place, the Washes of the Sea produce Salt every Month, which is left in Pits made on purpose at Spring-Tides, where it is formed by the Heat of the Sun. Betwixt this Town, *Maijm*, *Saijm*, and *Bombaim*, there's a Sort of a Bay where the Sea makes 3 Breaches, which drowns 40000 Acres of good Land, that yields nothing but Samphire. 2. *Maijm*, where the *Portuguese* have another fine Church and House, and the *English* a pretty Custom-House and Guard-House. The *Moors* have a stately Tomb of one of their Prophets here. 3. *Salvesong*, where the *Franciscans* have a Church and Convent. This Side of the Island is cover'd with Cocoa-Trees, Jawks, and Mangoes; and at *Verulee*, in the Middle, the *English* have a Watch. On the other Side of the great Inlet, S. from the Town of *Bombay*, there's a great Point call'd *Malabar-Hill*, a rocky Mountain, cover'd with Wood and long Grass. On the Top of it, there's the Tomb of a noted Gentile; and on the Declivity towards the Sea, the Remains of a vast Pagod. The Doctor adds, the Circumference of the Island is 20 Miles, and 'tis 8 M. long, including that call'd, *The Old Woman's Island*,
B b b b which

which is a low barren Place, and made use of only to keep the Company's Antelopes, and other Beasts of Delight.

The Inhabitants of this Island are a Mixture of the neighbouring Countries, most of them Fugitives, or such as come to enjoy the Liberty of their Religion, which is envied by the *Moors* and *Portuguese*, but connived at by the Government; so that it contains now 60000 Souls; whereas in the Time of the *Portuguese* they were not above 1000. The Island is not able to furnish them Provisions, but they are well supplied from the neighbouring Country at reasonable Rates; so that the *English* alone eat more Meat here in one Month, than all the *Moors* of *Surat* do in a Year. The Government is like that of *England*, subject to the President and Council of *Surat*, who has a Judiciary here, with a Court of Pleas, and a Committee for regulating Affairs, and presenting Complaints. The President is Viceroy here, and has a Court, Council, and Guards. He has his Chaplains, Physician, Surgeon, &c. and at Meals has Trumpets, that usher in his Courses, and Violins, &c. at his Table. In the House he is attended by Men with Silver Staves. When he comes down Stairs, he is received by the Guards; and when he goes abroad, he is attended by two Troops of *Bandarins*, and *Moors* with their Standards. Sometimes he travels in a Coach, or on Horseback, and at other times in Palanquins, and has always an Umbrella of State carried over him, and his Officers have also their Trains in Proportion. But with all this State, the Climate is unhealthful, the Soil barren, and the Air putrid; so that the Product of the Place never coming to a full Maturity, they don't digest what they eat, which occasions Fluxes, Dropsies, Scurvies, the Gout, Stone, Malignant Fevers, and a Distemper call'd *Barbieres*, which enervates the whole Body, so that the Patients can neither use Hand nor Feet. Some of these are occasion'd by a Sort of Brandy call'd *Fool-Rack*, made of Blubber or Carvil by the *Portuguese*. It stings one like Nettles by the Touch; and being taken in Jelly or distilled, deprives People of their Senses. They are also much annoy'd by foul Women. To prevent this, the Company imported *English* Women; but their Issue

prov'd sickly, which was ascrib'd to their immoderate Use of Wine and other strong Liquors; which the Natives abhor, and therefore prove better Nurses. 'Tis a general Observation by the *Dutch*, That those Children thrive best which have an *European* Father and an *Indian* Mother. But tho' the Air be fatal to many of the *English*, except they come hither very young, or well advanced in Years, the Natives and the Descendants of the *Portuguese* attain to a good Age, which is ascrib'd to their Way of Living, because they don't indulge themselves so much in Wine and Meat. The Doctor says, the *Dutch* envy this Island, and were it in their Hands, would improve it to the utmost. It lies very convenient for Trade, so that the *Bunnians* like it better than *Surat*, and would willingly remove hither, could the Company open a Way from hence up the Country. The *English* are obliged to live in Friendship with the *Portuguese*, the neighbouring Raja, and the Mogul, but especially the latter, whose Fleet they suffer to winter or recruit in the Bay, tho' the *Portuguese* and the Raja don't well like it, or that we should furnish the *Moguls* with Fire-Arms, &c. which none of the *Portuguese* dare do for fear of the Inquisition.

Canorein, another Island N. from *Bombay*, from which it is separated by a Stream half a Mile broad. Dr. Fryar says, the chief Town is *Bandora*, on the S. Side of the Island; that it is large, and the Houses til'd. The Jesuits here have a noble College, with a Battery of 7 Guns, and abundance of small Arms, for their Defence. There's likewise a Block-House on the Coast, and many handsome Buildings. There are abundance of Gentlemen's Seats in the Island, where they live like petty Monarchs, their Tenants being perfect Slaves. The Island abounds with Game, Peacocks, spotted Deer, &c. The principal Town was *Canorein*, but now ruinous. The Road betwixt *Bandora* and this Place is thro' arable Ground, Pastures, and Coppices, fill'd with Apes, Tygers, Buffaloes, Jackals, and Flocks of Parroquets. Near this ancient City, he saw the Mouth of an Aqueduct cut out of a Rock, the Stream of which was very hot, but the Water limpid and cold. The *Indians* say, the Current is cut upwards thro' the Rock, which the Doctor

Doctor takes to be one of the most wonderful Water-courses in the World. From this Place there's a strait Passage for two Men a-breast hewn out of the Rock as far as to the City, with a Representation of *Vulcan's Forge*, supported by two mighty Colosses, and near them a Temple with a beautiful Frontispiece. Within the Porch, on each Side, stand the Figures of two monstrous Giants, and the Entrance to the Temple is by one great Gate and two lesser. The Temple has no Light but from the Doors and Windows of the Porch, which makes it look the more august. The Roof is arch'd, supported by 34 Pillars hewn out of the Rock, some of them round, and others square, and on the Cornishes are the Representations of Elephants, Horses, and Lions. At the upper End it is in Form of a Semi-circle, with a great Offertory, somewhat Oval. The Body of it is without Pillars, with an airy Piazza about it, and the Nave open, being 100 Foot long, and 60 Foot high. Beyond this there's a Hall of 50 Foot square cut out of the Rock, adorn'd with Imagery in ancient Sculpture. On the Side over against the Door sat a Superintendant, to whom the *Bramin* that went with the Doctor paid great Respect, and call'd him the *Holy Man*. Under this Place, there's a Descent by Marble Steps into Apartments which they call the King's Stables; and at the Head of every Stall there's a Dormitory; so that the Doctor thinks it was a Seminary for Heathen Devotees. Above this stood the King's Palace, being a large, stately, and magnificent Structure, surrounded with lesser ones. The Doctor adds, it would require a Month's Time to see all the Curiosities here; that from the Top of the Mountain one sees innumerable Entrances into those subterranean Habitations, which are much ador'd by the *Gentiles*. Some reckon this to be the Work of *Alexander*; but it is contrary to his Story, for he did not stay in *India* so long as to perform a Work of this stupendous Cost and Labour. Therefore the Doctor thinks it to have been an ancient Heathen Temple, and the rather, because the *Gentiles* have it still in great Veneration. He says, the *Portuguese* do all they can to destroy the Remains of it. The chief City of the Island is *Tanaw*, where

there are 7 Churches and Colleges, the best of which belongs to the Jesuits. The Manufacture of the Place is good Stuffs of Silk and Cotton. There's another great Town here call'd *Mein*, with a Castle and a Garrison towards the Sea; and over against *Baceim* there's a Fort and a Block-House. *Salfette* and *Trombay* are also in this Island. The *English* of *Bombay* have the Customs of the latter, near which, in a small Island, there's a Place where Ships ride during the Winter. This Island is 20 Miles long, and 70 round. The *Portuguese* suffer none but Christians to dwell in it. They are supplied with good Springs from the Rocks, have no Rivers, but many Inlets on the Sea. The Soil is very fruitful, and yields as good Cabbages, Coleworts, and the best Reddishes, that ever the Doctor saw; and besides Garden-Fruit, they have excellent Water-Melons, and Onions as sweet as Apples. With these Things it supplies the adjoining Islands, and likewise *Goa*.

S. Eastward from hence, and nearer the main Land, lies the Island *Elephanto*, so called from a monstrous Elephant cut out of the main Rock, with a young one on its Back; and near this there's a high Mountain, on the Top of which there's a Heathen Temple hew'd out of solid Stone. 'Tis of a square Form, supported by 42 *Corinthian* Pillars, and open on all Sides but towards the E. where there's a Statue with 3 Heads, crown'd with strange Hieroglyphicks. At the N. Side, in a high Gallery, stands an Altar guarded by the Figures of Giants, and inclos'd by a square Wall, adorn'd with the Images of Giants, and vanquish'd Knights stooping before 'em. Some of these Giants are represented with 8 Hands apiece. Near this Place there's a Cistern of Water, and beyond that abundance of other Images. The Doctor says, the *Portuguese*, who are Masters of this Island, deface those Things all they can. The Island is about 10 Miles round, and inhabited by poor People. The Doctor gives us a Description here of the Toddy-Bird, so call'd from the Toddy-Tree, where it takes Sanctuary. It makes its Nest curiously of Hay, in Form of a Steeple-Hive, with winding Meanders, before which hangs a Penthouse of its own making to turn off the Rain; and it is hung to a Bough of the Tree by such a slender

Thread, that the Squirrels, who are mortal Enemies to these Creatures, cannot get at the Nests. The Doctor says, some Hundreds of them may be seen hanging in those Trees. He adds, there's another Tree here call'd *Brabb*, much like the Cocoa; but the Leaves grow round, like a Peacock's Tail set upright. The Fruit of it is less than the Cocoa, and filled with Jelly. The Wine made of this Fruit is preferred to that of a Cocoa. At the Top of the Tree there's a Tuft, which being boil'd, eats like Gollyflowers. The Toddy-Bird builds also in these Trees. During the Time of the Rains at *Bombaim* and the neighbouring Islands, all Hostilities and Commerce cease, there being no stirring out at Sea, or travelling in the Country, because of the Violence of the Rains and Thunder, which last till *August*, when the *European* Ships venture to make in here: When this Season is over, the *Banians* with their Priests go to the Shore in Procession, and offer Cocoa-Nuts to *Neptune*, that he may make the Sea peaceable again, and then they set about their Business and Trade.

We shall finish our Account of *Decan* with a brief Abstract of its Government from *Dr. Fijar*:

The Lords of it, tho' a sort of Vassals to the Great Mogul, are Princes born, take the Title of their Lands, which descend by Inheritance, and have as good a Right to them as the King to the Kingdom; but the Commons are meer Slaves. The Lords are under no Restraint, except it be from raising Men in the King's Name and for his Use; but they make Peace and War, build Forts, fall out with one another, and with their King too at Pleasure, and hardly unite, tho' common Necessity require it, but many times side with the Enemy. When the King gets them into his Power, he cuts off their Heads, and disposes of their Estates as he pleases. He alledges, that they are obliged by Fealty to obey his Command, and to shew themselves at *Visapour* to pay him Respect; but of late they do it very remissly, and make their *Salam* or Acknowledgment at 4 or 5 Leagues Distance, and then attended in such an hostile Manner, as if they came rather to besiege him than to do him Homage. Their King in the Doctor's Time was a Minor, and therefore

they made the more Bold with him. They did likewise pretend that he was not of the true Royal Race, but originally descended from an Elephant-keeper, who from the Trunk of his Elephant descended into the Queen's Apartments, and begot a Son upon her, her Husband being disabled by Age. The Protector of the Kingdom in the Doctor's Time was *Bullul-Cawn*, a *Patan*. The Doctor computes the Forces of this Kingdom and *Ballaguate* to be above 55000 Horse, and 196000 Foot, besides the Troops that were kept by *Seva-Gi*, for whose History we must refer to our Author, who gives a more particular Account of the Disturbances he made in this Country, than that which we formerly mention'd in the History of the *Moguls*.

2. *BALLIGATE*, or *BALAGUATE*,

Has *Decan* and *Cuncan* on the W. *Cambaya* on the N. *Golconda* on the E. and *Bisnagar* on the S. The *Sansons* make it 200 Miles from S. to N. and about 120 from E. to W. *Ogilby* says, the Name is deriv'd from its high Mountains, which run thro' the whole Peninsula as far as Cape *Comorin*, and in many Places are unpassable. *Nieuhoff* in his Travels says, they extend 120 Leagues in Length, and form a dreadful Ridge; that in many Places they are cover'd with a fine red Sand as light as Dust, which by the strong W. Winds in *October*, *November*, and *December*, is blown as far as the Isle of *Ceylon*, which is at least 50 Leagues. The Reflexion of this Sand, when the Sun shines, makes the Ships look as if they were on Fire. This high Ridge of Mountains occasions likewise surprizing Alterations in the Seasons; for on the N. Side of Cape *Comorin*, it is Winter during *May*, *June*, *July*, *August*, and *September*; while it is Summer on the S. Side of that Cape; so that on one Side there are continual Tempests, with Thunder and Lightning, when on the other there's an agreeable and lovely Season. The Winds gather black Clouds upon these Mountains, which break out into hard and sudden Rains, that overflow the Country, swell the Rivers, and fill them with Sand to such a Degree, that they are not navigable for a considerable Time after.

The chief Places are, 1. *Doltabad*. The *Sansons* say, it lies in Lat. $19\frac{1}{4}$. and Long. 120. *Moll* places in Lat. $19\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 95. about 30 Miles N. from *Aurangeabad*. This Town was the Capital of the Country before it was conquer'd by the *Moguls*, who transported the Trade to *Aurangeabad*. *Thevenot* says, 'tis pretty large, is much longer than broad, wall'd with Free-stone, and has Battlements and Towers mounted with Cannon; but its chief Strength, which makes it the strongest Place belonging to the *Mogul*, consists in an oval Hill, encompassed by the Town, strongly fortified, and surrounded at Bottom with a natural smooth Rock; on the Top of which there's a good Citadel, with three other Forts, and the King's Palace; so that the *Indians* think it impregnable. He adds, there are 80 Towns, great and small, betwixt *Oramgabad* and *Calvar*, which is the last Town belonging to the *Mogul* on the Frontiers of *Golconda*; and that the Country is so populous, that it is filled with Towns and Villages. He adds, that about a League and a half from *Aurangeabad*, which we have already described, he and his Company encamp'd under the biggest *War-Tree* that he saw in the *Indies*. It was exceeding high, had some Branches 10 Fathom long, so loaded with Pigeons, that it were easy to fill many Pigeon Houses with them; but none durst take them, because they were reserv'd for the Princes Use. The Circumference of the Tree was, he says, 300 of his Paces; that there was a Pagod with many Tombs under it, and hard by a Garden of Citrons.

2. *Elora*. By *Thevenot's* Account, this Place lies about 3 Leagues from *Doltabad*; from whence there's a Way to it cut out of a rocky Mountain, with a Wall on each Side to hinder the Fall of the Waggon, &c. At the Top of this Passage there's a spacious Plain, well cultivated with Towns, Villages, Gardens, Woods, and arable Land. In this Plain there are many high and lofty Tombs. The Place is noted for some of the stateliest Pagods of the *Indies*, which *Thevenot* describes thus: He alighted near a large Court pav'd with grey Stones, and was obliged to pull off his Shoes. There he found a little Mosque, with many burning Lamps and several old Men in it,

near two Tombs cover'd with Carpets. A little further W. after clambering down a Rock into a low Plain, he saw very high Chappels, and enter'd a Porch cut out of the Rock, with the Figures of Giants on each Side, and many others in *Relievo*, all cut out of the Rock. Within the Porch there's a Court of 100 Paces square, the Walls hewn out of the Rock 6 Fathom high, and cut as smooth as Plaster. These Walls are hollow underneath on the Outside, so that the void Space makes a Gallery almost two Fathom high, and 4 or 5 broad. It is supported by Pillars cut also out of the Rock, so that the whole seems to hang in the Air, and makes one shiver when they enter it, the Pillars which under-prop it are so slender. In the Middle of this Court there's a Chappel, with Figures of Griffins and other Beasts in *Relievo* both without and within. On each Side of the Chappel, which is likewise hewn out of the Rock, there are Pyramids of the same, larger at the Basis than those of *Rome*, but not sharp-pointed, and they have Characters upon them, which he knew not. Near the Obelisk on the Left there's the Figure of an Elephant as big as the Life; and at the further End of the Court there are two Stair-Cases cut in the Rock, which go up to a Platform of two Leagues in Circumference, full of stately Tombs, Chappels, and Temples, cut in the Rock. The great Temple has a flat Roof, and the Walls are adorned with Figures within and without. In the Temple there are 8 Rows of Pillars in Length, and 6 in Breadth, about a Fathom from one another. The Temple is divided into 3 Parts; 1. The Body, which takes up Two thirds and a half of the Length, and is every where of an equal Breadth. 2. The Choir, which is narrower. 3. The End of the Temple, which looks like a Chappel. In the Middle of it, upon a high Pedestal, there's a Gigantick Idol, whose Head is as big as a Drum, and the rest proportionable. The Walls of the Chappel are cover'd with the like Figures in *Relievo*, and round the Temple there are a great many little Chappels, adorned with Figures of Men and Women, of an ordinary Size, embracing one another. In this Place there are several other Temples of a different Structure, full of Figures, Pilasters, and Pillars;

Pillars; and there's a large Temple 3 Stories high, supported with as many Rows of Pillars, and in every Story a great Door, with Stair-Cases, all cut out of the Rock. He saw another Temple which was arch'd, with a square Well in it full of Spring-Water; and all along the Rock, for above two Leagues, there are vast Numbers of Pagods, dedicated to Heathen Saints. In these Pagods he saw many Santo's, all naked except their Privities, and besprinkled with Ashes. They let their Hair grow as long as it can. The *Gentiles* ascribe these wonderful Structures to Giants. *Thevenot* says, they seem to surpass Humane Art and Power, and that the Workmen have not been barbarous, tho' the Architecture and Sculpture is nothing so neat as ours.

3. *Ambar*, noted for a stately square Water-Pond, fac'd with Free-stone, and a Divan on the Side of it, cover'd with Stone, supported by 16 Pillars, at the Foot of a noble Structure, from whence they go down to it by Stairs to take the Air, and divert themselves. Near it there's a little Pagod under Ground, much frequented by the idolatrous Natives. *Thevenot* adds, that the Tumblers and Rope-Dancers of this Country much exceed those in *Europe*, and perform such Feats of Agility as to us would seem impossible, being so very supple, that they can put themselves into all Postures.

4. *Chitanagar*, is noted for an oblong square Temple, 45 Paces long, 28 broad, and 3 Fathom high, built of a sort of *Theban* Stone. 'Tis erected on a Basis 5 Foot high, charg'd with Bends and Wreaths, and adorned with Roses and Notchings, as finely cut as if they had been done in *Europe*. It hath a lovely Frontispiece, with an Architrave, Cornish, and Fronton, and is beautified with Pillars and curious Arches, with the Figures of Men and Beasts in *Relievo*. The Inside of the Temple is like that of *Elora*, and the Walls built of transparent Stones, as the Floor is pav'd with them in the Middle, of which there's a great Rose well cut. On each Side of the Wall of the Choir there's a square Hole a Foot large, which slopes like the Port-hole of a Cannon, and in the Middle of it a long Iron Screw as big as a Man's Leg, which enters perpendicularly into the Wall like a Bar, to

which they fasten Ropes to bind People in Pennance. In the Middle of the Chappel there's an Altar of the same transparent Stone, cut into several Stories, and adorn'd with Indentings, Roses, &c. and on each Side below there are 3 Elephants Heads, and a Pedestal of the same Stone to set the Idol upon.

At the Foot of the Hill *Thevenot* saw the Beginnings of a Palace, whose Walls were of the same Stone as the Pagod, with a large Reservatory near it, a little Tank, and a square Divan of transparent Stone upon 16 Pillars, the Architecture resembling the *Dorick* Order. He adds, that the Temple and Palace are call'd *Chitanagar*, from *Chita* the Wife of the Idol *Ram*, to whom the Pagod is dedicated, and that both were begun by a rich *Rajeput*, who died before they were finished.

5. *Indelvai*, noted for making Swords, Daggers, and Lances, which they vend over all the *Indies*, and are furnish'd with Iron from a neighbouring Mine.

6. *Calvar*, noted only for being a Frontier Town on the Borders of *Golconda*, and the Extortion of the Collectors of Tolls, who if they have not what they demand, summon together a Rabble in Arms, who force Travellers to pay what they please.

3. CUNCAN, or VISIAPOUR,

Has *Decan* on the N. *Anna* or *Canara* on the S. the Sea on the W. and *Ballagate* and Part of *Bisnagar* on the E. The *Sanfons* make it about 210 Miles from S. to N. and about 180 from E. to W. *Baldeus*, a Dutch Minister, in his Description of the Coasts of *Malabar* and *Coromandel*, says, the Length of this Kingdom is 250 Leagues, and its Breadth 150; but he includes in it *Bimbay* and Part of *Decan Proper*. They had formerly an independant King of their own, but now he is a Vassal to the Great Mogul, with whom and the *Portuguese* he sometimes embroils himself. It has 8 navigable Rivers, and abounds with Salt Petre. The King's Forces consist of 150000 Horse, and 8000 Foot. Dr. *Fryar* says, the Kingdom is hereditary, but much less than formerly. The Country in general is fruitful, rich, and plain, except towards the Sea, where it is mountainous, and cover'd with Woods, that

that abound in Cattle. The Vallies yield Plenty of Rice and Cocoa-Nuts, and they have many Rivers both fresh and salt. Those who inhabit the Mountains are subject to *Seva-Gi*, fare hard, and are inur'd to travel. They are fitter than the rest for Military Exploits by Way of Surprize, but are not so good for Standing-Battles. The others affect Pomp, Ease, and Pleasure; but they are all of active Spirits, a swarthy Complexion, of different Religions, and a peculiar Language. Their King is commonly assisted against the Mogul by the King of *Golconda*, who either acts the Part of a Mediator, or supplies him under-hand with Money, for he dares not do it openly, lest he should bring the Mogul's Forces upon him. The Boundaries of it are uncertain, because of the Invasions of their Neighbours, who frequently take Parts to themselves, and sometimes lose them again. *Schouten* says, That the King has lately repossess'd himself of some of his Towns and Fortresses in the N. by which he has in a great Measure shook off the Mogul's Yoak. Their King, when *Thevenot*, *Tavernier*, and *Schouten*, were in those Countries, was an Orphan, adopted by a former King and Queen, who had no Children of their own. Upon the King's Death, the Queen was declared Regent, with whom *Seva Gi* made Peace, and was thereby confirmed in his Usurpations.

The chief Places are, 1. *Visapour*, or *Visapour*, which gives Name to the Country. The *Sansons* place it on the River *Mandoua*, Lat. 16. Long 118. *Moll* Lat. 16½. Long 94. It lies 70 Leagues within Land from *Goa*. *Schouten*, *Baldens*, *Tavernier*, and *Thevenot*, say, it is about 4 or 5 Leagues in Circumference, a scrambling Town, fortified with a double Wall and strong Gates, well mounted with Brass and Iron Guns. *Tavernier* says, the King's Palace is very large, ill built, and lies in the Middle of the City, defended by a Fortrefs; with a great Garrison, and surrounded with Ditches, wherein there are Crocodiles, which makes the Access to it dangerous. The Fortifications of it are also well mounted with Cannon. Most of the Inhabitants are *Moors* and Idolaters, and there are rich Traders among them. *Thevenot* says, it has several large Suburbs full of Goldsmiths and Jewellers Shops;

but that the Town is not remarkable either for Buildings or Trade. He adds, that the King is the most powerful of all the Princes of *Decan*, and therefore frequently call'd King of it. He has several other Princes who are his Tributaries. *Baldens* says, there's 1000 Cannon mounted about the Town. *Ogilby* says, the Palace is 3000 Paces round, has 5 Gates guarded by 2000 Men, and none must enter it but the King's Domesticks without his Leave. The Governor of the City and Castle has 5000 Men under him. He adds, that there's a great Market here, where nothing is sold but Diamonds. The *Banians* in the Neighbourhood abstain from Fish and Flesh, especially that of Cows, Hogs, and Buffaloes, which they reckon so holy, that they lie by them at Nights, and catch their Dung in their Hands, which they think gratifies their Idols. Their Arms both for Horse and Foot are broad Swords, Pikes, Lances, with a square Iron at the End about a Span long, Bows, Arrows, Shields, and Darts, which they throw dextrously. Their Defensive Armour is Coats of Mail, and others lin'd with Cotton.

2. *Rajapour*, *Rasapour*, or *Rozapour*, lies on the Coast, 130 Miles W. from *Visapour*. *Dr. Fryar* says, it lies in Lat. 17. 20. is now a French Factory, and formerly belong'd to the English. *Rennefort* says, the Dutch have almost worm'd the French out of their Trade here, especially in Pepper. *Mandelsloe* says, 'tis one of the best Maritime Towns in the Kingdom of *Decan*.

3. *Centapour*, or *Contapour*, lies near the Coast, 4 Leagues N. from *Rajapour*. It has a good Bay for Shipping, the best on the Coast, according to *Mandelsloe*, who places it in Lat. 17. 10. and 20 Leagues N. from *Goa*.

4. *Dabul*, *Dabrul*, or *Dunga*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 17½. Long 115½. *Moll* in the same Lat. and Long 91½. It was anciently very famous, but now much ruin'd by the War. It lies open only towards the Sea, where it is defended by two Batteries. On the neighbouring Mountains there are several decay'd Fortresses, and an ancient Castle without a Garrison. There are several Pagods, Temples, and other stately Edifices, in the Neighbourhood. It was taken by the Portuguese in 1508, but taken from 'em, and ruin'd afterwards by the English. The Entrance

Entrance of the Harbour is somewhat dangerous, because of a Sand-Bank at its Mouth, which is dry at Low-Water. The Way to escape it is to keep to the S. Side. The ordinary Custom is 3 *l.* 10 *s.* per Cent. of which the *English* pay only One half. Most of the Inhabitants are *Banians*, who live in Cottages of Straw, and fare hard. Their Children go naked till 7 or 8 Years of Age. Some of them are Physicians and Surgeons, but most of them Goldsmiths.

5. *Zanguizara*, 4 Leagues S. from *Dabul*, noted for an excellent Road in its Bay.

6. *Carapatan*, *Carapata*, or *Crapaten*, lies on the same Coast, about 30 Miles S. from *Rajepour*. 'Tis the best Harbour belonging to the K. of *Vijapour*, says *Tavernier*, and has 14 or 15 Foot Water near the Land. 'Tis defended by a Fort on the Top of a neighbouring Mountain, which furnishes them with a Spring. *Rennetfort* says, it has a Fortrefs with double Towers and large Walls, and belongs to *Seva-Gi*.

7. *Sotapour*, or *Soulapour*. *Moll* places it on the River *Cristena*, Lat. 69 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 95. *Linschot* says, the King sometimes keeps his Court here. The Inhabitants speak *Arabian* and *Persian*, besides their own Language. They tell many fabulous Stories of the monstrous Gun formerly mention'd, with which the K. of *Vijapour* took their invincible Fortrefs, and made a Breach in its Walls of 15 Ells long at the first Shot. With the next he batter'd down the whole Side of it. They alledge, that it pronounced Oracles, and say, 'twas cast by a Roman, who sacrific'd his own Son to it; and when the King's Treasurer came to ask an Account of the Charge of it, he threw him into the Fire, at which the King was not displeas'd, and said, he gave no Orders for any such Enquiry.

8. *Vingorla*, *Wingurla*, or *Wingerla*, on the Coast, Lat. 16. Long. 91. about 30 Miles S. of *Carapatan*. *Nieuhoff* says, tis only a large Village, in Lat. 15. that the *Dutch East-India* Company have a very fine House here of Stone and Plaister-Work; and that Ships bound to *Persia* provide themselves here with fresh Water and Fuel, the Place scarce affording any thing else. *Baldeus* says, it is very considerable for its Plenty of Wheat, Rice, and all Sorts of Provisions, and likewise for its Situation near *Goa*, from which

it lies about 30 Miles N. It was of great Use to the *Dutch* in their War with the *Portuguese*, and their Attacks upon *Goa*. Doctor *Fryar* says, the *Dutch* Factory here is built upon Arches, in the Figure of a Roman T, all of solid Stone. It has a square Trench round it, defended by a Platform, with two great Guns on every Side, and two great Bulwarks, with smaller Guns at the Corner of the House. The Front is after the *Italian* Fashion, and the Entrance to it is by a Draw-Bridge. *Seva Gi* is Master of the Town. *Tavernier* calls it *Mingrela*, says it is a large City, lies half a League in Length upon the Shore, has one of the best Roads in *India*, and is famous for Cardamums, which the Eastern People reckon the best of Spices, and hold them very dear, because there's none to be had elsewhere. They make also great Store of coarse Callicoes and Mats. The King has granted large Privileges to the *Dutch* here, particularly an Exemption from all Taxes and Imposts, and a Right to their own Wrecks. Ships of good Burthen come up to the Factory.

9. *Goa*. *Moll* places it Lat. 15 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 92. *Baldeus* makes it Lat. 16. It lies in an Island 6 or 7 Leagues about, says *Tavernier*, 10 Leagues from the Mouth of the River *Mandoua*. It abounds with Corn, Rice, Manga's, Anana's, Adam's Figs, and Cocoa's, and says, that next to the Ports of *Constantinople* and *Toulon*, the Harbour is the fairest in *Europe* or *Asia*. It was conquer'd by *Albuquerque*, the *Portuguese* General, from King *Hidalcon*, by the Advice of one *Timoja*, a Man of Note, and an Enemy to that King. He informed *Albuquerque* that there were Divisions in the Town, and that most of the Garrison had deserted, and offer'd to assist in taking it. *Timoja* listed Troops on Pretence that he was to assist *Albuquerque* in taking *Ormuz*, and soon after join'd him at the Isle of *Anebediva* with 14 Ships, from whence they came to Anchor before the Bar of *Goa*. *Albuquerque*'s Nephew and *Timoja* took the Forts that defended the Entrance of the Harbour, and sent a Message to the City, That if they would surrender, he would abate one half of the Tribute they paid their King, but otherwise they must expect no Mercy. They accepted the Terms, and the *Portuguese* found here several

ral goodly Vessels, the King's Artillery, and his best *Arabian* Horses. *Albuquerque* provided all he could for its Security. *Hidalcan*, surpris'd at this Loss, made Peace with the neighbouring Princes, and came to recover *Goa* with a great Army. The Town being inhabited by *Mahometans* and Pagans, the former, out of Hatred to the Christians, were for receiving the King, who was a *Mahometan*; and the Pagans, dreading his Anger for having surrender'd so easily, fell in with them, and betray'd *Albuquerque's* Councils. His own Men perceiving their Danger, upbraided him with Vain-glory for making such an Attempt with so small a Force. He appeas'd them with fair Words and Promises, seiz'd 100 of the chief Inhabitants, and cut off some that corresponded with the Enemy. He endeavour'd to hinder the King from passing the Branch of the Sea into the Island, by raising Batteries, and securing the Boats, and repulsed them several times in the Attempt; but at last they passed it in a dark tempestuous Night without much Damage, and approaching the City in Order of Battle, most of the Inhabitants join'd him, and the *Portuguese* retired to the City to make the best Defence they could. *Hidalcan* summon'd them to surrender on Terms, which *Albuquerque* refus'd, and resolv'd, if it came to the worst, to stay aboard his Ships in the Harbour during the Winter in spight of the Enemy. *Hidalcan* offer'd him honourable Terms if he would depart; and while they were treating about it, the King sunk a Ship loaden with Ballast below the City, where the Channel is strait, and design'd to sink others in like Manner, to prevent *Albuquerque's* Escape. Upon which he call'd a Council of War, who advis'd to embark the next Night, before the Channel was quite stop't up. They did so accordingly; but having set Fire to their Magazine, they were discover'd and attack'd; so that with much ado they got to their Ships, and pass'd the narrow Channel, but were expos'd to the Enemy's Fire at the many Windings of the River. Besides, they had no Water but what was salt and corrupted; and after having eat their Horses for want of other Provisions, they fed upon Mice, Cats, and Leather, which occasion'd a great Mortality among 'em, and they were continu-

ally annoy'd by the Cannon of the Forts at the Mouth of the Harbour, which they themselves had left at first for want of Men, and knew not how to pass them without manifest Hazard. They were both well garrison'd; but the Soldiers being sensible of the Straits of the *Portuguese*, they despis'd them so much as to neglect keeping a good Guard. *Albuquerque* perceiving this, sent 300 chosen Men, animated with Revenge and large Promises, who finding the Centinels asleep, kill'd them, surpris'd and put the rest to Flight, and brought off the Cannon to their own Ships. The next Attempt of the *Indians* was to set Fire to the *Portuguese* Fleet by dry Faggots and Brushes dip'd in Pitch and Rosin; but *Albuquerque* prevented it by manning out Boats to burn them before they came near. This occasion'd a smart Engagement, wherein *Albuquerque* lost his brave Nephew, who was to have succeeded him as Viceroy of the *Indies*. After this, he sail'd to the Isle of *Anchediwa*, where he refresh'd his sick Men. In the mean time 10 *Portuguese* Men of War arrived to assist him: Upon which, having new-modell'd his Troops, and purg'd them of Mutineers, he reattempted *Goa*, in Concert with *Timoja*, and immediately took the two Forts, which the *Indians* deserted without firing a Cannon; and advancing to the City, a bloody Engagement happen'd near the Palace, which *Hidalcan's* Soldiers defended for 6 Hours; but the Gates being forced, some threw down their Arms, others tumbled headlong into the Ditch, and the rest dispersed themselves. Seven Thousand *Moors* were killed in the City; and such as were taken, *Albuquerque* shut up in a Mosque with a Christian Renegado, and burnt 'em. He cut off all that had a Hand in the first Mutiny, and order'd the *Portuguese* Soldiers to marry the young Women of the Country after they were baptized to repeople the City, which he fortified. This happened in 1510. The first Church and Convent built here was dedicated to St. *Francis*, and afterwards the *Dominicans* built another. The *Jesuits* have a fine College here, where they keep the Body of St. *Francis Xaviere*, whom they call the Apostle of the *Indies*, and talk much of his Miracles; which thō *Baldeus* does not believe, he gives him a very great Character, and commends his Zeal

and Piety in converting the Infidels. Doctor *Fryar* says, he spread the Gospel to *China*, and suffer'd Martyrdom; and that the Jesuits expose his Relicks once a Year on the Eve of his Festival.

Baldeus adds, That as the City of *Goa* increas'd in Wealth, it increas'd in Strength, by the Addition of several Forts near the Water-side; but the Traffick is diminished since the *Dutch* blocked up their Bar. Whilst it was in a flourishing State, the *Portuguese* us'd to send Ships from hence to *Pegu*, *Siam*, *Japan*, *Persia*, *Cambaya*, *Arabia*, *Malabar*, *Coromandel*, *Bengal*, *Achem*, &c. The Town is well inhabited by *Europeans*, *Canarians*, *Moors*, and *Pagans*, of all Nations, who are for most Part Traders or Mechanics. The great Street is filled with rich Shops of Silks, Porcellane, Drugs, and other precious Commodities and Manufactures. Provisions, all Sorts of Goods, Slaves, Cattle, &c. are sold every Day by publick Auction; but they leave off betimes, because of the excessive Heat at Noon. The *Portuguese* are distinguished into Married and Unmarried, and the last are most esteemed. They are generally very idle, leave their Business for most Part to Slaves, and the Women Slaves suckle their Children. The Men marry generally with the Natives. The Children betwixt a *Portuguese* and an *Indian* Woman are called *Mistices*, and their Grand-Children *Castices*. The Men are much addicted to Lust and Pride, and are so jealous, that they confine their Wives to their Chambers, the Windows of which are so contriv'd, that they can look upwards, but not down into the Streets, and they go abroad in cover'd Chairs. They take a great deal of Snuff, and the Men continually stroke up their Whiskers as they walk the Streets. The most common Distempers here are the Venereal and Burning Fevers. They account the former no Disgrace, and cure the latter by bleeding a little 5 or 6 times a Day. The chief Diet of the *Portuguese* is Sweetmeats, and a Draught of cool Water after it, for they hate strong Liquors, and are moderate in Eating. The Women feed commonly on Rice, tho' they have very good Wheaten Bread, and use Betel, Arack, and all Sorts of Pickles, which makes their Complexions pale. The King of *Vijapour*

formed several Designs to attack *Goa*, with the Assistance of the *Dutch*, who ordered Frigats to cruise near the Cape and *Quemedas* Isles, to hinder the *Portuguese* from relieving it. *Baldeus* says, the *Dutch East-India* Company judg'd it for their Interest at first to be Masters of *Goa*; but afterwards contented themselves with blocking up the Bar for 12 Years together, and in having made several fruitless Attacks on the Town. The Mouth of the River that goes up to it is defended by 4 impregnable Forts and a Block-House. The King's Aqueduct at the Left, which runs from the Top of the highest Hill to the Water-side, is guarded by a good Number of Brass Pieces, and a Platform of great Ordnance. Over against this there's a pleasant and strong Castle, called the Fort and Monastery of *Nos Signior de Cabo*. Beyond that stands Fort *Marmagoun*, which defends both the Island and Bay, which no Boats can enter without passing the Channel under the Mouth of the Cannon. The Viceroy's Seat in the Summer is at *Pangeim*, a Mile from the Bar. The River is adorned with stately Churches and Palaces on its Banks, forms several little Islands, and then runs under a Bridge of 36 Stone Arches, from whence it passes by a Sluice on each Side of a Stone Causeway two Miles in Length, with several Dams or Wears for Fish and Salt, and a Bridge of 3 Arches. In a Church a little beyond it, there's painted the Story of a Ship that came thither from the Cape of *Good Hope* in one Night, and supplied them with Timber for the Roof and two Crosses, set as far asunder as the Ship was in Length: But the Doctor says, he durst not enquire into the Truth of this pretended Miracle for fear of the Inquisition. The City, he says, looks well at a small Distance, but is not to be seen afar, because of the neighbouring Hills, and the Turnings of the River. It stands 10 Miles from the Mouth of it, upon 7 Hills, with Gates and a Wall. There are several ruinous Houses in it, and the Streets are very confused. 'Tis the See of an Archbishop of the Order of *St. Bernard*; but he is not owned by all the Clergy, and especially the Jesuits, who have a Provost of their own, that is independant, and lives in as great State as the Archbishop; and when he goes abroad, he is carried in a Sedan, with

with 8 Clergymen walking on each Side bare-headed, besides other Attendance. The Architecture of the Cathedral is plain, but neat. The Altar and Side Chappels are filled with curious gilt Images of our Saviour and the Virgin Mary. The great College of the *Dominicans*, where the Inquisitor resides, opens to a fine Prospect, with a noble Front towards the Street, ascended by a great Number of Steps. The Pillars of the Church are gilt, and on the Walls there's the Martyrology of their Order. In the Vestry there are massy Silver Candlesticks, and other rich Vessels, and the Dormitories are neatly contriv'd in the upper and lower Walks. The Provost of the Jesuits resides at the Monastery of *St. Paul*, the first they had in *Goa*, from whence these are called *Paulistins*. They have a Monastery at *St. Rock* which is bigger than the rest, and contains a Library, an Hospital, and an Apothecary's Shop, well furnished, where *Gasper Antonio* of *Florence*, a Lay-Brother of the Order, by the Invention of the *Goa Stones*, brings them in Annually 40000 Crowns. He was an old Man and almost blind in the Doctor's Time, but of very great Esteem for his long Practice in Physick. The Monastery is built cross-wise, and looks from the Water like a *Scraglio*. The Government and Trade of the Town is chiefly in their Hands. The *Augustin* Friars have also a Convent here. There are several Schools, where the Students dispute in long Cloaks. The *Carmelites* have a fine College on a Hill which overlooks the Town. There's an Hospital where they take great Care of the Sick; but their Physicians are too much addicted to let Blood. Here are also Nunneries of *St. Monacha* and *St. Clara*. Those of all Orders, when they die, are interred in their proper Habit, without Coffins. At the Entrance of the Palace there's a long Gallery, hung round with the Pictures at Length of all the *Portuguese* Viceroy's that have been in the *East-Indies*. At the upper End is the Canopy Royal and Chair of State, and in the same Room another State Canopy, with the Arms of *Portugal*. The Soldiers assume such License for Want of Pay, and the Cofferies for Want of Victuals, that none can walk abroad in the Night without a drawn Sword in his Hand, nor indeed sleep

without Arms at their Pillows. The best *Fidalgo's* or Noblemen go Commanders of their Galleons, and are sent with Convoys to fetch Corn, when every Commadore has two or three Royal Gallies under him, that carry the Arms of *Portugal* in their Ancients only; but the Admiral, Vice-Admiral, and Captain-Major, wear the King's Flag a-loft as well as a-stern. The best of their Galleons carry no more than 8 or 10 small Pieces, and there's a Generalissimo by Land and Sea. The Island is encompassed with high strong Walls, with Flankiers at every Winding of the River, and is divided in the Middle by a long Wall. The Fort of *St. Lawrence* commands the Mouth of the River from *Marmagoun* Bay, at the Right of which are many pretty Caves or small Bays. *Old Goa* stands on the main Island, at the Left of the Bay. The Soil is rich and champaign, and is adorned with fine Palaces, Groves, and Gardens, with pleasant Tanks and Rivulets. Palanquins pass as commonly there as at *New Goa*, because the Gentry of the latter have their Country-Houses here. The Inhabitants are as civil, and not so much pester'd with drunken Soldiers, &c. as *New Goa*. There's a large Church here, and a Market well stor'd with Provisions. Since the Trade was removed hence to *New Goa*, the Inhabitants get their Living by Fishing and Knitting. The *Capuchins* here have a stately Structure on a Hill. The Ascent to it is by a winding Stair-Case cut out of the Rock, and rail'd with Stone Bannisters. The Way betwixt *Old* and *New Goa*, which is 3 Miles in Length, is very much frequented, and full of Country Seats, Villages, Churches, and shady Grotto's. About Half-way there's a School, where they teach to play on Trumpets and other Musick. Within the Wall there's a fair Road that leads to the Town, and on one Side a Well with a high Wall, and Steps to go up to a Pair of Gallows, where Malefactors are left hanging till they drop into the Well, or are devour'd by Birds. They have another high Engine in the Market-place, like a Gibbet at Top, with a Pulley and Steps, where they punish Criminals with the Strappado, which shakes their Joints asunder. Over against it there's an Island, where they burn those condemn'd by the Inquisitor. They brand some with

the Name of Witches, and send them to work in the Powder-Mills. *St. James* is counted the Titular Saint of this City; so that upon his Day there's a general Gaol-Delivery of those imprisoned in the Inquisition, at which Time there's a great Cavalcade to the Cathedral. The Doctor gives the following Account of the Government and Inhabitants: The Viceroy gives Laws to all Seculars; but Capital Crimes committed by the Nobility are referred to the King, and they are sent to be try'd in *Portugal*. The Doctor calls this City *Indian Rome*, for its Absoluteness and fine Structures. Those of the Laity are all of Stone. Their Streets are pav'd, and cleaner than the Tops of their Houses, where they do all their Occasions. The Inhabitants affect a pompous Appearance, and a great Number of Slaves with Umbrella's, under which they walk bare-headed, to avoid giving Disgust. They pardon no Affronts, and 'tis no less than Death to ogle a Lady of Quality in her Balcony. The Clergy go generally in Couples; and when they meet a Father, they kiss the Hem of his Garment, and beg his Blessing. Here are more Natives than Foreigners, yet they pay great Respect to *Europeans*, and are obliged to give Way to them wherever they meet them, for fear of the Stockado. The Women load themselves with Jewels and Rosaries of Gold and Silver. They wear Bracelets of Gold, Necklaces of Pearl, Lockets of Diamonds, and Pendants in their Ears. Their Shifts reach to their Waist, over which they wear a close Doublet, and a Petticoat below it. They wear no Stockings, but have very rich Slippers. Some of them have good Features and Shapes; but their close Confinement makes them bashful, and disagreeable in Conversation. They sing and play on the Lute, make Confections, pickle Mangoes, and are very nice at dressing of Soups, Pottages, and Variety of Stew'd Meats, which they serve up in China-Ware. Their Ragoos are not so strong, but as pleasant as ours, and the Doctor prefers their ordinary Cookery before all others. The Women rarely sit at Table if a Stranger dine with their Husbands. The Children run up and down naked till they be ashamed of it themselves.

They have the finest Manchet in the World here, and the purest Virgin's Wax. When Ships are seen off at Sea, the Out-Guards display the King's Standard, and raise so many Baskets on Poles, which they observe from one Watch to another, till the Signal reaches the City. They forbid all Butcher's Meat except Pork, because the excessive Heats, and the Rains that follow, make the Cattle as lean as Carrion. They have the best and largest Mangoes in *India*. They resemble Pear-Plums, but are three times as big, and the Tree resembles a Plum-Tree. The Fruit, when green, smells like Turpentine; and when pickled, are good Provocatives. When they are ripe, they tast better than Nectarines, Peaches, or Apricocks. They say they cleanse the Blood, are very effectual in Salivations, and of a very fattening Quality. They have a Sort of Cherries much like ours. *Lockyer* says, That by the continual Wars the *Portuguese* have had with the *Arabs*, who beat them out of *Muskat*, and several Places on the Coast of *Africa*, and with the *Seva Gi's* and the *Dutch*, they are so weak as not to be in a Capacity to hold out long. They supply all *India* as far as the Streights of *Malacca* with Arack, of which they make several Sorts. The Double-distill'd, which they commonly export, is but weak in Comparison of that made at *Batavia*, but is preferable to it in Flavour. They sell it for about 33 s. a Hogshead, which they make to contain 50 Gallons, more or less. The Treble-distill'd is worth about 2 l. 5 s. a Hogshead; for they call ours *English Arack*. The Jesuits continue to make Goa Stones here from $\frac{1}{4}$ to 8 Ounces each; but the Price is all one. They are often counterfeited. They have another Composition call'd Snake-Stones, whose chief Ingredient is burnt Bone, and say they are good against the Stings of Wasps and Scorpions: But Mr. *Lockyer* could find no such thing upon Experiment. With the like Success a Friend of his try'd the Magnetick Square Stone, which the Jesuits pretend gives effectual Relief to a Woman in Labour with a dead Child. But he affirms, that if a small one be held betwixt one's Thumb Nails, it has a sensible Motion. They are as big as Horse-Beans, like rusty Iron, as hard as Load-Stones, and naturally

naturally square. Gilt Sword-Blades and Daggers, ordinary Wigs, Hats, &c. turn to good Account here from England.

Tavernier says, the Road from hence to *Surat* is very bad, so that Travellers generally go by Sea, tho' the Coast be much infested with *Malavars* Pirates, who are *Mahometans*, and very cruel to the Christians.

There is good Store of Poultry and some Pigeons at *Goa*, but Fish are scarce, says *Tavernier*, tho' it lies so near the Sea. The *Portuguese* Inhabitants who are fallen to Decay are as proud as ever, and their Wives beg in Palanquins at the Doors of their Neighbours, where they stay while a Boy that attends brings a Compliment or Alms to his Mistress, who sends in a Note, containing a Recommendation by some religious Person, signifying what substantial People they have been, and how they fell to Decay. As soon as the *Portuguese* have passed the Cape of Good Hope, they are all *Fidalgo's* or Gentlemen, and add the Title of *Dons* to their Christian Names; and as they change their Names, *Tavernier* says, they change their Natures; for they grow more proud, cruel, and lustful, than at Home. If they think themselves affronted by a Person of too much Courage for 'em, they order their Slaves, who give blind Obedience, to murder them, which rather than fail they perform at the Altar. He instances in 7 that were killed so at one time by Black Slaves, who fired upon them in at the Windows, and likewise wounded the Priest that was saying Mass; for so they can kill those they are order'd, they care not what Mischief they do besides. These Things pass generally unpunish'd, because the Criminals are the Chief of the Country. They were so rich here before the Settlements of the *Dutch* in the Neighbourhood, that the *Portuguese* Merchants had most of their Utensils of Gold and Silver; for three or four Voyages to *Japan*, *China*, or the *Philippine* and *Molacca* Islands, was enough to enrich them, and the very Soldiers traded considerably. To be Viceroy of *Goa*, was then one of the best Employments in the World; for he had such inferior Governments at his Disposal, as few Monarchs in the World had the like. The Government of *Mosambiqu* was the chief, and *Tavernier* says, the Governor of that

Place, when he was there, had in 3 Years Time got above 200000 Crowns in *Ambergreece*, besides what he had in Gold and Elephant's Teeth, which amounted to a much greater Sum. The other Governments under his Disposal were those of *Malacca*, *Ormuz*, *Moskate*, and *Ceylon*; and besides these Governments, he had abundance of other Offices in his Gift; but the *English* and *Dutch* Trade has in a great Measure cut off that of the *Portuguese*. The Natives of the Country, called *Canoreins*, are black, witty, and courageous, but kept under by the *Portuguese*, tho' they make use of them as Lawyers, &c. If any of them strike an *European*, their Hand is cut off; nor are those People suffer'd to wear Hose and Shoes, tho' they have offer'd great Sums for that Liberty; and some of them are so rich, that they are attended by 30 or 40 Slaves apiece very well apparell'd. Many of those People worship Apes; and they kept in a Pagod in the Island of *Salsette* the Bones and Nails of an Ape in a Chest, which they said had done mighty Service to their Ancestors, and brought Intelligence of Designs against them. These Relicks were much frequented by the Infidels, but at last were taken up and thrown into the Sea by the *Portuguese* Clergy, tho' the Pagans offer'd vast Sums for their Redemption, which the Laity would willingly have accepted of. We refer to *Tavernier* for an Account of the Severity of the Inquisition at *Goa* to some *French* Papists, because they did not shew the like Respect to the Pictures of Saints that the *Portuguese* did. *Schouten* says, the *Portuguese* Women elude the Jealousy of their Husbands, by mixing the Juice of a Plant call'd *Duron* in their Liquor, which makes them sleep so sound and long, as gives them an Opportunity to have their Gallants introduc'd by their Female Slaves. *Tavernier* says, this City was formerly the greatest Mart in the World for Jewels and Pearls. *Mandelsloe* says, he saw a Creature here call'd a *Bizgel*, of the Size and Colour of a Rain-Deer, with a Head like an Horse, a Mane like an Ass, black cloven Feet, and two black Horns on his Head. He says, their Winter begins at the End of June with S. W. Winds; that it continues four Months all along that Coast from *Dis* as far as *Cape Comori*; and that Tempests are then so

so frequent, that they have few Harbours where Ships can ride in Safety, while on the Coast of *Coromandel*, in the same Degree of Lat. they have the pleasantest Season in the Year; so that he says, it is evident there are but two Seasons in this Country, where the E. and W. Winds rule by Course once a Day; the E. from Midnight till Noon, but don't reach above 10 Leagues into the Sea, and the W. blow all the rest of the Day. He mentions likewise the Herb with which the Women lay their Husbands to sleep, and says it resembles our Bear's-Foot, grows in shady Places, and that the Seed beaten to Powder has the same Force with the Juice. It deprives those who take it of all Sense and Motion for 24 Hours, tho' some of them lie with their Eyes open; but cold Water applied to the Soles of their Feet recovers them as it were from a sound Sleep. In Time of Peace, the *Portuguese* Soldiers are so miserable, that they live by 10 or 12 in a Hut together, having but two or three Suits among them all, which they wear by Turns when they go abroad to purchase their Living by Begging, &c. The *Portuguese* chuse handsome Wenches for Slaves, and employ them to sell their Fruit, &c. that they may draw the more Custom, and get the better Rates. Their Children and every thing else belongs to their Masters, who sell them like Beasts; tho' those poor Creatures love those they have by *Europeans* so dearly, that they had rather quit their Lives than part with them, and frequently perswade their Fathers to redeem them. Mr. *Fitch* says, the *Portuguese* Ships arrive here in September, and after 50 Days Stay go to *Cochin*, where they lade Pepper for *Portugal*. The Jews are allow'd their Synagogues here. *Linschotten* says, the *Portuguese* are very sumptuous at their Weddings and Christenings, when those of Note are attended by 50 or 100 Horse in good Order, Musick, and Sweetmeats in Vessels of Gold and Silver. The Soldiers, he says, in Time of Peace, get their Livelihood by revenging the Quarrels of the Gentry upon such as they order them, or by satisfying the Lusts of the Women, who pay them well for it; and as the Husbands frequently dispatch their unfaithful Wives by Dagger and Poison, the Women treat them in the like Manner, but

chiefly by a sort of Poison, which they temper so as to make it operate quick or slow, as they please. The Heathens here worship the Sun and Moon, and other Idols, as Mediators between them and God. The Devil frequently answers their Questions from those Images, and they honour him for fear he should do them Hurt. They bring their Brides to their Idols, who have Pins of Ivory, with which the nearest of Kin make them deflower the Bride, and this the Bridegroom takes for a great Honour. They commonly pray the whole Day to whatever Creature they meet first in the Morning, especially if it be a Hog; but if a Crow, they return home, take it as an ill Omen, and stir no more abroad that Day. *Rennefort* says, when he was at *Goa*, there were 500 Brass Cannon mounted on the Walls and Fortifications of the Town.

Bouffingault says, there's a Place near this City call'd *Matavaguas*, where they throw the Horns of such Beasts as they kill, which in a little time take Root in the Ground, tho' it be stony and barren. *Linschot* says, he saw this, but could not find out the natural Cause of it. *Bouffingault* says, what we call *Spanish Wax* is made at *Goa* thus: They dig a round Hole, in which they plant straight Sticks, and bring Quantities of Ants, which are larger than ours, which they lay at the Foot of the Sticks, and fill the Hole with Water; so that the Ants not being able to get out, climb up the Sticks, where being killed with the Heat of the Sun, they are changed into Wax, which the Inhabitants dye of what Colour they please.

10. *Salsette*, an Island S. of *Goa*, formerly a celebrated Place, especially for Idol Temples, says *Herbert*. One of them, cut out of a hard Rock with incredible Labour, and so much frequented by the Natives, that the *Portuguese* attacked the Town with a considerable Force to destroy those Idols. The Inhabitants go naked all but their Privities. This Island gives Name to the rest.

11. *Bardes*, or *Bardas*, another Island N. of *Goa*. It is high Land, and the *Portuguese* anchor, lade and unlade, their Ships under it. 'Tis full of Villages, inhabited by *Cannoreins*, who are mostly Christians, and have Store of Cocoa Trees. This Island and *Salsette* are farmed out by the Crown of *Portugal*,

gal, whose Officers, with the Archbishop, the Clergy, and Monasteries of Goa, are chiefly maintain'd by the Rents of them. *Schouten* says, That the Inhabitants of Goa are supplied with Provision from these two Islands. The Trees in this Country are always verdant, and they export a great deal of Palm Wine.

12. *Angediva*, or *Anchediva*, an Island on the same Coast S. from Goa. *Baldens* says, it is almost cover'd with Woods, and abounds with Fish. The Portuguese had a Fort here, which they bravely defended against *Hidalcan's* Fleet, commanded by one of their own Renegadoes; but demolished it afterwards, because it did not answer the Charge. *Luyts* says, 'tis 25 Miles in Compass, and has a good Harbour.

13. *Bellargan*. *Fitch* says, 'tis a great Market for Diamonds, Rubies, Sapphires, and other Precious Stones.

14. *Rajebag*, a great Trading City, especially in Pepper. It lies within Land, is defended by a strong Castle, and belongs to the Queen of the Country.

15. *Carwar*. *Moll* places it on the Coast, about 60 Miles S. of Goa. *Dr. Fryar* says, 'tis the chief Port of *Visapour*, but in his Time was possessed by *Seva-Gi*. The English have a Factory here, which that Traitor had almost forced, having taken the Castle of the Town; but the English made a brave Defence against him, by the Assistance of a small Pink. The House is Four-square, defended by two Bulwarks at the Corners, and stands on a Branch of a River, over against a pleasant Island full of Game. In the Groves about this Place grow *Cassia Lignum*, or Bastard Cinnamon. The Trees are in Size and Leaves like our Pear-Trees, but ribbed like Plantane. The Bark and Body, when dry'd, bites and smells spicy. The Leaf bruised and chew'd is as hot on the Tongue as a Clove, and smells like strong Cinnamon. The small Branches, when green, tast like Cinnamon, but dry, are more slimy, and make very good *Cassia Lignum*. The Flowers are long and whitish, without Smell or Tast. *Lockyer* says, *Carwar* lies in Lat. 15. wherein *Moll* agrees. Our East-India Company have a Chief and Council to manage their Trade here, and about 26 Soldiers, with 8 or 9 Guns, to defend it; but otherwise it is of no great

Strength. He says, the best Pepper in the World grows hereabouts, which is the chief Reason of our Settlement there. There's Plenty of *Nux Vomica* in the neighbouring Woods. 'Tis the Seed of a Fruit as big as an Orange, but so bedawb'd with Slime, that the People who work for 3 d. a Day can hardly get Bread by cleaning it. Vast Quantities of them rot in the Ground, which makes the Water that runs thro' the Woods in the wet Season very unwholesome. Rose-Water, Almonds, Dates, Raisins, Kismishes, Iron, Lead, Sword-Blades, Branch-Coral, and Hats, are good Commodities here. The Raja has One and a half per Cent for Goods imported by the English, which is seldom demanded on small Parcels, and they account with him once a Year. Ships ride safe in a neighbouring Cove from the S. W. Wind, and the River is navigable for the largest Vessels, tho' of difficult Entrance. This is the pleasantest and most healthful Place on the *Malabar* Coast, and the Neighbourhood abounds with Red Deer, Wild Cocks, and other Game. The Woods are infested by Tygers and Leopards, and he that kills any with a Sword or Lance has Marks of Honour from the Prince. The most remarkable Bird in those Parts is the *Bill-Bird*, about the Size of a Pigeon. Their Bills are large, and of several Forms and Colours, make excellent Flasks for Powder, small ones being large enough to hold half a Pound. There are excellent Crabs here in great Plenty. They catch them by Night in the Sands by Torch-light, which so surprizes the Crabs, who are then out of their Holes, that they have not Power to run away, till they are struck at; but if miss'd by the first Blow, it is hard to come up with them, for the large ones will run as fast as a Man.

6. *Banda*. *Ogilby* says, it lies two Leagues N. from Goa, near the River *Derry*; that it is a large City, with broad Streets, many fair Buildings, and several Temples.

2. G O L C O N D A,

Dr. Fryar says, it extends from 10 Deg. of N. Lat. to 19 Deg. and a half along the Coast of *Coromandel*, and 375 Miles up the Country. The *Sansons* extend it from

16 $\frac{1}{2}$ to 20 $\frac{1}{2}$ of N. Lat. and make it 260 Miles from N. to S. and about 212 from E. to W. *Moll* makes it 477 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and above 200 where broadest. 'Tis bounded on the E. with the Sea of *Bengal*, on the N. with *Orixa* and its Mountains, on the S. with *Bisnagar*, and on the W. with the Mountains of *Orixa* and *Balla-gate*, on the Borders of which, says *Thevenot*, are planted a good Number of wild Palm-Trees, to denote the Beginning of *Golconda*, where the Collectors, who gather Tolls in the Name of private Lords, make Travellers pay what they list. *Tavernier* says, it abounds with Cattle, Sheep, Poultry, and all Necessaries for Life. There are a great many Lakes full of Fish, and amongst the rest a delicious sort of Smelt, which has but one Bone in the Middle. Lewd Women are publicly licens'd in this Kingdom, and they stand with Assurance at their Doors in their best Apparel to tempt Passengers. The Wives of the common People are also allow'd a great Liberty; for the Man must promise the Bride's Parents before-hand, that he will not be angry if his Wife walk the Streets, visit her Neighbours, and drink Tary, which is the beloved Liquor of the Inhabitants. They punish Thieves in this Kingdom by cutting off both their Hands. *Thevenot* says the King of *Golconda* in his Time was *Abdulla Cotup-Cha*; and that *Cotup-Cha* is the Name of all the Kings here, as *Edel Cha* is of those of *Visiapour*. He was of the Sect of *Aly*, and the 7th since the Revolt from the King of *Decan*. He was the darling Son of a witty *Bramin* Lady, who after his Father's Death preferred him to his eldest Brother, whom he afterwards poison'd. The Cheque of *Mecca* came hither like a Pilgrim, and after several Repulses and Imprisonment, for demanding his eldest Daughter in Marriage, obtain'd her, was made prime Minister of State, and kept the King from surrendering the Castle of *Golconda*, whither he retired when *Oramgzeb* took *Bagnagar*. The King's second Daughter was married to *Oramgzeb*'s eldest Son. The King of *Golconda* had above 500000 Men in Pay, yet became Tributary to the Great Mogul, which his Father was not, because more careful of his Army, and better beloved by them.

The King has vast Revenues from all the Lands in the Kingdom, of which he is the Proprietor, and from the Customs on Merchants Goods and Provisions. He has a great Income from the Diamond Mines; and in those about *Masulipatan*, the Labourers pay him a Pagod (which says *Ovington* is a Gold Coin, Weight two Drams, and 4 Grains and a half) for every Hour they work there, whether they find any Diamonds or not. He wears Jewels of inestimable Value on the Crown of his Head, being a Rose of great Diamonds 3 or 4 Inches diameter, and almost a Foot long. In the Summet there's a little Crown, and a Branch like that of a Palm, but round, crooked at the Top, an Inch in Diameter, and half a Foot in Length. 'Tis made up of several Sprigs like Leaves, each of which have at the End a fine long Pearl, shap'd like a Pear. At the Foot of this Garland there are two Bands of Gold, fashion'd like Bracelets, with large Diamonds enchased, and set round with Rubies and Pearls, and fasten'd to his Head with Clasps of Diamonds. He has other considerable Pieces of great Value in his Treasury, and *Thevenot* believes he exceeds all the *Indian* Potentates in Precious Stones.

Mr. *Ovington*, one of King *William*'s Chaplains, in his Appendix to his Voyage to *Surat*, printed in 1696, gives an Account of the late Revolution in *Golconda* as follows, from Mr. *Daniel Sheldon*'s Memoirs. The present King, says he, is *Abdulla Hoosan*, Son to an *Arabian*. He married the Daughter of *Cotup-Cha*, who on his Death-bed swore the Omrahs one by one on the *Alcoran* to settle him on the Throne, and stand by him. But as soon as he was dead, his 2d Daughter, who was married to *Oramgzeb*'s Son, took Possession of the Palace in Favour of a Son her Husband had by a former Wife, (since he had none by her.) However, three of the prime Ministers in the late King's Time quickly suppress'd the Tumult, and proclaim'd *Hoosan*, who at first, says *Ovington*, began to give the Loose to his Pleasures, and entertain'd two powerful Minions, that striv'd to outvy each other in procuring him the finest Women, Dancers, &c. to involve him in a Lethargy; but now (says he) he has laid aside those two Minions in the Government, as if he thought

thought himself no King before, and wholly applies himself to Business, insomuch that he gives his Subjects great Assurance of his happy Administration for the Time to come. Dr. Fryar says, the King of *Golconda* kept a standing Army of 100000 Horse and Foot, besides 200 Elephants, in his Time. The present Inhabitants are *Moors*, *Persians*, *Gentiles*, *Armenians*, *Portuguese*, *Dutch*, *English*, and a few *French*. The Doctor says, the Kingdom was at first govern'd by the *Gentile* Tribes. None of the Nobility may have Elephants led before their Palanquins without Leave from the King, nor none may ride Male Elephants unless those of the Royal Family, who never do it but when they ride in State thro' their Cities. The *Gentiles* are deprived of holding any Offices, and us'd as Mechanicks or Servants. The *Persians* have engrossed the greatest Favours at Court by Means of their Traffick and Arms, tho' they were but in a mean Condition before; and of these or their Sons are the Omrahs or great Lords.

Thevenot says, the Winter generally begins here in *June* with Rain and Thunder; and that the Rivers were so swelled by the great Rains when he was here in *August*, *September*, and *October*, that that of *Bagnagar* beat down almost 2000 Houses, and drown'd a great Number of People. At this Time the Air is cool Mornings and Evenings, and the Heat moderate in the Day-time, till about *February*, when it begins to be excessive. This Country produces Indigo, Bezoar, two Crops a Year of Rice, and some other Grain, and in a Word all Necessaries for Life. They have Plenty of Grapes, of which they make White-Wine. About the Beginning of the Year they prune the Vines, and by *Midsummer* they yield Verjuice. *Tavernier* says, their Fields lie generally high, and are furnish'd with pleasant Reservatories for Water. *Thevenot* says, That in many Places they are much infested by Serpents, and that they expel the Venom by the Stone *Cobra*, formerly mention'd, or else by holding a burning Coal near the Part affected. He says, the *Moors* here celebrate the Festival of *Hussain* with more Fopperies than they do in *Persia*. The *Sansons* say, the People apply themselves to all Sorts of Manufactures, particularly of Cotton, which they make so artificially, and with such

lively Colours, that they are preferable to Silk. They build great Vessels, with which they trade to *Arabia*, and thro' all Parts of the *Indies*. There are in this Kingdom 66 Fortresses, built on inaccessible Rocks, in their Language nam'd *Conda*, and they are all garrison'd. He adds, that the King is little inferior to the Mogul in Riches, Jewels, Elephants, and all Sorts of Magnificence; but his Dominions are less, and his People not so warlike, so that he pays him 400000 Pagods per Annum. This Country has no Mines of Gold, Silver, or Copper, but abundance of Iron and Steel, and several of Diamonds and other Precious Stones. The Air is generally wholesome, and their Fruits different from ours. They have only 3 Seasons. In *March*, *April*, *May*, and *June*, which is their Summer, the Heat is excessive. In *July*, *August*, *September*, and *October*, which is their Autumn, they have great Rains. In *November*, *December*, *January*, and *February*, which is their Spring, the Air is cold. The King's Revenue from Salt amounts to 1800000 Crowns, and all Diamonds above 5 Carats are his; so that no other dare wear or keep any of that Size on Pain of Death.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Golconda*, or *Gulconda*, call'd *Hidraband* by the *Persians*. Moll places it near the S.W. Corner of the Kingdom, Long. $95\frac{1}{3}$. Lat. $15\frac{1}{3}$. The *Sansons* place it far more N. in Long. $121\frac{3}{4}$. Lat. $19\frac{1}{4}$. Mr. *Fitch* says, 'tis a fine Town, and the Houses are built of Brick and Timber. There's very good fresh Water, and Variety of pleasant Fruits. The Inhabitants wear only a Cloth about their Middle. Messieurs *Marten* and *Floris* in their Travels say, That in *August* 1614, there was an Inundation here, which swept away many Thousands of Men and Cattle, ruin'd several Towns, destroyed all the Fruits, and carried off Plants and Trees. It bore down 4000 Houses in this City, and two fair Bridges built of Stone, one of 19, the other of 15 Arches. The *Sansons* say, it lies 150 Miles N. of *Masulipatan*, in a good Air, a fruitful Soil, and is about 5 or 6 Leag. in Circumference. Moll makes it almost 238 Miles to the W. of *Masulipatan*, and 45 Miles S. of *Bagnagar*. *Thevenot* makes it but two Leagues W. of the latter. *Tavernier* says, *Golconda* is the common Appellation of *Bagnagar*, which

is the Capital City of the Kingdom. *Thevenot* says, the King frequently keeps his Court here, and that it receiv'd the Name from *Cotup-Cha* the First, who built it. Before that, the adjacent Country was all a Forrest; but now 'tis turn'd into a curious Plain, that leads to *Bagnagar*. The Hill rises pyramidically in the Center of the Fort, and the King's Palace lies round the Sides of it. The Castle is so large, that it may be called a Town. The Stones of the Walls are 3 Foot in Length, and as much in Breadth, and there are deep Ditches divided into Tanks, full of Water. The Fortifications are 5 round Towers, which, as well as the Walls, are mounted with Cannon. It has several Gates, but only two are kept open, and guarded by *Indians*. They let no Strangers in without the Governor's Permission. The King's Palace is large, and well situated for a good Air and Prospect, which commands the adjacent Country and City of *Bisnagar*. There are 12 Gates before one comes to the Prince's Apartment. There are several good Bazzars, well furnished with all Necessaries for the Officers, and great Omrahs who have Houses here. The King keeps the most curious Workmen here *gratis*, and maintains a certain Number of Jewellers in his Palace, but commands them Secrecy, lest the Mogul should demand the Stones. They cut Saphirs with a Bow of Wire, and the Solution of the Powder of white Emrods found in a particular Place of this Kingdom, and sold for a Crown a Pound. They likewise take Spots out of Diamonds. N. E. of the Castle, 7 or 8 Days Journey from *Bagnagar*, there are Mountains which feed a great Number of Goats, that yield Bezoars, commonly sold for about 40 Crowns a Pound. Those found in Cows are much larger than the other, tho' not so valuable: But the best Bezoars are a small and long Sort found in Apes, which are scarce to be met with.

About two Musket-shots from the Castle are the Sepulchres of the Kings, in the middle of large Gardens, and near them those of their Kindred and chief Eunuchs. The Royal Chappel is illuminated with Lamps, and surrounded by a Gallery with open Arches, &c. of fine Architecture, and cover'd with a square Dome, that has a Tur-

ret at each Corner. Few are admitted to enter it, because they reckon it sacred. The Floor is cover'd with Carpet, and the Tomb with a Sattin Pall with white Flowers, and a Canopy of State. These Sepulchres are Sanctuaries for Criminals. They ring the Gary here and in the Castle on a large Plate of Copper held in the Air, wherein they observe Time. They divide the natural Day into two Parts, beginning at Morning and Evening Twilight, each of which they subdivide into 4 Quarters, and each Quarter into 8 Parts or Garies.

2. *Bagnagar*. *Moll* places it on the same River with *Golconda*, 45 Miles to the N. E. Long. $96\frac{2}{3}$. Lat. $15\frac{2}{3}$. 150 Miles S. E. of *Visapour*. *Thevenot* places it Lat. 17. 10. but 14 or 15 Leagues from *Visapour*. He says, 'tis the Capital of the Kingdom, and call'd by the *Persians*, *Aider-Abad*. It lies in a long Plain, surrounded with little Hills at some Miles distance, which makes the Air very wholesome. The Houses of the Suburbs, which are long, are on'y built of Earth, thatch'd, low, and ill contriv'd. At the End there's a Bridge with 3 Arches over the River *Nerva*, which enters the Town. The River is small, but in the Time of Rains swells mightily. The Gates at the Foot of the Bridge are very indifferent, and the first Street is built with mean Houses; but they have fine Gardens. The Town is in Form of a Cross, whose Stem lies from the Bridge to the 4 Towers, on the Left of which there's a Square and a Street that leads to the Gate. *Thevenot* computes the City to be 5650 Paces in Length, viz. 2450 from the Bridge to the Towers, and 3200 more from thence thro' the *Meidan* to the Gate that goes to *Masulipatan*: And beyond that Gate there's a Suburb of 1100 Paces more. There are several Meidans in the Town, but the fairest is that before the King's Palace, where the Nobility have fine Houses. At the E. and W. Ends there are two great Divans, with flat Roofs of Carpenter's Work, supported by Wooden Pillars and Stone Ballusters, with Turrets at the Corners, and the like Balluster round the Terrass-Walks. Those Divans serve for Tribunals, and underneath are the Prisons, with Basins of Water before them. At the N. Side stands the Royal Palace,

Palace, with a Portico over against it for the Musicians when the King is there. In the middle of the Square there's a Place for the Fighting of Elephants. The Palace is 380 Paces long, takes up one Side of the Square, and runs along to the 4 Towers, where it terminates in a lofty Pavilion. The Walls are built of great Stones, with Half-Towers at certain Distances; and towards the Square there are many Windows, and an open Gallery. The Inside is very pleasant, and the Water is rais'd to the highest Apartments by Pipes from the Top of the 4 Towers, where there's a Reservoir. No Man must enter the Palace without the King's Order. The Caravansera's are generally handsome, and the best stands in the great Street opposite to the King's Garden. 'Tis a spacious Square, planted with Trees of several Sorts, and a large Basin of Water, where the *Mahometans* perform their Ablutions. The 4 Towers is a square Building, with Arches on each Side, fronting Streets of the same Breadth. There are two Galleries above one another, and over all a Terrass with a Stone Balcony. At each Corner there's a Decagone Tower, each having 4 Galleries, and little Arches on the Outside. The whole Building is adorned with Roses and Festons neatly cut. 'Tis vaulted underneath, and looks like a Dome. The Inside is furrounded with Stone Balusters and Galleries as on the Outside, and several Doors to enter them. Under the Dome there's a large Table plac'd on a Divan, rais'd 7 or 8 Foot from the Ground, and ascended by Steps. Nothing, says *Thevenot*, can be neater than the Outside of this Building; but the ugly Fruit-Stalls round it, cover'd with Straw, spoil the Beauty of the Prospect. There are many fair Gardens in the Town, with long clean Alleys, and fine Fruit-Trees. Those in the Suburbs are reckon'd the best, and there's one accounted the pleasantest in the Kingdom, with a noble Structure at the End of it, a long Terrass-Walk on the Front, and Groves at the Sides of it, with a Reservoir of Water, and a sumptuous Bridge to an Octogone Building in the Middle of the Tanky, where there are fine Water-Works. *Thevenot* adds, that there are many Officers and Lawyers in this City, the chief of whom is the *Cotoual*, who go-

verns the Town, is the chief Customer of the Kingdom, Master of the Mint-House, and Supreme Judge in the City. There are many rich Bankers, Merchants, Jewellers, and vast Numbers of skilful Artizans, in this City, where the King keeps 40000 Horse of different Nations, to prevent his being surpriz'd here as his Predecessor. The Omrahs frequently squeeze the Merchants on Pretence of Crimes. Most of the *Europeans* here are *Portuguese*; but the *English* and *Dutch* have lately establish'd Factories here, who buy Chites and other Cloths, with Cloves, Pepper, Cinnamon, Silver, Copper, Tin, and Lead, by which *Thevenot* says they get 25 for one. They are very welcome in that Country, because of the rich Presents they make to the Great Men. *Tavernier* says, That Persons of Quality, with Officers Military and Civil, live in the City, but the Merchants and Tradesmen in the Suburbs, from whence they come into the City to trade with Foreign Merchants from 10 in the Morning till 5 in the Evening, when they return to their Houses. He adds, that about 50 Years ago they began to build a magnificent Pagod here, which would have been the fairest in *India* had it been finish'd. The Stones are of a prodigious Size; that wherein the Nich is made being of such a monstrous Bulk, that 500 Men were employ'd 5 Years before they could hew it out of its Place, and then it was rowl'd on an Engine drawn by 1400 Oxen. On the Side of the City towards *Masulipatan* there are two great Lakes, about a League in Compass each, where there are several Pleasure-Boats richly adorn'd for the King's Use, and many Country Houses belonging to the chief Lords on their Banks. When the K. administers Justice, he comes into a Balcony that looks into the Square before his Palace, where all that have Business stand without a Row of Poles, with Ropes between them, that serve for a Bar, which none must enter till they be call'd. A Secretary of State sits under the Balcony, receives the Petitions, which he puts into a Bag, that an Eunuch pulls up by a String, and presents to his Majesty. The chief Nobility mount the Guards in their Turns with the Troops under their Command, as at the Mogul's Court, attended by Elephants and Camels, which bear Culverins, and Enginiers sitting

on their Cruppers with lighted Matches to fire them. Then follow the Coaches, Domesticks, and Led-Horses, of the Omrahs, with 10 or 12 Courtezans dancing and skipping before them till they come to the Piazza. The Soldiers have no Clothes, but 3 or 4 Ells of Callico that cover half their Bodies behind and before. They wear their Hair long, ty'd up in a Knot on their Crowns. Their Arms are broad Swords, like those of the *Swissers*. The Barrels of their Muskets are stronger and neater than ours, because their Iron is better. Their Cavalry wear Bows, Arrows, Bucklers, Battle-Axes, Head-Pieces and Jackets of Mail. There are 20000 common Women set down in the *Deroga's* Book, without which they must not profess the Trade. They pay no Tribute to the King, but are obliged every Friday to send their Governess with a certain Number to dance before his Balcony. In the Evening they ply before their Houses, where they sell Tary, which yields the King so much Tribute, that he thinks it his Interest to increase their Number. *Tavernier* says, these Strumpets are so nimble and active, that when the King went to see *Masulipatan*, 9 of them formed themselves into the Figure of an Elephant, with a Throne upon their Backs, in which the King enter'd the City. The Men and Women of this Country are well proportion'd, and fair, but the Rusticks somewhat swarthy. *Bouffingault* says, this King's Palace exceeds any belonging to the Mogul in Architecture; that it is all of Marble, 4 German Leagues in Circuit, and the Walls in many Places cover'd with Plates of massy Gold.

3. *Condapoly*. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 121 $\frac{2}{3}$. Lat. 19. 10. 60 Miles E. from *Golconda*. They say, 'tis the principal Fortrefs of the Kingdom, so large that it contains 6 others one above another, and has Wood, Fruits, and arable Land, enough to maintain its several Garrisons, which consist of near 12000 Men.

4. *Condavera*, or *Condevir*. The *Sanfons* place it above 90 Miles E. of *Golconda*, and about 5 Leagues N. E. of *Condapoly*. *Tavernier* says, 'tis a great City, with a Castle and a double Moat pav'd with Free-stone. The Way that leads from hence to *Condapoly* is clos'd on both Sides with strong

Walls, which at certain Distances have little round Towers. On the E. of this City there's a Mountain about a League in Compass, surrounded with Walls, with Half-Moons at every 150 Paces; and 3 Fortresses within the Walls. *Herbert* says, That in this and the foregoing Cities, the King of *Golconda* keeps his Diamonds and other Treasure.

5. *Tenara*, on the Road betwixt *Golconda* and *Masulipatan*, 4 Miles from the former, is a Village belonging to the Queen, and consists of 4 stately Structures, with large Gardens to each. One of them, more beautiful than the rest, is built of Free-stone two Stories high, with several fair Galleries, Halls, Parlours, and Lodging-Rooms. Before the Front of this House there's a large square Piazza, as big almost as the Place-Royal at *Paris*. On each of the other three Fronts there's a great Portal, and on each Side of that a fair Platform well arch'd for Travellers of Quality, and on the Top of each Portal there's a strong Balluster, and a Chamber for Ladies. The Fort-House, which is the fairest, is reserv'd for the Queen's Use, which Strangers may see when she is not there, and walk in her fine Gardens, that are well stor'd with Water. The whole Piazza is encompassed with Lodgings for poor Travellers, where they have likewise Suppers gratis. The Roads hereabouts abound with Cassia Trees, which bear the best and the most laxative Cassia in the *Indies*.

6. *Gani*, or *Coulour*. *Tavernier* says, it is 7 Days Journey E. from *Golconda*. This Place has its Name from the Mine of Diamonds there, which lies near a great Town. *Tavernier* does not name it; but according to *Herbert*, it is *Morconda*; and *Luyts* says, the Town was built here for the Sake of the Mines. It lies 160 Miles E. from *Golconda*, and 108 N. from *Masulipatan*; *Herbert* says but 90. The Mine he says is a large Rock under Part of the Mountain, which reaches towards *Ballaguete*. The Soil for many Miles round is barren and sandy, but near the Mine is of a reddish Colour, and the Vein it self of a pale Yellow. No Part of the World affords greater Plenty of Diamonds, or of a better Water. There are also found here Topazes, Amethysts, Spinel, Heliotropes, Agats, Garnets, Chrystals, &c. He says,

says, the Digging of them is a kind of Lottery to the Adventurers; for if a Diamond exceed 20 Carats, or 80 Grains, it belongs to the King, and the Adventurers are obliged to maintain strong Guards to defend their Workmen and Caravans from the Mountaineers. *Tavernier* says, it was discover'd about 100 Years before his Time by a Countryman, who was digging Ground to sow Millet, and found a pointed Stone that weigh'd above 25 Carats. He knew not what it was; but perceiving it glister, carried it to *Golconda*, where he met a Jeweller, who admir'd the Size of it; and the Thing taking Air, the rich Men of the Town fell to working the Mine, where they found greater Quantities, and bigger Diamonds, than any where else; some of them of 40 Carats, and bigger, and among the rest that large Stone of 900 Carats, which *Mirgimola* presented to *Orangzeb*. *Tavernier* adds, that tho' many great Stones be found there, they are not clean, but water'd according to the Quality of the Earth where they lie, black, red, green, and yellow. The *Indians* examine the Water and Specks by a Lamp set up in a Hole of a Wall about a Foot square, and hold up the Stones between their Fingers. The Water they call *Cælestial* is the worst, and impossible to be discern'd while the Stone is rough. The best Way to try it is to carry the Stone under a Tree of thick Boughs, by the Verdure of which 'tis easily discern'd whether the Water be bluish. When he was there, there were above 60000 People employ'd in digging and sifting the Earth. When they pitch on a Place to dig, they level another near it, which they inclose with a Wall about two Foot high, with Holes at the Bottom two Foot from one another, to let in the Water, and then stop them up till they come to drain it. Then the Work-Master brings the Image of an Idol, which they adore, and after Prayers, the Priest marks every one's Forehead with a sort of Glëw, upon which he sticks 7 or 8 Grains of Rice. Then having wash'd themselves, the Work-Master feasts them with Rice soak'd in Butter and Sugar. Then they fall to digging from 10 to 14 Foot deep, till they meet with Water, when they leave off. They throw the Earth within the Wall above mentioned, and soak it with Water

from the Dreins till it come to a kind of Paste. Then they open the Holes in the Wall to let out the Water, and throw on more, till the Mud be quite wash'd off, and nothing left but Sand. This they dry in the Sun, and winnow as we do Corn. The great Dust which remains they pour on the Ground, spread it with a Rake as thin as they can, pound it with Rammers, winnow it again, and then look for the Diamonds. *Tavernier* adds, that formerly they made no Scruple to buy Diamonds that had a green Outside; for being cut, they provid very white, and of an excellent Water: But a Mine of such having been discover'd betwixt *Coulour* and *Raolconda*, the King order'd it to be shut up, because when they came to the Mill they crumbled to Pieces. The Miners sell none of those Diamonds but for Gold of the best Sort, which must be paid them in the View of their Bankers, who understand it. The Curious may find Rules in *Tavernier* about the Prices, Weights, and Marks, of the several Sorts of Diamonds.

7. *Palcole*, on the Sea Coast, two Days Journey N. from *Masulipatan*, and is noted for a *Dutch* Factory. They have another at, 8. *Dacheron*, on the same Coast. The Trade of those Parts is in Rice, fine Clothes, Iron, Wax, and Lacquer. They import Copper, Tin, Lead, and Pepper.

9. *Bimilipatan*, or *Bimilipatnam*, on the same Coast, Lat. $18\frac{1}{4}$. Long. $124\frac{1}{2}$. *Thevenot* makes it 4 Days Journey N. of *Masulipatan*. The *Dutch* have a Factory here, where they drive a considerable Trade in the Commodities above-mentioned. *Thevenot* says, the Governors of this Country are great Tyrants and Exacters; and if threaten'd to be complain'd of to the King, they laugh at it, saying, That he is King of *Golconda*, and that they are Kings in their Governments.

10. *Masulipatan*, *Masulipatnam*, or *Mecklapatan*. The *Sansons* place it about Lat. 17. Long. 123. *Moll* Lat. 16. Long. 101. at the Mouth of a River that runs into the Bay of Bengal. Dr. *Fryar* says, the Town is encompassed with a Mud Wall and a stinking Morass, sometimes overflow'd with the Sea. 'Tis of an oblong Form, and large. They have two sorry Custom-House Keys, shut up with ordinary Gates by Night. The Streets

Streets are broad, the Houses lofty, built of Wood and Plaister, with Folding Windows of Wood without, lettic'd with Rattans, and adorn'd with Balconies, cover'd with large Sheds of Tiles. They have a square Court, with a stately Gate, a vaulted Tank in the Middle, and Terrass-Walks, with Places to wash in, and others to take the Air; and the Cover of the whole Fabrick within is in Form of a Tabor. They have several Mosques, one Custom-House, and a mean Court of Judicature. They have 3 Market-Places, crowded with People and Commodities, and the Houses of the meaner Sort are of Mud-Wall, round like Beehives, and thatch'd, which frequently occasions Fire. On the N.E. there's a Wooden Bridge half a Mile long, which leads to the Bar-Town. On the N.W. they have a Bridge of a Mile long, which lies towards the *English* Garden. These Bridges lie over sandy Marshes, have a Gate-House and a strong Watch at the Ends next the Town, and are always crowded by Drove of People. The Inhabitants are *Moors*, *Persians*, *Pagans*, *Armenians*, *Portuguese*, *English*, *Dutch*, and a few *French*. Near the Bar the Waves have a rapid Motion, make a Noise as loud as the Cataracts of the *Nile*, and have sometimes as great a Fall. Over this the Land shuts up on both Sides, and a Stream runs up to the Town. Near the Bar there is an Earthen Fort mounted by 10 Guns, under which the *Moorish* Ships ride at Anchor. *Schouten* says, the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Danes*, have had Factories here of a long standing. In the dry Season, the smallest Vessels must wait for the Tide before they get up to the Town. There are abundance of Crocodiles and other Fish in the River. Vessels of Burden are oblig'd to ride at half a League from the Bank, because there is no good Anchorage nearer. The Governor pays an Annual Tribute to the King of *Golconda*, lives nobly, and has a great Train. *Tavernier* says, the Road is best in the Gulph of *Bengal*. *Thevenot* says, the Houses are all separate from one another, and the Water brackish. Their principal Trade is in Chites. *Marten* and *Floris* say, the Variation of the Compass here is 12 Deg. 22 Min. that the Point is in 15 Deg. 57 Min. N. Lat. and

the Road in 15 Deg. 36 Min. *Herbert* says, the Heat is extream here from *March* to *July*, and from thence to *November* they have incessant Wind and Rains, so that they have but 4 Months of moderate Weather, from *November* to *March*; yet they have two Harvests. The *English* Factory here trades chiefly in Rice and Callico. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis the greatest Place of Trade in the Kingdom of *Golconda* for Callicoes, Indigo, Diamonds, and other Precious Stones. The *Portuguese Franciscans* have a Monastery here. *Dr. Fryar* says, they stain Callicoes in this City the best of any in the *Indies*, and that the *Pagan* Children, &c. do it with Pencils very nicely. He says, there are about 200000 People in the City, but so cowardly, that 24 *Englishmen* upon a Quarrel maintain'd the Custom-House Keys against the whole Town. The Air does not agree with New-comers; but by removing 3 Miles up the Country, where the *English* Factory has a Garden, they soon recover. Capital Crimes are punish'd in the common People by cutting the Criminals suddenly in Pieces, or impaling them on Stakes. People of Quality are punish'd thus: The King orders them to be sent to a Place call'd the *Post*, where the Master of the Place gives them an intoxicating Drink made of Hemp and Nightshade, which renders them foolishly mad. Then they are let into a Garden, where Apes, Cats, Dogs, and Monkies, are their Attendants, with whom they maintain their Dialogues, and vent their Humours. Thus they continue during the King's Pleasure, and if he don't order their Cure, they pine to Death. The Inhabitants are infested with Emphyema's and Fluxes, and during the hot Season with Swarms of Ants, Mucketto's, Flies, and stinking Chints, much like our Bugs; so that there's no sleeping without fine Callico thrown over their Beds, besides Mufflers on their Hands and Faces, and a Servant to keep off those Insects with a Fan; and to preserve themselves from Ants, the Bed-Posts are set in Pans of Water, which hinders them from getting up. The *English*, when the Season for Shipping is over, remove to *Medapollon*, 40 Miles more N. where they have a wholesome Seat.

3. BISNAGAR, or NARSINGUA.

Luyts says, it lies S. of *Golconda*, begins at *Masulipatan* and the River *Nagundi*, and extended formerly 600 Miles in Length as far as *Cape Comorin*, till *Gingi*, *Madura*, and *Tanjowar*, revolted from the King's Officers, and became separate Principalities. He adds, that it extends W. over the Mountains as far as the *Indian Sea*; so that according to him, it comprehends *Bisnagar* and the Coast of *Coromandel*, and *Canara* on the Coast of *Malabar*. We shall therefore in Order first describe

C A N A R A.

The *Sansons* extend it 200 Miles from N. to S. and 150 where broadest. 'Tis divided from *Malabar* on the S. by the River *Gangerecora*, from *Cuncan* on the N. by the River *Aliga*, has the Ocean on the W. and *Bisnagar* on the E. *Luyts* says, 'tis divided into many petty Kingdoms, of which the chief was *Onor*, *Baticala*, and *Garzopa*. *Sanson* says, the two first are subject to one and the same King; but they are all tributary to the King of *Bisnagar*. Dr. *Fryar* calls all the Tract of Land from *Guzuratte* to *Malabar* by the Name of the *Canatick* Country, but says, that *Proper Canara* begins at the Town of *Gongola*, from whence it extends along the Sea to *Malabar*, and within Land as far as the *Pepper Mountains* of *Sunda*, and the Precinct of *Sergi-Caun*. The Inhabitants speak the *Canorein* Tongue, which the Doctor thinks to be the primitive Language of all the Coast from *Malabar* to *Surat*, tho' it varies in Dialects. He says, they have a lively Countenance, and live peaceably under the Government of the *Ranna* or Princess of *Canara*, who, together with a Nobleman that rais'd himself from a *Toddy-Man* to be General and Protector, rule during her Son's Minority. Here are many Wild Elephants, and the Country produces Wild Nutmegs, us'd in Dying, *Betle-Nut*, and *Pepper*, which grows in the Mountains of *Sunda*, and call'd *Carwar* Pepper, tho' 'tis 5 Days Journey from thence. The Doctor says, the Reason why we have so little of it in *Europe*, is, because the *Raja* there sells it

at the best Rates up the Country. *Schouten* says, great Part of the Inhabitants, especially on the Coast, make Profession of the *Portuguese* Religion, tho' most of them are still Idolaters in Heart. The idolatrous Pagans have the like Faith and Worship with those of *Malabar*, of whom we shall speak hereafter. Their Priests call'd *Jogis* live an austere and miserable Life like Hermits. They carry a beastly Figure in their Necks of the *Padenda* of both Sexes united, which is a Mark of their Consecration to *Quivelinga*, their Idol; and barren Women repair to kiss it in Hopes to obtain Children. *Schouten* adds, That they kill nothing nor eat any thing that has Life. Both Sexes go naked, and have only a Piece of Linen to cover their Privy-Parts. The Women tie a sort of Apron round their Waistes. *Baldeus* says, the Country in general is very fertile in Rice, and other Necessaries for humane Life, and that the Inhabitants are robust and hardy.

The most Northerly Kingdom on the Coast is *Onor*. Dr. *Fryar* says, the Country is hilly and barren. It has *Decan* on the N. *Baticala* on the S. the *Indian Ocean* on the W. and *Goreopa* on the E. The chief Town is *Onor*. *Thevenot* says, it lies about 18 Leagues from *Goa*. The *Sansons* place it above 65 Miles S. from it, Long. $116\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. $14\frac{1}{2}$. at the Mouth of a River of the same Name, which falls into the Ocean. *Luyts* places it Lat. 14. on the River *Mergeu*, and Dr. *Fryar* in Lat. 13. 10. He says, there's a Castle on the N. Side of the River which commands the Entrance into the Town, and at the Landing-place there's a Factory of the *Dutch*. One End of the Town stands in a Vale, and the other on a rocky Hill, where 'tis defended by the Castle, a Stone Wall regularly fortified, with a Draw-bridge and a Moat, which the Doctor says is now become dry, and that the Castle has no Garrison, and falls to Decay. It was built by the *Portuguese*, but with the Help of the *Dutch* taken by the *Canoreins*, betwixt whom and the *Portuguese* the Town in the Doctor's Time was divided. He adds, that the *Moors* have but little Footing here; that the Inhabitants live very amicably; that Strangers may travel safely in the great Roads without a Guide; and that here are good Laws, to which the Inha-

Inhabitants are very obedient. *Luyts* says, the *English* have a Factory here for Pepper, which is accounted heavier and better than any other. *Thevenot* says, it has a large and safe Harbour, made by two Rivers that fall into the Sea by one Mouth below the Fort, which he says exceeds the Town for Neatness, and is the Residence of the Governor and the Chief of the *Portuguese* Inhabitants. *Scheuten* says, this Port was frequented by Ships from all the Countries in *Asia*, till the *Portuguese* drew the Trade to *Goa*. There are two Churches near the Governor's Apartments in the Castle. Most of the Garrison consisted in his Time of *Portuguese* *Casado's*, and other rich Persons, who indulg'd themselves in Pleasure more than well disciplin'd Soldiers ought to do. There were more Huts in the Town made of the Leaves of Trees than Houses, and they were inhabited by *Canarins*, who liv'd in an entire Submission to the *Portuguese*. But since the Arrival of the *Dutch* in these Parts, the Town has undergone another Change.

2. *Gocurn*. Dr. *Fryar* says, it lies in a Valley near the Sea, was formerly a fine Town, but of no other Note in his Time than for the Relicks of a great many Pagods, to which the idolatrous *Banians* make their Pilgrimages. They have all a dark Entry at the farther End, where Lamps are always burning before the Images, to which they offer Oil, Rice, and Frankincense. Some anoint and wash them with great Pains and Cost. There's a large oblong Stone Tank and a neat Pagod in the Middle, supported by 4 Marble Pillars. Here both Sexes wash themselves, and present Rice and Money to the *Bramins*, and there are tame Fish in it which partake of their Benevolence, and must not be killed on Pain of Death. They present the Hairs of their Head as an Offering to the Ghosts of their deceased Friends in this Manner: After the Barber has shav'd the Head and Beard in this Water, they deliver it wrapped up to the *Bramin*, who brings a Cow and a Calf thither, which they bind with Frontlets, and believe that the Souls of the Departed reside in them. From hence they enter the Pagod bare-footed; and after having made an Offering to the Idol, strike a Bell that hangs in the Body of the Church, and then go out. The

Doctor saw a solemn Procession of their Heroes to this Pagod, which he describes thus: At the upper End of the High-Street, near the Market-Place, were two great moving Pageants drawn on Wheels, two Stories high, with a Cupulo, stuck all round with gay Streamers. The lower Stories were painted with the Figures of their Saints, and there were Portals on every Side. In the lowest fate the Hero, attended by their Chief Priests, with a dark blue Cope over their Shoulders, their under Garments white, Puckeries on their Heads, a Mussal within, and they had a Skreen of Silver and Velvet, with Sarsnet Borders, to keep off the Sun; the Chief Captain, attended with the Sound of Horns, Drums, and Trumpets, and the *Bramins* with softer Musick, together with Wenches singing and dancing with Bells at their Wrists and Heels, and Tabrets. There was a red Swallow-tail'd Ensign, together with several Chitories, and little fine Umbrella's. There were 500 Men that had Javelins of Brass and Steel, with Bells and Feathers, and as many more with Guns. Then came a green Ensign, border'd with a Chequer of white and green, and follow'd by 200 Men of the same Order, as before. After these march'd a great Number of Men striking on Brass Pots and Pans, and dancing to the Measure. The Engine was drawn by a Team of Priests; and as it passed to the Pagod, the People rose and clapped their Hands. It was follow'd by a Troop of the Gentry on Horseback. After it had paid a Visit to the Pagod, it returned in the same Order, and the Ceremony ended by firing of the Guns. He saw other Idols fanned by Women, offering Censers of Perfumes, with huge Lights, before which certain Conjurers ran about cudgelling themselves, others beat themselves as long as they could stand, and strove to outdo each other in this zealous Pennance. He describes one of those Idols thus: 'Twas cut out of excellent black Marble, as high as a Man, had the Body of an ancient Greek Hero, 4 Heads, and as many Hands, but two were broke off. The Doctor says, they have no Annals nor Records that discover the Founder of these Pagods, and that Time and the Moors have almost quite defac'd them. There's an University of *Bramins* here well endow'd;

endow'd; but they have no Library, unless a few Manuscripts, &c. understood only by themselves. He adds, that they are under no Vow of Celibacy, and live in neat Houses plaister'd with Cow-Dung, which is done afresh as oft as they sweep them. Some of them counted their Prayers by Beads, and others by Shells. They wear a red Sort of Caps, and fetch Water for the Idols from the Tank three or four times a Day, with loud Musick, and Dancing Wenchies; and one of the Tribes is obliged to devote the eldest of the Males and Females for that particular Service, allow them large Dispensations for their Marriage, and grant the Liberty of getting Children in common to all. These People are generally morose and careless of their Behaviour towards Strangers.

3. *Mirdsie, Mirisgie, Mirzeen, or Mirja.* Dr. Fryar places it in this Kingdom, behind great black Rocks, which hide it from the Sea. Here he saw the Protector of the Country, who was a *Gentile*, and came hither with his Lords and Guards, armed with Swords and Gantlets, and Partizans adorned with Bells and Feathers, and his Horses had Ornaments like those of our Team-Horses. He went aboard the *English* Ships, where he was welcomed with a Salvo of their Artillery, and the Huzza's of the Mariners, and presented with Scarlet Cloth. He was rowed in his own Vessel by 36 Men in a great deal of State, attended with Kettle-Drums and other loud Musick, which the Doctor says was like the Noise of a Cooper driving his Hoops round a Hog-head. He adds, that their Lading here was Pepper, Salt-Petre, and Betle-Nut, for *Surat*. There's a neat old Castle here, with double Walls and Trenches, and high Turrets on the Bastions. There's a wide Moat about it, but few Guns. It was surrender'd by the Treachery of a *Moor* Governor, and is now in the Hands of the Protector. There's a Market-place in the Town, a Burial-place for the *Moors*, and a large Aqueduct of good Stone. *Mandelsloe* places a Town of this Name in the Road from *Visapour* to *Dabul*, says 'tis large, but not populous; and that its Castle held out a Siege against all the Forces of the Great Mogul's Empire. He adds, that there are the Tombs of two ancient Kings here, which are much

reverenc'd by the People. *Ogilby* says, they were two Kings of *Dekli*, who died about 500 Years before his Time.

Dr. Fryar says, there's a Prince of vast Territories in these Parts, call'd the Raja of *Saranpatam*. He has a different Way of Fighting from his Neighbours, for he trains up his Soldiers to be expert in handling a certain Instrument, with which they pull off the Enemy's Noses, because his Religion won't allow him to put any thing to Death.

The most Southern Kingdom of *Canara* is *Baticala, Batecalo, or Battachala*. 'Tis bounded on the N. with *Onor* and *Garcopa*, on the E. with Part of the latter, on the S. with *Malabar*, and on the W. with the *Indian Ocean*. *Luyts* says, the Country is fruitful, extends pretty far within Land, and is more powerful than the other two Kingdoms of *Onor* and *Garcopa*. *Baldous* says, it became tributary to the *Portuguese* in the Reign of *Emanuel*; after which it revolted twice, but was reduced and compelled to pay Tribute to the *Portuguese*, who blocked up the Harbour with their Ships, and made Incursions into the Country.

The chief Town is of the same Name. The *Sansons* place it 100 Miles S. of *Goa*, about Long. $116\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $15\frac{3}{4}$. *Luyts* places it in Lat. 13. on a small River about a Mile from the Sea. He says, the adjacent Country is very fruitful, and that the Town is fair and well built. *Schouten* places it 24 Leagues from *Goa*.

2. *Barcelor, or Baquen.* The *Sansons* place it near a River that falls into the Ocean, 20 Miles S. of *Baticala*, and above 115 from *Goa*, Long. $116\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $13\frac{3}{4}$. *Moll* 140 Miles from *Goa*, and about 105 S.W. of the Diamond Mines of *Raolconda*, Long. $93\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $13\frac{1}{4}$. *Luyts* places it about 30 Miles S. from *Onor*. It has a Fort built by the *Portuguese*, but now subject to the *Dutch*. Captain *Peyton* says, there's a good Trade here for Rice, Pepper, Ginger, and several Sorts of Drugs.

3. *Mangalor, Mangamor, or Manquelore.* *Thevenot* says, it is a little ill built Town, within 10 Deg. and odd Min. of the Line, and that it belongs to the King of *Banguel*, which, together with *Olala*, he makes two separate Kingdoms of *Canara*. The *Sansons*

place it above 60 Miles S. of *Barcelor*, and about 180 from *Goa*, on the same Coast, in Long. $116\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $12\frac{2}{3}$. Captain *Peyton* says, it has the same Trade as *Barcelor*; and that the *French* have a Factory 6 Miles N. of it. *Rennest* says, 'tis a fine Town, and has two Forts, which the *Moors* have lately taken from the *Portuguese*, one with four Bastions, and the other with three, on each Side of a great River. Dr. *Fryar* says, the *Dutch* have a Fort here. *Schouten* says, the adjacent Country abounds in Rice, and other Commodities necessary for Life; but that the continual Quarrels between the Kings and neighbouring Princes turn it very often into an *Aceldama*.

The 3d Kingdom is *Garzopa*, or *Gorcopa*, which advances within Land as far as the Mountains of *Gate*, with a Town of the same Name, about 35 Miles E. of *Onor*, in the same Deg. of Lat. according to the *Sansens*, and *Luyts* says on the same River. It was ruin'd by the *Portuguese*, who about 5 Miles from it built a large Fortrefs call'd *Gavarada Nagher*. But we cannot find it in our Maps, no more than the other Towns of *Ikkeri*, *Abineli*, and *Saghor*, which he places in this Country.

Raolconda is a Place noted for Diamond Mines. *Moll* places it 100 Miles W. from *Bisnagar*, and about 175 S. E. of *Goa*, in Long. 95. Lat. 14. *Tavernier* places it 5 Days Journey from *Golconda*, and 8 or 9 from *Visapour*, and says, it lies in the Territories of the King of that Name. He adds, the Mines were discover'd about 200 Years before his Time. The Ground about the Place is sandy, and full of Rocks. The Miners make use of Irons with Hooks at the End to take up the Earth or Sand, which they put into Tubs, and then wash it, and look for the Diamonds. There are several Veins in the Rock, which they break in order to follow the Traces. He adds, that the cleanest Stones, and those of the whitest Water, are found in this Mine. We refer to him, and to what we have already said of the Mines of *Coulour*, for their Method of grinding, cutting, and polishing them. The King has 2 per Cent. for all that are sold, and a Duty besides from the Merchants for Leave to dig, who pay 2 Pagods a Day, and 4 when they employ 100 Men. *Tavernier*

says, the poor Miners don't get above 3 Pagods all the Year long, tho' they work never so well, so that sometimes they hide a Stone for their own Profit; and because they are quite naked, except a Rag about their Privities, are often obliged to swallow them. He saw one discover'd that had put a Stone into the Corner of his Eye: But to prevent these Frauds, 12 or 15 in every 50, he says, are engaged to the Merchant, that he shall suffer no Loss. If by Chance they meet with a Stone of 14 or 16 Carats, the Chief Work-Master rewards them with a Piece of Callico worth about 25. to make them a Bonnet, together with half a Silver Pagod, and sometimes a whole one. The Merchants have Lodgings about the Mines, and at 10 or 11 every Morning the Masters of the Miners bring their Diamonds. If the Stones are large, or there be so many as amount from 2000 to 16000 Crowns, they leave them 7 or 8 Days for the Merchants to consider; after which they must agree on a Price, or return them. When the Bargain is concluded, the Buyer gives a Bill of Exchange upon the Banker. If Payment be promis'd within 4 Days, and deferred longer, the Buyer gives one and a half per Cent. for a Month's Interest. But when they know the Merchant to be responsible, they commonly chuse to take a Bill of Exchange for *Agra*, *Golconda*, *Visapour*, or *Surat*. He adds, that the Children of the Merchants and others of the Country, from 10 to 16 Years of Age, sit upon a Tree in a void Place of the Town, with their little Bags of Diamond Weights on one Side, and on the other Purses of 5 or 600 Gold Pagods, waiting for those that sell Diamonds. When any are brought, they put them into the Hands of the Eldest or Chief among them, who first looks upon 'em, and sends them from one to another, till they return to himself again, none of the rest speaking a Word all the while. Then he asks the Price; but if he buy 'em too dear, says *Tavernier*, 'tis upon his own Account. In the Evening the Children reckon what they have laid out, and separate their Stones according to their Water, Weight, and Clearness. Then they carry them to the great Merchants, who have generally large Parcels to match, and the Profit is equally divided among the Children,

dren, only the Chief has a 4th in the Hundred more than the rest. *Tavernier* gives the following Account of the Method us'd by the *Mahometans* and Pagans in their Bargains. Neither the Buyer nor Seller speaks a Word, but sit facing one another cross-legg'd. When one of them opens his Girdle, the Seller takes hold of the Buyer's Right Hand, and covers his own and that with his Girdle, under which they secretly drive a Bargain, without the Knowledge of any of the rest of the Merchants, who meet in the same Hall, for they make no Motion either with Tongue or Eyes, but only with the Hand thus: When the Seller takes the Buyer by the whole Hand, it signifies 1000; and as often as he squeezes it, so many Thousand Pagods or Roupies, or whatever the Money be in Question. If he takes but half to the Knuckle of the middle Finger, it signifies 50, and the small End of the Finger to the first Knuckle 10. When he grasps 5 Fingers, it signifies 500; and if but one Finger, 100. And to prevent the Buyer's being deceived in the Weight of the Stones, there's a Person paid by the King on purpose to weigh them, who when he has declared the Weight, the Buyers and Sellers take his Word.

Gaudicot, or *Guendicot*. *Tavernier* says, 'tis one of the strongest Cities in the Kingdom, situated on the Point of a high Mountain, to which there is but one Ascent of 20 Foot wide in some Places, and in others not above 7 or 8. On the Top there's a little Plain half a League long, and a quarter in Breadth, well water'd with Springs, and sow'd with Rice and Millet. The City stands on the S. Part of it, encompassed with Precipices and two Rivers at the Bottom, which form the Point. There is but one Gate to enter it from the Plain, which is fortified with three good Free-stone Walls and Moats. In August 1652, the K. of *Bisnagar*'s Favourite took this City after 3 Months Siege, by the Assistance of certain *Frenchmen*, who had forsaken the *Dutch* Company, and of some *English*, *Dutch*, and *Italian* Canoneers; for the Besieged had but two Iron Guns, one upon the Gate, the other upon a kind of Bastion at the Point, which, with their Sallies, did terrible Execution upon the Favourite's Men, till he found a Heighth equal to the City whereon

to mount his Cannon, which he accomplish'd so well, says *Tavernier*, by the Help of some *Frenchmen*, to whom he gave four Months extraordinary Pay, that it render'd the Gun that was planted on the Gate quite unserviceable, and beat down great Part of the City Wall, which obliged the Garrison, that was commanded by one of the most famous Raja's for Valour among the Idolaters, to capitulate on good Terms. There was a Pagod here, said to be the fairest in the *Indies*, wherein were several Idols of Gold and Silver, and 6 of Brass 10 Foot high, 3 sitting on their Heels, and 3 on the Feet, which by the Favourite's Order were taken down to be cast into Guns: But the Workmen could not make the Metal run, tho' all the rest were soon melted, and was forc'd to desist, tho' he had try'd several Ways, and the Favourite threaten'd to hang the Priests for enchanting them. He adds, that when he went to visit the Favourite, he found him sitting bare-foot, according to the Custom of the Country, with a great Number of Papers sticking between his Toes, and others between the Fingers of his Left Hand, which he drew out one after another, and order'd particular Answers, which, after the Secretaries had wrote down and read, he seal'd and gave them to the Messengers, or Foot-Posts, who carry Letters with more Speed than Horsemen, because at the End of every two Leagues there's a little Hut, into which they throw the Letters, where a Man stands ready to run away immediately with them to the next. They look upon it as an ill Omen to give the Letters into the Messengers Hands, and therefore throw 'em at their Feet. He adds, that most of the Roads in this Country are planted like Walks with Trees; and that where there are none, the Inhabitants of the next Villages are obliged to white-wash them, that those Letter-Carriers may not miss their Way in the Dark. Criminals are rarely imprison'd in this Country; but as soon as apprehended, are either punish'd with the Loss of Limb or Life, or else discharged upon the Spot.

B I S N A G A R P R O P E R, or N A R - S I N G U A.

Herbert says, 'tis full of fair Towns, strong Forts, pleasant Fields, and choice Minerals;

rals; that it swarms with *Banians*, and yields an Annual Revenue of two Millions to the King, who us'd to wear a Coat thick set with shining Gems and Stones, had 1000 Men for his Guards, affected Polygamy, and reckon'd it one of his chief Titles to be the Husband of 1000 Wives. *Bouffingault* says, they keep 5 or 6000 Jesters. The *Sanfons* divide it into the Governments of *Tieulique* and *Bisnagar*, and bound it on the N. with *Golconda*, on the E. with the Coast of *Coromandel* and the Bay of *Bengal*, on the S. with the Principality of *Gingi*, and on the W. with the Mountains of *Gate*, that part it from *Canara*. They say, the King maintains 40000 Nairs, and 20000 Horse, besides 12 or 15000 Persons, 1000 Horse, and 800 Elephants, for the Service of his Household. *Luyts* makes it 250 Miles from N. to S. and says, the Soil is fruitful, well water'd, and abounds in Cattle, Lyons, Tygers, Elephants, Boars, and Stags, the Air very hot, but the Winter-Nights extreme cold; and that there are great Rains every Year for 3 Months together, contrary to the Season, on the W. Side of the Mountains, as we have formerly observ'd. He adds, that the Inhabitants are well shap'd, tawny, and naturally lazy; but that some of 'em are very ingenious in weaving and painting Callicoes. *J. du Barros*, and others his Contemporaries, tell us, that the King in their Time assumed mighty Titles, and was so powerful, that he brought an Army against *Hidalcan* of near 766000 Foot, and 34000 Horse, besides 600 Elephants. The *Sanfons* say, that it consisted of 40000 Horse, 700000 Foot, and 700 Elephants. *Barbosa* says, there are 100000 Men and 900 Elephants constantly maintain'd for the Guard of the Kingdom, which are paid out of the Revenues of the Mines. *Schouten* says, That upon the Death of one of their Kings, his *Naiques* or Captains divided it into so many Sovereignities, till 1650, when, says *Thevenot*, the Kings of *Visapour* and *Golconda* united against *Adilcha* King of *Bisnagar* Proper, and enter'd his Dominions, of which the latter seiz'd the Coast of *Coromandel*; and the former having taken what lay next to him, pursued his Conquest as far as the Cape of *Negapatan*; so that *Adilcha* fled to the Mountains, where he was still in *Thevenot's* Time, when that Part of

Bisnagar that belong'd to the King of *Visapour* was govern'd by the Conqueror, an Eunuch of 70 Years of Age, to whom the King gave great Honours, and made him the richest Subject of the *Indies*; but the Principalities of *Gingi*, *Tanjanor*, and *Madura*, still subsist. *Schouten* adds, that besides fatal Distempers and Desolation, such a terrible Famine ensued, as reduced the *Indians* to Skin and Bones, and to a blacker Colour than their own natural one; so that those who had any Strength left sold themselves as Slaves for a Handful of Rice, and suffer'd themselves to be transported with their Families to other Countries; so that the *Dutch* carried away several Thousands of them to *Negapatnam*, &c.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Bisnagar*, *Bezenner*, *Visnagar*, or *Chandegry*, it lies, according to *Moll*, in Long. 96½. Lat. 14. near a Stream which runs into the River *Christena*, that falls S. of *Masulipatan* into the Bay of *Bengal*. He places it about 23 Miles S. of *Narsingua*, 87 from *Golconda*, and 260 E. from *Goa*; whereas the *Sanfons* place it Long. 119. Lat. 15. 150 Miles N. W. of *Narsingua*, above 300 from *Golconda*, and but 200 from *Goa*. They say, 'tis a fine rich City, able to furnish 100000 Horse; and that there's a College of Jesuits here. *Herbert* says, 'tis the *Binagra* of *Ptolomy*, (others *Madura*) and the second City for Grandeur, Wealth, and Trade, in all the King's Dominions. 'Tis well built and fortified, with a Wall near 4 Miles in Circuit. There's a good Haven, which is frequented by Ships from *Europe*, *India*, *Persia*, and *Arabia*. Some say, 'tis 7 Miles in Circuit, and has a treble Wall. *Bouffingault* says, the Women here sing and dance well, play upon Instruments of Musick, and act 1000 Feats of Activity; and that there are a great many Courtezans here so rich, that they have sometimes maintain'd 5 or 6000 Soldiers in the Field at their own Expence. *Luyts* places it on a Hill near the Banks of the *Nagundi*, in the Center of the King's Dominions, who chuses it many times for his Residence. He adds, that 'tis defended also by a strong Fort. Mr. *Cesar Frederick* says, That in 1565, this City was besieged by 4 Kings of the *Moors*, who took it by the Treachery of two of the chief Captains in the King of *Bisnagar's* Army; and that after they had

had spent 6 Months in plundering it, they left it. Then one *Temiragio* a Tyrant, in order to repeople it, came and invited all Merchants to come and bring Horses to it, and promised to give what Price they would; but after he had got great Numbers, he paid for none. They burn their Wives here at the Death of the Husbands, and wash in the *Nagundi*, as those of *Bengal* do in the *Ganges*, but with this Difference; the Morning that the Woman rides out in order to be burnt, she takes a Looking-Glass in one Hand, and an Arrow in the other, and sings all the Way that she is going to sleep with her dear Husband: And when a great Man dies, all his Concubines are burnt together with his Wife; but the Wives of the poorer Sort are wall'd in and strangled, while they clasp their dead Husbands about the Neck. He adds, that the Town is 24 Miles in Compass, and has a stately Palace for the King, with 9 Gates; that the Merchandize from hence is *Arabian* Horses, Velvets, Damasks and Sattins, China, Saffron, and Scarlets; that their Commodities are *Turkey* Jewels, and Pagodies or Gold Ducats; and that the Inhabitants wear Velvet, Sattin, Scarlet, and long Hats of the same, with Breeches like the *Turks*, and large Gold Ear-Rings.

2. *Narjunga*. *Moll* places it on the same River, and at the same Distance from *Bisnagar* as above mentioned, above 150 Miles from the Coast, the *Sansons* but 34. This City was so large, that it gave Name to the Country, and was sometimes the Regal Seat. *Bouffingault* says, it was as big in his Time as *Morence*, well built, situate partly upon the Ascent of a high Mountain, and 3 Leagues in Circuit. There's a stately Palace, cover'd with Tiles, and well proportioned. He says, that the Town is surrounded with a great River on one Side, and the Sea on the other, wherein he differs from all our Maps. He says, 'tis very populous; that the King keeps a numerous Guard here; that no Body can dwell in this City without express Leave from the King; and that none are admitted without the Air of an honest Man, unless they be Merchants or Passengers, who for paying the ordinary Customs have commodious Entertainment. The Inhabitants are very exact Observers of their Laws;

and they are all obliged at the first Notice upon Pain of having their Hands and Feet cut off, to go and serve the King, who, to make his Army the braver, keeps the handsomest young Women he can get, to give them as a Reward to the Valiant and Courageous, which attracts, says he, several great Persons from other Countries. He adds, that there are some of them who, to make themselves the more robust, abstain from Women, and pretend to such an Air of Magnanimity, that they disdain to eat any thing but the Flesh of Lyons, Bears, and Tygers, or to drink any thing but the Blood of Wild-Beasts, and follow the most violent Exercises, such as Wrestling, Hunting, &c.

Tavernier, in his Travels from *Masulipatan* to *Guendicot* thro' this Country, mentions the following remarkable Places; 1. *Bezenart*, a great Town. The adjacent Country is full of Pagods. That belonging to the Town is very large, not clos'd with Walls, but has a flat Roof of Free-stone, supported by 52 Pillars 20 Foot high, adorn'd with several embossed Figures of Devils and other ugly Monsters; some with 4 Horns, others with many Legs and Tails, others lolling out their Tongues, &c. The same Figures are cut out in the Roof, and between the Pillars are the Statues of their Gods upon Pedestals. 'Tis built in the Middle of an oblong Court, encompassed with Walls, adorned within and without by the like Figures, and there's a Gallery round the Wall supported by 66 Pillars. The Entrance is thro' a wide Gate, over which are two Niches one above another, the first supported by 12, and the other by 8 Pillars. At the Bottom of those Niches there are old *Indian* Characters, scarce now to be read. Upon an adjoining Hill there's another Pagod, to which they ascend by 192 Steps, of a Foot high each. The Pagod^{is} is Four-square, with a Cupulo at Top, and the Walls have the like Figures with the Pagod in the City. In the Middle there's an Idol sitting cross-legg'd about 4 Foot high, with a triple Crown, 4 Horns on his Head, and his Face like that of a Man. When the Idolaters approach it, they clasp their Hands together, rear them up to their Foreheads, and cry out, *Ram, Ram*, which in their Language is God. They besmear the

the Idol with Paint and Oil, and offer it Eatables, which maintain 60 Priests with their Families, who take them away by Night, and make the People believe the Idol has eat them. When Pilgrims come hither for Cure, they bring the Figure of the Member affected in Gold, Silver, or Copper, according to their Ability, and offer to the Idol. Before the Gate of this Pagod there's a flat Roof, supported by 16 Pillars, and over against it another supported by 8, which is the Priests Kitchen. On the S. Side there's a large Platform cut in the Mountain, where there's a pleasant Shade of Trees, and several Wells dug in the Ground. The People come to this Pagod for Answers in any difficult Cases from their Idols, which the Priests frame according to their Pleasure from Holes behind 'em, which the ignorant People can't perceive, because their Pagods are always kept dark. *Tavernier* discover'd this by giving some Roupies to a Priest, who suffer'd him to view the Pagod.

2. *Outemeda*, noted for one of the greatest Pagods in *India*: It is built of Free-stone, with three Towers, and such monstrous Figures as those before-mentioned. A little beyond it there's a wide Lake, and many Pagods on its Banks, with the Figures of Devils, attended by Priests, who take Care that none but those of their Sect wash in the Lake, or take any Water out of it. If any Stranger desires Water, they bring it in Earthen Pots, which if they touch the Stranger's Clothes, they immediately break; but they are otherwise very charitable, and give Meat and Drink, such as they have, to all that ask it. There are many devout Women upon the Road to this Place, who, according to their Vows which they make for more or fewer Years, furnish Passengers with Provisions and Tobacco gratis; and there are others who take a Pennance upon themselves, which is to follow the Horses, Cows and Cows, in the Fields, and to eat nothing but what they find indigested in their Dung. They feed their Cattle every Evening with crooked Pease, which are hard of Digestion, and in the Morning with Balls made of Meal, Butter, and brown Sugar, which they thrust down their Throats, and they pull up the Grass and Weeds for them by the Roots, lest they should eat any Earth.

COROMANDEL, or CORMANDEL.

Luyt says, it lies along the Bay of Bengal, betwixt *Golconda* and *Madura*, from Lat. 10. to 15. tho' others extend it much further. The *Sansons* divide it into *Coromandel* and *Tamul*. *Luyt* says, it is so fruitful in Rice, that it had its Name from thence: Yet sometimes for want of Rain, they are so pinch'd with Famine, that the People sell themselves for Food. Their chief Manufacture is fine Callico and Mullins, which they sell to the *Dutch* and other *Europeans* for such Foreign Things as they want. They have many commodious Harbours, which are chiefly in the Hands of *Europeans*. *Thevenot* says, That by *Coromandel*, is commonly understood the Tract of Land between the Capes of *Negapatan* and *Masulipatan*, tho' others extend it from Cape *Comori* to the W. Mouth of the *Ganges*, and so take in the whole E. Coast of the Peninsula. The Small-Pox is very frequent here, and a Distemper call'd *Akeron*, which is very fatal to Children. 'Tis a violent Inflammation of the Tongue and Mouth, seizes the whole inward Parts, and kills the Children if it be not prevented in Time by cooling Herbs. *Bernier* says, the Rains begin and end a Month sooner on this Coast than on that of *Malabar*, come generally from the S. and are more or less plentiful and lasting as they come sooner or later. *Tavernier* says, That the Women in this Country are either burnt with their Husbands when they die, or buried alive with them in Holes, which are filled up with Sand, and the People jump upon them till the Women be stifled. When Patients are at the Point of Death, they lay them behind the fattest Cow they can find, lift up her Tail, and provoke her to piss; and if it falls upon the Patient's Face, they reckon their Souls will be happy; but if otherwise, they burn them with a great deal of Sorrow. When the Cows are sick, they lead them to the Side of a Pond or River; for if they die in the House, the *Brahmens* fine the Owners. *Schouten* says, they make the finest Cotton-Cloth here in the *Indies*, and abundance of Silk of several Sorts. They have Multitudes of Sheep, but without Wool, and a little Hair instead of it. The Country is plain,

plain, and has few Mountains or great Trees. The original Inhabitants are for most Part *Gentiles* and *Moors*: The former are Masters of the S. and the latter of the N. There are likewise many Christians of *St. Thomas*. The Natives are almost all black, and near the Size of the *Europeans*. The *Moors* and *Gentiles* are clad differently: The former wear Turbans or Caps of Stuff with Gold Stripes, a fine Shirt, a Cotton Vest as low as their Knees, with long straight Sleeves that hang down to their Feet. They have very straight Breeches, large Shoes without Heels, and Girdles of green or yellow Silk. Most of the *Gentiles* have a Piece of white Cotton wound three or four times about their Heads. Many of them go naked from the Girdle upwards, and have only a Piece of Cloth round their Body from the Girdle to their Knees, or down to their Feet, when they would pass for People of Gravity. The Fishermen and Peasants have nothing but a Piece of Cloth round their Privities. The Rich wear Gold Ear-Rings, and others have them of Ivory, &c. Most of the Women and Maids have their Bosoms naked, and a sort of an Apron of fine Flower'd-Silk or Cotton-Cloth tied to their Girdle, and hangs as low as their Knees, and some of them to their Heels. Those of Quality wear flower'd Gawse on their Shoulders, Breasts and Arms; but all of them go bare-headed and bare-footed, except a few of Quality, who wear little Slippers. They anoint their Hair with Oil, and tie it behind in Buckles, which hang down in their Neck. The young Women of Note wear Necklaces and Bracelets, and Rings of Gold or Pearl in their Noses and Ears. The *Gentiles* kill no Cows or Serpents, both which they esteem mightily. Their Houses are little, low, and built of Clay. The best of them dawb their Walls and Floors with Plaister of Cow-Dung, which they reckon holy. They have Pagods every where with monstrous Idols; and their Weavers, who make the finest Silks, Callicoes, and Muslins, work in sorry dark Huts like Hogsties, and have their Looms very artfully made of Cane. Not only *European* Goods are in Request here, but all Sorts of Spice and Gold, which they understand very well. *Bouffingault* says, there is an Herb in this Country, whose

small Roots being chew'd so as the Juice gets into one's Teeth, enables People to reduce the hardest Stone to Powder without hurting their Teeth.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Pettipole* or *Pentapoli*, about 37 Miles S. W. from *Masulipatan*, says *Moll*. The *Sansons* make it above 40 S. *Baldens* about 30. The latter says, 'tis not large, and is inhabited by some *Moors* and *Persians* of Note, but mostly by *Gentiles*, subject to the King of *Golconda*. It lies in Lat. 16. a League up the River, which is pretty large, and runs a considerable Way up the Country. There's an Island at a League and a half Distance, made by the N. Branch of the River, cover'd with Coco-Trees. This is an infallible Guide to the Road, where, at a League from the Shore, there is good Anchorage, and 6 Fathom Water. 'Tis the safest Harbour on this Coast during the N. Wind, from which the Ships are secur'd by a Point of Land that runs 3 Leagues into the Sea on the N. of the Island, and encloses the Vessels like a Semi-circle; but during the S. Winds, the Sea is very boisterous here, and the Bar has some Shallows, that are scarce passable but by small Vessels. In the Neighbourhood there grows a Dying Herb, which exceeds all the rest, and makes the Colour call'd *Tambreille*; so that the Painted and Dyed Stuffs of this Place exceed those of *Masulipatan*. The Root grows in an Island over against the City, and makes so deep a Colour, that they are obliged to mix it with others to make it more lively. The Governor of the City has the Monopoly of it, for which he pays a considerable Sum to the King in Dyed Stuffs and Cloths. He employs the Weavers himself, who must not sell the Stuffs without his Consent. They have good Indigo, and the *Dutch* transport from hence Cotton, Yarn, White Stuffs, &c. The *English* and *Dutch* have each a Factory here.

2. *Palicate*, *Paliakate*, or *Pellicat*, or *Geldres* by the *Dutch*, on the same Coast. *Moll* makes it about 140 Miles S. from *Pettipoly*; *Baldens* in Lat. 13 22. 5 Leagues N. from *St. Thomas*. *Nieuhoff* says, the *Dutch East-India* Company took this Place in 1619, and have a strong Fort, with 4 Stone Bastions, call'd *Geldria*, and without the Castle there's a Town, defended on the Land-side by an Earthen

Earthen Wall. The Houses are close and well built, and the Inhabitants are *Dutch* and *Gentiles*. The last trade in Painted and White Callicoes and Linen. The Market is well stor'd with Rice and other Grain, brought from the neighbouring Country. The Fort is wash'd by a River on one Side, where the Merchants in the rainy Season unload their Ships; but it is quite dry in Summer, so that Porters carry the Goods ashore. It abounds with Fish in the Winter, but they all die in Summer; so that the Inhabitants catch what they can before that Time, and dry and transport them. The N. Monsoon begins in October, and holds with such Violence all November and December, that Ships can scarce ride in the Road; but in January the fair Season returns. The *Banians* and *Jews* are the chief Traders here. Several of the Natives and *Dutch* have intermarried. Their Children are call'd *Mestices*, and their Grand Children *Castices*. Every Month the Caravan of *Agra* comes hither. *Baldew* says, the *Dutch* Governor resides in the Fort; that the Road is good, half a League from the Shore, where there is safe Anchorage in 7 or 8 Fathom Water during the S. Monsoon; but it is dangerous during the N. There are several Sand-Banks about this Harbour, which are dangerous. The Soil about this City is very nitrous and sandy. In some neighbouring Villages there dwell Christian Fishermen, who were converted in the Time of the *Portuguese*. *Schouten* says, it is the chief Factory of the *Dutch* on this Coast. *Tavernier* says, the Gold Pagods coin'd here by the *Dutch* are most valu'd at the Diamond Mines. He adds, the Inhabitants dig Holes in the Sand as near the Sea as they can when the Tide is out, and from hence they have their fresh Water which they drink. The *Dutch* refine the Salt-Petre here which they bring from *Bengal*, and make the Gunpowder, with which they furnish their other Factories. They have great Warehouses full of Cotton-Cloth, and pay the Governor of the Fort 100 Crowns a Month for his Salary and Table, besides Wine, Oil, and Clothes. *Marten* says, the Variation of the Compass here is observ'd to be 1 Deg. 15 Min. *Sanfon* and *Luyts*, by Mistake, place Fort Geldria at a considerable Distance from *Paliacate*.

3. *Madraspatan*, or Fort St. George, lies about 12 Miles S. from *Paliacate*, Lat. 13. Long. 99. according to *Moll*. *Baldew* places it in Lat. 13 $\frac{1}{6}$. Long. 108 $\frac{2}{3}$. *Lockyer* places it in Lat. 13 $\frac{1}{2}$. says it is a Port of the greatest Consequence to the *English East-India Company* for its Strength, Wealth, and the great Annual Returns it makes in Callicoes and Muslins. Dr. *Fryar* says, the *English* were possess'd of it by one of the *Gentile* Princes about 100 Years ago, and that it has been ratified by a Patent from *Golconda*, to whose King the Company pays 7000 Pagods, which are 9 s. apiece, per Annum for the Royalties and Customs, by which they gain 4 times the Sum. The Governor has Judges, who have Power to give Sentence of Death on any but the Subjects of Great Britain. He has a Guard of 3 or 400 Blacks, besides a Band of 1500 Men ready on Summons; and when he goes abroad, is always attended with Fiefs, Drums, Trumpets, and a Flag with two Balls in a red Field, accompanied with his Council and Factors on Horseback, and their Ladies in Palanquins. *Lockyer* says, the Governors had formerly Power to put *European* Malefactors to Death; but of late they have only exercis'd it on Pyrates: Yet he has still a Power of sending Prisoners to the Cock-House, where they are only allow'd Rice and Water, which, considering their Confinement, is as certain, tho' not so sudden, a Death as a Halter. The Governor has 200 l. Salary, and 100 more Gratuity. He has 6 Counsellors, of whom the Chief has 100 l. per Ann. others from 70 to 50, and the rest 40 l. per Annum each as Senior Merchants. There are 2 Essay-Masters who have 120 l. per Ann. one Judge 100 l. per Ann. 2 Ministers 100 l. per Ann. each, an Attorney-General 50 Pagods per Ann. the Scavenger 100 Pagods, a Surgeon 36 l. per Ann. 2 Junior Merchants 30 l. per Ann. each, 6 Senior Merchants 40 l. per Ann. each, 5 Factors 15 l. per Ann. each, 10 Writers 5 l. per Ann. each, the Secretary for extraordinary Services 10 Pagods per Annum. Married Men are allowed for their Diet according to their Quality, from 5 to 10 Pagods per Month: But inferior Servants, who dine at the general Table, have only Washing and Oil for Lamps extraordinary. The Garrison consists of about 250 *European* Soldiers, at 1 l. 2 s. 9 d. per Month; 200 Mongrel

Mongrel *Portuguese*, at 50 or 52 Fanams per Month, each Fanam being 3 d. 20 Gunners for the Ordnance, at 100 Fanams per Month each. The Captains have 14 Pagods per Month, Ensigns 10, Serjeants 5, Corporals 100 Fanams; the Chief Gunner of the Inner Fort 14 Pagods per Month, the Gunner of the Out-Works 12, and their Mates in Proportion. There are likewise 200 Peons at constant Pay, who may be augmented to what Number the Company pleases. The *Portuguese*, who retir'd hither for Sanctuary after the *Moors* drove them from *St. Thomas*, are obliged to raise a Company or two of Train'd-Bands at their own Charge on Occasion. The Governor keeps a generous Table, and Plenty of Wine. That for the Factors and Writers is also very well furnish'd. They have Punch enough, but little Wine, for that Liquor and Beer are at high Rates; so that Punch is the common Drink of the *Europeans*, and that they have in Perfection. The Place lies in a sandy Plain, so near the Sea, that the Waves do sometimes endanger its Walls. The Citadel or Inner Fort lies in the Middle of the *English* Town, is defended by 4 large Bastions, on which and the Curtains there are planted 56 Guns and a Mortar. The N. and S. Points are 108 Yards from one another, and the E. and W. 100. There are two Gates belonging to the Fort, the W. or Main Guard, kept by 30 Soldiers, and the E. by 6 and a Corporal. The Keys are deliver'd every Night to the Governor, and in his Absence to the Chief of the Council, who sleeps there. The Walls both of the Town and Forts are of a hard Stone, in Colour like rusty Iron. In the outer Fort there are Batteries, Half-Moons, and Flankers, at proper Distances, planted with 150 Guns and 3 Mortars, besides 32 Guns and 8 Field-Pieces on the Out-Works. The Black City, call'd *Madrafs*, and by the *Moors* *Chinnapatam*, joins it on the N. as *Maqua*, where the Boatmen live, does to the S. The Prospect is very delightful by Sea, and magnificent by Land, because of the fine Buildings which overlook the Walls. On the Land-side it is wash'd by a River, which at half a Mile Distance falls into the Sea; but before the wet Season the Bar is cut, to make its Passage more large, otherwise it would overflow the adjacent Country. It

runs thus with a great Stream two Months in the Year; after which the Bar closes of its self, and forms a Peninsula 3 Miles round, which feeds a great many Sheep and Hogs, and some Cows; but the Soil is so poor, notwithstanding the Charge the Company has been at to improve it, that the Cattle would starve had they no other Meat. The Streets are straight, wide, and pav'd on each Side with Brick; but the Middle is only Sand, for the Passage of Carts, &c. Where there are no Houses, there are Causeways on each Side, planted with Trees, which being always green, are very pleasant, and afford a good Shade from the Heat of the Sun. The Town has five Gates, two of which are open'd any Time of the Night for unsuspected Passengers; but the other three never after 6 a Clock. The Black City is encompassed with a thick high Brick Wall, fortified with Points and Bastions in the modern Way; and there are several Towns 3 Miles in the Country which belong to the Company, who farm them at near 1300 Pagods *p. r. Annum*. The Publick Buildings of Note are, 1. The Governor's Lodgings in the inner Fort, of which they take up two Thirds. They are 3 Stories high, and have many commodious Apartments for several of the Council, the Accomptants, Secretaries, and inferior Servants. In the 2d Story there's a Consultation Room, adorn'd with Fire-Arms in several Figures, as in the Tower of *London*. The Governor seldom goes abroad with less than 60 or 80 arm'd Peons, besides his *English* Guards, with two Union Flags carried before him, and loud Country Musick. He is likewise attended by two Men with Fans to cool him, and drive away the Flies; so that he is as much respected by the *Raja's* of the Country as any of their own Number. 2. *St. Mary's* Church, a large arch'd Pile, adorn'd with fine carv'd Work, a stately Altar, Organs, a white Copper Candlestick, and very large Windows; but they have only one Bell. The Church has a considerable Stock of Orphans Money, and Legacies left by pious People for the Maintenance of the Poor. When the Governor comes to Church, he is guarded by 200 Soldiers, drawn up in a Line from the inner Fort to the Church-Door. The Lord's-Day is well observ'd here, and the

Country Protestants are catechiz'd every Sunday, and the Worship is according to the Church of *England*. They have a Library here with Books of Divinity, valued at near 500 *l.* and a Free-School under it, where Children are taught to read and write. 3. The College, which was an old Hospital, and now the Residence of 7 or 8 young Gentlemen, under an Overseer appointed by the Governor. 'Tis an ancient Building, two Stories high, with a pav'd Court, two large Piazza's, and about 16 small Rooms, where the Collegiates live merrily and at Ease. There are two or three Peons to attend at the Gate, and another to clean the House. Those who enjoy this Privilege, are recommended by the Company in *England*. 4. *New-House*, which is a Lodging for the Soldiers, and the Scene of their drunken Frolicks. It fronts the main Guard, has a strong Battery on the other Side against the River, and a Company sleeps in it at a time, who send out a Corporal and two Soldiers every Hour in the Night to prevent Disorders, and take up suspected Persons. Every one of these Soldiers is allow'd a Boy about 10 Years old, with 7 or 8 *Fannams* per Month. The Marshal punishes such as offend by whipping them with Rattans, tying them Neck and Heels, or running the Gauntlet. 5. The Hospital, joins to the *New-House*, is a long Building, with a pav'd Court and a Piazza, furnish'd with an Apothecary's Shop for the Use of Patients, who have Apartments and Provisions here. If they be Soldiers, the Hospital receives their Pay; but Sailors bear the Charge of their own Physick, and allow 1 *s.* a Day for Provisions. Lastly, There's a Town-House and a Chappel, where the *Portuguese* say Mass. Dr. *Fryar* says, the Houses in general are neat, and terrass'd at Top with Battlements; but they are not very high, because 'tis a Garrison'd Town. They have *Italian* Portico's, and Rows of Trees before their Doors. He adds, that the Fort has 4 Turrets mounted with Guns, and on the S. E. Point is fix'd the Standard. The Governor's House overlooks all the rest, and flants diagonally with the Court. From the outer Gate towards the Sea, there's a Path of broad polish'd Stones thro' the second Guard, and there's a stately Gate which fronts the High street. In the Black Town the Pa-

gans have some Courts of Justice, an Exchange, and a Pagod with many Chappels for every Tribe. 'Tis a durable Structure, but very dark, having no Light but from Lamps. The biggest of those Chappels is arch'd, and continually shut, because the Riches of the Deceased are buried here, by the Advice of a Priest, to serve them as a *Viaticum*. The lesser Chappels are supported by straight round Pillars, and have obscene Pictures in Sculpture upon the Walls; and on the Outside there are monstrous Images. These Chappels stink abominably, by the Oil with which they besmear the Images and fill their Lamps. Without the Town are the *English* Sepulchres, drawn up in Lines, and formed, according to the Custom of the Country, with Variety of Fancies, which make a very good Shew, the Names and Epitaphs of the Persons being engrav'd upon them. The Figure of this Black Town is a *Trapezium*, a sort of Triangle. Without the Town there grows abundance of Rice, and the *English* have their Kitchen and Flower Gardens. The Company has a very pleasant one at St. *Thomas's* Mount, which has been much improv'd of late with costly Gates, spacious Walks, a lovely Bowling Green, a Teal Pond, and other Curiosities. They have also Lemons and Grapes here, but they don't ripen well. The Powder us'd by the Garrison is made in an Island about a Gunshot from the Town, but not so good as the *English* Gunpowder, because they don't make it well, tho' they have the best Ingredients for it. *Lockyer* complains also, that the Company takes no Care to provide the Town with Mechanicks and Shops after the *European* Fashion, tho' the *Dutch* in their Factories shew them a better Example. He complains likewise of their sending Dwarfish Recruits from *England*, to the great Dishonour of the Nation. Provisions are much cheaper than in *Europe*, so that 3 Teal and 20 green Plovers are bought for 3 *d.* The chief Revenues of the Company arise from Customs outward and inward, Anchorage Duty, Coinage, &c. which altogether are very considerable. The Government of the Town is by a Mayor and Aldermen, as in *England*. Quarrels, small Debts, and other Business of less Importance, are decided by 6 Aldermen, who meet twice a Week in the

the Town-Hall. To them the Black Merchants do commonly apply themselves; but the *Europeans* court the Governor's Favour. There lies an Appeal from the Mayor's Court to one that is higher, where a Judge allow'd by the Company determines finally, on the Report of a Jury; but most of their Lawyers are only broken Tradesmen. There are 5 other Justices, who are Members of the Council or chief Citizens, who meet twice a Week to decide Controversies, to punish Criminal *Indians* and Frauds, make People pay their Debts, and register Slaves and Servants. Most of the current Money is coin'd by the Company, who have great Allowance for it by the Owners. The chief Piece is the Gold Pagod of 9 s. Value. For the rest, we refer to Mr. Lockyer. The Orders of the Council of *Madras* are more regarded than those of the other *English* Factories in the *Indies*. They are summoned at the Governor's Pleasure, and examine, pass and sign, all Orders, General Letters, and Monthly Accounts; or it's done by their Secretary in their Names. Lockyer says, he has been credibly inform'd, that there are no fewer than 300000 People within the Company's Jurisdiction. The subordinate Factories are, *Acheen*, *Tonquin*, *Pettipole*, and *Connimer*, on the Coast of *Coromandel*; at all which they have Houses, and large Privileges, but no Servants. *Fort St. David* to the S. brings them great Profit by its Rents and Incomes, and likewise from the great Quantities of Callicoes and Muslins that are brought thence for *Europe*, *Mechlapatan*, *Vizagapatan*, and *Madapollam*. Betwixt them are Factories continued for the Sake of Red Wood and Cotton Manufactures. They trade from *Madraspatan* to all Parts E. of the *Cape of Good Hope*; but of late, says Lockyer, the greatest Ships trade to *Mecca*, *Persia*, and *Surat*, with *Bengal* and *China* Commodities, and touch by the Way at several Ports of *Malabar* for Pepper, Cocoa-Nuts, Coyr, and several Drugs, which are the Product of that Coast. As there are Partners in almost every Ship and Stock, both Vessel and Cargo are sold at her Return from a Voyage either by Outcry or Auction at the Sea-Gate, where a Note is generally put up a Week before-hand of the Sorts, Quantities, and Time of Sale. They commonly allow a Month's Credit to

Notes, tho' they be on Demand, never give a Receipt, and only sign the Account, which they take as a sufficient Discharge. Merchants that are unacquainted with the Place have their Goods dispos'd of by the Inhabitants at one, and sometimes two *per Cent.* for Trouble. They allow 5 *per Cent.* to *Supra-Cargoes*, and the Women drive as great a Trade as the Men; and have Invoices, Price-Courants, &c. tho' their Husbands are in Being. They lend Money at *Bottomree* at the following Rates, *v.z.* To *China* and *Pegu* at 20 or 25 *per Cent.* to *China* and *Persia* at 40 or 45 *per Cent.* to *Bengal* and *Acheen* at 16 or 18 *per Cent.* to *Batavia*, *Surat*, and *Persia*, at 35 and 40 *per Cent.* to *Manilla* and *Mecca* at 30 and 35 *per Cent.* to *Surat* at 25 and 30 *per Cent.* Land Interest is settled by Order of Council at 10 *per Cent. per Annum*, and Money may be had of the Church at 8 or 9 *per Cent.* The Company divert themselves by Riding, Shooting, or Coursing, and at the Punch-Houses with Billiards or Backgammon. The Inhabitants are healthy, and of ruddy Complexions, notwithstanding the excessive Heats of the Summer; but they do not rage above 4 or 5 Hours a Day before they are cool'd by the Sea-Breezes. In these Heats the Governor retires to the Company's new Garden. Lockyer says, the *European* Goods that turn to best Account here are Lead, Wine, Beer, Ale, Cyder, Cheese, Cloth Hats, fine Ribands, Gold and Silver Lace, Thread and Worsted Hose, Flint Ware, Looking Glasses, Light-colour'd Wigs, Stuffs for Coats and Trimming, Cases of Spirits, Cherry-Brandy, Case-Knives, Tin Ware, Tobacco-Pipes, and all Sorts of Haberdashery. Bullion is either coin'd into Roupies, or else bought up for the *China* Market, where Pillar-Dollars are most in Request; and there are Brokers, who for a small Allowance examine and weigh it impartially. Returns are made to *Europe* in the Produce of all Parts of *India*. Cotton Cloths and Muslins are cheaper here than at *Surat*, but dearer than at *Bengal*. Dr. Fryar says, their Firing is Cow-Dung, which is brought to the *English* by Way of Toll from the Country Pagans, a Prerogative, says he, which the *Dutch* on this Coast could never yet obtain. He adds, that the Idolaters by that Means get great Estates, without being molested,

as those who are under the tyrannical Jurisdiction of the *Moors*; and that no less than 30000 of these Pagans are employ'd in the Monopoly of Cow-Dung.

4. *St. Thomas*, or *Meliapour*. *Moll* places it about 13 Miles from *Sadraspattam* to the S. and 10 from *Fort St. George* to the N. The *Sansons* make it 20 Miles from the former, and 30 S. of *Paliacate*; but *Baldus*, who seems to agree best with our Travellers, places it only 2 Leagues from *Fort St. George*. He says, it belong'd to the *Portuguese*; but the *Moors* took it about 1661. The City is ancient, inhabited by Weavers and Dyers, and noted for making the best colour'd Stuffs in *India*, which they transport to *Malacca*, *Java*, the *Molucca* Islands, *Siam*, *Pegu*, &c. The Excellency and Durableness of the Dye is attributed to the peculiar Quality of the Water, which arises out of Springs in white sandy Ground without Clay. Some think *Meliapour* to be *Ptolemy's Mapoura*. It was quite desolate at the coming of the *Portuguese*, who rebuilt it in 1545; after which, says *Nieuhoff*, it increas'd to that degree in stately Buildings and rich Inhabitants, that in a few Years it was one of the finest Cities in the *Indies*. 'Tis fortified with a Stone Wall and several Bastions, and has above 300 Towns and Villages under its Jurisdiction. When it was in the Hands of the *Portuguese*, it was first subject to the See of *Cochin*, and afterwards made a Bishoprick under the Archbishop of *Goa*. They had several Churches, where the *Mahometans* and Pagans were instructed and baptized, besides divers others, with two Monasteries, and a College of Jesuits here, where the *Portuguese* and *Malabar* Children were instructed. Next to the College was a very large Parish, inhabited by Converts. There is also the famous Church of *St. Thomas* the Apostle; who the *Portuguese* say was buried here, and pretend to shew his Sepulchre on the Top of a neighbouring Mountain, over which they have built a small Chappel, that is seen off at Sea. Near the College, upon a pretty high Hill, there's another Chappel, which they pretend was the Apostle's Dormitory, and they have adorned that Part where he us'd to say his Prayers with gilt Iron Steps. They likewise shew a Stone Cross, which they pretend fell from Heaven in that Apostle's

Time, and have cover'd it with an Arch. The Wood of this Chappel is look'd on as a precious Relick, so that Pilgrims frequently carry away little Bits of it, and set them in Gold. *Dr. Fryar* says, That in the last War between *England* and *Holland*, the *French* came before this Place with 10 Sail, took it from the *Moors*, and fortified it; but in less than 4 Years after, the *Dutch* of *Batavia*, to revenge the Insults of the *French*, came against it with 15 great Men of War, well manned, some of them carrying 72 Brass Guns apiece; but the *French* defended themselves so well, notwithstanding they were besieged on the Land-side at the same Time by the *Moors*, that the *Dutch* thought fit to steer for *Paliacate*, where they landed 700 Men to join the *Moors*, and at last took and demolished it. The Town has 7 Gates, is encompassed with the Sea on one Side, and a Chain of Hills on the other. On the Mount of *St. Thomas's* Sepulchre there's a Tree call'd *Arbor Tristis*, which withers in the Day, and blossoms in the Night; and a particular Tribe of People live here, who have one of their Legs as big as that of an Elephant, which some reckon a Judgment on them as the Posterity of the Murtherers of *St. Thomas*. It was inhabited in the Doctor's Time by the *French*, *Moors*, and *Dutch*. *Mandelsloe* says, That as soon as the *Portuguese* had taken Possession of *Cochin* and *Cranganor* on the Coast of *Malabar*, the Inhabitants of *Coromandel*, who were Greek Christians, desired the King of *Portugal's* Protection, to back a Tradition they had. *Maffeus* says, That by Order of the King of *Portugal*, the Bones of this Saint were searched for, and found on this Coast, from whence they were transferred to *Goa*, where a fine Church was erected to his Memory: But *Ruffinus* and *Secrates* both affirm, that *St. Thomas* was martyr'd at *Edessa* in *Mesopotamia*, and that Pilgrimages us'd to be perform'd to his Tomb there. *Mandelsloe* adds, that most of the Houses of this Town are of Stone, and that in his Time there were about 6 or 700 Inhabitants, *Portuguese*, *Mestices*, and *Armenian* Merchants. But we must observe, that he distinguishes *St. Thomas* from *Meliapour*, which he places near a Brook two Leagues to the N. makes it the Residence of the *Indians* and *Mahometans*, and says, 'twas formerly the Capital of the Kingdom, but since reduced. The Road

Road is very safe from *April* to *September*, while the S. and S. W. Winds blow; but in the other Season, small Vessels are obliged to shelter in the River of *Paliacate*, and the greater in the Harbour of *Negapatan*. The Idolaters here, after they had spent a Year in Carnal Pleasures, us'd to cut off Pieces of their Flesh, and shoot them up into the Air, and when they were at the Point of Death cut their Throats, and so surrender'd their Bodies as a Victim to the Pagod. When they made a Vow to the Idol to obtain Health, or any thing else, they were drawn up with Hooks fasten'd to their Shoulders to the Top of a high Tree with a Cross-Bar, where having saluted the Pagod three times, they were let down, and marked the Tree with their Blood in Reverence to the Idol. They us'd to celebrate a Nocturnal Feast in a Street full of Light, where 3 or 4 us'd to take one another by the Hands, and having Baskets full of Rice and Milk, threw the Meat behind them, saying, *The Devil eat it*, and durst never look back, because they believ'd they should die on the Spot. *Herbert* says, this Town was first call'd *Salamina*, then *Melange*, after that *Meliapore*, and the Town of *St. Thomas*; in Memory of whom, all the native Christians of *India* observe the first of *July*. *Bouffingault* says, That all Ships, whether of Christians, Idolaters, or *Mahometans*, which arrive in this Port, leave Alms in Honour of this Saint.

5. *Sadraspatan*, *Satrispatnam*, *Sadraspatnam*, or *Saderpatan*, a Dutch Factory. *Moll* places it Lat. 12 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 99. 30 Miles S. of *Fort St. George*, and about 27 from *Meliapour*. *Baldens* agrees with *Moll*'s Lat. but makes the Long. 108. 10. *Schouten* says, the Town is small, but populous, the Streets large, the Houses very light, built of Clay, Cow-Dung, and Reeds, and cover'd with Leaves of Cocoa's. There are many Pagods in the Town and Neighbourhood.

6. *Tegepatnam*, *Tegnapatan*, and *Tirepolier* or *Tirepopliere*, another Dutch Factory. *Luyts* places it Lat. 11. 45. *Nieuhoff* Long. 107. 55. *Baldens* 33 Leagues S. of *Paleacate*, and 28 from *Fort St. George*. He says, that the Dutch House is at *Tegnapatan*, within half a League of *Tirepolier*, which he places on a navigable River, the Road having 77 Fathom Water, with a grey sandy Ground fit

for Anchorage not above a Mile from the Shore. There's a pretty strong Castle, in which is the Dutch Factory, and a stately large Pagod, with a high Stone Tower flat at Top, which is a Guide to Mariners. The Ruins of the old Fort, which belong'd to the *Portuguese*, are upon an Ascent near the Shore, on the N. Side of the River, and are seen a good Way at Sea. The adjacent Country is sandy and rocky. *Baldens* adds, that *Tirepolier* is under the Jurisdiction of the Sovereign of *Gingi* or *Chengier*. *Schouten* says, the Dutch Fort here is large, and incloses several high Buildings, Towers, and Pagods, all built of Stone; and that *Tegepatnam* is chiefly inhabited by the Idolaters and Moors, who drive a great Trade.

7. *Carcal*, or *Karkalla*, another Dutch Factory. *Baldens* places it almost 17 Leagues S. of the last. *Schouten* says, there was a good Trade here formerly, till it was removed by the Dutch to *Negapatan*.

8. *Pondicheri*, or *Ponticheri*, on the same Coast. *Moll* places it about 30 Miles S. from *Satrispatnam*. 'Tis a French Settlement, which the Dutch were obliged to restore to them by the Treaty of *Ryswick*; but we have no Description of it.

The Principality of GINGI, or GINGIS,

Is bounded with *Bisnagar* on the N. the Mountains of *Ballagate* on the W. which part it from *Malabar* and *Canara*; the Sea on the E. and the Principality of *Tanjowar* on the S. The *Sansons* extend it 160 Miles from E. to W. and 80 where broadest. This Country, as we have formerly mention'd, is tributary to the King of *Bisnagar*, but govern'd by a *Naique* or Chief Captain, who, says *Luyts*, is a rich Prince. *Bouffingault* says, he shew'd the Jesuits a great deal of his Plate, &c. particularly a Gold Chalice, several small Silver Beds, great Vessels both of Gold and Silver, and two small ones of entire Gold. *Baldens* says, he also obliged the Dutch Deputies with a Sight of his costly Apparel, Silver, Gold, and Jewels, together with his Wives, Concubines, and Military Forces. His Country abounds in Rice, Salt, Fruits, and other Eatables; but the Inhabitants are so numerous, that they are supplied with Provisions from abroad. The chief Commodities they export are

Linen

Linen and Woollen Stuffs, which are much in Request at the *Molucca's*, *Ambogna*, *Banda*, &c. The Commodities imported are Nutmegs, Mace, Pepper, Sandal Wood, *Chinese* Silks, Velvets, Sattins, embroider'd and wrought Carpets, Raw Silks, *Patana* Girdles, Musk, Ginger, Quicksilver, Brass, Tin, Lead, Copper, &c.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Gingis*, *Gingi*, or *Chengier*. The *Sansons* place it Long. $119\frac{3}{4}$. Lat. 11.50 . and about 62 Miles from the Sea. *Bouffingault* says, 'tis reckon'd one of the largest Cities in the *Indies*. *Baldeus* makes it very populous, and three times as big as *Rotterdam*. It lies in a pleasant Valley, near a delightful River on the S. 'Tis fortified with double Stone Walls of a good Height, and with a Ditch full of Water, encompassed with 4 high Rocks, on 3 of which are built as many strong Castles, and on the 4th a Pagod. The first Rock is inclos'd with a very strong Wall, the 2d with four, and the 3d with no less than 7 Walls, with as many Stone Gates, and defended by a good Number of Soldiers. The Ascents to the Forts are cut out of the Rocks, and are almost inaccessible, because steep and narrow. On the Top of the Rocks there are delicious Gardens, Springs and Ponds of fresh Water. There is also another Fortress upon an inaccessible Rock without the City, which commands the Avenues. The Governor's Palace, which is well situate and fortified, stands betwixt two of the Rocks. They have scarce any Cannon, but such as are made of long and broad Iron Bars, join'd together with Iron Hoops. Their Bullets are of Stone. *Bouffingault* says, there are several Churches in the Town and Citadel, and that the Governor has two Palaces with stately Towers, Base-Courts, Galleries, and Arches made of Sandal Wood, which yield a grateful Smell.

2. *Cidambaran*, about 46 Miles N. W. of *Gingi*, noted for so many stately Pagods, &c. that 'tis call'd the Mother-City of Superstition.

The Principality of *TANJOWAR*, or *TANJAOR*,

Is bounded with the Mountains of *Gate*, which part it from *Malabar* on the W. with the Sea on the E. *Gingi* on the N. and

the Fishing-Coast and *Madura* on the S. The *Sansons* extend it 139 Miles from E. to W. and about 73 Miles along the Coast. *Luyts* says, the Governor resides in the Capital of the same Name, which the *Sansons* place Long. 120.10 . Lat. 11 . on a River which runs into the Sea, 45 Miles to the S. E. but we have no other Account of it.

The chief Towns on the Coast are, 1. *Fort St. David*. *Moll* places it about 13 Miles S. from *Pondicheri*, on the same Coast. It belongs to the *English*, and *Lockyer* says is a Port of great Profit, as well for the Rents and Incomes that arise immediately from it, as the great Quantities of Callicoes and Muslins that are brought thence for *Europe*. 2. *Tranguabar*, *Tranguabar*, or *Trankebar*. The *Sansons* place it Long. 120.48 . Lat. 11 . *Moll* Long. $98\frac{2}{3}$. Lat. $11\frac{1}{2}$. about 23 Miles N. of *Negapatan*. *Baldeus* makes it but three Leagues from *Carcal*. He says, the *Danes* have a Fort here with 4 Bulwarks, defended by a Garrison of Topasses and Negroes. The Inhabitants are chiefly *Portuguese*, *Pagans*, and *Mahometans*. Their Traffick is little, so that they live for most Part by Excursions upon the neighbouring *Mahometans*, with whom they are at constant Variance. He adds, that the *Danes* have as good or better Opportunities than the *English* for Trade in the *Indies*, and therefore admires why they don't study more to encourage it. *Schouten* says, it yields a pleasant Prospect from the Sea. The *Danish* Missionaries say, 'tis about 36 German M. from *Fort St. George*; and that next to *Batavia*, 'tis one of the largest Towns in the *Indies*. These Missionaries have planted a Congregation there, which increases daily, notwithstanding the great Opposition they met with. They have likewise a *Malabarick* School there for instructing the Pagan Children, and have translated the Bible, &c. into that Language. They found the *Bramens* very kind and attentive to the Christian Doctrine.

3. *Negapatan*, or *Negapatnam*, in the *Malabar* Tongue signifies a City of Serpents, because the adjacent Country abounds with them. *Moll* places it about 15 Miles S. from *Tranguabar*, Lat. $10\frac{3}{4}$. Long. 99 . near the Mouth of a River which falls into the Bay of *Bengal*. *Nieuhoff* places it Lat. 9.45 . 3 Leagues from *Tranguabar*. It was built by the *Portuguese*, who erected several fine Churches

Churches and a Monastery in it, besides other large Structures, with spacious Galleries and Apartments, and a Jesuits College. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis pretty well fortified with Towers, and a good Moat; that it is populous for its Bigness, and the Inhabitants tawny, being descended from the *Portuguese* and the Natives. The chief Traders were the *Banians* and *Mahometans*. It was taken by the *Dutch* in July 1658, when the *Portuguese* surrender'd on Terms, for which we refer to *Nieuhoff*. The *Dutch* found in it 28 Brass and 53 Iron Guns, with Ammunition in Proportion. One of the Pagan Princes endeavour'd to surprise the Town by an Ambush much about that Time, and attack'd it twice afterwards, but was repulsed with Loss. The adjacent Country abounds with Rice, and the Natives think it an unexpiable Crime to kill a Serpent. *Nieuhoff* adds, that there are abundance of lewd Men and Women in the Neighbourhood; and that there's a noted Pagod with an extraordinary high Steeple near the Town, which the Idolaters say was built by the Devil in one Night. In the Suburbs there are many Pagan Temples with monstrous Idols. *Baldew* says, the Harbour is not convenient; that the Land Winds are excessive hot and stifling, and the Sea Winds very refreshing here. While the Land Wind blows they gather Water in Stone Pots, which keeps very cool. The *Dutch* have planted Christianity in many of the neighbouring Villages. The King of *Visapour* about 1660 did destroy the adjacent Country, so that many Thousands of the Inhabitants sold themselves to the *Dutch* for Bread, and 10 s. a Man. *Theravenot* says, it was afterwards retaken by the *Portuguese*, but recover'd by the *Dutch* and the Natives in 1662. *Schouren* says, the Women here wear only a thin Stuff like Gawse over their upper Parts, and white Silk or some other Stuff wrapped 3 or 4 times about their Haunches. They go all bare-headed, with their Hair ty'd up in Buckles, wear Slippers with high Heels, and are extream jealous of their Husbands. *Marten* and *Floris* correct some Mistakes that are common in the Maps as to the Situation of some remarkable Places hereabouts, and particularly that *Negapatan* is 28 Leagues distant from the Situation commonly given it, which has occasion'd dangerous Blun-

ders in the *Dutch* Sailors, as well as ours. *Luyts* makes this the most Southern Port of *Coromandel*.

MADURA, or the FISHING COAST,

Is the most S. Part on the E. Side of the Peninsula, and reaches from *Tanjaor* to *Cape Comori*, having *Malabar* on the W. and the Streights of *Manar* or *Chilao* betwixt the Peninsula and the Isle of *Ceylon* on the E. The *Sanfons* make this Country 180 Miles from S. to N. but the Breadth is very unequal, because it is cut by Bays, and much contracted towards the S. *Nieuhoff* says, this Country belongs to the *Dutch East India Company*; that the Inhabitants under their Jurisdiction liv'd in 7 large Villages along the Coast, and were about 33000, besides a great Number that dwelt on the Coast of *Comorin*; and that these Villages were adorned with stately Churches, built by the *Portuguese*, whose Priests do now and then say Mass there to great Numbers of People, tho' they be more Pagans than Christians. The *Sanfons* say, this is called the *Fishing Coast*, because of the great Pearl Fishery there; and that the People are subject to the *Naique* or Prince of *Madura*. The Pearl Fishing begins about the End of *March* or *April*, and lasts only 3 Weeks, when above 60000 People are employ'd in the Fishery, and in guarding the Vessels, and they sell their Pearls in *July*, *August*, and *September*. The Inhabitants get most of their Livelihood by it; for the Country, according to the *Sanfons*, is neither fruitful nor pleasant, but very much parch'd. They make it above 75 Leagues in Length, and say, it contains 25 Towns. A People call'd *Parwas* are mix'd with the Inhabitants, live in a sort of Republick, and are the chief Pearl Fishers. They are dextrous at hunting of Tygers, and arm their Left Hand with a sort of Gauntlet, which they hold out to the Tygers; and while they snatch at it, stab them in the Belly with a Dagger, that they hold in their Right Hand.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Madura*. Most places it Lat 10. Long 96. much about the Middle of the Peninsula. The *Sanfons* say, 'tis the Residence of the Prince, and a fine City. 'Tis thought to be *Ptolomy's Madura*, and lies at the Foot of Mountains, according

ding to *Luyts*. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis adorned with many magnificent Temples, with high Turrets gilt on the Top; and that the *Naique* or Prince who resides here had Wars with the *Portuguese*, who first appeared on these Coasts with a Fleet in 1490, being invited thither by the *Parvas*, with whom they traded 40 Years before. The Occasion why the *Parvas* revolted from the *Moors* was, because they had cut off the Nose and Ears of one of their Countrymen. The *Parvas* treated a *Moorish* Merchant in the same Manner; upon which 30000 *Moors* marched against the *Parvas*, who, tho' not above 5000 in Number, routed the *Moors*, killed 7000 of them, and forced the rest to Sea, where they perish'd in a Tempest. Upon this, the *Parvas* became Masters of the Sea-Ports, and promis'd to pay the same Taxes to the Queen which the *Moors* had done before them: But not being able to perform it, they were terribly oppress'd; upon which they begged the Protection of the *Portuguese*, and promis'd to submit to them and turn Christians. In 1533, the *Portuguese* came with a Fleet from *Cochin*, made themselves Masters of the Sea-Ports, and the *Parvas* were all baptiz'd in one Day. The *Portuguese* met with great Opposition afterwards from the Inhabitants of *Coromandel* and *Malabar*, who were secretly encourag'd by the *Parvas*. At last it was agreed, that the *Portuguese* should continue Masters of the Coast, and that the *Parvas* should pay them an Annual Tribute for Leave to fish for Pearl. But the *Naique* of *Madura* over-run the Country, yet left the *Portuguese* a Power over the *Parvas*, and allow'd them the Freedom of their Religion; and thus Matters continu'd till 1630, when the King of *Portugal* sent a Governor to clip the Wings of the *Romish* Clergy, who were become too powerful there. This occasion'd new Troubles; for the *Parvas* being great Bigots, adher'd to the Priests, which begot two Factions among them; and while the Priests minded nothing but to enrich themselves at the Expence of their Flocks, the Pagans increas'd, and forced the *Parvas* to shelter themselves in the neighbouring Islands; since which, the *Parvas* have entirely submitted to the *Portuguese* Governor, who assigns each Village two Judges, that are chang'd once a Year.

They keep Courts twice a Week, and with some Hereditary Officers determine Matters of lesser Moment. They raise Taxes, and are accountable once a Year to all the People for their Transactions. While the *Portuguese* were Masters here, the Pagans durst exact no more Tribute than what was agreed on, because then the *Parvas* us'd to retire with their Families to the Islands, from whence they would not return till Justice was done them; but having left off that Custom, the Pagans improve it, and exact upon them.

Nieuhoff says of the Country in general, That it bears no Herbs nor Plants, but Thistles or Houseleek; yet they have all manner of necessary Provisions from the neighbouring Countries, and from their own Coasts, which abound with Rabbits and Partridges. The former tast like our Hares, and the Partridges have round Bills, red Legs, and are good Meat. They are infested with large Mice as big as Cats, for whom they are an Over-match. In Colour and Shape they are like ours, but have no Hair, and rough Skins like Elephants. They dig under the Doors, and do a great deal of Mischief to the Goods and Warehouses. They have also red Mice of a lesser Size, but so fierce, that they make the Cats run. They have likewise many Serpents, and other venomous Creatures. In *October*, *November*, and *December*, the W. Winds blow the Sand with such Violence from the Mountains, that there's no holding up one's Eyes, and many times the Natives are overwhelmed with those Sands when abroad in the Fields. At this Season the Winds are as hot as if they were blown from a Furnace. Within Land they have sometimes a great deal of Rain, and likewise near *Cape Comorin*, but never at *Tutuorin*, where a very cold Dew falls every Night, and by the sudden Alteration of the Weather makes the Place very unwholesome. The *Naique* of *Madura* has several other considerable Countries, rul'd by their peculiar Governors. To secure their Obedience, he detains their Wives and Children in a strong Castle, under a Guard of Eunuchs, where they are not permitted to see them without the King's Licence, nor to stay with them above two or three Days at a time; so that some of them, to avoid this Depen-

Dependance, content themselves with Harlots. The Inhabitants of this Country are good Soldiers, but inferior to the *Malabars*. They are black and strong, deceitful and cunning, make little Account of their Wives, and generally keep Harlots, by whom they have many Children. The Men wear nothing but a single Piece of Callico round their Middle, and another about their Head. The ordinary Women wear painted Callico, and those of Fashion have Gold Rings and Bracelets when abroad, but are very nasty at home. Their ordinary Food is Meat and Rice; their Drink nothing but Water, which they are forced to bring half a Leag. from within Land. They have abundance that weave Linen and Callico, and great Numbers are employ'd in painting it, which they do very artfully. They are now govern'd by Judges of their own, of whom they name four, and two of them are chosen by the Governor of the *Dutch* Factory at *Tutucorin*, whom they call the Captain of the Sea-Ports. They determine all Civil Causes in their respective Villages, but Criminal Matters are decided by the *Dutch* Governor and the Council of 9 at *Tutucorin*. Such of the *Portuguese* as are left pay no Taxes to the *Dutch*, but to the Naique of *Madura*, with the Approbation of the *Dutch* Governor, who adjusts their Shares according to their Ability; and if they fail, the Naique levies it by Military Execution; but if the People be not able, the *Dutch* interpose for them by Presents to the Naique. He is frequently at War with the Naiques of *Tanjaor* and *Gingi*, and sometimes applies to the *Dutch* for Help; but they are cautious how they grant it, because they would keep fair with all of them.

The Pearl Banks lie betwixt the Coast and the Isle of *Ceylon*. They are properly Rocks of white Coral-Stone, sometimes cover'd with Sand. On these Rocks the Pearl-Oysters fasten. These Banks are at 12, 13, and 15 Fathoms, from the Shore, and from 5 to 7 Fathom under Water. The Oysters live 6 Years, after which the Shells open, and the Pearls are lost. The Banks are search'd every Year, to see whether the Shells be come to Maturity. This is commonly in *October*, when the Weather is calm, and the Sea clear in this Country. If the Oysters be ripe, 'tis notified by Pro-

clamation, and the Merchants set up their Tents near the Shore. The Fisher-Boats are 28 Foot long, with 7 or 8 Stones instead of Anchors, and from 5 to 8 Divers, that follow one another, cover'd with a thin Waistcoat, a Net hanging down from their Necks, and Gloves in their Hands, with which they pick the Oysters from the Rocks. Each of them has a Stone of a Foot long, and 50 Pound Weight, to make them dive the swifter. The Stone is fasten'd to a Rope, which is held by one in the Boat; and as soon as the Divers come to the Bottom, they pull the Rope for a Signal to those in the Boat to draw up the Stone; and when the Divers have filled their Net, they pull the Rope again, by which the Net is first drawn up, and then themselves, who are succeeded by fresh ones. When the Divers go down, they stop their Nose with the Right Hand to hold in their Breath, which they can do four times as long as other People. They are obliged to dive from 3 to 15 Fathom deep. The Boats go to Sea every Morning by Break of Day, sometimes 3 or 400 together, and are hir'd with the Crew by the Merchants. They return in the Afternoon with the Sea-Winds, and lay up the Oysters in a great Heap till the Fishery is over, which continues all *November* and *December*. This makes the Oysters smell very strong, and sometimes occasions Distempers. When the Fishery is done, the Company and the Naique receive equal Shares, the *Dutch* Governor and two Judges being there to determine any Differences. The Oysters are open'd in a Wooden House before Commissioners; but most of them have either none, or at least small ones, and some contain from 5 to 8 Pearls apiece: Some found in the Liquors, others in the Flesh, and a few sticking to the Shells. The Pearls being taken out, are sorted according to their Sizes, and sold to the fairest Bidder. The Pearl-Dust is bought and sold by the *Dutch*. The Meat of the Oysters is stew'd and eat, but rank, and not comparable to ours. They rub the Pearls with Salt and powder'd Rice, which gives them a Gloss, and the Shells make very fine Mortar. The new Pearl-Dust is found among the Dirt and Rubbish of the Oysters, and the old Pearl-Dust dug out of the Shores, but of little Value. On this Coast they

catch likewise a Sort of Horn call'd *Sianko's*, of a long, round, and thick Shape, and very white. Of these they make Bracelets, and Thumb-Rings for drawing their Bows, and value them beyond Ivory. This is found in 8 or 12 Fathom Water, about 10 Leagues along the Coast. They fish it from the Middle of *December* to the Middle of *May*. Among these they find sometimes, tho' scarce once in 100 Years, one which they call the *King's-Horn*, that has an Opening on the contrary Side, is red within, and green without, and is said to swim before the rest. Several of the *Indian* Kings are anointed out of these Horns, which makes them highly esteem'd. When these Horns are polish'd, they shine with a most lovely White, much beyond any Ivory. There are always Guards with those Horn-Fishers, to prevent their diving for Pearl. These Divers are many times devour'd by Sharks, against which they pretend to defend themselves by Enchantments, tho' they be Christians.

2. *Tondy*. *Nieuhoff* places it in Long. 107. 53. Lat. 10. 25. *Baldeus* makes it 9 Leagues S. of *Negapatan*, and 32 N. E. of *Tutucorin*. The former says, they transport many Hundreds of Cattle every Year to *Ceylon*. *Schouten* says, the Place is otherwise but small, and of little Note, and that they cross hence to *Ceylon* in 4 or 5 Hours.

3. *Rammanakoiel*, an Island 10 Leagues to the S. according to *Baldeus*, who makes it about two Leagues long, and one broad. It abounds in Cattle more than any thing else. The Name signifies the Temple of *Ramma*, and there's a Pagod belonging to the Lord of the Isle near the Sea, which they say contains an immense Treasure. The Island is in some Places excessive sandy. The Lord of it has built a strong Castle opposite to the Coast of *Coromandel* and *Madura*, which commands a straight Passage leading to *Manaar*, *Jaffnapatan*, and *Negapatan*, that may be render'd unnavigable by sinking Stones in the Channel. In the Road from hence to *Tutucorin* are several Churches of the *Parvas*, where *Xaverius* planted Christianity. Not far from hence there's a Ridge of Rocks and Sand-Banks, which extend as far as *Manaar*, and is sometimes passable by small Boats. Those of *Ceylon* call it *Adam's Bridge*. We shall say more of it

when we come to that Country. *Schouten* begins the Coast of *Coromandel* at this Island.

4. *Periapatan*. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis one of the chief Towns of this Coast, situate near the Rocks of *Romanankoris*, and the Capital of the *Maravas*, a barbarous Sort of Robbers that live about the Mountains. The Jesuits formerly endeavour'd to reclaim 'em; but they soon return'd to their old Way of Living.

5. *Tutecorin*, *Tutekoryn*, *Tutecay*, *Tutucoti*, or *Tutukury*. The *Sansons* place it Long. 118 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 9 $\frac{1}{2}$. on the E. Side of the Mountains of *Ballagate*, about 115 Miles N. from Cape *Comori*, and about 65 from the nearest Sea-Coast. *Baldeus* and *Nieuhoff* place it on the Coast, Long. 106. 40. and no more than 40 Leagues from the Cape. The latter says, 'tis the chief Port on the Coast of *Madura*. The *Dutch* have a Factory here, whose Jurisdiction extends over 6 other Villages on the Coast, the Number of whose Inhabitants amounted in 1664, when *Nieuhoff* was here, to 20000, of whom there were 3000 in this Town. Abundance of Foreign Commodities are Yearly imported into *Tutecorin*, because the Inhabitants along the Coast must be provided with most of their Necessaries from Abroad. He says, 'tis an open Place, but beautified with several stately Stone Buildings, and particularly 3 large Churches built by the *Portuguese*, which, together with the *Dutch* Flag, are seen a great Distance off at Sea, the adjacent Country being low Lands. In one of those Churches the Reformed exercised their Worship, and a Convent of the *Franciscans* was fitted up for the same Use. The Factory was in one of the three Churches, and managed in his Time by a Merchant as Chief Governor, a Factor as his Deputy, two or three Assistants, and a Military Officer, who had the Command of the Soldiers; but the Governor of *Madura* would not permit them to make any Fortifications. The *Dutch* took it from the *Portuguese* in 1658 with little Resistance. There is good Anchorage in the Road at 5 Fathom Water, in a sandy Bottom, *Baldeus*, who was employ'd by the *Dutch* in the Reformation of the *Parvas* here, says, his Endeavours prov'd ineffectual, because of the great Number of *Portuguese* and other Popish Priests.

Priests still among them, to whom they were so bigotted, that thô our Author preach'd here in *Portuguese*, yet they durst not enter the Church, but stood in the Porch for fear of those Priests, to whom the Inhabitants used to carry their Children a great Way into the Country to be baptized. After the *Dutch* purg'd the Churches, they were so concern'd for the Loss of the Popish Images, &c. that they chose to prostrate themselves at the Ringing of a Bell in an open Place, rather than enter the Church, and looked upon the *Dutch* as Enemies to their Religion, which consisted only in learning by Heart the Creed, Lord's Prayer, the 10 Commandments, and Ave-Mary. When the *Dutch* first came before the Place, the Natives set Fire to the Houses and Gallies, and retired into the Country. They make the best Lime here in the *Indies*, and drive a great Trade in Weaving of Cloth, which, together with the Plenty of Eatables, Rice, Sugar, &c. make the Place to be much regarded by the Company. The salt Water here occasions Scabs, and other Cutaneous Distempers. *Schouwen* says, 'tis so clear, that they can see the Pearl-Fishers to the Bottom. He adds, that besides the Resemblance of the *Portuguese* Worship to that of these *Indians* in Point of Images, &c. the former had an Art to please them with Dissimulation and Flattery, which the *Dutch* could never attain to.

M A L A B A R,

Lies along the S. W. Coast of the Peninsula, and runs in a pyramidal Form from *Canara* on the N. to the Cape of *Comori* on the S. having the Sea on the W. and the Mountains of *Ballagate* on the E. which part it from the Principalities of *Gingis*, *Tanjaor*, and *Madura*. The *Sansons* make it 280 Miles from N. to S. and about 140 where broadest; but towards the Cape, 'tis not much above 20 Miles in Breadth. Some extend it to the River *Aliga* or *Cape Ramos*, including *Canara*, but the *Sansons* no further than the River *Gangerecora*. The Country is healthy and fruitful, and the Inhabitants rich. There is little Wheat, but a great deal of Rice, Maze, and other Grain. It abounds in Fruits, Drugs, Spices, Precious Stones, and all Sorts of Animals. There

is Plenty of Wood, and such fine Trees for Masts, that *Sanson* says *Norway* cannot furnish better. But the greatest Wealth of the Inhabitants consists in their Pepper and Precious Stones. He adds, that the Coast is at least 125 Leagues in Length. *Nieuhoff* and *Baldeus* begin it about 50 Leagues S. of *Goa*, and divide it into the Kingdoms of *Cananor*, *Calecut*, *Cranganor*, *Cochin*, and *Coulan*; to which the *Sansons* and others add *Travancor*, *Porea*, *Calecoulan*, *Muterta*, *Marta*, *Barymena*, *Mangata*, *Paru*, *Changanor*, *Trivitor*, *Panepely*, *Angemale*, *Iecantutes*, *Punhali*, *Canarette*, the *Mallians*, *Turnbate*, and the Kingdom of *Pepper*.

Baldeus says, it abounds with Rivers, but most of 'em too shallow for Vessels of Burden. The largest are, *Bergera*, much haunted by Pyrates, *Panane*, *Cranganor*, and the River of *Cochin*, which are about 18 or 19 Foot at high Water. The whole Country was formerly subject to one Prince, who resided at *Calicut*; but dying without Issue, his Empire was divided betwixt the Sword-Bearer, Scepter-Bearer, and Master of the Horse. The Nights are cold, and have very thick Fogs along the Coast in *January*, *February*, and *March*, when the Days are excessive hot. The Sea-Wind begins every Morning at 9 or 10 a Clock, and lasts till Sun-set; after which they have a Land Wind. The Coast is scarce navigable from *June* till *November*, so that the best Season here is from *April* till *June*. Their Winter begins in *May*, and continues till *November*. Their chief Product is Pepper, Cardamums, Ginger, Borborri of a Saffron Colour, some Aloes, a few Bezoar Stones, Salt-Petre, Gum-Lacque, Wax, Honey, and Cocoa-Nuts. They have abundance of Fish, and particularly excellent Cod. They abound with Oxen, Swine, and Poultry. The Cocoa-Trees yield them a wholesome Liquor, from which they distil their Arack. *Nieuhoff* says, it lies almost in the Middle betwixt the Line and the Tropick of Cancer. 'Tis so full of Springs, Pools, Rivers, and Channels, that it much resembles *Holland*, and the Country cannot be travell'd without Boats. Their Pepper exceeds all the rest in the *Indies*, which the *Dutch* have engrossed by their Leagues with the neighbouring Princes, and are Masters of the Kingdoms of *Cranganor*, *Cochin*, and *Coulang*,
G g g g 2 where

where they have many impregnable Garrisons. The Cocoa-Trees thrive better in their Marshes than any where else in the *Indies*, some of them being above 95 Foot high. They drive a great Trade with the Oil and Bark of the Fruit, and have very good Timber for building of Houses and Ships. They have seldom any Rain in the Summer, which makes the sandy Ground so hot, that they are forced then to wear Shoes. The Land Wind never reaches above 10 Leagues in the Sea. It rains continually during the 6 Months of the Winter; but the Rains being warm, make their Fruit florid and green. In *October*, *November*, and *December*, they have dreadful Storms, with Thunder and Lightning. The Inhabitants sit on the Ground when they eat and drink. Their Cups, Dishes, and Spoons, are of Cocoa-Shells, but People of Quality have them of Metal. They use Rice instead of Bread. Their other Food is Flesh, Fish, Spice, Fruits, Milk, and Eggs; but some live wholly on the Product of the Ground. They don't touch their Lips with the Cup, but pour the Liquor into their Mouths. Some of their Cocoa-Trees yield 30 Quarts in 24 Hours; but if drein'd too much, they perish. They use much Amfion, which they mix with their Arack, or put the Quantity of a Pea in their Mouths, and chew it till they fall asleep, when they say it makes them dream of the *Elisian* Fields. They take a great Quantity of it when they go to fight, which makes them fall on like Wild Beasts. They remember nothing that they do or say when the Amfion is in their Heads. They are divided into Foreigners and Natives. The former came from *Arabia*, and have been settled for many Ages on the Coast. The Natives are Pagans, and divided into *Brahmens*, who are their Priests; *Nairos*, who are their Nobles; and into the Commons, who are called *Moorcoris*, *Poulcas*, or *Parvas*. They are distinguished into 5 Degrees; 1. The Royal Families, of whom that of *Gondormo* is the chief. 2. Into the *Brahmens* or Priests. 3. The Nobles or Military Order. 4. Merchants. 5. Fishermen. The *Nairos* are brought up to War from their Youth. They wear a Shield on their Left Arm, a naked Sword in their Right Hand, and are very haughty. They disputed the Rank with

the *Portuguese* till it was determin'd by a single Combat, wherein the *Nairo* was worsted; but they take Place of all the other *Malabars*. They are well proportion'd, of an Olive Colour, and take singular Pride in long Ears, which, with Art, they make to hang as low as their Breasts. They bore them when young, and fill the Holes with Leaves of Palms by degrees, till they bring their Ears to the utmost Length, and then they adorn them with Gold, Silver, and Jewels. The *Nairos* are very brave, but meek in common Conversation, yet much addicted to rob and murder Travellers; so that they are obliged to take a *Nairo* for their Guide, and then they pass safe. They converse with none of the inferior Orders but the *Brahmens*, and reckon themselves defiled if any of the rest touch them, or enter their House; yet they are not so nice in this Matter as the *Brahmens*. They seldom laugh, except on extraordinary Occasions; and when others laugh, they look downwards. The poorer *Nairos* wait at the Gates of Towns to conduct Travellers for a little Money, and are so haughty, that they rather chuse to do this than follow any Trade. They are dextrous at Sword and Target, very nimble, and excellent Wrestlers. Their Arms are Bows, Arrows, Javelins, Swords, and Shields; but many of them now handle Fire-Arms very well, and fight in the same Order as *Europeans*. They are quite naked except their Privities, and have small Plates of Metal on the Hilts of their Swords, which make a Noise when they fight, and animate them. A *Nairo* is allow'd but one Wife at a time; but a Woman may have 3 Husbands at once, except she be a *Brahmen* married to a *Nairo*. The three Husbands equally contribute to the Maintenance of the Woman and Children without any Jealousy; and when any of them comes to visit her, they leave their Arms at the Door, and the other must not enter till he be gone. They make Sister's Children Heirs to their Uncles. They use the common People for Drudgery without Doors, but poor *Nairos* within, who serve them for Bread. The Men cut their Hair close, except one Tuft on their Crown; but the Women wear theirs long, and a Piece of Callico about the Middle, which reaches to their Knees. They make their
Teeth

Teeth black by continual chewing of Betle, and despise those that don't. The *Malabars* are much addicted to Sorcery, and are very covetous. The Women are generally unchast, and when about 17 or 18, are oblig'd by Custom to dispose of their Maidenheads, for no body cares to marry a Maid, and she that has most Gallants is soonest married. They now make good Fire-Arms and Powder, and have Store of Artillery, Muskets, and Pikes. They train up their Youth to one Sort of Arms, according to their Fancy, for they think none can be good at all. They anoint the Limbs of their Children every Day with an Oil, to make them pliable; for when they are forced to fly, they rely much on their Agility, and frequently turn back and charge their Enemies in the Rear. They throw their Javelins backwards with great Dexterity. There's a Sort of *Nairos* call'd *Amokos*, who are more esteem'd than the rest, being desperate Bravo's, who oblige themselves by Imprecations to avenge any Affronts offer'd to their Friends. They run like Madmen on the Points of their Enemies Swords, and the Mouths of their Guns, which makes them generally dreaded. But this Fool-hardiness is chiefly ascribed to their excessive Use of Amfion. The more potent any Prince is, the more of those Fellows they have about them. If a *Nairo* quarrel with another *Malabar*, the King assigns the latter a *Nairo* for Guard; so that the other dare not attack him in that Case, on Pain of Treason. None must be admitted into the Order of *Nairos* without the King's Leave, which he grants to Persons of Quality, and then they wear a Gold Ring on their Right Arm, or a Buffler's Horn. Their common Diversion is hunting of Tygers, and some apply themselves to Philosophy, but chiefly Astronomy. They eat all Sorts of Meat but Cow's Flesh. They wear a red Silken Scarf, with a Fringe of Silk and Gold, about half a Foot long. They never cut their Hair, but tie it up neatly in a Tuft on their Crowns. Their Women are cloath'd in the same Manner as themselves. They must marry none but their own Tribe, except a *Brahmen*, on Pain of Death, for they reckon it would otherwise pollute their Blood; and when they walk abroad, they cry out to the common People to keep off; and if

they don't, they certainly kill them. The *Paruas* are miserable Slaves, much blacker and uglier than the *Nairos*, and must not have their Ears above 3 Inches long. Their Wives and Daughters expose themselves to any Man for Money, without giving Disgust to their Husbands or Parents. These are the only common Strumpets here, for the rest are confined to their own Tribes. Among the Commons, the Husbandmen have the first Rank, the Tradesmen the 2d, and the Fishermen the last. These are a lazy, stubborn, deceitful, Sort of People, who reckon Lying and Fraud no Sin, tho' most of them profess themselves Papists. Their Conversion is ascrib'd to *Xaverius*, who, notwithstanding all his Endeavours, could never bring over but one *Brahmen* to the *Romish* Faith. The *Mahometan Malabars* are Merchants or Pyrates. The latter frequently engage in the Service of Foreigners who come into their Harbours. They take some Betle when they go to fight, and swear by it to stand together. When they take a Prize, they ransack it, with the Mariners and Passengers, before they come ashore. The Captain and Officers take the best, and the rest is divided among the Crew. They endure incredible Fatigues and Miseries by Sea; and tho' they have no Head, never fall out among themselves. The richer Sort equip Vessels with Soldiers and Galley-Slaves, which keep constantly at Sea, except the Captain, who comes ashore to sell his Booty, which the Merchants buy without any Regard whether it be taken from Friend or Foe. These Merchants, as well as the Pyrates, are constantly armed, and the former are distinguished by a Scarlet Cap, with a Handkerchief round it like a Turban, embroider'd with Gold or Silk. They half-shave their Beards without Whiskers, and wear Silk or Callico Vests, that reach a little below their Middle, and under them they have Drawers that come to their Knees. They tie and hide their Purfes in flourish'd Silk or Callico Handkerchiefs, and the *Corfsairs* wear such over their Hair, which they tie up in a Knot. They all have Knives with Silver Hatts, and Tooth-Pickers or other Toys hanging to them. The *Corfsairs* shave their Beards, but wear such long Whiskers, that they can tie them behind their Necks. Both Sexes go bare-footed,

and

and are clad alike, only the Women have nothing on their Heads but their Hair, Pendants on their Ears, and Rings on their Fingers and Toes. The Women are well featur'd, and small of Stature. The Pyrates pay Allegiance and Taxes to the several Kings of the *Nairos*, whose Harbours they frequent. The *Malabar* Priests are clad in White, and meddle with nothing but Marriages and their Temples. They have likewise a sort of begging Monks.

Nieuhoff gives us the following Account of their Government, Religion, and Customs.

Their chief Prince has the Title of *Samorin* or Emperor, and has *Calicut* for his Share. He is likewise call'd *Tambarana* or God, and hence all the other *Malabar* Countries follow his Religious Ceremonies. The other Kings pay him much Respect; but those who live at the greatest Distance pay him least. There are many petty Princes on the Coast who assume the Title of King, but have not the Privilege of Coining. The *Samorin* has lost much of his Power since the *Portuguese* invaded the Country. The *Malabar* Kings never marry, but keep a Concubine of Quality, whose Children don't succeed, but only to their Mother's Estate, with which, and what the King gives them, they are able to live like Gentlemen. The Succession descends to the Sons of the Sisters, according to Seniority, tho' those Sisters don't marry, but chuse a Gallant, whom they like best. And when they come to 13 or 14 Years of Age, they chuse one of the Nobility, to whom she sends Presents, and tells him the Reason. He accosts her with great Ceremony, ties a fine Jewel about her Neck, and after some Days returns home. If she proves with Child by him, it is well; but if not, she chuses a *Brahmen*. If the King's Sisters have no Sons, the *Grandeess* chuse the next of Kin; or if there be none such, they take whom they will. When the King dies, his Corps is burnt 3 Days after, and all the Subjects, without Distinction of Age or Sex, are shav'd from Top to Toe, except their Eye-brows and Eye-lids. They must abstain from Betle, Fish and Flesh, for 13 Days, on Pain of having their Lips cut off if they chew Betle, and of Death if they

eat Fish or Flesh. The new King is oblig'd to this Pennance for a whole Year; nor must he in that Time be shav'd, or have his Nails par'd. He is likewise oblig'd to say certain Prayers every Morning, to eat but once a Day, and to see no body before Dinner. When the Year is out, the next Successor, with the other Princes of the Blood and the Nobility, pay him Homage in the Presence of the People, when he declares his Successor, who must appear no more at Court while the King lives; but the other Princes may. During the first 13 Days, the new King has no Authority, but the Administration is in the Chancellor; and this Time they leave to see if any other has a better Claim. After that, the Nobility engage him by Oath to maintain his Predecessor's Laws, to pay his Debts, and endeavour the Recovery of what Territories he has lost. While he swears, he lays his Right Hand on a Cask of Oil, which has many lighted Wicks in it, and with a drawn Sword in his Left he touches a Jewel set in Gold within the Cask. Then they strew Rice upon his Head, and repeat certain Prayers with their Faces to the Sun, and the Nobility swear Fealty in the same Manner. The Chancellor manages the Treasury, and without his Consent the King can take none of the publick Money, but in Cases of the greatest Extremity. The King is of the Sect of the *Brahmens*, and wears a twisted Cord. He is the sole Judge of all Crimes, and in his Absence the *Grandeess* decide Causes of Moment. If a Difference happen betwixt any of the common People or Strangers, the first *Nairo* they meet is oblig'd to do them immediate Justice upon Complaint, without any Reward, except the Plaintiff pleases: But this is only in Matters of little Moment. Their Punishments for lesser Crimes are Imprisonment, or the Loss of a Limb; and for Capital Offences, they are thrown to Elephants. They have no Prisons but in their Palaces. When a Difference betwixt two Pagans is to be determined by Oath, the Defendant puts one Hand into burning Oil, or lays it upon burning Iron, and sometimes they swim across a River that swarms with venomous Creatures; for they believe, if they swear true, it can do them no Harm. Sometimes the King or the Governors punish Towns and

and particular Persons, by enclosing the Towns or their Houses with Wooden Stakes, beyond which they must not stir, and all People are forbid Communication with them. They burn the Corps of their Friends, who, during their Lives, prepare scented Woods and Drugs for that End, and their Relations preserve the Ashes, which they mix with Water, and paint their Faces with them at Festivals. The Widows of the *Brakmens* are burnt with their Husbands, but the Widows of the *Nairos* are dispens'd with.

Their Marriages are solemnized in the Pagods; and after the Ceremonies are performed, the Relations of both Sexes lead the Bride 15 Days successively to the Bridegroom's House, where they are entertain'd at his Charge with Diet and Musick. Those of Quality are richly adorn'd with Jewels, sometimes to the Value of 200000 Crowns, according to *Nieuhoff*, and the Room is hung with Hangings of Silk, interwoven with Gold, and every one has a Plate of Betle. Towards the Evening the Bride is reconducted to her own House. At the End of the 15 Days, the new married Couple are mounted on Elephants richly accoutred, so as to face one another. The Elephants are led by *Nairos*, and attended by their Relations. They are led thro' the Town, and stop at the Door of every Friend, who presents them with Betle, Fruits, and Sweetmeats, and sprinkle the Heads of the Elephants with sweet scented Water. If they pass by any Friend or Relation's House, 'tis reckon'd a signal Affront. When they come to the Pagod, they dismount; and after staying some Time, they go to the Bride's House, where the Marriage is consummated, and each of the Guests present the *Nairos* that lead the Elephants with a Cocoa-Nut. They begin their Year in *September*, but leave the Determination of the Day and Hour to the Astrologers and Conjurers, who pretend to tell them which shall be most fortunate. Then all those above 15 Years of Age are led to their Temples with their Faces cover'd. When they come there, they uncover their Faces, fix their Eyes directly on whatever is before them; and if it happen to be an Idol, of which their Temples are full, they shew it a particular Veneration all the Year after, and take it for a good Omen.

They write in a peculiar Language which they call *Malkamma*, and instead of Paper use the Leaves of wild Cocoa, on which they make Characters with an Iron Pencil. They cut the Leaves two Inches broad, and two Hands long. They join as many as they think fit, by putting a small Stick thro' them at the Top, and fasten it with Packthread, which they untie as they have Occasion to peruse them. They exceed the *Europeans* in Swiftmess of Writing, and do it with so much Dexterity, that they frequently turn their Faces from the Leaves, and talk to those about them without taking off their Pencil. Their Characters are somewhat like the *Syriack*, but their Language is very difficult, there being such a Multitude of Words for one and the same Thing, and they have a different Name for every Day in the Year.

Nieuhoff says, they worship their Idols and the Sun when they rise in the Morning, and have Golden Cows and other Images in their Temples. Their chief God they call *Parabramma*, to whom they ascribe 3 Sons, and for this Reason the *Brakmens* wear a Twist of three Threads round their naked Bodies. They likewise worship Men and Beasts, who have Temples more magnificent than those of the ancient *Romans*. They have one dedicated to an Ape, which has a Gallery supported by 700 Marble Columns. They have a particular Veneration for Elephants, and suppose the Souls of Men are transferred to them. Their Religious Ceremonies are writ on Cocoa-Leaves, and much resemble the *Greek* and *Roman* Fables; but these are kept by the Priests, who conceal them from the Vulgar, and consult them as Oracles, by which they delude the Mob. The King allows great Quantities of boil'd Rice, which is distributed every Day in their Temples to all that asks for it, which no body reckons dishonourable. They have Lamps always burning in their Temples, and their Prophets are cover'd over with Bells, which make a great Noise when they dance, or put themselves into their awkward Postures. The Temples of the common People are nastily kept, and frequented but once a Month, when the New Moon appears, because they can spare no more Time from their Labour; but the *Nairos* mutter some Prayers in them every Day.

Day. They have several Festivals, which they observe with great Devotion, and some of them go 20 or 30 Leagues to particular Temples. Their chief Festival is *New-Year's-Day*, when the *Nairos* pay their Homage to the King, who stands at a Window, and throws Betle to each, with some Pieces of Silver and Gold. They worship Serpents, which they say are evil Spirits, that God has sent to torment them for their Sins. There are Vagabonds here who carry about Serpents in a Basket, with Bran for their Food. The Basket hangs on a Stick, carried on two Men's Shoulders, and these Serpents are of several Sizes and Colours, many of them very large, and as soon as the Vagabonds begin to play upon an Instrument like a Bagpipe, the Serpents sit upright on their Tails, twist themselves about in a surprizing Manner, and then raising their Fins or Bristles, which are near their Heads, they fall on with such Fury, as if they would tear one another in Pieces, to the great Terror of the Spectators.

The Authors of the 10th Voyage of the *English East India Company* say, That one may sail along this Coast as far as the Cape of *Comori* without Fear of Danger, if they observe carefully how they compass a Neck of Land that lies about 8 Leagues from the Cape, toward which the Coast runs E. S. E. This Point is to be avoided, because of two great Rocks that lie under Water about 4 Miles from it. Ships ought not to come within 22 or 24 Fathom, but to keep in 28, and then they go clear; but they must not exceed 35 or 40 Fathom, lest they be forced by the Current among the *Maldivie* Islands. The sunk Rocks lie about a League E. from the Eastermost of two large Rocks, that appear a good Height above Water off of Cape *Comori*.

Lockyer says, the *Malabar Coast* is in general very fruitful, and affords an agreeable Prospect at Sea, being thick set with Towns, Villages, Gardens, and Woods, interspers'd with verdant Fields. Most of the Inhabitants are Idolaters, but tolerate those of other Perswasions. We come now to the particular Description of the several Kingdoms and Towns in this Country.

CANANOR, or CONONOR,

Is a Kingdom which derives its Name from the Capital, that *Moll* places on the Coast, about 210 Miles S. E. from *Goa*. *Baldeus* says, it extends from Mount *Dehly* to *Bergera*, which *Nieuhoff* makes about 18 Leagues. Their King maintains a considerable Number of Musketers and Archers, who are very expert in handling their Scymiters. The City is populous, and inhabited chiefly by rich *Mahometan* Merchants, who live under the Cannon of the Fortifications; but the Trade is much decay'd of late. The City has a spacious and secure Harbour, and the neighbouring Country abounds with Pepper, Cardamums, Ginger, Mirabolans, Tamarinds, &c. The *Portuguese* erected a Fort here with the Consent of the King, and bravely defended it against the Kings of *Calicut* and *Cranganor*, whom the Inhabitants call'd to their Assistance, to revenge the Cruelty of the *Portuguese*, who had thrown some of their Neighbours into the Sea, on Pretence of having come from *Calicut* without a *Portuguese* Passport; for they would suffer none to trade on the Coast of *Ethiopia*, *India*, or *Arabia*, without the same. The *Dutch* took it from the *Portuguese* in 1663 upon Terms, and the following Year enter'd into an Alliance with the King, who resides at some Distance from the Town further up in the Country, near a straight Pass 3 or 4 Leagues from the River of *Ballipatan*. *Rennefort* says, the *Dutch* added two Bastions to the Fort on the Land-Side, and made Ditches to let in the Water of the Ocean. On the Sea-Side 'tis defended with Rocks, and in his Time had 30 Pieces of Cannon, and 70 Men in Garrison. He adds, that there are many more *Gentiles* here than *Moors*, and that they are distinguished into above 80 Tribes, tho' formerly there were no more Orders of them than the *Brahmens*, *Nairs*, Labourers, Merchants, Bankers, and Courtiers. The *Poleas*, who are the lowest and most miserable Order, never enter into the Towns, but are employ'd to look after the Rice, and may be lawfully killed by the *Nairs* if they venture within the Reach of their Arms. The Women

men here are not burnt at the Death of their Husbands, as in other Parts of the *Indies*. When these *Gentiles* marry, the Man is crown'd with a Garland of Flowers, rides out on a fine Horse, attended with Musical Instruments, to the Woman's House, where the *Brahmen* performs the Ceremony, which consists only in causing the Couple to touch one another's bare Feet. Then the Bride, her Moveables, and a Child's Cradle, are carried in great Pomp to the Bridegroom's House. The Festival lasts a Week, and the Ingenious compose Epithalamiums, &c. in *Malabar* Verse. He adds, that the Town and Country abounds with Elephants, Camels, Bufflers, Lyons, Tygers, Wolves, Oxen, Sheep, Antelopes, Civet-Cats, Apes, Peacocks, Parrots, Partridges like large Kites, and several other Sorts of Animals. They have choice Fruits, which are perfectly good in their Kind, such as Ananas, Banane, &c. and such Store of Coco-Trees, that they burn them for Firing. The Pagans have Monasteries of both Sexes in this Country, where they receive those of all Tribes that have a Spirit of Retirement and Mortification, and they are under Superiors Provincial and General. *Bouffingault* says, the *Portuguese* had two Forts in this Country for their Pepper-Trade, there being more of it in this Place than any where else. They have good tall Trees for Masts, with which they furnish their Neighbours, and Plenty of Cassia, Ambergreece, Hyacinths, Granates, Sapphires, and Rubies. Their Ponds and Lakes swarm with Fish, and great Lizards like Crocodiles, which have a hard Back, cover'd with impenetrable Scales, that often devour Men. Their Breath smells as sweet as Ambergreece, contrary to many Serpents of that Country, which kill with their Breath. They have a great Number of Bats, which have Teeth and Snouts like Foxes. The King in *Bouffingault's* Time was able to bring 100000 Men into the Field, arm'd with Swords and Bucklers. of whom the *Nairos*, distinguish'd by red Hats, were a third Part. They have a Mine here where they dig the Stone called *Azazimit*, which has the same Vertue as *Terra Sigillata*, and is much esteem'd over all the *Indies* for the Cure of the Fever, Bloody Flux, Indigestion; and they say 'tis an excellent Antidote against Poison.

2. *Termapatán*. *Baldus* places it 2 Leagues S. of *Cananor*. 'Tis govern'd by a *Mahometan*, and walled on the Land-Side. This Place, and the other Dominions of the King of *Cananor*, are much infested by the Pyrates of *Bergera*, which *Nieuhoff* places on the same Coast, 3 Miles S. from *Cananor*, who force them and others to buy Passports of them. The Leaders of those Pyrates are *Mahometans*, and they themselves are *Moors* and Pagans. They were formerly able to set out 40 Frigates; but the *Dutch* have much lessen'd their Number.

3. *Telichery*. *Moll* places it 30 Miles S. from *Cananor*. The *English East-India Company* have a Fort here, with a few Soldiers, to defend their Trade, which is chiefly in Pepper and Cardamums. They have sometimes Ambergreece, Coire, Cowries, and Chank, from the *Maldivas*. The best Opium, of a deep Purple Colour, is made hereabouts. We refer to *Lockyer* for the Prices of their Goods, Customs, Coins, Weights, &c. They have black Monkeys, valu'd at 5 or 6 Crowns apiece when tame, black Scorpions as big as a Man's Finger, and Snakes call'd *Cobra Manilla*, whose Sting is immediate Death.

4. *Panola*. *Lockyer* says, 'tis a *French* Factory for Pepper, which they sell in great Quantities. 'Tis 5 Miles S. of *Telichery*. The Raja of the Country is an Enemy to the *English*, and a Friend to the *French*. *Lockyer* thinks we might gain him by fair Means.

C A L I C U T.

Baldus says, 'tis the 2d Kingdom of *Malabar*, subject to the *Samorin* or Emperôr. It begins about 4 Leagues S. of *Bergera*, and ends at the River *Cranganor*, is 32 Leagues long, and 20 broad. Their King is the powerfulest of all the *Malabar* Princes, has a great Number of *Nairos*, very expert with Bows and Fire-Arms; so that he has made considerable Conquests on his Neighbours. Mr. *Fitch* says, his Dominions go up almost as far as *Goa*; that his *Nairos* were always at War with the *Portuguese*, tho' he himself was at Peace with them. They range all the Coast from *Goa* to *Ceylon*, having always 4 or 5 Vessels together, with about 16 Men in each. Their King con-

H h h h

nives

nives at them, tho' he does not own it. *Thevenot* says, this was one of the first Places of the *Indies* discover'd by the *Portuguese* in 1498. The King of *Calicut* receiv'd them friendly at first, but at last endeavour'd to destroy them, at the Instance of the *Arabian* Merchants. The greatest War they had in the *Indies* was with this Prince, so that they enter'd into Alliance with others against him. *Bouffingault* says, the Air is temperate, the Country lying in N. Lat. $9\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* places it between 11 and 12. The Country is plain, and fruitful in all Necessaries for Life; but Pepper is the chief Product. They have much Cotton, Plenty of Precious Stones, and make Cotton Cloth and Tapestry.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Calicut*, or *Calicut*. *Lockyer* places it in Lat. 11. 20. *Moll* Lat. 11. about 30 Miles S. from *Telichery*. *Lockyer* says, 'tis as considerable for Trade as any Port betwixt Cape *Comorin* and *Surat*, was formerly subject to the *Portuguese*, with all this Coast, from Lat. 10 to 20. They had a strong Fort here, which, after a long War, was taken from them by the *Nairos*, and is since wash'd away by the Sea, the Ruins of it being seen at low Water. 'Tis a large straggling Town. The chief Inhabitants are the *Nairos*. There are also many *Papists* and *Mahometans*. The *English* and *French* have Factories here, and the *Armenians* live in Houses of their own in several Parts of the Town. The *English* Factory is a large old House, with a small Court and Galleries within, but has no Guns or Fortifications. About a Mile from hence is the Prince's Palace, very much out of Repair. *Lockyer* adds, there are many Merchants in the Town, as well or better able to furnish or take off Goods as the Chiefs of the Factories. The *French* here have little Trade, and would very thankfully barter or supply any Body for ready Money.

The Commodities sold here are, Pepper, Cardamums, *Corulus-India*, Nux-Vomica, Turmeric, Cassia-Lignea, Coco-Nuts and Kernels, Coire, Couries, Aréck or Betle-Nut, Hubble-bubble Canes, Rice, Sappan-Wood, Teak Timber, Sharks-Fins, Nurses-Skins, Tarians, and sometimes Bezoar and Ambregreece. The Goods imported are, Sugar, Sugar-Candy, China Silks, Lacquer'd-Ware, Bengal Callicoes, Rose-Water, Persian Fruit

of all Sorts, Cotton-Wool, Broad Sword-Blades, and Necessaries for *Europeans*. The adjacent Country is full of Trees, and Variety of good Fruits, especially Jacks. In the Woods there are Tygers, Leopards, Wild Hogs, Deer, Monkeys, Jackals, and Hares. The Hogs eat Fish-Bones, which makes their Flesh disagreeable. There are 5 white Tombs a little N. of the Town, that serve for a Mark to sail into the Road. They have prodigious Numbers of white Ants here, which do much Hurt in Warehouses. *Herbert* thinks it to be *Ptolomy's Canthapis*, or the ancient *Callicharis*. The Harbour, he says, is at some Distance from the Town, and not good to anchor in. The Pagans have many Idols, and particularly one who has a Diadem on his Head, with 4 great Rams Horns, small squint Eyes, a flat Nose, a large Mouth, with 4 great Tusks, a Beard spread like the Rays of the Sun, his Hands like the Claws of a Vulture, his Thighs and Legs strong and hairy, and his Feet and Tail like those of a Monkey; all which together make the Devil like himself. A Priest clad in Lawn sacrifices a live Cock to him every Morning, which is sent to the Emperor, who eats what he pleases, and gives the rest to the Crows. They exchange Wives here, and allow Polygamy in both Sexes. The *Portuguese* under *Albuquerque* took this City by Storm, but were soon drove out for want of Conduct. Captain *Peyton* says, the King of *Calicut* granted the *English* Factory large Privileges here and at *Crangalor*, and promised, if he recover'd the Fort of the latter from the *Portuguese*, to give it the *English*. The Articles may be seen in Mr. *Haves's* Memorials, who was the *English* Resident there; but the Governor of *Calicut* was their Enemy, and a Friend to the *Portuguese*, which hinder'd the Progress of the *English* Factory. Their Merchants were also great Cheats, and the *English* had no other Way to be even with them but to stay in their Houses, to force them to be honest by Famine; for according to their Principles, they were not to eat or drink while a Christian was in their House. *Baldaeus* gives the following Account of the *Samorin* who kept his Court here: He was attended by the High-Priest of the *Brahmens*, clad in white Callico, and had 10 Centinels at the Door of each Apartment of his Palace.

place. The Hall of Audience had rich Tapestry, and Carpets of Silk and Gold, on the Walls and Floor. The Grandees sat round it in Wooden carv'd Seats rais'd above one another, like an Amphitheatre. The *Samorin*, clad in white fine Callico, embroidered with Flowers of Gold, and Rows of Diamonds of great Value, sat by himself. In his Ears he had rich Pendants of Precious Stones, his Cap was adorned with the like, and his Toes with Rings set with Jewels. The *Dutch* made a League with the *Samorin* in 1604, and obtained a free Trade in his Dominions. We refer to *Baldaeus* for the Quarrels betwixt this City and the *Portuguese*. *Thevenot* says, the Town has no Walls, because there's no Foundation to build them on, for Water appears as soon as they begin to dig. There are no good Houses in the Town but the Palace; yet every House has a Garden, which affords 'em both Pleasure and Provisions. *Dr. Fryar* says, the Town is not above 4 Miles long, and has not a House fit for a Christian. There's here and there a Mosque, with Burying-places and Tanks, a large Bazar for Fruit, another for Opium, Spices, Bankers, and Jewellers. The Citizens are courteous, being train'd to Commerce. *Schouten* says, the *Portuguese* blew up their own Fort here, and lost their Interest by the Divisions of their Governors, by building too many large Towns, and too few and too small Fortresses. 'Twas formerly the most famous Mart in *Asia*, and frequented by Merchants of all Nations; and the Tolls were so great, as made their Prince very potent. The Houses are slight, low, but spacious, cover'd with Coco-Leaves, and have good Lights. *Rennefort* says, the *Samorin* complain'd of his being curb'd by a Fortress the *Dutch* had built near the Town, and offer'd to put himself under the Protection of the *French*; but they did not think fit to accept of the Proposal. He says, the Palace was adorn'd by very fine Sculptures, representing Elephants and other Animals. *Bouffingault* says, they allow all Religions.

2. *Panane*, or *Panian*. *Moll* places it 45 Miles S. from *Calicut*. *Baldaeus* says, it was defended by two Forts at the Mouth of the Harbour, which were taken by the *Portuguese*, who slew 500 of the Inhabitants, that fought like Lyons. Cardamum and the

best Pepper is sold here very cheap. It was sometimes the Seat of the *Samorin*. *Mr. Hore* gives an Account to our *East-India* Company of the *Samorin's* Treachery here, in refusing to pay the Debts due to the *English*, or to trade fairly with them, and design'd to surprise them by an Ambush. *Luyts* says, this is a Place of Trade, and has a good Harbour. *Baldaeus* says, when the *Portuguese* came into these Parts, they worshipped the Pagan Idols, which so much resembled their own, that they were scarce to be distinguished.

3. *Tanor*. *Sanfon* places it about 35 Miles S. from *Calicut*. *Dr. Fryar* says, the *English* have a Factory here, and the *Portuguese* a Chappel. The Town is poor and straggling. Their Commodities are Pepper, and others already mentioned in this Country. They have some Shops of Money-Changers, and a Fish-Market. Their Houses are mean Hovels, and the best of them deserve not the Name of a Booth. *Luyts* says, it gives Name to a Kingdom, of which it is the Capital. There are several other Towns and petty Kingdoms within this Country; but we have no Account of them.

CRANGANOR, CRANGALOR, or CRANANERA,

Is a Kingdom S. of *Calicut*, full of Thieves, who divide the Spoil with their Kings; so that there's no sailing there but with great Ships well arm'd, says *Mr. Frederick*. *Schouten* says, it is of a very small Extent, and depends upon the *Samorin*, tho' they have a King of their own. *Bouffingault* says, there's a strange Sort of Animal here, different from all we have in *Europe*, is about the Size of a sucking Pig, has a Snout like a Hedgehog, a long Tail, proportion'd to its Body, like a Lobster, and from the End of his Snout to the Extremity of its Tail is cover'd with round grey Shells, which rise up and separate when the Animal draws its self together, and stands so upright and sharp, that there's no Way to make them ply; and when it turns its self into a round Form, no sharp Weapon or Fire-Arms can pierce it. 'Tis a tame Creature, does no Hurt, is good Meat, and much esteem'd in the Country.

The chief Town is of the same Name. *Baldens* says, it lies 20 Leagues S. of *Calicut*, and 5 N. of *Cochin*, upon a sandy Hill. There's a Fort at the Mouth of a large River, and the City lies a Mile above it. 'Twas strongly fortified and enlarged by the *Portuguese*, who yielded to the *Dutch* in 1662, upon Condition to be transported to *Europe*, after they had lost 200 of their own Men, besides *Nairos*. The *Dutch* surrender'd it immediately to the King of the Country: But the Samorin breaking with them, they regain'd and fortified it. The *Jesuits* had a noble College and Library, the *Franciscans* a stately Cathedral, and without the Walls the Christians of *St. Thomas* had a College, where they worshipped in the *Syriac* Language, and had several Priests and Schoolmasters. The Inhabitants, and those of the Neighbourhood, speak good *Portuguese*, and are bigotted to their Priests, tho' they be little better than Pagans. The *Romish* Clergy are better supported by their Church in making Profelytes than the *Protestant* Ministers are by theirs. The Product here is much the same with the rest of *Malabar*, and sometimes they meet with Gold Dust. *Nieuhoff* says, it was famous among the *Indians*, because of its Antiquity. The Royal Palace lies at some Distance, in a very pleasant Country. There's another at a Place call'd *Malabar Cranganor*, which lies more S. nearer the Sea. The Palace it self is very mean, but encompassed with great Trees. The Town has no Walls, is pretty large, the Houses standing all single, with Gardens, and green Fields betwixt them. The Women here go quite naked, and are very dextrous at whitening Linen. The Inhabitants were very glad when the *Dutch* drove out the *Portuguese*, because they cruelly oppress'd them.

COCHIN, or KAKOCHIN.

Moll places it Lat. 10. about 16 Miles S. from *Cranganor*. 'Tis Capital of a Kingdom about 10 Leagues long. Their Kings have always adher'd to the *Portuguese*, since one of them, who was conquer'd by the King of *Calicut*, was restor'd by them. *Baldens* says, this City is very ancient, and was first fortified by the *Portuguese* in 1504. They built Churches, and made the City two Miles

long. The *Moors* and Christians live in separate Quarters, and the *Jews*, who are all Blacks, have a Synagogue here. 'Tis next to *Goa* for Largeness, and the River is about 17 Fathom Water at high Tide; but the Entrance is difficult in the Winter, being choak'd with Sand, which is removed again by the Violence of the Summer Currents. The Situation is unwholesome, but pleasant, because of the many Brooks and little Islands in the River, where the *Portuguese* have pleasant Summer-Houses. The River abounds with Fish. The *Portuguese* had several fine Churches and Convents, and the *Jesuits* a stately College. The Cathedral was of noble Architecture, supported by two Rows of Pillars, and a lofty Steeple. The *Franciscan* Church and Convent is now only left, where the *Dutch* allow a few of them the Freedom of their Religion. The best Houses here have Court-Yards and Gardens, enclosed with strong Walls, so that Neighbours don't overlook another. That call'd *Malabar Cochin* stands lower, on the Banks of a River, is built after the *Indian* Fashion, with broad Streets, and very populous. There are several fine Structures and Pagods, and the Royal Palace, built with Bricks and Mortar, after the *European* Manner, and has spacious lofty Apartments. In 1662, the *Dutch* attack'd this Town, and met with great Opposition from the *Nairos*, of whom they killed 400, and took their old Queen. They made three Attacks on the *Portuguese* Town, and were beat off with considerable Loss, which obliged them to retire, leaving a Garrison in the Fort of *New Orange*, which is built on a neighbouring Island call'd *Vaypin* or *Viapia*, where they possessed themselves of a large Palace and Church. They return'd again in the Spring, and took the Town by Capitulation, after an unsuccessful Attack. The *Portuguese* Garrison was transported Home, after they had been 150 Years possessed of the Town. The *Dutch* contracted it into a narrower Compass, and pull'd down several Churches, in order to make it more strong, and the Fortifications regular; and *Nieuhoff* says, they made it impregnable. Here *Baldens* gives an Account of the Christians of *St. Thomas* in this Country. They say, which he thinks not improbable, that this Apostle planted Christianity here, and likewise

wife in *China*, from whence he return'd to *Meliapour*, and there suffer'd Martyrdom. They teach their Children from their Infancy, that *St. Thomas* was the Apostle of this Country; that he first taught them the Doctrine of the Trinity, and converted several of their Kings. They continued many Years in the Profession of true Christianity; but for want of good Pastors, were infected with Pagan Superstitions, till reformed by some Teachers from *Syria*, *Babylonia*, *Chaldea*, and *Egypt*. They were afterwards infected with the *Nestorian* Heresy, as appears by their Records. Their *Syrian* Ministers and Bishops introduc'd that Language among them, and acknowledg'd the Patriarch of *Alexandria* or *Babylon* for their Metropolitan, till 1562, that the *Portuguese* brought them to submit to the Pope, but on Condition that they should enjoy their own Religion, which was confirmed by the Synod of *Goa*. In 1599, they submitted entirely to the See of *Rome*; but some of them are still *Nestorians*. They live for most Part about *Cranganor*, *Cochin*, *Coulang*, *Travancor*, and some in *Coromandel*. Their Number, taken altogether, is very considerable. He tells us, the ancient Christians of *St. Thomas* took the Sacrament in both Kinds, and made use of Raisins instead of Wine. They had the *Syriac* New Testament in their Churches, did not baptize their Children till 40 Days old, except in Danger of Life, had Crosses in their Churches, but no Images; nor did they use Unction. *Nieuhoff* says, when the *Dutch* lay before the Town, *Momadavil*, the King of the Country, who was just dethron'd by the *Portuguese*, came aboard their Vessels, in order to be crown'd again, clad in white Callico, with his Hair ty'd in a Knot on the Top of his Head, and Rings on his Fingers; but he died a Ship-board, and the Crown was given to his Brother, who attended him, and had the Cypher of the *Dutch East-India* Company engraven upon it. *Luyts* says, the King of *Cochin* is the only Prince in *Malabar* who dares dispute with the Samorin of *Calicut*. Captain *Peyton*, contrary to *Baldaeus*, says, the Town enjoys a sweet Air, and a pleasant Situation. *Fitch* says, good Water and Provisions are scarce, and what Corn they have comes chiefly from *Bengal*.

Their Want of Water makes abundance of People scabby, like Lepers, and swells their Legs, &c. The Inhabitants differ much from the other *Malabars*, and are said to be of the Race of the *Nairs* of *Calicut*. They are very tall and strong, are best at the long Bow, but do not understand Fire-Arms, and have few of them. They have Ears as large as the Inhabitants of *Ceylon*, and always wear them full of Rings set with Pearl and Precious Stones. The King has several Palaces and Houses of Pleasure, but none of them very large or stately. He removes up and down with a small Guard from one to the other, and never stays above 5 or 6 Days in a Place. They have abundance of Black Cattle, Pepper, coarse Cinnamon, and good Store of Coco-Trees. Mr. *Frederick* says, that *Cochin* in his Time traded in Spices, Drugs, and all other Merchandizes. All the Christians that came from the W. are call'd *Portuguese*, and they that marry'd in *Cochin* had Offices, and great Privileges allow'd them in Trade, particularly with *China* Silks and *Bengal* Sugar, which they imported Custom-free; whereas others paid 4, and all Strangers 8 per Cent. to the King of *Portugal*. *Linschotten* says, in the Neighbourhood of *Cochin* there are Trees call'd *Angelina*, so big, that of one Piece of Wood, without Seam or Joint, they make a Sort of Skiffs, which will carry 20 or 30 Pipes of Water. 'Tis harder, and will last longer than Iron. There are also Sugar Canes and Bamboos, which have a Medicinal Pith, grow very tall, and are as thick as a Man's Thigh. *Thevenot* says, the Port is very good, and has 6 Fathom Water at the Shore. There's a pleasant River betwixt the two Towns, which is navigable by small Barks. There's another which runs from hence to *Cranganor*, on the Banks of which the Idolaters have a Temple, which they call the *Swearing Pagod*, and there's a Basin in it, which they say has Communication with the River; and that there's a Crocodile which attends and carries the Man that swears upon his Back from one End to the other, and if his Oath be true, restores him safe back, but if it be false, dives under Water with him, and is no more seen: But *Thevenot* says, there's no Crocodile in the Reservatory.

PORCA, PORCAT, or PERKATTI.

Most places it about 26 Miles S. from *Cochin*. 'Tis the Capital of a small Kingdom about 12 Leagues long. *Nieuhoff* says, their ancient Kings worshipped 900 Idols, unto which Sacrifices were offer'd daily, and Visits paid from 6 in the Morning till 12 at Noon. Many Christians of *St. Thomas* liv'd in these Parts, and in 1590 Popery was openly professed here, by Consent of the King, who allow'd the Jesuits to build Churches, and the Use of Bells, &c. and no *Mahometans* or *Jews* were to have any Mosques or Synagogues near them. These Kings claim'd a Superiority over the Kings of *Cochin*, with whom they had War; but the Kings of *Porca* are now subject to the *Dutch East-India Company*, who made a Settlement there in 1642, and were well receiv'd by the King, who would not suffer the *Portuguese* to build Ports. This King has about 500 small Frigats, which he makes Use of for Excursions as far as *Cape Comorin*, when the Country is overflowed in the rainy Reason. The Country is fruitful, but unwholesome, and the People affected with Blindness and swell'd Legs. The Country yields a great deal of Pepper, most of which, *Nieuhoff* says, is bought by the *English*, who have long had a Factory here upon the Shore, tho' the Trade of it was granted by the King to the *Dutch*. It is deliver'd to a certain Merchant by the King's Order, and those that gather it are *Portuguese* Converts. The King is absolute and sole Proprietor of the Country. He administers Justice with great Severity, so that a Thief is scarce ever heard of in his Dominions, tho' the *Malabars* are the greatest Thieves in the World. Most of the Inhabitants are Idolaters, and the King's Forces consist chiefly in black, hardy, naked *Nairos*, well arm'd. *Nieuhoff* says, the King's Palace is 10 Leag. distant from the Town; that the Way to it is thro' several Channels and a Lake, with pleasant Rice Fields, and Rows of Trees on each Side. These Fields bear Rice all the Year; so that while they are planting in one, they are reaping in another. The Country abounds with many fair Houses and Gardens. The Palace is an old fashion'd

Structure, encompassed with Walls of Earth and a dry Ditch. It is Four-square, about 40 Paces each Square, with a Court in the Middle, and many Apartments, adorn'd with Carving in Foliage. It has several Tanks for Bathing, fac'd with Stones of a very large Size, brought thither with incredible Pains.

MARTTA, or MARTEN.

Nieuhoff says, 'tis as big as the Kingdom of *Calecoulan*, of which anon, lies N. as far as *Porca*, S. to the *Indian Sea*, and has high Mountains to the E. The Country is populous, abounds with Pepper, Pease, Beans, Rice, and Salt-Pits. The King possesses some Parts of the Country in common with the King of *Calecoulan*, which is not usual in these Parts. He keeps 1200 Negroes in constant Pay, and resides at *Carnopoly*. There have been Christians here of a long time; but they had no Church till 1581, that the King allow'd them to build one, and to cut the Timber for it in the adjacent Woods, dedicated to the Pagan Idols. He also gave the Jesuits Power of Discipline over their Converts.

The Capital is of the same Name, which *Nieuhoff* says is 3 Leagues S. of *Cochin*, upon the same River. The *Dutch* have a large Factory here, with good Gardens.

Carnopoly, or *Carnapole*, where the King resides, lies about 15 Miles N. of *Coulan*, and is surrounded with an Earthen Wall. It was formerly inhabited by the *Portuguese*, but taken by the *Dutch*, who have built a Castle there, and exact Customs for all Goods exported. The *Portuguese* have a small Factory here, and the *English* had another for Pepper; but *Dr. Fryar* says, they are removed both from hence and from *Porca*. There's another City further S. near the Shore, call'd *Panderatoute* and *Pesse*, where the *Dutch* have a Factory for weighing their Pepper.

BATTMA, or BARTMENA,

On the Banks of the same River, whose chief City is *Catiapely*. 'Tis said, they have a Law here, That any Man may kill a Woman who refuses him her Kindness.

C A L E C O U L A N.

Sanfon places it about 25 Miles S. from *Porca*, at the Entrance of a Neck of Land which runs out into the Sea. *Baldeus* says, the Kingdom is not very large. The *Dutch* Company has a Factory of long standing in the Town, where they buy up a great Quantity of Pepper, that Trade being granted them by the King. They carry it to *Surat* and the *Red Sea*, and make their Returns to *Batavia* in the Product of those Places. *Luyts* says, it was a good City formerly, till destroy'd by the *Portuguese* in 1523.

COULANG, COULAN, COULAM,
or QUILON.

Moll places it about 45 Miles S. from *Porca*. 'Tis the Capital of a Kingdom of the same Name, the least on the Coast of *Malabar*. *Baldeus* says, it extends but 15 Leagues to *Cape Comorin*. The City is fortified with a Stone Wall about 20 Foot high, and 8 Bastions. The Suburbs are large and stately. The Town is divided into Upper and Lower. The King and Queen resided in the former, and the *Portuguese* had the latter, where they built several Monasteries, and 7 fine Churches; one of them famous, built many Ages ago by the Christians of *St. Thomas*. The Houses were very stately, and built of Free-stone. They had a noble Stadthouse, and a magnificent Castle, where the *Portuguese* Governor dwelt. It was the strongest they had on that Coast, and was built some Hundred Years ago by a famous Engineer. *Baldeus* says, the City was first built by the *Portuguese*, who were surpris'd and cut off by the Natives at their first Settlement; but 'twas retaken afterwards by *Lawrence Almeyda*, who severely reveng'd the Murder of his Countrymen, and burnt 20 rich Ships before the Town. The *Dutch* besieg'd it in 1661, when they had three smart Engagements with 8000 *Nairos*, intoxicated with Opium. Soon after they took the Town, their Fleet of 23 Ships was surpris'd by a violent Tempest while they lay at Anchor, and suffer'd great Damage, which oblig'd them to return to *Cochin*, after leaving a Garrison in *Coulang*.

Nieuhoff says, they were much annoy'd in their March by a Redoubt, which the *Nairos* had rais'd half a League from the City: But they took it, and kill'd 100 desperate *Nairos* in the Attack. They afterwards took the Town, where the *Portuguese* Standard was display'd. The *Dutch* reduced the City to a narrower Compass, pull'd down most of the Churches and other publick Structures, except the Castle and the Church of *St. Thomas*, and made the Fortifications more regular. Most of the Houses have pleasant Gardens, with Cocoa's, Mango's, and other *Indian* Fruit-Trees, and fine Tanks cut out of the Rocks, with Steps to go up to them. They have also some Ponds of fresh Water; but most of the rest is brackish, and full of Salt-Petre. Tho' the Country be low, and full of Rivers, *Nieuhoff* says the Air is very wholesome, and that 'tis the most fruitful and pleasant for Situation of any in the *Indies*. The Harbour is very convenient for small Vessels, but not for great ones, because the S. Wind blows directly upon the Shore. The Sea many times throws up Heaps of Stones upon the Sand like Rocks, and then washes them off. About a League to the W. there's a great River which runs into the Sea. *Nieuhoff* says, the *Dutch* were once before Masters of this City; but the Negroes murder'd the Governor as he was walking about the Town, and surpris'd and cut off the Garrison; after which the *Portuguese* kept it, till the *Dutch* took it as above. *Baldeus* says, the Inhabitants are generally very barbarous and treacherous. There formerly stood a Pagod 4 Leagues without the City, famous for its Riches, which the *Portuguese* plunder'd in Time of Peace. *Herbert* says, the Town had anciently a great Trade, and was so enlarged by the *Samorin*, that it had 100000 Inhabitants; but that 'tis since much decay'd by the Removal of the chief Trade to *Calicut* and *Goa*. *Schouten* says, there are several other little Towns and Villages full of People in this Kingdom; but we have no Description of them.

TRAVANCOUR, or TREVANCOR.

Nieuhoff says, it begins S. from *Coulan*, and extends along the Coast to *Cape Comorin*, about 22 Leagues in Length. He bounds

bounds it with *Madura* on the E. and on the W. with the Countries of *Peretaly* and *Kotarkery*; but our Maps mention neither of those, and place it on the Coast. It has several considerable Villages, inhabited by *Moors*, and in 1544. there were 30 on the Coast, inhabited chiefly by the *Mahometans* and the *Makao's*, who liv'd upon Fishing, and he reckons 29 great Cities and Villages within Land. The Country abounds in Pepper, Rice, and other Grain, and produces the best Cinnamon, but wants several Necessaries for Life. One of their chief Rivers is that called *Mannikorin*, which falls into the Sea near *Cape Comorin*. The Prince is stiled by some the Great King; and *Nieuhoff* says, he possesses larger Territories than any of the other *Malabar* Princes. He is serv'd in great State, and maintains abundance of Commanders and Counsellors. Others say, he is a Vassal to the King of *Narsingua*. The Country is populous, and the People well cloath'd, according to the *Malabar* Fashion. The Coast is full of Churches, some of Wood, and others of Stone, which are frequented by the *Paruas*.

The City of *Travancor*, which gives Name to the Kingdom, is supposed to be the *Cotiara* of *Ptolomy*. The *Sansons* place it near the Coast, Long. $115\frac{2}{3}$. Lat. $7\frac{1}{2}$. almost 60 Miles N. of the Cape; but we have no Description of it.

Kalkoalang. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis a large City on the Confines of *Madura*, half a League long, on a Hill, 3 Leagues from *Tegepatnam*, and 12 from *Coulam*, encompassed with inaccessible Mountains on one Side, and on the other by a Wall 24 Foot high. It is the Residence of the King, who keeps 10000 Negroes in Garrison, to defend it against the Naigue of *Madura*, whose Power he very much dreads. His Palace stands at the W. End of the Town, encompassed with a Stone Wall; and at the E. on the Top of a Hill, there's the Ruins of an old Castle, fortified with a treble Wall.

Anjengo, or *Anjanga*, an *English* Factory and Fort. *Lockyer* places it in Lat. $8\frac{1}{2}$. and *Moll* 30 Miles N.W. of *Tegapatan*, and above 60 from the Cape. On the Land-Side 'tis strengthen'd by a broad River, but not deep enough at the Bar for large Vessels. The Fort is defended by about 40 Soldiers, who are for most Part Topazes, or Mon-

grel *Portuguese*. There runs a great Surf along the Shore. This Settlement is chiefly for Pepper, which is not so large and good as that to the N. about *Mergee* and *Carwar*. There are several Sorts of Cotton-Cloths, of which they export great Quantities to *Madraspatam*.

Tingapatan, *Tengepatnam*, or *Tegapatan*. *Moll* places it Long. 95. Lat. 8. about 30 Miles N. from the Cape, *Rennefort* says 6 Leagues; and that 'tis otherwise call'd the Town of *Coco-Trees*. The *Dutch* have a Factory and small Fort here. Their Trade is in Cordage of Coco's and brown Sugar-Candy, which they send to *Cochin*. The Fort is cover'd by Rocks, which run three quarters of a League into the Sea. There is a Town of the same Name on the Coast of *Coromandel*, which we there described.

Cotate, or *Kokatti*. *Nieuhoff* says is a Place of great Traffick, a League and a half N. of the Cape. The King sometimes also resides at *Attingen*, a Country abounding with Pepper, from whence the Kings of *Trevancor* derive their Origine. On the Declivities of the Hills there are several pleasant Rice Fields cut out in Trenches, and water'd from the Top by little Rivulets. The King and Queen's Palaces are opposite to each other, and parted by some Rice Fields.

Cape Comorin. Captain *Saris*, in the 8th Voyage of our *East India* Company, corrects an Error of the common Maps, that place it in Lat. 6. 10. which ought to be 7. 42. *Moll* and the *Sansons* agree with him. Mr. *Best*, who went in the 10th Voyage, places it Long. 57. 20. and Lat. 7. 50. from the Cape of *Good Hope*, and says, the Variation of the Compass is 14 Deg. and a half. He adds, that the Cape it self is low Land. Dr. *Fryar* says, it launches into the Sea with 3 Points, in Long. 96. Lat. 8. 50. *Rennefort* in Long. 99. Lat. 8. He says, that towards the Extremity the Soil is low and white, and near the Point there are two great white Houses, and a red Pavilion, surrounded with 50 *Indian* Cottages. They would fain pass for Whites, tho' they are almost as black as the *Africans*, but much handsomer, and have naturally long Hair, if the excessive Heats did not oblige them to cut it. They go naked, except a Piece of Linen about their Waist. Several of them are Chri-

Christians, and had Jesuits to instruct them. The Inhabitants of these Parts are continually at War with the *Malabars*. They have Muskets, Half-Pikes, Arrows, Sabres, and Bucklers, and poison their Arms. *Luyts* says, the Cape was anciently called *Cory Comaria*, and *Comaria Extrema*. The *Sansons* say, the Country is not so good as the rest of the Peninsula.

Thus we have finished the Coast of *Malabar*. The *Sansons* and *Luyts* divide the Inland Country into the petty Kingdoms of *Mangata*, *Paru*, *Turnbate*, the Kingdom of *Pepper*, *Changanor*, *Changanate*, *Trivitor*, *Panepely*, *Tecantutes*, and the People call'd *Malleans*; but we have no Description of any but the last, of whom *Nieuhoff* gives the following Account: They dwell on the Tops of the Mountains of *Malabar*, and have good arable Land at *Priata*, about 13 or 14 Leagues from *Madura*. He supposes them to be the most Warlike Nation of the Indies, mention'd by *Plutarch* and *Curtius*, and that it was at the Attack of one of their Cities where *Alexander the Great* receiv'd a Wound. Now they have no Towns, but live in low Houses built of Canes, and plaister'd with Loom or Clay. Some of them live in the Woods, where they have Wooden Huts, which they remove from one Tree to another, to secure themselves against the Elephants and Tygers. They catch the former in Holes cover'd with Branches of Trees, earth'd over. He says, their Vallies would be very fruitful, if they took Pains to till them. They have but one Wife at a time, and differ in Complexion from the rest of the *Malabars*. They are more honest and good-natur'd, couragious, ingenious, and cunning, and pretend to converse with Devils to know Futurity. They pay a great Deference to the Sepulchres of their Ancestors; and if they happen to be defiled, take it as an ill Omen. On their Festivals, they wear a long Gown and Turban like the *Mahometans*, but at other Times go half naked. At their Feasts, the Maidens play on Rush-Pipes, small Flutes, and Drums. They know no Theft, and live securely with their Doors open. Some of them pay Tribute to the King of *Turbula*, and some to the King of *Pugnan Perimal*; but they are all govern'd by their own Laws, under several Captains or Judges; who have

commonly 5 or 6000 People under their Jurisdiction, and every Inclosure is govern'd by its own Judge, to whom they yield strict Obedience. They were all Pagans before 1599, when they first began to be instructed in the *Romish* Religion, by the Endeavours of the Archbishop of *Goa*. Since which, many of them have embraced Christianity; and at *Priate*, they have a Church dedicated to *St. Michael*; and while they were Pagans, they had no Idol Temples, Feasts, Sacrifices, or revelling Dances, but every Family had its Domestick God. They don't much correspond with any of their neighbour Nations, nor so much as with the *Thomists*, who live at the Foot of their Mountains. Their Weapons are the same with the rest of the *Malabars*; but they have a peculiar Sort of Fire-Arms. The *Sansons* place the *Malleans* 60 Miles E. of *Conlan*, on the Mountains of *Ballagate*, 123 Miles N. of the Cape, which we suppose to be the same here describ'd.

The Isle of CEYLON,

IS supposed to be the *Taprobane* of *Ptolemy*, and has the present Name among the Europeans from its Capital. The Indians call it *Tenarissain*, or the Land of Delights; and the *Arabians*, *Zeylan-Dive*. The *Sansons* place it 60 Leagues E. of Cape *Comorin*, between 6 and 10 Deg. of Lat. which makes about 100 Leagues from N. to S. between Long. 120. 7. and 122. about 60 odd Leagues from E. to W. and about 300 Leagues in Circumference.

Baldens says, it was formerly reckon'd 400 Leagues in Compass, but the Sea has wash'd away 40 Leagues on the N. Side, which reduces it to 360. The Form of it is like a *Westphalia* Ham, whence the Dutch Fort near *Jassnapatam* is call'd *Hamsheel*. It was first discover'd by some Chinese, who were shipwreck'd here, and professed their King to be the Son of the Sun. The Natives, who worshipped that Planet, lik'd their new Guests, and elected the Captain of their Vessel King, from whom the present Kings of Ceylon derive their Origine, and Title of Lords of the *Golden Sun*.

The Air is temperate, and *Baldens* says, 'tis the most fruitful Island in the Indies.

The Soil produces Plenty of Rice, with which they supply the Coast of *Coromandel*, Anana's, Coco's, the best Oranges, Lemons and Citrons, Fig-Trees, Potatoes, Pomegranates, and Grapes, which are fresh all the Year, except in the three rainy Months of their Winter. It abounds also in Ginger, Pepper, Cardamum, Tobacco, Nutmegs, Sugar-Canes, Mulberry-Trees, which yield much Silk, and Palm-Trees, which afford vast Quantities of a certain Sort of Sugar, and a Liquor which is their ordinary Drink. There are also Calabass-Trees, Cotton-Trees, Arek-Trees, *Portuguese* Figs, several Sorts of Mangoes, Long Pepper, Melons, Water-Melons, Onions, and Garlick. The *Dutch* have planted *European* Pot-Herbs and Roots. It likewise produces Gold, Silver, and other Metals, with all Sorts of Precious Stones, except Diamonds. *Mandelsloe* says, there's a great deal of Timber and Stone for Building, with Plenty of Dying-Roots and Drugs: But their Staple Commodity, *Baldeus* says, is Cinnamon, which grows nowhere else. Some of the Trees are very big, have Leaves like those of Lemon-Trees, but not so broad, the Blossoms are white, and well scented, and produce a yellowish Fruit like a small Olive, from whence they press an Oil like that of Nutmegs. It has a double Bark: Of the Outer they make curious Cabinets. They cut the inward Rind first round the Tree, then lengthwise, and lay it abroad in the Fields, where the Sun shrinks it up into small Rolls, which is our Cinnamon. The Trees that are thus peel'd perish; but the Fruit that falls upon the Ground produces more in their room. The Wood is very white, and us'd for Building. While the Wood is green, they distil out of it a wholesome well scented Liquor, and another from the Root, which smells like the strongest Camphire. There are 3 Sorts of Cinnamon, viz. the finest, which is taken from the youngest Trees; a coarse Sort, which is taken from thick old Trees; and wild Cinnamon, which grows also on the Coast of *Malabar*, but is of no Value; yet some of the Natives say, Art would make it fit for Use. Captain *Knox*, who was a Prisoner here near 20 Years, and Captain *Ribeyro*, a *Portuguese* Gentleman, say, the Wood of this Tree is soft, white, and without any Scent. The

People cut them down for Use as well as other Trees. The Leaf has 3 Ribs running thro' the Middle, and is like a Lawrel in Colour and Thickness. The young Leaves are red like Scarlet, and being bruised, smell like Cloves. The Fruit is ripe in *September*, and like an Acorn. It differs from the Bark in Smell; and if boil'd, makes a hard white Ointment like Tallow, but of a better Smell. They use it for Aches and Pains, and burn it in their Lamps. The wild Sort is as plentiful in the Woods as Hazels in *England*; but the best Sort grows between *Cesta-Yaca* and *Columbo*, and in greatest Plenty between *Grudumale* and *Tenevare*. *Baldeus* says, they grow commonly in the Woods with other Trees; that there are none in *Jaffnapatam* and the Isle of *Manaar*, but only beyond the River *Chilau*, about *Negumbo* and the Inland Countries, and near *Gale*.

Snake-Wood, says *Baldeus*, is also very common here. 'Tis white, inclining to yellow, very hard and bitter. 'Tis much esteem'd by the *Indians*, who rub their Bodies with the Powder for the Itch, and take an Ounce of it in Water or Wine against the Cholick, Burning Fevers, and the Stings of Serpents, of which there are abundance in this Island. Their Naturalists say, the Vertue of it was first discover'd by a small Creature like our Ferrets, which, when stung by the Serpents, runs and eats of the Snake-Wood, and is cur'd. These Creatures are kept here to hunt Rats, Mice, and Serpents, against which they have a natural Antipathy, and frequently kill them.

Their Betle-Nuts grow only in the S. and W. Sides of the Island, and in the Towns. Captain *Knox* says, the Trees are tall, but not much bigger than the Calf of a Man's Leg. The Nuts grow in Bunches at the Top. Some of the Trees yield 500, others 1000, and others 1500, every Nut being commonly two Foot long, and a Foot and a half in Breadth. The Leaves are 5 Foot long, fall off with the Skin upon which they grow, and the Country People use them for Basins to eat their Rice in, and to tie up their Provisions when they take a Journey, because they have no Inns. They used, for Want of Money, to truck them for what they wanted on the Coast of *Coromandel*, till 'twas prohibited.

There's

There's another Fruit call'd *Jackes*, which they live upon when their Rice is scarce. Captain *Knox* says, they grow upon a large Tree, are as big as a Peck-Loaf, of a greenish Colour, prickly on the Outside like Hedge-hogs, tast like Cabbages when boil'd, and a single one will suffice 6 Men. They have Kernels like those of Chesnuts in Size, Tast, and Colour, which they roast, or pack up for a *Viaticum* when they travel. One Jack yields 3 Pints at least of these Kernels. When they are cut, there issues a white thick Glutinous Substance like Tar. 'Tis us'd by the Boys for Bird-lime; and when mix'd with Rice-Flower, eats like Eggs.

Baldews says, they have a Tree call'd the *Root Tree*, whose Branches turn to the Ground like Ropes, where taking Root, another springs from them in the same Manner, and in a short Time overspread a large Tract of Ground.

Captain *Knox* mentions the other Trees that follow; 1. The *Tallipot*, high and thick, like the Mast of a Ship, very straight, and bear only Leaves, which are so large as to cover 15 or 20 Men from Rain. They fold up like a Fan, and when dry, are very strong, limber, and light. The Inhabitants cut them into what Sizes they have Use for, they being a good Defence against Heat and prickly Bushes as they pass the Woods, and the Soldiers use them for Tents. The Leaves grow on the Top, and it bears no Fruit till its last Year, which is of no Use but for Seed. The Blossoms have so noisome a Smell, that they build no Houses near those Trees. At that Time the Pith of them makes good Bread, when beat in a Mortar; and they many times use it before their Corn be ripe, or when it is scarce.

2. The *Kettale Tree* is straight, but not so tall and large as the Coco Tree. It yields a Liquor which is very sweet, pleasant, and wholesome, but no stronger than Water. One of these Trees yield several Gallons a Day, and they boil it up either into a brown Sugar, or into another which is as good as our second Sort. The Leaves are like those of the Betle Tree, fasten'd to a hard Skin full of Strings, as strong as Wire, of which they make Ropes. While the Tree is growing, it sheds its Leaves; but when come to full Maturity, it sheds none for many Years; and when they fall,

none comes in their Place, only it buds for several Years, and then dies. The Buds tast like Almonds. The Wood is not above 3 Inches thick, 'tis so full of Pith; but is so strong and hard, that they make Pestles to beat Rice with it.

3. The *Orula*. 'Tis as big as an Apple Tree, and has a Berry like an Olive. They use it as a Purgative, and when bruis'd and steep'd in Water, it dies a very good Black. If rusty Iron be laid in it one Night, it becomes clear, and the Water as black as Ink, so that they write with it.

4. *Dounckae Gouhab*, a Shrub, whose Leaves are 6 or 8 Foot long, two Inches wide, and full of Thorns on both Sides, with a Row of Thorns down the Middle. They split them to weave Mats with. The Buds are a Span long, formed like a Sugar Loaf, cover'd with lovely yellow Leaves like Cabbage, and very sweet. The Flowers are like a Plume of Feathers, white, and small. They split the Roots, and make Ropes of them.

5. The *Capita Gouhab*, a Shrub as big as a Man's Arm. The Wood, Rind, and Leaves, have a Physical Smell, and are sometimes us'd in Medicines. The Leaf is a bright Green, as large as the Palm of one's Hand, and rough, that no Sort of Cattle will eat it, the Smell of it being venomous. They grow plentifully in all the Divisions of this Island but *Ouvah*, and the Cattle of that Division die if brought where those Trees are. Brooms made of this Tree keep their Houses from Fleas. 'Tis very good Firing, and the Goldsmiths use no other Coal but what is made of this Wood.

6. *Rattans*. They are very plentiful, and run like Honey-Suckles upon the Ground, or up Trees near 20 Fathom high. The Fruit is like Bunches of Grapes, cover'd with prickly Shells, which fall off when ripe. Within those there's a scaly Husk, and within that a whitish Plum, with which they make a sower Pottage to quench their Thirst. Canes grow in the same Manner, and bear a Fruit like them; but they are larger.

7. The *Begabah* Trees are very numerous, and held in great Veneration, because they fancy that one of their Gods us'd to sit under their Shade. Therefore they set up Lamps, Images, and Altars under them for their

their Sacrifices, plant them in Towns and Highways to shade Travellers, and in Places where the Corps of their Friends have been burnt, as a Memorial of them. They are always planted by their oldest Men, because they reckon those who plant them don't live long after, and merit Heaven by it.

8. The *Betle Tree* grows like Ivy about Poles, which they stick in the Ground. The Leaf is longish, of a bright Green, very smooth, and like a Pepper-Leaf. The Fruit is also like long Pepper, but not good for Seed, because it falls to the Ground and rots.

Baldens says, they have a Shrub like our *Noli me tangere*, which moves backward if one go to touch it.

The same Authors give a large Account of their Corn-Fruits, Plants, Roots, Herbs, and Flowers; the most remarkable of which are as follow:

1. *Rice*, of which they have 5 Kinds, distinguished by their Seasons of ripening. One requires 7 Months from its Sowing, and so gradually less to that which requires but three. They are much of a Price; the soonest ripe is the most savoury, but yields the least Increase, and the latest ripe the greatest. It all grows in Water, and they sow each Sort according as they know their Water will hold, which they convey from their Rivers and Ponds by Canals to the Fields. In the N. Parts they have few Rivers or Springs, and therefore every Town has a large Pond, in which they save Rain-Water. In some of them there are Aliigators, but seldom do any Mischief. When the Ponds are dry, they tread the Mud with Buffaloes, sow it with Rice, and water it with Scoups. *Knox* says, they have one Sort of Rice, which will ripen tho' it does not grow in Water; but it is not so good. They plow with Buffaloes, and their Plow is only a crooked Piece of Wood, little bigger than a Man's Arm, because their Soil is all muddy. After the first Plowing, they make up their Banks to serve for Foot-Paths, and to keep in their Water. Before they sow, they soak their Corn in Water a whole Night, then lay it in Heaps about 8 Days, till it has Blades and Roots, and strew it with great Exactness. They don't water it till 'tis 3 or 4 Inches above

Ground; and when it is a Span high, they weed it, and transplant it if too thick. They all reap in common, and every Man maintains the whole Company while they cut down his Field. The Women gather it up after the Reapers, and carry it to a Place where it is trod out by Buffaloes in a Pit, which the Women make with certain Magical Ceremonies. After 'tis trod out, they unshale it, by beating it in a Mortar or on the Ground. But their best Sort must be boil'd in the Husks, or it breaks to Pieces. They have 8 other Sorts of Corn, of which they make Bread and Oil. The most remarkable is that call'd *Tanna*, which yields the greatest Increase in the World, every Ear containing Thousands of Grains, so that none sow above a Pottle of it. They boil it like Rice, than which it is more dry.

Knox says, they neglect their Fruits for most Part, because, when there's any better than ordinary, the King's Officers tie a String about them, and then no Man must touch them. Besides, the Owners, who are many times forced to carry them to the King, tho' it be never so far, have nothing for it.

The most remarkable of their Roots are, 1. *Aloes* of several Sorts, some planted in their Gardens, and others wild, of which the last is more scarce, and grows deeper. They eat them alone, or season their Rice with them. One Sort runs up to the Tops of great Trees or Sticks, and bears Blossoms, but of no Use. The Leaves die every Year, but the Roots thrive, and will grow to the Bigness of a Man's Waist, somewhat round, and in several odd Shapes. Those that do not run up on Trees, are also of sundry Sorts, bear a long Stalk, and a broad Leaf. Some of the Roots are roundish, others are either white or red, and like a Man's Finger. Those that grow in the Woods, run deeper into the Earth, climb the Trees, bear a Blossom like Hops, and grow to the Bigness of a Man's Arm.

They have several Sorts of choice Herbs, which they boil and eat with Butter. Some of them are 6 Months in growing to Maturity, and rise with a Stalk as high as a Man can reach. They have divers Sorts of savoury Fruit, which they eat with their Rice. Our *English* Herbs and Plants grow very

very well here. They have *Indian* Corn, several Sorts of Beans, and Plenty of Medicinal Herbs, wherewith they perform more speedy and remarkable Cures than our *European* Physicians, as may be seen in *Knox's* History.

They have Store of wild Flowers, and the Youth tie up Roses, &c. in their Hair to perfume it. The most remarkable are,
1. *Sindric-Mal*, some of which are of a Murry Colour, and others white. It opens its Leaves at 4 in the Evening, and shuts them again in the Morning, so that it serves the Inhabitants for a Clock in cloudy Weather.
2. *Pichamauls*, which bear a white fragrant Flower like Jessamine. The King has some brought him every Morning wrapped up in a white Cloth, hanging on a Staff betwixt two Men's Shoulders, and all that meet them must turn out of the Way, in Respect to the King. The Officers that carry them hold Land of the King for that Service, and are obliged to have Plenty of them.

The same Authors give a large Account of their Beasts and Insects, particularly of their Elephants, which are the best in the *Indies*, and of catching them, as follows: After they have found the Males that have Teeth, which are but few, they drive some She Elephants into the Woods, which the Males are sure to follow. The Females are so us'd to it, that they observe the Word or Beck of their Keeper, and lead them thro' the Towns and Countries to the Gates of the King's Palace, where they are either snared, or put into a Pound, for the King to see them, and take his Choice. *Ribeyro* says, the *Portuguese* us'd to surprise them by a large, strong, tame Elephant, call'd *Ortela*, which they sent out when they had Notice of a Herd. He was accompanied by some Females, which they plac'd in the neighbouring Towns, while *Ortela* and his two Guides went into the Woods. As soon as the Leader of the Herd saw him, he advanced to fight him, when *Ortela* clasped him so fast about the Neck with his Trunk, that he could not stir, and held him till his Guides fetter'd him before and behind. Then they fetch the She Elephants, chain one to him, and make the other go by him, and in 3 Days he would grow tame by being kept awake. The *Portuguese* us'd to catch 30 in a Year this Way, and sold them

at great Rates. He adds, that the Elephants of this Country are so tractable, that they will do any thing almost their Keeper bids 'em. The Inhabitants say, they bear the greatest Love to their Offspring of all Brutes, and are so tender of one another's Young, that where many She Elephants are together, they'll go and suck of any as freely as of their own Dams. If a young one be in Distress, they'll all run to help it; and if they be fording a River where the Stream is strong, they'll all assist with their Trunks to convey the young ones over, for they swim very well, and delight to lie and wallow in the Water. Their Teeth never shed, and the tame ones never breed Young, unless when the Keepers have a Mind; for which End they tie their fore Feet together, and send them into the Woods, where they meet with the wild Males. The untam'd ones run much faster than a Man, but the tame ones not. They often throw down high Trees with their Heads, devour Men, eat and trample down their Corn and Fruits, and beat down Houses: So that in the neighbouring Towns they are forc'd to keep Watch all Night, and to scare them away by Torches and hallowing, or else shoot them with Bows. The King makes use of them for the Execution of Malefactors, whose Bodies they tear in Pieces with their Teeth, which are capped for that Purpose with sharp Iron Sockets; for the tame Elephants have the Ends of their Teeth cut to make them grow better. At certain Seasons the Males are mad, run away with their Keepers and kill them; but they commonly perceive it by an Oil which runs out of their Cheeks, and then they chain them by the Legs to great Trees. When the Keepers have a Mind to divert themselves, they command them to suck up Water into their Trunks, and hold it there till they have a Sign, when they will spout out a Pailful at a time against the Person pointed at, with so much Violence, that he can scarce stand against it. *Ribeyro* confutes a vulgar Error, that Elephants never lie down; for he says, they lie down all Night, and will do so in the Day-time if commanded by their Keepers: But if they lie down in their Journies, they never rise again, which he believes occasion'd the Mistake. *Baldew* says, they are most dangerous re-

wards

wards the Evening, when they are hungry; but that the Noise of Drums and Kettles frightens them away. Near *Mature*, they use tame Elephants to decoy the wild ones into Pounds, made of large Stakes or Trunks of Trees.

The Jackals eat Man's Flesh, so that they cover their Graves with great Stones. They are hunted by Greyhounds; but when hard put to it, piss, which stinks so that the Hounds can't endure it. The Physicians prescribe the Flesh of Jackals with good Success against Consumptions.

Ribeyro says, they have abundance of Monkeys of several Sorts, some as large as Spaniels, their Bodies of a dark Grey, and Faces Black, with great white Beards from Ear to Ear. There are others Milk-white all over, and some that have no Beards, but white Faces and long Hair, which parts on their Crown like a Man's. The Inhabitants eat them, as they do likewise Squirrels.

They have several ingenious Devices for catching Wild Beasts, and among others what follows: A Man covers himself at Night with a Cane Basket, carries a Pot on his Head with a flaming Light, and little Bells in his Hands, which he rings. Some others follow him with Bows and large Arrows; and going thus to the Haunts of the Beasts, which stare at the Fire, and being amused with the Ringing of the Bells, the Men shoot them.

Baldens says, there are Crocodiles, of which some are 18 Foot long. The Natives say, it has a Stone or Bone in its Head, which, if beat to Powder, is as good against the Stone as the Bones of Sharks; and that the Fat of them disperses sharp Humours in any Part of the Body. In the Summer, when the Ponds and Lakes are dried up, they dig Holes in the Ground to live in. The Inhabitants reckon the young ones excellent Food.

They have several Sorts of remarkable Ants, particularly a great red Sort, which make their Nests on the Boughs of large Trees, with Leaves wrap'd together in Clusters as big as a Man's Head, in which they lay Eggs; and another Sort call'd *Vacos*, whose hinder Part is white, and the Head red. *Ribeyro* says, they swarm all over the Land, and devour every thing they come at except Iron and Stone. They

creep upon the Walls of their Houses, and always build an Arch over themselves. In Places where there are no Houses, they raise themselves Hills like Butts, 5 or 6 Foot high, which are so hard and strong, that they can scarce be levell'd with Pick-Axes. They build Vaults and Arches within where they dwell, and breed in Nests like Honey-Combs, full of Eggs and young Ones. They build with the finest Clay, of which the People make their Idols. When they come to Maturity, they have Wings like our Ants, and in an Evening fly up in vast Multitudes as high as they can in the Air, and then fall down dead. Their Poultry live chiefly on them, and had rather eat them than any thing else. Some of those Ants bite desperately, and the Pain resembles Burning; but they don't bite except they be annoy'd.

Ribeyro says, they have 3 Sorts of Bees, particularly one which is larger and of a brighter Colour than ours. Their Honey is thin, and they make their Combs on the Boughs of Trees, which at the proper Season the People flock in great Multitudes to gather. When they find a Swarm on a Tree, they hold Torches under them till they drop; after which, they boil and eat them, and say they are excellent Food.

There are a Sort of Leeches which swarm in their Grass and Woods after Rain; and the Inhabitants going bare-legged, are pester'd with them as they travel.

Knorr gives the following Account of their Birds, Fish, Serpents, and Commodities:

Besides those Birds common to us, they have small green Parrots, and several other beautiful Birds, that speak excellently well when taught. They have likewise some small Birds of the Size of a Sparrow, with a Tail a Foot long, their Bodies white as Snow, their Heads black as Jet, and a Tuft of Feathers standing upright. The Female is of an Orange Colour, with a Tuft of black Feathers on her Head. Their Birds nam'd *Carlos* never light on the Ground, but always sit on high Trees. They are as big as a Swan, black, have short Legs, monstrous Heads, long Bills, and round like those of a Hawk. They have white Spots on each Side their Head, and a white Crest on the Top of it. They quack like Ducks;
are

are heard at a great Distance, and good to eat. They have several Sorts of Water-Fowl, one of them like our Ducks, but Coal-black. They continue a great while under Water, and rise at a vast Distance from the Place where they dive. They have others like Swans, but much larger.

Their Fish are the same with ours, says *Baldeus*, except those call'd Porcupines or Sea-Hogs, which are of an Amphibious Nature, come frequently ashore to eat Herbs, and are good Food. *Knox* says, they have many tame Fish, which they feed with Rice.

They have many Species of Serpents; the chief of which are, 1. The *Pimbera*. His Body is as big as a Man's Middle, and his Length proportionable. Sometimes they swallow Stags, Horns and all, which run thro' their Belly and kill 'em. They are not nimble, but catch their Prey by sculking in hollow Paths, and hold Deer or other Beasts by a Peg which grows on their Tail. 2. The *Polonga*, about 5 or 6 Foot long. They are of several Colours, and have white Specks on their Sides, are extream venomous, and kill Cattle. 3. The *Noya*, grey, and about 4 Foot long. It will stand with its Body half upright two or three Hours together, and spread its Head wide open like a Pair of Spectacles. The Inhabitants call it the King's Snake, and say, that if any of them be killed, all those of the Kind will revenge it. Therefore, when any of them bites a Man, they pretend to enchant them, and fancy they will never do them any more Hurt. This Serpent and the *Polonga*, whenever they meet, fight till one of them be killed, and then the Conqueror eats him up. They have several lesser Sorts, which lurk in the Thatch of Houses, &c. The Poison of some of them makes those who are bit fall into a deep Sleep, and without speedy Remedy they die in 6 Hours time. Others occasion Madness, which kills in 24 Hours. *Ribeyro* mentions another, whose Poison is so violent, that the Person bit by them bleeds at all the Pores, and is irrecoverable. We pass over some others, the Description of which, and the Effects of their Poison, seem fabulous. *Baldeus* says, they have Sea Serpents from 8 to 10 Yards long, and that the most dangerous Sort are those call'd *Cobres Capellos*, which frequently kill Peo-

ple. That Reverend Author tells us, he saw a *German* Soldier catch one of those Serpents in his Hand without receiving any Hurt, and that he carried it away in his Knapfack, and us'd to sleep near it. Our Author suspecting he us'd supernatural Means, the Fellow assur'd him to the contrary, and that he always carried the Head and Heart of a Serpent about him. *Baldeus* prescribes several Remedies against the Stings of Serpents, to which we refer. He says, there are divers Sorts of small Reptiles, particularly a Creature call'd *Thousand Feet*, some of which are 7 Inches long. There are also Scorpions and Spiders of a prodigious Bigness. *Knox* mentions one call'd *Democulo*, which is very long, black, hairy, speckled, and glistering. The Body of it is as big as a Man's Fist, and its Feet of a proportionable Size. They lurk in hollow Trees and Holes. Their Bite is not mortal, but sometimes makes People lose their Senses. They have a Sort of Aliigators of 5 or 6 Foot long, that live most by Land. They have long blue fork'd Tongues like Stings, which they put forth and hiss when angry, but neither bite nor sting. He eats Carrion with the Dogs and Jackals, and if they snap or bark at him, lashes them with his Tail, which is about an Ell long, and makes them run away howling. This Creature is not eatable; but there's another of a lesser Size that is reckon'd excellent Meat. It lives on Leaves and Herbs, is of a blackish Colour, and lies in Hollow Trees and Holes. There are also Musk-Rats, so call'd because of their Smell. The Inhabitants don't eat these, tho' they eat all other Rats.

The Commodities of this Country are, 1. Precious Stones of several Sorts; but none must have any except the King, on Pain of being impal'd; and when he has enough, a Stake is set in the Place to keep others from meddling with them. The Stone they value most is that call'd the *Cat's Eye*, because of its various Colours. They never polish, but only wash it, and it shews all the lively Colours imaginable, but one more than another, according to the different Position of the Eye. These Stones are found in their Rivers. Next to them they esteem Rubies, of which they have the finest in the World. Their Topazes and Saphirs

Saphirs are also very large, and they have Jacinths, Verlis, and Tariposes, &c. which they value no more, says *Ribeyro*, than we do Sand or Flint Stones. In their Mountains they have Store of white, red, and green Chrystal, and Plenty of Iron, of which they make Steel. They have Salt-Petre and Brimstone; but the King will not suffer them to use the two last. They have Plenty of Ebony, and of other tall large Trees. They vend likewise Cardamum, Jaggory, Rack, Oil, Black-Lead, Turmeric, Salt, Rice, Betle-Nuts, Musk, Wax, and Pepper, in great Store. On the Coast there are found large Pieces of Amber. *Linschotten* says, a Piece of 30 Hundred Weight was taken up near Cape *Comori* in 1555. They have likewise black Coral, and a Pearl Fishery. The Commodities imported are, Velvets, Silks, red Caps, Porcellane, Spices, Opium, *China* Roots, Camphire, Musk, Sandal Wood, Lead, Copper, Tin, Salt-Petre, Brimstone, gilt Looking-Glasses, Glass-Bottles, and Painted Callicoes.

The same Authors give the following Account of their Government, Revenues, and Strength:

It was formerly divided into 9 Kingdoms, for which we refer to *Ribeyro*. They are now all under one, who is an absolute Tyrant. When *Ribeyro* was there, he was the Son of the Chief Priest, who had married the Widow Queen, call'd *Donna Catharina*, because a Christian. She had two Sons by the former King; but the Priest's Son outed them both. His Court was at *Digligy Neur*, where he has a Palace on a great Hill, inclosed with a Clay Wall. It has many Apartments, most of which are low and thatch'd, but some two Stories high, and handsomely til'd, with Balconies; but there is no fine Prospect, because of its Situation betwixt two Hills, and the King used to reside there only in Time of Danger. His Palace hath many large and stately two-leav'd Gates, finely carv'd, and the Posts and all the Iron-work curiously engraven. The Windows are inlaid with Silver Plates and Ebony, and on the Top stand Flowers, made of Earth. *Knox* compares the Contrivance of it to *Woodstock* Bower, with many Turnings and Doors, guarded by Watches. He has strong Guards kept about his Court Night and Day by his Gran-

dees, with Soldiers under them, who must not stir from their Posts, or converse with one another; and at the End of every Watch, Drums and Trumpets are constantly sounded to keep them awake: And to suppress Tumults, he keeps Elephants near his Guards to trample them down. He has a Band of Negroes, who watch at his Chamber-Door, and about his Person. He has a great Number of Spies, which sometimes he sends out by Night to see how his Watches are kept, and to observe every thing that passes. He is attended by Youths of the best Parentage and Mien that are to be found in the Country, which go bare-headed, and wear long Hair down to their Backs. His Concubines are his Cooks, and those he chuses out of the handsomest Women he can find, be they married or not. He has few besides them in his Palace, but he has others in the neighbouring Towns; for which Reason no Stranger is allow'd to go near them. Once he sent for all the *Portuguese* Women which were young and white, kept such as he pleased, sent the rest back, and such as displeased him he drown'd or imprison'd. Sometimes he walks about his Palace, and has Stones set at certain Distances, on which he stands and looks over all the People. He seldom goes out farther than a Banqueting-House about a Musket-shot distant, and is always attended with many Thousands of Guards, commanded by *Dutch* and *Portuguese* Captains. His Musicians, Falconers, Elephants, and Horses, must always attend at the Gate, and sometimes all this Crowd wait 3 or 4 times before he comes out; and when he does, 'tis so much of a sudden, as occasions a mighty Hurry among them. He is commonly carried in a Palanquin, and seldom rides upon an Horse or Elephant. At the Arrival of Ambassadors, he sends his Grandees, attended with large Trains of Soldiers, to meet them, levels the Roads for many Miles, and provides them Carriages and Diet while they are in his Country: But in short, all this is done rather to keep them Prisoners than to honour them, for no body is admitted to speak with them but himself; and to make some Amends for this, he confers with them frequently, has them always brought before him in great State, makes them Sharers in his Diversions, and often

presents them with handsome Servants of both Sexes. Whatever Meat or Drink is brought to the King, is cover'd with a white Cloth, and those who carry it, as also the Carver and Cup-bearer, have Mufflers upon their Mouths, that they mayn't breath upon it. He eats alone on a Plantane Leaf laid in a Gold Dish. He punishes Whoredom in his Courtiers by Death, tho he himself had a Child by his own Daughter, which is allow'd here, on Pretence of being sure of Royal Issue. He demands the same Reverence of his Subjects as they pay to their Gods, and they are taught to believe that all their Kings become such after their Death. They prostrate themselves three times with their Faces to the Ground, kneel all the while they address him, and retire from him backward till they go quite out of his Sight. But if Christians, he demands no more but that they should kneel to him, and be uncover'd. He is absolute Proprietor of the Country, and farms it out for Service of all Sorts. He has many Towns in his own Hand where the Inhabitants manure the Ground, and lay up the Corn for his Use, and all the Tradesmen work for him. These Towns he frequently bestows upon his Nobles for eminent Service. He is continually afraid of a Rebellion, which he endeavours to prevent by the sudden Execution of those he suspects, without allowing them a Hearing, employs his Soldiers and other Subjects in digging down Hills, and filling up Vallies, and to cut thro Rocks. He poison'd his only Son, a Youth of 15 Years of Age, because he found the Subjects lov'd him, and would allow no Mourning for him.

His Revenues consist in Rents, which are paid three times a Year, New-Year's Gifts, a Part of every Man's Stock that dies, a certain Rate of Corn from every one, besides Money, and formerly he had a considerable Profit from the Ports of *Cotiar* and *Portalone*, which are now in the Hands of the *Dutch*. He has several Treasure-Houses in Cities and Towns, kept by strong Guards, and well stor'd with all Commodities of the Country. The most considerable Part of his Revenue comes from his New-Year's Gifts, which are always brought him on the 27th, 28th, and 29th of *March*. On this Day he washes his Hands with great

Ceremony. The Palace is adorned with Triumphal Arches and Poles with Banners, Bells, &c. which makes the poor ignorant Slaves say, that his Palace is better adorn'd than Heaven. The Army stands at the Gate while all the Grandees bring their Presents, or rather Taxes; for they are rated according to their Ability. They consist in Gold, Jewels, Plate, Arms, Knives, Cloth, and some Silver; and if they can procure any Rarity which they think will be acceptable, they are sure to do it. The ordinary People bring Wine, Oil, Corn, &c. with what Money they can, and sometimes he makes them wait several Months before he receives it. The Duties brought at the two other times are much the same. His chief Officers are two Adigars or Chief Justices, to whom there lies an Appeal from the Governors of Cities and Provinces. They have Officers under them who carry Staves in their Hands, crooked at the upper End, and these are call'd the Adigar's Hand and Seal. These Men instruct the Adigars in their Duty. His *Dissauvas*, or Governors of Provinces, have a certain Number of Soldiers under them, and are to take Care that good Orders be kept in the several Countries, and that the King's Duties be brought to Court in due Season. They decide Controversies and punish Disorders by Fining or Imprisonment; but Sentence of Death is pronounc'd only by the King. They are also sent on Expeditions with their Soldiers, and wait at Court in their Stations. The King confers this Office *durante bene placito*; and when they are dead or remov'd, their Places are commonly vacant some Months, and sometimes Years, during which the Adigar rules and receives all the Profits. When he promotes any to be Governors, he gives them a Sword, with a Hilt finely inlaid with Silver and Brass, a Scabbard cover'd with Silver, a Knife, a Halbard, and a Town or two for their Maintenance, and receives the same Rents and Profits which were usually paid to the King, besides a small Due from all the other Free Towns. At the same Time the whole Country brings him in Presents, which are also expected at other Times. Private Soldiers also, when they first come to their Post, must appear before their Commander; and if they have nothing else,

present him with 40 Leaves of green Betle. After these Governors are admitted to Court, they never return, but are obliged to keep Guard Day and Night about the King. They have several Officers under them: The Chief are, 1. The *Courli-vidani*, who in all Controversies extorts what he can from the Parties for his Master, without any Regard to Justice; and if they think his Sentence too hard, and appeal to the Governor, he gives them but little Redress, so that they are hated by the People; but the King loves them the more, because he would not have them popular. 2. An Overseer, and under him another Officer like our Constable. 3. The Writer, the Collector of the King's Money, and the Measurer of his Corn. These Officers have separate Divisions like our Hundreds assigned them; but Towns which belong to Idol Temples and Priests, and those given by the King to his Noblemen and Servants, are exempted from their Jurisdiction. Besides these, there are other Officers, who upon the Death of any Head of a Family fetch away the King's Murrals or Herriots, and take certain Measures of Corn from every Man's Crop. These inferior Officers generally get their Places by Bribery, but hold them no longer than the Governor's Pleasure. There are also Country Courts held by these Officers and the chief Inhabitants; but Appeals lie from all these to the Governor, from him to the Adigar, and from him to the King: But these are chargeable; for every thing here is transacted by Bribery, and frequently such as complain to the King are laid in Prison for troubling him. When the King's Officers go into the Country about his Business, they have always great Guards, and the Country must furnish them with Provisions. While the Grandees are in the City, they have the Title of *Worshipful*; but when abroad, that of *Your Honour* and *Excellency*. When they walk out in the Air, they lean in State upon some Man or Boy, and the Adigar has also a Man that goes before him flashing a Whip, to give Notice that he is coming. But all these Honours are dangerous and uncertain; for upon the least Displeasure, the King turns the Possessors out, and many times imprisons or puts them to Death; so that 'tis reckon'd no Disgrace here for a Nobleman to be in

Chains. Every one of them is ready to lay hold of another at the King's Command, in Hopes of having their Post; and when they put the Prisoner to Death, they seize on all his Estate and Family, and generally cut off all the Males that are near a kin, for fear they should seek a Revenge. 'Tis generally observ'd, that the King puts the greatest Honour upon those he designs to ruin; and such as he really favours, are not loaded with many or high Titles; yet the Ambition of the Nobility is so great, that they covet those Preferments. The King's Strength consists more in the natural Situation of his Country, than in Forts or Castles, of which he has few or none; but his Palaces stand on such inaccessible Hills, that they are impregnable. Besides, he has so many Guards at all Passes and Gates made of Thorns, that there's no passing thro' the Country without being observ'd. These Thorn Gates are so contriv'd, as to be pull'd up and down at Pleasure by the Guards, and none can approach the Court without a Passport, which is a Stamp on Clay, and so distinguish'd as discovers the Quality of the Bearer. The common Soldiers are all hereditary, and have Lands assign'd them for their Maintenance, which they forfeit if they neglect their Duty. He appoints no General, because he dare not trust any Man with so much Power; so that all the Chief Officers are independant of one another, which many times occasions such Divisions as frustrate their Designs; but the King had rather have it so than that they should be in a Capacity to conspire against him. When they are sent on an Expedition, they receive their particular Orders from the King, and acquaint him with their Proceedings by particular Messengers, who frequently carry Complaints from the Commanders against one another, in which they are encourag'd by the King, who thinks it his Security to keep them at Variance. The Soldiers are armed with Swords, Pikes, Bows, Arrows, and Guns, and must carry their Provisions, with Pots to dress it, on their Backs. They are grown expert in War by their Differences with the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*; but they seldom fight except they have vast Advantage, so that most of their Exploits are perform'd by Craft and Surprise, it being scarce possible

sible to have any Notice of their Designs, because no Spies can pass thro' their Watches and Thorn Gates without being discover'd. They are the more cautious how they fight, because if they don't succeed, the King punishes them by putting them to the intolerable Drudgery of levelling Mountains, &c. at their own Charge.

Their HISTORY.

THE French Translator of *Ribeyro* says in his Preface, That the first Discovery of this Country by Europeans is owing to *Alexander the Great*, and that *Diodorus Siculus* is the first Author now remaining who mentions it. *Strabo*, *Mela*, and *Ptolomy*, do likewise describe it; but differ so much about its Dimensions, that it is plain neither the Greeks nor the Romans had any distinct Knowledge of it. This Author supposes that the *Malabars* mix'd with the Chinese who first discover'd it, as already mention'd; and those *Malabars* being for the greatest Part Exiles, who in their Language are call'd *Galas*, gave Origine to the Name of *Chingalas* or *Chingales*, which signifies Chinese and Exiles. Others derive it from *Singa*, which in their Tongue signifies a Lion, and say, that the People had that Name to denote their Courage and Valour, and that several of their ancient Kings had the Title of *Singa*. After the Chinese had been a long Time Masters of these Seas, the *Persians* and *Arabians* came in for a Share of the Trade, and exported a great Quantity of Elephants Teeth and Cinnamon; and our Author quotes *Cosmas the Solitary*, who said, That in his Time the Christian Merchants of *Persia* had a Church in the Island; so that he does not doubt but Christianity was introduced here long before the Arrival of the Portuguese. *Baldaeus* says, the Imperial Stile is, Emperor of Ceylon, King of *Candea*, *Cota*, *Ceytavaca*, *Dambadan*, *Amorayapore*, *Jafnapatnam*, Prince of *Ouva*, *Mature*, *Dinavaca*, and the 4 Corles, Great Duke of the 7 Corles, *Matale*, Earl of *Cotiar*, *Trinquenemale*, *Batecalo*, *Velasé*, *Vintana*, *Drembra*, *Panciapato*, *Veta*, *Putelaon*, *Vollare*, *Gale*, *Belligaon*, Marquis of *Duranura*, *Ratienura*, *Tripiane*, *Accipato*, Lord of the Sea-Ports of *Alican*, *Columbo*, *Negombo*, *Chilau*, *Madampe*,

Calpentyn, *Aripiture*, *Manaar*, and of the Fishery of Precious Stones and Pearls, Lord of the *Golden Sun*, &c. The first Chinese King stil'd himself, *The much beloved Son of the always moving Sun*. One of his Successors assum'd the Name of, *The well beloved Lord of the whole Isle*. Another that of, *The well beloved Lion of the Isle*. Another, *The well beloved Conqueror of the Lion*. Another, *The Eye-Apple of the Country*: And another, *The well beloved King*. These two last quarrelling about the Succession, divided Kingdoms, and their Posterity rul'd for a considerable Time after, the eldest Son always succeeding before the others, till *Marandonna Madgora*, i. e. *The Conqueror of the Eye-Apple*, came to the Crown, and commenced a War against his Uncle by the Father's Side, which was terminated by the Marriage of his Son with his said Uncle's Daughter, who had a numerous Issue, and amongst the rest a posthumous Son call'd *Fimala Darma Soris Adascyn*. i. e. *The Conqueror of the whole Kingdom*, because he subdued all the neighbouring Princes, and put those that oppos'd him to Death. He married his Niece, from whose Issue the present Kings are descended. The French Translator of *Ribeyro* says, That in 1505, the Portuguese arrived here the first time under *Laurence d'Almeyda* to cruise upon the *Mahometans*; and losing their Way to the *Maldivé* Islands, came before *Punta de Gallo*, where an Officer, who pretended to be King of *Ceylon*, admitted them to Audience with as much Ceremony as one of the Eastern Monarchs. 'Twas 12 Years after this before the Portuguese return'd and settled here, tho' their Historians pretend that the King of *Ceylon* was made their Tributary in the first Voyage, and engaged to pay 6 Elephants and 1200 Quintals of Cinnamon every Year; and that in 1517, the Year of their Return, another Treaty was made, by which the said Number of Quintals were reduced to 9, and the King of *Cotta* obliged to give 6 Elephants, with some Sapphires and Topazes: But our Author doubts whether they can shew the Original of this Treaty. He owns, that the Portuguese arrived on the Coast almost 200 Years ago, with a small Fleet, and put in at *Columbo*, were well received by the Emperor, and obtained Leave to settle a Factory there, and make some Intrenchments. At

this Time the *Portuguese* were so famous over all the *Indies*, that they thought nothing too hard for them; so that in 1520 they began to build a Fort, which gave Umbrage to the other Factories, and made the Emperor resolve to besiege the Place; in which, after he had lost many Men, he was obliged to retire, and make Peace with them, for which another King declared War against him, and the *Portuguese* assisted him. Before his Death, he appointed his Grandson for his Successor, under Protection of *John III.* of *Portugal*, to whom he sent two Ambassadors with the Effigies of the young Prince, and a Crown of Gold, which, according to his Desire, the King set upon the Head of the Effigies with great Ceremony at *Lisbon* in 1541. The young Prince no sooner mounted the Throne, but *Raja Maduna's* Son, and Nephew to the Emperor of *Cotta*, compelled him to fly for Refuge to the *Portuguese* at *Columbo*, as he did the King of *Candy*, who fled to the *Portuguese* at *Manaar*, where he was baptized by the Name of *Don Philip*, and his Daughter by that of *Denna Catharina*, whom by his Will he declared his universal Heiress; and before his Death, which happen'd soon after, desired the King of *Portugal* to take her into his Protection, with his Kingdoms of *Candy* and *Uva*, and order'd her not to marry without the Consent of the King of *Portugal*, or his Viceroy in the *Indies*. Upon this, the Emperor of *Cotta* and the *Portuguese* confederated against the *Raja*, whom they defeated and kill'd in Battle. The Emperor *Darca Pandar* seiz'd the *Raja's* Dominions, turn'd Christian, was call'd *Don John*, and his Subjects embrac'd Christianity.

Ribeyro and his Translator seem to be so confus'd, that we chuse rather to follow *Baldus* in the remaining History of *Ceylon*. He says, that when the *Portuguese* arrived first there, the King of *Ceylon* was *Raja Singa Adaseyn*. Some say, he was of the Blood Royal; but *Baldus* informs us, that he frequently heard both from the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, that he was originally a Barber; but being a brave Man, and Master of several Languages, which he had acquir'd, together with Military Skill, by his Travels, he subdued the whole Island, besieged the *Portuguese* in *Columbo* with a numerous Army, and reduced them to great Straits; but be-

ing relieved from *Goa*, they forc'd him to raise the Siege. This Prince being Master of the whole Country, except *Gale* and *Columbo*, he forced the Emperor *Mahadaseyn* to fly, who, to amuse the Pursuers, scatter'd his Gold and Jewels on the Road, and made his Escape. *Raja Singa* became afterwards so hateful for his Tyranny, that one of his Favourites, call'd *Vinne Lamantia*, usurp'd the Crown, and was proclaim'd by the Name of, *The Deliverer of the Empire*. This occasion'd a Civil War, which gave the *Portuguese* Time to breath, and they oblig'd *Raja Singa* to resign his Title to *Lamantia*, whom *Raja Singa* allur'd to his Court by fair Promises, where he half buried him alive, caus'd his Brains to be knock'd out with Wooden Balls, and kill'd all his Attendants. *Singa* after this seiz'd his Empress, oppress'd her Subjects, sold many of the rest, and kept the whole in such intolerable Slavery, that they begged Assistance from the *Portuguese*, who surpris'd *Jassnapatnam*, march'd to the Relief of the Subjects of *Candy*, and carry'd with them the aforementioned *Don John* and *Don Philip*, Sons to *Lamantia*. They made the latter King, the former Generalissimo, but left the true Heiress, *Donna Catherine*, their Niece, and Daughter to *Mahadaseyn*, at *Manaar*. Thus the Inhabitants of *Candy* were brought to confederate with the *Portuguese* against *Raja Singa*; but *Don John* being angry that the *Portuguese* had preferred *Don Philip* before him, dissembled his Resentments against him and the *Portuguese* till he fortified *Candy*; then he poison'd *Don Philip*, and was proclaim'd Emperor, by the Title of *Ladarma Soria*, or Deliverer of the Empire, which his Father *Lamantia* had enjoy'd before him. He order'd the *Portuguese* to quit his Dominions, because of their Treachery, defeated *Raja Singa* in a bloody Battle, from whence he escaped, and gave himself a mortal Wound, he was so much concerned at this Disgrace. When he lay on his Death-Bed, he ask'd one Set of Priests, Whether he could be pardon'd for the Murder of his Uncle, Mother-in-Law, and Brothers? And they having answer'd, No; he said, That if he were unpardonable already, he might do as he pleas'd, for he could be no worse, and therefore ordered all these Priests to be burnt. Then he ask'd the same Question.

of another Set, who being thus forewarn'd of their Danger, they told him, That tho' he could not be admitted to Heaven, yet by true Repentance, and their Intercession, he might be put in a middle Place betwixt Heaven and Hell, without any Sense of Pain. This pleas'd him, and he told them, That as he had punish'd the other Priests who made God cruel, he would reward them for representing him merciful, and he soon after died, in the 120th Year of his Age. Upon his Death, *Don John* attempted to make himself Master of the Crown; but the late King's Secretary got himself proclaimed by the Name of *Janiere Wandaar*, and was assisted by 12500 *Portuguese* from *Goa*, who sought by this Opportunity to make themselves Masters of the Island, and for that End brought over the petty Princes one after another to their Party, who agreed to assemble an Army against *Don John* of 139246 Fighting Men, 11740 Pioneers, above 1000 Elephants, and 29500 Oxen for Carriage, besides the Quota of the *Portuguese*, which was 3898 Men, above 1000 Elephants, and 19900 Oxen. After several Rencounters, wherein *Don John* got the Advantage, they routed him at last, and took *Walane*, where they killed 1500 of the Inhabitants, which was such a Terror to the rest of the Country, that they submitted. *Don John* and his Empress retired with his shatter'd Forces into the Woods. The *Portuguese* required the Islanders to own the King of *Portugal*; but they desir'd that *Dona Catharina* might be brought from *Manaar*, and declar'd their Empress, and she was crown'd accordingly at *Candy*. *Don John*, in the Habit of a Beggar, set the City on Fire in several Places, which was soon extinguish'd. He fled again to the Desarts, and 20000 Crowns Reward was promis'd by the *Portuguese* to any that should bring him dead or alive. The *Portuguese* after this grew so proud, covetous, and insolent, that the *Cingales* thought of shaking off their Tyranny by a general Massacre. In the mean time *Janiere* solicited the *Portuguese* General for Leave to marry the Empress; and upon Refusal, vow'd Revenge.

That same Night *Janiere* sent to *Don John* in the Desert, and offered to share the Government with him if he would join him, which was agreed on. The *Portuguese* in-

tercepting some of the Letters, betray'd and murder'd *Janiere*. This was mighty displeasing to the young Empress, who told the *Portuguese* they would pay dear for it, since he had done them such signal Services. *Don John* represented this Treachery to the Natives in such lively Terms, that they joined unanimously against the *Portuguese*, defeated them, and took their General, with *Dona Catharina*. Thus *Don John* was restored to the Kingdom, and married *Dona Catharina*, who was but 12 Years old. Another Body of *Portuguese* and *Spaniards* arrived in the Island, gain'd most of the little Princes with Presents, and erected two Forts, but were routed by *Don John*. About this Time *Dominico Coire*, a noted Soldier, and his Brother, revolted to *Don John* upon a Disgust by the *Portuguese*. *Don John* made *Dominico* a General, and sent him to besiege *Gale*, where his Army was ruin'd, and himself taken and murder'd, contrary to Promise, which *Don John* severely reveng'd, by killing some *Portuguese* that were in his Hands, and cutting off the Ears and Noses of others, whom he sent to *Columbo* to tell the *Portuguese* General, That he would treat all his Men so if he did not release his Prisoners. This rais'd a Mutiny in the Garrison, so that *Oriedo* the *Portuguese* General narrowly escaped by the Intercession of the Monks. The *Portuguese* were afterwards betrayed by two of their own Deserters, and sustained great Loss. In 1603, the Dutch Vice-Admiral *de Weert* arrived at *Ceylon*, and enter'd into a Treaty with *Don John*; but was barbarously murder'd by him, with his Attendants, on Suspicion of his being in the Interest of the *Portuguese*. Soon after this, *Don John* died in great Misery, leaving one Son and two Daughters by *Dona Catharina*. His Death occasioned a Competition among the *Grandeess* for the Crown; the Chief of whom being murder'd by *Cennuieraat*, Brother-in-Law to *Don John*, on Pretence of defending his Nephew the young Prince, he afterwards married *Dona Catharina*, and took the Name of *Camapati Mahadasyn*. He applied to the Dutch against the *Portuguese*, and the States General and Prince *Maurice* sent Letters and an Ambassador to him in 1609. This had so good an Effect, that a very advantageous League was concluded with him by the Dutch in 1612, who

who had all the Trade of Jewels, Precious Stones, &c. allowed them. Their Ambassador was made a Prince and General of Ceylon, and became the Emperor's chief Favourite. The Portuguese, to obstruct the Settlement of the Dutch, surpris'd one of their new Factories; but were overtaken and defeated, and some of the lesser Princes who espoused their Cause were routed, taken, and put to Death. Soon after this, the Empress's eldest Son died, the Grief of which shorten'd her own Days. On her Death-Bed she sent for the Dutch General and another Prince, whom, with the Emperor's Consent, she made Governors of her Children, and declared, that nothing troubled her more than that she did not live to see the Portuguese expell'd Ceylon, because of their former Barbarity and Cruelty, and soon after died, professing her self a Christian, and bewailing that she had worshipp'd Idols, contrary to her Conscience. The Dutch General administred the best Comfort to her he could in her last Moments, and exhorted her to trust in Christ. Her Death threw the Emperor, who loved her entirely, into a dangerous Illness; upon which he summoned an Assembly of the Princes and States, to whom he recommended the Care of the Government, and of his own and the Empress's Children by a former Marriage, and named those who should have the Administration during their Minority, one of the Chief of them being the Dutch General. The Portuguese improving the Opportunity of the Empress's Death, &c. raised a Rebellion, which was soon quash'd, and their Leaders put to Death. In 1614, the Emperor and the Dutch General had a bloody Engagement with another Body of Rebels, assisted by the Portuguese, wherein the Dutch General and the Indian Prince of *Ouve* were both wounded. Upon this, the Portuguese propos'd a Peace, which was rejected, and they were routed. In 1615, M. *Boschhouwer*, the Dutch General, who had attained to the chief Dignities in Ceylon, and settled their Affairs there, obtained Leave from the Emperor to go as his Ambassador to Holland, where he arriv'd; but expecting greater Respect, because of his being a Prince of Ceylon, than the Dutch East-India Company would grant him, he went to Denmark in Disgust, enter'd into the Service of King

Christian IV. and set out in one of his Frigats for Ceylon in 1618, but died by the Way. The Portuguese being encouraged by the Absence of the Dutch General, and having defeated the *Malabars* who attacked them in *Jaffnapatnam*, they procur'd a Peace with the Emperor, and designed to exclude all other Europeans. To this End they built several Forts, contrary to Agreement with the Emperor, who thereupon took Arms, routed them, and besieged *Columbo*, but was forced to raise the Siege, and died in 1632, leaving his Empire to his 3 Sons, the eldest being made Emperor, by the Name of *Raja Singa Adaseyn*. The Sons disagreeing betwixt themselves, and the Portuguese being reinforc'd from *Gaa*, they made War with the new Emperor, but were defeated, and sued for Peace, which was granted them; but they soon broke it. Upon this, the Emperor invit'd the Dutch again into Ceylon, receiv'd their Deputies honourably, and made a Treaty with them. The Portuguese endeavour'd to make them suspected to the Emperor, but in vain, and in 1638 the Dutch beat the Portuguese Fleet before *Goa*. The Portuguese were routed by the Emperor in their March to *Candy*, and the Dutch took *Batecalo*, and enter'd into a new Treaty with the Emperor. They afterwards took *Punte-Galle* and *Caleture* from the Portuguese, and defeated them by Land near *Paneture* and *Montual* in 1655. The Emperor and they join'd in the Siege of *Columbo*, and the Dutch General *Hulst* had a splendid Audience from the Emperor; after which, as he was viewing the Works of *Columbo*, he was killed by a Musket-shot, to the great Grief of the Dutch. He was succeeded by *Isbrand Gotskens*, who took *Columbo* by Capitulation in May 1656. We refer to *Baldeus* for the Particulars of this famous Siege. The Emperor not being acquainted with this Capitulation, fell out with the Dutch, forbid all Commerce with them, and plunder'd their Lands and Subjects. In the meantime the Dutch took some Portuguese Ships, and Mr. *Koster*, one of the Chiefs of the Dutch, being deluded by vain Promises of the *Cingalese*, was murder'd by them, notwithstanding the great Service he had done them against the Portuguese, with whom the Emperor made an underhand Treaty; but the Dutch worsted the Portuguese both by Sea

Sea and Land, and took *Manaar*, as they did afterwards *Jassnapatam* in 1658, where some *Portuguese* that were suffer'd to stay endeavour'd to betray them, but were discover'd and put to Death. At this Time the *Dutch* establish'd the Protestant Religion here, wherein our Author *Baldew* was a great Instrument.

Of the INHABITANTS.

KNOX and *Ribeyro* say, the *Dutch* possess about a 4th Part of the Island. The other Foreign Inhabitants are, 1. *Malabars*, who pay a Duty to the King for their Land, and have the same Privileges with the Natives. 2. *Moors*, who hold no Land, but live by carrying Goods to the Sea-Ports, which are all in the Hands of the *Dutch*, and inhabited by *Malabars*, *Moors*, and some Popish Blacks, who for most Part pay Tribute to the *Dutch*. The Natives are called *Chingulays* or *Chingalese*. They are ignorant of their Original, and our Authors doubt the Verity of the *Portuguese* Tradition, That they are descended from a Colony of the *Chinese*, because they differ very much in their Language, Features, and Diet, but think they came rather from the *Malabars*. They are most like the *Europeans*, and are of two Sorts; 1. Those that are wild, call'd *Vaddahs*, who live in the Woods, and subsist on Venison, which they dry and sell to others. They are very expert Bow-men, and carry a little Ax, which they stick in by their Sickles to cut Honey out of hollow Trees, where the Bees make their Hives. They live by the Rivers under Trees; and that they mayn't be surpris'd by Wild Beasts, lay Boughs round them. Some of them are in a sort of Subjection to the King; and when the Officers find them out, give them Elephants-Teeth, Honey, Wax, and Deers-Flesh, for which they have Bows, Arrows, Cloth, and other Necessaries. They are very curious in their Arrows, which, when they want, they carry a Load of Flesh in the Night, and hang it up at a Smith's Shop, with a Leaf hung by it in the Form they would have them made. The Smith leaves them at the same Place, and if made according to the Pattern, they will bring him more Flesh; but if otherwise, they are

sure to do him a Mischief. They us'd to plunder the *Moors* that traded to the Sea-Ports, till the King gave Orders to take them dead or alive, and hung up some of their Leaders. Several of them us'd to come to the Towns, and trade with the Inhabitants, till they were pressed for the King's Service against the *Dutch*, which made them remove further into the Woods. They go almost naked, offer Sacrifice under Trees, during which the Men and Women dance, and every Company has its separate Bounds, beyond which they must not hunt, or gather Honey, &c. and sometimes they quarrel about it. They preserve Flesh against a Time of Scarcity, by putting Honey into a hollow Tree, which they fill up with the Flesh, and stop with Clay. They give Hunting-Dogs for Portions with their Daughters, and are said to be very courteous in the main.

2. The civiliz'd Inhabitants are proper and well favour'd, wear a Cloth about their Loins, Doublets and Caps, with a short Hanger by their Side, and a Knife in their Bosom. They are very active and ingenious in all Manufacturies, except of Iron, but covetous, great Tongue-Pads, Lyars, very proud, and are extream wakeful and hardy. *Ribeyro* says, they marry and eat with the *Brahmens*, and have several Tribes among them, which will not match or eat with their Inferiors, and none but the Kindred will eat their Leavings. They don't bear Malice long, and seldom shed Blood or strike one another, even scarce so much as their Slaves. The Mountaineers and Lowlanders differ, the latter being good-natur'd and sincere; whereas the former are ill-natur'd and false, but more complaisant in their Speech and Behaviour. They abhor Theft, and extol Chastity, Temperance and Truth, tho' they own their Weakness in not practising them. They love such as are devout, and believe the Evidence of Christians before that of their Countrymen. They are superstitious Observers of Omens, think Sneezing a bad one, and none must sneeze, cough, or spit, in the King's Presence. There is a little Creature like a Lizard, which, when it cries, makes them stop in their Business, and they take it for granted that a bad Planet rules that Moment. They reckon it good Luck if they

meets

meet a white Man or a big-bellied Woman in the Morning, and the contrary if they meet such as are deformed. When they travel in Company, they go one after another, because their Paths are narrow, and talk all the Way. Both Sexes are for most Part grave and stately, quick of Apprehension, nice and temperate in their Diet, and neat in their Apparel, but full of Sloth and Flattery.

Their Women wear a Callico Waistcoat, flourish'd with Blue and Red, and have a Cloth which hangs down from their Waistes, longer or shorter, according to their Qualities. They have a Piece of Silk flung over their Heads, Jewels in their Ears, and Ornaments about their Necks, Arms, and Middle. They think it their Glory to be counted saving, and are proud of their Proverb, That Scraps and Parings will serve them, but the best is for their Husbands. The Men are so far from being jealous, that the greatest Ladies in the Land have the Freedom to converse with whom they please, even in their Husbands Presence; and tho' they be stately and keep Servants, put their Hands to any Household Work. They have several Degrees among them, which don't consist in Riches, but in their Descent, and are distinguish'd by their Garb and Way of Sitting. They reckon it so dishonourable to marry beneath their Degrees, that a Woman who does so is hated by her Relations, who make no Scruple to kill her; yet a Man of the highest Rank may lie with a Woman of the lowest without Offence, provided he does not diet or marry with her, otherwise both are imprison'd or fin'd, and the Man degraded. If the Husband catch his Wife in Adultery, he may kill both her and the Man.

Their several Degrees are, 1. *Hondrews* or Nobles, out of whom the King chuses his chief Officers. Their Men wear a Cloth half way down their Legs, and the Women to their Heels, with one End flung over their Shoulders to cover their Breasts, which distinguishes them from the other Women, who must go naked from their Waist upwards, and wear their Clothes not much lower than their Knees, except in cold Weather, when both Sexes throw their Cloths over their Backs, and must tell the *Hondrews* when they meet them that they

do it for Warmth. They are distinguished by their Caps, which are like Mitres, and all of one Colour, which is either white or blue; whereas those of Inferiors are Party-colour'd, and the Flaps always red. There are two Sorts of *Hondrews*, one of which is inferior to the other only in Point of Marriage. Most of the *Cingalese* are of this Degree. They reckon all Christians equal to them, but think it reflects much on their Honour that they eat Beef, and don't wash their Hands after being at Stool. The King sometimes confers an Honour upon them like Knighthood, but not hereditary. The King puts a Ribband about their Heads embroider'd with Gold and Silver, and gives them the Title of *Mandiamca*. Next to these are,

2. The Goldsmiths, Blacksmiths, Carpenters, and Painters, who are all of one Rank, wear the same Apparel, and sit on Stools, which is a Privilege granted to none below them. They were anciently reckon'd little inferior to the meanest Sort of *Hondrews*, and were permitted to eat with them: But a certain Smith having made some *Hondrews* wait in his Shop while he went to Dinner, the former made a Decree, which they observe to this Day, That all of his Rank should for ever be deprived of the Honour of having *Hondrews* to eat in their Houses. The Smiths which live in the King's Towns take a great deal of State upon them, because they have each a Parcel of Towns belonging to them, which none must work for but themselves. They mend every Man's Tools for a certain Rate of Corn, to be paid in Harvest; and when the Peasants have occasion for new Tools, they must not only pay for them when made, but must first come in an humble Manner with a Present of Rice, Hens, &c. or a Bottle of Rack, to desire him to appoint his Time when they shall come to have their Work done, and they come upon the Day with Iron and Coals. The Smith sits very stately on his Stool before the Anvil, and fashions the Tools with a little Hammer, while the Peasants blow the Bellows, and work with the great Hammer. If it be to be filed, he makes them grind it first, and he does the rest.

3. The 3d Rank consists of all other Craftsmen and Artificers, of whom the Keepers

Keepers of Elephants are reckon'd equal with Smiths, but cannot eat or intermarry with them. They may sit on Stools, and wear the same Apparel with the *Hondrews*, but not eat with them. The Son is of the same Trade with the Father, and the Daughter, whose Portion consists chiefly in Tools, marries to none but those of the same Craft. Barbers of either Sex wear Doublets, but may not sit on Stools, nor will any eat with them. Potters are inferior, and wear only a Cloth a little below their Knees; but at a *Hondrew's* House he may take a Pot which has a Pipe to it, and pour the Water into his own Mouth; but the rest of the inferior Degrees must hold their Hands to their Mouths, and gape while the *Hondrews* pour the Water in. The latter were obliged to grant them this Honour, because they had agreed to make no Pots with Spouts for any but themselves. There are abundance of Washers, who wash for all Degrees, except below a Potter. Those of either Sex carry a Cloth on their Shoulders, scald their Linen with the Steem of a Kettle of Ley, wash them clean in a River, and then dash them against a Rock. There are some that make and sell Jaggory, which others may eat, but not with them. Below these are the Husbandmen and Soldiers, who derive their Profession from their Predecessors. Their Weavers are Astrologers, and pretend to calculate Nativities and tell Fortunes. They also officiate with their Musick and Dances at their Sacrifices, and carry away the Offering, which is reckon'd a very mean Office. There are also Basket or Mat-makers, who make Fans for Corn, Bedsteads, Stools, &c. They and their Wives must wear nothing on their Heads. None may take upon themselves the Name of the *Hondrews*, nor pretend to be of an higher Quality than they really are. All Foreigners are preferred before these inferior Ranks. The *Hondrews* Names end always in *Oppow*, and the others in *Adgah*.

4. Slaves make another Rank. Their Masters allow them Land and Cattle for their Maintenance, which many of them improve to a vast Increase; but they are not permitted to keep Slaves under them. Their Masters secure them in the Enjoy-

ment of what they get by their Industry; and when they take new ones, first provide them with a Wife, and then give them a House to settle in. Those born of the *Hondrews* retain their Honour, tho' they come to be Slaves.

5. Beggars. Their Ancestors, who us'd to furnish the King's Table with Venison, brought Man's Flesh instead of it, which so enrag'd the King, that he order'd all of the Tribe to be turn'd out of their Dwellings, to beg their Bread from Door to Door for ever, and to be counted the basest of all the People. The Cheat was detected by the King's Barber, and in Revenge they will not eat in a Barber's House to this Day. They must not fetch Water from the common Wells, but from Holes and Rivers; nor will any body touch these Beggars for fear of Defilement. They beg with their Families in whole Troops, and the Men carry what they get in Baskets hung at each End of a Pole on their Shoulders, where they come to beg, the Women dance and shew Tricks, while the Men beat Drums. *Ribeyro* says, they'll twirl a Brass Basin with wonderful Slight on the Top of one of their Fingers, and toss up 9 Balls at once, catching them one by one as they come down, and striking 'em up again. They'll put several colour'd Beads of one Size into their Mouths, and take them out all of the same Colour. By such diverting Tricks, and their fawning Titles and Importunities, they get something of every one they meet with, and live as well or better than any in the Island. They lie in Hovels, which they build in remote Places, and in Highways under Trees. The King obliges them to make Ropes of the Hides of Cows which die of themselves, for catching Elephants, and they have all the Flesh to their own use. They commit Incest without any Scruple; and when the King cuts off any Noblemen, he orders their Wives and Daughters to be carried to the Side of a River, and deliver'd up to these Beggars, which every one reckons worse than Death, and often avoid it by drowning themselves. He adds, that some of those which dwell farthest from the Towns breed Cattle for Sale.

Of their RELIGION, FESTIVALS, &c.

They worship both Gods and Devils, over which they acknowledge a Supreme, whom they call the Creator of Heaven and Earth, and believe that he still rules it, and sends forth other Deities as his Deputies, which they think are the Souls of good Men, and that Devils are the Souls of the Wicked, sent to punish them. They have another God to whom they ascribe the Salvation of Souls. They call him *Buddou*, and worship him in the Form of a Giant above 30 Foot high. They believe that he led a holy and mortified Life in the Island for many Years, and then ascended to Heaven from the Top of a high Mountain call'd *Adam's Peak*. By their Computation of Time, which is about 40 Years after Christ, it is probable this Story might take its Rise from *St. Thomas* the Apostle's being among them. They hold the Sun and Moon to be Gods, have innumerable Temples, many of which are of exquisite Workmanship, with curious Images and Figures, which shews them to be the Performance of better Artists than any now among them. Their Idols are monstrous, like those of the other *Indians* already described, and are of all Metals. Many of their Temples are furnish'd with Arms, some of which are of a strange Kind; but in the Temples of their *Buddou* there is none, because they say he is for Peace, only there are the Images of Men with yellow Coats, cross-legg'd, their Hair frizzled, and their Hands before them like Women. They say, they don't own their Images to be Gods, but worship them as Representers of them to their Memory. They suffer no Women who have their *Menses* to come near their Temples. These Churches have more Revenues than the King, and their Officers live in as great State as the Courtiers, and the Temples are dedicated to their Idols. Private Persons have likewise small Chapels set upon Pillars, with little Idols, before whom they light Candles and Lamps, and present them with Flowers and Victuals. They have several Sorts of Priests and Bishops, and one that resembles a Pope,

who has great Revenues, and is always attended with great Numbers of Priests. *Ribeyro* thinks, that they derive their Discipline and Rites from some *Persian* Christians who settled here in the Time of *Justinian* the Emperor, but for want of Teachers fell off again to Paganism. They have an Order of Priests call'd *Gonnis*, who were exempted from all Punishments, which encouraged them to enter into Plots against the Government; but the King in his Time put many of them to Death, which has made them more quiet ever since. These *Gonnis*, tho' well endow'd, have many Gifts from the People, who have a mighty Confidence in their Prayers, send for them to sick People, conduct them in State under an Umbrella, and entertain them the best they can, till the Patient either die or recover. These are also their most noted Preachers. They admit none to their Order but Persons of Birth and Education. Their chief Order is the *Tirinannes*, of whom there are but 3 or 4 at a time, and those are chosen by the King. They have great Revenues, and are superior to all the other Priests, who envy them, and say, Tho' they live well here, they shall be punished hereafter, for enjoying the *Buddou's* Land, and doing him so little Service. Their Habit is the same with that of the *Gonnis*, viz. a yellow Coat gather'd together about their Waist, and coming over their Left Shoulder, is girt about them with a Belt of fine Packthread. Their Heads are shav'd, and they go bare-headed, with a round Fan in their Hands. They have great Honours and Privileges, and pay no Taxes to the King. The People bow to them, but they bow to none. They are allowed to carry the broad End of the Tallipot Leaf foremost over their Heads, and are entertain'd wherever they go with a white Cloth, and a Mat laid on a Stool for them to sit upon, which are Honours peculiar to the King. They must not work, drink Wine, touch a Woman, nor eat above one Meal a Day, only they may eat Fruit and Rice mix'd with Water Morning and Evening. They may eat any lawful Flesh ready dress'd, provided they do not consent to the Death of it. When they have a Mind to turn Laymen for the Sake of Marrying, &c. they fling their Coat into a River, and wash them-

themselves all over. When one of these *Torinannes* visits the Sick, he is conducted under a Cloth held up by 4 Men, with Drums and Pipes, and such other State as is done to none else but the King, and he reads the Office to the Patient out of a Book made of Tallipot Leaves. They have another Sort not distinguish'd in their Habit from the Laity, only their Clothes are clean, and they wash before they go to their Service. Besides, they follow Husbandry, &c. They are pick'd out of the *Hondrews*, and have nothing but a Piece of Land belonging to the Pagod, where they officiate. Their Times of Worship are every Morning and Evening, more or less, as the Revenues of the Pagod hold out. They offer boil'd Rice and any other Victuals to their Idols, except Flesh. They have another Sort of Priests call'd *Jaddeses*, whose Temples have no Revenue, and are built at the private Charge of some pious Person, who also officiates as Priest. They paint the Walls with fierce Images of Men holding Bills, Swords, Arrows, and Shields. They are call'd for most Part the Temples of *Jacco* or the Devil, to whose Memory they keep some extraordinary Festivals. When he is sent for to the Sick, they give him a red Cock, which he dedicates to the Devil, by holding it in his Hand, and an Arrow with it, and telling the Idol, That if he restores the Party, that Cock shall be sacrific'd. After this, he lets it loose among the rest of the Poultry for a Year or two, and then comes for all that are so dedicated, on Pretence of sacrificing them, tho' he often sells them.

When they enquire any thing of the Idols, the Priests take up some of their Instruments on their Shoulders, and pretend to be mad, and they look upon what he speaks as spoken by their God. *Wednesdays* and *Saturdays* are their chief Days of Worship. They hold, That none but the God or Devil that punish'd them hath Power to restore them; and when they are sick, enquire the Name of him that was the Author of it, by hanging a Pair of Scissars on a Bow-string, and repeating the Names of their Gods, till they come to his Name, when they say the Scissars will shake; after which they direct their Sacrifices to him. They likewise worship the Planets, which

they reckon 9. (by the Addition, as our Author supposes, of the Dragon's Head and Tail.) They ascribe their Fortunes to them, and say, that neither God nor the Devil can alter their ill Dispositions. When they worship them, which is in the Night, they make Images of Clay, and pretend to know those that are their Enemies by certain Magical Tricks, and paint them with divers Colours and monstrous Shapes. The Patient sits before them, and Victuals are likewise offer'd up. The Ceremonies continue with Drums, Pipes, and Dances, till Day-break, when they cast the Images in the Highways to be trampled under Foot, and the Victuals is given to the Attendants and others that wait on purpose. When they worship those whom they call Devils, they build a new House in their Yards like a Barn, and cover it with Leaves and Flowers. They put into it some of the Weapons which belong to the other Temples, lay them on Stools, set Victuals before them, and then perform the Sacrifice as before. Every Country has its several Spirits and Devils, to which they are subject, and stand in greater Awe of, than they do of them they call their Gods. They say their Country is full of them, and if they did not worship them, they would certainly destroy them, and therefore own the Happiness of the Christians in not being subject to the Infernal Spirits, which often possess many of these Pagans, and make them run mad, grow Speechless, tremble, or dance upon the Fire without any Hurt, if we may believe *Ribeyro*, who says, they sometimes continue thus two or three Months together before they die. They ascribe this Madness to some Breach of Promise made to the Devil, or for eating some Fruits dedicated to him. But our Author believes they do so only to prevent its being stolen or begged. The Devil often cries out among them, and *Ribeyro* says, that soon before or after the King cut off People, he has heard a shrill Voice, that made the very Dogs to tremble, and flies from one Place to another swifter than a Bird. It is heard only in *Candi-Uda*. The *Chingulays* pretend to silence it by a hearty Curse, i. e. *Beef-eating Slave, be gone, be damn'd*, or the like. When the smaller Devils fail them, they make Offerings in the Woods to the great one, of

which one is always a red Cock. While the Ceremony lasts, Men in a Diabolical Disguise, with Bells about their Legs, sing and dance, and call to him to come and eat it in the Presence of the Patient.

Their solemn Festivals are, 1. That call'd *Perahar*, or the New Moon, in *June* and *July*, in Honour of the Gods that govern the Earth, &c. There is a great Procession at the City of *Candy*, when the Priest brings out a Garland of Flowers about a painted Stick, wrapped up in Branch'd Silk, which the People worship, and present it their Offerings. After this, the Priest puts the painted Stick on his Shoulder, ties a Cloth about his Mouth to keep his Breath from defiling it, rides on an Elephant in great Pomp thro' the City, and 40 or 50 Elephants hung with Bells before him. After that, follow Men in the Habit of Giants, with a Multitude of Drummers, Trumpeters, and Pipers. After them come several Dancers, with such Women, Washers, and Potters, as are us'd in the Service of the Temple, each Trade by it self, three in a Row holding Hands, with Musick and Dancing between each Company. Then comes the Priest who personates the God and Maker of Heaven and Earth, and another sits behind him holding an Umbrella over his Head. He is follow'd by two Elephants, mounted each by a Priest, with Umbrella's held over them. These 3 Priests represent 3 of their greatest Gods, who have each a Temple. They are follow'd by Women-Cooks dress'd in the finest Apparel, with Whisks in their Hands to keep off the Flies. After them, some Thousands of the most beautiful Ladies richly habited, Hand in Hand, and 3 in a Row. The Procession is clos'd by Commanders and their Soldiers. Poles are set up with Flags and Penons, and hung with Branches of Coco-Trees, and Lamps burn Night and Day. Before these Processions, the Gods are set a great while in the Temple Doors, that the People may worship and bring them Offerings. Two Days before the Full Moon, the Gods have each a Palanquin carried after them, with several Relicks. The King attempted to suppress this Procession in 1664, but it caus'd a Rebellion; since which, he has conniv'd at it.

Their chief God is *Buddon*, before men-

tion'd, and to him they perform most Worship; but in short, few of them discover any Zeal for their Religion till they grow sick or old, and they own the Folly of their Superstitions, but say they are forc'd to them, to prevent the Mischief that would be otherwise done 'em by Evil Spirits; and when they are disappointed in their Prayers, they speak very contemptibly of their Gods, and their King, says *Ribeyro*, esteem'd their Religion less than his Subjects did, and tolerated Christian Worship without Molestation. An Impostor set up among them, who pretended to be a Prophet, to work Miracles, and to heal the Sick. The High Priest was in Confederacy with him, and they plunder'd the richest Temples, at which the King did not concern himself; but finding at last that they aim'd at the Crown, he cut them both off. The People believe the Resurrection, and worship their Ancestors; for they think, that the Gods are the Spirits of deceased good Men, who, tho' mean in this World, are eminent in the other; and that the Wicked shall be turn'd into Beasts, and devour'd by their own Children. They have the same Opinion of moral Virtues with us, but reckon their chief Goodness consists in being liberal to their Priests, in Sacrifices, in not shedding Blood, and in abstaining from all Flesh. They are charitable to Foreigners as well as Natives, and out of every Measure of Rice lay by a Handful for the Poor. There's a Sort of sturdy *Mahometan* Beggars among them, whose Temple is maintain'd by a certain Duty on every Freehold, which they take by Force if not willingly paid them. They have Houses and Lands, which are enjoy'd by their Heirs, say their Prayers on Beads like the Papists, and have a greater Respect for Christians than others, because they think them more just.

Of their HOUSES, APPAREL, and CUSTOMS.

THE same Authors say, the Houses of the common People are little thatch'd Cottages, built with Sticks, and dawb'd with Clay, which they smooth. They must not have them above one Story high, cover them

them with Tiles, or plaister them with Lime, but have a white Clay they use in its stead. Every one builds his own House, except the Nobility, who use Carpenters. They have Timber enough for cutting, and instead of Nails fasten it with Rattans. The Country being hot, many of 'em build their Houses of Hurdles. The poorer Sort have only one Room without Chimneys, so that the Roof is blacken'd with Smoak. Few have above two Rooms, except Noblemen, whose Houses are handsome and commodious, built in Form of a Square, with a Court in the Middle, round which there are Banks of Clay, dawb'd with soft Cow-Dung, on which they sit. Their Wives, Children, Slaves and Servants, dwell in Out-Houses. Their Furniture is some Pots of Earth, and Brass Stools without Backs, (for none must have others but the King) some Baskets for their Corn, some Mats to sleep on, Ebony Pestles, and Wooden Mortars to dress their Rice, a Grater for their Coco-Nuts, a Stone for grinding Pepper and Turmeric, and some common Utensils for Building; but no Tables, because they eat on the Ground in Brass or Earthen Vessels. Their Diet is mean; for if they have Rice, Salt, a few green Leaves, the Juice of a Lemon, and Pepper, they think it enough. What Flesh and Fish they have, they sell to Strangers. The Nobility have 5 or 6 Dishes at a Meal, but not above two of Fish or Flesh, the rest being Pottage, after the *Portuguese* Fashion. The King's Officers rob them of most of their Poultry, and none but Strangers must keep Hogs and Goats. They are very cleanly in their Cookery, and make their Victuals savoury. They honour their chief Guests with a Stool, &c. to sit on, and set Victuals on another before them. Their common Drink is Water; and if they have Arack, they take it before they eat. They don't talk at Meals, and are serv'd by their Wives, who eat what they leave. They wash both before and after Meat. No Body must be in the Room while the Women put the Rice in the Pot, for otherwise they say it won't swell. They boil Lemon-Juice as thick and black as Tar, which they use for Sawce, and make several Sorts of Sweetmeats, which they use in Journies, and are very savoury and refreshing. Their Wo-

men's Housewifry consists chiefly in dressing their Rice, fetching Wood and Water, and cutting Herbs and Pumpkins. Their Entertainments of Strangers consist in green Leaves, which they eat raw, with Lime, Betle-Nuts, and Tobacco. If the Master of the House does not speedily ask the Stranger what he comes for, 'tis taken as an Affront. They seldom visit but to beg or borrow, and if they be Relations, they are as reserv'd as if they were Strangers; and if they stay above a Night, which is not usual, they assist the Man of the House in what Work he has to do. The Men's Way of saluting is to hold forth their two Hands with the Palms upward, and bow their Bodies. Superiors hold out but one Hand to an Inferior; or if much below them, make a Nod serve. The Women hold up both Hands Edge-wise to their Foreheads. Their Apparel is much like the *Malabars*. Those of Quality delight in plated Scabbards for their Hangers, curiously engraven, a painted Cane or a Tuck in their Hands, and are attended by Boys with long Hair, bare-headed, and a Bag of Betle Leaves and Nuts. They have commonly a Silver Box with Lime in their Hands, and the Grandees have Men who bear Arms before and behind them. None must wear Shoes or Stockings but the King; and it is so usual for them to borrow Jewels and Apparel when they go abroad, that they think it no Shame to tell it. The Men sleep together at one End of the Room, and the Women and Children at the other. The Men's Bedsteads are of Canes or Rattans, without Curtains or Tester, but have one Mat to cover them, and another to lie on, with a Straw Pillow. The Women lie on Mats by the Fire, with their Feet towards it, and Blocks instead of Pillows. The younger Children creep in under the Corner of their Mother's Clothes if they find themselves cold, and all of them are so little given to Sleep, that they rise frequently in the Night to eat Betle and smoak Tobacco; after which they lie down, and sing themselves asleep again. They are taught from their Infancy to sing when they go to Bed. Most of them have naturally good Voices, and are pretty good Poets in their Way. Their Children, when pretty big, sleep promiscuously in one another's Houses; and they

they reckon it no Disgrace for one another's Sons and Daughters of the same Rank to lie together, but make their Boasts, That their Daughters have such and such young Men at their Command; and out of Love to their Mistresses, they commonly help their Fathers in their Employment; for they reckon nothing Whoredom but lying with those of inferior Quality, and they will readily compliment their Superiors with the Use of their Wives and Daughters. The Matches are commonly made by their Parents, which the Youth seldom contradict. The Man sends the Woman her Wedding-Clothes, which is a Cloth 6 or 7 Yards long, and a Linen Waistcoat wrought with Blue and Red; and if he be not able to buy, he borrows them. If the Man carries it himself, he sleeps with the Woman that Night, and then appoints the Marriage-Day, when he goes with his Friends, provides two Meals, eats with his Bride in the same Dish, and ties his Thumb to hers, sleeps with her at Night, and carries her home next Day, when she must walk before him. He gives a new Entertainment to his Friends, who return it in Presents. Another Ceremony is thus: The Man stands with one End of the Woman's Cloth about his Loins, and the other about hers, then they pour Water upon them, which they reckon a firm Marriage. The elder Sort make their Matches in Bed, for they don't value Maidenheads. The Woman goes home with him next Day, but they part at Pleasure, only the Man must return Part of the Portion, which is Cattle, Slaves, and Money; and if they have Children, the Man takes the Boys, and the Woman the Girls, and thus they change 4 or 5 times before they are settled. The Women are not very prolific, for they make Use of an Herb to promote Miscarriage while young. 'Tis common with all the Brothers of a Family to have one Wife, and the Children call them all Fathers. They commonly avoid the Punishment of Adultery, by having Ashes in readiness to throw them in their Husband's Face when he catches them with their Gallants, who make their Escape in the mean time, for they can't be punish'd except apprehended in the Fact. The Women suffer no Men to be in their Houses during their *Menses*, and they must not sit on Stools in a Man's

Presence. Men usually charge one another in the King's Name to do this or that, but the Women must not on Pain of losing their Tongues. The Punishments for Men are Imprisonment, Chains, or standing with a Weight on their Backs till they pay their Fines, and the Women carry Baskets of Sand on their Heads so long as the Punisher pleases, but must not be beat without the King's Leave. Women's Inheritances pay no Herriots to the King, nor are Customs paid for any thing carried on Female Cattle to the Sea Ports. They have no Midwives, but the next Woman performs the Office. They consult Astrologers to know whether the Child be born in a lucky Hour; and if not, they give 'em to others to breed up, or sometimes kill 'em, alledging, that they will plague 'em like Devils. They have Names when young, but change them for a Sort of Titles peculiar to their Families when they come of Age, because then they reckon it disgraceful to have Names, which they say are fit only for Dogs.

Their chief Employment is Husbandry: The greatest reckon it no Disgrace to cultivate their own Land; but to work for Hire, or carry Burthens, is practis'd by none but Slaves. Their Manufactures are coarse Callicoes for their own Use, all Manner of Tools for Mechanicks, Earthen Ware, Guns, Goldsmiths and Painters Work. They make their Iron of Stones which abound with that Metal, are very plentiful here; and have a peculiar Way of melting it. They have no Markets, but some few Shops in their Cities, where they sell Cloth, Rice, Salt, Tobacco, Limes, Drugs, Fruit, Swords, Steel, Brass, Copper, and Provisions very cheap. They have three Sorts of Coin, one first stamp'd by the *Portuguese* of 9 *d.* Value, another of half that Value, a 3^d in Shape like a Fish-Hook of pure Silver, which any one may make with the King's Permission, and a 4th call'd the King's Coin, which none must counterfeit. 'Tis as small as a Spangle, and 75 of them make a Piece of Eight.

Their chief Diversions are bowling Coco-Nuts against one another to try which is hardest. They had another Diversion, wherein the Men shew'd Beastly Postures; but 'tis forbidden by the King. At their Festivals, they have Tumblers and others who

who perform Feats of Activity, and sometimes they meet together to chew Betle, and talk of State and other Affairs, especially with Strangers in Places where they lodge, and enquire whether their Laws and Customs be like those of *Ceylon*. They generally abhor Drunkenness, and for most Part chew their Tobacco. The Diversion of their Ladies is to chew Betle with one another. They carry always about them a small Box full of wet Lime, which they spread on the Betle Leaves, wrap a little of the Nuts in them, and so eat them. This Lime they make of Shells, which are found in their Rivers, or of white Stone, which they burn in Kilns.

Of their Laws and Learning.

THeir Law in general is the King's Will; but they have some ancient Customs, which are allow'd as good Pleas in their Courts, as that their Lands go by Descent. The Father may divide them equally; but if the eldest Son have all, he is obliged to maintain his Mother and the other Children till they can provide for themselves. Those that are not able to cultivate their own Lands, let them out to others, who give them a Third of the Profit. Lending of Corn is a great Trade here, and the Creditors take it again off the Borrower's Field with very large Allowances; but no more than double Use can be taken by Law. Children here are bond or free according as their Mothers are; so that if a Free-Woman have Children by a Slave, they are free, and *vice versa*. They make their Bargains by giving one another a Stone in the King's Name, and this is reckon'd as good as Hand and Seal. They frequently sell themselves and their Families for want of Subsistence. They have two Sorts of Oaths for determining Controversies; the first is, That both Parties imprecate Judgments upon themselves if they swear false; but this is liable to Tricks, for they frequently do Mischief to one another in their Persons or Estates, that he who suffers may be looked on as punish'd by God. The other is, That both of them put their Fingers into scalding Oil, being kept in Prison before-hand for some Time, to hinder their using any Art which

may prevent their being scalded. Our Authors say, some have actually escaped, while others have been miserably scalded, by trying the Experiment; but whether it proceeded from Innocence or Art, they can't say.

The Punishments for breaking their Laws and Customs are arbitrary, at the Pleasure of the Judge, either by Fine, Imprisonment, or both. When a Criminal is fin'd, the Officers stop him wherever they meet him, disarm him, pull off his Cap and Doublet; and if he refuse to pay, lay a great Stone upon his Back, and add more and more Weight, until he pay. Sometimes they draw Branches of Thorns between his naked Legs, and if he continue obstinate, put him in Chains. Sometimes the Creditors go to the House of the Debtor, and threaten to poison themselves if they don't pay; so that the Debtor will sell his Wife and Children to raise the Money, because if the Creditor poison himself, he must pay a Ransom for his Life, besides the Debt; and sometimes they kill themselves to bring Trouble upon those with whom they have Controversies.

Their Language is peculiar, and spoke by no other *Indian* Nation, only they have some Words in common with the *Malabars*, but so few, that they can't understand one another without having both Languages. That of the *Chingulese* is copious, smooth, and elegant, being suited to their complimenting Humour. They have 12 or more Titles to one another, suited to the Nature of their Business; particularly when they beg a Favour, they introduce their Request by a large Commendation of the Worth and Abilities of the Person they make their Address to. They are all bred up to this Way of Speaking, so that there's no Difference betwixt the highest and the lowest in that Respect. They formerly gave the blasphemous Title of *Dionansy*, i. e. *Higher than God*, to their King; but he has lately forbid it; and when they speak of themselves to their Sovereign, they say, *The Limb of a Dog* did so and so, or begs so and so; and if they speak of their Children, they call them Puppies. They are very civil to one another, and don't give a flat Denial of any Favour ask'd them, but pretend they have it not in their Power, or that the Thing

Thing is lent to another; and when they receive a Gift, they will commonly refuse it, under Pretence that they would not be so chargeable to one another, tho' at the same Time they stretch out their Hand to receive it. They usually swear by their Mother, their Children, and their Eyes; and when they rail, they think it the most biting Sarcasm to bid a Son lie with his Mother, or a Daughter with her Father, &c. and if any thing be stole, say 'tis done by some Rogue or Whore of an inferior Tribe. Our Authors give us some Instances of their Proverbs as follows: *I gave Pepper, and have gotten Ginger*, to signify a bad Exchange. *Pick your Teeth to fill your Belly*, when they would reproach a Miser. *If I come to beg Butter-Milk, why should I hide my Pan?* To shew that a Man ought not to be ashamed of his Business. *A Beggar and a Trader can't be lost*, i. e. they are never out of their Way. *No Body can reproach the King and the Beggar*, to signify that the former is above Slander, and the latter can't be hurt by it. *He that has Money to give his Judge, needs not fear his Cause*, to denote the Power of Bribery.

Their Learning is only to read and write; but they reckon it no Shame to be ignorant of both. They learn first to write with their Fingers in Sand, then on a Tallipot Leaf with an Iron Bodkin like the *Matabars*, and form their Books in the same Manner. The King folds his Orders up in a Way peculiar to himself; which none must imitate. Their Books relate only to Religion, Physick, Magick, and Astronomy, in which their Priests are their chief Authors. They begin their Year on the 28th of March, sometimes on the 27th, and seldom on the 29th. This they do to provide for the Leap Year, and have the same Number of Days in their Years, Months, and Weeks, with us. The Days of Worship are *Wednesdays* and *Saturdays*. They divide their Day into 30 Parts

betwixt Sun-rising and Sun-setting, and their Night into as many. They have none of our Instruments to measure Time; only the King has a Copper Dish of about a Pint, with a little Hole at Bottom, and this they set empty into a Pan of Water, till it receives as much in at that little Hole as sinks it, and this they reckon the 30th Part of a Day. There's a Man constantly attends it. Their Practice of Magick is so much the same with that of other Nations, that we need not insist upon it. There are ancient Characters cut in many Rocks of this Country; but the present Inhabitants know not the Meaning of them.

Their Diseases are Agues, Fevers, Bloody Fluxes, Cramps so violent, that they fall to the Ground immediately, and have no Sense in the Part affected. The Small-Pox is so terrible to them, that their nearest Relations desert those who have it, so that they commonly die. They pretend to charm other Distempers; and since they cannot charm this, they call it the Finger of God. They have no profess'd Physicians, but all of 'em have some Skill this Way, and perform notable Cures with Barks of Trees, Herbs, and other Simples. For the Particulars, we refer to our Authors. They have little Help for inward Diseases, but Prayers to their Idols or Devils. They are mightily afraid to die, and chiefly invoke the Devil in their Sickness. They avoid the Houses where any Body dies for many Days, lest they should be defiled. The better Sort burn the Dead, but others wrap them up in Mats, and bury them in Holes in the Woods. They pray for their Dead, and have a formal Mourning, by dishevelling their Hair, and making a hideous Noise; but they marry again as soon as they can. They are very liberal to their Priests, who tell them, that according to their Bounty, it will fare with their deceased Relations in the other World.

Sansons and Luyts's TABLES of Ceylon and the Maldive ISLANDS.

		Chief Towns.	
CEYLON or CEYLAN.	MARITIME.	{	Baticalo, Trinquilemale or Trinquemale, Jaffnapatnam or Jaffnapatan, Chilao, Negombo, Colombo or Columbo, Galo or Gale Town and Prom.
	INLAND.		Cande or Candea, Nellesby-Neur, Allout-Neur, Badoula, Degligy-Neur.
MANAR CALPATIN.	On the South of the Equator.	{	Addou and Pove, Molucque, Souadou.
The MALDIVES.	Under the Equator.	{	Adoumatis.
	On the North of the Equator.	{	Calloumadoux or Callomadoux, Nil-landoux, Molucque or Moulucque, Poulisdou, Male-Atollon, with the Town of Male Ariatollon, Malos-Madou, Padypala or Padypola, Milladoue, Madoue, Til-lad or Matis, or Matos.

The GEOGRAPHY.

IN this we shall follow *Sanson* and *Luyts's* Divisions, and begin with the most remarkable Places on the Coast.

I. JAFFNAPATAM, JAPHNEPATAN, or JAFFNAPATNAM,

The Northermost Part of the Island. *Baldew* says, 'tis a Kingdom about 6 German Leagues from S.E. to N.W. and 3 where broadest. 'Tis divided into 4 populous Provinces, containing 159 Villages, and 34 Churches, besides those of the *Dutch* and *Portuguese*. He adds, that in 1663, there were 15012 Children in Protestant Schools here, 62558 Christian Free-Men and Women, and 2587 Slaves; that betwixt 1658 and 1661, there were baptiz'd 5799 Children, 36 ancient People, and 2158 Couple married in the Churches of the Natives, besides those baptiz'd and married in the *Portuguese* and *Dutch* Churches; that when he

came away, there were 18000 Scholars and 12387 Children baptiz'd; and for the better Instruction of the Natives, they had large Tables hung up in the Churches with the 10 Commandments, the Lord's Prayer, and Creed, in the *Malabar* Language and Character. Some Part of the Scripture, with several other good Books, were at that Time translated for their Use; and there being but few Protestant Ministers to serve all those Churches, their Schoolmasters read Sermons to them on the Lord's Day.

The Inhabitants here have neat Houses and pleasant Gardens, well water'd and planted. Their Harvest is in *January* and *February*, and in some Places they have two in a Year. Their Rains in *November* and *December* overflow their Fields; but for the 8 following Months, they have seldom Rain above three times; so that they are obliged to water their Coco-Trees till they are 6 Years old. The *Dutch* make good Cheese here; but the Inhabitants don't much regard it, and are great Lovers of Butter. Their *Brahmens* pretend to be Christians,

but retain many Paganish Superstitions. They observe the Course of the Stars, Planets, and Eclipses, and reckon there has been 4 Periods of Time, and that the present World has stood almost 5000 Years. They think all Souls were created at first; and when any are born with Bodily Infirmities, they say 'tis for the Sins committed by their Souls. This Kingdom has the Gulph of Bengal on the N. and a River on the S. which makes it a kind of an Island. The Soil is low, fruitful, and well planted. 'Tis divided into the 4 Provinces of *Belligamme*, *Tenmarache*, *Waddemarache*, and *Patchiarapalle*.

Belligamme lies to the W. and has 14 Churches, well provided with good Manes for the Ministers, Gardens, &c. They have abundance of Fish, Hares, Stags, Wild-Boars, Fruit, and Roots, in this Province. The Pagan Callico Printers from *Malabar* having intermarried of late with the Natives, occasion many of them to return to Paganism.

Jaffnapatam, the Capital of the Kingdom, lies in this Province, Lat. $9\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 108. 40. according to *Baldew*. *Moll* places it Long. 98. The *Dutch* took it from the *Portuguese* by Capitulation in 1658, after they had kept it 40 Years. It has a Castle Four-square, built upon a Rock, and encompassed with a strong, high, treble Wall. Some *Portuguese* and Natives attempted afterwards to surprise it, but were discover'd and hang'd. When the *Dutch* took it, they discharged the Custom on Tobacco, to encourage the Country People to come and settle here. The chief Structures are, the Governor's House, a Church and Convent, the Houses of the Officers and Factors, an Hospital, a Magazine, a Prison, and the Guard-House. The Works consist of 4 Bastions.

Tenmarache, the 2d Province, lies E. of *Ballegamme*, has but 5 Villages, and a few Churches. The Product of this Province is the same with that of the former. Part of it is sandy and full of Ponds, stor'd with Wild-Ducks, and the Hedges lin'd with Variety of great and small Birds. Many of the Inhabitants continue Pagans. At *Waranni* in this Province there's a Wood of Arack, Coco, Palm, Bananas, Mangoes, Ca-

jou and Guiavo Trees, with the most delicious Water-Melons in the *Indies*. In the Neighbourhood of *Illondi-Matual* are great Numbers of Peacocks, a few Elephants, and tame ones are kept there by the *Dutch* Company.

Waddemarache, the 3d and most Northerly Province, has the Sea on the N. *Tenmarache* on the E. and *Belligamme* on the W. and N. It feeds such Plenty of Cows, Sheep, Goats, and Fowls, that a Sheep costs but 8 *d.* or 10 *d.* 60 Eggs 3 *d.* and 4 good Pullets 5 *d.* Here are but 3 Churches, of which the best and largest is at

Paretiture, on the Coast, in the most Northerly Part of the whole Kingdom. The *Portuguese* call it *Punta das Pedras*, or the Rocky Point. *Paretiture* in the *Malabar* signifies Cotton-Harbour, from the Abundance of Cotton Trees in the Neighbourhood. The *Dutch*, during their War with the *English*, order'd a Fort to be built here. Ships may safely ride 7 or 8 Months together in the Road, but must depart before the N. Mousson. There's a tall Tamarind Tree before the Church, under whose Shadow 3000 Persons were often instructed by the Minister in the Heat of the Day.

Patchiarapalle is the last and most Easterly Province. 'Tis bounded with *Tenmarache* on the N. W. and on the E. with *Raja Singa's* Country and the Sea. It has 4 Churches, and as many Schools. 'Tis very sandy and unwholesome, wants good Water, and is much infested by Elephants, which throw down some Hundreds of their Palm-Trees every Year to get at the Fruit, which is the chief Food of the Poor. The Children here are seiz'd at a certain Season of the Year with a Swelling in the Belly and Groin, which commonly proves mortal. The People are also afflicted with the Itch, Small-Pox, and certain Fevers, which regulate their Fits according to the Moon, and kill in a little Time. The Inhabitants are for most Part poor, and feed upon unwholesome Diet, such as dry'd Fish, Pounates, Kelonges, and a little Rice. They are subject to frequent Incursions from the *Cingalese*, for which Reason the House belonging to the Church of *Poelopalay* (the first in this Province) is fortified.

The adjacent Islands of *Jaffnapatnam* are 7 in Number.

1. *Ourature*, now *Leyden*, at the S. W. of *Jaffnapatnam* City, almost 6 Leagues from E. to W. and near two where broadest. It has but 3 Churches, and is subject to Inundations. It abounds in Fowl, Fish, and Stags, and produces a small Root call'd *Saye*, us'd for dying Red.

2. *Caradiva*, now *Amsterdam*, W. of the Kingdom of *Jaffnapatnam*, and N. of *Leyden*, from which 'tis separated by a River, in the Middle of which stands the Dutch Fort of *Hamskeel*, formerly mention'd. Its chief Product is the *Saye* Root. Elephants are embarked hence for *Bengal* and *Coromandel*. It abounds with Serpents.

3. *Ilha-Deserta*, or the Desert Island, which lies out more into the Sea towards *Pongardiva*, is but small, and noted only for furnishing the Dutch Ships with Fuel.

4. *Pongardiva*, is large, but the Soil rocky, and produces little except Stags, Hares, and great Numbers of Peacocks. They abound in Fish, and especially in large Oysters. The Men are generally taller here than any where else in the *Indies*.

5. *Analativa*, lies W. of *Ourature* or *Leyden*, and a little more N. from *Desart* Island. 'Tis but three quarters of a League long, and half so broad. The Portuguese call it *Donna Clara*.

6. *Nainantiva*, *Nainadiva*, or the Isle of *Bramines*, lies S. of *Donna Clara*, almost three quarters of a League long, and half a Leag. broad. *Baldeus* says, it had the former Name from the great Number of Jackals which swarm in it, and the latter from the *Brahmens* its Inhabitants, who are turn'd Christians, and lead sober Lives.

7. *Nindundiva*, or the Long Isle, otherwise call'd *Middleburgh*, lies S. of *Leyden*, and E. of those of *Bramines* and *Donna Clara*. 'Tis a League and a half from N. to S. and 6 in Length. The Portuguese call'd it *Ilha das Vacas*, or Cow Island, because a great many are transported hither from *Tonday*. The Soil is hot and dry, and produces several venomous Herbs, which are often fatal to the Cattle. The Inhabitants are poor, and live on sorry Diet. The Isle is of difficult Access, because the Shore is rocky, and has

only a few narrow Creeks, which are not to be enter'd but in very calm Weather. There's the Ruins of a Portuguese Fort here. They brought some Horses hither, which have produced a small hardy Race, fit for travelling on stony Ground. Here are some Goats which have Bezoar Stones.

There are other Islands near the Shore, but not worth Notice.

The other Maritime Places of *Ceylon* are, 1. *Trinquilemale*, *Trinquemale*, or *Trenkimalay*. Some make it one of the Kingdoms of *Ceylon*. The Town lies on the E. Side of the Island, Long. $122\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 8.37 . according to *Sanfon*. *Baldeus* makes it Lat. $9\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $110\frac{1}{2}$. about 85 Miles S. E. of *Jaffnapatnam*. It was taken in 1639 by the Dutch. 'Tis the best and largest Harbour in the Island. It was several times relinquish'd, and rebuilt by the Dutch during their War with the English, because it interrupts all Correspondence betwixt the Raja and Foreigners. When the Dutch repair'd it during *Baldeus's* Stay here, they lost abundance of People by a Phrenzical Distemper, which made them throw themselves into the Sea. Some of their Bodies being open'd, Worms were found in their Brains, occasion'd, as he supposes, by the Violence of the Heat, their continual Labour and Watching, and feeding on salt Provisions, together with the cold Night Fogs. The Dutch fortified it better, and added 4 Bastions to it in 1667. During the War betwixt France and England against Holland, the French took this Place, but were forced to abandon it for want of Provisions, tho' it cost them abundance of Men, and 4 Ships to take it, says Dr. Fryar.

Batecale, *Baticalo*, or *Matacalo*, another of their Kingdoms, S. of *Trinquilemale*, upon the E. Side of the Island. It is so call'd from its Capital, being a Fort in an Island of about two Dutch Leagues round, and 3 Leag. within the Mouth of *Baticalo* River. *Baldeus* places it in Lat. $8\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $110\frac{1}{4}$. In 1638, the Dutch took it from the Portuguese. It was fortified with high Stone Walls and 3 Bastions, mounted with Cannon, and the first Place taken by the Dutch in this Island, and where they made an Alliance with the Emperor of *Ceylon*.

Punto Gallo, a Town and Promontory on the S. Side of the Island, Long. 108.52 .

M m m m 2. Lat.

Lat. 6. The *Dutch* took it from the *Portuguese* in 1640, and afterwards made it almost impregnable. It lies on the Bank of a fine Bay. The Houses are handsome and pleasant, the Churches well built by the *Portuguese*, and there are many Fountains and Gardens here. The Bay is spacious, capable of a great many Ships, but the Entry dangerous, because of blind Rocks; therefore they always entertain an experienc'd Pilot. 'Tis dangerous riding here in W. Winds. The Entry is defended by Forts, under which the Ships must pass to avoid the Rocks. Most of the Town lies on a Height, and is defended towards the Sea by sharp pointed Rocks. On one of them there's a Court of Guard, with the Company's Flag display'd on a high Mast. The adjacent Country is agreeably diversified with Vallies, Mountains, and artificial Walks. The *Dutch* Company have 15000 Crowns a Year from the Jurisdiction of this Town. All Ships that pass this Way are obliged to put in towards the Cape, to avoid the *Maldivé* Rocks.

Columbo lies on the W. Side of the Island, Long. $97^{\frac{1}{2}}$. Lat. $6^{\frac{1}{2}}$. according to *Moll*, and above 60 Miles N. W. of *Punto Gallo*. *Baldens* says, 'tis an ancient City in a pleasant Country, near a delightful River. The *Portuguese* chose it for their chief Place of Residence in the Time of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*; and fortified it. The best and greatest Quantity of Cinnamon in the Island grows in the Neighbourhood. They had several Engagements with the Natives, and brought them to be Tributary. For the Particulars of which, we refer to *Baldens*, and likewise for the Manner of taking it by the *Dutch* in 1656, after an obstinate Siege. They found in the Town a Quantity of musty Rice, some Packs of Cinnamon, Store of Arack, 24 light Frigats in the Harbour, a small Quantity of Money, 33 Packs of Cloths, 25 Bells, 60 Brass and 68 Iron Cannon, one Mortar, 6 lesser Pieces, 10000 Cannon-Bullets, 6500 Pounds of good Powder, 1150 bad, and a great Quantity of Brimstone and Salt-Petre. There were not above 1300 People of all Sorts in it at that Time. It gives Name to the Kingdom, and us'd to be the Residence of the Kings of the Island. The *Portuguese* say, the *Dutch* lost 3000 Men before this Town, and that it

cost them as much during the Siege, which lasted 7 Months, as would have built as good a City. There's a Cape to the E. called *Columbo's Peak*, or the Peak of *Adam*, where the ignorant Natives say *Adam* was created and buried, and that the neighbouring Lake of salt Water proceeded from *Eve's* Tears for the Murther of *Abel*. They flock to this Mountain to see what they call the Print of *Adam's* Foot upon the Top of it, to which they ascend by Iron Chains and Spikes. 'Tis reckon'd the highest Mountain in the *Indies*. *Baldens* places it above 20 Leagues within Land E. from *Columbo*.

Negumbo, about 12 Miles N. from *Columbo*. The *Portuguese* first built a Fort here for protecting their Cinnamon Trade, and afterwards it grew up to a Town. It was taken from them by the *Dutch* in 1640, retaken afterwards by the *Portuguese*, and in 1644 recover'd by the *Dutch*, who added to its Fortifications. The *Portuguese* reattempted it, but were repulsed with Loss.

Chilao, a Town and a Streight of the same Name, about 20 Miles N. of *Negumbo*. 'Tis reckon'd one of the best Havens in the Island.

Calpatyn, or *Calapetene*, an Island on this Coast, 5 Miles N. from *Chilao*, is about 10 Leagues long, and one broad.

Manaar, an Island on the same Coast, N. from *Calpatyn*, Long. $108^{\frac{1}{2}}$. Lat. $9. 20$. about 12 Miles long, and 5 broad. This Island was divided from the Continent by Storms, as appears still by a Sand Bank, called *Adam's* Bridge, betwixt them. It was taken by the *Dutch* from the *Portuguese* in 1658, after a stout Resistance, by 1000 chosen Men and 12 Frigats. *Baldens* says, this was one of the greatest Actions betwixt those People and the *Dutch*, and that the latter were only 800 strong. 'Tis defended by a Castle on the Bank of a Canal capable of small Vessels, and the *Dutch* added Fortifications to it. There are only 7 Churches in it, to each of which belong some considerable Villages. This Island was formerly noted for a noble Pearl Fishery, which is now decayed; yet a considerable Quantity was found there in 1666 and 1669. The Inhabitants speak *Portuguese*, were converted by *Francis Xaviere*, and persecuted by the Kings of *Jassuapatnam*.

Baldem planted the Protestant Religion here. The Island abounds in Fish, and they have a Sort of a Sea-Calf of an Amphibious Nature, whose Females have Breasts, and give Suck. The Flesh, when well boild, tastes like Sturgeon, and looks like Veal. There are 7 more Churches on the neighbouring Coast in the Country of *Wannias*, instructed by *Dutch* Ministers. One may wade from the Island to the Continent.

The Inland Parts of *Ceylon* are little known to *Europeans*, for the Island is every where filled with barren Mountains, thro' which there are narrow Passes, guarded by the Inhabitants, as before-mentioned. Captain *Knox* gives the best Description of it, and of its Division into several little Provinces, for which we refer to him. They are separated from one another by great Woods, which none must cut down. The King allows no Bridges over their Rivers, to make his Country impassable. In the N. Parts the Water is bad, and in some Places 'tis very scarce.

The chief Cities in these Parts are, 1. *Candy*, call'd by the Natives *Hingodagul-Neur* and *Maunneur*. It stands in the Middle of the Island, well situated for all Conveniences, and excellently water'd. It has no artificial Strength, but is encompassed with Hills, and the Ways to it are fenced with Thorn Gates and Watches. The *Portuguese* burnt it several times, so that it is now much decayed, and the King chuses his Residence elsewhere. *Moll* places it Lat. $7^{\frac{2}{3}}$. Long. $98^{\frac{1}{4}}$. 75 Miles N. E. of *Columbo*. It gives Name to a Kingdom, which is encompassed with high Hills, Rocks, and Woods.

2. *Nellemby-Neur*, near 12 Miles S. from *Candy*. Here the King for most Part keeps his Court.

3. *Allout-Neur*, N. of *Candy*, where the King keeps great Magazines of Corn and Salt against the Time of War. 'Tis water'd by a great River, and has Woods full of Deer, but is subject to Drought and Sickness.

4. *Badoula*, two Days Journey E. from *Candy*. The adjacent Country is well water'd, and fit for Grazing; but the Cattle here will live in no other Country. There are the Ruins of several other Towns, which have been destroy'd during the Wars.

The MALDIVE ISLANDS.

They are a Chain of Islands, which Dr. *Fryar* says run from Lat. 8. 53. to the Equator. The best Account we have of them is from M. *De la Val*, who was shipwreck'd here. He says, they lie between 8 Deg. N. Lat. and 4 S. are 200 Leagues long, and 35 broad; *Sanson* says 300 long, and 15 or 20 broad; *Mandelsloe* but 140 long. *De la Val* says, That according to the Course of Sailing, they are 4500 Leagues from *Spain*, and 150 from *Cape Comorin* to the W. They are divided into 13 Attollons or Provinces, consisting of a great many small Islands, each of a Circular Form, and about 30 Leagues in Circumference. These Islands are surrounded with a Border of Rocks, which break the Waves, and occasion prodigious Surges. Authors differ as to the Number of them, some making them 12000, and others not above 1000. The Natives say, that many of them are destroyed by the Sea, which lessens them daily, and that every Attollon was formerly one Island. The Channels betwixt them are so shallow, that one may easily wade them, were it not that the Bottom is rocky and sharp, and that they are pester'd with Fish call'd *Paimones*, which break Men's Arms and Legs, and then devour them. There's also at the Bottom a hard ponderous Substance like white Coral, which they call *Acquiri*, boil it in Coco-Water, and form it into Sugar or Honey. Many of these Islands are uninhabited, produce nothing but Coco-Trees and Grass, and others are overflowed at high Water. Some are only moveable Sand, and others cover'd with great Crabs, or the Fowls call'd *Pinguis*, so that one can scarce set a Foot without treading upon them or their Eggs. 'Tis as big as a Pigeon, has black and white Feathers, is excellent Meat, but not eaten by the Natives. The Sandy Islands at a Distance look as if they were cover'd with Snow, the Sand is so very white, as fine as that of an Hour-Glass, and so hot, that it hatches the *Pinguis* Eggs. These Sandy Islands have little or no fresh Water, but most of the others have; and those that

want it, are furnish'd by the rest, or make use of Rain-Water. Their Fountains are neither sweet nor wholesome; but near the Sea, upon digging 3 or 4 Foot deep, they find Plenty of fresh Water, which is very hot in the Night, and extream cool about Noon.

For the Names of the Attollons, we refer to our Author. There are only 4 Channels betwixt 'em, navigable by great Ships, yet not without Danger, especially in the Night, because of Flats and Rocks, which the Natives avoid with great Dexterity. They are all us'd to the Sea from their Infancy. Every Man has a little Boat, and the Rich several. They never sail by Night, or out of Sight of Land, except on some great Voyage; so that they provide only for one Day. The Bar which surrounds one Attollon is only passable at one or two narrow Places, known to none but the Natives, who are all expert Swimmers, and therefore not much afraid of Shipwreck, tho' they frequently lose their Barks by the Rapidity of the Currents, which run E. and W. alternately 6 Months on the W. and 6 on the E. Coast. But the Time of the Change is not certain; and tho' their Winds are frequently fix'd E. and W. as their Currents, yet sometimes they shift N. and S. The Attollons lie all in a Line, and have two Entrances on each Side, which is wonderfully provided by Nature; for if they had only one, they could have no Communication during the different Currents. Some of these Entrances are not above 30 Paces broad, and the widest not above 200. Each Entrance is guarded with an Island on each Side, which if planted with Cannon, they could not be enter'd without Leave. The 4 Channels navigable by great Ships are as follow: The first is on the N. Side, and washes the Attollon call'd *Malos Madou*, where *De la Val* was shipwreck'd. The 2d is *Caridou*, and has *Male*, the greatest of all these Islands, in the Middle. The 3d is *Addou*, and lies S. from *Male*. The 4th is *Souadou*, directly under the Equinoctial Line; and being the broadest, the Natives use a Compass here, but no where else. Besides these, there's a narrow Channel betwixt *Male* and *Poulisdou*, where the Sea is as black as Ink, and swells into great Surges like the boiling of a Pot; but when the Water

is taken up in a Vessel, 'tis as clear as other Water. These Islands lie so near the Equinoctial on both Sides, that their Days and Nights are always equal, and their Climate extream hot, but temper'd by the cool Dews of the Night, which refresh their Herbs and Trees. Their Winter begins in *April*, and continues till *October*, during which they have perpetual Rains and boisterous W. Winds, but no Frost. Their Summer, which begins in *October*, continues also 6 Months, with E. Winds, excessive Heat, and no Rain.

'Tis said, they were first peopled from *Ceylon*; but the Natives are handsome, well made, and of an Olive Complexion; whereas the *Cingalese* are for most Part black and ugly; but this Difference is suppos'd to proceed from the Climate, Length of Time, and Mixture with Foreigners, who are frequently cast away here. This is the more probable, because those in the N. Parts, where Shipwrecks are most frequent, are more handsome and polish'd than those of the S. Most of the Nobility and rich Men live in the N. Parts, because the King has his Court here; and when he banishes Criminals, he sends them to the Southward. The People in general are very ingenious in Manufactures, and many of them in the Sciences, especially Astrology, which they esteem much. They are wise, cautious, and sharp in Dealing, regular in their Policy, brave, and well vers'd in Arms. Their Women are handsome, and some of them as white as *Europeans*, but most of them Olive. They affect black Hair, and for that End their Heads are shav'd once a Week till they be 9 Years old, except a Tuft on the Forehead, to distinguish them from Boys, who are close shav'd. The Women, after 9 Years of Age, affect thick and long Hair, which they dress, wash, and frequently perfume, and wear it loose without Doors. Both Sexes wash and anoint frequently. They must wash their Hair after Copulation, and particularly on *Friday*, which is their Sabbath. Then the Women tie it behind in a great Tuft, which they enlarge by a Peruke of Man's Hair in Form of a Horse's Tail, and some have two, to which they add odoriferous Flowers. None but Gentlemen, the King's Officers and Soldiers, must wear long Hair, which they tie

tie up in a Tuft on the Crown, or on one Side. They must wear no Perukes; and when they cut it off after it has done growing, it serves the Women for Wigs. Their Hair grows much faster than ours, because of their frequent washing and oiling, and it never curls. The Men are hairy all over, and despise those that are not; but their Women have no more than ours. They have no Combs, but Scissars and Looking-Glasses of Copper, and Steel Razors of a different Shape from ours. Every one shaves themselves, except the King and the Peers, who are shav'd by others, that are proud of the Employment, without any Allowance for it. The Women begin to be marriageable about 8 Years of Age, when they cover their Breasts, and before that Time they have only a Cloth about their Middle; but the Boys go naked till 7 Years old, when they are circumcis'd. The Men shave their Breasts, which they never cover, and leave some Hair on them here and there. The Clergy, and those who have been in Pilgrimage at *Mecca*, are shav'd in a different Manner from the rest, bury their Hair, and the Parings of their Nails, saying, They ought to be interred as well as their Bodies. Their Razors are bad, and they always shave with cold Water, and never complain of Pain.

Their Product is Plenty of Millet, and another black Grain which resembles it, and these they sow and reap twice a Year, and make Pottage and Bread with Milk, Coco, Honey, &c. They have a wild Root call'd *Nelpoul*, as big as a Man's two Fists. They bruise it with Stones, dry it in the Sun, and of the Meal make Pottage and Cakes; but it lies heavy on the Stomach if not fresh. They have another Root call'd *Alas*, as big as a Man's Thigh, some of 'em white, and others red. They sow them once a Year. They are ripe in *September*, keep all the Year long, are boil'd and dress'd several Ways, and make the Chief of their Food. They have their Rice from the Continent, which they dress different Ways with Spices, &c. It produces Plenty of Herbs and Fruit-Trees, and the Natives eat the Leaves of those that don't bear Fruit, which are very sweet and well tasted. They have Store of Pomegranates, Citrons, Bananes or *Indian Figs*, and a large delicious nourishing Fruit, which serves their Children

instead of Broth. Most of the Islands are cover'd with Trees, and especially Coco's. *De la Val* observes, that tho' all the 13 Atollons are in the same Climate, and very fertile, yet they produce such different Commodities, and the Natives have so divided themselves, that one cannot live without another. Their Artificers have little Boats with Cheeks, where they work, sleep, and eat, while they sail from one Island to another to vend their Commodities, and sometimes they are a Year out before they return to their Abodes. There's an infinite Number of Crows, which are so bold as to take Things out of People's Houses before their Faces. They have Bats as big as Ravens, and Gnats which bite more severely than any where else in the *Indies*. There are Rats, Dormice, Pismires, and other Vermin, which over-run their Houses, and spoil all their Grain and Provisions; so that they are obliged to build their Granaries and the King's Magazines on Piles 200 or 300 Paces in the Sea. They have no poisonous Animals, but dangerous Sea-Snakes, with Wild Cats and Ferrets, and no Horses or other large Beasts, except 3 or 400 Head of Cattle in the Island of *Male*, which belong to the King, and are never eaten but on solemn Occasions. They abhor Dogs; so that when the King of *Portugal* sent a Couple to their King in a Present, he order'd them to be drown'd immediately. There's wonderful Plenty of Fish in the Shallows, the taking of which is the chief Employment of the Natives, who boil them in salt Water, and dry them for keeping. They export vast Quantities to other Places. Many of their Fishermen have their Arms and Legs cut off by the Fish *Paimones*, before-mentioned. Provisions are so cheap, that 400 Coco's cost but 8 *d.* and one may have 500 Bananas, 300 Pound Weight of Roots, 100 large Fish, or a Dozen of Fowls, at the same Price each Parcel, and 3 Dozen of Eggs for 1 *d.* *De la Val* says, there's no Place in the *Indies* where a Stranger can get an Estate so soon as here, it lies so conveniently for Trade, and the Expence of Living is so small. Yet the Natives don't grow rich, which he ascribes to their Idleness and too great Plenty.

Male, the principal Island, gives Name to all the rest, for *Dives* signifies a Heap of little

little Islands. It lies almost in the Middle, is a League and a half round, the most fruitful of them all, the Staple of the rest, and the Residence of their King. This makes it more populous than any of the other; but the Natives say it is not so wholesome, which they ascribe to the Multitude of Corps buried here, and the Badness of the Water; so that those of Note fetch it from elsewhere. They have no inclos'd Towns, but Villages, with some Distinction of Streets. The meaner People build their Houses with Coco-Wood, and cover them with the Leaves. Persons of Quality have them of Stone, which they take out of the Sea by Planks of the Candou Tree, which is lighter than Cork, thus: Their Divers pitch upon a Stone fit for their Purpose, and fasten a great Cable to it. Then they take a Piece of the Candou Tree, which being bored, they run it along the Cable quite up to the Stone, and thus one Piece after another, till the floating Wood drags up the Stone, or any other Weight, says *De la Val*, of 100000 Pound. Thus he says they took up the Cannon and Anchors of his Ship. When this Wood is once soak'd, it must be dry'd in the Sun before it be us'd again. On Floats of this Timber they manage their Fishery, and pass from one Island to another. One Piece of this Wood struck against another kindles a Fire, and serves instead of Tinder. They make an excellent Lime of Shells which they find on their Coasts.

Their Language is peculiar to themselves, and call'd *Maldivan*; but being *Mahometans*, they use the *Arabick* for their Worship, and they have *Portuguese*, with some of the Languages of the Continent, which they have learned by Commerce. Their Mosques are all of Stone, very neat, according to the *Turkish* Manner, with *Arabian* Inscriptions, and have particular Seats for those of every Rank, which none else must use. Some of the Islands have 9 or 10 Mosques, one of which is a sort of Cathedral, and maintained at the publick Charge. Their Love Intrigues are chiefly carried on in their *Ramadam* or *Lent*, during which they do no manner of Work, and at the End of it they pay a Tribute to God and *Mahomet*, besides general Alms; and at this Time the King gives with his own Hand to the Poor, who

resort from all the Islands to receive it. They have a very fantastical Way of solemnizing *Mahomet's* Death, by Feasting, Leaping, and Dancing. Their Marriages and Funerals are much like those of the other *Mahometans*. Every Man may have 3 Wives, if he can maintain them, but no more; and if they live in the same Island, he is obliged to divide his Nights equally betwixt them, which *De la Val* says is a very hard Law, where the Women are so lascivious. They marry their Daughters to the first Suitor, whether old or young, provided he be of the same Rank, and their Divorces are frequent and voluntary. Every one provides a Burying-place for himself, and lays up Money for the Charge of his Funeral, which he will rather starve than touch. The Priests are well paid for their Attendance, Alms are distributed, and Entertainments are made, according to the Wealth of the Person deceased. Such of them as die at Sea, are put into Coffins on a Float of Candou Wood, with Silver in Proportion to his Wealth, and a Paper describing his Religion, and praying those who find the Corps to take the Money, and bury him handsomely.

The Habit of the Natives is thus: The Men tie a great Swathe of Cloth about their Privities, and over that a Piece of blue and red Cotton-Cloth, that reaches to their Knees, and then a large Piece of Cotton or Silk that reaches to their Ancles, and is girded with an embroider'd Handkerchief spread upon their Backs, and ty'd before. Above these they have a Piece of transparent Party-colour'd Silk as low as the Middle of their Thighs, and over all they have a great fring'd Silk Girdle, with the Ends hanging down before. Within their Girdle on the Left Side they keep their Money, and on the Right their Knives. Those of Note have their Hafts and Sheaths of wrought Silver; the meaner Sort have the latter of Wood, and the former of Fish-Bone. This is the only Arms they wear, except it be the King's Officers and Soldiers, who have a Dagger at their Side, and walk the Streets with a drawn Sword in one Hand, and a Javelin or Buckler in the other. The chief Ornaments of the Inhabitants are Silver Chains that hang about their Girdle. These are likewise their chief Treasure, and commonly

monly assign'd for the Charge of their Funerals. The common People go naked from the Girdle upwards, except on Festival Days, when they wear Cotton or Silk Jerkins or Waistcoats, with gilt Copper Buttons, the Sleeves coming no lower than their Elbows. Some paint themselves with a kind of Past from the Girdle upwards. They wear on their Heads Red or Party-colour'd Turbans, and the King's Officers or Soldiers adorn them with embroider'd Handkerchiefs, which is not allow'd to others. Their Legs and Feet are for most Part bare, and sometimes they use Wooden Sandals, which they must pull off when visited by their Superiors.

The Women have Coats of Silk or Cotton, which reach from their Middle to their Ankle. Over that a long Robe of Taffaty or fine Cotton, which reaches to their Feet. It has no Slit besides the Neck, where it is fasten'd with little gilt Buttons, so that they pull it quite up when they suckle their Children. Their Arms from the Wrist to the Elbow are loaded with Bracelets of Silver, which the poorer Sort alloy with Brass, and those of Quality have many Chains of Gold about their Necks, with rich Pendants in their Ears, which are bored in 24 Places of the Gristle, in which there are as many gilded Nails, with a Precious Stone or Pearl upon the Head of each. Abroad they are cover'd with Veils. They must not wear Rings, Jewels, Bracelets, or Chains, without purchasing Leave from the Queen, as the Men do of the King. Those of Quality wear Gold Bracelets and Rings on their Arms and Legs. The Queen wears her Rings on her fore Fingers, the Princes and others of Quality upon their middle Finger, and others upon their little Fingers; but the Men theirs on their Thumbs. They are tax'd in Proportion to the Apparel of their Wives, except the King's Officers, and the Inhabitants of *Male*, who, with the Clergy and Foreigners, are exempted from this Duty. The Women take a great deal of Pride in redding their Fingers and Toe Nails with the Juice of a certain Tree.

They will not eat with an Inferior, and seldom treat one another unless at solemn Festivals, when they send a cover'd Table with several Dishes of Meat to their Friend's House, which they reckon a singular Mark

of Esteem; but are cautious before whom they eat at Home. They say Prayers and wash their Mouths before and after Meat, and lay a fine Mat on the Floor, upon which they sit cross-legg'd, and never let fall a Crumb or Drop, tho' they have no Spoons. Their Dishes are chiefly of China, Gold or Silver Vessels being prohibited by Law. They are round like Boxes, with a Cover, and a Piece of Silk on it to keep out the Pismires. They give what's touch'd by any Insect to the Fowls, and reckon a crack'd Dish polluted. They look upon the Poor as the Servants of God, and give them the best of what they eat. When they want to cough or spit, they rise from the Table. To provoke a good Appetite, they eat a Coco-Nut half ripe, and drink the Juice of it, which they say is wholesome and laxative. They don't speak, and think it rude to be long at Meals, drink not till they have done, and then but once, which is either Water or Coco-Wine. They drink out of work'd Copper Flaggons, and the last Course is a Plate of Betle. They have no set Meals, but wait their Appetite, and have their Victuals dress'd only by the Women. When they kill a Beast for Food, they turn their Faces to *Mahomet's* Sepulchre, and will not touch it till 'tis quite dead. Their Butchers must be ancient, and the Fathers of Children. When they rise in the Morning, they dare not speak till they have first washed, rubbed their Eyes with Oil, and blacken'd their Eye-Lids and Brows. When cross'd at Sea, they pray to the King of the Winds, and there's a Place in every Island where those who have escaped Danger make Offerings to him of little Vessels made on purpose, loaden with odoriferous Woods, Flowers, and other Perfumes, which they set on Fire, and then turn a-drift till they are burnt. When they can't set their Ships or Boats a-float, they kill Cocks and Hens, and throw them into the Sea right before the Vessel. They pay a superstitious Deference to this imaginary King of the Sea, and dare not spit to the Windward, or look behind them. They devote all their Vessels to the Powers of the Wind and Sea, and keep them as neat as their Mosques. They pretend to cure Diseases with certain Characters, kept in little Boxes under their Garments, and some-

times upon the Parts affected. They buy them of the Magicians. They impute Crosses, Sickness, and Death, to the Devil, and sacrifice to him.

Their most common Distempers are Fevers, and a Disease like the Small-Pox, which is very mortal once in 10 Years, They are liable to Disorders in their Eyes, which are generally small, and many of them are blind. Those that are much in the Sun about Noon often lose their Sight in the Evening, and for the Recovery of it take the Liver of a Cock boil'd, write certain Magick Words upon it, and swallow it just before Sun-set. *De la Val* owns, that he and his Companions found some Benefit by it, tho' they did not use the Charm. They are much subject to the Itch, which they cure with the Oil of Coco's, and some are cover'd with incurable Tetters, which our Author ascribes to their eating Salt-Fish, and seasoning their salt Meat with Sea-Water. In the Winter, when they go bare-foot, a sort of Worm that breeds in the Mud raises Blisters between their Toes, which frequently turn to Ulcers. They are very liable to Obstructions of the Spleen, and their Bellies are apt to swell and harden, which proceeds from their unwholesome Water. In all external Inflammations or Aches, they apply Fire, and lay Cotton steep'd in Coco-Oil upon the Tumor it raises, which is frequently successful. They cure Ulcers, which happen chiefly in their Legs, by the Application of Copper Plates, and heal their Wounds dextrously with Ointments without Bandages or Tents. They have no Venereal Disease but what they catch from *Europeans*, and cure it with *China-Wood*. They never have the Tooth-ach, because the chewing of Betle fortifies their Gums.

New-born Infants they wash for a considerable while 6 times a Day in cold Water, and then anoint them with Oil. All Mothers suckle their own Children, but never swaddle them. They rock 'em in a sort of hanging Beds like Hammocks, or in little swinging Chairs. At 9 Months they begin to go, and at 9 Years old are put to Trades or to School, where they learn to read the Alcoran and write, which they do in three Sorts of Letters on Sand, the *Arabick*, *Maldivian*, and another Character, commonly

made use of in the *East-Indies*. Their Lessons are writ down on white Tables, which they clean and whiten again after they have done their Lessons; but durable Writings are done upon Parchment, made of the Leaf of a Tree call'd *Macare Queau*, which is about a Fathom and a half long, and a Foot broad. The Children have a profound Veneration for their Masters, and some of them improve much. They admire Mathematicians, and especially Astrologers, whom they consult upon Nativities, and all their Undertakings. They learn to exercise Sword and Buckler, the Bow, Gun, and Pike, and are great Players at Foot-Ball; but the most common Diversion is Fishing, which they may practise where they please. Those which they take in the main Sea, about 7 Leagues from the Bars of the Atollons, are large, black, and of 7 or 8 Sorts, tho' they have all much the same Taste and Likeness, but no Scales. They have Multitudes of large, red, delicious Fish, which they call the King of the Sea, and catch upon the Banks for 3 Nights together at every Full and New Moon. They make a general Fishing at the two Equinoxes, by reason of the extraordinary Ebbs, which uncover the Shoals and Flats: Then they encompass several dry Corners by a high Wall with a small Entrance, into which they drive the Fish in the Tide, and pen them up, by which Means our Author says they catch 10. or 12000 Fish in 15 Days time; and that no Place in the *East-Indies* yields such a vast Number.

The Women make all their Visits at Night, with a Man before them, who cries out to every one he meets three times, *Take Care*; upon which the Passenger turns to the other Side of the Street; and if one Woman meets another, she takes to the other Side of the Way, without saluting her, unless she be an intimate Acquaintance. For the better receiving their Visits, their Gates and Doors are always kept open very late. They cough once when they come into the Rooms, which is a Signal for the People to come out: And in the Island of *Male*, the King's Officers and Soldiers are obliged to cough frequently in the dark Streets, for fear of wounding one another with their Arms, which they always carry naked.

Their

Their Government is an absolute Monarchy. Each Attollon has a Governor, who is both a Priest and a Doctor of the Law. He presides over the inferior Priests, and is entrusted with the Administration of Justice and the Management of Religious Concerns. To every Island which contains above 40 Men a Doctor is allotted, who presides only in Matters of Religion. All the Priests are employ'd in instructing the People in the Law, and have a Tythe of Fruits and a Salary allow'd by the King. The Governors of the 13 Attollons are as so many Judges, and make 4 Circuits every Year in their Jurisdiction, at which Time they gather their Dues, and receive abundance of Presents. Their Chief is the *Pandiaré*, who resides in the Isle of *Male*, and is not only the supreme Judge of all Causes, but also the Head of the National Church. He receives Appeals from the Governor, but does not pass Sentence without the Advice of 4 or 5 Doctors learned in the Law and other Sciences, of whom there are not above 15 in all the *Maldives*. From him Appeals are carried to the King, who refers it to 6 Counsellors of State. The *Pandiaré* makes a Visitation once a Year over the Island of *Male*, when he condemns all to be whipped that cannot say their Creed and Prayers in the *Arabick* Tongue, and construe them in the *Maldivian*. At this Time the Women dare not be seen in the Streets unveil'd, on Pain of having their Hair shav'd off if he sees them. Justice is dispensed at the Governor's House, or else at the *Pandiaré's*, and sometimes at the King's Palace. On Failure of Appearance upon Summons, the Person is not only excommunicated from Church, and excluded from eating or drinking with his Neighbours, but seiz'd by a Party of Soldiers. The Parties plead their own Causes. In Business of Right or Title, they are judged by the Law; and in Allegations of Matter of Fact, the Plaintiff must have them attested by 3 Witnesses, or else the Defendant may come off by his own Oath. Whatever is adjudged to the Plaintiff, a 12th Part of it goes to the Serjeants, but nothing to the Judges. Three Women Witnesses are reckoned equivalent to one Man. Slaves can neither witness or plead, and the meanest Sort of them have but one Wife, whereas

the rest are allowed three. They reckon such for Slaves as voluntary sell themselves, or are imported from Foreign Countries. An insolvent Debtor works in his Creditor's Service, and his Children after him, till the Debt is work'd out. But if he thinks himself ill us'd, he may turn himself over to another Master, who lays down the Money due to the former. If a Man be murder'd, his Wife can't prosecute the Criminal, but the Judge obliges him to maintain her Children, and bring them up to a Trade, till they are of Age, at which Time they are qualified either to forgive or prosecute him, for the State takes no Cognizance of Personal Injuries, unless the Parties aggriev'd complain of them. They punish Sodomy, Adultery, Incest, Rapes, and Perjury, with severe Whipping, which frequently proves mortal. Besides, an Adulteress has her Hair cut off. Perjury is punish'd by a Fine for the Poor, a Rape by a Dowry for the injur'd Woman, Theft with the Loss of the Hand; and, in General, Disobedience to the Law is punish'd by Pennance, otherwise they think they can't go to Paradise. Murder is Death by Law, but never inflicted except the King require it, and then 'tis performed by his own Soldiers. A Personal Offence to the King is punished by making the Criminal lie flat with his Belly to the Ground, while 4 Men hold his Legs and Arms, and others whip his naked Back with small Canes till the Skin come off. They use no Writing in their Trials, except in Matters of Inheritance.

The Inhabitants are divided into 4 Ranks; the first is the Royal Family; 2. Those who have Dignities and Posts; 3. The Nobility and Gentry; 4. The Common People, who must not sit in the Presence of the Nobility. If a Noble Woman marries a *Plebeian*, she retains her Rank, and ennobles her Children, and 'tis quite the contrary if a Nobleman marry one of the lowest Rank. Besides Nobles by Birth, there are others made so by Patent and Proclamation. Next to the Royal Family are the Great Officers of State and War. One of them, who always attends the King as Chief Counsellor, takes Care of all Strangers, and the Rudders of all Ships that arrive, to prevent their sailing again without Leave. Birth signifies so lit-

tle here, that a Nobleman is scarce regarded, except he be an Officer; or a Gentleman, without being listed in the King's Service.

His Guards are 600 Men, commanded by 6 Counsellors; 10 large Companies, under as many Grandees, who employ them in launching Ships, and building Palaces, &c. but not in Fighting. Five of them are all Gentlemen, and the rest must not be Slaves or Mechanics. Every Soldier pays for being listed, and all Offices are bought of the King, and much coveted, because of the Honour and Power that attends them.

The King's Palace is of Stone, but one Story high, and has many fine Apartments; but the Architecture is mean. 'Tis encompassed with Gardens, Fountains, Cisterns, &c. pav'd, wall'd in, and continually guarded for the King's Use. The Palace is divided into several Courts, with a beautiful Fountain in the Middle. In one of those Courts are his Magazines for War. At the Gate there's a Guard-House, with many Cannon and Arms. The Portal is a square Tower, and on Festival Days Musicians play on the Top of it. Within the Gate there's a large Hall for Soldiers, and within that a larger for the Nobility and Gentry. None must go further but the Officers and Servants of the Court. The Floors are rais'd 3 Foot from the Ground, to avoid the Ants, and cover'd with Party-colour'd Mats, that have several Characters and Figures. The Walls and Cieling are cover'd with Silk Tapestry, and pretty Fringes round it. That of the inner Chambers is flower'd with Gold. The Beds are hung upon a Beam betwixt two Pillars, so that they are rocked asleep, after their Servants chase their Bodies, or flap them with their Hands, which they fancy promotes Sleep, and expels the Spleen.

The King wears commonly a Coat of fine white Cloth or Cotton, a little lower than his Girdle, with white and blue Edgings, fasten'd by massy Gold Buttons. Under that a Piece of red embroider'd Tapestry down to his Heels, girded with a large Silk Girdle fring'd with Gold, and a great Chain of Gold before, with a Jewel as big as one's Fist, composed of the finest Precious Stones, and a fine Knife after the Fashion of the

Country. He wears a Cap lac'd with Gold, and a great Gold Button with a Precious Stone on the Top. 'Tis of Scarlet, a Colour which none must wear but his Majesty. He has his Head shav'd every Week, but the Grandees and Soldiers wear long Hair. His Legs are naked, and on his Feet he has Slippers of gilt Copper, made like Sandals, which none must wear but the Queen and Princesses. When the King goes abroad, he has a white Umbrella, which none else must use but Strangers. He has always 3 Pages to carry his Fan, Sword, Buckler, and Beetle-Box, and a Doctor of Law, who puts him in Mind of his Religion. He has Mechanics and Artificers of all Sorts, whom he keeps at work in his Palace. He goes to the Temple on *Fridays* in great Pomp, his Guards dancing to the Sound of the Musick, and striking their Swords on one another's Bucklers. He is attended in his Return by all the People in the Island, and treats the Chief of them. There being no Beasts of Carriage in this Island, he either walks a-foot, or is carried in a Chair by Slaves. The Inhabitants, when they speak of the King or Royal Family, use Expressions which they must apply to none else. The Queen and Princesses wear the same Habits with other Ladies described before, but richer. All the Women of Quality are obliged to wait upon her every Evening; and when she goes abroad, which is seldom, all the Women in their respective Districts meet her with Presents of Flowers, Fruits, &c. She-Slaves go before to give Notice for all Men to keep out of the Way, and 4 Ladies carry a Veil of white Silk over her Head, which reaches to the Ground, that she is not seen. She and her Ladies bathe frequently in the Sea, which they reckon conducive to their Health. They have a Place inclos'd on purpose cover'd with white Cotton. The Queen and Ladies of Quality have never any Light in their Apartments but what proceeds from Lamps, and their Retiring-Room is block'd up with 4 or 5 Rows of Tapestry, the innermost of which none must lift up without coughing, and telling their Names.

The King's Revenues consist chiefly in a Number of the Islands which are Crown-Lands, and a 5th of all Corn and Fruits, a Tax of dry'd Fish, Shells, and Coco-Ropes, Rates.

The East Part of
INDIA,
or INDIA beyond the R. GANGES.
By Herman Moll, Geographer.



Rates paid him for Titles, Offices, and Licences to wear fine Apparel. His Subjects furnish him with Cotton-Cloth for his Soldiers. All Wrecks and Ambergreece are his, besides Imposts on Goods imported, of which he takes what he pleases at low Rates, and obliges his Subjects to take 'em at his own Price in Exchange for what he wants from them. Sometimes he sends out Ships with Commodities of his own Country. He has also all those Nuts cast ashore by the Sea, call'd *Maldiva* Coco's. They are as big as a Man's Head, made use of in Physick, and bear a great Price. The Natives fancy they come from Trees that grow under Water. They have only one Silver Coin call'd *Larins*; but all others of Silver and Gold are current by Weight. The *Larin* is worth about 8 *d.* made like a Man's Finger folded up, and has the King's Name upon it in *Arabick* Letters; and they likewise make use of Shells, 12000 of which go for a *Larin*.

They lade 100 Ships *per Annum* with Coco's. They also make Oil, Honey, Cordage, and Sails, of this Tree. They vend likewise little Shells, that contain a Creature in them as big as the End of one's little Finger, white, very smooth, and glittering. The Women gather them in the Sands and Flats of the Sea, standing up to the Middle in Water. These are exported only to *Bengal*, where they are so much esteem'd, that *De la Val* says he has seen 30 or 40 Ships laden with this Commodity alone for that Country. They put them up in Parcels of 12000, for which they pay 20 Measures of Rice. They have also a Sort of Tortoise-Shells, white, black, and smooth, and many natural Figures, found no where but here and in the *Philippines*. They make likewise fine Reed-Mats, and Clothes of Cotton and Silk. The chief Goods imported here are some Cotton and Silk Clothes, Oil, Iron, Steel, Spices, China-Ware, &c. besides all other Necessaries for Life, which are very cheap, because of the great Number of Ships that trade hither. They never send out any Gold or Silver, but lay it up among their Jewels, as their chief Treasure.

The East Part of India and the Peninsula beyond the Ganges, contains,

I. The Kingdom of B O U T A N.

Tavernier says, 'tis of a large Extent, but scarce well known, because their Merchants can give no good Account of it; nor can we well judge of its Situation by what he says, but it probably lies N. or N. E. of the Mountains of *Naugracut*: For he says, That when Merchants come to the Foot of those Mountains, they are carried over them by the Inhabitants, but chiefly by Women and Maids. The Journey over the Mountains is of 8 Days. The Women have on each Shoulder a Woollen Roll, with a large Cushion fasten'd to it, that hangs down on their Backs, upon which the Men whom they carry sit, and there are three Women to carry one Man, who relieve one another by Turns. They have Goats for their Baggage and Provisions, each Goat carrying about 150 Pound Weight, and those who use Horses are in many Places obliged to have them hoisted up the Rocks by Cords. The Women for their 8 Days Labour have about a Crown apiece, and as much for every loaded Goat and Horse they lead. When those Mountains are passed, the rest of the Journey to *Boutan* is performed by usual Carriages, or on Foot. Tavernier says, the Country abounds with Rice, Corn, Pulse, and Wine. The Inhabitants of both Sexes are clad in Summer with a large Piece of Fustian or Hempen Cloth, and in the Winter with a Sort of a Felt. The Head-Dress of both is a Cap like a Can, adorned with Boars Teeth and Pieces of Tortoise-Shells. The richer Sort mix them with Coral and Amber, of which the Women have Necklaces. Both Sexes wear Bracelets on their Left Arm from the Wrist to the Elbow. They have Silver Twists about their Necks, with an Amber Bead, and a Piece of Coral or a Boar's Tooth at the End. They are Idolaters, and eat every thing but the Flesh of Cows, which they

they adore as the common Nurfes of Mankind. They are great Lovers of Strong-waters, and burn Amber at the End of their Entertainments; so that this and Coral are good Commodities here. The best Rhubarb comes from this Country; but Merchants must be very careful to prevent its being spoiled by Wet. They have also Musk, and Plenty of Furs of Martens, &c. Worm-Seed is also their Product, and grows on an Herb in their Fields, which must not be gather'd till the Plant is dead. Their Idols are Monsters like those of the other *Indians*, and they adore their King, whose Excrements they preserve, make a Powder of them, and sell it to the richer Sort, who strew it on their Victuals at Festivals. He has always 7 or 8000 Men for his Guard, armed with Bows, Arrows, Battle-Axes, and Bucklers. They have had the Use of Fire-Arms a long time. Our Author says, by the Figures in some of their Cannon, they are said to be 500 Years old. No Man must stir out of the Kingdom without the Governor's Leave, nor carry a Musket with him without giving Security to bring it back. They have extraordinary good Powder. Their Guns are polish'd within as smooth as a Looking-Glass, carry large Bullets, and are inlaid with large Flowers of Gold and Silver on the Outside. They have small Guns on the Backs of Elephants and Camels, which carry Half-Pound Balls, and a Gunner rides behind each to manage 'em. The People are strong and well proportion'd, but their Noses somewhat flat; and the Women are bigger and more vigorous than the Men. They are much troubled with Swellings in the Throat. They have no Enemy but the Mogul, from whom they are defended by their inaccessible snowy Mountains on the N. There's nothing known but vast Forrests and Snows E. and W. Their Water is bitter. They have a Silver Mine, and coin Pieces of a Half-Crown Value; but all their Gold is imported.

2. The Kingdom of *A S E M* or *A C H A M*.

De Lisle makes it 90 German Leagues from N. E. to S. W. and about 40 where broadest. It has *Independent Tartary* on the N. the Mogul's Dominions on the W. the Kingdom of *Tipra* on the S. and Part of *China* on

the E. It was first discover'd by the Moguls in *Orangzeb's* Time. *Tavernier* says, 'tis one of the best Countries in *Asia*, produces all Necessaries for Life, has Mines of Gold, Silver, Steel, Lead, Iron, and Store of coarse Silk. Their Silk-Worms live all the Year on their Trees, and their Silk has a good Lustre, but soon frets. They have likewise Store of Gum-Lacque, the best in *Asia*. They suffer no Gold to be exported, and make it up in Ingots, which pass in Trade. Their Silver is coin'd into Pieces of about 2 s. Value. Tho' they have Plenty of Provisions, they esteem Dogs-Flesh the greatest Dainty, and it is commonly sold in their Markets. They have very good Grapes, of which, being dry'd, they make *Aquavita*, but never any Wine. They make their Salt of that green Scum on the Top of standing Waters which is eat by Ducks and Frogs. This they dry and burn, boil the Ashes in a Cloth, and make very good Salt of it. They likewise make Salt of the Ashes of the Leaves of *Adam's Fig-Tree*, which is so tart, that it cannot be us'd till they stir it 12 Days together in Water, strain it thro' a Cloth, and boil it. They make a Ley of the same Ashes, which makes their Silk as white as Snow; but they have not Leaves enough for that Purpose.

Tavernier says, their Capital and the Residence of their King is the City of *Kenneroofe*; but we have it not in our Maps. The King requires no Subsidies of his People, is Proprietor of all the Mines, in which he employs none but Slaves; so that the other Subjects live at Ease, every one having his House and Ground, and an Elephant to carry their Wives, of whom they have 4 apiece; and when they marry them, tell them for what Purpose they do so; so that each of them knows their Business, which prevents Quarrels. Both Sexes have generally a good Complexion; but those who live in the most S. Parts are swarthy, and subject to Wens in their Throats. They go naked all but their Privities, and a Cap upon their Heads, adorned like those of *Boutan*. When a Man dies, all his Friends bury their Bracelets with him.

Azoo is another City in this Country. *De Lisle* places it Lat. 25. Long. 105 $\frac{1}{2}$. Here are the Tombs of their Kings in a great Temple,

Temple, where there's Store of Gold, Silver, and other rich Moveables: For they believe those who live good Lives, have Plenty of all Necessaries in the other World; but that the Wicked suffer Hunger and Want, and therefore they bury Riches with them to supply their Necessities, and with their Kings they bury his chief Wives and Officers, Elephants, Camels, Hounds, &c. which they believe will all rise again to serve him in the other World. *Tavernier* says, that Powder and Guns are first suppos'd to have been invented here, and that the *Chinese* had them from them. The Lake of *Chiamay* lies in this Country, betwixt Lat. 25 and 27. and is, says *Luyts*, 180 Leagues in Compass. The River *Cacpoumo* runs from it into the Bay of *Bengal* thro' several Kingdoms, and there are divers other Rivers which fall into it. 'Twas by sailing up this River that the Moguls first discover'd the Country. *Tavernier* says, that several other Rivers flow from this Lake, which he places in the 29th or 30th Deg.

We come now to the Empire of *Ava*, which, with *Siam* and *Auna*, are reckon'd by *Luyts* and the *Sansons* the three grand Divisions of the whole Peninsula, which *Du Plessis* extends between 132 and 150 Deg. Long. and the 1st and 25th Deg. N. Lat. *M. de Lisle* places this Empire betwixt Lat. 15 and 28. The Length from S. to N. is about 184 *German* Leag. and the Breadth from E. to W. about 90, having Part of *Independent Tartary* on the N. *Siam* on the S. Part of *Bengal* and its Gulph on the W. and Part of *China* and the Kingdom of *Laos* on the E. Its Kingdoms and Subdivisions are,

1. The Kingdom of *TIPRA* or *TIPOURA*.

Monfieur de Lisle places it under the Tropic of *Cancer*, with *Asem* on the N. *Tunnan* in *China* and Part of *Ava* on the E. *Arracan* on the S. and *Bengal* on the W. almost 75 *German* Leagues from E. to W. and 55 from N. to S. *Tavernier* says, it takes up 15 Days to cross it, and 12 to go to *Daca* in *Bengal*. They ride on Oxen and Horses, which are very low, but hardy, and the King and Nobility in Palankins, or on Elephants of War. The Inhabitants are sub-

ject to Wens in their Throats, occasioned by the Badness of the Water, and the Country in general has but very sorry Accommodation for Strangers. They have coarse Gold and Silk, which all belongs to the King, who requires no Money from his Subjects, but that all who are not of the prime Nobility should work a Week once *per Annum* in his Mines or Silk-Works. He sends his Gold and Silk into *China*, from whence he has Silver in Return, which he coins into Pieces of 20 *d.* and 22 *d.* Value, as he does Gold into Aspers of two Sorts, 4 of the one, and 12 of the other, amounting to a Crown. *Ovington* says, he is Viceroy, or at least Tributary, to the King of *Arracan*. The Capital is of the same Name, but we have no Description of it.

2. The Kingdom of *A R R A C A N*,

Has *Tipra* on the N. and E. *Brama* and *Ava* on the E. and *Pegu* on the S. according to *M. de Lisle*. It lies above 90 *German* Leag. along the Gulph of *Bengal*, is broadest towards the N. where 'tis about 30 Leagues, and grows narrower by Degrees towards the S. 'Tis called by some *Orracan*, or the Empire of *Mogo*, because of their King's late Conquests over the Emperor of *Pegu*, whose Tributary he formerly was. 'Tis said to comprehend 12 lesser Kingdoms, and 24 Provinces. The Inhabitants, says *Ovington*, seem to prize those Shapes and Features most that other Nations despise. They affect broad and flat Foreheads, and for that End bind a Plate of Lead hard upon their Children's Foreheads as soon as they are born, which they don't remove till it has had its Effect. Their Nostrils are large, their Eyes small, but quick; their Ears reach to their Shoulders, and they love dark Purple. They have Plenty of Provisions, but mix their choicest Dishes with Rats, Mice, and Serpents. They never eat Fish till they be rotten, and they make a Sort of Mustard of their Back-Bones, beat with the putrid Flesh into a Consistency, and then dry and powder it, and spread it on their Victuals. At their Feasts they have 100 or 200 small Dishes on their Table at once, that every one may tast what they like, and use Rice for Bread. When sick, they

they fend for their Priests, who blow upon them, say certain Prayers, and make them offer Sacrifices of Hens and Capons, &c. according to the Ability of the Patient, to the God of the 4 Winds. This is repeated 4 times, and makes a noble Entertainment for the Priests. If the Sickness be not removed then, they oblige the nearest Relation to provide a convenient Chamber, hung with the richest Tapestry, and here they set an Idol and an Altar, and the Priest and Relations are sumptuously feasted for 8 Days with all Sorts of Musick, and the Person who makes the Vow to perform this Ceremony is obliged to dance till he quite exhaust his Spirits, and drops down like a dead Man. Then their Musick and Joy is redoubled, and the Spectators envy the Happiness of the poor Wretch, who they think converses with the Idol. This must be performed every Day; and if the Person be not able to hold out, the next a-kin must relieve him. If after all the Patient die, the Priests tell them their Sacrifices were well accepted, but God design'd 'em a greater Favour in the other World. When dead, the Corps is brought into the Middle of the Floor, which they perfume with Incense, and the Priests walk round it and say Prayers, while most of the Domesticks keep strict Watch, and beat upon a broad Piece of Brass, for fear a black Cat should pass over the Corps, which they think would bring the Party deceas'd to Life again, and deprive him of the Happiness of another World, which they dread as the greatest Scandal. They invite a Sort of People call'd *Gravi* to the Funeral Banquet; but if they have not Leisure to come, the Relations of the Deceased make a most dreadful Outcry, taking their Absence for a sure Sign that his Soul is condemn'd to Hell, which they call the House of Smoak. The Coffin is adorned according to the Ability of the Person with the Figures of Horses, Elephants, Eagles, Cows, Lions, and the most noble Creatures they can think of, because they believe the Transmigration of Souls into their Bodies. But sometimes, out of pure Humility, the Deceased order Rats, Frogs, and the most despicable Animals, to be drawn in their stead. Then the Corps is carried out to the Fields and burnt, the Priests kindling the Fire, and

the Relations attending all in White, except a black Hatband round their Heads.

They look upon the Barking of Dogs and such common Accidents as so many good or bad Omens, and consult their Priests to know the Event. Every Family has an Idol at Home, and they have so many in their Temples, that in one alone there are said to be 20000. They always offer a Part of their Provision to their Domestick Idol before they eat, swear by him, and wear his Mark burnt in their Arms, Sides, or Shoulders. The better Sort send Portions also to their Temples, which are built Steeplewise. They cloath their Idols in the Winter, that they may not catch Cold, for which they expect mighty Rewards. Once a Year they celebrate a Festival in Remembrance of the Dead, when they make a Procession in Honour of one of their Idols, which is carried in an heavy Chariot with 90 Priests, clad in yellow Sattin, thro' all the Streets. As he rides along, many throw themselves under his Chariot-Wheels, others hang upon Iron Hooks fasten'd for the Purpose, and sprinkle him with their Blood. Afterwards they hang up the Hooks as sacred Relicks in their Temples. Their Priests are divided into three Orders, resembling our Bishops, Priests, and Deacons. They wear Yellow, shave their Heads, and go with them uncover'd, except the highest Order, who wear a yellow Mitre, with the Point falling backwards. They vow a single Life, and if they marry, are degraded, reduced to the Number of the Laity, and tax'd as well as they. Some of them live in fine Cloisters founded by their Kings or great Men, and others in Houses and Estates of their own, but all acknowledge the *Xoxom Pungri* for Superior. They teach Children their Religion and Laws, and are said to be very hospitable. There are many Hermites among them, who are much esteem'd by the People.

Ovington says, the King is as powerful as most of the *Eastern* Princes, and has made great Conquests within the last Century in *Pegu* and *Bengal*; but the *Portuguese* were always too hard for him, and in 1605 defeated one of his Fleets of 540 Sail; and not long after, coming against the Fort of *Siriam* with 1200 Sail, 30000 Land Forces, and 3500 Cannon, he was beat thrice both

by.

by Land and Sea, and forced to retire. The Government is chiefly in the Hands of 12 Princes, to whom he gives the Title of Kings, and they reside in his principal Cities in 12 noble Palaces, built for the King himself. There's a Seraglio for 12 Girls, which the Governor is obliged to chuse Yearly out of those born that Year within their Precincts, and they are kept here at the King's Charge till 12 Years of Age, when they are brought to Court, sweated, and smelt by the King, who takes those he likes, and disposes of the rest among his Courtiers.

His Titles are, Emperor of *Arracan*, Possessor of the *White Elephant*, with the two *Cameques*, and by Vertue of them rightful Heir of *Pegu* and *Brama*, Lord of the 12 *Brioni* of *Bengal*, and the 12 Kings, who lay the highest Hair of their Heads under the Soles of his Feet, &c.

He resides commonly at *Arracan*, and spends two Months of the Summer in a kind of Progress by Water to *Orietan*, in which he is attended by his Nobility in Boats so artificially contriv'd with all Conveniencies for the Court, that they look like a floating Palace. He administers Justice all the while, hears Causes, and attends publick Business. One Pretence for his Progress is to visit the Pagod of their supreme Deity, to whom he daily sends a sumptuous Dinner, which Superstition leads them to the most inhumane Acts; and 'tis said, that one of them being told he could not long survive his Coronation, consulted a *Mahometan* which Way to avert the Omen, who advis'd him to make a Composition of 6000 of the Hearts of his Subjects, 4000 of those of white Crows, and 2000 of those of white Doves. Upon this the King built a House, and laid the Foundation upon Women with Child, by which he destroy'd 18000 Persons.

Father *Tosi* says, they are so careful to preserve the Royal Blood unmix'd, that the King is obliged to marry his eldest Sister. *Schouten* says, he is reverenc'd more than any other Prince in the World. He gives a particular Account of the Entry and Audience which the King gave to the *Dutch* in his Time, for which we refer to him, and shall only add, that they rode in great State upon Elephants, and were obliged to pro-

strate their Faces to the Ground, without daring to look directly upon his Majesty's Person; yet some of them did by a Side-Look discover that his Habit was of Scarlet; that he had a Turban, adorned with Precious Stones, with Bracelets, Pendants, and a Collar of Gold about his Neck, enchas'd with Diamonds, other Precious Stones, and Pearls. He says, that once every 5 Years, on the 15th of *November*, the King exposes himself to publick View; but at other Times no Person durst look upon him, except those who hold the highest Dignities in the State. He adds, that while he was there, Couriers were sent before-hand thro' the Kingdom to proclaim it; and to order all the People of both Sexes, from 18 to 60 Years of Age, to repair to *Arracan* to see the King, under a Penalty of 10 *d.* but few go unless for their Pleasure, because the Fine is so small. The Morning of the Day being come, all the Places about the Palace were filled with Scaffolds, Amphitheatres, and Preparations for Fire-works. The principal Streets were clean'd, and Ballusters set up in abundance of Places, and certain Officers posted with Soldiers to make Room, and prevent Disorders. The King came forth of his Palace with the Noise of Drums, Trumpets, and Flutes. He was mounted on an Elephant, and clad in the most stately Habits of *Asia*. His Head was cover'd with a rich Turban, and that with a Crown of inestimable Value. He sat cross-legg'd under a rich Tent, and one of his Lords rode before him astride on the Elephant's Neck to guide him. The Harness was embroider'd with Pearls and Gold. Several Noblemen held a fine Umbrella over the King's Head, besides the Tent to keep him from the Heat of the Sun. He was attended by a great Number of the chief Officers of the Kingdom, who march'd a-foot, and the Heralds at Arms with Armour for the Guard of his Person. Then came another Elephant, carrying a Prince, the chief Courtiers, and one of the greatest Noblemen, attended with their Gentlemen, &c. and after them, all the other great Lords according to their Ranks on Elephants richly harness'd, with their Servants, Musicians, &c. After he had made his Progress thro' the chief Places of the City, he return'd to a great Square near his Palace, encompassed

with Men in Arms for his Guard, where he took an Oath of Fidelity of his Subjects, as is practis'd every 5 Years, with loud Shouts of Joy, and repeated Protestations of Obedience, accompanied with Musick, and the Salvo's of the Artillery. The Evening concluded with Dancing, Comedies, Musick, and throwing of Fire works, in which *Schouten* says they surpass all other *Indians*. They punish Criminals by impaling them alive. This Prince passes most of his Time with his Queen and Concubines, who all learn to play on Musical Instruments, and some of them to handle Arms; so that they serve for Guards in his Apartments. All his Courtiers of Quality wear a Sort of Shift of white Cotton, which covers their Arms, Breast and Belly. Over that they have a long Robe of white Cotton; besides which, they have an Apron before, and a sort of a Bag behind, done up in Plaits; so that they look as if they had a large Bundle of Cloth on their Backs. They walk very stately in the Streets, and have Numbers of Servants, according to their Quality and Power. They never cut their Hair, but tie it up in Locks behind like our Women, and adorn them with Knots of very fine Cloth. Their Women are tolerably fair, wear thin flower'd Gawse over their Breast and Shoulders, a fine Cotton Apron, which goes three or four times about them, and hangs as low as their Foot. The richer Sort wear a Silk Scarf on one of their Arms, and they frizzle and curl their Hair very agreeably. They reckon long Ears a great Ornament, and by Art make them hang as low as their Shoulders with Rings of Glass, which beat on their Neck when they move like the Bells of a Fool's Cap. They wear so many Bracelets of Ivory, Copper, Silver, &c. round their Arms and Legs, that they are a Burden instead of an Ornament.

The People are Idolaters, and worship monstrous Figures like the other Heathen *Indians*. They have great Numbers of Monks who profess Chastity, but have always a Number of Youth about them, under the Notion of Scholars, with whom they commit Sodomy, and they affect a sort of Modesty in their Habit and Walk, yet can't conceal their Pride. All the Inhabitants are vain-glorious, and love to look

great; but they are temperate in their Diet. They esteem stinking Fish most. Their ordinary Money is Shells or little Horns, 80 of which they value at 9 *d.* and they have a Silver Coin worth about 2 *s.* apiece, for which they have 1660 Shells in Exchange; so that when they go to Market with this sort of Money, they must carry a lusty Servant along with them, and a large Bag of them on his Back. They are so brutish, that they scorn to marry a Virgin; so that they commonly expose their Daughters to lewd *European* Seamen, and she that has a big Belly is soonest married. They court by Presents, and are married before their Idols, when they make great Rejoycings; but all of them keep Concubines and Dancing Wenches. When any Person of Note dies, they discharge Guns, and hire Mourners, who make a terrible Noise without shedding a Tear; and this they continue according to the Wealth of the Deceased. *Schouten* says, these Mourners make such a hideous Noise and ridiculous Postures, that it is not possible for any Man to sleep who is near them, or to avoid laughing if he see them. On the Burial-day, they invite all their Kindred and Friends, and make a Feast according to their Wealth. Wood being very scarce here to burn the Corps, the poorer Sort throw them into Rivers, which makes their Water very unwholesome. This occasions such a vast Number of ravenous Birds, that they frequently tear their live Cattle, and eat their Flesh into their very Bones. They not only throw the dead Corpses into the Rivers, but likewise those whose Distempers they think incurable, and this they reckon a great Piece of Charity. The greatest Part of the Trade here is manag'd by the *Moors*, who are very numerous in this Kingdom. They are distinguish'd from the others by their Habit, which is much like that of the *Turks*. They have few or no Horses here, but many Elephants and Bufflers with large Horns, who are very mischievous, and frequently kill People, especially Strangers, whom they know by their Habit, and always attack them behind. They have a particular Aversion to Red, and furiously assault those who have Clothes of that Colour. *Schouten* says, he found this by Experience; yet they are easily govern'd

vern'd by their Herdsmen, who are as ugly and brutish as themselves. They call them together by sounding a Horn, and will cross Rivers standing upright on the Back of one of them, while the rest of the Herd follows. They have abundance of Goats, Fowls, and Fish. Many of their Rivers have Tides, which rise from 12 to 20 Foot high; so that they perform great Voyages in a very little Time, and frequently backward and forward the same Day. Some of those Rivers have Quick-sands, which swallow up Vessels in a Moment.

Schouten says, there are abundance of Cities, Towns and Villages, very well peopled in this Kingdom; that they have many fruitful Fields, Woods, Mountains, green Vallies, and an infinite Number of Orchards, Gardens, and Houses of Pleasure, with abundance of Rives, Lakes, and Ponds. In some Places the Towns are so populous, that there's scarce any passing for the Crowd. This he ascribes to their having little or no Commerce by Sea, so that few of the People ever go out of their Country. Their greatest Voyages are when they make War with their Ships against those of *Bengal* and *Pegu*. They have no pestilential Distempers. Their Soil is fruitful, and their Climate healthful. The chief of their Distempers are Tertian and Quartan Agues during the rainy Season. The Number of People he ascribes likewise to their Polygamy, and that they seldom hazard a Battle; but if weaker than their Enemies, retire, and leave them to plunder the Country as they think fit.

Their Houses are light, made up of Palm-Tree Branches or Canes, and cover'd with Coco-Leaves. They have many small Windows, and are very airy. They stand upon Pillars, because every Night there rises a Fog, which covers the Surface of the Ground, but is dispelled in the Morning with the Beams of the Sun. Few of their Houses are above 5 or 6 Foot high. Those of Quality and Wealth have pretty numerous Apartments, which communicate with one another in a very convenient and agreeable Manner. They have no Stone Chimnies, Granaries, or Cellars. Their Kitchens are generally without their Houses, and near their Gates, where their Women dress their Victuals in Earthen Pots. Their Beds

are Mats or Tapestry, and they cover themselves with Shifts of Cotton or Cloth instead of Sheets and Bed-Clothes. Their Woods, Fields, Gardens, &c. are verdant all the Year. Their Winter lasts from *April* to *October*, is very rainy, and sometimes they have such Tempests, that one is scarce able to walk the Streets or Roads, both of them being of deep Clay. Their Summer is very charming, and they have Plenty of all Corn except Wheat and Rye. Their chief Fruits are Coco's, Bananas, *Indian* Figs, Mango's, Oranges, Lemons, and large, fine, yellow Citrons, which are above a Span long, very thin Rin'd, and yield above 8 or 10 Ounces of Juice apiece. Their ordinary Drink is a Liquor that runs out of the Trunks of certain Trees, which are very plentiful on the Sides of Rivers, and some grow in the Water. 'Tis of a good Relish, and almost as sweet as Sugar, but in 3 or 4 Days turns as sour as Vinegar. 'Tis sold both in publick and private Houses to Travellers. The Trees resemble the lowest Sort of Palms, and the Liquor is called *Auze*. When it is just drawn, or has stood about 14 or 18 Hours, an extraordinary Draught quickens the Senses, and revives the Brain. 'Tis of a whitish Colour, and almost like Whey. They sell great Pots, which hold 5 or 6 Pints, for 2 d. a Pot.

The chief Towns of this Kingdom are, 1. *Arracan*, which the *Sansons* place Lat. 20¹/₂ Long. 138. almost 40 German Leagues S. of *Bengal*; *Moll* Long. 111. on a River of the same Name, which falls about 30 Miles Southward into the Gulph of *Bengal*. *Ovington* says, it lies in a Valley, is 15 Miles in Compass, and surrounded with a continued Ridge of steep craggy Mountains, cut artificially like Fortifications. The Outlets, which serve for Gates, are hewn out of the Rocks, and defended by Bulwarks, so that the City is impregnable. Within it has such a strong Castle, that the King of *Brama* besieg'd it in vain with 300000 Men, and 40000 Elephants. There's a large River runs thro' the Valley, which *Maginus* calls *Chaberis*. It glides thro' the City in several little Streams, to the great Convenience of the Citizens, and afterwards unites in two Channels, which opening towards the N. and S. at length fall West-

ward into the Gulph, 47 Miles from the City, one at *Orietan*, and the other at *Dobari*. The Buildings are generally mean; but there are several spacious Piazzas and Bazars. The common People build with *Bambou* Cane, but the Princes and Nobility make use of a different Sort of Wood, and adorn the Insides of their Houses with rich Carvings and Gildings. The Palace Royal is vastly large, but not so beautiful. 'Tis supported with great tall Pillars made of whole Trees, and cover'd with Plates of Gold, has Chambers above built with red and white Sandal, and other odoriferous Wood, the most precious in all the *East*. In the Center of the Palace there's a great Hall, whose Inside is overlaid with Gold from Top to Bottom, and over a rais'd Place there's a Canopy of massy Gold, with 100 large Wedges of the same round it in the Fashion of Sugar-Loaves, and above 40 Pound Weight each. Here are also 7 Idols of massy Gold as high as a Man, and two Inches thick, but hollow within. Their Foreheads, Breasts, Arms, and Middles, are adorned with Rubies, Emeralds, Sapphires, Diamonds, &c. of an extraordinary Bigness, In the midst of the Hall there's a square Stool of 3 Hands Breadth of pure Gold, which supports a Cabinet of the same, overlaid with Precious Stones, containing the two *Caneques*, (in the King's Titles) *i. e.* two famous Pendants in the Form of Pyramids, being two Rubies of the Length of a Man's little Finger, and the Circumference of the Base as wide as that of an ordinary Puller's Egg. These Jewels are said to suppose a Claim of Dominion over the neighbouring Princes, and have caus'd a World of Bloodshed on that Account. The King never wears them but on his Coronation-Day. In another Apartment there's the Statue of the King of *Brama*, who was treacherously murder'd by his Subjects, had the Reputation of a great Saint, and is fam'd for curing the Diseases of those that resort to him, especially the Bloody Flux, as they give out. Our Author says, the City contains 600 Pagods, and 160000 Inhabitants, besides Foreigners. Near the Palace there's a great Lake, with many small Islands, inhabited by their Priests, and frequented by a great Number of Boats, but hinder'd from all Communication with the

City by a Bank, so contriv'd, that if they were obliged to yield the City, and retire hither, they could overflow the Town, by breaking down this Bank.

Schouten says, the City it self is almost as big as *Amsterdam*, and much more populous, so that he never saw a Place more crowded in his Life. 'Tis surrounded with Suburbs some Leagues in Length. The Houses are very close, but generally so low that they want Air, and don't correspond with the Vanity of the Nation. There are several fine Stables about the Palace, where the King keeps a good Number of Elephants, Horses, Lions, Tigers, Rhinoceros's, &c. Besides the Rocks, 'tis defended by high thick Stone Walls. Many of the Streets are filled with rich Shops, and lie upon the Ridges of Rocks. All the richest Goods of *Asia* are to be found here, and they make use of Elephants, as we do of Horses, for Carriage, and they are so tame that they are govern'd commonly by young Boys, who ride on their Necks. The Apartments of the King and his Concubines in the Palace are distinguish'd from the rest by their gilded Roofs and gilt Turrets, in Form of Steeples, which dazzle one's Eyes when the Sun shines. *Schouten*, who sail'd with others in the Factory's Pleasure Boat into the adjacent Country, says, 'tis admirably diversified with Mountains, Towns, Villages, pleasant Fields of Grass and Rice, where there are many Shepherds and Shepherdesses attending Flocks of great and small Cattle; that there are abundance of Ponds of good Water betwixt the Fields, which abound with Fowls of all Sorts; and at *Bandel*, a City not far from *Arracan*, there are vast Stables for Elephants of all Sizes, some of them valued at several Thousands of *Roupies*. The Inhabitants did mightily wonder to see the *Dutch*, crowded about them wherever they landed, and were extreme civil to them. In another small City he saw many Idols of a monstrous Size, and one, reckon'd the largest in the Kingdom, plac'd on the Top of a Rock, with Stairs cut up to the Image, which was richly habited and adorn'd, and reckon'd their supreme God.

2. *Orietan*. It lies, says *Ovington*, on the Branch of the River which runs from *Arracan* to the N. The Banks of this River be-

tween

tween the Cities are so cover'd with tall shady Trees, that they defend Travellers from the Heat of the Sun like Arbors as they sail down the same, and their Pleasure is much augmented by the great Numbers of Apes and Peacocks which skip from Tree to Tree. The City is frequented by Merchants from most Parts of the East. 'Tis govern'd by a Deputy, who has the Title of King, and receives a Crown from the King himself at his Coronation, being one of those 12 Capitals in this Country which are all govern'd by Crown'd Heads. Near this City lies Mount *Maum*, and a Lake of the same Name at the Foot of it. To this Mountain the King sends all his Exiles, where they are kept under strong Guards, and have their Heels cut off to prevent their Escape. The Mountain is so steep and craggy, and the Passes so infested with Wild Beasts, that 'tis hardly passable for Travellers.

3. *Peroem*. It lies near the Coast, after crossing the Gulph from the Mountain, is a Town of great Traffick, and has a good capacious Harbour. 'Tis likewise the Residence of a Governor, who exercises absolute Authority within his Precincts, and keeps a Court answerable to the Majesty of a King. Some place a Town of this Name on the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Ava*.

4. *Rama* is another City of equal Condition, and a few Days Journey from *Peroem*. The Way to it is very dangerous either by Land or Water, the Sea being subject to sudden Tempests; and the Land, which lies cross the Mountains of *Pre*, being infested with Wild Beasts.

In these Parts there's a Mountain called *Pera*, which signifies God or an Idol, because of an Image plac'd on the Top, which is adored by the Inhabitants. There's a large River at the Foot of this Mountain, from whence a Canal might have been cut to the City of *Arracan*; but the King would not allow it, for fear the *Moguls* should thereby have an Opportunity to attack his Capital.

5. The next noted Town on this Coast is *Dianga* or *Diange*. *Moll* places it Lat. 22 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 101 $\frac{1}{2}$. 120 Miles N. from *Arracan*. Some place it in *Bengal*; but *Father Tosi* makes it one of the principal Cities of *Arracan*. Most of the Inhabitants are fugitive

Portuguese, who have great Privileges, with Monasteries and Churches in this City and its Neighbourhood. There are several other Towns along the Coast, of which we have no Description. *Moll* places a Dutch Factory on the River of *Arracan*, 60 Miles towards the N. E. from that City; but we have no Account of it.

On the S. Stream from *Arracan*, *Ovington* gives an Account of the following Places: 1. *Dobazi*, a City of great Traffick, with a Harbour much frequented by Strangers. 2. *Chudabe*, or *Chedube*, another Town of Trade, with a good Harbour. *De Lisle* makes this the most Southern Town of the Kingdom.

3. The Kingdom of *A V A*,

Lies E. from *Arracan*, S. from *Tipra*, N. from *Brama*, and W. from the Kingdom of *Lao*, according to *Lisle*. The *Sansons* say, it abounds with Provisions, has several Minerals, some Musk, and Rubies. *Luyts* says, it contains several Kingdoms, nam'd from their principal Towns, of which *Tipra*, already mentioned, is one; but the rest not being described, are not worth mentioning, except *Ava*, the Metropolis, a fine large City on the River *Caypumo*, *Pegu*, or *Ava*. *Moll* places it Lat. 20 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 115. Here the King resides, and there's a great Trade in Jewels and Musk. *Bouffingault* says, the Town is 5 Leagues round, and that there are Mines of Copper, Lead, and Silver, and Store of Elephants and Horses in this Country. The King has 5 others for his Tributaries.

4. The Kingdom of *P E G U*.

The *Sansons* tell us, that when this Kingdom was at its Height, it was reckon'd equal to the Empire of *China*. *Vincent Blane* says, it contain'd two Empires, and 26 Kingdoms or Dominions, govern'd by Crown'd Heads. The *Sansons* suppose the two Empires to have been *Pegu* and *Siam*, the latter having been Tributary to the former. The Kingdoms he reckons to be *Martavan*, *Manar*, *Tangu*, *Marsin*, *Jangoma*, *Brama*, *Abdiara*, *Vilep*, *Caypama* or *Canarane*, *Tazatay*, *Mandranelle*, *Tarjay*, *Cablan*, *Ava*, *Tansiane*, *Tinco*, *Pron*, *Bacay*, *Largaray*, *Cotay*, *Cassubi*, *Moanay*, *Ci-*

poura, *Chacomar*, *Comotay*, and *Caor*. Most of those Dominions are so rich and potent of themselves, that they can furnish from 2 to 400000 Men apiece; and they abound with Mines of Silver, Gold, and Precious Stones, besides Corn, Fruit, Herbs, Fowls, and Cattle. The most potent are the Kingdoms of *Tangu* and *Brama*, the latter having sometimes subdued *Pegu*, and the former, with the Kingdom of *Arracan*, did entirely ruin that Government. *Pegu* was anciently so powerful and rich, that Gold, Silver, Pearls, and Precious Stones, were so common in their King's Palaces, that all the Riches of the *East* seem'd to be there assembled. They had in Statues of Gold and Wedges to the Value of above 60 Millions in Gold, besides the Pearls and other Jewels which adorn'd them, that were of much greater Value than the Gold. The Cielings of their Houses and other Moveables were so rich with Gold and Azure within and without, as could scarce be believed, had not this been the Golden and Silver Region of *Ptolomy*; so that 'tis no Wonder that it is one of the richest and best Peopled Countries in the *Indies*. About 100 Years ago, say the *Sanfons*, the King of *Pegu* had in his Army against the King of *Siam* above a Million of Foot, 200000 Horse, 5000 Elephants, 3000 Camels, &c. The Cause of this War was to take two white Elephants from the King of *Siam*, and for the same Reason the Kings of *Arracan* and *Tangu* made War on *Pegu*.

Ovington describes *Pegu Proper* thus: It has *Brama*, *Siammon*, and *Calaminham*, on the N. *Arracan* and the Bay of Bengal on the W. and lies along the Coast from Cape *Nigraes* as far as the City of *Tavay*, Lat. 13. It has *Lao* on the E. and *Siam* on the S. but the Limits are uncertain, according as they and their Neighbours extend or keep their Conquests: For in 1690, *Brama* King of *Pegu* conquer'd *Siam*, but his Successor lost it. According to this Description, it lies in Form of a Half-Moon along the Coast, from Lat. 13. to 16. which is about 180 Miles. The Soil is water'd with several Rivers, one of which comes from Lake *Chimay*, and runs between 4 and 500 Miles before it falls into the Sea. Some call it the *Indian Nile*, because of the Advantage it brings into the Country by Trade, and overflows it

sometimes for 30 Leagues, which so enriches their Soil, that it yields vast Quantities of Rice; but their chief Wealth was their Precious Stones, *viz.* Rubies, Topazes, Sapphires, and Amethysts, which the Natives call'd by the general Name of Ruby, but distinguish'd them by their Colours. The chief Mine is in a Mountain near *Cape-lan* or *Cablan*, between *Pegu* and *Siam*, and the Hills which stretch from this Kingdom to *Cambodia*. We refer to *Ovington* for the several Sorts and Values of them, and the Opinion of Authors about their Vertues.

The People are tawny, and debauch'd to the highest Degree. The Women have scarce any Modesty, and go almost quite naked, with a thin Cloth about their Middle, which scarce covers their Shame. They pretend in Excuse, that they were enjoin'd to go so by one of their Queens, to excite the Desires of their Men, who were much addicted to Sodomy. Their Marriages are very loose and uncertain, for they separate at Pleasure upon any Disgust, and they let their Wives and Daughters to Strangers for Hire. Their Habitations are mean and nasty, for they make no Scruple to lodge in the same Room with the Hogs. They are exceeding superstitious, and worship the Devil, whom they reckon the Author of Evil, as they do God of Good, and in all Calamities their first Addresses are to the Evil Spirit for Deliverance, and they make Vows to him, which they perform upon their Recovery, with the Assistance of one of their Priests, whom they call the Devil's Father, and he directs them to make Feasts, with Musick, &c. Many of 'em run about in the Morning with a Torch in one Hand, and Rice in the other, pretending to give the Devil his Breakfast, that he mayn't hurt them all Day. Others at Meals throw Part of what they have over their Shoulders, to feed the Devil before they eat any themselves. At *Tavay* they replenish their Houses with Victuals, and leave them for three Months, that the Devils may dwell and feed there, and be favourable all the rest of the Year. They have a sort of Monks called *Talapains*, who endeavour to root out this Devil-Worship, but without Effect. They live on the Alms of the People, who respect 'em so much, that they gladly drink the

the Water they wash their Hands in. They are the very Dregs of the Mob, yet assume great State, walk about in long Robes, with Leathern Girdles, and a Bag to put their Alms in. They suffer no Hair to grow on their Bodies, and have their Heads always cover'd. They live in Woods, and have Cages upon the Tops of the Trees to secure them from Wild Beasts. They preach to the People, and call them together by the Sound of a Bell or a Basin. Their Discourses are generally upon the Law of Nature and social Virtues, such as, That they should not steal, commit Adultery, nor bear false Witness, &c. This they think sufficient for Salvation, whatever extravagant Opinions People may hold otherwise. Mr. Ovington says, That Doctrine has a very good Effect upon the People, makes them hospitable and charitable, so that they are not displeas'd when any of them embrace Christianity. They hold an eternal Succession of Worlds without Creation, and a Multiplicity of Gods to govern 'em; That 4 who were to govern this present World are already dead, the last of them 2000 Years ago, and they suddenly expect the 5th, after whose Death they say this World is to be burnt, and a new one to rise out of its Ashes. They hold a Transmigration of Souls into all Sorts of Creatures, after which they go to a Place of Torment, then to one which abounds with sensual Pleasures, and at last into a State of Annihilation, which they reckon the chief Perfection. They look upon Apes and Crocodiles to be holy Creatures, and reckon those who are devour'd by them to be happy. They have 5 solemn Festivals in a Year to their Idols, with different Ceremonies, some of which are very pompous, and attended by the King, Queen, and the whole Court. In one the chief Men erect Pillars and Pyramids of several Forms, and hang Torches and Wax-Candles round them, to light those that come to worship the great Idol. There is another call'd the *Feast of Water*, in which the King, Nobles, and all the People, divert themselves by throwing Water upon one another, so that 'tis impossible to pass the Streets without being wet to the Skin.

Some Authors reckon the King of Pegu the most powerful Prince in the East next

to the Great Mogul and the Emperor of China, and say, that *Brama*, who brought that prodigious Army before-mentioned into the Field against the King of Siam, took but the 10th Part of his Subjects. His Son also besieg'd the Capital of Siam with 900000 Men; but the Besieg'd drown'd the Country by an Inundation, which swept away all that vast Army but 70000 Men, and many that escap'd drowning were kill'd; which great Loss being follow'd by several others, says Ovington, enrag'd him, and made him turn Tyrant, which provok'd his Subjects to rebel.

Mr. Fitch, who was here in 1586, says, the King's best Force consisted in his Elephants, of which he had then 5000 fit for War, besides a great Number of others. He had 4 white ones, counted an extraordinary Rarity, so that he would make War upon any Prince that was known to have the like, rather than not have it, and he took more Pride in the Title of King of the White Elephants than all the rest. When they were brought before him at Pegu, where he resided, all the Merchants in the City were commanded to bring them Presents of half a Ducat each; so that the King got well by shewing his Elephants. They were lodged in gilded Houses, and fed out of Silver Vessels. They were carried to the River every Day to be washed, when 6 or 8 Men held up a Canopy over 'em of Cloth of Gold or Silk, as many marched before them with Drums and other Musick; and when they came out of the Water, their Feet were washed in great Silver Basins by Persons of Quality who were honour'd with that Office. He had also some large, stately, black Elephants, of which some were 9 Cubits high; but they were not such Favourites as the others. Those that are for the Wars have Wooden Castles on their Backs, with Soldiers that fight with Guns, Bows and Arrows, Darts, &c.

The King appears twice a Day in Publick, partly for State, and partly for the Administration of Justice. The Nobles sit at a good Distance on each Side, and without them there's a numerous Guard. When the King has a Mind to talk with any of them, they kneel down, lift their Hands up, and bow their Heads to the Ground. Petitioners, and those that come for Justice, never

never speak a Word before him, but present their Cases in Writing. They always bring Presents; but if the King does not like their Business, he rejects both. When he goes abroad, he is attended with a great Body of Guards and Noblemen. Sometimes he rides in a splendid Castle upon the Back of an Elephant, and sometimes is carried in a great Frame like a Horse-Litter upon 16 or 18 Men's Shoulders. There's a Canopy over it, gilded and set with Rubies and Sapphires. He had a prodigious Treasure, well guarded; but the Gates stood open in the Day-time for all Passengers to come and see it. He kept several Hundred Concubines, and about 90 Children of his own getting, with great State.

The Natives pluck their Beards up by the Roots with Pincers, tho' some let a few Hairs grow. They blacken their Teeth; and Mr. Fitch says, the King's Kindred, or the Inhabitants of *Brama*, his own Country, mark their Skins with black Spots. They make Incisions in their Pudenda, into which they put little Balls of Silver, Brass or Lead, one on a Side, and many of them wear three. They say, married Men put in one every time they have a Child, till they have had three. The least are as big as a small Walnut. The King and his Nobles wear them of Silver gilt, so as to ring and make a Noise; but the meaner Sort have theirs of Lead. The King often bestows some that he has worn himself on his Noblemen, which they reckon a great Favour. Notwithstanding the Pain they suffer by the Incision, they say they can make all whole again in a Week's time. Mr. Fitch says, this Custom was first introduced to restrain them from Sodomy. They can take them out and put them in again at Pleasure. They decide Law-Suits by going with their Judges to a River, where the contending Parties dive, and he that continues longest under Water carries the Cause. The chief Goods imported here are, the Opium of *Cambaia*, the painted Cloth of *St. Thomas* or *Masulipatan*, the white Cloth of *Bengal*, red Cotton, Yarn, Sandal, China Ware, Camphire, Pepper, Woollen Cloth, Scarlets, Velvets, &c. Their own Product, besides what we have already mention'd, is Wine made of Rice, and some Sugar; but the Elephants eat most of the Canes. Their cur-

rent Money is Brass, which goes by Weight in Pieces of about Half a Crown Value. Their Silver and Gold are sold as other Commodities at the Market Price. They spare no Cost to make their Temples splendid and noble. They build them round, in Form of a Sugar-Loaf, about the Height of an ordinary Church, and some of them a quarter of a Mile round at Bottom, gilded without and within once in 10 Years; and were it not for this vast Consumption of Gold 'twould be very cheap in *Pegu*. Their Temples are filled with Idols richly adorned and gilt. There are many Temples peculiar to the King, four of which are extraordinary for their Images. In the chief of them there's the King's Statue at full Length of massy Gold, with a Crown of the same, adorned with the richest Jewels, and by him stand 4 Children of the same Metal. In the 2d there's a Statue of a Man in Silver as high as an ordinary House, with a rich Crown on his Head. In the 3d and 4th there are Brass Statues of a monstrous Size, with glorious Crowns, and all of them magnificently gilt. Their most famous Temple call'd *Dogonne* lies two Days Journey from *Pegu*. To this they make their great Pilgrimage, and here they celebrate their most solemn Feast, when the Crowd is so great, that there's scarce any travelling by Water or Land. There are 4 Ways which lead to this Temple, set with Fruit-Trees on every Side, which afford a lovely Shade. Near it there is a stately Edifice for the Priests, open on all Sides, supported by gilt Pillars. Besides this, there are other Houses with convenient Apartments for the Pilgrims, and for the Priests to perform their Devotions to the Images, and preach to the Auditors, by whose Presents they are maintain'd, and many times receive Gifts in the Pulpit. They admit none to Orders till above 20 Years of Age, most of which Time they spend in Schools. They are examin'd by the Chief Priest, who tries them likewise by Disputation, and obliges them when admitted to leave their Friends, and vow Chastity. Their Habit is a thin brown Cloth next their Skin, a yellow Cloth many times doubled about their Shoulders, and both fasten'd about them with a broad Girdle. About their Necks, by a String, there

there hangs a Skin, which serves them for a Cushion, and they have always an Umbrella to skreen them from Sun and Rain. When they promise to observe all these Customs, they are carried about the Streets on Horseback in Triumph, richly apparell'd, with Drums and Pipes, to take their Farewel of Worldly Pomp. A few Days after they are carried about in the same Manner in a Horse-Litter upon 10 or 12 Men's Shoulders, when they are attended by their Friends, and put on the Habit.

Mr. *Frederick* says, That in Battle they have 4 several Squares of Elephants, Horsemen, Harquebusiers, and Pikemen; but their Arms are commonly of bad Metal. The upper Teeth of the Elephants are armed with Pikes of Iron, with which they fight. He adds, that there are 4 Brokers who engross all the Jewels and Rubies, and sell them very cheap. When the Merchant has agreed for them, he may carry them Home for the Advice of other Merchants, and is at Liberty to return them without Loss, which the Brokers count such an Affront, that rather than take it, they many times afford extraordinary Pennyworths. They have the same secret Way of driving Bargains as those of the Western Peninsula. Every Christian that dies here loses a third of his Estate to the King and his Officers.

Father *Pimenta*, Visitor of the Jesuits in *India*, says, That *Brama*, the before-mention'd King of *Pegu*, reign'd 36 Years in Splendor and great Plenty; but his tyrannical Son, by his own Murders, and the Invasions from Foreign Enemies, reduced his Subjects to 7000, and they had such a Famine, that Man's Flesh was sold in the Shambles, and Families devour'd one another. He was besieged in his Castle by the Kings of *Arracan* and *Tangu*, who beheaded him, with his Queen and Son, and loaded 600 Elephants, and as many Horses, with Gold and Gems, besides above 3 Millions of Silver.

When the Sun is eclips'd, they make a hideous Noise, say it will be devour'd by the Constellation call'd the *Dragon*, and fast all Day to prevent it. They worship an Ape, which they say was a God, but for some Fault transformed to that Animal. They represent him by an Ape at the Foot of a gilded Poll, which at this Festival is

drawn about a Mile and a half at Midnight by 10000 Men. *Linschotten* says, they have great Pismires here, that fly up to Trees, on which there's a Gum that they suck up, and then make Lacque round the Branches, as Bees make Honey and Wax; and when it is full, the Owners cut down the Branches, and take off the Lacque. *Mandelsloe* says, when the King dies, they put his Corps in a Boat, burn it with sweet-scented Wood, mix his Ashes with Milk into a Past, cast it into the Sea, and preserve such of his Bones as are left in a Chappel. They pawn their Children for Money; but if their Creditor enjoys them carnally, they are absolv'd from the Debt. *Boussingault* says, they worship the Image of the Virgin and St. *Thomas*, to whom they ascribe many Miracles; that they have a Bird call'd *Boujagni*, which feeds for most Part in Water; and that those who have Lands adjoining to Lakes and Rivers, keep great Numbers of them, and he that has 200 is accounted rich. They are attended by a Boy with a Basket, into which he puts the Eggs of the Females, and at Night, upon giving them a Signal, they come to their Roosting-place. They are very good Food, and when put into Fields of Millet or Rice, eat up the Weeds, but meddle with none of the Grain. He adds, that the Inhabitants weaken their natural Seed by eating too much Spice, which occasions many Hermaphrodites among them; and that they make abundance of Camlets, Tapestries, and Silk Stuffs.

Their chief Towns are, 1. *Pegu*, on a River of that Name. It lies, says *Moll*, Lat. $16\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 116. about 70 Miles up the River. *Mandelsloe* says, 'tis divided into New and Old, the former inhabited by Merchants, and the latter by the King and his Court. The Palace, he says, is as big as *Venice*, is divided from the City by its Fortifications, and surrounded with a Moat, in which they keep Crocodiles, for its further Security. He keeps 800 Elephants within it, and those for his own Use are taught to pay him Reverence. *Herbert* says, the City is walled with Stone, beautified with Turrets, has 4 large Gates, 12 Posterns, and is chiefly defended by a broad deep Ditch. The Streets are long and broad, and planted with Trees, which afford them Fruit and Shade. *Fitch* says, the

Suburbs are large, the Houses built of *Bamboo* Canes, and cover'd with Straw, which makes them very liable to Fire. He says, the Palace has 20 Stone Gates, with abundance of Watch Towers pompously gilt. The Houses of the New City are built of Timber, cover'd with Tiles. *Bouffingault* says, they have Magazines to preserve their Merchandize from Fire. Within the first Gate of the Palace are the Houses of the *Grandeos*, who must go no further without the King's Leave, and there's a great Guard at the second Gate. On each Front of the Palace there are 4 Giants of polish'd Marble in *Relievo*, with Figures of the same Nature upon the Gates. The Courts are pay'd with polish'd Marble, which make the Palace look as if it stood in a calm Sea, and on the Walls all the Battles of their Kings are done in *Relievo*. There are many fine Gardens and noble Fountains within the Palace, from whence there's a fine Prospect of the River, and the neighbouring Fields and Groves, which are full of Apes, tame and wild Peacocks, Parrots, white Partridges, and other Birds. There's a Lake adjoining of half a League in Circuit, belonging to the Queen's Palace, which something resembles the *Escorial* at *Madrid*; and in this Lake there's a Multitude of Birds of all Colours, which form a very agreeable Object to the Eye. There are also Parks in the Neighbourhood with all Sorts of wild Birds and Beasts.

2. *Negraes*, a Promontory and Town on the Coast, W. from *Pegu*, from which it lies 10 Days Journey by Water. It has a good Harbour; but the Entrance is difficult, because of a Bar.

3. *Munay*, an Island near *Cape Negraes*, supposed to be the same which *Moll* calls *Diamond*. *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto* says, 'tis famous for Pagan Temples, one of which is call'd the Temple of the God of the Atoms of the Sun, and another the Temple of the God of the Afflicted of the Earth. 'Tis the Residence of the Chief Priest call'd *Xonom Pangi*, who presides over all the Ecclesiasticks of the Kingdom, and takes the Right Hand of the King, who treats him with great Reverence, and at his Death is obliged to attend his Funerals with the whole Court, and to bear the Expence.

4. *Cosmin*, or *Cosmi*, on the same Coast, 3 Days Journey, says *Fitch*, S. E. from *Negraes*. *Moll* makes it an Island. The other says 'tis a pretty Town, pleasantly situated, and abounds with all Conveniencies. The Houses stand on Posts or Frames of Wood, to which they ascend by high Ladders, for fear of the ravenous Tigers, with which this Country is pester'd. From hence the Inhabitants go to *Pegu* in Boats, upon which the Watermen live with their Families all the Year. *Balbi* says, it lies in Lat. 16 $\frac{1}{2}$. and that there are many Parrots, Wild Boars, and Apes, in the Neighbourhood; and *Mr. Smith* says, it produces great Figs, Oranges, Coco's, and other Fruit.

5. *Medon*. *Fitch* says is another pretty Town, vastly stock'd with those Boats, where they keep their Markets upon the Water, and shade their Commodities from the Sun by a large Umbrella of Coco and Fig Leaves.

6. *Dela*, or *Dala*. *Moll* makes it an Island on the same Coast. *Fitch* says, it has a good Harbour, from whence Ships trade to *Malacca*, the *Red Sea*, &c. Here there are about 20 very large Houses, where they keep and tame Elephants, which are very numerous in the adjacent Woods, for the King of *Pegu*.

7. *Syriam*, or *Siriaon*. The *Sansons* make it an Island. It lies at the Mouth of the River *Pegu*. *Fitch* says here's a handsome Town, with a good Harbour, where Ships unlade, and send their Goods up the River by Boats to *Pegu*. *Marten* and *Floris* say, there's a Fort here, which the King of *Aracan*, after conquering *Pegu*, put into the Hands of the *Portuguese*, who, according to their usual Insolence, requited him by taking his Son Prisoner soon after, and extorting a great Ransom for him, which was severely reveng'd by the King of *Ava*, who attacked the *Portuguese* with a great Force, cut off their Garrison, and restor'd the Trade to the *Moors*. *Ovington* says, this City was formerly the Residence of their King, very splendid, and encompassed with strong Walls, the Ruins of which are still to be seen. Their last King, in 1567, held out a Siege against the K. of *Pegu*, who attacked him with 1500000 Men, and lost a third Part of his Army before it; but the City not being able to hold out, the King poi-
son'd

son'd himself, and he of *Pegu* carried off the Nobles and all the Riches of the City to his Capital.

Bouffingault and the *Sansons* describe some other Kingdoms and Towns in the Empire of *Ava*, which we find no where else.

1. *Cassubi*, the Capital of a Kingdom of the same Name. The *Sansons* place it at the Conflux of the Rivers *Cosmin* and *Caypoumo*, Lat. $25\frac{3}{4}$. Long. 141, on a Plain bounded with high Hills, and well water'd. *Bouffingault* says, 'tis a fine large City, and of great Trade, by Means of its several Rivers, which fall into the Gulph of *Bengal*. The Country has the largest Quinces in the *East*, and very good Grapes, with all Sorts of other Fruit. They have Plenty of Manna on their Trees, that they gather before the Rising of the Sun, which melts it quite down. He says, the Inhabitants, especially in the Mountains, live to a great Age, and some to 150 Years. These Mountains, say the *Sansons*, are full of Wild Beasts, which yield delicate Furs, such as Ermins, Martens of several Sorts, &c.

2. *Transiana*. *Bouffingault* places it betwixt *Siam* and *Tinco*, and says, that it lies farthest N. of any Part of the Empire of *Pegu*. *Sanson* places it in Lat. $24\frac{1}{2}$. and Long. 144. He says, the Air is very temperate, except in the Summer, when, because of the great Heats, the People must travel by Night. They have a Mine of Diamonds, and several of Gold and Silver, the finest in the *East*. They abound with Corn, Fruits of all Sorts, and Palm Wine. The People are fierce and proud, resemble the *Persians*, but are fairer, and their Women very handsome and lascivious. They delight much in Musick and Banquets. They tie up their Hair, and mix it with Ribbans and Jewels, according to their Quality. The common People wear Bracelets and Rings of several Metals and Colours. All Women are obliged to nurse their own Children, and Adultery is punish'd with Death, for which Reason many of their Women don't marry; for such as are unmarried or Widows, may prostitute themselves without Infamy. Nor does it hinder their marrying when they have a Mind to it, and the Fathers are obliged to

maintain the Children that are got out of Wedlock. Their King has always a Guard of Women, who are excellent at the Cross-Bow, and are well rewarded for their Dexterity or good Behaviour in War. He has 1000 Elephants, and 50000 Horse, and hunts with tame Lions and Wolves. The *Sansons* say, he pays Tribute to the King of *Pegu* in delicate Horses. There's a very high Mountain here nam'd *Columa*, cover'd with Sandal Trees, Ebony, and Palms of all Sorts. The Country abounds with Rhubarb, and the Roads are adorned with Tombs excellently cut in Stone, where they pretend to have dry'd Corps of above 7 or 800 Years old. They have a fierce Wild Beast here call'd *Agazirou*, with 4 Tusks, that cut like Razors. 'Tis as large as a middling Beeve, has a Head like a Bear, and a Tail like a Hog. The People hunt them for their Skins, which serves them for Armour, and their Flesh is as good as Pork. This is a dangerous Exercise, for those Beasts attack whatever comes in their Way, so that they kill many of the Hunters. They have several Birds, of whose Feathers they make very curious Things of the most lively Colours of the World. Some of those Birds are so large and strong, that they carry off Sheep with their Talons. They have likewise Birds of *Paradise*, whose Feet they cut off, and then sell them to Merchants. The *Sansons* say, they have Bezoar Goats.

3. *Calaminham*. *Bouffingault* says is an Empire 300 Leagues both Ways, in which there are several fine populous Cities, well provided with all Necessaries of Life; but he does not tell us where it lies, nor do we find it in our Maps. *Ovington* makes it one of the N. Boundaries of *Pegu*. *Bouffingault* says, *Timplan* or *Timphan* is the Capital, and chief Residence of the Emperor. He places it on a great River call'd *Pituy*; but we find neither in our Maps. He says, there's a great Concourse of Boats here, and that 'tis surrounded with a Wall of Free-stone, very large Ditches, and a Castle, with high Towers at each Gate. 'Tis said to contain 200000 Houses, which are seldom above two Stories high; but the Buildings are generally costly, especially those of the Merchants and Nobility, which are separated by large Inclosures, with Basse Courts,

and Arches at the Entries, together with Gardens, Orchards, and Fish-Ponds; and there are reckon'd in the City and Suburbs 2600 Pagods, some of which are very rich and sumptuous, tho' the main are only little Huts like Hermitages. The Inhabitants are divided into 24 different Sects. Their chief Idol is that call'd, *The God of the Atoms of the Sun*, and its Priests are most esteem'd. Those of all Sorts are cloath'd in Yellow like them of *Pegu*. The common Fairs kept here are furnish'd with all manner of Necessaries. The Court is very rich, the Nobility well educated, and the Revenues of the Princes and Lords very considerable; and tho' they all respect the King to a Miracle, yet he keeps several Foreign Captains, and gives them good Pensions for his better Security. The Court is attended by above 60000 Horse and 10000 Elephants. The Gentlemen of the Country are served in Vessels of Silver, and sometimes of Gold. In Summer they wear Sattin, Damask and Strip'd Taffeta's from *Persia*, and in the Winter Robes lin'd with the Fur of Martens.

Every New Moon each Captain is oblig'd to review his Soldiers, which are commonly 2000 Foot, 500 Horse, and 80 Elephants of War, one of which is always call'd by the Name of the Capital of a Province. *Bouffingault* divides this Monarchy into 27 Kingdoms and 700 Provinces, with Viceroy's in every Capital, who have equal Power, and the Number of Soldiers in the whole amounts to 1750000, of which 350000 Horse, and 55000 Elephants, there being such vast Numbers in this Country, that the Emperor assumes the Title of Lord of the Invincible Power of the Elephants. His Revenues and Mines bring him in above 20 Millions of Gold, besides the Presents made him by Princes, the Nobility, and his Captains. *Bouffingault* adds, that the Country abounds in Pearls, Amber, and Salt, is very healthful, and has good Air and Water. When the Inhabitants sneeze, they make the Sign of the Cross, and say, *Verily God is three and one*, which our Author takes to be a Sign that the ancient Inhabitants of this Country had the Knowledge of true Religion. We come now to

The Empire of S I A M,

Which is the second Grand Division of this Peninsula, has the *Indian Sea* on all Sides, except towards the N. and E. where 'tis bounded by *Pegu* and *Cochinchina*, and contains the Kingdoms and Provinces of *Martaban*, *Jangoma*, *Camboya*, *Siam Proper*, and *Malacca*, with several others, Tributary to the King of *Siam*.

1. S I A M P R O P E R.

Schouten and *Mandelsloe* place it 18 Degrees on this Side the Line, and bound it with *Pegu*, *Arracan*, and *Ava*, on the N. *Bengal Bay* on the W. *Patana* on the E. whence the Coast and the Gulph of *Siam* runs N. to Lat. 13½. and turning S. to the 12th, makes a Semicircle of 450 Leagues. The former extends it S. to the Frontiers of *Queda* and *Patane* in the Peninsula of *Malacca*; but on the E. he includes *Tonquin* and *Cochinchina*, which *Luyts* and the *Sansons* have plac'd in the Division of *Anna*. Our modern Maps place it in the 145th Deg. of Long. but the 6 Jesuits sent hither by the French King in 1685 found, by the Observation of two Lunar Eclipses, that 'tis situate in the 121st. They extend it to the 22d Deg. of N. Lat. from the Point of *Malacca*, which lies in the 4th, and make it 340 Leagues from N. to S. and about 180 where broadest. They bound it on the E. with high Mountains, which part it from *Laos*, on the N. and W. by others which divide it from *Pegu* and *Ava*, and make it a sort of Peninsula betwixt the *Indian Sea* on the W. and the *Chinese* on the E.

Struys says, the Air is very temperate, considering 'tis so near the Line, and that the Soil in general is very fat and fruitful. Father *Tachard* and the other French Jesuits above-mention'd say, the Country is Woody, and for most Part untill'd. One of their best Trees is that call'd the *Bambou Cane*, which *Ælian* mentions as their most ancient Nourishment; but now they only use it in some of their Dishes while tender, or pickle it in Vinegar.

They

They have another Tree, the Scent of which they say drives away Gnats. It takes fresh Root in the Ground as the Branches fall, and spreads like that call'd the *Banian* Tree. They have also Store of Cotton Trees, and others from whence they extract Oils, which mix'd with their Plaister, makes the Walls white, and like polish'd Marble. They have abundance of other Trees that yield a Gum, which is the chief Compound in that excellent Varnish in the Works of *Japan* and *China*. They pound the Bark of another Tree as we do Rags for Paper; but 'tis not so even, substantial, or white, as ours. They write on it with *China* Ink, but sometimes blacken it, and then write on it with a kind of Chalk. Their Books are one large long Leaf, folded up in Plaits like a Fan, and they write from Top to Bottom. They have Store of good Timber for Ships and Houses, with Dying Woods, Aloes, and Cinnamon Trees inferior to none but those of *Ceylon* and *Cochinchina*.

Among their Fruits, the most considerable are Figs, like Sausages in Size and Shape. The Natives call them Elephants Trunks. Their Skin is yellow, and spotted with Black when ripe; but it has no Vacuity or Kernels. The Taste is strong, with a Mixture of Sweet and Sour. They have Jackes of the Shape of a large Melon, and of a greyish Skin, with a great Number of Kernels near as big as a Pigeon's Egg; and when boil'd or broil'd, are like our Chestnuts in Consistence, but of a more delicate Taste. The Pulp is yellow, juicy, clammy, and of a sweet Taste and Smell. They have abundance of Sugar-Canes, and their King has newly planted 100000 Pepper Trees. They have also Coco's, Anana's, and a Bastard Sort of Melons; but the most noted of their Plants is that called *Ginseng*. The Jesuits say 'tis yellow, has smooth Flesh, little Fibres like Hair, grows in the Vallies, and some of them are found in the Shape of a Man. They say, it cleanses the Blood, and has a very strengthening Quality; for which End they infuse small Bits of it in boil'd Water, cover it up till 'tis luke-warm, and drink it in a Morning fasting about the Weight of a Shilling. We refer the curious Naturalist for the rest to the Jesuits Account at large.

They have Mines of Lead, Tin, Load-

stone, Agats, Sapphires, Steel, (of which the Inhabitants forge Sabres, Ponyards, and Knives) Chrystal, Antimony, Emeralds, Marble, Gold, and Tambac, which is a Mixture of Copper with a little Gold and Silver, and some Diamonds were lately discover'd; but for want of Encouragement, the Mine was neglected. They have Iron Mines, but are bad Forge-men, for their Anchors are of Wood, and they have no Pins, Needles, Nails, Chizzels, nor Saws.

They have Store of Elephants, Rhinoceros's, Tigers, Deer, Oxen, Cows, Buffaloes, Goats, Sheep, Horses, Hogs, &c. but they eat little Flesh, and only catch the Deer for their Skin. They have such an Esteem for Elephants, that they think them animated with the Souls of some Princes or great Persons, because they love Grandeur, Attendance, and Mistresses. The King keeps several Hundreds of them in many of his Cities, and trains them up for War and other Occasions. The best are those call'd Elephants of Name, because he gives them honourable Names. Their Teeth are generally beautiful, and so long, that some of them reach above 4 Foot out of their Mouths, and are adorned with Rings of Silver, Gold, and Copper. They have some of a Flesh Colour, almost White, which they call the Kings of the Elephants, and the King of *Siam* keeps one in his Palace which is said to be 300 Years old, attended by divers *Mandarins*. The Black ones are next in Esteem. They have few Horses, and know not how to manage them. Their Goats and Sheep are very scarce, and not good Meat. Their Cows are but indifferent, and they keep their Oxen and Buffaloes for the Plough. They have small Pigs, which are very fat, but unsavory, and their Sheep tast commonly of the Wool, because they eat it from one another's Backs.

The Jesuits say, all Sorts of Birds multiply here exceedingly, because of the extreme Heat of the Climate. They are for most Part beautiful to look on. They have Wild Peacocks and Pigeons, grey Partridges, Plenty of Francolins, excellent Snipes, and fine Turtle-Doves, with Parrots, and other small Birds good to eat. They have great Numbers of Vultures, Crows, and Sparrows. The latter boldly enter into their Chambers

to pick up little Insects, with which they swarm. They feed the Crows and Vultures out of Charity with their young Children when they die. They have no Nightingales or other Singing-Birds, but such Plenty of Ducks, that they are sold for a Crown a Dozen. They have Wild Fowl of various Colours, but none hunt 'em except *Moors*, for the *Siamese* kill no Animals, because they believe Transmigration. There's a Sort of Birds call'd *Criel Herons*, which swarm upon the Trees, where they look at a Distance like Blossoms. 'Tis shap'd like our Heron, but much less, is well proportion'd, has white Feathers, and Tufts upon the Head, Back, and Belly, which render it extraordinary pretty. They have two Sorts of Hens, one like ours; the other has a black Skin and Comb, but white Flesh and Bones.

They have Pismires, which make their Nests and Magazines in Trees, and a white Sort which pierce thro' the Leaves of Books, unless they dawb the Covers and Edges with a kind of Varnish, which gives the Leaves a good Lustre, and does not hinder them from opening. They have abundance of little Flies like our Gnats, which sting thro' People's Clothes, and leave the Mark a long Time behind; but the *Siameses*, tho' they go naked, are not so much plagu'd with them as Foreigners, because they are dextrous at catching them. They have the Palmer Worm, call'd *Millipede*, because of its numerous Feet, which are very short in Proportion to its Length, that is about 5 or 6 Inches. It has Scales about its Body like Rings, pinches equally with its Head and Tail, and the Sting is painful, but not mortal. The *Siamese* say, it has two Heads at each End of its Body, and that it guides its self 6 Months in the Year with the one, and 6 with the other. There's a Lizzard call'd *Tocquay*, which they say cries out when his Liver grows too big, and being heard by another Insect, it creeps into his Mouth, eats the Superfluity of the Liver, and then returns back again. There's another wonderful Insect like Locusts, call'd the Fire-Fly, because of 4 bright Wings, of which only two are seen when they fly, and the other two when they are at Rest. The Trees by the Rivers swarm with them, and in the Night they look like so many

Lights upon the Leaves. There are abundance of dangerous Insects in their Rivers and the Gulph, for which Reason the better Sort only bathe at Home. There are also great Numbers of Monkies, which go together in Troops. They have frequent Inundations from the River *Menam*, which, like the *Nile*, extremely fattens the Soil, and destroys the Insects.

The Jesuits say, Rice is the principal Harvest of the *Siamese*. When they plough their Land, they guide their Oxen with a Rope put thro' the Cartilage that parts their Nostrils, and fasten'd to the Plough-Beam. They till their Lands after the Rains, and gather their Harvest when the Waters are retired, and sometimes while they remain on the Ground in Boats; and they say, that tho' the Water overflows ever so much, the Rice grows to that Degree, that the Ear is always above Water, tho' it rise a Foot in 24 Hours Time, according to our Authors. They add, that the Rice which grows where the Rivers don't overflow is more substantial, better relish'd, and more durable than the other, and they nourish it by great Cisterns or Trenches of Rain-Water. They have Wheat in the high Lands; but they sow little besides what's for the King's Table. They have also a Sort of Pease different from ours. They have one Crop a Year; but the Jesuits say, their Land would bear two, were it not for their Inundations.

They raise several Sorts of Herbs, Pulse, and Roots, in their Gardens. They have good Potatoes, which they often eat instead of Bread, a few large Mushrooms, but ill tasted, and Plenty of Cucumbers, which they eat raw. They have Chibbolds, Garlick, and Raddishes, of a sweeter Taste than ours. They have sour Lemons and Citrons, but sweet Pomegranates and Oranges, which have a green rough Skin, and are call'd Chrystal Oranges, because of their Value. They give 'em to the Sick, and sell 'em very dear after the Season is past. But the Tree which they mind chiefly is that call'd the *Arec* Tree, that, instead of Branches, has great Leaves on the Top like the Palm. They bear a Fruit like a great Acorn, but without a Cup. When 'tis tender, it has a greyish Substance as soft as Pap, which grows yellower and harder as it ripens. The Taste is a Savory-bitter. The *Siamese* cut it with

with a Knife into 4 Parts, and chew a Piece of it with some Lime made of Cockle-Shells, wrapped together in a Betle-Leaf.

The *French* Jesuits give the following Account of the Inhabitants.

Their ancient History is so fabulous, that there's no Certainty of their Origine; but our Authors conjecture, from the Nature of the Language, and the low and inconvenient Situation of the Country, that no Colony chose it for their Habitation, but that it was peopled by Degrees from its Eastern Neighbours, the rather, because the vulgar Language, and the Genius, Shape, and Complexion of both, is very much alike; but at present they are a mix'd People, and the *Siamese* themselves pretend they are of 40 different Nations. From their Infancy they go naked, except about two Ells and a half of painted Cloth, which they gird from their Middle to their Knees. The King presents the better Sort with a Piece of Silk for the same Purpose, embroider'd with Gold and Silver; but some wear plain Silk. Besides this, the *Mandarins* or Great Officers wear next their Skin a Muslin Shirt, which, when they meet a Superior, they pull off, and wrap about their Middle, as a Token of their Readiness to serve them. They have no Neckband, and are open at the Stomach. The Sleeves reach almost to their Wrists, and are about two Foot wide, but have no Gathers. In the Winter they put a Breadth of Stuff over their Shoulders like a Mantle, and wind the Ends of it neatly about their Arms. But the King wears under his Shirt a Vest of fine Sattin brocaded, with strait Sleeves to his Wrist, and adorned with Lace or *European* Point; but none else dare wear such, unless the King presents them with it. When the King and his Retinue go out to War or Hunting, they are cloath'd in Red, and his Soldiers when they go to War have a Vest of red Muslin. It reaches to the Knees, has 8 or 10 Buttons before, and the Sleeves are wide, but no lower than their Elbows. They wear this Garment upon Days of Ceremony. The King and his Officers wear a white, long, and painted Cap. The King's is adorned with a Circle of Precious Stones, and the Officers with divers Circles of Gold,

Silver, and Vermilion-gilt, to distinguish their Ranks. They wear them only before the King, on their Tribunals, or at some Ceremony. The *Moors* have learn'd them the Use of Slippers; but they never wear them before their King or their Superiors, nor within Doors. They have Hats, which, by the King's Order, are made of all Colours, and in the Shape of his Bonnet; but few wear them, except when they travel; nor do they care to cover their Heads from the Sun, unless upon the Water, where the Heat is most troublesome, and then they shade themselves with a Linen Cloth. The Women fasten their Cloth which they wear about them Length-wise, and let it fall down Broad-ways to the Calves of their Legs like a strait Petticoat, to distinguish them from the Men, who pull up one of the Ends betwixt their Legs like a Pair of Breeches. The Women go quite naked to the Waist, except the richer Sort, who sometimes wrap a Scarf about their Arms, and at other times put it single upon their Bosoms, and let the Ends hang down flying behind. Those of Quality wear their Clothes before of a black Colour, and their Scarf is commonly of plain white Muslin. Both Sexes are very modest, and prohibit bawdy Songs and those immodest Porcellane Figures and Paintings which come from *China*. They wear Rings on the three last Fingers of both Hands, and 'tis their Fashion to put on as many as they can. The Women and Children of both Sexes wear Pendants of Gold, Silver, or Vermilion-gilt, in the Form of a Pear, and the better Sort wear Bracelets of the same on their Arms or Legs till they are 6 or 7 Years old.

The *Siamese* are of a small Size, and their Bodies well proportion'd; but the Women's Breasts hang as low as their Navel. The Faces of both Sexes are longish, broad, and high at the Cheek-Bones, and their Foreheads terminate almost in a Point as much as their Chin. Their Eyes are small, slit a little upward, and the White of them is generally yellowish. Their Mouth is large, their Lips thick and pale, their Teeth black, and their Complexion a coarse Mixture of Brown and Red. The Women do not paint or patch. Their great Men dye their Legs Blue, higher or lower according to their Dignity, and their King is Blue as high

high as the Pit of his Stomach. Their Noses are short, and round at the End, their Ears made long by Art, their Hair thick, black, and lank, and both Sexes wear it no longer than the Top of their Ears. The Women raise it a little before, and the *Peguins* let it grow behind, that they may braid it. The unmarried Women cut it close on their Crowns, pull off a small Circle, and let the Hair underneath it grow down to their Shoulders. They perfume several Parts of their Bodies, and particularly their Lips, with Pomatum, to make them look pale. They bathe 3 or 4 times a Day, especially when they go to visit, and mark their Breasts with a Piece of Chalk, to signify that they come from the Bath. Their Water is always hot, so that they need not warm it. They think long Nails an Ornament, and their Dancers have artificial Nails of Copper, which make them look like Harpies. They blacken their Teeth, wash their Hair with Water and sweet Oils, but use no Powder. They pluck their Beards, tho' they have naturally very little. They are very plain in their Furniture and Diet. Their Houses are small, their Floors, Walls, and Roofs, cover'd with Hurdles of cleft Bambou's, and rais'd upon Piles of the same 13 Foot above Ground, to avoid the Inundations. They ascend them by Ladders of Bambou. Their Stables are rais'd to the same Height, and the Cattle go up to them on Hurdles. Their Hearths are a Basket full of Earth, supported on 3 Pillars, and stand in their Courts, but never in their Houses, which lie at a Distance from one another, because every thing is seen thro' the Hurdles. They have no Inns, but a sort of Caravanfera betwixt *Siam* and *Louvo*. In some Places they have Houses of Brick for Ambassadors, &c. The Great Officers at Court have Timber Houses, which are said to be Armories, where none lodge but the Master of the House, his principal Wife and Children, his other Wives, Children, and Slaves, being lodg'd within the same Inclosure in Apartments of Bambou. None of their Buildings are above one Story high. The Palaces of *Siam* and *Louvo*, and several Pagods, are built with Brick. The latter are like our Chappels, but without Cielings, the Laths which bear up the Tiles being painted with Red and Gold. They have

no outward Ornament for their Palaces or Temples but the Roofs, which they cover with Tin or Tiles painted Yellow. Their Stairs are mean, and their Gates low. The Splendor of their Houses consists in the Degrees of the Roofs, and the Number of Stairs that go from one Apartment to another, but all in a Line; so that the King's Palace has 7 Stairs and Degrees of Roof one above another, and those of the Nobility three, the highest being always the most honourable. The Pagods have usually a high Roof, under which the Idol stands, and there are two others lower for the People. The chief Ornaments of those Pagods are Pyramids of Lime and Brick, some of them as high as ordinary Steeples, and the lowest about two Fathoms, with Tin Spires, small and sharp pointed. The King's Palace at *Siam* cannot be described, because none durst enter further than the Hall. That at *Louvo* has a very white, smooth, shining Plaister, and the Hall is encompassed with a Ditch and Water-Works; but the Garden is neither large nor magnificent, being planted only with Flowers and Palm-Trees of several Sorts; so that 'tis remarkable only for its Coolness and Plainness. The King has Hunting Palaces in the Woods made of Bambou, and red on the Outside, with Cells for himself and his Wives. Every one builds their own House, which they remove at Pleasure by the Help of their Slaves, and have all necessary Utensils for that End. Their Tables are like the Head of a Drum, with a Ledge and no Feet. They use no Linen, Knives, Forks or Spoons, their Meat being sent up ready cut in Morfels. Their Tables being varnish'd, are easily clean'd with hot Water. Their Vessels are of China, ordinary Earthen Ware or Copper. Their Seats and Beds are Mats of Bulrushes, but the richer Sort have Beds and Chambers apart; their Beds being stuffed with Cotton-Wool, a Sheet under them, a Coverlet over them, and every one their Pillow. They hang a Curtain before their Sleeping-Room instead of Doors. None have any Vessels of Gold or Silver but by Leave from the King, as a Badge of their Office. The Halls of the King's Palaces are wainscotted, varnish'd with Red, and the Floors cover'd with Carpets, and those at *Louvo* have Looking-Glasses, with

a Sopha like a Bedstead, the Posts, Bottom, and Rods, being of Gold. The King sits on the Bottom upon a Carpet, and leans on a Pile of Cushions; but when he gives private Audience to Ambassadors, he sits in a gilt Wooden Chair. His Table Plate consists of Basons with Covers, in which his Rice is serv'd up. Their chief Diet is Rice and Fish, of which they have very good, and several Sorts unknown to us; but they chuse it rather dry and stinking than otherwise, and eat rotten Eggs, Rats, Lizards, and other Insects, which they think easy of Digestion.

The *Siamese* live very well on Rice and Fish for a Halfpenny a Day. Their Arack is about 3 *d.* a Pint, and they spend the Evenings in Mirth and Singing. Their chief Sawce is a little Water with some Spices, Garlick and Herbs, or rotten Cray-Fish. Their Oil is extracted from the Coco-Nut. Most of their Milk is from their She-Buffaloes; but they can have no Butter or Cheese, their Climate is so hot. They dress up their Fish in the Shape of several Animals, but rarely eat any Flesh, except the Guts of Beasts and Birds. In their Markets they sell Insects boil'd or roasted, which is all their Roast-Meat, except Pigs-Flesh, which they give to their Sick; but Strangers may feed on Beasts and Birds as they please.

Their chief Diseases are Fluxes and Dysenteries, which prove most fatal to *Europeans*, because not so temperate in their Diet as the Natives. They have likewise Burning Fevers, that are dangerous; but the ordinary Fevers kill none. They know nothing of Agues, but are troubled with Coughs, Quinancies, Defluxions, and Rheumatisms, occasioned by the Moistness of their Air, and the great Rains, which last long. They have also Cankers, Impostumes, and Fistula's; and Erysipela's are so common, that scarce one in 20 escapes them, and some have two Thirds of their Body cover'd with them. Their greatest Plague is the Small-Pox, which makes a terrible Havock, so that they bury those that die of it without burning, till after they have lain 3 Years in the Ground; for if they open the Graves sooner, they say the Contagion will spread.

Their Vines afford them only small bitter Grapes, but no Wine. Their ordinary Drink is perfum'd Water sav'd from Inun-

dations; and except it be 3 Weeks settled, it occasions Fluxes. The King drinks Rain-Water kept in a Cistern, under a constant Guard. Their principal Treat is Tea boil'd in Rain-Water. The richer Sort make Use of Foreign Wine when they can get it, tho' prohibited by Law. They have also Tary and Neri from their Trees, and mightily love Aquavitæ made with Rice, and rack'd with Wine. The *English* and *French* here drink Punch, which the *Indian* count a delicious Liquor. The *Moors* drink Coffee, and the *Portuguese* Chocolate. The Natives make use of Buffaloes and Elephants for Carriage. They train Elephants for War; and for Carriages of State, have Chairs and Sedans carried by Men; but this Honour is allow'd only to a few Grandees. They have many Boats, with Bambou Cabbins of different Sorts for themselves and their Slaves. Those of Quality have Boats of State, in which they travel alone, having only one Place for themselves and their Arms, which are Sabres and Lances, and those of inferior Quality carry Umbrella's in them. The King's Boats are very fine, with gilt Covers, and Oars neatly carv'd, and the Rowers are commanded by 4 Officers. Some of the better Sort are allow'd Palanquins, and the *Talapoins* or Priests are distinguish'd by their Umbrella's. Their Diversions are Hunting of Elephants, and the Fighting of those Beasts with one another, or of three Elephants with one Tyger, the Elephants being arm'd in the Breast and Trunk with a sort of Plate, so that the Tyger seldom escapes. They have also Cock-Fighting, Stage-Plays of several Sorts, Tumblers of great Agility, and tame Serpents, which dance to the Sound of Musick; and they are so much addicted to Gaming, that they often ruin themselves, and sell their Children to maintain it. They likewise smok much Tobacco, tho' they have none of their own Growth.

Their Females are marriageable at 12 Years old, and seldom bear after 40, so that they marry soon. They don't suffer the Maids to converse with young Men. The Matches are made by the Parents, who consult their Soothsayers to know whether the young Man be rich; for every one conceals their Wealth, because of the Oppression of the Prince and inferior Magistrates.

They likewise enquire whether there's like to be a Divorce; and if the Answers be favourable, the Match is soon made. The young Man visits the Maid three times, and carries her some Betle and Fruit. At the third Visit their Relations meet, the Bride's Portion is paid, and they may Bed when they please. Some Days after the Priests go and sprinkle them with Holy Water, say Prayers, and the Solemnity is concluded with Feasting and Dancing, and Presents from the Relations. The Feast is usually kept at the House of the Bride's Friends, where they stay a few Months, and then build one of their own where they please. The greatest Portion here is about 1200 l. Sterling, and the Bridegroom's Estate must equal it. They have generally but one Wife, tho' the Rich are allow'd more. They prohibit Marriage in the first Degrees of Consanguinity; but a Man may marry two Sisters, either together or successively, and the King is allow'd to marry his own Sister or Daughter, because they think he can't have a suitable Match out of his own Family. The Children of the chief Wives have their Father's Moveables equally divided among them, for the King has the Property of the Land. The inferior Wives and their Children have nothing but what the Father or the Heir think fit to bestow on 'em, and the Heir has Liberty to sell 'em; yet which is strange, our Authors say, the Husbands love their Wives and Children mightily, and are as much belov'd by them, tho' the Women perform all the slavish Work, plough the Land, &c. and maintain them not only while they are in the King's Service, which is half the Year, but at other Times, for they are for most Part so lazy, that they do nothing. Divorces are very frequent, and never deny'd to the Wives, who have their Portion again. Their Children are divided betwixt them, the even Number to the Husband, and the odd to the Wife. They may marry again if they please, and sell their Children; but this is seldom practis'd, unless by the meaner Sort. Husbands have a Despotical Power, and may sell all their Wives and Children but their chief Wife, whom he may divorce. Widows have the same Power over their Children, but must not sell the even Number without Consent of the Husband's

Relations. None may kill their Children or Wives, because Murder in general is forbid by their Law. They marry no Foreigners; but the *Peguins* here frequently do, because they are Strangers themselves. The Parents having a Despotical Power over their Children, breed them with all possible Submission to themselves, and Civility to Strangers, which is so necessary for Traffick, that the King obliges them to it, and punishes the least Breach of it with extraordinary Severity. The Males being obliged to spend half a Year in the King's Service, are accusom'd to Modesty and Silence, yet they are facetious enough among themselves, but never to Strangers. They are very complaisant to their Women, and call them by the Names of the most precious Things, as Diamond, Gold, &c. with the Epithet of Young prefix'd, and reckon it very unmannerly to call a Woman old. They give the Title of Lord to every Man they salute; and when any one comes to their Houses to whom they owe Respect, they don't rise up, but bow to them cross-legg'd as they sit; and if in the Streets, they stoop to them with their Hands join'd, and more or less elevated according to their Quality. In Visits, Inferiors prostrate themselves, continue on their Knees, and never speak first. If Equals, the Master of the House receives the Visitor at the Door of the Hall, and attends him back to it; but all give the Visitor the uppermost Hand. Their Treats are Fruits, Preserves, Rice, Fish, Areca, Betle, and Tea. The Right Hand is here the most honourable, and the Middle of the Chamber more than the Sides. The least honourable is next to the Door, with their Backs toward it, and thus the Master of the House sits when he receives Visitors of Note. When Superiors would testify great Respect to Inferiors, they avoid meeting them, to spare their Submissions. The greatest Affront to a *Siamese* is to touch their Hair, Head, or Cap, except it be when they give or receive a Present, and then to put it on the Head is accounted a great Sign of Respect, as it is to stretch out both Hands, and to put them under the Hands of those they salute, or receive any Present from. They prostrate themselves on their Knees and Elbows to the King, with their Hands join'd on the Top of their Forehead. They

They put their Children, when 7 or 8 Years of Age, to be instructed by their Priests, whose Habit they wear. They teach them to read, write, and cast Accounts, and the *Baly* Tongue for their Religion and Morals, but no History, Law or Science. Their Language consists chiefly of Monosyllables, whose Signification they vary 100 Ways by different Accents, which our Authors ascribe to the Briskness of their Fancy; whereas in cold Countries, our Imagination being heavy, every Thing must be call'd by its own Name. They write from the Left to the Right, in which they differ from all other Asiaticks. They have 10 Figures of Arithmetick, to which they give the same Powers with us, and are very expert at it; but know nothing of Algebra, nor of any thing we study in our Universities. Our Authors say, That tho' their Fancies be quick, they soon flag by Application, and therefore are not fit for serious Study; so that tho' they love Chymistry and Astronomy, they make no Progress in it. They are naturally pretty good Poets, and observe Measure and Rhime as we do; but have such a different Turn of Thought, that it can't be translated into our Languages. They have nothing of Oratory or Rhetorick, but a plain Style, with some broken Sentences full of Idea's. Their Preaching is only an Exposition of their Text from the *Baly* Language, without any Accent, and their Ceremonies and Compliments are almost always the same. They learn no Law but what relates to their particular Employment, of which they have Copies when they enter upon it. They have little of Medicine, but Receipts convey'd by Tradition, in which they are successful enough. They know nothing of Surgery, Anatomy, or Mathematicks, nor any more of Astronomy than to cast Horoscopes, and make Almanacks. They have had their Kalendar twice reformed. Their first *Epocha* bears Date from a remarkable Conjunction of the Planets, 545 Years before Christ, the Time when their fabulous Legislator *Sommona Codom* died, but have no Vouchers to prove it. Their second Period is from A. C. 638. Their Astronomers have upon these Observations compos'd a Table to find out the Place of the Planets for the following Year, almost like that by which

we find by our Epacts. They distinguish their Year into 3 Seasons. The Winter they call the Beginning of the Cold, their Little Summer the Beginning of Heat, and their Great Summer the Beginning of great Heat, which strips the Trees of their Leaves, as the Cold does ours. They have two Years together of 12 Months each, and a third of 13. They distinguish the Days by the Names of the 7 Planets, but begin 'em 6 Hours sooner than we. They begin the Year the first Day of the Moon in *November* or *December*, and divide them into Cycles of 60, for which they have particular Names. Their Months consist of 30 Days, and they call them first and second Month, &c. without any other Name. The two first Months, which answer for most Part to our *December* and *January*, are their Winter; the three next their Little Summer, and the 7 others their Great Summer. Their Winter is as hot as our Summer, and dry. Their Summer is rainy, and the Sun, by a marvellous Providence, drawing the Clouds after it, and the Wind perpetually blowing from one of the Poles when the Sun is toward the other, makes their Torrid Zone habitable, which it otherwise could not be. They know nothing of the System of the World, think Eclipses to be some Dragons attempting to devour the Sun and Moon, and make a great Noise with Kettles, Fire-Shovels, &c. to prevent it. They believe the Earth to be square, divide it into 4 habitable Parts, separated by the Sea; that the Arch of the Heavens rests on its Extremities; and that the Sun, Moon, and Stars, do incessantly turn round a pyramidal Mountain, which occasions Day and Night. They are much given to Divination, good and bad Omens, have an Almanack which tells them the lucky and unlucky Days, and consult their Diviners in all Matters of Consequence. They have coarse Musick which consists all of Unisons, and their Musical Instruments are no better. They understand Exercises of the Body as little as those of the Mind, and are awkward in the Use of Arms. They are ignorant of Trades and Arts, except the ordinary Sorts of Mechanicks, gilding and beating of Gold, in which they are dextrous. They make some coarse Cotton-Cloth, and are pretty good at Embroidering, but monstrous at Painting,

for their Fancy runs above Nature, and loves extravagant Proportions. The common People employ themselves chiefly in Fishing, and the better Sort in Merchandizing: But the Foreign Trade being reserv'd to the King, none of them get Estates by it. They are very faithful in their Dealing, so that Cheats are scarce heard of among them. They buy most by the Piece, and never distrust one another's Measures, or telling of Money. When they buy by Retail, they measure by the Cubit, and their Grains and Liquors by little Shells, which they empty into Coco's, or otherwise they use some Measures made of Bambous or Earthen Pitchers. Their Weights are Pieces of Money, in which they are very exact. Their Silver Coins are in the Form of little Cylinders, bow'd so in the Middle, that both Ends touch, with Figures unknown to us. They have no Gold or Copper Money, but sell Gold as a Commodity at 12 times the Value of Silver, the Purity of both being suppos'd equal. They cut it into ill shap'd Pieces, which they pay for Commodities, and have always Scales and a Touch-stone about them. Their base Coin is little Shells, 800 of which go for a Penny.

They generally abhor Drunkenness, so that scarce any but the Mob will tast Arack. Adultery is rare, because of the absolute Power of the Husbands, and that the Women are generally employ'd in hard Labour. Those of the Nobility seldom go abroad but to Visits, and would reckon themselves contemn'd by their Husbands if they allow'd them more Liberty. The Women in general chuse rather to be killed by their Husbands, than to be taken by the Enemy in Time of War. If the Daughters of the Nobility be guilty of Unchastity, they are sold for Prostitutes, and their Masters pay a Tribute for them to the King. No Beggars are seen here, but such as are impotent or Friendless, because 'tis so shameful, that the wealthy Relations think it for their Credit to maintain their poor ones; and Robbery and Theft are so infamous, that none will plead for the nearest Relation accused of those Crimes; yet the Avarice of the Natives is such, that they will pilfer what they can in Private, and heap up Riches to bury them, and many of them with-

draw to the Woods, where they plunder Travellers, but kill none. They have generally an Aversion to Blood, yet sometimes will poison and assassinate, and are so revengeful, that they frequently accuse one another of Capital Crimes before their Judges, who living upon their Office, are apt enough to gratify the Plaintiff's Spite. They suppress Anger long, but keep no Bounds when it breaks out. They swear Friendship by drinking Aquavite together, or tasting one another's Blood, but continue their Obligations no longer than they think it necessary, for they know nothing of Merit, and think it ridiculous that Labour and Pains should be the Fruit of Virtue.

They are divided into Freemen or Slaves. All the Children of Parents who are Slaves are accounted such, and belong to their Masters, and the Children of all the subordinate Wives are reckon'd no better. Their other Slaves are such as are taken in War, or sold for Debt. Their Masters have an absolute Power over them, except as to their Lives. Slaves are the more numerous here, because they reckon Beggary more ignominious than Slavery; for tho' the *Siamese* express a great deal of Charity for Beasts, they have little for Men. They employ their Slaves in all Sorts of Drudgery, but allow them Time to work for their Families on paying a small Tribute. All the rest are Freemen, nor have they any other Distinction but what arises from Offices, which makes the Possessors Noble so long as the King thinks fit to continue them. When they are turn'd out, they are not distinguish'd from others, so that 'tis ordinary to see the Son or Grandson of a great Lord here tugging at the Oar. There's little Distinction between the Priests and the common People, for they are continually passing from the one Order to the other. We have said before, that all the Males must serve the King 6 Months in the Year. To this End they are exactly number'd, and list'd under Captains, to serve the King on all his Occasions, and particularly in War, when he allows them Arms, Elephants, or Horses; but they must cloath and feed themselves. The Priests and the Women are likewise enrolled, because the former many times return

to their Secular State, and then they must serve in War under their proper Captains; and the latter, because their Share of the Children belongs to the Mothers Band; and according as those Bands are more or less, the Captain is the more or less honourable.

The King is absolute, so that he disposes of the Lives and Fortunes of his Subjects at Pleasure, and frequently maims or makes blind his own Brethren, to disable them from attempting any thing against him; yet he lays no Impositions on what's necessary for Life, lest the Price of it should become too high for his Subjects.

His Palaces are divided into 3 large Inclosures. Within the Innermost are the King's Apartments. The Court belonging to it is call'd *Vang*, and here the Subjects must prostrate themselves as they go out or come in. There's an Officer who takes Care of it, and of the Expence of the Household. The Gates are always shut, with a Porter behind each, who, when any one knocks, gives Notice to the Officer of the Inclosure, and he views and smells the Person, to see whether he be arm'd or drunk. Between the two first Inclosures, under a Penthouse, there's a small Guard without Arms. The King uses them for Executioners, to guard his Person, and to row his Barge. They are his Foot-Guard, are commanded by an Officer, and their Place is hereditary. They must not exceed 600. But on solemn Occasions, as the Audience of Ambassadors, &c. he arms his own and his Lord's Slaves. His Horse-Guard is compos'd of Men from *Laos* and *Meen*, two neighbouring Countries, commanded by Officers, distinguish'd into those of the Right and Left Hand, besides Captains of their own. He has also Horse-Guards which consist of 60 *Moguls*, that are reckon'd Cowards; 20 *Chinese Tartars* with Bows and Arrows, and 50 *Indian Rajepouts*, fam'd for Courage. These don't attend him in the Palace, but only when he goes abroad. He furnishes them with Arms, gives each Man 540 Livres, and a red Vest, *per Annum*. In the first Inclosure are Stables for his best Elephants and Horses, and his chief Equerry has the Privilege of speaking to him, which no inferior Officer has. The King's Gallies are under the Care of the Governor of the Arsenal, which lies on the other

Side the River over against the Palace. He locks up the Barges, and appoints Men to watch them every Night, especially those of State, which are very curiously adorn'd. In the Hall of Audience, where the King shews himself only at a Window, there are 44 young Men, divided into 4 Bands, who prostrate themselves on the King's Right and Left, and carry his Orders to the Pages without, who are very numerous, and are sent with Dispatches into the Provinces. The other Pages serve the King with Betle, take Care of his Arms and Books, and are reckon'd very honourable, because always about him. There's another Officer who alone is excus'd from prostrating himself; but he must always have his Eyes fix'd on the King to receive his Orders, which he understands by Signs, and signifies them to the Officers without the Hall in the same Manner. The Chief of the Wardrobe has the Privilege to touch the King's Cap, but not to put it on, tho' he be a Prince Royal of *Camboya*, from whence the King boasts his own Descent. There are none but Women that attend the King in his Chamber, or must enter it. They dress his Meat, cloath him, and wait on him at Table; but none must touch his Head, or put on his Cap, except himself. The Eunuchs bring Provisions to them, and they never go out but with his Majesty. The King's Name is carefully conceal'd, for fear of any Inchantment upon it, and some say he never has any till his Death, and then his Successor names him. The Queen has Power to punish his other Wives, which she does sometimes so severely, that he is obliged to remove them from under her. The Queen has her Officers to attend her when abroad, but must be seen by none except the Women and Eunuchs, and therefore has always Curtains about her. Those that can't avoid meeting her, must turn their Backs and prostrate themselves while she passes. She has Magazines, Ships, Treasures, and exercises Commerce, a Privilege unalienable from the King's Daughters, tho' they can't succeed to the Crown; so that the Son of a Concubine is preferred to them. The King holds Council twice a Day, *viz.* at 10 in the Morning, and 10 at Night. Here all Civil Causes and Affairs of State are heard by such as the King appoints, who

report

report them to himself, and he decides. Sometimes he puts feign'd Cases to them to try their Judgment; and if his Officers can't exactly answer out of the Books which contain their Duty, he bastinadoes them. No Courtier must visit him without Leave, and all Persons, on Pain of Death, are commanded to inform him of every Thing; so that he knows all that passes, and puts to Death whom he pleases, without any Formality, and sometimes the Accuser as well as the Accused. Criminals are either thrown to Tygers, mad Bulls, or Elephants; but the ordinary Punishments have some Relation to the Crimes. Thus Extortion or Robbery is punished by pouring melted Silver or Gold down their Throats; Lying or Betraying Secrets, by sewing up their Mouth; Concealing Crimes, by slitting them up; and Neglect of Orders, by pricking the Head, to punish its Forgetfulness. When they make Use of a Sword, they not only cut off the Head, but the Body in two, and sometimes the Criminals are cudgelled to Death, or so as they lose their Senses; but Princes of the Blood are either starved or stifled. They have other Punishments which are infamous, tho' not capital. Thus some are expos'd in Publick, loaden with Irons, pillory'd, put in the Stocks, or manacled. Some are buried up to the Shoulders and cuffed, or Women are ordered to stroke their Heads, which is reckoned the greatest Affront. But these Punishments are infamous no longer than they last, for many times the King takes the Criminal into Favour next Day; so that they will boast of those Punishments as Marks of his Paternal Care. Sometimes Parents are punish'd for the Offences of their Children, and Superiors for those of Inferiors, that they may look the better after them.

Ambassadors here have not the Honour shewn 'em as in other Nations, for they are look'd upon only as Messengers, and all the Respect is paid to their Letters of Credence. The King of *Siam* sends always three Ambassadors together, the chief of whom is call'd the Royal Messenger, and the other two are govern'd by him. When any Ambassador has his Audience of Leave here, the K. gives him a Receipt of his Let-

ter; and if returns an Answer, he sends an Ambassador on purpose. They never reside at any Court, but return when they have done their Errand. Foreign Ambassadors are stopped at the Entrance of the Kingdom, till the King has Intelligence of their Arrival. They are lodged and maintained at his Expence, and are allowed to traffick during their Stay. They can treat of nothing till they deliver their Credentials and original Instructions; nor can they go into the Metropolis till they have Audience, or stay after Audience of Leave. All publick Audiences are perform'd in the Capital with great Ceremony, the Guards being under Arms, and the Elephants and Horses in their best Harness. The King speaks first by asking some Questions, which the Ambassadors must answer to the Officer appointed. When the King has ended his Speech, he presents the Ambassadors with Arack, Betle, a Vest, and sometimes a Sabre and Gold Chain. His own Ambassadors carry always a Cargo of Goods with them, but seldom discharge their Trust well enough to escape the Bastinado. All the Officers here, with their Children and People of Quality, are call'd *Mandarins*; but to those whom the King creates, he gives new Names. All Offices are hereditary, and none must sell them; yet very few Families hold them long, because the King deprives them at Pleasure, as the Humour takes him. They have no Salaries, and their Profit arises only from Extortion and Bribery.

The King lodges them, gives them some Boxes of Gold and Silver for Betle, Arms, Elephants, Horses, Buffaloes, Slaves, Boats, and Arable Land; but then he is always Heir to them. They swear Fealty by swallowing Water, over which the Priests pronounce some Curses if they break their Allegiance. They have 3 Volumes of Laws or Constitutions of their Kings; but our Authors say, no Translation of them can be had. They have no Chancellor, but every Officer who has Power to give Orders in Writing has a Seal from the King to make use of. The Figures upon them are in *Relievo*. They rub them over with a sort of red Ink, and stamp them upon Paper; but the Royal Seal is us'd only by the King.

The Division and Government of the Kingdom.

TIS divided, say the Jesuits, into Upper and Lower. The Upper lies towards the N. and has 7 Provinces; the Lower towards the S. and has 8. These Provinces are subdivided into several Jurisdictions, which have their Governors and Subaltern Officers, by whose Advice he decides Matters. He commands the Garrisons, unless otherwise dispos'd of by the Prince. He has a Share of the Rents of the Arable Lands with the King, the Profits of all Confiscations, Penal Sums due to the Exchequer, and 10. *per Cent.* of all Fines payable to private Persons. He is attended by Officers to execute the King's Orders. They are called *Painted Arms*, because they prick their Arms, and lay Gunpowder on the Wounds, which paints them of a pale blue Colour. They have also the Customs of Ships in the Maritime Provinces, levy Taxes on the Frontiers, and exercise Commerce in the Name of their Servants; but of late the Kings have diminished the Power and Profit of those Governors, and constituted others, whose Commission does not exceed 3 Years. The Subaltern Officers are, 1. An Attorney-General, who is a Spy upon the Governor, but many times combines with him to pillage the People. 2. Captains of Garrisons, those who levy Soldiers, and keep Lists of the People, who bribe them to leave out their Names.

They have also something like Magistrates in Towns, with a sort of Judges and other Officers, who take Care of the King's Revenues, Elephants, Letters, &c. which we need not insist upon. They have Prisons for Criminals, which are Cages of Bambou, exposed to all the Injuries of the Air.

All Suits are in Writing, and the Plaintiff must give Security. Suits are begun with a Petition to the Governor of the Province, who, if he finds it unjust, punishes the Plaintiff. If otherwise, he refers it to one of the Counsellors, after putting his Seal to it, and numbring the Lines, that nothing may be alter'd. 'Tis heard in the

Assembly of Counsellors, who proceed by Evidence, and report to the Governor, who determines the Matter according to the Laws which are read to him. If the Sentence be unjust, the Attorney-General may signify so much to the Court, but not oppose it. People may plead their own Causes, or use an Advocate, who must be of their Kindred. When ordinary Proof fails, they have Recourse to walking bare-foot over Fire, or to thrusting their Hands into boiling Oil or melted Tin; and they that escape being burnt, they reckon just: But our Authors say, tho' these Proofs fail almost continually, the *Siamese* cannot be brought to forbear them. They have likewise Recourse to Diving, and to swallowing of Pills prepar'd by Priests, with Imprecations. He that continues longest under Water, or that does not vomit his Pills, carries the Cause. These Proofs are made before the Judges; and if the Parties escape equally well or ill, the King orders them to be deliver'd to Tygers, and he whom the Tyger spares is judged innocent. Appeals are allowed in all Cases, but are very chargeable. None but the King, or such as he impowers, can pronounce Sentence of Death; so that Criminals are kept in Prison till the King's Commission arrives. Robbery is usually punish'd by double or treble Damage, equally divided betwixt the Judge and Plaintiff. The chief Officers of State are, 1. The President of the Council, from whom the Governors of Provinces receive their Orders, and to whom they render Account. 2. The General, who takes Care of all Things relating to War, and issues out Orders concerning it. 3. The General of the Elephants and Horses, which is a very great Command, and commonly bestow'd upon some Relation of the Crown, because the Elephants are the King's chief Force. Some reckon them at 10000. But notwithstanding these Preparations for War, the *Siamese* know nothing of Discipline, and are so cowardly, that the Sight of a naked Sword is enough to put 100 of them to Flight. Their Belief of the *Metempsychosis* inspires them with an Horror for Blood, and likewise of a Spirit for War; so that their chief Way of managing it in the *Indies* is to enter one another's Country, and make Slaves; and if Armies meet, they never

ver shoot at one another, but so as their Arrows may fall like a Shower upon their Heads, and make them fly, which they seldom fail to do; for as their Kings order them to forbear killing others, they are very loth to be killed themselves. They have little Artillery, and few Horses, so that their Armies consist chiefly of Elephants, and a naked ill-arm'd Infantry. Their Order of Battle and Encampment is to draw up into 3 Lines, consisting of 3 great square Battalions each. The King or General stands in the middle Battalion, which is compos'd of the best Troops, and every Captain keeps in the middle of his Battalion, with 16 Male Elephants on their Rear. They begin the Battle with their Artillery, and then proceed with Arrows and small Shot, but never come to a close Fight, nor attack one another with Vigour. They never venture on Sieges, except they have a Prospect of reducing the Place by Treachery or Famine. The King has 5 or 6 small Ships, which he trades with in Time of Peace, and arms his Privateers in Time of War to plunder, but not to kill. He has a Minister for Commerce and Foreign Affairs, who is in a manner his chief Factor, and receives the Rents from the Cities.

The King's Revenues arise from Duties on cultivated Lands, Boats, Customs, Distilling-Houses, and those who sell Arack, from several Sorts of Fruit-Trees, from Schools, his own Gardens and Domains manur'd by his Slaves, and the 6 Months Service of his Subjects, from Presents, and extraordinary Taxes for sending out Ambassadors, Fines and Confiscations, or Money for the 6 Months Service his Subjects owe him. Besides, he has considerable Profits from the Trade which he drives with his Subjects and Foreigners by Wholesale and Retail, for which he has Shops in every Market. He deals chiefly in Tin, all the Ivory which his Subjects can get, Salt-Petre, Lead, Sapan, Arack, Powder, Sulphur, Arms, and Skins of Beasts, which his Subjects sell to him, because by Treaty he is obliged to sell them again to the *Dutch*. His Revenue is computed at two Millions *per Ann.* but our Authors say, the King in their Time had double that Sum. For the rest of the Commodities of *Siam*, viz. Rice, Fish, Salt, Brown Sugar, Sugar-Candy, Ambergreece,

Wax, Varnish, eatable Bird-Nests made of Sea-Froth, Gum, Incense, Oil, Coco's, Cotton, Cinnamon, Nenciphar, Cassia, Dates, and several other Things, they are permitted to all, only the Intendant of the Rivers hinders them from killing too many Fish at once.

Their Priests or *Talapoins* pretend, that their Order and Doctrine is as ancient as the World. They live in Convents, within an Inclosure of Bambou, in little Cells that look like the Tents of an Army. In the middle of the Ground stands their Temple, with Pyramids round it, and great Numbers of Idols. They have a sort of Nuns who live in the same Inclosure, but in different Cells, and are generally so ancient as to need no Guard for their Chastity. They have also Children to educate, who live with them, and they have Halls for their ordinary Meetings, and to receive the Alms of the People. These Convents have their Superiors, and over them there are others of a higher Dignity, who ordain their Priests. Some think their Ancestors were Christians, because the Convents in which those Officers preside have Stones set about them, with a sort of a Mitre on a Pedestal. These *Talapoins* eat in common, are hospitable to Strangers of whatever Religion, and have spare Beds to entertain 'em. They preach cross-legg'd from a Chair of State one after another, and the People approve their Doctrine, by telling them, *It is so*, and then give them Alms. Some of these *Talapoins* marry, and abstain from Meat, but others not. They believe the whole Creation to be animated, and that the Earth, Cities, and Houses, live. They don't believe a Physical Union betwixt the Body and Soul, but think it suffers Pennance in the Body, and that its Happiness consists in animating none. They conceive it to be immortal, tho' material, and free from Touch and Sight. They believe future Punishments and Rewards, and that they shall re-enter Humane Bodies, where they must enjoy more or less Happiness, according to their former Lives; for they look upon all Happiness and Misfortunes to proceed from their Actions. They reckon 9 happy Places over our Heads, and 9 unhappy under our Feet; and that the Degrees of Felicity and Misery answer to this

this Number. They don't believe that Souls immediately enter those Places, but after several Transmigrations; and instead of burning Moveables, Wives, &c. with the Deceased, they burn them in Effigy painted on Paper, and believe they are converted in the other Life into the Things they represent. They think the Dead have a Power to assist or torment the Living, and therefore are very careful and magnificent about their Funerals, according to their Ability. The Priests are hir'd to sing in the Room, on Pretence of teaching the Souls of the Deceased, which they suppose stand about the Chamber, the Road to Heaven. The Relations mourn in White. When they burn them, a Talapoin or his Servant kindles the Pile, unless it be a Prince of the Blood, when the King does it himself. After the Corps has lain two Hours in the Fire, they bury it in a Coffin of Aromatick Wood, varnish'd or gilt, under one of the Pyramids about the Temple. The Poor are interred without burning, but, if possible, will have the Talapoins, who stir not without a Gratuity. If they are not able to pay them, they expose the Corps in the Fields on a Scaffold, to be devour'd by the Crows and Vultures, which they think honourable enough. They do not burn condemn'd Criminals, Infants dead born, Women that die in Child-Bed, nor such as die unnatural Deaths, because they don't reckon such innocent.

The *Siamese* don't invoke their Dead, but believe themselves commonly tormented by their Apparitions; and to appease them, carry Provisions to their Tombs, and give Alms to the Talapoins, because they think Charity a Ransom for the Deceased's Sins. They frequently pray to the good *Genii*, or the Souls of the Virtuous, which they believe continue after Death to do Good to Mankind, and curse the bad *Genii*, which they believe do the contrary.

Our Authors reduce the Morals of these Talapoins to the following Precepts, which are the same in all the Cantons of the *Indies*: 1. *Kill nothing.* 2. *Steal nothing.* 3. *Commit no Impurity,* which they extend even to Marriage, and hold Celibacy the only State of Perfection. 4. *Lie not, nor deceive any Man.* 5. *Drink no Wine, or any intoxicating Liqueur.* 6. *Adore God, his Word, and those*

that imitate his Virtues. They will not trust their Books, or explain their Laws to Christians, for fear of being ridicul'd, and have such an extraordinary Esteem for the Talapoins, that they place them above Seculars, whom those Priests do not converse with or salute, no, not so much as the King himself. 7. *To fast, and not to labour on Holidays.* Their chief God is *Sommona-Coddom*, who they fancy was born God, because of his own Virtue, so ridiculous are their Notions; That he had a perfect Knowledge of all Things, was an Example of Goodness, left his Doctrine written in Books, and died of a Cholick; after which he ascended to the 8th Heaven, where he continues in a State of Inactivity, which they reckon the chief Happiness. They say, they have his Bones in *Siam* and *Pegu*, and ascribe great Virtues to them. They pretend likewise to the Print of his Foot in several Places, to which they resort in Pilgrimage. They have consecrated Temples and Statues to him, and alledge he had a Brother call'd *Thevetat*, who contended with him for the Sovereignty, and was crucified in the same Manner as our Saviour. This, by the Cunning of their Priests, and the Folly of the Papists, who expose and worship their Crucifixes, inspires the *Siamese* with an incurable Aversion to Christianity, since they reckon the Christians to be Worshippers of this *Thevetat*.

Struys, who was here in 1650, had the Favour to obtain from one of the chief Noblemen of the Country two Copies of the King of *Siam*'s numerous and extravagant Titles, and blasphemous Encomiums, which we thought fit to subjoin, as follows.

The first is thus:

" An Alliance writ in Letters of Gold,
 " wherein shines the Divine Splendor, and
 " which is the most excellent in the World,
 " comprehends the most sublime Sciences,
 " and is the only one capable to make Men
 " happy. 'Tis the best in Heaven, above
 " or below the Earth. Every Word of it
 " is Royal, Sweet and Delicious, but Al-
 " mighty and Energetick. The Fame of
 " it being spread thro' all the Earth, pro-
 " duces there the same Effect as would do
 " the Sight of Men rais'd from the Dead,
 " and purg'd from all their Corruption,
 " Spiritual and Corporal, by a Power whol-

R r r r

" ly

ly Divine. Therefore dignify'd Persons,
 either among the Nobility, the Clergy,
 or Commonalty, cannot behold them
 without being filled with such Joy as
 nothing else can occasion; so that there
 is nothing in the World comparable to
 them, no more than to the Fountain from
 whence they proceed, as being a most il-
 lustrious, a most invincible, a most po-
 tent, and a most high Monarch, crown'd
 with 101 Crowns of Gold, all adorned
 with 9 Sorts of Precious Stones, being
 the greatest, the purest, and the most di-
 vine Master of immortal Souls; the most
 Holy, who sees all Things, and the Sove-
 reign Emperor, who holds under the Sha-
 dow of his Wings the great, the rich,
 and the incomparable Kingdom of *Siam*,
 the Splendor of the fine and renowned
 City of *India*, whose Gates and Avenues
 are inhabited by an infinite Number of
 People, and which is without Contra-
 diction the Capital of the Universe, the
 only Throne worthy of the greatest of
 Kings, who has under his Obedience the
 most beautiful and most fruitful Country
 that the Sun shines upon, who is a greater
 Lord than the Gods, and whose Palace is
 compos'd of fine Gold and Jewels: The
 Divine Master of the Thrones of Gold,
 of the White and Red Elephants, and of
 that with the round Tail; which 3 Ani-
 mals are the Sovereign God of the 9 Sorts
 of Gods; the Divine Lord, in whose
 Hand is the Conquering Sword, which
 is like the God of Hosts, with his Arm
 all on Fire, and the most excellent and
 the most noble of all Kings.

The second is thus:

The most high *Paducco*, and the King
 of Kings, who makes the Waters to in-
 crease and flow; the Monarch who is as
 a God, as the Sun at the highest Point
 of his Elevation, as luminous as the
 Moon in her greatest Brightness; the
 Elect of God, who esteems him as much
 as the North Star, whose Birth is altoge-
 ther Royal, as being descended from
Alexander the Great, and whose Mind is
 compleatly perfect, sees all Things, and
 penetrates all things like a Globe that is
 always rolling, and endow'd in such a

Manner as to measure the Depth of the
 Sea. A King who has adorned the Tombs
 of all the deceased Saints, who is as just
 as God, and of so vast a Power, that the
 whole World may be hid under the Sha-
 dow of his Wings: A King who does
 Justice in every Thing, as did the Kings
 who preceded him, and is the most mag-
 nanimous of all Princes: A King who
 holds from the Hand of God abundance
 of Gold Mines, who has built Pagods all
 of Gold and Copper, who sits on a
 Throne that is nothing but Gold and
 Jewels: The King of the White Elephant,
 who is the King of all the other Ele-
 phants, before whom several Thousands
 of other Elephants are obliged to pro-
 strate themselves. A King whose Eyes
 are as bright as the Morning Star, and
 who has under him Elephants with 4
 Teeth, red Elephants, purple Elephants,
 and Elephants of many other Colours, and
 also of an Elephant of *Buytenage*, for
 whom the Almighty God has presented
 him with several Sorts of Housings and
 Embroideries in a very great Number, all
 sparkling with Precious Stones: A King
 of abundance of other Elephants train'd
 up to War, whose Harness is Proof against
 Fire and Sword; of others whose Teeth
 are armed with Steel, and their Harness
 with Copper. A King who has Horses
 without Number, shod with Gold, whose
 Housings are also of Gold, and embroi-
 der'd with Jewels, besides an infinite
 Number of others which are fit for War.
 A K. who is over all the Emperors, Mo-
 narchs, Princes and Potentates, of the Uni-
 verse, from the E. to the W. who raises to
 Honours and Dignities such as have the
 Sense to obtain his Favour; and on the
 contrary, burns alive all those who rebel
 against him. A King as powerful as
 God, and who is able to do all that God
 has done or created. To which *Mandela*
Shoe adds the sacred Member of God.

By these blasphemous Titles, the King of
Siam would have his Subjects to fancy him
 to be as Great as God; and to confirm
 them in it, makes them believe that he cau-
 ses the Waters to flow and ebb, and mana-
 ges it thus: The River of *Siam* being one
 of the Branches of the *Ganges*, it increases
 and

and decreases regularly, according as that does, at certain Seasons of the Year. When it begins to decrease, which is in *November*, the King chuses that Time to shew himself publickly, and comes out with all his Court in their Riches and Grandeur. His Galley shines all over with Gold and Precious Stones. He sits in it upon a Throne of Gold, under a Canopy embroider'd with Diamonds. He is followed by 200 Gallies of a prodigious Length, most of which are painted and gilt, and in each of them there are 200 Rowers. About 6 Leagues from the City, the King and the Chief Priest go alone into a small Boat, where the latter, after saying Prayers over a Scymiter of Gold, presents it to the King, who strikes the River with it three times, and commands it by his Divine Authority to retire to the Sea. While the King is about this Ceremony, the Priests make them believe that none but he can stop the Course of the Water, and they lie prostrate on the Banks of the River, astonished at the pretended Power of their King. *Struys* adds, That Foreigners have the free Exercise of their Trade, Customs, and Religion, and especially the *Dutch*, to whom the King gave extraordinary Privileges, call'd them his Children, and gave them free Access to his Palace, which was deny'd to all other Foreigners.

Bouffingault says, no Ambassadors are admitted to treat with him, unless they bring him a little Tree of Gold, and another of Silver, by Way of Acknowledgment, for which the King gives a Gold Cap, or a Navet like that of an Incense Pan, in Return.

Tavernier says, the *Siamese* have 33 Letters in their Alphabet; that their chief Compliment is never to go before a Person whom they respect without Leave, which they do by lifting up both their Hands; and that their Priests say, the God of the Christians is a younger Brother to theirs: But if one ask them where he is, they reply, He is gone they don't know whither. When the King goes abroad, all the Doors and Windows in the Streets must be shut, and the Inhabitants must keep in their Ground-Floors, that none may be higher than the King. When he cuts his Hair, one of his Wives does it, because he is afraid to admit a Barber. When any of his

Elephants are sick, the Lords of the Court are careful to recover it; and if it die, they burn it with as much State as Humane Bodies, and preserve its Ashes in Gold and Silver Urns.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Siam*, *Judia*, *India* or *Odia*. *Moll* places it at the Conflux of three Rivers, or rather Streams of the *Menan*, 60 Miles N. of the Sea, Long. 119 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 14. the *Sansons* Long. 143 $\frac{1}{4}$. Captain *Saris* says, there's Plenty here of the best Benjamin, and of the glorious Gems of *Pegu*, with a vast Quantity of Silver Bullion that they import from *Japan*; but Rials of Eight are in most Request, and will bring a quarter of a Rial Profit in Bullion. Broad Stammel Cloth, Iron Works, and fair Looking-Glasses, are good Commodities here, and all Sorts of *China* Ware are much cheaper than at *Bantam*. Vessels come hither from *Guzuratte* in *June* and *July*, and put in at *Tenasserim*, from whence the Merchants reach hither by Land in 20 Days time. *Herbert* says, this City was anciently called *Sabanna* and *Cortatha*, and lies in an Isle compassed with the *Menan* above-mentioned. The Houses are low and mean, and the Streets narrow, but very well contriv'd to keep out the raging Heats of the Summer. The Inhabitants of *Coromandel* and the *Chinese* trade hither with Sattins, Porcellane, &c. Mr. *Frederick* says, That in 1567, it held out a Siege of 21 Months against the King of *Pegu* with 1400000 Men, and was at last taken by Treachery; upon which the Emperor of *Siam* poison'd himself, and his Relations and Nobles were carried Captive to *Pegu*, where our Author was when the King return'd in Triumph, with many Elephants laden with Gold, Silver, and Jewels. 'Tis the ordinary Residence of the Kings of *Siam*. The Suburbs lie on both Sides the River, which, as well as the City, are adorned with many Temples and Palaces. There are above 300 Temples within the City, with gilt Steeples or Pyramids, which form a glorious Prospect at a Distance. The Palace, he says, is equal to a large City in Bigness, and lies on the Bank of the River. *Ferdinando Mendez Pinto* reckons the Families at 400000, but is suppos'd to romance. When the River overflows, 'tis impregnable. Here is kept the

R r r r 2

chief

chief Court, to which others appeal, and consists of a Lord Chief Justice and 12 Judges. The Number of Ecclesiasticks here are said to be 30000. The *Portuguese* had formerly a great Trade hither, till they obstructed the Commerce of the Natives with the *Dutch*, and attacked the latter in the River *Menam*, which so incens'd the King, that he ever after was an Enemy to the *Portuguese*, and encourag'd the *Dutch*, whose Trade here is very advantageous with respect to the Isles of *Java* and *Sumatra*. *Tavernier* says, the City is wall'd round, and about 3 Leagues in Compass, and that the King is Tributary to the Emperor of *China*. The *French* Jesuits say, that scarce the 6th Part of the City is inhabited, the rest being taken up with Temples. Most of the Streets have straight Canals, with sorry Bridges of Hurdles or Brick. On the E. Side there's a Causeway, by which, like a sort of an Isthmus, People may go into the Country without crossing the River. The Suburbs are inhabited chiefly by Strangers, who are very numerous. *Schouten* says, That most of the Streets are overflow'd during the rainy Season, so that the People are oblig'd to do their Business in Boats. *Struys* and *Mallet* say, the River abounds with large Crocodiles, which often devour Men, is deep enough to carry Vessels of 400 Tun, is two Musket-shot broad there, and divides the Town into 8 unequal Parts. In 1634, the *Dutch* built a Stone-House here, with convenient Apartments for their Magazines, &c. and surrounded it with Moats full of Water, and *Mallet* thinks it to be one of the finest Houses which the *Dutch East-India* Company have in these Parts. The fine Structures in the Palace are not to be paralleled but in *China*, and there's a high Rampart belonging to it, flank'd with a great Number of Towers and Bastions, and built in 1665 by a *Neapolitan* Jesuit. *Struys* adds, That for 30 Leagues beyond the Town, there are many other Rivers, with Gardens, Towns, Villages, Monasteries, and other fine Structures, on their Banks, which form one of the most charming Prospects that can be seen by their Towers and Pyramids, which are singular both for their Architecture and Materials.

2. *Louvo*. *Moll* places it Lat. 15. about 58 Miles N. of *Siam*. The *French* Jesuits

say, the King of *Siam* spends the greatest Part of the Year here in Hunting, and therefore has a Palace in this Place, which we have formerly taken Notice of. It lies a little E. from one of the Branches of the River, which forms several Meanders hereabouts.

3. *Prabat*, 45 Miles N. from *Louvo*, the *French* Jesuits say N. E. noted for the Print of a Man's Foot cut out of a Rock, 15 Inches deep, and 5 or 6 times the Size of that of an ordinary Man. This the Natives fancy to be made by the Foot of their Idol *Sommona-Codom*, who thrust the Rock down from a neighbouring Mountain. Therefore they worship this Mark, and the King of *Siam* goes Annually to do the same with great Pomp; and they fancy that the Elephants and other Beasts do so by natural Instinct.

4. *Bangkok*. *Moll* places it near the Mouth of the River, about 50 Miles S. from *Siam*. The *French* Jesuits say, 'tis famous for its large Gardens, which extend 4 Leagues towards *Siam*, and supply the Inhabitants with Plenty of Fruit. *Struys* says, That all Ships bound to *India* must put in here, to give an Account from whence they came, of their Cargo, Number of Men, &c. and to pay Custom; the Acquittance for which they must shew at another Place up the River, nam'd *Canon-Bantenau*, within a League of *India*, and then they have Liberty to trade where they will thro' the Kingdom without paying any thing, but for their Cocket, which they must do, on Pain of forfeiting the Ship.

5. *Pitsanoulac*, or *Pourcelouc*. The *French* Jesuits say, it had formerly hereditary Princes of its own, in whose Palace Justice is still administred; that it is now a considerable City, of great Commerce, and is defended by 14 Bastions. *Moll* places it on the River *Menam*, about 330 Miles N. from *Siam*.

6. *Menang Fan*. The Jesuits say, it lies 6 M. N. from *Pourcelouc*, and is noted for a pretended Tooth of *Sommona-Codom*; to adore which, not only the *Siamese*, but the Inhabitants of *Pegu* and *Laos*, resort in great Numbers; so that 'tis always full of Pilgrims.

7. *Tanasserim*, or *Tenasserim*, lies at the Mouth of a River of the same Name, which falls

falls with 3 Mouths into the Gulph of Bengal. *Moll* places it about 210 Miles S. W. from *Siam*. It lies 15 Leagues from the Sea. In an Island near this City lies another call'd *Mirgui*, which the *Jesuits* say is the best Port in the *Indies*. *Mr. Frederick* calls it *Mirgin*, and says, that the Commodities of the Place are *Verzina*, *Nypa*, *Benjamin*, *Cloves*, *Nutmegs*, and *Mace*, from the neighbouring Coast. *Nypa*, he says, is an excellent Wine, distill'd from the Flower of a Tree call'd *Nypar*. He adds, the Wine is clear, good for the Stomach, a certain Remedy for the *French Pox*, and cur'd a Friend of his, whose Nose was ready to drop off. He adds, that the Tides carry Boats here as swift as an Arrow out of a Bow; but when they begin to run against them, they are forced to draw their Boats ashore.

8. *Ligor*. *Moll* places it Lat. $7\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 117. about 420 Miles S. from *Siam*. *Schouten* says, it lies on the E. Side of the Country of *Malacca*, Lat. $8\frac{1}{2}$. but belongs to the King of *Siam*, and the *Dutch* have a Factory here, which trades in Tin and Pepper.

2. The Kingdom of *MARTABAN*, or *MARTAVAN*.

Moll makes it Part of the Empire of *Ava*. The *Sansons* say, it belong'd formerly to *Pegu*, but now to *Siam*. It lies along the Indian Ocean and Bay of Bengal, about 300 Miles from S. to N. and about 115 where broadest from E. to W. It abounds with Corn, Fruit, Oils, Medicinal Herbs, and has Mines of Gold, Silver, Iron, Lead, Steel, and Copper. They have also Rubies, Lacque, Benjoin, and make very large Earthen Pots, being a sort of Porcellane varnish'd Black, very much esteem'd for keeping Liquors. This Country abounds with Sea-Ports, has *Pegu* on the N. and *Siam* on the S. and E. *Pimenta* the *Jesuit* says, it formerly yielded 3 Harvests per Annum; but in his Time, which was about 1597, was almost laid desolate by the *Siamese*. *Bouffingault* says, the Air of this Country is so wholesome, that the Inhabitants are never troubled with the Head-ach.

The principal Town is of the same Name. *Moll* places it 223 M. N. W. of *Siam*, on the E. Side of the Gulph of *Pegu*, from which

it stands about 92 Miles to the S. Long. $116\frac{1}{4}$. and about Lat. $15\frac{3}{4}$. the *Sansons* Long. $139\frac{1}{2}$. *Mr. Frederick* says, Ships trade hither from *Malacca* with Pepper, China, Camfora, and other Wares; and *Bouffingault* says, they make their Returns in Rice, which they likewise export to *Cochin*. 'Tis well built, populous, and its Haven one of the best, because it has a free Entrance at all Seasons.

3. The Peninsula of *MALACCA*, *MALEJA*, or *MALECA*,

Is bounded with the Streights of its own Name on the W. which parts it from the Isle of *Sumatra*, the Kingdom of *Siam* Proper on the N. and the Indian Sea on the S. and E. *Moll* makes it 460 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 240 where broadest. *Nieuhoff* extends it 64 Leagues along the Coast, betwixt the Capes *Bouton* and *Sincapura*. Some say, it formerly join'd to the Isle of *Sumatra*, and think it the *Aurea Chersonesus* of *Ptolomy*. *Nieuhoff* says, there's a vast Concourse of Foreign Merchants here; for all Ships passing betwixt *China*, *Japan*, *Siam*, *Cambodia*, *Tonquin*, *Manilhoa*, and the Coasts of *Coromandel*, *Bengal*, &c. are obliged to pass thro' the Streights of *Malacca*, where the *Portuguese* formerly exacted 10 per Cent. Custom for every Ship, till the *Dutch* abolish'd it. 'Tis the Staple for all the precious Commodities of *Coromandel*, *Siam*, *Pegu*, *Banda*, *Molucca*, and other neighbouring Islands. *Sumatra* furnishes them with Gold, Pepper, &c. Vast Quantities of Tin are bought up at *Ligoor*, *Pera*, *Queda*, *Oudjang*, and *Salang*, and sent hither, from whence 'tis transported to *Coromandel*, *Bengal*, *Persia*, and *Surat*. The *Chinese* import hither vast Quantities of Silk, Porcellane, Damasks, Brocades, Sattins, Musk, Rhubarb, Iron, Salt-Petre, fine Silver, Pearls, Ivory, and Fans, which they exchange for Pepper, Frankincense, Stuffs of *Camboja*, Coral, the painted Callicoes of *Paleacate*, and the White ones of *Bengal*; as also for Cinnabar, Quicksilver, and other Drugs from *Camboja*. The Island of *Java* furnishes them with Rice, Oxen, Sheep, Stags Flesh, and Pork. He adds, that the Merchants were so rich here formerly, and even in his Time, that they us'd to compute by Bars of Gold, great Quan-

Quantities of which he says are found near the Rivers, and in the Mountains to the W. The *Mahometans* who inhabit the Coasts us'd to trade hither formerly with Linen, &c. and there was a considerable Pepper Trade here, till the *Dutch East-India Company* settled on the E. Coast of *Sumatra*. Ships are sometimes detain'd a great while on this Coast, because of the Monsoons.

They had no Coin formerly but what was made of Tin, of great Weight and little Value, and sometimes they exchanged their Commodities for Gold and Silver by Weight; but now they coin both into Pieces of Eight.

The *Malayans* or Natives are tawny, with long black Hair, have great Eyes, and flat Noses. They derive themselves from the *Javanese*; but *Nieuhoff* says, their Eyes are quite different. The Men are naked, except a Piece of Stuff which they wrap about their Middles, and adorn themselves with Gold Bracelets, and Ear-Rings set with Precious Stones. The Women wear Silk Clothes, and short Skirts, embroider'd with Gold and Precious Stones, that they also twist in their Locks, which they wear very long, and anoint with the Oil of Coco-Nuts. They are extravagantly proud, and expect more Respect than any other *Indian* Women. There's a sort of Men here who tell Money, and do any thing in the Dark, but can't see in the Day-time, which they spend for most Part in Sleeping. They are like the *Europeans* in Shape and Complexion, and have grey Eyes; whereas all the *Eastern* Nations have black and dark-brown Eyes. Their Hair inclines to a Yellow, and their Feet turn inward.

The Language of *Malacca* is very famous throughout the *East-Indies*; for our Author says, 'tis compos'd of select Words from all the rest, because frequented by such vast Numbers of Foreigners; for which Reason all Nations that trade hither covet to learn it, as a great Accomplishment, and the *Dutch East-India Company* have caused a Dictionary of it to be published for the Use of their Factory. *Schouten* says, that 'tis very easy to be learn'd and pronounc'd.

Most of the Inhabitants are Christians or *Mahometans*, except a few Pagans and *Jews* settled here for Commerce. Our Author says, the Sea-Coast is flat, marshy, and un-

wholesome, and that the Inland is full of Hills and Wildernesses, which may be seen at Sea; so that it produces few Necessaries for Life, except what is planted in their Gardens, and a little Rice and Pease which grow among the Mountains; but they are supply'd every Day with Rice, &c. from *Bengal* and *Sumatra*. They have no *European* Fruits, but enough of the common Fruits of the *Indies*, and especially that call'd *Durions*, which are better and larger here than any where else. They have whole Woods of Coco's, and a certain Tree call'd by the *Portuguese* the *Mourning Tree*, because its Flowers close in the Night. The *Sansons* say, they are like those of Orange Trees, but fairer, and more fragrant. They have also a few Cinnamon Trees, but not so good as those of *Ceylon*, and great Plenty of Aloes Wood and Benzoin. Their Cattle are brought a great Way out of the neighbouring Country, for they have but few of their own, and those seldom fat. *Malacca* was formerly pester'd with all Sorts of Wild-Beasts, and particularly Tygers and Elephants, which broke into their Houses in the Night-time, so that the People were forced to sleep upon Trees; but the *Dutch* have almost destroy'd and drove them away.

Schouten says, the *Malayans* are courageous, and Lovers of Poetry, and that the *Moors* have made most of them *Mahometans*. He adds, this is the most Southern Part of the Continent of the *East-Indies*, and extends it almost as far as the Equinoctial Line, wherein he agrees with *Moll* and the *Sansons*; but the latter extend it to 11 Deg. N. whereas *Moll* bounds it at the 7th. The *Sansons* say, the Isthmus which separates it from *Siam* is not above 10 or 12 Leagues broad in one Place, but broader as you advance further S. It was govern'd by a private Person before 1511, when the *Portuguese* discover'd and took it, and bore Rule here without Controul till 1641, when the *Dutch* took it from them, and ruin'd their Commerce with *China* and the *Molucca's*. 'Tis now subject to the King of *Siam*, and contains several other petty Kingdoms, of which in their Place.

The chief are, 1. *Queda*. *Moll* has two Towns of this Name, both on the Coast, one he calls *Old Queda*, about 60 Miles S. from the other, which he places at the

the N. W. Corner of the Country of *Malacca*, in Lat. $6\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $117\frac{1}{2}$. the *Sanfons* in Long. 140. It gives Name to a Kingdom, which *Beaulieu* says was very populous formerly, and abounded with all Sorts of Provisions. The Town lies in a good Soil, cut by several Brooks that come from a large River, in which are a great many dangerous Crocodiles. This Place was much resorted to by Merchants from all the neighbouring Countries; but about 1618, their King being a perfidious cruel Tyrant, the Natives say, that by the Divine Vengeance he was carried off Prisoner by the King of *Achen*, after 3 Months Siege in his Capital, that above 40000 of the People were at the same time destroy'd by Plague and Famine: That the King of *Achen* treated the Captive Prince pretty well at first, but cut him off, with his principal Men; and of the 7000 that he carried away, there were then scarce 500 remaining, and those employ'd at *Achen* in Drudgery. The King's Son succeeded, but liv'd in continual Fear of the King of *Achen*.

There are some Islands on this Coast: 1. *Pulo Lancabuy*, or *Pulo Lada*, near *Queda*, which abounds with Pepper. *Beaulieu* says, the K. of *Queda* would have allow'd him to trade here for Pepper, on Condition of furnishing him with great Guns, which he was not willing to grant. This Island lies Lat. 6. 15. the Needle varying $2\frac{1}{2}$ Degrees N. W. is about 15 or 20 Leagues round, and mountainous in some Places, especially where it faces *Pulo Bouton*. 'Twas inhabited then by 100 People, but formerly by above 700, and produced above 500000 Pound Weight of Pepper Annually, being excellent, large and dry, and preferable, says *Beaulieu*, to any other in the *Indies*. He says, the Pepper Plants grow in a fat free Soil, are planted at the Roots of all Sorts of Trees, and twist round them like Hops. When they plant them, they clean the Ground of all Weeds. It bears no Fruit till the 3d Year, when a Plant produces 6 or 7 Pound Weight of Pepper: The 2d and 3d Crop are much the same; but afterwards, it increases in Quantity and Size till the 12th Year, when it bears no more, and a new Shoot is planted in its Room. 'Tis cultivated in the same Manner as tall Vines, and the Branches of the Trees round

which it twists must be cut off, lest they intercept the Rays of the Sun, which it wants most of all Things. When the Clusters are formed, they are supported with Poles, to prevent their weighing down the Plant, which is very tender. For the same Reason they keep Cattle from coming in among them. They are planted at such convenient Distances, as one may get round them with a Ladder to prune them after the Fruit is gather'd, otherwise they'll grow too high, and bear less Fruit. It produces a white Flower in *April*, which turns to a Knot in *June*. In *August* it is green, large, and strong, when the Natives use it for Sallads, or make Confections and Pickles of it. In *October*, it is red: In *November*, it begins to grow black: In *December*, 'tis all over black, and consequently ripe; but in some Places it ripens sooner. When the Clusters are ripe, they cut them off, and dry them upon Mats 15 Days in the Sun, till the Grain falls off from the Stalk, turn them frequently, but cover 'em in the Night-time, because there falls such a Dew, that if one walk among the Grass or Trees before Sun-rising, 'tis as if they waded thro' Water. Some of the Grains continue White, are us'd in Physick, and yield double the Price of the other. The Inhabitants knowing this, wash off the Skin of the black Pepper, which is white in the Inside, and often impose it upon Strangers. *Nieuhoff* says, it climbs up sometimes above the Top of the tallest Trees; that the Leaves sprout forth from the Buds of the Branches, are green, interspersed with Veins like those of the Cinnamon Tree, are peck'd at the Extremity, are about the Breadth of a Hand, of a proportionable Length, bitter in Taste, and hot upon the Tongue. After the Leaves, come forth Twigs, on which hang the Clusters, much like our Currants, but larger. He says, it bears Fruit the first Year. The Soil of this Island is convenient for Rice, Drugs, Fruits, and Cattle, has excellent Pasturage, Plenty of Rivers and Springs, and good Anchorage all round it, particularly in a Bay on the E. Side, where Ships of 200 Tun may ride safely in all Weathers. The Wind is W. and the Season rainy from the Beginning of *July* to the End of *October*.

2. *Pulo Bouton*, an Island 5 Leagues to the W. *Beaulieu* says, they are 3 Islands, pretty large, and encompassed with many small ones; that they are uninhabited, cover'd with Wood, afford good Masts, and Anchorage all round them.

Pera or *Perach* lies at the Bottom of a Bay on the same Coast, about Lat. $4\frac{3}{4}$. 90 Miles S. from *Old Queda*, and 150 N. from *Malacca*. *Schouten* says, it gives Name to a Kingdom, and the River on which it lies; that it abounds with Tin, which is found in the Sand at the Bottom of the Rivers; that it has very high Mountains, thick Woods, and frightful Deserts, abounding with Rhinoceros's, Wild Elephants, Buffaloes, Tygers, Crocodiles, Serpents, and other Monsters.

Dingding. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis an Island 30 Leagues N. of *Malacca*, is hilly, and cover'd with tall Trees, many of which have a red Pith valued for its Beauty by the *Indians*, who make many curious Works of it. This Island has several good Bays, where there's excellent Water, and Plenty of Fish and Fowl. 'Tis not inhabited, and has abundance of Wild Boars, that swim hither from the neighbouring Continent to feed upon the Roots. Here are many Tortoises and Oysters, the latter many times fasten'd in Clusters to the Branches of Trees, that sometimes hang above, and sometimes under Water. *Schouten* says, they are very good, but small. *Nieuhoff* says, as he swam in the Water here, a Fish call'd a *Sea-Apple* stuck to one of his Legs, and occasioned a great Inflammation and Pain, which continued till the Sting was taken out. There are other poisonous Fish in these Waters, which the *Dutch* call *Sea-Quallan*. Their Flesh is soft like a Jelly. They are about the Size of a Trencher, have red and purple Spots on their Backs, and 8 Teats in their Bellies. They cause an Inflammation immediately wherever they touch. Captain *Dampier* says, the *Dutch* have a Fort here, with a Governor and 30 Soldiers, and 14 Cannon.

Malacca. *Moll* places it Lat. 2. Long. $119\frac{1}{2}$. It lies at the Bottom of a Bay on the same Coast. *Nieuhoff* places it Lat. 2.30 . It gives Name to this Peninsula and Kingdom of *Malacca*. 'Twas formerly call'd *Te-*

cola, and stands on the W. Side of the River *Muar*, *Gaze*, *Tyga*, or *Kroissant*. It rises high in the Country, divides the Castle from the City, and falls with a rapid Current into the Sea. Over it there's a Stone Bridge of several Arches. *Nieuhoff* says, this City was founded about 250 Years before the Arrival of the *Portuguese*, who took it in 1610, after a stout Resistance. They forced the King to fly into the Wilderness, where he died, got a vast Booty here, and 200000 Crowns in Money. They built the Castle, with 5 Parochial Churches, a great Number of Monasteries, and a noble College for the *Jesuits*, who received all Strangers that came into these Parts. *Xaverius* is said to have preach'd and perform'd Miracles here, and it was made a Bishoprick under the Archbishop of *Goa*. The *Dutch* attack'd it in 1605, and burnt the *Portuguese* Fleet of 34 Vessels, great and small, with 3000 Men on board, but could not then take it. The Year after the King of *Johor* besieg'd it with 60000 Men, but in vain. The *Dutch* took it in 1640, after 6 Months Siege, and found a vast Booty, with a Cannon, whose Ball was of 64 Pound Weight. They have since fortified the Town, and stock'd it with Inhabitants, and all other Necessaries. The City is large, encompassed with a Stone Wall and Bastions, and very populous. The Houses are built close, several of the Streets are handsome and large, and planted on both Sides with Trees. In the midst of the City there's a Hill, with a fair Church dedicated to *St. Paul*, where the *Dutch* perform Worship; but most of the Churches and Monasteries founded by the *Portuguese* are much decayed. Some of the Houses are built of Stone, but most of them of *Bambou* Canes, which are very durable. They are not very large, the Apartments are small, and but slenderly furnish'd. The Harbour is one of the finest in the *Indies*, and has good Riding all Seasons of the Year, which makes it frequented by Vessels from most Places of the *Indies*. While in Possession of the *Portuguese*, 'twas (next to *Goa* and *Ormuz*) the richest City in the *Indies*, and a great Mart for Gold, Precious Stones, and other Rarities. *Lockyer* says, a Fort on the Hill near the Church commands the Town

Town and Road; that the Place is healthful, but now of no great Trade; yet they have two or three Ships *per Annum* from the *English* Settlements on the Coast and Bay of *Bengal* with Callicoes, slight Silks, Opium, &c. which make profitable Returns from thence in Sugar, Sugar-Candy, Sapan Wood, Canes, Rattans, Benjamin, Long Pepper, &c. besides Gold, which is had here at reasonable Rates; but this Trade is driven by the Connivance of the Governor, Council, and Fiscal, whose Business, *Lockyer* says, 'tis to detect it. We refer to him for their Weights, and a Copy of their Price Courant for Goods in *July 1704*. He says, there were 200 *European* Soldiers in Garrison when he was here, which, with the ordinary Charges of the Fort, are equal to the Profits of the *Dutch*. The Inhabitants are *Dutch*, *Portuguese*, *Chinese*, *Moors*, and a few *Armenians*. The *Chinese* have the best Shops, well fill'd with the Produce of their own Country. There are 3 or 4 great *Moorish* Merchants; but the Natives live mean enough in the Suburbs and Out-Parts. *Sir Thomas Herbert* says, the *Portuguese*, when they took it, found 1250000 Pieces of Eight in the King's Treasury; but having put him to Death, the King of *Siam* and the neighbouring Potentates resented it so much, that they surpris'd the Town by Storm, but left the *Portuguese* at Liberty to go off by Sea, and demolish its Works. They afterwards possessed themselves of it, till they were routed by the *Dutch*, as above. *Mandelsloe* says, the Town contain'd about 12000 Inhabitants in the Time of the *Portuguese*, including the Suburbs and other Places under its Jurisdiction. The River is very broad, and brackish at high Water, but fresh at low Tide, when the Shore is so muddy, that there's no landing. It lies conveniently for the *Dutch* Trade to *Japan* and *Batavia*. *Captain Dampier* says, 'tis a handsome City, inhabited by 2 or 300 *Dutch* and *Portuguese* Families, besides *Malayans* and *Chinese* in the Suburbs; and that the Streets are not pav'd. The great Fort or Citadel stands in an Island, to which there's no other Passage but by a Draw-Bridge. They have Store of Fowl and Fish, Fruits, Roots, &c. but little Pasturage, and few Cattle. In the Neighbourhood there's a Mountain call'd *Madian*, so full of Salt-Petre, that in 1646 it

broke out with a terrible Noise and Earthquakes.

There are two desert Islands, says *Mandelsloe*, about a Cannon-shot from the City. The Channel betwixt them makes a good Harbour for the Galleons, and that betwixt the City and one of those Islands for other Vessels; but small Barks can sail up the River.

Sincapura or *Sincapora* gives Name to the Streights betwixt *Malacca* and *Sumatra*. The Town lies on the most Southerly Cape of the *Asian* Continent, about half a Degree N. from the Equinoctial, says *Herbert*, where the Streight is not above a Musket-shot over, and so rocky, that the Passage is dangerous. *Nieuhoff* says, it lies 20 Leagues from *Malacca*, before the Building of which it had a King of its own, and was the chief Place of Trade on this Coast. The Mountain of that Name produces excellent Diamonds. About this Place there's a certain Nation, which, with their whole Families, live constantly at Sea. They are called *Saletes*, live upon Fishing, and are subject to the K. of *Jor*.

Jor or *Johor*, a Kingdom, by some called *Goer*, *Goera*, *Johar*, *Goar*, or *Gohor*. It lies at the Entrance of the Streights of *Malacca*, and borders upon that Kingdom and *Pahan*. The Name is derived from its Capital, which *Moll* places on a River of the same Name, near some Islands in a Bay at the S. End of the Peninsula, about Lat. $1\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $121\frac{1}{2}$. At the Entrance of the River there are two high Islands shap'd like Sugar-Loaves, and the Water is 10 Fathom deep. The City was anciently very magnificent, but destroy'd by the *Portuguese* in 1603. The King built another somewhat higher in 1609, towards which the *Dutch* contributed out of the Spoils they took from the *Portuguese*. The Country is very fruitful, abounds with Lemons, Citrons as big as a Man's Head, and the other usual *Indian* Fruits. They have Store of Pepper, Cinnamon, Bufflers, Cows, Stags, Wild-Boars, &c. and some Sea-Monsters. The Inhabitants are naturally brave, says *Nieuhoff*, but lascivious, Dissemblers, and proud beyond Measure. Their Complexion inclines to a light Blue, with broad Faces, crooked Noses, and they account black Teeth an Ornament. The common People

go naked, except a Piece of Stuff that hangs before them. The better Sort have a kind of Callico Shifts of what Colour they please, and two Silken Strings of the same Colour, one of them a Girdle, and the other a Head-Band. They paint their Nails yellow, and those of greatest Quality wear them longest. The richer Sort wear Ponyards at their Sides, adorn'd with Precious Stones. Their King has many lesser ones for his Vassals. He attacked *Malacca* in 1606 with 60000 Men. When the *Portuguese* took *Jor*, they found 1500 Brass Guns in it. One of their Kings, who came on board the *Dutch Fleet* in 1608, had 30 Wives with him, 3 Gold Chains set with Stones about his Neck, and the Handle of his Ponyard so rich with Sapphires, Diamonds, &c. that 'twas valued at 50000 Guilders. Half the Inhabitants are *Mahometans*, and the other Half Pagans. Some call the Town *Batusabar*, and say, 'tis divided into two. *Mandelsloe* places it 6 Leagues from the Sea, says the one is 1300 Paces, and the other 500 round. The Houses being all of Free-stone along the River, and rais'd on Piles 8 or 10 Foot high, they form a glorious Prospect as one comes up the River. Together they contain about 4000 Men fit for Arms. Their King is absolute Proprietor of the Country, and bestows Lands on any that desire it, in order to manure it; but the *Malayans* are so lazy, that they don't much cultivate their Grounds.

Linga. *Nieuhoff* says, tis an Island belonging to this King, who has a Governor there. It produces abundance of Zagu, but no Rice, and in 1606 had about 3000 Inhabitants.

Pahan or *Pahang*, is a Kingdom that borders upon *Jor* and the Streights of *Malacca*, and has the Kingdom of *Patane* to the N. The Capital, of its own Name, lies on a River which falls into the *Indian Ocean* on the E. Side of the Peninsula. *Moll* places it Lat. 3. Long. 122. about 150 Miles N. E. from *Malacca*, and 90 N. from *Jor*. It lies about a League from the Sea, is inhabited only by the Nobility, and the common People live in the Suburbs. 'Tis not large, is surrounded with a Wall of Trunks of Trees join'd close together, of about 4 Fathom high, and has a Bastion at each Corner. The Streets are inclos'd on both

Sides with Hedges of Reeds, and planted with Coco's and other Trees; so that it resembles Gardens adjoining to one another. The Houses are generally of Reed and Straw, only the King's Palace is of Wood. The River is very broad, but not navigable by Gallies, except at high Water. The adjacent Country is low, produces Pepper, Eagle Wood, Kalamback Wood, coarse Gold, Camphire, Nutmegs, Mace, Sapan Wood, Diamonds, and Hogs Stones, which are accounted greater Antidotes than the Bezoar. They have likewise Elephants up in the Country. The Inhabitants are divided into Pagans and *Mahometans*, and the arrantest Cheats in the World. They make great Numbers of Baskets, and cast Guns of 3000 Pound Weight. *Schouten* says, that the King of this Country, and others of the neighbouring Princes, make frequent Application to the *Dutch Company* to protect them from their Enemies.

Patane or *Patana*, a Kingdom E. from *Queda*, and N. from *Pahan*. It has a Capital of the same Name. *Moll* places it in Lat. 6. Long. 119. *Nieuhoff* Lat. 7. 56. near the Sea. 'Tis encompassed on the Land-side by Bogs, is about half a League long, very narrow, and fortified with high Wooden Palisadoes. The Houses are artfully built of Wood and Cane, and pleasant enough. The Suburbs are long, with a lovely Stream running by them. The Palace and Court, where live most of the People of Quality, are inclos'd with Palisadoes. The *Mahometan* Church is a stately Pile of Brick, richly gilt within, and adorn'd with curious Pillars. They have also several Idol Temples, some of them very rich, and monstrous Idols painted of different Colours. *Mandelsloe* says, the Harbour lies about two Miles from the Town, which is able to raise 10000 Fighting Men. The Inhabitants are of a brown Complexion, well shap'd, proud in their outward Deportment, but obliging enough in their Conversation with their Friends. They have an Aversion for Wine and strong Drink, have 4 or 5 Wives apiece, and as many Concubines as they can maintain. They punish Adultery severely, tho' common among them, but scarce reckon Fornication a Crime. *Bouffingault* makes the Town capable of raising 16000 Men.

The

The Climate, says *Nieuhoff*, is temperate and wholesome. Their Summer begins in *February*, and continues till the End of *October*. During this Season, they have a Sea-Wind by Day, and a Land-Wind by Night. Their Winter is *November*, *December*, and *January*, when it rains and blows so violently from the N.E. that no Ships can stir out of the Harbour till *February*. The Country abounds with Rice; and all the other *Indian* Fruits, besides some transplanted from *China*. Each Month has its peculiar Fruit. They make use of Bufflers or Oxen to plough the Ground. They have Store of Pepper, yet can't sell it as cheap here as in other Parts of the *Indies*. They have the same Wild and Tame Beasts and Fowl as in other Places, Geese and Ducks that lay twice a Day, and Turtle-Doves as finely colour'd as the best Parrots. The Wild Hogs do incredible Mischief to their Fields; and tho' they kill them frequently, must not eat them, being *Mahometans*; nor will they suffer any body else. They have abundance of Elephants, Plenty of Tortoises, Oysters and Craw-Fish, Precious Stones, Drugs, and Metal. The richer Inhabitants affect great Trains of Servants. They are naturally lazy, not addicted to War, but much to Lust, and will hire out their Daughters and Female Slaves to Strangers for so much per Month. The Nobility make great Profit of this infamous Commerce. The Men here wear Bells in their Privities, to check their Inclination to Sodomy. The *Chinese* are the chief Traders here in Porcellane and Slaves, &c. for which we refer to *Nieuhoff*. This Country, he says, is more powerful in Shipping than any of its neighbour Kingdoms. In 1602, they were under the Government of a young Queen Dowager, who had a vast Number of Ladies of Honour, whom she did not allow to marry, tho' she indulged their Amours. When she went abroad, she was mounted on a very fine Elephant, attended by 2000 Nobles and great Officers, all clad in the Royal Livery, with the Arms of the Crown upon them, and always entertain'd them splendidly when they accompanied her abroad to take the Air. *Nieuhoff* says, this Country is able to send 180000 arm'd Men into the Field. There are many small Islands on the Coast of this Peninsula, besides those

we have described, for which we refer to the Maps, since we have no particular Account of them.

The Kingdom of CAMBODIA.

It lies on the E. Side of the Bay of *Siam*, has the *Indian* Ocean on the S. and *Laos* on the N. *Moll* makes it 400 Miles from S. to N. where longest, and about 210 where broadest; but it grows very narrow towards the N. *Mandelsloe* says, it has its Name from its Capital, which lies on a River 60 Leagues from the Shore, call'd *Mecon*, which rises very high in *Independant Tartary*, and falls into the *Indian* Ocean by two Mouths. *Mandelsloe* says, it overflows every Year like the *Nile*. Its first Rise is in the Beginning of *June*. It increases by Degrees 10 or 12 Foot, and in *July* and *August* it overflows so that it is not navigable. The King is Vassal to him of *Siam*, and can bring about 35000 Men into the Field. The *Portuguese* have the chief Trade here, so that the *Dutch* have not been able to get any firm Footing in this Country. The *Portuguese* trade chiefly in *Malacca* Stuffs, which they exchange for Benzoin, Lacque, Wax, Rice, Brass, China Vessels, and Iron. They have Plenty of Rice, and all Sorts of Beasts, Fowls, and *Indian* Fruits, so that Provisions are very cheap. *Dampier* says, the Country is low and woody, and not much known to the *English*. *Bouffingault* says, it has many great Towns; the chief is *Cambodia*, *Lauweck*, or *Ravecca*. *Moll* places it on a River which falls into the *Mecon*, Lat. 12° Long. 123°. It stands on a rising Ground, to prevent its being overflowed, and consists chiefly of one large Street, says *Mandelsloe*. *Bouffingault* tells us of a City call'd *Anson*, discover'd some Years before he wrote, behind some thick Woods in a very remote Place near *Laos*; says there was no living Creature in it; that it consisted of above 6000 Houses, all of Marble, &c. but he does not tell us his Author.

We come now to *Anna* or *Annam*, the 3d and last Division of this Peninsula, which contains the Kingdoms of *Laos*, *Tanquin*, *Cochinchina*, &c. *Luyts* says, 'tis called in Latin, *Regnum Annamiticum sive Annamum*; i. e. The Western Kingdom, because

S f f f a

it

it was sometimes the W. Part of *China*. He places it between the Empires of *Siam* and *Ava*, *China* and the Bay of *Tonquin*. The *Sanfons* say, the Inhabitants, tho' they revolted from *China* above 800 Years ago, do still retain the Government, Customs, Manners, and Religion, of the *Chinese*; but dividing themselves into several Dominions, the most S. Part was called *Cochinchina*, the Middle Part *Tonquin*, and the N. Part goes by the Name of several People, as *Laves* or *Layi*, the Kingdom of *Ciacangue*; the People call'd *Gueyes*, *Timocoves*, &c. who much resemble the *Tartars* their Neighbours; but we find none of them describ'd except the *Laves*.

The Kingdom of LAOS or LAO.

Moll extends it from Lat. $15\frac{1}{2}$. to $25\frac{1}{4}$. the *Sanfons* from $19\frac{1}{2}$. to 25. but they place the *Timocoves* the most Northern People of this Division, as far N. as Lat. 35. *Morden* extends it from Lat. 14. to $22\frac{1}{2}$. and makes it 50 Miles in Breadth along the River *Mecon*. All of them represent it as a narrow Country, and of an unequal Breadth. *Moll* makes the broadest Place above 180 Miles towards the N. but it contracts gradually towards the S. *Bouffingault* says, the Name of it is but new in *Europe*, and that 'tis properly call'd the Kingdom of the *Langiens*; but according to all our Maps, he is very much out in its Distance from the Sea, which he makes 300 Miles; for *Moll* makes it but 90 W. from the Gulph of *Cochinchina*, and *Sanfon* about 180. *Bouffingault* says, 'tis bounded on all Sides with Mountains, which defend it against Enemies, and furnish it with Wood and Water for themselves and their Neighbours. He adds, that the Country is very plain, fruitful, and pleasant; that they have the best Rice in the East, and abundance of Salt, which he tells us is formed thus: The S. Winds rise when the Rains cease, and then the Rice Fields produce immediately after the Harvest a Sort of Scum or Froth as white as Snow, that by the Heat of the Sun is turn'd into Salt, which the People have almost for nothing, and sell very cheap to Strangers. Their Benjoin is also reckon'd the best. They have Flowers of all Sorts, with Store of Honey, Wax, and Cotton. They have also Mines of Iron,

Lead, and Tin, and find Silver and Gold Dust in the Rivers. They have a great Trade in red Amber and Musk, and have mighty Herds of Beeves and Buffaloes. They have Fruits in Abundance, and the Rivers swarm with Fish, some of them so large, as two Men can scarce carry, and all of them very cheap. He says, their Capital is *Langione*, which *Morden* calls *Lanjang*, and that it lies in the Middle of the Kingdom. *Moll* calls it *Lanchang*, and places it in Lat. 20. *Bouffingault* says, it has good Ditches and high Walls on one Side, and is defended on the other by the great River *Lao*. *Moll* places it on the *Mecon*, in a sort of a Peninsula. The Palace, says *Bouffingault*, is admirable for its Extent, Magnificence, and Architecture. But this Writer is so much inclin'd to Romantick Descriptions, without quoting his Authors, that we can scarce rely upon him. He pretends this King can raise 500000 young Men, besides those of full Age, and above 100 Years old, who he says are so numerous and robust, that they would make a very good Army of themselves. His Description of the principal Temple in the Capital, with its Tower of 100 Cubits high, and thin Plates of Gold, which being moved by the Wind, make a delicate Harmony like a Consort of Musick, looks so like a Romance, that we say no more of it.

T O N Q U I N Kingdom.

Moll places it betwixt Lat. 17. and $25\frac{1}{2}$. but of a very unequal Breadth. It has Part of *China* on the N. and E. *Laos* on the W. *Cochinchina* on the S. and the Gulph of *Cochinchina* on the E. where 'tis narrowest. The *Sanfons* extend it no further N. than the Tropick of *Cancer*, and S. to Lat. 16. place *Ciacangue* on the N. *Cambodia*, with some other little Countries which are unknown, on the S. *Pegu* on the W. and *China*, with the Gulph of *Cochinchina*, on the E. *Tavernier* having travelled this Country himself, and had likewise the Papers of his Brother, who resided many Years at the Court of *Tonquin*, their Relation is most to be depended on, and therefore we shall chiefly follow them. They say, *Tonquin* has on the E. the Province of *Canton* in *China*, on the W. the Kingdom of *Brama*, on the N.

Junnan

Funnan and *Quangsi* in *China*, and on the S. *Cochinchina* and its Gulph. The Climate is so temperate, that all the Year looks like a continual Spring. They never have Frost or Snow, nor are troubled with the Pestilence, Gout, Stone, and other Diseases so frequent in *Europe*. They have but two Winds, viz. from the N. and S. which blow 6 Months successively. The first refreshes the Earth, so that there's nothing more delightful than this Country. The other blows from the End of *January* to the End of *July*. The two last Months are the Season of Rain; but in this Country, as well as in other Parts of the *Indies*, they have terrible Hurricanes once in 7 Years, which blow down Houses, tear up Trees, and make dreadful Ravages; but they seldom last above 24 Hours. Their Astrologers believe them to proceed from the Exhalations of the Mines of *Japan*, which extend to the Seas of that Island, *China*, *Cochinchina*, the *Manilles*, and this Country, but seldom any where else: They are so sudden, that Vessels at Sea, when surpris'd by them, must cut down all their Masts as quick as they can. Our Authors say, this Kingdom is almost equal in Extent to *France*, is divided into several Provinces, whose Limits are not well known, the *Tonquinese* being neither vers'd in Geography nor History, and affecting to stay at Home, after the Manner of the *Chinese*. They had no manner of Commerce, till found out by the *Europeans*, which is one Reason why so little is known of them. Some of the most understanding Men among them told our Authors, that they have above 20000 Cities and Towns, and that they might have many more, but that Multitudes of People live in Vessels upon the Rivers with their Families and Cattle; so that the greatest Part of them are cover'd with Boats.

The Country is for most Part level, and interspers'd with pleasant little Hills, except towards the N. where they are pretty high. They have several Rivers navigable by large Vessels, and others by smaller. The chief of them in our Maps are *Lancan* and *Chaule*, or *Domea*, which rise towards *Tartary*, and fall into the Gulph of *Cochinchina* at about 50 Miles Distance from one another. They have no Corn or Wine for want of Rain, which, as was observ'd above,

never falls but in *June* or *July*: But they have an infinite Quantity of Rice, of which they chiefly make their Food and Drink. They have also good Strong-Water. Their Fruits are excellent, but different from ours, as are their Trees. The chief is the Palm, which bears a Fruit bigger than in any Part of *Asia*; but having describ'd the Nature of it elsewhere, we say no more of it here. They have two Sorts of a Tree call'd *Gogavier*, which resemble Lawrel. One bears a Plum green without, and red within, and the other a Fruit of much more Esteem, which is yellowish without, and white within, the Top of it being like a small Nofegay, and the Pulp full of Kernels, less than those of a Pomegranate, which are Astringent before they are ripe, and the contrary after. Our Authors say, the *Portuguese* first transplanted it hither from *Macao*. The *Papager* bears a Fruit like a small Melon, of a delicious Taste. The *Arager* grows up as straight as the Mast of a Ship, and has no Branches but at the Top. It has a Fruit like a Nutmeg, which the People bruise with Betle-Leaves, and chew. They have but two Sorts of Figs, one like ours, and another as long as a Man's Finger, like those call'd *Adam's Figs*. There's another Tree like our Willow, call'd the *Powder-Tree*, because of the Wood they make Charcoal, and of the latter Gunpowder. They have another Tree call'd *Jambager*, which grows high, and bears a Fruit about the Bigness of a Citrul Cucumber, with a Pulp full of Kernels, that are cooling, and commonly eaten in hot Weather. The Highways are planted with Trees on both Sides, of which some are so big, that 2 or 3000 Men may stand under them, being like the *War* or *Banian* Tree formerly described. The Fruit is about as big as our great Nuts, with a red Shell, and within a Kernel like a Grain of Millet. The Rere-Mice feed and make their Nests on them. They are as big as a Pullet, and have Wings above a Foot and a half long. They fasten their Claws on the Branches, and hang all Day long with their Heads downward. They have also 7 Claws on each Wing; so that being shot, they remain fix'd to the Branches, and look at a Distance like great Pears. The *Portuguese* prefer them at Table before their Pullets. The Eatable Birds-Nests are

one of the greatest Rarities in this Country. They are found only in 4 Islands that lie on the Coast of *Cochinchina*. The Birds are as big as a Swallow, and compose their Nests in Form of an Onion, with several Tunicles one upon another. The Composition is a certain Gum or Froth, which they steep here in warm Water, and mix with all their Sawces, to which it gives an excellent Relish, as if it were a Compound of all the Spices in the *East*. *Tavernier* says, That he has often eat of it himself, and presented it to Persons of the greatest Quality in *France*. Near these Islands there are 5 others, which abound with such excellent Tortoises, that the Inhabitants use them in their chief Treats, and make a great deal of Money of them by pickling them up, and sending them abroad. The Claim to the Possession of these Islands has occasion'd frequent Wars betwixt those of *Cochinchina* and *Tonquin*: For not only the Meat, but the Shells of those Tortoises, are great Commodities in this Country. They have Ananas, Oranges, and Citrons, but the latter so sour, that they use the Juice of 'em instead of Aqua-fortis, and likewise for Dying and Whitening. 'Tis a great Commodity in the Mogul's Country for whitening Callicoës. The *Tonquinese* make vast Quantities of Silk, and both Rich and Poor are cloath'd with it. 'Tis now one of the chief *Dutch* Trades to *Japan*, whereas they formerly had it from *Persia*, *Bengal*, and *China*. There's but one sweet-smelling Flower here, that grows like a large Nofegay upon Shrubs that crawl on the Ground. Here's Store of Sugar, but they know not well how to refine it, and eat much of it in the Cane to help Digestion. They have no Lions, Asses, or Sheep; but their Forrests abound with Tigers, Deer, and Apes, and their Fields with Beeves, Cows, and Hogs. They have vast Quantities of Pullets, Ducks, and Turtles, which are their general Provision at Feasts. Their Horses are well shap'd, and their Elephants the tallest and nimblest in *Asia*. They have no Cats, but a sort of Dogs which hunt and kill the Rats and Mice, that are very large and troublesome. They have very few Birds of the Air, which towards the Evening is darken'd by vast Swarms of Gnats, which hinder their Sleep by their

Noise and their Stinging. The only Remedies they have against it, are to burn the Chaff of Rice in a Fire-Shovel a little before they go to Bed, which kills or drives them away. They likewise cover their Beds with a sort of close Net-work; yet notwithstanding all these Precautions, the Gnats will be about them when they rise in a Morning. They are likewise infested with great Swarms of white Emmets, which in 24 Hours will eat thro' their Bales of Silk; and if they touch one's Skin, immediately raise Blisters, which fall again when wash'd in cold Water. They keep Eggs good here for two or three Years, by making a Pickle so strong with Salt and Water, that the Eggs swim in it. Then they make a Past of this Pickle and Ashes, in which they inclose every Egg by it self, and wrapping it up in a large Leaf, put the Eggs into Earthen Pots close cover'd, and so preserve them. In other Parts of *Asia* they keep their Eggs in varnish'd Pots fill'd with Oil, made of a small Seed like Rape; but those preserv'd with Salt Pickle are the best, and much us'd at Sea, where they boil them hard, and eat them with Rice instead of Salt. They have no Mines of Silver or Gold in this Kingdom, nor do they coin any Money.

The Riches, Trade and Strength, of Tonquin.

THEIR chief Riches consist in the great Quantity of Silks which they sell to the *Dutch*, &c. and in their *Lignum Aloes*, of which the best is worth 1000 Crowns a Pound, but the rest not above 3 Crowns, it being dry, and fit only to make Cabinets, or Beads for Women's Necks. The *Mahometans* make great Account of it; and when they receive Visits, throw a little of it on a Chaffing-Dish of Coals, that yields a very pleasant Smoke, with which they perfume their Beards, lift up their Hands, and cry, *God be thanked*. That which is oily is the best, and the Bigness of a Pea will yield as much Smoak as a dry Piece of the Bigness of a Man's Fist. *Tavernier* says, the Inhabitants are more faithful in their Dealings than the *Chinese*. Instead of Money, they

they use Ingots of Gold from *China*, from 300 to 600 Livres apiece, and Bars of Silver from *Japan*. For small Payments, they either cut the Bars into little Pieces, and weigh them in Scales, or use *Spanish* Reals.

Some Authors say, That at the usual Rendezvous, they muster 12000 Horse, 2000 Elephants for Carriage and Battle, 300000 Foot, and 300 Gallies, and make the Whole in Time of War about 500000 Men; but *Tavernier's* Brother, who was present, says, That in 1649, when the K. marched against *Cochinchina*, he raised only 8000 Horse, 94000 Foot, 722 Elephants for Carriage and Battle, and 318 Gallies or long narrow Barks with Oars and Sails.

When the King sets out of his Palace for War, he is carried in a Palanquin by the chief Officers of his Household, attended with Musick: And to measure the Time, there's an Officer who carries a Basin full of Water, and a Brass Bowl floating in it, with a Hole in the Bottom, which lets in so much Water as sinks it exactly in an Hour's time. Then two Officers strike the Hour upon two large Platters of Bell-metal, which is heard at a great Distance, while he that carries the Basin sets the Bowl afloat again, and so every Hour. This is the Way of measuring Time every where betwixt the Tropicks, because the rainy Season makes the Air so moist, that the *European* Clocks and Watches are perfectly useless, and must lie in Oil to keep them from rusting during that Season. The Condition of the Soldiers here is very miserable, and they are ty'd to the Employment all their Days. Their Companies are from 100 to 130 Men apiece; and he that performs best with his Bow and Arrow, is allow'd two Months Wages; and he that performs worst, must do double Duty. The chief Glory of the Officers is to have their Men's Arms neat and bright, and their Wages, which are paid in Rice, are abated for the first Fault, if their Arms be rusty; and for the second, they are corporally punished. Those who serve on board the Gallies, are valued most according as they manage their Oars; and as the King delights in Mock-Fights of his Gallies, many of the poor Creatures kill themselves by straining at the Oar, for which their Widows or Heirs have two Years Pay, and the Captain who ob-

tains the Victory is presented with an Elephant and 3 Months Wages. The Pay is so mean, that the Wives of the Soldiers and Galley-Slaves are obliged to follow other Employments to maintain their Families, and the Captains are forced to look after the King's Elephants, and train them up to War, by inuring them to Wild-Fire, &c. and they must likewise take Care of Harbours and Docks for Gallies. All these Captains and Lords of the Court are called *Mandarins*, and allow'd 4 Days in a Month to divert themselves, viz. two at the Change, and two at the Full of the Moon.

The Origine and Method of their Government, and the Customs of their Court.

T*Avernier* says, That about 600 Years before he wrote, it was subject to the *Chinese*; and that the Inhabitants have a fabulous Story, That an Infant of 3 Years of Age, with a miraculous Horse and Retinue, deliver'd them from the Slavery of the *Chinese*. But the Truth is, that their first particular King was one *Din* a Robber, who having assembled a great Number of Malecontents and Vagabonds, did, after several bloody Battles, usurp the Throne. After this, he was killed in Battle by the People, who rebelled against him; but his Party gaining the Victory, he had 2 Sons who reign'd after him successively, but left no Issue. This occasion'd Civil Wars for the Crown, when the weaker Party calling the *Chinese* to their Assistance, gain'd the Ascendant, and advanc'd a Mandarin of the Family of *Le-lequel* to the Throne. He being a prudent and valiant Prince, established Peace, and built that vast Royal Palace, which is still admir'd for its Circuit and Magnificence, being all of Party-colour'd Marble within and without. This King leaving but one Daughter, she married a powerful Mandarin of the House of *Tran*; but was soon after taken and put to Death by a Rebel, who usurp'd the Throne. The People, weary of his Oppression, call'd the *Chinese* to their Assistance, and cut him off. Thus the *Chinese* held the Government 20 Years, and appointed Governors in every Province, who

laying

laying heavy Tribute on the *Tonquinese*, they rebelled against them under the Conduct of a Mandarin of the House of *Le*, who expelled the *Chinese*, and assum'd the Crown, which continued in his Family above 80 Years. After this, a great Lord of the Family of *Marr*, which had formerly enjoy'd the Scepter, in order to revenge himself of an Affront which the King had put upon him, join'd a great Party of Malecontents; and the *Chinese*, who were eager to regain what they had lost, seiz'd the Kingdom after a bloody Battle, wherein his Predecessor was kill'd. But in two Years after, a Mandarin of the House of *Trin* rebelled against him, in order to have extirpated his Family; but Death prevented him. He left two Sons, of whom the eldest submitted, and was honourably treated by the King; but the youngest, notwithstanding the King's Promises of great Advantages, continued his Father's Rebellion, took the King and his Brother in Battle, and put them to Death. Yet he would not accept of any higher Title than that of General; and to gain the Affection of the People, he made Proclamation, That if any Prince of the House of *Le* was alive, he should be put into Possession of the Crown. There was but one, who had been so closely pursued by the House of *Marr*, that he was glad to disguise himself in the Habit of a private Soldier.

He was proclaimed King with great Pomp; but the General kept the Command of the Army, and disposed of the greatest Part of the Revenues. From hence, says our Author, ever since that Time, there have been two Kings of *Tonquin*, of which the first, who is called *Boua*, has only the Title; and the second, call'd *Choua*, has the Sovereign Power and Authority, while the former is kept up in his Palace, and must not stir abroad but on certain Days, when he is carried thro' the Streets of his Capital more like an Image than a King, tho' he has a Royal Attendance, 2000 Soldiers for his Guard, and sometimes 20000, which are quarter'd chiefly on the Frontiers towards *Cochinchina*, with 50 War Elephants. He also keeps 100 great Gallies, with a vast Number of Galliot.

The King gives publick Audience almost every Day; but his Edicts are of no Effect

unless sign'd by the *Choua*. At these Audiences he is attended by 32 Counsellors of State, besides 100 others to judge Appeals. The Eunuchs are very powerful at his Court, and he confides more in them than in his own Children. The eldest does not always succeed, for the *Choua* and his Creatures, when the King has more Sons than one, appoint whom he shall name for his Successor, and then the *Choua*, with the chief Courtiers and Officers of the Army, congratulate him, and swear to set him on the Throne after his Father's Death. The rest of the Brothers being confin'd as it were to the Palace, have nothing to do with the State, nor must they stir abroad except 4 times a Year, and then not above 6 Days at a time, attended by Officers set over them by the *Choua*. The first of these 6 Days they visit the Temples and Priests, to whom they give large Alms; the two next are spent in Hunting, and the three last upon the Rivers in Pleasure-Boats or Gallies. When the Queen goes abroad, she is carried foremost in a Sedan close shut up with Lettice Windows, shaded by 6 Umbrella's, held up by her Gentlemen, and guarded by 15 Officers arm'd with Firelocks. She is follow'd by 6 Ladies of Honour: The first commands the Eunuchs, which are never admitted into the Queen's Apartment: The second gives the Queen her Sweetmeats before she drinks, which is a Custom observ'd likewise among all the People, because they say it prevents the Cholick: The third carries a Box of Perfumes and Betle, and the rest usher the Queen when she gets into the Sedan or alights. Sometimes they help her out of the Sedan into a Chariot, during which all the Men and Eunuchs must withdraw out of Sight, and then she is drawn by 8 Maids of Quality.

The Kingdom is divided into 8 large Provinces, each of which has its Governor and Magistrates, from whom there lies an Appeal to the Court. They attain to Nobility either by the Wars or Learning. The former begin at 11 Years of Age to learn their Military Exercises.

The *Tonquinese* and *Chinese* have had frequent Wars for a Tribute granted the latter by a King of the House of *Le*. But in 1667, the *Chinese* being over-run by the *Tartars*, agreed that the *Tonquinese* should pay

no more Tribute, and only send an Ambassador once a Year to do Homage to the Emperor of *China*. They are so exact and regular in their Justice, that our Authors say few Nations exceed them. They take special Care to repair the Highways and Bridges, and at every quarter of a League Travelers may be accommodated with Water, and Fire to light their Pipes.

When a Person has committed Murder, they carry him before a Judge, and make him hold a Wisp of Grass in his Mouth, to shew that he is turn'd a Beast.

Notwithstanding the King has little or no Authority, yet he is highly honour'd, and the first and 15th Days of every Month all the Mandarins are bound to come in their *Chinese* Habits, and kiss his Hands. But the General who us'd formerly to do so has obtain'd a Dispensation, sends another in his stead, and has more Honour done him than the King; for all the other Mandarins, Governors of Provinces, Justiciaries, and Military Officers, go every New-Year's Day, (which is the 15th of the 5th Month) and also after a Victory, to kiss his Hands. When the *Tonquinese* meet a Superior, they make 4 Obeisances as low as the Ground; but the Women never make above one. Those that would be admitted to see the King, must put on Violet Robes, and their Servants must be clad in the same Colour; and they that have a Petition to his Majesty, must offer a Present with it; for tho' the General disposes of all Offices, &c. yet every Year, upon the 15th Day of the 7th Month, the King bestows Gifts, &c. to his Courtiers, and to the Children of such as have done their Country any signal Service. He gives them Plates of Gold worth 600 Livres each, and Silver Bars worth 46 Livres apiece. The same Day he releases Debtors and Criminals, if the latter have not deserved Death, or if the Debt don't exceed the Value of two Bars of Silver. The three last Days of the last Month, the 40 Mandarins, who are the chief Counsellors of State, give the Oaths of Fidelity to all the Courtiers and their Wives. The Governors of Provinces do the like to the Lords and Gentlemen under their Jurisdiction, and the Governors of Cities to the Citizens, &c. If Mandarins or Gentlemen discover Treason, the King rewards them

according to his Pleasure; but he gratifies the meaner Sort with 50 Pains of Gold and 500 Bars of Silver, which amount to 53000 Livres; for the former value their Nobility far beyond Money. At certain Times of the Year, there's a general Muster of the Youth of several Provinces, when those who are not Nobles or Tradesmen, are register'd for the Service of the King, who once in 5 Years chuses such as he intends for his Guard, and sends the rest to the Frontier Garrisons. Some try to get off by Money; but if discover'd, both the Officer and Soldier are punish'd without Mercy. They hang a little Bell about his Neck, fetter his Arms, and send him to the General, who orders his Head to be struck off: But the *Tonquinese* are so averse to Bloodshed, that the Friends of the Criminal intercede commonly for Hanging, which they reckon the more honourable Punishment.

The Mandarins and great Princes solemnize their Birth-days with Feasting, Comedies, and Fire-works, attended by all their Kindred and Friends, and at the same Time give large Alms to the Poor, Widows, and Prisoners.

Our Authors give the following Account of the Coronation of their Kings: The 3d Day after the King's Death, the General, the Military Mandarins, the Lords of the Council, and all the Governors of Provinces, repair to Court, present the Prince with a *Chinese* Habit, mount him on an Elephant, bring him into one of the great Courts of his Palace, cover'd like a Tent with Cloth of Gold and Silver, and then placing him on a magnificent Throne, fall down with their Faces to the Ground, and after some Time rise up, close their Hands together, lift up their Arms and Eyes to Heaven, and swear to be faithful to the new King till Death. Then the King causes 4 Panes of Gold and 6 Bars of Silver to be given to every one of the Nobility, 20 Panes of Gold and 40 Bars of Silver to the General, and 10 of Gold and 20 of Silver to the President of the Council or Chancellor, under a Discharge of the Artillery round the Palace, and of 30000 Horse and Foot then in Arms. After this, the King is carried in a magnificent Palanquin upon the Shoulders of 8 Military Mandarins, and 8 of the Council, with the General and Chief of the

Counsellors riding before him to his Predecessor's Apartment, from whence all the Lords retire for two Hours, except the Eunuchs, while the Princesses, Ladies of the Court, and the Wives of the chief Mandarins, come to kiss the King's Hand, and congratulate his Accession to the Throne. Then the Lords are called in to a Banquet, where the Flesh of Colts, Dogs, and the Birds-Nests already mentioned, are their best Cafes. Then they have Comedies and Fire-works, which last all Night. Next Day the Soldiers are drawn out into an adjacent Plain, where all the principal Military Officers of the Kingdom are present, and the King is carried thither in his Palanquin, preceded by the General and Master of Horse on Horseback, attended by other Commanders on Foot, with Musicians and Dancers. When he comes into the Field, he rides upon one of his great Elephants of War into the Middle of the Camp, where all the Officers take the Oaths to him; after which he gives two Panes of Gold and 40 Bars of Silver to every Colonel, half as much to every Captain, a 4th Part as much to every Lieutenant, and a Month's Pay to every Soldier. Then they discharge 3 Vollies, and every Company retires to a large Hut, where they have Victuals enough for a Day and Night. The King has a Wooden Palace finely painted and gilt, where he spends the Night in Feasting, and seeing the Dances and Fire-works. The next Day the Soldiers set Fire to the Palace and Huts, and the King retires to his Throne, where he rewards those that assisted in the Ceremony, gives Access to all the People, and has a Speech made to him by two Commissioners, one for the Merchants, and the other for the Artificers, declaring, that all the Burgeses and other Inhabitants of the good City of *Checo* own him for their King, and will be faithful to him till Death. Then the King presents the Merchants with 50 Panes of Gold and 300 Bars of Silver, and the Artificers with 20 Panes of Gold and 100 Bars of Silver. The Rejoycings continue in the City for a Week. In a few Days after, Commissioners come from all Parts of the Kingdom to profess the universal Joy and Fidelity of the People, and to assure the King of their Service against the *Chinese*; in Acknow-

ledgment whereof, he exempts his Subjects from Taxes for a Year, except such as have rebelled against his Predecessors, whom he exempts only for 6 Months. He also pays Half of his Subjects Debts, while the President of the Council compounds with the Creditors for the other Half. Besides this, he presents his Idol Temples with 100000 Beasts, and the Value of a Million in Panes of Gold, Tissues and Silks to adorn the Idols, and Orange-colour'd Callicoes for the Priests, &c. with Blue ones for the Poor, which are kept as ours in Hospitals or Alms-houses. After these Ceremonies are over, the King confines himself the first New Moon with the *Bonzes*, and lives frugally in common with them; during which he visits the principal Hospitals, gives Alms to the Poor, and concludes his Devotion with building and dedicating a new Pagod to one of his Idols. The first Day of the second Quarter he rides on an Elephant of War, attended by the Court on Horseback, and 10 or 12000 chosen Foot, into a Plain, where they stay all the Quarter, and are allowed two Meals a Day at the King's Cost, in Huts and small Cabbins, which they turn with the Wind; but there are 3 Houses built for the King, the General, and the President of the Council. A River runs thro' this Plain, in which there are several Gallies richly painted and gilt, which row one against another for the King's Diversion; and in the Evening the Rowers come ashore with their Captains to kiss his Hand, and partake of his Bounty. After 7 Days spent thus, the King gives all his Land Soldiers and Marines two Months Pay extraordinary, and returns in the same Order to his Palace, where he spends the rest of the Month in the Apartment of his Princesses, and seeing Fire-works, Comedies, Dancing, &c.

The same Authors give the following Account of the Funeral Pomp of the Kings of *Tonquin*: Presently after the King's Death, they embalm the Corps, lay it in State for 65 Days, and serve it with Meat, of which one Half is given to the Priests, and the other to the Poor. In the mean time the General orders the Governors of the Provinces their Mourning. All the Military Mandarins and Judges wear it generally 3 Years, the King's Household 9 Months, the

the Nobility 6, and the meaner Sort three; during which Time there's a Cessation from all Diversions, but such as relate to the new King's Advancement. The King is serv'd in Dishes varnish'd with Black, cuts his Hair, and covers his Head with a Bonnet of Straw, as do all the Princes and Counsellors of State, till the Body of the deceased King is put into the Galley to be carried to his Tomb. Three Bells which hang in one of the Towers of the Palace toll all the while without Intermission. The 3d Day after the King's Decease, all the Mandarins repair to Court to condole his Death, and the People are allow'd 10 Days after to see the Corps lie in State before they put it aboard the Galley. The General causes all the Way from the Palace to the Gallies, which is about two Days Journey, to be spread with Violet-colour'd Callico, which is given to the Priests after the Ceremony is over. Both the King and the Court march a-foot, and take up 17 Days in going and coming. They observe the following Order:

(1.) The two Ushers of the Door of the King's Chamber, proclaiming the Name of the deceased King as they go along, and carry each a Mace, the Head of which is full of artificial Fire-works. (2.) 12 Chief Officers of the Galley which draws the Tomb, whereon the King's Name is written. (3.) The Great Master of the Horse, attended by two Pages on Horseback. (4.) 12 Horses led two by two, 6 of which have their Saddles embroider'd, and their Bridles emboss'd with Plates of Gold, and the other 6 with Gold Bridles, and Housings embroider'd and adorn'd with Gold and Silver Fringes, every Horse being led by two Men. (5.) 12 Elephants; 4 of 'em carry a Man each, with the King's Standard; 4 others carry as many Towers, with 6 Men in each, arm'd with Muskets and Fire-Locks; and the last 4 carry each a kind of a Cage, of which one is made with Glass Windows, another like a Lettice, and the rest with 4 Sorts of Roofs, these being the Elephants which the deceased King rode upon when he went to War. (6.) 8 Captains of the Guard, leading as many Stags, which draw the Herse. (7.) The new King and his Brother, if he has any, in Mourning Robes of white Sattin, Straw Caps, and surrounded with Musicians.

(8.) 6 Princesses clad in white Sattin, who carry Meat and Drink for the Deceased, and they are attended by two Ladies of Honour in Purple, accompanied with Musicians. (9.) 8 Princes of the Blood in Straw Hats. (10.) 4 Governors of the 4 chief Provinces, with each a Stick on his Shoulder, on which hangs a Bag full of Gold and Perfumes, which are Presents from the Provinces to the Deceased for his Use in the other World. (11.) Two Chariots drawn by 8 Horses each, and led by as many Men, and in each Chariot are two Coffers full of Bars of Gold, &c. for the same Purpose. The Procession is clos'd by a great Crowd of the King's Officers and the Nobility, some on Foot, and others on Horseback, according to their Quality. After the Corps is put into the Galley, 'tis drawn up the River, which runs through desert Countries, where they chuse commonly to bury the Corps privately, without any other Attendance than 6 of the chief Eunuchs, who are sworn never to reveal the Place, which our Authors think is done partly out of Religion, and partly for fear lest the vast Treasures bury'd with him should be dug up. Several Lords and Ladies of the Court are likewise buried alive with him, to serve him in the other World. The Funerals of others are more or less pompous according to their Quality, the chief Ceremonies being Fire-works, and setting Victuals and Confections on the Tombs of the Deceased, which all fall to the Share of the Priests.

The Manners and Customs of the Tonquinese.

T*Auvernier* and his Brother say, they are naturally mild and peaceable. They prefer Foreign Manufactures to their own, and yet chuse rather to keep at Home to honour the Memory of their Ancestors, than to travel. They have a soft pleasing Tone of Speech, good Memories, and a florid Language, grac'd with several apt Comparisons. They love Learning as well as the *Chinese*, and some of them are good Poets. Both Sexes are well proportion'd, of an Olive Complexion, and great Admirers of the *European* Whiteness. Their Noses and Faces are not so flat as the *Chinese*, and their

Hair is black, which they keep always comb'd and uncut. The common People plait it in Tresses, and tie it in a great Roll upon the Top of their Heads: But the Nobility, Men of Law, and Soldiers, tie their Locks about their Necks. They affect black Teeth and long Nails. Their Habit is a long Robe down to their Heels, without Distinction of Sex, ty'd round the Waist with a Silk Girdle, embroider'd with Gold and Silver. The upper Garments of the Soldiers reach to their Knees, and their Breeches to the Middle of the Leg; but they have no Hose or Shoes. All Handicrafts-men, except such as are Citizens of the Capital, must work three Months in the Year at the King's Palace, and two Months more for the great Lords. Besides, they are sometimes oblig'd to lop Trees for their Elephants, to which they were condemn'd by one of the Kings for Rebellion; but the rest of the Time is their own.

They can't marry without Consent of the Parents or nearest kin, nor without a Present to the Judge or Governor of the Place where the Marriage is to be celebrated. By this Means the Poor were formerly so exacted upon, that in 1639 the King made a Law, by which he adjust'd the Man's Payment to his Estate, and order'd, that he that was not worth above 100 Crowns, should pay nothing. Both the Men and Women are naturally laborious, and the Maids lay up all they can get for their Portions and Clothes, and to purchase a Necklace of Coral or yellow Amber, and a certain Number of Beads to garnish their Locks, which hang down behind at full Length. There's no Wedding without a great Feast, which holds at least 3, and sometimes 9 Days. The Day after Marriage, the Bride and Bridegroom call Brother and Sister. The Man may divorce the Woman at Pleasure; but the latter can't divorce her Husband, unless upon a very notorious Occasion. They eat with two little Sticks about 6 Inches long, gilt and varnish'd; and when the Man divorces the Woman, he takes one of his own Sticks, and one of his Wife's, and breaks them; after which they take each one Half, and sew it up in a Piece of Silk. Then the Man is bound to restore the Woman's Portion, and to keep the Children. If a Woman be convicted of Adultery, they cast

her to an Elephant bred up for that Purpose, who throws her into the Air with his Trunk, and when she falls to the Ground, tramples her to Death. While *Tavernier's* Brother was at the Court of *Tonquin*, he saw a notable Example of the Punishment of Adultery as follows: It being the Custom in the *East*, when a Prince dies, to shut up all the Women in the most retired Part of the Palace, where they are allow'd two Maids, eat alone, and see no other Person all their Life-time. A Prince of the Blood, who had formerly seen one of his deceased Uncle's Concubines, got into her Company by the following Stratagem: The Houses of the Nobility being generally separated from their Kitchens by their Gardens, the Servants carry the Provisions in a kind of Iron Chest, in which they have Places for lighted Coals to keep the Meat warm. The Prince got himself convey'd in one of these Chests into the Lady's Apartment, where being discover'd, and brought before the King, he put heavy Chains about his Neck, Waist, Hands and Legs, and caus'd him to be led about 5 Months together as a publick Shew; after which he was confin'd 7 Years in close Prison, till the Death of the King, whose Son set him at Liberty, on Condition to serve as a private Soldier. The Princess was shut up in a little Chamber upon the Top of a Tower, where she had nothing to eat or drink for 12 Days; after that her Chamber was uncover'd at the Top, so that she was scorched to Death by the Sun in 3 Days. The two Maids that attended her were thrown to the Elephants, and the two Bearers of the Chest were ty'd by the Hands and Legs to 4 small Gallies, which row'd several Ways, and tore them to Pieces.

The *Tonquinese* are more frequent in their Visits to one another than the rest of the *Indians*. They make them commonly in the hottest Time of the Day, and are attended with Trains suitable to their Quality. The Princes and Mandarins ride upon Elephants, or are carried in Litters by 6 Men, followed by 6 others to relieve them. Their Train consists generally of 50 or 60 Persons, but never more. The ordinary Gentry and Officers of the Court ride on Horseback, and must not have above 7 or 8 Servants. 'Tis the Custom to present the Vi-

sitors with many Boxes of Betle, cover'd with Diamonds and other Precious Stones; and when a Prince is to marry, he sends 3 of them to his Lady.

They shave the Heads of none but Criminals; so that if such escape, they are known presently, and nail'd to a Cross. In great Men's Halls there's an Alcove, with a kind of Bedstead rais'd about a Foot from the Ground, and cover'd with a fine Mat, which they sit upon; with a Cushion under them, and another at their Backs. The common People feed on boil'd Rice, dry'd Fish, or salted Eggs, and have no Flesh but at Festivals. The great Lords have Flesh and Fish every Day, but no Baked-Meats; and tho' they use no Napkins, are neater in their Kitchens and Chambers than the *Europeans*. They are serv'd in little Plates of Wood, lacker'd with all Sorts of Flowers, and set by 10 or 12 together in a large Volder lacker'd after the same Manner. Their Meat is cut into Pieces as small as a Hazle-Nut, and they take it up with their Sticks. They are generally silent at Table, and otherwise the eldest begins the Discourse. They wash their Hands and Faces before, but never after Meals, and ask their Guests if they have eat their Rice with a good Appetite, which is the chief Compliment among the idolatrous *Indians*.

The *Tonquinese* are great Lovers of Comedies, and set off their Scenes very artificially with Sea-Fights and other fine Representations; but have seldom above 8 Actors, Men and Women. On each Side of the Theatre there's a noble Box for the King. The Actresses wear a kind of Diadem with two Ribbons, hanging down behind to their Waist. Both Sexes act their Parts well, and dance exactly to a Brass Drum beat by the two Judges of the Comedy. Their other Diversions are Hunting and Fishing; but our Authors say, they are generally good Husbands of their Time.

Their Learning consists in the Knowledge of their Laws, Mathematicks, and Astronomy, in which they have many good Proficients. They are mighty Lovers of Musick and Poetry, and their Musicians and Actors are the best in the *East*. Their Youth pass thro' three Degrees before they can acquire Nobility, viz. the *Synde*, the *Doucan*, and the *Tansis*. To attain the first, they

study Rhetorick, to fit them for Notaries, Proctors, and Advocates; and at the End of 8 Years pass strict Examination, when, if deficient, they are dismissed as incapable of any Office; but if they acquit themselves well, they are register'd and presented to the King, who gives 'em Leave to assume the Title of *Synde*. To acquire that of *Doucan*, they must study Musick, Astrology, and Poesy. They that learn the Mathematicks, must make their own Instruments, and study 5 Years. They are examined once a Year, and if they fail in their Answers, they are excused for the first 4; but if they are wanting in the last Examination, they are utterly degraded, and otherwise commence *Doucans*. After this, they learn the Character, Laws, and Customs, of the *Chinese*, and at the End of 4 Years pass the last Examination before the King, the Court, all the *Tansis* and others of the Gentry, who come from distant Provinces.

Some have reckon'd the Number of Students present 40000; but our Authors say, they don't exceed 3000. There are Scaffolds set up for the Candidates and Company. The Names of all that have been examin'd are left with the 16 chief Mandarins or Counsellors of State, and then the King favours such as he thinks fit of those that have perform'd well, or indifferently; but such as are found grossly ignorant, are degraded, and no more said of them; and the Names of those who are admitted into the Degree of Nobility, are set up in large Tables at the Palace-Gate for 8 Days together, that every one may know them. After that, they all appear on the same Scaffolds, where those that perform'd well are honour'd with a Vest of Violet Sattin, which they put on immediately, and take the Name of *Tansis*: After which, they have a List of the Towns and Villages whose Rents are allow'd them for a Maintenance, in Proportion to their Merit or the Prince's Favour, and they are received at those Places with great Pomp and Ceremony. They stay there 3 Months for their Recreation, and then must return to Court to instruct themselves in the Affairs of the Kingdom, and other Things requisite to qualify them for Mandarins. All Ambassadors, especially to *China*, are chosen from among the *Tansis*, and their Expences are born by the King.

Their

Their Physicians don't much study Books, but the Qualities of Roots and Simples, and how to apply them. They judge of Distempers by the beating of the Pulse, which they feel in several Places. By the Pulse at the Right Wrist, they guess at the Condition of the Lungs: By the Blood-Vein in the Right Arm, they guess at the State of the Stomach, and the Region of the Kidneys: By the Pulse of the Left Wrist, they judge of the Heart: By the Blood-Vein in the Left Arm, they judge of the Liver: And by the Pulses at the Right and Left Temples, they pretend to give better Judgment of the Kidneys. They also judge of the Cause, Seat, and Quality of the Distemper, by the Number of Pulses in one Respiration. There's no Distinction here betwixt Physicians and Apothecaries, for every one prepares his Medicines, and chiefly makes use of Decoctions of Herbs and Roots, sometimes mix'd with Ginger. They have good Receipts for the Purples, Epilepsies, and other Diseases that are reckon'd incurable in *Europe*. They use *China* Ink for Dysenteries and Wounds, and give Powder of small Crabs, which are dry'd by the Sun as hard as a Stone, for Dysenteries and Fevers, sometimes in *Aquavitæ*, and sometimes in plain Water. They prescribe Tea as hot as can be drank against the Head-ach, Gravel, and Gripping of the Guts; and for the latter, order a little Ginger into the boiling Water. The Japan Tea is reckon'd best, and very dear here, the Quantity of a Beer-Glass being worth a *French* Crown. Their most dangerous Distemper is a Deprivation of Speech, which they are suddenly seiz'd with, and proves mortal, except there be a speedy Application of *Aquavitæ* and some Counter-Poison drank as hot as the Patient can endure, and at the same Time he is rubbed with a Cloth dipped in *Aquavitæ*, in which Ginger has been boil'd; and sometimes they lay the Patient on a Bed of Girths, 4 Inches distant from one another, and sweat him with a Chafing-Dish fill'd with Frankincense till the Pain be gone. They never let Blood, and frequently cure the Purple-Fever by the Application of Fire to the Spots, as we have mention'd elsewhere, until the Spot give a Whiff, which they take for an infallible Sign that the Poison is evaporated. This they do by

Night, because the Spots then appear best. They say this is very dangerous to the Physician, so that he must take Care the Poison don't infect himself, against which they know no Cure. Some let out the Poison by the Prick of a Needle, rub the Part with Ginger, confine the Patient 20 Days within Doors, allow them no Drink but Water boil'd with Citron-Peel, and forbid them Flesh and Butter. They allow them boil'd Rice and Salt-Fish in small Quantities, and by these Methods are very successful and speedy; so that they have no lingering Distempers as with us.

In Matters of Religion, they are divided into 3 Sects: The first is that of the *Chinese* Philosopher *Confucius*. They hold Man to be compos'd of a gross and subtile Part; that at Death, the former stays in the Earth, and the other goes into the Air. They use Sacrifices, and worship the 7 Planets. They have many Idols, but 4 call'd *Raumo*, *Betolo*, *Ramönu*, and *Brama*, for whom they have a particular Veneration. The Women adore a Goddess call'd *Satisbana*, but the King and Mandarins worship the Heavens. The second Sect was formed by a Hermit call'd *Chacabout*, and this consists of the meaner Sort. He taught them the Doctrine of Transmigration, and left them 10 Precepts: 1. Not to kill. 2. Not to steal. 3. Not to defile their Bodies. 4. Not to lie. 5. To keep their Word. 6. To restrain their inordinate Desires. 7. To injure no Man. 8. Not to be great Talkers. 9. Not to give Way to their Anger. 10. To do their utmost to get Knowledge. Those that design a Religious Life, must renounce the Delights of the World, be charitable to the Poor, overcome their Passions, and follow Meditation. They hold 10 distinct Places of endless Joy and Torment after this Life, in Proportion to their Merits; That those who fail in any Point of the Law, tho' they had us'd their Endeavours to fulfil it, wander 3000 Years in different Bodies before they be happy; but that those who give perfect Obedience, are immediately blessed at Death. This *Chacabout* was one of the greatest Impostors that ever was in *Asia*, and spread his Opinions in *Japan*, *Siam*, and this Country, where he died.

The 3d Sect is that of *Lanthu*, a *Chinese*, and one of the greatest Magicians in the East.

East. They pretend he was born of a Virgin, who was 70 Years with Child of him. He taught much the same Doctrine with *Chacabout*; and the better to delude the People, perswaded the Grandees to build Hospitals, and take Care of the Sick. Their Priests are divided into *Bonzes* and *Says*, a Parcel of Vagabonds, the strongest of whom, says *Tavernier*, were picked out by the Government while he was there for Soldiers. The *Tonquinese* adore their Chimney-Hearths, an Idol which they call the *Patroness of Handicrafts*, and sacrifice to her when they put their Children to Trades, and another that they call the *Patron of Houses*, when they build. Some of them adore 5 Parts of the Earth, to which they ascribe particular Colours. When they worship the N. Part, their Habits and Sacrifices are black; when the S. they are red; when the E. green; when the W. white; and when the Middle of the World, yellow. They offer likewise to Trees, and most Sorts of Animals; and those who study the *Chinese* Character, sacrifice every 5th Month to the Souls of the Dead that were never buried, and believe, that by so doing, their Understanding is enlarged. At the Beginning of every Year they meet in a great Field, where they erect Altars, and sacrifice to those who during their Lives perform'd great Actions, not excepting Rebels. The Night before this Ceremony, 40000 Soldiers are drawn up in the Plain, and next Day the King, and all the Princes and Mandarins, come hither with their Led-Horses. After Sacrifice, and offering Incense, the King and Mandarins make 3 low Bows to the Altars, then he shoots with his Bow 5 times against the Altars erected for Rebels; after which, the great Guns are discharged, and the Army give 3 Vollies of small Shot to put the Souls to Flight. Then they burn the Altars, conclude with a great Shout, and leave the Provisions to the Priests. The first and 15th Days of every Month are solemnized by ringing their great Bells. The Priests double their Prayers, repeat a Charm 6 times, and then feast on the Provisions brought by the People to the Tombs of their deceased Friends, and give the Remainder to the Poor. In their Cities they have many Pagods, and in most Villages one, where 4 Priests are maintain'd, and

in the greater ones about 80, under a Superior of *Chacabout's* Sect; and they adore a Goat as their Idol. They wear about their Necks 100 big Wooden Beads, and carry a Staff, with a Bird of varnish'd Wood for its Head, beg their Living with great Humility, and give the Overplus to poor Widows and Orphans. They are allowed to marry, provided they leave their Monasteries, pronounce Orations at the Funerals of great Men, and play on Trumpets and Cornets. The *Tonquinese* have also a great Veneration for two He and one She Magicians: The first is *Thay-bou*, whom they consult to know Events when they undertake any thing of Note. He makes use of a Book with Figures, and a Goblet with Pieces of Copper marked with Characters on one Side. These he shakes and throws on the Ground. If all the Characters lie undermost, he says the Consulters will be unfortunate. If some of them turn up, he looks in his Book, and tells them what he pleases; and if all turn up, he pronounces them fortunate. The second Magician is called *Thay-phou-thouy*, whom they consult in Sicknes, and who has also a Book with Figures; and after he has consulted it with several Apish Gestures, he frequently tells them the Distemper is from the Devil, and then they sacrifice to him, or rather to the Magician, all Sorts of Provisions. If this succeed not, the Friends of the Patient get as many Soldiers as they can, surround the House, and fire their Muskets three times to frighten the Devil. Sometimes the Magician ascribes the Distempers to the God of the Water, especially if the Patient be a Mariner, &c. Then he enjoins his Friends to spread the Way to the next Water with Pieces of Stuff, to set up Huts at such and such Distances, with well cover'd Tables. He frequently refers them to *Thay-bou*, the chief Magician, who sometimes tells them, that the Souls of the Deceased occasion the Distemper, and pretends to conjure those ill-natur'd Souls into Bottles of Water, where he confines them till the Party be cur'd, when he breaks the Bottles, and sets the Spirits at Liberty.

Their She Magician is call'd *Bacoti*: She pretends a Correspondence with the Devil, to whom she offers her own Daughter, the more to oblige him. Others consult this

Sor-

Sorcerers to know the State of their deceased Children; upon which she beats a Drum, summons the Souls to appear before her; and according to the Value of the Presents, pronounces them happy or otherwise. They have other Ways of consulting Futurities, as, by looking into Mirrors, presenting Aquavitæ to the Deceased, and sprinkling their Ashes with it. Others chalk Figures upon their Doors, and some observe the Feet of their Hens. When they undertake a Journey, if they sneeze once, they take it for an ill Omen, and return Home; but if twice, they go on with Courage. If they meet a Woman at setting out, they return Home for some Hours; but if a Man, they go on. The first Fruit they gather at the Beginning of the Year is that of the *Araguer* Tree, which they eat with great Ceremony, and are so possess'd by the Devil, that they poison Part of it, and give it to a Child, whose Death they believe will make them thrive all the Year after. They divide the Day into 12 Hours, and give each the Name of some Beast, which they believe will prove fatal to the Children born in that Hour which bears their Name, and they won't stir abroad at that Time. They think Eclipses to be occasion'd by Dragons, and use the same ridiculous Ceremonies to prevent them as other *Indians*.

The Jesuit *Tissanier*, a *French* Missionary, in his Travels, says much the same with *Tavernier* in every thing relating to this Country. He adds, they have about 28 Rivers which fall into the Sea, and increase their Trade; that they have no wall'd Towns nor Fortresses; that they make excellent Fire-Locks, Cutlasses and Lances, and are very good at imitating any *European* Piece of Work. The ordinary Employment of their *Bonzes* or Priest is to repair Bridges, and to provide Shades for Travelers in the hot Season. He says, the Christians there observe the same Ceremony of Feasts with the Natives on the Decease of their Parents, but without their Superstitions; and this was allowed by the Jesuits, because they would not disgust the Natives too much. The first who preach'd Christianity here was Father *Alexander Rhodes*, a *Frenchman*, in 1627. He was succeeded by other Jesuits, who gain'd Profelytes in most

Provinces. *Tissanier* says, That in 1660, when he was there, the Christians were about 300000, and that 9000 of them liv'd in the Capital. Several of the former King's Wives were converted, and the Jesuits appointed Catechists and Readers of the Native Converts to instruct the rest. He adds, that their exemplary Lives contributed much to gain Converts; but at last the Jesuits were banish'd by the King, notwithstanding the Intercession of some converted Mandarins and others of Quality, and some that disobey'd were imprison'd. The King suffer'd the Native Christians however the Liberty of their Religion, which was propagated by the Catechists and Readers. The King afterwards allow'd two Jesuits to stay in the Kingdom; and our Author, who, by the Advice of the Mandarins, went to salute the King on *New-Year's-Day*, says, he had 40000 Men with very neat Arms, all clad with *Dutch* Cloth of several Colours, every Company being of a separate Colour. On the King's Birth-day, the Priests perform a ridiculous Ceremony of calling upon his 3 Souls, as they alledge, to reanimate his Body; upon which the King receives the Compliments of the Court, and fresh Homage. *Tissanier* mentions several fabulous Miracles perform'd by the Fathers, which very much discredits all the rest he says.

Dampier, who was here in 1688, says, the Inhabitants among other Things, eat Frogs, Locusts, Dogs and Cats. The richer Sort wear *English* Cloth, and affect Red and Green most. The Vulgar go always bare-headed and bare-footed. Their Houses are of Mud, divided into two or three Rooms by Canes, and their Furniture mean; but they have always a little Altar and Incense-Pot. The Traders are very civil, but the Mandarins excessive proud, the Soldiers insolent, and the Poor thievish. They allow Polygamy, and let out their Daughters for Strumpets. They have no publick Burying-places, but every Man is interred in his own Ground; and if he be a Person of Note, a Wooden Tower 25 Foot high and 8 square is erected over his Grave, from whence the Priests make a Speech, and then they burn it. *Dampier* says contrary to *Tavernier*, that their Language and Character are the same with the *Chinese*; and that the King maintains betwixt 70 and 80000 standing Men, of whom

whom he has 30000 always about him. They fight no pitch'd Battles, but by Way of Skirmish, and are for most Part Infantry, with Swords, and Hand-Guns 4 Foot in the Barrel, and no longer in the Bore than a Horse-Pistol. The Barrels of their Field-Pieces are but 6 or 7 Foot long, and don't carry above a Four-Ounce Ball. When they march, one Man carries the Barrel, and another the Carriage. Their Naval Force consists of Gallies, flat-bottom'd, from 50 to 70 Foot long, and 10 or 12 broad. They bear a small Sail, but are chiefly managed by Rowers, from 16 to 24, and are very serviceable in Rivers and near the Coast. They have no Courts of Judicature, but Justice is administred by single Magistrates, who try Criminals without Appeal, and execute them on the Spot. When they swear Allegiance, they confirm it by drinking the Blood of a Hen mix'd with Arack. He says, That the Number of Converts made by the *French* Missionaries did not exceed 14000, and most of them the poorer Sort, gain'd by Charity in Time of Dearth, but afterwards fell off; tho' a *French* Priest told him, That *Constant Faulcon*, an *Indian*, who formerly belong'd to the *English East-India* Company, and was then chief Minister, had turn'd Christian, and that the King inclin'd to follow his Example. The *Jesuit Borri* says, the *Chiurua* or General is able to raise above 300000 Men, the great Lords being oblig'd to have each of them a Number in readiness according to their Ability; the *Sanfons* say 500000. The General always endeavours to have one of his Sons succeed; but their Tutors frequently murder them, and usurp the Dignity themselves. *Bouffingault* talks of their Mines of Gold, Silver, and other Metals, and of Pigeons and other Birds bred up to serve as Footmen and Letter-Carriers; but our other Authors say nothing of these Things.

Their Capital is *Keccio*, *Chekio*, *Cachao*, or *Tonquin Bodego*. *Moll* places it on the River *Domea*, Lat. 22½. Long. 124. above 60 Miles N. W. from the Gulph of *Cochinchina*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 20. say 'tis the ordinary Residence of the King, is about 20 Miles round, and contains a Million of People. *Tavernier* says, 'tis divided by the River into two Parts, join'd by a Bridge. *Dampier*

says, it lies on the W. Side of a great River, 80 Miles from the Sea, on a sandy rising Ground, without Fortifications. The King has three Palaces here, two of which are mean, and of Timber, but have large Squares and Stables. The 3d is more magnificent, tho' likewise of Timber, encompass'd with a Wall of 3 Leagues, 16 Foot high, and 16 broad, and fac'd on both Sides with Brick. Most of the Inhabitants have a Brick Oven 6 Foot high in their Back-Yards, to save their Goods in case of Fire. The *English* have a handsome Factory, but low, fronting the River at the N. End of the City. The *Dutch* Factory joins to it on the S. Side, but is not so large. The Streets are ill pav'd with small Stones. The Bank of the River, which is as broad here as the *Thames* at *Lambeth*, but fordable in the dry Season, is lin'd with a massy Frame of Timber 17 Foot high above Water, to prevent Inundations, because it overflows in *June* and *November*. *Tissanier* says, the Entrance of the River is dangerous without Pilots, because of Shelves on both Sides the Channel. *Dampier* says, the Bay of *Tonquin* is 20 Leagues wide, and 46 Fathom where deepest. The chief River discharges it self here in several Branches, one call'd *Rokbo*, near the N. W. Corner of the Bay, Lat. 26. the other call'd *Domea*, 20 Leagues N. E. from *Rokbo*, Lat. 20. 45. This is longer and deeper than the former, and frequented by *European* Ships. *Dampier* enter'd it at Half-Flood, when the Water was 14 Foot and a half at the Bar. Six Leagues within lies the Village of *Domea*, where the *Dutch* always anchor. *Dampier* says, the Tide flows 47 Leagues up the River, and that the City *Hean*, where the *French* have a Factory and a Bishop, lies 20 Miles below the Capital. 'Tis inhabited by some Soldiers and *Chinese* Merchants, and no Boat is allow'd to pass without the Governor's Licence. The River is as broad here as the *Thames* at *Gravesend*. Our Authors describe no more of their Towns.

C O C H I N C H I N A,

Is by the Natives call'd *Anam*, which signifies a W. Country, because it lies W. from *China*. It had the modern Name from
U u u u the

the Portuguese. Borri the Jesuit says, it has *Chiampa* on the S. *Tonquin* on the N. the *Chinese Sea* on the E. and on the W. and N. W. the Kingdom of *Laos*; but *Moll* places *Cambodia* on the W. Borri says, it lies above 100 Leagues along the Sea, but is little above 20 Miles broad, the Country being all plain, shut up by Mountains on the W. and the Sea on the E. *Moll* makes it 390 Miles long, and about 150 broad. The Mountains on the W. Side are inhabited by a savage People call'd *Kemois*, who, tho' of the same Lineage with the other, live independant, their Country being inaccessible. Borri says, tho' the Country lie betwixt Lat. 11. and 17: and should consequently be rather hot than cold, yet it is not so hot as *India*, tho' in the same Lat. and within the Torrid Zone. The Difference proceeds from this, that in *India* there's no Distinction of the Seasons, their Summer lasting 9 Months without so much as a Cloud, and the other 3 are call'd Winter because of their continual Rains, which falling in *May*, *June*, and *July*, when the Sun is in the Zenith of *India*, and the Winds always hot, it can't be properly call'd Winter. But *Cochinchina* has 4 Seasons, tho' not so distinct as in *Europe*. Their Summer is in *May*, *June*, and *July*, and violent hot, the Sun being then in its Zenith. Their Autumn is in *September*, *October*, and *November*, when the Heat ceases, and the Air is very temperate, because of the continual Rains which fall on the Mountains of the *Kemois*, and does so overflow the Country once a Fortnight for 3 Days at a time, that it looks like a Sea. These Inundations cool the Air, and fructify the Earth, so that it abounds with all things, but particularly Rice, which is their general Food. Their Winter is in *December*, *January*, and *February*; when they have cold N. Winds and Rains, and their Spring is in *March*, *April*, and *May*. When the Inundations above-mention'd happen, they occasion an universal Joy, tho' sometimes they come unexpectedly in the Night and drown abundance of Cattle. The People go out in Boats to take up the drown'd Beasts, with which they treat one another. Their Rice-Fields being much pester'd with Rats, the Floods oblige them to climb up the Trees for Shelter, and the Youth go

out in Boats to shake them down, by which they destroy those mischievous Vermine, that would otherwise ruin their Harvest. During these Inundations, Commodities are easily transported from one City to another, and this occasions their greatest Fairs and Markets to be then held. The People build their Houses high enough, that they may retire to their upper Rooms when those Floods happen. They have 3 Harvests of Rice in a Year, so that no body works for Gain, every one having enough to live in Plenty. They have the same Fruits as in *India* all the Year round. Their Oranges are larger and better than ours. They make use of *Areca* and *Betle* as the other *Indians*, and have some Tobacco. They abound with Sugar Canes, but have no *European* Fruits, which Borri thinks would do as well there as our Pot-Herbs, of which they have many; but they grow all into Leaf, and therefore the Seed is supply'd from *Europe*. They have Multitudes of all Sorts of tame and wild Cattle and Fowl, and more Plenty of Fish than ever he saw any where. They make a Sawce call'd *Balachiam* of Salt-Fish steep'd in Water. This they barrel up, as we do Wine, in great Quantities. It has a sharp Taste resembling Mustard, and whets their Appetite for their Rice, which they can't eat without it. They have also Store of Shell-Fish of all Sorts, and such great Quantities of the eatable Bird-Nests formerly mention'd, that Borri says he saw 10 small Boats laden with such as they had taken from Rocks within the Compass of a Mile. The King reserves them for his own Use, and vends many of them to *China* at great Rates. They think it a Sin to eat Milk, because 'tis the Sustenance of the Young; but they eat Camelions and other Things which we abhor. They have such Plenty of Silk, that every body wears it about their ordinary Labour. The Mulberry Trees grow in vast Plains, and run up as fast as our Hemp. Their Silk is not so fine as that of *China*, but stronger. Their Houses are of Wood, and the Floors cover'd with Mats. They have the finest Timber in the World, and among others that call'd the *Incorruptible Tree*, because it never decays under Earth or Water, and is so solid, that they make Anchors of it. One Sort

of it is black, and another red, and so smooth, when the Bark is taken off, that it scarce needs any planing. These Trees abound in the Mountains, are very streight, of a prodigious Height, and so big, that two Men cannot fathom them. Their Houses are excellently carv'd within, and built upon high solid Pillars, with Boards betwixt them to remove at Pleasure, either for Cane-Lettices, which they make very neat, or to leave Passage for the Water and Boats at the Time of the Inundations. The *Kemis* Mountains abound with *Aquila* or Eagle's Wood, and *Calamba*, which are the same as to the Tree, but different in their Vertue. The Young Tree they call *Eagle's-Wood*, and the Old *Calamba*. Every one cuts as much as he can of the former, so that the latter is not to be found but on inaccessible Mountains, where the Boughs drop off for Age, rotten, and Worm-eaten. This far exceeds the common *Aquila* in Vertue and sweet Scent, and is much valued. These Trees are high and thick, and reckoned the best Product of the Country. The *Aquila* is every Body's Property, but the *Calamba* belongs to the King; and our Author says, it is so fragrant, that one may smell it, tho' buried above a Yard and a half under Ground. Those that cut it for the King, sell it at 5 Ducats per Pound; but in the Port of *Cochinchina*, it goes at 16; and in *Japan*, where the King and Nobility use Logs of it for Pillows, they give 200 Ducats per Pound. The *Aquila* is generally us'd by the *Indians* for burning their Dead, and one Ship-load of it, says *Borri*, enriches a Merchant for ever. He adds, that there are several Mines here of precious Metals, and especially of Gold. They have abundance of Wild Elephants, which are twice as big as those of *India*, with Feet half a Yard in Diameter, and Teeth 4 Yards and a half long; but those of the Females are much shorter. *Borri* gives many Instances of the wonderful Docility and Strength of those Creatures, and says, that in this Country they fasten a sort of Scythe to the Front of the Wooden Towers on their Backs, by which the Elephants cut down Trees, and make their Way thro' the thickest Woods.

Of the P E O P L E.

Borri says, those that live on the Coast are of an Olive Colour; but those within Land are as White as the *Europeans*. They have flat Noses, little Eyes, are of a middling Stature, strong, active, naturally courteous, and have a great Command of their Passions. They are very liberal, and never deny Alms, or any Thing almost that is asked them, but are as apt to ask any Thing they have a Mind to, and take it as a great Affront to be denied. They resemble the *Chinese* in their Carriage, and have 3 Degrees of Seats: The first and lowest is a Mat on the Floor for those of the meanest Rank: The 2d is a low Stool, cover'd with a fine Mat, for Superiors; and the 3d a Couch about three quarters of a Yard high for the Lords, Governors, and Religious Persons. They permit Strangers the Use of their own Laws, and prefer their Customs and Doctrines before their own. Their Women wear the modestest Garb in *India*, and don't uncover any Part of their Body in the hottest Weather. They wear 5 or 6 Petticoats of different Colours: Their first trails on the Ground, and the rest are half a Span shorter than one another. Above them they wear checker'd Waistcoats of several Colours, and over all a thin Veil. Their Hair hangs loose over their Shoulders, and so long, that it reaches to the Ground. They have broad Caps embroider'd with Silk and Gold; and when they meet one another, lift them up so as to shew their Faces by Way of Compliment. The Men, instead of Breeches, swathe themselves with a whole Piece of Stuff, and wear 5 or 6 long Silk Gowns of several Colours, with wide Sleeves, and curiously slash'd from the Waist downwards, so as all the Colours are seen at once. They let their Hair grow to their Heels, and wear the same Sort of Caps as the Women. They never shave their Beards, nor cut their Hair or Nails, for they think both were designed by Nature as an Ornament, only their Mechanicks cut their Nails for Conveniency. The Gowns

of Men of Learning are not so much flash'd as those of others, and over all they wear one of black Damask. They have a Sort of Stole about their Necks, a blue Silk Handkerchief about their Arms, and Caps like Mitres on their Heads. Both Sexes carry Fans like ours in *Europe*, mourn in White, and never uncover their Heads by Way of Salutation. They have no Stockings or Shoes, but Leather Sandals. There's a Pan of Water at the Door to wash their Feet, and there they leave their Sandals, which are very troublesome to those that are not us'd to them from their Infancy, because they are fasten'd with Buttons between each Toe.

Notwithstanding their great Plenty of Flesh, Fowl, Fish, and Fruit, they feed chiefly on boil'd Rice. They eat cross-legged on the Ground, at a small round Table Breast-high, adorned with Silver and Gold, according to their Quality, and every Guest has a Table. They often invite their Friends and Neighbours to Feasts, when they serve every Guest's Table with at least 100 Dishes, tho' there are from 30 to 100, and sometimes 200 Guests. Our Author says, he was present at a solemn Entertainment where there were 2000. They place on their Tables, Frames made of Sugar-Canes, which hold their Dishes. Instead of Wine, they have a Liquor like Brandy, distill'd from Rice. Some mix it with a Water distill'd from the Wood *Calamba*, which gives it a delicate Flavour. Between Meals they drink hot Water, wherein they boil the Roots of Tea, which is a good Cordial, and helps Digestion.

They have several *Portuguese* and other *European* Physicians; but *Borri* says, their own cure many Diseases which ours think incurable. They feel the Pulse, tell the Distemper, and pronounce it curable or incurable. If the latter, they apply no Remedy; but if the former, they bargain with the Patient to cure him in such a Time, and if they fail, have nothing. Their Medicines are not loathsome, laxative, nor alterative, but palatable, nourishing, such as help Nature, and disperse the peccant Humours. When they bleed, which is seldom, they do it with a Bit of Porcellane

fix'd in a Goose-Quill, shap'd like the Teeth of a Saw; and when they have done, press the Orifice with their Thumb wet in Spittle, which soon closes it. Their Surgeons are Masters of wonderful Secrets.

Of the Learning and Government of the Cochinchinese.

THE Soldier and the Scholar are preferred here indifferently. They have several Universities, and their Learning is much the same with that of *Tonquin* and *China*. They prefer Ethicks, Oeconomy, and Politicks, to other Studies. They have reduced the Number of the *Chinese* Characters, which are 8000, to 3000. Their Language is much the same with the *Chinese*, but fuller of Vowels, softer, and more copious in Tones and Accents; so that 'tis the easiest Language in the World for those that have a Musical Ear, and is not confounded with Variety of Conjugations and Declensions. The King rewards their Military Men with a certain Number of Vassals, who are obliged to serve, and pay them the same Duties as they did to the K. so that instead of Lord, Earl, or Marquis, &c. they say he is a Man of 50 or 100 Men, &c. They have no Judges or Lawyers, but Vice-roys or Governors of Provinces, who hear Causes twice per Day, and pronounce Sentence according to the Advice of the Standards-by, which is executed immediately without any Demur or Appeal. False Witnesses are punished according to the Merit of the Crime with which they accuse others; so that if it be Capital, they are sentenc'd to Death. Thieves have a Finger cut off for the first and second Offence, an Ear for the 3d, and their Head for the 4th. They punish Adultery as at *Tonquin*, and read the Sentence to the Elephants, which are the Executioners.

The *Cochinchinese* don't marry within the prohibited Degrees of Consanguinity, and allow but one Wife at a time; but the richer Sort keep many Concubines, out of Grandeur, and think a Man covetous if he has not as many as his Estate will maintain. The first chuses the others who wait on her, and

and are call'd Second, Third, Fourth, &c. according to their Rank. A Divorce cannot be obtain'd without convicting either Party of many Offences. The Husbands bring the Portion, and leave their own Houses to go to the Bride's, and the Women manage all the Affairs of the Household, and govern the Family, while the Husband lies idle at Home. *Borri* says, they look upon walking to and fro as a ridiculous Action.

The *Cochinchinese* are very expert in managing Artillery; hit any thing as exactly with Cannon, as others with Fire-Locks. *Borri* says, they excel the *European* Gunners. They have little, handsome, brisk Horses, for War, on which they fight with Darts. The King is able to raise 80000 Men, but is always in fear of the King of *Tonquin*, to whom he pays a Yearly Tribute of Gold, Silver, Rice, Timber for Gallies, and other Commodities, which are useful for *Tonquin*. Their Military Discipline is almost the same as in *Europe*. The King is generally at War, either against the King of *Tonquin*, the King of *Chiampa*, or the K. of *Siam*. He has always ready 100 Gallies arm'd with Cannon, and manned upon the least Notice by a severe Press of all fit for the War, except such as are exempted by Birth or other Privilege. When they come aboard, they are well us'd and paid, and their Wives and Children are provided for in their Absence, according to their Quality. They have each a Musket, Darts, and a Scymiter, with which they fight. Their Gallies are less and narrower than ours, but neatly adorned with Gold and Silver, and especially the Stem. For Defence, they have oval hollow Targets, long enough to cover a Man's Body, but very light. When the Enemy come with a superior Force towards the Towns, the Inhabitants fire their Houses, and fly with their Effects to the Mountains; so that the Enemy is obliged to retire for want of Houses and Subsistence, and then the Inhabitants return and rebuild their Houses.

Their Trade, Harbours, and Towns.

THE Plenty of *Cochinchina* makes the People not inclin'd to travel into other Countries for Trade; so that they seldom sail out of the Sight of their own Shore. Merchants trade hither from *Tonquin*, *Cambodia*, *Chincheos*, *China*, *Macao*, *Japan*, *Manilla*, and *Malacca*, with Plate, which they exchange for the Commodities of the Country. Their Coin is Brass round Pieces, with the King's Arms and Ensign stamp'd on them, and a Hole thro' the Middle, that serves to string them by Thousands, every Thousand being worth two Crowns. There's a Yearly Fair of about 4 Months at one of the Ports of this Kingdom, to which the *Chinese* import 4 or 5 Millions of Plate, and the *Japanese* vast Quantities of fine Silk, &c. from whence the King draws a large Revenue by Customs and Imposts, and the People receive a great deal of Profit. They are very lazy, and buy many Trifles from Foreigners at great Rates, particularly Combs, Needles, Bracelets, Glass Pendants, &c. and our Author, a *Portuguese*, sold a Box of Needles here, which cost him no more than 30 Ducats at *Macao*, for above 1000. He adds, that they outbid one another in such Novelties, are very fond of our Hats, Caps, Girdles, Shirts, and other Clothes, because different from theirs; and above all, set a great Value on Coral.

They have many large Inlets of the Sea, and above 60 convenient Landing-places; but the principal Port frequented by Foreigners, and noted for the above-mention'd Fair, is at *Faifo* or *Haiso* in the Province of *Caccian*, which *Moll* places Lat. $15\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 126. *Borri* says, it has two Inlets from the Sea, one call'd *Palluchiampello*, and the other *Turon*, which are at first 3 or 4 Leagues distant from one another, till having run 7 or 8 Leagues, they join in one Stream, where the Vessels that come in both Ways meet. The King gave a Grant to the Merchants

of

of *China* and *Japan* to build a City and hold a Fair here; and our Author says, the Town is divided into two Parts, each under its own Governor and Laws. When the *Dutch* came hither, the *Portuguese* at *Macao* sent an Embassy to desire the King to exclude them from all *Cochinchina*, as mortal Enemies to their Nation: But while the Ambassador was at Court, the *Dutch* landed, and sent Presents, which were well receiv'd by the K. who granted them a free Trade, insomuch that the *Portuguese* Ambassador charg'd him with Breach of his Word, and gave a Stamp on the Ground to shew his Resentment. In the mean time, the K. had order'd the *Dutch* to land their Goods against the Fair as well as the *Portuguese*; but while they were on the River in Boats, the King's Gallies attack'd them on a sudden, destroy'd most of them, and the King kept their Goods, alledging in his Defence, that he knew the *Dutch* were notorious Pyrates, worthy of severer Punishment, and forbid them his Country any more. He was a constant Friend to the *Portuguese*, and has several times offered them 3 or 4 Leagues of the fruitfulest Country about *Turon* for building a City, which, according to our Author, would be of the greatest Consequence to the *Portuguese* for the Defence of such Ships as pass towards *China*, and for harbouring a Fleet to be kept in readiness against the *Dutch*, who pass this Way to *China* and *Japan*.

2. *Cacchiam*, in a Province of the same Name. The *Sansons* place it about 35 Miles to the S. E. of *Faifo*, on the Bay of *Tonquin*. *Borri* places it 6 or 7 Leagues from *Turon*, and says, 'tis the Residence of the King.

3. *Nuoecman*. *Borri* says, 'tis a City 5 Miles long, and half a Mile broad, in the Province of *Pulucambi*, and the Governor's Palace is in an open Field at 3 Miles distance, with above 100 Houses in the Neighbourhood.

Of their RELIGION, &c.

Borri says, they hold the Immortality of the Soul, and the Certainty of eternal Rewards and Punishments, but confound

them with abundance of Errors; the chief of which are, 1. They don't distinguish between the Souls of Men and Devils, but call them both by one Name, and charge both with hurting the Living. 2. They believe one of the Rewards of the Soul to be, Transmigration from one Body to another more noble. 3. They think the Souls of the Dead stand in need of Food, and at certain Times make plentiful Entertainments for them; and tho' the Dishes continue full, they alledge, that the Souls being immaterial, feed only on the immaterial Substance of the Provisions, and leave the Accidents of Quantity, Quality, &c. behind. 4. They adore the Souls of Men reputed holy in this World, and place them among their Idols in the Sides of their Temples, according to their Rank, from the least to the biggest. The high Altar is kept empty, with a vacant dark Space behind it, to express that the supreme God, whom they adore, and on whom the Pagods, who were once Men, depend, is invisible, which they think the most honourable Attribute; and in the mean time alledge, that they only pray to the other Idols, as the Papists do to their Saints for their Intercession with the supreme God.

Christianity was first taught here by some *Portuguese* and *Spanish* Chaplains from *Malacca*, *Macao*, and *Manilla*; but *Borri* says, no Good was done till the Arrival of the Jesuits at *Turon*, where in less than a Year their new Converts built a large Church, and another at *Cacchiam*, with a House near it for the Residence of the Jesuits: But the next Year, there being an universal Barrenness thro' the Country for want of the usual Inundation, the Heathen Priests thought their Idols angry for permitting the new Doctrine of the Jesuits, and prevail'd with the King to banish them. In the mean time one of their own Priests pretended he could prevail with their Idols for Rain, and was follow'd by a great Crowd to the Top of a Mountain, where striking the Earth three times with his Foot, there fell a Shower, which gave great Reputation to their false Worship, and added no less Discredit, says our Author, to the then persecuted State of Christianity, tho' the Hypocrite

crite soon met with a just Punishment. In the mean time they burnt the Church at *Turon*; after which our Author arrived here from *Macao*, with another *Portuguese* Chaplain, when there fell such abundance of Rain, that the Heathens recanted, and gave them no Molestation: And the Governor of *Pulucambi*, thō a Heathen, settled them in a House at *Nuoecman*, caus'd a Church to be built for them near his Palace, gave 'em great Presents, pardon'd some condemn'd Criminals at their Intercession, and put out an Edict, commanding the Tops of all the Houses that lay to the S. W. to be taken off, to prevent the Fires, which are very frequent here during the scorching S. W. Winds of *June*, *July*, and *August*, from reaching to the House of the Jesuits. *Borri* says, when the Governor lay on his Death-Bed, a Multitude of armed Men made Thrusts in the Air with their Scymiters, threw Darts, and fired Muskets in his Palace, and two that were on each Side of him continually struck the Air about his Mouth with their Scymiters, to hinder the Devils from hurting the Governor's departing Soul. Then the Priests met to find out the Cause of his Death, which they imputed to the fall of a Beam in his Palace, and went and burnt the whole Fabrick, according to the Custom of the *Cochinchinese*, who always order the supposed Cause to be burnt, whether House, Garment, Man or Beast. Then others of their Priests practis'd Sorcery in the Presence of the Relations, &c. and conjur'd the Devil into the Governor's Sister, who, thō decrepid before, skipped about with great Agility, utter'd several Extravagancies about the State of her Brother's Soul, and at last fell down as dead. Our Author adds, that her Friends flock'd to congratulate her Happiness, because they reckon it a great Blessing that any Body possess'd by an Evil Spirit should speak concerning the State of the Soul deceased. The Governor's Body was attended to his Interrment by a great Multitude of People dancing, &c. who built a new Palace twice as noble as the old one, and as many Gallies as he us'd to keep, on Wheels to run upon dry Land. They prepar'd also Wooden Elephants, Horses, and all other

Moveables which the Governor us'd when alive, and erected a stately Temple in the midst of the Palace, with a fine Altar, whereon they plac'd the Coffin, to which Sacrifices of Wine, Oxen, and Buffaloes, were perform'd for 3 Days by 5 or 600 Priests in White, who afterwards set Fire to the Palace and Temple, and privately buried the Coffin, after having remov'd it to 12 several Graves. The same Ceremonies were repeated every 7th Month for 3 Years together, and defray'd out of the Revenues of the Province, over which no Governor was appointed, for they believed the dead Man's Soul rul'd till the End of the three Years. *Borri* says, their Astrologers have Lands for their Allowance, and large Halls in their University. Some belong to the King, and others to the Prince. They are curious Observers of Eclipses; but they often err two or three Hours, and sometimes a whole Day, in their Calculation. Every time they guess right, the King rewards them with Lands; but when they err, he takes them again. When the King is forewarned of an Eclipse, he sends Orders to all the Lords of his several Provinces to assemble the People of all Ranks in every City and Liberty. The Grandees of the Kingdom meet at Court with Colours and Arms, and the King makes a Procession in Mourning, with all the Court after him, making Adoration, and expressing Compassion to the Sun and Moon, which they believe a Dragon attacks. Yet our Author says, their Astrological Doctrine and Terms are like ours. He adds, that in 1620, he and his Fellow-Labourers converted several, by foretelling an Eclipse which their own Astrologers had not predicted; and that the latter, for imposing their false Predictions on the King, lost their Revenues, and were made to kneel a whole Day in the Palace with their bare Heads expos'd to the Heat of the Sun. The Priests here are of several Professions and Habits. Some live in common, others are like Curates, Chaplains, Canons, and Prebends; some live upon Alms, others minister to the Sick *gratis*; some build Bridges, Temples, and do other Works of Charity, for which they beg Alms thro' the Coun-

Country. They teach their Religion in publick Schools: Some are Farriers, and cure Elephants, Oxen, and Horses, without Reward; others attend Seraglio's of Women; some resemble Abbots, Bishops, and Archbishops, and have gilt Staves like the *Romish* Crostiers. Every Town has a Temple, some of which are adorned with beautiful Towers and Steeples, and the Breasts and Bellies of their Idols are generally stuffed with Gold and Silver. Our Author

says, the Devils often walk about in Humane Shape, and converse with the People; and adds, there are many *Incubi* and *Succubi*; that the richer Sort think themselves happy if their Wives have such Familiars; but the common People count it a Distemper. Sometimes they appear in horrid Shapes, with a Cock's Face, a long Tail, Bat's Wings, and bloody Eyes, often carry People to the Tops of Houses, and throw 'em down headlong.



60 120 180 240 300
Miles of Great Britain

PART OF

PART of TARTARY

SEA OF

COREA

PART of JAPON

INDEPENDENT

TARTARY

AVAK

LAOS

TO NQUIN

CHINA

According to the Newest and
most Exact Observations.

By Herman Moll, Geographer.

PECKIN

HONAN

HU

KIAMSI

FOR EN

THE

SOUTH SEA

PART OF THE

PHILIPPINE I.

CHAP. X.

The TABLE of CHINA.

CHINA is divided into two Parts.

I. In the Midland Country, where are 9 Provinces, viz.

II. The Maritime Part, containing 8 Provinces.

Xansi, Honan, Xensi.

Suchuen, Funnan or Yunnan, Queicheu, Quamsi or Quangsi, Huquam or Huquang, Kiamsi or Kiangsi.

Quantum or Quantung, Fokien, Chekiam or Chekiang.

Nanking or Nanking, Xantun or Xantung, Peking or Peking, Leaotung, Corea, Corey, or Coree.

On Hoang Fluv. or the Yellow River.

On or near the Kiam alias Kiang Fluv. or the Blue River.

On the Sea of China.

On the Gulph of Nanking or Nanquin.

These that follow are Two particular TABLES of CHINA.

Chief Towns.

I. The Inland Part of CHINA, where are 9 Provinces.

Upon the River Hoang.

Xansi.

Honan.

Xensi.

Suchuen.

Funnan or Yunnan.

Queicheu.

Quamsi or Quangsi.

Huquam or Hucquang.

Kiamsi or Kiangsi.

Taitung, Taijyuen or Taiyuen, Fuencheu, Pingyang or Pingiang, Lugan.

Hoaiking, Honan, Caifung, Queite, Juning, Nanyang.

Sigan, Fungcian or Fungciang, Cunchang, Linyano, Hanchung.

Paoning, Xanking or Xangking, Queicheu, Chunking or Chungking, Chingtu, Kiunchoa or Kiungihoa, Mahu, Siucheu.

Tali, Yunnan or Funnan, Lingan, Quangnan, Chinchian.

Queiyang, Sunan, Liping, Tacho.

Tienchieu or Tiencheu, Nanning, Cincheu, Queilin.

Jungcheu, Paoching or Paxing, Chanxa or Changxa, Changte, Chingtien, Siangyang, Tegan, Hoangcheu, Vuchang.

Jaocheu, Nanchang, Fuencheu or Fuenchew, Kiegan, Kienchan or Kienchang, Cancheu, Nangan.

X x x x

II. The

Chief Towns.

II. The Maritime Part of CHINA, containing 8 Provinces.	On the Sea of China.	Quantum or Quantung.	Xaocheu, Liencheu, Quancheu, Hoedicheu, Caocheu.
		Fokien.	Tingcheu, Xaoun, Yenping, Chang- cheu, Fochou.
	On the Gulph of Nanking or Nanquin.	Chekiam or Chekiang.	Cuencheu, Cucheu, Kieucheu, Ni- encheu, Hangcheu, Hucheu.
		Nanking or Nangking.	Hoeicheu, Ganking, Chicheu or Chiceu, Nanking or Nangking, Yangcheu, Hoaignan or Hoai- gan, Chucheu, Lucheu, Fun- giang, Siuicheu.
		Xantum or Xantung.	Tunchang, Cingcheu, Laicheu, Cinan.
		Pekin or Peking.	Taming, Xunte, Chinting, Pao- ting, Hokien, Junping or Jungping, Peking, the Me- tropolis of the Empire of China.
	Leaotung.	Ningyue, Leaoyang, Kincheu, Pingan or Pinggan, Sior,	
	Corea or Coree.	Censio, Chentio, Sagfian or Sagfiang, Moggan or Maczo in the Inland of Quelpart.	

The principal Rivers of China that run in } Hoang, or the Saffron-colour'd River.
to the Gulph of Nanking or Nanquin are, } Kiang, or the Blue River.

C H I N A.

THE Moguls, Turks and Tartars, and Paul the Venetian, who was one of its first Discoverers, call it *Cataium* or *Cathay*; the *Siamites* and *Cochinchinese*, *Chin*; the *Japonesse*, *Than*; the *Arabians*, *Tsynin*; and the *Malayans*, *Tabenzo*. We refer to *Magaillans* for its other Names, and to *Nieuhoff* for the various Opinions of Authors concerning the Origin of its European Name *China*, and shall only add, that the general Name among the *Chinese* signifies the Middle Kingdom or Garden, because of the Pleasantry of its Situation, and from the Opinion of its ancient Inhabitants, that the Heaven was round, the Earth Four square, and that *China* lay in the Center, for which Reason they found fault with our Maps for placing them so far E. but now they are convinc'd of their Error.

The *Sansons* say, 'tis wash'd by the Sea on

the S. and E. and environ'd on the N. and W. with a Ridge of Mountains above 500 Leagues in Length, interspersed with great sandy Deserts and Forrests. It has a strong Wall to keep out the Tartars, which *Mandelsloe* says begins upon the Confines of the Province of *Leaotung*, and extends to the River *Croceus* on the Frontiers of *Thibet*, 300 German Leagues in Length. He bounds it on the W. and S. W. with *Bengal* and *Cochinchina*. *Magaillans* the Jesuit, who travelled 8 Years thro' the chief Parts of *China*, and liv'd 29 Years at the Court, till 1677, when he died, gives one of the best Accounts of this Empire. He extends it from the Fortress of *Cai-Pin* on the Frontiers of *Pekin* on the N. and the 41st Deg. of Lat. to the S. Point of the Island of *Hainan* in the Gulph of *Cochinchina*, Lat. 18. He says, the Length of it from N. to S. according to the *Chinese* Book, is 5750 Furlongs, or 1380 Miles, and the Breadth E. and W. from the Port of *Nimpo* in *Che-Kiam* to the Extremity of the Province of *Su-chuen*,

chuen, 426 French Leagues, or 1020 Miles; but he says, that from *Caiyuen* in *Leaotum*, to the last Town of the Province of *Yunnan*, 'tis 750 French Leagues in Length, and 500 in Breadth from *Sam-Cohan*, the most E. Part of *Leaotum*, to *Tumtin* in the W. of *Xenfi*. *Mandelsloe* makes it 1800 Spanish Leagues in Length, and 3000 in Compass; and as a Proof of its vast Extent, says, that in the N. Parts the People's Complexions are white, and their Fruits like those of *Europe*; whereas in the S. the former are black, and the latter of the same Kind as those of *India*. The *Sansons* make it 600 Leagues both Ways. *Le Comte*, one of the French King's Missionaries, who arrived here in 1687, reckons it 450 common Leagues from N. to S. almost as much from E. to W. and near 1400 Leagues in Circumference, excluding *Haynan*. He says, it lies in a Circular Figure, and that some place it 500 Leagues too far E. as *Heylin* and *Mandelsloe*, who extend the S. Parts from Long. 130. to 160. and the *Sansons*, who make it reach from Long. 147. to 166. whereas *Moll* comprehends its greatest Breadth betwixt Long. 118. and 140. and extends its Length from Lat. 18. to 39½. the *Sansons* to Lat. 44. and *Heylin* from Lat. 22. to 40. *Hakluyt* doubts whether the Longitude can exactly be distinguish'd into Degrees. He says, that it takes up 5 Months Journey, or no less than 3 Months Post, from the Sea-Coast to the Court of *Pekin*; and that the Chinese Maps make it almost a Quadrate; ours represent it like a Crescent. *Nieuhoff*, who attended the Embassy sent hither by the Dutch East-India Company, makes it almost 1000 Miles in Breadth from N. to S. and 1350 in Length from the W. Province of *Yunnan* to *Nimpo* on the E. *Kircher* extends it near 1440 Miles both Ways. *Heylin* says, it takes in all the Climates from the 3d to the 9th inclusively, the longest Summer's Day in the S. Parts being 13 h. and 40 m. and 16 h. ¾. in the most N. Parts. The Air is hot, especially under the Tropick, but very sound, healthy, and fit for the Production of the choicest Fruits.

It abounds in Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, Musk, Silk, Salt, rich Gums, and Drugs, and has so much Rice and Corn, that *Mandelsloe* says there's not a Marsh or Mountain left untill'd. It produces likewise all

Sorts of Animals, and the European Fruits and Simples, but much better, and in greater Plenty; and Spices are so cheap, that 400 Nutmegs are sold for a Crown, and two Pound of Cloves for half the Price. The Rivers abound with Fishes, and they catch them by the Help of the Cormorants, which swarm here. They tie a String round their Necks above their Stomachs, so that after they have filled their Bags, which hang under their Throats, with Fish, they are forc'd to disgorge the rest into the Boat, to which they are fasten'd. They breed vast Numbers of Ducks, which they keep 3 or 4000 together in Cages of Canes fix'd to the Sterns of great Boats, and let them out every Day to go ashore and pick the Weeds from among the Rice, and towards the Evening call them to their Cages by a Whistle. They hatch their Eggs in Dung, and afterwards put the Young under the Wings of the old Ducks in Cages, which makes them so cheap, that *Mandelsloe* says they sell 5 or 6 for 2 d.

Le Comte gives the following Account of its Natural History.

Their Mountains, which they manure, are for most Part as fertile as their Plains, because they are not stony, but of a light Mould, and 3 or 400 Foot deep before you come to the Rocks. Those that are most barren bear all Sorts of Trees, which are streight and fit for Building, of which the Emperor reserves some for his own Use, and the Inhabitants trade with the rest by dragging 80 or 100 of them together along their Rivers till they are all sold: But sometimes they stay out 3 or 4 Months, and build little Houses upon the Floats for themselves and Families. They have other Mountains which produce Iron, Tin, Brass, Mercury, Gold and Silver. The Silver Mines are of little Use, because they have Plenty enough of that Metal, and 'tis dangerous and very laborious to dig it. The Gold is so pure, that it needs no refining, and 'tis wash'd off in great Quantities by the Torrents, with which it falls into the Plains, where many make it their Business to seek it in the Dirt and Sand. The Chinese ascribe miraculous Qualities to many of their Mountains. They say, some are al-

ways cover'd with Clouds, others serene, and that some bear no poisonous Herb. They pretend there's one in the Province of *Xenfi* shap'd like a Cock, and crows so loud as to be heard 3 Leagues, and another that breaths Fire and Flames, and raises Storms at the Beat of a Drum: One in *Kiamfi* call'd the *Dragon Tyger*, because the Priests say the upper Part is like a Dragon, and the lower like a Tyger: One in *Fokiem* which is mov'd to and fro by the Wind; and another that represents their Idol *Foe*, so big that its Eyes are several Miles broad, and its Nose many Leagues in Length: One in *Huquam* which makes Thieves so giddy, that they cannot carry off their Booty. They say, they are inhabited by an immortal Race of Men, of whom some wander among the Rocks, and lose themselves in Quest of Immortality. There are several Grotto's, inhabited by a Set of Priests of very scandalous Lives. Their Plains are all tilled, without either Hedge, Ditch, or scarce a Tree, for fear, says our Author, of losing an Inch of Ground. In most Provinces they have two Harvests a Year, and sow Herbs and Pulse between them. The N. and W. Provinces bear Wheat, Barley, several Kinds of Millet and Tobacco, and black and yellow Pease, with which they feed their Horses. The S. Parts are generally low and watery, and fruitful in Rice, which the Natives sow first like other Corn; and when 'tis two Foot high, transplant it in a straight Line in small Parcels Chequer-wise, that the Ears may support each other against the Wind.

Their Olives are not so good as ours, nor do they press any Oil from them. They have three Sorts of excellent Melons, the first small, yellow within, of a sweet Taste, and they eat it with the Rind; others are big and long, with the Inside white or red, full of a cooling inoffensive Juice, and called Water Melons. The 3d Sort is like our ordinary Melons.

Their most common Fruits, except those we have already described, are, 1. The *Seze*, which grows almost in all Parts of *China*, and is of several Kinds. Those in the S. taste and melt in one's Mouth like Sugar; but those of *Xanfi* and *Xenfi* are bigger, and fitter to be preserv'd. The Rind of the former is smooth, transparent, and

red, when ripe. Some are like an Egg, but bigger. The Seeds are black and flat, and the Meat so liquid, that they suck it out at one of the Ends. When they are dry'd, they turn mealy, but in Time are cover'd with a kind of Sugar Crust, which gives them a delicate Flavour. The Meat of those in *Xanfi* is like our Apples, but of another Colour. They gather them early, either to ripen on the Straw, or to dip them in scalding Water, which frees them from an ill Taste they have at first gathering. 2. Oranges, of which there are several Sorts, besides those transplanted into *Portugal*. They have one Sort no bigger than a Billiard-Ball, which is most valued, and sent as Presents into the *Indies*. The Rind is of a reddish yellow Colour, clear, and very smooth. They are commonly given to the Sick, being first soften'd by the Fire, and then filled with Sugar, which our Author says makes a Syrup very wholesome for the Lungs. 3. Lemons, no bigger than Walnuts, round, green, sharp, and excellent in Ragoos. They are often planted in Boxes to adorn their Courts and Halls. 4. The Tallow Tree, as high as our Cherry Trees, with crooked Branches, red Leaves shap'd like an Heart, of a smooth Bark, a short Trunk, and a round thick Head. The Rind is divided into 3 Segments, which open when ripe, and have 3 white Kernels as big as a small Nut, and so like Tallow in Colour, Smell, and Consistency, that they make Candles of it, by mixing a little Oil with it to make it more pliable; but they know not how to purify it, nor have no Cotton-Wicks; so that our Author says, the Smell is noisome, and the Light but dim. 5. The Pepper Tree is different from all others: 'Tis like our Walnut Tree, and the Berry is as big as a Pea, of a grey Colour, streak'd with red, and so strong and offensive to the Head, that the Inhabitants are forced to gather it at Intervals. When 'tis ripe, it has a little black Stone, which they throw away, because 'tis too hot and strong: The rest they use for Sawces; but 'tis not so agreeable as that we formerly described.

Our Author says, no Place in the World produces more Roots and Pulse than *China*, because 'tis almost the only Food of the Inhabitants.

The most remarkable are, 1. The Herb called *Perfi*. 'Tis a kind of a Lanifer, grows under Water, and the Root is fasten'd to a white Matter, cover'd with a red Skin, that divides it into several Heads, which, when fresh, tast like a small Nut. 'Tis said to soften Brass, and render it eatable if put into the Mouth with a Piece of the Plant.

2. Tea of several Sorts. That which grows in the Province of *Xensi* is coarse, harsh, and unpleasant, drank only by the *Tartars*, and not above 3 d. a Pound. In the same Province there are two other Kinds, one like Moss, the other with long thick Leaves; but that which is usually drank, grows in most Provinces. The Persons of Quality use two other Kinds; 1. *Thea Soumlo*, so called from the Place where it grows. Our Author says, the Leaves are longish, the Infusion clear and green, the Tast pleasant, and the best has no Smell. They commonly present it at Visits; but 'tis too corrosive for the Stomach. 2. *Thea Voui*, that which we call Bohee. The Leaves are small, and give the Liquor a Tincture of Yellow. 'Tis of a delicious Tast, agreeable to the weakest Stomachs, and therefore commonly given to the Sick. Our Author says, Tea proves best when gather'd early, while the Leaves are small, tender, and juicy. The Natives commonly gather it in *March* or *April*, and dry it on Copper Plates over a Fire, till it rolls up in the Form as 'tis imported to *Europe*. *Le Comte* says, 'tis rare to meet with any unmix'd, because the *Chinese* mingle other Leaves with it to swell the Bulk. It commonly grows in Vallies and at the Foot of Mountains, but the best in stony Soils. It flourishes most when expos'd to the S. and bears in 3 Years after 'tis sown. The Root is like that of a Peach-Tree, and the Flowers like the white Wild-Rose. The Trees are of all Sizes, from 2 Foot to 100 high, and bear three Sorts of Fruit, one like little slimy Pease, green without, and full of yellow Grains within; another as big as Beans, of several Forms, and inclosing one or more Peas; and a third without any Bud, which they call Females. Others have a Bud, and may be sown to produce Trees; but the *Chinese* usually graft them.

Mr. Cunningham, F.R.S. and Physician to

the *English* at *Chusan* in this Country, in his Account transmitted to the *Royal Society*, and publish'd in the 3d Volume of *Miscellanea Curiosa*, says, the several Sorts of Tea mention'd by *Le Comte* proceed from one and the same Plant, and only differ in the Soil, and Season of gathering. The Bohee or *Voui* (so call'd from some Mountains in *Fokien*, where 'tis chiefly made,) is the very first Bud gather'd in the Beginning of *March*, and dry'd in the Shade. The *Bing* Tea is the second Growth in *April*, and *Singlo* the last in *May* and *June*, both dry'd in Pans over the Fire. The Shrub is an Evergreen, flowers from *October* to *January*, and the Seed is ripe in *September* and *October* following, when scarce one Seed in a Hundred is fresh and full. That Sort which *Le Comte* calls *Slimy Pease*, is only the young Buds of Flowers before they are open. It has three Capsulas, containing each a Nut or Seed; and altho' not above two Capsulas come to Perfection, the Vestiges of the rest may be discover'd. He adds, that it grows without any Cultivation. *Lockyer* says, Bohee is not much esteem'd among the *Moors*, *Gentiles* of *India*, nor the *Arabs* and *Persians*, who are most us'd to Green Tea, and that the Leaf of the former is long and brown. The best smells and tastes well, looks all of a Colour, is very crisp, and opens soonest in hot Water. Small black Leaves and Durt among it are Signs of the worst Sort. He says, that *Singloe*, or common Green Tea, has a small Lead-colour'd Leaf, and the best Sort has a fresher and stronger Flavour than ordinary. Our Author advises the Buyer to chew it, and the greener it grows the better 'tis, or to put a like Quantity of several Sorts into Pots of Water of different Sizes, and that which holds longest of a pale Amber Colour, is better than that which turns brownish. Then put fresh Water to it till it has quite lost its Vertue, and then if none of the Leaves turn brown, 'tis an infallible Sign of its being good. *Imperial* or *Bing* Tea is a large loose Leaf, of a very light Green when chew'd, makes the Water pale, yields a pleasant Smell, and is the lightest Sort of all; and if it loses its Crispness, will never recover. *Nieuhoff* says, the Leaves of Tea are like those of Sumack, and affirms, contrary to Mr. Cunningham, that 'tis manur'd by the Inhabitants,

tants, who plant it 3 Foot asunder upon little Hills, where it grows as high as a Rose-Tree, with Leaves of 5 several Sizes; that the least grow on the top Sprigs, and so bigger and bigger to the lowermost; that a Pound of the largest dry'd Leaves is worth 5 s. those of the second Size 10 s. of the 3d 10 Guilders, of the 4th 15 Guilders, and of the 5th and last Size 50, and sometimes 150 Guilders a Pound; that it thrives in spite of Rain and Snow; that it has many spreading Roots, which run but shallow in the Ground, and are good for nothing; tho' the *Chinese* ascribe great Virtues to it, for which we refer to him; that some of the Inhabitants prepare it with Milk, and a little Salt mingled with Water.

3. *Gem-Sem*, or *Ginseng*, i. e. Man Plant. *Le Comte* says, the learned *Chinese* call it, the *Spiritous Simple*, the *Pure Spirit of the Earth*, the *Fat of the Sea*, the *Panacea*, the *Remedy that dispenses Immortality*, and the like. 'Tis a Root as thick as half one's little Finger, and as long again. 'Tis divided into two Branches, like a Man with his two Legs, for which Reason 'tis called *Man Plant*. 'Tis of a yellowish Colour, and when old, grows wrinkled and dry. The Leaves are small, and terminate in a Point, the Branches black, the Flower violet, and the Stalk hairy. They say, it produces but one Stem with three Branches, each of which bears Leaves by fours and fives. It grows in the Shade in a moist Soil, and comes not to Perfection in many Years. 'Tis commonly found under the Tree called *Kia-Cha*, which is like the *Sycamore*. The *Chinese* say, 'tis the most incomparable Cordial in the World, and their Physicians have whole Volumes of its different Uses and Vertues. Our Author says, the Taste is a Bitter-sweet; that it purges the Blood, fortifies the Stomach, quickens the Pulse, excites natural Heat, and augments radical Moisture. The *Chinese* Physicians use it particularly in Fainting or Swooning, and make it into Broths, Electuaries, Lozenges, and Syrups. *Nieuhoff* thinks it a kind of *Mandrake*, because it has the same Shape and Vertue, tho' much less.

4. The *China* Root. *Nieuhoff* says, there are two Sorts of it, the True, and the Counterfeit or Wild *China* Root, which is

imported into *Europe*. 'Tis red within, but not so big, nor of so great Virtue, as the True, which they say is produced by the Juice that drops from the Pine-Trees, and brings forth an Herb that shoots under Ground with knotty Roots, in Shape, Size, and Colour, like *Cocoa-Nuts*, but thinner and softer. *Garcias* says, this Root is a sovereign Remedy against the *French Pox*, Itch, Tremblings, Aches, Gout, and good for a weak Stomach, and the Stone in the Bladder, proceeding from Cold. *Acosta* gives an Account of its Use and Operations among the *Chinese* and *Indians*, for which we refer to him. *Lockyer* says, the best Sort is large, weighty, and sound, without Worm-Holes.

5. *Huchuu*. Mr *Cunningham* says, the *Chinese* believe it prolongs Life, and turns grey Hairs into black by drinking its Infusion for some Time.

Mr. *Cunningham* gives an Account of the Way of manuring their Rice, for which we refer to him. He says, they make Salt in the Summer by paring off the superficial Earth of the muddy Shores, and lay it up in Heaps, dry it in the Sun, rub it small, fill a Pit with it, and cover it two or three Inches deep with salt Water, which they drain into Jars, and afterwards boil into Salt.

Magaillans says, their Wax is the clearest and whitest that ever was seen; and tho' it be not so common as Bees-Wax in *Europe*, yet there's enough to serve the Nation. 'Tis made on the Branches of certain Trees, by sprightly Insects no bigger than a Flea, which lay Eggs in the Trees, that turn in the Spring to little Worms, which the Inhabitants of *Xantum* put into large Canes, and carry into the adjacent Provinces to sell. At the Beginning of the Spring they lay these Worms at the Bottom of the Trees, from whence they run up to the Boughs, where they are always in Motion, and penetrate to the very Pith, which they purify, and turn into white Wax. Then they thrust it up thro' the Holes they have made to the Superficies, where the cold Wind congeals it like Icicles, and the Owners of the Trees gather it, and make it into Cakes, which are transparent. He adds, that they have 3 Sorts of Wild Bears, which they call Men, Dog, and Pig Bears, because of their

their several Resemblances in the Head and Paws. The latter boil'd is a delicate Mefs with the *Chinefe*, and the *Tartars* eat the Fat raw, temper'd with Honey. They have vast Numbers of several Sorts of Deer, Boars, Ellands, Hares, Conies, Wild Cats, Rats, Geese, Wood Fowl, Partridges, and Quails of several Sorts and Shapes. They have also Horses, Cows, Hogs, Dogs, Mules, and Goats.

Le Comte says, the Waters of *China* are divided into Canals and Rivers. There's a River in most Provinces, which glides between two Banks built of coarse Marble, with a deep clear Stream, and serves both for Ornament and Trade. They have a great many Bridges over them of three or more Arches, the middle one being always extraordinary high, for the Passage of Vessels under them with their Masts up. Our Author says, that in the S. Provinces there is one called the Great Canal, which runs thro' the whole Country to *Canton* in the N. It was dug 400 Years ago at the Charge of the *Cham* of *Tartary*, then residing at *Pekin*, for the better supplying that City with Provisions, &c. 'Tis 245 *Portugal* Leagues in Length, and has 72 Sluices, which are shut in the Night, and open in the Day. They pass from one Canal to another by Waterfalls, so that the Barks are haul'd up against the Stream by Men; and where there's no Communication between the Canals, they draw their Boats from one to another along sloping Banks made on purpose; but there are no such Sluices in the Grand Canal, because the Emperor's Barks are too large to be drawn. By these Canals, Goods are brought out of the Southern Provinces to *Pekin*, and the *Chinefe* say, above 1000 Barks, from 80 to 100 *Tun*, make a Voyage once a Year on the Emperor's Account alone, besides a vast Number of others that belong to his Subjects. They also dig other Canals to catch the Rain, with which they water their Fields in Time of Drought; and if they find a Spring, they keep it up with Banks in the highest Places, and turn it 100 different Ways for the Benefit of all the Country.

Their chief Rivers are, 1. *Kiam*, or *Yam-mee*, i. e. the Son of the Sea. *Le Comte* says, it rises in the S. W. Province of *Yunnan*,

and runs 400 Leagues thro' *Suckuen*, *Hu-quam*, and *Nankin*, into the E. Sea, over against *Cummim*, an Island form'd by the Sand, &c. brought down from this River, so that it divides the Empire into N. and S. 'Tis of a great Depth, so that the *Chinefe* have a Proverb, That the Sea has no Bounds, and *Kiam* no Bottom. About *Nankin* 'tis half a League wide, but its Course is exceeding rapid and dangerous. It forms many Isles in its Passage, which yield a great Revenue to the Emperor, and produce a Multitude of Bulrushes 10 or 12 Foot high, that serve for Fuel, for they have very little Wood. But the River is sometimes so swelled by the Torrents from the Mountains, that it carries away all or Part of the Isles, and forms new ones; so that they are measur'd every three Years, that the Duties may be augmented or diminished in Proportion. *Nieuhoff* says, this River has several Names, according to the Provinces thro' which it passes, and first *Minkiang*, from the Mountain *Min*, where it rises; but *Moll* places its Fountain in *Suckuen*.

2. The *Hoambo*, *Hoang*, or the *Yellow River*, the same with that which *Moll* calls *Crocei*, or the *Saffron River*, because, says *Le Comte*, in great Rains it has that Colour, or (as *Nieuhoff* says) from the Soil, rises out of the Mountains in *Suckuen*, runs thro' a Part of *Tartary* without the great Wall, re-enters *China* between *Xansi* and *Xensi*, and passes thro' *Honan* and *Nankin* into the E. Sea near the Mouth of *Kiam*. It flows 600 Leagues within Land, and us'd to overflow the Country, till the Inhabitants kept the Waters in by great Banks. *Nieuhoff* says, the Stream is so strong, that Vessels are tow'd up against it by a great Number of Men, and that 'tis little above half a Mile over at the broadest Place, and but 800 Miles in Length. The Water is so muddy, that the Inhabitants say it will not grow clear till 1000 Years; so that to denote a Thing impossible, they say by Way of Proverb, 'Twill happen when the *Yellow River* grows clear. Yet the Mariners who frequent this River sling Allom into the Water, which makes the Mud sink to the Bottom.

There are many great Waterfalls in this Country, which are heard at a vast Distance. There are 36 in the River *Chuam*, and there's one in the River *Tao* that resembles Thunder.

der. There are Cataracts in the Mountain *Taye* of 400 Rods high. The River *Singan* has 360 Cataracts. In the Province of *Fokien* there's a River which has so many Waterfalls and Rocks, that Mariners are forc'd to fling out great Bundles of Straw before they come to those Cataracts, which lodging against the Sides of the Rocks, prevent the Vessels from being dash'd to Pieces. The River *Tan* is always red like Blood. In the Province of *Szechu* there's a River, which, because it glitters in the Night-time as if it was full of Precious Stones, they call the *River of Pearls*. Near *Foming* there's a River which flows from the Mountain *Talao*, whose Water turns blue in Harvest, when the Inhabitants make use of it to dye that Colour. Near *Paogan* there's a River which will bear no Vessel; for as soon as any Wood comes upon it, it sinks. Near *Ching-tien* there's a small River, whose Waters are sweet-scented. The River *Cungyang* takes Spots and Stains out of Clothes, and does so cool the Air, that the Emperors of *China* have built a Palace over it, where they reside in the Summer. The River *Kinxu* is called the *Gold River*, because of the great Quantity of that Metal found in its Sands. The River *Lienfan* in the Province of *Kiangsi* is us'd by the *Chinese* for their Hour-Glasses, because this Water is the least subject to Alteration of any others. The River *Xo* near *Xincheu* cures several Sorts of Diseases. In the Province of *Chekiang*, called *Che*, *Ctientang*, and *Singan*, it rises with such a high Tide upon the 18th Day of the 8th Month before the City *Hangcheu*, that their Philosophers can never find out the natural Cause of it, and all the People in the Neighbourhood repair to it on that Day to see this wonderful Phænomenon. In *Fokien* there's a River whose Water is green, and turns Iron into Copper.

Le Comte says, they have great Lakes and Ponds in most of the Provinces, which abound with Fish and Salt, that yield a considerable Revenue to the Emperor. In some of them there are Islands which have a Crust of white and well-scented Salt. These Rivers and Lakes produce all the Fish which we have in *Europe*, and some that we have not, particularly those called Gold and Silver Fish, because of their Colour. They are kept for Ornament in the Ponds of

great Men, are commonly the Length of a Finger, and a proportionable Thickness. The Male is of a delicate Red from the Head to the Middle, and from thence to the End of the Tail of a Gold Colour, which exceeds our finest Gilding. The Female is White, the Tail like a Nosegay, and with Part of its Body shines like the finest Silver. They are very tender, are soon killed by Heat and Cold, or by the Touch of one's Hand, strong Smells, or the Noise of Cannon and Thunder. They feed them with steep'd Wafers. They multiply much in hot Countries, provided Care be taken to secure their Eggs, which swim on the Water, and are preserv'd by the Inhabitants in small Vessels, till they be hatched by the Heat of the Sun; so that they are reckon'd Wonders of Nature.

Le Comte says, most of their Spring-Water is brackish, so that they purge it with the Leaves of Tea; and that they have several Fountains which ebb and flow regularly. *Nieuhoff* says, there are others which rise hot and cold at a very small Distance from one another, and particularly two near the City *Jungchang*, which proceed from a Stone resembling a Man's Nose, one of whose Nostrils issues cold, and the other hot Water. In *Xantung* they have a Spring, which sends forth both hot and cold Water at the same time, that separate from one another, and therefore is reckon'd a Miracle in Nature. In the City of *Lincheng* in the Province of *Xensi* there's a Fountain clear as Chrystal, about 5 Foot deep, the Top of it very cold, and the Bottom so hot, that one can't touch it. In the Province of *Quangsi* there's a Spring, the one half clear, and the other muddy; so that if the Waters be mixed, they presently separate. Near *Jungchang*, on a Hill call'd *Gailo*, there's a deep Well, according to whose Rise or Fall the Inhabitants look for a fruitful or barren Year.

To what is said before of their Hills and Mountains, we shall add from *Nieuhoff* as follows: The *Chinese* of Note generally erect their Tombs upon little Hills and Mountains, in the Choice of which they are very superstitious. They esteem those most which they fancy bear the Shape of some Part of a Dragon, for those they reckon will make their Posterity happy.

Hence

Hence it is they have some who pretend to tell Fortunes from the Shape of their Mountains. The Particulars we refer to the several Provinces.

Nieuhoff gives the following Account of their Mines, Metals, Stones, &c. He says, they abound with them, but none must dig for Silver or Gold, tho' every one has Liberty to seek for it on the Sides and Banks of the Rivers, where 'tis found in great Quantities, and the Inhabitants barter it for other Commodities. They have excellent Quarries of Stone, and some of Marble, with natural Landships of Hills, Waters, Trees, and Flowers, as if they were drawn by a Pencil. They have it of all Colours, and several other Sorts of Stones, much valued for their Colour and Hardness, some of them resembling Diamonds for Lustre and Sparkling: Some of them are green, and being beat to Powder, make a delicate Vert for Painters. Others, when burnt in the Fire, yield Iron fit for Swords and other Weapons. On a Hill called *Xien*, after Rains, there are found Precious Stones shap'd like Swallows. They have likewise Stones and Earth of admirable Efficacy in many Diseases; and in the Province of *Quangsi*, near the City *Cincheu*, there's a yellow Earth, which is an excellent Antidote. In several Places of the Empire they press a Sort of a Lime from the Bark of a Tree, which is tough like Pitch. With this they paint their Ships, Houses, and Utensils, so that they shine like Glass. When laid upon Wood, it gives it a shining and beautiful Colour, which is so lasting, that if any Grease or Liquor is spilt upon their Tables thus painted, 'tis easily wash'd off without any Damage or Loss of Colour. They have also an Earth as red as Vermilion, and another so white, that the Women dissolve it in Water, and use it for Paint, which makes their Hands and Faces admirably white. We refer for the rest of their Natural History to the particular Provinces.

Their History and Chronology.

Father *Magailans* says, the *Chinese* have 3 Opinions concerning the Antiquity of their Government. Some of their Books fix its Origine some Hundred Thousand

Years before the Creation. This is still believed by the Vulgar, but rejected by the Learned, since condemn'd by *Confucius*. The second makes *K. Fohi* the Founder of their Government, about 2952 Years before Christ. All their Learned hold this Opinion to be probable, and some of them unquestionable. The third Opinion is, That it was founded by a Prince call'd *Tao*, about 4025 Years ago, says our Author, who wrote in 1668, and this they make an Article of Faith, count those who disbelieve it to be Hereticks that deserve severe Punishment; and if they suspect that any Man doubts it, they certainly banish him; so that if any Christian Preacher should in the least oppose it, 'twould be enough to occasion his Death. For this Reason, says our Author, the Missionaries have obtained Leave of the See of *Rome* to adhere to the Version of the 70, which seems to agree better with the *Chinese* Computation than the Original *Hebrew*. He adds, there's no Kingdom in the World that can boast of such an ancient and regular Series of Kings. Those of the *Assyrians*, *Persians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans*, have had their Periods; but those of *China* continue still, and have been of 22 Families, from whence they reckon a Descent of 236 Kings. The Annotator upon *Magailans* observes, that the Annals of the *Chaldeans*, *Egyptians*, *Tyrians*, and other Oriental Nations mention'd by *Josephus*, might perhaps have stood in Competition with those of *China*, and no Doubt but those Nations which settled next to the Mountains of *Ararat* were more ancient than they; but their Annals are lost, as well as the Histories of *Berosus* the *Chaldean*, and *Manathon* the *Egyptian*, of which we have only some Fragments, of little Use. The *Greeks* and *Romans* give us nothing of Certainty before *Herodotus*, who on that Account is call'd, *The Father of Historians*, and yet he did not write till about 450 Years before Christ, and the Olympiads did not begin till about 770 Years before Christ; whereas the *Chinese* Chronology is much older, as we have seen already, according to their Authors. This Opinion of their Antiquity makes the *Chinese* insupportably proud, and despise all other People, whose Countries, Statures, and Manners, they represent either in such diminutive or monstrous a Fashion, as is almost incredible.

Thus they represent one of their neighbouring Nations to be all such contemptible Dwarfs, that they are forced to tie themselves together in Bundles, for fear of being carried away by the Eagles and Kites: Another they represent to be all Women, who conceive by looking upon their own Shadow in a Well, and bring forth nothing but Girls. Others they represent with Bodies like Men, and Faces like Dogs, and they call all Nations but themselves Barbarous. They say, that besides *China*, there are 72 other Kingdoms which they paint in the Middle of the Sea like so many Nut-Shells, and all their Inhabitants deformed, or of ridiculous and monstrous Gestures; and our Author says, That the Viceroy of *Quantum* in 1668 represented *Europe* to his Emperor only as two little Islands in the midst of the Sea, and so they have added it to their Maps. They divide the Heaven into 28 Constellations, and *China* into so many Quarters, allowing each of them one, but none to the rest of the World; and they think that no other Nation has any Learning or History but themselves.

The Annotator adds concerning their History, that it is less fabulous than that of the first Times of the *Romans* and *Greeks*, and writ by Authors that liv'd in the Periods they treat of, or very soon after, and the Truth of it seems to be confirm'd by several Eclipses, and other Astronomical Observations set down in the same, which agree very well with the Computations of the most learned Astronomers of the latter Ages. He observes likewise, that their Chronology seems to be confirm'd by many Circumstances conformable to those in the Scriptures, and particularly that the Lives of their first Kings are very long, like those of the Patriarchs in the Time of *Abraham*.

Nieuhoff gives the following Account of their History: They say, that before Christ, between *A. M.* 2267 and 2952, they had 800 Kings, who succeeded by Election after the Death of one another, and then the Government became Hereditary. They give great Credit to their History, because they say it has been always the Custom for the succeeding King or Emperor to employ some of the most learned Philosophers to write the Life of his immediate Predecessor without Fraud

or Flattery. Out of these Volumes the *Chinese* have made an Extract of the most remarkable Passages. They are very doubtful themselves as to what passed before their first 8 elective Kings, because of the ridiculous Stories relating to the Age of the People, and the Years of their Governors. *Nieuhoff*, before he comes to those 8 Kings, gives a short Account of such as are feign'd to have bore Rule before their Time.

The *Chinese* suppose that the first Man was their first Governor, was called *Puon-cus*, and had his Origine out of a confus'd Lump like an Egg; but some of the learned *Europeans* think *Cainan* or *Kenan*, the Son of *Enos*, and his Followers, first Peopled *China*. They add, that he was preferred to the Government when 500 Years old, and that after him the 8 elected Emperors reign'd.

To one or other of their following Emperors they ascribe the teaching of Agriculture, Architecture, Astrology, the making of Clothes, the Institution of Marriage, the making of Roads, digging Canals, making of Bridges, coining of Money, and every thing else that relates to Policy and good Government. The first of their Emperors whom they speak of with any Certainty is *Fohius*, to whom they ascribe a miraculous Conception, and say, he was born of a Virgin. They add, he reign'd 115 Years, was a very upright Man, a good Legislator, a great Astrologer, and the first Inventer of the ancient *Chinese* Characters. To him they likewise ascribe the Institution of Marriage, and the distinguishing the two Sexes by different Apparel. *Magaillans* supposes the Story of this Prince to be probable, since, according to their Chronology, he begun to reign about 200 Years after the Deluge, if we take the Computation of the Septuagint, and in that Space of Time *Noah's* Descendants might very well extend themselves to the N. W. Part of *China*, where this Prince is said to have fix'd his Seat.

He was succeeded by *Xinnungus*, who reign'd 140 Years, invented the Plough, and taught the Use of it, and likewise the Vertues of Herbs and Plants. He was defeated and kill'd by a neighbouring petty King call'd *Hoangtius* in the Place where *Pe-kin* now stands. This they say was the first War in the World. He govern'd his new Sub-

Subjects by a standing Army, but otherwise made very good Laws, and was the first who made publick Roads, and encourag'd Commerce. He was also the first who introduc'd the Use of the *Regalia*, invented the Art of Dying, and made the Rich distinguish themselves from the Poor by the Colour of their Apparel. To him likewise they ascribe the first Invention of Boats, Bridges, Money, and Arms. They fancy that he never dy'd, but was receiv'd amongst the Immortal. He was in such Esteem for his Virtues, that the *Chinese* Emperors have ever since taken the Name of *Hoangti*, as the *Roman* Emperors did that of *Cæsar*.

His Son *Xaohavus* succeeded in the Year 2597 before Christ. He reign'd 84, and was the first that order'd a Distinction among the Degrees of the Mandarins by their several Bearings of Birds and Colours, by which the Nature of their Employment is known; for Civil Magistrates have always a tame Bird embroider'd on their Back and Breast, but Military Officers have Beasts of Prey. They fancy he made Choice of this Distinction, because at the Beginning of his Reign the Bird of the Sun appeared, which they describe like an Eagle in Shape, but that the Feathers are very beautiful, and of singular Colours. They say it rarely appears, and some take it to be the Phoenix, by them called *Fughoang*, i. e. Yellow Bird. When they are long a coming, they take it for an Omen of Wars, and that the Imperial Race will be of no long continuance. When this Emperor grew so old that he could not bear the Weight of Affairs, he substituted his Nephew

Chuenbious, who they say was a virtuous Prince, and made a Law, That none should offer to the Gods besides the Emperor. He was succeeded by his Nephew

Cous, 2435 Years before Christ. They reckon him also a virtuous Prince, and say, he had 4 Wives, by each of whom he had a Son. He preferred the youngest to be his Successor; but he was deposed in the 9th Year of his Reign for his Lewdness and Neglect of the Government, and his Brother

Taus succeeded 2357 Years before Christ. His Mother dream'd when she was with Child of him, that she saw a red Dragon, which the *Chinese* took for a great Sign of

Prosperity. He is reckon'd one of the greatest and best Princes that ever they had for Qualifications and Success. They have a Fable, That in his Reign the Sun did not set for 10 Days, which put them in fear of a general Conflagration, and Dragons and several strange Monsters sprung out of the Ground; but they were deliver'd from those Calamities by this Prince's Piety. They say he was a great Astrologer, and the first who establish'd Courts of Judicature, as his Empress was the first who taught the Women to breed Silk-Worms, and to weave Silk. They say, he surrender'd the Government to a Stranger, because of his eminent Qualities, and pass'd by his own Children and Family, tho' many of them were Persons of great Virtue.

To him succeeded this Stranger call'd *Xunus*, who was a poor Husbandman, but remarkable for his Probity, of which he had given a sufficient Proof while join'd 28 Years in the Administration with *Taus*. *Xunus* is said to have had two Balls or Apples in each Eye, which the *Chinese* look upon to be a Mark of extraordinary Fortune. He divided the Subjects into several Companies, appointed the best Men to be Officers, reformed the Courts of Judicature, divided the Empire into 12 Provinces, and visited each of them Annually. He promoted Agriculture, commanded his Subjects to be kind to Strangers and Travellers, and appointed Punishments for Malefactors according to the Degrees of their Crimes. The *Tartars* invaded him, but he repulsed them with Loss, and this they say is the first Time those People are mention'd in the History of *China*. *Magailans* says, this Emperor was especially remarkable for his Love to his Father and Brother, notwithstanding they both sought his Death. The low Country being in Danger by an Inundation, he order'd a stupendious Bank to be cast up to prevent it, some of which remains to this Day; as also Part of the Royal Canals which he caus'd to be dug thro' Mountains and Rocks, so as to make them navigable. He likewise divided great Rivers into several Branches; and for the Conveniency of Trade and Carriage, dug Inlets from them into the Sea.

His Son *Tous*, who superintended those great Works, was for his Diligence assum'd

by him into a Share of the Government, and succeeded at his Death by the Favour of the People, tho' his elder Brother oppos'd it. *Yous* was the last of the elected Emperors, and founded the Imperial Race called *Hiaa*, which continued from Father to Son, from 2207 Years before Christ, 441 Years; in a Line of 17 Emperors. Being extinguish'd for want of Issue, the Family of *Xanga* succeeded, produced 28 Emperors, and lasted above 600 Years, till 1122 Years before Christ, when the Family of *Chevia* succeeded, begun by one *Fau*, who called himself *Uous*, i. e. a Warrior. This Family produced 37 Emperors; ended 246 Years before Christ, and was followed by the Line of *Ciua* or *Xiu*, which gave Name to the whole Empire. 'Twas extinguished after 3 Reigns, making up 40 Years, Anno 206 before Christ, and was succeeded by the Race of *Hana*, which continued till A. C. 264, and was subdued by the Family of *Cyna*, that lasted till A. C. 419, there being 5 Kings of it, who made War upon one another, which gave Opportunity to the Race of *Tanga* to subdue the Whole. They continued till A. C. 618, and were succeeded by the Race of *Sunga*, which lasted till 1278, when the *Tartars*, after 73 Years War, subdued the Empire, extirpated the Family, and set up a new one call'd *Ivena*, which continued till 1368, when a Priest called *Chu* influenced the People to rebel, drove out the *Tartars*, and set up himself, by the Name of *Hunguuns*, i. e. the Warlike Soldier. From him came the Race of *Tai-cinga*, which held the Throne till 1644, that the *Tartars* again conquer'd the Country, and set up their Great Cham *Xunchius*.

Nieuhoff, after bringing down their History so far, in order to inform us the better of the Occasion of these Wars betwixt the *Tartars* and *Chinese*, returns back to the Time of *Chu* above-mention'd, and tells us, That after the *Western Tartars* had subdued *China* in 1278, they grew degenerate, and as effeminate as the *Chinese*, who still remembering the great Slaughter they had made of their Ancestors in the Time of *Tamerlane* and his Successors, they entertain'd an incurable Aversion to their Government; but none of their great Men had the Courage to head them; so that at last *Chu*, a poor despicable Fellow, and (as some say) only a Priest's Servant, being of an ambitious

Temper, quitted his Cell, where he had liv'd some Years, upon a high Mountain, and betook himself to a Parcel of Robbers, whom he exceeded in Wickedness, as well as in Courage and Boldness. This made the Rabble cast their Eye upon him as a Man fit to be their Leader; so that resorting to him in great Numbers among the Mountains, he at last formed them into an Army, and came down to the Plains, having first order'd the Mountains to be cultivated, that he and his Troops might not want Subsistence in case they should be obliged to retire to them again. He defeated the *Tartars* in many Battles, but always spared the native *Chinese*, on Promise of their shaking off the *Tartar* Yoke; so that at length he cleared the Country of them in 1368, and was by universal Consent declared their Emperor. He establish'd his Residence in *Nanking*, pursued the *Tartars* into their own Country, which he brought under Tribute, particularly those of *Niuchi* or *Ninche*, now called *Eastern Tartary*, which we described P. 440 of this Volume: But *Nieuhoff* being much more particular than any other Author, we shall, according to Promise, add the following Account of it from him. The Inhabitants were originally *Western Tartars*, who settled here about 206 Years before Christ; and being join'd by such of the *Western* and *Chinese Tartars* as *Chu* drove out of *China* and their own Countries, they continued a long Time Vassals to the Empire of *China*; but increasing in Power and Multitude, they form'd themselves into a distinct Commonwealth, enlarg'd their Dominions by new Colonies, and divided themselves into 7 Principalities, who agreed well enough for some Time; but at last falling into Civil Wars, the Conquerors in 1600 turn'd the Whole into an absolute Monarchy, and call'd it the Kingdom of *Ninche*. *Eysbrants Ides* calls the People *Mantcheou*.

Our Author says, this is properly *Eastern Tartary*, and as yet little known to *Europeans*. He says, 'tis bounded on the N. and N. E. with another *Tartar* Kingdom call'd *Niulhan*, and towards the E. has the Kingdom of *Tupi*, likewise subject to the *Tartars*, and encompassed with the Sea between *Japan* and *Eastern Tartary*. On the S. it borders on the Island *Corea*, and is divided from the Province of *Leaotung* by the great Wall, and more W. it is separated by the great River

Linkoang, which runs betwixt *Ninche* and *Kilangho*. He says, the *Chinese* and their other Neighbours call them by the Name of *Kin*, which signifies Gold. Therefore they are commonly known by the Name of Lords and Masters of the Golden Mountains. They have always been the greatest Enemies to the *Chinese*, and would have compleated the Conquest of them, had they not been prevented by the *Western Tartars* under *Tamerlane*, who not only conquer'd the *Chinese*, but drove these *Eastern Tartars* out of it into their own Country, of which they also subdued a great Part, particularly the N. Provinces; and from hence it was that they subdued S. *China*, and set up the Race of *Ivens* above-mentioned in 1368. They say, that during the Kings of this Race, there were 124 Cities in this *Eastern Tartary*; but that there are so many now, *Nieuhoff* cannot affirm, the *Tartars* he convers'd with in *China* not being able to inform him. The *Chinese*, who hate them, say, they live in Caves under Ground, whereas they live in strong and well wrought Tents, made for most Part of Silk or Stuff so curiously painted, that they keep out Rain, and shine in the Sun like Looking-Glasses. He adds, that Persons of Quality have them very large, and divide them into several Apartments for their Convenience. *Father Magailans* says, that *Eastern Tartary* extends from *Leaotum* beyond *Japon*, including *Ninche* to the N. of *Corea*, *Niulhan* to the N. of *Ninche*, *Yupi* E. of *Ninche*, and *Yeco* N. E. of *Japon*, and E. of *Yupi*. But he says, that all of them together have not above two or three little Cities, the rest being uncultivated, and full of Woods and Mountains.

Nieuhoff says, the poorer Sort wear Clothes made of Skins; but the Rich of Silk and Cotton, tho' neither of 'em is the Product of *Ninche*, but bought of the *Chinese* in Exchange for Beasts-Skins. The Men's Coats hang down to their Heels, with narrow Sleeves, and a broad Girdle about their Middle, with a Cloth ty'd to it to wipe their Faces. At their Sides hang a Knife, and two little Bags for Tobacco, which they are very fond of, and 'tis the Custom at Visits for the Servants of the House to bring it lighted to Strangers. On the Left Side they wear a Sort of Hanger, with the

Point turn'd forward, and the Hilt behind; so that when they are on Horseback, they dextrously put their Right Hand behind their Backs, and draw their Hangers without touching the Scabbard. In the Summer they wear Straw Hats, and in the Winter Caps edg'd with Fur, which cover their Ears. The Soldiers wear Iron Helmets like those of *Europe*, but without any Guard for the Face, and have a Horse's Mane or Tail dy'd red instead of Feathers. Their Breast-Plates are of several Pieces, nail'd to one another, so that they make a hideous Clattering when upon a March. They fight with Bows and Arrows, and their Forces are chiefly Horsemen, who wear Black to make them look terrible, and Horse-Leather Boots with thick Soles, but no Spurs. When they march, 4 Horsemen go before with Colours two and two; then the Commander in Chief of the Cavalry, with five others behind him, the middlemost of which carries the Emperor's Standard; and after that the whole Troop ride five in a-breast. They are esteem'd by the *Chinese* for their Strength, talk very little, are bred to Arms from their Cradles, and are excellent Marksmen. The ordinary Women wear black loose Garments of Cotton, but the better Sort Silk, and those of Quality wear fine wrought Hats. These *Tartars* delight much in Hunting, for which they have very swift Hounds, but are for most Part Robbers, profess no Religion, and have a particular Aversion to that of *Mahomet*. They burn their Dead like the *Indians*, and are very solicitous about the future State of their Souls; for which Reason our Author says, many of them are ready to embrace Christianity, as several of them did after the Conquest of *China*.

They have a peculiar Language, easier to learn than that of *China*, and more like the *Persian*. They have above 60 Letters, like the *Arabick* in Form, and like those of *Europe* in Pronunciation and Spelling; but they imitate the *Chinese* in Reading and Writing. They have excellent Rubies, Pearls, and other Precious Stones, with Store of large Cattle, and especially Cows, bigger than those of *Europe*, but without Horns. The W. Part is full of Rocks and Hills, interspersed with some fruitful Vallies and Fields. The biggest Mountain is that called

led Kin or Gold, and there's another called *Changpe*, as mentioned P. 442, which *Nieuhoff* says extends 1000 Miles in Length, and has a great Marsh in the Middle about 80 Miles long, from whence the River *Falo* runs to the S. and the *Guenthung* to the N.

We shall now resume the Account of the Imperial Families of *China* where we left off.

The Race of *Taiminga* enjoy'd the Throne peaceably for 250 Years, till 1573, when *Yantius* or *Vanliens*, the 13th Emperor of that Line, began his Reign. *Nieuhoff* commends him for a just and prudent Prince, but was unfortunate in trusting too much to his Mandarins; for the *Eastern Tartars* being form'd into a Monarchy in his Time, these People grew so numerous and formidable under the wise Administration of their first King, who was a great Politician, that they resolv'd to take Advantage of the Negligence of the *Chinese*, and to recover their ancient Conquests; for which End they first refus'd to pay Tribute, and then renounc'd the *Chinese* Authority; but the King was basely murder'd by the Governor of *Leaotung*, under Pretence of a Visit, and gave out that he died of an Apoplexy: But in 1616 his Son fought his Way over the Wall of *China* with a great Army, fortified himself in *Leaotung*, and sent a Letter to the Emperor of *China* to complain of the Murder of his Father, and of the Frauds and Oppression of his Mandarins, desiring that the Guilty might be punish'd, and that he would remit his Yearly Tribute to defray the Charges of the War; upon which he promised to retire with his Army, and to treat the *Chinese* as Friends; but the Emperor referred the Message to his Mandarins, who scorn'd to return an Answer, were angry that the Emperor's Subjects and Tributaries should presume to complain of Injuries, and bitterly revil'd the King of *Ninche*. Upon this, the said King vow'd he would revenge his Father's Murder with the Death of 200000 *Chinese*, enter'd *Leaotung* a second time, took the Capital by Storm, where he killed a great Number of the *Chinese*, and defended his Army against their Bullets, by causing his Foot-Soldiers, whom he plac'd in the Van, to carry each a thick Plank for the Security of his Cavalry.

After this, he conquer'd all *Leaotung*, and took several other Towns by Storm, till he came within 7 Miles of *Peking*, where he halted, and durst not venture farther into the Country, tho' all the People were fled to the Woods and Mountains with their Effects, and the Emperor had resolv'd to quit his Capital; so that he return'd to *Leaotung* with great Spoils, after he had destroy'd several famous Cities with Fire and Sword. In 1619, the *Chinese* marched against him, says *Nieuhoff*, with above 600000 Men; but they were overthrown with great Slaughter, and pursued by the King, who put all the Towns in his Way to Fire and Sword till he came to *Peking*, where was a Garrison of 80000 Men, and great Store of Cannon upon the Walls, which made him think of retiring once more, as he did, to *Leaotung*.

In 1620, during these Troubles, *Vanliens* died, and was succeeded by his Son *Taichangus*, who was a valiant and prudent Prince, but died suddenly in the 4th Month of his Reign, and made Way for his Son *Thienkius*, who was not inferior in Valour and Virtue. He solicited the Aid of the King of *Corea*, rais'd a great Army against the *Tartars*, and recover'd *Leaotung*, after having defeated him in several Battles, in which, says our Author, a Woman, who brought 3000 Men from *Suchue*, perform'd such Wonders as she deserved the Name of the *Chinese* Amazon. Nevertheless, not long after the King of *Ninche* return'd with a mighty Army into *Leaotung*, retook the Capital, partly by Treachery, and partly by Storm, with the Loss of 30000 Men on both Sides, demolish'd it, put most of the Inhabitants to the Sword in cold Blood, and made himself Master of all the E. Part of the Province, and in 1625 besieged the City of *Ningyven*; but the Governor forc'd 'em to raise the Siege, and killed 10000 of the Besiegers, among whom was the K. of *Ninche*'s Son; in Revenge of which, the *Tartars* who escap'd into the Island of *Theyoven* put every living Creature they found to the Sword, and then retired into their own Country. This was followed by a Cessation of Arms till 1627, in which both the Emperor of *China* and the K. of *Ninche* died.

Thienkius was succeeded by his Brother *Zungchinius*, who was very unfortunate in all his Undertakings. In the Beginning of his

his Reign the *Tartars*, by the Assistance of the K. of *Corea*, who was ill treated by his former Allies, re-enter'd *China* with a mighty Army, fought several Battles with various Success, but at last the *Chinese* General retired to *Corea*; upon which the *Ninchean* Commanders, suspecting Treachery, enter'd the Island, plunder'd the Inhabitants, and destroy'd the Country with Fire and Sword; so that the King of *Corea* join'd his Forces with the *Chinese* in a set Battle, wherein all Sides fought with such Resolution, that the *Tartars* lost 50000 Men, those of *Corea* 70000, of the *Chinese* few or none escap'd, and those of the *Tartars* that surviv'd made the best of their Way home. After this they made frequent Inroads into *Leaotung*, of which they conquer'd the East Part, and plunder'd the rest; and having corrupted one of the *Chinese* Generals who was sent to treat with him, he concluded a Peace with them upon dishonourable Terms, which the Emperor refusing to sign, in 1630 the *Tartars*, by the Instigation of the said General, enter'd *China* on a sudden, laid Wast the Province of *Peking*, and besieged the Capital, while the Emperor's General, whom he sent for to his Assistance, instead of falling upon the Besiegers, continued to press the Emperor to sign the Treaty, as the best Method to raise the Siege: But at last *Zungchinus*, mistrusting his Fidelity, invited him into the City, under Colour of a Conference, and caus'd him to be beheaded, which the *Tartars* hearing, rais'd the Siege, and retired back to *Leaotung*, plundering and destroying the Country wherever they came. This War continued 5 or 6 Years with doubtful Success, during which the *Tartars* were expelled as often as they invaded the Country.

In 1636, the *Tartar* King *Thienzungus* died, and his Son *Zungteus* succeeded. He was a learned, courteous, and every Way great Prince, and liv'd privately a long Time in *China*, as we mentioned before in the Description of *Tartary*, where he perfectly learn'd the State of the Country, and Temper of the People, which was of great Use to him afterwards. He preferred none but Men of Abilities to Places of Trust, courteously entertain'd such as fled to him from *China* upon any Disgust at their own Government, and particularly at the Severity

of their Law, That all Princes, Governors or Generals, under whom any Misfortune happened, should lose their Heads without Mercy. This filled his Court with many of the greatest Men of *China*, with which the *Tartars* were then at Peace, but had an Opportunity afterwards to conquer it as follows:

China was full of Vagabonds, who wasted the Country, and at last began a Rebellion in the Province of *Suchue*, where they were join'd by a wild People, who liv'd among the Rocks and Mountains. They plunder'd all that came in the Way, and their Numbers increasing, they besieged *Chingteu*, the Capital of the Province, but were obliged to raise it by the Amazon above-mentioned. They rallied again among the Mountains; and a great Man having suffered by an unjust Sentence at the Court of *China*, he join'd with those Robbers out of Revenge, and was made their General. At the same Time 7 of the N. Provinces being infested with Grasshoppers, which destroy'd their Provisions, abundance of People joined those Robbers for want of Subsistence, and particularly because they were oppressed by their covetous Emperor *Zungchinus*, who would abate nothing of their Taxes, notwithstanding the Calamities they suffered by Famine and Depredations. This occasioned a Rebellion in most of the Provinces, where the People chose for Commanders such as were the bravest among them. They had 8 Generals of chief Note, who all of them aimed at the Crown, which occasioned 'em to fight with one another, and 6 of them were killed. The two Survivors, *Licungzus* and *Changhienchungus*, endeavour'd each to strengthen himself by the Troops of the deceased Generals, and invaded the Empire in different Parts, enriching themselves by the Spoils of the People. *Licungzus* in 1641 besieged the City *Caifung* in the Province of *Honan*, which repuls'd him at first with Loss. In the second Siege they suffer'd so much by Famine, that a Pound of Rice was sold for a Pound Weight of Silver, and a Pound of rotten Leather for 20 s. and they did likewise eat dead Corps. The Emperor came to their Relief, and order'd a great Bank, which kept in the Water of a River that lay much higher than the City, to be bored through, in order to drown the
Camp

Camp of the Besiegers. But those who undertook it being unskilful, made the Openings so great, that the Water gush'd out with so much Violence, that it drown'd the City, as well as most of the Enemy's Army; so that above 300000 People perish'd on this Occasion, and turn'd this once Capital of the Empire, with the adjacent Country, into a Lake. *Licungzus* escaping with Part of his Troops, rais'd another Army, and assum'd the Title of *Xun-nan-si*, or the Fortunate King. He besieg'd and took *Xigan*, the Capital of *Xensi*, gave the Plunder to his Men, spar'd the Inhabitants Lives, and made this Town his Place of Arms. Then he call'd himself *Thienzen*, or the Emperor obedient to Heaven, pretending that he was appointed by God to deliver the People from the Oppression of their covetous Emperor and Governors; and the more to confirm them in that Opinion, he ruled such as submitted to him with great Moderation, and took off their Taxes. This occasioned several other Provinces willingly to submit to him. The Emperor, notwithstanding his bad Circumstances, disobligh'd the People further, by countenancing one *Guei*, a Lord of his Bed-Chamber, who was his Favourite, in all Sorts of Cruelty and Oppression; so that at last he cut off the Grandees, or banish'd them at Pleasure; which being represented to the Emperor, he abated his Favour, and this occasioned two great Factions at Court. The Emperor endeavour'd to allay them, but in vain, and therefore cut off *Guei*, with several of his Adherents, in the following Manner:

'Tis the Custom of the *Chinese* Emperors to visit the Tombs of their Ancestors in Person or by Proxy, who is always one of the chief Grandees. The Emperor sent *Guei* upon this Errand with a great Train; but in a little Time sent a Messenger after him with a Golden Box and a Silken Cord in it, with which he order'd *Guei* to hang himself. The Favourite obey'd, according to the Custom of the Country, where 'tis thought honourable to obey such inhumane Commands. Part of *Guei*'s Adherents who escap'd did thereupon join the Rebels, and others of them rais'd Mutinies in the Army sent to suppress them. *Licungzus* being encourag'd by those Divisions, march'd to

besiege *Peking*, took several Cities in his Way, put the Inhabitants of such as resisted to the Sword, and drawing near *Peking*, the Emperor sent an Army under *Lins*, one of his Generals, to stop his Progress; but the Army deserted to the Rebels, and the General hang'd himself. Upon this, the Emperor resolv'd to go with his Family to *Nanking*, but was dissuaded from it by some out of Loyalty, and by others out of Treachery, who receiv'd abundance of the Rebels in Disguise into the City, who set Fire to it, when *Licungzus* came up with his Army, and open'd the Gates to him in May 1644. He surpris'd the Emperor in his Palace, who knowing nothing of what pass'd till the Rebel had enter'd the Outer-Court, he took a Pen, and writing a Letter with his own Blood to *Licungzus*, intreated him, since Heaven had favour'd his Designs, that he would punish his traiterous Officers and Servants; after which he killed his Daughter, a young Virgin of 17 Years, to prevent her being abus'd by the Rogues, and then hang'd himself. Thus that Race of Princes, which was founded by the Robber *Chu* above-mentioned, was destroy'd by *Licungzus* of the same Stamp. The Empress, with the Governor of the City, and such as continued faithful to the deceased Emperor, chose rather to kill themselves than to fall into the Hands of the Enemy. *Licungzus* presently mounted the Throne, caus'd the Emperor's dead Body to be cut in Pieces, and gave the Plunder of the City to his Soldiers. The late Emperor had three Sons; the eldest could never be found, tho' great Search was made for him, and the other two were barbarously murder'd by the Traitor, who summoned together the chief Persons of the Empire, under Pretence of treating with them, and caus'd all of them to be murder'd, except such as had Money enough to ransom their Lives. Among others he had taken, there was ancient Man call'd *Us*, whose Son *Usangejus* commanded the *Chinese* Army on the Frontiers of *Tartary*. The Traitor fearing him, threaten'd the Father with Death, if he did not enjoin his Son immediately to submit, and promised him great Preferments if he did. The old Man wrote accordingly in very moving Terms, which much troubled *Usangejus*; yet he refus'd to obey, but wrote back

back to his Father, That he would never own him for his Parent who was false to his Prince, to whom he had sworn; and that for his own Part, he would rather die than betray his Trust. At the same Time *Usangejus* sent an Ambassador to the Great Cham of *Tartary*, to beg his Assistance against the Tyrant *Licungzus*, and promised him great Rewards to hasten his March. He soon join'd *Usangejus* with 80000 Men, and persuaded him to put all his Soldiers into *Tartar* Habits. Upon Advice of this, *Licungzus* abandoned *Peking*, fled into *Xensi* with all his Riches, and designed to settle himself at *Sigan*, its Capital, but was surpris'd by the *Tartars*, who robbed him of his Wealth, and enter'd the Imperial City of *Peking*. Soon after the Great Cham died, and declared his Son of 6 Years old his Successor, under the Guardianship of two of his own Brethren. *Licungzus* being thus dethron'd, *Usangejus* endeavour'd to set the next Heir of the deceased Emperor upon the Throne, thanked the *Tartars* for their Assistance, and offer'd them the Rewards he had promis'd, if they would march out of the Country, and contract a Peace with the *Chinese*; but they modestly refus'd it, pretending that their Assistance was still necessary, since *Licungzus* had settled himself, and that *China* was still over-run with Bands of Robbers; and therefore they advis'd him to march against *Licungzus*, while they suppressed the Rebels in other Places. *Usangejus* either did not perceive their Craft, or durst not oppose it, so that he agreed to their Advice. The *Tartars*, who from the first aim'd at the Sovereignty, had privately order'd a great Army to be rais'd in their own Country, who soon marched into *China* with their young Prince, whom they proclaimed Emperor of *China* by the Name of *Xunchi*, who was still on the Throne when our Author wrote, and was then 29 Years of Age, having entirely gain'd the Affection of the *Chinese* by the good Administration of his two Uncles. As soon as the new Emperor was installed, they sent some Regiments of *Tartars* to *Usangejus*, who was on his March against *Licungzus*, with a Patent, making him a King, by the Title of *Pingsi*, or Pacifier of the W. and gave him *Sigan* to be the Place of his Residence, on Condition that he should pay a small Annual Tribute, and

submit to the new Emperor. *Usangejus* being in no Condition to dispute the Command, accepted their Proposals. He join'd with the *Tartars* in subduing the Rebels, and *Licungzus* was never more heard of; so that it was supposed he fell in Battle. The *Tartars* having thus establish'd themselves, commanded the *Chinese* to wear their Hair after the *Tartar* Fashion, which very much disoblig'd them; so that many of 'em chose rather to lose their Heads than their Tresses, for which they fought with more Valour than they had done in Defence of their Country. But the *Tartars* soon possessed themselves of the whole Empire, partly by Arms, and partly by good Conduct; for they did not alter the Government, but left all Civil Affairs to the *Chinese* Philosophers as before, and retain'd the Military Commands to themselves, except a few they left to such of the *Chinese* as had serv'd them faithfully. The *Tartars* met with some Opposition however on the following Occasions:

The Governors of the S. Provinces had rais'd an Army to come to their Emperor's Rescue against the Rebel *Licungzus*; but upon Notice of the Emperor's Death, return'd to their own Countries, and were mightily surpris'd when they heard that the *Tartars* had seiz'd the Throne, so that they knew not what to do; but at last the General, after Consultation with the others, set up one of the Family of *Taiminga*, Grandchild to the Emperor *Vanlieus*, and Cousin to the last Emperor, who then kept his Court at *Nanking*. They proclaim'd him Emperor by the Name of *Hunquang*, and expected great Matters from his Valour. He sent an Ambassador to the *Tartars*, offering them the N. Provinces; but they answer'd, That they would have all or none. In the mean time there appeared a Youth at *Nanking* who pretended to be the last Emperor's eldest Son, which was the more readily believ'd, because several of the late Emperor's Courtiers confirm'd it; but *Hunquang* took him up, and resolved to cut him off, notwithstanding the Opposition made to it by many of the Commanders and Governors of the Provinces, who believed him to be what he said. This Division gave the *Tartars* an Opportunity to subdue the Province of *Nanking*; for many of the People refus'd

to oppose them out of Hatred to *Hunquang*, and many of the *Chinese* Commanders went over to them. Then they resolved to attack the City of *Nanking*, in order to get the new Emperor into their Hands, when *Pr. Hoangchoang*, the *Chinese* Admiral, stopped the Passage of the *Tartars* on the River *Kiang*, which runs by *Nanking*, and gave them a great Rout; but this brave Admiral was soon after murder'd by *Thyenus*, a Traitor hir'd by the *Tartars*; upon which the Affairs of the *Chinese* declin'd apace. The Murderer, who had a considerable Command in the Army, got into *Nanking* with his Troops, on Pretence of helping to defend the City, but deliver'd up the Emperor to the *Tartars* in July 1645, who, after carrying him in Triumph round the City of *Peking*, strangled him with a Bow-string, as they did also the young Prince, the last Emperor's Son, whom they found in Prison, and all others of the Royal Family that they could meet with. Then they took *Nanking* without Resistance, and destroy'd the Palace and Tombs of the Emperors, but did no Hurt to the City.

The Remains of the *Chinese* Army proposed the chusing *Louangus*, one of the Royal Family, Emperor at *Hangchen*, the Capital of *Chekiang*; but he said, he would content himself with that of King till the *Tartars* were expelled. He was attacked in the City three Days after, and made a gallant Defence; but being reduced to Extremity by Famine, he went to the Walls, and begged the *Tartar* General upon his Knees to forgive the Inhabitants, and he would forthwith deliver up himself to their Mercy, which he accordingly did; but those Barbarians put all to the Sword.

In the S. Provinces the People took Arms, because of the Order to cut their Hair after the *Tartar* Fashion, and defeated a Body of the Enemy. They chose one *Lu* of the Royal Family to be Emperor; but he refus'd the Title, and call'd himself Restorer of the Kingdom. He was very successful against the *Tartars* at first; and the *Chinese* were in a fair Way of recovering their Losses, had it not been for the following Accident:

The Inhabitants of *Fokien* set up another of the Royal Family to be Emperor, who sent to *K. Lu* to renounce, but he refus'd.

The *Tartars* improving these Divisions, drove *Lu* out of the City into the Island *Cheuman*, where he liv'd several Years. 'Twas inhabited before by none but Fishermen; but by the Concourse of the *Chinese* to this Prince, it became a great Kingdom, wherein were 72 Cities. The *Tartars* went on with their Conquests elsewhere, and sent one of their Armies to subdue the Province of *Fokien*, which they did in a short Time, tho' the Country be of difficult Access, the Inhabitants being cowardly, and likewise betray'd by a Pyrate of *Fokien*, call'd by the Natives *Chinchilang*, and by Foreigners *Iquon*. He was a Fellow of mean Birth, entertain'd first by the *Portuguese* at *Macao* as a Servant, and afterwards by the *Dutch* in the Isle of *Formosa*, where having debauched a great many Fellows to turn Pyrates, he was their Commander, and in Time came to be so powerful in Shipping and Wealth, that he was an Over-Match for the Emperor of *China* by Sea. He had most of the Trade of *India* at Command, and traffick'd with the *Dutch*, the *Spaniards*, the *Portuguese*, and those of *Japan*, and the other Islands in the *Indian* Sea. He had a long War with the Emperor of *China*, who at last made Peace with him, his Naval Force being so great, that he had 3000 Ships at Command. His Success made him aspire to the Crown; but having no Hopes of obtaining it so long as any of the Royal Family was left, he join'd with the *Tartars*, in order to extirpate them; and to accomplish his Design, pretended to march against them as common Enemies, and for that Reason was made General of the Army of *Fokien*, into which he suffer'd the *Tartars* to enter without Resistance, and in Compensation they gave him the Title of King, and promis'd him the Government of several Provinces; but knowing his Ambition, the *Tartar* Viceroy of *Fokien* trepanned him, and carried him to *Peking*, where he was poison'd; upon which his Sons and Brothers return'd to their Fleet, and continued to infest the Country with Pyracies, till the Time when our Author wrote.

The other *Tartar* Army, which marched to subdue *Quantung* and *Quangsi*, was often worsted by the *Chinese* under the Conduct of one *Khin Thomas*, one of the *Jesuits* Converts, who was Viceroy of *Quangsi*, assisted by

by *Ching Lucus* their General. These two valiant Captains chose *Junglieus*, a Grand-child of *Vanlieus*, to be Emperor, who was successful at first against the *Tartars*, but was forced afterwards to fly to the Frontiers of *Tonquin*. A Priest did likewise foment a great Insurrection, in the Provinces of *Fokien* and *Quangsi*; and having form'd an Army, took several Towns, and put all the *Tartars* he met to the Sword. But a *Tartarian* Viceroy in the Neighbourhood defeated him, besieged him in a City to which he retired, took it, put about 300000 People to the Sword, and afterwards destroy'd the City. The Governor of *Kiangsi* did likewise revolt from the *Tartars*, declared for the new Emperor *Junglieus*, and the like Revolts there were in other Parts; but the *Tartars* every where had the Advantage, and appointed Viceroys in the Provinces to keep them in Awe. Another great Rebellion was raised in the N. Provinces by one *Hous*, who rais'd an Army of 300000 Men, and took several Towns, but was defeated by the *Tartars*, and kill'd in Battle. All Things seem'd after this to succeed according to the Desire of the *Tartars*, till 1649, that a new and dangerous Rebellion broke out on the following Occasion:

The young Emperor being advis'd by one of his Uncles to marry the Daughter of the K. of *Western Tartary*, otherwise called *Taniju*, he sent his other Uncle on an Embassy to make up the Match. When he was on his Way, several of his Retinue ravish'd some Women at *Taitung*, a City of *Xanfi*, and carried off a Bride of Quality as she was going to her Husband's House. Complaint being made of these Disorders to *Kiangus*, the Governor and General of the Province, he demanded Redress from the Viceroy, who not only refus'd it, but treated *Kiangus* with Contempt. Being thus provok'd, *Kiangus* assembled his Troops, attacked the Viceroy, declared for the *Chinese* Emperor, and encouraged the People every where to endeavour the Recovery of their Liberty. He defeated several Armies of the *Tartars*, and appearing at the Head of 100000 Horse and 400000 Foot, he was looked upon as the Redeemer of the *Chinese*. Upon this, the *Tartar* Emperor's Uncle march'd against him with the whole Strength of the *Tartars*, but avoided coming to

Battle, and penn'd him up so that he was straiten'd for Provisions, and retired to the City of *Taitung*, where he was soon besieged and kill'd in a Salley, which so dispirited his Troops, that some of 'em fled, and the rest begged Quarter. The other Uncle obtained the Match he went about, and the Marriage was solemnized with great State, contrary to the Custom of *China*, where the Emperors did commonly chuse for Beauty and Birth; so that one of the last Empresses was Daughter to a poor Man, who got his Living by making Shoes of Straw. Three *Tartar* Viceroys sent to reduce *Quantung* speedily effected it, and in 1650 took the chief City by Treachery, and destroy'd it, with all the Inhabitants; so that the *Chinese* Governor *Junglieus* was never more heard of after he retired to the Frontiers of *Tonquin*.

In 1651, the great Prince, who was Uncle to the young *Tartar* Emperor, died, universally lamented both by the *Chinese* and *Tartars*, because of his great Qualities. As soon as he died, great Divisions happen'd at Court, for another of the Uncles demanded the Guardianship of the young Emperor, who was but 16 Years old; but being oppos'd by all the Grandees, he desisted from his Claim, and agreed to the Crowning of his Nephew, who govern'd the People to great Satisfaction, and proved an excellent Justiciary.

Our Author comes after this to give an Account of the other Robber *Changlianchus*, who was Rival to *Licungzus*. He plunder'd several Provinces, and by cruel Torments forced the People to discover their Wealth. He delighted to put out Men's Eyes, and to see them expire in Misery, and would destroy whole Families for the Disobedience of any one of the Number, and cut off an entire Street for the Offence of any one Inhabitant. He was barbarous to every one but his Soldiers, to whom he was liberal and familiar for most Part, yet kept them in Awe by cruel Punishments when any of them disobey'd him. He was so cruel, that he delighted to see Men flea'd alive. In 1645, he besieged the Capital of *Xenfi* with 180000 Natives of *Suchuen*, besides vast Numbers of others out of the neighbouring Provinces. The Town making a brave Defence, 40000 of those of *Suchuen*, hating the

the Tyrant for his Cruelty, join'd with the Besieged; upon which he caused all the rest of their Countrymen to be murder'd by the Troops of the other Provinces. One cannot almost believe the vast Numbers of People he caused thus to be murder'd; for our Author says, that he order'd 600000 of the Inhabitants of *Chingten*, the Capital of *Suckuen*, to be murder'd by his Soldiers, and flung into the River; and that when he was marching against the *Tartars*, he order'd his Soldiers to kill all their Wives, lest they should be a Hindrance in Battle; and to set them an Example first, order'd 300 beautiful Women, whom he kept for his own Lust, to be cut off before his Army, reserving only 20 to wait upon his 3 Queens. He burnt and laid waste the whole Province of *Suckuen*, cut down all the Trees, that Posterity might have no Benefit of them, and he us'd to hang such of his Men as were sick, and not able to follow the Camp, on Pretence that he would not have 'em to live in Misery. At last he was defeated and killed by the *Tartars* in the Province of *Xenfi*; and the Empire being thus cleared of those two notorious Robbers, the *Tartars* applied themselves to settle the Peace of the Country, which they soon effected, and enjoy'd the Government while our Author wrote without any Molestation under the Emperor *Xunchiu*.

Dionysius Kao, a Native of *China*, in a short Description of this Country, annex'd to *Eysbrand Ides's Travels*, and writ in the Year 1695, calls this Emperor *Chunchi*, and says, he died in 1662, after a short Reign. He was a great Lover of Arts and Sciences, and particularly of the Mathematicks, which made him favour the Jesuits, and especially Father *Adam Schaal*, whom he advanc'd to a great Post, and granted him Leave to build two Churches in *Peking*; so that he seemed inclinable to embrace Christianity, had he not been dissuaded by one of his Concubines, on whom he doated so much, that her Death broke his Heart, says the Annotator on *Kao*. He adds, that she occasioned a severe Persecution of the Christians, and likewise of the *Bonzi*. He was succeeded by his Son *Camhi* or *Canchi*, which signifies Peaceable. He was but 8 Years of Age when his Father died, imitates him in his Love of Arts and Sciences, and granted

Liberty to the Christians in 1692, after they had been severely persecuted in his Minority by the 4 Regents. Father *Schaal* was condemn'd to Death, but wonderfully sav'd, whilst some of his Enemies came to fatal and shameful Ends. *Dionysius Kao* gives a mighty Character of this Prince, and says, that his Father perceiving his excellent Endowments, preferred him before all his elder Brothers. In the Beginning of his Reign, several dangerous Rebellions were raised against him, one particularly by Prince *Usangouei* or *Usangejus* before-mentioned, who being a *Chinese*, and consequently more agreeable to the People than a *Tartar* Prince, he was blindly follow'd by Multitudes, so that he carried one Half of the Empire, and was like to have obtained the Whole, but that this young Emperor concluded an honourable Peace with him, and after his Death allur'd his Sons to Court, which he improv'd to his Advantage. When *Usangejus* rebell'd, the Kings of *Quantung*, *Fokien*, and *Coxinga*, did the like; but the Emperor found Means to divide them, and make them pull down one another, and after their Death he either allur'd their Sons to Court, or subdued such as were stubborn, by which he settled the Empire in Peace. He prefers those of Learning and most Merit to the best Posts, punishes the Guilty, is a Lover of Industry and Action, and employs his vacant Hours in Hunting, Fishing, or the Study of the Sciences, in which the Jesuits are his daily Tutors. He brings up his Children in the same Study, and he himself instructs the Prince *Hoangtaise*, his Son and Heir Apparent, who, says *Kao*, gives pregnant Signs of as great a Genius as his Father's; and our Author hopes they may be induced ere long to embrace Christianity, because of their great Esteem for the Jesuits, insomuch that *Le Comte* says, that by the Instruction of Father *Verbieft*, whom he kept above 3 Months near his Person, he owns the Belief of a God, and had declared, That all the Religions of his Empire were vain; that Idols were nothing; and that he foresaw Christianity would one Day be built upon their Ruins. And as a further Testimony of his Favour to Christianity and its Professors, he made the Fathers *Verbieft* and *Schaal* Mandarins of Tribunals; and when the former died, he

was

was sensibly griev'd at the News, and order'd his Funeral to be put off till the Court was out of close Mourning, when he sent two Lords of the highest Quality to pay the usual Devoirs on his Behalf to the Corps. They kneel'd before the Coffin, bow'd several times, wept and groan'd a long while with their Faces to the Ground, and then pronounc'd an Encomium made by the Emperor himself, declaring, That during all the Time the Deceased practis'd Mathematicks, his Predictions always agreed with the Motions of the Heavens; that he ever approved himself exact, diligent, faithful, unalterable, and constant, till he had finished his Work. The Emperor sent him his own Physician in his Sickness, and gave 200 Gold Crowns and some Pieces of Silk towards the Charge of the Funeral, which was celebrated with great Ceremony both by the Mandarins and Christians; and the Court of Rites or Undertakers, with the Emperor's Consent, order'd that 700 Crowns in Gold should be laid out on his Tomb, and that the Emperor's Encomium should be engraven on a Marble Stone.

The C O U R T.

LE Comte says, the Emperor appears in the greatest Magnificence when he gives Audience to Ambassadors, being then attended with a prodigious Number of Troops and Mandarins in their Formalities, with the Princes of the Blood, petty Kings, Ministers of State, and Judges, all according to their Ranks, with as much Order and Gravity, and all prostrate before him as if they were in the Temples of their Idols. This exceeds all the Grandeur that's to be seen in any Christian Court, tho' the Retinues and Apartments of *European* Princes are more decent and rich. The Emperor on these Occasions sits on a Throne which is plac'd in a Building fashion'd thus: In the midst of one of the great Courts of the Palace there's a Square, solid, and very large Basis, on the Top of which there's a Ballustrade. Over this there's another Building that rises up Taper-wise, and over that 3 more, that grow less in Size as they increase in Height. Upon the uppermost there's a large Hall, supported by 4 Walls,

and 4 Rows of varnish'd Pillars, between which stands the Throne. The Roof is cover'd with gilt Tiles, and these vast Bases, with their Ballustrades, disposed in Form of an Amphitheatre, dazzle the Eyes of the Beholder with the Lustre of the Gold and Varnish; and being plac'd in the Middle of a Court, surrounded with 4 Rows of Building, yield a most beautiful Prospect. Ambassadors are conducted by a Viceroy, and received by Mandarins, who carry them to the Hall of Audience. The Guards stand in the Gates and Avenues of the Palace, and have no Arms but their Scymiters; nor are they numerous, tho' they appear so, because of the Multitudes of Lords and Mandarins who constantly attend at the Time of Audience.

The Number of the Emperor's Wives and Concubines is never known, but they are numerous, and never seen by any but himself, nor is it safe to enquire about 'em. They are all Virgins of Quality, which the Governors of the Provinces pick out and send to him. Most of them are never taken Notice of by the Emperor; but three of those who gain his Favour are singled out, and have the Title of Queens, with suitable Attendance. They have each their Court, with magnificent Furniture, Clothes, and Retinue, but are not allow'd to meddle with Affairs of State, the *Chinese* being of Opinion, that Heaven has endow'd Women with good Nature, Modesty, and Innocence, that they may look after their Families, and that Men only have sufficient Strength of Body and Mind for Government; so that by Way of Jest they call *Europe* the Lady's Kingdom, because Women frequently bear Rule here.

Eysbrand Ides describes the Outside of the Palace and the Emperor's Throne thus: The Palace is an oblong quadrangular Brick Structure, twice as long as broad, and the Roof cover'd with yellow glaz'd Tiles, adorned with the Figures of Lyons, Dragons, and other Sorts of Imagery. The Height of this Building to the Roof is not above 8 Fathoms, and the Ascent up to it is by several Steps. It has small Windows of Paper instead of Glass. At the Ends of the Hall are two Doors with gilt carv'd Work, resembling Crowns over them. The Hall is adorned to the Top with curious Pannels

Pannels finely colour'd, japan'd, and gilt. 'Tis about 30 Fathom long, and 10 broad, and the Floor cover'd with Carpets, adorn'd with Landskips. The Throne stands against the Wall, is about 3 Fathoms broad, and 3 long, with two Ascents of 6 Steps each, set off with Rails and Foliage very well gilt. On the Right and Left there are also gilt Rails of Imagery. In the Middle of this Place is the Throne resembling an Altar, and opens with two Doors. The Emperor's Seat is about an Ell high, cover'd with Sables, and he sits upon it with his Legs across. He then Emperor had on a dark-colour'd Damask Waistcoat, a Coat of deep blue Sattin, adorn'd with Ermins, a String of Coral about his Neck, which hung down to his Breast, a Cap fac'd with Sable, and set off with a red Silk Knot, and some Peacocks Feathers hanging down behind, as did his Hair ty'd up in one Lock. He had no Gold or Jewels about him, and on his Legs he had Boots of black Velvet. Whilst he was at Dinner, the Mandarins kept a profound Silence, and sat with their Eyes fix'd downwards.

The same Author gives us an Account of his own Audiences in 1695 as follows: He was conducted to Court by 3 of the chief Mandarins, dress'd in Robes embroider'd, some with Dragons, others with Lyons, a third Sort with Tygers, and Cranes on their Breasts and Backs, work'd with Gold Thread. They brought him 50 Horses for his Retinue; and when he came to the outer Gate of the Palace, he was oblig'd to alight at a Pillar, with some Characters engraven upon it, from whence he went thro' 5 Courts before he came to the Palace, where he found a great Number of Mandarins in their embroider'd Robes waiting for him. After exchanging of Compliments, the Emperor sat on his Throne, and received the Czar's Credentials; and after the usual Ceremonies, and a short Speech, the Ambassador was conducted back in the same Manner. Some Time after he was entertain'd by the Emperor thus: He was conducted to Court as before, and as soon as he enter'd, the Emperor mounted his Throne, having near him some Persons who play'd very well on Fiefs, and a Life-Guard of 12 Men with gilt Halbards, adorn'd with Leopards and Tygers Tails. As soon as the

Emperor sat down, the Musick ceas'd, and the Guard sat down cross-legged on each Side below the Throne. The Emperor's Table was furnish'd with cold Meats, Fruits, and Confections, in Silver Dishes, and cover'd with yellow Damask. The Viceroy, the Emperor's Uncle, with others of the principal Nobles, stood on each Side the Emperor, and the Ambassador was placed on the Right of the Throne at 4 Fathom distance. Then the Emperor looking upon him, spoke to the Viceroy, who received his Commands on his Knees to bring the Ambassador nearer. The Viceroy took him by the Hand, brought him two Fathom forward, and plac'd his Retinue about 6 behind him. Then the Emperor sent the Viceroy a second time with great Respect to ask how their Czarish Majesties did. After this, he order'd the Damask Covering to be taken off the Table, and desir'd the Ambassador to eat, who had a Table by himself. About 200 Lords and Mandarins sat down next, according to their Ranks, every-two of them having a Table. They sat cross-legg'd on Carpets, which the Ambassador was oblig'd to comply with. The Emperor sent him from his own Table a roast Goose, a Pig, a Loin of Mutton, several Dishes of Fruit, Tea, a Dish of fry'd Meal and Butter, and a Gold Cup full of *Kumis*, a sort of Brandy distill'd from Mare's Milk, and order'd his Retinue to advance within 3 Fathom of the Throne, where they were entertained with the same Liquor. The Emperor sent for some Jesuits, whom, after kneeling before him, he order'd to ask the Ambassador several Questions about the Length of his Journey, and the Countries of *Europe*, and to interpret his Answers. Then the Viceroy led him by the Hand to his former Place, where he sat a quarter of an Hour, and was order'd to rise; after which the Emperor rose up, saluted him, and retired to his Apartments. The Ambassador was afterwards carried to the Emperor's Play-house, a very high and large Structure. The Stage was very big, adorn'd with carv'd Imagery, and finely painted. The Mandarins sat in an open Place, encompassed with Galleries, where they entertained the Ambassador with Tea and Wine, and then gave him a Comedy, acted by the Emperor's Players, who perform'd

form'd well, and had many Changes of rich Habits, embroider'd with Gold and Silver. He says, their Tumblers, Jugglers, and Dancers, exceeded all that ever he saw in Europe; and that a little Boy perform'd surprising Feats of Activity upon the Top of a Bambou Cane about 7 Foot high, held upright by 6 Men, and run from the Top to Bottom with as much Agility as a Monkey; and that two young Women richly dress'd danc'd as exactly on Men's Shoulders as others do on the Ground. He was afterwards entertained by the Viceroy in a magnificent Hall, adorned with Tapestry of Silk and Gold, with curious Figures, and the Tables were set off with Flower-Pots, filled with artificial Flowers of all Sorts, wrought in Silk, and look'd very natural, it being the Winter Season, when they had no real ones. The Viceroy's Plate stood likewise upon those Tables, and in Silver Vessels there were Pieces of the fragrant Wood *Calamba* burning, which afforded an excellent Perfume. The Hall was likewise adorned with fine gilt Images, and the Backs of the Chairs and Stools hung with Leopard and Tyger Skins. The Entertainment consisted of Tea mix'd with peel'd Walnuts and Hazle-Nuts, Brandy mix'd with distilled Waters, Fish dressed several Ways, good Soups, Stew'd Meat and Confections. He was afterwards entertain'd by the Treasurer, whose House was very sumptuous. This Lord shew'd him all the Curiosities of the City, where, among other Things, he saw in a Toy-shop living Fish in a Glass of Water, about a Finger's Length each, which naturally look'd as if they had been gilt with the finest Gold, and where the Scales were come off their Bodies were of the finest Crimson Colour that ever he saw.

He had his Audience of Leave in a Hall different from the former, to which he was conducted with the same Ceremonies two Hours before Day; and after waiting half an Hour, the Emperor came with an agreeable Consort of Fiefs and Lutes, and mounted his Throne, cover'd with yellow Damask, on each Side of which were two great Drums curiously gilt and painted. When the Emperor sat down, the Herald went to the Door, and call'd to the Lords in the Court without thrice with a loud Voice, *Stand up, and bow to the Earth.* This

they did three times, the Bells ringing, the Drums beating, and the Musicians playing all the while. Then two principal Lords brought the Ambassador within 3 Fathom of the Throne, where they plac'd him betwixt two Tartar Princes; and after his Compliment to the Emperor, the Bells, Drums, and Musick, play'd as before, and the Ambassador being presented with a Dish of Coffee, rose up and paid his Compliment to the Emperor, who retired as before. The Emperor's Guards stood in the 4th Court, clad in red Callico, printed with Figures as big as a Crown. They had little Hats, and yellow Feathers, which is the Emperor's Colour. They were armed with Scymiters and fine Lances, with Colours fix'd to them, and drawn up on each Side the Court, where stood 8 white Saddle-Horses for Shew. In the 3d Court there were 4 very large Elephants, one of them white, with Trappings of Silver and Gold, and Wooden Castles on their Backs, capable of holding 8 Men each. Here stood also the Emperor's Waggon and Chaises, with two Wheels each, and hung with Curtains of yellow Damask, and by them on several Stools were placed Drums, Kettle-Drums, and other Instruments, which they use in the Worship of their Idols. From hence the Ambassador was carried to his Apartment in one of the Emperor's Waggon drawn by an Elephant, who had 10 Men on each Side to govern him, besides one who sat on his Neck. The Elephant, tho' he went but his ordinary Pace, kept the Men running as fast as they could. The Emperor has 14 of them in his Stable, where they are taught to play many Tricks, and to imitate the Sounds of Birds, Beasts, and Trumpets. They were extraordinary large, some of their Teeth being a full Fathom long. They were sent as a Tribute by the King of Siam, and fed with Rice-Straw. The Jesuits told the Ambassador, That the Emperor had in his Park, about 10 Miles from the City, 4 Animals sent him from an Island in the E. Sea as big as ordinary Horses, each of which had two sharp prominent Horns on their Foreheads.

Father Le Comte says, the Princes of the Blood here have always 4 Officers going before them, and themselves follow in the midst of the Throng without Order, and a great

great Guard of Horse always attends them to Court. *Eysörand Ides* says, the Emperor goes Annually a Tyger-hunting to the Frontiers of *Tartary*, where he is attended by 2 or 3000 of the best Archers of that Country, and a Party of Lancers. When they put up the Game, the Tygers endeavour to break thro' the Crowd which surround them, but are hunted with Bells and Drums till they come to the Place where the Emperor stands, who shoots them with his Arrows from the Middle of his Lancers, that encompass him to preserve him from Danger. *Le Comte* says, whenever the Emperor appears in Publick, 'tis with all the Splendor that may attract the Respect of the People, who adore him like a Deity. His Predecessors did rarely shew themselves to the People; but the present Family observes a Medium, to satisfy both the *Tartars* and *Chinese*. He never marches without an Army, and his Lords are constantly about him, so that there is nothing but Pomp and Riches to be seen in his Retinue. Their Arms, Horses, Umbrella's, Streamers, &c. are richly adorned, and every one knows his Rank, and is obliged to observe it on Pain of his Head, which prevents Confusion in those Cavalcades. When he visits the Provinces, he commonly rides Post, with some trusty Officers and a few Guards; but in all difficult Passes, and in every City, there are Troops drawn up so, that he seems to ride thro' an Army; and when he goes to hunt, as above-mention'd, he has never fewer than 40000 Men; but this proves so fatal to their Horses, that they count the Loss of 10000 not extraordinary on such an Occasion. Thirty or Forty petty *Tartarian* Kings come to pay him Tribute on the Frontiers; and tho' some of them bear the Name of Chams and Emperors, they are all his Pensioners, and little more than Mandarins of the first Order. The Attendance of so many Princes makes his Court very splendid; and to keep them firm to his Interest, he matches them to his Daughters, and protects them against the *Western Tartars*. His most pompous March is when he goes to the Temple to sacrifice to Heaven. This Cavalcade begins with 24 Trumpets, adorned with Golden Coronets. They are followed by 24 Drums in two Files, and 24 Men with gilt Trun-

chions. Next to them come 100 Soldiers with rich Halbards, arm'd with a Semi-circle of Iron. Then 100 Serjeants and Macers, with two Officers carrying Pikes richly painted and gilt. They are follow'd by 400 Lanterns curiously wrought, and 400 Flambeaux of gilt Wood. Then come 200 Lances, adorn'd with large Tufts of Silk, 24 Banners painted with the Signs of the Zodiack, and 56 more with the Constellations; 200 Fans with Figures of Dragons, &c. 24 Umbrella's very magnificent, and a Cupboard born by the Officers of the Palace full of Gold Plate. Then appears the Emperor on Horseback gloriously apparell'd: His Harness is cover'd with Gold and Precious Stones, and he is attended by 100 Life-Guards and Pages of Honour, who carry an Umbrella that shades him and his Horse. It is so bedeck'd with Precious Stones, as dazzles the Eyes of the Beholders. He is follow'd by the Princes of the Blood, the chief Mandarins and Viceroy's, the principal Lords of the Court in their Formalities, and after them come 500 young Gentlemen of Quality, attended by 1000 Footmen cloath'd in Carnation Silk, border'd with Flowers, and embroider'd with Stars of Silver and Gold. All these belong to the Household. After them come 36 Men with an open Sedan, resembling a Triumphant Chariot. Next to that came another, supported by 120 Men, being so large, that it looks like an entire Apartment. Then came four Chariots, two drawn by Elephants, and the other two by Horses, and each Sedan and Chariot has a Guard of 50 Men; all of them, with the Horses and Elephants, richly adorned. Then came 2000 Mandarin Officers, and 2000 Commanders of the Army, richly cloath'd, and every one marching in his Rank with much Gravity. The Emperor is at little Charge with all this Pomp, for every one is oblig'd to attend him according to their Office.

Magailans says, they call their Empire *Tien Hia*, i. e. All that is under Heaven, and their Emperor the Holy Son of Heaven, Holy, August and Great, Emperor, Sovereign and Prince, Holy Sovereignty, Lord of the Kingdom, Palace Royal, Ten Thousand Years, and other flattering Titles which he omits; but tells us, that the prudent and learned Sort understand no more by

by all these vain Titles, than that he is chosen by Heaven to be Lord of the Empire for the Government and Defence of the People. When the Emperor speaks of himself in private, he uses the Word *I*, which is common to all his Subjects; but when on the Throne, he uses the Word *Chin*, which signifies the same, but with this Difference, that none must use it but himself. He outvies all Potentates in making Gods and Idols, which proceeded from an ancient Custom of rewarding the Merits of great Persons, by building them magnificent Palaces, in which they set up their Names, engraven in Gold, with an Historical Account of their Actions. These are still ador'd as Idols by the Emperor and Subjects. At present he deifies whom he pleases. Our Author gives us an Instance of it in the Emperor *Vanlie*: He made Choice of an eminent Counsellor of State to be Tutor to his eldest Son. This Counsellor, by the easy Access he had to the Palace, debauched the Emperor's Mother, for which he put him to Death. The Empress griev'd so much at it, that she died in a few Days after; and the Emperor, to make her some Reparation, call'd her the *Goddeſs of Nine Flowers*, and erected Temples for her, in which she is adored under this Title, as the old *Romans* worshipp'd the Curtesan *Flora*. This Counsellor wrote the best Commentaries that ever were made upon the Books of *Confucius*, their great Philosopher and Legislator, and made use of them for the Instruction of the Prince. The Mandarins desired the Emperor to burn them, but he refus'd it, and said, That tho' he deserved Punishment for his bad Deeds, his good Works were never the less useful. *Magailans* says, when any new Family obtains the Throne, Homage is perform'd to 'em with extraordinary Ceremony. The Emperor is carried upon the Shoulders of 16 Eunuchs in a magnificent Sedan to a great Hall, where he is seated on a costly Throne, between 6 massy Pillars richly gilt. Then an Eunuch falling upon his Knees before the Door, and raising his Voice, cries out, *Let the Heavens let fly their Thunder*; upon which they strike on the great Bell, beat the Palace Drum, Kettle-Drums, &c. and set all the Instruments of Musick a playing. Then all the Mandarins and other great

Men take their Places according to their Ranks, which are writ at the Bottom of little Pillars on both Sides the Court. This done, the Master of the Ceremonies, being upon his Knees, tells the Emperor with a loud Voice, That all the Princes of the Blood, &c. are come to pay him their Homage. Then he stands up, and orders all the Company several times to prostrate themselves to the Earth, and knock their Foreheads against it. The two first times they bow, they say with a low Voice, *Ten Thousand Years*; but the third time they cry out aloud, *Ten Thousand Years, Ten Millions of Millions of Years*. Then they return to their Posts, the Drums, Trumpets, &c. playing in the mean time. On these Occasions the King wears a yellow Velvet Robe, adorn'd with Birds Feathers and Precious Stones, and embroider'd with a great Number of little Dragons, with 5 Claws apiece, in emboss'd Work, that covers the Robe all over, and his Plate is engrav'd with the same Images. The *Chinese* say, That as Gold is the Queen of Metals, Yellow is the Queen of Colours, and therefore none but the Emperor must wear it on Pain of Death.

Nieuhoff says, every New Year the Provinces send Ambassadors to compliment the Emperor; and that every New Moon, and Birth-Day of the Emperor, the Magistrates in their respective Cities meet and bow to the Royal Throne, which is adorned with Pictures and Images, and wish the Emperor may live 10000 Years, while the People second them with loud Huzza's. The Magistrates of *Peking*, with the Ambassadors sent from the other Provinces, and the Emperor's chief Friends, go to him on his Birth-Day, wish him a long Life, and make him great Presents. Such as the Emperor prefers to Posts, are obliged to appear early in the Morning before his Throne to return Thanks, at which Time they are cloath'd in red Sattin, with Silver gilt Turbans, and an Ebony Board 4 Fingers broad, and a Foot long, which they put before their Mouths when they make their Speeches. Our Author observes, that formerly, when the Emperor design'd to appear on his Throne, he us'd to shew himself first out of a large Window in the highest Room of the Palace, holding a Board of this Sort before his Face, and another over his Head, both

large enough to cover his Face, and beset with Precious Stones. All that pass by the Palace Gates, whether on Horseback or in a Chair, are obliged to alight before they come to them, and to go on Foot till they are beyond them by Way of Reverence. The Emperor frequently confers Titles of Honour upon the Ancestors of the chief Magistrates, upon Widows that marry again in their old Age, and upon extraordinary ancient People, by a Writing drawn up by his Philosophers, which they set the highest Value upon, and lay up for Posterity as a sacred Thing, and others of the like Sort they hang over their Doors to be a Testimonial for them. He adds, That every 4th Year, at several Times, the Emperor's Council offer rich Presents at the Tombs of the deceased Emperors and Empresses, but especially to *Honorius*, who rescued *China* from the *Tartars*. *Nieuhoff* differs from *Le Comte* in his Account of the Emperor's Seraglio. He says, there's one select Consort call'd the Emperor's Lawful Wife and Empress, tho' he is also married to 9 others of an inferior Condition, and to 30 more of a third Rank, who are all called his Wives; but he has several other Women who are only call'd Queens. He respects those best that bring him most Children, but especially the Mother of his first Son, who is to succeed in the Throne. None but the Empress sits with him at Table, the rest being obliged to stand and wait at her Elbow. When he is very ill, the Palace is crowded with Mandarins of all Orders, who come thro' Rain, Snow, &c. to express their Grief, and pray for his Recovery.

We shall conclude the Account of the Court with the following Instance of the present Emperor's great Respect to the Dead in the Case of his Grandmother, as 'tis related by the Annotator upon *Kao*. He appointed a general Mourning for several Days throughout the Empire, commanded a Stop to be put to all publick Affairs for a Fortnight whilst her Corps lay in State, and obliged all the Princes of the Blood, Nobility and Officers at Court, to remain Day and Night with him in the Palace during that Time, (notwithstanding the Severity of the Winter) to bewail her Death. He accompanied the Corps to the Tomb on Foot, though 'twas 25 Miles distant,

caus'd all his Children that were able to go, to travel a Mile on Foot, and restrain'd his Courtiers from all Diversions for 3 Years, during which he frequently went in Person to visit the Grave. The same Author adds, that the Funeral Solemnities amounted to several Millions. *Le Comte* says, the Emperor is obliged by Law to close Mourning for 27 Days.

Of their Government, Revenues, Officers, Militia, Mandarins, and Tribunals.

THE Emperor, says *Nieuhoff*, as supreme Head and Governor, has the sole Command and Disposal of the Lives and Fortunes of his Subjects, who can undertake nothing of Importance without his Consent, and the Crown descends from Father to Son, except on Failure of Male Issue, when it falls to the next Prince of the Blood. When the Heir, who is generally the eldest Son, comes to the Crown, he gives each of the other Children a City and Palace, where they have the State, but not the Power, of Princes; for they have no Command over the Inhabitants, nor can they depart that City without the Emperor's Licence. Their Salaries are paid Quarterly by the Governors of the Provinces. Our Author adds, That many of the *Chinese* had rather die than take the Oaths to a Prince that gets the Crown by Conquest without a just Title; and that they have a Proverb importing, That an honest Woman can't marry two Husbands, nor a faithful Subject serve two Lords. Notwithstanding he says the Government is Monarchical, yet there's something of an Aristocracy in it; for altho' he ratifies every Thing, yet he cannot do it before he is desired by his Council, nor can he confer any Office or Place in the Magistracy, unless he be first requested by one in special Authority. Besides, the publick Taxes and Revenues are not brought into his Treasury, nor subject to his Disposal, but deliver'd either in Money or Goods into the Treasury or Bank of the Empire, from whence he has a Sum paid him for his Family-Expences. *Le Comte* praises the Plan of their Government as the most exact Scheme that was form'd by the Ancients, and says, that 'tis little different
now

now from what it was when fram'd by their old Legislators above 4000 Years ago. They never heard of a Republick till the Arrival of the *Dutch*, and wonder how a State can be regularly governed without a King; yet their Aversion to Tyranny is as great as that to a Commonwealth; and tho' their Laws give the Emperor an unlimited Authority, yet they lay him under a necessary Obligation to use his Power moderately. In the mean time his Words are counted as sacred as Oracles. He is seldom seen, and never spoke to but on the Knee; nor are the Princes of the Blood, tho' his own Brothers, excused from the usual Adoration paid to his Person or Throne. He disposes of all Places in the Empire for Merit, not for Money, and continues them no longer than their good Behaviour. No Criminal is executed unless the Emperor passes the Sentence, which he generally agrees to, but makes it less rigorous, and his Judgment is irrevocable. He taxes Men's Estates when he pleases, but seldom exceeds the ordinary Duties; and if it happens that any Province suffers more than the rest by Sickness, Inundations, or other Calamities, he exempts them from their Proportion.

The Emperor has the sole Right of Peace and War, and may make what Treaties he will, if they be not dishonourable to the Empire. He may nominate his Successor either out of the Royal Family or his other Subjects, tho' the late Emperors for many Ages have confin'd the Choice within their own Families; and when he has publicly declared his Successor, he may afterwards exclude him, and renew his Choice upon good Reasons, and with the Consent of the Sovereign Courts of *Peking*. He extends his Authority likewise over the Dead, whom he honours or disgraces when he has a Mind to reward or punish their Families; and if the former, he sometimes builds Temples to them, and commands the People to honour them as Gods, and there are certain Sacrifices which none must offer but himself. He may also change their Characters, Words or Expressions, with the Names of their Provinces, Cities or Towns. But notwithstanding this unlimited Power, their old Law-givers have made it a standing Maxim of Government, That Kings are properly the Fathers of the People, and

not Masters plac'd on the Throne to be serv'd by Slaves; and their Philosophers or Teachers have so continually inculcated it in the Minds of the People, that the Emperor is obliged to shew himself best pleas'd with this Title; and if he neglects this Maxim, he incurs the Subjects Disesteem. Besides, every Mandarin has the Liberty to tell the Emperor of his Faults, with due Submission, and to repeat his Advice upon his Majesty's Neglect; and tho' they are commonly discarded for their Pains, yet the Jesuit says, their Histories shew that this Method has reclaim'd their Emperors; tho' the *Chinese* have another, which cannot but oblige those that have any Regard to their Character, to a good Decorum: For a certain Number of the most learned and impartial Men in the Empire are chosen to write each apart exact Minutes of the Emperor's Words and Deeds, which they set down as they happen in a loose Paper, and put thro' a Chink into an Office for the purpose, which is never open'd in the Emperor's Life-time, nor while any of his Family are possess'd of the Throne. But when the Crown goes to another Line, all the Memoirs are compar'd and digested into a History. To this our Author adds, that 'tis for the Emperor's Interest to observe the ancient Laws and Customs of the Empire, because he cannot violate or alter them without Prejudice to his Authority, or without bringing his Country into Confusion; for in such Cases every Mandarin thinks himself a petty Sovereign, the chief Ministers dispose of Places of Profit, the Viceroy's turn little Tyrants, the Governors neglect Justice, the People become seditious, and Rogues and Vagabonds multiply, and seek all Opportunities to disturb the Peace.

The ordinary Form of Government prescribed by the Law, says *Le Comte*, is as follows: The Emperor has two Sovereign Councils, the one call'd, *The Extraordinary Council*, which consists of Princes of the Blood; and the other, *The Council in Ordinary*, which, besides the Princes, is compos'd of several Ministers nam'd *Colaos*, who examine all Affairs of State, make their Report to the Emperor, and he gives the final Determination. There are 6 Sovereign Courts at *Peking*, whose Authority extends

tends over all *China*, and have each different Matters assign'd them; but the Concurrence of all is required to any Matter of Importance: 1. One which presides over the Mandarins, and disposes of their Offices. 2. Another which superintends the Treasury, and raising of Taxes. The 3d takes Care of the ancient Customs, Religion, Arts, Sciences, and Foreign Affairs. The 4th has the Charge of the Militia. The 5th takes Cognizance of Criminals, and the 6th looks after the Palaces and other publick Buildings. Each Court is divided into several Offices, and some into 15, of which the Chief is managed by the President and two Assistants, who inspect all Things that belong to the Court. The rest consist of a President, and several Chancellors, who are subject to the President of the chief Office, from whom there is no Appeal. But the Emperor places a Spy in each Court over the Mandarins and Princes of the Blood, who are so immoveably fix'd in their Places, that neither Hopes or Fears can incline them to be partial.

Le Comte says, some of their Viceroy's have the Government of 3 or 4 Provinces, and others but of one; but all have their Territories so well adjusted and secur'd, that they never clash. In every Lordship are several Courts resembling those of *Peking*, to which they are subject. There are also three Sorts of Towns, which have each their particular Governors, and a great Number of Mandarins to administer Justice, the 3d Sort being subordinate to the 2d, and the 2d to the first, who are subject to the Jurisdiction of the General Officers of the Capital Cities, as all the Judges are to the Viceroy's, who are invested with Imperial Authority. 'Tis their Business to examine the chief Mandarins of the Province about the Qualities of their Governors, Lieutenants, and other Officers, and to report it to the Emperor, who forthwith degrades those that are culpable, or summons them to their Trial. On the other Hand, the great Mandarins may impeach the Viceroy when they please for the publick Good, and the People, when abus'd, may in their own Persons petition the Emperor against him; and because private Men were obstructed in bringing their Complaints to Court, the Emperor formerly dispersed Persons of

known Worth and Integrity up and down as Spies upon the Mandarins and Judges, till the *Tartars* conquer'd *China*, and laid these Officers aside, because they took Bribes from the Guilty, and extorted Money from the Innocent. But the Emperor visits every Province in Person to hear the Complaints of his People, and the Governors are obliged from Time to Time sincerely to acknowledge the publick and private Faults which they have committed in their Administration, and send them in Writing to the Court; upon which they meet with a mild Punishment, and sometimes buy it off; whereas 'twould be very dangerous to dissemble their Crimes, lest the Inspectors further Discovery should induce the Emperor to have no Mercy.

The same Author says, That Magistrates may punish Gamesters, Debauchees, or other Criminals, upon the Spot, without Trial, whether it be in the Street, Highway, or in a private House; and that the Person wrong'd may also cite the Criminal before a superior Court, in order to have him further punished. A Plaintiff in common Cases may bring his Action in a higher Magistrate's Court before it has been pleaded in his own Town or Province, and the inferior Magistrates may not take Cognizance of it, unless 'tis deputed to them as usual. When a Cause is of great Consequence, there lies an Appeal from the Viceroy to one of the Courts at *Peking*, where the Business is first examin'd by some Under-Officers, and then reported to the President, who advises with his Assistants, gives Sentence, and sends it by the *Calao*s to the Emperor, who, if he does not desire better Information, immediately gives Sentence, which is transmitted in his Name to the supreme Court, and the Viceroy's are order'd to put it in Execution.

Our Author adds, That there are three Things which he calls the Soul of the Government of *China*: 1. Their Moral Principles; 2. Their Political Rules; and, 3. Their Maxims of good Policy. Their first Moral Principle relates to private Families, and enjoins Children such a Filial Love and Obedience, as can never be effaced; so that a Father is like a Prince in his Family, and can dispose of his Estate, Concubines, and Children, as he will; and if

if he accuse his Son of a Crime, there needs no other Proof; and if a Son mock or lay violent Hands on his Parents, the whole Empire is alarm'd, the Emperor himself judges the Criminal, the Mandarins of the Town are turn'd out, the Neighbours are reprimanded for their Negligence of timely Reproof, the Criminal is chopp'd into 1000 Pieces and burnt, and his House, with all about it, laid waste. Nor do the Emperors themselves dare to reject their Parents Authority without the same Danger. Their 2d Moral Principle is to honour the Mandarins, as those that represent the Emperor's Person, of which we shall say more hereafter: And the 3d is, that all be modest and civil. Their first Political Maxim is never to invest any one with an Office in his own Province, because a Mandarin of mean Parentage is commonly despised, and one of a good Family has Kindred and Friends enough to encourage him to Rebellion, or to incline him to Partiality. 2. To retain their Children at Court, on Pretence of Education, where they serve as Pledges of their Father's Loyalty. 3. When a Person goes to Law, he must employ a Commissary of the Emperor's Appointment, unless the Office or Quality of the Criminal gives him Liberty to refuse it; and if the Emperor dislikes the first Sentence, he may commission new Judges to examine the Cause, till the Sentence be agreeable to his Mind; so that 'tis not in the Power of Money or Artifice to bring a Man off. The 4th Maxim is to bestow Places upon Merit, and not upon Money, so that all Offices are filled with Men that lead good Lives, and are skilled in the Laws and Customs of their Country, who take no Fees; and as they had their Office *gratis*, so they are allowed a sufficient Salary to maintain their Posts. Their 5th Maxim is to exclude Strangers from any Share in the Ministry, because they say a Mixture of Natives and Foreigners involves the State in Contempt and Disorder; and they fancy, that Strangers, tho' never so well accomplish'd, are no better than adopted Sons, who have not that true Affection to their Country as natural-born Subjects. 6. They don't allow Nobility to be hereditary, and know no Distinction of Quality but what is made by

Offices; so that the whole Empire, except the Family of *Confucius*, is divided into Magistracy and Commonalty. All their Lands are held by Socage, and they are obliged to pay Duties and Contributions; so that by this Maxim Trading flourishes, the Emperor's Revenues are increas'd, Families are hinder'd from engrossing Popularity, and all Men kept in Subjection. Their 7th Maxim is to maintain great Armies both in Peace and War. They reward great Men who have serv'd their Country well with Titles of Honour, which consist in the several Ranks of Mandarins, and give Precedency in Assemblies, Visits, and Councils, besides entitling them after Death to lofty Monuments at the publick Charge, to Elegies made by the Emperor himself, and some to Temples and Sacrifices, as we have formerly mentioned. They reward Virtue and Merit in private Men with Trophies and honourable Inscriptions, and erect Temples to pure Virgins. The common Punishment of Criminals, from which Mandarins themselves are not exempted, is the Bastinado, which consists at least of 40 or 50 Blows upon the Back: After which the Person must, if able, kneel before the Judge, bow three times to the Ground, and thank him for taking Care of his Reformation; and our Author says, 'tis so severe, that Persons often die with it; but it may be mitigated, if not quite removed, by bribing the Executioner, and there are Men to be hired in all Courts who make it their Business to bargain with the Criminal to suffer in his stead. Sometimes they inflict the Bastinado at the City Gate, which is reckon'd so infamous, that a Person can never after recover his Reputation. Capital Crimes are punish'd in the meaner Sort with the Loss of their Heads, but those of Quality are strangled, except their Crime be notorious, when they are punished like mean Persons, and hanged upon Trees in the Highways. Rebels and Traitors are cut into 10000 Pieces, as they call it; for the Executioner tears the Skin of the Malefactor's Forehead down before his Eyes, that he mayn't see the Wounds which the Hangman makes over all his Body, and then leaves him to the Fury of the enrag'd Mob. Sometimes they whip Criminals to Death.

Death. The 9th Maxim observ'd by the *Chinese* is not to suffer a Woman to trade or go abroad; and they reckon it mean for the Emperor to consult his Wives. 10. To encourage Trade thro' the whole Empire as much as is possible.

The Civil Government takes Care that the Roads be good, for which they stick at no Charge, and cut Passages thro' Mountains. They are generally about 80 Foot broad. Their Canals are warfed in several Places with Stone Walls for the Convenience of Travelling, and over them are a great Number of Bridges, which unite the Towns and Fields together. In marshy Grounds they throw up prodigious long Banks. In some Provinces they have Cawf-ways on both Sides for Foot Passengers, supported with Trees, and sometimes terrafs'd with Walls 8 or 10 Foot high to keep Passengers out of the Fields, which all terminate at some Town. At every Mile and a half Distance there are several Wooden Machines like Triumphal Arches, about 30 Foot high, upon which there's wrote in such large Capitals, as may be read at almost half a quarter of a Mile's Distance, how far 'tis from the Town you left to that which you are going to, so that there's no need of a Guide. Near these Piles, says *Le Comte*, are fixed little Towers of Earth with the Emperor's Standard, where the Country Militia are lodged to prevent Tumults, to carry Dispatches to the Emperor, to assist Travellers, and stop Highwaymen; for which End every Man that goes arm'd is oblig'd to give an Account of himself to these Men, and to produce his Pass, so that the Roads are pretty free from Rogues. Our Author says, their Posts are as well regulated as ours, and are maintain'd by the Emperor, because they carry Dispatches from Court to the Viceroy, who send them forthwith by other Couriers to the Governors of the Towns of the first Rank, and they to those of the 2d, &c. yet the Postmaster for a little Money sends private Letters by them. *Le Comte* adds, That the Emperor often gives out a Report, that he designs to visit this or that Province, in order to oblige the Mandarins to make the necessary Repairs in the Roads; and he says, that the Governor of *Xenfi* hang'd himself

once for Despair, because he could not get the Roads mended soon enough against the Emperor's coming. He observes nevertheless, that the Roads are extream dusty, because of the light Soil, and extraordinary Frequency of Travellers.

The same Author says, That the Method of Levying the Emperor's Revenue contributes as much as any thing to the publick Peace; for all Men's Estates are measur'd, and their Families register'd, according to the Number set down in a Board, which every Family is obliged to hang over his Door; so that they know what's due to the Emperor, and carry it to the Mandarins of the Towns of the 3d Rank; which if any neglect, they must suffer Imprisonment and the Bastinado till they have made Satisfaction, and there's an Officer appointed over every 10 Houses to see that they make a true Report. The Mandarins of the lower Rank give an Account to the General Officer of the Province, who accounts with the Court of Exchequer at *Peking*, and the Surplus of the Revenue that remains, after having satisfied the Pensions, Salaries, Soldiers Pay, publick Buildings, &c. in the Provinces, is also carried thither to maintain the Emperor's Court, Militia, and the other Expences of *Peking*, which our Author says the Revenues of the Southern Provinces alone would answer, tho' they keep Magazines of Rice at *Peking* enough for 3 Years before-hand, for fear of a Deficiency. He says, 'tis very difficult to form an exact Computation of the Total of the Emperor's Revenue, because vast Sums are paid in Goods as well as in Money; and that the nearest Conjecture that can be given of 'em is, that they amount in the Whole to at least 21600000 *l.* *Magaillans* says, there's paid into the Treasury every Year 18600000 Crowns in Silver, not including the Emperor's Tolls and Customs upon what is bought and sold over the whole Empire, nor the Interest of some Millions which he lends out at excessive Rates, nor the great Revenues of his Crown-Lands, Woods or Gardens, nor the Money arising from the daily Confiscations of Estates, for High-Treason or otherwise. There's also paid into the Treasury, under the Name of the Queen's Revenues, 1323962 Crowns.

Into

A CATALOGUE of the Families, Fighting Men, and the Annual Tributes of the several Provinces: Taken from the Chinese Register.

Provinces.	Families.	Fighting Men.	Sacks of Rice.	Of Salt.	Of Corn or Wheat.	Pounds of Silk or Silk Stuffs.	Of Cotton or fine Linen.	Of Salt.	Travels of Hay.
PEKING or CAMBALU, With its Metropolis, and 135 Cities under it.	418989	3452254	2274022			45135		180870	8737284
Nieuhoff	480989	3452254	601153 Sacks of Rice, Salt & Corn together.			45135	Befides 224 lb. of Flax.	180870	8737784
XANSI.									
5 Cities, and 92 under them.	589939	5084015	1929057			4770		420000	3544850
Nieuhoff	589959	584015	2274022			4770	50	420000	3544850
XENSIL.									
8 Capitals, and 107 small ones under them.	831051	3934176	2812119			9218			1514749
Nieuhoff	831051	3934176			1929057	9218	Befides 820770 lb. of Gallicoes.		1514749
XANTUNG.									
6 Metropolitran Cities, and 92 under them.	770555	6759675	2414477			54990			3824290
Nieuhoff	770560	6759670			2812119	54919	52449		3824219
HONAN.									
8 Capitals, and 100 under them.	589296	5106270	6106960			9959			2288744
Nieuhoff	589296	5106270	2414477			9959	23850		2288744
SUCHEU.									
8 Capitals, and 124 under them.	464129	2204170	2167559			6339		149177	
Nieuhoff	464129	2204170	6106660			6339	74851	149177	
HQUANG.									
15 Capitals, and above 100 others.	531686	4833590	1616600			17977			
Nieuhoff	531686	4833590	2167959			17977			
KIANGSI.									
13 Capitals, and 62 under them.	1363629	6549800	5995034			11516			
Nieuhoff	1363629	6549500	1616600			19746			
NANKING.									
14 Capitals, and above 100 under them.	1969116	9967429	2510299			28452	Befides 2027 of Hemp.	5808217	5804217
Nieuhoff	1969816	9967429	5995034			6863		705100	5804217
CHEK KANG.									
11 great Cities, and 62 under them.	1242135	4525470	883115			2574		444763	8704491
Nieuhoff	1242135	5525470		2510299		373034		444769	8004091
FO K I E N.									
8 great Cities, and 48 under them.	509200	1802677	1017772			600			
Nieuhoff	509200	1802677		883115		600	194		
QUANTUNG.									
10 great Cities, and 73 under them.	483360	1978022	1017772					37380	
Nieuhoff	483360	1978020	1017722					7380	
QUANGSI.									
12 great Cities, and above 100 under them.	186719	1054760	431359						
Nieuhoff	186719	1054760	431359						
QUEICHEU.									
8 great Cities, and 10 under them.	45305	231365	47658					56955	
Nieuhoff	45305	231365	47658				5902		
FUNNAN.									
12 great Cities, and 84 under them.	132958	1433110	1400568						
Nieuhoff	32958	1433110	1400568					56955	
Nieuhoff says 88.									
Total of Martin's Account is	10128067	58916783	32624371			191530		7097372	34418625
Nieuhoff's is	10090792	55416476	23472059	3393414	4741176	547960	581764	1964261	33718654

Note: We have not included in Nieuhoff's Total the 601153 Sacks of Rice, Salt, and Corn, paid together, and the 224 Pound of Flax by the Province of Peking, nor the 820770 Pound Weight of Callicoes of Xensil, nor the 2027 Pound of Hemp of Nanking. But tho' it appears thus from Nieuhoff's particular Account of the Taxes paid by each Province, yet in his general Account he says, the Annual Revenue of all the Provinces consists in 32207447 Bags of Rice, each Bag holding enough to serve 100 Men for a Day; 4009949 Pound of Raw Silk, 7102436 Rolls of Cloth made of Hemp, 36770 Bales of Cotton, 191730 Rowls of Wrought Silk, 179261 Weight of Salt, each Weight being 124 Pound, amounting in all to 187688364 Pounds, and 32418627 Trusses of Hay and Straw for the Emperor's Stables. He adds, That above 60 Millions of Crowns are brought Yearly into the Emperor's Coffers, over and above the Salaries of the Princes, Vice-roys, &c. and that the whole Sum amounts to 150 Millions of Crowns. He also computes the Number of all the Inhabitants, except those of the Royal Family, to be 58 Millions, 940 Thousand, and 284.

Magnillans says, That besides these Taxes, all Sorts of Flesh, Fish, Fowl, Fruit, Herbs, Oil, Butter, Vinegar, Spice, rich Wines, Strong Waters, Meal, Loaves, and Biskets, are brought to Court, as the particular Duties of Tenants, and Proprietors of Lands.

Into the Magazines of the Court are carried every Year, according to *Magaillans*, 43328834 Sacks of Rice and Wheat, 1315937 Loaves of Salt, at 50 Pound Weight each, Two Hundred and a half of fine Vermilion, 94737 Pound of Varnish, and 38550 Pound of dry'd Fruits. Into the Emperor's Wardrobes are also brought 1655432 Pound of Silks, Sattins, and Velvets, of several Colours, 476270 Pieces of slight Silks, 272903 Pound of Raw Silk, 396480 Pieces of Cotton-Cloth, 464217 Pound of Cotton, and 56280 Pieces of Flax-Cloth, besides 21470 Sacks of Beans for the Emperor's Horses, and 2598583 Bottles of Straw, at 15 Pound Weight each; which two last Proportions, says our Author, were so order'd by the *Chinese* Emperors; but at present they are

increased almost to 4 times the Quantity, because of the Multitude of Horses which the *Tartars* keep.

But for the Reader's further Satisfaction, we have subjoined a CATALOGUE of the Families, Fighting Men, (excluding the Emperor's Retinue) and the Annual Tributes of the several Provinces, (except Tolls and Customs) taken from the *Chinese* Register in the Time of the Emperor *Vanly* by *Martin* the Jesuit in his Atlas, compar'd with *Nieuhoff's* Extract from their Register, which seems more correct and particular, and also later. For Distinction, *Nieuhoff's* follows in every second Line, with the Total of each Account separately, that the Curious may compare both with *Magaillan's* Account before-mentioned.

Father *Le Comte* says, That anciently a Million of Men was kept in Pay to secure the great Wall, and as many to garrison their Frontiers and large Towns; but now they only garrison their chief Towns, and keep a standing Force of 15 or 20000 Men in every Province, under the Command of private Officers, besides what they have in their Islands. He reckons the Horse-Guards at *Peking*, their Capital, above 160000, who have Provision for themselves and their Horses, besides their Pay; and that the Emperor in Time of Peace has no less than 5 Millions in constant Pay, arm'd with Scymiters and Darts. They make a handsome Figure in their Musters, but are effeminate; so that their own Emperor says of them, They are good Soldiers when oppos'd to bad ones, and bad when oppos'd to good ones. The Curious may find the several Opinions of Authors about the Military Force of the *Chinese* in *Magaillan's* History; but we chuse to follow Father *Le Comte*, who was also a Jesuit, and travelled thither in 1688; whereas the other travelled betwixt 1640 and 1648. *Ides* says, That they have good Field-Pieces, and are pretty expert in the Use of them; but their other Arms are very sorry, the best being their Bows and Arrows. They have good Saddles, which they cover with Pillows and Mattresses, and sit high and loose from the Horse's Back. In short, he says they have no Conduct in War, run headlong with their whole Force upon the Enemy, and by that Means are frequently routed. These Authors tell us, that the extravagant Number of their Army is not to be wonder'd at, since the Men of the most Northern Provinces are enrolled, and that their Pay is but small, because they are allow'd to follow their Trades. Their Officers take all possible Care to train them to Arms; but their natural Effeminacy is such, that the *Western Tartars* have them in Derision, and say, That the Neighing of a *Tartar* Horse is enough to rout a *Chinese* Army. *Le Comte* says, they have no Principles of Honour and Bravery, because most of them are bred behind the Counter or at the Bar, and list themselves that they may live at Ease, in Hopes there will be no Occasion of Fighting.

Magaillans divides their Mandarins into

9 Orders, and every Order into two Degrees, with respect to the particular Titles the Emperor gives them, who advances or degrades them according to their Merit. Their Distinction and Subordination is very exact. The Inferiors pay great Veneration to their Superiors, and the Power of the Prince he says is so absolute over them all, that he never met with any thing like it in the Civil or Ecclesiastical Government of *Europe*. Those of the first Order are Counsellors of the Council of State, which is the highest Dignity a learned Man can arrive to in this Empire, and all the Titles annexed to their Offices signify that they are Assistants, Judges, and Counsellors to the Emperor. These Titles are generally taken from the Halls in which they do Business, and to which they belong, as, Counsellors of the Supreme Hall, &c. and those who have acquir'd Fame by any glorious Action, are call'd the Pillars that support the Empire. There is no set Number of them, for the Emperor at Pleasure chuses the chief Mandarins from among the Inferiors, and their President is always the chief Minister and Favourite. Their Tribunal is in the Palace, on the Left Hand of the Supreme Hall, where the Emperor gives Audience, for the Left Hand is the Place of Honour in *China*. The chief Mandarins are of 3 Orders: The first are the Counsellors already mentioned, who judge of the Memorials presented by the 6 chief Tribunals upon all important Affairs. They report their Decisions to the Emperor, who confirms or annuls them at Pleasure. Those of the 2d Order are their Assistants, have very great Power, are many times advanced to the first Order, and made Viceroy or Chief Officers of the 6 Supreme Tribunals. The 3d Classis of this Tribunal is a sort of a School which breeds the two former, and writes out their Affairs. They are more dreaded than the two Superiors, because by altering, adding, or leaving out a Letter, they either save or ruin a Man's Life and Estate, there is such an Energy of Expression, and Nicety of equivocal Interpretations, in the *Chinese* Letters. Under these there's an infinite Number of Scriveners, Proctors, Revisers, &c.

The other Mandarins are divided into 11 supreme Tribunals, 6 of which are for Letters,

Letters, and 5 for Military Affairs. The first Tribunal of the Learned has Power to bestow Employments upon the rest of the Mandarins, or to deprive them. The 2d takes Care of the Emperor's Revenues. The 3d superintends all Rites and Ceremonies. The 4th takes Care of the Army. The 5th has the Cognizance of all Crimes and Punishments: And the 6th oversees the Emperor's Works and Buildings. These 6 Tribunals have a Jurisdiction over most of the Courtiers, and are absolute in the Provinces: But lest this great Power should encourage them to Rebellion, none of those Tribunals can determine a Cause alone, without the Approbation of the rest, and each Tribunal has an Overseer, who examines all that they do, and reports it to the Emperor. The chief Presidents of these 6 Tribunals are of the first Degree of the 2d Order of Mandarins, and each of them has two Assessors. These 6 Tribunals have each their Square, according to their Rank, close by the Palace. These Structures are very magnificent, and are divided into 3 Courts, according to the Ranks of those who live there, and each Rank has their Hall and proper Apartments. The Manner of Proceeding in these Tribunals is thus: The Client sets down his Business in a Paper of such Form and Size as the Custom allows: Then he comes to the Palace of the Tribunal, beats on a Drum at the 2d Gate, and falling on his Knees, raises his Hands as high as his Head, and delivers his Paper to an Officer, who comes for it. He carries it to the Mandarins of the Great Hall, who give it to the first President, or in his Absence to his Assessors, and then it is either admitted or rejected. If the latter, the Paper is deliver'd again to the Client, who is soundly whipped for troubling the Court with a vexatious Suit; but if admitted, 'tis referred to the inferior Tribunal for their Opinions. They send it back to the Chief President, who either adds to it, diminishes from it, or confirms it. If the Business be of Weight, that Tribunal writes down the Case, and sends it to the Chief President, who reading it with his Assessors, sends it to the Mandarin Comptroller, and he to the Supreme Tribunal of the Counsellors, that are lodg'd in the Palace.

They examine it, and lay it before his Majesty, who commonly orders them to re-examine it. Then they send it back to the Comptroller, who returns it to the Chief President. He causes it to be once more examin'd, sends it back to the same Persons, and at last 'tis carried to the Emperor, who gives the Definitive Sentence, which is returned thro' the same Hands, and then the Suit is ended.

Magailans observes, that notwithstanding all those Formalities, the Tricks, Cheats, and Avarice of the Mandarins, are so common, that 'tis hard to find one who is not corrupted; for those that bribe most are sure to carry the Cause. Each of these 6 Tribunals has others inferior to them, which we cannot insist upon. The Reader may find them in *Magailans*.

The 5 Military Tribunals are govern'd by 15 great Lords, 3 of whom preside in each, and they have one superior Tribunal over them, call'd that of War, whose President is always one of the greatest Lords. This Tribunal extends its Jurisdiction not only over the 5 inferior ones, but over all the Soldiers of the Empire. Yet to curb their Power, there's a Mandarin of Learning and two Comptrollers set over them.

Magailans observes, that Ambition to rule and be great is the governing Passion of the Mandarins; and that one of them told a Jesuit, who inform'd him of the Heavenly Rewards that attend good Christians, That all those Things were Fables, and that the chief Happiness of Mankind lies in the Command of others, and having Gold, Silver, Wives, Concubines, and other Worldly Grandeur. He says, there are some Mandarins that belong to none of those Orders, and others for whom none of 'em is high enough, and these are petty Kings, and such as answer to our Dukes, Marquesses, &c. *Le Comte* says, the Mandarins are richly apparell'd, carried in gilt open Sedans upon the Shoulders of 8 or 16 Men, according to their Rank, attended by all the Officers of their Tribunals, who surround them with Umbrella's, and other Marks of Dignity. Some walk before them two and two, bearing Chains, Fasces, Scutcheons of varnish'd Wood, upon which their Titles are writ in large Gold Characters, and a

B b b b b

Man

Man beats a certain Number of Times upon a Brass Basin, according to their Rank. They call aloud to the People to make Way, are follow'd by other Officers in the same Order, and sometimes by 4 or 5 Gentlemen on Horseback, who bring up their Rear. Some of them never appear abroad without 60 or 80 Domesticks, and the Military Mandarins are always attended by a Troop of Horse. *Lockyer* says, That some of them who visited the *English* Factories came attended thus: First, two Servants with Brass Basins, striking now and then a Stroke; then two with Colours, bearing a Golden Dragon in a White Field, with 4 Claws on a Foot, to distinguish them from Viceroy's or Princes of the Blood, whose Dragons have 5 Claws. Next came 12 ugly Fellows call'd *Hoots*, because of the hooting Noise they make as they pass the Streets. They walk two and two with Chains, Bamboos, long Whips in their Hands, and deep Crown'd Caps on their Heads, adorn'd with Peacocks Feathers, and these Fellows are ready to attack any Body their Masters think fit to order. Then came the Mandarins in Palanquins of State, follow'd by their Officers and Domesticks, and attended by a Number of young Lads, concerning whom there are very scandalous Reports. *Le Comte* gives the Habit of the Mandarins thus: On the Top of their Bonnets they have Diamonds or some other Precious Stone ill cut, but set in a Button of Gold curiously wrought. Others have great Tufts of Stuff, Aggat, Chrystal, or some such other Matter, in their Caps. They have long Vests which reach to the Ground. Their Skirts are folded before, and fasten'd on the Left Side with 4 or 5 Buttons of Gold or Silver. Their Sleeves are long, strait at the Wrists and Hands, and cover all but the Ends of their Fingers. They have a broad Sash of Silk round their Waist, the Ends of which hang to their Knees. At this Girdle they have a Handkerchief on each Side, with a Sheath for a Knife and Fork, Tooth Pickers, and other Instruments.

Magallans gives us the following Account of the other Tribunals of the Court and the whole Empire: The Licentiates of the Kingdom are Men famous for Learning,

meet once in three Years at the Court of *Peking*, where they are examin'd 13 Days. A Month after, 366 of them who perform best, are made Doctors. The youngest and most ingenious of those are chosen by the Emperor, and plac'd in a Tribunal, which is call'd, *The Garden of Learning*. Here live the greatest Wits of the Empire, divided into 5 Classes. Their Business is to instruct the Heir of the Crown in Virtue, Sciences, and the Art of Government, to record all noted Accidents, to write the General History of the Kingdom, and Books upon other Subjects. The Emperor frequently discourses with them, and out of their Number chuses Counsellors for his other Tribunals, and to them he commits the Execution of all Affairs that require Secrecy and Fidelity; so that this is a Royal Academy of Men fit to serve the State. There is another Tribunal, which is a sort of University of the whole Empire, whose Business 'tis to present the Wine when the Emperor offers Sacrifice, to take Care of all the Licentiates and Under-Graduates of the Empire, and of all Students on whom the Emperor pleases to confer Titles and Dignities, and these are of 8 Sorts: The first are either too young to pass their Examinations, or having fail'd in them, have Annual Pensions. The 2d are the Sons of great Mandarins, upon whom the Emperor confers Posts without subjecting them to Examination, because of the Merits of their Parents. The 3d are such as the Emperor creates Mandarins at his coming to the Crown, or upon the Birth or Marriage of his eldest Son. The 4th he advances because of their own Merits, or those of their Ancestors. The 5th are such as not being fit to be made Licentiates, and fearing to lose their Degree, give the Emperor a Sum, for which he makes them capable of being elected Mandarins. The 6th are such as study Foreign Languages, serve as Interpreters, and are elected Mandarins without Examination. The 7th are the Sons of great Lords, who are kept here as Scholars, and preferred by the Emperor when of Age. The 8th is chosen out of all the young Lads of the City, most noted for Parts and Beauty, without respect to Degree or Parentage, and out of these the Tribunal of Cere-

Ceremonies chuses the most Beautiful and Witty, and presents them to the Emperor, who chuses one he likes best, and sends the rest back to their Parents with Presents. Such as he keeps, he makes his Sons-in-Law when of Age, and appoints Mandarins to take Care of their Education.

The 3d Tribunal consists of those who are Comptrollers of the Court and all the Empire, and have a President, with several Assessors, who are all Mandarins. They take Care to see the Laws and Customs strictly observ'd in Court and Country. They punish slight Faults, but refer great ones to the Emperor. They send a Visitor abroad once in 3 Years into every Province, where they are superior to the Viceroys and the greatest Mandarins, over whom they exercise so much Authority, that it occasions a *Chinese* Proverb, *That the Rat has seen the Cat*. For they have a Power to depose them, and ruin their Persons; so that they generally return to Court with great Bribes to prevent their Accusations, and they divide the Spoil with the First President and his Assistants, that they may favour them in their Report; so that they seldom accuse any Mandarin, except his Crimes be so notorious that they can't be conceal'd, or to be so poor that he can't bribe them.

There are other Tribunals under them, who send out Visitors every Year to inspect the Farmers of the Salt, who being the richest Men in *China*, and commonly worth about 4 or 500000 Crowns a Man, bribe them largely. There are other Visitors that inspect the Batchelors of Arts thro' the Empire, who, because of their great Privileges, frequently oppress the People. They have Power to punish by Whipping, Degradation, &c. Others visit the famous Canal, and the Vessels upon it, by which they receive great Profit. We cannot insist upon the Number of inferior Tribunals, who enquire into all Crimes, and are subdivided into several Classes, who inspect the People's Behaviour by Night and by Day. Every 10 Houses has a Captain over them, who observes the Inhabitants, gives an Account of what they do, of Strangers that arrive, and of every Novelty. They exhort the Families by singing every Evening some Verses, containing Moral Precepts, That they should obey their Parents, reve-

rence old Men and Superiors, live together in Unity, instruct their Children, and do no Injustice, &c. They assemble the People twice a Month, and explain those Instructions by such Similies as follow: *Obeys your Parents as Lambs do their Ewes*; which teach us Humility, by kneeling when they suck, in Acknowledgment of the Milk they receive: *Reverence the Aged and Superiors*, in Imitation of *Wild Geese*, who by the Order of their Flying shew their Respect to Seniority: *Live in Unity like Deer*; for when any one of them meets with good Pasture, it will not feed alone, but calls the rest of the Herd; with other Proverbs of the like Nature. *Magallans* says, there's a mix'd Tribunal that takes Care of Batchelors of Art and Military Probationers, which have each a President. The former make Discourses about the State and Government, the latter about Military Discipline and Conduct. The Mandarins of this Tribunal are dispersed over all *China*, and the two Presidents who reside at Court are both Doctors, the one of Civil Learning, the other of Military Discipline, and out of the other Officers the Emperor makes Mandarins. The Tribunal of the Inspectors or Overseers already mention'd is divided into 6 Classes, each compos'd of Mandarins of the 7th Order, and all so equal, that none of them is superior to the rest. 'Tis their Business to shew the Emperor his Faults, and some of them will rather suffer Death or Banishment than conceal the Truth, which they tell him sometimes to his Face, and at other Times in Writing. They also oversee the 6 superior Tribunals, and inform the Emperor of any Disorders by private Memorials. His Majesty also chuses some of this Tribunal for the Execution of such important Orders as require Secrecy, and names three every Year to be Visitors: The first visits all the Merchants of the Court and City of *Peking*, and takes Notice of all sophisticated or prohibited Merchandize; the 2d visits the Burners of the King's Lime; and the 3d is present at all general Musters. There's another Tribunal of the like Constitution, whose Mandarins are sent in Embassies, which are not only honourable, but sometimes very gainful. The Tribunal of Supreme Reason and Justice examines all intricate Cases, and such Sentences,

especially of the other Tribunals, as relate to the Honours, Estates, and Lives of the People. When the Tribunal of Crimes condemns a Person to Death for a Cause which the Emperor thinks dubious, he refers it always to his Council of Conscience, which assembles with the superior Tribunal of Visitors, and the Tribunal of Crimes re-examines the Process before both Parties, and often reverses the Sentence; but the Emperor confirms whatever they decide. There is also a particular Tribunal which sees that the Emperor's Orders be proclaim'd at Court, and informs him of his Subjects Grievances. 'Tis in their Breast either to divulge or bury in Silence all the Memorials of the Military Mandarins, and the Letters of the 14 Provinces, of the Veteran Mandarins, Soldiers, and Foreigners; but the Mandarins of *Peking* Province present theirs immediately to the Emperor. There's another Tribunal which is an Assistant to the Supreme Tribunal of Ceremonies, and takes Care of the Emperor's Musick, Sacrifices, Temples, and of the married *Bonzes*. Two of them give Orders for the Reception of Strangers that come to Court, and they also watch over the publick Courtezans and their Adherents, whom the *Chin-se*, by Way of Abhorrence, call *Vampa*, i. e. Wretches that have quite forgot Obedience to their Parents, Love to their Brethren and Kindred, Fidelity to their Prince, Sincerity, Modesty, and every thing else that is commendable. The Tribunal of the Royal Inns is an Associate to that of the Ceremonies, takes Care of the Wine, Cattle, &c. for the Emperor's Sacrifices and Banquets, and provides Necessaries for those that are treated at the Emperor's Charges. The Tribunal which is an Assistant to that of the War takes Care of the Horses which are brought to Court by the *Western Tartars*, of which the Emperor buys every Year 70000, besides double or treble the Number which are bought by the Nobility, Officers and Soldiers, and the common People. The Tribunal of the Mathematicks gives the Emperor Notice of the Time and State of Eclipses, of which the Emperor sends Word to all the other Tribunals by the Grand Tribunal of Ceremonies, that they may be ready, as soon as the Eclipse begins, to beat their Drums,

while the Mandarins kneel with their Eyes fix'd on the Sky. This Tribunal also composes the Kalendar, which is printed and published every Year throughout the Empire, and none must make any other on Pain of Death. The Tribunal of Physick are Physicians not only to the Imperial Family, but also to such as the Emperor shall order them to visit, and prepare their own Medicines. This and the preceding belong both to the Grand Tribunal of Ceremonies, as do also the two following; 1. The Tribunal which supplies the Office of Groom-Porter and Master of the Ceremonies, when the Emperor gives Audience or receives Homage; and, 2. Another which looks after the Parks, Orchards, and Gardens, with the Wild and Tame Beasts, Fowls, &c. us'd in Sacrifices, Feasts, and great Inns.

In the Palace there's another Tribunal that has the Custody of the Emperor's Seal, which is made of a very precious Stone, is square, and almost a Hand's Breadth in Diameter. When any Tribunal has occasion to use it, this Tribunal must give the Emperor Notice, as they must do when 'tis return'd and lock'd up. They are to keep the Seals of all the Tribunals of the Court and Empire in a constant readiness, and to order the Letters and Marks that are to be engrav'd when the Emperor advances a Person to any Title or Emyloyment, or when he has a Mind to change the Seals. When the Grand Tribunal of Mandarins has occasion to confer Commands and Dispatches to the Mandarins of the Court or Provinces, they send for them to this Tribunal, after Leave first obtain'd from the Emperor. The Tribunal of the Guard is compos'd of several Hundreds of Military Mandarins, divided into 4 Classes. They guard the Emperor's Person when he goes out of his Palace or gives Audience, and are employ'd to arrest Persons of high Birth or Quality. They are for most Part compos'd of the Empress's Brothers or the Emperor's Grandsons, or else the Sons of Mandarins who have perform'd great Services. They are never advanc'd to other Tribunals like the rest of the Mandarins, who are continually rising from one to another, but are preferred in their own Tribunal many times to the Title of Presidents of the 6 superior Tribunals, and sometimes to be Counsellors of

of State; so that they are much respected, and exempted from the Jurisdiction of the Supreme Tribunal of Arms. There are two Tribunals under them; the first resides at *Nanking*, and is call'd, *The Watch-Tower of the South*; the 2d at *Peking*, and is call'd, *The Watch-Tower of the North*. Those of the first attend such who are sent to apprehend any great Men, and the latter receive and guard them till they are releas'd out of Custody, or deliver'd up to the Tribunal of Crimes. The two following Tribunals belong to the Grand Tribunal. The first sets Guards at the Gates of *Peking*, that no Goods may be brought in before they are register'd and tax'd. The 2d receives the Duties of all Things bought and sold in the City. The Tribunal of the Emperor's Household arrests and prosecutes Robbers, &c. and if thought worthy of Death, delivers them over to the Tribunal of Crimes. Cut-purses for the first Offence are burnt in the Left Arm, for the 2d in the Right, and for the 3d are deliver'd up to the Tribunal. 'Tis their Business also to seize Vagabond Slaves, which they first cause to be whipped with 100 Lashes, and then to be restor'd to their Masters; and of late Years, says *Ma-gaillans*, they us'd to be mark'd upon the Left Cheek with two *Tartar* and two *Chinese* Characters, till a *Chinese* Mandarin told the Emperor in a Memorial, that 'twas a Dishonour to the City of his Majesty to behold the Streets so full of such deformed Objects of Cruelty, and prevailed with him to remit that Part of their Punishment. The next Tribunal is that of the two Governors of *Peking*, which are above all the Governors of the other Cities. The first inspects such Students, &c. as are not yet Mandarins, and the 2d takes Care of the Peace and Advantage of the Inhabitants, by exhorting them to live in Union, and by punishing those who introduce Novelties and Disorders. He encourages Labour and Industry, redresses the Grievances of the Poor, and protects them from the Mighty, by rewarding the Virtuous, relieving the Innocent, punishing the Guilty, and by preparing the Place and all Things necessary for the publick Sacrifices; for which Reason, says our Author, the *Chinese* call these Governors the Parents of the People. There are two others which depend on the said Tribunal.

There's also the Tribunal of the *Grande*s, that descend from Father to Son. The President, who is always a Person of great Age and Virtues, enjoys the Title of King, and is above all the 9 Orders. His Assessors are of no Order, but are always two dignified Lords of the Royal Blood. All these Officers distribute the Pensions which are paid to the Emperor's Kindred of the Male Line, who, whether they be great Lords or poor, and tho' 15 or 16 Generations distant, have all some Pension, more or less, and the Privilege to paint their Houses and Furniture with Red. But our Author says, the Descendants of the *Chinese* Family, who had reign'd for 277 Years, were so multiply'd and dispers'd before they were quite extirpated, and their divided Revenues consequently so small, that several of them were reduced to follow Trades; and that he saw one amongst the rest, who, tho' but a common Porter, distinguish'd himself by the Instruments of his Profession, which he carried at his Back very bright, and varnish'd over with Red; but the Kindred of the present Emperor, says our Author, are all great Lords, and live at Court; tho' he supposes in Time his Posterity may be multiply'd to as great a Degree as the last Race. He adds, that 'tis in the Power of this Tribunal to determine all Civil and Criminal Differences and Processes between the Princes of the Blood, to give Sentence, and to order Execution after Information given to the Emperor. There's another Tribunal of the Emperor's Female Kindred, which are of two Sorts; 1. Such as descend from his Daughters, marry'd to young Gentlemen call'd and chosen for that End, who are not look'd upon as Princes of the Blood, nor as the Emperor's Kindred; nor have they any Right of Succession to the Crown, tho' they should have several Male Heirs. 2. The Empress's Father's Brothers, Uncles, &c. the Emperor's Sons-in-Law, and their Fathers, Brothers, Uncles, and other Kindred. Out of these two Sorts the Emperor chooses those that are to compose this Tribunal, who are to act the same Things as the Officers of the Tribunal of the Royal Blood; but they are counted Mandarins of the first and 2d Order. He adds, that this 2d Order of Kindred was extirpated by the *Tar-*

tars with the preceding Family. We cannot insist upon the other inferior Tribunals, nor on those of the Provinces, but must refer the Curious to *Magailans*. He says, That when the Mandarins meet at the Governor's Palaces to pay their Respects to the Emperor's Thrones, of which there is one in every City, they stand according to their Rank in Places appointed for every one of the 9 Orders, mark'd at the Bottom of little square Brass Pillars. He gives us the following Account of the Distinction of the 9 Orders by their several Habits.

The Mandarins of the first Order wear on the Top of their Cap, which ends in a flat Cone, a Carbuncle enchas'd in Gold, and a Pearl at the Bottom before. Upon their Girdles are set four Stones highly esteem'd in *China*, enchas'd in Gold, and cut into long Squares 3 Fingers broad, and 4 in Length. The *Chinese* call it *Xusce*, and 'tis brought from *Cascar* by the *Mahometan* Merchants that come to *China* once in three Years on Pretence of an Embassy. 'Tis somewhat greenish, and resembles a Jasper, but is harder, somewhat transparent, and enclining to a White. The great Lords who are above all the 9 Orders are distinguish'd from the first Order only by the Stones in their Girdles, which are round, with a Sapphire in the Middle. The petty Kings wear on the Top of their Bonnets a Ruby, adorn'd with several Pearls, and a Flower of Gold fasten'd at the lower End of their Bonnets before. The Emperor wears a Bonnet of the same Form, and at the Point of it a Pearl as big as a Pigeon's Egg, with several lesser ones underneath. His Girdle is also embroider'd with Precious Stones and Pearls.

The Mandarins of the 2d Order wear on the Top of their Caps a large Ruby, and lesser at Bottom. Their Girdles are adorn'd with Demi-Globes of Gold, embellish'd with Flowers of the same Metal, and a Carbuncle in the Middle. The Mandarins of the 3d have at the Point of their Caps a Carbuncle enchas'd in Gold, with a Sapphire at Bottom, and Demi-Globes adorn'd with Flowers upon their Girdles. They of the 4th wear a Sapphire on the Top of their Caps, and at Bottom a lesser, with plain Demi-Globes of Gold at their Girdles. Those of the 5th are like the 4th, but have

only one Sapphire in their Caps. Those of the 6th wear a neat Chrystal at the Top of their Caps, with a Sapphire at Bottom, and cover their Girdles with Pieces of Rhinoceros's Horns set in Gold. They of the 7th have only an Ornament of Gold at the Point of their Caps, with a Sapphire at Bottom, and their Girdles cover'd with Silver Plates. They of the 8th have the like Ornament, but no Jewel, and their Girdles are cover'd with thin Pieces of Rhinoceros's Horn. Those of the 9th wear a Sattin Bonnet purflew'd with Silver, and Pieces of Buffaloes Horns enchas'd in Silver upon their Girdles. The Licentiates wear upon their Heads a Dove of Gold or Silver gilt upon a Bodkin of the same Metal, with flat Pieces of Rhinoceros's Horns on their Girdles, and the Batchelors of Art wear the same Doves, but of Silver only, and Plates of Buffalo's Horns upon their Girdles. The Learned Mandarins of the 3 first Orders, and the Military Mandarins of the 4 first Orders, are distinguish'd from the inferior Orders by their Garments, enrich'd with Figures of Dragons, and a sort of Surtout embroider'd with Figures of Birds and Beasts, which serve also to distinguish the various Orders, and they dare not quit these Habits, except in the hottest Weather, when they dispense with the Surtouts. *Magailans* adds, That the Learned Mandarins stand upon the Emperor's Left Hand, which is the Post of Honour, and the Military Mandarins upon his Right; and that the Emperor always looks towards the S. when upon his Throne.

Nienhoff says, every Mandarin has a Monthly Allowance, either in Money or Rice, out of the publick Revenue, but not sufficient to defray their Charge, and that the highest has but 1000 Crowns *per Annum*. Their Bonnets are of black Silk, and have an oval Flap fasten'd to 'em at each Side to cover their Ears.

He says, no Man in *China* must keep or carry any Arms but a Dagger, unless when in War. They suffer no Foreigner to continue in their Country that designs to return Home, tho' he come from their nearest Allies or Tributaries; and if they find any Foreigner residing privately, they hinder him from returning Home on Pain of Death, insomuch that no Stranger dare venture

into *China*, unless by Way of Embassy or Trade. He says, That in 1607, 4000 principal Magistrates were convicted of high Crimes and Misdemeanors, and punish'd accordingly; and that the inferior Magistrates never speak to the Ministers of State but on their Knees. The Emperor pays for the Governor's Palaces, Furniture, Provisions, and Servants; and when a Governor is removed to another Province, or resigns his Employment, which commonly happens every half Year, he may take all the Furniture with him.

We shall conclude this Head of Government with *Nienhoff's* Account of the Courts of the Governors of the Provinces.

In each chief City there are 15 or 20 great Houses belonging to the Governors, which, for Magnificence of Structure, may compare with Royal Palaces. In each lesser City there are 8 or 9 such, and in the least Cities there are 4, all alike in Form, but differ in Largeness, according to the Governor's Quality. Each Palace has 3 Gates in the Front, the biggest in the Middle, and adorned on both Sides with large Marble Lions. Within those Gates there's a Court pal'd in and painted. In this Court there are two Towers in Form of Pyramids, curiously adorned, where the Musicians play as the Governor goes out and in. Within the Gate there's a large Hall of Audience, with Apartments on both Sides for inferior Officers, and most of the great Palaces have 4 or 5 such Halls, besides two Rooms for receiving Visitors of Quality. When you pass these Rooms, there are 3 other Gates, which are seldom open'd but when the Governor sits on the Bench of Justice. The middle Gate is large, and enter'd by none but Persons of Quality, and the other two are for those of inferior Quality. Within these Gates there's another large Court, and at the End of it a large Structure supported by Pillars, where the Governor administers Justice; and on both Sides this Court the Governor's Attendants and inferior Officers have their Dwellings, where they constantly reside, because maintain'd at the Charge of the Country. Within this there's another much larger Court, where none but the Governor's nearest Relations are admit-

ted to converse with him. These Palaces have several Gardens, Orchards, Ponds, Rivers, Warrens, &c. belonging to them, both for Profit and Pleasure.

Their Religion and Philosophy.

Nienhoff says, there is no Heathen Sect which we have heard of that maintain'd fewer Errors than the *Chinese*, for it appears by their Books, that from the very first they worshipped one God, whom they call King, or more commonly the Heaven and the Earth, which they looked upon to be inspir'd with a Soul, and this Soul they worshipped as the highest Deity; besides whom, they fancy'd there were several others, as the Souls of Hills, Rivers, &c. and such as command the 4 Quarters of the World. The ancient *Chinese* entertain'd this as a Maxim, That they ought to hearken to the inward Light of their Understanding, which they receive from Heaven. Our Author adds, That tho' their Errors be gross enough, they never broach'd such licentious Doctrines concerning the Supreme and Subordinate Deities as the *Greeks*, *Romans*, and *Egyptians* did, who implor'd the Assistance of their Deities in the Commission of their foulest Crimes. But we are now at a Loss as to a great Part of their ancient Religion, because most of the Books of their oldest and wisest Philosophers were destroy'd by the last Invasion of the *Tartars*: Yet such as remain contain good Doctrine, and Instructions for breeding their Youth to Virtue.

Le Comte thinks they derived their Religion from some of *Noah's* Children, who settled here after the Deluge, because 'tis recorded of their first Emperor, That he bred up 7 Sorts of Creatures for Sacrifice to the supreme Spirit of Heaven and Earth; That their third Emperor built a Temple to him, which they suppose to have been the first erected in the World; That the 5th appointed Priests in the several Provinces to preside over the Sacrifices, and to see that Worship was perform'd with Humility and Respect, according to their Ceremonies. In short, 'tis suppos'd that they preserv'd the Knowledge of the true God almost 2000 Years;

Years; and *Le Comte* says, they did honour him in such a Manner as may put Christians to Shame; That they prescrib'd the Internal Service of the Mind, and were very nice in their smallest Ceremonies; That the Empreſſes made with their own Hands Vestments for the Priests, Coverings for the Altars, and that the Emperors tilled the Ground with their own Hands which produced the Corn and Wine us'd in Sacrifice; That the Priests would not offer them before the People, till they had prepar'd themselves by 3 or 7 Days Abstinence from the Marriage-Bed; and that in Time of publick Calamities, their Emperor ascribing them to their own Male Administration, would enquire of their People what they found amiss in their Government, that they might humble themselves for it, and reform it. He adds, that the Knowledge of the true God lasted many Ages after *Confucius*, who very much improv'd it, tho' it did not always continue with the same Purity; but was mix'd with Idolatry and Superstitions, the Origine of which they account for thus: One *Li Laokun*, a Philosopher who liv'd before *Confucius*, gave Rise to many of them. His Followers say, that his Mother bore him 18 Years in her Flanks, and that he came out of her Side a little before her Death. The Errors he taught were, 1. That God was Corporeal, and govern'd other subordinate Deities, as a King does his Subjects. *Laokun* they say invented Chymistry, and a Drink that made Men immortal. For this End his Followers studied Magick, and the Professors of this Study they call'd Heavenly Doctors. They form'd themselves into Societies, and erected Temples to their Master, whom both King and People honour'd with Divine Worship. These Doctors became so admir'd for their Magical Performances, that every Body believ'd them, and hoped to escape Death by their Means. One of 'em grew in such Esteem with the Emperor, that he gave him the Title of *Chamti*, or the Supreme Emperor, that was only given to God before. To this Wickedness they ascribe the rooting out of that Emperor's Family, and the Conquest of *China* by the *Western Tartars*. *Le Comte* adds, that *Laokun* wrote some good Books about Virtue, the

Contempt of Honour and Riches, and about Retirement from the World, in order to know our selves. He often repeated the following Sentence as the Foundation of true Wisdom; *Eternal Reason produc'd One, One produc'd Two, Two produc'd Three, and Three produc'd all Things*; by which he seems to have had some Notion of the Trinity.

A 2d Sect sprung up about 32 Years after Christ's Death, and introduc'd the Worship of an Idol call'd *Foe*. This fill'd the Empire with Idolatry, Atheism, Superstition, and Fables, such as the Transmigration of Souls, &c. They can give no certain Account who this *Foe* was, but some will have him to have been a King's Son, and that he was born out of his Mother's Side, who died of the Birth about 1000 Years before Christ; that he stood up as soon as he was born, and said, *He was the only Person in Heaven and Earth that deserv'd to be honour'd*. He married at 17 Years old, and had a Son, but retired soon after with 3 or 4 *Indian* Philosophers into Solitude. That he was filled with the Divinity at 30; had an universal Knowledge, wrought a vast Number of Miracles, and was worshipped as a God; so that he got a great many Disciples, who spread his Doctrine over all the *Indies*; That he died in the 79th Year of his Age, and at his Death declar'd all he had advanc'd was *Ænigmatical*, and that the sole Principle from whence all Things came, and to which they must return, is Nothing. These dying Words produc'd a Sect of Atheists among them; but the greater Part adher'd to his original Errors, and the *Bonzes* still worship the Ape, Elephant, Dragon, &c. into which they believe he was transmigrated, teaching that he is the Saviour of the World; that he was born to make Expiation for the Sins of the World; that he left them 10 Commandments, *viz.* 1. Not to kill any Thing. 2. Not to steal. 3. Not to be unclean. 4. Not to lie. 5. To drink no Wine, &c. Besides these, they recommend to the People, under the Notion of Works of Charity, to entertain the said *Bonzes*, to build them Temples and Monasteries, where their Prayers and Pennances may atone for their Sins; to burn Paper gilt and wash'd with Silver, and Habits made of Stuff and Silk, which

which they persuade them will be turn'd into real Gold and Silver, and substantial Garments shall be faithfully given to their Parents; and if they neglect these Things, they tell them that they shall be cruelly tormented after Death, and transmigrated into Rats, Horses, Mules, &c. They have other Arts to cheat the People of their Money, by pretending that the Souls of their nearest and dearest Friends are in their Ducks, Cattle, &c. and on Pretence of securing them, get them into their Hands and feast upon them. They delude the People by enduring severe Penances, such as dragging after them long Chains of Iron fasten'd to their Necks or Legs, and beating their Heads with Brickbats till the Blood trickles down. Others shut themselves up in Sedans full of Nails, with the Points inward, and in this Posture they beg from House to House, where the People think it meritorious to relieve them, and buy the Nails at 6d. apiece. Some extort Money from the People by Magical Arts, Thefts, Murders, and other detestable Crimes, and sometimes they sacrifice Men. The Generality of the People are so much prepossessed in their Favour, that they frequently escape the Diligence of the Magistrates, who punish those Crimes severely when prov'd. Since the *Tartars* subdued *China*, the *Lamas*, another Sort of Priests, whom we have formerly mentioned, are establish'd there. They worship the same Idols, but differ in Habit and Ceremonies. Father *Le Comte* adds, That there are but few *Mahometans* in *China*, where they neither disturb any Body on the Account of their Religion, nor are disturbed in their own, because they content themselves to propagate it only among their Relations.

There's a 3d Sect who profess the Religion of the Learned. It began about 1400, when one of their Emperors, to revive Learning, which was almost destroy'd by the Civil Wars, Magick and Idolatry, appointed 82 of their Doctors to compose a System from their ancient Writers, that might serve as a Direction to the Learned in Time to come; but they were so possessed with their idolatrous Opinions, that they perverted the Sense of the Ancients to countenance their own Notions. Thus they speak of God as if he differ'd nothing

from Nature, say he is a most pure and perfect Principle, the Fountain and Essence of all Beings, and that he constitutes the formal Difference of Things. They allow'd a licentious Abstinence from Worship, and tolerated the *Mahometans*, but persecuted all others, and did their utmost to extirpate them, but were forced to desist, because of the Rebellions these Severities occasioned; so that now they content themselves to brand others as Hereticks. Their Doctrines are so obscure, that they don't understand what they teach themselves; but their Books being honour'd by the Emperor, are greedily bought up; some liking them because they destroy all Sorts of Religion, and these are the most numerous; so that the *Chinese* are now swallow'd up in Superstition, Magick, Paganism, and Atheism.

Le Comte says, the Emperor in his Time carried himself prudently with relation to all these Sects, and made it his Business to gain the Love of his Subjects, yet not so as to disoblige the Mandarins and the chief *Bonzes*, to whom he shews much Respect; yet he laugh'd in private at their Opinions; and when his Mother dy'd, who favour'd that Sect, he would not suffer her Maids to burn themselves, in order to attend her in the other World, but told them he had provided her Attendants already, and order'd them to be confin'd and shav'd, which, according to their Principles, made them unfit to serve her in the other World. He honour'd *Confucius* as the chief Philosopher, and sacrific'd at certain Times of the Year to *Chamti*, or Lord of the Universe; and *Le Comte* says, That had it not been for Reasons of State, he would have embrac'd Christianity.

Nieuhoff gives us this further Account of the Sect of the Learned: He says, 'tis the ancientest of all, and out of it are chosen such Persons as are entrusted with the Government of the Empire. The Founder of it, *Confucius*, was a good-natur'd Man, much inclin'd to Virtue, prudent, subtle, and a great Lover of his Country. His Works, for which we refer to *Nieuhoff*, are reckon'd the Ground work of all the *Chinese* Learning; and the People bow down to any Plank or Table dedicated to his Memory. *Dionysius Kao* says, he flourish'd about 500 Years before Christ. *Magaillans*, who says 551, thinks

thinks his Family the most ancient in the World, and tells us, that he was born under the 3d Imperial Family call'd *Cheu*. The ancient Emperors honour'd his Descendants with the Title of Duke or Count, and they always retain'd an independant kind of Sovereignty, and Exemption from Tribute in the Province of *Xantum* and City of *Kiofeu*, where *Confucius* was born, without being in the least molested, tho' the Imperial Family has been many times turn'd out. The *Chinese*, when they speak of him, call him Doctor, Master, or the Saint. *Magaillans* adds, That tho' they can't endure to hear him call'd their Idol, and don't worship him as such, yet they honour him with far more Ceremonies; and that they likewise call him *Suvam*, or a King without Command, or the Royal Ensigns, to denote that his Qualities merited a Crown, tho' it did not fall to his Share. *Le Comte*, who has perus'd many Historians that wrote the Life of *Confucius*, says, he was born in the Province of *Quantung*, in the 37th Year of the Reign of the Emperor *Kim*, 483 Years before Christ. He was called a Child of Sorrow, because his Birth was posthumous. He shew'd a grave Deportment and an exemplary Piety in his earliest Years, honour'd his Relations, endeavour'd to imitate his Grandfather, who was admir'd for his Sanctity, and never eat any Thing before he offer'd it to the supreme Lord of Heaven by Prostration. After his Grandfather's Death, he made a considerable Proficiency in the Knowledge of Antiquity, and compiled a Collection of the best Maxims of those Times. Then he made it his Business to teach Men to contemn Riches and Pleasure, and to esteem Virtue and improve Reason, which he back'd with his own illustrious Example. This had so good an Effect, that Kings were guided by his Counsels, and the People reverenc'd him as a Saint; but he met with great Opposition at the Courts of several Princes, by Men who lov'd their Pleasures more than Virtue. *Le Comte* gives us a remarkable Instance of this: *Confucius* had so much reform'd the Court of the King of *Lou*, that a neighbouring Prince being jealous of that King's growing more powerful than others by following *Confucius's* Maxims, he sent a great Number of handsome young

Maids as a Present to that King and his Courtiers, whom they soon debauch'd, so much that they despis'd *Confucius*, and oblig'd him to retire. He met with the like Opposition in other Parts; but went on, notwithstanding all his Discouragements, to propagate Virtue as much as he could by himself and his Disciples. By the Account which our Author gives of his Doctrine and Maxims, he seems to have exceeded any of the Heathen Philosophers, and to have had some Acquaintance with the Divine Records. He spent the latter End of his Days in Sorrow, when he saw that he could not reform the World, and dy'd of a Lethargy, universally lamented by his Disciples. The Curious may see his Maxims in *Le Comte's* Voyages.

Nieuhoff gives us an Account of the Titles of many of the chief Books written by his Followers, which we cannot insist upon. He says, this Sect is against Images, and suffer none of them in their Temples. They differ in their Opinions, yet generally believe there is but one God, tho' they have no Temple, settled Form of Worship, or Priests appointed for him. Some of them think the World sprung from its self, and that there are no future Rewards or Punishments; and others say, that the Souls of the Just are immortal, but those of the Wicked vanish like Smoak. Those who believe future Rewards and Punishments reject Marriage, and punish such of their Order as converse openly with Women. *Nieuhoff* says he saw one of these, who being taken among lewd Women, his Companions bor'd a Hole thro' his Neck with a hot Iron, hung a weighty Chain upon him, led him thro' the City in Derision, whipped him till he was all over bloody, and order'd him to undergo this Punishment till he had begged a great Sum for the Benefit of his Cloyster. Their other Priests have particular Habits, which look very odd. Some wear a long black Gown upon the Left Side only, with a Four-square Cap, and a Chaplet of Beads. But the most strange Garb, says our Author, is that of the Begging Priests, who commonly wear a Gown of various Colours, and full of Patches. He has a Cap on his Head, with long Feathers hanging down on both Sides to defend him against the Sun and Rain,

and sits cross-legged, knocking continually on a little Bell, till those that pass by give him something, or be out of Sight. The *Chinese* Priests live in Cloysters, divided into several Apartments, each of which has a Supervisor and Head, in whose Place one of his Scholars succeeds after his Death. They contrive as many Cells as they can, because they let them out to Travellers; so that they serve for Inns as well as Cloysters. These Friars, tho' mean in Appearance, are frequently invited to publick Ceremonies or Funerals, &c. and their Sect is much increas'd of late by some ignorant Women. Many of the Followers of *Laokun* live in Cloysters unmarried, and buy their Scholars, but have little Respect. Some of 'em marry, and live more orderly. They represent the Supreme God in Form of a Man, and say he has much Wrong done him; and they have two other Gods, of whom the Head of their Sect is one. The chief Business of their Priests is to drive Devils out of haunted Houses, which they pretend to effect by their Prayers and Curses, painting frightful Postures of Devils on yellow Paper, and fixing them to the Walls of the Houses, and at the same Time making such a loud and frightful Noise, as if they were possess'd by the Devil themselves. They pretend likewise to cause Rain and fair Weather when they please, by which they deceive the People; and they live in the Royal Temples dedicated to Heaven and Earth, where they assist at the Offerings in costly Habits, as they do likewise at the Funerals of Grandees, playing on Musical Instruments before the Corps. They are all subject to one Prelate, whose Office is hereditary. He lives at *Peking*, where he is highly honour'd by the Emperor, who allows him a handsome Revenue, and he is carried thro' the Street in as much State as the principal Magistrates. Out of these three chief Sects, says *Nieuhoff*, there are some Hundreds of others sprung up, that differ from one another in Point of Worship, and have filled the Country so full of Idols, that not only the Temples, but their Houses, Streets, and Ships, abound with them. The chief of their Idols are as follow; 1. One representing Immortality, which they have in great Veneration. 'Tis shap'd like a thick over-grown fat Man sit-

ting cross-legged, with his Breast open, and a huge prominent Belly: On his Right Side is a Stag, a Creature of long Life, looking upon him with a pleasant Countenance. His Looks are grim and stately, his Habit rich and majestic, and he is invoc'd by Travellers and others when they take long Voyages. 2. The Idol of Sensual Pleasure, much like the other, but bigger, is made of Brass, and 20 Foot high. Betwixt them in a Chair there's another Image 30 Foot high made of Plaister, gilt all over, with a Crown upon his Head, and richly apparell'd. This they call the Great *Kingang*, and give it the highest Respect. Their other Idols and Temples we shall meet with in the particular Provinces. *Athanasius Kircher* gives a further Account of their Sects, and supposes them very much to resemble the *Egyptian Hierogrammatists* and *Plebeians*, and some of them the ancient *Gymnosophists* and Magicians. *Lockyer* says, That every Man has a small Jos or Idol in his House, besides the publick ones in the Temples and Corners of Streets. Their publick Idols sit cross-legged in the middle of the Room on a Pedestal Breast-high, encompassed with Grates or Bars. They shew no manner of Respect to their Household Idols, and will suffer any Man to examine or burn them for a little more than they cost. *Nieuhoff* says, they are much addicted to observe Times and Seasons, and govern themselves in all their Affairs by the Advice of their Fortune-tellers, Astrologers, &c. They have Books like our Almanacks upon this Subject, with others that treat of deeper Sciences; and they have Numbers of People who get their Livelihood by pretending to tell the fortunate Hours for undertaking such and such Businesses; and they give out infallibly to tell the Fate of one's Life, by knowing the Day and Hour of one's Birth.

Kircher says, That the *Chinese* seem to have borrow'd their Religion from the *Egyptians* and *Grecians*, because there are Temples found among them at this very Day dedicated to *Mars*, *Venus*, *Fortune*, *Peace*, and other Deities common to both, of which the *Jesuits* sent a Catalogue of those they found in *Nanking*. Their Letters and Ceremonies have likewise a great Resemblance with those of the *Egyptians*, and they have Pyramids,

mids, to which they likewise pay Worship, as the ancient *Egyptians* did. They also consecrate Temples after their Manner to their Dæmons, whom they fancy to be confin'd within Statues, and they have particularly a little Island dedicated to the Devil, where they sacrifice solemnly to him under the Name of *Camassono*; and Vessels that pass by make an Offering of whatever they have on board, and throw it into the Sea to prevent his Anger.

Magailans says, among other Festivals, the chief is that which they keep Annually on the 15th Day of the first Moon of their Year. Then they kindle so many Bonfires, and set up so many Lanterns, that the whole Country seems as if it were a Fire; and besides their Lanterns painted and fashion'd after several Manners, they play Multitudes of Fire-works resembling Boats, Towers, Fish, Dragons, Tigers, Elephants, &c. He tells us of one very extraordinary that he saw himself during this Festival in 1644. It represented an Arbour, cover'd with a Vine of red Grapes, of which all the Joyners-work burnt without consuming, while on the other hand, the Vine, with its Branches, Leaves, and Clusters of Grapes, were consum'd by Degrees; and every thing was represented so much to the Life, that one would have taken it for a natural Vine. Their Lanterns do also represent all Manner of Figures, some of them belonging to the Grandees, worth 400 Pistoles, and the richer Sort have them from 5 to 20 Pistoles Value, and the very poorest have them in Proportion to their Ability. The largest are hung up in Royal Halls, or else in Courts upon Scaffolds, are sometimes more than 20 Cubits Diameter, and the Lamps and Candles, of which there's an infinite Number in every Lantern, are mix'd and plac'd within so artfully, that the Light adds Beauty to the Painting, and the Smoak gives Spirit to the Figures in the Lanterns, which are so contriv'd, that they seem to walk, turn about, ascend and descend in all Postures; so that they represent Horses running, drawing Chariots and Ploughs, Vessels sailing, Kings and Princes going in and out with large Trains, and great Numbers of People both on Foot and Horseback; Armies marching, Comedies, Dances, and all other Diversions. Thus

the Night is spent thro' the whole Nation in viewing those pleasant Objects, with Musick of all Sorts, according to the Abilities of those who make the Shews, for the Entertainment of their Kindred and Friends. They have likewise exquisite Puppet-Shews on this Occasion, which represent every Thing to the Life. The Origine of this Lantern Feast they ascribe to a Mandarin, who being universally belov'd by the People, and having lost his only Daughter near the Bank of a River, he sought for her, and was attended by Multitudes of the Inhabitants with Flambeaux and Lanterns; but this Story passes only among the Vulgar, and the Learned account for its Origine thus: About 3500 Years ago they had a cruel Tyrant nam'd *Kie*, who at the same Time was swallowed up in his Pleasures, and doated upon one of his Queens. Discouraging with her one Day, he complain'd of the Shortness of humane Life and Pleasures; adding, that there were but few Men who liv'd 100 Years, and none of 'em did ever spend all their Time in Joy and Diversion; that he wonder'd Nature was so cruel to Man, in not allowing him Time enough to content his Desires; to which the Queen reply'd, That she knew a Way how to prolong Time so as to give him Satisfaction! "Make (says she) but one
"Day of a whole Month, and one Month
"of a whole Year, by which Means in 10
"Years Time you may have 100 Years
"Pleasure, without the Interruptions of
"Days and Nights, and the Inequality of
"their Lengths, which you complain of.
The King asking her, *How this could be done?*
She answer'd, "Order a Palace to be built,
"with Rooms so contriv'd as to admit no
"Light. When this is done, place there
"all your Gold, Silver, Jewels, and costly
"Furniture. Store it with the handsomest
"Youth of both Sexes. Then of a sudden
"cause 1000 Flambeaux and 1000 Lanterns
"to be lighted up, which presenting to
"your Eyes the Objects you love so much,
"will cancel your Remembrance of Time,
"the Heavens, the Sun, the Moon, and
"even of your self. There you and I shall
"live without any other Clothes but what
"Nature has furnish'd us. The Flambeaux
"and Lanterns will perform the Office of
"the Sun, Moon, and Stars, and every
"Room

" Room will appear a Heaven filled with
 " all Objects of Pleasure. The lustful Em-
 peror following the Advice of his lasciv-
 ious Queen, spent his Time thus a whole
 Year in all Manner of Lewdness, which,
 together with his former Acts of Tyranny,
 provok'd his Subjects to revolt. Then
 they destroy'd his new Palace, and abolish'd
 all his Laws, but made use of his Inven-
 tion of Flambeaux and Lanterns for the
 Celebration of the Festival above-mention'd.
 There are several other Accounts of the
 Origine of this Custom, mix'd with fabulous
 Stories of Magicians, Enchantments, &c.
 which we pass over. Father *Le Comte* says,
 the Expence of these Lanterns is so great,
 that the Grandees save something Annually
 to lay out on them. He reckons the Num-
 ber of Lanterns here at 200 Millions.

Isbrand Ides says, they have an Annual
 Feast, which begins with the New Moon
 in *January*, and is observed for 3 Weeks.
 When he was there, it began late at Night,
 with the Ringing of the great Bell in the
 Palace, beating of large Drums, and Vol-
 lies of Cannon; upon which the People of
 all Ranks express'd their Joy by Fire-works,
 and beating of Drums, their idolatrous
 Priests sounding their Trumpets at the same
 Time from their innumerable Temples.
 The Noise was as great till next Day at
 Noon, as if two Armies of 100000 each
 had been engaged. In the Day-time the
 Streets were crowded with Processions of
 Numberless Idols, attended by their *Lamas*
 or Priests with Incense-Pots, Strings of
 Beads, Drums beating, Trumpets founding,
 and vast Multitudes of People following
 them, all Shops being shut, and Trade
 forbid on severe Penalties. Among others
 who crowded the Streets on this Oc-
 casion, were Women who rode on Asses,
 or on Chaises with two Wheels, left open
 before. In these the Ladies sat and smok'd,
 while their Maids behind who either sung,
 or play'd on a Horn-Pipe. *Ides* observes this
 as a Thing extraordinary, because the Wo-
 men in *China* never appear in Publick, ex-
 cept in the Province and City of *Peking*,
 which is inhabited by *Tartars*, all the *Chi-
 nese* being obliged to live without the Wall
 and in the Suburbs.

Le Comte says, there's great Robbing for
 10 or 12 Days before these Diversions, that

the Rabble may get Money to supply their
 Extravagancies on this Occasion.

Of the Progress of Christianity in China.

FATHER *Le Comte* supposes that *St. Thomas*
 the Apostle preach'd the Gospel here
 as well as in *India*, or at least 'twas pub-
 lished here by some of his Followers.
 This is the more probable, because the *Chi-
 nese* History says, That about those Times
 there came a Man into the Country who
 preach'd Heavenly Doctrine, and was ad-
 mir'd by every one for his Miracles and
 Virtues; and it appears by an ancient *Chal-
 dee* Breviary of the Church of *Malabar*,
 where, in the Office for *St. Thomas's* Day,
 the Conversion of *China* is ascrib'd to him.
 There's also an Inscription on an ancient
 Marble Pillar found in the Province of *Xensi*,
 by which it appears, that a Man of *Judea*
 came into *China* A.C. 636, and taught *Chri-
 stianity*; so that a Church was built, and
 21 Persons nominated to take Charge of the
 Cure of it; and that he was succeeded by
Kao his Son, in whose Time the *Bonzes* fo-
 mented a great Persecution, during which
 the Lord raised up two zealous Defenders
 of the Faith, who soon restor'd it to its for-
 mer Lustre, so that it continued for some
 Successions of Emperors, till it had flourish'd
 at least 186 Years; after which there's no
 Account of it, and 'twas quite extinct
 when the *Jesuits* came hither.

Le Comte says, That in 1542 *Xaverius* came
 hither from the *Indies*, but died soon after
 in the Isle of *Sancheu* or *Saniciam*, where he
 was buried, having laid a solid Foundation
 for the succeeding Missions into the *Indies*
 and *China*. He was succeeded by Father
Ricci, and two other *Italian* *Jesuits*, of whom
 the former made mighty Conversions in the
 Provinces, and gain'd the Esteem of the
 Emperor *Vanlicus* and his Court; so that he
 bought a House at *Peking*, and laid a Founda-
 tion for Christianity, which was then boldly
 preached by the new Missionaries, and believ-
 ed by many of the Mandarins, till they were
 interrupted by other Mandarins and *Bonzes*,
 who persecuted the *Jesuits*, under Pretence
 that they were Spies, and design'd to seize
 upon *China* by the Assistance of the *Japone-
 se*.

Hollan-

Hollanders and Converts of the Country. The *Chinese*, says *Le Comte*, were so credulous and fearful of Commotions, that this Insinuation was the Cause of a violent Persecution, wherein the weak Christians apostatiz'd, and one of the Jesuits was imprison'd and bastinado'd to Death; but by the good Offices of a Mandarin at Court, who was a Friend to Father *Ricci*, this Accusation was kept from the Emperor's Ear, and Peace soon restor'd to the Christians; so that Father *Ricci*, who died not long after, had the Satisfaction to see a plentiful Harvest; and because the Labourers were but few, earnestly recommended the Encouragement of all that should come to preach the Gospel. Another Persecution arose in 1615, which lasted 6 Years, and was more violent than the former; for by the Instigation of one of the chief Mandarins of *Nanking*, the Heathens set upon the Pastors and their Flocks, beating some cruelly, and banishing and imprisoning the rest, till by God's Judgment the Accuser was deprived both of his Offices and Life. Then the Christians had a Respite, and increased again daily by the Labours of some *Dominican* Friars, who join'd with the Jesuits, and made a considerable Progress, which *Le Comte* ascribes in a great Measure to the Interest of Father *Adam Schaal*, a *German*, formerly mention'd, who, by teaching the Emperor and his Family Mathematicks, so far ingratiated himself with the Court, that he thought he had establish'd Christianity upon a sure Basis, had not the Insurrection in the Empire, of which we took Notice in their History, blasted all his Hopes for the present. But after the *Tartars* had conquer'd *China*, the new Emperor, contrary to Father *Adam's* Expectation, took away the Government of the Mathematicians from the *Tartars*, who held it 300 Years, gave it to him, and allow'd him free Access in all Things relating to the Missionaries, which so reviv'd the State of Christianity, that many Persons of Quality at *Peking*, and great Numbers in the other Provinces, were baptized; and our Author says, That one Father *Faber*, a *French* Jesuit, converted a whole Borough in the Province of *Xenfi* by his Preaching and Miracles. At the same Time the Emperor came to the Christian Assemblies, and adored God with them in a devout

Manner, but would never fully embrace Christianity, because he imagin'd its Laws too hard for Men to put in Practice. But after this Emperor's Death, the 4 Mandarins who had the Regency during his Successor's Minority order'd Father *Adam* and three of his Companions to be put in Prison, and burnt their Books, Beads, Medals, &c. and the Churches in the Maritime Provinces were order'd to be destroy'd with the Towns, because they were a Harbour for a famous Pyrate who was then at War with the Emperor. During this the Christians were brought before all the Tribunals in *China*, and Father *Adam*, tho' lately the Oracle of the Court, condemn'd to be strangled, and cut into 1000 Pieces: But there happening a terrible Earthquake and a Fire, that consum'd great Part of the Court, he was permitted to return to his House, where he soon after died. At the same Time above 20 Jesuits remain'd in Banishment at *Canton*, till by the Interest of Father *Verbiest* and three other Jesuits, who were still at Court, after the Mandarins their Persecutors were removed by Degradation or Death, they were recalled, with a Prohibition to make any more Converts. Yet our Author says, That by the Emperor's Connivance, they propagated the Faith to a great Degree, so that the Heathens themselves invited them to come and convert them, till a Stop was put to their successful Progress by Disputes betwixt the sacred Congregation and the K. of *Portugal*, who separately claim'd the Privilege of sending Apostolical Vicars into the *East*. At last the sacred Congregation sent over the Bishop of *Heliopolis* with some *French* Ecclesiasticks, who was cheerfully acknowledg'd by the Missionaries, but died some few Months after his Arrival; upon which two other Bishops were sent from *Rome* to supply his Place, who gain'd a general Esteem, and propagated Christianity with good Success; so that if they had had more Missionaries, they would soon have advanced it. To supply which Defect, our Author says, several zealous Persons have endeavour'd to settle Missions in *China*, tho' they could never compass their Intentions. *Lewis XIV.* sent 6 Jesuits hither, of whom *Le Comte* was one. He says, they removed all the former Impediments which arose from the

Dis.

Differences between the Pope and the King of Portugal, which encourag'd other Missionaries to follow them.

He gives us the following Account of the chief Obstacles which retard the entire Conversion of the *Chinese*: 1. The Objections of their Persons of Quality and pretended wise Men against the Trinity, Incarnation, and our Saviour's Death, which appears Foolishness to them, as it did anciently to the *Greeks*. 2. The Doctrine of restoring ill-gotten Goods, which goes very ill down with the Mandarins and Merchants, that have enrich'd themselves by Cheating, and particularly the Mandarins, who can scarce maintain themselves but by Oppression and Injustice. 3. Their unwillingness to part with their Multitudes of Wives and Concubines. The very Proposal harden'd many of them, for the Mandarins could not think of parting with their Seraglio's: And this makes the Difficulty of the Women's Conversion still much greater; for being bought by their Husbands or Masters, if they forsake them they may be punish'd as Slaves, and none dare harbour them; or if a Wife turn Christian, her Pagan Husband will sell her to another for a Concubine. But notwithstanding this, *Le Comte* says, That he and the rest made such a Progress, that they had 200 Churches and Chappels in *China*, and in 5 or 6 Years converted 50000 People, besides some Thousands of Children, which they baptized in the Streets. But his fabulous Story of Christ's appearing to some of them in a Vision, and the other Miracles he mentions, derogate much from the Credit of what he says. He adds, That after several Interruptions, they obtain'd Liberty of Conscience by the Emperor's Edict in 1691, notwithstanding the Opposition made to it by the *Lipou* or Supreme Judge; since which, the Christians are very much increas'd.

To this we may add from late Accounts, That the Controversies betwixt the Jesuits and the other *Chinese* Missionaries make it very evident, that most of these Conversions are but false, and that the Jesuits, by complying with the Pagan Idolatry and Rites in many Instances, seem rather to confirm their old Errors under a Christian Name. This is evident from a Latin Book,

entitul'd, *Historia Cultus Sinensium, seu Varia Scripta de Cultibus Sinarum, inter Vicarios Apostolicos Gallos, aliosq; Missionarios & Patres Societatis Jesu controversis, oblata Innocentio XII. Pontifici Maximo, &c.* Printed at Cologne in 1700, in 8vo. Besides, every one has heard of the Persecution which the Jesuits rais'd against the late Cardinal *Tournou* and other Missionaries, because they oppos'd their Compliance with the *Chinese* in worshipping the Pictures of their Ancestors, and making use of their idolatrous Terms and Names in their Devotion.

Their L E A R N I N G.

Neuhoff says, their greatest Philosopher was *Confucius* above-mentioned; and that of all the noble Arts and Sciences we have in *Europe*, they have only some Insight into Philosophy, but have more obscur'd the Knowledge of Natural Things by their Errors than any ways enlighten'd it. The chief Progress they have made is in Astrology, of which there are hereditary Students, divided into two Benches, one call'd the *Chinese* Bench, who make Almanacks, in which they mark the lucky and unlucky Days, and study Eclipses; the other call'd the *Sarazen* Bench, who study the same Things, according to the Rules of the Western Astrology. The Judgment of both Benches is compar'd together, and Mistakes rectified by mutual Consent. They have convenient Mansions on a very high Hill, with Instruments for viewing the Stars. One of the Profession remains here every Night to see if any new Star appear, of which he gives Notice to the Society, and they to the Emperor, who consults with them to know whether it portends Good or Evil. This is the Employment of the Astrologers at *Peking*. *Le Comte* says, there are certain Interpreters among them that pretend to discover the Philosopher's Stone, and give Immortality. *Kircher* says, they pretend to have had a Royal Academy of Astronomers above 3900 Years, whose Business it was to calculate the Times and Seasons, and to give Advice to Husbandmen and others; but they were very lame in their Calculations till the Arrival of the Jesuits, who were appointed by the Emperor,

ror, at the Request of his own Astronomers, to correct their Kalendar, which tended much to the Honour of their Society, and the Propagation of their Religion. This procur'd them Envy from the *Chinese* Astronomers, till the Emperor, convinc'd of their Ignorance, gave a new Patent to the Jesuits for teaching Astronomy. *Le Comte* says, they have made above 400 useful Observations on Astronomical Phænomena. At this Time the *Chinese* were as ignorant in Geography, knew nothing of Longitude or Latitude, and foolishly conceived, that the Earth was not Globular, but extended into a vast Superficies, and that the Sun and Moon enter'd into a deep Cave at the W. from which they rose again in the E. For the other Particulars, we refer to our Author. *Nieuhoff* says, they reckon many more Stars and Constellations, and divide the Hemispheres different from our Astronomers.

They have no publick Schools, but every Master of a Family takes one into his House for instructing his Children; and because the Number and Variety of the *Chinese* Characters make them difficult to be taught, two or three Scholars are as many as one Man can well teach. Their Method and Degrees of Learning, and Way of examining their Scholars, is much the same with that of *Torquin* already mentioned; but in each Capital City there's a large well built Palace, encompassed with high Walls, and set apart for the Examination of Scholars. The Examiners have their proper Mansions when they come to view the Work of the Scholars, and in these Palaces are 1000 small Cells, which hold only one Person each, with a little Table and a Bench for Study; but they are not allowed to see or speak with one another. When the Examiners come, they are lock'd up apart, spend three Days in examining the Writings of the Scholars, and drawing up Questions to be propounded to them. *Nieuhoff* says, their Knowledge in Arithmetick is much decay'd, so that their Shopkeepers reckon by Boards full of Holes, and are so ready at it, that with a Peg they will as readily cast up an Account, as the *Europeans* do with Counters. *Le Comte* says, they are a Foot and a half long, and scor'd across with 10 or 12 parallel Lines, strung with moveable Buttons. *Kircher* says, That of late, by study-

ing our Books, they have learn'd something of Occult Philosophy, Ethicks, Politicks, and Oeconomicks; so that those who are best read in them, are judged fittest for the chief Posts of the Empire.

Le Comte gives the following Account of their Books; and tho' he owns the Book of *Genesis* to be the first History that was in the World, yet he is of Opinion that the *Chinese* Books were the first publish'd of any that we know; but we suppose he means according to their Accounts. They have five, which by Way of Excellency they call the 5 Volumes, and reckon them sacred. The first contains Politick Constitutions, and is of as great Authority among them, as *Moses* and the Prophets among the *Jews*, in what relates to Worship and the Form of Religion. The 2d is a long Series of Poems, describing the Manners and Customs of their petty Kings who govern'd under their Emperors. *Confucius* mentions them with Respect; but since they contain many ridiculous and impious Things, 'tis supposed they have been corrupted by Time. The 3d is Poems writ by *Fohi*, the Founder of their Monarchy, but so obscure, that they confess they are not intelligible; yet the *Bonzes* put such Interpretations upon them, as makes the People easily digest their Fables, and pin their Faith upon their Sleeves. The 4th contains the History of several Princes, with their Virtues, Vices, and Maxims of Government, writ by *Confucius*, and commented on by his Disciples. The 5th treats of their Customs and Ceremonies, their Temples and sacred Vessels, the Duties of Relations, Rules of Friendship, Hospitality, Musick, War, Funeral Honours, &c. These are all very ancient, and the rest are but Copies or Interpretations of them, of which the most considerable are those of *Confucius*, in 4 Books, wherein he treats of the Art of Reigning, of Mediocrity, Virtues and Vices of the Nature of Things, and of common Duties; but the last Tome is suppos'd to be done by *Mencius*, his Scholar, who wrote in a more eloquent and pleasant Style than his Master, tho' his Life was not so temperate. Besides these 9 Books, there are others which are much in Vogue, and particularly the Universal History of the Empire, Books about the Education of Children, of Obedience

Science and Loyalty, ascribed to *Confucius*; Discourses of Medicine, Husbandry, Plants, the Military Art, of the Liberal and Mechanick Arts, of particular Histories, Astronomy, Philosophy, and several other Parts of Mathematicks. They have likewise Romances, Comedies, and abundance of the Bonzes Works concerning the Worship of their Gods, which they alter, diminish or increase, as they think fit: And *Le Comte* says, they had compiled very numerous Libraries of above 40000 Volumes; but their Emperor *Chichamti*, who liv'd about 200 Years before Christ, and built the *Chinese* Wall, put the Doctors of the several Sciences to Death, and caus'd all their Books to be burnt, except those which treated of Agriculture, Medicine, and Sorcery. Nevertheless, his Successor order'd all the old Men, who in their Youth had learn'd most of them by Heart, to write them over, in which they were assisted by some Copies they found in Tombs and Holes of the Walls, and made the best Collection they could.

Le Comte says, they have not Penetration enough for the Search of Nature, are ignorant in Logick, and know but little of Anatomy, tho' they grant a Circulation of the Blood and Humours. Their Geometry is also very superficial, and restrain'd only to a few Propositions and Problems of Algebra, which they resolve by Induction, without Elements or Principles. He adds, that they pretend to be Inventors of Musick, tho' their Musicians scarce deserve the Name.

The same Author says, few study Physick but the meaner Sort, and that Masters of Families teach it to one of their Servants; but they are very expert in Surgery, and know the Site and Quality of Distempers by feeling the Pulse. They hold the Patient's Hand a quarter of an Hour or more, sometimes one, and sometimes both. They lay their 4 Fingers upon the Artery, press it hard, and then raise their Fingers by Degrees, till the Blood recovers its Course; after which they press it again, and then rise and fall it as before, pinching it softer or harder, till the Artery answers the Touch. This done, they pretend to prognosticate the Patient's Distemper and Recovery, in which he says some of them

are pretty exact. They prepare their own Medicines, which consist chiefly of Pills; and they have several Roots and Simples, of whose Virtues they have great Knowledge. They know not how to let Blood or use a Glister. They apply Cupping-Glasses both upon the Scapulæ and Belly for the Cholick, and think all Diseases occasion'd by corrupted Wind that gets into the Muscles, which they pretend to dispel by applying red hot Needles or Buttons of Fire. They use Cauterizing upon the slightest Occasions; and for the Gripes, slightly apply a red hot Iron Peal to the Patient's Feet, which if they feel at first Touch, they are cur'd; but if not, they press it on till the Patient complains, tho' it burn to the Bone; and if the Fire be not felt, they despair of a Cure, and the Patient quickly dies. Our Author blames the *Chinese*, for admitting any Body to practise Physick without Examination or taking their Degrees.

He gives the following concise Account of the Education of their Children: Those that are bred to Learning, are first put to a Master to learn to read and write; after which they are presented to a Mandarin of the lowest Order to be examin'd. If they write a good Hand, they may study Books, and are made capable of attaining their Degrees, of which there are three Sorts, answerable to our Batchelor, Master of Arts, and Doctor. Batchelors are created by certain Mandarins, assisted by a Commissary from Court; Masters, by the chief Mandarins of the Province; and Doctors, at *Peking*. Their Examination is severe, and their Studies are to learn by Heart their Staple Books, make Comments on their Laws, and to imitate the Compositions, Eloquence, and Knowledge of their ancient Doctors, and the Politeness of their modern ones. If one that is fit wants Money to commence Doctor, 'tis conferred on him *Gratis*, that Poverty may not deprive the State of Men fit to serve it. The Emperor himself engages in creating Doctors, and is much feared for his Exactness and Rigour. He gives Garlands of Flowers and other Badges of Honour to those that perform best, and chuses some of them Members of his Royal Academy, from which they are never removed but into great Posts. Nevertheless, the Students are still examined, and if found

D d d d d

negli-

negligent, severely reprov'd; but if diligent, they are rewarded.

Magaillans says, there are in *China* above 90000 Batchelors of Art, and 10000 Licentiates, of whom 6 or 7000 meet every three Years at *Peking* to be examin'd. He believes that no Nation in the World but the *Europeans* have published so many Books as the *Chinese*, and says, that in all the Provinces, especially the Southern, there's no Man but can read and write.

Their Language and Characters:

IT appears by a Latin Treatise printed at *Macao* in *China*, and bound up with *Hakluyt's* Collection, that anciently one Language was common to all the Provinces; but by reason of the Variety of Pronunciation, 'tis very much alter'd, and divided into several Idioms, tho' they use one and the same Language still in all the Tribunals. *Magaillans* asserts, 'tis more easy than the *Greek*, *Latin*, or other *European* Languages, because 'tis more concise, and consists of fewer Words. He says, it is compos'd of no more than 120 Monosyllables; and one that would learn it, needs only a Memory to retain the Accents, which distinguish the Signification of Words, and to learn how to pronounce the Monosyllables, and he may be able in a Year's Time, with Application and good Rules, to understand and speak it very well. He adds, that the Missionaries in his Time, notwithstanding their advanc'd Age, became so perfect in two Years, that they could preach and write in it with as much Ease as in their own native Tongue. The Jesuits and other Missionaries have printed above 500 Volumes since they came here: For the chief of which we refer to *Magaillans*, who says, there's a printed Catalogue of all the Fathers that ever travelled into the Country to preach the Gospel, with the Names of the several Books they have written. He adds, that their Language is very elegant, copious, and expressive, and wants for no Terms that relate to Arts and Sciences. Any of the Monosyllables may be of all the Parts of Speech, and of either Conjugation, Mood, Tense, Person, Num-

ber, Declension, and Case, by varying the Tone or Accent, and by observing or not observing the Aspiration. He instances in the Syllable *Po*, which may be varied 11 several Ways, and admit of as many different Significations. Besides, as we out of 24 Letters form all our Words, by placing them after several Manners, so the *Chinese* form all theirs by intermixing their Syllables one with another. Thus the Syllable *Mo*, if alone, is of one Signification; but if Compound, comprehends many others. They pronounce many other Words of several Syllables as if they were but one. We cannot insist on the Pronunciation and Sounds of their Words and Letters, but must refer the Curious to *Magaillans* and his Translator.

Le Comte says, the *Chinese* Language has no manner of Affinity with the other Languages now in Vogue, either in Sound, Pronunciation, or Order of Words; and that 'tis so mysterious, that it requires several Years Study to speak it well, tho' all the Words, which are about 330, may be learn'd in two Hours, so that one may be soon able to read and understand their Books; but if another reads them, they are unintelligible, and a Doctor may compose a Book well enough, and yet not know enough of it for Conversation, which illustrates what is advanc'd above by *Magaillans*. He adds, That a Mute instructed in the Characters may explain himself as well by his Fingers without writing, as if he spoke; and that the various Accents us'd in the Language make it very harmonious. He says, they give 5 Tones to every Word, according to the different Sense of them, of which the first is an uniform Pronunciation, like the first Note in our Musick; the 2d raiseth the Voice higher, the 3d is very acute, the 4th descends on a sudden to a grave Tone, and the 5th to a deeper Note like a Bass, by which different Pronunciation they make 1665 Words of 333. Besides, they increase their Language almost half by pronouncing the Words smoothly or aspirately; from whence our Author infers, 'tis so difficult to be thoroughly understood, that a Stranger had better drudge in the Mines than go about it. He says, they do not speak as they write, so that the most

most quaint Discourse is harsh and barbarous when printed; and to write well, requires more proper Expressions and nobler Turns than do occur in common Discourse; for their Eloquence does not consist in adjusted Periods, stuffed with more Words than Matter, but in lively Expressions, noble Metaphors, bold and neat Comparisons, and abundance of Sentences borrow'd from the Ancients. They deliver much in a few Words; their Style is close and mysterious, obscure, and not continued, because they use but few Particles: And they seem to speak sometimes as if they would not be understood, and at other Times they expect one should understand what they never mention; so much Sense and Thought do they include in a few Words. They never use R, which much mollifies their Lan-

guage; yet many of the *Chinese* who pretend to be the most correct drawl their Words to such an intollerable Length, that they yield a very harsh Sound; but those of *Nanking* have the finest and most correct Pronunciation. They have a frequent Termination, which we commonly express by a double *U*, that sounds very uncouth; but the *Chinese* think such Gutturals a Grace to their Speech. They want many Sounds which we express by our Letters *A. B. D. O. R. X. Z.* and know not well how to pronounce them.

Since it may be a Satisfaction to the Curious to see a whole Language contain'd in a Page, we thought fit to subjoin the following Table of all their Words, as they are set down Alphabetically by *Le Comte*.

Ddddd 2

A TABLE

A TABLE of all the WORDS that form the Chinese Tongue.

ca	cai	cam	can	cao	co	cou	coue coum	cha	chay	cham	chan	chao	ché
chin	chéon	cki	chia	chim	ckin	cho	choa	chou	chouaon	choue	choui	choun	choum
fa	fam	fan	féon	fi	fo	foe	foi	fou	fouen	foum	guei	hai	ham
han	hao	he	hem	hen	heou	hi	hia	hiai	hiam	kiao	hie	hien	hieou
him	hin	hio	hiu	hiué	hiuen	hioum	hiun	ho	hao	hoai	hoam	hoan	hoé
hoei	koen	hou	houm	houon	y	ya	yai	yam	iao	ie	ien	ieou	im
in	io	iu	iué	iuen	ium	iun	ke	kem	ken	keou	ki	kî	kiao
kîé	kien	kieu	kim	kin	kio	kiu	kiué	kiuen	kioum	kium	la	lai	lam
lan	lao	le	leam	leao	lem	leou	lh	li	lié	lien	lieou	lim	lin
lio	liu	lo	lou	loui	loum	louan	louon	lun	ma	mai	mam	man	mao
mau	me	mem	men	meou	mi	miao	mié	mien	mim	min	mo	mou	mouen
moui	moum	mouon	na	nai	nam	nan	nao	nem	ngai	ngan	ngao	ngue	nguen
ngeou	ngo	ni	niam	niau	niao	ni	nien	nieou	nio	nim	niu	no	nou
nomi	nom	nouon	nan	o, ou	pa	pai	pam	pan	pao	pe	peou	pi	piao
pie	pien	pim	pin	po	poi	pou	pouen	poum	pouon	qua	quoné	quoui	quoum
quouei	quouen	quouo	quouon	sa	sai	sam	san	sao	sé	sem	sen	seou	si
siam	siao	sié	sien	siéou	sim	sin	sio	sion	siué	siuen	siun	so	sou
sin	soui	su	soum	sun	souon	ta	tai	tam	tan	tao	te	tein	teou
ti	tiao	tie	tien	tieu	tim	to	ton	toni	toum	tun	tonon	tfa	tsai
tsam	tsan	tsao	tse	tsen	tseou	tsi	tsiam	tsiao	tsié	tsien	tsieou	tsim	tsin
tsio	tsin	tsiue	tsiuen	tsioum	tsiou	tso	tsou	tsu	tsui	tsoum	tsun	tsouon	tcha
tchai	tcham	tchan	tchao	tché	tchen	tcheou	tchi	tchim	tchin	tcho	tchoua	tchouam	tchu
tchoua	tchouen	tchoué	tchoum	tchun	ua	va	vai	vam	van	ven	ve	vi	vo
von	vou	voum	322										
		oum											

This is the Language us'd by the Mandarins and Court, and in which all their Books are writ, and their Law-Suits pleaded.

Magaillans thinks the *Chinese* understood the Use of Letters before the *Egyptians*: That whereas all other Nations have an Alphabet of about 24 Letters almost of the same Sound, tho' differing in Shape, the *Chinese* use 54409 Letters; which express what they signify with so much Grace, Vivacity, and Efficacy, that one would take them not to be Characters, but Voices and Languages that spoke. Our Author sets down a Paragraph in *Chinese* to prove this, for which we refer to him. In short, they are Hieroglyphicks, which represent to the Imagination the Thing they signify in a very ingenious Manner. *Le Comte* assigns the Multiplicity of their Letters as one of the Causes of the *Chinese* Ignorance, because it requires more than a Man's Life to understand them all; so that he is a learned Man that can read 15 or 20000. They are of three Sorts, and all like our Capitals, but require a great deal of Nicety in Writing, because one Stroke amiss changes the Sense, and often ruins the Writer. But *Nieuhoff* gives the best Account of their Characters, for which we refer to his Book.

Their Shipping, Trade, Arts, and Manufactures.

L*E Comte* says, they are very dextrous in Navigation, and have always had stout Ships from the remotest Antiquity. 'Tis pretended, that long before our Saviour they sail'd over all the *Indian* Seas, and discover'd the Cape of Good Hope: But tho' this be uncertain, he is of Opinion that they understood much more of it so early than the *Greeks* and *Romans*; and tho' they have not perfected the Art, they sail more securely than the *Portuguese*. Their Vessels are of all Rates, but not so fine as ours. They have flat Bottoms, and are different in their Build, for which we refer to our Author. The *Chinese* are not so expert as we by Sea, but outdo us in Rivers and Channels. They have Multitudes of huge flat-bottom'd Barks as big as our Ships, especially in the S. Provinces, where they have 9999 always ready for the Emperor's Service. *Magaillans* says they affect this Number, because 9 with them sounds very pompous. They divide their Compass into

24 Points, and were ignorant of its Variation till they learn'd it of the *Europeans*. They have always a Captain aboard, whose Business 'tis to awe the Crew, and victual them.

Nieuhoff says, the Ships of the Emperor and Governors of the Provinces lie upon the Water like Castles, and are divided into Apartments for all Uses of State and Convenience, and are very well furnish'd. The Windows and Doors are made like Grates with thin Oyster-Shells instead of Glass, or else fine Linen or Silk spread with clear Wax, and adorn'd with Flowers. There are Galleries, and the Inside is painted with all manner of curious Colours. The Timber-Work is so well jointed by their Oakum, that there's scarce any Sign of Iron-Work. When their Ships meet at Sea, they salute according to their Qualities, which are writ in great Letters at the Stern. The Ships which carry the Fish call'd *Sauw* and the Emperor's Silks to Court are 365, finely gilt within and without, painted Red, and all other Vessels strike Sail to these. In the Province of *Nanking* there's a Multitude of Pleasure-Boats richly gilt and painted, and more like Houses than Ships, in which many of the *Chinese* spend their Estates: And there's such a vast Number of Vessels in *Fokien*, that our Author says, the Inhabitants proffer'd the Emperor, when he was going to War with the *Japonesse*, to make him a Bridge of Boats which should reach from thence to *Japan*. There's such a constant plying of Ships and Boats from one Place to another all over the S. Provinces and navigable Rivers, of which there's a multitude, that the Country resembles so many *Venices*; for the Natives have dug Channels thro' most of the Provinces, and let in Rivers, on purpose to carry themselves and their Goods, because of the extraordinary Hills and Desarts they meet with by Land.

Lockyer gives a large Account of the Trade to *China* for the Instruction of Merchants, and of the Cheats put upon *Europeans* by the *Chinese* Brokers and Traders, but we cannot insist upon them; and we must refer to him for most of the Particulars. Our Merchants bring from thence Tea, Quicksilver, Vermilion, *China* Root, Rhubarb, Musk, Raw and Wrought Silks, Damasks,

masks, Sattins, Taffeta's, Velvets, Palampores, &c. Copper, Allum, Camphire, Sugar and Sugar-Candy, Fans, Pictures, Lacquer'd Ware, Porcellane, Clock-Work, Toys, several Sorts of Drugs, Silver and Gold; tho' the latter is to be had only underhand of the Mandarins, the Exportation of it being prohibited by the *Chinese* Laws.

The Goods usually imported from *Europe* are Bullion, Cloths, Clothraſh, Perpetuana's, Camlets of Scarlet, Black, Blue, Sad, and Violet Colours; Lead, which is the best ready Money Commodity: And a private Trader may carry Coral in Branches, clear Amber-heads, thin Flint-Ware, ordinary Horse-Pistols with gilt Barrels, Sword-Blades of 14 s. a Dozen, Spectacles in Horn of about Half a Crown a Dozen, Telescopes, Perspectives, Magnifying-Glasses, Looking-Glasses, and large Glass-Bowls; with Clocks and Watches of the newest Fashion, which, if he can get ashore without paying the Duties, turns to better Account than trading with ready Money.

The *Chinese* boast that they had Printing long before us; but *Kircher* says, they have not the Art of founding Letters, and cut upon Wood what they print, like our engrav'd Plates for the Rolling-Press; so that they are forced to have a standing Form for every Page. *Nieuhoff* says, That one Man is able to work off 5000 Sheets a Day, and to cut a Board as soon as one of our Compositors can prepare a Form. Some of the *Chinese* understand Painting, but don't make their Shadows nor temper their Colours well. They paint Birds and Herbs to the Life, They have also some Skill in Carving or Graving, and are excellent at casting of Copper into the Forms of Birds and other Images, with which they adorn their Temples and Cielings. Their Bells are for most Part of Brass, with Wooden Clappers, because of the Brittleness of that Metal; so that they are not so tuneable as ours, tho' some of them far exceed them in Bigness. They have some Instruments of Wind Musick, and one like our Virginals, but no Organs or Harpsichords, and their Vocal Musick consists but of one Note. They have Hour-Glasses which run with Water instead of Sand, and others of Fire made with perfum'd Ashes. They have a Sort of Clocks with Wheels, which are made to

turn with Sand. They have Coats of Arms, but their Seals are only grav'd with the Name and Quality of the Proprietor. Instead of Wax, they use a red Sort of Paint, and those that cut their Letters are reckon'd in the Number of Men of Letters. They make their Ink of hard Cakes, which they rub upon a smooth Marble Stone with a few Drops of Water till the Colour comes, and their Pencils are made of Hair. They make Fans and Umbrella's of Reed or Wood, Ivory, Ebony, Silk, Paper, or perfum'd Straw, Silk and Linen of different Forms. One of the chief Trades here is the Baking of China-Ware. *Nieuhoff* says, the Materials are dug in great Quantities out of the Mountains of *Nanking*. 'Tis a sort of dry Sand, mix'd with Water into square Clods, stamp'd with the Emperor's Arms. They make some of old broken Ware beat into Powder, but it does not take so good a Gloss as those made of fresh Mould. They paint their blue Figures with Indico, and conceal the Art from all but their nearest Relations. After the Clods are formed, they dry them well in the Sun, and bake them in Ovens stop'd for 15 Days, and then lie 15 more without any Fire, till they be quite cold, because otherwise they would break and lose their Gloss. The Oven is open'd before an Officer appointed by the Emperor to receive his Duty, which is every 5th Piece of each Sort. Then the rest is sold to the Inhabitants of *Ucienjen*, which is the Staple for this Trade. *Le Comte* gives a different Account of its Preparation as follows: He says, the best is made in the Province of *Quamsi*; that the Clay is found in one Place, and the Water in another. He confutes the common Opinion, that the Clay requires 2 or 300 Years to prepare it for the Porcellane. He says, 'tis a stiff Clay, or rather a kind of soft white Stone, found in that Province. First, they wash off the Earth from it, and bray it to fine Dust, whereof they make a Past, by beating it with Water till 'tis incorporated into it, and then form it with a Wheel into what Figure they please. He adds, that when the Sun is too hot, they take the Clay away, that it may not warp.

Magallans says, they perform their Mechanick Works with a far less Number of Tools and with more Ease than we, and every

every Person has some Way to live; so that they have a Proverb, That in *China* no Body is idle, nor is any Thing thrown away. Thus in the City of *Peking* alone above 1000 Families live by selling Matches and Wicks for Candles, and many more by picking up and selling of Rags, Pieces of Paper, &c. which they gather out of Dung-hills; and they have a peculiar Faculty of poizing their Burdens so equally, that they carry them with much more Ease than our Porters do theirs.

They distinguish the Hours of the Night by striking on Drums and Bells, for which they have separate Towers in every City; and instead of our Larum Watches, they have Pastils of powder'd Wood made in Moulds, which they light at the lower End, and divide according to the Hours; and by hanging a Weight at what Division they think fit, it falls into a Copper Basin when the Fire comes to it, and so awakes them at what Hour they think fit. One of these will last 24 Hours, and does not cost above 3 d. The Annotator on *Magailans* corrects *Kircher* for saying, that the Bell of *Erford* in the Electorate of *Ments* is bigger than that of *Peking*, and proves the contrary by the Dimensions of both. *Magailans* avers with Confidence, that the Bell of *Peking* is the biggest in the World.

Their most observable Manufactures are produc'd from Silk, of which they have the best in the World; so that the Ancients call'd this the Country of Silk. They have it in many Provinces, but the best in *Che-kiam*, where *Le Comte* says the Soil is properest for Mulberry Trees, and the Climate fittest for the Silk-Worms; so that this Province is able not only to furnish *China*, but most of *Europe*: Yet the best Workmen are in the Province of *Nanking*, from whence the Emperor furnishes his Court. Strangers value the Silk of *Quantung* most. It has some Resemblance with ours, and differs only in the Workmanship. They have Plush, Velvet, Gold Tissue, Sattin, Taffata, Crape, and several other Stuffs which we know not. We must refer to *Le Comte* for the several Sorts of them, and their different Figures. The Natives value that Silk most which is spun by wild Worms in the Woods. 'Tis of a grey Colour, and has no Gloss, but looks like Linen or a coarse

Drugget. It lasts long, does not fret, washes often, and will not take Spots. They have a great deal of Wool, but make no Cloth of it, because they esteem our *English* Cloths far better, and would buy much more than they do, says *Le Comte*, if it was not dearer than their finest Silks, which are worn indifferently both by their Gentry and Commonalty: Yet the Mandarins make themselves a kind of Studying-Gowns for the Winter of coarse Ruffet, and the Bonzes Wives make good Druggets, Serges, and Tammies, with which they drive a great Trade. They have much Cotton-Linen. The best is made of a Plant call'd *Co*, in *Fo-kien*, which creeps on the Ground, with Leaves bigger than those of Ivy, round and smooth within, but white and downy without. 'Tis fine and light, so that Persons of Quality wear it in excessive Heats.

Besides our Instruments for Fishing, they nail varnish'd Boards from one End to the other of their Boats, so as they touch the Surface of the Water. In Moon-shine Nights, the Fish mistaking it for the Water, jerk upon it, and are catch'd without any Trouble. They likewise breed Cormorants for Fishing, as we do Dogs or Hawks for Game. They carry them out in their Boats, tie their Throats with a small Cord, that they mayn't swallow the Fishes, and then let them out for their Prey, with which they return to their Masters, who, when they have enough, untie their Throats, and let them swallow till they fill their Bellies.

Le Comte says, That the *Chinese* are better at Imitation than Invention.

We refer for their Coins, Weights, and Measures, to *Le Comte*, *Magailans*, and *Lockyer*.

Their Building, Houses, Furniture, &c.

Neuhoff says, their Architecture does not come up to ours, yet is not contemptible; for in all their publick Buildings, there is something great and beautiful. They dig no Foundations, but lay the Stones on the Surface of the Ground, upon which they build high and heavy Towers, which decay very soon, and continually

tinually want Repairs. Most of their Dwelling-Houses are of Wood, and stand upon Pillars, are cover'd with Tiles, and tho' not beautiful without, are commodiously form'd within, and kept clean and neat. Their Temples are the most curious, some of them in solitary Places, and others near Roads for Travellers. They are full of Images, and Lamps continually burning. The Building of these Temples is very chargeable, and the Governors of Provinces are sworn in them to perform their Duty. Adjoining to these Temples there's commonly a Tower, with a lesser Edifice, very costly and artificial. In some of them they have Images of a Horned Devil, with Hands like the Claws of a Griffin, and a wide Mouth, as if he were ready to devour all that comes near him. From the Bell and Drum Towers above-mentioned the Watch gives Notice when he sees any Fire; upon which the People immediately run to quench it; and if it be found to happen thro' Carelessness, the Master of the House where it began is certainly punished with Death for putting his Neighbours in such a Fright. In most of their Cities there are Triumphal Arches, Towers or Pyramids, built of Stone or Marble with great Art and Charge, to the Memory of those who have done their Country eminent Service. They have three Roofs, the biggest in the middle, and underneath the lesser ones. The People enter thro' a broad Gate, adorn'd with the Statues of Lions, &c. These Arches consist generally of 3 Stories, uniform on all Sides. Upon the Top of the Arch there's a blue Stone, with the Emperor's Name, when the Thing happen'd; and on the Middle there's a large flat Stone, with the Name and Story of the Person for whom the Arch is erected. In short, *Kircher* says their private Houses are more for Conveniency than Splendor. Most of them are no more than one Story, but very long and broad, which makes their Cities of a vast Extent. They have no Windows next the Street, but all inwards, like those of Monasteries. *Magaillans* says, the Gates and principal Apartments of their great Houses front to the S.

Le Comte gives this Account of their Furniture: Their Magnificence consists chiefly in Cabinets, Tables, varnish'd Screens,

Pictures, and Pieces of white Sattin, with moral Sentences writ in large Characters upon them, and these are hung in their Chambers with Vessels of Porcellane. Their Figures are so well known, that we need not insist on them. The Varnish, he says, not only gives a Lustre to the Wood, but preserves it from all Worms, Moisture, and ill Scents. 'Tis made of a Gum that distils from a Tree, and is mix'd with Oil. We refer to our Author for their Way of preparing and using it. Most of their Vessels are of Porcellane. They value best those of Yellow, Grey, and White Colours, and sometimes they are us'd in tiling of Houses. Their Beds are very fine, but few are permitted to see them. In Summer they have Tassata Curtains, embroider'd with various Flowers and Figures in Gold and Silk. Others have Curtains of Gawse, which serves only to hamper their Gnats and Flies; and in the Winter they have them of coarse Sattin, wrought with Flowers and other Fancies, the Counterpane being the same. Instead of Feather Beds, they have thick Cotton Quilts, and their Bedsteads are generally of fine Joyner's Work. *Le Comte* says, That in general they aim more at Conveniency than Magnificence.

To what we said of the *Chinese* Wall in the Description of *Great Tartary*, P. 443. we shall add what follows: *Tsbrand Ides* says, he enter'd it on the N. Side of *Peking*, thro' an arch'd Watch-Tower, that had massy Gates, strengthen'd with Iron. The Bottom of the Wall, for about a Foot high, was of large hewn Stone, and the upper Part of Brick; but he thinks the whole was built formerly of the same Stone. He says, 'tis 6 Fathom high, and 4 thick, so that 6 or 8 Horsemen may ride on it a-breast. He adds, that 'twas in as good Repair when he saw it, as if it had not been of above 30 Years standing, and was free from the Moss which other old Walls are liable to. He was informed by *Alexander* the Jesuit, who travelled from the Beginning to the End of it by the Emperor's Order, that 'tis 300 *German* Miles in Length; and if it stood upon a Level, would be 100 more. The Annotator upon *Kao* says, 'twas built about 250 Years before Christ by the Emperor *Chiu*, who began it first with 3 Men out of

of every 10, and then with 2 out of every 5 of his Subjects, who were most of them destroy'd by a Mortality during the Work; upon which there happen'd an Insurrection, wherein the Emperor and his Son *Agutzi* were both cut off. *Ides* says, the *Chinese* curse him for it to this Day. It was finish'd in 5 Years time. *Le Comte*, who measur'd the Height of it in one Place, says, 'twas 1730 Geometrical Feet, but no higher elsewhere than common City Walls, and not above 6 in Breadth. He adds, that it was the most ridiculous, tho' the greatest, Undertaking in the World, because, says he, besides the Expence and the Workmen's Lives, the Wall was rais'd over such high Mountains as 'twas impossible for the *Tartars* to climb, and some Places which were lower were left almost defenceless. *Kao* says, 'tis 8 large Ells in Thickness, and 6 in Height, and that it includes *Xenfi*, *Peking*, and *Xansi*. *Nieuhoff* says, it also takes in *Leaotung*; that it begins at an Arm of the Sea between *Leaotung* and *Corea*, where the River *Yalo* flows out of *Eastern Tartary*, and runs to the Mountains of *Kin* in *Xenfi*, near the *Yellow River*. He adds, that 'tis about 45 Foot high, and half as broad. It has no Gap, unless where 'tis intercepted by the inaccessible Part of a Mountain in the N. of *Siven* in *Peking*, and near the Conflux of the *Yellow River*, and other lesser ones. *Kircher* ascribes the Solidity of this famous Wall to an Order made by the Founder, That those who left any Place between the Stones wide enough for driving a Nail betwixt them, should be put to Death without Mercy.

Magaillans sums up the wonderful or remarkable Things of the Empire as follows: There are in the 15 Provinces 331 famous Bridges, 2099 Mountains, 1472 Lakes, Streams, and navigable Rivers, 1099 Pieces of Antiquity, 1159 Towers, Triumphal Arches, and Monuments, 272 Libraries, 709 Temples erected to the Memory of their Ancestors, besides a great Number of Halls to the same Purpose, 480 Temples of Idols, 350000 Licens'd Bonzes, which, with others, our Author computes at above a Million; 685 Mausoleums, and 3036 Statues, and Triumphal Arches, &c. of Men fam'd for their Virtues, Knowledge. Prowess, &c. of 208 Virgins renown'd for their

Chastity or Courage, and the Palaces of the petty Kings in this Country are 31.

Their Manners and Customs.

Dionysius Kao says, the *Chinese* are very well bred, and civil in Words and Actions. They always give Strangers the upper Hand, which in the S. Provinces is the Right, and in the N. the Left. They sit on Chairs and Stools; and when the Guest approaches, the Master of the House advances half Way in the outer Court to meet him. They don't put off their Hats, but bow very low 3 or 4 times, lifting up their Hands in a stately Manner, and then letting them fall very decently. When they are fate down at Table, a Dish of Tea, with a Piece of Sweetmeat in it, is set before each Person, the Guests being first serv'd. Persons of equal Rank are very ceremonious about refusing the upper Hand; but 'tis generally given to the oldest, and Foreigners are set above the rest. The Ceremonies at Departure are the same; and when they are rode away, the Master of the House sends one of his Servants after them to wish them a good Journey, by whom the Guests return Thanks for his last Civility. Persons of Quality pay and receive Visits in Robes of State, and the Visitor sends a Servant before-hand with a Message in red Paper. If they have not seen one another a long time, both fall on their Knees, and bow their Heads thrice to the Ground, which is the Posture of Servants when they speak to their Masters, and of the People to their Governors. They use no Napkins, Knives or Spoons, but only a Couple of long Ivory or Wooden Skewers tip'd with Gold or Silver, the Provision being cut small before 'tis brought to Table. The first Dish is commonly a Hash, with a Glass of Wine. The rest are pil'd up pyramidically to the Number of 24 or more. Every one drinks out of his own Cup, and follows his Leader, but drink little at a time; and their Wine not being strong, they are seldom drunk. They affect Gravity at their Meals, yet love to be diverted by Tumblers and Farces.

Their Nuptials are splendid, and the Rejoycings last for several Days. The Match is made by the Parents without Consent of

the Parties. People of Quality always marry to those of equal Degree, and must have the Emperor's Consent. The middling Sort are fond of marrying into as good Families as their own, but buy as many Concubines as they please of a meaner Descent, who are obliged to honour the lawful Wife as the sole Mistress of the Family, and their Children must wear Mourning for her 3 Years, which is longer than they do for their own Mothers. The Daughters of the meaner Sort are purchas'd by their Husbands, who pay for them in Proportion to their Character. Most of them affect a tall straight Woman. Noblemen's Widows must not marry again, and those of the lowest Rank lose their Reputation if they do; for the Chinese Children can't endure a Father-in-Law. Young Men marry at 20 or 22, and young Women at 18 or 20. They see no Men but their Husbands youngest Brothers in the Time of their Childhood. Nor do they appear in the Streets except at *Peking*, where they are carried in cover'd Coaches or Sedans. They rub their Faces every Morning with white Meal, which spoils their Complexion, and paint their Lips red. They have all little Eyes and short Noses, and exceed our Women in natural Modesty. They cover their Necks with a little Collar of white Sattin, their Hands with long Sleeves, tread softly, cast their Eyes to the Ground, hold their Heads on one Side, and look like Nuns; yet they are not free from Vanity, nor do they love Confinement, but dress as richly as if they were to appear in Publick. They buckle their Hair in several Locks, interlaced with Flowers of Gold and Silver. They wear long Vests of Sattin or Cloth of Gold of what Colour they please; but the elder Sort affect Black or Purple, with a Surtout over it, and the Sleeves long enough to trail on the Ground, if not held up. They wear a great many Jewels, and are remarkable for the Smallness of their Feet, which are tied very hard from their Birth till they have done growing; but 'tis a Hindrance to their Walking. They wear Shoes of Sattin, embroider'd with Gold, Silver or Silk, and are fond of shewing them when they walk. *Lockyer* says, they learn to dress well when young, are of a sprightly Temper, and loving to the last Degree. *Dampier* says, they are constantly employ'd

in fine Needle-work or Embroideries, and that they make their own Shoes; but the poorer Women have large Feet, because they trudge about without Shoes or Stockings. *Nieuhoff* says, the Russians travel thro' the Country for Women, and when they find any handsome young Girls, spare no Money to entice them away. They teach them to dance and sing, and then sell them to the Grandees or hire them out, and lead them on an Ass to their Cullies, with a Veil over their Faces.

He says, their Funeral and Mourning Ceremonies are very numerous; that they express an incredible Sorrow for the Death of their Parents, for whom they mourn three Years in White, and the Sons gird a coarse Hempen Cloth about their Bodies. Wives mourn for Husbands three Years, but the Husbands not above one for their Wives. The same Term is observed by a Brother or Nephew for his Brothers or Uncles. Children are obliged for the Death of their Parents to lie at least 100 Days on the bare Ground, and weep; nor must they use the Marriage-Bed till the three Years are expir'd; for if the Women prove with Child in that Time, they are punish'd. They go to no Entertainments, keep in their Houses, and lay down their Offices from one to three Years; and when oblig'd to go abroad, are carried in close Mourning Coaches, &c. At their Funeral Processions they carry first the Figures of Men and Women, Lions, and other Animals, painted on Paper; then Incense, and after that the Bier and Coffin on Men's Shoulders, follow'd by the Friends of the Deceased. The Sons carry a Wand, and the Women go in close Mourning Chairs or Chariots. The Graves are all without the Walls, and some of 'em adorn'd with Marble, and enclos'd. They burn the Figures, and then lay the Coffin in the Tomb, on which are the usual Inscriptions and Figures. The Jesuits say, there are three Seasons of honouring the Dead in *China*; 1. When the Corps lies in State, then a Wooden Image, with the Name of the Deceased, is plac'd on a Table, with Candles and Perfumes burning; and they make frequent Kneelings and Prostrations. 2. Every 6 Months, when the richest Dainties are serv'd up in Honour of the Deceased. 3. Once a Year at the Tombs. The Sepulchres

pulchres of the *Grande*es are fair Houses, vaulted, and erected on Mountains or Plains. They cover the Coffins with a great deal of Earth, plant Trees about it, and erect a large Altar before it of white polish'd Marble, upon which they set a great Candlestick of Marble, Steel or Tin, and another at each Side, where they likewise place the Figures of Mandarins, Pages, Eunuchs, Lions, Saddle-Horses, Camels, Tortoises, &c. to the Life. The Pastboard Money they burn on this Occasion they fancy turns to real Money, to bribe the K. of Hell, that he mayn't be severe in his Torments, and to hasten the Time of their *Metempsychosis*. The Priests come to sing and pray over them, and are feasted with Wine and Fruit.

Mandelsloe says, the *Chinese* are generally of a good Shape and Size, but have flat Noses, large Faces and Ears, small Eyes, and little Beards. Their Cloathing is much the same every where; but in the N. Provinces they use Furs, and in the S. most wear Silk. *Le Comte* says, the Men shave their Hair, except a long Tress behind. Their Summer Caps terminate in a Point, are lin'd with Sattin, the Top cover'd with very fine Matting, and adorned with a loose red Ribban. When they ride, they wear Caps of long Hair dy'd of a lively Red, which the Rain cannot change. It grows white upon the Legs of Cows in *Szechuen*, and is dearer than the finest Silk. In Winter they wear a Plush Cap lin'd with Sable, worth 8 or 10 Crowns apiece. Their Necks are bare in Summer; but in Winter they have a Collar of Sattin, or Tippets of Sable or Fox-Skin, button'd before. They have also Surtouts with short wide Sleeves, which the Students wear long, but Gentlemen, and especially the *Tartars*, no lower than their Pockets. Their Under-Garments in Summer are only a Pair of Drawers of white Taffata, and a wide short Shirt of the same; but in Winter a Linen Shirt, and coarse Sattin Breeches quilted with Cotton or raw Silk. They always wear Boots of pink'd Stuff, quilted with Cotton, but without either Heel or Top, and the Workmen rarely use them in Summer. The Soles are an Inch thick. When they ride a long Journey, they have them of old Leather, or thick black pink'd Cotton; but in the Cities they are commonly of Sattin, with a Border of Plush or Vel-

vet on the Knee; and instead of Shoes, have black Linen or Silk Pattins. They count Perukes fit only to represent the Devil in humane Shape. They never uncover any Part of their Bodies in Publick, tho' it be ever so hot, but sometimes in Private throw off every Thing except their Drawers; and the Watermen and Mechanicks in the S. Provinces walk the Streets with nothing but Drawers. In the Summer they wear a Stuff call'd *Cha*, which is more substantial, tho' not so close and glossy as Taffata. In the Spring and Autumn they put on coarse Sattin or Silk, either plain or flower'd; but none use Silk flower'd with Gold or Silver, except the Mandarins when in their Formalities. The common People, says *Le Comte*, generally wear coarse dy'd Linen, and in the cold Weather quilt it with Cotton, or line it with Sheeps-Skins; but great Persons line their Surtouts with Sable, Ermin, Fox or Lamb-Skins, of which the first is cheap, and worn by all the Mandarins; but Ermin is so rare, that they only border their Vests and Sleeves with it, and have Furs, which they set on at the Time of Audience, and lay on their Beds under the Quilt. They have great Winter Gowns of Fur, which has long, soft, thick Hair, and is of a whitish Grey, strip'd with black and yellow Lists, so that they look like Bears in them. The most common Furs are Lamb-Skins, which are white, downy, and very warm. All their Furs are apt to breed Worms, and lose their Hair; to prevent which, they air 'em all at the Beginning of Summer, and inclose them in huge Earthen Pots with Pepper and other Drugs. Their Riding Habit is of a coarse oil'd Taffata, of a transparent Green, that keeps out the Rain a long time. *Lockyer* says, the Popish Missionaries at *Canton* wear Coats of Callico or *English* Cloth as low as their Ankles, and Summer Caps of Bambou Cane curiously woven, and beat together with Mallets as white as Snow, with a large Tuft of Scarlet-colour'd Hair fix'd on the Crown in a Piece of Glass or Amber as big as a Walnut. They are shap'd like a Beehive, will hold about a Gallon, and have a little Skull-Cap within. The *Chinese* of Quality affect long Nails, to distinguish them from the Vulgar, who must cut them, or else they can't work. They secure their Nails

in hollow Canes by Night, that they mayn't spoil them by scratching. They are commonly an Inch longer than their Fingers, as clear as Horn, and round like a Scoop. Both Sexes have fine slender Hands, and always carry Fans, and those of Quality Umbrella's. *Nienhoff* says, That in the Provinces of *Quantung* and *Quansi* most of the Inhabitants have two Nails upon their little Toes. The Women's Shoes are of blue or red Silk, with sharp Toes, deck'd with Pearls and Rubies, and embroider'd with all Sorts of Flowers. The Soles of the Mandarins Shoes are of Cloth, and those of the Commonalty of yellow Leather. They wash and bath often, and spend best Part of the Morning in combing and dressing their Heads. The Country Women wear Breeches, which they tie about their Knees.

Mandelsloe says, a Judge is appointed in every City to provide for the Relief of the Poor that cannot work, and to employ those that can. They write from the Top downwards with Pencils on one Side of their Paper, which is very thin, and made of the Bark of Bambou. The People are generally very complaisant, because the first Thing they teach at Schools is Compliments. They have as many Tables as Guests; and if any Dish be left untouch'd, 'tis commonly sent Home to the Guests Houses. He adds, they allow Polygamy, but Adultery is seldom heard of, and Incest is severely punished. They forbid Marriage in a direct Line *ad infinitum*, and collaterally to Sisters and Nieces.

Le Comte says, the *Chinese* formerly valu'd themselves above other Men, and held it as a Maxim to have no more Commerce with Foreigners than to receive their Homage, fancying that they themselves were produc'd from Heaven, and planted in the Center of the Universe, to instruct and give Laws to Mankind, till of late they own that the *Europeans* have at least one Eye, tho' they don't see so clearly as they. They count him the handsomest Man that is tall, has a long Beard and black Hair, and is fat enough to fill an Elbow-Chair. When a Mandarin travels abroad, the Inhabitants crowd into the Highways to meet and conduct him thro' their Territories; and when he leaves his Office, if he has manag'd it well, they place themselves here and there

in the Highways for 15 Miles together, and spread Tables with Sattin, cover'd with Sweetmeats, Tea, &c. of which they constrain him to partake, and at his Departure take either his Boots, Cap, or great Coat, &c. as a Memorial, for which they return him something of the same Kind, and follow him with Acclamations, calling him the Benefactor and Father of his People; but if he has behav'd himself ill, they dismiss him with Indifferency. Ambassadors spend 40 Days to learn the usual Compliments from a Master of the Ceremonies, and at Feasts they have an Officer that beats Time for the Guests to fall to in good Order. The last Mess is commonly Rice Bread, or Broths of Flesh or Fish. They sit at Table silent for 3 or 4 Hours, till the Master of the House gives them a Sign to rise. They withdraw into some Hall or Garden to divert themselves for a quarter of an Hour, and then return to the Table, where they have Sweetmeats, dry'd Fruits, and Tea, and at last a dull noisy Comedy. When they write Letters, they are very formal about the Size of the Characters, the Distance of the Lines, the Titles of Honour, the Shape of the Paper, the Number of red, white, and blue Covers, &c. so that few are able to follow their Niceties. When they divorce their Wives, which is common with the meaner Sort, they sell them, and buy others; but if there be not a just Cause, the Buyer and seller are both punished, without the Husband's being obliged to take her again. Most of them are very jealous; but some of their Wives make it a Condition of their Marriage to be tolerated in Adultery. *Lockyer* says, the *Chinese* are stuttish in their Houses, never mind whether their Meat was killed by the Butcher, or died in a Ditch, and love Dogs, Cats, Rats, Snakes, and Frogs. The latter they reckon a Dainty, and give double the Price of other Meat for them. He adds, they are the largest, blackest, and ugliest of the Kind; but if frigacy'd, eat well. They are great Smokers of Tobacco, which they cut into small Shreds, and dry, that half a Score Whiffs may clear the Pipe, which is of Brass, a Foot long, and has a Bowl no bigger than a Thimble. They hang it at their Girdles with a Purse of Tobacco, and use them a quarter of a Year without washing.

washing. He adds, that in Winter they carry live Quails in their Hands instead of Muffs, and are mighty fond of *English* Greyhounds and Spaniels.

Nieuhoff adds, That many of the *Chinese* sell themselves for Slaves to the Rich, that they may marry some of the Maid-Servants; and that others, who are not able to maintain their Children, sell them for two or three Crowns apiece to the *Portuguese* and *Spaniards*, who transport 'em. In some Provinces they drown their Infants, especially the Females, whom they think they can't maintain. In the N. Provinces they geld their Children, or the Mother bites off one Stone, that they may be the nimbler in Hunting. He adds, that many of the *Grandeess* ruin themselves by the Study of Alchymy, and seeking after Drugs to make them immortal. They have writ and printed several Books on both Subjects.

Of the Cities and Towns in general.

Nieuhoff says, there are 145 Capitals and 1331 small Cities, of which 148 may be compar'd to the chief Cities for Splendor and Number of People. There are 32 other great Cities, which, tho' they command over 36 small Cities apiece, and are not subject to any other, yet are not Capitals. There are three Cities more for the Officers and Commanders of the Militia to dwell in, and 159 Forts, besides 17 great Garrison Towns, and 66 small ones, with their Quota's of Soldiers, who inhabit promiscuously among the Burghers. Some of those call'd small ones exceed several great and prime Cities in Largeness, Wealth, and People; but the latter derive their Precedency from the Dignity of their Governors, and special Privileges. No Place must be call'd a City that is not wall'd in. Most of their Cities are quadrangular, with broad and high Walls, fortified with Towers, Moats, and Mud Walls. Each City has a large Square, where they train the Militia, and great Watch-Towers on the Gates for Centinels. The Suburbs are generally large and populous, and without the Walls of each Metropolis there's commonly a delightful Plain, beautified with Towers,

Trees, &c. *Magaillans* says, their Wall'd Towns are divided into Civil and Military Orders: The former make 175 Cities of the first Rank, 274 of the second, 1288 of the third, 205 Royal Inns, and 103 Courts of Guard.

The same Author adds, there are several Cities strong by Nature in divers of the Provinces, govern'd by absolute Princes, who pay no Tribute to the Emperor, and are call'd Mandarins. The People, tho' they use the *Chinese* Language, have one of their own, differ from the other *Chinese* in their Manners and Customs, and far excel them in Courage; so that after several fruitless Attempts to reduce them, they are glad to leave them in Quiet with a free Trade.

They have a printed *Itinerary* with all the Roads and Passages by Land and Water from *Peking* to the utmost Parts of the Empire, setting down the Distances of Places and the Furlongs of every Journey. In this Book, the Royal Highways are divided into 1145 Days Journey, and at the End of each there's a Place where the Mandarins, when sent to their Employments, are entertained at the King's Charge, and here they have Guards to attend them regularly. Of these Places there are 1243 in Towns of the first and second Rank, and 102 large and populous Towns which have no Walls, where the Mandarins are also entertained. A Courier always goes before the Mandarin, that Things may be prepared for his Reception; and in these Places Travellers or others, to whom the Emperor is pleas'd to grant the Favour, are likewise entertain'd, as was our Author *Magaillans*, and there they find Horses and every thing ready for Dispatch.

There are 629 large Fortresses of the first Degree belonging to the Military Order, 567 of the 2d, 311 of the 3d, 300 of the 4th, 150 of the 5th, 100 of the 6th, 300 of the 7th, and these are of several Sorts, some of them being a Refuge for the Country People and their Cattle in case of Invasions, or to save them from the Disorders of their own Army when they march. Others are on steep Rocks and Mountains, to which there's no Passage but by narrow Stairs cut out of the Rock or Ladders. The whole of these fortified Places, Civil and Military, is 4402, besides 3000 Towers and

and Castles without the great Wall, in which there are constant Watches, who in the Day-time give Notice of an Enemy's Approach by erecting Banners, and in the Night by Flambeaux. The Number of Guards on the Frontiers are 902054, and the Auxiliaries always ready against the *Tartars* are 989167. Horsemen, which cost the Emperor 5 Millions 34714 Livres *per Annum*; and in the other Garrisons there are 767970 Men, which in Time of Peace attend upon the Mandarins and Ambassadors; and the Horses kept by the Emperor for his Troops, Posts and Messengers, are 564900.

Mandelsloe reckons the great Cities 145, besides 1263 others, which would pass for considerable Cities elsewhere. Most of 'em have two large Streets, which divide the whole into 4 Quarters, and make a perfect Cross; so that from the Center the 4 Gates may be seen at once. They are fortified with broad Brick Walls, flank'd with Towers after the old *Roman* Fashion, plaister'd with the same Earth they make their Porcellane of, which in Time grows as hard as Stone, and is Proof against the Injuries of the Air; so that some of them are said to have stood 2000 Years without any considerable Alteration. *Le Comte* says, their chief Towns are 9 or 12 Miles round, others 6, and less in Proportion. Their Streets and Roads are large, and well pav'd, and they have regular Patrols, with Chains cross the Streets in some Places, so that no Man can pass without Observation, and they are very severe upon such as are abroad at unseasonable Hours. *Gemelli* agrees in most Things with *Magaillans*.

Travellers reckon only 15 or 16 Provinces in *China*, excluding *Leaotung* and *Corea* without the *Chinese* Wall; but we shall describe them according to our Table, beginning first with the N. W. Province of *Xensi*.

I. X E N S I or S C I E N S I,

Has the great Wall and the Kingdom of *Tangut* on the N. Part of *Independent Tartary* on the W. *Xansi* and *Honan* on the E. and *Szechuen* on the S. 'Tis the Westernmost of the Northern Provinces, and *Sanson* says the

largest of all the rest. He extends it beyond the Wall, makes it almost 660 M. from E. to W. and above 440 where broadest. For *Moll's* Dimensions, we refer to his Map. *Nieuhoff* says, the great Wall runs thro' this Country as far as the *Yellow River* to the E. The Soil is in some Part mountainous, very dry for want of Rain, and produces Hemp and little Rice, which is purging, but great Store of Wheat, Barley, and *Turkish* Corn, upon which the Beasts feed all Winter. Here are Sheep and Goats, which they shear every Spring, Summer, and Harvest, and a Beast call'd *Xee*, like a young Hind, which has Musk in its Navel, and is eaten by the *Chinese*. It can live in no other Province. There are Mines of Gold and Silver; but the Emperor won't suffer them to be open'd, so that the Inhabitants seek for Gold on the Sides of Brooks. There are 22 great and small Forts in this Province. The City of *Lincheng* here has a Fountain about 5 Foot deep, clear as Chrystal, very cold at Top, and so hot at Bottom, that one can't touch it; and on several of the Mountains there are Wild Oxen, Tigers, &c. and on one of them clear Stones resembling Diamonds. The Mountain *Holan* is 300 Miles large, says *Nieuhoff*, and is noted for Wild Horses of a low Stature, but strong. They also abound with Bears, whose fore Feet the Natives reckon a Dainty. They have Cocks and Hens with Wool instead of Feathers. They are much infested by Grasshoppers, which devour their Corn and Grass, and are reckoned good Food by the Natives. *Martin* in his Atlas says, there's a Stone Pillar here with an Inscription, signifying that the Gospel was introduc'd by the Successors of the Apostles, and containing an admirable Account of the Christian Doctrine. 'Twas formed in 1625, as they were digging to lay the Foundation of a Wall. *Kircher* gives a particular Account of it from a Draught in the Library of the *Roman* College belonging to the Jesuits at *Rome*. One of their Mountains, shap'd like a Cock, is said to make a great Roaring before Tempests; and another, if a Drum be beaten on it, sends out Thunder and Lightning. They have black Snakes, whose Flesh they use for Antidotes; an Herb call'd, *The Golden Thread of Silk-Worms*, which cures all manner of Scurf; another call'd *Quei*, which

which causes Laughter when eaten, and abundance of Rhubarb. They have Bats as big as Geese, and account them good Meat, and a Stone of inestimable Value, which increases and decreases with the Moon. They have a Road with Bridges cut thro' vast Mountains, in which one of their Generals employ'd some Hundred Thousands of Men. The Tops of the Hills on both Sides seem to brave the Clouds, and the Bridges betwixt the Mountains are so high, that it makes one giddy to look down. They are rail'd with Wood and Iron on the Sides, and broad enough for 4 Horsemen a-breast. It has shorten'd the Way from *Siganfu*, their Metropolis, to *Hanchung*, from 20000 to 80 Furlongs; and there's another call'd the Flying Bridge, with one Arch betwixt two Mountains, 400 Cubits long, and 50 Perches high. *Magaillans* says, the Inhabitants are warlike. *Le Comte* says, most of the Villages are encompassed with Walls and Ditches, and have Iron Gates. *Kao* says, this Province is govern'd by two Viceroy's, is 400 Miles long, and 350 broad. *Le Comte* says, the Inhabitants are the best proportion'd and the strongest of all *China*.

Sigan, the Capital, lies on a small River which falls into the *Yellow River*, Lat. 34. Long. 127. *Nieuhoff* says, it commands over 36 Cities. *Le Comte* says, 'tis 3 Leagues round the Ditches, Part dry, and Part wet. The Wall is thick and high, with many large Towers, broad Bulwarks, and stately Gates. 'Tis divided by an Earthen Wall into the *Tartar* and *Chinese* Towns, both of them garrison'd; but the *Tartars* are strongest. It has an old Palace, the Residence of their ancient Kings. Their Houses are low and ill built, and their Furniture not so neat, nor their Workmen so ingenious, as in the S. Parts. The Christian Pillar above-mentioned was found near this Place.

Near the City *Jengan* there's above 1000 Stone Idols in a hollow Mountain, cut by the Order of a King who liv'd here as a Hermite.

2. X E N S I or X A N S I,

Is divided from *Xensi* by the *Yellow River* on the W. has *Peking* on the E. the Wall on the N. *Honan* and Part of *Xensi* on the S. *Nieuhoff* says, the *Chinese* derive their Ori-

gine from hence. It produces the sweetest and fairest Grapes in all *Asia*, which they dry and sell thro' the whole Empire, but make no Wine. They abound with natural Fire-Wells, whose Mouths they close up to the Bigness of a Pot, over which they boil their Meat. *Kircher* says, the Flame is thick, carried about in Stoves, and does not consume Wood. They have likewise Stoves of Coal, and use Stoves in their Houses like the *Dutch*, and some of them serve for Beds in the Winter. They have a Mountain which yields Earth so red, that it serves them for Vermilion, and another whose Earth is so white, that the Women paint with it. They have likewise Jasper of several Colours. It is noted for the famous Root *Ginseng*, and many other Medicinal ones, especially Rhubarb. The Villages here are like those of *Xensi*, but not so many nor so populous. *Ydes* says, the *Yellow River* is in some Places two Miles broad here. The Country is mountainous and small, yet populous and fertile. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Quaningchang*, one of their great Generals, whose Image having a red Face, they adore, and think it inspires them with Courage. *Nieuhoff* says, they have 14 strong Forts here for the Defence of the great Wall and Roads. *Sanfon* says, they have inexhaustible Mines of Sulphur and burning Stones.

Nieuhoff says, *Taitung*, the 3d chief City, is the Key of the Province, a Bulwark against the *Western Tartars*, and noted for beautiful Women.

3. P E K I N G,

Has the great Wall on the N. *Honan* and *Xantung* on the S. *Xansi* on the W. *Leotung* and Part of *Xantung* on the E. 'Tis nam'd from its Capital, and is the chief Province, because the Emperor resides here. *Nieuhoff* says, the *Yellow River* separates it from *Honan*. Tho' it lies but in Lat. 42. *Moll* says betwixt 35 and 40. yet the Frost is so strong, that 4 Months their Rivers are so frozen, that they ride their Horses over. It lasts from *November* till *March*, and freezes all up in 24 Hours. The Country is low, dry, and healthful, barren in Comparison of the other Provinces, has Plenty of Corn, but little Rice, and many sandy Desarts; yet

yet there's Store of tame Cattle and Fish in some Parts. The Court occasions the chief Trade, and is kept here for a Guard against the *Tartars*. They have white rough Cats like the *Malteeza* Dogs, with long Ears, and are fondled by the Ladies instead of Lap-Dogs; but they are so lazy, that they catch no Mice, so that other Cats that are good Mouse-hunters are much esteem'd here. Their Way of Travelling is in a Waggon with one Wheel, that holds three Persons. They have 3 strong Cities and 14 Garrisons for Defence of the Wall, besides other Cities almost innumerable. They have very good white and red Marble, Touch-stones, and several others much valued for Hardness and Colour. They have Plenty of good *European* Fruit, and particularly Grapes, but make no Wine, their Rice Liquor being preferred to it even by *Europeans*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Peking*, the Capital, which *Nienhoff* says commands over 26 other Cities; and that 'tis 1530 Miles from *Canton*, in Lat. 40. tho' *Moll*, who places it Lat. 38 $\frac{1}{2}$. does not make it above 1000 to the N. The Name signifies the N. chief City, to distinguish it from *Nanking*, which signifies the S. The *Chinese* Geographers call it *Xuntien*, i. e. Obedient to Heaven; and the *Tartars*, *Cambalu*, i. e. The City of the Lord. It exceeds *Nanking* in Number of People, but comes short of it for Largeness, Regularity, and Fortifications. The S. Side is defended by two high Walls so broad, that 12 Horses may go a-breast on them. The inner Wall is of Stone, higher than any in *Europe*, 10 Miles in Compass, with Bulwarks scarce a Stone's-throw from one to another. The outward Walls which encompass the Suburbs are ill fortified, yet have strong Out-works on each Side the Gates, with Redoubts and Towers, where they keep strict Guard. This City was much embellish'd by one of their Emperors in 1404, who gave it many Privileges. It has 12 Gates; and all Rarities being brought hither, it abounds with every thing for Pleasure and Nourishment; so that they have a Proverb, *That tho' nothing grows in Peking, yet they want nothing*. All People come hither for Preferment. The Streets are unpav'd, and scarce passable in wet Weather, which happens but seldom, and in dry Weather they

are pester'd with Dust, which makes the Inhabitants wear Silk Hoods over their Faces, and the better Sort use Horses in rainy Weather. Those of Quality have Sedans or Chairs made of Bambous or Rushes, with a Chair in the Middle cover'd with a Tiger's Skin, upon which they sit. The City abounds with extraordinary fine Structures, famous Idol Temples, Towers, and Triumphant Arches. 'Tis 24 Miles in Circumference, and at each of the chief Gates there's a stately Arsenal. In the Middle there's a noble Idol Temple, with their famous great Bell, that is rung three times in an Evening; after which none must stir out, unless to visit their Friends and the Sick, and must carry Lights with them. *Magaillans* says, the Diameter of the Bottom of the Bell is 12 Cubits, the Thickness of it towards the Closure almost one, the Depth within 12, and the Weight 120000 Pound of Brass; so that it much exceeds that of *Exford*, which is but 25400 Pound. *Nienhoff* says, 1000 Soldiers are posted at each Gate. One of the Great Chams chang'd the Situation of this City, because an Astrologer told him it would be overflowed by the River. *Kircher* says, it has 12 Suburbs. *Magaillans* says, it has but 9 Gates. 'Tis so large, that there's a Book describing the Streets which is made use of by Lackies, &c. The principal Street is call'd that of *Perpetual Repose*. It runs from E. to W. has the Walls of the Palace on the N. Side, and the Tribunals and Palaces of the great Lords on the S. 'Tis 30 Fathoms broad, and would be much more stately, but that the Houses front backward out of Respect to the Palace, so that nothing appears but little Houses on each Side of the Gates, that serve for Merchants and Tradesmen's Shops. The Streets are always as much crowded as those of our Cities during Fairs and Processions.

The Palace stands in the Middle of the City, and is encompassed with a double square Wall: The outermost is extraordinary high and thick, plaister'd on both Sides with red Mortar, and cap'd with varnish'd Bricks of a Gold Colour, laid with great Art. It is two *Italian* Miles from the N. to the S. Gate, and has 4 Gates in all, compos'd of 3 Portals each, the middlemost of which are never open'd but for the Emperor, and there are Guards at all of 'em, 3000 Men

Men being appointed for that purpose. There's a spacious Court for the Elephants, in the Middle of which there's a large Room for them in Summer; but in Winter they have Stalls warm'd with Stoves, without which they would not be able to endure the Rigour of the Season. They are never brought out but when the Emperor goes abroad in State. No Priest or a deform'd Person must enter the Gates. The inner Brick Wall is extream high and thick, adorn'd with handsome Battlements, and is near 5 Miles in Circumference. It has four Gates with large Arches, and two of them have Portals like the former. Upon these Gates and the Angles of the Wall there are Halls of an extraordinary Size and Workmanship. They are varnish'd within with a beautiful Red, adorn'd with Flowers of Gold, and cover'd with Tiles of that Colour. None but the Mandarins and Officers of the Household must enter this Wall without License. 'Tis encompass'd with a large deep Moat, lin'd with Free-stone, and full of excellent Fish, and at every Gate there's a Draw-Bridge; and betwixt the Walls there are many noble Palaces, magnificently adorn'd, and set apart for several Uses. On the E. Side within the Walls there's a River with several Bridges of Marble, and a Draw-Bridge in the Middle of each. On the W. Side between the Walls there's a Lake full of Fish, above a Mile long, and made in Form of a Bass-Viol, with a stately Bridge over it, magnificent Triumphal Arches at each End, and the Lake is encompass'd with Pleasure-Houses that jut over it. In the Middle of it lie the Royal Barges for the Emperor to fish or take the Air in. On the E. and W. Side betwixt the two Walls there are Streets, with Houses for those that belong to the Palace. The Inside of the Palace has been describ'd before. There are 20 Apartments and Courts belonging to the Palace, which run in a strait Line from N. to S. We cannot insist on Particulars. *Gemelli* says, the Town is divided into the *Chinese* and *Tartar* Cities, the former being the last built. We shall only add, that there's a Park within the inner Wall of the Palace where Wild-Beasts are kept for the Emperor's Diversion, and there are five Hills rais'd from the Mud, taken out of

the Pond and Ditches, which are the only Hills in the City. The Columns, Portico's, and Pillars, are so magnificent, that they exceed Belief, and the Roofs of all the Apartments are Hexagonal, cover'd with yellow Tiles, and adorned with Brass Work in the Form of Lions, Dragons, &c. The Galleries, Halls, and other Rooms, are stately, and richly furnished, and the Stair-Cases of fine Marble and curious Workmanship. We may judge of the Expensiveness of this magnificent Palace by what *Gemelli* says he had from *French* Jesuits who knew it, that one of the Halls being burnt, it required no less than two Millions of Crowns to rebuild it. *Le Comte* says, the Palace it self resembles a City, and is adorned with stately Gardens, and that in the City most Artificers work in their Customers Houses; that the Gates are not embellish'd with Statues or other Carvings, as the rest of the *Chinese* Cities, but are very high, and consist of two large square Buildings, join'd by two very high and thick Walls. Betwixt those Buildings there's a Square where 500 Men may draw up in Battle. The first commands the Roads, and the 2d the City. *Ydes* says, the Jesuits have a fine Cloyster, and a large Church, capable of holding 3000 People; that 'tis adorned with a Clock and Chimes, and their Musæum is well stor'd with *European* Rarities. The *Russians* have also a Church here, and several Converts of Note.

Two Leagues and a half W. from the City, *Paul the Venetian* says, there's one of the fairest Stone Bridges in the World over the River *Pulifangan*, which is navigable, and falls into the Ocean. This Bridge is 300 Paces long, and 8 broad, so that 10 Horsemen may ride a-breast. It has 24 Arches and 25 Piles that support it, all of Serpentine Stone, curiously wrought, and on both Sides there are Tables and Pillars of Marble in an exact Proportion to keep People from falling over. In the Middle there's a large and high Column rear'd on a Tortoise of Marble, with a huge Lion near the Base, and another above. Over against this there's another fair Column: The Rails are a Foot and a half asunder, and the Spaces between are filled with Tables of Marble, adorned with fine Sculptures; and on every Pillar there's a Lion of Marble, which makes a

very agreeable Prospect. *Magaillans* says, this Bridge lies over that call'd the *River of Glass*, and that the Bridge over *Pulifangan* has but 13 Arches, and the River not navigable. He adds to the Description of the other Bridge, that 'tis all of white fine Marble, of excellent Architecture; that it has 70 Pillars or Rails on each Side, with Panes of Marble betwixt them excellently carv'd with Foliage, Fruit, Birds, and other Creatures: That at the E. End of the Bridge there are two fair high Pedestals, with Lions of an extraordinary Size, and young ones about them between their Legs and on their Backs in several Postures, and all of Marble. At the W. End there are two Elephants upon the like Pedestals, and carv'd with equal Curiosity. In 1668, a long continu'd Rain occasioned the River to overflow great Part of the new City, destroy'd many Houses and People, and broke down two of the Arches of this famous Bridge; and there being dreadful Earthquakes in other Parts of the Empire at the same time, *Magaillans* ascribes those Judgments to the then Persecution of the Christians.

Nieuhoff gives an Account of several other Cities in this Province; the chief of which are, 1. *Tacheu*, encompassed with a Wall of 30 Foot high on the River *Guei*, is defended with good Bulwarks and Watch-Towers, adorned with several Temples, and large Suburbs on both Sides the River, and is the Staple for the Drink *Zamson*, made of Rice, which the *Tartars* and *Chinese* carry from hence thro' all *China*. The People say, That at 10 Miles Distance there's a Pool which turns red if a Stick be thrown into it, and that the Leaves which fall in from the Trees are turn'd immediately into living Swallows. There are several other trading and populous Towns on the River *Guei*, of which we have little Description.

2. *Sinkocien*, has several Watch-Towers and Bulwarks; and tho' small in Extent, Trade and Number of People, is noted for handsome Temples, and particularly one without the Walls, which exceeds the rest in Bigness and Beauty. The Outside is of Fret-work: It consists of 3 Rounds; the lower Part stands upon a Stone Pedestal, ascended to by Steps, the Rounds adorned with great Gates and Windows, and

each Corner supported with curious Pillars, and hung with little Bells.

3. *Singie*, which is noted for large Suburbs, and a remarkable Temple, with a Nunnery and curious Pyramids. The adjacent Country is infested with Grasshoppers, which are brought in great Swarms once a Year by an Easterly Wind, destroy all their Corn and Grass, and frequently occasion a great Dearth. The People march against them with Colours and Ensigns, shouting and hollowing, to prevent their settling, and never leave till they drive them to the Sea or some River, where being weary, they fall in and are drown'd. *Nieuhoff*, who saw one of those Expeditions as he was sailing on a River, says, they tumbled down in such Numbers, as cover'd the Vessels of the *Dutch* Ambassadors.

4. *Tiencienwey*. It lies in the E. Boundary of the Province, near the Bay of *Cang*, where 3 Rivers meet. It has a strong Fortress, with high Walls, Towers and Bulwarks, and magnificent Temples. 'Tis so populous and full of Trade, that 'tis scarce to be matched in *China*; for 'tis a free Port, the Staple of all Commodities, and every Ship that goes to *Peking* touches here.

5. *Joefwoe*, a small, but rich trading City and Suburb. It lies further up the same River, has Custom of all the Vessels that pass it, which brings a great Revenue to the Crown. 'Tis also noted for stately Temples, and other magnificent Structures. There are several other Cities betwixt this and *Peking*, but we cannot insist on them. All of them are well fortified, adorned with Temples, Triumphal Arches, Bridges, &c. Goods are carried no higher by Water than within 4 Miles of *Pequin*, for the Benefit of the Poor of that City, who are maintain'd by the Land-Carriage. Ambassadors usually land at *Tongsiou*, within the same Distance of the Capital. 'Tis a large City, well fortified, adorned with fine Buildings, and the adjacent Country abounds with Orchards and Corn-Fields.

Brand, in his Account of *Ydes's* Embassy, mentions the City *Xangukou* on the N. Frontier of this Province, noted for a Temple and a Female Idol 28 Foot high, with 700 Hands, and one of the most famous Pagan Temples of the Empire, stands upon an adjoining Rock call'd *Jugangu*. It has a very beautiful

beautiful Front, is all of square Stone, and resembles a Fort. The Inhabitants and Pilgrims make great Processions hither.

Not far from hence there's a City abounding with Temples, and many fine Stone Palaces, cover'd with red Tiles, and encompassed with a high Stone Wall. 'Tis inhabited only by the Emperor's Concubines and their Retinue. Near it there's a hot Bath.

Tunxo, on the River *Tungo*, is a large and populous City, which drives a great Trade with the neighbouring Provinces. Many of the Emperor's Vessels lie in the River, and in 4 or 5 Days they sail from hence to *Japan*. It abounds likewise with Temples and Cloysters, and has one of the best Markets for China-Ware in all the Country.

XIXIGAR, a Frontier Province without the Wall, has a Capital of the same Name. *Tdes* says, the Climate is variable, yet wholesome, and generally about Noon they have a high Wind for two Hours; but at other Times the Sun shines very hot, and the Dust of the Roads is scarce supportable.

The City of *Naunketon*, lately built, is in this Province. It has Walls of Earth, fac'd with massy Timber. The People of this Country are the ancient *Dauri*, now *Daori* or *Dori*. They have a rich Soil, with all Sorts of Garden-Fruit, and Plantations of Tobacco. They invoke the Devil, and many of them are Conjurers. Their Worship is as Diabolical and horrible as their Religion. They assemble in the Night, make a dismal Howling, and beat on Drums, when one of them is taken with a Fit of Extasy, and after lying as dead for some Time, pretends to prophecy. Their Houses are of Clay, cover'd with Reeds, and in the Middle they have a Pillar adorned with the Intrails of Beasts, and their Arms, and before this Pillar they prostrate themselves. Both Sexes are well shap'd, and the Mandarins take Concubines from hence at Pleasure, and make bold with their Wives, which the poor Wretches take for an Honour.

On the same Road there are several Cities full of Idols and Figures, upon which Account one of them is call'd, *The Idol City*. 'Tis on this Frontier where the Emperor

comes Annually to hunt Tygers and Wild Beasts, as formerly mention'd.

4. L E A O T U N G.

We partly described this Province in *Eastern Tartary*, P. 441. *Tdes* and the French Jesuits correct *Nieuhoff*, *Martin* and others, for placing this Province within the great Wall, and say, that 'tis only separated from *Corea* by an Arm of the Sea, which *Moll* calls the Gulph of *Cang*, and that 'tis on the same Side of the Wall as *Corea*. After the *Leaotungers* assisted the *Tartars* in the Conquest of *China*, the latter made this the 16th Province of the Empire; and tho' 'tis without the Wall, yet it enjoys the same Privileges as the others. *Kao* says, it has *Xantung* and the great Wall on the S. *Corea* on the E. and *Tartary* on the N. and *Moll* places Part of *Tartary* on the W. The former adds, that 'tis a fine Province, but contains not above 12 great and small Cities. 'Tis noted for producing the Root *Ginseng*. *Nieuhoff* says, it has only two great Cities, but a great many strong Places bigger than some Cities. The Inhabitants are very dull, and incapable of learning Arts and Sciences, but more strong and healthy than the other *Chinese*, and in Manners and Customs imitate the *Tartars*, who are always at War with them. The Country is partly mountainous, and partly champaign, but abounds in all Sorts of wild and tame Cattle, several Medicinal Trees, curious Pine-Apples, Figs, Pears, Grapes, &c. with excellent Wheat and Barley, but no Rice. They have also Store of Sables, Bever, and other rich Furs, which they wear in the Winter, and trade with into the other Provinces. They are furnish'd with all other Commodities they want by Sea. He adds, That their Religion is little different from the *Chinese*. We shall refer for the rest of this Province to what we said of it in *Tartary*.

5. C O R E A,

Is a Peninsula, which *Nieuhoff* says has the Kingdom of *Ninche* on the N. the River *Yalo* on the N. W. and the rest is surrounded by the Sea. 'Tis divided into 8 Provinces, several populous and rich Cities, in Form and Strength much like those of *China*. The Country is populous in general,

neral, has all one Form of Government, Habit, Speech, and Writing, and their Religion is that of *China*; but they give more Liberty to their Women. They have Plenty of Wheat and Rice, with Fruits of all Sorts, and Harvest twice a Year. They make several Sorts of Paper and curious Writing-Pencils of Wolves Hair. They have also the Root *Ginseng*, and 'tis said several Gold Mines, but drive no Trade except with *China* and *Japan*. The chief Province is call'd *Kinki*, and their chief City *Pingiang*, where their King resides, who is Tributary to the Emperor of *China*. The Clerk of a *Dutch* Ship that was cast away on this Coast in 1653, as we find by the Appendix to *Harris's* 2d Vol. of *Navigantium atq; Itinerantium Bibliotheca*, differs much in his Account of this Country. He says, the Natives call it *Tiozencouk* or *Coali*; that 'tis in the Form of a long Square, from Lat. 34. to 44. 150 Leagues from N. to S. and 75 in Breadth; and that it contains 360 Cities and Towns, besides Forts on the Mountains. Toward the S E. 'tis little more than 20 Leagues from *Japan*. The Bay of *Nanking*, or *Cang* as *Moll* calls it, parts it from *China* on the W. and in the Winter the narrowest Part of it is froze, so that they can pass over the Ice to *China*. The Coast abounds with Whales and Herrings in the Winter. The Frost is so hard, and the Snow so thick, in this Country, that on the Mountains they make Paths under it; and such as travel over it, wear Boards under their Shoes to keep them from sinking. The N. People are poor, and for most Part wear Clothes of Skins. They pay Tribute to the *Tartars* with the Root *Nissy*. They have Silk-Worms, but cannot work the Silk. They have some Silver and Lead, and all Sorts of *European* Fowls and Beasts, with monstrous Alligators, Crocodiles, and Serpents. Their King is absolute, has always a good Army about his Capital, and once in 7 Years all the Provinces send their Freemen to attend him by Turns, besides his ordinary Guards; and when they are 60 Years of Age, their Sons relieve them. Their Horsemen are arm'd Cap-a-pee, and use Bows and Arrows. Their Foot wear Corsets and Head-Pieces, and carry Half-Pikes, besides their Swords and Muskets. Every Town maintains a Ship of War, which is a Galley of

30 Oars, with some small Cannon, and abundance of Fire-works. The King's Revenue arises from a Tax on the Product of the Country, and Goods imported. All his Grandees depend upon him, because they have nothing else but the Revenues of their Offices. Rebellion is punish'd by extirpating the whole Race of the Criminal. A Man may kill his Wife if unfaithful. Double Adultery is Death; and single Adultery is punish'd with 40 or 50 Strokes with a Cudgel on their bare Buttocks, of which many die. This Author says, they allow their Women very little Liberty, have but one Wife, and as many Concubines as they please. They turn off their Wives and Children for very slight Faults, and the nearest Relations are the Executioners in case of double Adultery. They instruct their Children in Reading, Writing, and the History of their Country, use both Rewards and Punishments to make them diligent, and are much respected by them. The People in general are amorous, fraudulent, credulous, and cowardly, and bemoan those who are obliged to fight; so that their greatest Defence is their Cold and Mountains. When their King goes abroad, he is attended by vast Numbers of Courtiers and Guards without any Noise; and when he passes the Streets, all must turn their Backs to him. The *Tartar* Ambassador, who comes thrice a Year to receive the Tribute, is as much or more respected than their King. The People are very superstitious, and much afraid of Comets. The Houses of the great Men are stately, but the others mean, of one Story, with a Garret, and thatch'd. Their Floors are all vaulted, and they have Stoves under them in Winter. They marry at 8 or 10 Years of Age. They have many Nunneries and Friaries of their Sect, some of which contain 4000 Persons, but may leave them when they please; and tho' they be Heathens, they have many Popish Ceremonies. Each Province has a General, with 4 or 5 Colonels, and as many Captains under them, who are Governors of the Towns or Forts, and in every Village there's a Corporal, and Tithing-men under him. The Soldiers must provide 50 Charges of Powder and Ball at their own Cost. Every Province has also an Admiral, who views the

the Shipping once a Year, and makes a Report to the High Admiral, who punishes those that are negligent with Banishment or Death. The King's Council consists of the chief Officers by Sea and Land, who attend him every Day.

The Island *Quelpaert* on this Coast is thus described by the Clerk of a *Dutch* Ship cast away here, according to his Relation bound up with *Gemelli*. It lies Lat. $33\frac{1}{2}$. 12 or 13 Leagues S. of *Corea*, about 15 Leagues in Compass, and has but one safe Bay on the N. Side, with a dangerous Entrance, because of hidden Rocks. The Island abounds in Horses and Cattle, which pay great Duties to the King. The People are poor, and despis'd by the *Chinese*, whom they imitate in their Habit, but have Hats of Horse-Hair. After the Crew of the *Dutch* Ship had set up a Hut, about 2000 Horse and Foot drew up before it. The Commander put a great Iron Chain, and a Bell like that of a Weather's, about the Necks of some of the *Dutch* Men, and forc'd them to prostrate themselves, while the Natives gave a mighty Shout. They were so terrified at the Report of two Cannon which took Fire while they were burning the Ship, that they fled, and were afraid to return for some Time, till the *Dutch* assured them by Signs that they needed not fear. They punish Thieves with Bastinadoes on the Soles till their Toes drop off. The Governor resides at *Moggan* or *Moczo*. They detain all Strangers, but use them well. The King keeps his Court at *Sior*, the Capital; but most of the Grandees live at a strong Fort 6 or 7 Leagues distant on a Mountain, and the King retires thither in Time of War. It has always 3 Years Provisions for a great Number of People. The Cold is violent here about the End of *November*. The Colonel of the Province commands in the Governor's Absence, and resides in a large Castle. The great Men keep able Archers about them. Their King always arms his People when a Comet appears, because he thinks it portends an Invasion.

6. XANTUM or XANTUNG,

Has *Peking* on the N. W. the Gulph of *Cang* and Bay of *Nanquin* on the N. E. and

E. Honan on the S. W. and *Kiamnin* or *Nanking* on the S. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis so fruitful in Corn, Rice, Beans, &c. that one Year's Harvest serves the Inhabitants 10 Years. They have many Wolves, and Plenty of Poultry and Fish. Our Author says, he purchas'd 10 of the latter for a Halfpenny. They have Store of Silk, all Manner of Fruit, and especially Prunes. The Inhabitants are dull, and have no Taste for Learning, but are strong, and fit for Labour. The Children go naked, and leap into the cold Water in Winter. They are much infested by great Bands of Robbers. They have abundance of Rosemary, and Deer of all Sorts, whose Flesh tast of it. They have delicate, large, red Apples, which they dry and keep good a whole Year. The Kernels stand upright on one Side. They have also hard green Apples, which are no where else in *China*. They have a Spring near the City *Niuyang* which they think makes those that drink of it long liv'd, and a Mine that produces Iron. *Kircher* says, some of their Cows have a Stone in their Paunch of the Size of a Goose's Egg, reckon'd to be of more Virtue than the Bezoar. *Nieuhoff* observes many strange Things of the River *Luon* in this Country, and among others, that he threw 9 Sticks into it, of which 6 drove Southward, and 3 Northward. In this Province lies great Part of the Royal Canal, describ'd P. 719. It has also a Communication with the Gulph *Cang*, from which 'tis supplied with Water upon Occasion.

Nieuhoff describes many considerable Towns and Villages on this Canal, the Tolls of which he says amount to 10 Millions of Gold Crowns *per Annum*. We shall only mention the chief of them: 1. *Jax-Hinno*, noted for 36 noble Towers curiously built on both Sides the River. 2. *Taigan*, near which lies the Mountain *Tai*, with many Temples upon it, and great Store of Priests. The *Chinese* Geographers reckon it 5 Miles high. 3. *Cining*, about the Middle of the Channel, where Customs are paid for Ships and Goods. It exceeds the chief City of its District in People, Trade, and Number of Gentry, has two Temples richly adorn'd with Pictures, and large Suburbs on both Sides the Channel.

Near

Near the City *Cao*, on the same Canal, there's a Lake, with a Stone in the Middle like a Dragon, with a Man's Head, which they call the Spirit of Thunder, because they say when struck on the Belly, it makes a Noise resembling it.

4. *Xantsui*, a well built City, surrounded with strong Walls and high Bulwarks, with the Ruins of great Structures in the Neighbourhood that had been destroy'd by the *Tartars*. Near it there's one of the most famous Idol Temples of *China*, built very high, with strong Walls, and the Tiles by the Reflexion of the Sun shine like Gold.

5. *Tuncham*, the 3d City of the Province, fortified as the rest, with large Streets and well built Houses. In the Middle there's a curious Fabrick, with 4 stately Arches, strong Walls and Bulwarks, and several Gates. The City is divided by the River, over which there's a Wooden Bridge of 137 Foot long. On the S. Side there are stately Suburbs, which equal the City. The Inhabitants trade chiefly in Silk, which abounds here more than in any other Part of the Empire. On the Top of a neighbouring Hill there's a Column of 100 Rods high, which being touch'd with one's Finger, sounds like a Drum. 6. *Lincing*, at the End of the Canal, near the River *Guei*, noted for an excellent Harbour, frequented from all Parts of the Empire, which makes this City very rich, and equal to any other in the Country for Number of People, fine Structures, and Plenty of all Things. The Ships pay Custom here before they are let thro' the Draw-Bridge, which lies in the Middle of one of 9 Arches, by which the two Parts of the City communicate, and there's a strong Castle on each Side the Channel, which command both the River and Town. The City is well built, has several stately Temples, and is encompassed with a Wall of Earth, the Top of which is cover'd with Stones. On the N. Side of the City there's a famous Temple, with a high Tower of wonderful Architecture. They ascend to it by Winding-Stairs, not built in the Middle of the Tower, but betwixt two Walls. The Tower is Octogone, and consists of 9 Stories of 13 Foot and a half each, and of a proportionable Thickness. The outer Wall is of Porcelain Mould, and adorn'd with Fret-work.

The Inside is fac'd with polish'd Marble of several Colours, as clear as a Mirror. The 9 Galleries on the Outside are of Marble, adorn'd with Images, and hung with fine Copper Bells at the Corner, which make a pleasant Jingling when mov'd by the Wind. The Windows are adorned with gilt Bars, which make a charming Prospect when the Sun shines on them. On the Top there's the Image of a She Idol 30 Foot high, made of Plaster-work, intermix'd with Bars of Gold and Silver, and round the Tower there are many Images of all Sizes, which are reckon'd the greatest Curiosities in *China*.

Nieuhoff adds, that there are 3 Islands on the Coast of this Province; 1. *Feuxeu*, which is very well built. 2. *Teuchang*, noted for the Death of 500 *Chinese* Philosophers, who drown'd themselves in the Sea, because their Emperor *Xais* hated all learned Men. 3. *Xaumen*, which is the largest and best Peopled.

7. SUCHUEN or SUCHEU,

Has Part of the great Wall on the W. *Xensi* on the N. and N.W. *Honan* and *Hu-quang* on the E. and S.E. and *Yunnan* and *Queichen* on the S. *Nieuhoff* says, the Country is large and fruitful, produces much Silk, and other rich Commodities. The River *Kiam* runs thro' it. In some Places 'tis mountainous, and in others full of Trees and Vallies. They have the best Horses in *China*, some Monkies, and Rhinoceroses. From hence comes the true *China* Root, that which grows elsewhere being wild and good for nothing. They have also indifferent Rhubarb, red and yellow Amber-Stones, which the Inhabitants counterfeit with so much Art, that 'tis hard to be discerned. They have likewise Store of Iron, Tin, Lead, Quicksilver, Salt, and Sugar-Canes. They have a River, whose Water sparkles in the Night as if it were full of Precious Stones, and therefore is call'd, *The River of Pearls*. *Nieuhoff* says, That in the Mountains of this Province, which border upon *Honan*, there's an absolute King, who has no Dependance upon the Emperor; but only for the Sake of good Correspondence, receives his Regalia from him. They don't suffer the *Chinese* to mix with them, and have many good Vallies, defended by inaccessible

cessible Mountains and narrow Passes. Near an Idol Temple in the City of *Kien* in this Province, they boast of a Tree 1000 Years old, so large, if you'll believe 'em, that 200 Sheep may stand under one Branch. They have a Fruit call'd *Lichi*, much esteem'd at Court. It grows upon high Trees in Clusters like Grapes, shap'd like a Hart, about the Size of an Acorn, and has a rough Shell. The Kernel is full of Juice, of a Purple Colour when ripe, smells like a Rose, and of a pleasant Taste. They have likewise a smaller Fruit which resembles it, is dry'd and sold in the Markets, and they have Plums that exceed Damask Prunes in Size and Goodness. It contains 39 great and small Garrisons.

Cingtu, the first chief City, was formerly the Residence of a great Prince next to the Emperor, in the Middle of which there was a stately Palace of 4 Miles round, with a large Street full of magnificent Triumphal Arches. *Nieuhoff* adds, that near this City there's a large Mountain, upon which they fancy that immortal Men converse.

Near *Chungking* there's a Sort of a white Rose, mix'd with purple, yellow, and red Spots, much larger and finer than ours, tho' not of so good a Scent. The Grandees cherish it in their Gardens, and call it the King of Flowers; and there are many Land Tortoises, which *Nieuhoff* says they keep in their Houses for Pleasure.

8. H O N A N,

Has *Xensi* and *Suchuen* on the W. *Xansi* and *Peking* on the N. *Xantung* and *Nanking* on the E. and *Huquam* on the S. *Nieuhoff* says, they have all Sorts of Gold Apples and Pomegranates, Snakes with white speckled Skins, whose Flesh infus'd in Wine is sovereign against Lameness. In this Province lies the Mountain *Fungboang*, so call'd from the Phoenix, which they fancy died here, and is lamented by all Birds once a Year, when the Inhabitants go by Night with Lights, and catch Multitudes. *Kircher* says, they have blue and green Tortoises here which have Wings upon their Feet. *Kao* says, the Country is champaign, and yields such Plenty of Rice, that a Hundred Weight is bought for a Shilling. Near to *Gaifung*, which was formerly the Royal Court

in this Province, there's a large Pool dug on purpose for training the People to Sea-Fights. The Banks are adorned with Idol Temples, and the Palaces of Grandees.

9. K I A M N I N or N A N K I N G,

Has *Honan* on the W. *Xantum* on the N. the Sea on the E. and Part of *Kiamsi* and *Chekiam* on the S. and is water'd by the Rivers *Kiam* and the *Yellow River*, besides some lesser ones. *Nieuhoff* says, it exceeds all the rest in Richness of Soil and Commerce. They have so many Ships, that all the Vessels in the World seem to be assembled here, and from hence one may pass to any Part of *China* by Water, and all Vessels bound higher up the Country rendezvous here. *Kao* says, they are 6 Months sailing from hence to *Peking*. The Natives are generally witty, civil, and industrious. They have many learned Men, and the ablest Tradesmen of all Sorts. They have great Manufactures of Cotton and Silk, which are manag'd by the Women, whilst the Men look after their Husbandry and Children. In this and the Province of *Junnan* are the best Elephants.

The chief City is of the same Name, on the S. Side of the River *Kiam*, about Lat. 32. Long. 137. according to *Moll*. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis very pleasantly situated in a fruitful Soil. The River runs quite thro' it in several Streams, navigable by great Vessels. It has had several Names, which we can't insist upon, having been chang'd by the several Emperors according to their Fancy. There's a broad deep Canal half a Mile from the River up to the Town, and over it a Bridge of Boats, with many curious Stone Bridges over the other Channels. The *Chinese* Geographers say, it exceeds all in the World for Size, Beauty, and Ornament. The Walls of this City are 6 Dutch Miles long, and the Suburbs longer. It has a double Wall, the first of Stone, above 30 Foot high, with Breast Works and Watch Towers, and 13 Gates, whose Doors are plated with Iron, and constantly guarded by Foot and Horse. Some of those Gates have 4 or 5 Arches, and the Water-Gate where the Vessels lie is continually crowded with People going out and in. The high Streets are 28 Paces broad, straight, and neatly pav'd, and

in the Night there's better Watch kept than any where else. The Houses of the ordinary Citizens are mean, stand with their Cross-Ridges next the Street, have but one Door, one Room, and a square Hole for a Window, with Reeds instead of Glass. They are but one Story high, cover'd with white Pantiles, and the Outside whited with Chalk. These are for the meanest Tradesmen; but the Shops of the chief Citizens and Merchants are filled with Cottons, Silks, *China* Dishes, Pearl, Diamonds, &c. and before each Shop a Board, with the Name of the Master and his Commodities in Gold Letters on a high Pole, with Pendants or Flags instead of Signs. They trade with small Pieces of uncoin'd Silver by Weight, and have commonly false Weights. The Inhabitants are reckon'd at a Million, yet every thing is plenty and cheap. They have also a Garrison of 40000 *Tartars*, commanded by the Governor of the S. Provinces. This Town likewise exceeds all the rest in *China* for stately Idol Temples, Towers, Triumphal Arches, and other Structures. The Palace lay on the S. Side of the City, was enclos'd with a Wall almost two Miles square, and was the most sumptuous Structure in *China*, till destroy'd by the *Tartars* during their last Conquest, out of Hatred to the Imperial Family; so that nothing now remains but some Gates and Part of the Walls. In the 2d Court of this Palace there's a great Bell about 11 Foot high, 3 Fathom and a half in Circumference, and about a quarter of a Yard thick. The *Chinese* boast of its sounding the best of any Bell in the World; but *Nieuhoff* says, it comes short of ours in *Europe*, and sounds very dull. They send the Emperor Presents in 5 Ships every three Months of Silks and Woollen. The Ships, says our Author, are the richest, best gilt, and painted, that ever he saw, and curiously adorned with Images. They likewise send him a Present of Fish *Saul*, formerly mentioned, twice a Week in Boats, which are drawn Day and Night by Men, who relieve one another at certain Stages; so that the Fish come fresh to *Peking* in 8 or 10 Days, tho' it be 200 *Dutch* Leagues from hence. The *Tartars* here live in Huts near an Idol Temple call'd *Paolinxi*, and leave the City to the Natives for the Encouragement of

their Trade. *Nieuhoff* describes the Temple thus: It stands in a Plain, where there are several Fanes and Porcellane Towers, with other curious Structures, among which there's a large one which exceeds all the rest in Art, Beauty, and Riches, and has above 10000 Images hung in exact Order about the Galleries and Walls. In the Middle of the Square there's a Porcellane Tower, which exceeds all those in *China* in Cost and Architecture. It has 9 Rounds, and 184 Steps to the Top. Each Round is adorned with a Gallery full of Images and Pictures, and handsome Windows. The Outside is glaz'd, and painted with several Colours, and the whole is so cemented, as if it were one entire Stone; and at the Corners of the Galleries there are Bells, like those before-mentioned. From the upper Gallery there's a noble Prospect of the City and adjacent Country. The *Tartars* oblig'd the *Chinese* to build this Tower, in Remembrance of their Conquest 700 Years ago, and on the Top of it there was a Pine Apple, as they say, of massy Gold. Round this Plain there are Woods of Pine, where their Emperors had formerly Sepulchres, which are now destroy'd. In the Neighbourhood there's a famous Idol, to whom they sacrifice Swine, Goats, and Cocks, for prosperous Voyages, the Priests behaving themselves during the Solemnity like Conjurers, and sprinkle the Image with the Blood of the Sacrifice. In some of these Temples they have Hell so painted to the Life, as fills the Beholders with Terror. *Gemelli* says, he was inform'd by several Missionaries, that in the City and Suburbs there are 8 Millions of Houses that pay Taxes, and 32 Millions of People; but he leaves the Reader to believe what he pleases. He ascribes the Multitude of the People to their all being obliged to marry, and their great Numbers of Concubines. They have two Governors, with some Hundreds of Mandarins to assist them, and a Vicar-General, who is over the two Viceroy's, and commands this and the neighbouring Province. They have a Triumphal Monument upon 3 Arches in Honour of the Emperor who passed twice thro' the City, and was met by 800000 Men. They make use of humane Dung to manure their Orchards, esteem that most which comes from Flesh,

and

and pretend to distinguish it by their Taste. 'Tis so frequently carried about in the Streets and on the River, that 'tis very noisome to Passengers; and along the Roads there are great Vessels under convenient Seats for Passengers to ease themselves, and save the Dung. *Kao* says, the Town is now 17 French Miles in Compass.

The next remarkable City of this Province is *Jamcefeu* or *Yangcheu*, noted for handsome Women, and a great Trade, particularly in Salt. The Inhabitants here prostitute their Daughters and Maid-Servants for Hire. The City is 5 Miles in Compass, has several Temples and Channels, with many Stone Bridges, and large Suburbs. There's a Toll-House, where Customs are paid for all Wares that pass. The *Chinese* say, it contains two Millions of Inhabitants.

Nieuhoff saw here two Sloops which they call Serpent-Boats. The Bunks of them resembled a Water-Snake. The Stern was hung with strange Serpents of several Colours, which made a gallant Show. They had 3 Masts, with an Idol on the Top of each, adorned with Silk Flags, &c. and on the Poop an Image dress'd with Ducks and Drakes. The Stern was filled with Standards, set off with Tassels of Hair, Silk Flags, and long Feathers, and the Boat cover'd with Silk. Under a high Deck there were 12 Rowers with gilt Crowns, and cloath'd in Silk; and near the Ducks stood a *Chinese* with a Feather'd Cap and a Fork, that he tortur'd the Birds with.

The other Towns of most Note describ'd by *Nieuhoff* are, 1. *Anking* or *Chichen*, on the S. Side of the River *Kiang*, two Miles in Compass, with a fine Suburb and Walls, above 20 Foot high, and fortified with Watch-Towers and Redoubts. 2. *Ufu*, on an Island in the same River, with populous and trading Suburbs, and strong Block-houses on each Angle of the Island. 'Tis noted for the best Armourers, Gun-smiths, and Lamp-makers, in *China*. 3. *Hoigan*, a rich and well built Sea-Port on the E. Side of the Royal River. It stands in a flat moorish Soil, with a Wall in the Middle, another quite round it, and is the Seat of the Viceroy, who has full Power over the 7 S. Provinces, and only owns the Emperor for his supreme Head.

10. YUNNAN or JUNNAN,

Has the Kingdom of *Ava* on the W. *Szechuen* on the N. *Queicheu* on the E. and *Laos* and Part of *Tonquin* on the S. according to *Moll*; but *Kao* and *Nieuhoff* bound it on the E. and S. E. with *Quangsi*. The former says, it produces Horses, Tygers, Elephants, Bears, Leopards, &c. *Martin* says, there's a Lake here which they fancy changes Leaves into small Black Birds. They have the precious Wood of *Aquila* and *Calamba*, formerly mentioned, in this and the Province of *Quangsi*. *Kao* says, it produces Gold, Silver, Copper, and Tin, with Rubies and other Precious Stones. The Country is partly mountainous, and partly champagne, and the Air very temperate. This Kingdom is very large, and *Kao* says only Tributary to the Emperor, so that he seems to exclude it out of the Number of the Provinces. The *Sansons* make this the most S. Province, and place it on the Gulph of *Cochinchina*. The Women are permitted to go to Market here, a Liberty granted to none else in *China*. Here are Mines of clear red Amber, good against Fluxes. *Nieuhoff* says, they have two Garrison Cities, and 14 other Forts.

11. QUEICHEN, QUEICHEU, or QUEICHEO,

Has *Yunnan* on the W. *Szechuen* on the N. *Huquan* on the E. and *Quangsi* and Part of *Tonquin* on the S. and S. W. according to *Moll*; but the *Sansons* place *Yunnan* on the S. *Szechuen* and *Huquan* on the E. and *Xensi* on the N. It has 8 great and small Garrison Cities, besides many Forts and Castles. *Kao* says, 'tis very mountainous, and produces a great deal of Quicksilver, Copper, and Tin. The Inhabitants are employ'd chiefly in making of Arms. *Nieuhoff* says, it produces sweet Jessamy, the *China* Root, and the Flower *Quei*, formerly mentioned.

12. HUQUAM or HUQUANG,

Has *Quangsi*, *Queicheu*, and *Szechuen*, on the W. Part of *Xensi* and *Honan* on the N. *Nanking* and *Kiamsi* on the E. and *Quantung* on the S. *Nieuhoff* says, it has 11 Garrison Cities. There are many Hills in this Province, particularly one call'd the *Yellow Hill*,
G g g g g from

from the Colour of its Earth and Stones, and in some Places they have Manna. They have Saffron-colour Flowers that grow in their Meres, and no where else in *China*. They have a sweet Fruit call'd the *Winter Gold-Apple*, because it grows ripe in the Winter. They have great Store of Geese, Lampries, and other Fish. In the River *Siang* in this Province there's a Creature like a Horse, with Tyger's Claws and Scales instead of Hair. *Kircher* says, there's a Mountain here from whence issues continual Blasts in the Summer, but none in the Spring or Autumn; and that there are certain Stones in this Province like Swallows, which the Physicians distinguish into Male and Female, and use in their Compositions. *Magaillans* says, they have Wax-Trees here as large as our Chestnuts. *Kao* says, it produces Cotton, Rice, and Corn, enough to furnish the whole Empire, and abounds with Oil. It has a Lake above 400 Miles in Compass, which is frequented by a vast Number of Ships, and runs with a pretty large Channel into the Canal of *Nanquin*.

13. *K I A M S I*, *K I A N G S I*, or *C H I - A M S I*,

Has *Huquam* on the W. *Nanking* on the N. *Chekiam* and *Fokien* on the E. and *Quantung* on the S. where the Hills of this Province, *Quantung* and *Fokien*, join together, and are inhabited, says *Nieuhoff*, by a barbarous People that live on Plunder and Robbery. The Soil is very fruitful, and abounds in Gold, Silver, Lead, Iron, and Tin Mines. The Country is encompassed with steep Mountains, interspersed with Lakes and Rivers full of Salmon and other Fish. 'Tis so populous, that many of the Natives are obliged to remove for want of Room to other Provinces. *Kircher* says, there's a Mountain here with two Tops, resembling a Dragon looking fiercely at a rampant Tyger, and another with 7 Tops like the 7 Stars. They have also the Trees of *Aquila* and *Calamba*, and the Fruit *Ananas*. They have an Animal which breeds Musk, and on one of their Mountains a certain Stone which takes all Colours, according to the Quality of the Air. They foretel the Weather by it. *Kao* says, there's a Lake here 300 Miles in Circuit, navigable by great Ships, and sur-

rounded by a Multitude of fine Towns and Cities. It receives all the Rivers of this Province, and discharges them into the great River of *Nanking*. The *Sansons* say, that the Mountain *Mulin*, on the Frontiers of *Canton*, is noted for a great Concourse of People to carry Goods, which are transported from *Canton* to *Nanking* by the River of *Canton*, till they come to the Foot of this Mountain, where they are taken out of the Vessels, and carried over the Mountain upon Men's Backs to the other Side, where there's another navigable River, which runs thro' this Province, and falls into the great Lake that runs into the River *Nanking*.

The chief City is *Nanchang* or *Kiangsi*, situate in the Center of the great Lake *Poyang*. *Nieuhoff* says, it has 7 Gates, and 4 stately Temples richly adorned. At the Entrance of it there's the Guardian Idol, and store of other Images, one of which is cloath'd like the old *Romans* with a Crimson Mantle, and on each Side stand two high Poles, with Dragons cut on the Top. The adjacent Soil is very fruitful in Corn, &c. They keep great Herds of Swine.

2. *Nangan*. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis divided by the River *Chang*, and has a great Trade. The S. Part is well built, and populous. In this Province grows that for its Excellency call'd Silver Rice, made use of at Court.

3. *Cancheu* or *Chancheu*. *Nieuhoff* says, it lies on the River *Can*, 60 Miles from *Canton*, has a high Stone Wall two Miles in Compass, 4 Gates, and a strong high Tower at the E. End. Near this City there's a Bridge of 130 Boats, so contriv'd as to open and shut for the Passage of Vessels. *Gemelli* says, the French Jesuits have a small Church here.

14. *C H E K I A M* or *C H E K I A N G*,

Has *Kiamfi* on the W. *Nanking* on the N. W. and N. the Sea on the E. and *Fokien* on the S. *Nieuhoff* says, there's many Canals in this Province, and abundance of fierce Tygers, tho' the Soil of the Mountain *Cutin* here is of that Quality as to tame all Tygers and Snakes brought to it. They have Woods of Mulberry Trees, which they cut every Year, because the Leaves of the lowest Trees produce the best Silk, of which there's such vast Quantities in

in this Province, that 10 Suits of Silk may be bought for less here than one of Cloth in *Europe*. There are Trees here which 80 Men cannot fathom; and *Kircher* says, they have Reeds so large, that one of their Joints will hold a Kilderkin of Liquor. They have also Tallow Trees. The Province in general is mountainous, and inferior to the rest in Fertility and Number of Inhabitants, but produces two profitable Commodities which none of the rest have, viz. 1. Many Thousand Bales of the best Paper; and, 2. The Gum call'd *Cie*, which makes an excellent shining Varnish, and Drops from Trees that resemble Firs. They can make it of any Colour, but prefer the Gold and Black Colours. Its Exhalations, when preparing, cause Swellings and Consumptions; but they have Antidotes to prevent it. They have a particular Sort of Silk, set apart to be embroider'd with Gold, &c. for the Emperor's Use. It has 15 chief Garrisons.

The Towns of Note are, 1. *Quinzay*, now *Hamchen* or *Hangchen*, the Metropolis. *Moll* places it on a River 360 Miles N. of our Factory at *Amoy*, above 560 from *Canton*, and but 140 from *Chusan*. *Le Comte* says, 'tis one of the richest, greatest, and most populous, Cities of *China*. 'Tis 4 Leagues round, besides the Suburbs, and has a Garrison of 10000 Men. Its Canals are crowded with Boats, the Streets pav'd, and their Shops very neat. On the E. it has a River half a League in Breadth, and on the W. a Lake about two Leagues round, where the Inhabitants have Pleasure-Boats; and there's an Island in the Middle, with a Temple, and some Houses of Devotion. The Corners of the Streets are adorned with lofty Triumphal Arches. It has 4 Towers, each 9 Stories high, and on the 18th Day of every 8th Month the River flows higher than ordinary, of which their Philosophers know not the Cause. *Magallans* proves that this is *Kimsai*, or the famous *Quinzay*, to which *Paul* the *Venetian* ascribes 12000 Bridges, most of them so high, that Vessels may sail under some of them without striking their Masts; but this he thinks fabulous. *Cluverius* doubts whether this was the Court of the King of *Tartary* or of *China*; but *Magallans* says, 'twas the Court of the Princes of the House of *Sum*, whom the *Western Tartars* drove out. *Martin* says, the City

and Suburbs was above 100 *Italian* Miles round in his Time, and that 'twas encompassed on the S. W. Side by a Lake 40 *Italian* Miles round, environ'd with Temples, Palaces, Monasteries, and private Edifices, and furnished with a great Number of high Bridges. *Herbert* says, 'tis the most remarkable City in the E. for Variety of ancient Rarities.

2. *Sucheu* or *Soutcheou*, which *Moll* places on the N. Side of the great Lake. *Le Comte* says, 'tis as big as the former. 'Tis the Seat of the Viceroy, and has as great a Trade as any City of the Empire. *Nieuhoff* says, there are hollow Reeds which grow in a River near this Place hard as Iron, two or three Handfuls thick, with green or black Stalks 3 or 4 Rods in Height. Of these the Natives make Mattresses, Baskets, Canes, Pikes, Lances, Perspective Glasses, &c. They drink the Water which drops from it, when laid green on the Fire, to cure Bruises, &c. They boil the young Shoots with Flesh, and pickle them in Vinegar.

3. *Ningpo* or *Nimpo*, on the Coast. *Moll* places it 90 Miles W. from our Factory at *Chusan*. *Le Comte* says, the Harbour is of difficult Entrance, especially for great Ships, the Bar being never above 15 Foot under Water at the highest Tides. 'Tis but two Days Passage from hence to *Japan*, with which they have a great Trade in Silks, Sugar, Drugs, and Wine, which they exchange for Gold, Silver, and Brass. 'Tis a City of the first Class; and tho' much damaged by the late Wars, the Walls are good, the Suburbs populous, the Garrison numerous, and 'tis full of Triumphal Arches.

4. *Vencheu*, where *Martin* says they sow their Fields with Oyster-Shells. Mr. *Cunningham*, F. R. S. and Physician to our Factory at *Chusan*, who enquir'd into the Truth of this, says, in a Letter to the Royal Society dated in 1701, That he was told they sprinkle the Shells with Urine after they have taken out the Oysters, and then put them into the Water again, where they breed new Oysters.

The Islands near the Shore are, 1. *Chusan* or *Cheuxan*. Mr. *Cunningham*, who places it about Lat. 30. says, there's an *English* Factory here. 'Tis 8 or 9 Leagues from E. to W. 4 or 5 in Breadth, and about 3 from the Point of the main Land call'd *Cape Liampo*

or *Khitu*. There's a good Harbour at the W. End near our Factory, which is built close by the Shore in a low Valley, with near 200 Houses about it, inhabited by Men for the Benefit of Trade; but their Wives dwell at a Town three quarters of a Mile within Land, surrounded with a fine Stone Wall 3 Miles in Circuit, fortified with 22 square Bastions, and 4 great Gates, planted with a few old Iron Guns. The Houses are but mean. The Governor of the Island lives there, with 3 or 4000 Soldiers and Fishermen. They abound with Cows, Buffaloes, Goats, Deer, wild and tame Hogs, Geese, Ducks, and Hens, Rice, Wheat, Calavances, Coleworts, Turnips, Potatoes, Carrots, Beetes, Spinnage, Tea, &c. but the Merchandize comes from the Continent, for they have no Manufacture except Lacquer'd Ware. When he wrote, they were beginning to plant Mulberry Trees for Silk. He adds, That about 50 Years before his Time, the Island was very populous, till ruin'd by the *Tartars*; after which, it remain'd desolate till about 18 Years before, when the Governor of *Ting-hai* built the present Fort to curb Pyrates; and in 4 Years time, the Island beginning to be peopled, a General was sent to govern it for 3 Years, who made it a free Port.

2. *Pouto*. Mr. *Cunningham* says, 'tis 9 Leagues from the Factory, and 3 Miles E. of the Island of *Chusan*. 'Tis 5 Leagues in Circuit, and noted for superstitious Pilgrimages. 'Tis inhabited only by 3000 unmarried Bonzes, who have 400 Pagods here, of which two are great ones, adorned with stately Idols, finely carv'd and gilded, and two chief Priests, who govern all the rest. They frighten the Emperor from coming hither to see their Rogueries by Stories of dangerous Thunder. There are several Avenues cut thro' the Island, pav'd with Stones, and planted with Trees. Their Dwellings are the best in these Parts, and they are maintain'd by the Offerings of the *Chinese* Junks, which touch here in their Way to and from *Japan*, in order to obtain good Luck.

3. *Kimrong*. Mr. *Cunningham* says, it lies 5 Leagues from *Pouto*, in the Way to *Nimpo*, and is chiefly inhabited by Mandarins who retire hither after they have serv'd their Offices. 'Tis said, there are some Sil-

ver Mines here; but they must not be open'd.

Mr. *Cunningham* says, the other adjacent Islands are either desert, or inhabited by none except a few Fishermen, but well stored with Deer.

15. *QUAMSI* or *QUANGSI*.

Moll says, it has Part of *Tonquin* on the W. *Queichen* on the N. *Huquam* and *Quantung* on the E. and Part of *Quantung* on the S. but the *Sansons*, *Nieuhoff*, and others, place *Junnan* on the W. and the Bay of *Cochinchina* on the S. *Nieuhoff* says, there's a Spring in this Province half clear, and half muddy; so that if the Waters are mingled together, they presently separate; and that there's a Hill here shap'd like an Elephant. They have Trees of which they make Linen-Cloth, more worn here than Silk, and large Hogs with great strong Bristles, which they dart like Porcupines; but they are blunt. *Kircher* says, they have Trees of Arack, and one with a mealy Pulp, of which they make Bread. They have Elephants, Tygers, and other Wild Beasts; and in the Cleft of one of their Mountains there are Fish with four Feet and Horns, which they call the Dragon's Delight, and make it a Capital Crime to injure them; an Animal with a Bird's Head and Fish's Tail, call'd *Rondoves* or Swallows, that always turn towards the Wind; and Crabs, which, if taken out of the Water, are soon petrified. *Martin* says, they have Serpents 30 Foot long. *Kao* says, the greatest Part of this Province is mountainous, but the rest very fruitful in Cinnamon, which is stronger in Scent, and hotter upon the Tongue, than that of *Ceylon*; Sapao Wood, other excellent Sorts for Cabinets, and great Quantities of Rice, which they transport to *Canton*. They also make good Porcellane here. He adds, that the Province is able to raise a Million of Fighting Men. The *Sansons* say, it abounds in the same Commodities as *Quantung*, but is not so frequented by Merchants, because all its Rivers run into that Province.

16. *QUANTUNG* or *CANTON*.

The most S. Province of *China*, has *Tonquin* and *Quamsi* on the W. Part of *Huquam* and

and *Kiamsi* on the N. *Fokien* on the N. E. and the Sea on the S. *Nieuhoff* says, there are several safe Harbours and Roads on the Coast; that 'tis pretty champagne, but mountainous to the S. and produces all Necessaries for Life. They have two Harvests a Year. Their Winter is very warm, so that their Fields are always verdant, and the Natives chew the Leaves of Betel and Arack. It produces great Quantities of Gold, Pearl, Precious Stones, Silk, Quicksilver, Copper, Steel, Iron, Saltpetre, Eagle Wood, and other odoriferous Woods. The People are very laborious, nimble, and ingenious. They have great Store of Ducks and other Fowls, and hatch their Duck-Eggs in Ovens or Dunghills. The Viceroy of this Province takes Place of all the others, 'Tis situate upon the Frontiers, so far from *Peking* and upon the Sea, that the Highways and the Coast are pester'd with Robbers and Pyrates. In some Places here there are no Houses, but Ruins for several Miles together. In certain Islets near *Cingcheu* there grows an Herb which makes Horses strong and swift, and another call'd, *The Herb of a Thousand Years*, because it never dies. They say, the Decoction of it in Water makes white Hairs black, and prolongs Life. They have another Herb that shews which Way the Wind blows, and whether Storms are at hand. They have Mountains full of tough Osiers, of which they make Mattresses to lie upon, and Cordage for Vessels. *Martin* says, 'tis full of Prickles, spreads sometimes a whole Furlong, and often entangles Deer. They have a Reed of which they make Pipes, and other Things of a shining Black like Ebony, and a Fruit which the *Chinese* call *Venku*, the *Portuguese*, *Jamboa*; and the *Dutch*, *Pomelmoe*. It grows upon a Thorn-Tree like Lemons, but is bigger, has a white well-scented Blossom, and makes a sweet Water. The Fruit is as big as a Man's Head; the Shell is like the *Gold Apple* in Colour, but the Pap is reddish and sour-sweet, like an unripe Grape. They press a Liquor out of it for drinking. They have likewise *Indian* great and small Nuts, the Fruit *Jaca* and *Ananas*, the Fig-tree, and a Creature call'd the Swift Cow, which can run above 300 Miles in a Day. *Nieuhoff* adds; that on a certain Mountain in this Province there grows a

Fruit which may be eaten there; but if a Man goes to bring any off, he cannot find his Way down. *Martin* says, there's a Mountain here with a Pool in it, which makes a Noise like Thunder if a Stone be cast into it, and causes Showers from the Sky. *Kircher* says, they have a Creature call'd the *Saffron Fish*, which turns into a Bird of that Colour in Summer, and flies over the Mountains for Food, but returns to Sea after Autumn, and is chang'd again into a Fish, which the Natives count a Dainty. They say they have another call'd the *Swimming Cow*, which often comes ashore and fights with the Land-Cows, till its Horn waxes soft by being long out of the Water, and then it returns to the Water again to harden it. There's also a Sea-Monster in these Parts, like a Sea-Spider or a Tortoise, with 4 Eyes and 6 Feet, which lives upon Oysters, and vomits up Things like Pearls. *Le Comte* says, they have a Fruit here call'd *Letchi*, as big as a Nut. The Stone is long and large, the Meat soft and waterish, but more delicious than any of our Fruits, and of so hot a Nature, that too much of it makes a Man's whole Body break out in Pimples. They dry it with the Rind, and sweeten their Tea with it, tho' they have brown and white Sugar. They have another call'd *Louyen*, or Dragon's-Eye, both here and in *Fokien*. The Tree is as large as a Walnut-Tree, the Fruit round, and the outward Rind smooth and grey; but as it ripens, it grows yellow. The Meat is white, and very full of a sharp Juice, which is cool and inoffensive. *Kao* says, above 100 *English*, *Dutch*, and *Portuguese* Ships, come and go every Year to and from this Province. The latter trade hither chiefly from *Macao*, for which they pay the Emperor a Million of Rixdollars per Annum. The chief Manufactures of *Quantung* are Silks, Porcellane, Tin, Iron, Copper, Paper, &c.

The chief City is *Canton*, *Kanceow*, or *Quanchen*, which *Moll* places under the Tropick of Cancer, about 212 Miles S. W. of our Factory at *Amoy*. The *Sansons* place it a Degree and a half S. of the Tropick, and *Nieuhoff* half a Degree. He says, 'tis surrounded with fruitful Hills, and has the best Harbour in *China*. It lies on the Right Side of the River *Ta*, which falls with a wide Mouth into the Sea. The Town is walled

in for 3 Miles up the River, and has several rich and populous Suburbs, equal to ordinary Cities. 'Tis defended on the Water-Side by two Rows of high thick Walls, fortified with Bulwarks, Watch-Towers, &c. besides two strong Water-Castles built in the Middle of the River, which render it impregnable. On the Land-Side 'tis defended by a good Wall, and 5 strong Castles, some within the Wall, and others upon the neighbouring Hills. It exceeds all the Cities of *Asia* for Idol Temples, Courts, Palaces, and other publick Buildings, and there are no less than 13 stately Triumphal Arches between the Water-Gate and the Palace. It formerly exceeded all the other *Chinese* Cities in Ships and Sailing, and was so populous, says *Martin*, before the last Siege by the *Tartars*, (when they lost above 100000 Men) that 5 or 6 were crowded to Death every Day in passing thro' the Gates to and from the adjacent Villages, which are many and populous. It was taken in 1650 by Treachery, after above a Year's Siege, and the *Tartars* put above 8000 to Death in cold Blood in 80 Days time, and cry'd nothing in their Streets but Fire and Sword from November 26, to December 15. In a few Years after 'twas restored to its former Lustre. *Lockyer* says, the Port was not in much Repute with our *East-India* Company till of late Years, that the Merchants of *Maderas* preferred it to *Amoy*. He says, it lies 50 Miles up the River, where Vessels of 100 Tun may ride at low Water. The Streets are long, narrow, and pav'd with broad Stones, without Carts or Coaches. The Houses are like the rest of *China*. Their Silk-men are as nice as our Mercers, and live in the best Part of the Town at great Rents, with one Shop within another. They have a curious Way of rolling up their Silks with Brass Rods, so that he wonders why 'tis not us'd by us. Their Rooms are commonly parted with a slight Sort of white Deal, with Rattan Windows in the Summer, or else left wide open, with a Bambou Curtain like a Wire-Grate, to let down upon Occasion; but in Winter they are of Oyster-Shells, fix'd Diamond-wise in Wooden Frames. Instead of Chimnies, they have Stows placed in the Middle of their Dining-Rooms, and they burn nothing in their Chambers but Charcoal. Their Iron

Pots for boiling are fix'd in a thick Wall, rais'd from the Ground. They build with burnt or raw Bricks, and cover their Houses with Pantile. Most of the large Streets have high Gates at each End, which are not open'd after 10 at Night, unless upon the Request of the Mandarin of the Ward, or extraordinary Occasions. At that Time the Mandarin's Officers begin their Walks, and punish all Vagabonds they meet with without Mercy. They are very insulting, so that Men of Fashion seldom stir abroad after Night without a privileg'd Lantern. Instead of White-washing, they line the Walls of their Chambers with a thin Sort of white Paper, which is very cheap, and looks well, but not lasting. The Guns on the Town-Walls were in a sorry Condition when *Lockyer* was here, fir'd only upon Festivals, and their Powder as small as Dust. Provisions and Fruit are brought hither from the best Gardens within 10 Miles of the Place. They have several Sorts of Fish, especially large Eels, Jacks, and the biggest Carps in the World, but of a muddy Taste. *Kao* says, the Town is two Miles in Compass, besides a Castle and Fort of vast Extent, and was computed to contain almost a Million of Families. *Gemelli* says, 'tis 150 Miles from *Macao*. The Custom-House here is kept in a great Bark, with several Cabbins for the Officers. The Fathers of *St. Francis* have a Monastery here, and two Churches in the Suburb, maintain'd by the K. of *Spain*. The Town and Suburbs are divided by a Wall, which runs thro' both into the New and Old Town. The Viceroy, Soldiery, and Courts of Justice, reside in the latter, and the most Shops are in the former, and here are two Governors; but we refer to *Gemelli* for the Particulars. He was told by the *Spanish* Missionaries, that the City and Suburbs contain 4 Millions of Souls, and the Province as many more. Chairmen are very common here, who will carry a Man 6 Miles for Sixpence. They go after the Rate of 5 Miles an Hour. These Travelling-Chairs are made of light Cane, with a Piece of Wood to put across their Necks instead of Straps, which cut their Necks.

2. *Fuxan* or *Fuscian*, which *Kao* says lies about 4 Miles from *Canton*, and tho' no more than a *Chinese* Village, drives the greatest Trade

Trade in *China*, is full of all Sorts of Manufactures, and is inhabited by 60000 Families, and a Million of Souls. *Gemelli* says, 'tis two Miles in Length on both Sides the River, well built, tho' low, and full of rich Shops, insomuch that here are above 1000 Silk Looms, in which they make four Pieces at once. There's no Court of Justice here, because 'tis subject to *Canton*.

3. *Nanyunfu* or *Nambun*, the last City of this Province on the Borders of *Kiamfi*, in Lat. 25. Long. 142. according to *Gemelli*. 'Tis an unavoidable Thoroughfare into the N. is a Mile and a half in Length, a quarter in Breadth, and has abundance of Shops for Goods and Provisions. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis large, well situate, fortified with Walls and Bulwarks, divided by a River, over which there's a Bridge, and 'tis full of Idol Temples. He saw several Houses with our Saviour's Name in Capitals over the Door, and here's a Custom-House, which accepts Bills of Lading upon the Merchants Word without further Trouble. He adds, That in the Neighbourhood there's the best Mould in *China* for Porcellane. Near *Cao-chen* in this Province there's a Creature with a Bird's Head, a Fish's Tail, and Precious Stones in its Belly.

17. FOKIEN or CHINCHEO,

Has *Kiamfi* on the W. *Chekiam* on the N. the Sea on the E. and Part of *Canton* on the S. The *Sansons* say, 'tis not so fruitful as *Chekiam* or *Canton*, but the Inhabitants drive a great Trade to *Japan*, the *Philippine* Isles, and *Formosa* or *Bell Isle*. It produces Gold, Sugar, *Calamba* Wood, and the Inhabitants make all Sorts of Paper. *Nieuhoff* says, it abounds in excellent Gold Apples, Ananas, and the Fruit *Licht*, mentioned in *Suchuen*.

Martin says, there's a Mountain here in the Form of an Idol sitting cross-legged, and that the Eyes, Ears, Mouth, and Nostrils, may be plainly perceived at two Miles Distance. *Kircher* says, That near the Lake *Chung*, there's a fair House, where may be heard the Noise of Bells ringing at the Approach of any Rain or Tempest; and there's an Animal here exactly like a Man, but all over Hairy, and is a great Devourer of humane Flesh, which he catches by feigning a Laughter; and while Travellers listen, sets upon them. There's a famous Bridge here, which *Kircher* says is 60 Perches in Length, 6 in Breadth, and cost 4 Millions of Crowns in Building. *Martin* says, 'tis built all of black hewn Stone on 300 great Stone Piles instead of Arches, with 1400 Stones upon the Top of each Pile, 22 Paces long, and two in Breadth. The Bridge is railed on both Sides with Lions cut in Stone, and other Ornaments. 'Tis said, there's a Lake of green Water here which turns Iron into Copper.

The chief Town and Haven is *Emouy* or *Amoy*, where there's a *British* Factory in a little Island near the Shore. *Le Comte* says, the biggest Ships may ride secure and close to Land. It has a good Trade, is very populous, and the Emperor has a Garrison here of 6 or 7000 Men. *Dampier* says, it stands on a navigable River.

Thus we have finished this great and famous Empire thro' all its Divisions, chief Cities and Remarkables, except such Towns as lie under the Ruins of the *Tartars*, and the Stories of many of their Idols and Cataracts, which was inconsistent with our designed Brevity; but must refer the Curious to *Magaiians* and *Ogilby's China*, where they are largely described by *Nieuhoff*.

C H A P. XI.

The INDIAN ISLANDS.

LURTS and the *Sansons* divide 'em into those which lie on the Coast of *China* and *India*, nearer and more remote. The nearest to the Coast of *China* they subdivide into the Islands of *Japan*, those that depend on *China*, and the *Philippine* Islands. For the Particulars contain'd under those Divisions, we must refer to them. Those which lie at a great Distance from *China* they divide into the *Ladrones* and *Molucca's*, the most remarkable of which we shall take in their Place. The Islands on the Coast of *India* they divide into such as lie near the Peninsula's on both Sides the *Ganges*; the chief of which, not already described, we shall take as they lie, according to the Course of the Map.

I. S U M M A T R A.

Schouten says, it begins at $5\frac{1}{2}$ N. Lat. and ends in the 6th of S. Lat. Its Situation is S. E. and N. W. He says, 'tis 19 Leagues long, 50 where broadest, and about 480 round. He supposes it to be as large as *Great Britain* and *Ireland* together, and by Consequence one of the greatest Islands in the World. It has the Streights of *Malacca* on the N. E. which part it from the Peninsula beyond *Ganges*, the great *Indian* Sea on the S. W. and the Streights of *Sunda*, which part it from *Java*, on the S. E. For *Moll's* Boundary and Situation of this and the other Islands, we refer to his Maps. The *Sansons* extend it from N. Lat. 6. to S. Lat. 6. *Schouten* says, 'tis diversified by Mountains, Vallies, fruitful Plains, Forrests and Rivers, and that in some Places 'tis not above 6 or 8 Leagues from *Malacca*. The Middle of it is under the Equinoctial. The great Heats make the Air very unwholesome, especially during the rainy Season, when most Evenings they have sudden Tempests and sud-

den Calms, which he ascribes to their numerous Marshes, from whence the Sun raises abundance of stinking Exhalations. Their sudden Heats and Colds occasion putrid Fevers and languishing Distempers. The West Side of the Island, particularly about *Ticon* and *Riaman*, is the worst both for Natives and Strangers, and makes 'em pale and bloated; but those who remove to *Sillebar* are cur'd of their languishing Distempers. 'Tis very populous, especially in the N. Parts, where they have all Necessaries for Life. Their Mountains are high, cover'd with Trees, and have Mines of Gold, Silver, Tin, Iron, Brass, Copper, other Metals, and Sulphur. They have no Wheat or Rye, but prodigious Quantities of Rice, Barley, Honey, Wax, Sugar, Ginger, Pepper, with which they load many Vessels every Year, and several other Sorts of Fruit. In their Desarts they have Elephants, Tygers, Rhinoceroses, Boars, Deer, Goats, Porcupines, Serpents, and Monkies. Their Rivers are pester'd with Crocodiles; but they have Store of fresh and salt Water Fish, Buffaloes, Beeves, Horses, and Fowl of all Sorts. The *Sansons* say, they have Diamonds, Silk, Bezoar, Cinnamon, Mace, Cloves, Millet, &c. so that it is reckon'd the famousst Island of the E. both for Extent and Riches. *Mandelsloe* says, it also produces Coco's, Camphire, Cassia, the *Arbor Tristis*, formerly mentioned, and whole Woods of white Sandal; and that there's a Vulcano in the Center of the Island. They have also Palm Wine, Areka, and *Indian* Fig-Trees. *Nienhoff* says, they have Jacynths, Emeralds, sulphurous Springs which resemble Oil, and issue from the Rocks as well as the Earth. Their Water is good against Lameness, and has a strong Scent, but not nauseous. The K. of *Achem* forbids the Exportation of it on Pain of Death, so that what Foreigners get is by Stealth. They have Reeds almost 300 Fathoms

The Principal Islands
of the
EAST INDIES,
According to the Newest Observations,
By Herman Moll, Geographer.



thom high. He adds, That they have Oranges, Lemons, Tamarins, Potatoes, Cotton Trees, white Benzoin, Aloes, and Eagles Wood. They have very large Bats, and is the only Island of the *East-Indies* where there are Bears. They have many Rivers, which we can't insist upon; one of them called *Indapura*, whose Water is red, and dyes the Sea for two Leagues. He ascribes this to the Bark of Oaks which grow on its Banks, and on the neighbouring Marshes, and says, the Water is very unwholesome. The Air is pestilential about this River, and that call'd the *Devil's Isle*, so that it kills Men and Beasts almost as soon as they come ashore; and tho' they get off ever so speedily, they generally die soon after.

The Inhabitants, he says, are of a large Stature, a black and brown Complexion, the Women well shap'd, more fair, have no Notion of Chastity, but prostitute themselves for Money. Their Religion is that of *Mahomet*. They have as many Wives as they can keep, but one is reckon'd the Chief. Their Women of Quality are seldom seen abroad. Within Land are certain Pagans, the Remains of the ancient Man-eaters, called *Bataches* or *Batatas*. They not only devour Strangers, but their nearest Relations when old or decrepid. Most of them are naked, except a Wrapper about their Privities. The Rich wear Coats of Silk or Callico, with a Napkin about their Heads. They cut off Hands and Feet for the least Crimes, and punish Capital Offences in the most barbarous Manner. They were generally given to the *Cannibals* in ancient Times, who cut off their Arms and Legs, threw Pepper on their Trunk, and then eat it up.

This Island, especially the Kingdom of *Achem*, is much frequented by Merchants from all Parts of the *Indies*. Some Places on the W. Coast are under the Protection of the *Dutch East-India Company*, to whom they must sell all their Silver and Gold at certain Rates. Here are also *Pedro-Porcos* sold at 200 Crowns apiece. The *English* have their chief Pepper Factories at *Jamby* and *Palimbang*, where they are much esteem'd by the King. Commodities imported to this Island are Pieces of Eight, *Chinese* Gold, Iron, Wire, Steel, Callicoes, Woollen

Cloth, Quilts, Silks, Salt, &c. which they exchange for their own Commodities.

Their general Language is the *Mallayan*, tho' they speak several others. They have Schools to instruct their Youth in Reading and Writing. He adds, That some divide it into 30 petty Kingdoms, for whose Names we refer to him: Others into 4, and some into 10. Most of them are swallowed up in that of *Achem*, the powerfulest in the Island, which has under it the Kingdoms and Cities of *Pedir*, *Pazem*, *Daya*, *Barros*, *Pastaman*, *Pryaman*, and *Padang*, besides those of *Queda* and *Pera* on the Continent of *Malacca*. The S. Parts, viz. *Pillabar*, *Dampin*, *Liampon*, *Pabinbang*, *Jamby*, and others, are subject to the K. of *Bantam* or the Emperor of *Java*.

The Kingdom of *Achem* or *Achin* lies in the N. W. Part of the Island. The Capital is of the same Name, lies on the N. W. Point, in a Plain along a pleasant River, about a League and a half from the Sea. *Schouten* says, That on the Left Bank there's a Fort which commands the Harbour. The Royal Fortress is spacious, encompassed with a Ditch well fortified, according to the *Indian* Manner, and mounted with Cannon. *Nieuhoff* says, it has 7 Gates, and that there are several other Redoubts in the adjoining Marshes for Defence of the Town. The Houses are built on Posts, because the City is overflowed in the rainy Season. They are ascended by Steps, and cover'd with Reeds. *Lockyer* places the Town in N. Lat. 5. 20. He says, 'tis very considerable for Trade, and adds to the above-mention'd Commodities imported, Opium, Salt-Petre, Tobacco, Rice, Buffaloes Butter turn'd to Oil, Cotton, Muslin, Salampores, Chints, and Gunpowder; Ivory, Bees-Wax, Mortivan, small Jars, and Pepper, from other Parts of the Island. When a Ship arrives at the Mouth of the River, the Guards give Notice to the Officers, who swear those that land to observe the Articles made betwixt the Natives and the Companies that the Ship belongs to, before which they cannot trade. The Shabander gives the Oath by lifting up a short Dagger in a Gold Case three times to their Heads. The *English East-India Company* had a Factory here, which they recalled, because it did not an-

H h h h h

swer;

fewer; yet they have still great Privileges, and such *English* as would enjoy them, must pass for Members of the Company, in which Case they pay only Presents to the King and the Court, which amounts to about 16 or 17 *Tael* or Pieces in the whole of the Goods they import. Then they must hire a House for their Goods. Other Foreigners pay from 5 to 8 *per Cent*. The Houses are pallisado'd every one by themselves, except in two or three of the chief Streets, where they have their Exchange, and the Street where the *Chinese* live. The *Europeans* live in a long Street near the River, and keep Fire-Arms for fear of the Natives, who are great Thieves. The chief Traders have large Ovens to secure their best Goods from Fire. For their particular Way of Trading, we must refer to *Lockyer*. Their Mosques are of Brick and Stone. The chief Distempers here are Fevers, Fluxes, and Agues, occasioned frequently by Intemperance or sleeping in the Air, which is very chilly in the Night, because of the great Dew. They have frequent and fierce Tempests of Wind, Thunder, and Lightning, in the dry Season; and the Streets being unpav'd, are dusty. They were govern'd by a King when our Author was here, but formerly by Queens, who had 12 Lords, all absolute, in their Precincts, that us'd to rule them. The Shabander bears the greatest Sway, so that Strangers must keep fair with him. The Natives are always arm'd with Swords, Daggers, Targets, &c. and are very jealous of *Europeans*. *Nieuboff* says, That 4 Shabanders or Noblemen have the chief Government under the King; that in 1663 they were govern'd by a Queen, who inclin'd to marry a *Dutchman*; but the Council of *Batavia*, for weighty Reasons, would not allow it. The King has a great many Concubines, who are likewise his Guards, and he has many Eunuchs to attend his Person. His Subjects are most noted for Conduct and Courage of any in the Island or neighbouring Continent, and drive a considerable Trade by Sea and Land. His chief Riches consist in Gold, Precious Stones, and Elephants. His Titles are as blasphemous as those of the K. of *Siam*. His Subjects are perfect Slaves to him, yet proud, bold, treacherous, and bloody, towards others, have

no Regard to Oaths or Promises, and are great Enemies to Christianity. Their usual Diet, in which they are temperate enough, is Rice, Fish, Coco-Nuts, and Herbs. Their Cookery is but ordinary, and their common Drink Water; but the better Sort drink Palm Wine and Arack. They have pretty good Tradesmen of all Sorts for Arms, Cannon, Utensils, Shipping, &c. They are sworn Enemies to the *Portuguese*, with whom they have had frequent Wars.

Barros is the Capital of a Kingdom of the same Name, S. E. from *Achin*, near the W. Coast. The Town lies on a considerable River. *Sinkel*, *Laba*, and *Daya*, which are Tributary to *Achin*, lie also hereabout.

Pedir, the Capital of another Kingdom of the same Name, 10 Leagues E. of *Achin*, but now subject to the latter, from which it is parted by a high Mountain.

Ticoa is the Capital of a Kingdom a few Leagues S. of the Line, but indifferently built. *Passaman* and *Priaman* are Capitals of other Kingdoms in the Neighbourhood. The latter is pretty well inhabited, and abounds with Pepper and Provisions. We have very little Description of the rest of the Kingdoms depending on *Achem*, only that *Dely*, *Pacem*, *Aru*, *Camper*, *Andregiri*, *Jamby*, and *Palimbam*, lie on the E. Coast, and the three latter have a great Trade in Pepper, Drugs, and Gold, with the *Dutch*, especially at *Andripoura* and at *Padang*, which lies on a fine River, much frequented by Merchant Ships.

About 4 Leagues S. of the Line lies *Silabar*, in a Bay on a large River. 'Tis surrounded with rocky Mountains and large Woods. The adjoining Country abounds in Pepper, and, with the Town, is subject to the K. of *Bantam*.

Palimbang or *Palimbam*, lies on the E. in S. Lat. 3. according to *Moll*. 'Twas formerly one of the chief Cities of *Sumatra*, but destroy'd by the *Dutch* in 1659, because the Inhabitants had some Years before treacherously surpris'd some of their Vessels, and barbarously murder'd their Crews. 'Twas defended by several Forts well mounted with Cannon, and the Fortifications of the Town consisted of vast Trunks of Trees laid close together, and planted with abundance of great Guns. They had also great Numbers of Fire Engines, so contriv'd as

to float like Castles on the River, which they let loose upon the *Dutch* Ships, that escap'd them with great Difficulty: But after a stout Resistance, the *Dutch* set the Town and Palace on Fire, and carried off, with other Plunder, 75 great and 142 lesser Guns, most of which were of Brass. *Beaulieu* and others give an Account of vast Numbers of small Islands on the Coast of *Sumatra*, especially in the Streights of *Malacca*. The Curious may consult him with *Nieuhoff*, *Schouten*, &c. for Particulars. What we have now said, is the chief of what is observ'd by modern Travellers, and by consequence of most Credit.

J A V A,

Call'd *Java* Major, to distinguish it from the lesser Island, otherwise call'd *Bali*, to the E. lies in 6 Deg. S. Lat. against the S. E. Point of *Sumatra*, from which it is separated by the Streights of *Sunda*, where they are not above 4 or 5 Leagues over. To the N. it has the Isle of *Borneo*, whither there's a convenient Passage for small Vessels, and on the S. the main Ocean. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis between 130 and 140 Leagues from E. to W. exclusive of the little Island of *Bali*, its Breadth various, and 300 Leagues in Compass. On the N. Coast it has abundance of commodious Creeks, Bays, Harbours, and goodly Towns, with many little Islands near the Shore. It had formerly as many Kingdoms as Cities, but now only two, the one under the Emp. of *Mataram*, and the other under the K. of *Bantam*; but the former has the E. and greatest Part of the Island; and there are other petty Sovereignties along the Coast, besides what belongs to *Batavia*.

We follow chiefly *Nieuhoff*'s Description of this Island, because the exactest and newest. He says, the *Javanese* are barbarous and proud, of a brown Colour, with flat Faces, thin, short, black Hair, and large Eyebrows and Cheeks. They derive their Origine from the ancient *Chinese*, and resemble them about their Eyes. The Men are strong Limb'd, and the Women but small. The former wear a Wrapper of Callico two or three times round their Bodies, and the latter from their Armpits to their Knees. Those of Fashion have them with

Gold Flowers or Stripes. They have two or three Wives, besides Concubines, and are much addicted to Lying and Cheating. Those on the Coast are generally *Mahometans*, but the others Pagans, who consult about important Matters in the Night.

Great Part of the Island is still unknown, by reason of several high Mountains and unpassable Forrests and Wildernesses; but the N. Part betwixt *Batavia* and *Bantam* is populous, and produces Store of Rice, most Indian Fruits, with some Salt and Pepper, but not so good as that of *Malabar*. They have Tygers, Rhinoceroses, Crocodiles, Hogs, Oxen, Sheep, and other wild and tame Beasts, with Plenty of Fowl and Fish.

The Air, especially about *Batavia*, is very temperate and healthy. The E. and W. Winds blow all the Year along the Shore, besides the ordinary Land and Sea Winds. Their Summer begins in *May*, with continual Breezes from the E. and a very clear Sky till *November*, when the Winter begins with hard Rains, which hold sometimes 3 or 4 Days together without Intermission. In *December*, the W. Winds blow so violently, that there's no passing by Sea. In *February*, 'tis changeable Weather, with sudden Thunder Storms. In *March*, they begin to sow. *June* is their pleasantest Month. In *July*, the Sugar and Rice begin to ripen. In *September*, they gather it; and in *October*, they have Plenty of all Sorts of Fruit; for which, together with their various Sorts of Flowers, Plants, and Herbs, enough to take up a Volume, we refer to *Nieuhoff*.

Batavia lies on the N. W. Side of the Island. *Moll* places it about S. Lat 6. and almost 30 Miles E. of *Bantam* on the same Coast. *Nieuhoff* puts it in Lat. 5. 50. and says, it had this Name from the *Dutch*, but is call'd *Kalakka* by the *Chinese* and *Javanese*, because of a Sort of Palm which grows plentifully in the Neighbourhood. Before the *Mahometans* settled in the *Indies*, 'twas only a Village, inhabited by a few Pagans. At first it had only Palisadoes of Bambou; but when populous, the Inhabitants war'd on the King of *Bantam* and other neighbouring Princes with Success. There's a large fenny Plain before it to the S. 'Tis defended to the N. or Land-Side with Woods and high Mountains, and divided into two Parts by a River, is four-square, and fortified with a

H h h h h 2

Stone

Stone Wall and 22 Bastions, nam'd after the Towns and Provinces of *Holland*. It has two great Gates to the S. one to the E. and another to the W. It lies in a Bay, extending Eastward as far as the Cape of *Karowant*, and Westward as far as the Cape of *Rough Point* towards *Bantam*. There are about 17 or 18 Islands within and without the Bay, which so break the Winds and Waves, that the Road of *Batavia* is one of the safest in the World, and able to contain above 1000 Vessels. The Bank of the River is faced with Stones on both Sides as far as the Boom, which is shut up every Night at 9 a Clock, and guarded by Soldiers. Besides, there's a Channel cut-out of the main River for smaller Vessels, and every one that passes the Boom pays Custom. Without the Wall there's a broad deep Ditch, which sometimes rises so high, that the lowermost Streets without the Town are under Water. Most of the Buildings are well contriv'd, with handsome Gardens for Fruit and Flowers, and adorned with Springs, Fountains, &c. All the Streets run in a straight Line, most of them being 30 Foot broad, and pav'd on both Sides near the Houses with Bricks. There are 8 Streets very well built and inhabited, and 15 with Canals, and 56 Bridges over them. Seven of them lie on the E. Side of the River, and 8 on the W.

The principal Structures are, 1. The *Cross Church*, all of Stone, and a beautiful Steeple, adorned with Iron Work. The Pulpit Vestry, and chief Seats, are set off with Iron Work and Ebony, and there are noble Brass Sconces, yet it has but one Bell. There's another Church in a stately Castle, Eight-square, and another of Brick Work. 2. The Town-House, built of Brick, in a spacious Square in the Center of the City. 'Tis two Stories high, with a great Gate of the *Corinthian* Order in the Middle, and a Stone Gallery over it. The Windows are lofty, and beautified with Iron Work. Here the Courts of Justice are kept, and a Scaffold is erected before it at the Trial of Criminals. 'Tis the Meeting Place of the Senators, and of the Directors of Military Affairs, &c. There's an inner Court enclos'd with a high Wall, and a double Row of Stone Pillars, where the Officers of Justice live. 3. The Hospital for 2 or 300 Sick on the Bank of

the great River, which runs thro' the City.

4. The Spin-House, with proper Conveniences and Officers, like that of *Amsterdam*.

5. Two Slaughter-Houses, built on Wooden Piles, for throwing the Excrements of the Beasts into the River. They kill twice a Week, and every Butcher has his Price ascertained by the Magistrates. Beef and Mutton bear a good Price here, and the Butchers pay the 10th Penny for every Beast they kill, to the Farmer of the Excise. But if he is over-rated, he may appeal to all the Butchers; and if they don't agree to the Rate, he may tax himself at his own Price.

6. The Hall for the Sale of Stuffs, and all Sorts of Clothes ready made, besides other Commodities sold by the *Chinese*, who have their separate Shops, for which they pay 3 Crowns a Month. The whole Building is of Wood, and divided into 5 Walks, with Shops on each Side, and as many outer Doors, which are kept open Day and Night, because they are under a Guard.

7. Noble Stables on the E. Side of the Town-House, all of Brick-Work, and pav'd with Stones, for the Governor's Saddle-Horses, Grooms, &c. Their best are the *Arabian* and *Persian* Horses, but so scarce, that an indifferent *Persian* Horse is worth 200 Crowns.

8. The *Chinese* Hospital for the Sick and Aged near the Spin-House, built of Brick, and maintain'd out of a certain Duty on Marriages and Burials, Plays, Farces, and all manner of Shews, besides Legacies and other Contributions by the rich *Chinese*.

9. The Orphans Hospital, which is also of Brick, and maintain'd by the Charity of well-disposed Persons, without any settled Revenue.

10. The Artizan's House, where all the Artificers and Mechanicks belonging to the Company are disposed in their proper Quarters, with Officers to keep Order, a Surgeon, and a Schoolmaster to say Prayers every Night, at which all must be present on Pain of a Forfeiture. Here all Criminals condemn'd to Chains are kept to hard Labour, and well guarded. There's a Wharf belonging to it, where they build small Yachts and Boats, the bigger Ships being built at the Isle of *Ormuz* about a League to the W. of *Batavia*, where there are considerable Magazines of all Ship-Stores, defended by Forts. There's also a Rope-Alley at one Corner of the City, shaded with Nut-Trees,

Trees, and the Pack-House of the Company, with a great Magazine for Rice. 11. The *Prawen* House, so called from the *Malayan* Word *Praw* or small Vessel, on the Bank of the River, where several Shipwrights and Seamen have their Quarters.

Their chief Markets are, 1. Their Fish Market, on the W. Side of the great River, sustain'd by strong Wooden Piles, and cover'd with Pantiles. The Fisher-Boats are oblig'd to stop at the Outroper's House over against it, where their Cargo is sold by publick Auction. The Fishmongers are for most Part *Chinese*, with each a Stall, for which he pays two Reals a Month. The Outroper pays ready Money to the Fishermen for what they sell to the *Chinese*, who allow him 2 *d.* in the Crown, and are oblig'd to repay him at a set Time. 2. The Rice or Corn Market adjoining, built after the same Manner, with a House for the Overseer of the Market. He marks the Weights and Measures every *January* and *July* in the Town-House, and takes 2 *d.* for every Mark. 3. The Fowl Market, where all Sorts of Fowl, dry'd Fish, Eggs, and coarse Earthen Ware, are sold. 4. The Fruit Market, where all Sorts of Fruit and Herbs are sold by the *Chinese* and Negroes, who pay the Hundredth Penny Excise.

There's a *Latin* and *Greek* School here, besides others for Reading and Writing, and a Printing House. The Castle is quadrangular, with 4 Bastions, and situate in a Level. On the W. side the River comes up to the Walls, and the low Grounds near it are well planted with Gardens and Orchards. The Bastions and Courtins of the Castle are fac'd with white Stone, and provided with Watch-Houses. In this Castle the *Dutch* Governor-General, and all the Members of the Council of the *Indies*, with the other Officers at *Batavia*, have their Residence. The Governor's Palace is of Brick, and tho' no more than two Stories high, is so lofty, that it is seen a great Way at Sea, and has a Turret in the Middle, with a Ship of Iron upon it instead of a Weather-Cock. In this Palace is the Council-Chamber, the Secretary's Office, and Chamber of Accounts. The great Hall is hung with bright Armour, Ensigns, Flags, &c. taken by the *Dutch*. Here the Governor gives Audience, and Prayers are said

every Night. There's a Garden behind it, with pleasant Walks of Trees, and a Summer-House built on Piles in the midst of a River, from whence there's a Prospect of the Castle and Road. There's an Armory, with Apartments for Sword-Cutlers, Gunsmiths, &c. The Castle has 4 Gates, and as many Avenues, defended by Forts. The adjacent Country abounds with Rice, Sugar, Reed-Fields, Gardens and Orchards, Country-Houses, Brick and Tile Wharfs, and Water-Mills for Sugar, Corn, Gunpowder, Wood, and Paper. There's also a Pest-House, govern'd by several of the richest Citizens, and a House built of Bamboos for washing and whitening Linen. The Outworks of the Town are of Earth, surrounded with Ditches and Quickset-Hedges, and two of them fac'd with Brick-Work. They are mounted with great Guns, and have Provisions for 9 Months or a Year, as well as the Garrison of *Batavia*, which consists chiefly of Foot, except the Governor's Troop of Guards, who enjoy great Privileges, and are oblig'd to appear every *Sunday* in bright Armour, with their Pistols, Carabines, and broad Swords.

The same Author and *Leguat* give the following Account of the Inhabitants.

The *Chinese* here drive the greatest Trade, farm most of the Excises and Customs, live according to the Laws and Manners of their own Country, and are under a *Chinese* Governor, who manages all their Affairs with the Company. *Leguat* says, when he was there in 1697, there were no less than 40000 of them in the Island. They pay a Crown per Month to the *Dutch*, and a Crown more for every Gold Bodkin they wear in their Hair. The Company allows 'em great Honours and Privileges, and particularly a Representative in Council, who has a Vote when any of their Nation is try'd for his Life. There are no Beggars here. The *Chinese* come hither with Tea and Porcelaine from *China*; but those who don't dwell in the Island, must not stay above 6 Months.

The *Malayans* and *Mahometans*, says *Nieuhoff*, dwell near one another, and are clad after their own Fashion. The former have a Governor, live chiefly by Fishing, and the latter trade in Free Stone from the neigh-

neighbouring Islands, or in Coral and Glafs Beads, which they carry about Streets. The *Amboynese* have also a Governor, are for most Part Carpenters, and build Houses, &c. with Bambou Canes. The *Javanese* plant Rice, and build those call'd Flying-Boats, with which they catch Fish. The Men are only cover'd from the Middle to the Knee, and go bare-foot. Some have Scarfs instead of Sword-Belts. Their Houses are of Bambou, cover'd with Leaves, and neater than the rest of the *Indians*, tho' generally small and ill built, and the whole Family lies in one Chamber. They are content with a little Rice, Fruit, and dry'd Fish; and being *Mahometans*, drink Tea or Water. They are witty, laborious, and faithful to one another, but treacherous to Strangers. They wear Daggers, poison'd half-way with a subtil sort of Venom, taken from the Sap of a Tree in the Island *Borneo*, which they temper so as it operates when and how they please. They sometimes use a certain Liquor to make them furious, and then run about like Madmen, crying, *Kill, kill*, and spare nothing they meet. Officers and others of Distinction wear poison'd Daggers, with Hilts of massy Gold. Princes, Ambassadors, and those of Quality, are attended by Guards, arm'd with Wooden Half-Pikes, which they carry upright. The Princes, &c. are carried on Men's Shoulders in a Chair, where they sit cross-legged. The *Javan* Women are very amorous, use Philtres or Love-Potions, and make no Scruple to dispatch such Lovers as they think unfaithful. They are not so tawny as the Men, because more at Home. They have generally good Faces, fair Hands, sprightly Eyes, a soft Air, and an agreeable Smile; and many of them are perfectly handsome, and charming Dancers, but are said to be faithless to their Husbands, go in their Hair, and wear a short close Waistcoat with little Sleeves, lac'd before, and cut sloping a-top, so that it shews great Part of their Breasts. From their Hips to their Ankles they wrap themselves in a light Sort of Scarf of several Colours, but wear no Smocks, and only the richer Sort have Slippers. They have few Ceremonies in their Marriages and Funerals, call themselves of the Sect of *Tommi*, and despise other *Mahometans*, tho' they agree with them in the main.

The *Mardijkers* or *Topassers* are a Mixture of *Indian* Nations, and call'd *Topassers* or Accommodators, says *Nieuhoff*, because they can easily conform to the Manners and Religion of the Countries where they live. The chief of them are Merchants, who trade in their own Vessels with the adjacent Isles, and dwell in stately Houses built of Stone, til'd and arch'd. The rest are Husbandmen and Artificers. They have their own Captains, who sit in the Council of War, and Schoolmasters for teaching their Children to read and write. They resemble the *Dutch* in their Habit, but their Breeches reach to their Ankles, and they wear a sort of Caps. The Women are clad like the rest of the *Indians*. They plant *Coco's*, and all Sorts of *Indian* Fruits and Flowers, before their Houses, and reserve the Backside for Pigs and Poultry.

Leguat says, there are very beautiful Negroes here of both Sexes, and a People called *Chareclats*, of a fair Complexion, but their Eyes can't endure the Light, so that they turn Night into Day. *Nieuhoff* says, That there may be raised out of the Foreigners residing here 6720 Fighting Men. The chief Artificers are the *Dutch*, and they also have the chief Inns and Taverns, and pay two Reals per Month for their Licence, besides 70 Reals for every Pipe they sell of *Spanish* Wine. The Distillers of Arack are most *Chinese*, and pay 50 Reals per Month Excise for every Cauldron.

Leguat, who was at *Batavia* in 1697, above 30 Years after *Nieuhoff*, says, 'tis built like the Towns of *Holland*, but with white Stone. The Citadel has no Ditch, but is mounted with 60 Cannon, and the Garrison is commonly 1000 strong. The reform'd *Portuguese* have two Churches, one in the City, and t'other in the Suburbs, which are very much crowded by Foreigners who understand their Language. The *Malays* have a large Church, where they use a Translation of the *Dutch* Liturgy, and the Papists have Liberty of Conscience in their own Houses, but not in Publick. There rises a Sea Gale every Morning at 10 a Clock, which serves to bring Vessels into the Bay, and a Land one blows at 10 every Night to carry them out. The one comes from the N. and the other from the S. Rice is so Plenty here, that a Farthing's-worth will last a Man a whole

whole Day. They have other Corn from *Bengal*, and Wheat-Bread is as cheap here as in *Holland*; but the Natives don't love it. There are a great many Vines in the Neighbourhood, whose Grapes are good enough to eat, but seldom come to Maturity. They bear Fruit 7 times in two Years, bring forth Grapes the first Year, and shoot more in one Year, as do all other Trees, than they would do in 8 in *Europe*, says *Leguat*. They make no Wine, but drink *Persian* or *Spanish* at a Crown a Pint. *Brunswick* Mum is very dear; but they make a pretty good Sort for a Penny a Pint. The Soldiers drink a Sort of Brandy distill'd from Fruit and a certain Sea-Froth for the same Rate; but the common Liquor is Tea, of which the *Chinese* sell as much as four People can drink for two *Dutch* Stivers, with 4 different Cups of Sweetmeats, containing each half a Pound, and another of white Sugar-Candy. They use ordinarily the best common Tea, which is 10 *d.* a Pound, that call'd Imperial 20 *d.* and they sell Coffee for 1 *d.* a Dish. They have Beef and Buffaloes Flesh at 2 *d.* a Pound, Wild Boars very cheap, but Mutton extream dear, because Sheep are rais'd here with Difficulty, and soon rot. Tame Fowls are cheaper than in *Europe*, and they have Fish almost for nothing. Their common Distemper is the Bloody Flux, for which they have no Remedy but Patience and a spare Diet. Their Provisions in general are not so good as ours, which is partly owing to their Pasture. They so much dread the Crocodiles here, because large, that the Company give 30 Florins for every one that is killed. There's a Serpent in the neighbouring Woods, with a Thing like a Hood about its Head, under which there's a Stone that cures its Poison. *Leguat* says, he saw an extraordinary Ape in the Citadel, which resembled a Man, and imitated humane Actions the most that ever he saw any. Some say, 'tis a Species peculiar to this Island; but he rather thinks it was begot between an Ape and a Negro Slave, who frequently retire to the Woods when they commit Faults, to avoid Punishment. The Company, he says, is almost absolute in this Island, and have many petty Sovereigns under their Protection. The Emperor of *Jappon*, who is the most potent, is curb'd by many *Dutch* Forts and Garrisons within his

Dominions. The Natives of the Island are such great Slaves to their old Masters, that they chuse rather to be under the *Dutch*. The General of the Company lives like a King: He is chosen by Plurality of Voices, and is commonly for Life, but his Power revocable if the Company pleases. He has a Royal Table, Train and Guards, being attended by a Troop of Horse and a Company of Foot, Halbardiers on each Side of his Coach, and the Guards as well equipped as the Royal *Swissers* in *France*. His Lady has also her Guards and Train. Coaches are very common and exceeding fine here, and their Houses and Gardens richly furnish'd. The Women, he says, are extream lazy, more Mistresses than any where else, much given to Pleasure, and extreamly revengeful. He ascribes their Pride to the Scarcity of Women at first, so that the Officers were obliged to marry *Indians*; but now they are plenty enough, being supplied from all Parts of *Europe*. The meanest of their Wives never goes abroad without her Slave and Umbrello. The Men are attended in like Manner, except the Soldiers, whom they think fit to keep humble; only they allow this Privilege to all Officers above an Ensign. For the Government here, we refer to the Account of it in the First Volume of *Europe*, P. 853. and to *Nieuhoff*, and shall only observe in general, that their Civil and Ecclesiastical Government is the same with that in *Holland*. *Nieuhoff* gives also an Account of several Attacks made upon this City by the *Javanese*, encourag'd by the *English*, wherein the Natives lost at one Time 30000 Men; for which we must also refer to him.

Fryke, in his Voyage to the *East-Indies*, says, That *Batavia* is much finer than *Amsterdam*, and 5 or 6 Miles in Compass. The Castle is encompassed with wide Canals, over one of which there's a Stone Bridge of 21 Arches to a large Field where Malefactors are executed. From this Field there's a lesser Bridge, where a Centinel constantly stands, because it leads to the chief Street of the City. On the Bastions of the Town the Cannon are always ready to turn upon an Enemy without, or Mutineers within; for which End every Street has a Bastion that faces it. *Nieuhoff* gives a large Account of the Product of the Country, Seas

and

and Rivers; but we cannot insist upon them.

Three Leagues from hence, says *Schouten*, lies the Island *Onrust*, i. e. No Rest, so call'd because the Inhabitants are continually employ'd in building of Ships, Boats, &c. and the Sea is always rough there, ebbing and flowing every two Hours at very uncertain Heights; so that they are obliged to be constantly on their Guard against it. There are Tortoises of a prodigious Size here. *Fryke* mentions one that was bigger than three Men could fathom, and its Shell so strong, that a loaded Waggon might have gone over it without breaking it.

2. *Bantam*, about 40 Miles W. of *Batavia*, the Capital of a Kingdom of that Name. *Schouten* says, 'tis defended by Walls and Ramparts, and the King's Palace lies in the finest Part of the City, encompassed with Coco's and other high Fruit-Trees. Near it there's a Tower with a large Drum, which may be heard in the neighbouring Mountains, and there's a Mosque with several Roofs above one another, very high, and of a peculiar Sort of Architecture. It has the greatest Trade of any Town possessed by the Natives in the whole Island. It lies in a Valley on the Bank of a great Bay, at the Foot of a high Mountain, from whence three Rivers run thro' the Town, and the greatest of them forms a good Harbour for Ships of all Sorts. One of them defends one Side of the Town, and the other makes a good Canal. Towards the Sea there's a thick high Wall, defended in some Places by large Brass Cannon, but ill mounted. The Gates are very sorry, but well guarded; the Town dirty, and irregularly built, except 3 Streets, which are large and airy, and end before the Palace, but none of them pav'd. The Tower above-mentioned is their Magazine. There are several large Houses belonging to the Nobility. The Town is divided into several Quarters, each of which has a Guard and Barriers, as have the principal Passes of the Rivers and the Harbour. The Palace is also well-guarded, so that none can approach it without Leave. The Harbour is frequented by Vessels of all Nations. The *English* and *Dutch* have both Factories here, but the former the greatest Trade. There are three Markets here every Day much

frequented. The first in the Morning which lasts 3 Hours, in the E. Quarter; the 2d begins soon after near the Mosque, and the 3d is in the Afternoon in the West Quarter, most frequented by Christians and other Strangers, because the Natives being Villains themselves, mistrust Foreigners; so that this Quarter is separated from the rest of the Town by a Marsh and Pallisadoes. There are large Suburbs, inhabited by poor People, Fishers, Mariners, and Ship-Carpenters. The King of *Bantam*, tho' his Dominions be small, has as splendid a Court as the *Mataram* or Emperor of *Java*, is every whit as absolute, and in a little Time can raise a great Force by Sea and Land; yet a few *Dutch* Men of War have always been able to block up this Harbour upon any Quarrel,

Fryke seems to differ in his Account, says *Bantam* is a large Kingdom, of great Strength, and much improv'd of late by Numbers of Foreigners from all Nations, particularly *English*, *Danes*, *Spaniards*, and *Portuguese*. He says, the *English* and *Danes* excited the King of *Bantam* against the *Dutch*, so that he was a troublesome Neighbour; but they having subdued the King of *Jacatra*, and curb'd the Emperor of *Japara*, they made him declare War against the King of *Bantam*, without much Success to themselves. At last they advantageously improv'd the Opportunity of a Difference betwixt the old and the two young Kings of *Bantam*, which happen'd thus: The old King, weary of the Government, resign'd it to his younger Son, the elder having betaken himself to a Religious Life. The younger proving a Tyrant, the People, after Complaints to the old King, depos'd him, and set up his elder Brother. Upon this the old King came with an Army to resume the Government, whence a War ensu'd betwixt him and his eldest Son, who being assisted by the *Dutch*, that Kingdom is now under their Protection; and the City, which was for most Part destroy'd by the War, is handsomely rebuilt. We refer to *Fryke* for the Particulars.

The E. and greatest Part of the Island is possessed by the Emperor of *Mataram* or *Great Java*, who subdued all the petty Princes in that Part of the Island. The Capital is of the same Name. *Mell* places it about Lat. 7. Long. 128. *Schouten* says, it lies

lies in a fruitful and pleasant Plain, encompassed with green, high, and fertile Mountains, which make the Town naturally strong. The Mountain of *Bilerang*, the highest in the Island, and seen 30 Leagues at Sea, lies on the N. Side, and is for most Part inaccessible. The other Hills are steep, and cover'd with unpassable Woods. The Streights of the Mountains are guarded, so that none can pass without Leave, and having their Names set down. The Gates of the City lie in those Passes, and none dare attempt to enter the Town any other Way on Pain of Death. The City is 2 Leagues long, and almost as broad. On the W. 'tis defended by a Stone Wall. The Streets are irregular and dirty, but the Town so populous, as surprises *Europeans*. The Palace is accounted very magnificent by the Natives, but does not appear so to Foreigners. There are about 3000 Villages in the Valley and Mountains, with abundance of Pleasure-Houses, which look like Suburbs to the City. The Emperor is absolute, and his Counsellors are obliged to attend every Day except on *Saturday* their Sabbath, on Pain of Death, without a lawful Excuse, and all must appear before him in the Posture of the most abject Slaves, sitting cross-legged, with their Eyes downward; nor must they look up or speak without his Command. No Criminal can be put to Death in any Part of the Empire without his special Order; nor must any one defend themselves without Leave, tho' attacked in his Presence, of which our Author gives a remarkable Instance: The Emperor's Brother, who was a Rebel, being taken and brought before him, he killed a great many of the Emperor's chief Ministers while he talked with him, to bring him to a Sense of his Duty; yet none durst defend themselves, till the Emperor, seeing his own Person in Danger, gave 'em Leave, and then they dispatched this brutish Hero, for whom the Emperor went in deep Mourning, and appointed a magnificent Funeral. This Empire consists of 12 Provinces, 7 of them Maritime, and 5 within Land. Each of them have their Governors, and they have Deputies in every Town and Village. These Governors are under others call'd *Pangorans*, who inform the Tomagon of *Mataram* or principal Minister of all that

passes, and he gives the Emperor an Account of Matters of Importance. He has also a Treasurer and two Privy-Counsellors, who take Care of his Revenues, and abundance of Military Officers advanc'd for their Merit, who look after the Soldiers.

He can bring into the Field 100000 Men in a few Hours, and on Occasion some Hundreds of Thousands; so that were their Discipline and Experience answerable to their Numbers, he would be very formidable; but those great Armies are soon dispersed by a few regular Troops. The Emperor has also particular Spies every where, which obliges the Officers to be very careful, for the least Fault costs them their Lives, or at least their Posts. His chief Diversion is Tournaments, for the Manner of which we refer to *Schouten*. He has 10000 Female Guards, commanded by Officers of their own Sex. They are continually about his Person, suffer no Man to come near him by Night, and he makes use of 'em promiscuously for Wives and Concubines. He has 4 chief Wives of the greatest Families of his Empire, attended by the most beautiful Damsels that can be found. These Women are always arm'd, and take Care of the Emperor's Table and Kitchen. He now and then bestows some of them upon his Nobles. The Court of *Bantam* is much the same.

Japara lies on the N. Side of the Island, over against *Materam*. *Schouten* says, the Town has a pretty good Wall towards the Sea. The Houses are built of Stone and Chalk, and 'tis water'd by a River, which forms a good Harbour, fit for Vessels of all Sorts. The Streets, Ramparts, and publick Places, are adorned with pleasant Walks of Trees, Gardens, &c. but the Streets are not regular, because the Houses are all separate. They have abundance of Markets, frequented by Merchants of all Nations. The Women are very lustful; so that 'tis hard for Strangers who walk this City, where there are so many Turnings and Gardens, to escape without satisfying their vile Passion, or being liable to their Revenge, and they are in general very disagreeable; notwithstanding which, they give their Husbands too great Cause of Jealousy. Most of the People here are *Mahometans*. There are some other Towns considerable for Commerce in this Island, for which we refer to

Schouten, *Nieuhoff*, and *Fryke*, because we cannot insist upon them.

Bati, *Bali*, or *Lesser Java*, lies E. of this Island, from which it is separated by a narrow Streight. It has a Capital of the same Name, where Ships put in for Refreshments. *Fryke* says, the People are blacker and stronger than other *Indians*, and ravelly permit themselves to be sold for Slaves. Their Arms are only Quivers of poison'd Arrows. Their God is whatever they see first in the Morning; and be it a Stock or Stone, they pray to it on all Emergencies. They know nothing of Marriage, but live in common like Brutes; yet each Man has a principal Consort, who must be burned with him when he dies. Some of them are Cannibals, tho' they have excellent Fruits and other Provisions in Plenty. *Mandelsloe* says, it contains 600000 People; that they live most on Husbandry and Weaving, have abundance of Cotton and Rice, Store of Oxen, Buffaloes, Goats, Hogs, and some small Horses, an incredible Plenty of Fowl and Fish, and whole Forrests of Oranges, Lemons, and Citrons. They have several Sorts of Drugs, but no Spice except Ginger. They have a Fruit with a Shell like a Chesnut, of a delicious Taste, and a Specifick against the Scurvy. They have a King, whom they very much revere, and Mines of Iron, Copper, and Gold, but don't work the latter, lest Strangers should be thereby induc'd to invade the Island. There's a Range of other Islands which lie E. from hence as far as Long. 151. and betwixt S. Lat. $5\frac{1}{2}$ and 8.

B O R N E O,

Lies between *Malacca* and *Sumatra* on the W. *Java* on the S. the Streights of *Macassar* on the E. *India* on the N.W. the Sea on the N. and the *Philippine* Islands on the N.E. *Argensola*, in his History of the Conquest of the *Molucca's*, says, that some take it to be *Ptolomy's Isle of good Fortune*. It lies from N. Lat. $7\frac{1}{2}$. to 4 S. He makes it above 400 Leagues in Compass. *Moll* makes it 660 Miles from S. to N. and 540 from E. to W. It abounds with Provisions and all Necessaries for Pleasure and Conveniency. It produces Camphire, Pepper, Agaric, Diamonds, and great Numbers of little Horses, but

not many Sheep and Black Cattle. Its Towns and Harbours are well Peopled. The King is a *Mahometan*. None must speak to him without an Interpreter. His Subjects are Pagans, white, witty, and of a good natural Genius. They have no fix'd Habit, but wear Coats of Gambler and Cotton, with colour'd Lists. *Sanfon* says, the Inhabitants are large, of an Olive Complexion and a good Mien, and their Women more chaste than their Neighbours; but that the People in general are thievish. He says, 'tis the largest Island in *Asia*, but the East Part little known; and that 'tis not so well inhabited nor trades so much as *Sumatra*. *Pigafetta*, in his Account of *Magellan's* Voyage, says, the King is a Prince of great Power, keeps a magnificent Court, and mighty Guards; that his Household is govern'd by Women, who are the Daughters of his chief Courtiers; that his Secretaries write all their Affairs in Barks of Trees; that his Subjects pay their Reverence by lifting up their Hands three times over their Heads, lifting up their Feet one after another, and then kissing their Hands. *Oliver Noort* in his Voyage says, all the Inhabitants are arm'd, not excepting their Women. They have Gold, Bezoar, Aloes, Musk, &c. *Brazil* Wood, *Sapan*, Wax, *Frankincense*, Mastic, and other Gums.

The City of *Borneo* stands in a great Salt-Water Lake, near the N.W. Corner of the Island, and is situate upon small Isles like *Venice*, which makes 'em abound with Boats. 'Tis said to contain 25000 Houses; but Authors differ in that, and *Mandelsloe* makes them not above 2000. They have a very good Harbour E. at the Mouth of a large River. Their Cities in general are not populous, and their Houses slightly built of Wood upon Pillars, so that they can remove them at Pleasure. Their Arms are Swords, Bucklers, Lances, Darts, and Pikes. The Pepper grows in the S. Part of the Island, and the N.E. Coast is desolate. There are several Clusters of Islands about it, which are not worth describing.

C E L E B E S,

Is divided from *Borneo* by the Streights of *Macassar* on the W. and from the *Molucca's* on the E. and has the Ocean on the S. and N. with

with several other Islands. It lies on both Sides the Equinoctial, from N. Lat. 2. to S. Lat. 5. The greatest Length from S. W. to N. E. is 540 Miles, according to *Moll*, and the greatest Breadth about 200. 'Tis cut by a deep and large Bay on the S. Side. The Inhabitants are very industrious, says *Mandelsloe*, have abundance of Rice and Coco Trees, and are *Mahometans*. Their Features and Customs are much like those of the *Siamese*. Their Women have their Breasts naked, and wear Breeches down to their Knees. The N. W. Winds, which blow from November till March, make the Coast very unsafe, and the Rains overflow the Country so much, that they build their Houses on Poles 9 or 10 Foot high. *Schouten* says, 'tis 300 Leagues in Compass, and divided into several Kingdoms; but the King of *Macassar* is the chief, and was a sworn Enemy to the *Dutch*, till they reduc'd him; but still he continu'd treacherous. The People are unfaithful and barbarous, but brave, haughty, and fierce. The *Portuguese*, on Pretence of assisting them against the *Dutch*, built several Forts on the Coast, but were outed by the *Hollanders*; for the Particulars of which we refer to *Schouten*. *Argensola* says, the Natives are of a white Complexion, were anciently Cannibals, Pagans, and Pyrates, and went all naked. They had formerly a College of 7 Princes, who chose and depos'd the King at Pleasure, and had the Power of Peace and War. *Leguat* says, they use poison'd Daggers, make themselves mad with Opium, and in these drunken Fits a single *Macassar* will charge a whole Regiment. Their Arms are Sabres and Trunks, from which they blow poison'd Darts. They are addicted to Magick, and carry Papers about them with odd Characters, which they think preserve 'em from all Danger. *Funnel* says, 'tis well inhabited, and the S. Part is very high Land; and that there are Gold Mines, of which the *Dutch* are not yet Masters, the Natives being still capable to defend them. *Herbert* says, it was anciently call'd *Cassiteria* and *Solis Insula*, and that it is fruitful, tho' under the hottest Part of the Torrid Zone. The Inhabitants were anciently Pagans, and that they are still very barbarous. The Women paint their Faces and Bodies, are very impudent and lascivious, and well vers'd in the Art of Poisoning.

The principal Town is *Macassar*, near the S. W. Corner of the Island. 'Tis possessed by the *Dutch*, who have a Fort here, mounted with 70 Guns, and garrison'd with about 700 Men. They took it in 1660, after an obstinate Defence by the King and the *Portuguese*, and burnt the *Portuguese* Ships that were in the Harbour. They took also several other Forts; for the Particulars of which we refer to *Schouten* and *Argensola*. There are several Islands about it, but generally go under the same Name. The most considerable is *Bouton*, near the S. E. Corner of *Celebes*. *Dampier* says, 'tis 25 Leagues long, and 10 broad. On the E. Side of the Island there's a large Town called *Calalufung*, on the Top of a Hill, about a Mile from the Sea, and a League from the Harbour. 'Tis inclos'd with a Coco Walk, and a strong Stone Wall without it. The People are *Mahometans*, speak the *Malayan* Tongue, and are govern'd by an absolute Sultan. On the N. E. Corner of the Island lie the Streights of *Patience*, so call'd because they are full of Islands, and are difficult to pass, by Reason of contrary Winds and Currents.

The M O L U C C A'S.

They lie betwixt *Celebes* on the W. and *New Guinea* on the E. *Argensola* says, the Name is deriv'd from the Language of the Country, which signifies the Head or Chief; that there are only 4 or 5 properly so called, which lie almost under the Line, and don't reach above 25 Leagues, and all within View of one another: But all the Islands about are generally known by that Name. The 5 principal are, *Ternate*, *Tidor*, *Motir*, *Maquien*, and *Bacham*. They are all of them famous for several Sorts of Spice. They are govern'd by 3 Kings, and separated by narrow Streights and some desert Islands, but more by their ancient Animosities. They are dangerous of Access, because of Sands and Shelves, yet there are several good Roads. The Soil is so dry and spungy, that it immediately swallows up Rain. They are cover'd with Grass and thick Shrubs, and continually green, for the Leaves no sooner fall than others come in their stead. The Air is unwholesome, especially to Strangers, to whom it occasions a Dropsy. The Natives make use of the Wine

of the *Philippine* Islands mix'd with Ginger and Cloves, and the *Dutch* use Juice of Lemons for it. The particular Product is Bananas, Coco-Nuts, Oranges, Lemons, Aloes, Sandal, Cinnamon, Mace, Nutmegs, Store of Cloves, and other useful and pleasant Fruits. They have no Corn or Rice, but make Bread of a Sort of Tree call'd *Sagu-Palm*, which they dry and grind. The Tree is about 15 Foot high, and has Branches like a Palm-Tree, that bear a round Fruit, the Juice of which causes Inflammations wherever it touches. The *Indians* extract a Liquor from this Tree, which they drink and call *Tuac*. When new, 'tis sweet, and very fattening. When they boil it, it has the Taste of Wine. They draw another Liquor from Bambous, Nipa, and Coco-Trees. They have no Mines, but are supplied with Iron and Steel for Arms from the neighbouring Island of *Lambuco*. The *Europeans* have lately furnish'd them with all Sorts of our Arms. The Inhabitants are of a mild Temper, the Women fair and handsome, but the Men brown or yellowish. Their Hair is flag, and they anoint it with sweet-smelling Oils. They have large Eyes, and long Hair on their Eyebrows, which they paint. They are very strong, and much given to War, but lazy in every thing else. They live long, are kind to Strangers, and soon become familiar with them, but all importunate Beggars, tho' very proud. They are likewise suspicious, Cheaters, and ungrateful. These Islands were formerly subject to the *Chinese*. Then they were possessed by those of *Java* and the *Malays*, and at last by the *Persians* and *Arabians*, who brought in *Mahometanism*. They have several Families who derive their Origine from their false Gods. They punish Robbery severely, but easily pass by Adultery. They think it their Duty to encourage Propagation as much as possible, and for that End have Officers to beat Drums by Break of Day to awake marry'd People. They are habited like the *Turks* and *Chinese*. The Women love to have their Hair loose about their Shoulders, but sometimes tie it up very neatly with Flowers and Feathers. They affect Bracelets of Pearl, Pendants in their Ears, Necklaces of Rubies and Diamonds, without Distinction of Quality. Most of their Cloths are of Silk. The *Malayan* is the general Language,

but they speak several others. They have a certain Wood which burns, but does not consume, tho' one may rub it to Powder, and they have a Shrub whose Leaves turn to Butterflies. The 5 chief Islands are almost all round, so that all their Harbours cannot equally enjoy the Benefit of both Monsoons, which are the S. and N. W. Winds. There's no Difference here betwixt Summer and Winter, and they have no Rains at regular Times, but 'tis observ'd they come more from the N. W. Quarter than from the S. They have Serpents above 30 Foot long, and large in Proportion. They creep very slowly, and are not venomous. They eat a certain Herb when hungry; after which they get up on a Tree by the Bank of the Seas and Rivers, where they vomit up the Herb, which brings Fishes to it in great Numbers, makes them drunk, so that they float on the Surface of the Water, and become a Prey to those Serpents. They have also Crocodiles, which are more dangerous by Land than Water. They have several Fowls unknown to us. They have poisonous Sea-Crabs, and another Sort that feed on the Fruits of Trees, which are good Meat. Our Author gives us a very particular Account of the Wars that happen'd betwixt the *Portuguese* and *Spaniards* about the Possession of those Islands, and how the Emperor *Charles V.* yielded them at last to the K. of *Portugal* for a certain Sum, contrary to the Advice of some of his chief Counsellors. He has also the Particulars of the War betwixt the *Portuguese* and the Natives, who leagu'd under their several Princes against the *Portuguese*, because of their barbarous Cruelty, and their deposing and cutting off several of their Kings without any just Cause, which issued in the Expulsion of the *Portuguese*, and a terrible Persecution of such as they had converted to the Church of *Rome*. He gives us also an Account of the Conquest of those Islands by the *Dutch*, and of their Difference with the *English*, especially about the Affairs of *Ambony*, where he exhibits the Substance of the Manifesto's or Declarations on both Sides, for which we refer to him.

Their chief Islands are, 1. *Ternate*. *Ar. gensola* says, 'tis 8 Leagues in Compass. The Land is high, and they have good Water, but little Provisions, and few Cattle except Goats.

Goats. Their chief Riches consist in Cloves. They have extraordinary Parrots, which exceed those of the *West-Indies* in speaking, and many Birds of *Paradise*. They have Almonds and coarse Tobacco. During their Wars with the *Portuguese*, they burnt all their Clove-Trees, retir'd to the Mountains and Defarts, and forbid selling any thing to the *Portuguese* on Pain of Death, which reduc'd them to great Extremity. Tho' they burnt their Cloves in Despair, our Author says, that their Ashes did so cultivate the Soil, that it produc'd 'em in greater Abundance than ever in a few Years. The King of this Island was the most powerful of all the 14 in the *Molucca's*, and boasted of a Divine Extraction, which the silly People firmly believ'd. He was Sovereign over 72 Islands that lie in the *Great Archipelago*, betwixt *Mindanao* on the N. those of *Bima* and *Corea* on the S. and the *Terra-firma* of *Papua* or *New-Guinea* on the E. and had his Tribute in Gold, Amber, and Birds of *Paradise*. Having made these great Conquests over his Neighbours, he call'd himself Emperor of the *Archipelago*, where there were many Colonies of Christians; but most of 'em were destroy'd or apostatiz'd by the Persecution above-mentioned. *Argensola* gives a particular Account of the Forces which every Island could raise, and in the whole reckons them at 120300 Men that were list'd, besides Multitudes of others, and great Numbers of Slaves. Many of those Islands had their particular Kings, but all subject to him of *Ternate*, and serv'd under him to revenge the Death of King *Aerio*, who was treacherously murder'd by the *Portuguese*. This great King's Name was *Cachilbabu*, *Aerio's* 3d Son. He allow'd the *Dutch* to trade here in 1599, enter'd into a strict Friendship with them, and entertain'd them with Fights of Gladiators after the Manner of his Country. The *Dutch* assist'd him to shake off the Yoke of the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese*, and he was victorious over those of *Tidor*. The Place where he kept his Court was *Gammalamma*, on the Coast, consisting chiefly of one Street, their Houses being of Wood and Cane. About a League from hence there was a small Town call'd *Malayo*, inclos'd with Walls of Stone without Mortar. The Road of *Gammalamma* is not good. There are still some Remains of Churches

and other Structures built by the *Portuguese*. The first Fort the *Dutch* built here was *Terluccho*; the next was the Fortrefs of *Orange*, by which they fix'd themselves so well, that no *European* Nation has been able to dislodge them; for *Schouten* says, they have perfectly gain'd the Affection of the Natives; so that they have all the Spice Trade of those Islands, and are looked upon by the Kings and their Subjects as their Deliverers. He describes the *Vulcano* in this Island, which agrees so much with *Aetna* and *Vesuvius*, that we need not insist upon it. The Summit of this Mountain seems to reach the Clouds, and is continually vomiting Fire and Flames, and yet a great Part of it abounds with verdant Fruit Trees and Streams of fresh Water. The King's Palace, which lies near *Malayo*, is encompassed with Walls. The Buildings are slight, but he has fine Gardens and Closets, stored with all the Curiosities of the *Indies*, with Volaries of all Sorts of extraordinary Birds; but of those of *Paradise* *Schouten* says, he never saw any alive. The King has a great Number of them dry'd, which are much valu'd, and bear a high Price, because of their beautiful Feathers. The Court is sumptuous, according to the Manner of those Countries, and the King is always attended by a great Number of Guards, Princes, and *Mahometan* Priests, who are in great Credit with him. He was clad after the *Dutch* Manner, and sometimes wore fine Cloth, Velvet, or Sattin. For the People, every one builds their own Houses, and makes their Clothes, contemn Household Stuff as needless Lumber, have no Locks, nor Glass in their Windows, and make use of Mats for Beds, Tables and Chairs; so that besides, they have only a few Pots to dress their Victuals, and a Hatchet to cut their Wood. Some are Protestants, and marry with the *Dutch*. *Mandelsloe* says, there are extraordinary Almonds here, whose Shells Smiths make use of instead of Coals. *Argensola* says, the Clove Tree resembles a Lawrel, but has a larger Top. The Buds send forth a pleasant Smell. The Fruit is at the Top of the Branch, and resembles Clusters of Grapes. It comes out white, then becomes green, and turns red when ripe. The Cloves which continue in the Grape during the Year are call'd the Mother Cloves, and are strongest. They pull

pull them off like Nuts, or shake 'em down with Cords. No Grass or Herb grows under these Trees. They bear Fruit in their 8th Year, and last 100. Those which are prun'd bear the best Fruit, and produce ordinarily but once in two Years, from September to February; and if they don't take Care of the young Cyons, they produce but once in three. There are Cloves elsewhere than in the *Molucca* Islands, but not so good. They dry them three Days in the Sun after they are gather'd. Sir Francis Drake contracted a great Amity with the King of *Ternate*, who was so pleased with him, that he allow'd the *English* to settle Factories there, and offer'd to submit his Crown to Queen *Elizabeth*. The *Ternatians* made War afterwards upon the *Dutch* several times, but were at last reduced in 1680, and now they keep them in Awe by the Fortrefs of *Orange*, which has 4 Bastions fac'd with Stone, thick Walls and Courtins, deep Ditches, convenient Apartments for the Officers, great Magazines, an Hospital, and Work-houses for Artificers. *Malayo* is likewise fortified, and inhabited by Free-Men. The Company have a large Garden here, and there's a pretty considerable Town without the Fortrefs, inhabited by *Dutch* Blacks.

2. *Tidor*. 'Tis larger than *Ternate*, is also a particular Kingdom, and produces the same Fruits. It lies a little S. E. from *Ternate*, nearer the Line. The *Spaniards* assisted the Inhabitants against those of *Ternate* at first, but had War with them at last, and treated them barbarously, till expell'd by the League above-mentioned. The *Dutch* attacked the *Spaniards* here in 1607, and afterwards without Success; but at last took it by the Assistance of the K. of *Ternate* after an obstinate Resistance, and were kindly received by the King, who allow'd them to settle Factories here. The Capital is of the same Name, and has a Harbour about a Stone's-throw from the Shore, dry at low Water, and defended by a Chain of narrow Rocks, over which the Tide rises from 3. to 6 Foot. The Town is very strong by Nature.

3. *Motir*, *Motil*, or *Timor*, lies betwixt *Tidor* and *Machian*. It was laid wast during the intestine Wars; but the *Dutch* built a Fort at the N. End of it, which encourag'd the Inhabitants to return from *Gilolo*, and

continuing firm to the *Dutch*, the *Spaniards* durst not attack it.

4. *Machian*, lies just under the Line, S. from *Motir*. The *Dutch* took it from the *Spaniards* in 1609, and built 3 Forts here. 'Tis 7 Leagues in Compass, and had several little Towns. The Inhabitants were then about 9000. 'Twas reckon'd the fruit-fullest of the *Molucca's*, and produced the best Cloves, the Inhabitants being more industrious than their Neighbours. *Schouten* says, there's another *Vulcano* here. The *Dutch* oppos'd the *English* Trade here in 1613.

5. *Bachian*, the last of the Proper *Molucca's*, lies S. from *Machian*, and was a Kingdom. The Country is large and desart. It abounds with Sagu, Fruits, Fish, and many other Sorts of Provisions. 'Twas formerly very potent, and had the best Cloves in the *Molucca's*, says *Argensola*, but was ruin'd by the Idleness of the Inhabitants. They had an Alliance with the *Portuguese* and *Spaniards*, who planted Garrisons here, but were dispossessed by the *Dutch* in 1610, who built other Forts, and obtain'd a Liberty to trade without paying Custom. The Isle of *Labova* lies so near it, that they frequently go by the same Name, tho' each had their particular King. The latter is very pleasant, and abounds with Cloves. The Inhabitants rebelled against the *Dutch*, but were forc'd to submit, and have been since kept in Awe by Fort *Barnevelt*.

Bouro or *Buero*, lies betwixt *Bouton* Island and *Ceram*, but nearer the latter, S. Lat. 4. *Schouten* says, the Inhabitants are Pagans, and go naked, except a small Covering about their Middle. The Children of both Sexes go quite naked till 12 Years of Age. The Women have such easy Labour, that they use no Midwives, nor do they lie a-Bed, their Husbands doing that for them. They immediately wash themselves and Child in the next River, and make no more to do but hang the Child up in a Net by a String, which they shake instead of a Cradle. Some of them are *Mahometans*. The Bay of *Cayelles* lies on the N. E. Side of the Island, encompassed with Mountains, Woods, and fruitful Fields. They have abundance of Streams and Rivers, but the Natives live about the Bay, for the Protection of the *Dutch*, in Houses made of Cane; yet they are

are subject to the King of *Ternate*. The Blacks belonging to the *Dutch* have planted fine Gardens and Orchards, and sow'd many Fields. The Product is Coco's and other *Indian* Fruit, besides Barley, Tobacco, and Pot-Herbs. They have Civet-Cats, which they sell cheap. Their chief Diet is Sagu, Millet, Beans, Rice, and dry Fish. Some of them worship Crocodiles. The *Dutch* have a Fort and Garrison here. *Argensola* says, 'tis above 30 Leagues in Compass. The King of *Macassar* besieged it in 1666, but was defeated and forc'd to beg Peace of the *Dutch*. He rebelled again, but was, together with his Allies, entirely subdued in 1669. *Nieuhoff* says, the Mountains of it may be seen 28 Leagues at Sea, which on the S. Side is very deep, and the Shore in most Parts is steep like a Wall. There are Woods of green Ebony and Lary Trees here, but the Island is subject to Earthquakes. They have a monstrous Creature of the Size of a Roebuck, a dark-brown or grey Colour, the Hair like a Greyhound's, the Head and Mouth like a Hog, with small Eyes and Ears. The Circumference of its Mouth and Jaws is as big as a large Calf's-Head, with Tusks in the upper Jaw of a Foot long, and an Inch thick, and crooked like those of a Wild-Boar. From the upper Jaw. Bones rise two Horns of an Inch thick, and a quarter of a Yard long. They are smooth like Teeth, and hooked at the End. His Flesh is as good as Venison. The Complexion of the People is black. *Nieuhoff* mentions a People call'd *Bokies* or *Bougisses*, that are very warlike, and formerly inhabited divers Islands betwixt the *Molucca's* and *Macassar*: But during the *Dutch* War with the King of the latter, they, with their King and Queen, removed to *Batavia*, where they were kindly entertain'd, and their Sovereigns allow'd a Palace, with pleasant Walks, Gardens, &c.

Timor, another Island, lies about S. Lat. 9. 'Tis different from that of the *Proper* *Molucca's*, large, and more esteem'd. The *Sansons* say, it abounds with Corn, Fruit, Cattle, and Fowl. They have Ginger, Cinnamon, and Forrests of white and yellow Sandal, with which the Inhabitants, who are half Savages, make themselves broad Swords, says *Nieuhoff*, that will cut a Man thro' the Middle at one Blow. They were formerly

Pagans, but now most *Mahometans*, and some of them Papists. *Pigafetta* adds to its Product Gold, and all Sorts of Provisions, and says, 'tis 5 Leagues betwixt S. and S. W. from *Malva*. Captain *Saris* says, it produces Plenty of Wax, and that the best Goods for Import here are Chopping-Knives, *China* Frying-Pans, Bells, Bugles, Porcellane, Taffaties of any Colour but Black, and flat Pieces of Silver of about a Hand's breadth. *Argensola* says, their King desir'd the *Dutch* to come and traffick there, to build a Fort, and offer'd to turn Christian. Captain *Saris* says, *Malva* yields Pepper long and round. The People are Cannibals. The Men put up the Hair of their Heads and Beards in Canes, and are arm'd with Bows and Arrows.

Solor lies W. from *Timor*. *Argensola* says, the *Portuguese* had a Fort here, which held out two Months against the *Dutch*, but surrender'd on Terms, and march'd out above 1000 Men. The Fort was very strong, lay upon a Height on the Bank of the Sea, was built of Stone, encompassed on the Land-Side by deep Vallies, and defended by a Stone Wall and other Works. The Inhabitants submitted willingly to the *Dutch*, and embraced their Religion. This Island was of great Importance, because it produc'd the best Sandal Wood, which is a mighty Commodity in *China*. Part of the Inhabitants depended on the K. of *Ternate*. This Island and *Timor* were also of great Importance for furnishing Provision to the *Molucca's*. The *Sansons* say, it produces Gold and Pearls, and that the King resides at *Adonare*.

Banda Isles lie S. from *Ceram*, and S. E. from *Amboyna*. *Argensola* makes them 30 Leagues distant from the latter. He says, their Names are *Terra Alta* or *Banda Proper*, *Nera*, *Poulewai*, *Pouleron*, *Poula-Pisang*, *Goening* or *Gouning*, *Apy*, and *Rosequein*. There are other Islands depending on those of *Banda*, and included under that Name; but they are pretty distant, and therefore they have rooted up all the Nutmeg-Trees that grow in them, to prevent Foreigners from settling there. In some of them the *Dutch* have little Forts; but they are subject, as well as the rest, to Earthquakes, especially in November, December, January, and February; and in several

several there are Vulcano's and Springs of hot Water.

The Island of *Proper Banda*, says *Argensola*, lies 8 Leag. E. from *Amboyna*, in 4 Deg. S. Lat. and in Form of a Horse-shoe. It produces without Cultivation very good Nutmegs, Mace, and Drugs, more than any other Place in the World. 'Tis divided into 3 Parts, each of which is 3 Leagues in Compass. The Women dress the Mace and Nutmegs. *Argensola* describes the latter thus: They are almost like our Pears both in the Tree and Fruit, but rounder. When the Trees are in Blossom, they yield a sweet reviving Smell. As it ripens, it loses its Green, and turns Blue, with a certain Mixture of Brown, Carnation, Yellow, and pale Gold Colour. Parrots and other beautiful Fowl frequent those Trees. When the Nutmegs are dry, the Bark round the Mace cleaves, and within there's a sort of white Marrow, not of so sharp a Taste as the Nut; but when dry, is much of the same Substance. The Natives make an admirable Oil of the Mace for Diseases of the Nerves, and others proceeding from too much Cold, and eat the Nuts themselves against a stinking Breath, to clear the Sight, fortify the Stomach, and help Digestion. Most of the Inhabitants are *Mahometans*, and some of them Pagans. They feast and consult in their Temples. There are 7 Towns in the Island, which are Enemies to one another, and each of them have their Allies. When they go to War, they feast in the Middle of the Street, and have Mock-Fights with one another while they tingle some Bells. Instead of Pitch, they bruise Nut-Shells to Powder, and make them into a sort of Paste, mix'd with Thread, for their Vessels. Those of War carry 3 or 4 Pieces of Cannon. Their other Arms are little Carbines, Bucklers, large Scymiters, and Lances of hard Wood. They have a sort of Darts made like Hooks. They throw them at their Enemies, and when they catch hold, draw them near with a Cord fasten'd to the Hook. They have a sort of Head-Piece, adorn'd with Birds of *Paradise*, which they look upon as Preservatives against Danger. They have also Back and Breast-Plates; and when they fight by Sea, their Soldiers, as soon as their Instruments sound, begin to dance and leap upon the Benches round their Vessels,

while the Slaves row 'em. They are very revengeful and cruel, and glory in bringing home the Heads of their Enemies, and to shew their bloody Swords. They make terrible Lamentations at Funerals, put Lamps and burn Incense at the Graves, call aloud upon the Deceased, and then go a feasting. The Coffin is carried by 12 Men, and cover'd with Callico. The *Dutch* say, they saw Men of 130 Years old here. They live most on Fruit, and their Women till the Ground, and do all the Drudgery. At the W. End of the Island there's a Mountain, with 314 Stone Steps to the Top, where the *Dutch* have a Fort call'd *Holland*, and at the Foot of it there's a Town for their Negroes, defended by a Half-Moon well mounted with Cannon, and a Redoubt to cover their Watering-place. They have likewise Fortifications and good Intrenchments at every Landing-place, besides five other Redoubts. *Argensola* says, the Inhabitants being weary of the *Portuguese*, they readily submitted to the *Dutch*, but grew afterwards their Enemies when they receiv'd a Check at the *Molucca's*. They were soon reduc'd, quitted *Nera* to the *Hollanders*, and renew'd the Treaties with them in 1609. The *English East-India Company* having afterwards a Mind to these Islands, excited the Natives to a Revolt, and promis'd to assist them; but this Matter was accommodated betwixt the *English* and *Dutch* in 1621, upon an Agreement, that they should jointly trade there; but the *English*, says our Author, renew'd the Quarrel afterwards at the Isle of *Pouleron*. The *Dutch* reduc'd them again, transported the Inhabitants, and planted new ones in 1686. Their chief Factory is at *Nera*, where the Governor of these Islands usually resides. There are two good Forts, one with 4, and another with 5 Bastions, where the Governor and his Council have their Lodgings. Mr. *Finch* in his Journal takes Notice of our Quarrel with the *Dutch*, and says, that understanding that they had a Mind to build a Fort there, he treated with the Natives to deliver the Islands to the King of *England* in 1609, before the *Dutch* begun any Fort there; but the Natives were treacherous to both, killed the *Dutch* Admiral under Pretence of a Conference, and would have murder'd them all, had they not been assisted.

lifted by the *English*, who were afterwards ungratefully drove out of the Island by the *Dutch* Vice-Admiral, according to that Author. Captain *Saris* says, they have 3 Harvests, viz. in *February*, *July*, and *October*; and that these Isles are a Commonwealth, under a Shabander, who manages all, with the Approbation of the People. The Commodities most imported here are, Rice, Cloths of *Coromandel*, *Cambaya*, and *Malacca*, Broad-Cloth, Stammel, Black and Red Calicoes, *China* Boxes, Basons without Brims, light colour'd Damasks, Taffaties, Velvets, Gold Chains, Silver Cups, gilt damask'd Head-Pieces, Guns, and Sword-Blades. Gold Coyn turns likewise to great Profit here. *Mandelsloe* says, their Harvests are in *April*, *August*, and *December*; and that they have Bananas, Oranges, Coco's, Olives, and other Fruits, as well as Spices. There were not above 12000 Inhabitants in his Time in the Islands, and of those only 500 fit to bear Arms. There are monstrous Serpents here.

Terra de Papous, or the Land of Blacks. *Moll* places it E. of the *Banda* Isles, and about the same Lat. betwixt the *Asian* Cape of *Good Hope* on the N. W. and the Sea on the S. 'Tis little known. The *Sansons* correct those who confound it with *New Guinea*, but *Moll* joins 'em. There are a few Whites among the Inhabitants, who can't endure to see the Sun. The People in general are thin, lazy, and perfidious. Their Commodities are, Gold, Ambergreece, and Birds of *Paradise*, in which they pay Tribute to their Kings and the King of *Ternate*. *Argensola* says, the Isles of *Papous* are very numerous, and encompassed with Shelves of Sand and low Ground. The People curl their Hair, are ignorant, clownish, and hard Workers. They don't transport their Gold, or make much use of it at Home, except for Ornaments. Those that are white among them have generally very weak Eyes. Several of the Inhabitants are also deaf. Their Kings entertain a Correspondence with those of *Ternate*.

Amboyna or *Amboyno*. *Nieuhoff* says, 'tis reckon'd one of the *Molucca's*, because it produces Store of Cloves; that it lies in S. Lat. 3. 24 Leagues from *Banda*. *Moll* places it in Lat. 4. The former says, 'tis 24 Leagues in Circuit, and cut by a vast

Bay, in which there's a good Harbour. We cannot insist on Particulars, but refer to *Nieuhoff*, who says, there were formerly 57 large Villages or Plantations, and some of them very strong, but have been ruin'd by intestine Wars. Part of them are subject to the *Dutch*, and others to the K: of *Ternate*. The Inhabitants are a Mixture of *Mahometans*, *Papists*, and *Protestants*. *Argensola* says, the *Portuguese* required no more of the *Papists* towards having the Title of *Christians* than to own the Pope's Supremacy, let them be Cannibals, or as bad otherwise as they could. And the *Dutch* Ministers sent thither being none of the best, nor well provided for, Protestantism made but a slow Progress among them. In the Island there are many high steep Mountains, with Villages, and Fresh-Water Springs on the Top, and the Vallies are planted with fine Walks of Trees. The Air is not very wholesome, and the Inhabitants are troubled with a Distemper like the *French Pox*, but not so painful, nor got by *Venery*; so that 'tis imputed to the Quality of the Air, and too much Use of Sea-Fishes, Coco-Nuts, and a Liquor call'd *Saguweer*. The Island produces *Miller*, *Tobacco*, *Coco-Nuts*, *Potatoes*, *Pinang*, *Oranges*, *Lemons*, *Citrons*, *Sugar*, *Bamboo-Canes*, and some Orchards of *Nutmegs*, inferior to those of *Banda*. But the chief Product is *Cloves*, that grow wild, which *Nieuhoff* describes thus: It grows up like a Pyramid, with the Branches close together. 'Tis as big as our *Cherry-Trees*, the Leaves are like a large *Lawrel*, and the Bark is greyish. In the Middle of the Leaf there's a large Vein, from whence proceed many lesser Branches. The Leaves grow on long Stalks in Clusters, and sometimes singly. Those near the Extremities of the Branches are of a Purple Colour, but the rest dark Green; and if rubbed, scent as strong as the Cloves. There are little Sprouts at the Extremities of the Branches, which produce Buds that yield 10 or 20 Flowers in a Knot, which are tough while growing, but hard when ripe. At first they are Green, and then pale Red. There's a small Cavity in the Head, with a thin Skin, which falls off if touch'd. When there's more Blossoms than Leaves, which generally follows a dry Season, 'tis a

K k k k k

Sign

Sign of Plenty. It does not bear so plentifully every 3d or 4th Year as at other Times. They gather them in their Summer, viz. from the Middle of September or Beginning of October till February. Those they do not gather they beat down, but take Care not to bruise the Sprigs, which would hinder their bearing next Year. Those they leave upon the Trees grow bigger next Year, and drop off of themselves; but they are not so aromattick as the others, and us'd only for Seed, for in 8 or 9 Years after they have taken Root they produce new Trees; and if transplanted once in two or three Years, they bear more and better. The Clove-Tree holds good 100 Years. When the Fruit is dry'd, it turns quite black; and if dipped in Sea-Water, is Proof against Worms. They lay them up in Store-houses, from whence they are transported to other Places, where they are pick'd, and the Stalks fold apart. They distil an odoriferous Cephalick Spirit from the green Cloves and Leaves, excellent against the Palsy; for which End they also preserve the Cloves in Sugar, and draw an Oil both of the Cloves and Leaves. There's another kind call'd Royal Cloves, much scarcer and dearer, the Trees taller, and the Cloves bigger. They pretend there are only two Trees of 'em.

Two Leagues from the Harbour lies Fort *Victoria*, the chief Staple of the *Dutch*, defended by 4 Bulwarks, a good Ditch, and a great Garrison. They have a Church, where Worship is perform'd in the *Dutch* and *Malacca* Tongues. The Natives of *Amboyna* wear large Whiskers, but little Hair on their Chins, and are naked all but the Middle. The Men buy their Wives; and if they prove barren, the Marriage is null. Their Women are very lustful, fond of Strangers, and frequently poison those who deny them, or are unfaithful to them. The Government is much like that of *Holland*, in which the Natives have a Share. The *Portuguese* seiz'd this Place in 1546, but were outed by the *Dutch*, who forc'd them to a shameful Surrender in 1603. The *Spaniards* took it in 1620, and the *Dutch* retook it in 1655. The Natives have Vessels whose Stern and Poop are like the Head and Tail of a Dragon, very well gilt and carv'd. Their Weapons are Bows, Arrows, Half-Pikes, Javelins, Scymiters, Targets, Fire-

locks, and poison'd Darts, which they blow from hollow Trunks; and being subject to Earthquakes, their Houses are low. Those that dwell in the Hills don't submit to the *Dutch*, and *Funnel* says, they use them severely when taken. *Funnel* and *Dampier* give each an Account of this Island; but we do not think their Credit so well establish'd as that of *Nieuhoff* and *Argensola*. Most of our Writers insist much upon the Treachery and Cruelty of the *Dutch* to our Factory in this Island about 1623; but theirs lay the Blame upon us, and charge the Chief of our Factory with plotting against them, which they confessed, and were therefore punished. It being none of our Business to decide the Controversy, we refer to *Argensola*, and the publick Papers which have pass'd betwixt both Nations on that Subject. The *Dutch* printed a handsome Folio Book in their own Language of the Rarities of this Island in 1705, with Copper Plates, representing those Curiosities. The Book is divided into 87 Chapters, each of which treat of some extraordinary Product, that we cannot insist upon. The Author is *George Everard Rumphius*, a *German*, who they say was blind, and compos'd it at *Victoria* in *Amboyna* in 1699. There are several other Islands which depend upon this, whose Product is much the same; but since they are otherwise not considerable, we refer to our Maps and Travellers for them. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis the best Settlement the *Dutch* have in the *Indies* next to *Batavia*: that there are several Forts in it besides *Victoria*, which he says is mounted with 60 Cannon and 600 Men.

Ceram lies N. from *Amboyna*, than which, *Schouten* says, 'tis much longer; and that 'tis Winter there in the N. while 'tis Summer in the S. Part of the Island, tho' but 3 or 4 Leagues apart. *Argensola* says, the Inhabitants are Pagans and *Mahometans*; that they are very numerous, and depend on the King of *Ternate*. *Middleton* in his Voyage says, they are Cannibals, and roast Christians alive, which he ascribes to their former barbarous Treatment by the *Portuguese*. They have a Tributary King of their own, who dwells at *Cambello*, the chief Town of the Island; but the *Dutch* are possess'd of the Fortress which commands the Town and Harbour.

Gilolo,

Gilolo, call'd also *Mauricha* and *Batochina*, lies N. from *Ceram*, and E. from the *Proper Molucca's*. *Argensola* says, 'tis a very large Island, produces abundance of Rice and Sagu, and abounds with Tortoises. It has 3 Points, which look like 3 separate Islands, because of the Gulphs which cut them. That on the S. is called *Batochina*, the Middle one *Gamacanora*, and that on the N. *Gilolo*. The Inhabitants, he says, are tall, well proportion'd, but cruel, and were formerly Man-eaters. *Leguat* says, among other Things, it produces a beautiful small Lizard, which has the Bill and Feet of a Bird. The Head is of a lightish Green, the Back of a brownish Red, the Belly of a Lemon Colour, with Violet Spots, and the Tail mark'd with Rings. 'Tis a lively swift Creature, and preys upon Flies. *Funnel* says, this Island is large and high Land. The *Sansons* say, 'tis 100 Leagues long, much the same where broadest, and separated from the Land of *Papous* by narrow Streights. *Du Plessis* says, the Air is unwholesome; that 'tis 250 Leagues in Compass, and govern'd by a King of its own.

The Philippine Islands,

WERE so called from *Philip II.* of *Spain*, in whose Reign the *Spaniards* made the first Settlement there, *Anno 1565*, tho' they were first discover'd by *Magellan* in 1520. They have the *Molucca's* on the S. and lie from Lat. 5. N. to 19. and extend about 16 Degrees in Longitude. *Argensola* says, when the *Spaniards* discover'd them, the People were for most Part naked, and their Chiefs had their Skins full of Scars, or prick'd very artificially with divers Colours; but they were without Arms, so that 'twas easy for the *Spaniards* to master them; and they impos'd a Tribute of 3 Reals per Head upon each Man and Woman above 20 Years of Age. The *Dutch* under their Admiral *Oliver de Noort* came thither in 1600, defeated the *Spaniards* in a Sea-Fight near *Manilla*, and found the People mightily bigotted to their Priests. These Islands are reckon'd 1200 in Number, of which 5 or 600 are pretty considerable.

The general Product of the Islands is Gold, Rice, the usual *Indian* Fruits, the Sa-

gu and Cabbage Trees, all the Beasts, Fowl, Fish, and Insects, common to the *Indian* Islands, with very good and large Nutmegs; but they don't cultivate them, lest it should be a Temptation to the *Dutch* to attack 'em, and for that Reason the *Spaniards* allow no Trade here either to the *English* or *Dutch*, lest they should discover their Riches and their Weakness at once. They have many Harbours, Creeks and Rivers. The Natives are divided into several Nations, whose Names we cannot insist upon. Most of 'em are *Mahometans*, and wear much of the *Turkish* Habit, but no Stockings or Shoes. Their Women have long black Hair, which they tie in a Knot behind. They are smaller featur'd than the Men, and have little Feet. They wear only a Piece of Cloth sew'd together at both Ends, a Frock a little longer than their Waist, and love the Company of white Men. *Du Plessis* says, they were discover'd in the Time of *Charles V.* but conquer'd in that of *Philip II.* that the Air is very hot, with little Difference of Seasons; but the Rains begin in *May*, and last 3 Months.

The chief Islands are, 1. *Mindanao*, farthest S. and next to *Luconia*, the largest of all the rest. *Dampier* says, 'tis 60 Miles in Length, and 40 or 50 in Breadth, and reaches from 5 to 8 Deg. N. Lat. The Soil is fat, and the Hills rocky, yet produce many Trees unknown to us. The Vallies are water'd with Streams and small Rivers. They have abundance of Ever-greens, Nutmegs, Cloves, and other *Indian* Fruits, already mentioned in the general Account of the Islands. The Inhabitants being of several Nations, speak different Languages. Their Complexion is tawny, but somewhat lighter than most other *Indians*. Their Stature is low, and their Limbs in Proportion. Their Eyes are small, their Noses short, their Mouths large, their Lips thin and red, and their Teeth black. Their Hair is of the same Colour, but flag. They are ingenious and nimble, yet lazy; and tho' courteous to Strangers, are implacable when provok'd. They are ready to entertain Strangers with a Female Companion for a small Present, and take it ill if their Offer be denied. *Dampier* says, the *Spaniards* had several Forts here, but were expelled by the Natives. They are now most afraid of the

Dutch; but invite the *English* to settle among them.

The chief City is of the same Name, on a River near the Middle of the Island, on the S. Side, Lat. $6\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 142. according to *Moll*. *Dampier* says Lat. 7. 20. Their Houses are built upon Posts from 14 to 20 Foot high, and consist of one Floor, with many Partitions. The Sultan's House stands on 150 great Posts higher than the rest, with broad Stairs leading up to it. In his Hall he had 20 Iron Cannon on Field Carriages, and his Generals have likewise some in theirs. Their Floors are well matted, because they sit on them, and have no Stools or Chairs. Their Diet is Rice, Sagu, Fish, Buffaloes, and Fowls, which they take up with their Fingers, without Knives, Spoons or Forks. Besides their own Language, they speak the *Malayan*, and some of them *Spanish*, but their Devotion is in *Arabick*. Their chief Trades are Goldsmiths, Blacksmiths, and Shipwrights, who build good Vessels for Trade, War, and Pleasure. They exchange Gold, Bees-Wax, and Tobacco, which is good and cheap, for Callicoes, Muslins, and *China* Silks. They are subject to a dry Scurf, with violent Itchings, but not infectious; yet when it is cured, leaves broad white Spots on their Bodies. They are also subject to the Small-Pox, Agues, Fluxes, and Gripping of the Guts. They have many Wives, and are govern'd by an absolute Sultan, who is carried about in a Couch upon Men's Shoulders, and attended by a small Guard. Their Weapons are Swords, Lances, and a Sort of Bayonets, and constantly wear the latter. They never fight pitch'd Battles, but encamp in small Wooden Forts, defended by Guns, endeavour to surprize their Enemy by small Parties, and neither take nor give Quarter. The River on which the Town stands is narrow, and has not above 11 Foot Water on the Bar at Spring Tides. The City is about a Mile long, but not so broad. The River abounds with Worms, which are destructive to Ships if not well sheath'd. The West Winds are dangerous in this Harbour. *Dampier* thinks the *English* might settle advantageously here, because it lies betwixt the Spice Islands, the *Philippines*, and the *Proper Molucca's*; and that they might easily be supplied from *England*, if Ships set out in Au-

gust, and pass round *Terra del Fuego* by 6 or 7 Months Voyage; whereas by the Cape of *Good Hope* 'twould require 8 or 9. There are several other Islands lie about it, and there are other good Harbours in *Mindanao*; but we cannot insist upon them. The *Sansons* say there are three which bear this Name, and lie almost contiguous; that *Mindanao* properly so called lies in the Middle, is above 100 Leag. long, and almost as broad; that *Canola* towards the W. is 75 Leagues long, and about 30 broad; *St. John* on the N. E. is about 25 Leagues in Circuit; and that these 3 Islands together contain 200 Leagues. He says, they are subject to several *Mahometan* and Pagan Kings, who keep a good Correspondence with him of *Ternate*, and are Enemies to the *Portuguese* and *Spaniards*.

2. *Paragoya* or *Paraguan*, reaches almost from the 8th to the 11th Deg. of Lat. according to the *Sansons*, with whom *Moll* almost agrees. 'Tis above 100 Leagues long, and from 10 to 25 broad, produces Figs as thick as a Man's Arm, and half as long, and others about the Length of an Handbreadth, which are better than the former. Their King is Vassal to him of *Borneo*. They have Store of Rice, of which they make good Wine.

3. *Tendaye* or *Philippine*, N. Lat. 12. Long. 167. is 50 Leagues long, and 40 where broadest. It was the first discover'd, and therefore gave its Name to the rest. 'Tis the pleasantest of all of 'em, fruitful, rich, of easy Access, and its Inhabitants civil. On the S. E. Corner of this Island is the Passage of *St. Clare*, betwixt several lesser Islands; and betwixt *Philippina* and *Leyte* is the Streights of *St. Juanilo*.

4. *Cebu*, W. from *Leyte*, and E from *Negros*, is reckon'd the Middle of the *Philippine* Islands. On the W. Side the *Spaniards* have a Town call'd *Jesús*, with a good Harbour, in Lat. 10. Long. 165. *Magellan* contracted an Alliance with the King of this Island, and in his Quarrel was kill'd by the K. of *Matan*.

5. *Mindora* is almost as large as *Philippina*, and lies on the W. Side of these Islands. The *Sansons* say, it has Mines of Gold, produces Pepper, and gives Name to the Streights betwixt it and *Manilla*. It has a Town

Town of the same Name, more famous of old than at present.

6. *Lucon, Luconia, Manilla*, or the *Manilles*, *Ptolomy's Insula Satyrorum*, is the chief, and lies farthest N. of the *Philippines*, except some small ones not worth describing. 'Tis sometimes called *New Castille*. It reaches from 13 to 19 N. Lat. so that 'tis 150 Leag. from S. to N. but stretches one of its Corners a great Way towards the E. so that from hence to the furthest Side on the N. 'tis 200 Leagues. The Breadth is unequal, from 50 to 75 Leagues. The chief Town is *Manilla*, on a Bay near the S. Side, about Lat. 15. Long. 138. 'Tis the Residence of the *Spanish* Viceroy, who commands all the Islands, and has a very advantageous Post, which would be coveted by the chief *Grande*s, were it not at so great Distance from *Spain*. 'Tis also the See of an Archbishop, who has *Suffragans* under him in the neighbouring Islands, and is call'd *Manilla the Noble*, being well built, large, and strong, with a good Citadel and Harbour, but of a difficult Entrance, because of the Islands and Rocks that lie at the Mouth of the Bay. Authors are not agreed whether it be the ancient *Lucon*. The Harbour is much frequented by Vessels from *China*, *Portugal*, and *Spain*, and a clandestine Trade is now and then conniv'd at to others. *Dampier* says, the Length of the Island is 6 or 7 Deg. and the Breadth about the Middle 60 Leagues. The Natives who live in the Country are subject to the *Spaniards* and *Papists*. The Houses of the City are spacious, strong, and cover'd with Pantiles, the Streets large and regular, with a noble Market-place in the Middle. They have many fair Churches and Convents, and two large Ships from *Aquapulco* in the *West-Indies* come hither once a Year. Abundance of ingenious *Chinese* Merchants and Trademen, who work curiously in Gold, Silver, and Silk, live without the City. *Gemelli* says, there are about 6000 People in the Town and Suburbs. *Sir Thomas Cavendish* in his Travels says, the Princes and Inhabitants of these Islands were very courteous to him, and would willingly have join'd with the *English* to have shook off the *Spanish* Yoke, and offer'd them Tribute, for which he generously rewarded them. Most of them were Pagans, went almost naked, and worshipped the

Devil. He says, the Men wore a Nail of Tin thro' their *Penis*, which they could take out and in with Pleasure; and that this Punishment was laid upon them by the Magistrates on the Petition of the Women, because they were addicted to Sodomy.

The *Sansons* say of these Islands in general, That besides what's before mention'd, they produce Iron, Steel, Saffron, Honey, Wax, Sugar, Long Pepper, Spices and Drugs of all Sorts, with Precious Stones; and that there's a Pearl-Fishing on their Coast, especially near the Isle of *Negros*; that the *Chinese* did formerly abandon them, because of their great Distance from *China*, and the Multitude of those Islands subject to so many Princes, that it was hard to keep them in Awe. They add, that the *Spaniards* would likewise have abandon'd them for the same Reasons, had it not been that Provisions are very cheap, and that they lie conveniently for their Trade to *China* and the *Spanish West-Indies*; therefore in 1589 they built many Forts, and transported abundance of Families to keep Possession of 'em, and have since drove a great Trade by the S. Sea with *Mexico*, from whence they are furnish'd with *European* Commodities by Way of *Spain*. The *Chinese* trade hither with Silks, Cottons, Porcellane, Gunpowder, Quicksilver, Iron, Steel, Copper, and other Metals, Household Stuff, Pictures, Laces, and Women's Dresses.

We think proper to add from *Gemelli* what follows concerning the *Philippine* Islands.

Magellans, he says, called them *Archipelago de S. Lazare*, because he anchor'd there on that Saint's Day. Some think they were anciently call'd *Luzons*, from *Luzon* or *Lucon* the Chief. He reckons the principal Islands 10. He has a particular Dissertation concerning their Original and Antiquity, for which we refer to him. He says, the Mountains and thick Woods are inhabited by Blacks, who differ from the rest of the Natives. They are meer Barbarians, and feed upon Fruits, Roots, and what Beasts they can kill, not excepting Monkeys, Rats, and Snakes. They go naked, but cover their Privities. The Women have no Ornament but Bracelets of Rushes and *Indian* Canes. The Natives have no Laws, Letters, or Government, but obey the Head of the Family. The Women carry their Children

Children in Wallets made of the Bark of Trees, and ty'd about them with a Cloth. When they travel, they lie all Night in the Hollow of a Tree, or under Mats. They will not suffer the Blacks of one Mountain to come to another, and many times fight desperately in Defence of their Property. They hate the *Spaniards* so much, that when they kill one, they invite all their Friends to drink out of his Skull. Their Women are deliver'd in the Woods, as we have mention'd of others. They use poison'd Arrows, and bore the Points, that they may break in their Enemy's Bodies, to prevent Cure. They worship Storks and Stones, and several deformed Statues. Some of them are *Mahometans*, and much given to Divination. The Christian Natives are against their submitting to the *Spaniards*, because they engross the Profit of the Wax they gather in the Woods.

In the Isle of *Manilla* there are hot petrifying Springs, which turn live Fish into Stones. In this Island he computes 39500 Tributary *Indians*. Some of their Women wear a Plate of massy Gold on their Foreheads two Inches broad, and lin'd with Taffata, 3 Gold Pendants in each Ear, and Rings on their Ankles, which tingle as they go. *New Segovia* is the 2d Town in this Island, was founded by a *Spanish* Governor, is the See of a Bishop, and has a Fort, with a Governor and Garrison. He reckons in all the Islands 250000 *Spaniards* and *Indians* subject to *Spain*, tho' the 12th Part of the Natives are not conquer'd. Notwithstanding the Riches of this Country, the King has but 400000 Pieces of Eight *per Annum*; so that he is obliged to lay out 250000 that come from *New Spain* to maintain 4000 Soldiers in the Country. He adds to their Product vast Quantities of Ambergreece, which the ignorant Natives made use of as Pitch. When they contract a strict Friendship, they drink a Drop of one another's Blood in a Glass of Liquor, and think themselves obliged, after this Ceremony, to take one another's Part against all Mankind. They bury alive Children that are born blind, or with any Defect, which has been so customary among them, that those who turn Papists can scarce be brought to forbear it. He mentions a Fruit here of such admirable Vertues against most Diseases, that

the *Dutch* give double the Quantity in Gold for it. He says, 'tis but lately discover'd, twines about Trees like Ivy, and bears Fruit like a Melocotoon, which has from 8 to 16 Kernels as big as Nuts, that are powerful Antidotes. In some of the Islands they have Summer in the N. when 'tis Winter in the S. They have not only Gold Mines, but a great deal in the Sands of their Rivers, out of which they gather to the Value of 200000 Pieces of Eight *per Annum*. The *Aquapulco* Ships gain 400 *per Cent.* by their Trade hither. The Air here is hot and moist, but the Heat not so violent as the Dog-Days in *Italy*, tho' it makes the People sweat much, and by consequence weak. The Moistness is occasioned by the Number of their Rivers and great Rains. The Days and Nights are always of an equal Length, and the Weather is never cold. The Natives are much troubled with Lice and other Vermin, but not the *Europeans*, even tho' their Linen be foul. They have great Dews in the fair Season, which makes the Country unhealthful, especially to *Europeans*, except advanc'd in Years. They have many different Languages, but the *Malayan* is most general. They salute People of Quality by bowing low, clapping both their Hands to their Jaws, or stretching them out, and lift up one Foot with their Knee bent. They speak of others always in the 3d Person, and some of them before their Superiors sit as if they were easing their Bodies, and think it ill Manners to do otherwise, or speak till they be spoke to. They formerly had a Custom, that none must wear Red till he had killed a Man, nor a strip'd Garment till he had killed 7. Those of better Note wear Jewels on their Fingers, Ears and Necks. Some of them prick their Skin with several Figures, and strew black Powder on them to make the Impression last. Every one has his Table, which is very low. They make Wines of their Coco's and Sugar-Canes. They bath very much in cold Water at the Rising and Setting of the Sun, which makes them build their Houses near Rivers and Lakes, and they have a Water-Trough before their Doors to wash their Feet when they enter. They cure violent Pains in the Head and Stomach, which often prove mortal to 'em, by beating the Arms, Thighs, Legs, and Right

Right Breast, of the Patient, till they be black; then rub them with Salt, cut the Parts with a Lancet, and give 'em nothing to eat for 3 Days but Rice boil'd in Water without Salt. The Natives convey their History and Religion by Tradition, as those of *Formosa*, and forbear to cut down certain Trees, because they fancy the Souls of the Deceased dwell in them, and that they see Apparitions on the Tops of those Trees. They worship their Ancestors, of whom they keep Images, and reckon'd all that were kill'd by Thunder, Sword, or Crocodiles, to be deify'd. They have many Fables concerning the Creation of the first Race of Men. They had no Governors of great Note, but submitted to the Heads of Families, who join'd against their Enemies. They kept their Tribes unmix'd, and those who chang'd Tribes were oblig'd to pay a certain Quantity of Gold. Their Nobility was not hereditary, but acquir'd by Industry and Valour. They had formerly Multitudes of Slaves, for all insolvent Debtors were obliged to become such, and the nearest Relation would lend nothing to one another without a Bargain to restore double. They frequently sold their Children to pay their Debts.

If the Father was a Freeman, the eldest Son was free, the 2d a Slave, and the 3d half free. If the Mother was a Free-Woman, then the 3d was but quarter free. They use the same ridiculous Ceremonies at Eclipses as the *Turks*; and when they took an Oath, swore before a Wild Beast or a lighted Candle, wishing if they did not perform, or swore what was false, they might be torn by that Wild Beast, or consum'd like the Candle. They sacrific'd to their Idols, when a handsome young Girl gave the first Wound to the Victim, and then they feasted on it, and anointed the Sick with the Blood. They had She Priests like the *Formosans*, and use the same Rites.

They have many remarkable Animals unknown to us; the chief of which are, 1. Flying Cats, which have Wings, hairy on both Sides, by which they fly from Tree to Tree. 2. *Mago*, which resembles a Mouse, but the Head is twice as big as the Body, and it lives on Coals. 3. Serpents call'd *Ibitin*, of a great Length, that hang by the Tail on Trees, and devour Men and Beasts,

whom they draw to them as they pass by, by the Force of their Breath; so that the only Way to prevent it, says our Author, was to break the Air betwixt the Man and the Serpent. 4. A Sea-Fowl call'd *Tawon*, peculiar to this Country. 'Tis black, about the Size of a Hen, with a long Neck and Legs, and lays its Eggs in a light sandy Ground. They are all Yolk, which, when the Chickens are hatch'd, is as whole and sweet as at first. The Chickens are as good as Pigeons, and the *Spaniards* eat them together with their Yolks. 5. A Fish which they call a *Woman Fish*, because it resembles the Sex in its Breasts, &c. They know no Males of the Sort, and say, their Bones are good to stop Bleeding and a Cough, and their Flesh eats like Pork. 6. They have Shell-Fish so large, that one of them will dine a Boat's Crew. We cannot insist on their Trees, Fruits, Plants, and Flowers; but they have many Medicinal Herbs good against Wounds, and all Sorts of Diseases, as they have others which are venomous. They have large Bats, which they say are as good as Rabbits. They have Baths near the Lake of *Bahi* so hot, that they immediately scald a Crocodile to Death, and the Smoak of the Springs is as hot as the Flames of a Furnace.

The Islands of Ladrones or Robbers,

CALL'd otherwise *Mari-Anne*, from the late Qu. of Spain, in whose Time the *Spaniards* began to inhabit them. *Sanfon* makes them 16 or 20, which reach from 8 to near 21 Deg. of N. Lat. and lie in a Chain about Long. 188. *Moll* places 'em betwixt Lat. 13. and 22. They were so called because the Inhabitants are thievish, especially of Iron, have very little Provisions, and go quite naked. *Pigafetta* in *Magellan's Voyage* says, the *Spaniards* under *Magellan* in 1520 landed here, killed several of the thievish Inhabitants, and burnt their Houses, because they could not otherwise prevent their Theft and Robbery. They have no sort of Government, have long black Hair, an Olive Complexion, anoint themselves with Oil of Coco, colour their Teeth black and red, and some wear Caps of Palm-Trees. The Women are better featur'd and modest.

dester than the Men. Their Hair is so long, that it trails on the Ground. Their Houses are of Timber, cover'd with Boards and Fig-Leaves, and divided into several Apartments. Their Beds are Palm Mats; and instead of Sheets, they use Palm Leaves. Their Weapons are Clubs and long Poles, with Heads of Horn. Their Diet is Coco's, Banana's, large Figs, Sugar-Canes, Fowls, and Fish. Their Canoos are odly contriv'd, with Sails of Date-Leaves, and a large Board with a Staff upon the Top instead of a Rudder. They paint them of several Colours, and sail at a great Rate with them. They were so brutish and ignorant, that when wounded by Arrows from the Spaniards, they would pull out the Arrows and gaze upon them till they fell down dead, and did so wonder at their Ships, that they follow'd them a great Way with Multitudes of Canoos, tho' many of them were killed. The *Sanfons* say, there are several Vulcano's in their N. Islands, and in some of them Cochineel. For the Names of those Islands, we refer to our Maps.

The Islands on the Coast of China.

1. **A** *Ynan* or *Hainan*. *Moll* places it Lat. 19. and 20. Long. 127. and 128. near the Coast of *Canton* in *China* on the N. the Gulph of *Cochinchina* on the W. and *Luconia* on the E. *Kao* says, 'tis 300 Miles in Compass, has 13 Cities, a good Pearl Fishery, and produces Store of Aloes. *Le Comte* says, there's a Lake here which petrifies Fish, as he found by Experience. *Sanfon* says, they have *Aquila* and *Calamba* Wood, Mines of Gold and Silver, abundance of Corn and Fruit, wild and tame Animals; and that in the Middle of the Island the Inhabitants are Savages, and the chief City is *Kincenseu*. They depend on the Province of *Canton*.

2. *Macao*, lies off of the same Coast at the Mouth of a Bay, very near the Shore, on the W. Side, Lat. 23. Long. 131. *Kao* says, the *Portuguese* have been Masters of this Island about 130 Years; that 'tis a Peninsula, with a fine Harbour, and drives a great Trade to *Canton*, for which they pay a Million of Crowns *per Annum* to the Emperor. They have fortified it strongly, built

several Churches and Monasteries, and trade chiefly in Pepper, Cinnamon, Cloves, Sanders, *Pucho* a Medicinal Wood, Ebony, a Wood that dies Red, Wine, and eatable Birds-Nests. *Le Comte* says, the *Portuguese* are subject to the Mandarins in all Cases that relate to the Emperor, tho' they have a subordinate Government of their own. The Town is small, unwall'd, and built on a narrow uneven Soil, and *Gemelli* says contains about 20000 People.

3. *Formosa*, so call'd by the *Portuguese* because of its Pleasantness, and by the *Chinese* *Pacanda*, lies opposite to the Coast of *Fokien* and *Canton*, betwixt Lat. 21. and 26. Long. 131. 40. *Nieuhoff* places it Lat. 23. 30. 'Tis of an oblong Figure, 125 Leagues long, but not of a proportionable Breadth. 'Tis full of Hills, fruitful Vallies, and fine Rivers, and abounds with Rice, Sugar, and all the usual Fruits, Beasts and Birds, of the *Indies*. It has no good Harbour for great Ships, so that they ride at Anchor near some Isles about 12 Leagues from it. They use Buffaloes for Carriage. Their Mountains are full of Brimstone, which makes them subject to Earthquakes. They contain likewise Gold and Silver, but the Natives don't dig for them. 'Tis very populous, and besides the Natives, has 25000 *Chinese* that fled hither from the *Tartars*. The Natives are of an Olive Complexion, fat, strong, well limb'd, and many of them will outrun Wild-Boars and Stags. They go for most Part naked in the Summer, with a Covering over their Privities. In Winter they wear Coats of Silk or Callico. They make Stuffs of Dogs-Hair, which they esteem much. Their Bread is of Roots and Rice, and of the latter they make a strong Liquor. The Women cultivate the Ground, &c. and the Men spend their Time in Hunting or War. They hunt in Communities, and divide their Prey, which they catch with Nets and Darts, with a Bell fasten'd to 'em; so that when it rings, they follow the Beast by the Sound. Their Houses are of one Story, and of Cane, rais'd 3 or 4 Foot from the Ground, with a Door at each Corner. They adorn them with Hangings of painted Callico, Heads of Boars and Stags, Pick-axes, Bows, Arrows, Clubs, and other Arms; but the chief Ornament is the Skulls and Bones of their Enemies. Their Vessels are

of Bamboo or Earth. The People are generally friendly and faithful, and of a quick Wit and Judgment. They have no General Governor, but every Village is a sort of Commonwealth, govern'd by 12 of most Note, whom they chuse for Life, but give them no Power except to consult for the publick Good, and their Results must be approved by the whole Assembly before they bind. They have no Corporal Punishments. They are mighty Respecters of Age, and give their Seniors the Precedency in every thing. The Men don't usually marry till 50 Years of Age, but the Women as soon as they are meet; and when young Men have a Mind to marry, they send a Suit of Clothes, with some Bawbles, to the Woman; which, if she accept, the Bargain is made. They are not allow'd to cohabit till the Man be 50 Years of Age, except by Stealth, when the Man goes away betimes in the Morning; and if the Woman be with Child before she is 37 Years old, their She Priests squeeze their Bellies till they miscarry, for they reckon it a Sin to keep any Children alive till both Man and Woman be of that Age; but afterwards they are careful enough of them. The Mothers keep the Infants constantly by 'em till two Years old, but sometimes allow them to see their Fathers. Their Marriages are dissolved upon very slight Occasions, and both Parties are at Liberty to marry again, which sometimes happens twice or thrice in a Year. They abhor Incest, but make no Account of Fornication, so that it be done in Private. They have no Courts of Justice, so that every one is at Liberty to take Satisfaction for Theft, Adultery, and Murder, which, if the Criminal be discover'd, he makes up with Presents of Hogs or Stags, and two or three of the former is judg'd a sufficient Reward to a Cuckold. They have frequently Civil Wars, when Villages combine against one another, or endeavour to surprize their Enemies by Night or in the Field; and he that brings home most Heads, is reckon'd the bravest Fellow. Their Weapons are long and broad Shields, short broad Scymiters, Darts pointed with Iron, Bows and Arrows, but no Firelocks. They can neither write nor read, but transmit their Paganism by Tradition. They have many

Idols, but two chief ones. When it thunders, they say the Great Man is angry with his Wife, and refuses to send them Rain. Their other chief Idol they say is malicious, and they worship him to prevent Mischief. Their She Priests, for they have none else, sacrifice Beasts and Fruit, fall into Extasies, and pretend to give Answers to such as consult them. The Spectators are chiefly Women, who make themselves drunk in the mean time. These Priestesses ascend to the Tops of their Temples quite naked, where they wash themselves in the Sight of the People, pretend to foretel good and bad Fortune, and to banish the Devil, &c. They dry the Bodies of their Dead over a Fire, while their Friends riot and dance: Then they keep the Corps two Years, and bury it in the House. They believe Rewards and Punishments in a future State; and as soon as a Person dies, erect a Scaffold before the Door, on which they place the Corps, surrounded with Standards, and set a Vessel of Water for the Soul to wash off its Sins. The greatest in their Account are having Children before 37 Years, wearing rich Clothes, or catching Crabs, Oysters, &c. in the forbidden Seasons. *Nieuhoff* adds, That while the *Dutch* continu'd among 'em, many were converted, and the whole Island was in a fair Way to turn Christians. *Baldæus* gives an Account how the *Dutch* were outed of this Island by the *Chinese* in 1662, when they beheaded all their Ministers and Schoolmasters that came in their Hands; so that the *Dutch* lost 1600 Men by Famine and Sword. For the other Particulars, we refer to him. *Schouten* says, the *Chinese* surpris'd it by sending great Numbers to settle there on Pretence of Trade, under their Emperor *Coxinga*, who was originally a Taylor, and turn'd afterwards Pyrate; for which, being pursued by the *Dutch*, he took this Revenge on them. There were several Prodigies, as Earthquakes, Apparitions, &c. before this dreadful Revolution, in which *Schouten* is very particular. The *Dutch* made a noble Resistance in their Forts, and by some of their Men of War, but were overpower'd by Numbers, and the Remainders of them, upon a Capitulation, were sent to *Batavia*, but barbarously mangled.

The Islands of Japan.

Shouten says, this Empire consists of one great Island, and several others about it, but that the N. Part of the great one is not yet known. It reaches from the 30th to the 38th Deg of N. Lat. and further according to some, and is encompassed with that Part of the Ocean which separates *Asia* from *America*. On the N. it has the Streights of *Anian*; on the E. *New Spain*; on the E. S. E. *Peru* and *Chili*, but above 1000 Leag. distant; on the S. the *Philippine Islands*, &c. and on the W. the Coasts of *Corea* and *China*. Formerly those Islands were different Kingdoms, but now they form a potent Empire. The Climate is very cold, especially towards the N. Part, where much Snow falls in *December*, *January*, and *February*. In other Respects the Country is very pleasant and fruitful, the Soil being well water'd, and almost verdant the whole Year. It abounds with all manner of Necessaries. Here are several high Mountains, and some Vulcano's, with Mines of Silver and other Metals, and a great many fine Towns and Fortresses. The Emperor surpasses all the Monarchs of *Europe* in Splendor. The Kings, Princes, and Noblemen, who are his Vassals, have vast Riches in their Territories, which they spend in Luxury. The Emperor has an absolute Power over all their Lives and Estates, and disposes of them at Pleasure for very slight Faults. The People are thought to drive their Origine from *China*. They are divided into Magistrates, Priests, Soldiers, Tradesmen, and Peasants. They are generally subtle, ambitious, steadfast, patient in Adversity, modest and civil in their Behaviour, of a good Understanding, quick Apprehension, and argue with a great deal of Cunning and Vivacity; but they are plung'd in gross Idolatry, hard-hearted, and uncharitable to Strangers or their own Countrymen. When any Tumult happens, they take the Opportunity to assassinate those from whom they have received Affronts, and falsely charge 'em with Attempts against their Lives. They let the Poor, Sick, and all Sufferers, lie and perish, rather than relieve them, tho' it be in their Power, and throw their dead Corpses upon

Dunghils. They are severe to Criminals without Mercy, and put them to the most painful Deaths they can invent. The Habits of all Ranks on both Sexes are much like the *Chinese* and other *Indians*. Few of them have Beards or Mustachoes, and they look on black Hair and black Teeth to be beautiful. Most of them shave great Part of their Heads, and tie up what is left behind upon their Neck; but they are not uniform in this. The better Sort use Fans and Umbrella's when they go abroad, but the common People go bare headed in all Seasons. Their Women seldom go out but with their Husbands, and those of Quality are very magnificent in their Apparel and Retinues. Most of their Structures are of Wood, well and handsomely built; but they have few of Stone, because of their frequent Earthquakes. The Houses of the meaner Sort are built with Branches of Trees, interwoven with Cane, and plaister'd with Clay. Most of their Structures are low, because of the Earthquakes, and their Roofs lie some Feet over the Walls, under which they have pleasant Galleries. Those of Quality have large Gardens and Houses, with handsome Apartments, well furnish'd, especially with fine Skreens, and curious Paintings; but they are very subject to Fire, so that in 1657, 100000 Houses and People were burnt in *Yedo*, their Capital. When People of Quality marry, both Parties ride in Coaches, follow'd by their Kindred and Friends. They go up to a high Place, where a Bonze marries them, in the Presence of the People, at the Foot of an Idol. The Bridegroom and Bride, with Flambeaux in their Hands, light two Lamps at the same time, while the Bonze pronounces the Words, and then their Friends express their Joy, wish them Happiness, and give Presents to the Bride, who throws all the Toys that she play'd with in her Infancy into the Fire. Then they sacrifice Beeves to the Idol, and return in the same Pomp they came, with a Crowd of Musicians, to the Bridegroom's House, whose Windows are adorn'd with Pavilions, Banners, &c. Flowers are thrown out upon the Spectators, and the Rejoycings last commonly for a Week. The Men are allow'd Concubines, but the Women are strictly guarded, and for the least Umbrage their Huf-



JAPON or NIPHON.
The Land of IESSO and
Straits of the VRIES &c.
By H. Moll Geographer.

Husbands may kill or divorce 'em. Adultery betwixt two married Persons is severely punish'd; and to prevent it, as they think, they allow publick Brothel-Houses. The Parents contract their Children very young, and sometimes in their Cradle. Their Moveables consist in fine Mats, with which they cover their Floors. They have also Mattresses, on which they sit and sleep, and the ordinary Sort have only a Stone or Log of Wood for their Pillow. In their Way of Eating they imitate the *Chinese*. They despise the Neatness of the *Dutch* and their Perfumes. They have abundance of red Wheat, of which they make no Bread, but a sort of Furmity. They drink much Tea. They make a Liquor of Wheat as strong as *Spanish* Wine, but it has a bad Flavour. They have Multitudes of Flower-Pots and fine varnish'd Utensils. Those of Note adorn the Walls with Arms and Pictures. They receive Visitors with great Civility, and treat them with Tea all the Year round. In case of Sickness, they drink cold Water, or Liquors extracted from Herbs and Roots. They never let Blood, nor deny the Patients what Victuals they have a mind to. They are naturally strong, and can bear Hunger, Thirst, Heat, Cold, and Fatigues, with great Ease. Many of their Women use the same brutish Custom to make themselves miscarry and murder their Children as those of *Formosa*, and 'tis reckon'd no Crime for poor People or unmarried Women to destroy their Children, except they be Males, and then the Emperor breeds 'em up for the War. They wash their new-born Infants in cold Water. The richer Sort put them up in a large Sleeve instead of Clouts and Blankets, and the Poor expose them naked. The Rich employ the Bonzes to teach their Children to read and write, and others to learn them Arts and Sciences, and the Affairs of War. Their Arms are like those of the other *Indians*, and they are allow'd to carry them at 12 Years of Age. They usually wear a short and a long Scymiter on their Right Side, and their Swords and Daggers are well made, and bear a good Price. Their Cavalry is well mounted; and besides other Arms, have long Scymiters with Wooden Handles, in Form of Half-Pikes. They wear Head-Pieces, and both Horse and Foot march in

good Order without any Noise, and have so much Courage, that they never fly, but conquer or fall on the Spot; so that Soldiers are very much valued here, and their Citizens are generally train'd to Arms. They love Comedies, Shews, and their own sort of Musick, but can't endure that of *Europe*. When they salute one another, they bow their Heads to the Ground, and reckon it good Breeding to pull off their Shoes presently. There are no Inns or Publick Houses in this Empire, yet Travellers are well enough accommodated. There's a Multitude of Lepers, Beggars, Hermits, Soothsayers, and Sorcerers, in this Country. All Masters of Families are allow'd to do Justice on their Domesticks, and there are Judges in the Towns or Cities who punish Criminals in the Emperor's Name. A Gentleman or a Soldier, when guilty of Capital Crimes, has the Privilege, as they call it, to kill themselves; and if they decline it, which happens seldom, they cannot escape, for every one condemns 'em as much for their Cowardice as their Crime; but others die by the common Executioner. The least Robbery, Lye, or playing at Chance-Games for Money, is punish'd by Death; and for State Crimes, not only the Criminal, but all his Family and Kindred, are put to Death; and the Government orders it so, that at whatever Distance they be from one another, they are executed at the same Time.

The *Japonese* worship the Devil, and the Head of their Religion is call'd *Dair*, whom they worship as a God. He resides at *Meaco*, has a splendid Court, and confers all Religious Titles and Benefices. They have many Sects, and worship the Inventors of them. They have a great Number of stately Temples, curiously carv'd and gilt, with Idols of most frightful Shapes, and these Temples are dedicated some to the Devil, others to Apes, Rivers, and Fishes; and in that dedicated to *Chamis*, one of the Heads of their Sects, they have as many Idols as Days in the Year. The Bonzes have their Heads shav'd, and Bonnets made of little Osier Branches. They wear long Robes, and are under a General call'd *Bonzus*. Some preach, some live in Contemplation, others do Pennance in their Convents, and all pretend to a great deal of

Cunning. They burn and inter the Dead, regulate the Funeral Ceremonies and Processions, when they make as great a Noise as they can with Copper Basins, for which they are well paid. Popery was easily settled here by *Xavier* in 1549, and other Jesuits who succeeded him; but *Schouten* says, it was extirpated upon the Discovery of a Conspiracy by the *Portuguese* and new Converts to make themselves Masters of the Empire, so that the *Japonesse* massacred all the Christians between 1613 and 1626, till none were left in the Island; and no Christians were permitted to trade with *Japan* but the *Dutch*, who were limited by such hard Conditions, that they have no Way left to introduce Christianity. They came to *Japan* about the Beginning of the Persecution, and were permitted to settle first at *Firando*, and then transported to *Nanguesacque*. *Kao* says, none suspected to be a Christian is suffer'd to enter any Part of the Empire before he has trampled on a Crucifix, as a Testimony that he is no Christian; and that the *Dutch*, when ask'd, If they are Christians? reply, They are *Hollanders*. He makes the Breadth of *Japan* 150 or 160 Miles, and the Length 300 or 350. He adds, that the Natives are extremely jealous of their Liberty, and thoroughly vers'd in State Politics. The *French* Jesuits say, That *Japan* lies nearer *Mexico* than *China*; and that both *China* and *Japan* are by Observation found to be 500 Miles nearer *Europe* than commonly believ'd: That there's a Chain of Hills betwixt the E. and N. of *China*, that reaches to the farthest Part of the *Muscovian* Dominions; whence some are of Opinion, that this Part of *Asia* is join'd to the Continent of *America*. This we have from the Annotator on *Kao*, and submit to the Judgment of the Learned. *Gemelli* says, the Vulgar never speak to the Mandarins but on their Knees, with all other Tokens of Respect; and when a Mandarin is aboard a Vessel, they don't speak one Word, but the Pilot directs the Steersman by waving a Fan. Captain *Saris* says, That a Man is cut to Pieces without Ceremony here, if he draw a Weapon in Anger, and 'tis Death to steal another Man's Slave. When they lead a Malefactor to Execution, two Men go before him to dig his Grave, (except in some Crimes, where he is not allow'd one) and

another carries a Table, with an Account of his Offence. The Criminal follows with his Hands bound behind, and a little Banner, on which his Crime is likewise writ, and the Executioner comes after with the fatal Weapon by his Side, and holding a Cord, by which the Malefactor is bound, and a Soldier walks on each Side for a Guard. They give Liberty to Whores and Bawds, and many live by hiring them out at such and such Prices, which, when once set, they cannot raise on Pain of Death. Along the S. W. Coast, from *Firando* to *Ozaca*, there are Women who live with their Families upon the Water by catching Fish. They have few tame Beasts, except Kine. Their Diet is Rice of several Sorts and cheap, fresh and salt Fish, Herbs, Radishes, Beans, Wild Fowl, Deer, and other Wild Beasts, Cheese, &c. but eat no Butter or Milk, because they count it the Blood of the Animal. They make a strong Wine of Rice, but the poorer Sort drink warm Water to kill the Worms. The Roads are very good, and at every League are two small Hills on either Side, with a Pine-Tree planted on each, to prevent Travellers being impos'd upon by those that let out Horses. The Country is very populous, and full of Towns, Villages, Farms, Country Houses, and Temples, built in shady Groves, and the Priests live round them. In the Roads to great Towns, they hang the dead Bodies of Malefactors upon Crosses in *Terror*. The Emperor's Great Seal is not Wax, but a red Stamp; and when he receives Presents from Ambassadors, they are plac'd in Order upon Mats in the Room of Audience.

The Captain says, their Language is as compendious as the *Chinese*, but their Characters differ, and they read from the Right Hand perpendicularly downward.

Mr. *Cocks*, Chief Resident of the *English* Factory at *Firando*, says, the *Japonesse* exceed all the rest of the World in Feasts and Entertainments, to which they invite their Dead, by calling at their Graves. At these Times they clean their Streets, and make Illuminations, which 'tis Death for any to neglect. They march with abundance of Lamps to the Graves, where they eat and drink for several Nights together. Towards the End of the Festival they go about the

the Town with Flags, beat upon large Pans, and dance at the Temples, Sepulchres, and Doors of great Men. They love Balls, publick Dancings, Plays, and Masquerades, at which their Kings and Noblemen act the greatest Part. They have publick Shooting-Matches, when the Kings and Nobles appear on Horseback, attended with Slaves, Pikes, Bow-men, and small Shot. When they perform any Drama's, the Courtiers and others of Substance send in Plenty of Provisions for the Entertainment of the Company. When a Christian dies, the Corps must not be brought within Sight of their Pagod, tho' the Place of Interment be at the End of the Street, so that they are sometimes carried 2 or 3 Miles about; neither will they suffer the Corps to be carried in any of their Boats, and will let it rot upon the Ground rather than inter it. Their Bonzes frequently give false Alarms of Fires, which they say will happen on such a Day; but our Author thinks, that to establish their Reputation, and to get Plunder, they form the Plot themselves, and tell the People before-hand, that the Devil will put it in Execution at such a Time.

The Author of the History of the Church of Japan, translated from the French, and printed at London in 1705, says,

Japan is divided from California or New Granada to the E. by a Sea of above 1000 Leagues, and lies between 30 and 40 Deg. of N. Lat. at the E. Extremitie of Asia. Some take it to be the Golden Chersonesus, others the Chryse of S. Denis of Alexandria or the Zipangri of Paul the Venetian. Some think it joins to the N. with Jesso by inaccessible Mountains. He says, That all the Japan Islands taken together are above 600 Leagues in Compass, 200 in Length, and from 10 to 60 in Breadth. Baudrand reckons 68 Kingdoms, all subject now to the Emperor of Japan; and Francis Solier a Jesuit divides it into Nippon on the E. which contains 53 Kingdoms; Saycoco or Ximo on the S. where there are 9; and Xicoco in the Middle, where there are 4. Five of the Kingdoms which lie in the principal Part are the Emperor's Demesne. Tho' all their Kings are subject to the Emperor, they are absolute within themselves, and have frequent Wars with one another. They have most of our European Trees, with others

peculiar to themselves, and among the rest one like our Palm-Tree, which is killed by the least Moisture. To revive it, they cut it down to the Root, which they dry in the Sun, transplant it into a Soil mix'd with Sand and Iron-Dust; and when any Branch is broke or cut off, they nail it to the Root of the Tree, when it springs again like a young Graft. They have high Cedars, which serve for Masts to the tallest Ships. Their Pine-Trees serve them for Candles and Torches. They have no other Oil but that of Whales, which they both eat and burn. Paul the Venetian says, in his Time the Emperor's Palace was cover'd all over with Gold. The Apartments of the Kings and Nobility are very large, curiously wainscotted and gilt. Their Cielings are choicely painted, and on their Floors stand abundance of Pots with sweet-scented Flowers. The Houses of the meaner Sort are of Clay, and thatch'd; and most of their Tradesmen having such, it mars the Beauty of their Cities, and exposes them to Fire. The Voyage from the Indies hither is very dangerous, because of Pyrates and boisterous Winds; so that this Author says, the Merchants who trade thither think it well if they save two Ships in three. Their Language, he says, is grave, elegant, and copious, and surpasses the Greek and Latin in Number of Words and Variety of Expressions, which they suit to Persons of all Ranks and Ages. They have Letters which have the Force of Hieroglyphicks, and a double Alphabet, one of Letters, and the other of Figures, like the Chinese. The Children of those of Note are instructed by the Bonzes for 14 Years to read and write in 4 Characters, which differ in Signification, for in one they write to the King, in another to the Subject; in the 3d, Affairs relating to the Publick, and their private Business in the 4th. Their Style is very laconick, yet their Language wants proper Words for the Mysteries of the Gospel, which makes it difficult for Preachers, for the least wrong Turn will render the gravest Subject ridiculous. They wear Arms from 12 Years of Age, hang 'em by their Bed-Sides, and their Hangers are so well temper'd, that they will cut ours in two without spoiling the Edge. Their Ladies are richly apparelled, and tho' with a careless, yet an agreeable

ble Air. Instead of Pendants, they have curious Rings of Pearl, and they have Girdles richly embroider'd. Their uppermost Robe trails on the Ground, under which they wear from 5 to 20 Vests, according to their Quality, for the greatest have most in Number. Their Manner of Eating is like the *Chinese*, and they are very curious in their Vessels for making and drinking of Tea, which they value by their Antiquity, and the Reputation of the Maker, so that they will give 5000 Crowns for a Tea-Kettle or Cup, and one of their Kings had a little one he valued at 14000 Ducats. When tax'd with this Extravagance, they say we are worse than they, because we put such a Value upon Diamonds, &c. which are of no Use for Life. Their Customs are contrary to ours almost in every thing, and particularly in the Administration of Physick, which with them is always salt, tart, or sharp. They likewise use Cauterizing in several Distempers like the *Chinese*. Their predominant Passion is Honour, so that their meanest Artificers must be civilly treated, otherwise they won't work for you. Persons of Quality have always a Domestick of good Sense to tell them their Faults, with full Liberty, as thinking it more honourable than to have them observ'd by Strangers. Yet they despise all of an inferior Rank, tho' Poverty here is no Scandal. Their Traders, he says, are so just, that if by Mistake you give 'em more than their Due, they'll certainly restore it. They abhor Backbiters as Cowards, and are cautious of saying any thing that may give Offence, so that they conceal their Resentments with wonderful Art. They take no Portions with their Wives, lest it should make them proud, turn them off on every slight Occasion, and are extream jealous and circumspect. They breed their Children with great Tenderness, and avoid every thing that may cow their Spirits, yet are extreamly respected by them, because of their Power to put them to Death if they please. About 600 Years ago, their Annals say they were govern'd by a single Prince, whose Title was *Dairi*; but one of them abandoning himself to Luxury, one of his chief Ministers rebelled, and usurped his Power; upon which the great Lords set up for Kings in their several Districts, and thus

Japan was divided into so many Kingdoms. The Usurper, to prevent the ill Consequence of this, restor'd the *Dairi*, and made himself his chief Minister, by which he engrossed all the Power. This occasion'd their present Form of Government, so that the *Dairi* is only a Phantom of a Monarch, appears seldom abroad; but when he does, is worshipped like a Deity. He sends Officers all over the Country as Commissioners, to make up Differences between the Kings and the great Men; but the chief Power is in the Successor of that usurping Minister above-mentioned, who has the Title of Emperor, and the Administration in his own Hands; but Titles of Honour are conferred by the *Dairi*. They have several Orders of Nobility, who are no where more respected than here; but we cannot insist upon them. Our Author says, That tho' the other Princes be absolute, their Subjects may leave them, and take Arms under another against them, without any Crime. Merchants are not much respected here, so that few of the Natives are such, because they say the Employment can't be follow'd without Lying, which they abhor; yet their Merchants have very good Rules for Trade, have but one Sort of Weights for Solids and Liquids, and but one Sort of Measure, which is very exactly divided. They never count their Money, but 'tis done up in greater or lesser Bags by the Master of the Mint, and these Bags pass current for their Value. Their Tradesmen are numerous, especially their Gunsmiths, who are much esteem'd. The most despicable People are their Peasants, who have no Property, but work for the Nobility and Gentry, who feed and pay them like common Day-Labourers. There's no Court of Justice, so that all Differences are ended either by the Will of Princes and Heads of Families, who have Power of Life and Death over their Vassals, or else by the Sword.

Their common Punishments of Criminals are, burning alive, crucifying with the Head downwards, tearing in Pieces with Horses, making them drink great Quantities of Water, and vomiting it up by Force, or putting them in boiling Oil, and some of the Kings send their Officers, who fall upon the Criminals unawares, and hew 'em to

to Pieces. When Kings offend the Emperor, they are banish'd to a little Island under a close Guard, where they have nothing but Rice and Roots, are expos'd in open Huts to all the Injuries of the Weather, and are obliged to work a certain Quantity of Silk every Day till they die.

The same Author gives an Account of their ridiculous Opinions and Practices in Religion and Worship, for which we refer to him. Their Bonzes profess great Austerity of Life, but are very debauched, and yet so much honour'd, that the Kings rise up to them, and suffer them to sit in their Presence. One Reason why they are so much respected is, that the Sons of Princes and great Men, who can't be otherwise provided for, take this Order upon them, and live in Monasteries founded by their Ancestors, where they heap up vast Riches. Our Author says, their Church Government is much like that of *Rome*, and that they have a Sovereign Priest call'd *Jaco*, who has the same Power with the Pope. They have several great Universities where they breed those Priests, who get Riches from the People by pretending they can save them from future Torments. Their Discourses are generally upon Morality, to teach the People how to master their Passions, and to condemn the Things of this World. Our Author says, that several Jesuits who understood the Language well, said, they never heard more pathetical Discourses nor stronger Reasoning than from those Bonzes, who frequently make their Auditories weep: Yet they are such very Cheats, that they rob the People of great Sums, and give them Bills of Exchange to receive it in the other World, which those ignorant People do firmly believe they shall. They have 12 different Sects, which every one may follow at Pleasure. The first is those who deny a future Life, and they live accordingly. The 2d, which is the best, believe future Rewards and Punishments, and call upon the Idol *Amida* to save them. They are regular in their Devotions, and sell Pardons at a great Rate. The 3d of their principal Sects have a Book which contains all the Mysteries of their prophane Religion, and these live a very dissolute Life. We cannot insist on the rest, only they have Nunneries, and a Sort of wild Bonzes that live in the

Mountains like Hermits, and another call'd *Jenguis*, who are so cruel, and of such a deformed Aspect, that the *Japonians* account them Devils, and not without Reason, for they murder abundance of ignorant Pilgrims, by putting them to climb inaccessible Mountains and Rocks, at which they are very dextrous themselves; and if any of the Pilgrims don't obey, they tumble them headlong down those Precipices, which the rest dare not resent for fear of the like Treatment. They enjoin them other severe Penalties, *viz.* to stand a whole Day and Night together with Arms across, and their Heads down to their Knees, during which they confess them; and if they change their Posture, beat them severely. They likewise carry them to the Top of a very high Rock, where they have a Balance, which by drawing a Bar they hang over the Rock, put the Penitent into one Scale, and a Weight in the other, exactly to counterpoise him. There they oblige them to publick Confession, and many times fall down and kill themselves by the very Terror; or if they don't please those devilish Priests, are thrown down by them on purpose. But they have so bewitched the People, that they make them believe they shall gain Paradise by those Methods; and many of 'em are so weak as to go out to Sea in Boats so full of Holes, that they are very soon drown'd, while their Friends follow in others to see the Tragedy, and then they celebrate and pray to them as Saints and Martyrs, and erect Chappels to them. Their Funeral Ceremonies are very magnificent, and much like those of the *Chinese* or other of the Pagan *Indians*.

Our Author says, *Japan* was first discover'd in the 16th Century, but 'tis not certain whether in 1534 or in 1541, by some *Portuguese* Merchants, who were thrown upon one of those Islands by Tempest. Christianity was first introduc'd among them by Means of one *Angera*, a Native of Quality, very rich, but dreadfully tormented with Remorse of Conscience for his bad Life; and making Application for Ease to the Jesuit *Francis Xavier*, he first brought Christianity into Reputation there, and was favourably received by several of their Kings. For his Disputes with the Bonzes, his converting of several of them, the Progress of Chri-

Christianity, and the Persecutions that ensued, we must refer to our Author, who makes it the Subject of two Quarto Volumes. Several of their Kings sent Ambassadors to submit to the Pope, but were persecuted by the rest. He carries his History down to 1658, and tells us, that not only all Christians, but Strangers, were in those Persecutions banish'd from *Japan*, tho' many Princes and great Lords had embrac'd that Religion, and several of the Emperors favour'd it. Our Authors would not have these Persecutions imputed to the Intrigues of the Jesuits, and their Differences with other Missionaries, yet he owns, that the preposterous Zeal of some *Franciscans*, who preach'd publickly in their Churches, &c. contrary to the Emperor's Orders, and the Advices of their Friends, who foretold the Consequences of it, was one Occasion thereof; for these Men were so obstinate, that nothing could prevail with them to act more prudently, they rely'd so much on their Character of Ambassadors from the K. of *Spain*, in whose Name they were sent hither by the Governor of the *Philippine Islands*. Another Occasion of it was the Imprudence and Vanity of a *Spanish* Captain, who being shipwreck'd on the Coast, and his Ship and Goods seiz'd by the Emperor's Order, the said Captain, in a Conference with one of the Tributary Kings, and another of the Emperor's Commissioners, in order to enforce his Argument from the Power of his Master, drew out a Map of his Dominions in the *East* and *West Indies*; and when the Commissioners ask'd how he acquir'd them, he answer'd, by sending Missionaries thither first, and then joining their Converts with his Troops; which being reported to the Emperor of *Japan*, it rais'd his Jealousy against the *Romish* Clergy and their Converts. *Gemelli* says, the *Portuguese* attempted in 1685 to settle here again, by carrying home some shipwreck'd *Japone*se from *Macao*, but in vain, and narrowly escap'd with their Lives, tho' they came to do the Natives a Kindness.

Mandelstoe says, the *Japone*se confess they know not whether their Empire be an Island or annex'd to the Continent, because from the Province of *Quanto* to the Frontiers of *Tzungaa* it is 27 Days Journey E.N.E. after which they pass an Arm of the Sea

about 11 Leag. broad, which brings 'em into the Province of *Jesso*. He adds, that the Revenues of the several Princes and great Lords, that have each a Secretary appointed by the Emperor to observe them, are computed at 721600000 *French Crowns per Annum*, out of which they are obliged to maintain Horse and Foot for the Emperor, who by this Means is able to raise 368000 Foot, and 38800 Horse, besides 100000 Foot and 20000 Horse that he always keeps in Pay out of his own Revenue. The Emperor's own Revenues are so great, that two Months Income is enough to discharge his Annual Expence. His Gold and Silver is laid up in vast Chests, enclos'd in Towers belonging to the Castle, besides what's kept in other Parts of the Country. The People change their Names three times, viz. at their Infancy, at 26 Years of Age, and at 50 or 60. His Horse are arm'd with Corsets, Firelocks a little longer than our Horse-Pistols, Pikes, Bows, Arrows, and Scymiters: His Foot with Head-Pieces, two Scymiters each, a Musket, Pike, Half-Pike, and a broad Knife. Each Company consists of 50 Soldiers, a Captain, a Lieutenant, and 10 Corporals. Five Companies make a Battalion, and 50 a Brigade. He has a very numerous Council, who have from 40000 to Two Millions of Crowns *per Annum*, and are obliged to keep answerable Retinues. The Princes and great Men impoverish themselves by Presents and Treats to the Emperor, who presents them their Wives, which adds to their Charge, because they are oblig'd to maintain them splendidly, only they abridge them of their Liberty, so they don't go abroad above once a Year to visit their nearest Relations. The *Dairo* keeps the publick Records, and writes the Chronicles, and none but the Lords and Ladies of his Family are allow'd to write Books, which obliges them to apply themselves constantly to Learning. The *Japone*se keep their Accounts by certain small Bowls, which they thread upon little Sticks on a square Board.

Tavernier says, a *Dutch* Pilot discover'd that 'twas separated from *Corea* by the narrow Streights of *Sanguar*; that *Nippon* or *Proper Japan* is four times as big as the other two Islands, and has a Vulcano in it; that the Island *Ximo* is 160 Leagues in Circuit, and

and that of *Xicaco* to the S. of *Nippon* 120 Leagues. He says, That after the *Dairi's* are crown'd by the Bonzes, they count themselves Sons of the Sun, and never appear in the Light of the Moon, nor shave their Heads, or cut their Nails, because the first *Dairi* they had suffer'd his Hair and Nails to grow, and made it Sacrilege to use either Razor or Scissars. The Emperor is obliged to marry the *Dairi's* Daughter, and give her the Title of Empress, and at the End of every 7 Years sends one of his chief Princes to the *Dairi* with a Basket of Earth, to signify that the Emperor's Lands are all at his Devotion. The *Japonefe* never go out of their Country, unless to *China* and the Land of *Jesso*, and the Emperor has lately prohibited all Commerce but with the *Chinese* and *Hollanders*. They are so fiery upon the least Affront, that if they han't a speedy Opportunity of Revenge, they'll kill themselves. When a Prince or great Lord makes a Feast, he calls for his principal Officers at the End on't, and asks 'em, If any love him so well as to kill themselves for his Sake before the Guests? And that the silly People reckon this so great an Honour, that they contend who shall do it, and rip up their Guts with a poison'd Dagger. He adds, that they practise the same Custom upon the Death of their Masters, or when they lay the Foundations of any Palace, which they think will render the Habitation and the Owners fortunate. The *Japonefe* pretend that they had Printing and Artillery before the *Europeans*. In 1643, the K. of *Portugal*, to re-establish his Trade in *Japan*, sent an Embassy to the Emperor from *Goa* with costly Presents, amounting to above 80000*l.* Sterling, together with two great Ships laden with all Sorts of Commodities esteem'd at *Japan*; to the Value of above 83000*l.* more; but *Tavernier* says, the *Dutch* President then at *Japan* prepossest the Emperor so much to their Prejudice, that instead of accepting their Presents, he order'd the Admiral to return immediately, and the Governor of *Nanguesacque* burnt one of their Ships, sent for the Blacks they had aboard, and cut off their Heads, on Pretence that they were *Indian* Rebels. The same Author gives a further Account of the Methods by which the *Dutch* have maintain'd their Ground in *Japan* a-

gainst all other Christians. The *Dutch* on the other hand charge the *Portuguese* and their Converts with having formed a Plot to dethrone the Emperor, and seize the Country, which occasion'd the dreadful Persecution and Massacre of the Christians that ensu'd; and *Tavernier* owns, that they fought several Battles, being headed by some *Japan* Convert Lords against the Emperor, but were worsted at last; so that we refer the Readers for what is said on both Sides to *Tavernier*, *Schouten*, and others, for their own Satisfaction.

The Capital of this Empire is *Jedo* or *Edo*, on a Bay near the S. E. Corner of the Island, Lat. 36. Long. 160. Captain *Saris*, who was here in 1613, says, it was a noble City, the Tiles of the Houses gilded, and the Door-Posts varnish'd. They had no Glass, but Window-Shutters, which open'd with Leaves finely painted; that the principal Street was as broad as any in *England*, and had a fine River at the Side of it, with a Fountain of Free-stone at every 50 Paces, and Buckets for Water in case of Fire. There was a noble and strong Castle, two Miles in Compass, with Walls and Moats, where the young King then liv'd, in much greater State than the Emperor his Father. He was very civil to the Captain, gave him a Letter to the King of *Great Britain*, with two Suits of *Japan* Armour finely varnish'd for his Majesty, to whose Subjects he allow'd a free Trade in his Dominions. He says, this City is 22 Days Riding from the Northernmost Part of *Japan*. The History of the Church of *Japan* above-mentioned says, this City is about 3 Leagues long, and two broad, and as well peopled as any in *Europe*; that the Castle is a League and a half in Compass, has three Ditches fac'd with Stone, and 3 Counter-scarps that communicate by Draw-Bridges. The Streets within the Castle are large, and have magnificent Palaces on each Side. The Emperor's Palace and Seraglio stand in the Middle of it, with Parks, Fish-Ponds, Canals, Water-Works, and Gardens, excellently adorned by Art and Nature. The Princes of the Blood and chief Counsellors live in the second Inclosure. In the third are the Palaces of the Tributary Kings and Princes, who court the Emperor's Favour by outvying one another in the Beauty of their

M m m m m

Structure,

Structures, where their Children are kept as Pledges of their Fidelity. The Emperor was then so rich, that our Author says, he spent every Year in House keeping and Pensions above 300 Millions of *French Livres*, or about 25 Millions Sterling. The Emperor's Palace had three Rows of Buildings in Front, of 9 Stories high, form'd at Top like a Pyramid, and two great Dolphins over them plated with Gold. The Hall of Audience is supported with large fine gilt Pillars, the Cieling of pure Gold, richly enamell'd, with curious Figures and Landscips, and the Roof cover'd with Slates of Gold; so that in the whole it looked like an enchanted Palace. In this Hall the Emperor receives the Homage of the Tributary Kings on a Gold Throne, adorn'd with Precious Stones of an incredible Bigness. This Author adds, that the Streets are 4 *French Leagues* long; that one of their Emperors in 1606 employ'd above 300000 People in enlarging it; that about the Palace there are spacious Courts, Bastions, and other magnificent Works, built meerly for Ostentation and Pleasure; and that the Street which fronts the Palace is upwards of 60 Foot broad, and planted on both Sides with Pines. Mr. *Cocks* says, most Part of the City was destroy'd in 1614 by a Tempest, which the Jesuits ascrib'd to the Persecution, but the Pagans to the Witchcraft of the Jesuits. Mr. *Wagoner* in his Voyages says, That in 1656, when he was there, this City, which for Largeness might have been compar'd to a whole Province, was burnt down in 48 Hours, with the Royal Palace, and near 160000 People. *Tavernier* says, the Air is more temperate here than in other Parts of *Japan*.

2. *Meaco* or *Macao*. *Moll* places it on the W. Side of a Lake, Lat. 36. Long. 144. about 270 Miles W. from *Jedo*. *Saris* says, 'tis the greatest City in *Japan*, and was a Place of mighty Trade; that all their Tradesmen liv'd apart, and every Trade in a particular Street by themselves. The stateliest Temple in the whole Country is here, and built of Free-stone, as long as *S. Paul's* was then from the Quire, and every whit as lofty, the Roof arch'd, and supported by mighty Pillars. It had a peculiar Altar, at which they offer'd Rice and Money, and a monstrous Idol of Copper, which

reach'd as high as the Roof. *Herbert* says, his Chair is 70 Foot high, and 80 broad, his Head big enough to hold 15 Men, and his Thumb 40 Inches round. This Temple stood upon the Top of a high Hill, and on each Side of the Ascent there were 50 Pillars of Free-stone, 10 Paces from one another, and upon the Top of each Pillar a Lantern, which made a very fine Shew by Night. There are many other Temples here, and the Jesuits had then a stately College in this City, with 5 or 6000 Converts. The *Sansons* say, That this City did formerly contain 140000 Houses, and at least 100000 when the Jesuits were there; that 'tis divided into the Upper and Lower Towns, which together were 20 Miles long, and 8 or 10 broad. The Author of the History of the Church of *Japan* says, That in his Time it was much reduc'd by Fire and War, and that it contain'd 90000 Families, besides 5 great Universities, that maintain'd 35000 Scholars each, who study'd Astrology, History, Poetry, Arithmetick, and Rhetorick. *Herbert* says, there were 60 Temples and Colleges here, with 3333 gilded Idols. *Tavernier* says, 'twas formerly the Residence of the Emperor, but now of the Dairi. His Palace stands in the upper Part of the City, and is described in the *Dutch Embassy to Japan* as follows:

On the Left Hand, as you go to the Palace, there's an admirable Tower built for Pleasure, of an extraordinary Height, the Roof of it cover'd with Plates of Gold, which form a noble Prospect when the Sun shines upon them; and near this stands the Palace of the Emperor's Master of the Horse, with a Tower for the Guard, where there are 2000 Soldiers Day and Night. On the E. Side of this is the Quarter for the Horse, where there's a Court, in which 40000 may be drawn up in Order of Battle. At the Entrance of the Palace there's a large Porch, with little gilt Balls at each End of the Roof. This Porch stands in the Middle of a fine Gallery, and 8 Apartments of the same Structure. Thro' the Windows of the Gallery there appears in the Court a great Number of Statues richly varnish'd, and a Banner with the Arms of the Dairi, which is, *Field Or*, 6 Stars *Argent* in an oval Shield, and border'd with little Points of Gold, and (as some say) Sables, with three Tre-

Trefoils *Argent*; but one of these Coats we suppose belongs to the Emperor. At each End of the Court there are sumptuous Apartments for the Women. Each Palace hath its Kitchen, with many Rooms belonging to it, and behind the Kitchens there's a fine Garden, encompassed with Walls, and fortified by Towers at certain Distances, all inhabited. In the Middle of the Garden there's a Palace rais'd in Form of a square Tower, very high, which adds a great Lustre to the rest, and in those Gardens are all Sorts of curious Trees, Flowers, and Herbs. In the Middle of all these stands the Dairo's Palace, separated from the rest by a Wall, and rais'd very high. This Wall is adorn'd from Space to Space with fine Statues. There's an Ascent to the Palace by 15 large Steps of Brass, on each Side of which there's a *Corps de Garde* with gilded Roofs, and on the Corners and Sides gilt Balls. On each Side the *Corps de Garde* there are Gardens handsomely wall'd in, with an Octagon Pavilion at each of the 4 Corners, the Roofs being of curious Shell-Work. At the Head of the Stairs is the principal Entrance of the Palace, supported by 8 large enamell'd Columns, with Chapters, resembling the *Corinthian* Order, and Bases that look like white Marble. The Front of the Palace is higher than the rest; and which Way soever one looks, there is something curious to attract the Eye. The Sculpture is of polish'd White, laid Checker-wise, upon a Ground-work of Gold, which looks very charming. The Windows and Port-holes are all adorned in the same Manner. The Floors are of Stone, so well join'd and polish'd, that they look like a Mirror. After this there's a Court pav'd with white and black Marble, and within this Court there's another, with a Structure fronting the Entrance. There are Pilasters on both Sides, resembling the *Corinthian* Order, and supporting an Architrave Frise, and Cornish of the same. In the Spaces between there are Marble Images upon Pedestals, and Steps of the same. At each of the Angles of the great Hall is an Impost, which crowns the Front, and supports the Ballusters that go round the Hall. The 2d Story is sustain'd by 16 Columns, where there are 5 great Balconies, and at the 4 Angles are 4 Wing'd Dragons of polish'd Gold. The

3d Story has many particular Ornaments, different from the rest, and the Windows arch'd. The Middle of the Palace rises like a Dome to an extraordinary Height, and upon the Summit there's a Pyramid of Balls. On the Right and Left there are Galleries, supported by 10 great Columns, cover'd with Plates of Gold, and the Part that juts over the Windows is also cover'd with Gold. Behind the Galleries are the Dairi's Apartments, so magnificent, that 'tis scarce possible to describe them; and instead of Glass, the Windows are done with fine Silk, so curiously varnish'd, that it looks like Chrystal. The Pavement is of Marble of all Sorts of Colours, cover'd with the finest Mats in *Japan*.

The Dairi's Victuals must never be dress'd nor serv'd up twice in one Dish. When he goes abroad, he is carried in a Litter much like our Coaches, whose Pillars are of massy Gold. The Roof is adorned with all Sorts of Figures and Balls of massy Gold, and it is encompassed with a Silk so fine, that he can see every Body, but none sees him. He is always carried by 14 of his chief and strongest Gentlemen; and besides his Guards, has always a vast Retinue, and is follow'd by a Coach with two Horses, whose Housings are embroider'd with Pearls and Diamonds. There are Gentlemen who lead the Horses, and others who walk on both Sides the Coach with Fans and Umbrella's. In this Coach rides his Wife or his Concubines; and after this comes a great Number of magnificent Calashes for the Ladies of the Court.

3. *Surunga* or *Surungo*, betwixt a River and a Bay on the S. Coast, Lat. 35. Long. 157. Captain *Saris* says, 'twas as big in his Time as *London* and the Suburbs, and the Place where the Emperor then kept his Court. The Mechanicks and Tradesmen of all Sorts live in the Out-Parts, that they might not disturb the Gentry with the Noise of their Trades. The Emperor allow'd the *English* to trade hither in his Time. The Captain says, there are a great many Towns, Villages, and Temples, betwixt this City and *Jedo*; and that in this Road stands their Idol *Dabis*, of Copper, and hollow within. 'Tis shap'd like a Man kneeling on the Ground, with his Buttocks resting on his Heels, and extending his Arms.

He is represented as wearing a Gown, is of a monstrous Size, and 22 Foot high, tho' in this stooping Posture. The Natives worship it as they pass by, especially those who go in Pilgrimage to the Temple of *Tencheday*, one of their chief Idols, which is very much frequented. Mr. *Adams*, who saw it, says, that every Month one of the most beautiful Virgins in the Country is brought to this Temple, and shut up alone in a neat Apartment, where they make her believe that *Tencheday* will come to her in a humane Shape, and after lying with her, resolve such Questions as the Priests put in her Head to ask; and at his going away, he leaves her a Sort of Scales, like those of Fishes. Our Author doubts not but this is a Piece of their Priestcraft. *Herbert* says, that these Women are mightily respected ever after. *Tavernier* says, the Emperor sends his Son, when 15 Years of Age, to reside here, till his Death makes Way for him to the Throne.

4. *Osacca* or *Osaca*, lies on the E. Side of the River of *Meaco*, Lat. 35. Long. 153. *Saris* says, 'tis one of the chief Ports of the Empire. The River there is as broad as the *Thames*, and has several fine Timber-Bridges over it. There's an extraordinary large, strong, Free-stone Castle, with three Walls 7 Yards thick, and the Stones so nicely cut, that they lie close without Morter. The Castle is well contriv'd, has many Bulwarks and Battlements, with Store of Loop-Holes for small Shot and Arrows; and several Passages for throwing out Stones upon the Enemy. 'Tis encompassed with deep Ditches, over which there are curious Draw-Bridges, and the Gates are strongly plated with Iron. When *Saris* was there, the Heir of the Empire was kept here in Prison, and ignorant of his Quality, the then Emperor being an Usurper, and having kept him there from his Infancy, when he was left his Guardian, and made him believe he was his own Son, which was true enough in one Sense; for when he came of Age, he married him to his Daughter, and confin'd her with him; but in other Respects he had the Attendants of a King, who were all the Emperor's Creatures.

Over against this Place, on the other Side of the River, lies *Saray*, one of the most pleasant in *Japan*, and a Town of great Trade.

Bungo, or *Ximo*, and *Saycock*, is the next largest Island, and lies on the S. W. Corner of *Japan*, from which 'tis separated by a narrow Streight. Mr. *Adams* says, That the Viceroy of this Island was very kind to him and his Men when drove ashore here by Distress, forbade them to be plunder'd or injur'd, and provided for 'em handfomely; but the *Portuguese* Jesuits were very unkind to the *English*, who being forc'd to make use of 'em as Interpreters, they did all they could to misrepresent what they said, and to give such a Character of them, as they did of all other *Europeans*, as must have ended in their Ruin, had not the Emperor, hearing of the Arrival of this Ship, sent for Mr. *Adams*, who was the Pilot; and being a Man well vers'd in the Mathematicks, which the Emperor delighted in, grew so much in his Favour, that he was not willing to part with him, and allow'd him a Compensation for his Ship and Goods that had been plunder'd during his Absence. The *Dutch* were admitted to a free Trade here in his Time. For the rest of the Particulars, we refer to his Account. The Inhabitants call this Island *Mashma*. *Saris* says, they had Boats of a peculiar Make, with which they rowed much faster than we can do. There was a good Vent here in his Time for most *European* Commodities, for which the *Dutch* had then good Returns in Bars of Silver; but the *English* being then in more Reputation, they went under their Name. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis about 60 Miles long, 30 broad, and 150 in Compass.

The Capital is *Nangasacki*. *Moll* places it on a Bay near the W. Side of the Island, Lat. 31. Long. 149. Here the *Dutch* have a Factory. *Schouten* says, it forms a very good Prospect from the Sea, has many lofty Structures, with Pagods, Steeples, &c. It has 88 Streets, narrow, but very straight, and each about 200 Ells long. There are fine Gardens and pleasant Fields about the Town, which *Gemelli* says is above a Mile round. The Houses stand very thick, and are of Timber. At Night, each Street and Quarter of the Town is shut up with Portcullisses, according to the Custom of *Japan*. Lanterns are hung out in the Streets to prevent Robberies and Tumults, of which they are so much afraid, that none can pass the Portcullisses without the Governor's Leave;

Leave; and if any Disorder or Fire happen, the Street or Quarter where it is must quell it themselves, for they are to expect no Assistance from others. *Struys* says, 'tis large and populous, but without Walls or Cannon, and that the Harbour is capacious and good. The best Houses are next the Keys. The ordinary ones are very sorry and low. He says, it is divided by several Canals, like the Towns of *Holland*. *Gemelli* says, 'tis difficult getting into the Channel, because of Flats, Rocks, and Islands; that the Town is defended by 5 Guards upon the Channel, and two Garrisons at the Mouth of the Bay, who give Notice of the Approach of Ships. The neighbouring Country is mountainous, but produces most *European* Fruits. Tho' the *Dutch* are allow'd to trade here, whenever their Ships arrive a Mandarin goes aboard to count the Men, and carry the Sails, Rudder, Ammunition, Guns, &c. ashore, till they be ready to depart; and if one of the Crew dies, a Mandarin must see the Corps before it be interred, in order to prevent their bringing any Priests or Jesuits to *Japan*; so that the *Dutch* take none aboard for this Country but such as can prove they are Natives of *Holland*; nor have they any Communication with the City, but live in their Factory, which stands on a Rock, enclosed with a Wall, and two Gates, one towards the Port to ship their Goods, which, when the Ships are gone, has 5 Seals put upon it, not to be broke on Pain of Death, and the other towards the Town, where there's a constant Guard, no Trade being allowed with the *Japonefe* but once a Year, when they grant a Pass to the Company's Deputy to go and visit the Emperor. *Schouten* says, the *Dutch* Ships are obliged to fire three Cannon-shot at the Entrance of the Road, to give Notice of their Arrival; and that the *Japonefe* Visitors not only number the Men, but register their Names, Ages, and Qualities, that they may compare it with the Complement of the Ship when she goes away, open all their Bales, Sacks, and Chests, and secure their Psalm-Books, or other Books where there are the Pictures of Saints, Beads, and Crucifixes, in a great Vessel, which they hide on Shore till the Ship is ready to go. They also set a *Japo-*

nese Bark to look after every Vessel; and if any *Japonefe* go on board the *Dutch* Ships contrary to Order, the Waiters send a Troop of Soldiers to keep Garrison in each Vessel. The Cargo is always carried ashore in *Japan* Bottoms; and when they unlade the *Dutch* Ships, they close down the Hatches, and seal them with the Emperor's Seal, which none dare break on Pain of present Death. He adds, That if the *Dutch* want any Necessaries from Shore, they give a Signal to the *Japonefe*, who must consult the Governor of *Nanguesacque* before they can furnish them; and that when Orders come for their Ships to depart, they must obey immediately, without waiting for any Conveniency, so much as Wind and Tide.

Schouten says, the adjacent Isle of *Disma* is cover'd with Shops and Booths, where, at the Time of the Market, are sold all Sorts of the finest *Japan* Merchandizes.

Firando, an Island on the W. Coast of *Bun-go*, Lat. 33. When *Saris* was here, it had a King of its own, who with his Courtiers was very civil to the *English*, came on board their Ships, which they mightily admir'd, were very well pleas'd with their Entertainment, Musick, &c. made them Presents, and promis'd them Freedom of Trade. They were so crowded by the Natives who came to see them and their Ship, that the King was obliged to restrain them, and to give the *English* a Guard to prevent any Disorders by the Mob, who were civil enough in all other Respects, but their Importunity to satisfy their Curiosity. *Saris* observes, that some of the *Japonefe* Ladies, who had been instructed a little in Popery by the *Portuguese* Missionaries, seeing the Pictures of *Venus* and *Cupid* aboard his Ship, they worshipped them instead of the *Virgin Mary* and our Saviour, and said some gibberish Prayers before them. The *English* begun a Trade and built a Factory here, but it did not continue long. The Captain mentions several other well inhabited Islands on this Coast, and says, he put in at a Town call'd *Fuccate*, not much less than *London* in his Time within the Walls, well built and uniform, and had a strong Castle, with a good Ditch and a Draw-Bridge, but no Soldiers or Guns.

The Land of Jesso, Yedzo, or Sessô.

THE *Sansons* say, some call it an Island, and others a Country above and to the N. and N. E. of *Japan*. According to the Description of it by the *English*, *Portuguese*, and *Dutch*, this Country extends from *Asia* to *America*. They say, That from *Tessô*, its most W. Point, over against *Corea*, where lie the Streights of *Tessô*, there are 60 Days Journey Eastward to the Province of *Matzumay*; and that from thence to the most E. Point, and the nearest to *America*, 'tis 90 Days Journey, which makes the Length of it 3000 Miles; but they say nothing of its Breadth. The Streights of *Tessô*, which separate this Country from *Tartary*, have great Currents, because of the many Rivers which fall into them on both Sides. They think 'tis separated from *America* by the Streights of *Anian*, and from *Japan* by the Streights of *Sangaar*, which some say is 12 Leagues, others but 12 Miles over, and some think it to be an Isthmus which joins to *Japan*. The same Authors say, That the Inhabitants are all Idolaters, and wear the Skins of Wild Beasts; that their Bodies are very hairy; that they wear long Beards and Mustachoes; are a warlike, cruel People, wash their Wounds in salt Water, and are formidable to the *Japoneses*. The Country is thinly inhabited, but would be fruitful if well cultivated. They have Plenty of choice Skins and Furs, and drive a small Trade with *Aquita* upon the most E. Coast of *Japan*; but the Inhabitants of the latter seldom go to *Jesso*, because 'tis not safe dealing with such Barbarians. Captain *Saris* says on the contrary, that he was told by a *Japonesse* who had been here twice, that it lies about 10 Leagues to the N. W. of *Japan*, and that the Inhabitants are of a fair Complexion, and civil. Those of the S. Parts understand Commerce, of which those in the Middle

of the Island are quite ignorant, and use poison'd Arrows. They are generally of the *Japonesse* Stature, except towards the N. where they are very dwarfish. They have all their Apparel and most of their Rice from *Japan*, and make their Payments in Silver and a Sort of Gold Sand, with which they abound. The chief Commodities imported here are Rice, Cotton, Cloth, Iron, and Lead; but Rice turns to the best Account. The Inhabitants of *Jesso* exchange their Fish, Neats-Tongues, and Whale-Oil, for such Commodities as they want with the Cities of *Japan* that lie next to 'em. They have Boats made of Planks, and sew'd together with Ropes made of the Rind of Coco, but have no Iron-Work about them. The *Dutch*, in their Accounts of this Country publish'd in 1643, say, That Part of it is subject to the Emperor of *Japan*, who has a Governor at *Matzimay*, where he receives an Annual Tribute in Silver, Feathers of several Colours, and fine Furs.

The chief Town, according to Captain *Saris*, is *Matchma*. The *Japoneses* have a Fort and 500 Families constantly residing here. Their Market is in *September*, when the Natives come to buy in their Winter Stores, and in *March* they bring Salmon, dry'd Fish, &c. to barter with the *Japoneses*. The Winds hold the same Course here for most Part as they do in *Japan*.

E. from hence lies the Streights of *Vries*, with an Island in the Middle call'd the *States Island*; and on the E. Side of those Streights lies that call'd, *The Company's Land*, which runs to the N. E. but how far is not known. This Coast was discover'd by *Don Juan de Gama*, in his Voyage from *China* to *New-Spain*.

We must refer the *Terra Australis*, according to the Method of the *Sansons*, till we come to describe *America*, and the rather, because that Country being little known, we may come by that Time to some further Discoveries by new Voyages.

The End of A S I A.

THE INDEX.

Note, That Ab. signifies Abbey.

C. a County or any District.

T. Town or City. T.C. or C.T. Town and Country of the same Name.

Emp. Emperor. Is. Island.

K. Q. King and Queen.

Kd. Kingdom.

Pal. Palace.

Pr. Prince or Princess.

M. Mountain.

Mon. Monastery.

R. River.

Ancient People are put in a Black Character.

Natural History in Italick.

'Tis needless to burden the Reader's Memory with more Directions; for since they must look for the Page referred to, they will soon see for Instance, whether the Word marked T. be City, Bishop's See, or Borough; and whether the Word marked C. be Country, Principality, County, Dutchy, or Diocese.

A.	Page.		Page.		Page.	
A	Asfour T	268	Abogassa Kd	223	Adam and Eve	204
	Abas Pr	302, 304	Abraham's House	203	— His Peak	644
	Abana R	82	— His Native Country	252	Adam T	173
	Abarim M	173	Abus M	236	Adana T	32
	Abassa Kd	223	Abuchaid Pr	457	Aderbeitzan C	353
	Abca's	222	Abydus T	16, 56	Adeffa or Adeza T	135
	Abdias	130	Acarnea T	58	Adida T	155
	Abdustartus K	113	Accaron T	163	Adonis R	95
	Abdon	175	Accad T	260	Adonibezek K	135
	Abdalla Pr	218	Acesines R	445	Adzanutæ	201
	— A Sort of Monks	315	Achilles	14	Adramittium T	14
	Abel T	168, 188, 89	Achaccala T	250	Adrianople T	20
	— Shittim T	173	Achem C and T	793	Adullam T	160
	Abgarus K	249, 250, 252, 264	Achiavel T	506	Adultery not minded	427
	Abila T	84, 169, 173	Achmet Pr	278, 279	Æa T	223
	Abibalus K	113	Acopas T	381	Ægea T	32
	Abimelech Pr	174, 218, 134	Acra Hill	136	Ænatole C	5
	— His Stone	127	Acrabata T	135	Ænon T	132
	Abijah K	175	Acrabbim T	161	Æoles	2
			Actamar Lake	245	Æolis C	21, 58
			Adad K	107	Æra of Nabonassar	293
					Ærethica	

Ærethica C	232	Almacharane T	206	Ananas Fruit	551
Æsepus R	15	Almericus K	180	Analativa If	643
Æsop	14	<i>Aloes</i>	620	Ancyra T	8, 52
Ætulane C	232	Alouvent M	362	Anchiale T	32
Aga	283, 288	Altancala T	231	Anchediva If	560, 578
Agathocles If	210	Alfadamus M	82	Andriacæ T	28
Agiagach Plains	356	Altamsou or Gold R	273	Andre T	432
Agra C and T	202, 485, 489, 493, 498, 518	Altandaghi M	270	Andanagar T	559
Agriaspas T	345	Altay C	438	Anguri T	8
Agrippa Minor K	178	Aly's Asses, <i>why the Persians are so call'd</i>	324	Angediva If	560, 575
Agrei	198, 199	Amasia T	651	Anhang T	785
Agubeni	198	Amasia C	7	<i>Animal, a strange one</i>	375, 611
Ahab K	175	Amanus M	29, 5	Anian Sireights	440, 442
Ahaz K	ibid	Amanus T	32	Anjengo T	616
Ahaziah K	127, 175	Amathusia If and T	47	Anna T 266	C 691
Ai T	154	<i>Amazones</i>	51, 7, 409	Anso T	691
Ajalon T	165	Amaus T	156	<i>Ants, a strange Sort</i>	622
Aidar Pr.	301	Amathus T	172	Anthemusia T	249, 251
Aidin Pr.	63	Amasiah K	175	Antiopa	51
Alisitæ	198	Amalckites	188	Anthedon T	165
Akalzike T	228	Amanzirifdin T	206	Antiochene C.	7, 72
Akebar Pr	460	Amadie T	266	Antandros T	14
Akifar T	16, 17	Amadan T	364	Antiochia T	20, 29, 71, 72, 249, 250, 342
Akond	310	Amagum Pr	459	Anticragum M	28
Alabanda T	20, 58	Amadabath T	524	Antitaurus M	29
Alani	220	Amadnagar T	559	Anti-Casius M	72
Alatinus Pr	62	Ambiani	7	Antaradus T	75
Aladine Pr	ibid. 63, 64	<i>Ambergreece</i>	397	Anti-Libanus M	100
Alazon R	228	Ambassadors of Holstein	403	Antiochus Soter K	108
Albanians	40	Ambar T	566	—Theos	ibid.
Albania Pylæ	219	Amboyna If	809	—Magnus K	109
Albania C	228	Amdanagar T	559	—Epiphanes	110
Albani	ibid.	Amisus-Therma T	8	—Eupater	ibid.
Albanus R	ibid.	Amida T	249, 251	—Sedetes	111
Albours M	350	Ammonites	170, 187	—Gryphus	ibid.
Alcæus	34	Amoy T	791	—Pius	ibid.
Alchabour R	265	Amozites	172	Antipatris T	134
Alcimus	177	Amon K	175	Antonia Hill	136
Alem Pr	483, 484	Amos	158	Antonius K	176
Aleppo T	91	Amordacia C	252	<i>Anti-Caliphs</i>	218
Alexander K	111, 176, 110, 177, 90	Amsterdam If	643	Anticites R	219
Alexandra Qu	176, 177	Amurath Pr	275, 277, 278	Apamia T	12, 256
Alexandri Troas T	14	Anadole C	7	Apanea T	10
Alexandria T	31, 61, 343, 344, 345, 346	Anatolia C	2, 5	Apamea T	74
Alexandrium Castle	135, 150	Anactoria T	20	Apamene C	ibid.
<i>Alexandri Columnæ</i>	220 222	Anathoth T	156	Apathurgus T	221
Algjar T	202	Anaxander	20	Apelchagem Pr	61
Alibinali T	206	Anaximander	ibid.	Apelles	39
Alihamam T	269	Anaxagoras	24	<i>Ape, a strange Story of one</i>	467
Aligators	623	Anacreon	ibid.	<i>Apes</i>	525, 527
Allout-Neur T	645	Ana or Anabe T	199	Aphrodisias T	32
		Anarghia T	228	Aphrodisium T	46
		Anathon T	250	Aphek T	129, 161
				Apollonia	

Apollonia	11, 260	Arion	34	Asmeer C and T	493, 498, 517, 518
Apollonius	6, 20, 45	Ariston	39	Asophon T	135
Apolloniatis C	260	Aristippus	44	Aspendus T	30
Apples of Paradise	117	Ariaspas T	345	Asper	283
Apostles Fountain	149	Arimaspi	ibid.	Assos T	55
Apples of Love	398	Ark of Noah, where it rested	236	Assyria C	249, 258, 353
Aquila Wood	707	— Its Description	239, 240	Assyrian Kings	260, 261, 262, &c.
Arack 514 ——— Tree	670	Armening T	244	Assur Pr	262
Aram	66, 67	Armosata T	241	Assarhaddon Pr	ibid.
Aramites	66	Armolia T	36	Assa. Fœtida	396, 542
Arad T	161	Arms of the Kings of Jerusalem	181	Asserim T	540
Arabia C	182	Armeno-Chalybes	227	Astaroth T	168
— Petraea C	186	Armenii	ibid.	Asterii	38
— Deserta	198	Armenia Minor C	232 } 241	Astartus K	113
— Felix	199, 201	— Major	233 }	Asterinus K	ibid.
— Islands	210	Armenians	246, 247	Asturiani	220
— Caliphs	217	Armalchar or Armacales R	253	Astabat T	245
Arabs 183, seq. 196,	200	Arnon R	118, 172	Astyages K	292
Arabick Tongue	185	Arneoste, strange Giant	350	Astea Is	346
Arabicus Sinus	190, 197	Aroer T	171	Astarabath C and T	390, 392
Arabia T	201	Arnon Pr and T	218, 369	Arangea	40
Arafat M	204	Arrapachitis C	258	Athar T	161
Arached Pr	218	Arracan C and T	655, 659	Athaliah K	175
Araxes R	228, 235, 246, 250	Arsinoe T	32, 46, 47	Athenodorus	31
— Pr	246	Arses K	176	Atramitæ	201
Aravene C	232	Arsmosata T	241	Atræ T	251
Arabissus T	233	Arfaces Pr	297	Atreni	ibid.
Ararat M	236, 237	Artabanus Pr	ibid.	Attingen C	616
Aratus	30	Artemidorus	26	Attalia T	29
Arachosia C	330, 345	Artaxerxes K	176, 295, 296, 298	Attalicus Sinus	ibid.
Aracca T	336	Artaxata T	230, 241	Attalus	55, 56
Aræ T	343	Artagera or Artagigarta T	241	Attoch C and T	504
Arash T	353	Artaxa Pr	247	Aturia C	259
Arbela T	125, 260, 273	Artavasdes Pr	ibid.	Albares	220
Arbelitis or Arbelene C	260	Artaxias Pr	ibid.	Ava C and T	661
Arbaces K	292	Artemita T	260	Auesia Is	16
Arbis T	346	Aruad Is	72	Augusta T	32
Archelais T	150	Afa K	175	Augustus K	176
Archelaus K	176, 178	Asan T	161	Augans	503
Archichelech T	231	Ascalon T	164	Alvins	162
Archad T	251	Ascitæ	201	Avogasie C	232
Archery of Persia	371	Asclepiades	45	Auranitis C	167, 252
Archer Persian, a famous one	ib.	Asem C	654	Aurengabad T	557, 558
Architect basely rewarded	402	Ashtemoth T	160	Axan Pr	300
Ardevil T	357	Ashdod T	163	Aynan Is	816
Arethusa Lake	236	— Pisgah T	173	Ayaman C	200
Areck Tree	670	Asia in General 1.	T 2	Ayamea T	249
Aria or Ariana C	344	— Minor	12, 49	Aza T	232
Argæus M	7, 50	— Its Turkish Kings	63	Azara T	219, 437
Arginusa Is	35	Agius	2	Azariah K	175
Arimaspi	409	Aguir T	269	Azotus T	163
Ariziani	344			Azadme Pr	63
Arimathæa T	134			Azechah	
Aristobulus K	176, 177				

Azechah T	160	Bannara or Banarou T	551	Belshazzar K	176
Azor T	ibid.	Bandora T	562	Belus, Temple and Statue	255
Azoo T	654	Banda T	575	— Pr	260
		— Islands	807, 808	Belochus Pr	261
B.		Bankock T	684	Bellefore T	556
Baalzebub Idol	163	Baptists, an odd Sort	272	Bellargan T	575
Baalgad T	122, 167	Baquen T	585	Belligamme C	642
Baal T	173	Barak	174, 122	Bell of Peking	776
Baalah T	160	Baraza T	241	— Of Nanking	784
Baalmeon T	172	Barbarity of Formosan Women		Bember M	505
Baasha K.	175	to their Infants.	817	Benhadad K	107
Babelmandel Streights	197	Barnabas	45, 68	Bengebzes	205
Babalabuab T	231	Barista T	256	Bengal C	493, 498, 546
Babylas (St.)	74	Barmach M	351	— T	549
Babylonia C	252	Bargu C	432	Bennaris T	551
Babylon T	253	Barygaza T	446	Berar C	498, 546
Babel Tower	254	Barar C	493, 498	Bergera T	609
Babar Pr	458	Baramoulay T	506	Beroth T	122
Bactra T	343	Baroch T	530	Berytus T	97
Bactrii or Bactriani	342	Barando T	544	Besor R.	166
Bactriana or Bactria C	330, 342	Bardes If	574	Betel-Nuts	618
Bacchanalia of Alexander	340	Barcelor T	585	— Trees	620
Bachu T	352	Bargains, how driven by the In-		Bethis T	245
Bacaim or Bacein T	540	dians	587	Bethjeshimoth T	173
Bacola T	555	Barymena C	614	Bethpeor T	ibid.
Bachian If	806	Barros C and T	794	Betharan T	171
Badezar K	113	Basilus Magnus	6	Bethabara T	ibid.
Badanatha T	201	Bashan C	167	Bethsaida T	168
Badto T	ibid.	Bassora C and T	270	Betharamphtha T	123
Badaca T	336	Bashaws	288	Bethulia T	129
Badoula T	645	Bata T	221	Bethel M	130
Bagdat T	267, 270	Batanæa C	167	— T	135
Baglana C	493, 498	Baths of Emmaus	125	Bethsan T	132
Bagnagar T	578	Bathnas T	250	Bethoron T	134
Bajazet	51, 276, 277, 417, 418	Bathu Pr	412	Bethaven T	135
Baidai	428	Batterpore T	545	Bethesda Pool	147
Bakar C	493, 498, 515	Batticala or Batecalo C and T	585, 643	Bethpage T	149
Balbec T	82			Bethany T	ibid.
Baleastarchus K	113	Batyma C	614	Bethlehem T	156
Bala T	135	Batavia T	795	Beth-zur T	159
Baldwin K	180	Bati If	802	Bethshemesh T	160
Balthassar Pr	263	Bay of Arabia	190, 197	Bethoglah T	ibid.
Balfora T	270	Bazra T	270	Bethrehob C	167
Balak Pr	300	Bdelium Gum	336	Bezouart T	589
Balck T	391	Beast that opens Graves	389	Bezeneger T	588
Balafor T	556	Beast strange	517, 526	Bezoar Stone	397, 578
Ballaguete C	564	Becaner T	515	Bezabde T	251
Baly If	802	Beer T	160	Bezeni	7
Bamoth T	170	Beersheba T	161	Bezek T	135
Bantam C and T	800	Bees that make Honey on Trees		Bezetha Hill	136
Bando C and T	516, 517		622	Bezer T	173
Bander-Abassi T	383	Beggars sturdy	534	Bias	20
Banians Tree	384, 536	— Of Ceylon	633	Bickend T	437
Bankisch C	510	Belford T	129	Bider T	560
				Bimi-	

Bimilipatan T	581	Byblus T	96	— Aleii	32
Birds, a strange Sort	622	Byceni	7	— Sancto	147
— Nests eatable	693	Byfantagan T	529	Cambyfes K	176, 293
Birds that hunt Men and Beasts,	398			— R	228, 332
Bir T	263			Camels	187, 347
Birtha T	250	C		Camaran If	210
Bisnagar C	583, 587	Abades Pr	298	Cambalu T	438
— T	588	Cabatanum T	201	Camul C	439
Bithynia C	9, 53	Cabul C and T	498, 503	Cam-Hay T	441
Bithyni	2	Cacchiam T	710	Cambaya C and T	522, 527
Blue Colour abhorred	273	Cachete T	231	Cambodia C and T	691
Boats, a strange Sort	269	Cachemire C and T	493, 498, 504, 505, 507	Canatha T	90
Bochara T	436	Cadmus	20	Candaules	57
Bodeus R	48	Cadmus M	12	Cans	313
Bogdomanis C	9	Cadufii	226, 331	Canara C	583
Bokjes	807	Cadilesquers	282	Cananor C and T	608
Bolgar T	220	Cadis	ibid.	Canal great	719
Bombay If	560	Cæsarea T	6, 233	Cana T	123
Bongue, a Persian Liquor	323	— Ad Anazarbum T	32	— R	166
Bootesallah T	158	— Philippi T	91, 122	Cane T	201
Borsippa T	256	— Flavia T	130	Candahar T	389, 390
Borsippeni	ibid.	— Palæstinæ	132	Candisch C	498, 544
Borneo If and T	802	— Stratonis	ibid.	Canow T	545
Bosor T	173, 189	Caicus R	16	Cannibals	550
Bosphorani	220	Caistrus R	ibid.	Canorein If	562
Bosphorus Cimmericus	ibid.	Caindu C	439	Canoreins	573
Botrys T	96	Calchas	24	Candy T	645
Botry R	166	Calycadnus R	30	Cancheu T	786
Bovregian T	391	Callimacha T	36	Canton T	789
Boutan Kd	653	Calisastlan Pr	63	Canola If	812
Bouton If	803	Calvary M	148	Capernaum T	123
Bouro If	806	Callirhoe T	173, 251	Capharsalama Field	134
Bozra T	173, 189, 270	Caligula	176	Caphozims	161
Bozoch C	232	Caliphs	217	Cappadocia	5, 162, 50
Bzachmanes	447	Calicala T	231	Captain-Basha	282
Brampour T	493, 544	Callinicus T	249	Capigis	283
Bramines If	643	Calachene C	258	Cares	2
Bridge on a Mountain	356	Calacina C	ibid.	Carmanene C	7
Bridge, a fine one over Sende-	370, 372	Calach T	ibid.	Carambis M and T	8
Brodera or Broudra T	530	Cale Culistan M	351	Caria C	18, 57
Brotcha or Brotschia T	ibid.	Calmuks	428	Cardomolo T	36
Bucephala T	446, 509	Callabas T	545	Carmel M	106
Buckor C	511	Calvar T	566	— T	159
Buero If	806	Calicut C and T	609, 610	Carmelites	ibid.
Bufflers	658	Calecoulan T and C	615	Carasus Pr	63
Bulls fight	359, 367	Calpatyn If	644	Caraman Pr	64
Bulloques C	508	Calaminham C	667	Cariathaim T	172
Bulloits	543	Calamba Wood	707	Carna T	201
Bursa T	10, 53	Cambia T	36	Carchemish T	250
Burials of the Persians	325	Camirus T	42	Caracalla Emp	ibid.
Buscis C	199	Camelions described	58	Carræ T	ibid.
Byana T	522	Campus Magnus	131	Caramil T	251
		— Scamandrius	13	Caramit or Carameid	264, 265
		— Adrastei	15	Carasara T	266

Сага соуд.

Caracoulacks	270	Celenderis T	32	Chaioux	283
Carriages for Women, &c.	306	Celebes If	802	Chitor C and T	540
Carmania C	339, 339	Cencem T	360	Chitanagar T	566
Carmani	340	Centapour T	567	Chilao T	644
Carazan C	439	Ceramus T	27	Chiamay Lake	655
Cardandan C	ibid	Cerines T	47	China C	713
Carapatan T	568	Ceramicus Sinus	27	—Root	718
Carwar T	575	Ceraunian M	219	Chorsæus R	70
Carcas T	597	Ceraunii	227	Chorazin T	123
Carnopoly T	614	Cercetæ	220	Chœrilus	38
Caradiva If	643	Cerceticus Sinus	221	Chobar R	265
Casan-Hordes	422	Cercusium T	250	Chosroes Pr	299
Castabala T	33	Ceram If	810	Choatra M	331
Casmer R	70	Cetium T	47	Chorasan C	390
Casius M	72	Ceylon If	617	Christians, when so call'd	68
—R	228	Chalybes	7	Christians of St John	272
Castrum Peregrinorum T	125	Chalcedonii	9	—Of St. Thomas	612
—Regium T	129	Chalcedon T	ibid	Christi M	172
—Thoron or Novum T	129	Chalcidene C	75	Christ	176
Casubim C	162	Chalcis T	76	Chrysippus	30
Cassia Trees	193, 575	Chaicosroes Pr	62	Chudabe T	661
Caspia Portæ	222, 231, 341	Chatramotriæ	201	Chus C	186, 187
Caspia Via	222	Chartan If	211	Chusistan C	375
Caspii	228, 341	Chærides	220	Chusan If	787
Cassac C	231	Chars T	241, 242	Chynaladanus Pr	262
Cassates Pr	300	—R	ibid	Cialia T	439
Caspian Sea	333	Chares	42	Cidambaran T	598
Casbin or Caswin T	360	Chaboras R	250	Cilicia C	30, 60
Cassem-Abad or Casmabath T	367	—T	252	Cimon of Athens	47
Caschan or Cashan T	ibid	Charan T	251, 257	Cimon M	14
Cassachy-Herd	429	Chaldæa C	252, 257	Cimmerii	220
Cascar or Casgar C	439	Chalonitis C	260	Cimmerion T	ibid. 221
Cassubi C and T	667	Chala T	ibid.	Cimmericus Bosphorus	ibid
Catanei	198	Chabur R	265	Cimbræ	ibid
Catania C	7	Charax T	336	Cinnamon	618
Catherine (St.) M	194, 196	Chan of Cathay	438, 443	Cingis K	412
—Mon	194	Champe M	442	Ciniog T	781
Catabani	201	Chatigam T	550	Cingru T	783
Catholicos Bishop	225, 230	Chaal T	559	Circassia C	426
Cataonia C	232	Chandegry T	588	Circassians	219, 221, 425
Cats fine	391	Chareclats	798	Circessus or Circesium T	250,
Carhay C	437	Chekiam C	786		252
Catiapely T	614	Chekio T	705	Circumcision of the Persians	322
Cauchabeni	198	Chengier T	598	Circan C	389
Caucones	9	Cherith R	166	City of Waters	188
Cave of the 7 Sleepers	25	Chelonophagi	340	Clazomenæ T	24, 58
Caucasæ Portæ	219, 222	Chesmar C	439	Clarum T	24
Caucasus M	222, 226, 344	Cheytepour T	541	Claros If	39
Caxem T	359	Chiancare C	7	Claudius	176
Cayelles Bay	806	Chimæra M	27, 59	Clamassum T	241
Cebu If	812	Chios If	35	Cleobulus	42
Cedrei	198	Chison R	70	Climax M	28
Cei-cubades Pr	63	Chiutaie T	13	Clitziasthlan Pr	61, 62
		Chiferi T	242	Clove Tree	805 — Wild
				Cnidus	

Cnidus T	27	Coraxii M	236		
Coartia	220	Cordasi M	270		D.
Cobinam T	389	Coronus M	331	D	Aac T
Cobler, a pleasant Story of one		Coromandel C	590		Dæ
	401	Corea C	779		Dabana T
Cobra Stones	530	Cossæi	337		Dabir T
Cocconuti If	210	Cosmin T	666		Dabul T
Coche T	256	Cotiacum T	13		Daca
Cochineel	354	Cotate T	616		Dacheron T
Coco-Tree	559	Couzelbashes	301		Dadacardin T
Cochin C	612	Courouks Persian	307		Dadivan T
Cochinchina C	705	Couchtelisme M	364		Dagon Idol
Codomanus Pr	297	Colour T	580		Daghestan C
Codane T	346	Coulan C and T	615		Dalaca If
Cælo-Syria C	82	Cows that will not be milk'd with-			Damascus T
Coffee, a Quality of it	323	out their Calves	347		— Its Turkish Kings
Cointus Pr	24	Craftio T	16		Damoan M
Colossæ T	18	Cragus M	28		Daman T
Colophon T	24	Crassus	251		Danda T
Colissus at Rhodes	43	Crapaten T	568		Dan T
Columnæ Alexandri	220	Cranganor C and T	611, 612		Danagar T
Colica Gens	ibid.	Cremen T	231		Daphne T
Colchis C	222	Croceus R	719		Dardanum T
Colchi	227	Crotiri T	40		Daroma C
Colgenbar T	251	Cæsus K	9, 17, 57		Darius K
Colchicus Sinus	447	Ctesias	27		Darabghierd T
Collasar T	545	Ctesiphon T	256, 260		David K
Columbo T	644	Cufa T	204		Davana T
Com T	365	Cuma T	21		David's Fort (St.)
Comana Pontica T	6, 50	Cuncan C	566		Day, how divided by the Per-
Comandrus R	13	Curab T	394		sians
Commagene C	71	Curse of the Persians	326		Dead Sea
Comania C	219	Curds C	245, 265, 268		Debauches, how punish'd in Per-
Compliments, fulsome ones of the		Curna Fort	234		sia
Persians	326	Curides	232		Debir T
Comshe T	375	Curias T	47		Deborah
Comorin Cape	447, 616	Curdenes	68		Debca T
Constantina or Constantia	249	Curia If	211		Decapolis
Constantine the Great	9	Cutlumeses Pr	61, 63		Decca T
Contalli If	16	Cutheans	135, 337		Decan C
Connelia T	47	Cyaxares K	292		Dedan T
Conraide K	180	Cydisses	12		Deder T
Contapour T	567	Cydnus R	30, 60		Deioces K
Condapoly T	580	Cyprus If	44		Dely-Jan T
Condavera or Condevir T	ibid.	Cypron Castle	150		Dely C and T
Confucius the Philosopher	753	Cyrrhestica C	75		
Coos If	39	Cyrrhus T	ibid.		Dela T
Coos T	ibid.	Cyrus R	226, 228, 332		Demetrius Soter K
Coponices K	176	— Pr	293, 176, 57		— Nicanor
Cophar T	201	— His Epitaph	339		Derbe T
Cophe T	345	Cyra or Cyropolis T	343		Derbent T
Cophes R	444	Cyzius T	16, 56		Dervishes
Coricus T	30	Czarofsgorod T	422		Deroga
Corradine K	113				Desart of Temptation
					Defu

Desu T	375	Dungeon of Jeremiah	146	Eltor T	205
Desart Island	643	Dutiga T	567	Elvond M	362
Devils worshipped 634— <i>fed</i>	662	Duza T	250	Elymais C and T	336
Dew T	529	Dutch expelled Formosa	817	Emessa T	74
Diagoras	44	E.		Emir-Hemse Pr	301
—Diamond Mines	580, 586	E Agles Wood	707	Emims	170
—C	249, 252, 263	E Earthen Ware, a strange		Emmaus Baths 125,—T	156
—T	251, 264	Sort	365	Emouy T	791
—Island	666	Earthquakes frequent and terri-		Emperor of China	443
Diana's Temple	24, 59	ble in Schamachie	351	Enapius	17
Dianga T	661	Easis T	346	Endor T	127
Diarbeck,	249, 251	Ebal M	131	Engedi T	159
Diblathaim T	170	Ebher T	360	Enon T	132
Dibon T	171	Ebubezer Pr	217	Ephraim T	154
Dibon-Gad T	ibid	Ecdippa T	122	Ephesus T	24, 58
Diduri	220, 227	Ecbatana C 168—T	330, 332,	Ephesians	58
Digligy-Neur T	624		339	Ephron T	130
Diglath R	234	Echmouil T	363	Epiphania T	33, 75
Dilemon C	392	Eden C	151	Epictetus	14
Dingding T	688	Edeffa T	249, 250	Epiphanius	45
Dindymus M	8	Edom C	189	Erana T	33
Dioscorides	32	Edrei T	168	Ereh T	251
Dionysius	27	Eglon T	161	Eres T	353
Diogenes	8, 58	Egra T	202	Ergimul C	439
Dio-Cæsarea T	6	Ehud	174	Erivan T	242
Dios T	90	Eider Pr	301	—Lake	243
Diospolis T	134	Ekron T	163	Erussa T	251
Dioscoris Is	210	Elaniticus Sinus	190	Ery T	391
Dioscurias T	223	Eladel K	113	Erythra T	59
Divan	282	Elazir K	ibid	Erzirim T	52, 242
Diul T	516	Elæa T	21	Esæi	220
Diu T	527	Elah K	175	Esbu T	172
Dobazi T	661	Elana T	190	Escarchaddon Pr	262
Doliche T	71	Elamis	338	Eschret T	392
Dolfar T	206	Elanson T	447	Esdraelon Plain	127
Doltabad T	565	Elabas T	553	Esguijulfa T	244
Domea T	705	Elbours M	350	Eshtaol T	165
Don John Pr	628, 629	Eleatif T	205, 207	Eshcol R	166
Dores	2, 26	Eleuthero-Cilices	33	Eski-Bagdat T	270
Dor T	132	Eleutherus R	70	Eskerf T	392
Doris C	26	Eleutheropolis T	160	Esenes	115
Dora T	132	Eleale T	172	Etam T	161
Dorideus Pr	297	Eleazer	177	Ethiopia C	186, 187
Dositheans	129	Eleia T	251	Etham Wilderness	191
Dothan or Dothaim T	134	Elephants	491, 495, 512, 621	Etmadaulet	310
Drangiana C	330, 345	Elephant Clouds	528 — If	Evagrius	75
Dragon encounter'd by Gozon		Elias (St.)	106, 169, 268	Evelid Pr	218
with his Dogs	43	Elias (St.) M	362	Evilmerodach K	176, 263
Drepanum T	47	Eli (High-Priest)	175	Eulæus R	350
Dromedaries	183	Elim T	192	Eumenes	55, 56
Drusias T	135	Elisba	130	Eunuchs, the King of Persia's	
Dzusiangs	68	Elman-Alek	310	Cabinet Council	321
Dubil T	394	Elon	175	Euphrates R	153, 233, 235,
Ducat K	412	Elora T	566		253, 268
				Eury-	

Eurymedon R	30	Gallioni T	16	German, the Brutishness of one	404
Europus T	250	Galen the Physician	55, 14	Gefer T	134
Eusebius	132	Callilæang	116	Geshurites	161
Euthydemus	21	Galilee C	121, 128	Getha T	162
Ezekiel	268	—Upper	ibid	Gevrus R	228
Ezion-geber T	190	—Lower	123	Gezire T	265
		Galleus T	135	Gezer T	134
F.		Gallim T	160	Ghosuan M	204
Faifo T	709	Gallim T	170	Gibethon T	165
Famagousta T	46	Galba	176	Gibeah T	155
Fans to let in Air	387	Gamala T	168	Gibeon T	ibid
Fars C	376, 404	Gamron T	383	Gideon	174
Fartach T	206	Gammalamma T	805	Gihon M	148
Fasso T	223	Gandicot T	587	—Pool	ibid
Felons, how punish'd in Persia	329	Gani T	580	—R	153, 234
Ferrabath or Ferrabad T	393	Ganges R	235, 445, 455	Gilboa M	135
Fetipore T	521	Gargaraufene C	7	Gilgal T	154
Feuxeu If	182	Gargaretis C	ibid	Gilead M	166, 168
Field great	131	Garræi	201	Gilan C	392, 393
Field of Jacob	ibid	Garnace or Garneas T	233	Gilolo If	811
—of Capharsalama	134	Garzopa C	586	Ginum T	132
—of Blood	147	Gath T	162	Gino Pr	412
Fire worshipped	316, 350, 353	—Rimmon	165	Gingi C and T	597, 598
Fish, a strange one	270	Gaulon T	168	Gipetini	12
Gold and Silver Fishes	720	Gaulonites	116	Gischata T	127
Fishing Coast	599	Gaulanitis C	168	Gizid Pr	218
Flavia-Cæsarea T	130	Gaugamela T	259	Glutton Fish	334
Flies, a white Sort	359	Gauris	316	Gnats very troublesome	694
Flower that poisons the Wind	396	Gaza T	164, 331	Goa T	568
Fokien C	791	Gazara T	134	Gocurn T	584
Foot Posts, a remarkable Sort	587	Gazer T	ibid	Godah T	545
Fools Paradise	345	Gedar T	160	God's Face, the Cape so call'd,	96
Formosa Islands	816	Gedrosia C	330, 345	Godfrey of Bouillon K	180
Fowlers, a dextrous Sort	521	Gehud T	543	Goga T	530
Fountain remarkable	506	Geldria Fort	591	Golgotha M	148
Fountain of the Apostles	149	Gem-Sem or Man-Plant	718	Golden Fleece explain'd	223
—of Elisha	150	Genea T	131	Golconda C	493, 498, 575
Boxes, a strange Sort	350, 394	Gennaya T	ibid	—T	577
Frankincense Tree	193	Genech C	7	Gomorra T	160
Frederick	60, 70	Gennefareth Lake	119, 123, 152	Gomerii	220
Fulk E. of Anjou	180	—Land	124	Gomron or Gombrown T	383
Fuxan T	790	Georgia C	222, 228, 232	Gonie T	228
G.		Georgius Trismegestus	6	Gophna T	154
GAbala T	129	George (St.)	50, 86	Gordius	54
GAbathon T	165	—Kill'd the Dragon	97	Gordium T	12
Gabæ T	339	—The Martyr's Church	134	Gortheni	130
Gabaza T	343	George (Fort St.)	592	Gory T	231
Gadara T	90, 168	Germanicia T	71	Gorno Fort	234, 235
Gadoro If	16	Gerasa T	90	Gordiaus M	236
Gajafadinus Pr	62	Gerizim M	130, 131	Gorneas T	241
Galatia C	7, 52	Geraritica C	161	Gordianus Emp	250
Galaaditis C	169	Gerar T	ibid	Gorgian C	392
		Gerra T	207	Gor	

Gor C	507	Harosheth T	122	Hierapolis T	19, 71
Gorra T	543	Harmozika T	226	Hierosolyma T	136
Gorcopa C	586	Haran T	251, 257	Hierak Arabi C	270
Goulams	312	Haram of Persia	306, 320	— Agemi C	360
Gouro or Goursa T	551	Hassan Fort	242	Hi K	441
Gozan T	332	Hassera T	545	Hills of Sulphur	269
Granicus R	15	Hatra T	251	Hinnom Valley	147
Grapes, 60 Sorts of them	355	Havran T	167	Hindows	511, 523
Gregory Nazianzen	7	Haumar Pr	217, 218	Hippopothon Plains	356
— Nisene	ibid	Haudee T	544	Hipponas	26
Great Field	131	Hazor T	122, 160	Hippus M	82
Grotto of Jeremiah	145	Head-ach, a strange Way to cure it	427	Hippus T	90, 201
— Of the Sepulchres of the Kings	ibid	Hean T	705	Hippici M	219
— Pestilential	19	Hebron T	159	Hippophagi	220
Gualeor C and T	543	Hecatonnesi Is	35	Hippocrates	39
Gubellhaman T	206	Hecatompilos T	330, 341	Hiram K	113
Guendicot T	587	Hegira, Time of it.	204, 214	Hispahan T	369
Gueldria Fort	591	Helena (St.) T	36, 180	Hoaignan T	785
Gulph of Arabia	197	Heliopolis T	82	Hoambo R	719
— Persia	207, 339	Hellenists	115	Hodgias	285
— Bassora	ibid	Heliobas T	553	Holy Land	114, 117, 174
— Ormus	ibid	Hemp smoak'd by the Persians	323	Holy Fire	146
Gum-Ammoniack	396	Henry E. of Compagne	180	Holy-Cross-Day	170
Gun of a prodigious Size	559	Heneti	7	Holstein Ambassadors	402
Guphna T	154	Heniochi	6, 220	Homer	22, 23, 24
Guriel Kd	223, 226	— M	236	Homerite	201
Gurgistan C	232	Hendowns C	511	Homayum Pr	459
Guy of Lusignan K	180	Hepher T	128	Honan C	783
Guzerat C and T	493, 498,	Heraclea T	10, 53, 72, 228	Hormisdas Pr	299, 300
	522	Hermus R	16	Horma T	161
Gyges	57	Herodians	116	Hor T	170
Gymnosophists	447	Hermon R	118	Hozites	189
Gyndes R	258	Hermon M	120	Horeb M	194
H.		Herodium Castle and Town	159, 173	Hor M	195
HAalon Pr	300	Herma T	161	— T	206
Hadramut C	205	Herod K	173, 176, 178	Horsene C	232
Hagarenes	189	Heropolitanus-Sinus	190	Horse-Tail, the Origine of that Standard	288
Hagiaz C	202	Herodotus	27	Horodes Pr	297
Haifo T	709	Hermogenes	31	Horam T	381
Hail-Stones	207	Hermias	58	Horn Fish	602
Hajacan or Hangi-Chan C	508	Hermitage	377	Hoshea K	175
Hainan Is	816	Heri C	391	Hospitals for Birds and Beasts	526
Halys R	9	Herat T	ibid	Huguely T	555
Halicarnassus T	26	Heshbon T	172	Hunni	220
Hali Pr	217	Hexopolis T	220	Huquam C	785
Halicarcara T	242	Hezar-gerib Garden at Ispahan	374	Hurricanes violent	693
Halyattes K	57	Hezion K	107	Hussein's Posterity	403
Hallabasse T	553	Hezekiah K	175	Hyarotis R	445
Hamath T	123	Hidero R	350	Hybraes	21
Hamadum T	332, 364	Hiddekel R	253, 234	Hyces Pr	218
Hamisheel Fort	617			Hydaspes R	444
Hamcheu T	787			Hyphasis R	445
Hannibal	10, 11				

Hyperbozei	220	—Turkish Sultans	61	—extra Gangem	444, 447
Hyperdexios C	35	Ida M	15	Indostans	523
Hyrkania C	330, 341	Idalium T	46	Indostan C	454, 518
—T	342	Idumæa C	189	Indigo	527
Hyrchanus R	176, 177, 178	Jebus T	136	Indelvai T	566
Hyrncani	226, 341	Jebusites	ibid	Indian Islands	792
		Jefleti T	135	Insect, a very poisonous one	368
I.		Jegbaa T	171	Inventio St. Crucis	149
JAbesh-Gilead T	169	Jehan-Guir Pr	466	Joash K	175
Jabboc R	118	Jehan Pr	462	Job's Country	199
Jabne T	165	Jehosaphet Valley	147	—Sepulchre	265
Jackalls	270, 384, 622	—K	175	Joefwoe T	778
Jacks	619	Jehoash K	ibid	Jogbeah T	171
Jacobites	69, 252	Jehoahaz K	466	John (St.) Ic.	812
Jacob's Well	131	Jehoiakim K	175, 176	John Baptist (St.)	38, 59, 130,
—His Field	ibid	Jehoiakin K	ibid		158, 171, 173
—His Vision	135	Jehoram K	175	John di Brenne K	180
Jaddus K	176	Jehu K	ibid	Jonpour T	554
Jaer	174	Jemen C	207	Jonah	128
Jaffnapatnam C and T	641, 642	Jenba C	510	Jonathan	135, 176, 177
Jaham Pr	471, 472, 481	Jenupar or Jengapore C	512	Jones	2
Jahza or Jahaz T	172	Jephtha	176	Ionia C	22, 55
Jaike R	429	Jeremy	156	Joppa T	133
Jalyffus T	42	Jerachmelites	161	Jor C and T	681
Jamnia T	165	Jerusalem T	136, &c.	Jordan R	118, 152
Jamama C and T	205	Jeremiah's Grotto	145	Joram K	175
James (St.)	266	—Dungeon	146	Joseph	130, 134
Jamba C	510	Jericho T	150	Joshua	135, 156, 176, 174
Jamcefu T	785	Jeroboam K	175	Josiah K	127, 175
Janizaries	283, 287	Jesabel	106	Jotopata T	127
Japan	818	Jesselmere C	516	Jotham K	175
—Their Emperor, Power, and		Jesual C	511	Ipsus T	59
Revenue	824	Jesuits, a cunning Stratagem,	227	Irenopolis T	32
Japara T	801	JESUS born	156	Iris R	5
Japha T	127	Jetara T	229	Irio R	ibid
Jarmuth T	160	Jeweller very rich	403	Isauritis C	6
Jaraone T	376	Jewish Massacres	179	Isauria C	7
Jason Pr	177	Jews 114 — Kings and High		Isaure T	ibid
—His Expedition	223	Priests 176 — People 179		Ischtob C	167
Jathatine Pr	63	Jezrael T 131 — Valley	ibid	Ischam Pr	218
Jathrib T	202	Jezabel's Story	131	Ischnæ T	251
Java C	795	Icheron Ic	39	Isdigardes Pr	298
Jaxhinno T	781	Ilha Deserta	643	Isfendiars Prs	63
Jaxartes R	409	Ilium T	13, 54	Isgaour T	226
Jaxamatæ	219	Ilium-Novum T	13, 55	Ismaelites	188
Jazer T	171	Illavas C	498	Island of the Sun	449
—Lake	ibid	Imaretta Kd	223, 226, 227	Islands Indian	792
Iberia C	226	Imaus M	409	Ismael Pr	300, 301
Iberi	226, 227	Imma T	71	Ispahan T	369, 399, to 404
Ibrahim Pr	64, 218, 279	Incense Trees	396	Israelites	174
Ibzan	175	Indus R	444, 445, 455	—Kings	175
Ichthypophagi	198, 346	India Ancient	444, 449	—Where they passed into the	
Ichne T	251	—intra Gangem	444	Red Sea	191
Ieonium T	6, 51			Jesus T	7, 31, 60
				Ichobo.	

Ithobolus K	113	Kirhafareth T	170	Lebedus T	24
Ituræa C	167	Kirjathaim T	172	Lemons	716
Judæa C	135	Kirgeffi	221	Lenkeran T	394
Judges of Israel	174	Kirman C	383	Leper's Well	264
Judah <i>their Kings</i>	175	Kismich If	385	Letrochio Pr	420
Judas Maccabeus	177	Knights of St. Sepulchre	181	Lesbos If	34
Jude	268	— St. John at Jerusalem ib.	ibid	Leyden If	643
Julias T	168, 171	— Templers	ibid	Libyssa T	11
Julphur T	267	Kodgiasar T	265	Libanon M	100
Julfa T	244, 374, 404	Kom T	365	Library, great one	14
Junnan C	785	Kortchi	312	Libnah T	160
Jurgench Tartars	429	Kortchi Bachi	310	Libias or Livias T	171
Justinopolis T	251	Kours T	246	Libanius T	250
Jutan T	161	Kuddera T	207	Ligor T	685
		Kupri-Kent T	231	Lignum Aloes	694
		Kutepes Pr	62	Limyrus R	27
K.				Limyra T	28, 59
K Adefh T	122	L.		Lincing T	782
K Kagisguan Fort	242	L Aborofardoch Pr	263	Lindus T	42
Kahen T	391	L Labova If	806	Linga T	690
Kakares C	507	Laccanow T	555	Lion-Hunting	490
Kalenter	313	Lachish T	160	— How tam'd	541
Kalmucks	428	Lacque Gum	530, 665	Livias or Libias T	171
Kalcoulang	616	Ladrones If	815	Locusts	156, 271
Kanow T	545	Lahor C and T	493, 498, 509	Lockman's Story	361
Kanduana C	508	Lajazzo T	7	Logick invented	21
Kapharsalama Field	134	Laish T	160	Long Island	643
Karnaim T	168	Lake of Gennesareth	119, 123, 124, 152	Lop C	439
Karkor T	172	— Asphaltites ibid.	119, 152	Lori T	231
Karagans	429	— of Erivan	243	Loupadi T	11
Karkalla T	597	— of Thospetes	236	Louvo T	684
Kasembasar T	554	Lampfacus T	16, 56	Lowribander T	516
Kaulys	402	Lamus R	30	Lubieni	227
Kazi	310	Lama, Priest of the Tartars,	432, 433, 434	Lucian	71
Kedron R	118, 147	Lanchang T	692	Lucon If	813
Kedemoth T	172, 189	Lantern Festival	756	Lurs	383
Kedureni	182, 188, 191	Laos C	692	Lycaonica C	6
Keilah T	160	Laodicea T	18, 72, 333, 339	Lyci	2
Kelonter	312	Laodicene C	72	Lycæones	ibid
Kemois	706, 707	Lapithia C	47	Lycaonia	51
Kesker T	394	Lapithus T ibid	— R 48	Lycia C	27, 59
Kettule Tree	619	Laranda T	6	Lycus R	18, 48
Khœmus C	391	Larissa T	75, 258	Lydia C	2, 16, 56
Kiare T	362	Larins, their Value	185	Lydda T	133
Kiam R	719	Lar C and T	381	Lydi	2
Kiamnin C	783	Lashah T	173	Lyrnessus T	55
Kiamfi C	786	Lassach T	205, 207	Lystra T	6
Kilan C	393	Latinus M	18		
Kileks	ibid	Laudanum gather'd	40	M.	
Kimtong If	788	Laviana C	232	M Abortha T	130
Kings of Israel	175	Laws of the Persians	329, 330	M Macao If	816
— Judah	ibid	Leaotung C	441, 779	Macaflar T	803
Kirin T	442			Maccabees Sepulchre	155
Kirjath-Arba T	159			Macherus T	173
— Jearim T	160			Mached-	

Mached-Raba T	266	Marfias R	12	Decriti	428
Machian If	806	Baronites	69, &c. 100, 101, &c.	Mechlapatan T	581
Mackeran C and T	389	Marron T	130	Mecon R	691
Macrones	227	Marmarenfes Rock	28	Medeba or Medba T	172
Madraspatan T	592	Marfyas	12	Medina T	202
Madura T and C	599	Marefha T	161	Medes Kings	292
Mæander R	12	Marah T	192	Media C	330, 331
Mæoræ Afaticæ	220	Mariaba T	201	— Atropatene	ibid
Mægisba Lake	448	Marane T	ibid	— Magna	332
Magnesia T	20, 58	Baranite	ibid	Medon T	666
Magorum Sinus	201	Martan If	211	Megartus T	32
Magi Persian	291, 294	Marvan Pr	218	Megiddo T	127
Mahomet Impofitor	195, 202, 203, 204, 211, &c. to 217, 284	Marubius R	219	Mein T	563
Mahomet Pr	63, 64, 218, 276, 277, 278, 279, 301	Martyropolis T	251	Meidan at Ispahan	371
— Chodabende's Sepulchre	359	Marfe R	253	Melaffo T	21
Mahanaim T	171	Marriages of the Perfians	324	Melchites	69
Mahadi Pr	218	Margiana C	330, 342	Melibæa If	72
Mahin T	381	Martiana Palus	332	Melech K	112, 62
Majoma T	164	Baridi	337	Melechfala K	112
Maiim T	561	Marante T	354	Melchizedech's Palace	132, 136
Makedah T	160	Mare's-Milk of the Tartars	431	Belanchlæni	220
Mallus T	31	Maranus T	437	Melas R	232
Malaxia T	233	Marksman, a very good one	457	Melitene T	233
Malva C	493, 498, 542	Maroucha C	557	Meleager	90
— T	807	Barabas	602	Melons	397, 398
Malda T	551	Marta C and T	614	Meliapour T	596
Malabar C	603	Martaban C and T	685	Menois T	165
Mallians	617	Baridjkers	798	Menahem K	175
Maldive If	645	Mafick, how made	35	Menelaus	177
Male T	647	Mafuat Pr	62	Mengrelia C	223, 232
Malacca C and T	685, 688	Mafcaloth T	129	Menippus	90
Malayo T	805	Mafada Castle	159	Mendeli T	270
Samalucks	220	Bafani	198	Menangfan T	684
Mamortha T	130	Maskata T	206	Mephaath T	172
Mamre T and Grove	159	Mafpha T and C	ibid	Meribah Rock	195
Manaffeh K	175	Mafcalat C	207	Merodach Pr	262
Manna	396	Mafius M	236	Merdin T	265
Mangu Pr	420	Bafagete	342, 343	Merus M	446
Mando C and T	516, 517	Mafulipatan T	581	Merat C	522
Mandoue or Mandoway T	545	Mataram C and T	800	Mefagys M	16
Mangoes	572	Matum T	47	Mefla T	36
Mangalor or Manquelore T	585	Bateri	220	Mefopotamia	249, 252
Manaar If	644	Matavaguas T	574	Mefene T	256 — If 257
Man Plant	718	Maufolæum	26, 57, 519	Mefched T	390
Mandarins Chinefe	745, to 750	Maufolus	ibid	Mettimus K	113
Manila If	813, 814	Mavay C	542	Mevat C	522
Maon T	159	Maum M	661	Miana T	356
Barandini	2	Maxad T	390	Michmas T	154
Barian-Agni	9	Maza T	6, 51	Micah	160
		Mazpah T	167	Mice that carry away Money	428
		Mazanderan C and T	392	Midæum, the Seat of K. Mi-	
		Mearta T	512	das	54
		Mecca T	202	Midianites	169
				Midian	

Midian T	169	Muhabras Pr	218	Nanchang T	786
Middleburg If	643	Multan T and C	493, 498, 508	Nande C	493, 498
Miletus T	20	Mummy	376, 396, 397	Nanking C and T	783
Milk-Tree,	536	Munay T	666	Nangam T	786
Mimas M	16	Muria If	211	Naphthæa R	118
Mindus T	21, 58	Murder, how punish'd in Persia,	329	Napelosa or Napolitza T	130
Minnith T	188	Musfat Pr	63	Naphta, the Oil so called,	331, 336, 351, 352
Binæi	201	Muscatah T	206	Narsinga C 587 — T	519
Mina T	388	Musa Pr	218	Narval T	522
Mingrela T	568	Mustapha Pr	278, 279	Narmacha or Narmalaches R	253
Mindanao If 811 — T	812	Muscus C	353	Narvar C	543
Mindora If	ibid	Musk	397	Nathaniel alias Barthol.	123
Mirabat M and T	206	Muthana T	170	Nathaniel T	170
Miriam	191	Muteferaca's	283	Natolia C	5, 49, 64
Miracha Pr	456	Muza T	201	Natens T	369
Mirdsie or Mirja T	585	Muziris T	447	Navar T	220
Mirgui T	685	Myas T	59	Nautaca T	343
Mithridates Evergetes	8, 50	Mycole M	18	Naugracut C and T	510
— Eupatra	ibid	Mygdonia T	249	Naunkaton T	779
— Fr	297	Mygdones	249	Naxos If	40
Mitylene T	34	Myndus T	21, 58	Nazianzen	7
Mizpah T	160, 167, 172	Myrto If	40	Nazianzum T	ibid
Boabites	170, 188	Myrina T	21	Nazareth T	126
Boccadellii	12	Myriandrus T	72	Neapolis T	130
Moccah T	206	Myfia Minor C	15	Nebo T 172 — M	178
— Its King	207, &c.	Myfia Major C	14, 55	Nebuchadnezzar K	176, 262
Modin T	155	Bylo-Macedones	14	Negapatan T	598
Moenenum Castrum	165	Byfi	2	Negumbo T	644
Mogosthan C	388			Negraes T	666
Moguls (Great)	456			Neharda T	250
Mogul Empire	454			Nellembyneur T	645
Mokan Plains	394			Neo-Cæsarea T	6
Molgemozans	221			Nera T	808
Molucca's If	803			Nero	176
Montagna T	11			Nesbin or Nesibis T	249, 251, 266
Mons Tremiorum	150			Nestorius	71
Mongul C	431, 432			New Orange T	612
Monoglossum T	446			Nicetes	24
Monkies Milk-white	622			Nicomedia T	9
Mopsuestia T	32			Nicæa T	10
Morehihi T	160			Nicopolis T	33, 11
Morimene C	232			Nicaria If	38
Moriah M	136			Nicholas (St.) T	40
Bozteni	198			Nicosia T	47
Moses	174			Nicopolis T	232
Bozchi	227			Nicias	39
Moschici M	ibid			Nicephorium T	249
Mosul T	268			Nicæa T	445, 446
Motir If	806			Nile R	235
Mountain of Simples	364			Nimrod K	260
— of Sepulchres	405			Nimpo T	787
Boxiani	12				
Moyfes Pr	218				
Mufti	284				

Nindundiva II	643	Onias	176, 177	Palæstine C	114
Ninive T	259	Ono T	153	Palibratha T	447
Ninus Pr	260, 261	Onor C and T	583	Palæsimundus T	448
— His mighty Army	343	Onrust II	800	Palanquins	515, 516
Ninorita T	442	Ophir	447	Palicole T	581
Nio II	40	Ophis T	257	Palicate or Paliakate T	591
Niphates M	236	Opium, how made	323	Palimbang T	794
Nisa T	7	Opton T	89	Pamphylia C	28, 59
Nisibis T	249, 251	Ops Statue	255	Pamphylia	2
Nisabour T	391	Oman C	206	Pamardis T	219
Niuchi C	440, 442, 724	Oran T	ibid	Pambous	515
Noah's Ark	236, 239, 240, 244	Orangzeb Pr	474, 475, 476, 479, 481, &c.	Panæas T	167
— His Vineyard	243	Orangabad T	558	Panchæa C	201
— Sepulchre	354	Oranges China	716	Pandionis C	447
Nob T	155	Orbalissine C	232	Panola T	609
Roгаian Tartars	220, 422, &c.	Orbisene C	ibid	Panane T	611
Roithacenses	220	Orcheni	198, 258	Panderatoute T	614
Romades	183	Orchoe T	257	Paphia II and T	47
Noradine K	112	Orchanes Pr	275	Paphos Nova	ibid
Norrennal C	206	Orfa T	264	Paphlagonæ	2
Nuckar T	246	Organa II	210	Papous Terra	809
Nuoecman T	710	Orygasi	220	Paragoya II	812
Nutmegs	808	Orixa or Oristan T and C	557	Parchment invented	14
Nux Vomica	575	Orietan T	660	Parius T	16
Nymphæus R	251	Ormus C and T	385	Partridges tame	37
Nyssene	7	Ozondici	7	Paradise	150, 154, 235
Nyfa Plains	356	Orontes R	70	— of Fools	345
Nyssa T	446	— M	331	Paran Wilderness	191
		Orthosia T	95	Paropamisus M	222 — C 330, 344, — R 409
		Osman Pr	217, 274, 278	Paryadræ M	236
		Ostroene C	249	Parthia C	330, 340
		Ostriches	192	Parachoatra M	331
		Othniel	174	Parætaceni	337
		Otho K	176	Parthians	340
		Ottoman Kings	274, 275, &c.	Parfis T	346
		Oudee T	555	Parmach M	351
		Ougli T	ibid	Parfac T	360
		Ounce, the Quality of that Crea-	349	Parell T	561
		ture	349	Parbas	599, 600
		Ourfa T	264	Paretiture T	642
		Ourature II	643	Pasitigris R	151, 235
		Ousafar T	266	Pasagardis T	339
		Outemeda T	590	Passages subterranean	405
		Oxiana Palus	342	Patara T	27
		Oxus R	342, 350	Pathmos II	38
		Oxen us'd like Horses	517	Patriarchs, where buried	131
				Pataruæ T	219
				Patala II	446
				Patna C	510
				Patan T	429
				Pataha or Patenaw T	551
				Patchiarapalle C	642
				Patane C and T	690
				patna - 510	Patience

- Patience Streights* 803
Paufanias 6
Paul (St.) 6, 45, 68, 85, 134, 185
Paulus Samofatenus 71
Peacocks catch'd 528
Pearl Fishery 211, 599, 601
Peaches like a Man's Heart 365
Pecher T 206
Pedir C and T 794
Pegu C 661 ——— *T* 665
Pekahiah K 175
Pekah K *ibid*
Peking C and T 438, 775, 776
Pelenæus M 35
Pella T 90, 168
Pelethi T 135
Delethites *ibid*
Pelican 398
Pellicat T 591
Pentapolis 163
Penuel T 171
Penthesilea 51
Penjab C 509
*Peninsula India intra Gan-
gem* 558
——— *extra Gangem* 653
Pepper 687, 716
Perozes Pr 298
Pergamus T 14, 54, 55
Perga T 29
Pergi T 37
Peræa C 169
Periarbidi 220
Perath R 234
Persia C Tables 289. — *Kings*
293. — *Their Titles* 309, &c.
—— *Government, &c.* 306.
—— *Arms* 308. — *Seal* *ibid*.
—— *Grandeas* *ibid*. — *Reli-
gion* 314. — *Festivals* 315.
—— *Manners* 321, 370 — *Trade*
326. — *Coins* 327. — *Weights,*
&c. 328. — *Learning and*
Language *ibid*. — *Punish-
ments* 329. — *Laws* 330.
—— *Ancient State* *ibid*.
Persia (Modern) 346, 395
Persis Proper 330, 335, 337
Persepolis *ibid*. and 337, 404
Periapatan T 602
Peroem T 661
Pera T 688
Pessinus T 8, 52
Petra T 189 — *Sogdianæ* 343
Peter (St.) 68
Petan T 529
Pettipole T 591
Phoenix M 18, 200
Phaselis T 28, 30
Pharmaco If 40
Pharphar R 82
Pharisees 116
Phasaelis T 150
Phara T 190
Phanagoria T 219, 221
Phasis R 223, 228, 235
Phazzeth T *ibid*
Phasia C 227
Phalga or Phaliga T 252
Pharga or Phagra *ibid*
Phelles K 113
Philistion the Comedian 10
Philadar T 11
Philadelphia T 18, 89, 188
Philip 90, 158
Philistines Land 162
Philetus 39
Philetæus 55
Philodemus 90
Philippine Islands 811, 813
Phœcæa T 21
Phœnicia C 94
Phraartes K 292, 297
Phryges 2
Phrygia Major C 12, 53
——— *Minor C* 13, 54
Phrat R 153, 234
Phryxus T 227
Phraata T 332
Phredag T 345
Phitrophagi 220
Phyndacus R 14
Physicians of the Persians 329
Piazza, a large one 354
Pigeons Carriers 93
Pityus Magnus T 222
Picene T 20
Pierius M 72
Pilate K 176
Pindenissus T 33
Pindatsche M 531
Pinguis Birds 645
Pipely T 556
Pirgo T 40
Pirifabora T 257
Pire Pensale M 505
Pisidia C 7
Pison R 153, 234
Pisgah M 173 — *T* *ibid*
Pismires make Lacque 665
Pitane T 58
Pittacus 34
Pitan C 510
Pitsanouloc T 684
Plain of Esdraelon 127
*Plane Trees drive away the
Plague* 396
Poets of the Persians 329
Polycarp (St.) 22, 23
Polyæus 17
Polycrates fortunate 37
*Polygamy much esteem'd by the
Persians* 331
Pompeiopolis T 9
Pompejopolis T 30, 60
Pontica C 7
Pontus C 9, 53
Pondicheri or Ponticheri T
597
Pongardiva If 643
Pools of Solomon 157
——— *of Siloam* 147
——— *of Bethesda* *ibid*
——— *of Gihon* *ibid*
Popes Isles 16
Poppies of a strange Quality
396
Porto-Angeli 555
Porca C and T 614
Posideum Melistorum T 21
Posidonium T 72
Potter's Field 147
Pourcelouc T 684
Pouto If 788
Poyson, strange Sort 291
Prabat T 684
Prestor John 433, 434
Priapus 16
Priata T 617
Priaman T 794
Proconnesus If 16
Proserlimitæ 7
Proselytes 115
*Procession of the Latins at Jeru-
salem on Good-Friday* 144
——— *Of the Holy Fire* 146
——— *To a Paged* 584
Proclus 28
Prophthasia or Prosthasia T
345
Prusias or Prusa T 10, 53
Psara If 40
Pfathis

Plathis R	219	Ramath-Mizpeh	172	Rucrain Pr	62, 63
Pselli	220	Rams fight	359	Ruis Castle	224
Pterium T	52	Rammanakoiel If	602	Ruth	190
Ptolemais T	105	Ranas C	542		
Ptolemæus	176	Rantipore T	542	S.	
Pulo-Lancanhuy If	687	Raolconda T	586		
Pulo-Lada If	ibid	Raphana T	89	SAada T	205
Pulo Bouton If	688	Raphia T	166	Saba C	199, 201
Punto-Gallo	643	Ratispore T	542	Sabæi	200
Purple of Tyre	104	Rattans	619	Sabbath of the Persians	329
Pura T	346	Rebecca	252	Sabbath, strict Observers	130
Purification, how perform'd	431	Recome T	169	Sabota T	201
Pygmalion K	113	Red Sea	196	Sablestan C	389
Pylæ Caucasæ	219	Red Heads	312	Sadre-Cassa	310
—Sarmatiæ	ibid	Regama or Regma T	201	Sadraspatan T	597
—Albania	ibid	Regian C	232	Saffron R	719
—Susiæ	337	Rehoboam K	175	Sagu Tree	804
Pyramus R	30	Reholoth T	250	Sahana T	266
Pymaraas T	352	Rephaim Valley	157	Salamina T	46
Pythagoras	37	Rephaims	170	Saladine K	112
Pyxurates R	233	Rere-Mice	693	Salim or Salem T	132, 136
		Refæna or Refaina T	251	Salumias T	ibid
Q.		Rescht T	394	Salehab T	168
QUamfi C	788	Revan T	242	Salmanassar Pr	262
Quantung C.T.	788, 789	Rezin K	107	Salt-Petre prepar'd	517
Quarantania M	150	Rezi, an ingenious Persian	403	Salvasong T	561
Queen of Sheba	201	Rhaabeni	198	Salfette If	574
Quer-Koule-Agafi	310	Rha R	219	Samos If	37
Queda T	686	Rhaga T	333	Samosata T	71
Quelpaert If	781	Rhea Statue	255	Samaritans	115, 129, 130, 135
Queichen C	785	Rhey T	363	Sadducees	ibid
Quinzay T	787	Rhinocolura T	166	Samaria C	129, 130
Quiquifs M	350	Rhinocorura R	198	Samaritis C	129
		Rhinoceros	401	Sampson	165, 175
R.		Rhodes If	41	Samuel	ibid. 134
R Abbath T	170	Rhodes T	42	Samiel Wind	269, 271, 383
—Ammon	188	Rhosus T	72	Samarchand T	436
Raconad Pr	62	Rhombites Major and Mi-	219	Sambal C and T	522
Rack of the Persians	329	nor R	499	Samorin of Calcut	606
Rafedis	267	Riches of the Moguls	620	Santorini If	40
Ragæ or Ragia T	333	Rice	219	Sandy-Sea Desert	205
Ragemal C	493, 498	Riphæi M	219	Sanaa T	205
Ragemehal T	554	Rock of the Marmarenfes	28	Sanian T	357
Raja-Ranas C	542	—which cleft at our Saviour's	145	Sanbat C and T	522
Rajapour T	567	Death	362	Sandaye T	543
Rajebag T	575	Roldan, a Story of that Dog,	362	Saocoras R	250
Rama T	155, 661	Roni C	7	Saofducinus or Saofduchinus	262
Ramatha T	134	Rope-Dancers, two famous ones	371	Sapores Pr	298
Ramah T	ibid	of Persia	72	Sappho	34
Ramathaim-Sophim T	ibid	Rossus T	554	Saphradine K	113
Ramula T	ibid	Rotas T	253	Saphet T	128
Ramoth-Gilead	169	Royal River		Sapphozite	201
				Saphar	

Saphar T	201	Sederet T	244	Sigan T	775
Sapias T	228	Sefi Pr	303, 305	Sihor R	166
Saracens	191, 201	— <i>His Sepulchre</i>	358	Siloa Well	137
Sardis T	17	Seger C	206	Siloam Pool	147
Sarus R	30	Segfabad T	363	Siloe T	ibid
Sarpedon T	32	Seleucia C	168	<i>Silk Worms, and how 'tis made,</i>	349
Sarepta T	103	Seleucia Pisidiæ T	29	Sillebar T	794
Sarachan Pr	63	Selinus T	30	Simois R	15
Saron K	113	Seleucis cum Pieria C	72	Simon	123, 176, 177, 268
— T and C	133, 168	Seleucia T	ibid. 250, 252, 255, 256, 336	Simonides	38
Sarmatia Asiatica C	219, 220	Seleucis Mediterranea C	72	Simeon Stylites	87
Sarmatiæ Pylæ	219	Seleucus Nicanor K	107, 108, 109, 110, 111	Sinope T	8, 52
Sarug T	252	Selzuccian Kings	69	Singas R	70
Sardanapalus Pr	261	Selymus Pr	277	Sin WilderNESS	191
Saru T	432	Semiramis Qu.	261	Sinai WilderNESS	ibid. 193
Saranpatam C	585	Sennacherib	262	— M	194, 196
Saferon T	553	Sentrochio Pr	420	Sinda T	219, 221
Satala T	233	Sende C	515	Syndi	220
Satigan T	554	Sephi Pr	303	Sinous	39
Satrispatnam T	597	Sepphoris T	125	Singara T	250
Saul K	135, 156, 175	Seronge T	542	Sinarum Regio	448
Saviour's (St.) Mon	194	Serapias If	210	Sindickera T	530
Saubatha T	201	Seraglio of Persia	306	Sinnergan T	555
Save T	ibid	Servan C	350	Sincapura T	689
Savatopoli T	223	Serica or Seres C	408, 410	Sinkocien T	778
Sava T	362	Seres	409, 410	Singie T	ibid
Saxava T	ibid	Serripore T	555	Sion M	136
Scalona T	164	<i>Serpents of various Kinds</i>	623	Sipylus M	16
Scaro T	40	Sevmora or Seusamora T	226	Sirbi	220
Scarpanto If and T	41	Shapore T	546	Sirkesia T	527
Scamander R	54	Shallum K	175	Sifimithræpetra	343
Scamandria T	55	Shalem T	130	Sistan C	389
Scala Tyrriorum M	122	Shammachi T	351	Sittacene C	260
Scacassani	227	Shamgar	174	Sittace T	ibid
Scenitæ	183, 251	Sheba (Qu. of)	201	<i>Slaughter of the Jews</i>	179
Scenæ T	251	Shilo T	135	<i>Sleepers Cave</i>	25
Schirwan C	350	— M	ibid	Smerdis the Magus	294
Schamachie T	351	Shinar T	250	<i>Smiths live in great State at</i>	
Schabran T	353	Shirwan C	350	Ceylon	632
Schiraz T	376	<i>Shrubs poisonous</i>	396	Smyrna T	22, 58, 64
Schiambacenses	425	Siam C and T	668, 683	Snake-Wood	618
Scio T	35	Siba C	510	<i>Snow prov'd black</i>	24
<i>Scorpions of Cashan</i>	368	Sichem T	130, 131	Soana R	228
Scribes	116	— Valley	ibid	Soba M	134
Scythopolis T	89, 132	Sichmi T	ibid	Socho T	160
Scythians	220, 343, 409, 410, 411	Sichar T	130	Socotora If	210
Scythia	408, 409	Side T	29	Sodom T	159
Sebastopolis T	223	Sidon T	97	Sodii	227
Sebastia T	6, 50, 241	<i>Siege of Troy</i>	55	Sogdiana C	330, 343
Sebaste T	32, 130	Sigelum T	14	Soganni T	168
Sebvians	130	Sigestan C	389	Sohar T	206
Sec-omor Pr	458			Solaques	283
Secandra T	522			<i>Solecism, its Original</i>	30

Solomon K	175	Syam C and T	668, 683	Tartary Great	407, 421,
Solomon's Wells	104	Sybaris T	223		422, &c.
— Temple	136	Sylvi	227	— Desert 422	— Real 429
— Pools	157	Symnitæ	220	— Eastern	439, 441, 442,
Solyman Pr	61, 63	Synadava T	12		443, 724, 725
Solyma T	136	Syphara T	250	— Western	439, 441, 442,
Solis Promontorium	201	Syria C	66		443
Solon	57	— Propria	70	Tarcu T	432
Solyman Pr	276, 277, 279	— Its Kings	107	Tata T and C	493, 498, 515
Solor If	807	Syrenahar T	507	Taurus M	29, 59, 236
Sondiva T	550	Syronga T	542	Tauris T	354
Sophanene C	249	Syr T	545	Taxila T	446
Sophim M	134	Syriam T	666	Tcheharbag Street at Ispahan	373, 403
Sophi Persian, its Origine	300			Tcheronet	528
Sophi's Bonnet	308			Tea	717
— Their Order	311			Tectosagæ	7
Sophian T	357	T. Abaristan C	392	Tellis T	230
Soret C	516	Table of the Mogul's Coun-try	501	Tefanktchi Agasi	310
Sotiga T	554	Tabor M	125	Tegepatnam T	597
Sotapour or Soulapour T	568	Tabrimon K	107	Tegapatan T	616
Soumelpore T	556	Tabris T	354	Tehama C	205
Spahi's	283, 288	Tachu T	778	Tekoah T	158
Specus Corycius	30	Taduan T	246	Telmessus T	28, 59
Speech of a Pagan	482	Taigan T	781	Telmessus Sinus	28
Spiridion	48	Taitung T	775	Telghieuram T	265
Spider, a strange Sort	623	Tajeff T	204	Telichery T	609
Stampalia If and T	41	Taiba T	267	Temerossa T	428
Stella M	51	Tainfu C	438, 439	Tempests frequent in Schama-chie	352
Stoves of Persia	374	Talischs	393	Temanis T	231
Stone of a prodigious Bulk	579	Tallipot Tree	619	Temple of Diana	24
Strabo	6	Tallow Tree	716	Temple of Solomon	136
Stratonice T	20	Tamassus T	46	— of Jerusalem 138, to 142	
Stratonis Turris	132	Tamerlane	50, 412, to 420	— of Presentation	144
Streights of Babelmandel	197	Tamas Pr	301	— of the Holy Sepulchre ib.	148
Succoth T	171	Tanais R	219	Tenasserim T	684
Suchuen C	782	— T	ibid	Tenedos If	33
— T	787	Tanaitæ	219	Tenduc or Tenuc C	432, 434,
Sulphur Hills	269	Tantalus	54		438
Sulphurous Wind	ibid	Tangrolipix Pr	300	Tenara T	580
Sultania T	358	Tanchur C	432	Tenmarache C	642
Sumack, a Grain	269	Tanguth C	438, 439	Tendaye If	812
Sumatra If	792	Tanda T	551	Teos T	24
Suna T	17	Tanaw T	563	Termessus T	29
Sun Island	449	Tanjowar C	598	Teredon T	257
Sura T	81	Tanor T	611	Terki T	428
Sur Wilderness	191	Tanasserim T	684	Termapatan T	609
Surgeon, a Story of one	402	Taoca T	339	Ternate If	804
Suratte T	531	Taphua T	132	Terra de Papous	809
Sufiana C	330, 335	Taprobana If	448	Teuchang If	782
Sufa T	330, 336, 375	Tarsus T	31	Teuthrania T	8
Susidæ Pylæ	337	Tarichæa T	124	Thales	20
Suster T	375	Tariff T	204		
Suvas C	7	Tartars	220, 221, 408, 411		
Swally T	531, 532				

Thamnah T	160	Timor H	806, 807	Tree of the Banians	384, 536
Thalestria	51	Timplan T	667	— Incorruptible	706, 707
Thamnath Cares T	135	Time, how computed by the Per-	329	Tremirus T	48
Thaanath Silo T	132	sians	695	Trevancor C and T	615, 616
Thapuah T	ibid	— And in Tonquin	20	Trismegistus	6
Thapfacus T	81	Timotheus	9	Trimenothurix	14
Thaanach T	127	Timonitis C	160	Tripolis T	18
Tharza T	130	Timnah T	616	Tripoly T	95
Thermodeon R	6	Tingapatan T	655	Triare C	227
Themistyrane C	7	Tipra C	597	Triala T	231
Themicyra T	ibid	Tirepoliere T	220	Trinquilemale T	643
Therfa T	130	Tirambæ	219	Troas C	13
Thebes T	134	Tirambe T	297	Trocami or Troemi	7
Theman T	189, 206	Tiridates Pr	6	Troy T	13, 54
Thema T	199, 206	Tisaria T	681	— Besieg'd	55
Theatin Fryars	228	Titles extravagant	16	Trulla T	201
Theodosiopolis T	241	Tmolus M	169	Tufenkgis	312
Themistocles	20, 59	Tob T	435, 437	Tumein T	428
Theophrastus	34	Tobacco, the Persian Way of	321	Tunny Fishing	65
Theodorus	51, 90	smoking it	563	Tunxo T	779
Thensu C	438	Tocharistan. C	174	Tuncham T	782
Theienmingus K	440	Toddy Bird	7	Turks	274, to 288
Thenzungus K	ibid	Tola	48	Turkey in Asia	4
Thirza T	130	Tolistobogii	201	— Northern	219
Thirsagetæ	220	Tolius R	364, 365, 366	— Eastern	232
Thibet C	434, 437	Tomala T	602	Turris Stratonis T	132
Thisba T	169	Tombs of the Kings of Persia,	693	Turcæ	220
Thoron T	129	364, 365, 366	705	Turcomania C	232
Thorns of Christ's Crown	193	Tondy T	161	Turcomanns	ibid
Thospites Lake	236	Tonquin C	269	Turquestan C	435, 437
Thous T	392	— T	311	Tutamus Pr	261
Thomas (St.) Christians	450, 612	Toparchies of Judæa	798	Tutunac	513
Thomas (St.) T	596	Topcalai T	65	Tutecoryn T	602
Three Churches Mon	244	Toptchi Bachi	193	Tuz T	437
Thrones of the Mogul	491	Topassers	391	Tyanis C	7
Tumen T	425	Tortoises	373, 402	Tyana T	6
Thumenses	221, 425	Torre T	30	Tyanæus	ibid
Thun T	391	Tower of Precious Stones	6	Tygers tame	394
Thunder esteem'd	427	— of Horns, &c.	58	Tygris R	151
Thyatira T	16	Trajan Emp.	ibid	Tylos Is and T	211
Tiana T	6	Trapezus T	90, 166	Tyre T	103
Tibarini	33	Trallis T	167	Tyroan T	356
Tiberias T	124	Trallenses	198	Tzecander T	522
— Lake	ibid	Trachonitis C	598		
Tibni K	175	Trachones M	615, 616	U.	
Ticou C and T	794	Trajan R	667	V	
Tidor C and T	806	Tranguebar T	6	Addahs of Ceylon	631
Tiencenwey T	778	Travancour C and T	39, 369	Uali	220, 313
Tigranes K	112, 247	Transiana C	349	Valley of Hinnom	147
Tigris R	151, 234, 235, 268	Trebisond T	271	— Jehosaphat	ibid
Tigil R	234	Tree very large		— Joshua	156
Tigranocerta T	241	— One Side poisonous, & other		— Rephaim	157
Tikri T	270	an Antidote		— Elah	158
		Trees Male and Female		Van	

[illegible]

Bellevue Hospital
201486

